CHAPTER 124—PUBLIC HOUSING DRUG ELIMINATION

SUBCHAPTER I—PUBLIC AND ASSISTED HOUSING DRUG ELIMINATION

SUBCHAPTER I—PUBLIC AND ASSISTED HOUSING DRUG ELIMINATION

§11901. Congressional findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) the Federal Government has a duty to provide public and other federally assisted low-income housing that is decent, safe, and free from illegal drugs;

(2) public and other federally assisted low-income housing in many areas suffers from rampant drug-related or violent crime;

(3) drug dealers are increasingly imposing a reign of terror on public and other federally assisted low-income housing tenants;

(4) the increase in drug-related and violent crime not only leads to murders, muggings, and other forms of violence against tenants, but also to a deterioration of the physical environment that requires substantial government expenditures;

(5) local law enforcement authorities often lack the resources to deal with the drug problem in public and other federally assisted low-income housing, particularly in light of the recent reductions in Federal aid to cities;

(6) the Federal Government should provide support for effective safety and security measures to combat drug-related and violent crime, primarily in and around public housing projects with severe crime problems;

(7) closer cooperation should be encouraged between public and assisted housing managers, local law enforcement agencies, and residents in developing and implementing anti-crime programs; and

(8) anti-crime strategies should be improved through the expansion of community-oriented policing initiatives.

(Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5122, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4301; Pub. L. 101–625, title V, §581(a), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4245; Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §586(b), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2646.)

AMENDMENTS

1998—Par. (2). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(b)(1), inserted "or violent" after "drug-related".

Par. (4). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(b)(2)(A), inserted "and violent" after "drug-related".

Pars. (6) to (8). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(b)(2)(B), (3), (4), added pars. (6) to (8).

1990—Pub. L. 101–625 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: "The Congress finds that—

"(1) the Federal Government has a duty to provide public housing that is decent, safe, and free from illegal drugs;

"(2) public housing projects in many areas suffer from rampant drug-related crime;

"(3) drug dealers are increasingly imposing a reign of terror on public housing tenants;

"(4) the increase in drug-related crime not only leads to murders, muggings, and other forms of violence against tenants, but also to a deterioration of the physical environment that requires substantial government expenditures; and

"(5) local law enforcement authorities often lack the resources to deal with the drug problem in public housing, particularly in light of the recent reductions in Federal aid to cities."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by title V of Pub. L. 105–276 effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement amendment before such date, except to extent that such amendment provides otherwise, and with savings provision, see section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as a note under section 1437 of this title.

SHORT TITLE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §586(a), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2646, provided that: "This section [enacting sections 11906 to 11908 of this title, amending this section and sections 11902, 11903, 11904, and 11905 of this title, and repealing sections 11906 to 11909 of this title] may be cited as the 'Public and Assisted Housing Drug Elimination Program Amendments of 1998'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 103–227, title X, §1051, Mar. 31, 1994, 108 Stat. 274, provided that: "This part [part D (§§1051–1053) of title X of Pub. L. 103–227, amending section 11903a of this title] may be cited as the 'Midnight Basketball League Training and Partnership Act'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5121, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4301, as amended by Pub. L. 101–625, title V, §581(a), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4245, provided that: "This chapter [chapter 2 (§§5121–5130) of subtitle C of title V of Pub. L. 100–690, enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the 'Public and Assisted Housing Drug Elimination Act of 1990'."

Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5141, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4303, provided that: "This chapter [chapter 3 (§§5141–5146) of subtitle C of title V of Pub. L. 100–690, enacting subchapter II of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Drug-Free Public Housing Act of 1988'."

§11902. Authority to make grants

(a) In general

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, in accordance with the provisions of this subchapter, may make grants to public housing agencies, public housing resident management corporations that are principally managing, as determined by the Secretary, public housing projects owned by public housing agencies, recipients of assistance under the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 [25 U.S.C. 4101 et seq.], Indian tribes [1] and private, for-profit and nonprofit owners of federally assisted low-income housing for use in eliminating drug-related and violent crime.

(b) Consortia

Subject to terms and conditions established by the Secretary, public housing agencies may form consortia for purposes of applying for grants under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5123, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4301; Pub. L. 101–625, title V, §581(a), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4246; Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §161(d)(1), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3719; Pub. L. 104–330, title VII, §704(1), Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4051; Pub. L. 105–276, title II, §220(1), title V, §586(c), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2488, 2647.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 104–330, Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4016, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 43 (§4101 et seq.) of Title 25, Indians. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4101 of Title 25 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1998—Pub. L. 105–276, §586(c), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted heading, substituted "recipients of assistance under the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996" for "tribally designated housing entities", inserted "and violent" after "drug-related", and added subsec. (b).

Pub. L. 105–276, §220(1), inserted "Indian tribes" before "and private".

1996—Pub. L. 104–330 struck out "(including Indian Housing Authorities)" after "grants to public housing agencies" and inserted "tribally designated housing entities," before "and private".

1992—Pub. L. 102–550 inserted ", public housing resident management corporations that are principally managing, as determined by the Secretary, public housing projects owned by public housing agencies," after "Authorities)".

1990—Pub. L. 101–625 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: "The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, in accordance with the provisions of this subchapter, may make grants to public housing agencies (including Indian housing authorities) for use in eliminating drug-related crime in public housing projects."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by title V of Pub. L. 105–276 effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement amendment before such date, except to extent that such amendment provides otherwise, and with savings provision, see section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as a note under section 1437 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–330 effective Oct. 1, 1997, except as otherwise expressly provided, see section 107 of Pub. L. 104–330, set out as an Effective Date note under section 4101 of Title 25, Indians.

[1] So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.

§11903. Eligible activities

(a) Public and assisted housing

Grants under this subchapter may be used in public housing or other federally assisted low-income housing projects for—

(1) the employment of security personnel;

(2) reimbursement of local law enforcement agencies for additional security and protective services;

(3) physical improvements which are specifically designed to enhance security;

(4) the employment of one or more individuals—

(A) to investigate drug-related or violent crime in and around the real property comprising any public or other federally assisted low-income housing project; and

(B) to provide evidence relating to such crime in any administrative or judicial proceeding;

(5) the provision of training, communications equipment, and other related equipment for use by voluntary tenant patrols acting in cooperation with local law enforcement officials;

(6) programs designed to reduce use of drugs in and around public or other federally assisted low-income housing projects, including drug-abuse prevention, intervention, referral, and treatment programs;

(7) where a public housing agency, an Indian tribe, or recipient of assistance under the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 [25 U.S.C. 4101 et seq.] receives a grant, providing funding to nonprofit resident management corporations and resident councils to develop security and drug abuse prevention programs involving site residents; and

(8) sports programs and sports activities that serve primarily youths from public or other federally assisted low-income housing projects and are operated in conjunction with, or in furtherance of, an organized program or plan designed to reduce or eliminate drugs and drug-related problems in and around such projects.

(b) Other PHA-owned housing

Notwithstanding any other provision of this subchapter, grants under this subchapter may be used to eliminate drug-related crime in and around housing owned by public housing agencies that is not public housing assisted under the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437 et seq.] and is not otherwise federally assisted, for the activities described in paragraphs (1) through (7) of subsection (a), but only if—

(1) the housing is located in a high intensity drug trafficking area designated pursuant to section 1504 [1] of title 21; and

(2) the public housing agency owning the housing demonstrates, to the satisfaction of the Secretary, that drug-related or violent activity in or around the housing has a detrimental effect on or about the real property comprising any public or other federally assisted low-income housing.

(Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5124, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4301; Pub. L. 101–625, title V, §581(a), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4246; Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §161(c), (d)(2), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3718, 3719; Pub. L. 104–330, title VII, §704(2), Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4051; Pub. L. 105–276, title II, §220(2), title V, §586(d), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2488, 2647.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996, referred to in subsec. (a)(7), is Pub. L. 104–330, Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4016, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 43 (§4101 et seq.) of Title 25, Indians. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4101 of Title 25 and Tables.

The United States Housing Act of 1937, referred to in subsec. (b), is act Sept. 1, 1937, ch. 896, as revised generally by Pub. L. 93–383, title II, §201(a), Aug. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 653, and amended, which is classified generally to chapter 8 (§1437 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1437 of this title and Tables.

Section 1504 of title 21, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), was repealed by Pub. L. 100–690, title I, §1009, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4188, as amended.

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (a)(4)(A). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(d)(1)(A), substituted "drug-related or violent crime in and around" for "drug-related crime on or about".

Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(d)(1)(C)(i), substituted "recipient of assistance under the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996" for "tribally designated housing entity".

Pub. L. 105–276, §220(2), inserted ", an Indian tribe," after "public housing agency".

Subsec. (a)(8). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(d)(1)(B), (C)(ii), (8)[(D)], added par. (8).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(d)(2)(A), substituted "drug-related crime in and around" for "drug-related crime in" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(d)(2)(B), substituted "drug-related or violent activity in or around" for "drug-related activity at".

1996—Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 104–330 inserted "or tribally designated housing entity" after "public housing agency" and struck out "public housing" after "nonprofit".

1992—Pub. L. 102–550 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted heading, inserted "where a public housing agency receives a grant," in par. (7), and added subsec. (b).

1990—Pub. L. 101–625 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: "A public

housing agency may use a grant under this subchapter for—

"(1) the employment of security personnel in public housing projects;

"(2) reimbursement of local law enforcement agencies for additional security and protective services for public housing projects;

"(3) physical improvements in public housing projects which are specifically designed to enhance security;

"(4) the employment of 1 or more individuals—

"(A) to investigate drug-related crime on or about the real property comprising any public housing project; and

"(B) to provide evidence relating to any such crime in any administrative or judicial proceeding;

"(5) the provision of training, communications equipment, and other related equipment for use by voluntary public housing tenant patrols acting in cooperation with local law enforcement officials;

"(6) innovative programs designed to reduce use of drugs in and around public housing projects; and

"(7) providing funding to nonprofit public housing resident management corporation and tenant councils to develop security and drug abuse prevention programs involving site residents."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by title V of Pub. L. 105–276 effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement amendment before such date, except to extent that such amendment provides otherwise, and with savings provision, see section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as a note under section 1437 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–330 effective Oct. 1, 1997, except as otherwise expressly provided, see section 107 of Pub. L. 104–330, set out as an Effective Date note under section 4101 of Title 25, Indians.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§11903a. Repealed. Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §582(a)(13), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2644

Section, Pub. L. 101–625, title V, §520, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4202; Pub. L. 102–389, title II, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1587; Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §126(b), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3710; Pub. L. 103–227, title X, §§1052, 1053, Mar. 31, 1994, 108 Stat. 274, 280; Pub. L. 104–330, title V, §501(d)(2), Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4043, authorized grants for public and assisted housing youth sports programs.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement repeal before such date, and with savings provision, see section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as an Effective Date of 1998 Amendment note under section 1437 of this title.

§11904. Applications

(a) In general

To receive a grant under this subchapter, a public housing agency, a public housing resident management corporation, an Indian tribe [1] a recipient of assistance under the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 [25 U.S.C. 4101 et seq.], or an owner of federally assisted low-income housing shall submit an application to the Secretary, at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such additional information as the Secretary may reasonably require. Such application shall include a plan for addressing the problem of drug-related or violent crime in and around of [2] the housing administered or owned by the applicant for which the application is being submitted, which plan shall be coordinated with and may be included in the public housing agency plan submitted to the Secretary pursuant to section 1437c–1 of this title.

(b) One-year renewable grants

(1) In general

An eligible applicant that is a public housing agency may apply for a 1-year grant under this subchapter that, subject to the availability of appropriated amounts, shall be renewed annually for a period of not more than 4 additional years, except that such renewal shall be contingent upon the Secretary finding, upon an annual or more frequent review, that the grantee agency is performing under the terms of the grant and applicable laws in a satisfactory manner and meets such other requirements as the Secretary may prescribe. The Secretary may adjust the amount of any grant received or renewed under this paragraph to take into account increases or decreases in amounts appropriated for these purposes or such other factors as the Secretary determines to be appropriate.

(2) Eligibility and preference

The Secretary may not provide assistance under this subchapter to an applicant that is a public housing agency unless—

(A) the agency will use the grants to continue or expand activities eligible for assistance under this subchapter, as in effect immediately before the effective date under section 503(a) of the Quality Housing and Work Responsibility Act of 1998, in which case the Secretary shall provide preference to such applicant; except that preference under this subparagraph shall not preclude selection by the Secretary of other meritorious applications that address urgent or serious crime problems nor be construed to require continuation of activities determined by the Secretary to be unworthy of continuation; or

(B) the agency is in the class established under paragraph (3).

(3) PHAs having urgent or serious crime problems

The Secretary shall, by regulations issued after notice and opportunity for public comment, set forth criteria for establishing a class of public housing agencies that have urgent or serious crime problems. The Secretary may reserve a portion of the amount appropriated to carry out this subchapter in each fiscal year only for grants for public housing agencies in such class, except that any amounts from such portion reserved that are not obligated to agencies in the class shall be made available only for agencies that are subject to a preference under paragraph (2)(A).

(4) Inapplicability to federally assisted low-income housing

The provisions of this subsection shall not apply to federally assisted low-income housing.

(c) Criteria

The Secretary shall approve applications under subsection (b) that are not subject to a preference under subsection (b)(2)(A) on the basis of thresholds or criteria such as—

(1) the extent of the drug-related or violent crime problem in and around the public or federally assisted low-income housing project or projects proposed for assistance;

(2) the quality of the plan to address the crime problem in the public or federally assisted low-income housing project or projects proposed for assistance, including the extent to which the plan includes initiatives that can be sustained over a period of several years;

(3) the capability of the applicant to carry out the plan; and

(4) the extent to which tenants, the local government and the local community support and participate in the design and implementation of the activities proposed to be funded under the application.

(d) Federally assisted low-income housing

In addition to the selection criteria specified in subsection (c), the Secretary may establish other criteria for the evaluation of applications submitted by owners of federally assisted low-income housing, except that such additional criteria shall be designed only to reflect—

(1) relevant differences between the financial resources and other characteristics of public housing authorities and owners of federally assisted low-income housing, or

(2) relevant differences between the problem of drug-related or violent crime in public housing and the problem of drug-related or violent crime in federally assisted low-income housing.

(e) High intensity drug trafficking areas

In evaluating the extent of the drug-related crime problem pursuant to subsection (c), the Secretary may consider whether housing projects proposed for assistance are located in a high intensity drug trafficking area designated pursuant to section 1504 [3] of title 21.

(Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5125, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4302; Pub. L. 101–625, title V, §581(a), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4246; Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §161(d)(3), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3719; Pub. L. 104–330, title VII, §704(3), Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4051; Pub. L. 105–276, title II, §220(3), title V, §586(e), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2488, 2647.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 104–330, Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4016, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 43 (§4101 et seq.) of Title 25, Indians. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4101 of Title 25 and Tables.

Section 503(a) of the Quality Housing and Work Responsibility Act of 1998, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(A), is section 503(a) of Pub. L. 105–276, which is set out as an Effective Date of 1998 Amendment note under section 1437 of this title.

Section 1504 of title 21, referred to in subsec. (e), was repealed by Pub. L. 100–690, title I, §1009, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4188, as amended.

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(e)(1), substituted "recipient of assistance under the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996" for "tribally designated housing entity" in first sentence and "or violent crime in and around" for "crime on the premises" in second sentence, and inserted before period at end ", which plan shall be coordinated with and may be included in the public housing agency plan submitted to the Secretary pursuant to section 1437c–1 of this title".

Pub. L. 105–276, §220(3), inserted "an Indian tribe" after "resident management corporation,".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(e)(5), (6), added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c).

Pub. L. 105–276, §586(e)(2)(A), inserted introductory provisions and struck out former introductory provisions which read as follows: "Except as provided by subsections (c) and (d) of this section the Secretary shall approve applications under this subchapter based exclusively on—".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(e)(2)(B), substituted "or violent crime problem in and around" for "crime problem in".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(e)(5), redesignated subsec. (b) as (c). Former subsec. (c) redesignated (d).

Pub. L. 105–276, §586(e)(3)(A), substituted "subsection (c)" for "subsection (b)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(e)(3)(B), inserted "or violent" after "drug-related" in two places.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(e)(5), redesignated subsec. (c) as (d). Former subsec. (d) redesignated (e).

Pub. L. 105–276, §586(e)(4), substituted "subsection (c)" for "subsection (b)".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(e)(5), redesignated subsec. (d) as (e).

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–330 inserted "a tribally designated housing entity," after "resident management corporation,".

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102–550 inserted ", a public housing resident management corporation," after "public housing agency" in first sentence.

1990—Pub. L. 101–625 amended section generally, substituting present provisions for provisions relating generally to applications for grants under this subchapter and to criteria for approval of such applications.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by title V of Pub. L. 105–276 effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement amendment before such date, except to extent that such amendment provides otherwise, and with savings provision, see section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as a note under section 1437 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–330 effective Oct. 1, 1997, except as otherwise expressly provided, see section 107 of Pub. L. 104–330, set out as an Effective Date note under section 4101 of Title 25, Indians.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.*

[2] *So in original.*

[3] *See References in Text note below.*

§11905. Definitions

For the purposes of this subchapter:

(1) Controlled substance

The term "controlled substance" has the meaning given such term in section 802 of title 21.

(2) Drug-related crime

The term "drug-related crime" means the illegal manufacture, sale, distribution, use, or possession with intent to manufacture, sell, distribute, or use a controlled substance.

(3) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.

(4) Federally assisted low-income housing

The term "federally assisted low-income housing" means housing assisted under—

(A) section 1715l(d)(3), section 1715l(d)(4), or 1715z–1 of title 12;

(B) section 1701s of title 12; or

(C) section 1437f of this title.

(5) Recipient

The term "recipient", when used in reference to the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 [25 U.S.C. 4101 et seq.], has the meaning given such term in section 4 of such Act [25 U.S.C. 4103].

(6) Indian tribe

The term "Indian tribe" has the meaning given the term in section 4(12) [1] of the Native American Housing Assistance and Self Determination Act of 1996, 25 U.S.C. 4103(12).

(Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5126, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4302; Pub. L. 101–625, title V, §581(a), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4247; Pub. L. 104–330, title VII, §704(4), Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4051; Pub. L. 105–276, title II, §220(4), title V, §586(f), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2488, 2649; Pub. L. 106–74, title II, §227(a), as added Pub. L. 106–113, div. A, title I, §175(d), Nov. 29, 1999, 113 Stat. 1534.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996, referred to in par. (5), is Pub. L. 104–330, Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4016, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 43 (§4101 et seq.) of Title 25, Indians. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4101 of Title 25 and Tables.

Section 4(12) of the Native American Housing Assistance and Self Determination Act of 1996, referred to in par. (6), was redesignated section 4(13) by Pub. L. 110–411, §3(2), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4320.

AMENDMENTS

1999—Par. (4)(D). Pub. L. 106–74, §227(a), as added by Pub. L. 106–113, struck out subpar. (D) which read as follows: "the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act."

1998—Par. (5). Pub. L. 105–276, §586(f), added par. (5) and struck out heading and text of former par. (5). Text read as follows: "The term 'tribally designated housing entity' has the meaning given such term in section 4 of the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996."

Par. (6). Pub. L. 105–276, §220(4), added par. (6).

1996—Par. (4)(D). Pub. L. 104–330, §704(4)(A), added subpar. (D).

Par. (5). Pub. L. 104–330, §704(4)(B), added par. (5).

1990—Pub. L. 101–625 amended section generally, adding provisions defining "Federally assisted low-income housing".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1999 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 106–74, title II, §227(b), as added by Pub. L. 106–113, div. A, title I, §175(d), Nov. 29, 1999, 113 Stat. 1534, provided that: "The amendments made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall be construed to have taken effect on October 21, 1998."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by title V of Pub. L. 105–276 effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement amendment before such date, except to extent that such amendment provides otherwise, and with savings provision, see section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as a note under section 1437 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–330 effective Oct. 1, 1997, except as otherwise expressly provided, see section 107 of Pub. L. 104–330, set out as an Effective Date note under section 4101 of Title 25, Indians.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§11906. Reports

(a) Grantee reports

The Secretary shall require grantees under this subchapter to provide periodic reports that include the obligation and expenditure of grant funds, the progress made by the grantee in implementing the plan described in section 11904(a) of this title, and any change in the incidence of drug-related crime in projects assisted under this subchapter.

(b) HUD reports

The Secretary shall submit a report to the Congress not later than 18 months after October 21, 1998, describing the system used to distribute funding to grantees under this section, which shall include descriptions of—

(1) the methodology used to distribute amounts made available under this subchapter among public housing agencies, including provisions used to provide for renewals of ongoing programs funded under this subchapter; and

(2) actions taken by the Secretary to ensure that amounts made available under this subchapter are not used to fund baseline local government services, as described in section 11907(b) of this title.

(c) Notice of funding awards

The Secretary shall cause to be published in the Federal Register notice of all grant awards made pursuant to this subchapter, which shall identify the grantees and the amount of the grants. Such notice shall be published not less frequently than annually.

(Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5127, as added Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §586(g), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2649.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 11906, Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5127, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4303; Pub. L. 101–625, title V, §581(a), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4248, related to implementation of this subchapter, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §§503, 586(g), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2521, 2649, effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement the repeal before such date, except to extent otherwise provided, and with savings provision.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision

that Secretary may implement section before such date, except to extent otherwise provided, see section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as an Effective Date of 1998 Amendment note under section 1437 of this title.

§11907. Monitoring

(a) In general

The Secretary shall audit and monitor the programs funded under this subchapter to ensure that assistance provided under this subchapter is administered in accordance with the provisions of this subchapter.

(b) Prohibition of funding baseline services

(1) In general

Amounts provided under this subchapter may not be used to reimburse or support any local law enforcement agency or unit of general local government for the provision of services that are included in the baseline of services required to be provided by any such entity pursuant to a local cooperation agreement under section 1437c(e)(2) of this title or any provision of an annual contributions contract for payments in lieu of taxation pursuant to section 1437d(d) of this title.

(2) Description

Each public housing agency that receives grant amounts under this subchapter shall describe, in the report under section 11906(a) of this title, such baseline of services for the unit of general local government in which the jurisdiction of the agency is located.

(c) Enforcement

The Secretary shall provide for the effective enforcement of this section, which may include the use of on-site monitoring, independent public audit requirements, certification by local law enforcement or local government officials regarding the performance of baseline services referred to in subsection (b), and entering into agreements with the Attorney General to achieve compliance, and verification of compliance, with the provisions of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5128, as added Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §586(g), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2649.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 11907, Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5128, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4303; Pub. L. 101–625, title V, §581(a), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4248, related to provision of periodic reports by grantees, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §§503, 586(g), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2521, 2649, effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement the repeal before such date, except to extent otherwise provided, and with savings provision.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement section before such date, except to extent otherwise provided, see section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as an Effective Date of 1998 Amendment note under section 1437 of this title.

REVIEW OF DRUG ELIMINATION PROGRAM CONTRACTS

Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §587, Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2650, provided that:

"(a) REQUIREMENT.—The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall investigate all security contracts awarded by grantees under the Public and Assisted Housing Drug Elimination Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 11901 et seq.) that are public housing agencies that own or operate more than 4,500 public housing dwelling units—

"(1) to determine whether the contractors under such contracts have complied with all laws and regulations regarding prohibition of discrimination in hiring practices;

"(2) to determine whether such contracts were awarded in accordance with the applicable laws and regulations regarding the award of such contracts;

"(3) to determine how many such contracts were awarded under emergency contracting procedures; and

"(4) to evaluate the effectiveness of the contracts.

"(b) REPORT.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 21, 1998], the Secretary shall complete the investigation required under subsection (a) and submit a report to the Congress regarding the findings under the investigation. With respect to each such contract, the report shall (1) state whether the contract was made and is operating, or was not made or is not operating, in full compliance with applicable laws and regulations, and (2) for each contract that the Secretary determines is in such compliance issue a certification of such compliance by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.

"(c) ACTIONS.—For each contract that is described in the report under subsection (b) as not made or not operating in full compliance with applicable laws and regulations, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall promptly take any actions available under law or regulation that are necessary—

"(1) to bring such contract into compliance; or

"(2) to terminate the contract.

"(d) EFFECTIVE DATE.—This section shall take effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 21, 1998]."

§11908. Authorization of appropriations

(a) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subchapter $310,000,000 for fiscal year 1999, and such sums as may be necessary for fiscal years 2000, 2001, 2002, and 2003.

(b) Set-aside for federally assisted low-income housing

Of any amounts made available in any fiscal year to carry out this subchapter not more than 6.25 percent shall be available for grants for federally assisted low-income housing.

(c) Set-aside for technical assistance and program oversight

Of any amounts appropriated in any fiscal year to carry out this subchapter, amounts shall be available to the extent provided in appropriations Acts to provide training, technical assistance, contract expertise, program oversight, program assessment, execution, and other assistance for or on behalf of public housing agencies, recipients of assistance under the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 [25 U.S.C. 4101 et seq.], resident organizations, and officials and employees of the Department (including training and the cost of necessary travel for participants in such training, by or to officials and employees of the Department and of public housing agencies, and to residents and to other eligible grantees). Assistance and other activities carried out using amounts made available under this subsection may be provided directly or indirectly by grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements.

(Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5129, as added Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §586(g), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2650.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 104–330, Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4016, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 43 (§4101 et seq.) of Title 25, Indians. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4101 of Title 25 and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 11908, Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5129, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4303; Pub. L. 101–625, title V, §§520(k), 581(a), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4205, 4248, related to auditing and monitoring of programs funded under this subchapter, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §§503, 586(g), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2521, 2649, effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement the repeal before such date, except to extent otherwise provided, and with savings provision.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement section before such date, except to extent otherwise provided, see section 503

of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as an Effective Date of 1998 Amendment note under section 1437 of this title.

§11909. Repealed. Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §586(g), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2649

A prior section 11909, Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5130, as added Pub. L. 101–625, title V, §581(a), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4248; amended Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §§126(a), 161(a), (b), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3710, 3718, authorized appropriations to carry out this subchapter.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement the repeal before such date, and with savings provision, see section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as an Effective Date of 1998 Amendment note under section 1437 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER II—DRUG-FREE PUBLIC HOUSING

§11921. Statement of purpose

The purpose of this subchapter is to reaffirm the principle that decent affordable shelter is a basic necessity, and the general welfare of the Nation and the health and living standards of its people require better coordination and training in drug prevention programs among the public officials and agencies responsible for administering the public housing programs of the Nation.

(Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5142, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4303.)

§11922. Clearinghouse on drug abuse in public housing

(a) Establishment

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall establish, in the Office of Public Housing in the Department of Housing and Urban Development, a clearinghouse to receive, collect, process, and assemble information regarding the abuse of controlled substances in public housing projects.

(b) Functions

The clearinghouse established under subsection (a) shall—

(1) respond to inquiries by members of the public requesting assistance in investigating, studying, and working on the problem of the abuse of controlled substances; and

(2) receive, collect, process, assemble, and provide information on programs, authorities, institutions, and agencies, that may further assist members of the public requesting information from the clearinghouse.

(Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5143, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4303.)

§11923. Regional training program on drug abuse in public housing

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a regional training program for the training of public housing officials, to better prepare and educate the officials to confront the widespread abuse of controlled substances in the communities in which the officials work.

(b) Operation

The regional training program established under subsection (a) shall be conducted within 12 months after November 18, 1988, by a national training unit established by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5144, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4303.)

§11924. Definitions

For purposes of this subchapter:

(1) Controlled substance

The term "controlled substance" has the meaning given such term in section 802 of title 21.

(2) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.

(Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5145, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4304.)

§11925. Regulations

Not later than 6 months after November 18, 1988, the Secretary shall issue any regulations necessary to carry out this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 100–690, title V, §5146, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4304.)

CHAPTER 125—RENEWABLE ENERGY AND ENERGY EFFICIENCY TECHNOLOGY COMPETITIVENESS

Sec.

§12001. Finding, purpose, and general authority

(a) Finding

The Congress finds that it is in the national security and economic interest of the United States to foster greater efficiency in the use of available energy supplies and greater use of renewable energy technologies.

(b) Purpose

It is the purpose of this chapter to authorize the Secretary of Energy, acting in accordance with section 13541 of this title, to pursue an aggressive national program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of renewable energy and energy efficiency technologies in order to ensure a stable and secure future energy supply by—

(1) achieving as soon as practicable cost competitive use of those technologies without need of Federal financial incentives;

(2) establishing long-term Federal research goals and multiyear funding levels;

(3) directing the Secretary to undertake initiatives to improve the ability of the private sector to commercialize in the near term renewable energy and energy efficiency technologies; and

(4) fostering collaborative efforts involving the private sector through government support of a program of demonstration and commercial application projects.

(c) General authority

The Secretary, acting in accordance with section 13541 of this title, is authorized and directed to—

(1) pursue a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application with the private sector, to achieve the purpose of this chapter, including the goals established under section 12003 of this title; and

(2) undertake demonstration and commercial application projects as provided in section 12005 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–218, §2, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1859; Pub. L. 102–486, title XII, §1202(d)(1)–(3), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2959, 2960.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (c)(1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–218, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1859, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note below and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102–486, §1202(d)(1), substituted "section 13541 of this title" for "authority contained in the Federal Nonnuclear Energy Research and Development Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5901–5920) and other law applicable to the Secretary" and "demonstration, and commercial application" for "and demonstration".

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 102–486, §1202(d)(2), substituted "efforts" for "research and development efforts" and "demonstration and commercial application projects" for "joint ventures".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 102–486, §1202(d)(3), substituted "section 13541 of this title, is authorized and directed to—" and pars. (1) and (2) for "the authority contained in the Federal Nonnuclear Energy Research and Development Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5901–5920) and other law applicable to the Secretary—

"(1) is authorized and directed to—

"(A) pursue a program of research, development, and demonstration, including the use of joint ventures with the private sector, to achieve the purpose of this chapter, including the goals established under section 12003 of this title; and

"(B) undertake joint ventures as provided in section 12005 of this title; and

"(2) is authorized to undertake, from time to time, joint ventures in technology areas other than those set forth in section 12005(c) of this title, subject to the conditions set forth in section 12005(b) of this title."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 101–218, §1, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1859, provided: "That this Act [enacting this chapter and amending sections 6276 and 8243 of this title, section 2857 of Title 10, Armed Forces, and section 2194 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse] may be referred to as the 'Renewable Energy and Energy Efficiency Technology Competitiveness Act of 1989'."

§12002. Definitions

As used in this chapter—

(1) the term "invention" means an invention or discovery that is patented or for which a patent may be obtained under title 35, or any novel variety of plant that is protected or for which plant variety protection may be obtained under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 et seq.) and that is conceived or reduced to practice as a result of work under an agreement entered into under this chapter;

(2) the term "non-Federal person" means an entity located in the United States, the controlling interest (as defined by the Secretary) of which is held by persons of the United States, including—

(A) a for-profit business;

(B) a private foundation;

(C) a nonprofit organization such as a university;

(D) a trade or professional society; and

(E) a unit of State or local government;

(3) the term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Energy;

(4) the term "small business", with respect to a participant in any demonstration and commercial application project under this chapter, means a private firm that does not exceed the numerical size standard promulgated by the Small Business Administration under section 632(a) of title 15 for the Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) code designated by the Secretary of Energy as the primary business activity to be undertaken in the demonstration and commercial application project;

(5) the term "source reduction" means any practice which—

(A) reduces the amount of any hazardous substance, pollutant, or contaminant entering any waste stream or otherwise released into the environment, including fugitive emissions, prior to recycling, treatment, or disposal; and

(B) reduces the hazards to the public health and the environment associated with the release of such substances, pollutants, or contaminants,

including equipment or technology modifications, process or procedure modifications, reformulation or redesign of products, substitution of raw materials, and improvements in housekeeping, maintenance, training, and inventory control, but not including any practice which alters the physical, chemical, or biological characteristics or the volume of a hazardous substance, pollutant, or contaminant through a process or activity which itself is not integral to and necessary for the production of a product or the providing of a service; [1]

(6) the term "United States" means the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and any other Commonwealth, territory, or possession of the United States.

(Pub. L. 101–218, §3, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1859; Pub. L. 102–486, title XII, §1202(d)(4), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2960.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in introductory provisions and pars. (1) and (4), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–218, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1859, known as the Renewable Energy and Energy Efficiency Technology Competitiveness Act of 1989, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12001 of this title and Tables.

The Plant Variety Protection Act, referred to in par. (1), is Pub. L. 91–577, Dec. 24, 1970, 84 Stat. 1542, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 57 (§2321 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2321 of Title 7 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pars. (2) to (5). Pub. L. 102–486 redesignated pars. (3) to (5) as (2) to (4), respectively, in par. (4) substituted "any demonstration and commercial application project" for "any joint venture" and "in the demonstration and commercial application project;" for "in the venture; and", added par. (5), and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: " 'joint venture' means any agreement entered into under this chapter by the Secretary with more than one or a consortium of non-Federal persons (including a joint venture under the National Cooperative Research Act of 1984 (15 U.S.C. 4301 et seq.)) for cost-shared research, development, or demonstration of technologies, but does not include procurement contracts, grant agreements, or cooperative agreements as those terms are used in sections 6303, 6304, and 6305 of title 31;".

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "; and".*

§12003. National goals and multi-year funding for Federal wind, photovoltaics, and solar thermal programs

(a) National goals

The following are declared to be the national goals for the wind, photovoltaics, and solar thermal energy programs being carried out by the Secretary:

(1) Wind

(A) In general, the goals for the Wind Energy Research Program include improving design methodologies and developing more reliable and efficient wind turbines to increase the cost competitiveness of wind energy. Research efforts shall emphasize—

(i) activities that address near-term technical problems and assist private sector exploitation of market opportunities of the wind energy industry;

(ii) developing technologies such as advanced airfoils and variable speed generators to increase wind turbine output and reduce maintenance costs by decreasing structural stress and fatigue;

(iii) increasing the basic knowledge of aerodynamics, structural dynamics, fatigue, and electrical systems interactions as applied to wind energy technology; and

(iv) improving the compatibility of electricity produced from wind farms with conventional utility needs.

(B) Specific goals for the Wind Energy Research Program shall be to—

(i) reduce average wind energy costs to 3 to 5 cents per kilowatt hour by 1995;

(ii) reduce capital costs of new wind energy systems to $500 to $750 per kilowatt of installed capacity by 1995;

(iii) reduce operation and maintenance costs for wind energy systems to less than one cent per kilowatt hour by 1995; and

(iv) increase capacity factors for new wind energy systems to 25 to 35 percent by 1995.

(2) Photovoltaics

(A) In general, the goals of the Photovoltaic Energy Systems Program shall include improving the reliability and conversion efficiencies of and lowering the costs of photovoltaic conversion. Research efforts shall emphasize advancements in the performance, stability, and durability of photovoltaic materials.

(B) Specific goals of the Photovoltaic Energy Systems Program shall be to—

(i) improve operational reliability of photovoltaic modules to 30 years by 1995;

(ii) increase photovoltaic conversion efficiencies by 20 percent by 1995;

(iii) decrease new photovoltaic module direct manufacturing costs to $800 per kilowatt by 1995; and

(iv) increase cost efficiency of photovoltaic power production to 10 cents per kilowatt hour by 1995.

(3) Solar thermal

(A) In general, the goal of the Solar Thermal Energy Systems Program shall be to advance research and development to a point where solar thermal technology is cost-competitive with conventional energy sources, and to promote the integration of this technology into the production of industrial process heat and the conventional utility network. Research and development shall emphasize development of a thermal storage technology to provide capacity for shifting power to periods of demand when full insolation is not available; improvement in receivers, energy conversion devices, and innovative concentrators using stretch membranes, lenses, and other materials; and exploration of advanced manufacturing techniques.

(B) Specific goals of the Solar Thermal Energy Systems Program shall be to—

(i) reduce solar thermal costs for industrial process heat to $9.00 per million Btu by 1995; and

(ii) reduce average solar thermal costs for electricity to 4 to 5 cents per kilowatt hour by 1995.

(4) Alcohol from biomass

(A) In general, the goal of the Alcohol From Biomass Program shall be to advance research and development to a point where alcohol from biomass technology is cost-competitive with

conventional hydrocarbon transportation fuels, and to promote the integration of this technology into the transportation fuel sector of the economy.

(B)(i) Specific goals for producing ethanol from biomass shall be to—

(I) reduce the cost of alcohol to 70 cents per gallon;

(II) improve the overall biomass carbohydrate conversion efficiency to 91 percent;

(III) reduce the capital cost component of the cost of alcohol to 23 cents per gallon; and

(IV) reduce the operating and maintenance component of the cost of alcohol to 47 cents per gallon.

(ii) Specific goals for producing methanol from biomass shall be to—

(I) reduce the cost of alcohol to 47 cents per gallon; and

(II) reduce the capital component of the cost of alcohol to 16 cents per gallon.

(5) Other technologies

The Secretary shall submit to the Congress, as part of the first report submitted under section 12006 of this title, recommendations for specific cost goals and other pertinent goals for 1995 for Department of Energy research, development, and demonstration programs in Biofuels Energy Systems, Biodiesel Energy Systems, Hydrogen Energy Systems, Solar Buildings Energy Systems, Ocean Energy Systems, Geothermal Energy Systems, Low-Head Hydro, and Energy Storage Systems.

(b) Amended goals

Whenever the Secretary determines that any of the goals established under this section is no longer appropriate, the Secretary shall notify Congress, as part of a report submitted under section 12006 of this title, of the reason for the determination and provide an amended goal that is consistent with the purpose stated in section 12001(b) of this title.

(c) Authorizations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for the following renewable energy research, development, and demonstration programs: the Wind Energy Research Program, the Photovoltaic Energy Systems Program, the Solar Thermal Energy Systems Program, the Biofuels Energy Systems Program, the Hydrogen Energy Systems Program, the Solar Buildings Energy Systems Program, the Ocean Energy Systems Program, and the Geothermal Energy Systems Program—

(1) not to exceed $113,000,000 for fiscal year 1991, of which—

(A) not to exceed $39,000,000 shall be available for the Photovoltaic Energy Systems Program;

(B) not to exceed $19,000,000 shall be available for the Geothermal Energy Systems Program; and

(C) not to exceed $4,000,000 shall be available for the Hydrogen Energy Systems Program; and

(2) not to exceed $121,000,000 for fiscal year 1992, of which—

(A) not to exceed $40,000,000 shall be available for the Photovoltaic Energy Systems Program;

(B) not to exceed $20,500,000 shall be available for the Geothermal Energy Systems Program; and

(C) not to exceed $5,000,000 shall be available for the Hydrogen Energy Systems Program.

Each of the President's annual budget requests submitted to Congress after December 11, 1989, shall include as separate line items each of the categories of renewable energy programs described in this subsection.

(Pub. L. 101–218, §4, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1860; Pub. L. 102–486, title XII, §1202(b), title XXI, §2125(1)–(3), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2958, 3085.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a)(4), (5). Pub. L. 102–486, §1202(b)(1), added par. (4), redesignated former par. (4) as (5), and inserted "Biodiesel Energy Systems," after "Biofuels Energy Systems,".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 102–486, §2125(1)–(3), struck out par. (3) which read as follows: "not to exceed $124,000,000 for fiscal year 1993, of which—

"(A) not to exceed $40,000,000 shall be available for the Photovoltaic Energy Systems Program;

"(B) not to exceed $23,000,000 shall be available for the Geothermal Energy Systems Program; and

"(C) not to exceed $6,000,000 shall be available for the Hydrogen Energy Systems Program."

§12004. Energy efficiency authorizations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for the following energy efficiency research, development, and demonstration programs: transportation, industrial, buildings and community systems, multi-sector, and policy and management—

(1) not to exceed $201,100,000 for fiscal year 1991, of which—

(A) not to exceed $68,300,000 shall be available for the transportation program; and

(B) not to exceed $53,500,000 shall be available for the industrial program; and

(2) not to exceed $210,600,000 for fiscal year 1992, of which—

(A) not to exceed $71,000,000 shall be available for the transportation program; and

(B) not to exceed $54,700,000 shall be available for the industrial program.

(Pub. L. 101–218, §5, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1862; Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2125(4)–(6), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3085.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Par. (3). Pub. L. 102–486 struck out par. (3) which read as follows: "not to exceed $225,000,000 for fiscal year 1993, of which—

"(A) not to exceed $73,900,000 shall be available for the transportation program; and

"(B) not to exceed $56,900,000 shall be available for the industrial program."

§12005. Demonstration and commercial application projects

(a) Purpose

The purpose of this section is to direct the Secretary to further the commercialization of renewable energy and energy efficiency technologies through a five-year program.

(b) Demonstration and commercial application projects

(1) Establishment

(A) The Secretary shall solicit proposals for demonstration and commercial application projects for renewable energy and energy efficiency technologies pursuant to subsection (c). Such projects may include projects for—

(i) the production and sale of electricity, thermal energy, or other forms of energy using a renewable energy technology;

(ii) increasing the efficiency of energy use; and

(iii) improvements in, or expansion of, facilities for the manufacture of renewable energy or energy efficiency technologies.

(B) REQUIREMENTS.—Each project selected under this section shall include at least one for-profit business. Activities supported under this section shall be performed in the United States. Each project under this section shall require the manufacture and reproduction substantially within the United States for commercial sale of any invention or product that may result from the project.

(2) Forms of financial assistance

(A) In supporting projects selected under subsection (c), the Secretary may choose from among the forms of agreements described in section 13541 of this title.

(B) In supporting projects selected under subsection (c), the Secretary may also enter into agreements with private lenders to pay a portion of the interest on loans made for such projects.

(3) Cost sharing

Cost sharing for projects under this section shall be conducted according to the procedures described in section 13542(b) and (c) of this title.

(4) Advisory Committee

(A) The Secretary shall establish an Advisory Committee on Demonstration and Commercial Application of Renewable Energy and Energy Efficiency Technologies (in this chapter referred to as the "Advisory Committee") to advise the Secretary on the development of the solicitation and evaluation criteria for projects under this section, and on otherwise carrying out his responsibilities under this section. The Secretary shall appoint members to the Advisory Committee, including at least one member representing—

(i) the Secretary of Commerce;
(ii) the National Laboratories of the Department of Energy;
(iii) the Solar Energy Research Institute;
(iv) the Electric Power Research Institute;
(v) the Gas Research Institute;
(vi) the National Institute of Building Sciences;
(vii) the National Institute of Standards and Technology;
(viii) associations of firms in the major renewable energy manufacturing industries; and
(ix) associations of firms in the major energy efficiency manufacturing industries.

Nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed to require the Secretary to reestablish the Advisory Committee in place under this subsection as of October 24, 1992, or to perform again any duties performed by such advisory committee before October 24, 1992.

(B) Not later than 18 months after October 24, 1992, the Advisory Committee shall provide the Secretary with a report assessing the implementation of the program under this section, including specific recommendations for improvements or changes to the program and solicitation process. The Secretary shall transmit such report and, if any, the Secretary's recommendations to the Congress.

(c) Selection of projects

(1) Solicitation

(A) Not later than 9 months after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for projects under this section. The Secretary may make additional solicitations for proposals if the Secretary determines that such solicitations are necessary to carry out this section.

(B) A solicitation for proposals under this paragraph shall establish a closing date for receipt of proposals. The Secretary may, if necessary, extend the closing date for receipt of proposals for a period not to exceed 90 days.

(C) Each solicitation under this paragraph shall include a description of the criteria, developed by the Secretary, according to which proposals will be evaluated. In developing such criteria, the Secretary shall consider—

(i) the need for Federal involvement to commercialize the technology or speed commercialization of the technology;
(ii) the potential for the technology to have significant market penetration;
(iii) the potential energy efficiency gains or energy supply contributions of the technology;
(iv) potential environmental improvements associated with the technology;
(v) the export potential of the technology;
(vi) the likelihood that the proposal is technically sufficient to achieve the objective of the solicitation;

(vii) the degree to which non-Federal financial participation is involved in the proposal;
(viii) the business and financial history of the proposer or proposers; and
(ix) any other factor the Secretary considers appropriate.

(2) Project technologies

Projects under this section may include the following technologies:
(A) Conversion of cellulosic biomass to liquid fuels.
(B) Ethanol and ethanol byproduct processes.
(C) Direct combustion or gasification of biomass.
(D) Biofuels energy systems.
(E) Photovoltaics, including utility scale and remote applications.
(F) Solar thermal, including solar water heating.
(G) Wind energy.
(H) High temperature and low temperature geothermal energy.
(I) Fuel cells, including transportation and stationary applications.
(J) Nondefense high-temperature superconducting electricity technology.
(K) Source reduction technology.
(L) Factory-made housing.
(M) Advanced district cooling.

(3) Project selection

The Secretary shall, within 120 days after the closing date established under paragraph (1)(B), select proposals to receive financial assistance under this section. In selecting proposals under this paragraph, the Secretary shall—

(A) consider each proposal's ability to meet the criteria developed pursuant to paragraph (1)(C); and

(B) attempt to achieve technological and geographic diversity.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section $50,000,000 for fiscal year 1994.

(Pub. L. 101–218, §6, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1863; Pub. L. 102–486, title XII, §1202(a), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2956.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(4)(A), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–218, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1859, known as the Renewable Energy and Energy Efficiency Technology Competitiveness Act of 1989, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12001 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102–486 amended section generally, substituting provisions relating to demonstration and commercial application projects for renewable energy and energy efficiency technologies for provisions relating to use of joint ventures to further commercialization of renewable energy and energy efficiency technologies.

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES

Advisory committees established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless, in the case of a committee established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee established by Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See sections 3(2) and 14 of Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§12006. Reports

(a) Report by Secretary

One year after December 11, 1989, and annually thereafter, the Secretary shall report to Congress on the programs and projects supported under this chapter and the progress being made toward accomplishing the goals and purposes set forth in this chapter.

(b) National renewable energy and energy efficiency management plan

(1) The Secretary, in consultation with the Advisory Committee, shall prepare a three-year management plan to be administered and carried out by the Secretary in the conduct of activities under this chapter.

(2) After opportunity for public comment and consideration, as appropriate, of such comment, the Secretary shall publish the plan.

(3) In addition to describing the Secretary's intentions for administering this chapter, the plan shall include a comprehensive strategy for assisting the private sector—

(A) in commercializing the renewable energy and energy efficiency technologies developed under this chapter; and

(B) in meeting competition from foreign suppliers of products derived from renewable energy and energy efficiency technologies.

(4) The plan shall address the role of federally-assisted research, development, and demonstration in the achievement of applicable national policy goals of the National Energy Policy Plan required under section 7321 of this title and the plan developed under section 5905 of this title.

(5) In addition, the Plan [1] shall—

(A) contain a detailed assessment of program needs, objectives, and priorities for each of the programs authorized under section 12005 of this title;

(B) use a uniform prioritization methodology to facilitate cost-benefit analyses of proposals in various program areas;

(C) establish milestones for setting forth specific technology transfer activities under each program area;

(D) include annual and five-year cost estimates for individual programs under this chapter; and

(E) identify program areas for which funding levels have been changed from the previous year's Plan.[1]

(6) Within one year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit a revised management plan under this section to Congress. Thereafter, the Secretary shall submit a management plan every three years at the time of submittal of the President's annual budget submission to the Congress.

(c) Report on options

As part of the first report submitted under subsection (a), the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report analyzing options available to the Secretary under existing law to assist the private sector with the timely commercialization of wind, photovoltaic, solar thermal, biofuels, hydrogen, solar buildings, ocean, geothermal, low-head hydro, and energy storage renewable energy technologies and energy efficiency technologies through emphasis on development and demonstration assistance to specific technologies in the research, development, and demonstration programs of the Department of Energy that are near commercial application.

(Pub. L. 101–218, §9, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1868; Pub. L. 102–486, title XII, §1202(c), (d)(5), title XXIII, §2303(b), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2959, 2960, 3093.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b)(1), (3), (5)(D), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–218, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1859, known as the Renewable Energy and Energy Efficiency Technology Competitiveness Act of 1989, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12001 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102–486, §1202(d)(5), substituted "and projects" for ", projects, and joint ventures".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 102–486, §1202(c)(1), inserted "three-year" before "management plan".

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 102–486, §2303(b), inserted before period at end "and the plan developed under section 5905 of this title".

Subsec. (b)(5), (6). Pub. L. 102–486, §1202(c)(2), added pars. (5) and (6) and struck out former par. (5) which read as follows: "The plan shall accompany the President's annual budget submission to the Congress."

TERMINATION OF REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

For termination, effective May 15, 2000, of provisions of law requiring submittal to Congress of any annual, semiannual, or other regular periodic report listed in House Document No. 103–7 (in which reports required under subsecs. (a) and (b) of this section are listed as the 20th item on page 84 and the 19th item on page 86), see section 3003 of Pub. L. 104–66, as amended, set out as a note under section 1113 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

[1] So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.

§12007. No antitrust immunity or defenses

Nothing in this chapter shall be deemed to convey to any person, partnership, corporation, or other entity immunity from civil or criminal liability under any antitrust law or to create defenses to actions under any antitrust law. As used in this section, "antitrust laws" means those Acts set forth in section 12 of title 15.

(Pub. L. 101–218, §10, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1869.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–218, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1859, known as the Renewable Energy and Energy Efficiency Technology Competitiveness Act of 1989, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12001 of this title and Tables.

CHAPTER 126—EQUAL OPPORTUNITY FOR INDIVIDUALS WITH DISABILITIES

Sec.

§12101. Findings and purpose

(a) Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) physical or mental disabilities in no way diminish a person's right to fully participate in all aspects of society, yet many people with physical or mental disabilities have been precluded from doing so because of discrimination; others who have a record of a disability or are regarded as having a disability also have been subjected to discrimination;

(2) historically, society has tended to isolate and segregate individuals with disabilities, and, despite some improvements, such forms of discrimination against individuals with disabilities continue to be a serious and pervasive social problem;

(3) discrimination against individuals with disabilities persists in such critical areas as employment, housing, public accommodations, education, transportation, communication, recreation, institutionalization, health services, voting, and access to public services;

(4) unlike individuals who have experienced discrimination on the basis of race, color, sex, national origin, religion, or age, individuals who have experienced discrimination on the basis of disability have often had no legal recourse to redress such discrimination;

(5) individuals with disabilities continually encounter various forms of discrimination, including outright intentional exclusion, the discriminatory effects of architectural, transportation, and communication barriers, overprotective rules and policies, failure to make modifications to existing facilities and practices, exclusionary qualification standards and criteria, segregation, and relegation to lesser services, programs, activities, benefits, jobs, or other opportunities;

(6) census data, national polls, and other studies have documented that people with disabilities, as a group, occupy an inferior status in our society, and are severely disadvantaged socially, vocationally, economically, and educationally;

(7) the Nation's proper goals regarding individuals with disabilities are to assure equality of opportunity, full participation, independent living, and economic self-sufficiency for such individuals; and

(8) the continuing existence of unfair and unnecessary discrimination and prejudice denies people with disabilities the opportunity to compete on an equal basis and to pursue those opportunities for which our free society is justifiably famous, and costs the United States billions of dollars in unnecessary expenses resulting from dependency and nonproductivity.

(b) Purpose

It is the purpose of this chapter—

(1) to provide a clear and comprehensive national mandate for the elimination of discrimination against individuals with disabilities;

(2) to provide clear, strong, consistent, enforceable standards addressing discrimination against individuals with disabilities;

(3) to ensure that the Federal Government plays a central role in enforcing the standards established in this chapter on behalf of individuals with disabilities; and

(4) to invoke the sweep of congressional authority, including the power to enforce the fourteenth amendment and to regulate commerce, in order to address the major areas of discrimination faced day-to-day by people with disabilities.

(Pub. L. 101–336, §2, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 328; Pub. L. 110–325, §3, Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3554.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 110–325, §3(1), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) read as follows: "some 43,000,000 Americans have one or more physical or mental disabilities, and this number is increasing as the population as a whole is growing older;".

Subsec. (a)(7) to (9). Pub. L. 110–325, §3(2), (3), redesignated pars. (8) and (9) as (7) and (8), respectively, and struck out former par. (7) which read as follows: "individuals with disabilities are a discrete and insular minority who have been faced with restrictions and limitations, subjected to a history of purposeful unequal treatment, and relegated to a position of political powerlessness in our society, based on characteristics that are beyond the control of such individuals and resulting from stereotypic assumptions not truly indicative of the individual ability of such individuals to participate in, and contribute to, society;".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–325 effective Jan. 1, 2009, see section 8 of Pub. L. 110–325, set out as a note under section 705 of Title 29, Labor.

SHORT TITLE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 110–325, §1, Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3553, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 12103 and 12205a of this title, amending this section, sections 12102, 12111 to 12114, 12201, and 12206 to 12213 of this title, section 705 and former section 706 of Title 29, Labor, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 705 of Title 29] may be cited as the 'ADA Amendments Act of 2008'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 101–336, §1(a), July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter and section 225 of Title 47, Telecommunications, amending section 706 of Title 29, Labor, and sections 152, 221, and 611 of Title 47, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 12111, 12131, 12141, 12161, and 12181 of this title] may be cited as the 'Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990'."

FINDINGS AND PURPOSES OF PUB. L. 110–325

Pub. L. 110–325, §2, Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3553, provided that:

"(a) FINDINGS.—Congress finds that—

"(1) in enacting the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) [42 U.S.C. 12101 et seq.], Congress intended that the Act 'provide a clear and comprehensive national mandate for the elimination of discrimination against individuals with disabilities' and provide broad coverage;

"(2) in enacting the ADA, Congress recognized that physical and mental disabilities in no way diminish a person's right to fully participate in all aspects of society, but that people with physical or mental disabilities are frequently precluded from doing so because of prejudice, antiquated attitudes, or the failure to remove societal and institutional barriers;

"(3) while Congress expected that the definition of disability under the ADA would be interpreted consistently with how courts had applied the definition of a handicapped individual under the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 [29 U.S.C. 701 et seq.], that expectation has not been fulfilled;

"(4) the holdings of the Supreme Court in Sutton v. United Air Lines, Inc., 527 U.S. 471 (1999) and its companion cases have narrowed the broad scope of protection intended to be afforded by the ADA, thus eliminating protection for many individuals whom Congress intended to protect;

"(5) the holding of the Supreme Court in Toyota Motor Manufacturing, Kentucky, Inc. v. Williams, 534 U.S. 184 (2002) further narrowed the broad scope of protection intended to be afforded by the ADA;

"(6) as a result of these Supreme Court cases, lower courts have incorrectly found in individual cases that people with a range of substantially limiting impairments are not people with disabilities;

"(7) in particular, the Supreme Court, in the case of Toyota Motor Manufacturing, Kentucky, Inc. v. Williams, 534 U.S. 184 (2002), interpreted the term 'substantially limits' to require a greater degree of limitation than was intended by Congress; and

"(8) Congress finds that the current Equal Employment Opportunity Commission ADA regulations defining the term 'substantially limits' as 'significantly restricted' are inconsistent with congressional intent, by expressing too high a standard.

"(b) PURPOSES.—The purposes of this Act [see Short Title of 2008 Amendment note above] are—

"(1) to carry out the ADA's objectives of providing 'a clear and comprehensive national mandate for the elimination of discrimination' and 'clear, strong, consistent, enforceable standards addressing discrimination' by reinstating a broad scope of protection to be available under the ADA;

"(2) to reject the requirement enunciated by the Supreme Court in Sutton v. United Air Lines, Inc., 527 U.S. 471 (1999) and its companion cases that whether an impairment substantially limits a major life activity is to be determined with reference to the ameliorative effects of mitigating measures;

"(3) to reject the Supreme Court's reasoning in Sutton v. United Air Lines, Inc., 527 U.S. 471 (1999) with regard to coverage under the third prong of the definition of disability and to reinstate the reasoning of the Supreme Court in School Board of Nassau County v. Arline, 480 U.S. 273 (1987) which set forth a

broad view of the third prong of the definition of handicap under the Rehabilitation Act of 1973;

"(4) to reject the standards enunciated by the Supreme Court in Toyota Motor Manufacturing, Kentucky, Inc. v. Williams, 534 U.S. 184 (2002), that the terms 'substantially' and 'major' in the definition of disability under the ADA 'need to be interpreted strictly to create a demanding standard for qualifying as disabled,' and that to be substantially limited in performing a major life activity under the ADA 'an individual must have an impairment that prevents or severely restricts the individual from doing activities that are of central importance to most people's daily lives';

"(5) to convey congressional intent that the standard created by the Supreme Court in the case of Toyota Motor Manufacturing, Kentucky, Inc. v. Williams, 534 U.S. 184 (2002) for 'substantially limits', and applied by lower courts in numerous decisions, has created an inappropriately high level of limitation necessary to obtain coverage under the ADA, to convey that it is the intent of Congress that the primary object of attention in cases brought under the ADA should be whether entities covered under the ADA have complied with their obligations, and to convey that the question of whether an individual's impairment is a disability under the ADA should not demand extensive analysis; and

"(6) to express Congress' expectation that the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission will revise that portion of its current regulations that defines the term 'substantially limits' as 'significantly restricted' to be consistent with this Act, including the amendments made by this Act."

STUDY BY GENERAL ACCOUNTING OFFICE OF EXISTING DISABILITY-RELATED EMPLOYMENT INCENTIVES

Pub. L. 106–170, title III, §303(a), Dec. 17, 1999, 113 Stat. 1903, provided that, as soon as practicable after Dec. 17, 1999, the Comptroller General was to undertake a study to assess existing tax credits and other disability-related employment incentives under the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101 et seq.) and other Federal laws, specifically addressing the extent to which such credits and other incentives would encourage employers to hire and retain individuals with disabilities; and that, not later than 3 years after Dec. 17, 1999, the Comptroller General was to transmit to the appropriate congressional committees a written report presenting the results of the study and any appropriate recommendations for legislative or administrative changes.

§12102. Definition of disability

As used in this chapter:

(1) Disability

The term "disability" means, with respect to an individual—

(A) a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activities of such individual;

(B) a record of such an impairment; or

(C) being regarded as having such an impairment (as described in paragraph (3)).

(2) Major life activities

(A) In general

For purposes of paragraph (1), major life activities include, but are not limited to, caring for oneself, performing manual tasks, seeing, hearing, eating, sleeping, walking, standing, lifting, bending, speaking, breathing, learning, reading, concentrating, thinking, communicating, and working.

(B) Major bodily functions

For purposes of paragraph (1), a major life activity also includes the operation of a major bodily function, including but not limited to, functions of the immune system, normal cell growth, digestive, bowel, bladder, neurological, brain, respiratory, circulatory, endocrine, and reproductive functions.

(3) Regarded as having such an impairment

For purposes of paragraph (1)(C):

(A) An individual meets the requirement of "being regarded as having such an impairment" if

the individual establishes that he or she has been subjected to an action prohibited under this chapter because of an actual or perceived physical or mental impairment whether or not the impairment limits or is perceived to limit a major life activity.

(B) Paragraph (1)(C) shall not apply to impairments that are transitory and minor. A transitory impairment is an impairment with an actual or expected duration of 6 months or less.

(4) Rules of construction regarding the definition of disability

The definition of "disability" in paragraph (1) shall be construed in accordance with the following:

(A) The definition of disability in this chapter shall be construed in favor of broad coverage of individuals under this chapter, to the maximum extent permitted by the terms of this chapter.

(B) The term "substantially limits" shall be interpreted consistently with the findings and purposes of the ADA Amendments Act of 2008.

(C) An impairment that substantially limits one major life activity need not limit other major life activities in order to be considered a disability.

(D) An impairment that is episodic or in remission is a disability if it would substantially limit a major life activity when active.

(E)(i) The determination of whether an impairment substantially limits a major life activity shall be made without regard to the ameliorative effects of mitigating measures such as—

(I) medication, medical supplies, equipment, or appliances, low-vision devices (which do not include ordinary eyeglasses or contact lenses), prosthetics including limbs and devices, hearing aids and cochlear implants or other implantable hearing devices, mobility devices, or oxygen therapy equipment and supplies;

(II) use of assistive technology;

(III) reasonable accommodations or auxiliary aids or services; or

(IV) learned behavioral or adaptive neurological modifications.

(ii) The ameliorative effects of the mitigating measures of ordinary eyeglasses or contact lenses shall be considered in determining whether an impairment substantially limits a major life activity.

(iii) As used in this subparagraph—

(I) the term "ordinary eyeglasses or contact lenses" means lenses that are intended to fully correct visual acuity or eliminate refractive error; and

(II) the term "low-vision devices" means devices that magnify, enhance, or otherwise augment a visual image.

(Pub. L. 101–336, §3, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 329; Pub. L. 110–325, §4(a), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3555.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

The ADA Amendments Act of 2008, referred to in par. (4)(B), is Pub. L. 110–325, Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3553. Section 2 of the Act, relating to the findings and purposes of the Act, is set out as a note under section 12101 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2008 Amendment note under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–325 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section consisted of pars. (1) to (3) defining for purposes of this chapter "auxiliary aids and services", "disability", and "State".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–325 effective Jan. 1, 2009, see section 8 of Pub. L. 110–325, set out as a note under section 705 of Title 29, Labor.

§12103. Additional definitions

As used in this chapter:

(1) Auxiliary aids and services

The term "auxiliary aids and services" includes—

(A) qualified interpreters or other effective methods of making aurally delivered materials available to individuals with hearing impairments;

(B) qualified readers, taped texts, or other effective methods of making visually delivered materials available to individuals with visual impairments;

(C) acquisition or modification of equipment or devices; and

(D) other similar services and actions.

(2) State

The term "State" means each of the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, American Samoa, the Virgin Islands of the United States, the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.".

(Pub. L. 101–336, §4, as added Pub. L. 110–325, §4(b), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3556.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 2009, see section 8 of Pub. L. 110–325, set out as an Effective Date of 2008 Amendment note under section 705 of Title 29, Labor.

TERMINATION OF TRUST TERRITORY OF THE PACIFIC ISLANDS

For termination of Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, see note set out preceding section 1681 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions.

SUBCHAPTER I—EMPLOYMENT

§12111. Definitions

As used in this subchapter:

(1) Commission

The term "Commission" means the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission established by section 2000e–4 of this title.

(2) Covered entity

The term "covered entity" means an employer, employment agency, labor organization, or joint labor-management committee.

(3) Direct threat

The term "direct threat" means a significant risk to the health or safety of others that cannot be eliminated by reasonable accommodation.

(4) Employee

The term "employee" means an individual employed by an employer. With respect to employment in a foreign country, such term includes an individual who is a citizen of the United States.

(5) Employer

(A) In general

The term "employer" means a person engaged in an industry affecting commerce who has 15 or more employees for each working day in each of 20 or more calendar weeks in the current or preceding calendar year, and any agent of such person, except that, for two years following the effective date of this subchapter, an employer means a person engaged in an industry affecting commerce who has 25 or more employees for each working day in each of 20 or more calendar weeks in the current or preceding year, and any agent of such person.

(B) Exceptions

The term "employer" does not include—

(i) the United States, a corporation wholly owned by the government of the United States, or an Indian tribe; or

(ii) a bona fide private membership club (other than a labor organization) that is exempt from taxation under section 501(c) of title 26.

(6) Illegal use of drugs

(A) In general

The term "illegal use of drugs" means the use of drugs, the possession or distribution of which is unlawful under the Controlled Substances Act [21 U.S.C. 801 et seq.]. Such term does not include the use of a drug taken under supervision by a licensed health care professional, or other uses authorized by the Controlled Substances Act or other provisions of Federal law.

(B) Drugs

The term "drug" means a controlled substance, as defined in schedules I through V of section 202 of the Controlled Substances Act [21 U.S.C. 812].

(7) Person, etc.

The terms "person", "labor organization", "employment agency", "commerce", and "industry affecting commerce", shall have the same meaning given such terms in section 2000e of this title.

(8) Qualified individual

The term "qualified individual" means an individual who, with or without reasonable accommodation, can perform the essential functions of the employment position that such individual holds or desires. For the purposes of this subchapter, consideration shall be given to the employer's judgment as to what functions of a job are essential, and if an employer has prepared a written description before advertising or interviewing applicants for the job, this description shall be considered evidence of the essential functions of the job.

(9) Reasonable accommodation

The term "reasonable accommodation" may include—

(A) making existing facilities used by employees readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities; and

(B) job restructuring, part-time or modified work schedules, reassignment to a vacant position, acquisition or modification of equipment or devices, appropriate adjustment or modifications of examinations, training materials or policies, the provision of qualified readers or interpreters, and other similar accommodations for individuals with disabilities.

(10) Undue hardship

(A) In general

The term "undue hardship" means an action requiring significant difficulty or expense, when considered in light of the factors set forth in subparagraph (B).

(B) Factors to be considered

In determining whether an accommodation would impose an undue hardship on a covered

entity, factors to be considered include—

(i) the nature and cost of the accommodation needed under this chapter;

(ii) the overall financial resources of the facility or facilities involved in the provision of the reasonable accommodation; the number of persons employed at such facility; the effect on expenses and resources, or the impact otherwise of such accommodation upon the operation of the facility;

(iii) the overall financial resources of the covered entity; the overall size of the business of a covered entity with respect to the number of its employees; the number, type, and location of its facilities; and

(iv) the type of operation or operations of the covered entity, including the composition, structure, and functions of the workforce of such entity; the geographic separateness, administrative, or fiscal relationship of the facility or facilities in question to the covered entity.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title I, §101, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 330; Pub. L. 102–166, title I, §109(a), Nov. 21, 1991, 105 Stat. 1077; Pub. L. 110–325, §5(c)(1), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3557.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The effective date of this subchapter, referred to in par. (5)(A), is 24 months after July 26, 1990, see section 108 of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as an Effective Date note below.

The Controlled Substances Act, referred to in par. (6)(A), is title II of Pub. L. 91–513, Oct. 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 1242, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter I (§801 et seq.) of chapter 13 of Title 21, Food and Drugs. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 801 of Title 21 and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in par. (10)(B)(i), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

CONSTITUTIONALITY

For constitutionality of section 101 of Pub. L. 101–336, see Congressional Research Service, The Constitution of the United States of America: Analysis and Interpretation, Appendix 1, Acts of Congress Held Unconstitutional in Whole or in Part by the Supreme Court of the United States.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Par. (8). Pub. L. 110–325 struck out "with a disability" after "individual" in heading and the first two places appearing in text.

1991—Par. (4). Pub. L. 102–166 inserted at end "With respect to employment in a foreign country, such term includes an individual who is a citizen of the United States."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–325 effective Jan. 1, 2009, see section 8 of Pub. L. 110–325, set out as a note under section 705 of Title 29, Labor.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1991 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102–166 inapplicable to conduct occurring before Nov. 21, 1991, see section 109(c) of Pub. L. 102–166, set out as a note under section 2000e of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 101–336, title I, §108, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 337, provided that: "This title [enacting this subchapter] shall become effective 24 months after the date of enactment [July 26, 1990]."

§12112. Discrimination

(a) General rule

No covered entity shall discriminate against a qualified individual on the basis of disability in regard to job application procedures, the hiring, advancement, or discharge of employees, employee compensation, job training, and other terms, conditions, and privileges of employment.

(b) Construction

As used in subsection (a), the term "discriminate against a qualified individual on the basis of disability" includes—

(1) limiting, segregating, or classifying a job applicant or employee in a way that adversely affects the opportunities or status of such applicant or employee because of the disability of such applicant or employee;

(2) participating in a contractual or other arrangement or relationship that has the effect of subjecting a covered entity's qualified applicant or employee with a disability to the discrimination prohibited by this subchapter (such relationship includes a relationship with an employment or referral agency, labor union, an organization providing fringe benefits to an employee of the covered entity, or an organization providing training and apprenticeship programs);

(3) utilizing standards, criteria, or methods of administration—

(A) that have the effect of discrimination on the basis of disability; or

(B) that perpetuate the discrimination of others who are subject to common administrative control;

(4) excluding or otherwise denying equal jobs or benefits to a qualified individual because of the known disability of an individual with whom the qualified individual is known to have a relationship or association;

(5)(A) not making reasonable accommodations to the known physical or mental limitations of an otherwise qualified individual with a disability who is an applicant or employee, unless such covered entity can demonstrate that the accommodation would impose an undue hardship on the operation of the business of such covered entity; or

(B) denying employment opportunities to a job applicant or employee who is an otherwise qualified individual with a disability, if such denial is based on the need of such covered entity to make reasonable accommodation to the physical or mental impairments of the employee or applicant;

(6) using qualification standards, employment tests or other selection criteria that screen out or tend to screen out an individual with a disability or a class of individuals with disabilities unless the standard, test or other selection criteria, as used by the covered entity, is shown to be job-related for the position in question and is consistent with business necessity; and

(7) failing to select and administer tests concerning employment in the most effective manner to ensure that, when such test is administered to a job applicant or employee who has a disability that impairs sensory, manual, or speaking skills, such test results accurately reflect the skills, aptitude, or whatever other factor of such applicant or employee that such test purports to measure, rather than reflecting the impaired sensory, manual, or speaking skills of such employee or applicant (except where such skills are the factors that the test purports to measure).

(c) Covered entities in foreign countries

(1) In general

It shall not be unlawful under this section for a covered entity to take any action that constitutes discrimination under this section with respect to an employee in a workplace in a foreign country if compliance with this section would cause such covered entity to violate the law of the foreign country in which such workplace is located.

(2) Control of corporation

(A) Presumption

If an employer controls a corporation whose place of incorporation is a foreign country, any practice that constitutes discrimination under this section and is engaged in by such corporation shall be presumed to be engaged in by such employer.

(B) Exception

This section shall not apply with respect to the foreign operations of an employer that is a

foreign person not controlled by an American employer.

(C) Determination

For purposes of this paragraph, the determination of whether an employer controls a corporation shall be based on—

(i) the interrelation of operations;
(ii) the common management;
(iii) the centralized control of labor relations; and
(iv) the common ownership or financial control,

of the employer and the corporation.

(d) Medical examinations and inquiries

(1) In general

The prohibition against discrimination as referred to in subsection (a) shall include medical examinations and inquiries.

(2) Preemployment

(A) Prohibited examination or inquiry

Except as provided in paragraph (3), a covered entity shall not conduct a medical examination or make inquiries of a job applicant as to whether such applicant is an individual with a disability or as to the nature or severity of such disability.

(B) Acceptable inquiry

A covered entity may make preemployment inquiries into the ability of an applicant to perform job-related functions.

(3) Employment entrance examination

A covered entity may require a medical examination after an offer of employment has been made to a job applicant and prior to the commencement of the employment duties of such applicant, and may condition an offer of employment on the results of such examination, if—

(A) all entering employees are subjected to such an examination regardless of disability;

(B) information obtained regarding the medical condition or history of the applicant is collected and maintained on separate forms and in separate medical files and is treated as a confidential medical record, except that—

(i) supervisors and managers may be informed regarding necessary restrictions on the work or duties of the employee and necessary accommodations;

(ii) first aid and safety personnel may be informed, when appropriate, if the disability might require emergency treatment; and

(iii) government officials investigating compliance with this chapter shall be provided relevant information on request; and

(C) the results of such examination are used only in accordance with this subchapter.

(4) Examination and inquiry

(A) Prohibited examinations and inquiries

A covered entity shall not require a medical examination and shall not make inquiries of an employee as to whether such employee is an individual with a disability or as to the nature or severity of the disability, unless such examination or inquiry is shown to be job-related and consistent with business necessity.

(B) Acceptable examinations and inquiries

A covered entity may conduct voluntary medical examinations, including voluntary medical histories, which are part of an employee health program available to employees at that work site. A covered entity may make inquiries into the ability of an employee to perform job-related

functions.

(C) Requirement

Information obtained under subparagraph (B) regarding the medical condition or history of any employee are subject to the requirements of subparagraphs (B) and (C) of paragraph (3).

(Pub. L. 101–336, title I, §102, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 331; Pub. L. 102–166, title I, §109(b)(2), Nov. 21, 1991, 105 Stat. 1077; Pub. L. 110–325, §5(a), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3557.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (d)(3)(B)(iii), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–325, §5(a)(1), substituted "on the basis of disability" for "with a disability because of the disability of such individual".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–325, §5(a)(2), substituted "discriminate against a qualified individual on the basis of disability" for "discriminate" in introductory provisions.

1991—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 102–166 added subsec. (c) and redesignated former subsec. (c) as (d).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–325 effective Jan. 1, 2009, see section 8 of Pub. L. 110–325, set out as a note under section 705 of Title 29, Labor.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1991 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102–166 inapplicable to conduct occurring before Nov. 21, 1991, see section 109(c) of Pub. L. 102–166, set out as a note under section 2000e of this title.

§12113. Defenses

(a) In general

It may be a defense to a charge of discrimination under this chapter that an alleged application of qualification standards, tests, or selection criteria that screen out or tend to screen out or otherwise deny a job or benefit to an individual with a disability has been shown to be job-related and consistent with business necessity, and such performance cannot be accomplished by reasonable accommodation, as required under this subchapter.

(b) Qualification standards

The term "qualification standards" may include a requirement that an individual shall not pose a direct threat to the health or safety of other individuals in the workplace.

(c) Qualification standards and tests related to uncorrected vision

Notwithstanding section 12102(4)(E)(ii) of this title, a covered entity shall not use qualification standards, employment tests, or other selection criteria based on an individual's uncorrected vision unless the standard, test, or other selection criteria, as used by the covered entity, is shown to be job-related for the position in question and consistent with business necessity.

(d) Religious entities

(1) In general

This subchapter shall not prohibit a religious corporation, association, educational institution, or society from giving preference in employment to individuals of a particular religion to perform work connected with the carrying on by such corporation, association, educational institution, or society of its activities.

(2) Religious tenets requirement

Under this subchapter, a religious organization may require that all applicants and employees

conform to the religious tenets of such organization.

(e) List of infectious and communicable diseases

(1) In general

The Secretary of Health and Human Services, not later than 6 months after July 26, 1990, shall—

(A) review all infectious and communicable diseases which may be transmitted through handling the food supply;

(B) publish a list of infectious and communicable diseases which are transmitted through handling the food supply;

(C) publish the methods by which such diseases are transmitted; and

(D) widely disseminate such information regarding the list of diseases and their modes of transmissability [1] to the general public.

Such list shall be updated annually.

(2) Applications

In any case in which an individual has an infectious or communicable disease that is transmitted to others through the handling of food, that is included on the list developed by the Secretary of Health and Human Services under paragraph (1), and which cannot be eliminated by reasonable accommodation, a covered entity may refuse to assign or continue to assign such individual to a job involving food handling.

(3) Construction

Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to preempt, modify, or amend any State, county, or local law, ordinance, or regulation applicable to food handling which is designed to protect the public health from individuals who pose a significant risk to the health or safety of others, which cannot be eliminated by reasonable accommodation, pursuant to the list of infectious or communicable diseases and the modes of transmissability [1] published by the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title I, §103, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 333; Pub. L. 110–325, §5(b), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3557.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (e)(3), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsecs. (c) to (e). Pub. L. 110–325 added subsec. (c) and redesignated former subsecs. (c) and (d) as (d) and (e), respectively.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–325 effective Jan. 1, 2009, see section 8 of Pub. L. 110–325, set out as a note under section 705 of Title 29, Labor.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "transmissibility".

§12114. Illegal use of drugs and alcohol

(a) Qualified individual with a disability

For purposes of this subchapter, a qualified individual with a disability shall not include any employee or applicant who is currently engaging in the illegal use of drugs, when the covered entity acts on the basis of such use.

(b) Rules of construction

Nothing in subsection (a) shall be construed to exclude as a qualified individual with a disability an individual who—

(1) has successfully completed a supervised drug rehabilitation program and is no longer engaging in the illegal use of drugs, or has otherwise been rehabilitated successfully and is no longer engaging in such use;

(2) is participating in a supervised rehabilitation program and is no longer engaging in such use; or

(3) is erroneously regarded as engaging in such use, but is not engaging in such use;

except that it shall not be a violation of this chapter for a covered entity to adopt or administer reasonable policies or procedures, including but not limited to drug testing, designed to ensure that an individual described in paragraph (1) or (2) is no longer engaging in the illegal use of drugs.

(c) Authority of covered entity

A covered entity—

(1) may prohibit the illegal use of drugs and the use of alcohol at the workplace by all employees;

(2) may require that employees shall not be under the influence of alcohol or be engaging in the illegal use of drugs at the workplace;

(3) may require that employees behave in conformance with the requirements established under chapter 81 of title 41;

(4) may hold an employee who engages in the illegal use of drugs or who is an alcoholic to the same qualification standards for employment or job performance and behavior that such entity holds other employees, even if any unsatisfactory performance or behavior is related to the drug use or alcoholism of such employee; and

(5) may, with respect to Federal regulations regarding alcohol and the illegal use of drugs, require that—

(A) employees comply with the standards established in such regulations of the Department of Defense, if the employees of the covered entity are employed in an industry subject to such regulations, including complying with regulations (if any) that apply to employment in sensitive positions in such an industry, in the case of employees of the covered entity who are employed in such positions (as defined in the regulations of the Department of Defense);

(B) employees comply with the standards established in such regulations of the Nuclear Regulatory Commission, if the employees of the covered entity are employed in an industry subject to such regulations, including complying with regulations (if any) that apply to employment in sensitive positions in such an industry, in the case of employees of the covered entity who are employed in such positions (as defined in the regulations of the Nuclear Regulatory Commission); and

(C) employees comply with the standards established in such regulations of the Department of Transportation, if the employees of the covered entity are employed in a transportation industry subject to such regulations, including complying with such regulations (if any) that apply to employment in sensitive positions in such an industry, in the case of employees of the covered entity who are employed in such positions (as defined in the regulations of the Department of Transportation).

(d) Drug testing

(1) In general

For purposes of this subchapter, a test to determine the illegal use of drugs shall not be considered a medical examination.

(2) Construction

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to encourage, prohibit, or authorize the conducting of drug testing for the illegal use of drugs by job applicants or employees or making employment

decisions based on such test results.

(e) Transportation employees

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to encourage, prohibit, restrict, or authorize the otherwise lawful exercise by entities subject to the jurisdiction of the Department of Transportation of authority to—

(1) test employees of such entities in, and applicants for, positions involving safety-sensitive duties for the illegal use of drugs and for on-duty impairment by alcohol; and

(2) remove such persons who test positive for illegal use of drugs and on-duty impairment by alcohol pursuant to paragraph (1) from safety-sensitive duties in implementing subsection (c).

(Pub. L. 101–336, title I, §104, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 334; Pub. L. 110–325, §5(c)(2), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3557.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (c)(3), "chapter 81 of title 41" substituted for "the Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988 (41 U.S.C. 701 et seq.)" on authority of Pub. L. 111–350, §6(c), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 3854, which Act enacted Title 41, Public Contracts.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–325 substituted "a qualified individual with a disability shall" for "the term 'qualified individual with a disability' shall".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–325 effective Jan. 1, 2009, see section 8 of Pub. L. 110–325, set out as a note under section 705 of Title 29, Labor.

§12115. Posting notices

Every employer, employment agency, labor organization, or joint labor-management committee covered under this subchapter shall post notices in an accessible format to applicants, employees, and members describing the applicable provisions of this chapter, in the manner prescribed by section 2000e–10 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title I, §105, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 336.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

§12116. Regulations

Not later than 1 year after July 26, 1990, the Commission shall issue regulations in an accessible format to carry out this subchapter in accordance with subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title I, §106, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 336.)

§12117. Enforcement

(a) Powers, remedies, and procedures

The powers, remedies, and procedures set forth in sections 2000e–4, 2000e–5, 2000e–6, 2000e–8,

and 2000e–9 of this title shall be the powers, remedies, and procedures this subchapter provides to the Commission, to the Attorney General, or to any person alleging discrimination on the basis of disability in violation of any provision of this chapter, or regulations promulgated under section 12116 of this title, concerning employment.

(b) Coordination

The agencies with enforcement authority for actions which allege employment discrimination under this subchapter and under the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 [29 U.S.C. 701 et seq.] shall develop procedures to ensure that administrative complaints filed under this subchapter and under the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 are dealt with in a manner that avoids duplication of effort and prevents imposition of inconsistent or conflicting standards for the same requirements under this subchapter and the Rehabilitation Act of 1973. The Commission, the Attorney General, and the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs shall establish such coordinating mechanisms (similar to provisions contained in the joint regulations promulgated by the Commission and the Attorney General at part 42 of title 28 and part 1691 of title 29, Code of Federal Regulations, and the Memorandum of Understanding between the Commission and the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs dated January 16, 1981 (46 Fed. Reg. 7435, January 23, 1981)) in regulations implementing this subchapter and Rehabilitation Act of 1973 not later than 18 months after July 26, 1990.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title I, §107, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 336.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

The Rehabilitation Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 93–112, Sept. 26, 1973, 87 Stat. 355, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 16 (§701 et seq.) of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 701 of Title 29 and Tables.

SUBCHAPTER II—PUBLIC SERVICES

PART A—PROHIBITION AGAINST DISCRIMINATION AND OTHER GENERALLY APPLICABLE PROVISIONS

§12131. Definitions

As used in this subchapter:

(1) Public entity

The term "public entity" means—

(A) any State or local government;

(B) any department, agency, special purpose district, or other instrumentality of a State or States or local government; and

(C) the National Railroad Passenger Corporation, and any commuter authority (as defined in section 24102(4) [1] of title 49).

(2) Qualified individual with a disability

The term "qualified individual with a disability" means an individual with a disability who, with or without reasonable modifications to rules, policies, or practices, the removal of architectural, communication, or transportation barriers, or the provision of auxiliary aids and services, meets

the essential eligibility requirements for the receipt of services or the participation in programs or activities provided by a public entity.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §201, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 337.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 24102 of title 49, referred to in par. (1)(C), was subsequently amended, and section 24102(4) no longer defines "commuter authority". However, such term is defined elsewhere in that section.

CODIFICATION

In par. (1)(C), "section 24102(4) of title 49" substituted for "section 103(8) of the Rail Passenger Service Act" on authority of Pub. L. 103–272, §6(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1378, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49, Transportation.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §205, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 338, provided that:

"(a) GENERAL RULE.—Except as provided in subsection (b), this subtitle [subtitle A (§§201–205) of title II of Pub. L. 101–336, enacting this part] shall become effective 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [July 26, 1990].

"(b) EXCEPTION.—Section 204 [section 12134 of this title] shall become effective on the date of enactment of this Act."

EX. ORD. NO. 13217. COMMUNITY-BASED ALTERNATIVES FOR INDIVIDUALS WITH DISABILITIES

Ex. Ord. No. 13217, June 18, 2001, 66 F.R. 33155, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, and in order to place qualified individuals with disabilities in community settings whenever appropriate, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Policy*. This order is issued consistent with the following findings and principles:

(a) The United States is committed to community-based alternatives for individuals with disabilities and recognizes that such services advance the best interests of Americans.

(b) The United States seeks to ensure that America's community-based programs effectively foster independence and participation in the community for Americans with disabilities.

(c) Unjustified isolation or segregation of qualified individuals with disabilities through institutionalization is a form of disability-based discrimination prohibited by Title II of the Americans With Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA), 42 U.S.C. 12101 [12131] *et seq*. States must avoid disability-based discrimination unless doing so would fundamentally alter the nature of the service, program, or activity provided by the State.

(d) In *Olmstead v. L.C.*, 527 U.S. 581 (1999) (the "*Olmstead* decision"), the Supreme Court construed Title II of the ADA [42 U.S.C. 12131 et seq.] to require States to place qualified individuals with mental disabilities in community settings, rather than in institutions, whenever treatment professionals determine that such placement is appropriate, the affected persons do not oppose such placement, and the State can reasonably accommodate the placement, taking into account the resources available to the State and the needs of others with disabilities.

(e) The Federal Government must assist States and localities to implement swiftly the *Olmstead* decision, so as to help ensure that all Americans have the opportunity to live close to their families and friends, to live more independently, to engage in productive employment, and to participate in community life.

SEC. 2. *Swift Implementation of the Olmstead Decision: Agency Responsibilities*. (a) The Attorney General, the Secretaries of Health and Human Services, Education, Labor, and Housing and Urban Development, and the Commissioner of the Social Security Administration shall work cooperatively to ensure that the *Olmstead* decision is implemented in a timely manner. Specifically, the designated agencies should work with States to help them assess their compliance with the *Olmstead* decision and the ADA [42 U.S.C. 12101 et seq.] in providing services to qualified individuals with disabilities in community-based settings, as long as such services are appropriate to the needs of those individuals. These agencies should provide technical guidance and work cooperatively with States to achieve the goals of Title II of the ADA [42 U.S.C. 12131 et seq.], particularly where States have chosen to develop comprehensive, effectively working plans to provide services to qualified individuals with disabilities in the most integrated settings. These agencies should also ensure that existing Federal resources are used in the most effective manner to support the goals of the ADA. The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall take the lead in coordinating these efforts.

(b) The Attorney General, the Secretaries of Health and Human Services, Education, Labor, and Housing

and Urban Development, and the Commissioner of the Social Security Administration shall evaluate the policies, programs, statutes, and regulations of their respective agencies to determine whether any should be revised or modified to improve the availability of community-based services for qualified individuals with disabilities. The review shall focus on identifying affected populations, improving the flow of information about supports in the community, and removing barriers that impede opportunities for community placement. The review should ensure the involvement of consumers, advocacy organizations, providers, and relevant agency representatives. Each agency head should report to the President, through the Secretary of Health and Human Services, with the results of their evaluation within 120 days.

(c) The Attorney General and the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall fully enforce Title II of the ADA, including investigating and resolving complaints filed on behalf of individuals who allege that they have been the victims of unjustified institutionalization. Whenever possible, the Department of Justice and the Department of Health and Human Services should work cooperatively with States to resolve these complaints, and should use alternative dispute resolution to bring these complaints to a quick and constructive resolution.

(d) The agency actions directed by this order shall be done consistent with this Administration's budget.

SEC. 3. *Judicial Review*. Nothing in this order shall affect any otherwise available judicial review of agency action. This order is intended only to improve the internal management of the Federal Government and does not create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or equity by a party against the United States, its agencies or instrumentalities, its officers or employees, or any other person.

GEORGE W. BUSH.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12132. Discrimination

Subject to the provisions of this subchapter, no qualified individual with a disability shall, by reason of such disability, be excluded from participation in or be denied the benefits of the services, programs, or activities of a public entity, or be subjected to discrimination by any such entity.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §202, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 337.)

§12133. Enforcement

The remedies, procedures, and rights set forth in section 794a of title 29 shall be the remedies, procedures, and rights this subchapter provides to any person alleging discrimination on the basis of disability in violation of section 12132 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §203, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 337.)

§12134. Regulations

(a) In general

Not later than 1 year after July 26, 1990, the Attorney General shall promulgate regulations in an accessible format that implement this part. Such regulations shall not include any matter within the scope of the authority of the Secretary of Transportation under section 12143, 12149, or 12164 of this title.

(b) Relationship to other regulations

Except for "program accessibility, existing facilities", and "communications", regulations under subsection (a) shall be consistent with this chapter and with the coordination regulations under part 41 of title 28, Code of Federal Regulations (as promulgated by the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare on January 13, 1978), applicable to recipients of Federal financial assistance under section 794 of title 29. With respect to "program accessibility, existing facilities", and

"communications", such regulations shall be consistent with regulations and analysis as in part 39 of title 28 of the Code of Federal Regulations, applicable to federally conducted activities under section 794 of title 29.

(c) Standards

Regulations under subsection (a) shall include standards applicable to facilities and vehicles covered by this part, other than facilities, stations, rail passenger cars, and vehicles covered by part B. Such standards shall be consistent with the minimum guidelines and requirements issued by the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board in accordance with section 12204(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §204, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 337.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective July 26, 1990, see section 205(b) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12131 of this title.

PART B—ACTIONS APPLICABLE TO PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION PROVIDED BY PUBLIC ENTITIES CONSIDERED DISCRIMINATORY

SUBPART I—PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION OTHER THAN BY AIRCRAFT OR CERTAIN RAIL OPERATIONS

§12141. Definitions

As used in this subpart:

(1) Demand responsive system

The term "demand responsive system" means any system of providing designated public transportation which is not a fixed route system.

(2) Designated public transportation

The term "designated public transportation" means transportation (other than public school transportation) by bus, rail, or any other conveyance (other than transportation by aircraft or intercity or commuter rail transportation (as defined in section 12161 of this title)) that provides the general public with general or special service (including charter service) on a regular and continuing basis.

(3) Fixed route system

The term "fixed route system" means a system of providing designated public transportation on which a vehicle is operated along a prescribed route according to a fixed schedule.

(4) Operates

The term "operates", as used with respect to a fixed route system or demand responsive system, includes operation of such system by a person under a contractual or other arrangement or relationship with a public entity.

(5) Public school transportation

The term "public school transportation" means transportation by schoolbus vehicles of schoolchildren, personnel, and equipment to and from a public elementary or secondary school and school-related activities.

(6) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Transportation.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §221, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 338.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §231, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 346, provided that:

"(a) GENERAL RULE.—Except as provided in subsection (b), this part [part I (§§221–231) of subtitle B of title II of Pub. L. 101–336, enacting this subpart] shall become effective 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [July 26, 1990].

"(b) EXCEPTION.—Sections 222, 223 (other than subsection (a)), 224, 225, 227(b), 228(b), and 229 [sections 12142, 12143(b) to (f), 12144, 12145, 12147(b), 12148(b), and 12149 of this title] shall become effective on the date of enactment of this Act."

§12142. Public entities operating fixed route systems

(a) Purchase and lease of new vehicles

It shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a public entity which operates a fixed route system to purchase or lease a new bus, a new rapid rail vehicle, a new light rail vehicle, or any other new vehicle to be used on such system, if the solicitation for such purchase or lease is made after the 30th day following July 26, 1990, and if such bus, rail vehicle, or other vehicle is not readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs.

(b) Purchase and lease of used vehicles

Subject to subsection (c)(1), it shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a public entity which operates a fixed route system to purchase or lease, after the 30th day following July 26, 1990, a used vehicle for use on such system unless such entity makes demonstrated good faith efforts to purchase or lease a used vehicle for use on such system that is readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs.

(c) Remanufactured vehicles

(1) General rule

Except as provided in paragraph (2), it shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a public entity which operates a fixed route system—

(A) to remanufacture a vehicle for use on such system so as to extend its usable life for 5 years or more, which remanufacture begins (or for which the solicitation is made) after the 30th day following July 26, 1990; or

(B) to purchase or lease for use on such system a remanufactured vehicle which has been remanufactured so as to extend its usable life for 5 years or more, which purchase or lease occurs after such 30th day and during the period in which the usable life is extended;

unless, after remanufacture, the vehicle is, to the maximum extent feasible, readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs.

(2) Exception for historic vehicles

(A) General rule

If a public entity operates a fixed route system any segment of which is included on the National Register of Historic Places and if making a vehicle of historic character to be used

solely on such segment readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities would significantly alter the historic character of such vehicle, the public entity only has to make (or to purchase or lease a remanufactured vehicle with) those modifications which are necessary to meet the requirements of paragraph (1) and which do not significantly alter the historic character of such vehicle.

(B) Vehicles of historic character defined by regulations

For purposes of this paragraph and section 12148(b) of this title, a vehicle of historic character shall be defined by the regulations issued by the Secretary to carry out this subsection.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §222, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 339.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective July 26, 1990, see section 231(b) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12141 of this title.

§12143. Paratransit as a complement to fixed route service

(a) General rule

It shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a public entity which operates a fixed route system (other than a system which provides solely commuter bus service) to fail to provide with respect to the operations of its fixed route system, in accordance with this section, paratransit and other special transportation services to individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, that are sufficient to provide to such individuals a level of service (1) which is comparable to the level of designated public transportation services provided to individuals without disabilities using such system; or (2) in the case of response time, which is comparable, to the extent practicable, to the level of designated public transportation services provided to individuals without disabilities using such system.

(b) Issuance of regulations

Not later than 1 year after July 26, 1990, the Secretary shall issue final regulations to carry out this section.

(c) Required contents of regulations

(1) Eligible recipients of service

The regulations issued under this section shall require each public entity which operates a fixed route system to provide the paratransit and other special transportation services required under this section—

(A)(i) to any individual with a disability who is unable, as a result of a physical or mental impairment (including a vision impairment) and without the assistance of another individual (except an operator of a wheelchair lift or other boarding assistance device), to board, ride, or disembark from any vehicle on the system which is readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities;

(ii) to any individual with a disability who needs the assistance of a wheelchair lift or other boarding assistance device (and is able with such assistance) to board, ride, and disembark from any vehicle which is readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities if the individual wants to travel on a route on the system during the hours of operation of the system at a time (or within a reasonable period of such time) when such a vehicle is not being used to provide designated public transportation on the route; and

(iii) to any individual with a disability who has a specific impairment-related condition which prevents such individual from traveling to a boarding location or from a disembarking location on such system;

(B) to one other individual accompanying the individual with the disability; and

(C) to other individuals, in addition to the one individual described in subparagraph (B),

accompanying the individual with a disability provided that space for these additional individuals is available on the paratransit vehicle carrying the individual with a disability and that the transportation of such additional individuals will not result in a denial of service to individuals with disabilities.

For purposes of clauses (i) and (ii) of subparagraph (A), boarding or disembarking from a vehicle does not include travel to the boarding location or from the disembarking location.

(2) Service area

The regulations issued under this section shall require the provision of paratransit and special transportation services required under this section in the service area of each public entity which operates a fixed route system, other than any portion of the service area in which the public entity solely provides commuter bus service.

(3) Service criteria

Subject to paragraphs (1) and (2), the regulations issued under this section shall establish minimum service criteria for determining the level of services to be required under this section.

(4) Undue financial burden limitation

The regulations issued under this section shall provide that, if the public entity is able to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Secretary that the provision of paratransit and other special transportation services otherwise required under this section would impose an undue financial burden on the public entity, the public entity, notwithstanding any other provision of this section (other than paragraph (5)), shall only be required to provide such services to the extent that providing such services would not impose such a burden.

(5) Additional services

The regulations issued under this section shall establish circumstances under which the Secretary may require a public entity to provide, notwithstanding paragraph (4), paratransit and other special transportation services under this section beyond the level of paratransit and other special transportation services which would otherwise be required under paragraph (4).

(6) Public participation

The regulations issued under this section shall require that each public entity which operates a fixed route system hold a public hearing, provide an opportunity for public comment, and consult with individuals with disabilities in preparing its plan under paragraph (7).

(7) Plans

The regulations issued under this section shall require that each public entity which operates a fixed route system—

(A) within 18 months after July 26, 1990, submit to the Secretary, and commence implementation of, a plan for providing paratransit and other special transportation services which meets the requirements of this section; and

(B) on an annual basis thereafter, submit to the Secretary, and commence implementation of, a plan for providing such services.

(8) Provision of services by others

The regulations issued under this section shall—

(A) require that a public entity submitting a plan to the Secretary under this section identify in the plan any person or other public entity which is providing a paratransit or other special transportation service for individuals with disabilities in the service area to which the plan applies; and

(B) provide that the public entity submitting the plan does not have to provide under the plan such service for individuals with disabilities.

(9) Other provisions

The regulations issued under this section shall include such other provisions and requirements

as the Secretary determines are necessary to carry out the objectives of this section.

(d) Review of plan

(1) General rule

The Secretary shall review a plan submitted under this section for the purpose of determining whether or not such plan meets the requirements of this section, including the regulations issued under this section.

(2) Disapproval

If the Secretary determines that a plan reviewed under this subsection fails to meet the requirements of this section, the Secretary shall disapprove the plan and notify the public entity which submitted the plan of such disapproval and the reasons therefor.

(3) Modification of disapproved plan

Not later than 90 days after the date of disapproval of a plan under this subsection, the public entity which submitted the plan shall modify the plan to meet the requirements of this section and shall submit to the Secretary, and commence implementation of, such modified plan.

(e) "Discrimination" defined

As used in subsection (a), the term "discrimination" includes—

(1) a failure of a public entity to which the regulations issued under this section apply to submit, or commence implementation of, a plan in accordance with subsections (c)(6) and (c)(7);

(2) a failure of such entity to submit, or commence implementation of, a modified plan in accordance with subsection (d)(3);

(3) submission to the Secretary of a modified plan under subsection (d)(3) which does not meet the requirements of this section; or

(4) a failure of such entity to provide paratransit or other special transportation services in accordance with the plan or modified plan the public entity submitted to the Secretary under this section.

(f) Statutory construction

Nothing in this section shall be construed as preventing a public entity—

(1) from providing paratransit or other special transportation services at a level which is greater than the level of such services which are required by this section,

(2) from providing paratransit or other special transportation services in addition to those paratransit and special transportation services required by this section, or

(3) from providing such services to individuals in addition to those individuals to whom such services are required to be provided by this section.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §223, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 340.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Subsec. (a) of this section effective 18 months after July 26, 1990, and subsecs. (b) to (f) of this section effective July 26, 1990, see section 231 of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12141 of this title.

PARATRANSIT SYSTEM UNDER FTA APPROVED COORDINATED PLAN

Pub. L. 114–94, div. A, title III, §3023, Dec. 4, 2015, 129 Stat. 1494, provided that: "Notwithstanding the provisions of section 37.131(c) of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, any paratransit system currently coordinating complementary paratransit service for more than 40 fixed route agencies shall be permitted to continue using an existing tiered, distance-based coordinated paratransit fare system, if the fare for the existing tiered, distance-based coordinated paratransit fare system is not increased by a greater percentage than any increase to the fixed route fare for the largest transit agency in the complementary paratransit service area."

§12144. Public entity operating a demand responsive system

If a public entity operates a demand responsive system, it shall be considered discrimination, for

purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29, for such entity to purchase or lease a new vehicle for use on such system, for which a solicitation is made after the 30th day following July 26, 1990, that is not readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, unless such system, when viewed in its entirety, provides a level of service to such individuals equivalent to the level of service such system provides to individuals without disabilities.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §224, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 342.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective July 26, 1990, see section 231(b) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12141 of this title.

§12145. Temporary relief where lifts are unavailable

(a) Granting

With respect to the purchase of new buses, a public entity may apply for, and the Secretary may temporarily relieve such public entity from the obligation under section 12142(a) or 12144 of this title to purchase new buses that are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities if such public entity demonstrates to the satisfaction of the Secretary—

(1) that the initial solicitation for new buses made by the public entity specified that all new buses were to be lift-equipped and were to be otherwise accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities;

(2) the unavailability from any qualified manufacturer of hydraulic, electromechanical, or other lifts for such new buses;

(3) that the public entity seeking temporary relief has made good faith efforts to locate a qualified manufacturer to supply the lifts to the manufacturer of such buses in sufficient time to comply with such solicitation; and

(4) that any further delay in purchasing new buses necessary to obtain such lifts would significantly impair transportation services in the community served by the public entity.

(b) Duration and notice to Congress

Any relief granted under subsection (a) shall be limited in duration by a specified date, and the appropriate committees of Congress shall be notified of any such relief granted.

(c) Fraudulent application

If, at any time, the Secretary has reasonable cause to believe that any relief granted under subsection (a) was fraudulently applied for, the Secretary shall—

(1) cancel such relief if such relief is still in effect; and

(2) take such other action as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §225, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 343.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective July 26, 1990, see section 231(b) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12141 of this title.

§12146. New facilities

For purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29, it shall be considered discrimination for a public entity to construct a new facility to be used in the provision of designated public transportation services unless such facility is readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §226, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 343.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 18 months after July 26, 1990, see section 231(a) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12141 of this title.

§12147. Alterations of existing facilities

(a) General rule

With respect to alterations of an existing facility or part thereof used in the provision of designated public transportation services that affect or could affect the usability of the facility or part thereof, it shall be considered discrimination, for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29, for a public entity to fail to make such alterations (or to ensure that the alterations are made) in such a manner that, to the maximum extent feasible, the altered portions of the facility are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, upon the completion of such alterations. Where the public entity is undertaking an alteration that affects or could affect usability of or access to an area of the facility containing a primary function, the entity shall also make the alterations in such a manner that, to the maximum extent feasible, the path of travel to the altered area and the bathrooms, telephones, and drinking fountains serving the altered area, are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, upon completion of such alterations, where such alterations to the path of travel or the bathrooms, telephones, and drinking fountains serving the altered area are not disproportionate to the overall alterations in terms of cost and scope (as determined under criteria established by the Attorney General).

(b) Special rule for stations

(1) General rule

For purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29, it shall be considered discrimination for a public entity that provides designated public transportation to fail, in accordance with the provisions of this subsection, to make key stations (as determined under criteria established by the Secretary by regulation) in rapid rail and light rail systems readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs.

(2) Rapid rail and light rail key stations

(A) Accessibility

Except as otherwise provided in this paragraph, all key stations (as determined under criteria established by the Secretary by regulation) in rapid rail and light rail systems shall be made readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, as soon as practicable but in no event later than the last day of the 3-year period beginning on July 26, 1990.

(B) Extension for extraordinarily expensive structural changes

The Secretary may extend the 3-year period under subparagraph (A) up to a 30-year period for key stations in a rapid rail or light rail system which stations need extraordinarily expensive structural changes to, or replacement of, existing facilities; except that by the last day of the 20th year following July 26, 1990, at least 2/3 of such key stations must be readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities.

(3) Plans and milestones

The Secretary shall require the appropriate public entity to develop and submit to the Secretary a plan for compliance with this subsection—

(A) that reflects consultation with individuals with disabilities affected by such plan and the results of a public hearing and public comments on such plan, and

(B) that establishes milestones for achievement of the requirements of this subsection.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §227, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 343.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Subsec. (a) of this section effective 18 months after July 26, 1990, and subsec. (b) of this section effective July 26, 1990, see section 231 of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12141 of this title.

§12148. Public transportation programs and activities in existing facilities and one car per train rule

(a) Public transportation programs and activities in existing facilities

(1) In general

With respect to existing facilities used in the provision of designated public transportation services, it shall be considered discrimination, for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29, for a public entity to fail to operate a designated public transportation program or activity conducted in such facilities so that, when viewed in the entirety, the program or activity is readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities.

(2) Exception

Paragraph (1) shall not require a public entity to make structural changes to existing facilities in order to make such facilities accessible to individuals who use wheelchairs, unless and to the extent required by section 12147(a) of this title (relating to alterations) or section 12147(b) of this title (relating to key stations).

(3) Utilization

Paragraph (1) shall not require a public entity to which paragraph (2) applies, to provide to individuals who use wheelchairs services made available to the general public at such facilities when such individuals could not utilize or benefit from such services provided at such facilities.

(b) One car per train rule

(1) General rule

Subject to paragraph (2), with respect to 2 or more vehicles operated as a train by a light or rapid rail system, for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29, it shall be considered discrimination for a public entity to fail to have at least 1 vehicle per train that is accessible to individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, as soon as practicable but in no event later than the last day of the 5-year period beginning on the effective date of this section.

(2) Historic trains

In order to comply with paragraph (1) with respect to the remanufacture of a vehicle of historic character which is to be used on a segment of a light or rapid rail system which is included on the National Register of Historic Places, if making such vehicle readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities would significantly alter the historic character of such vehicle, the public entity which operates such system only has to make (or to purchase or lease a remanufactured vehicle with) those modifications which are necessary to meet the requirements of section 12142(c)(1) of this title and which do not significantly alter the historic character of such vehicle.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §228, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 344.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The effective date of this section, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), probably means the effective date of subsec. (b), which is effective on date of enactment of Pub. L. 101–336, which was approved July 26, 1990. The effective date of subsec. (a) is 18 months after July 26, 1990. See section 231 of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as an Effective Date note under section 12141 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Subsec. (a) of this section effective 18 months after July 26, 1990, and subsec. (b) of this section effective July 26, 1990, see section 231 of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12141 of this title.

§12149. Regulations

(a) In general

Not later than 1 year after July 26, 1990, the Secretary of Transportation shall issue regulations, in an accessible format, necessary for carrying out this subpart (other than section 12143 of this title).

(b) Standards

The regulations issued under this section and section 12143 of this title shall include standards applicable to facilities and vehicles covered by this part. The standards shall be consistent with the minimum guidelines and requirements issued by the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board in accordance with section 12204 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §229, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 345.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective July 26, 1990, see section 231(b) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12141 of this title.

§12150. Interim accessibility requirements

If final regulations have not been issued pursuant to section 12149 of this title, for new construction or alterations for which a valid and appropriate State or local building permit is obtained prior to the issuance of final regulations under such section, and for which the construction or alteration authorized by such permit begins within one year of the receipt of such permit and is completed under the terms of such permit, compliance with the Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards in effect at the time the building permit is issued shall suffice to satisfy the requirement that facilities be readily accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities as required under sections 12146 and 12147 of this title, except that, if such final regulations have not been issued one year after the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board has issued the supplemental minimum guidelines required under section 12204(a) of this title, compliance with such supplemental minimum guidelines shall be necessary to satisfy the requirement that facilities be readily accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities prior to issuance of the final regulations.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §230, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 345.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 18 months after July 26, 1990, see section 231(a) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12141 of this title.

SUBPART II—PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION BY INTERCITY AND COMMUTER RAIL

§12161. Definitions

As used in this subpart:

(1) Commuter authority

The term "commuter authority" has the meaning given such term in section 24102(4) [1] of title

49.

(2) Commuter rail transportation

The term "commuter rail transportation" has the meaning given the term "commuter rail passenger transportation" in section 24102(5) [1] of title 49.

(3) Intercity rail transportation

The term "intercity rail transportation" means transportation provided by the National Railroad Passenger Corporation.

(4) Rail passenger car

The term "rail passenger car" means, with respect to intercity rail transportation, single-level and bi-level coach cars, single-level and bi-level dining cars, single-level and bi-level sleeping cars, single-level and bi-level lounge cars, and food service cars.

(5) Responsible person

The term "responsible person" means—

(A) in the case of a station more than 50 percent of which is owned by a public entity, such public entity;

(B) in the case of a station more than 50 percent of which is owned by a private party, the persons providing intercity or commuter rail transportation to such station, as allocated on an equitable basis by regulation by the Secretary of Transportation; and

(C) in a case where no party owns more than 50 percent of a station, the persons providing intercity or commuter rail transportation to such station and the owners of the station, other than private party owners, as allocated on an equitable basis by regulation by the Secretary of Transportation.

(6) Station

The term "station" means the portion of a property located appurtenant to a right-of-way on which intercity or commuter rail transportation is operated, where such portion is used by the general public and is related to the provision of such transportation, including passenger platforms, designated waiting areas, ticketing areas, restrooms, and, where a public entity providing rail transportation owns the property, concession areas, to the extent that such public entity exercises control over the selection, design, construction, or alteration of the property, but such term does not include flag stops.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §241, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 346; Pub. L. 104–287, §6(k), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3400.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 24102 of title 49, referred to in pars. (1) and (2), was subsequently amended, and pars. (4) and (5) of section 24102 no longer define "commuter authority" and "commuter rail passenger transportation", respectively. However, such terms are defined elsewhere in that section.

CODIFICATION

In pars. (1) and (2), "section 24102(4) of title 49" substituted for "section 103(8) of the Rail Passenger Service Act (45 U.S.C. 502(8))" and "section 24102(5) of title 49" substituted for "section 103(9) of the Rail Passenger Service Act (45 U.S.C. 502(9))" on authority of Pub. L. 103–272, §6(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1378, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49, Transportation.

AMENDMENTS

1996—Par. (2). Pub. L. 104–287 substituted "commuter rail passenger transportation" for "commuter service".

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §246, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 353, provided that:

"(a) GENERAL RULE.—Except as provided in subsection (b), this part [part II (§§241–246) of subtitle B of title II of Pub. L. 101–336, enacting this subpart] shall become effective 18 months after the date of

enactment of this Act [July 26, 1990].

"(b) EXCEPTION.—Sections 242 and 244 [sections 12162 and 12164 of this title] shall become effective on the date of enactment of this Act."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12162. Intercity and commuter rail actions considered discriminatory

(a) Intercity rail transportation

(1) One car per train rule

It shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a person who provides intercity rail transportation to fail to have at least one passenger car per train that is readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, in accordance with regulations issued under section 12164 of this title, as soon as practicable, but in no event later than 5 years after July 26, 1990.

(2) New intercity cars

(A) General rule

Except as otherwise provided in this subsection with respect to individuals who use wheelchairs, it shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a person to purchase or lease any new rail passenger cars for use in intercity rail transportation, and for which a solicitation is made later than 30 days after July 26, 1990, unless all such rail cars are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, as prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation in regulations issued under section 12164 of this title.

(B) Special rule for single-level passenger coaches for individuals who use wheelchairs

Single-level passenger coaches shall be required to—

(i) be able to be entered by an individual who uses a wheelchair;

(ii) have space to park and secure a wheelchair;

(iii) have a seat to which a passenger in a wheelchair can transfer, and a space to fold and store such passenger's wheelchair; and

(iv) have a restroom usable by an individual who uses a wheelchair,

only to the extent provided in paragraph (3).

(C) Special rule for single-level dining cars for individuals who use wheelchairs

Single-level dining cars shall not be required to—

(i) be able to be entered from the station platform by an individual who uses a wheelchair; or

(ii) have a restroom usable by an individual who uses a wheelchair if no restroom is provided in such car for any passenger.

(D) Special rule for bi-level dining cars for individuals who use wheelchairs

Bi-level dining cars shall not be required to—

(i) be able to be entered by an individual who uses a wheelchair;

(ii) have space to park and secure a wheelchair;

(iii) have a seat to which a passenger in a wheelchair can transfer, or a space to fold and store such passenger's wheelchair; or

(iv) have a restroom usable by an individual who uses a wheelchair.

(3) Accessibility of single-level coaches

(A) General rule

It shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a person who provides intercity rail transportation to fail to have on each train which includes one or more single-level rail passenger coaches—

(i) a number of spaces—

(I) to park and secure wheelchairs (to accommodate individuals who wish to remain in their wheelchairs) equal to not less than one-half of the number of single-level rail passenger coaches in such train; and

(II) to fold and store wheelchairs (to accommodate individuals who wish to transfer to coach seats) equal to not less than one-half of the number of single-level rail passenger coaches in such train,

as soon as practicable, but in no event later than 5 years after July 26, 1990; and

(ii) a number of spaces—

(I) to park and secure wheelchairs (to accommodate individuals who wish to remain in their wheelchairs) equal to not less than the total number of single-level rail passenger coaches in such train; and

(II) to fold and store wheelchairs (to accommodate individuals who wish to transfer to coach seats) equal to not less than the total number of single-level rail passenger coaches in such train,

as soon as practicable, but in no event later than 10 years after July 26, 1990.

(B) Location

Spaces required by subparagraph (A) shall be located in single-level rail passenger coaches or food service cars.

(C) Limitation

Of the number of spaces required on a train by subparagraph (A), not more than two spaces to park and secure wheelchairs nor more than two spaces to fold and store wheelchairs shall be located in any one coach or food service car.

(D) Other accessibility features

Single-level rail passenger coaches and food service cars on which the spaces required by subparagraph (A) are located shall have a restroom usable by an individual who uses a wheelchair and shall be able to be entered from the station platform by an individual who uses a wheelchair.

(4) Food service

(A) Single-level dining cars

On any train in which a single-level dining car is used to provide food service—

(i) if such single-level dining car was purchased after July 26, 1990, table service in such car shall be provided to a passenger who uses a wheelchair if—

(I) the car adjacent to the end of the dining car through which a wheelchair may enter is itself accessible to a wheelchair;

(II) such passenger can exit to the platform from the car such passenger occupies, move down the platform, and enter the adjacent accessible car described in subclause (I) without the necessity of the train being moved within the station; and

(III) space to park and secure a wheelchair is available in the dining car at the time such passenger wishes to eat (if such passenger wishes to remain in a wheelchair), or space to store and fold a wheelchair is available in the dining car at the time such passenger wishes to eat (if such passenger wishes to transfer to a dining car seat); and

(ii) appropriate auxiliary aids and services, including a hard surface on which to eat, shall be provided to ensure that other equivalent food service is available to individuals with

disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, and to passengers traveling with such individuals.

Unless not practicable, a person providing intercity rail transportation shall place an accessible car adjacent to the end of a dining car described in clause (i) through which an individual who uses a wheelchair may enter.

(B) Bi-level dining cars

On any train in which a bi-level dining car is used to provide food service—

(i) if such train includes a bi-level lounge car purchased after July 26, 1990, table service in such lounge car shall be provided to individuals who use wheelchairs and to other passengers; and

(ii) appropriate auxiliary aids and services, including a hard surface on which to eat, shall be provided to ensure that other equivalent food service is available to individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, and to passengers traveling with such individuals.

(b) Commuter rail transportation

(1) One car per train rule

It shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a person who provides commuter rail transportation to fail to have at least one passenger car per train that is readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, in accordance with regulations issued under section 12164 of this title, as soon as practicable, but in no event later than 5 years after July 26, 1990.

(2) New commuter rail cars

(A) General rule

It shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a person to purchase or lease any new rail passenger cars for use in commuter rail transportation, and for which a solicitation is made later than 30 days after July 26, 1990, unless all such rail cars are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, as prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation in regulations issued under section 12164 of this title.

(B) Accessibility

For purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29, a requirement that a rail passenger car used in commuter rail transportation be accessible to or readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, shall not be construed to require—

(i) a restroom usable by an individual who uses a wheelchair if no restroom is provided in such car for any passenger;

(ii) space to fold and store a wheelchair; or

(iii) a seat to which a passenger who uses a wheelchair can transfer.

(c) Used rail cars

It shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a person to purchase or lease a used rail passenger car for use in intercity or commuter rail transportation, unless such person makes demonstrated good faith efforts to purchase or lease a used rail car that is readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, as prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation in regulations issued under section 12164 of this title.

(d) Remanufactured rail cars

(1) Remanufacturing

It shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a person to remanufacture a rail passenger car for use in intercity or commuter rail transportation so as to extend its usable life for 10 years or more, unless the rail car, to the maximum extent feasible, is made readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, as prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation in regulations issued under section 12164 of this title.

(2) Purchase or lease

It shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a person to purchase or lease a remanufactured rail passenger car for use in intercity or commuter rail transportation unless such car was remanufactured in accordance with paragraph (1).

(e) Stations

(1) New stations

It shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a person to build a new station for use in intercity or commuter rail transportation that is not readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, as prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation in regulations issued under section 12164 of this title.

(2) Existing stations

(A) Failure to make readily accessible

(i) General rule

It shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for a responsible person to fail to make existing stations in the intercity rail transportation system, and existing key stations in commuter rail transportation systems, readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, as prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation in regulations issued under section 12164 of this title.

(ii) Period for compliance

(I) Intercity rail

All stations in the intercity rail transportation system shall be made readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, as soon as practicable, but in no event later than 20 years after July 26, 1990.

(II) Commuter rail

Key stations in commuter rail transportation systems shall be made readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, as soon as practicable but in no event later than 3 years after July 26, 1990, except that the time limit may be extended by the Secretary of Transportation up to 20 years after July 26, 1990, in a case where the raising of the entire passenger platform is the only means available of attaining accessibility or where other extraordinarily expensive structural changes are necessary to attain accessibility.

(iii) Designation of key stations

Each commuter authority shall designate the key stations in its commuter rail transportation system, in consultation with individuals with disabilities and organizations representing such individuals, taking into consideration such factors as high ridership and whether such station serves as a transfer or feeder station. Before the final designation of key stations under this clause, a commuter authority shall hold a public hearing.

(iv) Plans and milestones

The Secretary of Transportation shall require the appropriate person to develop a plan for carrying out this subparagraph that reflects consultation with individuals with disabilities affected by such plan and that establishes milestones for achievement of the requirements of this subparagraph.

(B) Requirement when making alterations

(i) General rule

It shall be considered discrimination, for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29, with respect to alterations of an existing station or part thereof in the intercity or commuter rail transportation systems that affect or could affect the usability of the station or part thereof, for the responsible person, owner, or person in control of the station to fail to make the alterations in such a manner that, to the maximum extent feasible, the altered portions of the station are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, upon completion of such alterations.

(ii) Alterations to a primary function area

It shall be considered discrimination, for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29, with respect to alterations that affect or could affect the usability of or access to an area of the station containing a primary function, for the responsible person, owner, or person in control of the station to fail to make the alterations in such a manner that, to the maximum extent feasible, the path of travel to the altered area, and the bathrooms, telephones, and drinking fountains serving the altered area, are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, upon completion of such alterations, where such alterations to the path of travel or the bathrooms, telephones, and drinking fountains serving the altered area are not disproportionate to the overall alterations in terms of cost and scope (as determined under criteria established by the Attorney General).

(C) Required cooperation

It shall be considered discrimination for purposes of section 12132 of this title and section 794 of title 29 for an owner, or person in control, of a station governed by subparagraph (A) or (B) to fail to provide reasonable cooperation to a responsible person with respect to such station in that responsible person's efforts to comply with such subparagraph. An owner, or person in control, of a station shall be liable to a responsible person for any failure to provide reasonable cooperation as required by this subparagraph. Failure to receive reasonable cooperation required by this subparagraph shall not be a defense to a claim of discrimination under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §242, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 347.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (e)(2)(C), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective July 26, 1990, see section 246(b) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12161 of this title.

§12163. Conformance of accessibility standards

Accessibility standards included in regulations issued under this subpart shall be consistent with the minimum guidelines issued by the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board under section 12204(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §243, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 352.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 18 months after July 26, 1990, see section 246(a) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12161 of this title.

§12164. Regulations

Not later than 1 year after July 26, 1990, the Secretary of Transportation shall issue regulations, in an accessible format, necessary for carrying out this subpart.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §244, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 352.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective July 26, 1990, see section 246(b) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12161 of this title.

§12165. Interim accessibility requirements

(a) Stations

If final regulations have not been issued pursuant to section 12164 of this title, for new construction or alterations for which a valid and appropriate State or local building permit is obtained prior to the issuance of final regulations under such section, and for which the construction or alteration authorized by such permit begins within one year of the receipt of such permit and is completed under the terms of such permit, compliance with the Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards in effect at the time the building permit is issued shall suffice to satisfy the requirement that stations be readily accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities as required under section 12162(e) of this title, except that, if such final regulations have not been issued one year after the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board has issued the supplemental minimum guidelines required under section 12204(a) of this title, compliance with such supplemental minimum guidelines shall be necessary to satisfy the requirement that stations be readily accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities prior to issuance of the final regulations.

(b) Rail passenger cars

If final regulations have not been issued pursuant to section 12164 of this title, a person shall be considered to have complied with the requirements of section 12162(a) through (d) of this title that a rail passenger car be readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, if the design for such car complies with the laws and regulations (including the Minimum Guidelines and Requirements for Accessible Design and such supplemental minimum guidelines as are issued under section 12204(a) of this title) governing accessibility of such cars, to the extent that such laws and regulations are not inconsistent with this subpart and are in effect at the time such design is substantially completed.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title II, §245, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 352.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 18 months after July 26, 1990, see section 246(a) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12161 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER III—PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS AND SERVICES OPERATED BY PRIVATE ENTITIES

§12181. Definitions

As used in this subchapter:

(1) Commerce

The term "commerce" means travel, trade, traffic, commerce, transportation, or communication—

(A) among the several States;

(B) between any foreign country or any territory or possession and any State; or

(C) between points in the same State but through another State or foreign country.

(2) Commercial facilities

The term "commercial facilities" means facilities—

(A) that are intended for nonresidential use; and

(B) whose operations will affect commerce.

Such term shall not include railroad locomotives, railroad freight cars, railroad cabooses, railroad cars described in section 12162 of this title or covered under this subchapter, railroad rights-of-way, or facilities that are covered or expressly exempted from coverage under the Fair Housing Act of 1968 [1] (42 U.S.C. 3601 et seq.).

(3) Demand responsive system

The term "demand responsive system" means any system of providing transportation of individuals by a vehicle, other than a system which is a fixed route system.

(4) Fixed route system

The term "fixed route system" means a system of providing transportation of individuals (other than by aircraft) on which a vehicle is operated along a prescribed route according to a fixed schedule.

(5) Over-the-road bus

The term "over-the-road bus" means a bus characterized by an elevated passenger deck located over a baggage compartment.

(6) Private entity

The term "private entity" means any entity other than a public entity (as defined in section 12131(1) of this title).

(7) Public accommodation

The following private entities are considered public accommodations for purposes of this subchapter, if the operations of such entities affect commerce—

(A) an inn, hotel, motel, or other place of lodging, except for an establishment located within a building that contains not more than five rooms for rent or hire and that is actually occupied by the proprietor of such establishment as the residence of such proprietor;

(B) a restaurant, bar, or other establishment serving food or drink;

(C) a motion picture house, theater, concert hall, stadium, or other place of exhibition or entertainment;

(D) an auditorium, convention center, lecture hall, or other place of public gathering;

(E) a bakery, grocery store, clothing store, hardware store, shopping center, or other sales or rental establishment;

(F) a laundromat, dry-cleaner, bank, barber shop, beauty shop, travel service, shoe repair service, funeral parlor, gas station, office of an accountant or lawyer, pharmacy, insurance office, professional office of a health care provider, hospital, or other service establishment;

(G) a terminal, depot, or other station used for specified public transportation;

(H) a museum, library, gallery, or other place of public display or collection;

(I) a park, zoo, amusement park, or other place of recreation;

(J) a nursery, elementary, secondary, undergraduate, or postgraduate private school, or other place of education;

(K) a day care center, senior citizen center, homeless shelter, food bank, adoption agency, or

other social service center establishment; and

(L) a gymnasium, health spa, bowling alley, golf course, or other place of exercise or recreation.

(8) Rail and railroad

The terms "rail" and "railroad" have the meaning given the term "railroad" in section 20102(1) [1] of title 49.

(9) Readily achievable

The term "readily achievable" means easily accomplishable and able to be carried out without much difficulty or expense. In determining whether an action is readily achievable, factors to be considered include—

(A) the nature and cost of the action needed under this chapter;

(B) the overall financial resources of the facility or facilities involved in the action; the number of persons employed at such facility; the effect on expenses and resources, or the impact otherwise of such action upon the operation of the facility;

(C) the overall financial resources of the covered entity; the overall size of the business of a covered entity with respect to the number of its employees; the number, type, and location of its facilities; and

(D) the type of operation or operations of the covered entity, including the composition, structure, and functions of the workforce of such entity; the geographic separateness, administrative or fiscal relationship of the facility or facilities in question to the covered entity.

(10) Specified public transportation

The term "specified public transportation" means transportation by bus, rail, or any other conveyance (other than by aircraft) that provides the general public with general or special service (including charter service) on a regular and continuing basis.

(11) Vehicle

The term "vehicle" does not include a rail passenger car, railroad locomotive, railroad freight car, railroad caboose, or a railroad car described in section 12162 of this title or covered under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title III, §301, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 353.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Fair Housing Act of 1968, referred to in par. (2), probably means the Fair Housing Act, title VIII of Pub. L. 90–284, Apr. 11, 1968, 82 Stat. 81, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter I of chapter 45 (§3601 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

Section 20102(1) of title 49, referred to in par. (8), was redesignated section 20102(2) and a new section 20102(1) was added by Pub. L. 110–432, div. A, §2(b)(1), (2), Oct. 16, 2008, 122 Stat. 4850.

This chapter, referred to in par. (9)(A), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

In par. (8), "section 20102(1) of title 49" substituted for "section 202(e) of the Federal Railroad Safety Act of 1970 (45 U.S.C. 431(e))" on authority of Pub. L. 103–272, §6(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1378, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49, Transportation.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 101–336, title III, §310, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 365, provided that:

"(a) GENERAL RULE.—Except as provided in subsections (b) and (c), this title [enacting this subchapter] shall become effective 18 months after the date of the enactment of this Act [July 26, 1990].

"(b) CIVIL ACTIONS.—Except for any civil action brought for a violation of section 303 [section 12183 of this title], no civil action shall be brought for any act or omission described in section 302 [section 12182 of this title] which occurs—

"(1) during the first 6 months after the effective date, against businesses that employ 25 or fewer employees and have gross receipts of $1,000,000 or less; and

"(2) during the first year after the effective date, against businesses that employ 10 or fewer employees and have gross receipts of $500,000 or less.

"(c) EXCEPTION.—Sections 302(a) [section 12182(a) of this title] for purposes of section 302(b)(2)(B) and (C) only, 304(a) [section 12184(a) of this title] for purposes of section 304(b)(3) only, 304(b)(3), 305 [section 12185 of this title], and 306 [section 12186 of this title] shall take effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [July 26, 1990]."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12182. Prohibition of discrimination by public accommodations

(a) General rule

No individual shall be discriminated against on the basis of disability in the full and equal enjoyment of the goods, services, facilities, privileges, advantages, or accommodations of any place of public accommodation by any person who owns, leases (or leases to), or operates a place of public accommodation.

(b) Construction

(1) General prohibition

(A) Activities

(i) Denial of participation

It shall be discriminatory to subject an individual or class of individuals on the basis of a disability or disabilities of such individual or class, directly, or through contractual, licensing, or other arrangements, to a denial of the opportunity of the individual or class to participate in or benefit from the goods, services, facilities, privileges, advantages, or accommodations of an entity.

(ii) Participation in unequal benefit

It shall be discriminatory to afford an individual or class of individuals, on the basis of a disability or disabilities of such individual or class, directly, or through contractual, licensing, or other arrangements with the opportunity to participate in or benefit from a good, service, facility, privilege, advantage, or accommodation that is not equal to that afforded to other individuals.

(iii) Separate benefit

It shall be discriminatory to provide an individual or class of individuals, on the basis of a disability or disabilities of such individual or class, directly, or through contractual, licensing, or other arrangements with a good, service, facility, privilege, advantage, or accommodation that is different or separate from that provided to other individuals, unless such action is necessary to provide the individual or class of individuals with a good, service, facility, privilege, advantage, or accommodation, or other opportunity that is as effective as that provided to others.

(iv) Individual or class of individuals

For purposes of clauses (i) through (iii) of this subparagraph, the term "individual or class of individuals" refers to the clients or customers of the covered public accommodation that enters into the contractual, licensing or other arrangement.

(B) Integrated settings

Goods, services, facilities, privileges, advantages, and accommodations shall be afforded to an individual with a disability in the most integrated setting appropriate to the needs of the

individual.

(C) Opportunity to participate

Notwithstanding the existence of separate or different programs or activities provided in accordance with this section, an individual with a disability shall not be denied the opportunity to participate in such programs or activities that are not separate or different.

(D) Administrative methods

An individual or entity shall not, directly or through contractual or other arrangements, utilize standards or criteria or methods of administration—

(i) that have the effect of discriminating on the basis of disability; or

(ii) that perpetuate the discrimination of others who are subject to common administrative control.

(E) Association

It shall be discriminatory to exclude or otherwise deny equal goods, services, facilities, privileges, advantages, accommodations, or other opportunities to an individual or entity because of the known disability of an individual with whom the individual or entity is known to have a relationship or association.

(2) Specific prohibitions

(A) Discrimination

For purposes of subsection (a), discrimination includes—

(i) the imposition or application of eligibility criteria that screen out or tend to screen out an individual with a disability or any class of individuals with disabilities from fully and equally enjoying any goods, services, facilities, privileges, advantages, or accommodations, unless such criteria can be shown to be necessary for the provision of the goods, services, facilities, privileges, advantages, or accommodations being offered;

(ii) a failure to make reasonable modifications in policies, practices, or procedures, when such modifications are necessary to afford such goods, services, facilities, privileges, advantages, or accommodations to individuals with disabilities, unless the entity can demonstrate that making such modifications would fundamentally alter the nature of such goods, services, facilities, privileges, advantages, or accommodations;

(iii) a failure to take such steps as may be necessary to ensure that no individual with a disability is excluded, denied services, segregated or otherwise treated differently than other individuals because of the absence of auxiliary aids and services, unless the entity can demonstrate that taking such steps would fundamentally alter the nature of the good, service, facility, privilege, advantage, or accommodation being offered or would result in an undue burden;

(iv) a failure to remove architectural barriers, and communication barriers that are structural in nature, in existing facilities, and transportation barriers in existing vehicles and rail passenger cars used by an establishment for transporting individuals (not including barriers that can only be removed through the retrofitting of vehicles or rail passenger cars by the installation of a hydraulic or other lift), where such removal is readily achievable; and

(v) where an entity can demonstrate that the removal of a barrier under clause (iv) is not readily achievable, a failure to make such goods, services, facilities, privileges, advantages, or accommodations available through alternative methods if such methods are readily achievable.

(B) Fixed route system

(i) Accessibility

It shall be considered discrimination for a private entity which operates a fixed route system and which is not subject to section 12184 of this title to purchase or lease a vehicle with a seating capacity in excess of 16 passengers (including the driver) for use on such

system, for which a solicitation is made after the 30th day following the effective date of this subparagraph, that is not readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs.

(ii) Equivalent service

If a private entity which operates a fixed route system and which is not subject to section 12184 of this title purchases or leases a vehicle with a seating capacity of 16 passengers or less (including the driver) for use on such system after the effective date of this subparagraph that is not readily accessible to or usable by individuals with disabilities, it shall be considered discrimination for such entity to fail to operate such system so that, when viewed in its entirety, such system ensures a level of service to individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, equivalent to the level of service provided to individuals without disabilities.

(C) Demand responsive system

For purposes of subsection (a), discrimination includes—

(i) a failure of a private entity which operates a demand responsive system and which is not subject to section 12184 of this title to operate such system so that, when viewed in its entirety, such system ensures a level of service to individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs, equivalent to the level of service provided to individuals without disabilities; and

(ii) the purchase or lease by such entity for use on such system of a vehicle with a seating capacity in excess of 16 passengers (including the driver), for which solicitations are made after the 30th day following the effective date of this subparagraph, that is not readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities (including individuals who use wheelchairs) unless such entity can demonstrate that such system, when viewed in its entirety, provides a level of service to individuals with disabilities equivalent to that provided to individuals without disabilities.

(D) Over-the-road buses

(i) Limitation on applicability

Subparagraphs (B) and (C) do not apply to over-the-road buses.

(ii) Accessibility requirements

For purposes of subsection (a), discrimination includes (I) the purchase or lease of an over-the-road bus which does not comply with the regulations issued under section 12186(a)(2) of this title by a private entity which provides transportation of individuals and which is not primarily engaged in the business of transporting people, and (II) any other failure of such entity to comply with such regulations.

(3) Specific construction

Nothing in this subchapter shall require an entity to permit an individual to participate in or benefit from the goods, services, facilities, privileges, advantages and accommodations of such entity where such individual poses a direct threat to the health or safety of others. The term "direct threat" means a significant risk to the health or safety of others that cannot be eliminated by a modification of policies, practices, or procedures or by the provision of auxiliary aids or services.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title III, §302, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 355.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the effective date of this subparagraph, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(B), (C)(ii), see section 310 of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as an Effective Date note under section 12181 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 18 months after July 26, 1990, but with subsec. (a) of this section (for purposes of subsec. (b)(2)(B), (C) only) effective July 26, 1990, and with certain qualifications with respect to bringing of civil actions, see section 310 of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12181 of this title.

§12183. New construction and alterations in public accommodations and commercial facilities

(a) Application of term

Except as provided in subsection (b), as applied to public accommodations and commercial facilities, discrimination for purposes of section 12182(a) of this title includes—

(1) a failure to design and construct facilities for first occupancy later than 30 months after July 26, 1990, that are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, except where an entity can demonstrate that it is structurally impracticable to meet the requirements of such subsection in accordance with standards set forth or incorporated by reference in regulations issued under this subchapter; and

(2) with respect to a facility or part thereof that is altered by, on behalf of, or for the use of an establishment in a manner that affects or could affect the usability of the facility or part thereof, a failure to make alterations in such a manner that, to the maximum extent feasible, the altered portions of the facility are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs. Where the entity is undertaking an alteration that affects or could affect usability of or access to an area of the facility containing a primary function, the entity shall also make the alterations in such a manner that, to the maximum extent feasible, the path of travel to the altered area and the bathrooms, telephones, and drinking fountains serving the altered area, are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities where such alterations to the path of travel or the bathrooms, telephones, and drinking fountains serving the altered area are not disproportionate to the overall alterations in terms of cost and scope (as determined under criteria established by the Attorney General).

(b) Elevator

Subsection (a) shall not be construed to require the installation of an elevator for facilities that are less than three stories or have less than 3,000 square feet per story unless the building is a shopping center, a shopping mall, or the professional office of a health care provider or unless the Attorney General determines that a particular category of such facilities requires the installation of elevators based on the usage of such facilities.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title III, §303, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 358.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 18 months after July 26, 1990, see section 310(a), (b) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12181 of this title.

§12184. Prohibition of discrimination in specified public transportation services provided by private entities

(a) General rule

No individual shall be discriminated against on the basis of disability in the full and equal enjoyment of specified public transportation services provided by a private entity that is primarily engaged in the business of transporting people and whose operations affect commerce.

(b) Construction

For purposes of subsection (a), discrimination includes—

(1) the imposition or application by a [1] entity described in subsection (a) of eligibility criteria that screen out or tend to screen out an individual with a disability or any class of individuals with disabilities from fully enjoying the specified public transportation services provided by the entity, unless such criteria can be shown to be necessary for the provision of the services being offered;

(2) the failure of such entity to—

(A) make reasonable modifications consistent with those required under section 12182(b)(2)(A)(ii) of this title;

(B) provide auxiliary aids and services consistent with the requirements of section 12182(b)(2)(A)(iii) of this title; and

(C) remove barriers consistent with the requirements of section 12182(b)(2)(A) of this title and with the requirements of section 12183(a)(2) of this title;

(3) the purchase or lease by such entity of a new vehicle (other than an automobile, a van with a seating capacity of less than 8 passengers, including the driver, or an over-the-road bus) which is to be used to provide specified public transportation and for which a solicitation is made after the 30th day following the effective date of this section, that is not readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs; except that the new vehicle need not be readily accessible to and usable by such individuals if the new vehicle is to be used solely in a demand responsive system and if the entity can demonstrate that such system, when viewed in its entirety, provides a level of service to such individuals equivalent to the level of service provided to the general public;

(4)(A) the purchase or lease by such entity of an over-the-road bus which does not comply with the regulations issued under section 12186(a)(2) of this title; and

(B) any other failure of such entity to comply with such regulations; and [2]

(5) the purchase or lease by such entity of a new van with a seating capacity of less than 8 passengers, including the driver, which is to be used to provide specified public transportation and for which a solicitation is made after the 30th day following the effective date of this section that is not readily accessible to or usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs; except that the new van need not be readily accessible to and usable by such individuals if the entity can demonstrate that the system for which the van is being purchased or leased, when viewed in its entirety, provides a level of service to such individuals equivalent to the level of service provided to the general public;

(6) the purchase or lease by such entity of a new rail passenger car that is to be used to provide specified public transportation, and for which a solicitation is made later than 30 days after the effective date of this paragraph, that is not readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs; and

(7) the remanufacture by such entity of a rail passenger car that is to be used to provide specified public transportation so as to extend its usable life for 10 years or more, or the purchase or lease by such entity of such a rail car, unless the rail car, to the maximum extent feasible, is made readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs.

(c) Historical or antiquated cars

(1) Exception

To the extent that compliance with subsection (b)(2)(C) or (b)(7) would significantly alter the historic or antiquated character of a historical or antiquated rail passenger car, or a rail station served exclusively by such cars, or would result in violation of any rule, regulation, standard, or order issued by the Secretary of Transportation under the Federal Railroad Safety Act of 1970, such compliance shall not be required.

(2) Definition

As used in this subsection, the term "historical or antiquated rail passenger car" means a rail passenger car—

(A) which is not less than 30 years old at the time of its use for transporting individuals;

(B) the manufacturer of which is no longer in the business of manufacturing rail passenger cars; and

(C) which—

(i) has a consequential association with events or persons significant to the past; or

(ii) embodies, or is being restored to embody, the distinctive characteristics of a type of rail passenger car used in the past, or to represent a time period which has passed.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title III, §304, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 359.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the effective date of this section, referred to in subsec. (b)(3), (5), see section 310 of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as an Effective Date note under section 12181 of this title.

The effective date of this paragraph, referred to in subsec. (b)(6), is 18 months after July 26, 1990, see section 310(a) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as an Effective Date note under section 12181 of this title.

The Federal Railroad Safety Act of 1970, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), is title II of Pub. L. 91–458, Oct. 16, 1970, 84 Stat. 971, as amended, which was classified generally to subchapter II (§431 et seq.) of chapter 13 of Title 45, Railroads, and was repealed and reenacted in section 5109(c) of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, section 54a of Title 45, Railroads, chapter 201 and sections 21301, 21302, 21304, 21311, 24902, and 24905 of Title 49, Transportation, and provisions set out as a note under section 20103 of Title 49 by Pub. L. 103–272, §§1(e), 4(b)(1), (i), (t), 7(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 862, 891, 893, 930, 935, 1361, 1365, 1372, 1379, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 18 months after July 26, 1990, but with subsec. (a) of this section (for purposes of subsec. (b)(3) only) and subsec. (b)(3) of this section effective July 26, 1990, see section 310(a), (c) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12181 of this title.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "an".

[2] So in original. The word "and" probably should not appear.

§12185. Study

(a) Purposes

The Office of Technology Assessment shall undertake a study to determine—

(1) the access needs of individuals with disabilities to over-the-road buses and over-the-road bus service; and

(2) the most cost-effective methods for providing access to over-the-road buses and over-the-road bus service to individuals with disabilities, particularly individuals who use wheelchairs, through all forms of boarding options.

(b) Contents

The study shall include, at a minimum, an analysis of the following:

(1) The anticipated demand by individuals with disabilities for accessible over-the-road buses and over-the-road bus service.

(2) The degree to which such buses and service, including any service required under sections 12184(b)(4) and 12186(a)(2) of this title, are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities.

(3) The effectiveness of various methods of providing accessibility to such buses and service to individuals with disabilities.

(4) The cost of providing accessible over-the-road buses and bus service to individuals with disabilities, including consideration of recent technological and cost saving developments in equipment and devices.

(5) Possible design changes in over-the-road buses that could enhance accessibility, including the installation of accessible restrooms which do not result in a loss of seating capacity.

(6) The impact of accessibility requirements on the continuation of over-the-road bus service, with particular consideration of the impact of such requirements on such service to rural communities.

(c) Advisory committee

In conducting the study required by subsection (a), the Office of Technology Assessment shall establish an advisory committee, which shall consist of—

(1) members selected from among private operators and manufacturers of over-the-road buses;

(2) members selected from among individuals with disabilities, particularly individuals who use wheelchairs, who are potential riders of such buses; and

(3) members selected for their technical expertise on issues included in the study, including manufacturers of boarding assistance equipment and devices.

The number of members selected under each of paragraphs (1) and (2) shall be equal, and the total number of members selected under paragraphs (1) and (2) shall exceed the number of members selected under paragraph (3).

(d) Deadline

The study required by subsection (a), along with recommendations by the Office of Technology Assessment, including any policy options for legislative action, shall be submitted to the President and Congress within 36 months after July 26, 1990. If the President determines that compliance with the regulations issued pursuant to section 12186(a)(2)(B) of this title on or before the applicable deadlines specified in section 12186(a)(2)(B) of this title will result in a significant reduction in intercity over-the-road bus service, the President shall extend each such deadline by 1 year.

(e) Review

In developing the study required by subsection (a), the Office of Technology Assessment shall provide a preliminary draft of such study to the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board established under section 792 of title 29. The Board shall have an opportunity to comment on such draft study, and any such comments by the Board made in writing within 120 days after the Board's receipt of the draft study shall be incorporated as part of the final study required to be submitted under subsection (d).

(Pub. L. 101–336, title III, §305, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 360.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective July 26, 1990, see section 310(c) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12181 of this title.

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES

Advisory committees established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless, in the case of a committee established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee established by Congress, its duration is otherwise provided for by law. See section 14 of Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§12186. Regulations

(a) Transportation provisions

(1) General rule

Not later than 1 year after July 26, 1990, the Secretary of Transportation shall issue regulations in an accessible format to carry out sections [1] 12182(b)(2)(B) and (C) of this title and to carry out section 12184 of this title (other than subsection (b)(4)).

(2) Special rules for providing access to over-the-road buses

(A) Interim requirements

(i) Issuance

Not later than 1 year after July 26, 1990, the Secretary of Transportation shall issue regulations in an accessible format to carry out sections 12184(b)(4) and 12182(b)(2)(D)(ii) of this title that require each private entity which uses an over-the-road bus to provide transportation of individuals to provide accessibility to such bus; except that such regulations shall not require any structural changes in over-the-road buses in order to provide access to individuals who use wheelchairs during the effective period of such regulations and shall not require the purchase of boarding assistance devices to provide access to such individuals.

(ii) Effective period

The regulations issued pursuant to this subparagraph shall be effective until the effective date of the regulations issued under subparagraph (B).

(B) Final requirement

(i) Review of study and interim requirements

The Secretary shall review the study submitted under section 12185 of this title and the regulations issued pursuant to subparagraph (A).

(ii) Issuance

Not later than 1 year after the date of the submission of the study under section 12185 of this title, the Secretary shall issue in an accessible format new regulations to carry out sections 12184(b)(4) and 12182(b)(2)(D)(ii) of this title that require, taking into account the purposes of the study under section 12185 of this title and any recommendations resulting from such study, each private entity which uses an over-the-road bus to provide transportation to individuals to provide accessibility to such bus to individuals with disabilities, including individuals who use wheelchairs.

(iii) Effective period

Subject to section 12185(d) of this title, the regulations issued pursuant to this subparagraph shall take effect—

(I) with respect to small providers of transportation (as defined by the Secretary), 3 years after the date of issuance of final regulations under clause (ii); and

(II) with respect to other providers of transportation, 2 years after the date of issuance of such final regulations.

(C) Limitation on requiring installation of accessible restrooms

The regulations issued pursuant to this paragraph shall not require the installation of accessible restrooms in over-the-road buses if such installation would result in a loss of seating capacity.

(3) Standards

The regulations issued pursuant to this subsection shall include standards applicable to facilities and vehicles covered by sections 12182(b)(2) and 12184 of this title.

(b) Other provisions

Not later than 1 year after July 26, 1990, the Attorney General shall issue regulations in an accessible format to carry out the provisions of this subchapter not referred to in subsection (a) that include standards applicable to facilities and vehicles covered under section 12182 of this title.

(c) Consistency with ATBCB guidelines

Standards included in regulations issued under subsections (a) and (b) shall be consistent with the minimum guidelines and requirements issued by the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board in accordance with section 12204 of this title.

(d) Interim accessibility standards

(1) Facilities

If final regulations have not been issued pursuant to this section, for new construction or

alterations for which a valid and appropriate State or local building permit is obtained prior to the issuance of final regulations under this section, and for which the construction or alteration authorized by such permit begins within one year of the receipt of such permit and is completed under the terms of such permit, compliance with the Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards in effect at the time the building permit is issued shall suffice to satisfy the requirement that facilities be readily accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities as required under section 12183 of this title, except that, if such final regulations have not been issued one year after the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board has issued the supplemental minimum guidelines required under section 12204(a) of this title, compliance with such supplemental minimum guidelines shall be necessary to satisfy the requirement that facilities be readily accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities prior to issuance of the final regulations.

(2) Vehicles and rail passenger cars

If final regulations have not been issued pursuant to this section, a private entity shall be considered to have complied with the requirements of this subchapter, if any, that a vehicle or rail passenger car be readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, if the design for such vehicle or car complies with the laws and regulations (including the Minimum Guidelines and Requirements for Accessible Design and such supplemental minimum guidelines as are issued under section 12204(a) of this title) governing accessibility of such vehicles or cars, to the extent that such laws and regulations are not inconsistent with this subchapter and are in effect at the time such design is substantially completed.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title III, §306, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 361; Pub. L. 104–59, title III, §341, Nov. 28, 1995, 109 Stat. 608.)

AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (a)(2)(B)(iii). Pub. L. 104–59 substituted "3 years after the date of issuance of final regulations under clause (ii)" for "7 years after July 26, 1990" in subcl. (I) and "2 years after the date of issuance of such final regulations" for "6 years after July 26, 1990" in subcl. (II).

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective July 26, 1990, see section 310(c) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12181 of this title.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "section".*

§12187. Exemptions for private clubs and religious organizations

The provisions of this subchapter shall not apply to private clubs or establishments exempted from coverage under title II of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. 2000–a(e)) [42 U.S.C. 2000a et seq.] or to religious organizations or entities controlled by religious organizations, including places of worship.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title III, §307, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 363.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Civil Rights Act of 1964, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 88–352, July 2, 1964, 78 Stat. 241, as amended. Title II of the Act is classified generally to subchapter II (§2000a et seq.) of chapter 21 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2000a of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 18 months after July 26, 1990, see section 310(a) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12181 of this title.

§12188. Enforcement

(a) In general

(1) Availability of remedies and procedures

The remedies and procedures set forth in section 2000a–3(a) of this title are the remedies and procedures this subchapter provides to any person who is being subjected to discrimination on the basis of disability in violation of this subchapter or who has reasonable grounds for believing that such person is about to be subjected to discrimination in violation of section 12183 of this title. Nothing in this section shall require a person with a disability to engage in a futile gesture if such person has actual notice that a person or organization covered by this subchapter does not intend to comply with its provisions.

(2) Injunctive relief

In the case of violations of sections 12182(b)(2)(A)(iv) and section [1] 12183(a) of this title, injunctive relief shall include an order to alter facilities to make such facilities readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities to the extent required by this subchapter. Where appropriate, injunctive relief shall also include requiring the provision of an auxiliary aid or service, modification of a policy, or provision of alternative methods, to the extent required by this subchapter.

(b) Enforcement by Attorney General

(1) Denial of rights

(A) Duty to investigate

(i) In general

The Attorney General shall investigate alleged violations of this subchapter, and shall undertake periodic reviews of compliance of covered entities under this subchapter.

(ii) Attorney General certification

On the application of a State or local government, the Attorney General may, in consultation with the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board, and after prior notice and a public hearing at which persons, including individuals with disabilities, are provided an opportunity to testify against such certification, certify that a State law or local building code or similar ordinance that establishes accessibility requirements meets or exceeds the minimum requirements of this chapter for the accessibility and usability of covered facilities under this subchapter. At any enforcement proceeding under this section, such certification by the Attorney General shall be rebuttable evidence that such State law or local ordinance does meet or exceed the minimum requirements of this chapter.

(B) Potential violation

If the Attorney General has reasonable cause to believe that—

(i) any person or group of persons is engaged in a pattern or practice of discrimination under this subchapter; or

(ii) any person or group of persons has been discriminated against under this subchapter and such discrimination raises an issue of general public importance,

the Attorney General may commence a civil action in any appropriate United States district court.

(2) Authority of court

In a civil action under paragraph (1)(B), the court—

(A) may grant any equitable relief that such court considers to be appropriate, including, to the extent required by this subchapter—

(i) granting temporary, preliminary, or permanent relief;

(ii) providing an auxiliary aid or service, modification of policy, practice, or procedure, or

alternative method; and

(iii) making facilities readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities;

(B) may award such other relief as the court considers to be appropriate, including monetary damages to persons aggrieved when requested by the Attorney General; and

(C) may, to vindicate the public interest, assess a civil penalty against the entity in an amount—

(i) not exceeding $50,000 for a first violation; and

(ii) not exceeding $100,000 for any subsequent violation.

(3) Single violation

For purposes of paragraph (2)(C), in determining whether a first or subsequent violation has occurred, a determination in a single action, by judgment or settlement, that the covered entity has engaged in more than one discriminatory act shall be counted as a single violation.

(4) Punitive damages

For purposes of subsection (b)(2)(B), the term "monetary damages" and "such other relief" does not include punitive damages.

(5) Judicial consideration

In a civil action under paragraph (1)(B), the court, when considering what amount of civil penalty, if any, is appropriate, shall give consideration to any good faith effort or attempt to comply with this chapter by the entity. In evaluating good faith, the court shall consider, among other factors it deems relevant, whether the entity could have reasonably anticipated the need for an appropriate type of auxiliary aid needed to accommodate the unique needs of a particular individual with a disability.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title III, §308, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 363.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(A)(ii), (5), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 18 months after July 26, 1990, see section 310(a) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12181 of this title.

CIVIL ACTIONS FOR VIOLATIONS BY PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS

For provisions directing that, except for any civil action brought for a violation of section 12183 of this title, no civil action shall be brought for any act or omission described in section 12182 of this title which occurs (1) during the first six months after the effective date of this subchapter, against businesses that employ 25 or fewer employees and have gross receipts of $1,000,000 or less, and (2) during the first year after the effective date, against businesses that employ 10 or fewer employees and have gross receipts of $500,000 or less, see section 310(b) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as an Effective Date note under section 12181 of this title.

[1] So in original. The word "section" probably should not appear.

§12189. Examinations and courses

Any person that offers examinations or courses related to applications, licensing, certification, or credentialing for secondary or postsecondary education, professional, or trade purposes shall offer such examinations or courses in a place and manner accessible to persons with disabilities or offer alternative accessible arrangements for such individuals.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title III, §309, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 365.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 18 months after July 26, 1990, see section 310(a) of Pub. L. 101–336, set out as a note under section 12181 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER IV—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§12201. Construction

(a) In general

Except as otherwise provided in this chapter, nothing in this chapter shall be construed to apply a lesser standard than the standards applied under title V of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 790 et seq.) or the regulations issued by Federal agencies pursuant to such title.

(b) Relationship to other laws

Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to invalidate or limit the remedies, rights, and procedures of any Federal law or law of any State or political subdivision of any State or jurisdiction that provides greater or equal protection for the rights of individuals with disabilities than are afforded by this chapter. Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to preclude the prohibition of, or the imposition of restrictions on, smoking in places of employment covered by subchapter I, in transportation covered by subchapter II or III, or in places of public accommodation covered by subchapter III.

(c) Insurance

Subchapters I through III of this chapter and title IV of this Act shall not be construed to prohibit or restrict—

(1) an insurer, hospital or medical service company, health maintenance organization, or any agent, or entity that administers benefit plans, or similar organizations from underwriting risks, classifying risks, or administering such risks that are based on or not inconsistent with State law; or

(2) a person or organization covered by this chapter from establishing, sponsoring, observing or administering the terms of a bona fide benefit plan that are based on underwriting risks, classifying risks, or administering such risks that are based on or not inconsistent with State law; or

(3) a person or organization covered by this chapter from establishing, sponsoring, observing or administering the terms of a bona fide benefit plan that is not subject to State laws that regulate insurance.

Paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) shall not be used as a subterfuge to evade the purposes of subchapter [1] I and III.

(d) Accommodations and services

Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to require an individual with a disability to accept an accommodation, aid, service, opportunity, or benefit which such individual chooses not to accept.

(e) Benefits under State worker's compensation laws

Nothing in this chapter alters the standards for determining eligibility for benefits under State worker's compensation laws or under State and Federal disability benefit programs.

(f) Fundamental alteration

Nothing in this chapter alters the provision of section 12182(b)(2)(A)(ii) of this title, specifying that reasonable modifications in policies, practices, or procedures shall be required, unless an entity can demonstrate that making such modifications in policies, practices, or procedures, including

academic requirements in postsecondary education, would fundamentally alter the nature of the goods, services, facilities, privileges, advantages, or accommodations involved.

(g) Claims of no disability

Nothing in this chapter shall provide the basis for a claim by an individual without a disability that the individual was subject to discrimination because of the individual's lack of disability.

(h) Reasonable accommodations and modifications

A covered entity under subchapter I, a public entity under subchapter II, and any person who owns, leases (or leases to), or operates a place of public accommodation under subchapter III, need not provide a reasonable accommodation or a reasonable modification to policies, practices, or procedures to an individual who meets the definition of disability in section 12102(1) of this title solely under subparagraph (C) of such section.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §501, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 369; Pub. L. 110–325, §6(a)(1), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3557.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

The Rehabilitation Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 93–112, Sept. 26, 1973, 87 Stat. 355, as amended. Title V of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 is classified generally to subchapter V (§790 et seq.) of chapter 16 of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 701 of Title 29 and Tables.

Title IV of this Act, referred to in subsec. (c), means title IV of Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 366, which enacted section 225 of Title 47, Telecommunications, and amended sections 152, 221, and 611 of Title 47.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsecs. (e) to (h). Pub. L. 110–325 added subsecs. (e) to (h).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–325 effective Jan. 1, 2009, see section 8 of Pub. L. 110–325, set out as a note under section 705 of Title 29, Labor.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "subchapters".

§12202. State immunity

A State shall not be immune under the eleventh amendment to the Constitution of the United States from an action in [1] Federal or State court of competent jurisdiction for a violation of this chapter. In any action against a State for a violation of the requirements of this chapter, remedies (including remedies both at law and in equity) are available for such a violation to the same extent as such remedies are available for such a violation in an action against any public or private entity other than a State.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §502, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 370.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "in a".

§12203. Prohibition against retaliation and coercion

(a) Retaliation

No person shall discriminate against any individual because such individual has opposed any act or practice made unlawful by this chapter or because such individual made a charge, testified, assisted, or participated in any manner in an investigation, proceeding, or hearing under this chapter.

(b) Interference, coercion, or intimidation

It shall be unlawful to coerce, intimidate, threaten, or interfere with any individual in the exercise or enjoyment of, or on account of his or her having exercised or enjoyed, or on account of his or her having aided or encouraged any other individual in the exercise or enjoyment of, any right granted or protected by this chapter.

(c) Remedies and procedures

The remedies and procedures available under sections 12117, 12133, and 12188 of this title shall be available to aggrieved persons for violations of subsections (a) and (b), with respect to subchapter I, subchapter II and subchapter III, respectively.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §503, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 370.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

CONSTITUTIONALITY

For constitutionality of section 503 of Pub. L. 101–336, see Congressional Research Service, The Constitution of the United States of America: Analysis and Interpretation, Appendix 1, Acts of Congress Held Unconstitutional in Whole or in Part by the Supreme Court of the United States.

§12204. Regulations by Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board

(a) Issuance of guidelines

Not later than 9 months after July 26, 1990, the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board shall issue minimum guidelines that shall supplement the existing Minimum Guidelines and Requirements for Accessible Design for purposes of subchapters II and III of this chapter.

(b) Contents of guidelines

The supplemental guidelines issued under subsection (a) shall establish additional requirements, consistent with this chapter, to ensure that buildings, facilities, rail passenger cars, and vehicles are accessible, in terms of architecture and design, transportation, and communication, to individuals with disabilities.

(c) Qualified historic properties

(1) In general

The supplemental guidelines issued under subsection (a) shall include procedures and requirements for alterations that will threaten or destroy the historic significance of qualified historic buildings and facilities as defined in 4.1.7(1)(a) of the Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards.

(2) Sites eligible for listing in National Register

With respect to alterations of buildings or facilities that are eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places under division A of subtitle III of title 54, the guidelines described in paragraph (1) shall, at a minimum, maintain the procedures and requirements established in

4.1.7(1) and (2) of the Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards.

(3) Other sites

With respect to alterations of buildings or facilities designated as historic under State or local law, the guidelines described in paragraph (1) shall establish procedures equivalent to those established by 4.1.7(1)(b) and (c) of the Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards, and shall require, at a minimum, compliance with the requirements established in 4.1.7(2) of such standards.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §504, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 370; Pub. L. 113–287, §5(k)(5), Dec. 19, 2014, 128 Stat. 3270.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 113–287 substituted "division A of subtitle III of title 54" for "the National Historic Preservation Act (16 U.S.C. 470 et seq.)".

§12205. Attorney's fees

In any action or administrative proceeding commenced pursuant to this chapter, the court or agency, in its discretion, may allow the prevailing party, other than the United States, a reasonable attorney's fee, including litigation expenses, and costs, and the United States shall be liable for the foregoing the same as a private individual.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §505, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 371.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

§12205a. Rule of construction regarding regulatory authority

The authority to issue regulations granted to the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, the Attorney General, and the Secretary of Transportation under this chapter includes the authority to issue regulations implementing the definitions of disability in section 12102 of this title (including rules of construction) and the definitions in section 12103 of this title, consistent with the ADA Amendments Act of 2008.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §506, as added Pub. L. 110–325, §6(a)(2), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3558.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

The ADA Amendments Act of 2008, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 110–325, Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3553, which enacted this section and section 12103 of this title, amended sections 12101, 12102, 12111 to 12114, 12201, and 12206 to 12213 of this title and section 705 and former section 706 of Title 29, Labor, and enacted provisions set out as notes under section 12101 of this title and section 705 of Title 29. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2008 Amendment note under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 506 of Pub. L. 101–336 was renumbered section 507 and is classified to section 12206 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 2009, see section 8 of Pub. L. 110–325, set out as an Effective Date of 2008 Amendment note under section 705 of Title 29, Labor.

§12206. Technical assistance

(a) Plan for assistance

(1) In general

Not later than 180 days after July 26, 1990, the Attorney General, in consultation with the Chair of the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, the Secretary of Transportation, the Chair of the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board, and the Chairman of the Federal Communications Commission, shall develop a plan to assist entities covered under this chapter, and other Federal agencies, in understanding the responsibility of such entities and agencies under this chapter.

(2) Publication of plan

The Attorney General shall publish the plan referred to in paragraph (1) for public comment in accordance with subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5 (commonly known as the Administrative Procedure Act).

(b) Agency and public assistance

The Attorney General may obtain the assistance of other Federal agencies in carrying out subsection (a), including the National Council on Disability, the President's Committee on Employment of People with Disabilities, the Small Business Administration, and the Department of Commerce.

(c) Implementation

(1) Rendering assistance

Each Federal agency that has responsibility under paragraph (2) for implementing this chapter may render technical assistance to individuals and institutions that have rights or duties under the respective subchapter or subchapters of this chapter for which such agency has responsibility.

(2) Implementation of subchapters

(A) Subchapter I

The Equal Employment Opportunity Commission and the Attorney General shall implement the plan for assistance developed under subsection (a), for subchapter I.

(B) Subchapter II

(i) Part A

The Attorney General shall implement such plan for assistance for part A of subchapter II.

(ii) Part B

The Secretary of Transportation shall implement such plan for assistance for part B of subchapter II.

(C) Subchapter III

The Attorney General, in coordination with the Secretary of Transportation and the Chair of the Architectural Transportation Barriers Compliance Board, shall implement such plan for assistance for subchapter III, except for section 12184 of this title, the plan for assistance for which shall be implemented by the Secretary of Transportation.

(D) Title IV

The Chairman of the Federal Communications Commission, in coordination with the Attorney General, shall implement such plan for assistance for title IV.

(3) Technical assistance manuals

Each Federal agency that has responsibility under paragraph (2) for implementing this chapter shall, as part of its implementation responsibilities, ensure the availability and provision of appropriate technical assistance manuals to individuals or entities with rights or duties under this chapter no later than six months after applicable final regulations are published under subchapters I, II, and III and title IV.

(d) Grants and contracts

(1) In general

Each Federal agency that has responsibility under subsection (c)(2) for implementing this chapter may make grants or award contracts to effectuate the purposes of this section, subject to the availability of appropriations. Such grants and contracts may be awarded to individuals, institutions not organized for profit and no part of the net earnings of which inures to the benefit of any private shareholder or individual (including educational institutions), and associations representing individuals who have rights or duties under this chapter. Contracts may be awarded to entities organized for profit, but such entities may not be the recipients or [1] grants described in this paragraph.

(2) Dissemination of information

Such grants and contracts, among other uses, may be designed to ensure wide dissemination of information about the rights and duties established by this chapter and to provide information and technical assistance about techniques for effective compliance with this chapter.

(e) Failure to receive assistance

An employer, public accommodation, or other entity covered under this chapter shall not be excused from compliance with the requirements of this chapter because of any failure to receive technical assistance under this section, including any failure in the development or dissemination of any technical assistance manual authorized by this section.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §507, formerly §506, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 371; renumbered §507, Pub. L. 110–325, §6(a)(2), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3558.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (c)(1), (3), (d), and (e), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

Title IV, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(D), (3), means title IV of Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 366, which enacted section 225 of Title 47, Telecommunications, and amended sections 152, 221, and 611 of Title 47.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 507 of Pub. L. 101–336 was renumbered section 508 and is classified to section 12207 of this title.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "of".

§12207. Federal wilderness areas

(a) Study

The National Council on Disability shall conduct a study and report on the effect that wilderness designations and wilderness land management practices have on the ability of individuals with disabilities to use and enjoy the National Wilderness Preservation System as established under the Wilderness Act (16 U.S.C. 1131 et seq.).

(b) Submission of report

Not later than 1 year after July 26, 1990, the National Council on Disability shall submit the report required under subsection (a) to Congress.

(c) Specific wilderness access

(1) In general

Congress reaffirms that nothing in the Wilderness Act [16 U.S.C. 1131 et seq.] is to be construed as prohibiting the use of a wheelchair in a wilderness area by an individual whose disability requires use of a wheelchair, and consistent with the Wilderness Act no agency is required to provide any form of special treatment or accommodation, or to construct any facilities or modify any conditions of lands within a wilderness area in order to facilitate such use.

(2) "Wheelchair" defined

For purposes of paragraph (1), the term "wheelchair" means a device designed solely for use by a mobility-impaired person for locomotion, that is suitable for use in an indoor pedestrian area.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §508, formerly §507, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 372; renumbered §508, Pub. L. 110–325, §6(a)(2), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3558.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Wilderness Act, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (c)(1), is Pub. L. 88–577, Sept. 3, 1964, 78 Stat. 890, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 23 (§1131 et seq.) of Title 16, Conservation. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1131 of Title 16 and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 508 of Pub. L. 101–336 was renumbered section 509 and is classified to section 12208 of this title.

§12208. Transvestites

For the purposes of this chapter, the term "disabled" or "disability" shall not apply to an individual solely because that individual is a transvestite.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §509, formerly §508, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 373; renumbered §509, Pub. L. 110–325, §6(a)(2), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3558.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 509 of Pub. L. 101–336 was renumbered section 510 and is classified to section 12209 of this title.

§12209. Instrumentalities of Congress

The Government Accountability Office, the Government Publishing Office, and the Library of Congress shall be covered as follows:

(1) In general

The rights and protections under this chapter shall, subject to paragraph (2), apply with respect to the conduct of each instrumentality of the Congress.

(2) Establishment of remedies and procedures by instrumentalities

The chief official of each instrumentality of the Congress shall establish remedies and procedures to be utilized with respect to the rights and protections provided pursuant to paragraph (1).

(3) Report to Congress

The chief official of each instrumentality of the Congress shall, after establishing remedies and procedures for purposes of paragraph (2), submit to the Congress a report describing the remedies and procedures.

(4) Definition of instrumentalities

For purposes of this section, the term "instrumentality of the Congress" means the following:,[1] the Government Accountability Office, the Government Publishing Office, and the Library of Congress,.[1]

(5) Enforcement of employment rights

The remedies and procedures set forth in section 2000e–16 of this title shall be available to any employee of an instrumentality of the Congress who alleges a violation of the rights and protections under sections 12112 through 12114 of this title that are made applicable by this section, except that the authorities of the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission shall be exercised by the chief official of the instrumentality of the Congress.

(6) Enforcement of rights to public services and accommodations

The remedies and procedures set forth in section 2000e–16 of this title shall be available to any qualified person with a disability who is a visitor, guest, or patron of an instrumentality of Congress and who alleges a violation of the rights and protections under sections 12131 through 12150 of this title or section 12182 or 12183 of this title that are made applicable by this section, except that the authorities of the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission shall be exercised by the chief official of the instrumentality of the Congress.

(7) Construction

Nothing in this section shall alter the enforcement procedures for individuals with disabilities provided in the General Accounting Office Personnel Act of 1980 and regulations promulgated pursuant to that Act.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §510, formerly §509, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 373; Pub. L. 102–166, title III, §315, Nov. 21, 1991, 105 Stat. 1095; Pub. L. 104–1, title II, §§201(c)(3), 210(g), Jan. 23, 1995, 109 Stat. 8, 16; Pub. L. 108–271, §8(b), July 7, 2004, 118 Stat. 814; renumbered §510, Pub. L. 110–325, §6(a)(2), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3558; Pub. L. 113–235, div. H, title I, §1301(b), Dec. 16, 2014, 128 Stat. 2537.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in par. (1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

The General Accounting Office Personnel Act of 1980, referred to in par. (7), is Pub. L. 96–191, Feb. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 27, which was classified principally to section 52–1 et seq. of former Title 31, and which was substantially repealed by Pub. L. 97–258, §5(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1068, and reenacted by the first section thereof principally in subchapters III (§731 et seq.) and IV (§751 et seq.) of chapter 7 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 510 of Pub. L. 101–336 was renumbered section 511 and is classified to section 12210 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2004—Pub. L. 108–271 substituted "Government Accountability Office" for "General Accounting Office" in introductory provisions and in par. (4).

1995—Pub. L. 104–1, §201(c)(3)(F), amended section catchline generally.

Pub. L. 104–1, §201(c)(3)(A), struck out subsecs. (a) and (b) which related to coverage of Senate and House of Representatives with respect to bans on employment discrimination and other discriminatory practices against individuals with disabilities.

Pub. L. 104–1, §201(c)(3)(B), substituted "The General Accounting Office, the Government Printing Office, and the Library of Congress shall be covered as follows:" for subsec. (c) heading and designated subsec. (c) as entire section.

Par. (2). Pub. L. 104–1, §201(c)(3)(C), struck out at end "Such remedies and procedures shall apply exclusively, except for the employees who are defined as Senate employees, in section 1201(c)(1) of title 2."

Par. (4). Pub. L. 104–1, §201(c)(3)(D), struck out "the Architect of the Capitol, the Congressional Budget Office" after "the following:", inserted "and" before "the Library of Congress", and struck out "the Office of Technology Assessment, and the United States Botanic Garden" before period at end.

Pub. L. 104–1, §201(c)(3)(D), which in part directed the substitution of "the term 'instrumentality of the Congress' means" for "the instrumentalities of the Congress include", was executed by making the substitution for "instrumentalities of the Congress include" to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Par. (5). Pub. L. 104–1, §201(c)(3)(E), added par. (5). Former par. (5) redesignated (7).

Par. (6). Pub. L. 104–1, §210(g), which directed amendment of this section by adding par. (6), was executed by adding par. (6) after par. (5) to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Par. (7). Pub. L. 104–1, §201(c)(3)(E), redesignated par. (5) as (7).

1991—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 102–166, §315(1), redesignated par. (6) as (2) and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "APPLICATION TO SENATE EMPLOYMENT.—The rights and protections provided pursuant to this chapter, the Civil Rights Act of 1990 (S. 2104, 101st Congress), the Civil Rights Act of 1964 [42 U.S.C. 2000a et seq.], the Age Discrimination in Employment Act of 1967 [29 U.S.C. 621 et seq.], and the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 [29 U.S.C. 701 et seq.] shall apply with respect to employment by the United States Senate."

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 102–166, §315(1), redesignated par. (7) as (3), substituted "(2)(A)" for "(2) and (6)(A)" and "(2)" for "(3), (4), (5), (6)(B), and (6)(C)", and struck out former par. (3) which read as follows: " INVESTIGATION AND ADJUDICATION OF CLAIMS.—All claims raised by any individual with respect to Senate employment, pursuant to the Acts referred to in paragraph (2), shall be investigated and adjudicated by the Select Committee on Ethics, pursuant to S. Res. 338, 88th Congress, as amended, or such other entity as the Senate may designate."

Subsec. (a)(4), (5). Pub. L. 102–166, §315(1), struck out pars. (4) and (5) which read as follows:

"(4) RIGHTS OF EMPLOYEES.—The Committee on Rules and Administration shall ensure that Senate employees are informed of their rights under the Acts referred to in paragraph (2).

"(5) APPLICABLE REMEDIES.—When assigning remedies to individuals found to have a valid claim under the Acts referred to in paragraph (2), the Select Committee on Ethics, or such other entity as the Senate may designate, should to the extent practicable apply the same remedies applicable to all other employees covered by the Acts referred to in paragraph (2). Such remedies shall apply exclusively."

Subsec. (a)(6), (7). Pub. L. 102–166, §315(1), redesignated pars. (6) and (7) as (2) and (3), respectively.

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 102–166, §315(2), inserted ", except for the employees who are defined as Senate employees, in section 1201(c)(1) of title 2" after "shall apply exclusively".

CHANGE OF NAME

"Government Publishing Office" substituted for "Government Printing Office" in introductory provisions and par. (4) on authority of section 1301(b) of Pub. L. 113–235, set out as a note preceding section 301 of Title 44, Public Printing and Documents.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 201(c)(3) of Pub. L. 104–1 effective 1 year after Jan. 23, 1995, see section 1311(d) of Title 2, The Congress.

Amendment by section 210(g) of Pub. L. 104–1 effective 1 year after transmission to Congress of study under section 1371 of Title 2, see section 1331(h)(2) of Title 2.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1991 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102–166 effective Nov. 21, 1991, except as otherwise provided, see section 402 of Pub. L. 102–166, set out as a note under section 1981 of this title.

[1] *So in original. The comma probably should not appear.*

§12210. Illegal use of drugs

(a) In general

For purposes of this chapter, the term "individual with a disability" does not include an individual who is currently engaging in the illegal use of drugs, when the covered entity acts on the basis of such use.

(b) Rules of construction

Nothing in subsection (a) shall be construed to exclude as an individual with a disability an individual who—

(1) has successfully completed a supervised drug rehabilitation program and is no longer engaging in the illegal use of drugs, or has otherwise been rehabilitated successfully and is no longer engaging in such use;

(2) is participating in a supervised rehabilitation program and is no longer engaging in such use; or

(3) is erroneously regarded as engaging in such use, but is not engaging in such use;

except that it shall not be a violation of this chapter for a covered entity to adopt or administer reasonable policies or procedures, including but not limited to drug testing, designed to ensure that an individual described in paragraph (1) or (2) is no longer engaging in the illegal use of drugs; however, nothing in this section shall be construed to encourage, prohibit, restrict, or authorize the conducting of testing for the illegal use of drugs.

(c) Health and other services

Notwithstanding subsection (a) and section 12211(b)(3) of this title, an individual shall not be denied health services, or services provided in connection with drug rehabilitation, on the basis of the current illegal use of drugs if the individual is otherwise entitled to such services.

(d) "Illegal use of drugs" defined

(1) In general

The term "illegal use of drugs" means the use of drugs, the possession or distribution of which is unlawful under the Controlled Substances Act [21 U.S.C. 801 et seq.]. Such term does not include the use of a drug taken under supervision by a licensed health care professional, or other uses authorized by the Controlled Substances Act or other provisions of Federal law.

(2) Drugs

The term "drug" means a controlled substance, as defined in schedules I through V of section 202 of the Controlled Substances Act [21 U.S.C. 812].

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §511, formerly §510, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 375; renumbered §511 and amended Pub. L. 110–325, §6(a)(2), (3), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3558.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

The Controlled Substances Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), is title II of Pub. L. 91–513, Oct. 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 1242, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter I (§801 et seq.) of chapter 13 of Title 21, Food and Drugs. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 801 of Title 21 and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 511 of Pub. L. 101–336 was renumbered section 512 and is classified to section 12211 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 110–325, §6(a)(3), made technical amendment to reference in original act which appears in text as reference to section 12211(b)(3) of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–325 effective Jan. 1, 2009, see section 8 of Pub. L. 110–325, set out as a note under section 705 of Title 29, Labor.

§12211. Definitions

(a) Homosexuality and bisexuality

For purposes of the definition of "disability" in section 12102(2) [1] of this title, homosexuality and bisexuality are not impairments and as such are not disabilities under this chapter.

(b) Certain conditions

Under this chapter, the term "disability" shall not include—

(1) transvestism, transsexualism, pedophilia, exhibitionism, voyeurism, gender identity disorders not resulting from physical impairments, or other sexual behavior disorders;

(2) compulsive gambling, kleptomania, or pyromania; or

(3) psychoactive substance use disorders resulting from current illegal use of drugs.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §512, formerly §511, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 376; renumbered §512, Pub. L. 110–325, §6(a)(2), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3558.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

Section 12102 of this title, referred to in subsec. (a), was amended generally by Pub. L. 110–325, §4(a), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3555, and, as so amended, provisions formerly appearing in par. (2) are now contained in par. (1).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 512 of Pub. L. 101–336, which amended former section 706 of Title 29, Labor, was renumbered section 513.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12212. Alternative means of dispute resolution

Where appropriate and to the extent authorized by law, the use of alternative means of dispute resolution, including settlement negotiations, conciliation, facilitation, mediation, factfinding, minitrials, and arbitration, is encouraged to resolve disputes arising under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §514, formerly §513, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 377; renumbered §514, Pub. L. 110–325, §6(a)(2), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3558.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 514 of Pub. L. 101–336 was renumbered section 515 and is classified to section 12213 of this title.

§12213. Severability

Should any provision in this chapter be found to be unconstitutional by a court of law, such

provision shall be severed from the remainder of the chapter, and such action shall not affect the enforceability of the remaining provisions of the chapter.

(Pub. L. 101–336, title V, §515, formerly §514, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 378; renumbered §515, Pub. L. 110–325, §6(a)(2), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3558.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

CHAPTER 127—COORDINATED SERVICES FOR CHILDREN, YOUTH, AND FAMILIES

Sec.

§12301. Findings

Congress finds that—

(1) children and youth are inherently the most valuable resource of the United States;

(2) the welfare, protection, healthy development, and positive role of children and youth in society are essential to the United States;

(3) children and youth deserve love, respect, and guidance, as well as good health, shelter, food, education, productive employment opportunities, and preparation for responsible participation in community life;

(4) children and youth have increasing opportunities to participate in the decisions that affect their lives;

(5) the family is the primary caregiver and source of social learning and must be supported and strengthened;

(6) when a family is unable to ensure the satisfaction of basic needs of children and youth it is the responsibility of society to assist such family; and

(7) it is the joint and several responsibility of the Federal Government, each State, and the political subdivisions of each State to assist children and youth to secure, to the maximum extent practicable, equal opportunity to full and free access to—

(A) the best possible physical and mental health;

(B) adequate and safe physical shelter;

(C) a high level of educational opportunity;

(D) effective training, apprenticeships, opportunities for community service, and productive employment and participation in decisions affecting their lives;

(E) a wide range of civic, cultural, and recreational activities that recognize young Americans as resources and promote self-esteem and a stake in the communities of such Americans; and

(F) comprehensive community services that are efficient, coordinated, readily available, and involve families of young individuals.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §902, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1262.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Chapter effective Oct. 1, 1990, see section 1001(a) of Pub. L. 101–501, set out as an Effective Date of 1990 Amendment note under section 8621 of this title.

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §901, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1262, provided that: "This title [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'Claude Pepper Young Americans Act of 1990'."

Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §955, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1278, provided that: "This chapter [chapter 3 (§§955–960) of subtitle A of title IX of Pub. L. 101–501, enacting part C of subchapter I of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Family Resource Act'."

Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §981, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1280, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle B (§§981–988) of title IX of Pub. L. 101–501, enacting subchapter II of this chapter] may be cited as the '1993 White House Conference on Children, Youth, and Families'."

PERFORMANCE PARTNERSHIP PILOTS

Pub. L. 113–76, div. H, title V, §526, Jan. 17, 2014, 128 Stat. 413, provided that:

"(a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section,

"(1) 'Performance Partnership Pilot' (or 'Pilot') is a project that seeks to identify, through a demonstration, cost-effective strategies for providing services at the State, regional, or local level that—

"(A) involve two or more Federal programs (administered by one or more Federal agencies)—

"(i) which have related policy goals, and

"(ii) at least one of which is administered (in whole or in part) by a State, local, or tribal government; and

"(B) achieve better results for regions, communities, or specific at-risk populations through making better use of the budgetary resources that are available for supporting such programs.

"(2) 'To improve outcomes for disconnected youth' means to increase the rate at which individuals between the ages of 14 and 24 (who are low-income and either homeless, in foster care, involved in the juvenile justice system, unemployed, or not enrolled in or at risk of dropping out of an educational

institution) achieve success in meeting educational, employment, or other key goals.

"(3) The 'lead Federal administering agency' is the Federal agency, to be designated by the Director of the Office of Management and Budget (from among the participating Federal agencies that have statutory responsibility for the Federal discretionary funds that will be used in a Performance Partnership Pilot), that will enter into and administer the particular Performance Partnership Agreement on behalf of that agency and the other participating Federal agencies.

"(b) USE OF DISCRETIONARY FUNDS IN FISCAL YEAR 2014.—Federal agencies may use Federal discretionary funds that are made available in this Act [div. H of Pub. L. 113–76, see Tables for classification] to carry out up to 10 Performance Partnership Pilots. Such Pilots shall:

"(1) be designed to improve outcomes for disconnected youth, and

"(2) involve Federal programs targeted on disconnected youth, or designed to prevent youth from disconnecting from school or work, that provide education, training, employment, and other related social services.

"(c) PERFORMANCE PARTNERSHIP AGREEMENTS.—Federal agencies may use Federal discretionary funds, as authorized in subsection (b), to participate in a Performance Partnership Pilot only in accordance with the terms of a Performance Partnership Agreement that—

"(1) is entered into between—

"(A) the head of the lead Federal administering agency, on behalf of all of the participating Federal agencies (subject to the head of the lead Federal administering agency having received from the heads of each of the other participating agencies their written concurrence for entering into the Agreement), and

"(B) the respective representatives of all of the State, local, or tribal governments that are participating in the Agreement; and

"(2) specifies, at a minimum, the following information:

"(A) the length of the Agreement (which shall not extend beyond September 30, 2018);

"(B) the Federal programs and federally funded services that are involved in the Pilot;

"(C) the Federal discretionary funds that are being used in the Pilot (by the respective Federal account identifier, and the total amount from such account that is being used in the Pilot), and the period (or periods) of availability for obligation (by the Federal Government) of such funds;

"(D) the non-Federal funds that are involved in the Pilot, by source (which may include private funds as well as governmental funds) and by amount;

"(E) the State, local, or tribal programs that are involved in the Pilot;

"(F) the populations to be served by the Pilot;

"(G) the cost-effective Federal oversight procedures that will be used for the purpose of maintaining the necessary level of accountability for the use of the Federal discretionary funds;

"(H) the cost-effective State, local, or tribal oversight procedures that will be used for the purpose of maintaining the necessary level of accountability for the use of the Federal discretionary funds;

"(I) the outcome (or outcomes) that the Pilot is designed to achieve;

"(J) the appropriate, reliable, and objective outcome-measurement methodology that the Federal Government and the participating State, local, or tribal governments will use, in carrying out the Pilot, to determine whether the Pilot is achieving, and has achieved, the specified outcomes that the Pilot is designed to achieve;

"(K) the statutory, regulatory, or administrative requirements related to Federal mandatory programs that are barriers to achieving improved outcomes of the Pilot; and

"(L) in cases where, during the course of the Pilot, it is determined that the Pilot is not achieving the specified outcomes that it is designed to achieve,

"(i) the consequences that will result from such deficiencies with respect to the Federal discretionary funds that are being used in the Pilot, and

"(ii) the corrective actions that will be taken in order to increase the likelihood that the Pilot, upon completion, will have achieved such specified outcomes.

"(d) AGENCY HEAD DETERMINATIONS.—A Federal agency may participate in a Performance Partnership Pilot (including by providing Federal discretionary funds that have been appropriated to such agency) only upon the written determination by the head of such agency that the agency's participation in such Pilot—

"(1) will not result in denying or restricting the eligibility of any individual for any of the services that (in whole or in part) are funded by the agency's programs and Federal discretionary funds that are involved in the Pilot, and

"(2) based on the best available information, will not otherwise adversely affect vulnerable populations

that are the recipients of such services.

In making this determination, the head of the agency may take into consideration the other Federal discretionary funds that will be used in the Pilot as well as any non-Federal funds (including from private sources as well as governmental sources) that will be used in the Pilot.

"(e) TRANSFER AUTHORITY.—For the purpose of carrying out the Pilot in accordance with the Performance Partnership Agreement, and subject to the written approval of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, the head of each participating Federal agency may transfer Federal discretionary funds that are being used in the Pilot to an account of the lead Federal administering agency that includes Federal discretionary funds that are being used in the Pilot. Subject to the waiver authority under subsection (f), such transferred funds shall remain available for the same purposes for which such funds were originally appropriated: *Provided*, That such transferred funds shall remain available for obligation by the Federal Government until the expiration of the period of availability for those Federal discretionary funds (which are being used in the Pilot) that have the longest period of availability, except that any such transferred funds shall not remain available beyond September 30, 2018.

"(f) WAIVER AUTHORITY.—In connection with a Federal agency's participation in a Performance Partnership Pilot, and subject to the other provisions of this section (including subsection (e)), the head of the Federal agency to which the Federal discretionary funds were appropriated may waive (in whole or in part) the application, solely to such discretionary funds that are being used in the Pilot, of any statutory, regulatory, or administrative requirement that such agency head—

"(1) is otherwise authorized to waive (in accordance with the terms and conditions of such other authority), and

"(2) is not otherwise authorized to waive, provided that in such case the agency head shall—

"(A) not waive any requirement related to nondiscrimination, wage and labor standards, or allocation of funds to State and substate levels;

"(B) issue a written determination, prior to granting the waiver, with respect to such discretionary funds that the granting of such waiver for purposes of the Pilot—

"(i) is consistent with both—

"(I) the statutory purposes of the Federal program for which such discretionary funds were appropriated, and

"(II) the other provisions of this section, including the written determination by the agency head issued under subsection (d);

"(ii) is necessary to achieve the outcomes of the Pilot as specified in the Performance Partnership Agreement, and is no broader in scope than is necessary to achieve such outcomes; and

"(iii) will result in either—

"(I) realizing efficiencies by simplifying reporting burdens or reducing administrative barriers with respect to such discretionary funds, or

"(II) increasing the ability of individuals to obtain access to services that are provided by such discretionary funds; and

"(C) provide at least 60 days advance written notice to the Committees on Appropriations and other committees of jurisdiction in the House of Representatives and the Senate."

COMMISSION ON CHILD AND FAMILY WELFARE

Pub. L. 102–521, §5, Oct. 25, 1992, 106 Stat. 3406, provided for establishment, membership, etc., of a Commission on Child and Family Welfare, specified that among other duties the Commission compile information and data on the issues that affect the best interests of children, including domestic issues such as abuse, family relations, services and agencies for children and families, family courts, and juvenile courts, directed Commission to submit to President and Congress an interim report no later than Jan. 1, 1994, and a final report no later than Jan. 1, 1995, containing a detailed statement of the findings and conclusions of the Commission, together with recommendations for such legislation and administrative actions as considered appropriate, and directed that the Commission terminate 90 days after the date it submitted its final report.

EX. ORD. NO. 13459. IMPROVING THE COORDINATION AND EFFECTIVENESS OF YOUTH PROGRAMS

Ex. Ord. No. 13459, Feb. 7, 2008, 73 F.R. 8003, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, and in recognition of the successful interagency collaboration resulting from the *Helping America's Youth* initiative, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Policy*. It is the policy of the Federal Government to promote achievement of positive results for at-risk youth through:

(a) enhanced collaboration among government organizations at the Federal, State, and local level, including with faith-based and other community organizations, as well as among families, schools, and communities, in order to leverage existing resources and improve outcomes;

(b) identification and dissemination of promising strategies and practices that have been proven effective through rigorous evaluation; and

(c) online publication of essential information to assist interested citizens and decision-makers, particularly at the community level, to plan, implement, and participate in effective programs for at-risk youth.

SEC. 2. *Establishment of the Interagency Working Group on Youth Programs*. The Secretary of Health and Human Services (Secretary) shall establish within the Department of Health and Human Services for administrative purposes only, an Interagency Working Group on Youth Programs (Working Group), consistent with this order and reflecting the ongoing interagency collaboration under the *Helping America's Youth* initiative.

SEC. 3. *Membership and Operation of the Working Group.*

(a) The Working Group shall consist exclusively of the following members or their designees, who shall be full-time Federal officers or employees:

(i) the Secretary;

(ii) the Attorney General;

(iii) the Secretaries of Defense, the Interior, Agriculture, Commerce, Labor, Housing and Urban Development, and Education;

(iv) the Director of the Office of National Drug Control Policy;

(v) the Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation for National and Community Service; and

(vi) other officers or full-time or permanent part-time employees of the United States, as determined by the Secretary, with the concurrence of the head of the department or agency concerned.

(b) The Secretary (or the Secretary's designee) shall serve as Chair, and the Attorney General (or the Attorney General's designee) shall serve as Vice Chair, for a period of 2 years from the date of this order. Subsequent Chairs and Vice Chairs shall be designated by the Secretary on a biennial basis.

(c) In implementing this section, the Chair, and in the Chair's absence the Vice Chair, shall convene and preside at meetings of the Working Group, determine its agenda, direct its work, and establish and direct subgroups of the Working Group, as appropriate, to deal with particular subject matters, that shall consist exclusively of members of the Working Group or their designees. The Chair, after consultation with the Vice Chair, shall designate an officer or employee of one of the member departments or agencies to serve as the Executive Secretary of the Working Group. The Executive Secretary shall head any staff assigned to the Working Group and any subgroups thereof, and such staff shall consist exclusively of full-time or permanent part-time Federal employees.

SEC. 4. *Functions of the Working Group*. Consistent with the policy set forth in section 1 of this order, the Working Group shall:

(a) identify and engage key government and private or nonprofit organizations that can play a role in improving the coordination and effectiveness of programs serving and engaging youth, such as faith-based and other community organizations, businesses, volunteers, and other key constituencies;

(b) develop a new Federal website on youth, built upon the *Community Guide to Helping America's Youth*, with the first phase of this website to be launched within 10 months of the date of this order, by:

(i) identifying and assessing the strengths and weaknesses of existing Federal websites focusing on youth-serving entities in order to improve access to the most useful content;

(ii) providing for training to youth-serving entities to enable effective use of the Federal website;

(iii) developing additional strategies and tools and resources accessible through the Federal website that will help promote effective community-based efforts to reduce the factors that put youth at risk and the provision of high-quality services to at-risk youth across the country; and

(iv) developing strategies to ensure that the Federal website is routinely updated, improved, and publicized;

(c) encourage all youth-serving Federal and State agencies, communities, grantees, and organizations to adopt high standards for assessing program results, including through the use of rigorous impact evaluations, as appropriate, so that the most effective practices can be identified and replicated, and ineffective or duplicative programs can be eliminated or reformed;

(d)(i) identify and promote initiatives and activities that merit strong interagency collaboration because of their potential to offer cost-effective solutions to achieve better results for at-risk youth, including volunteer service in concert with the USA Freedom Corps and mentoring in concert with the Federal Mentoring Council; and,

(ii) encourage rigorous evaluations, as appropriate, of such initiatives and activities to ascertain their effectiveness in improving academic, employment, social, and other individual outcomes, and make these

findings publicly available, and

(e) annually report to the President, through the Assistant to the President for Domestic Policy, on its work and on the implementation of any recommendations arising from its work, with the first such report to be submitted no later than 6 months after the date of this order.

SEC. 5. *Administration of the Working Group*. (a) The Secretary shall, to the extent permitted by law, provide administrative support and funding for the Working Group.

With the consent of the Secretary, other member departments or agencies may provide administrative support to the Working Group, to the extent permitted by law and consistent with their statutory authority.

(b) The heads of executive departments and agencies shall provide, as appropriate, such assistance and information as the Secretary may request to implement this order.

(c) The website referred to in section 4(b) of this order shall be funded by contributions from executive departments and agencies to the extent permitted by law and consistent with their statutory authority.

SEC. 6. *General Provisions*. (a) Nothing in this order shall be construed to impair or otherwise affect:

(i) authority granted by law to a department, agency, or the head thereof; or

(ii) functions of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget relating to budget, administrative, or legislative proposals.

(b) This order shall be implemented consistent with applicable law and subject to the availability of appropriations.

(c) This order is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity, by any party against the United States, its departments, agencies, or entities, its officers, employees, or agents, or any other person.

GEORGE W. BUSH.

§12302. Definitions

As used in this chapter:

(1) Commissioner

The term "Commissioner" means the Commissioner of the Administration on Children, Youth, and Families, as established under section 12311 of this title.

(2) Council

The term "Council" means the Federal Council on Children, Youth, and Families, as established under section 12314(a) of this title.

(3) Nonprofit

The term "'nonprofit", as applied to any agency, institution, or organization, means an agency, institution, or organization that is, or is owned and operated by, one or more corporations or associations, no part of the net earnings of which may lawfully inure to the benefit of any private shareholder or individual.

(4) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

(5) State

The term "State" includes the District of Columbia, the Virgin Islands, Puerto Rico, Guam, American Samoa, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands.

(6) Young individual

The term "young individual" means any child or youth from birth to 21 years of age.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §903, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1262.)

TERMINATION OF TRUST TERRITORY OF THE PACIFIC ISLANDS

For termination of Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, see note set out preceding section 1681 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions.

SUBCHAPTER I—ESTABLISHMENT OF ADMINISTRATION AND AWARDING OF GRANTS FOR PROGRAMS

PART A—ADMINISTRATION ON CHILDREN, YOUTH, AND FAMILIES

§12311. Establishment of Administration on Children, Youth, and Families

(a) In general

There is established within the Department of Health and Human Services an Administration on Children, Youth, and Families.

(b) Commissioner

(1) Establishment

(A) In general

The Administration on Children, Youth, and Families, as established under subsection (a), shall be headed by a Commissioner on Children, Youth, and Families.

(B) Omitted

(2) Appointment

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint the Commissioner.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §915, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1263.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 915 of Pub. L. 101–501. Subsec. (b)(1)(B) of section 915 of Pub. L. 101–501 amended section 5316 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§12312. Functions of Commissioner

(a) In general

The Commissioner shall—

(1) serve as the effective and visible advocate for children, youth, and families within the Department of Health and Human Services and with other departments, agencies, and instrumentalities of the Federal Government by maintaining active review and commenting responsibilities, as appropriate, concerning Federal policies affecting young individuals, and the families of young individuals;

(2) collect and disseminate information related to the problems of young individuals and the families of such individuals;

(3) assist the Secretary in appropriate matters pertaining to young individuals, and the families of such individuals;

(4) administer the grants authorized under this subchapter;

(5) develop plans and conduct research in the field of young individuals, and the families of such individuals;

(6) assist, to the maximum extent practicable, in the establishment and implementation of programs designed to meet the needs of young individuals for supportive services including—

(A) health and mental health services;

(B) housing and shelter assistance;

(C) education and training services;
(D) protective services;
(E) foster care;
(F) teen parenting support;
(G) child care;
(H) family support and preservation;
(I) teen pregnancy prevention and counseling;
(J) counseling on the effects of violence in the communities of such individuals and their families;
(K) recreational and volunteer opportunities; and
(L) comprehensive early childhood development;

(7) provide technical assistance and consultation to States and the political subdivisions of such States with respect to programs for young individuals;

(8) prepare, publish, and disseminate educational materials concerning the welfare of young individuals;

(9) gather statistics concerning young individuals, and the families of such individuals, that other Federal agencies are not collecting;

(10) to the maximum extent practicable coordinate activities carried out or assisted by all departments, agencies, and instrumentalities of the Federal Government with respect to the collection, preparation, and dissemination of information relevant to young individuals and the families of such individuals;

(11) stimulate more effective uses of existing resources and available services for young individuals and the families of such individuals;

(12) develop basic policies and set priorities with respect to the development and operation of programs and activities conducted under this chapter;

(13) convene conferences of authorities and officials of organizations, including Federal, State, and local agencies, and nonprofit private organizations, of programs for children, youth and their families for the development and implementation of policies related to the priorities and purposes of this chapter, including topics such as the establishment of a nationwide network of comprehensive, coordinated services and opportunities for such individuals;

(14) conduct periodic evaluations of the programs and activities related to the purposes of this chapter; and

(15) develop, in coordination with other agencies, methods to ensure adequate training for personnel concerning children, youth and families and to ensure the adequate dissemination of such information to appropriate State and community agencies.

(b) Encouragement of volunteerism

In executing the duties and functions of the Administration under this subchapter and in carrying out the programs and activities authorized under this chapter, the Commissioner, in consultation with the Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation for National and Community Service, shall take necessary steps to coordinate with and seek the advice of voluntary agencies and organizations that provide services related to the purposes of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §916, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1263; Pub. L. 103–82, title IV, §405(o), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 922.)

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–82 substituted "the Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation for National and Community Service" for "the Director of the ACTION Agency".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Apr. 4, 1994, see section 406(b) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 8332 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§12313. Federal agency consultations

(a) In general

The Commissioner shall consult and cooperate with the heads of all appropriate Federal agencies or departments administering programs or services that are substantially related to the purposes of this chapter.

(b) Interagency agreements

To the extent practicable, the Commissioner shall facilitate cooperation through the entering into of interagency agreements.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §917, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1265.)

§12314. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §918, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1265; Pub. L. 103–252, title IV, §402(a), May 18, 1994, 108 Stat. 672, established the Federal Council on Children, Youth, and Families, and terminated the Council on Sept. 30, 1998.

§12315. Administration

(a) Duties of Commissioner

In carrying out this subchapter, the Commissioner is authorized to—

(1) provide consultative services, technical assistance, and short-term training to the independent State bodies;

(2) conduct research and demonstrations;

(3) collect, prepare, publish, and disseminate special educational or informational materials, including reports of the projects for which funds are provided under this subchapter;

(4) provide staff and other technical assistance to the Council;

(5) evaluate the effectiveness of programs authorized under this subchapter and periodically publish analyses of the results of such evaluations; and

(6) not later than 180 days after the end of each fiscal year, prepare and submit, to the President and the chairman of the Committee on Education and Labor of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Labor and Human Resources of the Senate, a report concerning the activities carried out under this subchapter and concerning such other activities as the Secretary determines appropriate.

(b) Utilization of services and facilities

(1) In general

Subject to agreements made between the Commissioner and the head of such agency or organization, in carrying out the duties referred to in subsection (a) the Commissioner may utilize the services and facilities of any agency of the Federal Government and of any other public or nonprofit agency or organizations.[1]

(2) Payment

The Commissioner may pay for such services and facilities, in advance or by way of reimbursement, as may be provided in such agreement.

(c) Reservation of funds

Of the aggregate amount appropriated to carry out this chapter in any fiscal year, the Secretary may reserve not more than 10 percent for salaries and expenses of the Administration on Children, Youth, and Families related to the administration of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §919, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1267.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Labor and Human Resources of Senate changed to Committee on Health, Education, Labor, and Pensions of Senate by Senate Resolution No. 20, One Hundred Sixth Congress, Jan. 19, 1999.

Committee on Education and Labor of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Education and the Workforce of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 5, One Hundred Twelfth Congress, Jan. 5, 2011.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "organization."*

PART B—GRANTS FOR STATE AND COMMUNITY PROGRAMS FOR CHILDREN, YOUTH, AND FAMILIES

§12331. Purpose

It is the purpose of this part to encourage and assist State and local agencies to coordinate resources, reduce barriers to services, and develop new capacities to ensure that State and community services designed to serve children, youth, and families are more effective and comprehensive.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §925, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1268.)

§12332. Definitions

As used in this part:

(1) Community referral services

The term "community referral services" means services to assist families in obtaining community resources, including health care, mental health care, employability development and job training, and other social services.

(2) Core services

The term "core services" means—

(A) educational and support services provided to assist parents in acquiring parenting skills, learning about child development, and responding appropriately to the behavior of their children; and

(B) the early developmental screening of children to assess any needs of such children and to identify specific types of support that may be provided;

(C) outreach services;

(D) community referral services; and

(E) follow up services.

(3) Follow up services

The term "follow up services" means services provided to ensure that necessary services are received by families and are effective in meeting their needs.

(4) Independent State body

The term "independent State body" means the entity established under section 12336 of this title.

(5) Lead agency

The term "lead agency" means an existing State agency, or other public or nonprofit private entity designated by the chief executive officer of the State as the agency responsible for the

development and implementation of local family resource and support programs. Such agency shall have demonstrated ability to work with other State and community based agencies, to provide training and technical assistance, and shall also have a commitment to parental participation in the design and administration of family resource and support programs.

(6) Other services

The term "other services" and "other support services" includes—

(A) child care, early childhood development and intervention programs;

(B) employability development services (including skill training);

(C) educational services, such as scholastic tutoring, literacy training, and General Educational Degree (GED) services;

(D) nutritional education;

(E) life management skills training;

(F) peer counseling and crisis intervention, family violence counseling and referrals for such services;

(G) referral for substance abuse counseling and treatment referral; and

(H) referral for primary health and mental health services.

(7) Outreach services

The term "outreach services" means services provided to ensure (through home visits or other methods) that parents are aware of and able to participate in family resource and support program activities.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §926, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1268.)

§12333. Establishment of programs

The Commissioner shall make grants—

(1) in each State under section 12337 of this title to improve State planning and coordination of services, and under section 12338 of this title to expand supportive services, in order to promote the availability of developmental, preventive, and remedial services to children, youth and their families that are designed to ensure—

(A) adequate and safe physical shelter whether in their own homes or, if necessary, in out-of-home programs;

(B) high quality physical and mental health care;

(C) the enhancement of the development of children to ensure that children enter school prepared and ready to learn;

(D) highest quality educational opportunity;

(E) effective training and apprenticeships to increase the likelihood of employment;

(F) opportunities for community service and productive employment, and for participation by children and youth in decisions affecting the lives of such children and youth; and

(G) a wide range of civic, cultural, and recreational activities that recognize young individuals as resources and promote self-esteem and a sense of community; and

(2) to States on a competitive basis under section 12339 [1] of this title to establish family resource programs (including family support centers) in order to enhance the ability of families to remain together and to thrive through the provision of community based services that—

(A) promote and build family and parenting skills;

(B) promote and assist families in the use of formal and informal family support services;

(C) create a support network to strengthen and reinforce good parenting; and

(D) are closely linked with, but not duplicative of, other community resources.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §927, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1269.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12339 of this title, referred to in par. (2), was repealed by Pub. L. 103–252, title IV, §401(b)(1), May 18, 1994, 108 Stat. 672.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12334. Administration

(a) In general

The Commissioner shall administer programs under this part through the Administration on Children, Youth, and Families.

(b) Technical assistance

In carrying out this part, the Commissioner may request the technical assistance and cooperation of the Secretary of Education, the Secretary of Labor, the Attorney General, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, the Secretary of Transportation, the Director of the Office of Community Services, and such other agencies and departments of the Federal Government as may be appropriate.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §928, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1269.)

§12335. State plan

(a) Submission of plan

The chief executive officer of a State, in order to be eligible for grants from an allotment under section 12337, 12338, or 12339 [1] of this title for any fiscal year, shall prepare and submit to the Commissioner a State plan for a 3-year period.

(b) Revisions of plan

Each chief executive officer of a State may make annual revisions of the State plan referred to in subsection (a).

(c) Content of plan

The chief executive officer of a State shall include within the State plan of that State assurances as required under sections [2] 12337, 12338, or 12339 [1] of this title, and a description of the proposed multi-year plans of the State for program development and implementation.

(d) Type of application

A State may apply for funds under one or more of the following categories:

(1) section 12337 of this title;

(2) sections 12337 and 12338 of this title jointly; or

(3) section 12339 [1] of this title.

In the case of each category, the State application and plan shall comply only with the requirements of the appropriate section.

(e) Approval of plan

(1) In general

The Commissioner shall approve any State plan under sections 12337 and 12338 of this title that the Commissioner determines meets the requirements of such sections.

(2) Notice and opportunity to correct deficiencies

The Commissioner shall not make a final determination disapproving any State plan, modifying such plan, or declaring a State to be ineligible to receive funds under sections 12337 and 12338 of

this title without previously affording such State reasonable notice and opportunity to correct deficiencies in its application.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §929, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1270.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12339 of this title, referred to in subsecs. (a), (c), and (d)(3), was repealed by Pub. L. 103–252, title IV, §401(b)(1), May 18, 1994, 108 Stat. 672.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be "section".*

§12336. Independent State body

(a) Designation

A State shall not be eligible to receive a grant from an allotment under section 12337 or 12338 of this title unless—

(1) the chief executive officer of such State designates an independent State body that is composed of—

(A) cabinet level representatives from each agency of such State that has responsibilities for programs affecting young individuals who shall comprise a majority of the independent State body; and

(B) individuals appointed from among—

(i) private nonprofit providers of services to young individuals;

(ii) advocacy and citizens groups concerned with young individuals;

(iii) committees of the legislature of such State that have responsibility for young individuals;

(iv) leaders who are young individuals, including such leaders who are recipients of services provided under this subchapter;

(v) representatives of the business community;

(vi) representatives of employees of providers of services to young individuals;

(vii) representatives of general purpose local government; and

(viii) such staff as shall be necessary to—

(I) develop a State plan to be submitted to the Commissioner for approval under section 12337 of this title;

(II) administer and monitor the State plan within such State;

(III) assist in the coordination of all State activities related to the purpose of the chapter;

(IV) serve as an effective and visible advocate for young individuals by reviewing and commenting on all State plans, budgets, and policies that affect such individuals and the families of such individuals by providing technical assistance to any agency, organization, association, or individual representing the needs of young individuals; and

(2) the independent State body designated under paragraph (1)—

(A) develops a system for the distribution within the State of funds received under sections 12337 and 12338 of this title by the chief executive officer;

(B) submits a description of such system to the Commissioner for review and comment; and

(C) ensures that preference will be given in such distribution of funds to developing or supporting local service delivery systems that—

(i) provide a range of services organized to tailor responses to needs rather than a predetermined array of services;

(ii) are rooted in and part of the communities that such systems are designed to serve as measured by the degree to which public and private community leaders and young

individuals participate in the planning of such systems; and

(iii) demonstrate an ability to develop systematic collaboration among service providers on behalf of children, youth and families, including joint planning, joint financing, joint service delivery, common intake and assessment, and other arrangements that promote more effective service systems for such individuals.

(b) Existing entity

The Commissioner may approve a State plan in which the chief executive officer of the State designates as the independent State body an existing State entity that is comprised of the parties described in subsection (a) and that is authorized to conduct the same range of interagency planning and coordination activities.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §930, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1270.)

§12337. State coordination of services

(a) Authority

The Commissioner shall make grants under this section to States on a formula basis for the purpose of improving the coordination of services provided to children, youth, and families.

(b) Application

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, the chief executive officer of a State shall prepare and submit to the Commissioner an application containing a plan providing assurances that—

(1) the independent State body is committed to interagency planning that results in statewide policies promoting systematic collaboration among agencies on behalf of young individuals as demonstrated by joint planning, joint financing, joint service delivery, common intake and assessment, and other arrangements that reduce barriers to services and promote more effective local service delivery systems for young individuals;

(2) such plan will be based on needs as identified through an analysis of updated reports (such as "State of the Child" reports) prepared by the State, including detailed information gathered by the State, to the extent practicable, on young individuals and the families of such individuals concerning—

(A) age, sex, race, and ethnicity;
(B) the residences of such individuals;
(C) the incidence of homelessness among such individuals;
(D) the composition of families of such individuals;
(E) the economic situations of such individuals;
(F) the incidence of poverty among such individuals;
(G) experiences in the care of such individuals away from home;
(H) the health of such individuals;
(I) violence in the homes or communities of such individuals;
(J) the nature of the attachment of such individuals to school and work;
(K) dropout rates of such individuals from school; and
(L) the character of the communities in which such individuals reside;

(3) the system to be used for the distribution of funds within the State will require that—

(A) each area have an equal opportunity to apply for or receive funds under this part; and

(B) the public be given an opportunity to express views concerning the development and administration of such plan;

(4) the independent State body will provide an inventory of existing public and private services for children, youth and their families and will evaluate the need for supportive services within the State to address the purposes of this chapter and determine the extent to which existing public and

private programs meet such need;

(5) the independent State body will make such reports, in such form, and containing such information, as the Commissioner may require;

(6) such fiscal control and fund accounting procedures will be adopted as may be necessary to ensure proper disbursement of, and accounting for, Federal funds paid under this part to the chief executive officer of the State, including any such funds paid to the recipients of a grant or contract;

(7) the independent State body will conduct periodic evaluations of activities and projects carried out pursuant to this section and section 12338 of this title and will report the results and recommendations to the chief executive officer of the State and the State legislature;

(8) the chief executive officer of the State will provide technical assistance or in-service training opportunities for personnel responsible for carrying out the purposes of this section and section 12338 of this title; and

(9) the chief executive officer of each State will provide for the implementation of the requirements of section 12338 of this title, relating to supportive services.

(c) Use of grants to States

Notwithstanding section 12340(g) of this title, the amounts made available to each State under section 12340(a) of this title may be used to make grants to a State to enable such State to pay such percentages as the independent State body of such State determines to be appropriate, of the cost of administering the State plan of such State including—

(1) the costs of the preparation of such plan and the provision of technical assistance to local areas;

(2) the costs of the evaluation of activities carried out under such plan;

(3) the costs of the collection of data and the carrying out of analyses related to the need for supportive services within the State;

(4) the costs of the dissemination of information obtained under paragraph (3); and

(5) the costs of the provision of short-term training to personnel of public or nonprofit private agencies and organizations engaged in the operation of programs authorized by this part.

(e) [1] Supplement not supplant

Amounts received by a State under this section and section 12338 of this title shall be used only to supplement, not to supplant, the amount of Federal, State, and local funds expended for the purposes for which grants are made under this section and section 12338 of this title. In no event shall such expenditures be used to satisfy the matching requirements of any other Federal program.

(f) Relationship to family resource and support program grants

If a State intends to apply for a grant under section 12339 [2] of this title to be used for the same calendar year as the grant under this section, such State shall include in the application for a grant under this section a description of plans for family resource and support programs and for the coordination of the use of all funds received under this part.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §931, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1271.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12339 of this title, referred to in subsec. (f), was repealed by Pub. L. 103–252, title IV, §401(b)(1), May 18, 1994, 108 Stat. 672.

[1] So in original. No subsec. (d) has been enacted.

[2] See References in Text note below.

§12338. Supportive services

(a) Authority

The Commissioner shall carry out a program for making grants to a State, that has designated an independent State body under section 12336 of this title and provided for coordinated services under section 12337 of this title, for distribution by the chief executive officer under a State plan approved under section 12337 of this title to demonstrate successful program approaches to fill service gaps identified through State planning and advocacy efforts for any of the areas specified in paragraph (2).

(b) Eligible services

The services eligible to be provided under subsection (a) are services—

(1) that are designed to facilitate the provision of comprehensive community based services that are efficient, coordinated, and readily available through such activities as case planning, case management, intake and assessment, and information and referral; and

(2) that serve any of the following purposes—

(A) provide adequate and safe physical shelter to young individuals and the families of such individuals, especially in emergency circumstances;

(B) provide transitional living services to young individuals who are homeless;

(C) enable young individuals to attain and maintain physical and mental well-being;

(D) provide health screening to detect or prevent illnesses, or both, that occur most frequently in young individuals as well as better treatment and counseling;

(E) enhance the development of children to ensure that such children enter school prepared and ready to learn;

(F) promote the highest quality of educational opportunity, especially through drop-out prevention programs, remediation for young individuals who have dropped out of school, and vocational education;

(G) provide effective training apprenticeships and employment opportunities;

(H) promote participation in community service and civic, cultural, and recreational activities that value young individuals as resources and promote self-esteem and a stake in the community;

(I) promote the participation of young individuals in decisions concerning planning and managing the lives of such individuals;

(J) encourage young individuals and the families of such individuals to use any community facilities and services that are available to such individuals;

(K) ensure that young individuals who are unable to live with the biological families of such individuals have a safe place to live until such individuals can return home or move into independent adult life; and

(L) prevent the abuse, neglect, or exploitation of young individuals.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §932, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1273.)

§12339. Repealed. Pub. L. 103–252, title IV, §401(b)(1), May 18, 1994, 108 Stat. 672

Section, Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §933, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1274, related to grants to States for purpose of implementing family resource and support programs.

§12340. Authorization of appropriation and allotment

(a) Administration on Children, Youth, and Families; State coordination; supportive services

(1) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out sections 12337 and 12338 of this title such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 1995 through 1998.

(2) Availability of appropriation

Of the amount appropriated under paragraph (1) for any fiscal year—

(A) not more than 10 percent shall be available to carry out section 12315 of this title; and

(B) not less than 90 percent shall be available to carry out sections 12337 and 12338 of this title.

(3) Allotment formula

Except as provided in paragraph (4), from the amount available under paragraph (2)(B) for each fiscal year, a State shall be allotted an amount that bears the same ratio to the amount appropriated for such fiscal year as the population of the State that is under the age of 21 bears to the population of all States that is under the age of 21.

(4) Exceptions

(A) In general

Except as provided in subparagraph (B) and subject to the availability of appropriations under paragraph (1), no State shall be allotted less than $300,000 under the formula established under paragraph (3).

(B) Limitation on allotment

Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), Guam, the Virgin Islands, the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands shall each be allotted not less than $75,000 under the formula established under paragraph (2).

(b) Determination of age

The number of individuals under the age of 21 in each State shall be determined by the Commissioner on the basis of the most recent data available to the Commissioner.

(c) Transfer of allotted funds

Whenever the Commissioner determines that—

(1) any amount allotted to a State for a fiscal year under section 12337 or 12338 of this title will not be used by such State for carrying out the purpose for which such allotment was made; or

(2) a State has failed to qualify under the State plan required under section 12335 of this title;

the Commissioner shall make such allotment available for carrying out such purposes to other participating States in a proportional manner based on the relative population of the State of individuals under the age of 21.

(d) Repealed. Pub. L. 103–252, title IV, §402(b)(2), May 18, 1994, 108 Stat. 673

(e) Limitation

A State shall not use in excess of 10 percent of a grant awarded under section 12338 or 12339 [1] of this title for administrative activities at the State level.

(f) Grants for Indians

The Commissioner shall use 1 percent of the amount appropriated under this section for each fiscal year to make allotments to Indian tribes and tribal organizations (such terms having the same meaning given to such terms in section 5304(b) and (c) [1] of title 25) that submit to the Commissioner a plan that meets criteria consistent with the provisions of this part and that comply with other requirements established by the Commissioner.

(g) Limitation

Grants made under this subchapter may be used to pay not more than 80 percent of the cost of—

(1) the preparation, administration, and evaluation of State plans under section 12337 of this title;

(2) the development of comprehensive, efficient, coordinated supportive services under section 12338 of this title; and

(3) the development, expansion, and operation of local family support and resource programs

under section 12339 [1] of this title.

The remaining 20 percent of such cost shall be paid by the State with funds from non-Federal sources.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §934, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1277; Pub. L. 103–252, title IV, §402(b), May 18, 1994, 108 Stat. 673.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12339 of this title, referred to in subsecs. (e) and (g)(3), was repealed by Pub. L. 103–252, title IV, §401(b)(1), May 18, 1994, 108 Stat. 672.

Section 5304 of title 25, referred to in subsec. (f), has been amended, and subsecs. (b) and (c) of section 5304 no longer define the terms "Indian tribe" and "tribal organization". However, such terms are defined elsewhere in that section.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 103–252, §402(b)(1), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out sections 12315, 12337, and 12338 of this title, $30,000,000 for fiscal year 1991 and such sums as may be necessary for fiscal years 1992, 1993, and 1994. Funds appropriated under this paragraph shall remain available for expenditure in the fiscal year succeeding the fiscal year for which such funds are appropriated."

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103–252, §402(b)(2), struck out heading and text of subsec. (d). Text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out section 12339 of this title, $30,000,000 for fiscal year 1991, and such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 1992 through 1994."

TERMINATION OF TRUST TERRITORY OF THE PACIFIC ISLANDS

For termination of Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, see note set out preceding section 1681 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

PART C—NATIONAL CLEARINGHOUSE

§12351. Findings and purpose

(a) Findings

Congress finds that—

(1) fundamental changes in the demographics and economics of family life in the United States over the past 20 years have had a profound effect on children and their parents;

(2) since 1966, the number of women working outside the home has increased by 92 percent and the number of two earner families has increased by over 50 percent;

(3) 61 percent of the children born today will live in a single-parent family before reaching the age of 20, with one out of every three single female heads of households living on income below the Federal poverty level;

(4) one out of every four children under the age of 6 in the United States currently lives below the Federal poverty level;

(5) over the past 10 years, parents have increasingly come together with other parents to organize family resource and support programs that promote healthy child development and increase parental competency, particularly families at risk; and

(6) Federal investment in promoting the development of family resource and support programs will reap long-term benefits for individual families and the nation as a whole.

(b) Purpose

It is the purpose of this part [1] to—

(1) stimulate the development and expansion of family resource and support programs that are prevention oriented;

(2) encourage early intervention of such programs with families to ameliorate problem situations before such situations become crises; and

(3) assist parents in enhancing their children's development to ensure that their children enter school prepared and ready to learn.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §956, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1278.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", and was translated as reading "this chapter", meaning chapter 3 (§§955–960) of subtitle A of title IX of Pub. L. 101–501, known as the Family Resources Act, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12352. "Family resource and support programs" defined

As used in this part, the term "family resource and support programs" means community-based services that offer sustained assistance to families at various stages in their development. Such services shall promote parental competencies and behaviors that will lead to the healthy and positive personal development of parents and children through—

(1) the provision of assistance to build family skills and assist parents in improving their capacities to be supportive and nurturing parents;

(2) the provision of assistance to families to enable such families to use other formal and informal resources and opportunities for assistance that are available within the communities of such families; and

(3) the creation of supportive networks to enhance the childrearing capacity of parents and assist in compensating for the increased social isolation and vulnerability of families.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §957, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1278.)

§12353. Establishment of National Center on Family Resource and Support Programs

(a) Establishment

The Commissioner shall establish, through grant or contract, a national center for the collection and provision of programmatic information and technical assistance that relates to all types of family resource and support programs, to be known as the "National Center on Family Resource and Support Programs".

(b) Functions

The national center established under subsection (a) shall serve as a national information and data clearinghouse, training, technical assistance, and material development source for family resource and support programs. Such center shall—

(1) develop and maintain a system for disseminating information on all types of family resource and support programs and on the state of family resource and support program development, including information concerning the most effective model programs;

(2) develop and sponsor a variety of training institutes and curricula for family resource and support program staff;

(3) identify several programs representing the various types of family resource and support programs to develop technical assistance materials and activities to assist other agencies in

establishing family resource and support programs; and

(4) develop State-wide networks of family resource and support programs for the purpose of sharing and disseminating information.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §958, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1279; Pub. L. 103–252, title IV, §403(a), May 18, 1994, 108 Stat. 673.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 103–252 substituted "several programs" for "several model programs".

§12354. Evaluation

The Commissioner shall, through grants or contracts awarded or entered into with independent auditors, conduct evaluations and related activities, of family resource and support programs, including—

(1) evaluations of on-going programs;

(2) process evaluations focusing on implementation strategies; and

(3) the development of simple evaluation models for use by local family resource and support programs.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §959, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1279.)

§12355. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Establishment of Center

To carry out section 12353 of this title, there are authorized to be appropriated $2,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1995 through 1998.

(b) Evaluation

To carry out section 12354 of this title, there are authorized to be appropriated $1,000,000 for fiscal year 1995, and such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 1996 through 1998.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §960, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1279; Pub. L. 103–252, title IV, §403(b), May 18, 1994, 108 Stat. 673.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–252, §403(b)(1), substituted "$2,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1995 through 1998" for "$2,300,000 for fiscal year 1991, and such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 1992 through 1994".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–252, §403(b)(2), substituted "$1,000,000 for fiscal year 1995, and such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 1996 through 1998" for "$700,000 for fiscal year 1991, and such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 1992 through 1994".

SUBCHAPTER II—WHITE HOUSE CONFERENCE ON CHILDREN, YOUTH, AND FAMILIES

§12371. Findings

(a) Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) children and youth are inherently our most valuable resource and their welfare, protection, healthy development, and positive role in society are essential to the Nation;

(2) children and youth deserve love, respect, and guidance, as well as good health, shelter, food, education, productive work, and preparation for responsible participation in community life;

(3) an increasing opportunity for children and youth to participate in the decisions that affect their lives is essential;

(4) the family is the primary caregiver and the source of social learning which must be supported and strengthened, but when families are unable to ensure the satisfaction of the needs of children and youth, it is society's responsibility to assist them;

(5) at a minimum, all children and youth need and deserve access to—

(A) the best possible physical and mental health;

(B) adequate and safe physical shelter;

(C) the highest quality of educational opportunity;

(D) effective training, apprenticeships, opportunities for community service, and productive employment;

(E) the widest range of civic, cultural, and recreational activities which recognize young Americans as resources and promote self-esteem and a stake in their communities;

(F) comprehensive community services which are efficient, coordinated, and readily available; and

(G) genuine participation in decisions concerning the planning and managing of their lives; and

(6) there is a great need for a comprehensive national policy with respect to young individuals, designed to engage Federal, State, and local government agencies, youth organizations, and other voluntary organizations.

(b) Statement of policy

It is the policy of the Congress that the Federal Government should work jointly with the States and their citizens to develop recommendations and plans for action to meet the challenge and needs of young individuals.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §982, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1280.)

§12372. Authority of President and Secretary; final report

(a) Calling of Conference

The President shall call a White House Conference on Children, Youth, and Families in 1993 in order to develop recommendations for further action in the field of children, youth, and families which will further the policy set forth in section 12371(b) of this title. The Conference shall be planned and conducted under the direction of the Secretary in cooperation with the Commissioner and with the heads of such other Federal departments and agencies as are appropriate. Such assistance may include the assignment of personnel.

(b) Purposes of Conference

The purposes of the Conference shall be—

(1) to increase the public awareness of the value and needs of young individuals;

(2) to examine the well-being of young individuals as well as the problems which they face;

(3) to describe the extent to which young individuals with identified needs do not receive services to meet such needs;

(4) to determine the reasons why young individuals are not receiving needed services; and

(5) to develop such specific and comprehensive recommendations for executive and legislative action as may be appropriate to improve the well-being of youth and their families.

(c) Conference participants and delegates

(1) Participants

In order to carry out the purposes of the Conference, the Conference shall bring together—

(A) representatives of Federal, State, and local governments, including representatives of the Government Accountability Office;

(B) professionals who are working in the field of children, youth, and families; and

(C) representatives of the general public, particularly young individuals.

(2) Selection of delegates

The delegates to attend the Conference shall be selected without regard to political affiliation or past partisan activity and shall, to the best of the appointing authority's ability, be representative of the spectrum of thought in the field of children, youth, and families.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §983, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1280; Pub. L. 108–271, §8(b), July 7, 2004, 118 Stat. 814.)

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (c)(1)(A). Pub. L. 108–271 substituted "Government Accountability Office" for "General Accounting Office".

§12373. Conference administration

(a) Administration

For purposes of carrying out this subchapter, the Secretary shall—

(1) request the cooperation and assistance of the heads of such other Federal departments and agencies as may be appropriate;

(2) furnish all reasonable assistance to State agencies administering programs related to children, youth and families, and to other appropriate organizations, to enable them to organize and conduct conferences in conjunction with the Conference;

(3) prepare and make available for public comment a proposed agenda for the Conference which reflects, to the greatest extent possible, the major issues facing children, youth, and families consistent with subsection (a);

(4) prepare and make available background materials which the Secretary deems necessary for the use of delegates to the Conference; and

(5) engage such additional personnel as may be necessary to carry out this section without regard to provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service, and without regard to chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of such title relating to classification and General Schedule pay rates.

(b) Duties

The Secretary shall, in carrying out the Secretary's responsibilities and functions under this section, ensure that—

(1) the conferences under subsection (a)(2) will be conducted so as to ensure broad participation of young individuals;

(2) the proposed agenda for the Conference under subsection (a)(3) is published in the Federal Register not less than 180 days before the beginning of the Conference and the proposed agenda is open for public comment for a period of not less than 60 days;

(3) the final agenda for the Conference, taking into consideration the comments received under paragraph (2), is published in the Federal Register and transmitted to the chief executive officers of the States not later than 30 days after the close of the public comment period provided for under paragraph (2);

(4) the personnel engaged under subsection (a)(5) shall be fairly balanced in terms of points of views represented and shall be appointed without regard to political affiliation or previous partisan activities;

(5) the recommendations of the Conference are not inappropriately influenced by any appointing authority or by any special interest, but will instead be the result of the independent judgment of the Conference; and

(6) to the extent practicable, current and adequate statistical data (including decennial census data) and other information on the well-being of young individuals in the United States are readily available, in advance of the Conference, to the delegates of the Conference, together with such information as may be necessary to evaluate Federal programs and policies relating to children and youth. In carrying out this subparagraph, the Secretary may make grants to, and enter into contracts with, public agencies and nonprofit private organizations.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §984, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1281.)

§12374. Conference committees

(a) Advisory committee

The Secretary shall establish an advisory committee to the Conference which shall include representatives from the Federal Council on Children, Youth, and Families, public agencies and nonprofit private organizations as appropriate.

(b) Other committees

The Secretary may establish such other committees, including technical committees, as may be necessary to assist in the planning, conducting, and reviewing of the Conference.

(c) Composition of committees

Each committee established under this section shall be composed of professionals and public members, and shall include individuals from low-income families and from minority groups.

(d) Compensation

Members of any committee established under this section (other than any officers or employees of the Federal Government), while attending conferences or meetings of the committee or otherwise serving at the request of the Secretary, shall be entitled to receive compensation at a rate to be fixed by the Secretary, but not to exceed the daily rate payable for GS–18 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5 (including travel time). While away from their homes or regular places of business, such members may be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized under section 5703 of such title for persons employed intermittently in Federal Government service.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §985, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1282.)

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES

Advisory committees established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless, in the case of a committee established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee established by Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See section 14 of Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS–16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS–16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, §101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101–509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

§12375. Report of Conference

(a) Proposed report

A proposed report of the Conference which shall include a statement of comprehensive coherent national policy on children, youth, and families together with recommendations for the implementation of such policy, shall be published and submitted to the chief executive officers of the

States not later than 180 days following the date on which the Conference is adjourned. The findings and recommendations included in the published proposed report shall be available immediately to the public.

(b) Response to proposed report

The chief executive officers of the States, after reviewing and soliciting recommendations and comments on the proposed report of the Conference, shall submit to the Secretary, not later than 180 days after receiving such report, their views and findings on the recommendations of the Conference.

(c) Final report

Not later than 180 days after submission of the views and comments of the chief executive officers of the States, the Secretary shall—

(1) prepare a final report on the conference, which shall include—

(A) a statement of the policy and recommendations of the Conference;

(B) the views and comments of the chief executive officers of the States; and

(C) the recommendations of the Secretary, after taking into consideration the views and comments of such officers, for administrative and legislative action necessary to implement the recommendations of the Conference; and

(2) publish and transmit such report to the President and the chairman of the Committee on Education and Labor of the House of Representatives and chairman of the Committee on Labor and Human Resources of the Senate.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §986, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1282.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Labor and Human Resources of Senate changed to Committee on Health, Education, Labor, and Pensions of Senate by Senate Resolution No. 20, One Hundred Sixth Congress, Jan. 19, 1999.

Committee on Education and Labor of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Education and the Workforce of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 5, One Hundred Twelfth Congress, Jan. 5, 2011.

§12376. Definitions

For purposes of this subchapter—

(1) the term "Conference" means the 1993 White House Conference on Children, Youth, and Families; and

(2) the terms "child", "youth", and "young individual" means [1] an individual who is less than 21 years of age.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §987, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1283.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "mean".*

§12377. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary, for each of the fiscal years 1993 and 1994, to carry out this subchapter. Sums appropriated under this subsection shall remain available until the expiration of the 1-year period beginning on the date the Conference is adjourned. New spending authority or authority to enter into contracts as provided in this subchapter shall be effective only to the extent and in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

(b) Return of unexpended funds

Any funds remaining upon the expiration of the 1-year period referred to in subsection (a) shall be returned to the Treasury of the United States and credited as miscellaneous receipts.

(Pub. L. 101–501, title IX, §988, Nov. 3, 1990, 104 Stat. 1283.)

CHAPTER 128—HYDROGEN RESEARCH, DEVELOPMENT, AND DEMONSTRATION PROGRAM

Sec.

§12401. Finding, purposes, and definitions

(a) Finding

Congress finds that it is in the national interest to accelerate efforts to develop a domestic capability to economically produce hydrogen in quantities that will make a significant contribution toward reducing the Nation's dependence on conventional fuels.

(b) Purposes

The purposes of this chapter are—

(1) to direct the Secretary of Energy to conduct a research, development, and demonstration program leading to the production, storage, transport, and use of hydrogen for industrial, residential, transportation, and utility applications;

(2) to direct the Secretary to develop a technology assessment and information transfer program among the Federal agencies and aerospace, transportation, energy, and other entities; and

(3) to develop renewable energy resources as a primary source of energy for the production of hydrogen.

(c) Definitions

As used in this chapter, the term:

(1) "critical technology" (or "critical technical issue") means a technology (or issue) that, in the opinion of the Secretary, requires understanding and development in order to take the next needed step in the development of hydrogen as an economic fuel or storage medium;

(2) "Department" means the Department of Energy; and

(3) "Secretary" means the Secretary of Energy.

(Pub. L. 101–566, §102, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2797; Pub. L. 104–271, title I, §101, Oct. 9, 1996, 110 Stat. 3304.)

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 104–271, §101(a), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) read as follows: "to direct the Secretary to prepare a comprehensive 5-year comprehensive program management plan that will identify and resolve critical technical issues necessary for the realization of a domestic capability to produce, distribute, and use hydrogen economically within the shortest time practicable;".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104–271, §101(b), added par. (2) and redesignated former par. (2) as (3).

SHORT TITLE OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 104–271, §1, Oct. 9, 1996, 110 Stat. 3304, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 7238 of this title, amending this section and sections 12402 to 12405, 12407, 12408, and 13436 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 7238, 12403, and 13436 of this title] may be cited as the 'Hydrogen Future Act of 1996'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 101–566, title I, §101, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2797, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter] may be referred to as the 'Spark M. Matsunaga Hydrogen Research, Development, and Demonstration Act of 1990'."

§12402. Report to Congress

(a) Not later than January 1, 1999, the Secretary shall transmit to Congress a detailed report on the status and progress of the programs authorized under this chapter.

(b) A report under subsection (a) shall include, in addition to any views and recommendations of the Secretary—

(1) an analysis of the effectiveness of the programs authorized under this chapter, to be prepared and submitted to the Secretary by the Hydrogen Technical Advisory Panel established under section 12407 of this title; and

(2) recommendations of the Hydrogen Technical Advisory Panel for any improvements in the program that are needed, including recommendations for additional legislation.

(Pub. L. 101–566, §103, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2797; Pub. L. 104–271, title I, §102(a), Oct. 9, 1996, 110 Stat. 3304.)

AMENDMENTS

1996—Pub. L. 104–271 amended section generally, substituting provisions requiring report to Congress on chapter programs by Jan. 1, 1999, for provisions regarding preparation and contents of comprehensive 5-year program management plan for research and development activities and comprehensive large-scale hydrogen demonstration plan with respect to section 12404 demonstrations.

§12403. Hydrogen research and development

(a) Program

The Secretary shall conduct a hydrogen research and development program relating to production, storage, transportation, and use of hydrogen, with the goal of enabling the private sector to demonstrate the technical feasibility of using hydrogen for industrial, residential, transportation, and utility applications.

(b) Research

In conducting the program authorized by this section, the Secretary shall—

(1) give particular attention to developing an understanding and resolution of critical technical issues preventing the introduction of hydrogen into the marketplace;

(2) initiate or accelerate existing research in critical technical issues that will contribute to the development of more economic hydrogen production and use, including, but not limited to, critical technical issues with respect to production (giving priority to those production techniques that use renewable energy resources as their primary source of energy for hydrogen production), liquefaction, transmission, distribution, storage, and use (including use of hydrogen in surface transportation); and

(3) survey private sector hydrogen activities and take steps to ensure that research and development activities under this section do not displace or compete with the privately funded hydrogen research and development activities of United States industry.

(c) Innovative energy technologies

The Secretary is authorized to evaluate any reasonable new or improved technology, including

basic research on highly innovative energy technologies, that could lead or contribute to the development of economic hydrogen production, storage, and utilization.

(d) Renewable energy systems; hybrid systems

The Secretary is authorized to evaluate any reasonable new or improved technology that could lead or contribute to, or demonstrate the use of, advanced renewable energy systems or hybrid systems for use in isolated communities that currently import diesel fuel as the primary fuel for electric power production.

(e) Information

The Secretary is authorized to arrange for tests and demonstrations and to disseminate to researchers and developers information, data, and other materials necessary to support the research and development activities authorized under this section and other efforts authorized under this chapter, consistent with section 12405 of this title.

(f) Federal funding

The Secretary shall carry out the research and development activities authorized under this section only through the funding of research and development proposals submitted by interested persons according to such procedures as the Secretary may require and evaluate on a competitive basis using peer review. Such funding shall be in the form of a grant agreement, procurement contract, or cooperative agreement (as those terms are used in chapter 63 of title 31).

(g) Non-Federal funding

The Secretary shall not consider a proposal submitted by a person from industry unless the proposal contains a certification that reasonable efforts to obtain non-Federal funding for the entire cost of the project have been made, and that such non-Federal funding could not be reasonably obtained. As appropriate, the Secretary shall require a commitment from non-Federal sources of at least 50 percent of the cost of the development portion of such a proposal.

(h) Prohibition on duplicative efforts

The Secretary shall not carry out any activities under this section that unnecessarily duplicate activities carried out elsewhere by the Federal Government or industry.

(i) Federal funding consistent with the Agreement on Subsidies and Countervailing Measures

The Secretary shall establish, after consultation with other Federal agencies, terms and conditions under which Federal funding will be provided under this chapter that are consistent with the Agreement on Subsidies and Countervailing Measures referred to in section 3511(d)(12) of title 19.

(Pub. L. 101–566, §104, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2798; Pub. L. 104–271, title I, §103(a), Oct. 9, 1996, 110 Stat. 3305.)

AMENDMENTS

1996—Pub. L. 104–271 amended section generally, substituting present provisions for provisions which stated in subsec. (a) the Secretary was to conduct a research and development program for development of a domestic hydrogen fuel production capability; subsec. (b) attention was to be given to research of critical technical issues; subsec. (c) renewable energy priority; subsec. (d) new technologies; and subsec. (e) gathering and dissemination of information to support research and development efforts.

FUEL CELLS

Pub. L. 104–271, title II, Oct. 9, 1996, 110 Stat. 3307, provided that:

"SEC. 201. INTEGRATION OF FUEL CELLS WITH HYDROGEN PRODUCTION SYSTEMS.

"(a) Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this section [Oct. 9, 1996], and subject to the availability of appropriations made specifically for this section, the Secretary of Energy shall solicit proposals for projects to prove the feasibility of integrating fuel cells with—

"(1) photovoltaic systems for hydrogen production; or

"(2) systems for hydrogen production from solid waste via gasification or steam reforming.

"(b) Each proposal submitted in response to the solicitation under this section shall be evaluated on a competitive gas is [basis] using peer review. The Secretary is not required to make an award under this section

in the absence of a meritorious proposals. [sic]

"(c) The Secretary shall give preference, in making an award under this section, to proposals that—

"(1) are submitted jointly from consortia including academic institutions, industry, State or local governments, and Federal laboratories; and

"(2) reflect proven experience and capability with technologies relevant to the systems described in subsections (a)(1) and (a)(2).

"(d) In the case of a proposal involving development or demonstration, the Secretary shall require a commitment from non-Federal sources of at least 50 percent of the cost of the development or demonstration portion of the proposal.

"(e) The Secretary shall establish, after consultation with other Federal agencies, terms and conditions under which Federal funding will be provided under this title that are consistent with the Agreement on Subsidies and Countervailing Measures referred to in section 101(d)(12) of the Uruguay Round Agreement Act (19 U.S.C. 3511(d)(12)).

"SEC. 202. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.

"There are authorized to be appropriated, for activities under this section [title], a total of $50,000,000 for fiscal years 1997 and 1998, to remain available until September 30, 1999."

§12404. Demonstrations

(a) Requirement

The Secretary shall conduct demonstrations of critical technologies, preferably in self-contained locations, so that technical and non-technical parameters can be evaluated to best determine commercial applicability of the technology.

(b) Small-scale demonstrations

Concurrently with activities conducted pursuant to section 12403 of this title, the Secretary shall conduct small-scale demonstrations of hydrogen technology at self-contained sites.

(c) Non-Federal funding

The Secretary shall require a commitment from non-Federal sources of at least 50 percent of the cost of any demonstration conducted under this section.

(Pub. L. 101–566, §105, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2799; Pub. L. 104–271, title I, §104, Oct. 9, 1996, 110 Stat. 3306.)

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104–271 added subsec. (c).

§12405. Technology transfer program

(a) Program

The Secretary shall conduct a program designed to accelerate wider application of hydrogen production, storage, utilization, and other technologies available in near term as a result of aerospace experience as well as other research progress by transferring critical technologies to the private sector. The Secretary shall direct the program with the advice and assistance of the Hydrogen Technical Advisory Panel established under section 12407 of this title. The objective in seeking this advice is to increase participation of private industry in the demonstration of near commercial applications through cooperative research and development arrangements, joint ventures or other appropriate arrangements involving the private sector.

(b) Information

The Secretary, in carrying out the program authorized by subsection (a), shall—

(1) undertake an inventory and assessment of hydrogen technologies and their commercial capability to economically produce, store, or utilize hydrogen in aerospace, transportation, electric utilities, petrochemical, chemical, merchant hydrogen, and other industrial sectors; and

(2) develop a National Aeronautics Space Administration, Department of Energy, and industry information exchange program to improve technology transfer for—

(A) application of aerospace experience by industry;

(B) application of research progress by industry and aerospace;

(C) application of commercial capability of industry by aerospace; and

(D) expression of industrial needs to research organizations.

The information exchange program may consist of workshops, publications, conferences, and a data base for the use by the public and private sectors. The Secretary shall also foster the exchange of generic, nonproprietary information and technology, developed pursuant to this chapter, among industry, academia, and the Federal Government, to help the United States economy attain the economic benefits of this information and technology.

(Pub. L. 101–566, §106, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2799; Pub. L. 104–271, title I, §105, Oct. 9, 1996, 110 Stat. 3306.)

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104–271 inserted at end "The Secretary shall also foster the exchange of generic, nonproprietary information and technology, developed pursuant to this chapter, among industry, academia, and the Federal Government, to help the United States economy attain the economic benefits of this information and technology."

§12406. Coordination and consultation

(a) Secretary's responsibility

The Secretary shall have overall management responsibility for carrying out programs under this chapter. In carrying out such programs, the Secretary, consistent with such overall management responsibility—

(1) shall use the expertise of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration and the Department of Transportation; and

(2) may use the expertise of any other Federal agency in accordance with subsection (b) in carrying out any activities under this chapter,[1] to the extent that the Secretary determines that any such agency has capabilities which would allow such agency to contribute to the purpose of this chapter.

(b) Assistance

The Secretary may, in accordance with subsection (a), obtain the assistance of any department, agency, or instrumentality of the Executive branch of the Federal Government upon written request, on a reimbursable basis or otherwise and with the consent of such department, agency, or instrumentality. Each such request shall identify the assistance the Secretary deems necessary to carry out any duty under this chapter.

(c) Consultation

The Secretary shall consult with the Administrator of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, the Secretary of Transportation, and the Hydrogen Technical Advisory Panel established under section 12407 of this title in carrying out his authorities pursuant to this chapter.

(Pub. L. 101–566, §107, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2800.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, the first time appearing in subsec. (a)(2), was in the original "this title", and was translated as reading "this Act" meaning Pub. L. 101–566, to reflect the probable intent of Congress, because Pub. L. 101–566 is not divided into titles.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12407. Technical panel

(a) Establishment

There is hereby established the Hydrogen Technical Advisory Panel (the "technical panel"), to advise the Secretary on the programs under this chapter.

(b) Membership

The technical panel shall be appointed by the Secretary and shall be comprised of such representatives from domestic industry, universities, professional societies, Government laboratories, financial, environmental, and other organizations as the Secretary deems appropriate based on his assessment of the technical and other qualifications of such representatives. Appointments to the technical panel shall be made within 90 days after November 15, 1990. The technical panel shall have a chairman, who shall be elected by the members from among their number.

(c) Cooperation

The heads of the departments, agencies, and instrumentalities of the Executive branch of the Federal Government shall cooperate with the technical panel in carrying out the requirements of this section and shall furnish to the technical panel such information as the technical panel deems necessary to carry out this section.

(d) Review

The technical panel shall review and make any necessary recommendations to the Secretary on the following items—

(1) the implementation and conduct of programs under this chapter; and

(2) the economic, technological, and environmental consequences of the deployment of hydrogen production and use systems.

(e) Support

The Secretary shall provide such staff, funds and other support as may be necessary to enable the technical panel to carry out the functions described in this section.

(Pub. L. 101–566, §108, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2800; Pub. L. 104–271, title I, §102(b), Oct. 9, 1996, 110 Stat. 3305.)

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 104–271 struck out par. (3) which read as follows: "comments on and recommendations for improvements in the comprehensive 5-year program management plan required under section 12402 of this title."

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY PANELS

Advisory panels established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless, in the case of a panel established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such panel is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a panel established by Congress, its duration is otherwise provided for by law. See sections 3(2) and 14 of Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§12408. Authorization of appropriations

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated to carry out the purposes of this chapter (in addition to any amounts made available for such purposes under other Acts)—

(1) $3,000,000 for the fiscal year 1992;

(2) $7,000,000 for the fiscal year 1993;

(3) $10,000,000 for the fiscal year 1994;

(4) $14,500,000 for fiscal year 1996;
(5) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 1997;
(6) $25,000,000 for fiscal year 1998;
(7) $30,000,000 for fiscal year 1999;
(8) $35,000,000 for fiscal year 2000; and
(9) $40,000,000 for fiscal year 2001.

(Pub. L. 101–566, §109, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2801; Pub. L. 104–271, title I, §106, Oct. 9, 1996, 110 Stat. 3306.)

AMENDMENTS

1996—Pub. L. 104–271 substituted "under other Acts" for "to other Acts" in introductory provisions and added pars. (4) to (9).

CHAPTER 129—NATIONAL AND COMMUNITY SERVICE

§12501. Findings and purpose

(a) Findings

The Congress finds the following:

(1) Throughout the United States, there are pressing unmet human, educational, environmental, and public safety needs.

(2) Americans desire to affirm common responsibilities and shared values, and join together in positive experiences, that transcend race, religion, gender, age, disability, region, income, and education.

(3) The rising costs of postsecondary education are putting higher education out of reach for an increasing number of citizens.

(4) Americans of all ages can improve their communities and become better citizens through service to the United States.

(5) Nonprofit organizations, local governments, States, and the Federal Government are already supporting a wide variety of national service programs that deliver needed services in a cost-effective manner.

(6) Residents of low-income communities, especially youth and young adults, can be empowered through their service, and can help provide future community leadership.

(b) Purpose

It is the purpose of this chapter to—

(1) meet the unmet human, educational, environmental, and public safety needs of the United States, without displacing existing workers;

(2) renew the ethic of civic responsibility and the spirit of community and service throughout the varied and diverse communities of the United States;

(3) expand educational opportunity by rewarding individuals who participate in national service with an increased ability to pursue higher education or job training;

(4) encourage citizens of the United States, regardless of age, income, geographic location, or disability, to engage in full-time or part-time national service;

(5) reinvent government to eliminate duplication, support locally established initiatives, require measurable goals for performance, and offer flexibility in meeting those goals;

(6) expand and strengthen existing national service programs with demonstrated experience in providing structured service opportunities with visible benefits to the participants and community;

(7) build on the existing organizational service infrastructure of Federal, State, and local programs, agencies, and communities to expand full-time and part-time service opportunities for all citizens;

(8) provide tangible benefits to the communities in which national service is performed;

(9) expand and strengthen service-learning programs through year-round opportunities, including opportunities during the summer months, to improve the education of children and youth and to maximize the benefits of national and community service, in order to renew the ethic of civic responsibility and the spirit of community for children and youth throughout the United States;

(10) assist in coordinating and strengthening Federal and other service opportunities, including opportunities for participation in emergency and disaster preparedness, relief, and recovery;

(11) increase service opportunities for the Nation's retiring professionals, including such opportunities for those retiring from the science, technical, engineering, and mathematics professions, to improve the education of the Nation's youth and keep America competitive in the global knowledge economy, and to further utilize the experience, knowledge, and skills of older individuals;

(12) encourage the continued service of the alumni of the national service programs, including service in times of national need;

(13) encourage individuals age 55 or older to partake of service opportunities;

(14) focus national service on the areas of national need such service has the capacity to address, such as improving education, increasing energy conservation, improving the health status of economically disadvantaged individuals, and improving economic opportunity for economically disadvantaged individuals;

(15) recognize and increase the impact of social entrepreneurs and other nonprofit community organizations in addressing national and local challenges;

(16) increase public and private investment in nonprofit community organizations that are effectively addressing national and local challenges and encourage such organizations to replicate and expand successful initiatives;

(17) leverage Federal investments to increase State, local, business, and philanthropic resources to address national and local challenges;

(18) support institutions of higher education that engage students in community service activities and provide high-quality service-learning opportunities; and

(19) recognize the expertise veterans can offer to national service programs, expand the participation of the veterans in the national service programs, and assist the families of veterans and members of the Armed Forces on active duty.

(Pub. L. 101–610, §2, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3129; Pub. L. 103–82, §2(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 787; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1101, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1463.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1101(1), substituted "community and service throughout the varied and diverse communities of" for "community throughout".

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 111–13, §1101(2), inserted "geographic location," after "income,".

Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 111–13, §1101(3), inserted "national" after "existing".

Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 111–13, §1101(4)(A), substituted "programs, agencies, and communities" for "programs and agencies".

Subsec. (b)(9) to (19). Pub. L. 111–13, §1101(4)(B)–(6), added pars. (9) to (19).

1993—Pub. L. 103–82 amended section generally, substituting provisions relating to findings and purposes for former provisions setting forth the purposes of this chapter.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

SHORT TITLE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–13, §1(a), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1460, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Serve America Act'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 107–117, div. B, §1301(a), Jan. 10, 2002, 115 Stat. 2339, provided that: "This section [enacting subchapter III of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Unity in the Spirit of America Act' or the 'USA Act'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 103–304, §1, Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1565, provided that: "This Act [amending sections 4953, 5024, 12591, 12602, 12615, 12619, 12622, 12651d, 12653, and 12655n of this title and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 4953 of this title] may be cited as the 'King Holiday and Service Act of 1994'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 103–82, §1(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 785, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'National and Community Service Trust Act of 1993'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 102–384, §1, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1455, provided that: "This Act [amending sections 12511, 12522, 12523, 12525, 12526, 12541, 12550, 12612, 12614, 12615, 12622, 12639, 12651, and 12681 of this title] may be cited as the 'National and Community Service Technical Amendment Act of 1992'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1991 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 102–10, §1, Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 29, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 12645 of this title, amending sections 5091m, 12511, 12521, 12522, 12524, 12527, 12531, 12542 to 12544, 12548, 12553, 12575, 12576, 12602, 12638, and 12651 of this title, and repealing section 12556 of this title] may be cited as the 'National and Community Service Technical Amendments Act of 1991'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 101–610, §1(a), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter, sections 5091 to 5091n of this title, and section 2452a of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse, amending sections 1018c, 1018e, 1070a–6, 1087vv, 1092, and 1092b of Title 20, Education, and former section 546 of Title 45, Railroads, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 24301 of Title 49, Transportation] may be cited as the 'National and Community Service Act of 1990'."

Pub. L. 101–610, title I, subtitle B (§§110–118), §110, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3132, which provided that such subtitle (enacting former part B (§§12521–12531) of subchapter I of this chapter) be cited as the "Serve-America: The Community Service, Schools and Service-Learning Act of 1990", was repealed by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 825.

Pub. L. 108–45, §1, July 3, 2003, 117 Stat. 844, which provided that Pub. L. 108–45, enacting section 12605 of this title, could be cited as the "Strengthen AmeriCorps Program Act", was repealed by Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1406(b), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1521.

Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199, formerly §120, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3140, as renumbered by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle I (§§199–199O) (formerly subtitle C (§§120–136)) of title I of Pub. L. 101–610, enacting division I (formerly part C) of subchapter I of this chapter] may be cited as the 'American Conservation and Youth Service Corps Act of 1990'."

Pub. L. 101–610, title I, subtitle D (§§140–150), §140, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3150, which provided that such subtitle (enacting former part D (§§12571–12580) of subchapter I of this chapter) be cited as the

"National and Community Service Act", was omitted in the general amendment of part D (now division D) by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §102(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 816.

Pub. L. 101–610, title III, §301, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3180, which provided that title III of Pub. L. 101–610, enacting subchapter II of this chapter, could be cited as "The Points of Light Foundation Act", was repealed by Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1831(a), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1578.

COMPLIANCE WITH BUY AMERICAN ACT

Pub. L. 103–82, title V, §501, Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 922, provided that: "No funds appropriated pursuant to this Act [see Tables for classification] (including the amendments made by this Act) may be expended by an entity unless the entity agrees that in expending the assistance the entity will comply with sections 2 through 4 of the Act of March 3, 1933 ([former] 41 U.S.C. 10a–10c, popularly known as the 'Buy American Act' [see 41 U.S.C. 8301 et seq.])."

SENSE OF CONGRESS; REQUIREMENT REGARDING NOTICE

Pub. L. 103–82, title V, §502, Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 923, provided that:

"(a) PURCHASE OF AMERICAN-MADE EQUIPMENT AND PRODUCTS.—In the case of any equipment or product that may be authorized to be purchased with financial assistance provided under this Act [see Tables for classification] (including the amendments made by this Act), it is the sense of the Congress that entities receiving such assistance should, in expending the assistance, purchase only American-made equipment and products.

"(b) NOTICE TO RECIPIENTS OF ASSISTANCE.—In providing financial assistance under this Act (including the amendments made by this Act), the Secretary of Education shall provide to each recipient of the assistance a notice describing the statement made in subsection (a) by the Congress."

PROHIBITION OF CONTRACTS WITH PERSONS FALSELY LABELING PRODUCTS AS MADE IN AMERICA

Pub. L. 103–82, title V, §503, Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 923, provided that: "If it has been finally determined by a court or Federal agency that any person intentionally affixed a label bearing a 'Made in America' inscription, or any inscription with the same meaning, to any product sold in or shipped to the United States that is not made in the United States, the person shall be ineligible to receive any contract or subcontract made with funds appropriated to carry out this Act, pursuant to the debarment, suspension, and ineligibility procedures described in sections 9.400 through 9.409 of title 48, Code of Federal Regulations."

EX. ORD. NO. 13254. ESTABLISHING THE USA FREEDOM CORPS

Ex. Ord. No. 13254, Jan. 29, 2002, 67 F.R. 4869, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 13286, §6, Feb. 28, 2003, 68 F.R. 10620, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Policy*. Building on our Nation's rich tradition of citizen service, this Administration's policy is to foster a culture of responsibility, service, and citizenship by promoting, expanding, and enhancing public service opportunities for all Americans and by making these opportunities readily available to citizens from all geographic areas, professions, and walks of life. More specifically, this Administration encourages all Americans to serve their country for the equivalent of at least 2 years (4,000 hours) over their lifetimes. Toward those ends, the executive departments, agencies, and offices constituting the USA Freedom Corps shall coordinate and strengthen Federal and other service opportunities, including opportunities for participation in homeland security preparedness and response, other areas of public and social service, and international service. The executive branch departments, agencies, and offices also will work with State and local governments and private entities to foster and encourage participation in public and social service programs, as appropriate.

SEC. 2. *USA Freedom Corps*. The USA Freedom Corps shall be an interagency initiative, bringing together executive branch departments, agencies, and offices with public service programs and components, including but not limited to programs and components with the following functions:

(i) recruiting, mobilizing, and encouraging all Americans to engage in public service;

(ii) providing concrete opportunities to engage in public service;

(iii) providing the public with access to information about public service opportunities through Federal programs and elsewhere; and

(iv) providing recognition and awards to volunteers and other participants in public service programs.

SEC. 3. *USA Freedom Corps Council*. (a) *Establishment and Mission*. There shall be a USA Freedom Corps Council (Council) chaired by the President and composed of heads of executive branch departments,

agencies, and offices, which shall have the following functions:

(i) serving as a forum for Federal officials responsible for public service programs to coordinate and improve public service programs and activities administered by the executive branch;

(ii) working to encourage all Americans to engage in public service, whether through Federal programs or otherwise;

(iii) advising the President and heads of executive branch departments, agencies, and offices concerning the optimization of current Federal programs to enhance public service opportunities;

(iv) coordinating public outreach and publicity of citizen service opportunities provided by Federal programs;

(v) encouraging schools, universities, private public service organizations, and other non-Federal entities to foster and reward public service;

(vi) studying the availability of public service opportunities provided by the Federal Government and elsewhere; and

(vii) tracking progress in participation in public service programs.

(b) *Membership*. In addition to the Chair, the members of the Council shall be the heads of the executive branch departments, agencies, and offices listed below, or their designees, and such other officers of the executive branch as the President may from time to time designate. Every member of the Council or designee shall be a full-time or permanent part-time officer or employee of the Federal Government. Members shall not be compensated for their service on the Council in addition to the salaries they receive as employees or officers of the Federal Government.

(i) Vice President;

(ii) Attorney General;

(iii) Secretary of State;

(iv) Secretary of Health and Human Services;

(v) Secretary of Commerce;

(vi) Secretary of Education;

(vii) Secretary of Veterans Affairs;

(viii) Secretary of Homeland Security;

(ix) Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation for National and Community Service;

(x) Director of the Peace Corps;

(xi) Administrator of the United States Agency for International Development;

(xii) Director of the USA Freedom Corps Office; and

(xiii) Director of the Office of Faith-Based and Community Initiatives.

(c) *Chair*. The President shall be the Chair of the USA Freedom Corps Council, and in his absence, the Vice President shall serve as Chair. The Director of the USA Freedom Corps Office may, at the President's direction, preside over meetings of the Council in the President's and Vice President's absence.

(d) *Honorary Co-Chair*. The President may, from time to time, designate an Honorary Co-Chair or Co-Chairs, who shall serve in an advisory role to the Council and to the President on matters considered by the Council. Any Honorary Co-Chair shall be a full-time or permanent part-time employee or officer of the Federal Government.

(e) *Meetings*. The Council shall meet at the President's direction. The Director of the USA Freedom Corps Office shall be responsible, at the President's direction, for determining the agenda, ensuring that necessary papers are prepared, and recording Council actions and Presidential decisions.

(f) *Responsibilities of Executive Branch Departments, Agencies, and Offices.*

(i) Members of the Council shall remain responsible for overseeing the programs administered by their respective departments, agencies, and offices. Each such department, agency, and office will retain its authority and responsibility to administer those programs according to law;

(ii) Each executive branch department, agency, or office with responsibility for programs relating to the functions and missions of the USA Freedom Corps as described in section 2 of this order shall be responsible for identifying those public service opportunities and coordinating with the USA Freedom Corps Council to ensure that such programs are, if appropriate, publicized and encouraged by the Council; and

(iii) Upon the request of the Chair, and to the extent permitted by law, the heads of executive branch departments and agencies shall provide the Council with relevant information.

SEC. 4. *USA Freedom Corps Office*. (a) *General*. The USA Freedom Corps also shall be supported by a USA Freedom Corps Office (Office), which shall be a component of the White House Office. The USA Freedom Corps Office shall have a Director who shall be appointed by the President. The Director shall be assisted by an appropriate staff within the White House Office.

(b) *Presidential Recognition to Participants in USA Freedom Corps Programs*. In addition to supporting and facilitating the functions of the Council listed in section 3 of this order, the Office shall support the President in providing recognition to volunteers and other participants in programs and activities relating to the functions and missions of the USA Freedom Corps as described in section 2 of this order.

SEC. 5. *General Provisions*. (a) The White House Office shall provide the Council and Office with such funding and administrative support, to the extent permitted by law and subject to the availability of appropriations, as directed by the Chief of Staff to the President to carry out the provisions of this order.

(b) This order does not alter the existing authorities or roles of executive branch departments, agencies, or offices. Nothing in this order shall supersede any requirement made by or under law.

(c) This order does not create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or equity, against the United States, its departments, agencies, or other entities, its officers or employees, or any other person.

GEORGE W. BUSH.

EX. ORD. NO. 13331. NATIONAL AND COMMUNITY SERVICE PROGRAMS

Ex. Ord. No. 13331, Feb. 27, 2004, 69 F.R. 9911, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, and to strengthen the ability of programs authorized under the national service laws to build and reinforce a culture of service, citizenship, and responsibility throughout our Nation, and to institute reforms to improve accountability and efficiency in the administration of those programs, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Definitions*. For purposes of this order:

(a) "National service laws" means the National and Community Service Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12501 *et seq*.) and the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4950 *et seq*.);

(b) "National and community service programs" means those programs authorized under the national service laws;

(c) "Policies governing programs authorized under the national service laws" refers to all policies, programs, guidelines, and regulations, including official guidance and internal agency procedures and practices, that are issued by the Corporation for National and Community Service (Corporation) and have significant effects on national and community service programs; and

(d) "Professional corps programs" means those programs described in section 122(a)(8) of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12572(a)(8)) [see 42 U.S.C. 12572(c)(1)(D)].

SEC. 2. *Fundamental Principles and Policymaking Criteria*. In formulating and implementing policies governing programs authorized under the national service laws, the Corporation shall, to the extent permitted by law, adhere to the following fundamental principles:

(a) National and community service programs should support and encourage greater engagement of Americans in volunteering;

(b) National and community service programs should be more responsive to State and local needs;

(c) National and community service programs should make Federal support more accountable and more effective; and

(d) National and community service programs should expand opportunities for involvement of faith-based and other community organizations.

SEC. 3. *Agency Implementation*. (a) The Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation for National and Community Service (Chief Executive Officer) shall, in coordination with the USA Freedom Corps Council, review and evaluate existing policies governing national and community service programs in order to assess the consistency of such policies with the fundamental principles and policymaking criteria described in section 2 of this order.

(b) The Chief Executive Officer shall ensure that all policies governing national and community service programs issued by the Corporation are consistent with the fundamental principles and policymaking criteria described in section 2 of this order. To that end, the Chief Executive Officer shall, to the extent permitted by law,

(i) amend all such existing policies to ensure that they are consistent with the fundamental principles and policymaking criteria articulated in section 2 of this order; and

(ii) where appropriate, implement new policies that are consistent with and necessary to further the fundamental principles and policymaking criteria set forth in section 2 of this order.

(c) In developing implementation steps, the Chief Executive Officer should address, at a minimum, the following objectives:

(i) National and community service programs should leverage Federal resources to maximize support from the private sector and from State and local governments, with an emphasis on reforms that enhance

programmatic flexibility, reduce administrative burdens, and calibrate Federal assistance to the respective needs of recipient organizations;

(ii) National and community service programs should leverage Federal resources to enable the recruitment and effective management of a larger number of volunteers than is currently possible;

(iii) National and community service programs should increase efforts to expand opportunities for, and strengthen the capacity of, faith-based and other community organizations in building and strengthening an infrastructure to support volunteers that meet community needs;

(iv) National and community service programs should adopt performance measures to identify those practices that merit replication and further investment, as well as to ensure accountability;

(v) National and community service programs should, consistent with the principles of Federalism and the constitutional role of the States and Indian tribes, promote innovation, flexibility, and results at all levels of government;

(vi) National and community service programs based in schools should employ tutors who meet required paraprofessional qualifications, and use such practices and methodologies as are required for supplemental educational services;

(vii) National and community service programs should foster a lifetime of citizenship and civic engagement among those who serve;

(viii) National and community service programs should avoid or eliminate practices that displace volunteers who are not supported under the national service laws; and

(ix) Guidelines for the selection of national and community service programs should recognize the importance of professional corps programs in light of the fundamental principles and policymaking criteria set forth in this order.

SEC. 4. *Management Reforms*. (a) The Corporation should implement internal management reforms to strengthen its oversight of national and community service programs through enforcement of performance and compliance standards and other management tools.

(b) Management reforms should include, but should not be limited to, the following:

(i) Institutionalized changes to the budgetary and grant-making processes to ensure that financial commitments remain within available resources;

(ii) Enhanced accounting and management systems that would ensure compliance with fiscal restrictions and provide timely, accurate, and readily available information about enrollment in AmeriCorps and about funding and obligations incurred for all national and community service programs;

(iii) Assurance by the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer in the Corporation's Management Representation Letter that its financial statements, including the Statement of Budgetary Resources, are accurate and reliable; and

(iv) Management reforms that tie employee performance to fiscal responsibility, attainment of management goals, and professional conduct.

SEC. 5. *Report*. Within 180 days after the date of this order, the Chief Executive Officer shall report to the President, through the Assistant to the President and Director of the USA Freedom Corps Office, the actions the Corporation proposes to undertake to accomplish the objectives set forth in this order.

SEC. 6. *Judicial Review*. This order is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity by a party against the United States, its departments, agencies, or other entities, its officers or employees, or any other person.

GEORGE W. BUSH.

EXPANDING NATIONAL SERVICE THROUGH PARTNERSHIPS TO ADVANCE GOVERNMENT PRIORITIES

Memorandum of President of the United States, July 15, 2013, 78 F.R. 43747, provided:

Memorandum for the Heads of Executive Departments and Agencies

Service has always been integral to the American identity. Our country was built on the belief that all of us, working together, can make this country a better place for all. That spirit remains as strong and integral to our identity today as at our country's founding.

Since its creation 20 years ago, the Corporation for National and Community Service (CNCS) has been the Federal agency charged with leading and expanding national service. The Edward M. Kennedy Serve America Act of 2009 (SAA) expanded CNCS's authority to create opportunities for more Americans to serve. This landmark, bipartisan legislation focuses national service on six areas: emergency and disaster services; economic opportunity; education; environmental stewardship; healthy futures; and veterans and military families. The SAA provides greater opportunities for CNCS to partner with other executive departments and agencies (agencies) and with the private sector to utilize national service to address these critical areas.

National service and volunteering can be effective solutions to national challenges and can have positive and lasting impacts that reach beyond the immediate service experience. Americans engaged in national service make an intensive commitment to tackle unmet national and local needs by working through non-profit, faith-based, and community organizations. Service can help Americans gain valuable skills, pursue higher education, and jumpstart their careers, which can provide immediate and long-term benefits to those individuals, as well as the communities in which they serve.

Americans are ready and willing to serve. Applications from Americans seeking to engage in national service programs far exceed the number of available positions. By creating new partnerships between agencies and CNCS that expand national service opportunities in areas aligned with agency missions, we can utilize the American spirit of service to improve lives and communities, expand economic and educational opportunities, enhance agencies' capacity to achieve their missions, efficiently use tax dollars, help individuals develop skills that will enable them to prepare for long-term careers, and build a pipeline to employment inside and outside the Federal Government.

Therefore, by the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, and in order to expand the positive impact of national service, I hereby direct the following:

SECTION 1. *Establishing a Task Force on Expanding National Service*. There is established a Task Force on Expanding National Service, to be co-chaired by the Chief Executive Officer of CNCS and the Director of the Domestic Policy Council, which shall include representatives from agencies and offices that administer programs and develop policies in areas that include the six focus areas set forth in the SAA. The Task Force shall include representatives from:

(a) the Department of Defense;
(b) the Department of Justice;
(c) the Department of the Interior;
(d) the Department of Agriculture;
(e) the Department of Commerce;
(f) the Department of Labor;
(g) the Department of Health and Human Services;
(h) the Department of Housing and Urban Development;
(i) the Department of Transportation;
(j) the Department of Energy;
(k) the Department of Education;
(l) the Department of Veterans Affairs;
(m) the Department of Homeland Security;
(n) the Peace Corps;
(o) the National Science Foundation;
(p) the Office of Personnel Management;
(q) the Environmental Protection Agency;
(r) the White House Office of Cabinet Affairs; and
(s) such other agencies and offices as the co-chairs may designate.

SEC. 2. *Mission and Function of the Task Force*. (a) The Task Force shall:

(i) identify existing, and, if appropriate, recommend new, policies or practices that support the expansion of national service and volunteer opportunities that align with the SAA and agency priorities;

(ii) make recommendations on the most effective way to coordinate national service and volunteering programs across the Federal Government;

(iii) identify and develop opportunities for interagency agreements between CNCS and other agencies to support the expansion of national service and volunteering;

(iv) identify and develop public-private partnerships to support the expansion of national service and volunteering;

(v) identify and develop strategies to use innovation and technology to facilitate the ability of the public to participate in national service and volunteering activities; and

(vi) develop a mechanism to evaluate the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of national service and volunteering interventions in achieving agency priorities, and aggregate and disseminate the results of that evaluation.

(b) Within 18 months of the date of this memorandum, the Task Force shall provide the President with a report on the progress made with respect to the functions set forth in subsection (a) of this section.

SEC. 3. *Facilitating National Service and Volunteering Partnerships*. (a) Each agency on the Task Force shall:

(i) within 180 days of the date of this memorandum, consult with CNCS about how existing authorities and

CNCS programs can be used to enter into interagency and public-private partnerships that allow for meaningful national service and volunteering opportunities, including participating in AmeriCorps, and help the agency achieve its mission;

(ii) work with CNCS to evaluate the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of such partnerships; and

(iii) work with CNCS to identify ways in which the agency's national service participants and volunteers can develop transferable skills, and also how national service can serve as a pipeline to employment inside and outside the Federal Government.

(b) Where practicable, agencies may consider entering into interagency agreements with CNCS to share program development and funding responsibilities, as authorized under 42 U.S.C. 12571(b)(1).

SEC. 4. *Recruitment of National Service Participants in the Civilian Career Services*. In order to provide national service participants a means to pursue additional opportunities to continue their public service through career civilian service, the Office of Personnel Management shall, within 120 days of the date of this memorandum, issue guidance to agencies on developing and improving Federal recruitment strategies for participants in national service.

SEC. 5. *General Provisions*. (a) Nothing in this memorandum shall be construed to impair or otherwise affect:

(i) the authority granted by law or Executive Order to an agency, or the head thereof; or

(ii) the functions of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget relating to budgetary, administrative, or legislative proposals.

(b) This memorandum shall be implemented consistent with applicable law and subject to the availability of appropriations.

(c) This memorandum is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity by any party against the United States, its departments, agencies, or entities, its officers, employees, or agents, or any other person.

(d) The Chief Executive Officer of CNCS is hereby authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

BARACK OBAMA.

SUBCHAPTER I—NATIONAL AND COMMUNITY SERVICE STATE GRANT PROGRAM

Division A—General Provisions

§12511. Definitions

For purposes of this subchapter:

(1) Adult volunteer

The term "adult volunteer" means an individual, such as an older adult, an individual with a disability, a parent, or an employee of a business or public or private nonprofit organization, who—

(A) works without financial remuneration in an educational institution to assist students or out-of-school youth; and

(B) is beyond the age of compulsory school attendance in the State in which the educational institution is located.

(2) Alaska Native-serving institution

The term "Alaska Native-serving institution" has the meaning given the term in section 1059d(b) of title 20.

(3) Approved national service position

The term "approved national service position" means a national service position for which the

Corporation has approved the provision of a national service educational award described in section 12603 of this title as one of the benefits to be provided for successful service in the position.

(4) Approved silver scholar position

The term "approved silver scholar position" means a position, in a program described in section 12653c(a) of this title, for which the Corporation has approved the provision of a silver scholarship educational award as one of the benefits to be provided for successful service in the position.

(5) Approved summer of service position

The term "approved summer of service position" means a position, in a program described in section 12563(c)(8) of this title, for which the Corporation has approved the provision of a summer of service educational award as one of the benefits to be provided for successful service in the position.

(6) Asian American and Native American Pacific Islander-serving institution

The term "Asian American and Native American Pacific Islander-serving institution" has the meaning given the term in section 1059g(b) of title 20.

(7) Authorizing committees

The term "authorizing committees" means the Committee on Education and Labor of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Health, Education, Labor, and Pensions of the Senate.

(8) Carry out

The term "carry out", when used in connection with a national service program, means the planning, establishment, operation, expansion, or replication of the program.

(9) Chief Executive Officer

The term "Chief Executive Officer", except when used to refer to the chief executive officer of a State, means the Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation appointed under section 12651c of this title.

(10) Community-based agency

The term "community-based agency" means a private nonprofit organization (including a church or other religious entity) that—

(A) is representative of a community or a significant segment of a community; and

(B) is engaged in meeting human, educational, environmental, or public safety community needs.

(11) Community-based entity

The term "community-based entity" means a public or private nonprofit organization that—

(A) has experience with meeting unmet human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs; and

(B) meets other such criteria as the Chief Executive Officer may establish.

(12) Corporation

The term "Corporation" means the Corporation for National and Community Service established under section 12651 of this title.

(13) Disadvantaged youth

The term "disadvantaged youth" includes those youth who are economically disadvantaged and 1 or more of the following:

(A) Who are out-of-school youth, including out-of-school youth who are unemployed.

(B) Who are in or aging out of foster care.

(C) Who have limited English proficiency.

(D) Who are homeless or who have run away from home.

(E) Who are at-risk to leave secondary school without a diploma.
(F) Who are former juvenile offenders or at risk of delinquency.
(G) Who are individuals with disabilities.

(14) Economically disadvantaged

The term "economically disadvantaged" means, with respect to an individual, an individual who is determined by the Chief Executive Officer to be low-income according to the latest available data from the Department of Commerce.

(15) Elementary school

The term "elementary school" has the same meaning given such term in section 7801 of title 20.

(16) Encore service program

The term "encore service program" means a program, carried out by an eligible entity as described in subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572 of this title, that—

(A) involves a significant number of participants age 55 or older in the program; and

(B) takes advantage of the skills and experience that such participants offer in the design and implementation of the program.

(17) Hispanic-serving institution

The term "Hispanic-serving institution" has the meaning given such term in section 1101a(a) of title 20.

(18) Historically black college or university

The term "historically black college or university" means a part B institution, as defined in section 1061 of title 20.

(19) Indian

The term "Indian" means a person who is a member of an Indian tribe, or is a "Native", as defined in section 1602(b) of title 43.

(20) Indian lands

The term "Indian lands" means any real property owned by an Indian tribe, any real property held in trust by the United States for an Indian or Indian tribe, and any real property held by an Indian or Indian tribe that is subject to restrictions on alienation imposed by the United States.

(21) Indian tribe

The term "Indian tribe" means—

(A) an Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community, including—

(i) any Native village, as defined in section 1602(c) of title 43, whether organized traditionally or pursuant to the Act of June 18, 1934 (commonly known as the "Indian Reorganization Act"; 48 Stat. 984, chapter 576; 25 U.S.C 461 et seq.); [1] and

(ii) any Regional Corporation or Village Corporation, as defined in subsection (g) or (j), respectively, of section 1602 of title 43,

that is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States under Federal law to Indians because of their status as Indians; and

(B) any tribal organization controlled, sanctioned, or chartered by an entity described in subparagraph (A).

(22) Individual with a disability

Except as provided in section 12635(a) of this title, the term "individual with a disability" has the meaning given the term in section 705(20)(B) of title 29.

(23) Institution of higher education

The term "institution of higher education" has the same meaning given such term in sections 1001(a) and 1002(a)(1) of title 20.

(24) Local educational agency

The term "local educational agency" has the same meaning given such term in section 7801 of title 20.

(25) Medically underserved population

The term "medically underserved population" has the meaning given that term in section 254b(b)(3) of this title.

(26) National service laws

The term "national service laws" means this chapter and the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4950 et seq.).

(27) Native American-serving, nontribal institution

The term "Native American-serving, nontribal institution" has the meaning given the term in section 1059f(b) of title 20.

(28) Native Hawaiian-serving institution

The term "Native Hawaiian-serving institution" has the meaning given the term in section 1059d(b) of title 20.

(29) Out-of-school youth

The term "out-of-school youth" means an individual who—

(A) has not attained the age of 27;

(B) has not completed college or the equivalent thereof; and

(C) is not enrolled in an elementary or secondary school or institution of higher education.

(30) Participant

(A) In general

The term "participant" means—

(i) for purposes of division C, an individual in an approved national service position; and

(ii) for purposes of any other provision of this chapter, an individual enrolled in a program that receives assistance under this subchapter.

(B) Rule

A participant shall not be considered to be an employee of the organization receiving assistance under the national service laws through which the participant is engaging in service.

(31) Partnership program

The term "partnership program" means a program through which an adult volunteer, a public or private nonprofit organization, an institution of higher education, or a business assists a local educational agency.

(32) Predominantly Black Institution

The term "Predominantly Black Institution" has the meaning given the term in section 1059e of title 20.

(33) Principles of scientific research

The term "principles of scientific research" means principles of research that—

(A) apply rigorous, systematic, and objective methodology to obtain reliable and valid knowledge relevant to the subject matter involved;

(B) present findings and make claims that are appropriate to, and supported by, the methods that have been employed; and

(C) include, appropriate to the research being conducted—

(i) use of systematic, empirical methods that draw on observation or experiment;

(ii) use of data analyses that are adequate to support the general findings;

(iii) reliance on measurements or observational methods that provide reliable and generalizable findings;

(iv) strong claims of causal relationships, only with research designs that eliminate plausible competing explanations for observed results, such as, but not limited to, random-assignment experiments;

(v) presentation of studies and methods in sufficient detail and clarity to allow for replication or, at a minimum, to offer the opportunity to build systematically on the findings of the research;

(vi) acceptance by a peer-reviewed journal or critique by a panel of independent experts through a comparably rigorous, objective, and scientific review; and

(vii) consistency of findings across multiple studies or sites to support the generality of results and conclusions.

(34) Program

The term "program", unless the context otherwise requires, and except when used as part of the term "academic program", means a program described in section 12523(a) of this title (other than a program referred to in paragraph (3)(B) of such section), 12561a, or 12561(b)(1), or subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572 of this title, or in paragraph (1) or (2) of section 12612(b) of this title, section 12653b of this title, 12653c of this title, 198G,[1] 12653h of this title, or 12653k of this title, or an activity that could be funded under section 12639a, 12653, 12653o, 12653p, or 12657 of this title.

(35) Project

The term "project" means an activity, carried out through a program that receives assistance under this subchapter, that results in a specific identifiable service or improvement that otherwise would not be done with existing funds, and that does not duplicate the routine services or functions of the employer to whom participants are assigned.

(36) Qualified organization

The term "qualified organization" means a public or private nonprofit organization with experience working with school-age youth that meets such criteria as the Chief Executive Officer may establish.

(37) School-age youth

The term "school-age youth" means—

(A) individuals between the ages of 5 and 17, inclusive; and

(B) children with disabilities, as defined in section 602(3) of the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1401(3)), who receive services under part B of such Act [20 U.S.C. 1411 et seq.].

(38) Scientifically valid research

The term "scientifically valid research" includes applied research, basic research, and field-initiated research in which the rationale, design, and interpretation are soundly developed in accordance with principles of scientific research.

(39) Secondary school

The term "secondary school" has the same meaning given such term in section 7801 of title 20.

(40) Service-learning

The term "service-learning" means a method—

(A) under which students or participants learn and develop through active participation in thoughtfully organized service that—

(i) is conducted in and meets the needs of a community;

(ii) is coordinated with an elementary school, secondary school, institution of higher education, or community service program, and with the community; and

(iii) helps foster civic responsibility; and

(B) that—

(i) is integrated into and enhances the academic curriculum of the students, or the educational components of the community service program in which the participants are enrolled; and

(ii) provides structured time for the students or participants to reflect on the service experience.

(41) Service-learning coordinator

The term "service-learning coordinator" means an individual who provides services as described in subsection (a)(3) or (b) of section 12523 of this title.

(42) Service sponsor

The term "service sponsor" means an organization, or other entity, that has been selected to provide a placement for a participant.

(43) State

The term "State" means each of the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(44) State Commission

The term "State Commission" means a State Commission on National and Community Service maintained by a State pursuant to section 12638 of this title. Except when used in section 12638 of this title, the term includes an alternative administrative entity for a State approved by the Corporation under such section to act in lieu of a State Commission.

(45) State educational agency

The term "State educational agency" has the same meaning given such term in section 7801 of title 20.

(46) Student

The term "student" means an individual who is enrolled in an elementary or secondary school or institution of higher education on a full- or part-time basis.

(47) Territory

The term "territory" means the United States Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(48) Tribally controlled college or university

The term "tribally controlled college or university" has the meaning given such term in section 1801 of title 25.

(49) Veteran

The term "veteran" has the meaning given the term in section 101 of title 38.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §101, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3129; Pub. L. 102–10, §3, Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 29; Pub. L. 102–384, §3, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1455; Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §111(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 857; Pub. L. 103–382, title III, §394(h)(1), Oct. 20, 1994, 108 Stat. 4028; Pub. L. 105–220, title IV, §414(g), Aug. 7, 1998, 112 Stat. 1242; Pub. L. 105–244, title I, §102(a)(13)(K), Oct. 7, 1998, 112 Stat. 1621; Pub. L. 107–110, title X, §1076(ff), Jan. 8, 2002, 115 Stat. 2093; Pub. L. 108–446, title III, §305(m), Dec. 3, 2004, 118 Stat. 2806; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1102, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1464; Pub. L. 114–95, title IX, §9215(bbb)(1), Dec. 10, 2015, 129 Stat. 2184.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Act of June 18, 1934 (commonly known as the "Indian Reorganization Act"; 48 Stat. 984, chapter 576; 25 U.S.C 461 et seq.), referred to in par. (21)(A)(i), is act June 18, 1934, ch. 576, 48 Stat. 984, which was

classified generally to subchapter V (§461 et seq.) of chapter 14 of Title 25, Indians, prior to editorial reclassification as chapter 45 (§5101 et seq.) of Title 25. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5101 of Title 25 and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in pars. (26) and (30)(A)(ii), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in par. (26), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394, which is classified principally to chapter 66 (§4950 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

Section 198G, referred to in par. (34), is unidentifiable in the original, since Pub. L. 101–610 does not contain a section 198G.

The Individuals with Disabilities Education Act, referred to in par. (37)(B), is title VI of Pub. L. 91–230, Apr. 13, 1970, 84 Stat. 175. Part B of the Act is classified generally to subchapter II (§1411 et seq.) of chapter 33 of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1400 of Title 20 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Pars. (15), (24), (39), (45). Pub. L. 114–95 made technical amendment to reference in original act which appears in text as reference to section 7801 of title 20.

2009—Pub. L. 111–13, §1102(b), redesignated pars. (1) to (49) as (1), (3), (8), (9), (10), (12), (14), (15), (19), (20), (21), (22), (23), (24), (26), (29), (30), (31), (34), (35), (37), (39), (40), (41), (42), (43), (44), (45), (46), (2), (4), (5), (6), (7), (11), (13), (16), (17), (18), (25), (27), (28), (32), (33), (36), (38), (47), (48), and (49), respectively, and rearranged pars. in numerical order.

Par. (3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1102(a)(1), struck out "described in section 12572 of this title" after "service program".

Par. (13). Pub. L. 111–13, §1102(a)(2), which directed substitution of "sections 1001(a) and 1002(a)(1) of title 20" for "section 1001(a) of title 20", was executed by making the substitution for "section 1001 of title 20" to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Par. (17)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1102(a)(3), substituted "organization receiving assistance under the national service laws through which the participant is engaging in service" for "program in which the participant is enrolled".

Par. (19). Pub. L. 111–13, §1102(a)(4), substituted "section 12523(a) of this title" for "section 12521(a) of this title", struck out "12542(a)," after "(3)(B) of such section),", substituted "12561a, or 12561(b)(1), or subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572 of this title," for "12561(b)(1), or 12572(a) of this title,", inserted "section 12653b of this title, 12653c of this title, 198G, 12653h of this title, or 12653k of this title," after "section 12612(b) of this title,", and substituted "12639a, 12653, 12653o, 12653p, or 12657" for "12653, 12653c, or 12653d".

Par. (21)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1102(a)(5), substituted "602(3)" for "602" and "1401(3)" for "1401".

Par. (24). Pub. L. 111–13, §1102(a)(6), substituted "section 12523 of this title" for "section 12521 of this title".

Par. (26). Pub. L. 111–13, §1102(a)(7), struck out "The term also includes Palau, until such time as the Compact of Free Association is ratified." at end.

Pars. (30) to (49). Pub. L. 111–13, §1102(a)(8), added pars. (30) to (49).

2004—Par. (21)(B). Pub. L. 108–446 substituted "section 602" for "section 602(a)(1)" and "1401" for "1401(a)(1)".

2002—Pars. (8), (14), (22), (28). Pub. L. 107–110 substituted "section 7801 of title 20" for "section 8801 of title 20".

1998—Par. (12). Pub. L. 105–220 substituted "section 705(20)(B) of title 29" for "section 706(8)(B) of title 29".

Par. (13). Pub. L. 105–244 substituted "section 1001" for "section 1141(a)".

1994—Par. (8). Pub. L. 103–382, §394(h)(1)(A), substituted "section 8801 of title 20" for "section 2891(8) of title 20".

Par. (14). Pub. L. 103–382, §394(h)(1)(B), substituted "section 8801 of title 20" for "section 2891(12) of title 20".

Par. (22). Pub. L. 103–382, §394(h)(1)(C), substituted "section 8801 of title 20" for "section 2891(21) of title 20".

Par. (28). Pub. L. 103–382, §394(h)(1)(D), substituted "section 8801 of title 20" for "section 2891(23) of title 20".

1993—Pub. L. 103–82 amended section generally, substituting provisions consisting of 29 definitions of terms used in this subchapter for former provisions consisting of 30 definitions.

1992—Par. (29). Pub. L. 102–384, §3(1), added par. (29) and struck out former par. (29) which read as follows: "The term 'summer program' means a youth corps program authorized under this subchapter that is limited to the months of June, July, and August."

Par. (30). Pub. L. 102–384, §3(2), substituted "living allowances" for "stipends".

1991—Par. (7). Pub. L. 102–10, §3(1), added par. (7). Former par. (7) redesignated (8).

Par. (8). Pub. L. 102–10, §3(2), (3), redesignated par. (7) as (8) and inserted "an Indian or" before "Indian tribes" in two places. Former par. (8) redesignated (9).

Pars. (9) to (13). Pub. L. 102–10, §3(2), redesignated pars. (8) to (12) as (9) to (13), respectively. Former par. (13) redesignated (14).

Par. (14). Pub. L. 102–10, §3(2), (4), redesignated par. (13) as (14) and inserted at end "Participants shall not be considered employees of the program." Former par. (14) redesignated (15).

Pars. (15) to (22). Pub. L. 102–10, §3(2), redesignated pars. (14) to (21) as (15) to (22), respectively. Former par. (22) redesignated (23).

Par. (23). Pub. L. 102–10, §3(5), which directed the substitution of "participants" for "students or out of school youth", was executed by making the substitution for "students or out-of-school youth" to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 102–10, §3(2), redesignated par. (22) as (23). Former par. (23) redesignated (24).

Par. (24). Pub. L. 102–10, §3(2), (6), redesignated par. (23) as (24) and in heading and text substituted "participant" for "member". Former par. (24) redesignated (25).

Pars. (25) to (29). Pub. L. 102–10, §3(2), redesignated pars. (24) to (28) as (25) to (29), respectively. Former par. (29) redesignated (30).

Par. (30). Pub. L. 102–10, §3(2), (7), redesignated par. (29) as (30) and inserted "corps" after "youth service".

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Education and Labor of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Education and the Workforce of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 5, One Hundred Twelfth Congress, Jan. 5, 2011.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2015 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 114–95 effective Dec. 10, 2015, except with respect to certain noncompetitive programs and competitive programs, see section 5 of Pub. L. 114–95, set out as a note under section 6301 of Title 20, Education.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 107–110 effective Jan. 8, 2002, except with respect to certain noncompetitive programs and competitive programs, see section 5 of Pub. L. 107–110, set out as an Effective Date note under section 6301 of Title 20, Education.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 105–244 effective Oct. 1, 1998, except as otherwise provided in Pub. L. 105–244, see section 3 of Pub. L. 105–244, set out as a note under section 1001 of Title 20, Education.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12512. Repealed. Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §112, Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 861

Section, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §102, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3132, authorized Commission to make

grants to carry out programs under parts B, C, D, and E of this subchapter.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as an Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12513. Study of program effectiveness

(a) In general

Not later than 12 months after April 21, 2009, the Comptroller General of the United States shall develop performance measures for each program receiving Federal assistance under the national service laws.

(b) Contents

The performance measures developed under subsection (a) shall—

(1) to the maximum extent practicable draw on research-based, quantitative data;

(2) take into account program purpose and program design;

(3) include criteria to evaluate the cost effectiveness of programs receiving assistance under the national service laws;

(4) include criteria to evaluate the administration and management of programs receiving Federal assistance under the national service laws; and

(5) include criteria to evaluate oversight and accountability of recipients of assistance through such programs under the national service laws.

(c) Report

Not later than 2 years after the development of the performance measures under subsection (a), and every 5 years thereafter, the Comptroller General of the United States shall prepare and submit to the authorizing committees and the Corporation's Board of Directors a report containing an assessment of each such program with respect to the performance measures developed under subsection (a).

(d) Definitions

In this section:

(1) In general

The terms "authorizing committees", "Corporation", and "national service laws" have the meanings given the terms in section 12511 of this title.

(2) Program

The term "program" means an entire program carried out by the Corporation under the national service laws, such as the entire AmeriCorps program carried out under subtitle C.[1]

(Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1712, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1551.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subtitle C, referred to in subsec. (d)(2), probably means subtitle C (§121 et seq.) of title I of Pub. L. 101–610, which is classified generally to division C (§12571 et seq.) of this subchapter. For complete classification of subtitle C to the Code, see Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Serve America Act, and not as part of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 which comprises this chapter.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

Division B—School-Based and Community-Based Service-Learning Programs

PRIOR PROVISIONS

This division is comprised of subtitle B, §§111–120, of title I of Pub. L. 101–610. A prior part B (§12521 et seq.), comprised of subtitle B, §§111–118, of title I of Pub. L. 101–610, related to programs for students and out-of-school youth, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), (b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 825, 837.

PART I—PROGRAMS FOR ELEMENTARY AND SECONDARY SCHOOL STUDENTS

CODIFICATION

Part I of subtitle B of title I of the National and Community Service Act of 1990, comprising this part, was originally added to Pub. L. 101–610, title I, subtitle B, by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 825, and amended by Pub. L. 103–382, Oct. 20, 1994, 108 Stat. 3518. Such part is shown herein, however, as having been added by Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1201, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1467, without reference to such intervening amendments because of the extensive revision of the part's provisions by Pub. L. 111–13.

§12521. Purpose

The purpose of this part is to promote service-learning as a strategy to—

(1) support high-quality service-learning projects that engage students in meeting community needs with demonstrable results, while enhancing students' academic and civic learning; and

(2) support efforts to build institutional capacity, including the training of educators, and to strengthen the service infrastructure to expand service opportunities.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §111, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1201, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1467.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12521, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §111, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 825, prescribed general authority of the Corporation for National and Community Service to make grants for service-learning programs, prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 111–13.

Another prior section 12521, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §111, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3132; Pub. L. 102–10, §4(2), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 30, prescribed general authority of Commission on National and Community Service to make grants for service-learning programs, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 825.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Part effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12522. Definitions

In this part:

(1) State

The term "State" means each of the several States, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

(2) State educational agency

The term "State educational agency" means—

(A) a State educational agency (as defined in section 12511 of this title) of a State; or

(B) for a State in which a State educational agency described in subparagraph (A) has designated a statewide entity under section 12523(e) [1] of this title, that designated statewide entity.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §111A, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1201, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1467.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12523(e) of this title, referred to in par. (2)(B), probably should be a reference to section 12523(d) of this title, which relates to designation of a statewide entity to carry out the functions of the State educational agency. Section 12523(e) relates to consultation of the Corporation with the Secretary of Education.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12522, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §111A, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 827, granted the Corporation authority to assist local applicants in nonparticipating States, prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 111–13.

Another prior section 12522, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §112, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3133; Pub. L. 102–10, §4(3), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 30; Pub. L. 102–384, §4, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1455, related to allotments, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §103(a)(2).

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12523. Assistance to States, territories, and Indian tribes

(a) Allotments to States, territories, and Indian tribes

The Corporation, in consultation with the Secretary of Education, may make allotments to State educational agencies, territories, and Indian tribes to pay for the Federal share of—

(1) planning and building the capacity within the State, territory, or Indian tribe involved to implement service-learning programs that are based principally in elementary schools and secondary schools, including—

(A) providing training and professional development for teachers, supervisors, personnel from community-based entities (particularly with regard to the recruitment, utilization, and management of participants), and trainers, to be conducted by qualified individuals or organizations that have experience with service-learning;

(B) developing service-learning curricula, consistent with State or local academic content standards, to be integrated into academic programs, including curricula for an age-appropriate learning component that provides participants an opportunity to analyze and apply their service experiences;

(C) forming local partnerships described in paragraph (2) or (4)(D) to develop school-based service-learning programs in accordance with this part;

(D) devising appropriate methods for research on and evaluation of the educational value of service-learning and the effect of service-learning activities on communities;

(E) establishing effective outreach and dissemination of information to ensure the broadest possible involvement of community-based entities with demonstrated effectiveness in working with school-age youth in their communities; and

(F) establishing effective outreach and dissemination of information to ensure the broadest possible participation of schools throughout the State, throughout the territory, or serving the Indian tribe involved with particular attention to schools implementing comprehensive support and improvement activities or targeted support and improvement activities under section 6311(d) of title 20;

(2) implementing, operating, or expanding school-based service-learning programs, which may include paying for the cost of the recruitment, training, supervision, placement, salaries, and benefits of service-learning coordinators, through distribution by State educational agencies, territories, and Indian tribes of Federal funds made available under this part to projects operated by local partnerships among—

(A) local educational agencies; and

(B) 1 or more community partners that—

(i) shall include a public or private nonprofit organization that—

(I) has a demonstrated expertise in the provision of services to meet unmet human, education, environmental, or public safety needs;

(II) will make projects available for participants, who shall be students; and

(III) was in existence at least 1 year before the date on which the organization submitted an application under section 12525 of this title; and

(ii) may include a private for-profit business, private elementary school or secondary school, or Indian tribe (except that an Indian tribe distributing funds to a project under this paragraph is not eligible to be part of the partnership operating that project);

(3) planning of school-based service-learning programs, through distribution by State educational agencies, territories, and Indian tribes of Federal funds made available under this part to local educational agencies and Indian tribes, which planning may include paying for the cost of—

(A) the salaries and benefits of service-learning coordinators; or

(B) the recruitment, training and professional development, supervision, and placement of service-learning coordinators who may be participants in a program under division C or receive a national service educational award under division D, who may be participants in a project under section 5001 of this title, or who may participate in a Youthbuild program under section 3226 of title 29,

who will identify the community partners described in paragraph (2)(B) and assist in the design and implementation of a program described in paragraph (2);

(4) implementing, operating, or expanding school-based service-learning programs to utilize adult volunteers in service-learning to improve the education of students, through distribution by State educational agencies, territories, and Indian tribes of Federal funds made available under this part to—

(A) local educational agencies;

(B) Indian tribes (except that an Indian tribe distributing funds under this paragraph is not eligible to be a recipient of those funds);

(C) public or private nonprofit organizations; or

(D) partnerships or combinations of local educational agencies, and entities described in subparagraph (B) or (C); and

(5) developing, as service-learning programs, civic engagement programs that promote a better understanding of—

(A) the principles of the Constitution, the heroes of United States history (including military heroes), and the meaning of the Pledge of Allegiance;

(B) how the Nation's government functions; and

(C) the importance of service in the Nation's character.

(b) Duties of service-learning coordinator

A service-learning coordinator referred to in paragraph (2) or (3) of subsection (a) shall provide services to a local partnership described in subsection (a)(2) or entity described in subsection (a)(3), respectively, that may include—

(1) providing technical assistance and information to, and facilitating the training of, teachers

and assisting in the planning, development, execution, and evaluation of service-learning in their classrooms;

(2) assisting local partnerships described in subsection (a)(2) in the planning, development, and execution of service-learning projects, including summer of service programs;

(3) assisting schools and local educational agencies in developing school policies and practices that support the integration of service-learning into the curriculum; and

(4) carrying out such other duties as the local partnership or entity, respectively, may determine to be appropriate.

(c) Related expenses

An entity that receives financial assistance under this part from a State, territory, or Indian tribe may, in carrying out the activities described in subsection (a), use such assistance to pay for the Federal share of reasonable costs related to the supervision of participants, program administration, transportation, insurance, and evaluations and for other reasonable expenses related to the activities.

(d) Special rule

A State educational agency described in section 12522(2)(A) of this title may designate a statewide entity (which may be a community-based entity) with demonstrated experience in supporting or implementing service-learning programs, to receive the State educational agency's allotment under this part, and carry out the functions of the agency under this part.

(e) Consultation with Secretary of Education

The Corporation is authorized to enter into agreements with the Secretary of Education for initiatives (and may use funds authorized under section 12681(a)(6) of this title to enter into the agreements if the additional costs of the initiatives are warranted) that may include—

(1) identification and dissemination of research findings on service-learning and scientifically valid research based practices for service-learning; and

(2) provision of professional development opportunities that—

(A) improve the quality of service-learning instruction and delivery for teachers both preservice and in-service, personnel from community-based entities and youth workers; and

(B) create and sustain effective partnerships for service-learning programs between local educational agencies, community-based entities, businesses, and other stakeholders.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §112, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1201, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1468; amended Pub. L. 113–128, title V, §512(u)(1), July 22, 2014, 128 Stat. 1712; Pub. L. 114–95, title IX, §9215(bbb)(2), Dec. 10, 2015, 129 Stat. 2185.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12523, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §111B, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 827, granted the Corporation authority to assist public or private nonprofit organizations, prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 111–13.

Another prior section 12523, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §113, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3134; Pub. L. 102–384, §4, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1455, related to State grant applications, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §103(a)(2).

A prior section 112 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12524 prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 111–13.

Another prior section 112 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12522 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsec. (a)(1)(F). Pub. L. 114–95 substituted "implementing comprehensive support and improvement activities or targeted support and improvement activities under section 6311(d) of title 20" for "not making adequate yearly progress for two or more consecutive years under section 6311 of title 20".

2014—Subsec. (a)(3)(B). Pub. L. 113–128 substituted "or who may participate in a Youthbuild program under section 3226 of title 29" for "or who may participate in a Youthbuild program under section 2918a of title 29".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2015 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 114–95 effective Dec. 10, 2015, except with respect to certain noncompetitive programs and competitive programs, see section 5 of Pub. L. 114–95, set out as a note under section 6301 of Title 20, Education.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2014 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–128 effective on the first day of the first full program year after July 22, 2014 (July 1, 2015), see section 506 of Pub. L. 113–128, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3101 of Title 29, Labor.

§12524. Allotments

(a) Indian tribes and territories

Of the amounts appropriated to carry out this part for any fiscal year, the Corporation shall reserve an amount of not less than 2 percent and not more than 3 percent for payments to Indian tribes, the United States Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, to be allotted in accordance with their respective needs.

(b) Allotments through States

(1) In general

After reserving an amount under subsection (a), the Corporation shall use the remainder of the funds appropriated to carry out this part for the fiscal year as follows:

(A) Allotments based on school-age youth

From 50 percent of such remainder, the Corporation shall allot to each State an amount that bears the same ratio to 50 percent of such remainder as the number of school-age youth in the State bears to the total number of school-age youth in all States.

(B) Allotments based on allocations under Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965

From 50 percent of such remainder, the Corporation shall allot to each State an amount that bears the same ratio to 50 percent of such remainder as the allocation to the State for the previous fiscal year under title I of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 6301 et seq.) bears to the total of such allocations to all States.

(2) Minimum amount

For any fiscal year for which amounts appropriated for this division exceed $50,000,000, the minimum allotment to each State under paragraph (1) shall be $75,000.

(c) Reallotment

If the Corporation determines that the allotment of a State, territory, or Indian tribe under this section will not be required for a fiscal year because the State, territory, or Indian tribe did not submit and receive approval of an application for the allotment under section 12525 of this title, the Corporation shall make the allotment for such State, territory, or Indian tribe available for grants to community-based entities to carry out service-learning programs as described in section 12523(b) of this title in such State, in such territory, or for such Indian tribe. After community-based entities apply for grants from the allotment, by submitting an application at such time and in such manner as the Corporation requires, and receive approval, the remainder of such allotment shall be available for reallotment to such other States, territories, or Indian tribes with approved applications submitted under section 12525 of this title as the Corporation may determine to be appropriate.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §112A, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1201, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1470.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(B), is Pub. L. 89–10, Apr. 11, 1965, 79 Stat. 27. Title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§6301 et seq.) of chapter

70 of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6301 of Title 20 and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12524, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §112, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 827; amended Pub. L. 103–382, title III, §§391(y), 394(h)(2), Oct. 20, 1994, 108 Stat. 4026, 4028, related to grants and allotments, prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 111–13.

Another prior section 12524, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §114, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3135; Pub. L. 102–10, §4(4), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 30, related to local applications for assistance, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §103(a)(2).

§12525. Applications

(a) Applications to Corporation for allotments

(1) In general

To be eligible to receive an allotment under section 12524 of this title, a State, acting through the State educational agency, territory, or Indian tribe shall prepare and submit to the Corporation an application at such time and in such manner as the Chief Executive Officer may reasonably require, and obtain approval of the application.

(2) Contents

An application for an allotment under section 12523 of this title shall include—

(A) a proposal for a 3-year plan promoting service-learning, which shall contain such information as the Chief Executive Officer may reasonably require, including how the applicant will integrate service opportunities into the academic program of the participants;

(B) information about the criteria the State educational agency, territory, or Indian tribe will use to evaluate and grant approval to applications submitted under subsection (b), including an assurance that the State educational agency, territory, or Indian tribe will comply with the requirement in section 12526(a) of this title;

(C) assurances about the applicant's efforts to—

(i) ensure that students of different ages, races, sexes, ethnic groups, disabilities, and economic backgrounds have opportunities to serve together;

(ii) include any opportunities for students, enrolled in schools or programs of education providing elementary or secondary education, to participate in service-learning programs and ensure that such service-learning programs include opportunities for such students to serve together;

(iii) involve participants in the design and operation of the programs;

(iv) promote service-learning in areas of greatest need, including low-income or rural areas; and

(v) otherwise integrate service opportunities into the academic program of the participants; and

(D) assurances that the applicant will comply with the nonduplication and nondisplacement requirements of section 12637 of this title and the notice, hearing, and grievance procedures required by section 12636 of this title.

(b) Application to State, territory, or Indian tribe for assistance to carry out school-based service-learning programs

(1) In general

Any—

(A) qualified organization, Indian tribe, territory, local educational agency, for-profit business, private elementary school or secondary school, or institution of higher education that desires to receive financial assistance under this subpart [1] from a State, territory, or Indian tribe

for an activity described in section 12523(a)(1) of this title;

(B) partnership described in section 12523(a)(2) of this title that desires to receive such assistance from a State, territory, or Indian tribe for an activity described in section 12523(a)(2) of this title;

(C) entity described in section 12523(a)(3) of this title that desires to receive such assistance from a State, territory, or Indian tribe for an activity described in such section;

(D) entity or partnership described in section 12523(a)(4) of this title that desires to receive such assistance from a State, territory, or Indian tribe for an activity described in such section; and

(E) entity that desires to receive such assistance from a State, territory, or Indian tribe for an activity described in section 12521(a)(5) [2] of this title,

shall prepare, submit to the State educational agency for the State, territory, or Indian tribe, and obtain approval of, an application for the program.

(2) Submission

Such application shall be submitted at such time and in such manner, and shall contain such information, as the agency, territory, or Indian tribe may reasonably require.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §113, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1201, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1471.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12521(a)(5) of this title, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(E), probably should be a reference to section 12523(a)(5) of this title. Section 12521 does not contain subsections.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12525, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §113, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 829, related to submission and contents of State or tribal applications, prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 111–13.

Another prior section 12525, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §115, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3137; Pub. L. 102–384, §4, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1455, related to priority applications and private school participation, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §103(a)(2).

A prior section 113 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12523 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "this part".

[2] See References in Text note below.

§12526. Consideration of applications

(a) Criteria for local applications

In providing assistance under this part, a State educational agency, territory, or Indian tribe (or the Corporation if section 12524(c) of this title applies) shall consider criteria with respect to sustainability, replicability, innovation, and quality of programs.

(b) Priority for local applications

In providing assistance under this part, a State educational agency, territory, or Indian tribe (or the Corporation if section 12524(c) of this title applies) shall give priority to entities that submit applications under section 12525 of this title with respect to service-learning programs described in section 12521 of this title that are in the greatest need of assistance, such as programs targeting low-income areas or serving economically disadvantaged youth.

(c) Rejection of applications to Corporation

If the Corporation rejects an application submitted by a State, territory, or Indian tribe under section 12525 of this title for an allotment, the Corporation shall promptly notify the State, territory, or Indian tribe of the reasons for the rejection of the application. The Corporation shall provide the State, territory, or Indian tribe with a reasonable opportunity to revise and resubmit the application and shall provide technical assistance, if needed, to the State, territory, or Indian tribe as part of the resubmission process. The Corporation shall promptly reconsider such resubmitted application.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §114, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1201, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1472.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12526, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §114, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 829, related to preparation, submission, and approval of local applications, prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 111–13.

Another prior section 12526, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §116, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3138; Pub. L. 102–384, §4, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1455, prescribed Federal and local project contributions, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §103(a)(2).

A prior section 114 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12524 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82.

§12527. Participation of students and teachers from private schools

(a) In general

To the extent consistent with the number of students in the State, in the territory, or served by the Indian tribe or in the school district of the local educational agency involved who are enrolled in private nonprofit elementary schools and secondary schools, such State, territory, or Indian tribe, or agency shall (after consultation with appropriate private school representatives) make provision—

(1) for the inclusion of services and arrangements for the benefit of such students so as to allow for the equitable participation of such students in the programs implemented to carry out the objectives and provide the benefits described in this part; and

(2) for the training of the teachers of such students so as to allow for the equitable participation of such teachers in the programs implemented to carry out the objectives and provide the benefits described in this part.

(b) Waiver

If a State, territory, Indian tribe, or local educational agency is prohibited by law from providing for the participation of students or teachers from private nonprofit schools as required by subsection (a), or if the Corporation determines that a State, territory, Indian tribe, or local educational agency substantially fails or is unwilling to provide for such participation on an equitable basis, the Chief Executive Officer shall waive such requirements and shall arrange for the provision of services to such students and teachers.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §115, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1201, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1473.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12527, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §115, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 830, related to consideration of applications, prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 111–13.

Another prior section 12527, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §117, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3138; Pub. L. 102–10, §4(5), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 30, prescribed authorized uses of funds, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §103(a)(2).

A prior section 115 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12525 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82.

§12528. Federal, State, and local contributions

(a) Corporation share

(1) In general

The Corporation share of the cost of carrying out a program for which a grant is made from an allotment under this part—

(A) for new grants may not exceed 80 percent of the total cost of the program for the first year of the grant period, 65 percent for the second year, and 50 percent for each remaining year; and

(B) for continuing grants, may not exceed 50 percent of the total cost of the program.

(2) Noncorporation contribution

In providing for the remaining share of the cost of carrying out such a program, each recipient of such a grant under this part—

(A) shall provide for such share through a payment in cash or in kind, fairly evaluated, including facilities, equipment, or services;

(B) except as provided in subparagraph (C), may provide for such share through Federal, State, or local sources, including private funds or donated services; and

(C) may not provide for such share through Federal funds made available under title I of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 6311 et seq.) [20 U.S.C. 6301 et seq.] or the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1400 et seq.).

(b) Waiver

The Chief Executive Officer may waive the requirements of subsection (a) in whole or in part with respect to any such program for any fiscal year, on a determination that such a waiver would be equitable due to a lack of resources at the local level.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §116, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1201, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1473.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(C), is Pub. L. 89–10, Apr. 11, 1965, 79 Stat. 27. Title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§6301 et seq.) of chapter 70 of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6301 of Title 20 and Tables.

The Individuals with Disabilities Education Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(C), is title VI of Pub. L. 91–230, Apr. 13, 1970, 84 Stat. 175, which is classified generally to chapter 33 (§1400 et seq.) of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1400 of Title 20 and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12528, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §115A, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 831; amended Pub. L. 103–382, title III, §394(h)(3), Oct. 20, 1994, 108 Stat. 4028, related to participation of students and teachers from private schools, prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 111–13.

A prior section 116 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12529 of this title prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 111–13.

Another prior section 116 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12526 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82.

§12529. Limitations on uses of funds

Not more than 6 percent of the amount of assistance received by a State, territory, or Indian tribe that is the original recipient of an allotment under this part for a fiscal year may be used to pay, in accordance with such standards as the Corporation may issue, for administrative costs, incurred by that recipient.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §117, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1201, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat.

1474.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12529, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §116, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 832, related to Federal, State, and local contributions, prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 111–13, effective Oct. 1, 2009.

A prior section 117 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12541 of this title prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 111–13.

Another prior section 117 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12527 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82.

Prior sections 12530, 12531, 12541 to 12547, and 12551, comprising former subpart B of this part relating to community-based service programs for school-age youth and former subpart C of this part relating to establishment of a service-learning clearinghouse, were omitted in the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 111–13.

Section 12530, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §116A, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 832, set forth limitations on uses of funds.

Section 12531, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §116B, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 833, defined terms used in former subpart A.

Another prior section 12531, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §118, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3139; Pub. L. 102–10, §4(6), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 30, related to higher education innovative projects for community service, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §103(b).

Section 12541, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §117, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 833, defined terms used in former subpart B.

Another prior section 12541, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §121, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3140, as amended, which prescribed general authority of Commission to make grants and transfer funds for youth corps programs, was renumbered section 199A of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), and transferred to section 12655 of this title.

Section 12542, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §117A, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 833, gave the Corporation grantmaking authority.

Another prior section 12542, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §122, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3140, as amended, which related to allocation of funds by Commission for conservation and youth corps programs, was renumbered section 199B of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), and transferred to section 12655a of this title.

Section 12543, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §117B, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 834, set forth an application process for State grant eligibility.

Another prior section 12543, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §123, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3141, as amended, which related to applications for assistance by States, Indian tribes and other local applicants, was renumbered section 199C of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), and transferred to section 12655b of this title.

Section 12544, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §117C, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 834, set forth an application process for local grant eligibility.

Another prior section 12544, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §124, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3143, as amended, which prescribed appropriate focus for conservation and youth service corps programs, was renumbered section 199D of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), and transferred to section 12655c of this title.

Section 12545, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §117D, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 835, set forth application consideration criteria.

Another prior section 12545, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §125, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3144, which related to administration of related programs, was renumbered section 199E of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), and transferred to section 12655d of this title.

Section 12546, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §117E, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 836, related to Federal, State, and local contributions.

Another prior section 12546, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §126, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3144, which related to program activities on public or Indian lands, was renumbered section 199F of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), and transferred to section 12655e of this title.

Section 12547, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §117F, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 836, placed limitations on uses of funds.

Another prior section 12547, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §127, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3145, which related to training and education services, was renumbered section 199G of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), and transferred to section 12655f of this title.

A prior section 12548, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §128, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3146, as amended, which related to amount of award and matching requirement, was renumbered section 199H of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, and transferred to section 12655g of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(8)(A).

A prior section 12549, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §129, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3146, which related to preference for certain projects, was successively renumbered section 199I, then 199H, of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), (e)(8)(B), and transferred to section 12655h of this title.

A prior section 12550, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §130, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3146, as amended, which related to age and citizenship criteria for enrollment, was successively renumbered section 199J, then 199I, of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), (e)(8)(B), and transferred to section 12655i of this title.

Section 12551, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §118, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 836, required the Corporation to provide funds for a service-learning clearinghouse.

Another prior section 12551, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §131, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3147, which related to use of volunteers in assisting program projects, was successively renumbered section 199K, then 199J, of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), (e)(8)(B), and transferred to section 12655j of this title.

A prior section 12552, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §132, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3147, which related to post-service benefits, was renumbered section 199L of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), and transferred to section 12655k of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(8)(A).

A prior section 12553, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §133, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3147, as amended, which related to living allowance, was successively renumbered section 199M, then 199K, of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), (e)(8)(B), and transferred to section 12655l of this title.

A prior section 12554, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §134, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3148, which related to joint programs, was successively renumbered section 199N, then 199L, of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), (e)(8)(B), and transferred to section 12655m of this title.

A prior section 12555, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §135, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3149, which related to Federal and State employee status, was successively renumbered section 199O, then 199M, of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a), (e)(8)(B), and transferred to section 12655n of this title.

A prior section 12556, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §136, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3150, directed Commission on National and Community Service to promulgate regulations implementing American Conservation Youth Corps program and established procedures for promulgation, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102–10, §5(7), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 31.

PART II—HIGHER EDUCATION INNOVATIVE PROGRAMS FOR COMMUNITY SERVICE

§12561. Higher education innovative programs for community service

(a) Purpose

It is the purpose of this part to expand participation in community service by supporting innovative community service programs through service-learning carried out through institutions of higher education, acting as civic institutions to meet the human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs of neighboring communities.

(b) General authority

The Corporation, in consultation with the Secretary of Education, is authorized to make grants to, and enter into contracts with, institutions of higher education (including a consortium of such institutions), and partnerships comprised of such institutions and of other public or private nonprofit organizations, to pay for the Federal share of the cost of—

(1) enabling such an institution or partnership to create or expand an organized community service program that—

(A) engenders a sense of social responsibility and commitment to the community in which the institution is located;

(B) provides projects for participants, who shall be students, faculty, administration, or staff

of the institution, or residents of the community; and

(C) the institution or partnership may coordinate with service-learning curricula being offered in the academic curricula at the institution of higher education or at 1 or more members of the partnership;

(2) supporting student-initiated and student-designed community service projects through the program;

(3) strengthening the leadership and instructional capacity of institutions of higher education and their faculty, with respect to service-learning, by—

(A) including service-learning as a key component of the preservice teacher curricula of the institution to strengthen the instructional capacity of teachers to provide service-learning at the elementary and secondary levels;

(B) including service-learning as a component of other curricula or academic programs (other than education curricula or programs), such as curricula or programs relating to nursing, medicine, criminal justice, or public policy; and

(C) encouraging the faculty of the institution to use service-learning methods throughout their curriculum;

(4) facilitating the integration of community service carried out under the program into academic curricula, including integration of clinical programs into the curriculum for students in professional schools, so that students can obtain credit for their community service projects;

(5) supplementing the funds available to carry out work-study programs under part C of title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (42 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.) [1] to support service-learning and community service through the community service program;

(6) strengthening the service infrastructure within institutions of higher education in the United States through the program; and

(7) providing for the training of teachers, prospective teachers, related education personnel, and community leaders in the skills necessary to develop, supervise, and organize service-learning.

(c) Federal, State, and local contributions

(1) Federal share

(A) In general

The Federal share of the cost of carrying out a program for which assistance is provided under this part may not exceed 50 percent of the total cost of the program.

(B) Non-Federal contribution

In providing for the remaining share of the cost of carrying out such a program, each recipient of a grant or contract under this part—

(i) shall provide for such share through a payment in cash or in kind, fairly evaluated, including facilities, equipment, or services; and

(ii) may provide for such share through State sources or local sources, including private funds or donated services.

(2) Waiver

The Chief Executive Officer may waive the requirements of paragraph (1) in whole or in part with respect to any such program for any fiscal year if the Corporation determines that such a waiver would be equitable due to a lack of available financial resources at the local level.

(d) Application for grant

(1) Submission

To receive a grant or enter into a contract under this part, an institution or partnership shall prepare and submit to the Corporation, an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information and assurances as the Corporation may reasonably require, and obtain approval

of the application. In requesting applications for assistance under this part, the Corporation shall specify such required information and assurances.

(2) Contents

An application submitted under paragraph (1) shall contain, at a minimum—

(A) assurances that—

(i) prior to the placement of a participant, the applicant will consult with the appropriate local labor organization, if any, representing employees in the area who are engaged in the same or similar work as that proposed to be carried out by such program, to prevent the displacement and protect the rights of such employees; and

(ii) the applicant will comply with the nonduplication and nondisplacement provisions of section 12637 of this title and the notice, hearing, and grievance procedures required by section 12636 of this title; and

(B) such other assurances as the Chief Executive Officer may reasonably require.

(e) Special consideration

To the extent practicable, in making grants and entering into contracts under subsection (b), the Corporation shall give special consideration to applications submitted by, or applications from partnerships including, institutions serving primarily low-income populations, including—

(1) Alaska Native-serving institutions;
(2) Asian American and Native American Pacific Islander-serving institutions;
(3) Hispanic-serving institutions;
(4) historically black colleges and universities;
(5) Native American-serving, nontribal institutions;
(6) Native Hawaiian-serving institutions;
(7) Predominantly black institutions;
(8) tribally controlled colleges and universities; and
(9) community colleges serving predominantly minority populations.

(f) Considerations

In making grants and entering into contracts under subsection (b), the Corporation shall take into consideration whether the applicants submit applications containing proposals that—

(1) demonstrate the commitment of the institution of higher education involved, other than by demonstrating the commitment of the students, to supporting the community service projects carried out under the program;

(2) specify the manner in which the institution will promote faculty, administration, and staff participation in the community service projects;

(3) specify the manner in which the institution will provide service to the community through organized programs, including, where appropriate, clinical programs for students in professional schools and colleges;

(4) describe any partnership that will participate in the community service projects, such as a partnership comprised of—

(A) the institution;

(B)(i) a community-based agency;

(ii) a local government agency; or

(iii) a nonprofit entity that serves or involves school-age youth, older adults, or low-income communities; and

(C)(i) a student organization;

(ii) a department of the institution; or

(iii) a group of faculty comprised of different departments, schools, or colleges at the institution;

(5) demonstrate community involvement in the development of the proposal and the extent to

which the proposal will contribute to the goals of the involved community members;

(6) demonstrate a commitment to perform community service projects in underserved urban and rural communities;

(7) describe research on effective strategies and methods to improve service utilized in the design of the projects;

(8) specify that the institution or partnership will use the assistance provided through the grant or contract to strengthen the service infrastructure in institutions of higher education;

(9) with respect to projects involving delivery of services, specify projects that involve leadership development of school-age youth; or

(10) describe the needs that the proposed projects are designed to address, such as housing, economic development, infrastructure, health care, job training, education, crime prevention, urban planning, transportation, information technology, or child welfare.

(g) Federal work-study

To be eligible for assistance under this part, an institution of higher education shall demonstrate that it meets the minimum requirements under section 443(b)(2)(A) of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (42 U.S.C. 2753(b)(2)(A)) [1] relating to the participation of students employed under part C of title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (42 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.) [1] (relating to Federal Work-Study [2] programs) in community service activities, or has received a waiver of those requirements from the Secretary of Education.

(h) Definition

Notwithstanding section 12511 of this title, as used in this part, the term "student" means an individual who is enrolled in an institution of higher education on a full- or part-time basis.

(i) National service educational award

A participant in a program funded under this part shall be eligible for the national service educational award described in division D, if the participant served in an approved national service position.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §118, formerly §119, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §103(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 837; renumbered §118 and amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1202, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1474.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Higher Education Act of 1965, referred to in subsecs. (b)(5) and (g), is Pub. L. 89–329, Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1219. Part C of title IV of the Act was formerly classified generally to part C (§2751 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 34 of this title prior to transfer to part C (§1087–51 et seq.) of subchapter IV of chapter 28 of Title 20, Education. Section 443 of the Act was transferred from section 2753 of this title to section 1087–53 of Title 20. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 20 and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 118 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12551 of this title prior to the general amendment of part I of this division by Pub. L. 111–13.

Another prior section 118 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12531 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1202(b)(1), inserted "through service-learning" after "community service programs".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1202(b)(2)(A), substituted "consortium" for "combination" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(1)(C). Pub. L. 111–13, §1202(b)(2)(B), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1202(b)(2)(C)(i), substituted "institutions of higher education and their faculty" for "teachers at the elementary, secondary, and postsecondary levels" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(3)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1202(b)(2)(C)(ii), substituted "curricula of the institution to strengthen

the instructional capacity of teachers to provide service-learning at the elementary and secondary levels;" for "education of the institution; and".

Subsec. (b)(3)(B), (C). Pub. L. 111–13, §1202(b)(2)(C)(iii), (iv), added subpar. (B) and redesignated former subpar. (B) as (C).

Subsecs. (c) to (i). Pub. L. 111–13, §1202(b)(3)–(5), added subsecs. (c) to (h), redesignated former subsec. (f) as (i), and struck out former subsecs. (c), (d), (e), and (g) which related to Federal share of the cost, grant application, applicant priority, and definition of "student", respectively.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Part effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as an Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

[1] See References in Text note below.

[2] So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.

§12561a. Campuses of Service

(a) In general

The Corporation, after consultation with the Secretary of Education, may annually designate not more than 25 institutions of higher education as Campuses of Service, from among institutions nominated by State Commissions.

(b) Applications for nomination

(1) In general

To be eligible for a nomination to receive designation under subsection (a), and have an opportunity to apply for funds under subsection (d) for a fiscal year, an institution of higher education in a State shall submit an application to the State Commission at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the State Commission may require.

(2) Contents

At a minimum, the application shall include information specifying—

(A)(i) the number of undergraduate and, if applicable, graduate service-learning courses offered at such institution for the most recent full academic year preceding the fiscal year for which designation is sought; and

(ii) the number and percentage of undergraduate students and, if applicable, the number and percentage of graduate students at such institution who were enrolled in the corresponding courses described in clause (i), for such preceding academic year;

(B) the percentage of undergraduate students engaging in and, if applicable, the percentage of graduate students engaging in activities providing community services, as defined in section 441(c) of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (42 U.S.C. 2751(c)),[1] during such preceding academic year, the quality of such activities, and the average amount of time spent, per student, engaged in such activities;

(C) for such preceding academic year, the percentage of Federal work-study funds made available to the institution under part C of title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (42 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.) [1] that is used to compensate students employed in providing community services, as so defined, and a description of the efforts the institution undertakes to make available to students opportunities to provide such community services and be compensated through such work-study funds;

(D) at the discretion of the institution, information demonstrating the degree to which recent graduates of the institution, and all graduates of the institution, have obtained full-time public service employment in the nonprofit sector or government, with a private nonprofit organization or a Federal, State, or local public agency; and

(E) any programs the institution has in place to encourage or assist graduates of the institution to pursue careers in public service in the nonprofit sector or government.

(c) Nominations and designation

(1) Nomination

(A) In general

A State Commission that receives applications from institutions of higher education under subsection (b) may nominate, for designation under subsection (a), not more than 3 such institutions of higher education, consisting of—

(i) not more than one 4-year public institution of higher education;

(ii) not more than one 4-year private institution of higher education; and

(iii) not more than one 2-year institution of higher education.

(B) Submission

The State Commission shall submit to the Corporation the name and application of each institution nominated by the State Commission under subparagraph (A).

(2) Designation

The Corporation shall designate, under subsection (a), not more than 25 institutions of higher education from among the institutions nominated under paragraph (1). In making the designations, the Corporation shall, if feasible, designate various types of institutions, including institutions from each of the categories of institutions described in clauses (i), (ii), and (iii) of paragraph (1)(A).

(d) Awards

(1) In general

Using sums reserved under section 12681(a)(1)(C) of this title for Campuses of Service, the Corporation shall provide an award of funds to institutions designated under subsection (c), to be used by the institutions to develop or disseminate service-learning models and information on best practices regarding service-learning to other institutions of higher education.

(2) Plan

To be eligible to receive funds under this subsection, an institution designated under subsection (c) shall submit a plan to the Corporation describing how the institution intends to use the funds to develop or disseminate service-learning models and information on best practices regarding service-learning to other institutions of higher education.

(3) Allocation

The Corporation shall determine how the funds reserved under section 12681(a)(1)(C) of this title for Campuses of Service for a fiscal year will be allocated among the institutions submitting acceptable plans under paragraph (2). In determining the amount of funds to be allocated to such an institution, the Corporation shall consider the number of students at the institution, the quality and scope of the plan submitted by the institution under paragraph (2), and the institution's current (as of the date of submission of the plan) strategies to encourage or assist students to pursue public service careers in the nonprofit sector or government.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §118A, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1203, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1477.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Higher Education Act of 1965, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(C), is Pub. L. 89–329, Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1219. Part C of title IV of the Act was formerly classified generally to part C (§2751 et seq.) of

subchapter I of chapter 34 of this title prior to transfer to part C (§1087–51 et seq.) of subchapter IV of chapter 28 of Title 20, Education. Section 441 of the Act was transferred from section 2751 of this title to section 1087–51 of Title 20. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 20 and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

PART III—INNOVATIVE AND COMMUNITY-BASED SERVICE-LEARNING PROGRAMS AND RESEARCH

§12563. Innovative and community-based service-learning programs and research

(a) Definitions

In this part:

(1) Eligible entity

The term "eligible entity" means a State educational agency, a State Commission, a territory, an Indian tribe, an institution of higher education, or a public or private nonprofit organization (including community-based entities), a public or private elementary school or secondary school, a local educational agency, a consortium of such entities, or a consortium of 2 or more such entities and a for-profit organization.

(2) Eligible partnership

The term "eligible partnership" means a partnership that—

(A) shall include—

(i) 1 or more community-based entities that have demonstrated records of success in carrying out service-learning programs with economically disadvantaged students, and that meet such criteria as the Chief Executive Officer may establish; and

(ii) a local educational agency for which—

(I) a high number or percentage, as determined by the Corporation, of the students served by the agency are economically disadvantaged students; and

(II) the four-year adjusted cohort graduation rate (as defined in section 7801 of title 20) for the secondary school students served by the agency is less than 70 percent; and

(B) may also include—

(i) a local government agency that is not described in subparagraph (A);

(ii) the office of the chief executive officer of a unit of general local government;

(iii) an institution of higher education;

(iv) a State Commission or State educational agency; or

(v) more than 1 local educational agency described in subclause (I).[1]

(3) Youth engagement zone

The term "youth engagement zone" means the area in which a youth engagement zone program is carried out.

(4) Youth engagement zone program

The term "youth engagement zone program" means a service-learning program in which

members of an eligible partnership collaborate to provide coordinated school-based or community-based service-learning opportunities—

(A) in order to address a specific community challenge;

(B) for an increasing percentage of out-of-school youth and secondary school students served by a local educational agency; and

(C) in circumstances under which—

(i) not less than 90 percent of such students participate in service-learning activities as part of the program; or

(ii) service-learning is a part of the curriculum in all of the secondary schools served by the local educational agency.

(b) General authority

From the amounts appropriated to carry out this part for a fiscal year, the Corporation may make grants (which may include approved summer of service positions in the case of a grant for a program described in subsection (c)(8)) and fixed-amount grants (in accordance with section 12581(l) of this title) to eligible entities or eligible partnerships, as appropriate, for programs and activities described in subsection (c).

(c) Authorized activities

Funds under this part may be used to—

(1) integrate service-learning programs into the science, technology, engineering, and mathematics (referred to in this part as "STEM") curricula at the elementary, secondary, postsecondary, or postbaccalaureate levels in coordination with practicing or retired STEM professionals;

(2) involve students in service-learning programs focusing on energy conservation in their community, including conducting educational outreach on energy conservation and working to improve energy efficiency in low-income housing and in public spaces;

(3) involve students in service-learning programs in emergency and disaster preparedness;

(4) involve students in service-learning programs aimed at improving access to and obtaining the benefits from computers and other emerging technologies, including improving such access for individuals with disabilities, in low-income or rural communities, in senior centers and communities, in schools, in libraries, and in other public spaces;

(5) involve high school age youth in the mentoring of middle school youth while involving all participants in service-learning to seek to meet unmet human, educational, environmental, public safety, or emergency and disaster preparedness needs in their community;

(6) conduct research and evaluations on service-learning, including service-learning in middle schools, and disseminate such research and evaluations widely;

(7) conduct innovative and creative activities as described in section 12523(a) of this title;

(8) establish or implement summer of service programs (giving priority to programs that enroll youth who will be enrolled in any of grades 6 through 9 at the end of the summer concerned) during the summer months (including recruiting, training, and placing service-learning coordinators)—

(A) for youth who will be enrolled in any of grades 6 through 12 at the end of the summer concerned; and

(B) for community-based service-learning projects—

(i) that shall—

(I) meet unmet human, educational, environmental (including energy conservation and stewardship), and emergency and disaster preparedness and other public safety needs; and

(II) be intensive, structured, supervised, and designed to produce identifiable improvements to the community;

(ii) that may include the extension of academic year service-learning programs into the summer months; and

(iii) under which a student who completes 100 hours of service as described in section

12602(b)(2) of this title,[2] shall be eligible for a summer of service educational award of $500 or $750 as described in sections 12602(a)(2)(C) and 12603(d) of this title;

(9) establish or implement youth engagement zone programs in youth engagement zones, for students in secondary schools served by local educational agencies for which a majority of such students do not participate in service-learning activities that are—

(A) carried out by eligible partnerships; and

(B) designed to—

(i) involve all students in secondary schools served by the local educational agency in service-learning to address a specific community challenge;

(ii) improve student engagement, including student attendance and student behavior, and student achievement, graduation rates, and college-going rates at secondary schools; and

(iii) involve an increasing percentage of students in secondary school and out-of-school youth in the community in school-based or community-based service-learning activities each year, with the goal of involving all students in secondary schools served by the local educational agency and involving an increasing percentage of the out-of-school youth in service-learning activities; and

(10) conduct semester of service programs that—

(A) provide opportunities for secondary school students to participate in a semester of coordinated school-based or community-based service-learning opportunities for a minimum of 70 hours (of which at least a third will be spent participating in field-based activities) over a semester, to address specific community challenges;

(B) engage as participants high percentages or numbers of economically disadvantaged students;

(C) allow participants to receive academic credit, for the time spent in the classroom and in the field for the program, that is equivalent to the academic credit for any class of equivalent length and with an equivalent time commitment; and

(D) ensure that the classroom-based instruction component of the program is integrated into the academic program of the local educational agency involved; and

(11) carry out any other innovative service-learning programs or research that the Corporation considers appropriate.

(d) Applications

To be eligible to receive a grant to carry out a program or activity under this part, an entity or partnership, as appropriate, shall prepare and submit to the Corporation an application at such time and in such manner as the Chief Executive Officer may reasonably require, and obtain approval of the application.

(e) Priority

In making grants under this part, the Corporation shall give priority to applicants proposing to—

(1) involve students and community stakeholders in the design and implementation of service-learning programs carried out using funds received under this part;

(2) implement service-learning programs in low-income or rural communities; and

(3) utilize adult volunteers, including tapping the resources of retired and retiring adults, in the planning and implementation of service-learning programs.

(f) Requirements

(1) Term

Each program or activity funded under this part shall be carried out over a period of 3 years, which may include 1 planning year. In the case of a program funded under this part, the 3-year

period may be extended by 1 year, if the program meets performance levels established in accordance with section 12639(k) of this title and any other criteria determined by the Corporation.

(2) Collaboration encouraged

Each entity carrying out a program or activity funded under this part shall, to the extent practicable, collaborate with entities carrying out programs under this division, division C, and titles I and II of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq., 5001 et seq.).

(3) Evaluation

Not later than 4 years after the effective date of the Serve America Act, the Corporation shall conduct an independent evaluation of the programs and activities carried out using funds made available under this part, and determine best practices relating to service-learning and recommendations for improvement of those programs and activities. The Corporation shall widely disseminate the results of the evaluations, and information on the best practices and recommendations to the service community through multiple channels, including the Corporation's Resource Center or a clearinghouse of effective strategies.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §119, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1204, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1479; amended Pub. L. 114–95, title IX, §9215(bbb)(3), Dec. 10, 2015, 129 Stat. 2185.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (f)(2), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Titles I and II of the Act are classified generally to subchapters I (§4951 et seq.) and II (§5000 et seq.), respectively, of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

For the effective date of the Serve America Act, referred to in subsec. (f)(3), as Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 119 of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered section 118 and is classified to section 12561 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsec. (a)(2)(A)(ii)(II). Pub. L. 114–95 substituted "the four-year adjusted cohort graduation rate (as defined in section 7801 of title 20)" for "the graduation rate (as defined in section 6311(b)(2)(C)(vi) of title 20 and as clarified in applicable regulations promulgated by the Department of Education".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2015 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 114–95 effective Dec. 10, 2015, except with respect to certain noncompetitive programs and competitive programs, see section 5 of Pub. L. 114–95, set out as a note under section 6301 of Title 20, Education.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Part effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

[1] So in original. Clause (v) does not contain subclauses.

[2] So in original. Comma probably should not appear.

PART IV—REPEALED

Part related to service-learning impact study, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 113–188, title III, §301(a), Nov. 26, 2014, 128 Stat. 2018.

§12565. Repealed. Pub. L. 113–188, title III, §301(a), Nov. 26, 2014, 128 Stat. 2018

Section, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §120, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1205, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1483, provided for a 10-year longitudinal study and reports on the impact of the activities carried out under this division.

Division C—National Service Trust Program

PRIOR PROVISIONS

This division is comprised of subtitle C, §§121–141, of title I of Pub. L. 101–610. A prior part C (§12541 et seq.), comprised of subtitle C, §§120–135, of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered subtitle I, §§199A–199O, of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, and transferred to division I of this subchapter.

PART I—INVESTMENT IN NATIONAL SERVICE

§12571. Authority to provide assistance and approved national service positions

(a) Provision of assistance

Subject to the availability of appropriations for this purpose, the Corporation for National and Community Service may make grants to States, subdivisions of States, territories, Indian tribes, public or private nonprofit organizations, and institutions of higher education for the purpose of assisting the recipients of the grants—

(1) to carry out full- or part-time national service programs, including summer programs, described in subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572 of this title; and

(2) to make grants in support of other national service programs described in subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572 of this title that are carried out by other entities.

(b) Restrictions on agreements with Federal agencies

(1) Agreements authorized

The Corporation may enter into an interagency agreement (other than a grant agreement) with another Federal agency to support a national service program carried out or otherwise supported by the agency. The Corporation, in entering into the interagency agreement may approve positions as approved national service positions for a program carried out or otherwise supported by the agency.

(2) Prohibition on grants

The Corporation may not provide a grant under this section to a Federal agency.

(3) Consultation with State Commissions

A Federal agency carrying out or supporting a national service program shall consult with the State Commissions for those States in which projects will be conducted through that program in order to ensure that the projects do not duplicate projects conducted by State or local national service programs.

(4) Support for other national service programs

A Federal agency that enters into an interagency agreement under paragraph (1) shall, in an appropriate case, enter into a contract or cooperative agreement with an entity that is carrying out

a national service program in a State that is in existence in the State as of the date of the contract or cooperative agreement and is of high quality, in order to support the national service program.

(5) Application of requirements

A requirement under this chapter that applies to an entity receiving assistance under this section (other than a requirement limited to an entity receiving assistance under subsection (a)) shall be considered to apply to a Federal agency that enters into an interagency agreement under this subsection, even though no Federal agency may receive financial assistance under such an agreement.

(c) Provision of approved national service positions

As part of the provision of assistance under subsection (a), and in providing approved national service positions under subsection (b), the Corporation shall—

(1) approve the provision of national service educational awards described in division D for the participants who serve in national service programs carried out using such assistance; and

(2) deposit in the National Service Trust established in section 12601(a) of this title an amount equal to the product of—

(A) the value of a national service educational award under section 12603 of this title; and

(B) the total number of approved national service positions to be provided or otherwise approved.

(d) Five percent limitation on administrative costs

(1) Limitation

Not more than 5 percent of the amount of assistance provided to the original recipient of a grant or transfer of assistance under subsection (a) for a fiscal year may be used to pay for administrative costs incurred by—

(A) the recipient of the assistance; and

(B) national service programs carried out or supported with the assistance.

(2) Rules on use

The Corporation may by rule prescribe the manner and extent to which—

(A) assistance provided under subsection (a) may be used to cover administrative costs; and

(B) that portion of the assistance available to cover administrative costs should be distributed between—

(i) the original recipient of the grant or transfer of assistance under such subsection; and

(ii) national service programs carried out or supported with the assistance.

(e) Matching funds requirements

(1) Requirements

Except as provided in section 12594 of this title, the Corporation share of the cost (including the costs of member living allowances, employment-related taxes, health care coverage, and workers' compensation and other necessary operation costs) of carrying out a national service program that receives the assistance under subsection (a), whether the assistance is provided directly or as a subgrant from the original recipient of the assistance, may not exceed 75 percent of such cost.

(2) Calculation

In providing for the remaining share of the cost of carrying out a national service program, the program—

(A) shall provide for such share through a payment in cash or in kind, fairly evaluated, including facilities, equipment, or services; and

(B) may provide for such share through State sources, local sources, or other Federal sources (other than the use of funds made available under the national service laws).

(3) Cost of health care

In providing a payment in cash under paragraph (2)(A) as part of providing for the remaining

share of the cost of carrying out a national service program, the program may count not more than 85 percent of the cost of providing a health care policy described in section 12594(d)(2) of this title toward such share.

(4) Waiver

The Corporation may waive in whole or in part the requirements of paragraph (1) with respect to a national service program in any fiscal year if the Corporation determines that such a waiver would be equitable due to a lack of available financial resources at the local level.

(5) Other Federal funds

(A) Recipient report

A recipient of assistance under this section (other than a recipient of assistance through a fixed-amount grant in accordance with section 12581(l) of this title) shall report to the Corporation the amount and source of any Federal funds used to carry out the program for which the assistance is made available other than those provided by the Corporation.

(B) Corporation report

The Corporation shall report to the authorizing committees on an annual basis information regarding each recipient of such assistance that uses Federal funds other than those provided by the Corporation to carry out such a program, including the amounts and sources of the other Federal funds.

(f) Plan for approved national service positions

The Corporation shall—

(1) develop a plan to—

(A) establish the number of the approved national service positions as 88,000 for fiscal year 2010;

(B) increase the number of the approved positions to—

(i) 115,000 for fiscal year 2011;
(ii) 140,000 for fiscal year 2012;
(iii) 170,000 for fiscal year 2013;
(iv) 200,000 for fiscal year 2014;
(v) 210,000 for fiscal year 2015;
(vi) 235,000 for fiscal year 2016; and
(vii) 250,000 for fiscal year 2017;

(C) ensure that the increases described in subparagraph (B) are achieved through an appropriate balance of full- and part-time service positions;

(2) not later than 1 year after April 21, 2009, submit a report to the authorizing committees on the status of the plan described in paragraph (1); and

(3) subject to the availability of appropriations and quality service opportunities, implement the plan described in paragraph (1).

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §121, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1301, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1484.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(5), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12571, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §141, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3150, related to general authority to make grants for national and community service programs, prior to the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [formerly part D of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, §102(a).

A prior section 121 of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered section 199A, and is classified to section 12655 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(1)(A), inserted "territories," after "subdivisions of States," in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(1), (2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(1)(B), substituted "subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572" for "section 12572(a)".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(2)(A), substituted "Restrictions on agreements with Federal agencies" for "Agreements with Federal agencies" in heading.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(2)(B), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Corporation may enter into a contract or cooperative agreement with another Federal agency to support a national service program carried out by the agency. The support provided by the Corporation pursuant to the contract or cooperative agreement may include the transfer to the Federal agency of funds available to the Corporation under this division."

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(2)(C), added par. (2) and struck out former par. (2). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A Federal agency receiving assistance under this subsection shall not be required to satisfy the matching funds requirements specified in subsection (e) of this section. However, the supplementation requirements specified in section 12633 of this title shall apply with respect to the Federal national service programs supported with such assistance."

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(2)(D), substituted "carrying out or supporting a national service program" for "receiving assistance under this subsection" and "through that program" for "using such assistance".

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(2)(E), substituted "an interagency agreement" for "a contract or cooperative agreement" the first place it appeared.

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(2)(F), added par. (5).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(3)(A), substituted "subsection (a), and in providing approved national service positions under subsection (b)," for "subsections (a) and (b) of this section," in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(3)(B), substituted "to be provided or otherwise approved" for "to be provided".

Subsec. (d)(1), (2)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(4), struck out "or (b) of this section" after "subsection (a)" in introductory provisions of par. (1) and in par. (2)(A).

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(5)(A), substituted "Corporation share of the cost (including the costs of member living allowances, employment-related taxes, health care coverage, and workers' compensation and other necessary operation costs)" for "Federal share of the cost".

Subsec. (e)(5). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(5)(B), added par. (5).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–13, §1301(6), added subsec. (f).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Division effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as an Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

OVERALL MINIMUM SHARE REQUIREMENT

Pub. L. 114–113, div. H, title IV, §404, Dec. 18, 2015, 129 Stat. 2642, provided that: "AmeriCorps programs receiving grants under the National Service Trust program shall meet an overall minimum share requirement of 24 percent for the first 3 years that they receive AmeriCorps funding, and thereafter shall meet the overall minimum share requirement as provided in section 2521.60 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, without regard to the operating costs match requirement in section 121(e) [42 U.S.C. 12571(e)] or the member support Federal share limitations in section 140 of the 1990 Act [National and Community Service Act of 1990, 42 U.S.C. 12594], and subject to partial waiver consistent with section 2521.70 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations."

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

Pub. L. 113–235, div. G, title IV, §402, Dec. 16, 2014, 128 Stat. 2508.

Pub. L. 113–76, div. H, title IV, §402, Jan. 17, 2014, 128 Stat. 402.

Pub. L. 112–74, div. F, title IV, §402, Dec. 23, 2011, 125 Stat. 1105.

Pub. L. 111–117, div. D, title IV, §402, Dec. 16, 2009, 123 Stat. 3273.
Pub. L. 111–8, div. F, title IV, §407, Mar. 11, 2009, 123 Stat. 795.
Pub. L. 110–161, div. G, title IV, §407, Dec. 26, 2007, 121 Stat. 2202.

§12572. National service programs eligible for program assistance

(a) National service corps

The recipient of a grant under section 12571(a) of this title and a Federal agency operating or supporting a national service program under section 12571(b) of this title shall use a portion of the financial assistance or positions involved, directly or through subgrants to other entities, to support or carry out the following national service corps or programs, as full- or part-time corps or programs, to address unmet needs:

(1) Education Corps

(A) In general

The recipient may carry out national service programs through an Education Corps that identifies and meets unmet educational needs within communities through activities such as those described in subparagraph (B) and improves performance on the indicators described in subparagraph (C).

(B) Activities

An Education Corps described in this paragraph may carry out activities such as—

(i) tutoring, or providing other academic support to elementary school and secondary school students;

(ii) improving school climate;

(iii) mentoring students, including adult or peer mentoring;

(iv) linking needed integrated services and comprehensive supports with students, their families, and their public schools;

(v) providing assistance to a school in expanding the school day by strengthening the quality of staff and expanding the academic programming offered in an expanded learning time initiative, a program of a 21st century community learning center (as defined in section 7171 of title 20), or a high-quality after-school program;

(vi) assisting schools and local educational agencies in improving and expanding high-quality service-learning programs that keep students engaged in schools by carrying out programs that provide specialized training to individuals in service-learning, and place the individuals (after such training) in positions as service-learning coordinators, to facilitate service-learning in programs eligible for funding under part I of division B;

(vii) assisting students in being prepared for college-level work;

(viii) involving family members of students in supporting teachers and students;

(ix) conducting a preprofessional training program in which students enrolled in an institution of higher education—

(I) receive training (which may include classes containing service-learning) in specified fields including early childhood education and care, elementary and secondary education, and other fields such as those relating to health services, criminal justice, environmental stewardship and conservation, or public safety;

(II) perform service related to such training outside the classroom during the school term and during summer or other vacation periods; and

(III) agree to provide service upon graduation to meet unmet human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs related to such training;

(x) assisting economically disadvantaged students in navigating the college admissions process;

(xi) providing other activities, addressing unmet educational needs, that the Corporation

may designate; or

(xii) providing skilled musicians and artists to promote greater community unity through the use of music and arts education and engagement through work in low-income communities, and education, health care, and therapeutic settings, and other work in the public domain with citizens of all ages.

(C) Education Corps indicators

The indicators for a corps program described in this paragraph are—

(i) student engagement, including student attendance and student behavior;

(ii) student academic achievement;

(iii) four-year adjusted cohort graduation rate (as defined in section 7801 of title 20);

(iv) rate of college enrollment and continued college enrollment for recipients of a high school diploma;

(v) any additional indicator relating to improving education for students that the Corporation, in consultation (as appropriate) with the Secretary of Education, establishes; or

(vi) any additional local indicator (applicable to a particular recipient and on which an improvement in performance is needed) relating to improving education for students, that is approved by the Corporation or a State Commission.

(2) Healthy Futures Corps

(A) In general

The recipient may carry out national service programs through a Healthy Futures Corps that identifies and meets unmet health needs within communities through activities such as those described in subparagraph (B) and improves performance on the indicators described in subparagraph (C).

(B) Activities

A Healthy Futures Corps described in this paragraph may carry out activities such as—

(i) assisting economically disadvantaged individuals in navigating the health services system;

(ii) assisting individuals in obtaining access to health services, including oral health services, for themselves or their children;

(iii) educating economically disadvantaged individuals and individuals who are members of medically underserved populations about, and engaging individuals described in this clause in, initiatives regarding navigating the health services system and regarding disease prevention and health promotion, with a particular focus on common health conditions, chronic diseases, and conditions, for which disease prevention and health promotion measures exist and for which socioeconomic, geographic, and racial and ethnic health disparities exist;

(iv) improving the literacy of patients regarding health, including oral health;

(v) providing translation services at clinics and in emergency rooms to improve health services;

(vi) providing services designed to meet the health needs of rural communities, including the recruitment of youth to work in health professions in such communities;

(vii) assisting in health promotion interventions that improve health status, and helping people adopt and maintain healthy lifestyles and habits to improve health status;

(viii) addressing childhood obesity through in-school and after-school physical activities, and providing nutrition education to students, in elementary schools and secondary schools; or

(ix) providing activities, addressing unmet health needs, that the Corporation may designate.

(C) Healthy Futures Corps indicators

The indicators for a corps program described in this paragraph are—

(i) access to health services among economically disadvantaged individuals and individuals who are members of medically underserved populations;

(ii) access to health services for uninsured individuals, including such individuals who are economically disadvantaged children;

(iii) participation, among economically disadvantaged individuals and individuals who are members of medically underserved populations, in disease prevention and health promotion initiatives, particularly those with a focus on addressing common health conditions, addressing chronic diseases, and decreasing health disparities;

(iv) literacy of patients regarding health;

(v) any additional indicator, relating to improving or protecting the health of economically disadvantaged individuals and individuals who are members of medically underserved populations, that the Corporation, in consultation (as appropriate) with the Secretary of Health and Human Services and the Director of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, establishes; or

(vi) any additional local indicator (applicable to a particular recipient and on which an improvement in performance is needed) relating to improving or protecting the health of economically disadvantaged individuals and individuals who are members of medically underserved populations, that is approved by the Corporation or a State Commission.

(3) Clean Energy Service Corps

(A) In general

The recipient may carry out national service projects through a Clean Energy Service Corps that identifies and meets unmet environmental needs within communities through activities such as those described in subparagraph (B) and improves performance on the indicators described in subparagraph (C).

(B) Activities

A Clean Energy Service Corps described in this paragraph may carry out activities such as—

(i) weatherizing and retrofitting housing units for low-income households to significantly improve the energy efficiency and reduce carbon emissions of such housing units;

(ii) building energy-efficient housing units in low-income communities;

(iii) conducting energy audits for low-income households and recommending ways for the households to improve energy efficiency;

(iv) providing clean energy-related services designed to meet the needs of rural communities;

(v) working with schools and youth programs to educate students and youth about ways to reduce home energy use and improve the environment, including conducting service-learning projects to provide such education;

(vi) assisting in the development of local recycling programs;

(vii) renewing and rehabilitating national and State parks and forests, city parks, county parks and other public lands, and trails owned or maintained by the Federal Government or a State, including planting trees, carrying out reforestation, carrying out forest health restoration measures, carrying out erosion control measures, fire hazard reduction measures, and rehabilitation and maintenance of historic sites and structures throughout the national park system, and providing trail enhancements, rehabilitation, and repairs;

(viii) cleaning and improving rivers maintained by the Federal Government or a State;

(ix) carrying out projects in partnership with the National Park Service, designed to renew and rehabilitate national park resources and enhance services and learning opportunities for national park visitors, and nearby communities and schools;

(x) providing service through a full-time, year-round youth corps program or full-time summer youth corps program, such as a conservation corps or youth service corps program that—

(I) undertakes meaningful service projects with visible public benefits, including projects involving urban renewal, sustaining natural resources, or improving human

services;

(II) includes as participants youths and young adults who are age 16 through 25, including out-of-school youth and other disadvantaged youth (such as youth who are aging out of foster care, youth who have limited English proficiency, homeless youth, and youth who are individuals with disabilities), who are age 16 through 25; and

(III) provides those participants who are youth and young adults with—

(aa) team-based, highly structured, and adult-supervised work experience, life skills, education, career guidance and counseling, employment training, and support services including mentoring; and

(bb) the opportunity to develop citizenship values and skills through service to their community and the United States; [1]

(xi) carrying out other activities, addressing unmet environmental and workforce needs, that the Corporation may designate.

(C) Clean Energy Service Corps indicators

The indicators for a corps program described in this paragraph are—

(i) the number of housing units of low-income households weatherized or retrofitted to significantly improve energy efficiency and reduce carbon emissions;

(ii) annual energy costs (to determine savings in those costs) at facilities where participants have provided service;

(iii) the number of students and youth receiving education or training in energy-efficient and environmentally conscious practices;

(iv)(I) the number of acres of national parks, State parks, city parks, county parks, or other public lands, that are cleaned or improved; and

(II) the number of acres of forest preserves, or miles of trails or rivers, owned or maintained by the Federal Government or a State, that are cleaned or improved;

(v) any additional indicator relating to clean energy, the reduction of greenhouse gas emissions, or education and skill attainment for clean energy jobs, that the Corporation, in consultation (as appropriate) with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, the Secretary of Energy, the Secretary of the Interior, or the Secretary of Labor, as appropriate, establishes; or

(vi) any additional local indicator (applicable to a particular recipient and on which an improvement in performance is needed) relating to clean energy, the reduction of greenhouse gas emissions, or education or skill attainment for clean energy jobs, that is approved by the Corporation or a State Commission.

(4) Veterans Corps

(A) In general

The recipient may carry out national service programs through a Veterans Corps that identifies and meets unmet needs of veterans and members of the Armed Forces who are on active duty through activities such as those described in subparagraph (B) and improves performance on the indicators described in subparagraph (C).

(B) Activities

A Veterans Corps described in this paragraph may carry out activities such as—

(i) promoting community-based efforts to meet the unique needs of military families while a family member is deployed and upon that family member's return home;

(ii) recruiting veterans, particularly returning veterans, into service opportunities, including opportunities that utilize their military experience;

(iii) assisting veterans in developing their educational opportunities (including opportunities for professional certification, licensure, or credentials), coordinating activities

with and assisting State and local agencies administering veterans education benefits, and coordinating activities with and assisting entities administering veterans programs with internships and fellowships that could lead to employment in the private and public sectors;

(iv) promoting efforts within a community to serve the needs of veterans and members of the Armed Forces who are on active duty, including helping veterans file benefits claims and assisting Federal agencies in providing services to veterans, and sending care packages to Members of the Armed Forces who are deployed;

(v) assisting veterans in developing mentoring relationships with economically disadvantaged students;

(vi) developing projects to assist veterans with disabilities, veterans who are unemployed, older veterans, and veterans in rural communities, including assisting veterans described in this clause with transportation; or

(vii) other activities, addressing unmet needs of veterans, that the Corporation may designate.

(C) Veterans' Corps indicators

The indicators for a corps program described in this paragraph are—

(i) the number of housing units created for veterans;

(ii) the number of veterans who pursue educational opportunities;

(iii) the number of veterans receiving professional certification, licensure, or credentials;

(iv) the number of veterans engaged in service opportunities;

(v) the number of military families assisted by organizations while a family member is deployed and upon that family member's return home;

(vi) the number of economically disadvantaged students engaged in mentoring relationships with veterans;

(vii) the number of projects designed to meet identifiable public needs of veterans, especially veterans with disabilities, veterans who are unemployed, older veterans, and veterans in rural communities;

(viii) any additional indicator that relates to education or skill attainment that assists in providing veterans with the skills to address identifiable public needs, or that relates to improving the lives of veterans, of members of the Armed Forces on active duty, and of families of the veterans and the members on active duty, and that the Corporation, in consultation (as appropriate) with the Secretary of Veterans Affairs, establishes; or

(ix) any additional local indicator (applicable to a particular recipient and on which an improvement in performance is needed) relating to the education or skill attainment, or the improvement, described in clause (viii), that is approved by the Corporation or a State Commission.

(5) Opportunity Corps

(A) In general

The recipient may carry out national service programs through an Opportunity Corps that identifies and meets unmet needs relating to economic opportunity for economically disadvantaged individuals within communities, through activities such as those described in subparagraph (B) and improves performance on the indicators described in subparagraph (C).

(B) Activities

An Opportunity Corps described in this paragraph may carry out activities such as—

(i) providing financial literacy education to economically disadvantaged individuals, including financial literacy education with regard to credit management, financial institutions including banks and credit unions, and utilization of savings plans;

(ii) assisting in the construction, rehabilitation, or preservation of housing units, including energy efficient homes, for economically disadvantaged individuals;

(iii) assisting economically disadvantaged individuals, including homeless individuals, in finding placement in and maintaining housing;

(iv) assisting economically disadvantaged individuals in obtaining access to health services for themselves or their children;

(v) assisting individuals in obtaining information about Federal, State, local, or private programs or benefits focused on assisting economically disadvantaged individuals, economically disadvantaged children, or low-income families;

(vi) facilitating enrollment in and completion of job training for economically disadvantaged individuals;

(vii) assisting economically disadvantaged individuals in obtaining access to job placement assistance;

(viii) carrying out a program that seeks to eliminate hunger in low-income communities and rural areas through service in projects—

(I) involving food banks, food pantries, and nonprofit organizations that provide food during emergencies;

(II) seeking to address the long-term causes of hunger through education and the delivery of appropriate services;

(III) providing training in basic health, nutrition, and life skills necessary to alleviate hunger in communities and rural areas; or

(IV) assisting individuals in obtaining information about federally supported nutrition programs;

(ix) addressing issues faced by homebound citizens, such as needs for food deliveries, legal and medical services, nutrition information, and transportation;

(x) implementing an E–Corps program that involves participants who provide services in a community by developing and assisting in carrying out technology programs that seek to increase access to technology and the benefits of technology in such community; and

(xi) carrying out other activities, addressing unmet needs relating to economic opportunity for economically disadvantaged individuals, that the Corporation may designate.

(C) Opportunity Corps indicators

The indicators for a corps program described in this paragraph are—

(i) the degree of financial literacy among economically disadvantaged individuals;

(ii) the number of housing units built or improved for economically disadvantaged individuals or low-income families;

(iii) the number of economically disadvantaged individuals with access to job training and other skill enhancement;

(iv) the number of economically disadvantaged individuals with access to information about job placement services;

(v) any additional indicator relating to improving economic opportunity for economically disadvantaged individuals that the Corporation, in consultation (as appropriate) with the Secretary of Health and Human Services, the Secretary of Labor, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, and the Secretary of the Treasury, establishes; or

(vi) any additional local indicator (applicable to a particular recipient and on which an improvement in performance is needed) that is approved by the Corporation or a State Commission.

(b) National service programs

(1) In general

The recipient of a grant under section 12571(a) of this title and a Federal agency operating or supporting a national service program under section 12571(b) of this title may use the financial assistance or positions involved, directly or through subgrants to other entities, to carry out national service programs and model programs under this subsection that are focused on meeting community needs and improve performance on the indicators described in paragraph (3).

(2) Programs

The programs may include the following types of national service programs:

(A) A community service program designed to meet the needs of rural communities, using teams or individual placements to address the development needs of rural communities, including addressing rural poverty, or the need for health services, education, or job training.

(B) A program—

(i) that engages participants in public health, emergency and disaster preparedness, and other public safety activities;

(ii) that may include the recruitment of qualified participants for, and placement of the participants in, positions to be trainees as law enforcement officers, firefighters, search and rescue personnel, and emergency medical service workers; and

(iii) that may engage Federal, State, and local stakeholders, in collaboration, to organize more effective responses to issues of public health, emergencies and disasters, and other public safety issues.

(C) A program that seeks to expand the number of mentors for disadvantaged youths and other youths (including by recruiting high school-,[2] and college-age individuals to enter into mentoring relationships), either through—

(i) provision of direct mentoring services;

(ii) provision of supportive services to direct mentoring service organizations (in the case of a partnership);

(iii) the creative utilization of current and emerging technologies to connect youth with mentors; or

(iv) supporting mentoring partnerships (including statewide and local mentoring partnerships that strengthen direct service mentoring programs) by—

(I) increasing State resources dedicated to mentoring;

(II) supporting the creation of statewide and local mentoring partnerships and programs of national scope through collaborative efforts between entities such as local or direct service mentoring partnerships, or units of State or local government; and

(III) assisting direct service mentoring programs.

(D) A program—

(i) in which not less than 75 percent of the participants are disadvantaged youth;

(ii) that may provide life skills training, employment training, educational counseling, assistance to complete a secondary school diploma or its recognized equivalent, counseling, or a mentoring relationship with an adult volunteer; and

(iii) for which, in awarding financial assistance and approved national service positions, the Corporation shall give priority to programs that engage retirees to serve as mentors.

(E) A program—

(i) that reengages court-involved youth and adults with the goal of reducing recidivism;

(ii) that may create support systems beginning in correctional facilities; and

(iii) that may have life skills training, employment training, an education program (including a program to complete a secondary school diploma or its recognized equivalent), educational and career counseling, and postprogram placement services.

(F) A demonstration program—

(i) that has as 1 of its primary purposes the recruitment and acceptance of court-involved youth and adults as participants, volunteers, or members; and

(ii) that may serve any purpose otherwise permitted under this chapter.

(G) A program that provides education or job training services that are designed to meet the needs of rural communities.

(H) A program that seeks to expand the number of mentors for youth in foster care through—

(i) the provision of direct academic mentoring services for youth in foster care;

(ii) the provision of supportive services to mentoring service organizations that directly provide mentoring to youth in foster care, including providing training of mentors in child development, domestic violence, foster care, confidentiality requirements, and other matters related to working with youth in foster care; or

(iii) supporting foster care mentoring partnerships, including statewide and local mentoring partnerships that strengthen direct service mentoring programs.

(I) Such other national service programs addressing unmet human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs as the Corporation may designate.

(3) Indicators

The indicators for a program described in this subsection are the indicators described in subparagraph (C) of paragraphs [3] (1), (2), (3), (4), or (5) of subsection (a) or any additional local indicator (applicable to a participant or recipient and on which an improvement in performance is needed) relating to meeting unmet community needs, that is approved by the Corporation or a State Commission.

(c) Program models for service corps

(1) In general

In addition to any activities described in subparagraph (B) of paragraphs (1) through (5) of subsection (a), and subsection (b)(2), a recipient of a grant under section 12571(a) of this title and a Federal agency operating or supporting a national service program under section 12571(b) of this title may directly or through grants or subgrants to other entities carry out a national service corps program through the following program models:

(A) A community corps program that meets unmet health, veteran, and other human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs and promotes greater community unity through the use of organized teams of participants of varied social and economic backgrounds, skill levels, physical and developmental capabilities, ages, ethnic backgrounds, or genders.

(B) A service program that—

(i) recruits individuals with special skills or provides specialized preservice training to enable participants to be placed individually or in teams in positions in which the participants can meet such unmet needs; and

(ii) if consistent with the purposes of the program, brings participants together for additional training and other activities designed to foster civic responsibility, increase the skills of participants, and improve the quality of the service provided.

(C) A campus-based program that is designed to provide substantial service in a community during the school term and during summer or other vacation periods through the use of—

(i) students who are attending an institution of higher education, including students participating in a work-study program assisted under part C of title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (42 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.); [1]

(ii) teams composed of students described in clause (i); or

(iii) teams composed of a combination of such students and community residents.

(D) A professional corps program that recruits and places qualified participants in positions—

(i) as teachers, nurses and other health care providers, police officers, early childhood development staff, engineers, or other professionals providing service to meet human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs in communities with an inadequate number of such professionals;

(ii) for which the salary may exceed the maximum living allowance authorized in subsection (a)(2) of section 12594 of this title, as provided in subsection (c) of such section;

and

(iii) that are sponsored by public or private employers who agree to pay 100 percent of the salaries and benefits (other than any national service educational award under division D) of the participants.

(E) A program that provides opportunities for veterans to participate in service projects.

(F) A program carried out by an intermediary that builds the capacity of local nonprofit and faith-based organizations to expand and enhance services to meet local or national needs.

(G) Such other program models as may be approved by the Corporation or a State Commission, as appropriate.

(2) Program models within corps

A recipient of financial assistance or approved national service positions for a corps program described in subsection (a) may use the assistance or positions to carry out the corps program, in whole or in part, using a program model described in this subsection. The corps program shall meet the applicable requirements of subsection (a) and this subsection.

(d) Qualification criteria to determine eligibility

(1) Establishment by Corporation

The Corporation shall establish qualification criteria for different types of national service programs for the purpose of determining whether a particular national service program should be considered to be a national service program eligible to receive assistance or approved national service positions under this division.

(2) Consultation

In establishing qualification criteria under paragraph (1), the Corporation shall consult with organizations and individuals with extensive experience in developing and administering effective national service programs or regarding the delivery of veteran services, and other human, educational, environmental, or public safety services, to communities or persons.

(3) Application to subgrants

The qualification criteria established by the Corporation under paragraph (1) shall also be used by each recipient of assistance under section 12571(a) of this title that uses any portion of the assistance to conduct a grant program to support other national service programs.

(4) Encouragement of intergenerational components of programs

The Corporation shall encourage national service programs eligible to receive assistance or approved national service positions under this division to establish, if consistent with the purposes of the program, an intergenerational component of the program that combines students, out-of-school youths, disadvantaged youth, and older adults as participants to provide services to address unmet human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs.

(e) Priorities for certain corps

In awarding financial assistance and approved national service positions to eligible entities proposed to carry out the corps described in subsection (a)—

(1) in the case of a corps described in subsection (a)(2)—

(A) the Corporation may give priority to eligible entities that propose to provide support for participants who, after completing service under this section, will undertake careers to improve performance on health indicators described in subsection (a)(2)(C); and

(B) the Corporation shall give priority to eligible entities that propose to carry out national service programs in medically underserved areas (as designated individually, by the Secretary of Health and Human Services as an area with a shortage of personal health services); and

(2) in the case of a corps described in subsection (a)(3), the Corporation shall give priority to eligible entities that propose to recruit individuals for the Clean Energy Service Corps so that

significant percentages of participants in the Corps are economically disadvantaged individuals, and provide to such individuals support services and education and training to develop skills needed for clean energy jobs for which there is current demand or projected future demand.

(f) National service priorities

(1) Establishment

(A) By Corporation

In order to concentrate national efforts on meeting human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs and to achieve the other purposes of this chapter, the Corporation, after reviewing the strategic plan approved under section 12651b(g)(1,) [2] of this title shall establish, and may periodically alter, priorities regarding the types of national service programs and corps to be assisted under section 12581 of this title and the purposes for which such assistance may be used.

(B) By States

Consistent with paragraph (4), States shall establish, and through the national service plan process described in section 12638(e)(1) of this title, periodically alter priorities as appropriate regarding the national service programs to be assisted under section 12581(e) of this title. The State priorities shall be subject to Corporation review as part of the application process under section 12582 of this title.

(2) Notice to applicants

The Corporation shall provide advance notice to potential applicants of any national service priorities to be in effect under this subsection for a fiscal year. The notice shall specifically include—

(A) a description of any alteration made in the priorities since the previous notice; and

(B) a description of the national service programs that are designated by the Corporation under section 12585(d)(2) of this title as eligible for priority consideration in the next competitive distribution of assistance under section 12571(a) of this title.

(3) Regulations

The Corporation shall by regulation establish procedures to ensure the equitable treatment of national service programs that—

(A) receive funding under this division for multiple years; and

(B) would be adversely affected by annual revisions in such national service priorities.

(4) Application to subgrants

Any national service priorities established by the Corporation under this subsection shall also be used by each recipient of funds under section 12571(a) of this title that uses any portion of the assistance to conduct a grant program to support other national service programs.

(g) Consultation on indicators

The Corporation shall consult with the Secretary of Education, the Secretary of Health and Human Services, the Director of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the Secretary of Energy, the Secretary of Veterans Affairs, the Secretary of the Interior, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, the Secretary of Labor, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, and the Secretary of the Treasury, as appropriate, in developing additional indicators for the corps and programs described in subsections (a) and (b).

(h) Requirements for tutors

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (2), the Corporation shall require that each recipient of assistance under the national service laws that operates a tutoring program involving elementary school or secondary school students certifies that individuals serving in approved national service positions as tutors in such program have—

(A) obtained their high school diplomas; and

(B) successfully completed pre- and in-service training for tutors.

(2) Exception

The requirements in paragraph (1) do not apply to an individual serving in an approved national service position who is enrolled in an elementary school or secondary school and is providing tutoring services through a structured, school-managed cross-grade tutoring program.

(i) Requirements for tutoring programs

Each tutoring program that receives assistance under the national service laws shall—

(1) offer a curriculum that is high quality, research-based, and consistent with the State academic content standards required by section 6311 of title 20 and the instructional program of the local educational agency; and

(2) offer high quality, research-based pre- and in-service training for tutors.

(j) Citizenship training

The Corporation shall establish guidelines for recipients of assistance under the national service laws, that are consistent with the principles on which citizenship programs administered by U.S. Citizenship and Immigration Services are based, relating to the promotion of citizenship and civic engagement among participants in approved national service positions and approved summer of service positions, and appropriate to the age, education, and experience of the participants.

(k) Report

Not later than 60 days after the end of each fiscal year for which the Corporation makes grants under section 12571(a) of this title, the Corporation shall prepare and submit to the authorizing committees a report containing—

(1) information describing how the Corporation allocated financial assistance and approved national service positions among eligible entities proposed to carry out corps and national service programs described in this section for that fiscal year;

(2) information describing the amount of financial assistance and the number of approved national service positions the Corporation provided to each corps and national service program described in this section for that fiscal year;

(3) a measure of the extent to which the corps and national service programs improved performance on the corresponding indicators; and

(4) information describing how the Corporation is coordinating—

(A) the national service programs funded under this section; with

(B) applicable programs, as determined by the Corporation, carried out under division B of this subchapter, and part A of title I and parts A and B of title II of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq., 5001, 5011) that improve performance on those indicators or otherwise address identified community needs.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §122, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 790; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1302, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1485; Pub. L. 114–95, title IX, §9215(bbb)(4), Dec. 10, 2015, 129 Stat. 2185.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b)(2)(F)(ii) and (f)(1)(A), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

The Higher Education Act of 1965, referred to in subsec. (c)(1)(C)(i), is Pub. L. 89–329, Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1219. Part C of title IV of the Act was formerly classified generally to part C (§2751 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 34 of this title prior to transfer to part C (§1087–51 et seq.) of subchapter IV of chapter 28 of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 20 and Tables.

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (k)(4)(B), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Part A of title I of the Act is classified generally to part A (§4951 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 66 of this title. Parts A and B of title II of the Act are classified generally to parts A (§5001) and B

(§5011 et seq.), respectively, of subchapter II of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12572, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §142, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3150, related to criteria and requirements for awarding grants for national and community service programs, prior to the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [former part D of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, §102(a).

A prior section 122 of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered section 199B, and is classified to section 12655a of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsec. (a)(1)(C)(iii). Pub. L. 114–95 substituted "four-year adjusted cohort graduation rate (as defined in section 7801 of title 20)" for "secondary school graduation rates as defined in section 6311(b)(2)(C)(vi) of title 20 and as clarified in applicable regulations promulgated by the Department of Education".

2009—Pub. L. 111–13 substituted "National" for "Types of national" in section catchline and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, section enumerated eligible types of national service programs, set forth qualification criteria to determine eligibility, and required establishment of priorities regarding national service programs.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2015 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 114–95 effective Dec. 10, 2015, except with respect to certain noncompetitive programs and competitive programs, see section 5 of Pub. L. 114–95, set out as a note under section 6301 of Title 20, Education.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

[1] So in original. Probably should be followed by "or".

[2] So in original. The comma probably should not appear.

[3] So in original. Probably should be "paragraph".

[1] See References in Text note below.

§12573. Types of national service positions eligible for approval for national service educational awards

The Corporation may approve of any of the following service positions as an approved national service position that includes the national service educational award described in division D as one of the benefits to be provided for successful service in the position:

(1) A position for a participant in a national service program described in subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572 of this title that receives assistance under subsection (a) of section 12571 of this title.

(2) A position for a participant in a program that—

(A) is carried out by a State, a subdivision of a State, a territory, an Indian tribe, a public or private nonprofit organization, an institution of higher education, or a Federal agency (under an interagency agreement described in section 12571(b) of this title); and

(B) would be eligible to receive assistance under section 12571(a) of this title, based on criteria established by the Corporation, but has not applied for such assistance.

(3) A position involving service as a VISTA volunteer under title I of the Domestic Volunteer

Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq.).

(4) A position facilitating service-learning in a program described in section 12572(a)(1)(B)(vi) of this title that is eligible for assistance under part I of division B.

(5) A position for a participant in the National Civilian Community Corps under division E.

(6) A position involving service as a crew leader in a youth corps program or a similar position supporting a national service program that receives an approved national service position.

(7) A position involving service in the ServeAmerica Fellowship program carried out under section 12653b of this title.

(8) Such other national service positions as the Corporation considers to be appropriate.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §123, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 794; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1303, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1499.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in par. (3), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§4951 et seq.) of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12573, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §143, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3152, related to types of national service, prior to the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [former part D of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, §102(a).

A prior section 123 of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered section 199C, and is classified to section 12655b of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Par. (1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1303(1), substituted "subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572" for "section 12572(a)" and struck out "or (b)" before "of section 12571".

Par. (2)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1303(2), inserted "a territory," after "subdivision of a State," and substituted "Federal agency (under an interagency agreement described in section 12571(b) of this title)" for "Federal agency".

Par. (4). Pub. L. 111–13, §1303(3), substituted "section 12572(a)(1)(B)(vi)" for "section 12572(a)(3)".

Par. (5). Pub. L. 111–13, §1303(4), inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps".

Pars. (7), (8). Pub. L. 111–13, §1303(5), (6), added par. (7) and redesignated former par. (7) as (8).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

§12574. Types of program assistance

(a) Planning assistance

The Corporation may provide assistance under section 12571 of this title to a qualified applicant that submits an application under section 12582 of this title for the planning of a national service program. Assistance provided in accordance with this subsection may cover a period of not more than 1 year.

(b) Operational assistance

The Corporation may provide assistance under section 12571 of this title to a qualified applicant that submits an application under section 12582 of this title for the establishment, operation, or expansion of a national service program. Assistance provided in accordance with this subsection may cover a period of not more than 3 years, but may be renewed by the Corporation upon consideration of a new application under section 12582 of this title.

(c) Replication assistance

The Corporation may provide assistance under section 12571 of this title to a qualified applicant

that submits an application under section 12582 of this title for the expansion of a proven national service program to another geographical location. Assistance provided in accordance with this subsection may cover a period of not more than 3 years, but may be renewed by the Corporation upon consideration of a new application under section 12582 of this title.

(d) Application to subgrants

The requirements of this section shall apply to any State or other applicant receiving assistance under section 12571 of this title that proposes to conduct a grant program using the assistance to support other national service programs.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §124, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 794.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12574, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §144, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3152, related to terms of service for national and community service, prior to the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [former part D of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, §102(a).

A prior section 124 of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered section 199D, and is classified to section 12655c of this title.

§12575. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1304, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1500

Section, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §125, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 795, related to training and technical assistance.

A prior section 12575, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §145, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3153; Pub. L. 102–10, §6(a), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 31, related to eligibility for part-time, full-time, and special senior service in national and community service program, prior to the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 (former part D of this subchapter) by Pub. L. 103–82.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 125 of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered section 199E, and is classified to section 12655d of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12576. Other special assistance

(a) Support for State Commissions

(1) Grants authorized

From amounts appropriated for a fiscal year pursuant to the authorization of appropriation in section 12681(a)(5) of this title, the Corporation may make a grant in an amount between $250,000 and $1,000,000 to a State to assist the State to establish or operate the State Commission on National and Community Service required to be established by the State under section 12638 of this title.

(2) Matching requirement

In making a grant to a State under this subsection, the Corporation shall require the State to agree to provide matching funds from non-Federal sources of not less than $1 for every $1 provided by the Corporation through the grant.

(3) Alternative

Notwithstanding paragraph (2), the Chief Executive Officer may permit a State that demonstrates hardship or a new State Commission to meet alternative matching requirements for such a grant as follows:

(A) First $100,000

For the first $100,000 of grant funds provided by the Corporation, the State involved shall not be required to provide matching funds.

(B) Amounts greater than $100,000

For grant amounts of more than $100,000 and not more than $250,000 provided by the Corporation, the State shall agree to provide matching funds from non-Federal sources of not less than $1 for every $2 provided by the Corporation, in excess of $100,000.

(C) Amounts greater than $250,000

For grant amounts of more than $250,000 provided by the Corporation, the State shall agree to provide matching funds from non-Federal sources of not less than $1 for every $1 provided by the Corporation, in excess of $250,000.

(b) Disaster service

The Corporation may undertake activities, including activities carried out through part A of title I of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq.), to involve programs that receive assistance under the national service laws in disaster relief efforts, and to support, including through mission assignments under the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5121 et seq.), nonprofit organizations and public agencies responding to the needs of communities experiencing disasters.

(c) Challenge grants for national service programs

(1) Assistance authorized

The Corporation may make challenge grants under this subsection to programs supported under the national service laws.

(2) Selection criteria

The Corporation shall develop criteria for the selection of recipients of challenge grants under this subsection, so as to make the grants widely available to a variety of programs that—

(A) are high-quality national service programs; and

(B) are carried out by entities with demonstrated experience in establishing and implementing projects that provide benefits to participants and communities.

(3) Amount of assistance

A challenge grant under this subsection may provide, for an initial 3-year grant period, not more than $1 of assistance under this subsection for each $1 in cash raised from private sources by the program supported under the national service laws in excess of amounts required to be provided by the program to satisfy matching funds requirements. After an initial 3-year grant period, a grant under this subsection may provide not more than $1 of assistance under this subsection for each $2 in cash raised from private sources by the program in excess of amounts required to be provided by the program to satisfy matching funds requirements. The Corporation may permit the use of local or State funds under this paragraph in lieu of cash raised from private sources if the Corporation determines that such use would be equitable due to a lack of available private funds at the local level. The Corporation shall establish a ceiling on the amount of assistance that may be provided to a national service program under this subsection.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §126, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 795; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1305, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1500.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Part A of title I of the Act is classified generally to part A (§4951 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

The Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L.

93–288, May 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 143, which is classified principally to chapter 68 (§5121 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5121 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

Prior sections 12576 to 12580, which related to national and community service, were omitted in the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [former part D of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, §102(a).

Section 12576, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §146, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3153; Pub. L. 102–10, §6(b), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 31; Pub. L. 102–325, title XV, §1557, July 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 841, related to post-service benefits.

A prior section 126 of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered section 199F and is classified to section 12655e of this title.

Section 12577, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §147, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3154, related to living allowances for participants.

Section 12578, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §148, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3155, related to training of participants.

Section 12579, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §149, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3156, related to cooperation between public and private entities.

Section 12580, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §150, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3156, related to in-service education benefits.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1305(1)(A), substituted "$250,000 and $1,000,000" for "$125,000 and $750,000" and "12681(a)(5)" for "12681(a)(4)".

Subsec. (a)(2), (3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1305(1)(B), added pars. (2) and (3) and struck out former par. (2). Text of former par. (2) read as follows: "Notwithstanding the amounts specified in paragraph (1), the amount of a grant that may be provided to a State Commission under this subsection, together with other Federal funds available to establish or operate the State Commission, may not exceed—

"(A) 85 percent of the total cost to establish or operate the State Commission for the first year for which the State Commission receives assistance under this subsection; and

"(B) such smaller percentage of such cost as the Corporation may establish for the second, third, and fourth years of such assistance in order to ensure that the Federal share does not exceed 50 percent of such costs for the fifth year, and any subsequent year, for which the State Commission receives assistance under this subsection."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1305(2), added subsec. (b) and struck out former subsec. (b). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Corporation may undertake activities, including activities carried out through part A of title I of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq.), to involve in disaster relief efforts youth corps programs described in section 12572(a)(2) of this title and other programs that receive assistance under the national service laws."

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1305(3)(A), substituted "to programs supported under the national service laws" for "to national service programs that receive assistance under section 12571 of this title".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1305(3)(B), added par. (3) and struck out former par. (3). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A challenge grant under this subsection may provide not more than $1 of assistance under this subsection for each $1 in cash raised by the national service program from private sources in excess of amounts required to be provided by the program to satisfy matching funds requirements under section 12571(e) of this title. The Corporation shall establish a ceiling on the amount of assistance that may be provided to a national service program under this subsection."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

PART II—APPLICATION AND APPROVAL PROCESS

§12581. Provision of assistance and approved national service positions

(a) One percent allotment for certain territories

Of the funds allocated by the Corporation for provision of assistance under section 12571(a) of this title for a fiscal year, the Corporation shall reserve 1 percent for grants to the United States Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands upon approval by the Corporation of an application submitted under section 12582 of this title. The Corporation shall allot for a grant to each such territory under this subsection for a fiscal year an amount that bears the same ratio to 1 percent of the allocated funds for that fiscal year as the population of the territory bears to the total population of all such territories.

(b) Allotment for Indian tribes

Of the funds allocated by the Corporation for provision of assistance under section 12571(a) of this title for a fiscal year, the Corporation shall reserve at least 1 percent for grants to Indian tribes to be allotted by the Corporation on a competitive basis.

(c) Reservation of approved positions

The Corporation shall ensure that each individual selected during a fiscal year for assignment as a VISTA volunteer under title I of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq.) or as a participant in the National Civilian Community Corps Program under division E shall receive the national service educational award described in division D if the individual satisfies the eligibility requirements for the award. Funds for approved national service positions required by this paragraph for a fiscal year shall be deducted from the total funding for approved national service positions to be available for distribution under subsections (d) and (e) for that fiscal year.

(d) Allotment for competitive grants

(1) In general

Of the funds allocated by the Corporation for provision of assistance under section 12571(a) of this title for a fiscal year and subject to section 12585(d)(3) of this title, the Corporation shall reserve not more than 62.7 percent for grants awarded on a competitive basis to States specified in subsection (e)(1) for national service programs, to nonprofit organizations seeking to operate a national service program in 2 or more of those States, and to Indian tribes.

(2) Equitable treatment

In the consideration of applications for such grants, the Corporation shall ensure the equitable treatment of applicants from urban areas, applicants from rural areas, applicants of diverse sizes (as measured by the number of participants served), applicants from States, and applicants from national nonprofit organizations.

(3) Encore service programs

In making grants under this subsection for a fiscal year, the Corporation shall make an effort to allocate not less than 10 percent of the financial assistance and approved national service positions provided through the grants for that fiscal year to eligible entities proposing to carry out encore service programs, unless the Corporation does not receive a sufficient number of applications of adequate quality to justify making that percentage available to those eligible entities.

(4) Corps programs

In making grants under this subsection for a fiscal year, the Corporation—

(A) shall select 2 or more of the national service corps described in section 12572(a) of this title to receive grants under this subsection; and

(B) may select national service programs described in section 12572(b) of this title to receive such grants.

(e) Allotment to certain States on formula basis

(1) Grants

Of the funds allocated by the Corporation for provision of assistance under section 12571(a) of this title for a fiscal year, the Corporation shall make a grant to each of the several States, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico that submits an application under section 12582 of this title that is approved by the Corporation.

(2) Allotments

The Corporation shall allot for a grant to each such State under this subsection for a fiscal year an amount that bears the same ratio to 35.3 percent of the allocated funds for that fiscal year as the population of the State bears to the total population of the several States, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, in compliance with paragraph (3).

(3) Minimum amount

Notwithstanding paragraph (2), the minimum grant made available to each State approved by the Corporation under paragraph (1) for each fiscal year shall be at least $600,000, or 0.5 percent of the amount allocated for the State formula under this subsection for the fiscal year, whichever is greater.

(f) Effect of failure to apply

If a State or territory fails to apply for, or fails to give notice to the Corporation of its intent to apply for, an allotment under this section, or the Corporation does not approve the application consistent with section 12585 of this title, the Corporation may use the amount that would have been allotted under this section to the State or territory to—

(1) make grants (and provide approved national service positions in connection with such grants) to other community-based entities under section 12571 of this title that propose to carry out national service programs in such State or territory; and

(2) make reallotments to other States or territories with approved applications submitted under section 12582 of this title, from the allotment funds not used to make grants as described in paragraph (1).

(g) Application required

The Corporation shall make an allotment of assistance (including the provision of approved national service positions) to a recipient under this section only pursuant to an application submitted by a State or other applicant under section 12582 of this title.

(h) Approval of positions subject to available funds

The Corporation may not approve positions as approved national service positions under this division for a fiscal year in excess of the number of such positions for which the Corporation has sufficient available funds in the National Service Trust for that fiscal year, taking into consideration funding needs for national service educational awards under division D based on completed service. If appropriations are insufficient to provide the maximum allowable national service educational awards under division D for all eligible participants, the Corporation is authorized to make necessary and reasonable adjustments to program rules.

(i) Sponsorship of approved national service positions

(1) Sponsorship authorized

The Corporation may enter into agreements with persons or entities who offer to sponsor national service positions for which the person or entity will be responsible for supplying the funds necessary to provide a national service educational award. The distribution of those approved national service positions shall be made pursuant to the agreement, and the creation of those positions shall not be taken into consideration in determining the number of approved national service positions to be available for distribution under this section.

(2) Deposit of contribution

Funds provided pursuant to an agreement under paragraph (1) shall be deposited in the National Service Trust established in section 12601 of this title until such time as the funds are needed.

(j) Reservation of funds for special assistance

(1) Reservation

From amounts appropriated for a fiscal year pursuant to the authorization of appropriations in section 12681(a)(2) of this title and allocated to carry out this division and subject to the limitation in such section, the Corporation may reserve such amount as the Corporation considers to be appropriate for the purpose of making assistance available under subsections (b) and (c) of section 12576 of this title.

(2) Limitation

The amount reserved under paragraph (1) for a fiscal year may not exceed $10,000,000.

(3) Timing

The Corporation shall reserve such amount, and any amount reserved under subsection (k) from funds appropriated and allocated to carry out this division, before allocating funds for the provision of assistance under any other provision of this division.

(k) Reservation of funds to increase the participation of individuals with disabilities

(1) Reservation

To make grants to public or private nonprofit organizations to increase the participation of individuals with disabilities in national service and for demonstration activities in furtherance of this purpose, and subject to the limitation in paragraph (2), the Chief Executive Officer shall reserve not less than 2 percent from the amounts, appropriated to carry out this division and divisions D, E, and H for each fiscal year.

(2) Limitation

The amount reserved under paragraph (1) for a fiscal year may not exceed $20,000,000.

(3) Remainder

The Chief Executive Officer may use the funds reserved under paragraph (1), and not distributed to make grants under this subsection for other activities described in section 12681(a)(2) of this title.

(l) Authority for fixed-amount grants

(1) In general

(A) Authority

From amounts appropriated for a fiscal year to provide financial assistance under the national service laws, the Corporation may provide assistance in the form of fixed-amount grants in an amount determined by the Corporation under paragraph (2) rather than on the basis of actual costs incurred by a program.

(B) Limitation

Other than fixed-amount grants to support programs described in section 12581a of this title, for the 1-year period beginning on the effective date of the Serve America Act, the Corporation may provide assistance in the form of fixed-amount grants to programs that only offer full-time positions.

(2) Determination of amount of fixed-amount grants

A fixed-amount grant authorized by this subsection shall be in an amount determined by the Corporation that is—

(A) significantly less than the reasonable and necessary costs of administering the program supported by the grant; and

(B) based on an amount per individual enrolled in the program receiving the grant, taking into account—

(i) the capacity of the entity carrying out the program to manage funds and achieve programmatic results;

(ii) the number of approved national service positions, approved silver scholar positions, or approved summer of service positions for the program, if applicable;

(iii) the proposed design of the program;

(iv) whether the program provides service to, or involves the participation of, disadvantaged youth or otherwise would reasonably incur a relatively higher level of costs; and

(v) such other factors as the Corporation may consider under section 12585 of this title in considering applications for assistance.

(3) Requirements for grant recipients

In awarding a fixed-amount grant under this subsection, the Corporation—

(A) shall require the grant recipient—

(i) to return a pro rata amount of the grant funds based upon the difference between the number of hours served by a participant and the minimum number of hours for completion of a term of service (as established by the Corporation);

(ii) to report on the program's performance on standardized measures and performance levels established by the Corporation;

(iii) to cooperate with any evaluation activities undertaken by the Corporation; and

(iv) to provide assurances that additional funds will be raised in support of the program, in addition to those received under the national service laws; and

(B) may adopt other terms and conditions that the Corporation considers necessary or appropriate based on the relative risks (as determined by the Corporation) associated with any application for a fixed-amount grant.

(4) Other requirements not applicable

Limitations on administrative costs and matching fund documentation requirements shall not apply to fixed-amount grants provided in accordance with this subsection.

(5) Rule of construction

Nothing in this subsection shall relieve a grant recipient of the responsibility to comply with the requirements of chapter 75 of title 31 or other requirements of Office of Management and Budget Circular A–133.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §129, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 796; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1306, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1501.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§4951 et seq.) of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

For the effective date of the Serve America Act, referred to in subsec. (l)(1)(B), as Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 129 of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered section 199H and is classified to section 12655h of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section consisted of subsecs. (a) to (g) relating to allotments of assistance and approved national service positions to States and Indian tribes, reservation of the national service educational award for eligible individuals in approved positions, reservation of amounts appropriated as considered appropriate for special assistance, competitive distribution of remaining funds, application requirement, approval of positions subject to available funds, and sponsorship of approved national service positions.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

§12581a. Educational awards only program

(a) In general

From amounts appropriated for a fiscal year to provide financial assistance under this division and consistent with the restriction in subsection (b), the Corporation may, through fixed-amount grants (in accordance with section 12581(l) of this title), provide operational support to programs that receive approved national service positions but do not receive funds under section 12571(a) of this title.

(b) Limit on Corporation grant funds

The Corporation may provide the operational support under this section for a program in an amount that is not more than $800 per individual enrolled in an approved national service position, or not more than $1,000 per such individual if at least 50 percent of the persons enrolled in the program are disadvantaged youth.

(c) Inapplicable provisions

The following provisions shall not apply to programs funded under this section:

(1) The limitation on administrative costs under section 12571(d) of this title.

(2) The matching funds requirements under section 12571(e) of this title.

(3) The living allowance and other benefits under sections 12583(e) and 12594 of this title (other than individualized support services for participants with disabilities under section 12594(f) of this title).

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §129A, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1307, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1505.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12582. Application for assistance and approved national service positions

(a) Time, manner, and content of application

To be eligible to receive assistance under section 12571(a) of this title or approved national service positions for participants who serve in the national service programs to be carried out using the assistance, a State, territory, subdivision of a State, Indian tribe, public or private nonprofit organization, or institution of higher education shall prepare and submit to the Corporation an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Corporation may reasonably require.

(b) Types of permissible application information

In order to have adequate information upon which to consider an application under section 12585 of this title, the Corporation may require the following information to be provided in an application submitted under subsection (a):

(1) A description of the national service programs proposed to be carried out directly by the applicant using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title.

(2) A description of the national service programs that are selected by the applicant to receive a grant using assistance requested under section 12571 of this title and a description of the process and criteria by which the programs were selected.

(3) A description of other funding sources to be used, or sought to be used, for the national

service programs referred to in paragraphs (1) and (2), and, if the application is submitted for the purpose of seeking a renewal of assistance, a description of the success of the programs in reducing their reliance on Federal funds.

(4) A description of the extent to which the projects to be conducted using the assistance will address unmet human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs and produce a direct benefit for the community in which the projects are performed.

(5) A description of the plan to be used to recruit participants, including youth who are individuals with disabilities and economically disadvantaged young men and women, for the national service programs referred to in paragraphs (1) and (2).

(6) A description of the manner in which the national service programs referred to in paragraphs (1) and (2) build on existing programs, including Federal programs.

(7) A description of the manner in which the national service programs referred to in paragraphs (1) and (2) will involve participants—

(A) in projects that build an ethic of civic responsibility and produce a positive change in the lives of participants through training and participation in meaningful service experiences and opportunities for reflection on such experiences; and

(B) in leadership positions in implementing and evaluating the program.

(8) Measurable goals for the national service programs referred to in paragraphs (1) and (2), and a strategy to achieve such goals, in terms of—

(A) the impact to be made in meeting unmet human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs; and

(B) the service experience to be provided to participants in the programs.

(9) A description of the manner and extent to which the national service programs referred to in paragraphs (1) and (2) conform to the national service priorities established by the Corporation under section 12572(f) of this title.

(10) A description of the past experience of the applicant in operating a comparable program or in conducting a grant program in support of other comparable service programs.

(11) A description of the type and number of proposed service positions in which participants will receive the national service educational award described in division D and a description of the manner in which approved national service positions will be apportioned by the applicant.

(12) A description of the manner and extent to which participants, representatives of the community served, community-based agencies with a demonstrated record of experience in providing services, municipalities and governments of counties in which such a community is located, and labor organizations contributed to the development of the national service programs referred to in paragraphs (1) and (2), including the identity of the individual representing each appropriate labor organization (if any) who was consulted and the nature of the consultation.

(13) Such other information as the Corporation may reasonably require.

(c) Required application information

An application submitted under subsection (a) shall contain the following information:

(1) A description of the proposed positions into which participants will be placed using the assistance provided under section 12571 of this title.

(2) A description of the proposed minimum qualifications that individuals shall meet to become participants in such programs.

(3) In the case of a nonprofit organization intending to operate programs in 2 or more States, a description of the manner in which and extent to which the organization consulted with the State Commissions of each State in which the organization intends to operate and the nature of the consultation.

(d) Additional required application information

An application submitted under subsection (a) for programs described in 12572(a) [1] of this title shall also contain—

(1) measurable goals, to be used for annual measurements of the program's performance on 1 or more of the corresponding indicators described in section 12572 of this title;

(2) information describing how the applicant proposes to utilize funds to improve performance on the corresponding indicators utilizing participants, including describing the activities in which such participants will engage to improve performance on those indicators;

(3) information identifying the geographical area in which the eligible entity proposing to carry out the program proposes to use funds to improve performance on the corresponding indicators, and demographic information on the students or individuals, as appropriate, in such area, and statistics demonstrating the need to improve such indicators in such area; and

(4) if applicable, information on how the eligible entity will work with other community-based entities to carry out activities to improve performance on the corresponding indicators using such funds.

(e) Application to receive only approved national service positions

(1) Applicability of subsection

This subsection shall apply in the case of an application in which—

(A) the applicant is not seeking assistance under section 12571(a) of this title, but requests national service educational awards for individuals serving in service positions described in section 12573 of this title; or

(B) the applicant requests national service educational awards for service positions described in section 12573 of this title, but the positions are not positions in a national service program described in subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572 of this title for which assistance may be provided under section 12571(a) of this title.

(2) Special application requirements

For the applications described in paragraph (1), the Corporation shall establish special application requirements in order to determine—

(A) whether the service positions meet unmet human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs and meet the criteria for assistance under this division; and

(B) whether the Corporation should approve the positions as approved national service positions.

(f) Special rule for State applicants

(1) Submission by State Commission

The application of a State for approved national service positions or for a grant under section 12571(a) of this title shall be submitted by the State Commission.

(2) Competitive selection

The application of a State shall contain an assurance that all assistance provided under section 12571(a) of this title to the State will be used to support national service programs that were or will be selected by the State on a competitive basis. In making such competitive selections, the State shall seek to ensure the equitable allocation within the State of assistance and approved national service positions provided under this division to the State taking into consideration such factors as the location of the programs applying to the State, population density, and economic distress.

(3) Assistance to non-State entities

The application of a State shall also contain an assurance that not less than 60 percent of the assistance will be used to make grants in support of national service programs other than national service programs carried out by a State agency. The Corporation may permit a State to deviate from the percentage specified by this subsection if the State has not received a sufficient number of acceptable applications to comply with the percentage.

(g) Special rule for certain applicants

(1) Written concurrence

In the case of an applicant that proposes to also serve as the service sponsor, the application shall include the written concurrence of any local labor organization representing employees of the service sponsor who are engaged in the same or substantially similar work as that proposed to be carried out.

(2) Applicant defined

For purposes of this subsection, the term "applicant" means—

(A) a State, subdivision of a State, territory, Indian tribe, public or private nonprofit organization, or institution of higher education submitting an application under this section; or

(B) an entity applying for assistance or approved national service positions through a grant program conducted using assistance provided to a State, subdivision of a State, territory, Indian tribe, public or private nonprofit organization, or institution of higher education under section 12571 of this title.

(h) Limitation on same project receiving multiple grants

Unless specifically authorized by law, the Corporation may not provide more than 1 grant under the national service laws for a fiscal year to support the same project under the national service laws.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §130, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 800; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1308, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1505.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 130 of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered section 199I and is classified to section 12655i of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(1), substituted "section 12571(a)" for "section 12571", inserted "territory," after "assistance, a State,", and substituted "or institution of higher education" for "institution of higher education, or Federal agency".

Subsec. (b)(9). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(2)(A), substituted "section 12572(f)" for "section 12572(c)".

Subsec. (b)(12). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(2)(B), inserted "municipalities and governments of counties in which such a community is located," after "providing services,".

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(3)(A), substituted "proposed positions" for "jobs or positions" and a period for ", including descriptions of specific tasks to be performed by such participants."

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(3)(B), inserted "proposed" before "minimum".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(3)(C), added par. (3).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(5), added subsec. (d) and redesignated former subsec. (d) as (e).

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(4), substituted "section 12571(a)" for "subsection (a) or (b) of section 12571" in subpars. (A) and (B) and "subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572" for "section 12572(a)" in subpar. (B).

Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(5), redesignated subsecs. (d) and (e) as (e) and (f), respectively. Former subsec. (f) redesignated (g).

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(6), which directed substitution of "were or will be selected" for "were selected" in par. (2)(A), was executed by making the substitution in par. (2) to reflect the probable intent of Congress because par. (2) does not contain subpars.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(5), redesignated subsec. (f) as (g). Former subsec. (g) redesignated (h).

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(7)(A), substituted "an applicant" for "a program applicant".

Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(7)(B)(i), (ii), substituted "Applicant" for "Program applicant" in heading and "applicant" for "program applicant" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (g)(2)(A), (B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(7)(B)(iii), (iv), inserted "territory," after "subdivision of a State," and substituted "or institution of higher education" for "institution of higher education, or Federal agency".

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 111–13, §1308(5), (8), redesignated subsec. (g) as (h) and amended subsec. (h) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Corporation shall reject an application submitted under this section if a project proposed to be conducted using assistance requested by the applicant is already described in another application pending before the Corporation."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be preceded by "section".*

§12583. National service program assistance requirements

(a) Impact on communities

An application submitted under section 12582 of this title shall include an assurance by the applicant that any national service program carried out by the applicant using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title and any national service program supported by a grant made by the applicant using such assistance will—

(1) address unmet human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs through services that provide a direct benefit to the community in which the service is performed; and

(2) comply with the nonduplication and nondisplacement requirements of section 12637 of this title and the grievance procedure requirements of section 12636(f) of this title.

(b) Impact on participants

An application submitted under section 12582 of this title shall also include an assurance by the applicant that any national service program carried out by the applicant using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title and any national service program supported by a grant made by the applicant using such assistance will—

(1) provide participants in the national service program with the training, skills, and knowledge necessary for the projects that participants are called upon to perform;

(2) provide support services to participants, such as the provision of appropriate information and support—

(A) to those participants who are completing a term of service and making the transition to other educational and career opportunities; and

(B) to those participants who are school dropouts in order to assist those participants in earning the equivalent of a high school diploma; and

(3) provide, if appropriate, structured opportunities for participants to reflect on their service experiences.

(c) Consultation

An application submitted under section 12582 of this title shall also include an assurance by the applicant that any national service program carried out by the applicant using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title and any national service program supported by a grant made by the applicant using such assistance will—

(1) provide in the design, recruitment, and operation of the program for broad-based input from—

(A) the community served, the municipality and government of the county (if appropriate) in which the community is located, and potential participants in the program; and

(B) community-based agencies with a demonstrated record of experience in providing services and local labor organizations representing employees of service sponsors, if these entities exist in the area to be served by the program;

(2) prior to the placement of participants, consult with the appropriate local labor organization, if any, representing employees in the area who are engaged in the same or similar work as that proposed to be carried out by such program to ensure compliance with the nondisplacement requirements specified in section 12637 of this title; and

(3) in the case of a program that is not funded through a State (including a national service program that a nonprofit organization seeks to operate in 2 or more States), consult with and

coordinate activities with the State Commission for each State in which the program will operate, and the Corporation shall obtain confirmation from the State Commission that the applicant seeking assistance under this chapter has consulted with and coordinated with the State Commission when seeking to operate the program in that State.

(d) Evaluation and performance goals

(1) In general

An application submitted under section 12582 of this title shall also include an assurance by the applicant that the applicant will—

(A) arrange for an independent evaluation of any national service program carried out using assistance provided to the applicant under section 12571 of this title or, with the approval of the Corporation, conduct an internal evaluation of the program;

(B) apply measurable performance goals and evaluation methods (such as the use of surveys of participants and persons served), which are to be used as part of such evaluation to determine the impact of the program—

(i) on communities and persons served by the projects performed by the program;

(ii) on participants who take part in the projects; and

(iii) in such other areas as the Corporation may require; and

(C) cooperate with any evaluation activities undertaken by the Corporation.

(2) Evaluation

Subject to paragraph (3), the Corporation shall develop evaluation criteria and performance goals applicable to all national service programs carried out with assistance provided under section 12571 of this title.

(3) Alternative evaluation requirements

The Corporation may establish alternative evaluation requirements for national service programs based upon the amount of assistance received under section 12571 of this title or received by a grant made by a recipient of assistance under such section. The determination of whether a national service program is covered by this paragraph shall be made in such manner as the Corporation may prescribe.

(e) Living allowances and other inservice benefits

Except as provided in section 12594(c) of this title, an application submitted under section 12582 of this title shall also include an assurance by the applicant that the applicant will—

(1) ensure the provision of a living allowance and other benefits specified in section 12594 of this title to participants in any national service program carried out by the applicant using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title; and

(2) require that each national service program that receives a grant from the applicant using such assistance will also provide a living allowance and other benefits specified in section 12594 of this title to participants in the program.

(f) Selection of participants from individuals recruited by Corporation or State Commissions

The Corporation may also require an assurance by the applicant that any national service program carried out by the applicant using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title and any national service program supported by a grant made by the applicant using such assistance will select a portion of the participants for the program from among prospective participants recruited by the Corporation or State Commissions under section 12592(d) of this title. The Corporation may specify a minimum percentage of participants to be selected from the national leadership pool established under section 12592(e) of this title and may vary the percentage for different types of national service programs.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §131, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 803; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1309, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1507.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (c)(3), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 131 of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered section 199J and is classified to section 12655j of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (c)(1)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1309(1), added subpar. (A) and struck out former subpar. (A) which read as follows: "the community served and potential participants in the program; and".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1309(2), added par. (3) and struck out former par. (3) which read as follows: "in the case of a program that is not funded through a State, consult with and coordinate activities with the State Commission for the State in which the program operates."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

§12584. Ineligible service categories

(a) In general

Except as provided in subsection (b), an application submitted to the Corporation under section 12582 of this title shall include an assurance by the applicant that any national service program carried out using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title and any approved national service position provided to an applicant will not be used to perform service that provides a direct benefit to any—

(1) business organized for profit;

(2) labor union;

(3) partisan political organization;

(4) organization engaged in religious activities, unless such service does not involve the use of assistance provided under section 12571 of this title or participants—

(A) to give religious instruction;

(B) to conduct worship services;

(C) to provide instruction as part of a program that includes mandatory religious education or worship;

(D) to construct or operate facilities devoted to religious instruction or worship or to maintain facilities primarily or inherently devoted to religious instruction or worship; or

(E) to engage in any form of proselytization; or

(5) nonprofit organization that fails to comply with the restrictions contained in section 501(c) of title 26, except that nothing in this section shall be construed to prevent participants from engaging in advocacy activities undertaken at their own initiative.

(b) Regional Corporation

The requirement of subsection (a) relating to an assurance regarding direct benefits to businesses organized for profit shall not apply with respect to a Regional Corporation, as defined in section 3(g) of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1602(g)), that is established in accordance with such Act [43 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.] as a for-profit corporation but that is engaging in nonprofit activities.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §132, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 805.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 92–203, Dec. 18, 1971, 85 Stat. 688, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 33 (§1601 et seq.) of Title 43, Public Lands. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of Title 43 and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 132 of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered section 199L and classified to section 12655k of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(8)(A).

§12584a. Prohibited activities and ineligible organizations

(a) Prohibited activities

An approved national service position under this division may not be used for the following activities:

(1) Attempting to influence legislation.

(2) Organizing or engaging in protests, petitions, boycotts, or strikes.

(3) Assisting, promoting, or deterring union organizing.

(4) Impairing existing contracts for services or collective bargaining agreements.

(5) Engaging in partisan political activities, or other activities designed to influence the outcome of an election to Federal office or the outcome of an election to a State or local public office.

(6) Participating in, or endorsing, events or activities that are likely to include advocacy for or against political parties, political platforms, political candidates, proposed legislation, or elected officials.

(7) Engaging in religious instruction, conducting worship services, providing instruction as part of a program that includes mandatory religious instruction or worship, constructing or operating facilities devoted to religious instruction or worship, maintaining facilities primarily or inherently devoted to religious instruction or worship, or engaging in any form of proselytization, consistent with section 12584 of this title.

(8) Consistent with section 12584 of this title, providing a direct benefit to any—

(A) business organized for profit;

(B) labor union;

(C) partisan political organization;

(D) nonprofit organization that fails to comply with the restrictions contained in section 501(c) of title 26, except that nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prevent participants from engaging in advocacy activities undertaken at their own initiative; and

(E) organization engaged in the religious activities described in paragraph (7), unless the position is not used to support those religious activities.

(9) Providing abortion services or referrals for receipt of such services.

(10) Conducting a voter registration drive or using Corporation funds to conduct a voter registration drive.

(11) Carrying out such other activities as the Corporation may prohibit.

(b) Ineligibility

No assistance provided under this division may be provided to any organization that has violated a Federal criminal statute.

(c) Nondisplacement of employed workers or other volunteers

A participant in an approved national service position under this division may not be directed to perform any services or duties, or to engage in any activities, prohibited under the nonduplication, nondisplacement, or nonsupplantation requirements relating to employees and volunteers in section 12637 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §132A, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1310, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1507.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12585. Consideration of applications

(a) Corporation consideration of certain criteria

The Corporation shall apply the criteria described in subsections (c) and (d) in determining whether—

(1) to approve an application submitted under section 12582 of this title and provide assistance under section 12571 of this title to the applicant; and

(2) to approve service positions described in the application as national service positions that include the national service educational award described in division D and provide such approved national service positions to the applicant.

(b) Application to subgrants

(1) In general

A State or other entity that uses assistance provided under section 12571(a) of this title to support national service programs selected on a competitive basis to receive a share of the assistance shall use the criteria described in subsections (c) and (d) when considering an application submitted by a national service program to receive a portion of such assistance or an approved national service position.

(2) Contents

The application of the State or other entity under section 12582 of this title shall contain—

(A) a certification that the State or other entity used these criteria in the selection of national service programs to receive assistance;

(B) a description of the positions into which participants will be placed using such assistance, including descriptions of specific tasks to be performed by such participants; and

(C) a description of the minimum qualifications that individuals shall meet to become participants in such programs.

(c) Assistance criteria

The criteria required to be applied in evaluating applications submitted under section 12582 of this title are as follows:

(1) The quality of the national service program proposed to be carried out directly by the applicant or supported by a grant from the applicant.

(2) The innovative aspects of the national service program, and the feasibility of replicating the program.

(3) The sustainability of the national service program, based on evidence such as the existence—

(A) of strong and broad-based community support for the program; and

(B) of multiple funding sources or private funding for the program.

(4) The quality of the leadership of the national service program, the past performance of the program, and the extent to which the program builds on existing programs.

(5) The extent to which participants of the national service program are recruited from among residents of the communities in which projects are to be conducted, and the extent to which participants and community residents are involved in the design, leadership, and operation of the program.

(6) The extent to which projects would be conducted in the following areas where they are needed most:

(A) Communities designated as empowerment zones or redevelopment areas, targeted for

special economic incentives, or otherwise identifiable as having high concentrations of low-income people.

(B) Areas that are environmentally distressed.

(C) Areas adversely affected by Federal actions related to the management of Federal lands that result in significant regional job losses and economic dislocation.

(D) Areas adversely affected by reductions in defense spending or the closure or realignment of military installations.

(E) Areas that have an unemployment rate greater than the national average unemployment for the most recent 12 months for which satisfactory data are available.

(7) In the case of applicants other than States, the extent to which the application is consistent with the application under section 12582 of this title of the State in which the projects would be conducted.

(8) Such other criteria as the Corporation considers to be appropriate.

(d) Other considerations

(1) Geographic diversity

The Corporation shall ensure that recipients of assistance provided under section 12571 of this title are geographically diverse and include projects to be conducted in those urban and rural areas in a State with the highest rates of poverty.

(2) Priorities

The Corporation may designate, under such criteria as may be established by the Corporation, certain national service programs or types of national service programs described in subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572 of this title for priority consideration in the competitive distribution of funds under section 12581(d) of this title. In designating national service programs to receive priority, the Corporation may include—

(A) national service programs that—

(i) conform to the national service priorities in effect under section 12572(f) of this title;

(ii) are innovative; and

(iii) are well established in 1 or more States at the time of the application and are proposed to be expanded to additional States using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title;

(B) grant programs in support of other national service programs if the grant programs are to be conducted by nonprofit organizations with demonstrated and extensive expertise in the provision of services to meet human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs; and

(C) professional corps programs described in section 12572(c)(1)(D) of this title.

(3) Additional priority

In making a competitive distribution of funds under section 12581(d) of this title, the Corporation may give priority consideration to a national service program that is—

(A) proposed in an application submitted by a State Commission; and

(B) not one of the types of programs described in paragraph (2),

if the State Commission provides an adequate explanation of the reasons why it should not be a priority of such State to carry out any of such types of programs in the State.

(4) Review panel

The Corporation shall—

(A) establish panels of experts for the purpose of securing recommendations on applications submitted under section 12582 of this title for more than $250,000 in assistance, or for national service positions that would require more than $250,000 in national service educational awards; and

(B) consider the opinions of such panels prior to making such determinations.

(e) Emphasis on areas most in need

In making assistance available under section 12571 of this title and in providing approved national service positions under section 12573 of this title, the Corporation shall ensure that not less than 50 percent of the total amount of assistance to be distributed to States under subsections (d) and (e) of section 12581 of this title for a fiscal year is provided to carry out or support national service programs and projects that—

(1) are conducted in any of the areas described in subsection (c)(6) or on Federal or other public lands, to address unmet human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs in such areas or on such lands; and

(2) place a priority on the recruitment of participants who are residents of any of such areas or Federal or other public lands.

(f) Views of State Commission

In making competitive awards under section 12581(d) of this title, the Corporation shall solicit and consider the views of a State Commission regarding any application for assistance to carry out a national service program within the State.

(g) Rejection of State applications

(1) Notification of State applicants

If the Corporation rejects an application submitted by a State Commission under section 12582 of this title for funds described in section 12581(e) of this title, the Corporation shall promptly notify the State Commission of the reasons for the rejection of the application.

(2) Resubmission and reconsideration

The Corporation shall provide a State Commission notified under paragraph (1) with a reasonable opportunity to revise and resubmit the application. At the request of the State Commission, the Corporation shall provide technical assistance to the State Commission as part of the resubmission process. The Corporation shall promptly reconsider an application resubmitted under this paragraph.

(3) Reallotment

The amount of any State's allotment under section 12581(e) of this title for a fiscal year that the Corporation determines will not be provided for that fiscal year shall be available for distribution by the Corporation as provided in section 12581(f) of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §133, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 805; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1311, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1509.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 133 of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered section 199K and is classified to section 12655l of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1311(1), struck out "jobs or" before "positions".

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1311(2)(A)(i), substituted "subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572" for "section 12572(a)" and "section 12581(d)" for "section 12581(d)(2)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d)(2)(A) to (G). Pub. L. 111–13, §1311(2)(A)(ii), added subpars. (A) to (C) and struck out former subpars. (A) to (G), which set forth programs the Corporation could include in designating national service programs to receive priority.

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1311(2)(B), substituted "section 12581(d)" for "section 12581(d)(2)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–13, §1311(3), substituted "subsections (d) and (e) of section 12581" for "subsections (a) and (d)(1) of section 12581" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–13, §1311(6), added subsec. (f). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (g).

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1311(4)(A), substituted "section 12581(e)" for "section 12581(a)(1)".

Subsec. (f)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1311(4)(B), substituted "section 12581(e)" for "section 12581(a)" and "section 12581(f) of this title" for "paragraph (3) of such subsection".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–13, §1311(5), redesignated subsec. (f) as (g).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

PART III—NATIONAL SERVICE PARTICIPANTS

§12591. Description of participants

(a) In general

For purposes of this division, an individual shall be considered to be a participant in a national service program carried out using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title if the individual—

(1) meets such eligibility requirements, directly related to the tasks to be accomplished, as may be established by the program;

(2) is selected by the program to serve in a position with the program;

(3) is 17 years of age or older at the time the individual begins the term of service;

(4) has received a high school diploma or its equivalent, agrees to obtain a high school diploma or its equivalent (unless this requirement is waived based on an individual education assessment conducted by the program) and the individual did not drop out of an elementary or secondary school to enroll in the program, or is enrolled in an institution of higher education on an ability to benefit basis and is considered eligible for funds under section 1091 of title 20; and

(5) is a citizen or national of the United States or lawful permanent resident alien of the United States.

(b) Special rules for certain youth programs

An individual shall be considered to be a participant in a youth corps program described in section 12572(a)(3)(B)(x) of this title that is carried out with assistance provided under section 12571(a) of this title if the individual—

(1) satisfies the requirements specified in subsection (a), except paragraph (3) of such subsection; and

(2) is between the ages of 16 and 25, inclusive, at the time the individual begins the term of service.

(c) Waiver

The Corporation may waive the requirements of subsection (a)(4) with respect to an individual if the program in which the individual seeks to become a participant conducts an independent evaluation demonstrating that the individual is incapable of obtaining a high school diploma or its equivalent.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §137, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 808; amended Pub. L. 103–304, §3(b)(3), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1567; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1312, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1509.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12591, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §155, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3156, related to limitation on grants for innovative and demonstration programs and projects, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(3) to (6). Pub. L. 111–13, §1312(1), redesignated pars. (4) to (6) as (3) to (5), respectively, and struck out former par. (3), which read as follows: "will serve in the program for a term of

service specified in section 12593 of this title to be performed before, during, or after attendance at an institution of higher education;".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1312(2)(A), substituted "section 12572(a)(3)(B)(x)" for "section 12572(a)(2) of this title or a program described in section 12572(a)(9)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1312(2)(B), substituted "paragraph (3)" for "paragraph (4)".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–13, §1312(3), substituted "(a)(4)" for "(a)(5)".

1994—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103–304 substituted "subsection (a)(5)" for "subsection (a)(5)(A)".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

§12592. Selection of national service participants

(a) Selection process

Subject to subsections (b) and (c) and section 12583(f) of this title, the actual recruitment and selection of an individual to serve in a national service program receiving assistance under section 12571 of this title or to fill an approved national service position shall be conducted by the entity to which the assistance and approved national service positions are provided.

(b) Nondiscrimination and nonpolitical selection of participants

The recruitment and selection of individuals to serve in national service programs receiving assistance under section 12571 of this title or to fill approved national service positions shall be consistent with the requirements of section 12635 of this title.

(c) Second term

Acceptance into a national service program to serve a second term of service under section 12593 of this title shall only be available to individuals who perform satisfactorily in their first term of service.

(d) Recruitment and placement

The Corporation and each State Commission shall establish a system to recruit individuals who desire to perform national service and to assist the placement of these individuals in approved national service positions, which may include positions available under titles I and II of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq. [and 5000 et seq.]). The Corporation and State Commissions shall disseminate information regarding available approved national service positions through cooperation with secondary schools, institutions of higher education, employment service offices, State vocational rehabilitation agencies within the meaning of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 701 et seq.) and other State agencies that primarily serve individuals with disabilities, and other appropriate entities, particularly those organizations that provide outreach to disadvantaged youths and youths who are individuals with disabilities.

(e) National leadership pool

(1) Selection and training

From among individuals recruited under subsection (d), the Corporation may select individuals with significant leadership potential, as determined by the Corporation, to receive special training to enhance their leadership ability. The leadership training shall be provided by the Corporation directly or through a grant or contract.

(2) Emphasis on certain individuals

In selecting individuals to receive leadership training under this subsection, the Corporation shall make special efforts to select individuals who have served—

(A) in the Peace Corps;

(B) as VISTA volunteers;

(C) as participants in national service programs receiving assistance under section 12571 of

this title, particularly those who were considered, at the time of their service, disadvantaged youth;

(D) as participants in programs receiving assistance under part D of this subchapter, as in effect on the day before September 21, 1993; or

(E) as members of the Armed Forces of the United States and who were honorably discharged from such service.

(3) Assignment

At the request of a program that receives assistance under the national service laws, the Corporation may assign an individual who receives leadership training under paragraph (1) to work with the program in a leadership position and carry out assignments not otherwise performed by regular participants. An individual assigned to a program shall be considered to be a participant of the program.

(f) Evaluation of service

The Corporation shall issue regulations regarding the manner and criteria by which the service of a participant shall be evaluated to determine whether the service is satisfactory and successful for purposes of eligibility for a second term of service or a national service educational award.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §138, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 809; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1313, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1510.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (d), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Titles I and II of the Act are classified generally to subchapters I (§4951 et seq.) and II (§5000 et seq.), respectively, of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

The Rehabilitation Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (d), is Pub. L. 93–112, Sept. 26, 1973, 87 Stat. 355, which is classified generally to chapter 16 (§701 et seq.) of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 701 of Title 29 and Tables.

Part D of this subchapter, as in effect on the day before September 21, 1993, referred to in subsec. (e)(2)(D), means former part D of this subchapter prior to the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [former part D of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §102(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 816.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1313(1), substituted "conducted by the entity" for "conducted by the State, subdivision of a State, Indian tribe, public or private nonprofit organization, institution of higher education, Federal agency, or other entity".

Subsec. (e)(2)(C). Pub. L. 111–13, §1313(2), inserted ", particularly those who were considered, at the time of their service, disadvantaged youth" before semicolon at end.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

§12593. Terms of service

(a) In general

As a condition of receiving a national service education award under division D, a participant in an approved national service position shall be required to perform full- or part-time national service for at least one term of service specified in subsection (b).

(b) Term of service

(1) Full-time service

An individual performing full-time national service in an approved national service position

shall agree to participate in the program sponsoring the position for not less than 1,700 hours during a period of not more than 1 year.

(2) Part-time service

Except as provided in paragraph (3), an individual performing part-time national service in an approved national service position shall agree to participate in the program sponsoring the position for not less than 900 hours during a period of not more than 2 years.

(3) Reduction in hours of part-time service

The Corporation may reduce the number of hours required to be served to successfully complete part-time national service to a level determined by the Corporation, except that any reduction in the required term of service shall include a corresponding reduction in the amount of any national service educational award that may be available under division D with regard to that service.

(4) Extension of term for disaster purposes

(A) Extension

An individual in an approved national service position performing service directly related to disaster relief efforts may continue in a term of service for a period of 90 days beyond the period otherwise specified in, as appropriate, this subsection or section 12613(d) of this title or in section 4954 of this title.

(B) Single term of service

A period of service performed by an individual in an originally-agreed to [1] term of service and service performed under this paragraph shall constitute a single term of service for purposes of subsections (b)(1) and (c) of section 12602 of this title.

(C) Benefits

An individual performing service under this paragraph may continue to receive a living allowance and other benefits under section 12594 of this title but may not receive an additional national service educational award under section 12595 of this title.

(c) Release from completing term of service

(1) Release authorized

A recipient of assistance under section 12571 of this title or a program sponsoring an approved national service position may release a participant from completing a term of service in the position—

(A) for compelling personal circumstances as determined by the organization responsible for granting the release, if the participant has otherwise performed satisfactorily and has completed at least 15 percent of the term of service; or

(B) for cause.

(2) Effect of release for compelling circumstances

If a participant eligible for release under paragraph (1)(A) is serving in an approved national service position, the recipient of assistance under section 12571 of this title or a program sponsoring an approved national service position may elect—

(A) to grant such release and certify the participant's eligibility for that portion of the national service educational award corresponding to the portion of the term of service actually completed, as provided in section 12603(c) of this title; or

(B) to permit the participant to temporarily suspend performance of the term of service for a period of up to 2 years (and such additional period as the Corporation may allow for extenuating circumstances) and, upon completion of such period, to complete the remainder of the term of service and obtain the entire national service educational award.

(3) Effect of release for cause

A participant released for cause may not receive any portion of the national service educational award.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §139, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 810; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1314, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1510.)

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1314(1)(A), struck out "not less than 9 months and" before "not more than 1 year".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1314(1)(B), substituted "during a period of not more than 2 years." for "during a period of—

"(A) not more than 2 years; or

"(B) not more than 3 years if the individual is enrolled in an institute of higher education while preforming all or a portion of the service."

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 111–13, §1314(1)(C), added par. (4).

Subsec. (c)(1)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1314(2)(A), substituted "as determined by the organization responsible for granting the release, if the participant has otherwise performed satisfactorily and has completed at least 15 percent of the term of service" for "as demonstrated by the participant".

Subsec. (c)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1314(2)(B)(i), substituted "certify the participant's eligibility for that portion of the national service educational award" for "provide to the participant that portion of the national service educational award".

Subsec. (c)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1314(2)(B)(ii), struck out "to allow return to the program with which the individual was serving in order" before "to complete the remainder".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "originally-agreed-to".*

§12594. Living allowances for national service participants

(a) Provision of living allowance

(1) Living allowance required

Subject to paragraphs (2) and (3), a national service program carried out using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title shall provide to each participant who participates on a full-time basis in the program a living allowance in an amount equal to or greater than the average annual subsistence allowance provided to VISTA volunteers under section 4955 of this title.

(2) Maximum living allowance

Except as provided in subsection (c), the total amount of an annual living allowance that may be provided to a participant in a national service program shall not exceed 200 percent of the average annual subsistence allowance provided to VISTA volunteers under section 4955 of this title.

(3) Federal work-study students

The living allowance that may be provided under paragraph (1) to an individual whose term of service includes hours for which the individual receives a Federal work-study award under part C of title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (42 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.) [1] shall be reduced by the amount of the individual's Federal work study award.

(4) Proration of living allowance

The amount provided as a living allowance under this subsection shall be prorated in the case of a participant who is authorized to serve a term of service that is less than 12 months.

(5) Waiver or reduction of living allowance

The Corporation may waive or reduce the requirement of paragraph (1) with respect to such

national service program if such program demonstrates that—

(A) such requirement is inconsistent with the objectives of the program; and

(B) the amount of the living allowance that will be provided to each full-time participant is sufficient to meet the necessary costs of living (including food, housing, and transportation) in the area in which the program is located.

(6) Exemption

The requirement of paragraph (1) shall not apply to any program that was in existence on September 21, 1993.

(b) Coverage of certain employment-related taxes

To the extent a national service program that receives assistance under section 12571 of this title is subject, with respect to the participants in the program, to the taxes imposed on an employer under sections 3111 and 3301 of title 26 and taxes imposed on an employer under a workmen's compensation act, the assistance provided to the program under section 12571 of this title may be used to pay the taxes described in this subsection.

(c) Exception from maximum living allowance for certain assistance

A professional corps program described in section 12572(c)(1)(D) of this title that desires to provide a living allowance in excess of the maximum allowance authorized in subsection (a)(2) may still apply for such assistance, except that—

(1) any assistance provided to the applicant under section 12571 of this title may not be used to pay for any portion of the allowance; and

(2) the national service program shall be operated directly by the applicant and shall meet urgent, unmet human, educational, environmental, or public safety needs, as determined by the Corporation.

(d) Health insurance

(1) In general

A State or other recipient of assistance under section 12571 of this title shall provide or make available a basic health care policy for each full-time participant in a national service program carried out or supported using the assistance, if the participant is not otherwise covered by a health care policy. The Corporation shall establish minimum standards that all plans must meet in order to qualify for payment under this part, any circumstances in which an alternative health care policy may be substituted for the basic health care policy, and mechanisms to prohibit participants from dropping existing coverage.

(2) Option

A State or other recipient of assistance under section 12571 of this title may elect to provide from its own funds or make available a health care policy for participants that does not meet all of the standards established by the Corporation if the fair market value of such policy is equal to or greater than the fair market value of a plan that meets the minimum standards established by the Corporation, and is consistent with other applicable laws.

(e) Child care

(1) Availability

A State or other recipient of assistance under section 12571 of this title shall—

(A) make child care available for children of each full-time participant who needs child care in order to participate in a national service program carried out or supported by the recipient using the assistance; or

(B) provide a child care allowance to each full-time participant in a national service program who needs such assistance in order to participate in the program.

(2) Guidelines

The Corporation shall establish guidelines regarding the circumstances under which child care

shall be made available under this subsection and the value of any allowance to be provided.

(f) Individualized support services

A State or other recipient of assistance under section 12571 of this title shall provide reasonable accommodation, including auxiliary aids and services (as defined in section 12102(1) [1] of this title), based on the individualized need of a participant who is a qualified individual with a disability (as defined in section 12111(8) of this title).

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §140, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 811; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1315, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1511.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Higher Education Act of 1965, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is Pub. L. 89–329, Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1219. Part C of title IV of the Act was formerly classified generally to part C (§2751 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 34 of this title prior to transfer to part C (§1087–51 et seq.) of subchapter IV of chapter 28 of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 20 and Tables.

Section 12102 of this title, referred to in subsec. (f), was amended generally by Pub. L. 110–325, §4(a), Sept. 25, 2008, 122 Stat. 3555, and, as so amended, no longer defines "auxiliary aids and services". However, such term is defined in section 12103(1) of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 140 of Pub. L. 101–610 was set out as a note under section 12501 of this title, prior to the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [former part D of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, §102(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1315(1)(A), substituted "paragraphs (2) and (3)" for "paragraph (3)".

Subsec. (a)(2), (3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1315(1)(B)–(D), added par. (3), redesignated former par. (3) as (2), and struck out former par. (2). Text of former par. (2) read as follows: "The amount of the annual living allowance provided under paragraph (1) that may be paid using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title and using any other Federal funds shall not exceed 85 percent of the total average annual provided to VISTA volunteers under section 4955 of this title."

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 111–13, §1315(1)(E), substituted "a term of service that is less than 12 months" for "a reduced term of service under section 12593(b)(3) of this title".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1315(2), substituted "may be used to pay the taxes described in this subsection." for "shall include an amount sufficient to cover 85 percent of such taxes based upon the lesser of—

"(1) the total average annual subsistence allowance provided to VISTA volunteers under section 4955 of this title; and

"(2) the annual living allowance established by the program."

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–13, §1315(3), substituted "section 12572(c)(1)(D)" for "section 12572(a)(8)" and "subsection (a)(2)" for "subsection (a)(3) of this section" in introductory provisions, redesignated par. (3) as (2), and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "the applicant shall apply for such assistance only by submitting an application to the Corporation for assistance on a competitive basis; and".

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1315(4)(A), substituted "shall provide or make available" for "shall provide" and struck out second sentence which read as follows: "Not more than 85 percent of the cost of a premium shall be provided by the Corporation, with the remaining cost paid by the entity receiving assistance under section 12571 of this title."

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1315(4)(B), substituted "provide from its own funds or make available" for "provide from its own funds".

Subsecs. (g), (h). Pub. L. 111–13, §1315(5), struck out subsecs. (g) and (h) which allowed waiver in whole or in part of limitation on Federal share and limited number of terms of service for federally subsidized living allowance, respectively.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12595. National service educational awards

(a) Eligibility generally

A participant in a national service program carried out using assistance provided to an applicant under section 12571 of this title shall be eligible for the national service educational award described in division D if the participant—

(1) serves in an approved national service position; and

(2) satisfies the eligibility requirements specified in section 12602 of this title with respect to service in that approved national service position.

(b) Special rule for VISTA volunteers

A VISTA volunteer who serves in an approved national service position shall be ineligible for a national service educational award if the VISTA volunteer accepts the stipend authorized under section 4955(a)(1) of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §141, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 814.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 141 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12571 of this title prior to the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [former part D of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, §102(a).

Division D—National Service Trust and Provision of Educational Awards

CODIFICATION

Subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610, comprising this division, was formerly classified to part D (§12571 et seq.) of this subchapter prior to the general amendment by Pub. L. 103–82, §102(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1401(a), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1512, amended div. heading generally.

§12601. Establishment of the National Service Trust

(a) Establishment

There is established in the Treasury of the United States an account to be known as the National Service Trust. The Trust shall consist of—

(1) from the amounts appropriated to the Corporation and made available to carry out this division, such amounts as the Corporation may designate to be available for the payment of—

(A) national service educational awards, summer of service educational awards, and silver scholar educational awards; and

(B) interest expenses pursuant to section 12604(e) of this title;

(2) any amounts received by the Corporation as gifts, bequests, devises, or otherwise pursuant to section 12651g(a)(2) of this title, if the terms of such donations direct that the donated amounts be deposited in the National Service Trust;

(3) any amounts recovered by the Corporation pursuant to section 12602a of this title; and

(4) the interest on, and proceeds from the sale or redemption of, any obligations held by the Trust.

(b) Investment of Trust

It shall be the duty of the Secretary of the Treasury to invest in full the amounts appropriated to the Trust. Except as otherwise expressly provided in instruments concerning a gift, bequest, devise, or other donation and agreed to by the Corporation, such investments may be made only in interest-bearing obligations of the United States or in obligations guaranteed as to both principal and interest by the United States. For such purpose, such obligations may be acquired on original issue at the issue price or by purchase of outstanding obligations at the market price. Any obligation acquired by the Trust may be sold by the Secretary at the market price.

(c) Expenditures from Trust

Amounts in the Trust shall be available, to the extent provided for in advance by appropriation, for—

(1) payments of national service educational awards, summer of service educational awards, and silver scholar educational awards in accordance with section 12604 of this title; and

(2) payments of interest in accordance with section 12604(e) of this title.

(d) Reports to the authorizing committees on receipts and expenditures

Not later than March 1 of each year, the Corporation shall submit a report to the authorizing committees on the financial status of the Trust during the preceding fiscal year. Such report shall—

(1) specify the amount deposited to the Trust from the most recent appropriation to the Corporation, the amount received by the Corporation as gifts, bequests, devises, or otherwise pursuant to section 12651g(a)(2) of this title during the period covered by the report, and any amounts obtained by the Trust pursuant to subsection (a)(3);

(2) identify the number of individuals who are currently performing service to qualify, or have qualified, for national service educational awards, summer of service educational awards, or silver scholar awards;

(3) identify the number of individuals whose expectation to receive national service educational awards, summer of service educational awards, or silver scholar awards during the period covered by the report—

(A) has been reduced pursuant to section 12603(c) of this title; or

(B) has lapsed pursuant to section 12602(d) of this title; and

(4) estimate the number of additional approved national service positions, additional approved summer of service positions, and additional approved silver scholar positions that the Corporation will be able to make available on the basis of any accumulated surplus in the Trust above the amount required to provide national service educational awards, summer of service educational awards, or silver scholar awards to individuals identified under paragraph (2), including any amounts available as a result of the circumstances referred to in paragraph (3).

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §145, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §102(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 816; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1401(b), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1512.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12601, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §156, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3156, related to authority of Commission on National and Community Service to make grants to States or Indian tribes for creation of innovative volunteer and community service programs, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

A prior section 145 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12575 of this title prior to the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [former part D of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, §102(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1401(b)(1)(A)(i), struck out "pursuant to section 12681(a)(2) of this title" after "carry out this division" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1401(b)(1)(A)(ii), inserted ", summer of service educational awards, and silver scholar educational awards" after "national service educational awards".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1401(b)(1)(B)(i), substituted "pursuant to section 12651g(a)(2) of this title,

if the terms of such donations direct that the donated amounts be deposited in the National Service Trust" for "pursuant to section 12651g(a)(2) of this title".

Subsec. (a)(3), (4). Pub. L. 111–13, §1401(b)(1)(B)(ii)–(D), added par. (3) and redesignated former par. (3) as (4).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–13, §1401(b)(2), substituted "for—" for "for payments of national service educational awards in accordance with section 12604 of this title." and added pars. (1) and (2).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–13, §1401(b)(3)(A), (B), substituted "the authorizing committees" for "Congress" in heading and "the authorizing committees" for "the Congress" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d)(2), (3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1401(b)(3)(C), inserted ", summer of service educational awards, or silver scholar awards" after "national service educational awards".

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 111–13, §1401(b)(3)(C), (D), inserted ", additional approved summer of service positions, and additional approved silver scholar positions" after "additional approved national service positions", struck out "under division C of this subchapter" after "make available", and inserted ", summer of service educational awards, or silver scholar awards" after "national service educational awards".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Division effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as an Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

SEGAL AMERICORPS EDUCATION AWARD

Pub. L. 109–234, title VII, §7014, June 15, 2006, 120 Stat. 484, provided that: "Any national service educational award described in subtitle D of title I of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12601 et seq.), made with funds appropriated to, funds transferred to, or interest accumulated in the National Service Trust, shall hereafter be known as a 'Segal AmeriCorps Education Award'."

§12601a. Transfer of funds; notice to Congress

For fiscal year 2009 and thereafter, in addition to amounts otherwise provided to the National Service Trust, at no later than the end of the fifth fiscal year after the fiscal year for which funds are appropriated or otherwise made available, unobligated balances of appropriations available for grants under the National Service Trust Program under subtitle C of title I of the 1990 Act [42 U.S.C. 12571 et seq.] during such fiscal year may be transferred to the National Service Trust after notice is transmitted to the Committees on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Senate, if such funds are initially obligated before the expiration of their period of availability.

(Pub. L. 111–8, div. F, title IV, §409, Mar. 11, 2009, 123 Stat. 796.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The 1990 Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, known as the National and Community Service Act of 1990. Subtitle C of title I of the Act is classified generally to division C (§12571 et seq.) of this subchapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the appropriation act cited as the credit to this section, and not as part of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 which comprises this chapter.

SIMILAR PROVISIONS

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation act:
Pub. L. 110–161, div. G, title IV, Dec. 26, 2007, 121 Stat. 2200.

§12602. Individuals eligible to receive an educational award from the Trust

(a) Eligible individuals

An individual shall receive a national service educational award, summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award from the National Service Trust if the organization responsible for the individual's supervision in a national service program certifies that the individual—

(1) met the applicable eligibility requirements for the approved national service position, approved silver scholar position, or approved summer of service position, as appropriate, in which the individual served;

(2)(A) for a full-time or part-time national service educational award, successfully completed the required term of service described in subsection (b)(1) in the approved national service position;

(B) for a partial educational award in accordance with section 12593(c) of this title—

(i) satisfactorily performed prior to being granted a release for compelling personal circumstances under such section; and

(ii) completed at least 15 percent of the required term of service described in subsection (b) for the approved national service position;

(C) for a summer of service educational award, successfully completed the required term of service described in subsection (b)(2) in an approved summer of service position, as certified through a process determined by the Corporation through regulations consistent with section 12592(f) of this title; or

(D) for a silver scholar educational award, successfully completed the required term of service described in subsection (b)(3) in an approved silver scholar position, as certified through a process determined by the Corporation through regulations consistent with section 12592(f) of this title; and

(3) is a citizen or national of the United States or lawful permanent resident alien of the United States.

(b) Term of service

(1) Approved national service position

The term of service for an approved national service position shall not be less than the full- or part-time term of service specified in section 12593(b) of this title.

(2) Approved summer of service position

The term of service for an approved summer of service position shall not be less than 100 hours of service during the summer months.

(3) Approved silver scholar position

The term of service for an approved silver scholar position shall be not less than 350 hours during a 1-year period.

(c) Limitation on receipt of national service educational awards

An individual may not receive, through national service educational awards and silver scholar educational awards, more than an amount equal to the aggregate value of 2 such awards for full-time service. The value of summer of service educational awards that an individual receives shall have no effect on the aggregate value of the national service educational awards the individual may receive.

(d) Time for use of educational award

(1) In general

Subject to paragraph (2), an individual eligible to receive a national service educational award or a silver scholar educational award under this section may not use such award after the end of the 7-year period beginning on the date the individual completes the term of service in an approved national service position or an approved silver scholar position, as applicable, that is the basis of the award. Subject to paragraph (2), an individual eligible to receive a summer of service

educational award under this section may not use such award after the end of the 10-year period beginning on the date the individual completes the term of service in an approved summer of service position that is the basis of the award.

(2) Exception

The Corporation may extend the period within which an individual may use a national service educational award, summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award if the Corporation determines that the individual—

(A) was unavoidably prevented from using the national service educational award, summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award during the original 7-year period, or 10-year period, as appropriate; or

(B) performed another term of service in an approved national service position, approved summer of service position, or approved silver scholar position during that period.

(3) Term for transferred educational awards

For purposes of applying paragraphs (1) and (2)(A) to an individual who is eligible to receive an educational award as a designated individual (as defined in section 12604(f)(8) of this title), references to a seven-year period shall be considered to be references to a 10-year period that begins on the date the individual who transferred the educational award to the designated individual completed the term of service in the approved national service position or approved silver scholar position that is the basis of the award.

(e) Suspension of eligibility for drug-related offenses

(1) In general

An individual who, after qualifying under this section or under section 12563(c)(8) of this title as an eligible individual, has been convicted under any Federal or State law of the possession or sale of a controlled substance shall not be eligible to receive a national service educational award, a summer of service educational award, or a silver scholar educational award during the period beginning on the date of such conviction and ending after the interval specified in the following table:

If convicted of:	
The possession of a controlled substance:	Ineligibility period is:
1st conviction	1 year
2nd conviction	2 years
3rd conviction	indefinite
The sale of a controlled substance:	
1st conviction	2 years
2nd conviction	indefinite

(2) Rehabilitation

An individual whose eligibility has been suspended under paragraph (1) shall resume eligibility before the end of the period determined under such paragraph if the individual satisfactorily completes a drug rehabilitation program that complies with such criteria as the Corporation shall prescribe for purposes of this paragraph.

(3) First convictions

An individual whose eligibility has been suspended under paragraph (1) and is convicted of a first offense may resume eligibility before the end of the period determined under such paragraph if the individual demonstrates that he or she has enrolled or been accepted for enrollment in a drug rehabilitation program described in paragraph (2).

(4) "Controlled substance" defined

As used in this subsection, the term "controlled substance" has the meaning given in section 802(6) of title 21.

(5) Effective date

This subsection shall be effective upon publication by the Corporation in the Federal Register of criteria prescribed under paragraph (2).

(f) Authority to establish demonstration programs

The Corporation may establish by regulation demonstration programs for the creation and evaluation of innovative volunteer and community service programs.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §146, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §102(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 818; amended Pub. L. 103–304, §3(b)(4), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1567; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1402, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1512.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12602, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §157, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3156; Pub. L. 102–10, §7, Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 31, related to grant applications, awards, and uses, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

A prior section 146 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12576 of this title prior to the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [former part D of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, §102(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13, §1402(1), substituted section catchline for former section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1402(2)(A), inserted ", summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award" after "national service educational award" and substituted "if the organization responsible for the individual's supervision in a national service program certifies that the individual" for "if the individual" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(1), (2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1402(2)(B), added pars. (1) and (2) and struck out former pars. (1) and (2), which read as follows:

"(1) successfully completes the required term of service described in subsection (b) of this section in an approved national service position;

"(2) was 17 years of age or older at the time the individual began serving in the approved national service position or was an out-of-school youth serving in an approved national service position with a youth corps program described in section 12572(a)(2) of this title or a program described in section 12572(a)(9) of this title;".

Subsec. (a)(3), (4). Pub. L. 111–13, §1402(2)(B), (C), redesignated par. (4) as (3) and struck out former par. (3), which read as follows: "at the time the individual uses the national service educational award—

"(A) has received a high school diploma, or the equivalent of such diploma;

"(B) is enrolled at an institution of higher education on the basis of meeting the standard described in paragraph (1) or (2) of subsection (a) of section 1091 of title 20 and meets the requirements of subsection (a) of such section; or

"(C) has received a waiver described in section 12591(c) of this title; and".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1402(3), designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted par. (1) heading, and added pars. (2) and (3).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–13, §1402(4), added subsec. (c) and struck out former subsec. (c). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Although an individual may serve more than 2 terms of service described in subsection (b) of this section in an approved national service position, the individual shall receive a national service educational award from the National Service Trust only on the basis of the first and second of such terms of service."

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1402(5)(A)(i), substituted "In general" for "Seven-year requirement" in heading.

Pub. L. 111–13, §1402(5)(A)(ii)–(v), substituted "Subject to paragraph (2), an" for "An" and inserted "or a silver scholar educational award" after "national service educational award", "or an approved silver scholar position, as applicable," after "approved national service position", and "Subject to paragraph (2), an

individual eligible to receive a summer of service educational award under this section may not use such award after the end of the 10-year period beginning on the date the individual completes the term of service in an approved summer of service position that is the basis of the award." at end.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1402(5)(B)(i), inserted ", summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award" after "national service educational award" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1402(5)(B)(i), (ii), inserted ", summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award" after "national service educational award" and ", or 10-year period, as appropriate" after "7-year period".

Subsec. (d)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1402(5)(B)(iii), inserted ", approved summer of service position, or approved silver scholar position" after "approved national service position".

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1402(5)(C), added par. (3).

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1402(6), inserted "or under section 12563(c)(8) of this title" after "qualifying under this section" and ", a summer of service educational award, or a silver scholar educational award" after "to receive a national service educational award".

1994—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 103–304 struck out second par. (3) which read as follows: "has received a high school diploma, or the equivalent of such diploma, at the time the individual uses the national service educational award, unless this requirement has been waived based on an individual education assessment conducted by the program; and".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

STUDY TO EVALUATE THE EFFECTIVENESS OF AGENCY COORDINATION

Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1711, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1550, provided that:

"(a) STUDY.—In order to reduce administrative burdens and lower costs for national service programs carried out under the national service laws, the Corporation shall conduct a study to determine the feasibility and effectiveness of implementing a data matching system under which the statements of an individual declaring that such individual is in compliance with the requirements of section 146(a)(3) of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12602(a)(3)) shall be verified by the Corporation by comparing information provided by the individual with information relevant to such a declaration in the possession of other Federal agencies. Such study shall—

"(1) review the feasibility of—

"(A) expanding, and participating in, the data matching conducted by the Department of Education with the Social Security Administration and the Department of Homeland Security, pursuant to section 484(g) of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1091(g)); or

"(B) establishing a comparable system of data matching with the Social Security Administration and the Department of Homeland Security; and

"(2) identify—

"(A) the costs, for both the Corporation and the other Federal agencies identified in paragraph (1), associated with expanding or establishing such a system of data matching;

"(B) the benefits or detriments of such an expanded or comparable system both for the Corporation and for the other Federal agencies so identified;

"(C) strategies for ensuring the privacy and security of participant information that is shared between Federal agencies and organizations receiving assistance under the national service laws;

"(D) the information that needs to be shared in order to fulfill the eligibility requirements of section 146(a)(3) of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12602(a)(3));

"(E) an alternative system through which an individual's compliance with section 146(a)(3) of such Act may be verified, should such an expanded or comparable system fail to verify the individual's declaration of compliance; and

"(F) recommendations for implementation of such an expanded or comparable system.

"(b) CONSULTATION.—The Corporation shall carry out the study in consultation with the Secretary of Education, the Commissioner of the Social Security Administration, the Secretary of Homeland Security, and other Federal agencies, entities, and individuals that the Corporation considers appropriate.

"(c) REPORT.—Not later than 9 months after the effective date of this Act [for general effective date of Pub. L. 111–13 as Oct. 1, 2009, see Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title], the Corporation shall submit to the authorizing committees a report on the results of the study required by subsection (a) and a plan for implementation of a pilot data matching program using promising strategies and approaches identified in such study, if the Corporation determines such program to be feasible.

"(d) PILOT PROGRAM.—From amounts made available to carry out this section, the Corporation may develop and carry out a pilot data matching program based on the report submitted under subsection (c).

"(e) DEFINITIONS.—In this section, the terms 'Corporation', 'authorizing committees', and 'national service laws' have the meanings given the terms in section 101 of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12511)."

§12602a. Certifications of successful completion of terms of service

(a) Certifications

In making any authorized disbursement from the National Service Trust in regard to an eligible individual (including disbursement for a designated individual, as defined in section 12604(f)(8) of this title, due to the service of an eligible individual) under section 12602 of this title who served in an approved national service position, an approved summer of service position, or an approved silver scholar position, the Corporation shall rely on a certification. The certification shall be made by the entity that selected the individual for and supervised the individual in the approved national service position in which such individual successfully completed a required term of service, in a national service program.

(b) Effect of erroneous certifications

If the Corporation determines that the certification under subsection (a) is erroneous or incorrect, the Corporation shall assess against the national service program a charge for the amount of any associated payment or potential payment from the National Service Trust. In assessing the amount of the charge, the Corporation shall consider the full facts and circumstances surrounding the erroneous or incorrect certification.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §146A, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1403, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1514.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12603. Determination of the amount of the educational award

(a) Amount for full-time national service

Except as provided in subsection (c), an individual described in section 12602(a) of this title who successfully completes a required term of full-time national service in an approved national service position shall receive a national service educational award having a value equal to the maximum amount of a Federal Pell Grant under section 1070a of title 20 that a student eligible for such Grant may receive in the aggregate (without regard to whether the funds are provided through discretionary or mandatory appropriations), for the award year for which the national service position is approved by the Corporation.

(b) Amount for part-time national service

Except as provided in subsection (c), an individual described in section 12602(a) of this title who successfully completes a required term of part-time national service in an approved national service position shall receive a national service educational award having a value equal to 50 percent of value of the national service educational award determined under subsection (a).

(c) Award for partial completion of service

If an individual serving in an approved national service position is released in accordance with section 12593(c)(1)(A) of this title from completing the full-time or part-time term of service agreed

to by the individual, the Corporation may provide the individual with that portion of the national service educational award approved for the individual that corresponds to the quantity of the term of service actually completed by the individual.

(d) Amount for summer of service

An individual described in section 12602(a) of this title who successfully completes a required summer of service term shall receive a summer of service educational award having a value, for each of not more than 2 of such terms of service, equal to $500 (or, at the discretion of the Chief Executive Officer, equal to $750 in the case of a participant who is economically disadvantaged).

(e) Amount for silver scholars

An individual described in section 12602(a) of this title who successfully completes a required silver scholar term shall receive a silver scholar educational award having a value of $1,000.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §147, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §102(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 819; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1404, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1515.)

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13, §1404(1), substituted section catchline for former section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1404(2), amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Except as provided in subsection (c) of this section, an individual described in section 12602(a) of this title who successfully completes a required term of full-time national service in an approved national service position shall receive a national service educational award having a value, for each of not more than 2 of such terms of service, equal to 90 percent of—

"(1) one-half of an amount equal to the aggregate basic educational assistance allowance provided in section 3015(b)(1) of title 38 (as in effect on July 28, 1993), for the period referred to in section 3013(a)(1) of such title (as in effect on July 28, 1993), for a member of the Armed Forces who is entitled to such an allowance under section 3011 of such title and whose initial obligated period of active duty is 2 years; less

"(2) one-half of the aggregate basic contribution required to be made by the member in section 3011(b) of such title (as in effect on July 28, 1993)."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1404(3), struck out ", for each of not more than 2 of such terms of service," after "having a value".

Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 111–13, §1404(4), added subsecs. (d) and (e).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 147 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12577 of this title prior to the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [former part D of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, §102(a).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

§12604. Disbursement of educational awards

(a) In general

Amounts in the Trust shall be available—

(1) to repay student loans in accordance with subsection (b);

(2) to pay all or part of the cost of attendance or other educational expenses at an institution of higher education in accordance with subsection (c);

(3) to pay expenses incurred in participating in an approved school-to-work program in accordance with subsection (d);

(4) to pay expenses incurred in enrolling in an educational institution or training establishment that is approved under chapter 36 of title 38, or other applicable provisions of law, for offering programs of education, apprenticeship, or on-job training for which educational assistance may be provided by the Secretary of Veterans Affairs; and

(5) to pay interest expenses in accordance with regulations prescribed pursuant to subsection

(e).

(b) Use of educational award to repay outstanding student loans

(1) Application by eligible individuals

An eligible individual under section 12602 of this title who desires to apply the national service educational award of the individual, an eligible individual under section 12602(a) of this title who served in a summer of service program and desires to apply that individual's summer of service educational award, or an eligible individual under section 12602(a) of this title who served in a silver scholar program and desires to apply that individual's silver scholar educational award, to the repayment of qualified student loans shall submit, in a manner prescribed by the Corporation, an application to the Corporation that—

(A) identifies, or permits the Corporation to identify readily, the holder or holders of such loans;

(B) indicates, or permits the Corporation to determine readily, the amounts of principal and interest outstanding on the loans;

(C) specifies, if the outstanding balance is greater than the amount disbursed under paragraph (2), which of the loans the individual prefers to be paid by the Corporation; and

(D) contains or is accompanied by such other information as the Corporation may require.

(2) Disbursement of repayments

Upon receipt of an application from an eligible individual of an application that complies with paragraph (1), the Corporation shall, as promptly as practicable consistent with paragraph (5), disburse the amount of the national service educational award, the summer of service educational award, or the silver scholar educational award, as applicable, that the eligible individual has earned. Such disbursement shall be made by check or other means that is payable to the holder of the loan and requires the endorsement or other certification by the eligible individual.

(3) Application of disbursed amounts

If the amount disbursed under paragraph (2) is less than the principal and accrued interest on any qualified student loan, such amount shall be applied according to the specified priorities of the individual.

(4) Reports by holders

Any holder receiving a loan payment pursuant to this subsection shall submit to the Corporation such information as the Corporation may require to verify that such payment was applied in accordance with this subsection and any regulations prescribed to carry out this subsection.

(5) Notification of individual

The Corporation upon disbursing the national service educational award, the summer of service educational award, or the silver scholar educational award, as applicable, shall notify the individual of the amount paid for each outstanding loan and the date of payment.

(6) Authority to aggregate payments

The Corporation may, by regulation, provide for the aggregation of payments to holders under this subsection.

(7) "Qualified student loans" defined

As used in this subsection, the term "qualified student loans" means—

(A) any loan made, insured, or guaranteed pursuant to title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1070 et seq.), other than a loan to a parent of a student pursuant to section 428B of such Act (20 U.S.C. 1078–2);

(B) any loan made pursuant to title VII or VIII of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 292 et seq., 296 et seq.]; and

(C) any loan (other than a loan described in subparagraph (A) or (B)) determined by an institution of higher education to be necessary to cover a student's educational expenses and made, insured, or guaranteed by—

(i) an eligible lender, as defined in section 435 of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1085);

(ii) the direct student loan program under part D of title IV of such Act (20 U.S.C. 1087a et seq.);

(iii) a State agency; or

(iv) a lender otherwise determined by the Corporation to be eligible to receive disbursements from the National Service Trust.

(8) "Holder" defined

As used in this subsection, the term "holder" with respect to any eligible loan means the original lender or, if the loan is subsequently sold, transferred, or assigned to some other person, and such other person acquires a legally enforceable right to receive payments from the borrower, such other person.

(c) Use of educational awards to pay current educational expenses

(1) Application by eligible individual

An eligible individual under section 12602 of this title who desires to apply the individual's national service educational award, an eligible individual under section 12602(a) of this title who desires to apply the individual's summer of service educational award, or an eligible individual under section 12602(a) of this title who served in a silver scholar program and desires to apply that individual's silver scholar educational award, to the payment of current full-time or part-time educational expenses shall, on a form prescribed by the Corporation, submit an application to the institution of higher education in which the student will be enrolled that contains such information as the Corporation may require to verify the individual's eligibility.

(2) Submission of requests for payment by institutions

An institution of higher education that receives one or more applications that comply with paragraph (1) shall submit to the Corporation a statement, in a manner prescribed by the Corporation, that—

(A) identifies each eligible individual filing an application under paragraph (1) for a disbursement of the individual's national service educational award, summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award, as applicable, under this subsection;

(B) specifies the amounts for which such eligible individuals are, consistent with paragraph (6), qualified for disbursement under this subsection;

(C) certifies that—

(i) the institution of higher education has in effect a program participation agreement under section 487 of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1094);

(ii) the institution's eligibility to participate in any of the programs under title IV of such Act (20 U.S.C. 1070 et seq.) has not been limited, suspended, or terminated; and

(iii) individuals using national service educational awards, summer of service educational awards, or silver scholar educational awards, as applicable, received under this division to pay for educational costs do not comprise more than 15 percent of the total student population of the institution; and

(D) contains such provisions concerning financial compliance as the Corporation may require.

(3) Disbursement of payments

Upon receipt of a statement from an institution of higher education that complies with paragraph (2), the Corporation shall, subject to paragraph (4), disburse the total amount of the national service educational awards [1] summer of service educational awards, or silver scholar educational awards for which eligible individuals who have submitted applications to that

institution under paragraph (1) are scheduled to receive. Such disbursement shall be made by check or other means that is payable to the institution and requires the endorsement or other certification by the eligible individual.

(4) Multiple disbursements required

The total amount required to be disbursed to an institution of higher education under paragraph (3) for any period of enrollment shall be disbursed by the Corporation in 2 or more installments, none of which exceeds ½ of such total amount. The interval between the first and second such installment shall not be less than ½ of such period of enrollment, except as necessary to permit the second installment to be paid at the beginning of the second semester, quarter, or similar division of such period of enrollment.

(5) Refund rules

The Corporation shall, by regulation, provide for the refund to the Corporation (and the crediting to the national service educational award, summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award, as applicable, of an eligible individual) of amounts disbursed to institutions for the benefit of eligible individuals who withdraw or otherwise fail to complete the period of enrollment for which the assistance was provided. Such regulations shall be consistent with the fair and equitable refund policies required of institutions pursuant to section 484B of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1091b). Amounts refunded to the Trust pursuant to this paragraph may be used by the Corporation to fund additional approved national service positions under division C, additional approved summer of service positions, and additional approved silver scholar positions.

(6) Maximum award

The portion of an eligible individual's total available national service educational award, summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award that may be disbursed under this subsection for any period of enrollment shall not exceed the difference between—

(A) the eligible individual's cost of attendance and other educational expenses for such period of enrollment, determined in accordance with section 472 of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1087ll); and

(B) the student's estimated financial assistance for such period under part A of title IV of such Act (20 U.S.C. 1070 et seq.).

(d) Use of educational award to participate in approved school-to-work programs

The Corporation shall by regulation provide for the payment of national service educational awards, summer of service educational awards, and silver scholar educational awards to permit eligible individuals to participate in school-to-work programs approved by the Secretaries of Labor and Education.

(e) Interest payments during forbearance on loan repayment

The Corporation shall provide by regulation for the payment on behalf of an eligible individual of interest that accrues during a period for which such individual has obtained forbearance in the repayment of a qualified student loan (as defined in subsection (b)(7)), if the eligible individual successfully completes the individual's required term of service (as determined under section 12602(b) of this title). Such regulations shall be prescribed after consultation with the Secretary of Education.

(f) Transfer of educational awards

(1) In general

An individual who is eligible to receive a national service educational award or silver scholar educational award due to service in a program described in paragraph (2) may elect to receive the award (in the amount described in the corresponding provision of section 12603 of this title) and transfer the award to a designated individual. Subsections (b), (c), and (d) shall apply to the designated individual in lieu of the individual who is eligible to receive the national service

educational award or silver scholar educational award, except that amounts refunded to the account under subsection (c)(5) on behalf of a designated individual may be used by the Corporation to fund additional placements in the national service program in which the eligible individual who transferred the national service educational award or silver scholar educational award participated for such award.

(2) Conditions for transfer

An educational award may be transferred under this subsection if—

(A)(i) the award is a national service educational award for service in a national service program that receives a grant under division C; and

(ii) before beginning the term of service involved, the eligible individual is age 55 or older; or

(B) the award is a silver scholarship educational award under section 12653c(a) of this title.

(3) Modification or revocation

(A) In general

An individual transferring an educational award under this subsection may, on any date on which a portion of the educational award remains unused, modify or revoke the transfer of the educational award with respect to that portion.

(B) Notice

A modification or revocation of the transfer of an educational award under this paragraph shall be made by the submission of written notice to the Corporation.

(4) Prohibition on treatment of transferred award as marital property

An educational award transferred under this subsection may not be treated as marital property, or the asset of a marital estate, subject to division in a divorce or other civil proceeding.

(5) Death of transferor

The death of an individual transferring an educational award under this subsection shall not affect the use of the educational award by the child, foster child, or grandchild to whom the educational award is transferred if such educational award is transferred prior to the death of the individual.

(6) Procedures to prevent waste, fraud, or abuse

The Corporation shall establish requirements to prevent waste, fraud, or abuse in connection with the transfer of an educational award and to protect the integrity of the educational award under this subsection.

(7) Technical assistance

The Corporation may, as appropriate, provide technical assistance, to individuals and eligible entities carrying out national service programs, concerning carrying out this subsection.

(8) Definition of a designated individual

In this subsection, the term "designated individual" is an individual—

(A) whom an individual who is eligible to receive a national service educational award or silver scholar educational award due to service in a program described in paragraph (2) designates to receive the educational award;

(B) who meets the eligibility requirements of paragraphs (3) and (4) of section 12602(a) of this title; and

(C) who is a child, foster child, or grandchild of the individual described in subparagraph (A).

(g) Exception

With the approval of the Chief Executive Officer, an approved national service program funded under section 12571 of this title, may offer participants the option of waiving their right to receive a national service educational award, summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award, as appropriate, in order to receive an alternative post-service benefit funded by the program entirely with non-Federal funds.

(h) "Institution of higher education" defined

Notwithstanding section 12511 of this title, for purposes of this section the term "institution of higher education" has the meaning provided by section 102 of the Higher Education Act of 1965 [20 U.S.C. 1002].

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §148, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §102(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 820; amended Pub. L. 105–244, title I, §102(c)(2), Oct. 7, 1998, 112 Stat. 1622; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1405, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1515.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Higher Education Act of 1965, referred to in subsecs. (b)(7)(A), (C)(ii) and (c)(2)(C)(ii), (6)(B), is Pub. L. 89–329, Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1219. Title IV of the Act is classified generally to subchapter IV (§1070 et seq.) of chapter 28 of Title 20, Education. Parts A and D of title IV of the Act are classified generally to parts A (§1070 et seq.) and D (§1087a et seq.), respectively, of subchapter IV of chapter 28 of Title 20. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 20 and Tables.

The Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(7)(B), is act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682. Titles VII and VIII of the Act are classified generally to subchapters V (§292 et seq.) and VI (§296 et seq.), respectively, of chapter 6A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 148 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12578 of this title prior to the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [former part D of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, §102(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(1), substituted section catchline for former section catchline.

Subsec. (a)(2) to (5). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(2), substituted "cost of attendance or other educational expenses" for "cost of attendance" in par. (2), added par. (4), and redesignated former par. (4) as (5).

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(3)(A), inserted ", an eligible individual under section 12602(a) of this title who served in a summer of service program and desires to apply that individual's summer of service educational award, or an eligible individual under section 12602(a) of this title who served in a silver scholar program and desires to apply that individual's silver scholar educational award," after "the national service educational award of the individual" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(3)(B), inserted ", the summer of service educational award, or the silver scholar educational award, as applicable," after "the national service educational award".

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(3)(C), inserted ", the summer of service educational award, or the silver scholar educational award, as applicable" after "the national service educational award".

Subsec. (b)(7)(C). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(3)(D), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(4)(A), inserted ", an eligible individual under section 12602(a) of this title who desires to apply the individual's summer of service educational award, or an eligible individual under section 12602(a) of this title who served in a silver scholar program and desires to apply that individual's silver scholar educational award," after "national service educational award".

Subsec. (c)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(4)(B)(i), inserted ", summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award, as applicable," after "national service educational award".

Subsec. (c)(2)(C)(iii). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(4)(B)(ii), inserted ", summer of service educational awards, or silver scholar educational awards, as applicable," after "national service educational awards".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(4)(C), inserted "summer of service educational awards, or silver scholar educational awards" after "national service educational awards".

Subsec. (c)(5). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(4)(D), inserted ", summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award, as applicable," after "national service educational award" and ", additional approved summer of service positions, and additional approved silver scholar positions" before period at end.

Subsec. (c)(6). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(4)(E)(i), inserted ", summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award" after "national service educational award" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(6)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(4)(E)(ii), inserted "and other educational expenses" after "cost of attendance".

Subsec. (c)(6)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(4)(E)(iii), added subpar. (B) and struck out former subpar. (B)

which read as follows: "the sum of—

"(i) the student's estimated financial assistance for such period under part A of title IV of such Act (20 U.S.C. 1070 et seq.); and

"(ii) the student's veterans' education benefits, determined in accordance with section 480(c) of such Act (20 U.S.C. 1087vv(c))."

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(5), inserted ", summer of service educational awards, and silver scholar educational awards" after "national service educational awards".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(6), substituted "subsection (b)(7)" for "subsection (b)(6)".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(9), added subsec. (f). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (g).

Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(7), substituted "Chief Executive Officer" for "Director" and inserted ", summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award, as appropriate," after "national service educational award".

Subsecs. (g), (h). Pub. L. 111–13, §1405(8), redesignated subsecs. (f) and (g) as (g) and (h), respectively.

1998—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 105–244 substituted "section 102 of the Higher Education Act of 1965" for "section 481(a) of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1088(a))".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 105–244 effective Oct. 1, 1998, except as otherwise provided in Pub. L. 105–244, see section 3 of Pub. L. 105–244, set out as a note under section 1001 of Title 20, Education.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.*

§12605. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1406(b), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1521

Section, Pub. L. 108–45, §2, July 3, 2003, 117 Stat. 844, related to the process of approval of national service positions.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12606. Approval process for approved positions

(a) Timing and recording requirements

(1) In general

Notwithstanding divisions C, D, and H, and any other provision of law, in approving a position as an approved national service position, an approved summer of service position, or an approved silver scholar position, the Corporation—

(A) shall approve the position at the time the Corporation—

(i) enters into an enforceable agreement with an individual participant to serve in a program carried out under division E of this subchapter, section 12653b or 12653c(a) of this title, or under title I of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq.), a summer of service program described in section 12563(c)(8) of this title, or a silver scholarship program described in section 12653c(a) of this title; or

(ii) except as provided in clause (i), awards a grant to (or enters into a contract or cooperative agreement with) an entity to carry out a program for which such a position is approved under section 12573 of this title; and

(B) shall record as an obligation an estimate of the net present value of the national service educational award, summer of service educational award, or silver scholar educational award

associated with the position, based on a formula that takes into consideration historical rates of enrollment in such a program, and of earning and using national service educational awards, summer of service educational awards, or silver scholar educational awards, as appropriate, for such a program and remain available.

(2) Formula

In determining the formula described in paragraph (1)(B), the Corporation shall consult with the Director of the Congressional Budget Office.

(3) Certification report

The Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation shall annually prepare and submit to the authorizing committees a report that contains a certification that the Corporation is in compliance with the requirements of paragraph (1).

(4) Approval

The requirements of this subsection shall apply to each approved national service position, approved summer of service position, or approved silver scholarship position that the Corporation approves—

(A) during fiscal year 2010; and

(B) during any subsequent fiscal year.

(b) Reserve account

(1) Establishment and contents

(A) Establishment

Notwithstanding divisions C, D, and H, and any other provision of law, within the National Service Trust established under section 12601 of this title, the Corporation shall establish a reserve account.

(B) Contents

To ensure the availability of adequate funds to support the awards of approved national service positions, approved summer of service positions, and approved silver scholar positions, for each fiscal year, the Corporation shall place in the account—

(i) during fiscal year 2010, a portion of the funds that were appropriated for fiscal year 2010 or a previous fiscal year under section 12681 of this title or section 501 of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 5081), were made available to carry out division C, D, or E of this subchapter, section 12653b or 12653c(a) of this title, subtitle A [1] of title I of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, or summer of service programs described in section 12563(c)(8) of this title, and remain available; and

(ii) during fiscal year 2011 or a subsequent fiscal year, a portion of the funds that were appropriated for that fiscal year under section 12681 of this title or section 501 of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 5081), were made available to carry out division C, D, or E of this subchapter, section 12653b or 12653c(a) of this title, subtitle A [1] of title I of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, or summer of service programs described in section 12563(c)(8) of this title, and remain available.

(2) Obligation

The Corporation shall not obligate the funds in the reserve account until the Corporation—

(A) determines that the funds will not be needed for the payment of national service educational awards associated with previously approved national service positions, summer of service educational awards associated with previously approved summer of service positions, and silver scholar educational awards associated with previously approved silver scholar positions; or

(B) obligates the funds for the payment of national service educational awards for such previously approved national service positions, summer of service educational awards for such

previously approved summer of service positions, or silver scholar educational awards for such previously approved silver scholar positions, as applicable.

(c) Audits

The accounts of the Corporation relating to the appropriated funds for approved national service positions, approved summer of service positions, and approved silver scholar positions, and the records demonstrating the manner in which the Corporation has recorded estimates described in subsection (a)(1)(B) as obligations, shall be audited annually by independent certified public accountants or independent licensed public accountants certified or licensed by a regulatory authority of a State or other political subdivision of the United States in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. A report containing the results of each such independent audit shall be included in the annual report required by subsection (a)(3).

(d) Availability of amounts

Except as provided in subsection (b), all amounts included in the National Service Trust under paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of section 12601(a) of this title shall be available for payments of national service educational awards, summer of service educational awards, or silver scholar educational awards under section 12604 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §149, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1406(a), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1519.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1)(A)(i) and (b)(1)(B)(i), (ii), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§4951 et seq.) of chapter 66 of this title. Reference to subtitle A of title I of the Act probably means part A of title I of the Act, which is classified generally to part A (§4951 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 149 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12579 of this title prior to the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 (former part D of this subchapter) by Pub. L. 103–82, §102(a).

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

Division E—National Civilian Community Corps

CODIFICATION

Subtitle E of title I of Pub. L. 101–610, comprising this division, was formerly classified to part H (§12653 et seq.) of this subchapter prior to amendment by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

This division is comprised of subtitle E, §§151–165, of title I of Pub. L. 101–610. A prior part E (§12591 et seq.), comprised of subtitle E, §§155–167, of title I of Pub. L. 101–610, related to innovative and demonstration programs and projects, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1517, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1529, inserted division heading and struck out former heading.

§12611. Purpose

It is the purpose of this division to authorize the operation of, and support for, residential and other service programs that combine the best practices of civilian service with the best aspects of military service, including leadership and team building, to meet national and community needs. The needs to be met under such programs include those needs related to—

(1) natural and other disasters;
(2) infrastructure improvement;
(3) environmental stewardship and conservation;
(4) energy conservation; and
(5) urban and rural development.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §151, formerly §195, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2522; renumbered §151, Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1501, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1521.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12611, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §160, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3157, authorized Commission to make grants to Directors of Peace Corps and ACTION to carry out training and educational benefits demonstration programs, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section provided that the purpose of this division was to authorize the establishment of a Civilian Community Corps to provide a basis for certain determinations.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

§12612. Establishment of National Civilian Community Corps Program

(a) In general

The Corporation may establish the National Civilian Community Corps Program to carry out the purpose of this division.

(b) Program components

Under the National Civilian Community Corps Program authorized by subsection (a), the members of a National Civilian Community Corps shall receive training and perform service in at least one of the following two program components:

(1) A national service program.
(2) A summer national service program.

(c) Residential components

Both programs referred to in subsection (b) may include a residential component.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §152, formerly §195A, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2523; renumbered §152 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), title IV, §402(b)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 919; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1502, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1521.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653a of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82,

§104(b).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12612, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §161, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3157; Pub. L. 102–384, §7(a), Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1456, related to eligibility and selection procedures, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13, §1502(1), amended section catchline generally.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1502(2), substituted "National Civilian Community Corps Program" for "Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1502(3), in introductory provisions, substituted "National Civilian Community Corps Program" for "Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program" and "a National Civilian Community Corps" for "a Civilian Community Corps".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–13, §1502(4), added subsec. (c) and struck out former subsec. (c). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Both program components are residential programs. The members of the Corps in each program shall reside with other members of the Corps in Corps housing during the periods of the members' agreed service."

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(2), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission on National and Community Service".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 402(b)(2) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 406(a) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 5061 of this title.

REPORT AND STUDY REQUIREMENTS

Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(b), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2534, as amended by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(e)(1)(B), (C), title IV, §402(a)(1), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 846, 918, related to a progress report to be submitted to the appropriate committees of Congress assessing the activities undertaken in establishing and administering Civilian Community Corps camps and analyzing the level of coordination of Corps activities with activities of other departments or agencies of the Federal Government and a report to be submitted to the appropriate committees of Congress concerning the desirability and feasibility of establishing the Civilian Community Corps as an independent agency of the Federal Government.

COORDINATION OF PROGRAMS

Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1093, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2534, as amended by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(e)(1)(B), title IV, §402(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 846, 918, provided that:

"(a) COORDINATED ADMINISTRATION.—To the maximum extent practicable, the Chief of the National Guard Bureau, the Board of Directors and Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation for National and Community Service, and the Director of the Civilian Community Corps shall coordinate the National Guard Youth Opportunities Program established pursuant to section 1091 [of Pub. L. 102–484, 32 U.S.C. 501 note] and the Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program established pursuant to the authorization contained in section 152 of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 [42 U.S.C. 12612] (as added by section 1092(a)).

"(b) OBJECTIVES.—The officials referred to in subsection (a) shall ensure that—

"(1) the programs referred to in subsection (a) are conducted in such a manner in relationship to each other that the public benefit of those programs is maximized;

"(2) to the maximum extent appropriate to meet the needs of program participants, persons who complete participation in the National Guard Youth Opportunities Program and are eligible and apply to participate in the Civilian Community Corps under the Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program are accepted for participation in that Program; and

"(3) the programs referred to in subsection (a) are conducted simultaneously in competition with each other in the same immediate area of the United States only when the population of eligible participants in that area is sufficient to justify the simultaneous conduct of such programs in that area."

§12613. National service program

(a) In general

Under the national service program component of the National Civilian Community Corps Program authorized by section 12612(a) of this title, eligible young people shall work in teams on National Civilian Community Corps projects.

(b) Eligible participants

A person shall be eligible for selection for the national service program if the person—

(1) is, or will be, at least 18 years of age on or before December 31 of the calendar year in which the individual enrolls in the program, but is not more than 24 years of age as of the date the individual begins participating in the program; and

(2) is a high school graduate or has not received a high school diploma or its equivalent.

(c) Diverse backgrounds of participants

In selecting persons for the national service program, the Director shall endeavor to ensure that participants are from economically, geographically, and ethnically diverse backgrounds. The Director shall take appropriate steps, including through outreach and recruitment activities, to increase the percentage of participants in the program who are disadvantaged youth to 50 percent of all participants by year 2012. The Director shall report to the authorizing committees biennially on such steps, any challenges faced, and the annual participation rates of disadvantaged youth in the program.

(d) Period of participation

Persons desiring to participate in the national service program shall enter into an agreement with the Director to participate in the Corps for a period of not less than nine months and not more than one year, as specified by the Director, and may renew the agreement for not more than one additional such period.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §153, formerly §195B, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2523; renumbered §153 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), (e)(2)(A), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 846; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1503, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1521.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653b of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12613, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §162, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3158, related to training program in skills to be employed in Peace Corps or VISTA, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1503(1), substituted "National Civilian Community Corps Program" for "Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program" and "on National Civilian Community Corps" for "on Civilian Community Corps".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1503(2), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "is at least 16 and not more than 24 years of age; and".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–13, §1503(3), substituted "backgrounds" for "backrounds" in heading and inserted at end "The Director shall take appropriate steps, including through outreach and recruitment activities, to increase the percentage of participants in the program who are disadvantaged youth to 50 percent of all participants by year 2012. The Director shall report to the authorizing committees biennially on such steps, any challenges faced, and the annual participation rates of disadvantaged youth in the program."

Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 111–13, §1503(4), (5), redesignated subsec. (e) as (d) and struck out former subsec. (d). Text of former subsec. (d) read as follows: "To the extent practicable, at least 50 percent of the participants in the national service program shall be economically disadvantaged youths."

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(A), substituted "section 12612(a)" for "section 12653a(a)".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12614. Summer national service program

(a) In general

Under the summer national service program of the National Civilian Community Corps Program authorized by section 12612(a) of this title, a diverse group of youth aged 14 through 18 years who are from urban or rural areas shall work in teams on National Civilian Community Corps projects.

(b) Necessary participants

To the extent practicable, at least 50 percent of the participants in the summer national service program shall be from economically and ethnically diverse backgrounds, including youth who are in foster care.

(c) Seasonal program

The training and service of Corps members under the summer national service program in each year shall be conducted after April 30 and before October 1 of that year.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §154, formerly §195C, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2524; renumbered §154 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), (e)(2)(B), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 847; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1504, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1522.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653c of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12614, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §163, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3158; Pub. L. 102–384, §7(b), Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1456, related to higher education benefits for those selected for Peace Corps or VISTA demonstration programs, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1504(1), substituted "National Civilian Community Corps Program" for "Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program" and "on National Civilian Community Corps" for "on Civilian Community Corps".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1504(2), substituted "shall be from economically and ethnically diverse backgrounds, including youth who are in foster care." for "shall be economically disadvantaged youths."

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(B), substituted "section 12612(a)" for "section 12653a(a)".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12615. National Civilian Community Corps

(a) Director

Upon the establishment of the National Civilian Community Corps Program, the National Civilian Community Corps shall be under the direction of the Director appointed pursuant to section 12619(c)(1) of this title.

(b) Membership in National Civilian Community Corps

(1) Participants to be members

Persons selected to participate in the national service program or the summer national service program components of the Program shall become members of the National Civilian Community Corps.

(2) Selection of members

The Director or the Director's designee shall select individuals for membership in the Corps.

(3) Application for membership

To be selected to become a Corps member an individual shall submit an application to the Director or to any other office as the Director may designate, at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Director shall require. At a minimum, the application shall contain information about the work experience of the applicant and sufficient information to enable the Director, or the campus director of the appropriate campus, to determine whether selection of the applicant for membership in the Corps is appropriate.

(4) Team leaders

(A) In general

The Director may select individuals with prior supervisory or service experience to be team leaders within units in the National Civilian Community Corps, to perform service that includes leading and supervising teams of Corps members. Each team leader shall be selected without regard to the age limitation under section 12613(b) of this title.

(B) Rights and benefits

A team leader shall be provided the same rights and benefits applicable to other Corps members, except that the Director may increase the limitation on the amount of the living allowance under section 12618(b) of this title by not more than 10 percent for a team leader.

(c) Organization of Corps into units

(1) Units

The Corps shall be divided into permanent units. Each Corps member shall be assigned to a unit.

(2) Unit leaders

The leader of each unit shall be selected from among persons in the permanent cadre established pursuant to section 12619(c)(2) of this title. The designated leader shall accompany the unit throughout the period of agreed service of the members of the unit.

(d) Campuses

(1) Units to be assigned to campuses

The units of the Corps shall be grouped together as appropriate in campuses for operational, support, and boarding purposes. The Corps campus for a unit shall be in a facility or central location established as the operational headquarters and boarding place for the unit. Corps members may be housed in the campuses.

(2) Campus director

There shall be a campus director for each campus. The campus director is the head of the campus.

(3) Eligible site for campus

A campus shall be cost effective and may, upon the completion of a feasibility study, be located in a facility referred to in section 12622(c) of this title.

(e) Distribution of units and campuses

The Director shall ensure that the Corps units and campuses are cost effective and are distributed in urban areas and rural areas such that each Corps unit in a region can be easily deployed for disaster and emergency response to such region.

(f) Standards of conduct

(1) In general

The campus director of each campus shall establish and enforce standards of conduct to promote proper moral and disciplinary conditions in the campus.

(2) Sanctions

Under procedures prescribed by the Director, the campus director of a campus may—

(A) transfer a member of the Corps in that campus to another unit or campus if the campus director determines that the retention of the member in the member's unit or in the campus director's campus will jeopardize the enforcement of the standards or diminish the opportunities of other Corps members in that unit or campus, as the case may be; or

(B) dismiss a member of the Corps from the Corps if the campus director determines that retention of the member in the Corps will jeopardize the enforcement of the standards or diminish the opportunities of other Corps members.

(3) Appeals

Under procedures prescribed by the Director, a member of the Corps may appeal to the Director a determination of a campus director to transfer or dismiss the member. The Director shall provide for expeditious disposition of appeals under this paragraph.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §155, formerly §195D, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2524; renumbered §155 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), (e)(2)(C), title IV, §403(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 847, 920; Pub. L. 103–304, §3(b)(5)(A), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1567; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1505, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1522.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653d of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12615, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §164, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3159; Pub. L. 102–384, §4, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1455, related to evaluation reports on Peace Corps and VISTA demonstration programs, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

A prior section 155 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12591 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(1), amended section catchline generally.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(2), substituted "National Civilian Community Corps Program" for "Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program" and "the National Civilian Community Corps shall" for "the Civilian Community Corps shall".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(3)(A), amended heading generally.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(3)(B), inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(3)(C), substituted "campus director of the appropriate campus" for "superintendent of the appropriate camp".

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(3)(D), added par. (4).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(4)(A), amended heading generally.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(4)(B), amended heading generally and substituted "in campuses" for "in camps", "Corps campus" for "Corps camp", and "in the campuses" for "in the camps".

Subsec. (d)(2), (3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(4)(C), amended pars. (2) and (3) generally. Prior to amendment, pars. (2) and (3) related to camp superintendents and eligible sites for camps, respectively.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(5), amended heading generally and substituted "campuses are cost effective and are distributed" for "camps are distributed" and "rural areas such that each Corps unit in a region can be easily deployed for disaster and emergency response to such region." for "rural areas in various regions throughout the United States."

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(6)(A), substituted "campus director" for "superintendent" and, in two places, substituted "campus" for "camp".

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(6)(B)(i), substituted "campus director of a campus" for "superintendent of a camp" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (f)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(6)(B)(ii), substituted "campus to another unit or campus" for "camp to another unit or camp", "campus director" for "superintendent", "campus director's campus" for "superintendent's camp", and "that unit or campus" for "that unit or camp".

Subsec. (f)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(6)(B)(iii), substituted "campus director" for "superintendent".

Subsec. (f)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1505(6)(C), substituted "campus director" for "camp superintendent".

1994—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 103–304 substituted "camps" for "Corps" in heading.

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(b), substituted "Director" for "Director of the Civilian Community Corps".

Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(C)(i), substituted "section 12619(c)(1)" for "section 12653h(c)(1)".

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(C)(ii), substituted "section 12619(c)(2)" for "section 12653h(c)(2)".

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(C)(iii), substituted "section 12622(a)(3)" for "section 12653k(a)(3)".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 104(b), (e)(2)(C) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12616. Training

(a) Common curriculum

Each member of the National Civilian Community Corps shall be provided with between three and six weeks of training that includes a comprehensive service-learning curriculum designed to promote team building, discipline, leadership, work, training, citizenship, and physical conditioning. The Director shall ensure that, to the extent practicable, each member of the Corps is trained in CPR, first aid, and other skills related to disaster preparedness and response.

(b) Advanced service training

(1) National service program

Members of the Corps participating in the national service program shall receive advanced training in basic, project-specific skills that the members will use in performing their community service projects, including a focus on energy conservation, environmental stewardship or conservation, infrastructure improvement, urban and rural development, or disaster preparedness needs, as appropriate.

(2) Summer national service program

Members of the Corps participating in the summer national service program shall not receive advanced training referred to in paragraph (1) but, to the extent practicable, may receive other training.

(c) Training personnel

(1) In general

Members of the cadre appointed under section 12619(c)(2) of this title shall provide the training for the members of the Corps, including, as appropriate, advanced service training and ongoing training throughout the members' periods of agreed service.

(2) Coordination with other entities

Members of the cadre may provide, either directly or through grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements, the advanced service training referred to in subsection (b)(1) in coordination with vocational or technical schools, other employment and training providers, existing youth service programs, other qualified individuals, or organizations with expertise in training youth, including disadvantaged youth, in the skills described in such subsection.

(d) Facilities

The training may be provided at installations and other facilities of the Department of Defense, and at National Guard facilities, identified under section 12622(c) of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §156, formerly §195E, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2525; renumbered §156 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), (e)(2)(D), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 847; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1506, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1524.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653e of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 156 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12601 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1506(1), inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps" and inserted at end "The Director shall ensure that, to the extent practicable, each member of the Corps is trained in CPR, first aid, and other skills related to disaster preparedness and response."

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1506(2), inserted before period at end ", including a focus on energy conservation, environmental stewardship or conservation, infrastructure improvement, urban and rural development, or disaster preparedness needs, as appropriate".

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1506(3), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Members of the cadre may provide the advanced service training referred to in subsection (b)(1) of this section in coordination with vocational or technical schools, other employment and training providers, existing youth service programs, or other qualified individuals."

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–13, §1506(4), substituted "section 12622(c)" for "section 12622(a)(3)".

1993—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(D)(i), substituted "section 12619(c)(2)" for "section 12653h(c)(2)".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(D)(ii), substituted "section 12622(a)(3)" for "section 12653k(a)(3)".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12617. Service projects

(a) Project requirements

The service projects carried out by the National Civilian Community Corps shall—

(1) meet an identifiable public need, with specific emphasis on projects in support of infrastructure improvement, energy conservation, and urban and rural development;

(2) emphasize the performance of community service activities that provide meaningful community benefits and opportunities for service-learning and skills development;

(3) to the maximum extent practicable, encourage work to be accomplished in teams of diverse individuals working together; and

(4) include continued education and training in various technical fields.

(b) Project proposals

(1) Development of proposals

(A) Specific executive departments

Upon the establishment of the Program, the Secretary of Agriculture, the Secretary of the Interior, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, the Administrator of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, the Secretary of Energy, the Secretary of Transportation, and the Chief of the Forest Service shall develop proposals for Corps projects pursuant to guidance which the Director shall prescribe.

(B) Other sources

Other public and private organizations and agencies, including community-based entities and representatives of local communities in the vicinity of a Corps campus, may develop proposals for projects for a Corps campus. Corps members shall also be encouraged to identify projects for the Corps.

(2) Consultation requirements

The process for developing project proposals under paragraph (1) shall include consultation with the Corporation, representatives of local communities, State Commissions, and persons involved in other youth service programs.

(c) Project selection, organization, and performance

(1) Selection

The campus director of a Corps campus shall select the projects to be performed by the members of the Corps assigned to the units in that campus. The campus director shall select projects from among the projects proposed or identified pursuant to subsection (b).

(2) Innovative local arrangements for project performance

The Director shall encourage campus directors to negotiate with representatives of local communities, to the extent practicable, innovative arrangements for the performance of projects. The arrangements may provide for cost-sharing and the provision by the communities of in-kind support and other support.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §157, formerly §195F, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2526; renumbered §157 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), title IV, §§402(b)(2), 403(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 919, 920; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1507, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1524.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653f of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 157 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12602 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1507(1)(A), inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps"

in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1507(1)(B), inserted ", with specific emphasis on projects in support of infrastructure improvement, energy conservation, and urban and rural development" before semicolon at end.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1507(1)(C), substituted "service-learning" for "service learning".

Subsec. (b)(1)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1507(2)(A)(i), substituted "the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, the Administrator of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, the Secretary of Energy, the Secretary of Transportation, and the Chief of the Forest Service" for "and the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development".

Subsec. (b)(1)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1507(2)(A)(ii), inserted "community-based entities and" before "representatives of local communities" and substituted "campus" for "camp" in two places.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1507(2)(B), inserted "State Commissions," before "and persons involved in other youth service programs."

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1507(3)(A), substituted "campus director of a Corps campus" for "superintendent of a Corps camp" and "campus. The campus director" for "camp. The superintendent".

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1507(3)(B), substituted "campus directors" for "camp superintendents".

1993—Subsec. (b)(1)(A). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(b), substituted "Director" for "Director of the Civilian Community Corps".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(2), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission on National and Community Service".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 402(b)(2) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 406(a) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 5061 of this title.

§12618. Authorized benefits for Corps members

(a) In general

The Director shall provide for members of the National Civilian Community Corps to receive benefits authorized by this section.

(b) Living allowance

The Director shall provide a living allowance to members of the Corps for the period during which such members are engaged in training or any activity on a Corps project. The Director shall establish the amount of the allowance at any amount not in excess of the amount equal to 100 percent of the poverty line that is applicable to a family of two (as defined by the Office of Management and Budget and revised annually in accordance with section 9902(2) of this title.[1]

(c) Other authorized benefits

While receiving training or engaging in service projects as members of the National Civilian Community Corps, members may be provided the following benefits, as the Director determines appropriate:

(1) Allowances for travel expenses, personal expenses, and other expenses.
(2) Quarters.
(3) Subsistence.
(4) Transportation.
(5) Equipment.
(6) Uniforms.
(7) Supplies.
(8) Other services determined by the Director to be consistent with the purposes of the Program.

(d) Supportive services

As the Director determines appropriate, the Director may provide each member of the Corps with

health care services, child care services, counseling services, and other supportive services.

(e) Post-service benefits

Upon completion of the agreed period of service with the Corps, a member shall elect to receive the educational assistance under subsection (f) or the cash benefit under subsection (g).

(f) National service educational awards

A Corps member who successfully completes a period of agreed service in the Corps may receive the national service educational award described in division D if the Corps member—

(1) serves in an approved national service position; and

(2) satisfies the eligibility requirements specified in section 12602 of this title with respect to service in that approved national service position.

(g) Alternative benefit

If a Corps member who successfully completes a period of agreed service in the Corps is ineligible for the national service educational award described in division D, the Director may provide for the provision of a suitable alternative benefit for the Corps member.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §158, formerly §195G, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2526; renumbered §158 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), (g), title IV, §403(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 847, 920; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1508, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1525.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653g of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1508(1), inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–13, §1508(2)(A), in introductory provisions, inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps" and ", as the Director determines appropriate" before colon.

Subsec. (c)(6). Pub. L. 111–13, §1508(2)(B), substituted "Uniforms" for "Clothing".

Subsec. (c)(7). Pub. L. 111–13, §1508(2)(C), substituted "Supplies" for "Recreational services and supplies".

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(b), substituted "Director" for "Director of the Civilian Community Corps".

Subsecs. (f) to (h). Pub. L. 103–82, §104(g), added subsecs. (f) and (g) and struck out former subsecs. (f) to (h) which related to monetary educational assistance, cash benefit election for Corps members, and other post-service benefits, respectively.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 104(b), (g) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

[1] So in original. A closing parenthesis probably should precede the period.

§12619. Administrative provisions

(a) Supervision

The Chief Executive Officer shall monitor and supervise the administration of the National Civilian Community Corps Program authorized to be established under section 12612 of this title. In carrying out this section, the Chief Executive Officer shall—

(1) approve such guidelines, including those recommended by the Board, for the design,

selection of members, and operation of the National Civilian Community Corps as the Chief Executive Officer considers appropriate;

(2) evaluate the progress of the Corps in providing a basis for determining the matters set forth in section 12611 of this title; and

(3) carry out any other activities determined appropriate by the Board.

(b) Monitoring and coordination

The Chief Executive Officer shall—

(1) monitor the overall operation of the National Civilian Community Corps;

(2) coordinate the activities of the Corps with other youth service programs administered by the Corporation; and

(3) carry out any other activities determined appropriate by the Board.

(c) Staff

(1) Director

(A) Appointment

Upon the establishment of the Program, the Chief Executive Officer shall appoint a Director. The Director may be selected from among retired commissioned officers of the Armed Forces of the United States.

(B) Duties

The Director shall—

(i) design, develop, and administer the National Civilian Community Corps programs;

(ii) be responsible for managing the daily operations of the Corps; and

(iii) report to the Chief Executive Officer.

(C) Authority to employ staff

The Director may employ such staff as is necessary to carry out this division. The Director shall, to the maximum extent practicable, utilize in staff positions personnel who are detailed from departments and agencies of the Federal Government and, to the extent the Director considers appropriate, shall request and accept detail of personnel from such departments and agencies in order to do so.

(2) Permanent cadre

(A) Establishment

The Chief Executive Officer shall establish a permanent cadre that includes the Director and other appointed supervisors and training instructors for National Civilian Community Corps programs.

(B) Appointment

The Chief Executive Officer shall consider the recommendations of the Director in appointing the other members of the permanent cadre.

(C) Employment considerations

In appointing individuals to cadre positions, the Chief Executive Officer shall—

(i) give consideration to retired, discharged, and other inactive members and former members of the Armed Forces recommended under section 12622(b) of this title;

(ii) give consideration to former VISTA, Peace Corps, and youth service program personnel;

(iii) ensure that the cadre is comprised of males and females of diverse ethnic, economic, professional, and geographic backgrounds;

(iv) give consideration to retired and other former law enforcement, fire, rescue, and emergency personnel, and other individuals with backgrounds in disaster preparedness, relief, and recovery; and

(v) consider applicants' experience in other youth service programs.

(D) Community service credit

Service as a member of the cadre shall be considered as a community service opportunity for purposes of section 4403 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993 and as employment with a public service or community service organization for purposes of section 4464 of that Act.

(E) Training

The Director shall provide to other members of the permanent cadre appropriate training in youth development techniques, including techniques for working with and enhancing the development of disadvantaged youth, and the principles of service-learning. All members of the permanent cadre shall be required to participate in the training.

(3) Inapplicability of certain civil service laws

The Director, other members of the permanent cadre, and the other staff personnel shall be appointed without regard to the provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service. The rates of pay of such persons may be established without regard to the provisions of chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of such title. In the case of a member of the permanent cadre who was recommended for appointment in accordance with 12622(b)(1) [1] of this title and is entitled to retired or retainer pay, section 5532 [2] of title 5 shall not apply to reduce the member's retired or retainer pay by reason of the member being paid as a member of the cadre.

(4) Voluntary services

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Director may accept the voluntary services of individuals. While away from their homes or regular places of business on the business of the Corps, such individuals may be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in the same amounts and to the same extent, as authorized under section 5703 of title 5 for persons employed intermittently in Federal Government service.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §159, formerly §195H, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2528; renumbered §159 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), (e)(2)(E), title IV, §§402(b)(1), 403(a)(1)–(3), (b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 847, 918–920; Pub. L. 103–304, §3(b)(5)(B), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1567; Pub. L. 103–337, div. A, title VI, §640, Oct. 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 2791; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1509, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1525.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 4403 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(D), is section 4403 of Pub. L. 102–484 which is set out as a note under section 1293 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

Section 4464 of that Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(D), is section 4464 of Pub. L. 102–484 which is set out as a note under section 1143a of Title 10.

Section 5532 of title 5, referred to in subsec. (c)(3), was repealed by Pub. L. 106–65, div. A, title VI, §651(a)(1), Oct. 5, 1999, 113 Stat. 664.

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653h of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1509(1)(A), substituted "National Civilian Community Corps Program" for "Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1509(1)(B), inserted "including those" before "recommended" and "National" before "Civilian Community Corps".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1509(2), inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps".

Subsec. (c)(1)(B)(i). Pub. L. 111–13, §1509(3)(A), inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps".

Subsec. (c)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1509(3)(B)(i), substituted "The Chief Executive Officer shall establish a permanent cadre that includes the Director and other appointed" for "The Director shall establish a

permanent cadre of" and inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps".

Subsec. (c)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1509(3)(B)(ii), substituted "The Chief Executive Officer shall consider the recommendations of the Director in appointing the other members" for "The Director shall appoint the members".

Subsec. (c)(2)(C). Pub. L. 111–13, §1509(3)(B)(iii)(I), substituted "the Chief Executive Officer" for "the Director" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(2)(C)(i). Pub. L. 111–13, §1509(3)(B)(iii)(II), substituted "section 12622(b)" for "section 12622(a)(2)".

Subsec. (c)(2)(C)(iv), (v). Pub. L. 111–13, §1509(3)(B)(iii)(III)–(V), added cl. (iv) and redesignated former cl. (iv) as (v).

Subsec. (c)(2)(E). Pub. L. 111–13, §1509(3)(B)(iv), substituted "to other members" for "to members", inserted ", including techniques for working with and enhancing the development of disadvantaged youth," after "techniques", and substituted "service-learning" for "service learning".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1509(3)(C), substituted "other members" for "the members" and "12622(b)(1)" for "section 12622(a)(2)(A)".

1994—Subsec. (c)(2)(C)(i). Pub. L. 103–304 substituted "section 12622(a)(2)" for "section section 12622(a)(2)".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 103–337 inserted at end "In the case of a member of the permanent cadre who was recommended for appointment in accordance with section 12622(a)(2)(A) of this title and is entitled to retired or retainer pay, section 5532 of title 5 shall not apply to reduce the member's retired or retainer pay by reason of the member being paid as a member of the cadre."

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(a)(1)(A), (B), substituted "Supervision" for "Board" in heading and "The Chief Executive Officer shall monitor" for "The Board shall monitor" and "the Chief Executive Officer shall—" for "the Board shall—" in introductory provisions.

Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(E)(i)(I), substituted "section 12612" for "section 12653a" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(a)(1)(B), (C), substituted "by the Board" for "by the Director" and "as the Chief Executive Officer" for "as the Board".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(E)(i)(II), substituted "section 12611" for "section 12653".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(a)(2), substituted "Monitoring and coordination" for "Executive Director" in heading and "The Chief Executive Officer shall" for "The Executive Director of the Commission on National and Community Service shall" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "by the Corporation" for "by the Commission".

Subsec. (c)(1)(A). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(a)(3)(A), (b), substituted "the Chief Executive Officer shall appoint a Director" for "the Board, in consultation with the Executive Director, shall appoint a Director of the Civilian Community Corps".

Subsec. (c)(1)(B)(iii). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(a)(3)(B), substituted "the Chief Executive Officer" for "the Board through the Executive Director".

Subsec. (c)(2)(C)(i). Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(E)(ii), substituted "section 12622(a)(2)" for "12653k(a)(2)".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 104(b), (e)(2)(E) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

Amendment by section 402(b)(1) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 406(a) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 5061 of this title.

[1] So in original. Probably should be preceded by "section".

[2] See References in Text note below.

§12620. Status of Corps members and Corps personnel under Federal law

(a) In general

Except as otherwise provided in this section, members of the National Civilian Community Corps shall not, by reason of their status as such members, be considered Federal employees or be subject to the provisions of law relating to Federal employment.

(b) Work-related injuries

(1) In general

For purposes of subchapter I of chapter 81 of title 5 relating to the compensation of Federal employees for work injuries, members of the Corps shall be considered as employees of the United States within the meaning of the term "employee", as defined in section 8101 of such title.

(2) Special rule

In the application of the provisions of subchapter I of chapter 81 of title 5 to a person referred to in paragraph (1), the person shall not be considered to be in the performance of duty while absent from the person's assigned post of duty unless the absence is authorized in accordance with procedures prescribed by the Director.

(c) Tort claims procedure

A member of the Corps shall be considered an employee of the United States for purposes of chapter 171 of title 28 relating to tort claims liability and procedure.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §160, formerly §195I, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2530; renumbered §160, Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1510, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1526.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653i of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 160 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12611 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13 inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

§12621. Contract and grant authority

(a) Programs

The Director may, by contract or grant, provide for any public or private organization to carry out the National Civilian Community Corps program.

(b) Equipment and facilities

(1) Federal and National Guard property

The Director shall enter into agreements, as necessary, with the Secretary of Defense, the Governor of a State, territory or commonwealth, or the commanding general of the District of Columbia National Guard, as the case may be, to utilize—

(A) equipment of the Department of Defense and equipment of the National Guard; and

(B) Department of Defense facilities and National Guard facilities identified pursuant to section 12622(c) of this title.

(2) Other property

The Director may enter into contracts or agreements for the use of other equipment or facilities to the extent practicable to train and house members of the National Civilian Community Corps and leaders of Corps units.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §161, formerly §195J, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2530; renumbered §161 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), (e)(2)(F), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 847; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1511, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1526.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653j of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12621, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §165, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3159, related to rural youth service demonstration project, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

A prior section 161 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12612 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1511(1), substituted "carry out the National Civilian Community Corps program" for "perform any program function under this division".

Subsec. (b)(1)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1511(2)(A), substituted "section 12622(c)" for "section 12622(a)(3)".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1511(2)(B), inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps".

1993—Subsec. (b)(1)(B). Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(F), substituted "section 12622(a)(3)" for "section 12653k(a)(3)".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12622. Responsibilities of Department of Defense

(a) Liaison office

(1) Establishment

Upon the establishment of the Program, the Secretary of Defense shall establish an office to provide for liaison between the Secretary and the National Civilian Community Corps.

(2) Duties

The office shall—

(A) in order to assist in the recruitment of personnel for appointment in the permanent cadre, make available to the Director information in the registry established by section 1143a of title 10; and

(B) provide other assistance in the coordination of Department of Defense activities with the Corps.

(b) Corps cadre

(1) List of recommended personnel

Upon the establishment of the Program, the Secretary of Defense, in consultation with the liaison office established under subsection (a) shall develop a list of individuals from which individuals may be selected for appointment by the Director in the permanent cadre of Corps personnel. Such personnel shall be selected from among members and former members of the

Armed Forces referred to in section 12611(3) [1] of this title who are commissioned officers, noncommissioned officers, former commissioned officers, or former noncommissioned officers.

(2) Recommendations regarding grade and pay

The Secretary of Defense shall recommend to the Director an appropriate rate of pay for each person recommended for the cadre pursuant to this subsection.

(3) Contribution for retired member's pay

If a listed individual receiving retired or retainer pay is appointed to a position in the cadre and the rate of pay for that individual is established at the amount equal to the difference between the active duty pay and allowances which that individual would receive if ordered to active duty and the amount of the individual's retired or retainer pay, the Secretary of Defense shall pay, by transfer to the Corporation from amounts available for pay of active duty members of the Armed Forces, the amount equal to 50 percent of that individual's rate of pay for service in the cadre.

(c) Facilities

Upon the establishment of the Program, the Secretary of Defense shall identify military installations and other facilities of the Department of Defense and, in consultation with the adjutant generals of the State National Guards, National Guard facilities that may be used, in whole or in part, by the National Civilian Community Corps for training or housing Corps members. The Secretary of Defense shall carry out this subsection in consultation with the liaison office established under subsection (a).

(d) Information regarding Corps

The Secretary of Defense may permit Armed Forces recruiters to inform potential applicants for the Corps regarding service in the Corps as an alternative to service in the Armed Forces.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §162, formerly §195K, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2531; renumbered §162 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), (e)(2)(G), title IV, §402(b)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 847, 919; Pub. L. 103–304, §3(b)(5)(C), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1567; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1512, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1526.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12611 of this title, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), was amended generally by Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1501, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1521, and section 12611(3) no longer relates to members and former members of the Armed Forces.

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653k of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12622, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §166, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3159; Pub. L. 102–384, §8, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1456, related to assistance for Head Start programs, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

A prior section 162 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12613 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13, §1512(b)(2)–(5)(A), substituted "Liaison office" for "Secretary of Defense" as subsec. (a) heading, struck out par. (1) heading "Liaison office" after subsec. (a) heading, redesignated subpars. (A) and (B) of former subsec. (a)(1) as pars. (1) and (2), respectively, of subsec. (a), redesignated cls. (i) and (ii) of former subsec. (a)(1)(B) as subpars. (A) and (B), respectively, of subsec. (a)(2), redesignated former pars. (2) to (4) of subsec. (a) as subsecs. (b) to (d), respectively, redesignated former subpars. (A) to (C) of former subsec. (a)(2) as pars. (1) to (3), respectively, of subsec. (b), and realigned margins.

Pub. L. 111–13, §1512(b)(1), substituted "Department of Defense" for "other departments" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1512(a)(1)(A), inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps" in subpar. (A) and substituted "the registry established by section 1143a of title 10;" for "the registry established by section 4462 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993;" in subpar. (B)(i).

Subsec. (a)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1512(a)(1)(B), substituted "from which individuals may be selected for appointment by the Director" for "to be recommended for appointment".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1512(a)(1)(C), inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1512(a)(2), struck out subsec. (b). Text read as follows: "Upon the establishment of the Program, the Secretary of Labor shall identify and assist in establishing a system for the recruitment of persons to serve as members of the Civilian Community Corps. In carrying out this subsection, the Secretary of Labor may utilize the Employment Service Agency or the Office of Job Training."

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1512(b)(5)(B), substituted "subsection (a)" for "paragraph (1)".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1512(b)(5)(C), substituted "subsection" for "paragraph".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–13, §1512(b)(6), substituted "this subsection" for "this paragraph" and "subsection (a)" for "paragraph (1)".

1994—Subsec. (a)(1)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 103–304, which directed the substitution of "section 1143a of title 10" for "section 4462 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993", could not be executed because "section 4462 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993" did not appear in cl. (ii).

1993—Subsec. (a)(2)(A). Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(G), substituted "section 12611(3)" for "section 12653(3)".

Subsec. (a)(2)(C). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(2), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission on National and Community Service".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 104(b), (e)(2)(G) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

Amendment by section 402(b)(2) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 406(a) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 5061 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12623. Advisory Board

(a) Establishment and purpose

There shall be established a National Civilian Community Corps Advisory Board to advise the Director concerning the administration of this division and to assist the Corps in responding rapidly and efficiently in times of natural and other disasters. The Advisory Board members shall help coordinate activities with the Corps as appropriate, including the mobilization of volunteers and coordination of volunteer centers to help local communities recover from the effects of natural and other disasters.

(b) Membership

The Advisory Board shall be composed of the following members:

(1) The Secretary of Labor.
(2) The Secretary of Defense.
(3) The Secretary of the Interior.
(4) The Secretary of Agriculture.
(5) The Secretary of Education.
(6) The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.
(7) The Chief of the National Guard Bureau.
(8) The Administrator of the Federal Emergency Management Agency.

(9) The Secretary of Transportation.
(10) The Chief of the Forest Service.
(11) The Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency.
(12) The Secretary of Energy.
(13) Individuals appointed by the Director from among persons who are broadly representative of educational institutions, voluntary organizations, public and private organizations, youth, and labor unions.
(14) The Chief Executive Officer.

(c) Inapplicability of termination requirement

Section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.) shall not apply to the Advisory Board.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §163, formerly §195L, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2532; renumbered §163 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), title IV, §§402(b)(3), 403(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 919, 920; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1513, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1527.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (c), is section 14 of Pub. L. 92–463, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653l of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12623, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §167, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3159, related to employer-based retiree volunteer programs, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840.

A prior section 163 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12614 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1513(1), substituted "There shall be" for "Upon the establishment of the Program, there shall also be", inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps Advisory Board", and substituted "to assist the Corps in responding rapidly and efficiently in times of natural and other disasters. The Advisory Board members shall help coordinate activities with the Corps as appropriate, including the mobilization of volunteers and coordination of volunteer centers to help local communities recover from the effects of natural and other disasters." for "to assist in the development and administration of the Corps."

Subsec. (b)(8) to (12). Pub. L. 111–13, §1513(2)(B), added pars. (8) to (12). Former pars. (8) and (9) redesignated (13) and (14), respectively.

Subsec. (b)(13). Pub. L. 111–13, §1513(2)(A), (C), redesignated par. (8) as (13) and substituted "public and private organizations," for "industry,".

Subsec. (b)(14). Pub. L. 111–13, §1513(2)(A), redesignated par. (9) as (14).

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(b), substituted "Director" for "Director of the Civilian Community Corps".

Subsec. (b)(9). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(3), substituted "Chief Executive Officer" for "Chair of the Commission on National and Community Service".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 402(b)(3) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 406(a) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 5061 of this title.

§12624. Evaluations

Pursuant to the provisions for evaluations conducted under section 12639 of this title, and in particular subsection (g) of such section, the Corporation shall conduct periodic evaluations of the National Civilian Community Corps Program authorized under this division. Upon completing each such evaluation, the Corporation shall transmit to the authorizing committees a report on the evaluation.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §164, formerly §195M, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2532; renumbered §164 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), title IV, §402(b)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 919; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1514, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1528.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653m of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 164 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12615 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13 in section catchline substituted "Evaluations" for "Annual evaluation" and in text substituted "periodic evaluations" for "an annual evaluation" and "National Civilian Community Corps Program" for "Civilian Community Corps programs" and inserted at end "Upon completing each such evaluation, the Corporation shall transmit to the authorizing committees a report on the evaluation."

1993—Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(2), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission on National and Community Service".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 402(b)(2) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 406(a) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 5061 of this title.

§12625. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1515, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1528

Section, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §165, formerly §195N, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2532; renumbered §165 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), title IV, §402(b)(1), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 918, directed the Corporation to ensure that no amounts appropriated under section 12681 of this title be utilized to carry out this division.

Section was formerly classified to section 12653n of this title prior to renumbering by section 104(b) of Pub. L. 103–82.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12626. Definitions

In this division:

(1) Board

The term "Board" means the Board of Directors of the Corporation.

(2) Campus director

The term "campus director", with respect to a Corps campus, means the head of the campus under section 12615(d) of this title.

(3) Corps

The term "Corps" means the National Civilian Community Corps required under section 12615 of this title as part of the National Civilian Community Corps Program.

(4) Corps campus

The term "Corps campus" means the facility or central location established as the operational headquarters and boarding place for particular Corps units.

(5) Corps members

The term "Corps members" means persons receiving training and participating in projects under the National Civilian Community Corps Program.

(6) Director

The term "Director" means the Director of the National Civilian Community Corps.

(7) Institution of higher education

The term "institution of higher education" has the meaning given that term in section 1001 of title 20.

(8) Program

The term "Program" means the National Civilian Community Corps Program established pursuant to section 12612 of this title.

(9) Service-learning

The term "service-learning", with respect to Corps members, means a method—

(A) under which Corps members learn and develop through active participation in thoughtfully organized service experiences that meet actual community needs;

(B) that provides structured time for a Corps member to think, talk, or write about what the Corps member did and saw during an actual service activity;

(C) that provides Corps members with opportunities to use newly acquired skills and knowledge in real life situations in their own communities; and

(D) that helps to foster the development of a sense of caring for others, good citizenship, and civic responsibility.

(10) Unit

The term "unit" means a unit of the Corps referred to in section 12615(c) of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §165, formerly §195O, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2532; renumbered §166 and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), (e)(2)(H), title IV, §§402(b)(2), 403(a)(4), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 847, 919; Pub. L. 105–244, title I, §102(a)(13)(L), Oct. 7, 1998, 112 Stat. 1621; renumbered §165 and amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1516, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1528.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653o of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 165 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12625 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 111—13, title I, §1515, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1528, effective Oct. 1, 2009.

Another prior section 165 of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12621 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pars. (2) to (4). Pub. L. 111–13, §1516(2)(A), (C), added pars. (2) to (4) and struck out former pars. (2) and (3) which read as follows:

"(2) CORPS.—The terms 'Civilian Community Corps' and 'Corps' mean the Civilian Community Corps required under section 12615 of this title as part of the Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program.

"(3) CORPS CAMP.—The term 'Corps camp' means the facility or central location established as the operational headquarters and boarding place for particular Corps units."

Former par. (4) redesignated (5).

Par. (5). Pub. L. 111–13, §1516(2)(B), (D), redesignated par. (4) as (5) and substituted "National Civilian Community Corps Program" for "Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program". Former par. (5) redesignated (6).

Par. (6). Pub. L. 111–13, §1516(2)(B), (E), redesignated par. (5) as (6) and inserted "National" before "Civilian Community Corps". Former par. (6) redesignated (7).

Par. (7). Pub. L. 111–13, §1516(2)(B), redesignated par. (6) as (7). Former par. (7) redesignated (8).

Par. (8). Pub. L. 111–13, §1516(2)(F), which directed substitution of "The term 'Program' means the National Civilian Community Corps Program" for " 'The terms' and all that follows through 'Demonstration Program' ", was executed by making the substitution for "The terms 'Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program' and 'Program' mean the Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program" to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 111–13, §1516(2)(B), redesignated par. (7) as (8). Former par. (8) redesignated (9).

Par. (9). Pub. L. 111–13, §1516(2)(G), substituted "Service-learning" for "Service learning" in heading and "service-learning" for "service learning" in introductory provisions.

Pub. L. 111–13, §1516(2)(A), (B), redesignated par. (8) as (9) and struck out former par. (9). Text read as follows: "The term 'superintendent', with respect to a Corps camp, means the head of the camp under section 12615(d) of this title."

1998—Par. (6). Pub. L. 105–244 substituted "section 1001" for "section 1141(a)".

1993—Par. (1). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(2), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission on National and Community Service".

Par. (2). Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(H)(i), substituted "section 12615" for "section 12653d".

Par. (6). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(a)(4), which directed amendment of par. (6) of this section by striking par. (6) and redesignating par. (7) of this section as (6) was executed by redesignating par. (7) of this section as (6) and striking out former par. (6) which defined "Executive Director" as Executive Director of Commission on National and Community Service, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Par. (7). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(a)(4)(B), which directed amendment of par. (6) of this section by redesignating par. (8) as (7) was executed by redesignating par. (8) of this section as (7), to reflect the probable intent of Congress. Former par. (7) redesignated (6).

Par. (8). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(a)(4)(B), which directed amendment of par. (6) of this section by redesignating par. (9) as (8) was executed by redesignating par. (9) of this section as (8), to reflect the probable intent of Congress. Former par. (8) redesignated (7).

Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(H)(ii), substituted "section 12612" for "section 12653a".

Par. (9). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(a)(4)(B), which directed amendment of par. (6) of this section by redesignating par. (10) as (9) was executed by redesignating par. (10) of this section as (9), to reflect the probable intent of Congress. Former par. (9) redesignated (8).

Par. (10). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(a)(4)(B), which directed amendment of par. (6) of this section by redesignating par. (11) as (10) was executed by redesignating par. (11) of this section as (10), to reflect the probable intent of Congress. Former par. (10) redesignated (9).

Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(H)(iii), substituted "section 12615(d)" for "section 12653d(d)".

Par. (11). Pub. L. 103–82, §403(a)(4)(B), which directed amendment of par. (6) of this section by redesignating par. (11) as (10) was executed by redesignating par. (11) of this section as (10), to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 103–82, §104(e)(2)(H)(iv), substituted "section 12615(c)" for "section 12653d(c)".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 105–244 effective Oct. 1, 1998, except as otherwise provided in Pub. L. 105–244, see section 3 of Pub. L. 105–244, set out as a note under section 1001 of Title 20, Education.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 104(b), (e)(2)(H) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub.

L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

Amendment by section 402(b)(2) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 406(a) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 5061 of this title.

Division F—Administrative Provisions

§12631. Family and medical leave

(a) Participants in private, State, and local projects

For purposes of title I of the Family and Medical Leave Act of 1993 [29 U.S.C. 2611 et seq.], if—

(1) a participant has provided service for the period required by section 101(2)(A)(i) (29 U.S.C. 2611(2)(A)(i)), and has met the hours of service requirement of section 101(2)(A)(ii), of such Act with respect to a project authorized under the national service laws; and

(2) the service sponsor of the project is an employer described in section 101(4) of such Act (other than an employing agency within the meaning of subchapter V of chapter 63 of title 5),

the participant shall be considered to be an eligible employee of the service sponsor.

(b) Participants in Federal projects

For purposes of subchapter V of chapter 63 of title 5, if—

(1) a participant has provided service for the period required by section 6381(1)(B) of such title with respect to a project; and

(2) the service sponsor of the project is an employing agency within the meaning of such subchapter,

the participant shall be considered to be an employee of the service sponsor.

(c) Treatment of absence

The period of any absence of a participant from a service position pursuant to title I of the Family and Medical Leave Act of 1993 [29 U.S.C. 2611 et seq.] or subchapter V of chapter 63 of title 5 shall not be counted toward the completion of the term of service of the participant under section 12593 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §171, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3159; Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §113(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 861; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1601, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1529.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Family and Medical Leave Act of 1993, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (c), is Pub. L. 103–3, Feb. 5, 1993, 107 Stat. 6. Title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§2611 et seq.) of chapter 28 of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2601 of Title 29 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–13 substituted "with respect to a project authorized under the national service laws" for "with respect to a project".

1993—Pub. L. 103–82 amended section generally, substituting provisions relating to family and medical leave for provisions relating to limitation on number of grants under this subchapter.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note

under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12632. Reports

(a) State reports

(1) In general

Each State receiving assistance under this subchapter shall prepare and submit, to the Corporation, an annual report concerning the use of assistance provided under this subchapter and the status of the national and community service programs that receive assistance under such subchapter in such State.

(2) Local grantees

Each State may require local grantees that receive assistance under this subchapter to supply such information to the State as is necessary to enable the State to complete the report required under paragraph (1), including a comparison of actual accomplishments with the goals established for the program, the number of participants in the program, the number of service hours generated, and the existence of any problems, delays or adverse conditions that have affected or will affect the attainment of program goals.

(3) Report demonstrating compliance

(A) In general

Each State receiving assistance under this subchapter shall include information in the report required under paragraph (1) that demonstrates the compliance of the State with the provisions of this chapter, including section 12637 of this title.

(B) Local grantees

Each State may require local grantees to supply such information to the State as is necessary to enable the State to comply with the requirement of paragraph (1).

(4) Availability of report

Reports submitted under paragraph (1) shall be made available to the public on request.

(b) Report to Congress by Corporation

(1) In general

Not later than 120 days after the end of each fiscal year, the Corporation shall prepare and submit, to the authorizing committees, the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives, and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate, a report concerning the programs that receive assistance under the national service laws.

(2) Content

Reports submitted under paragraph (1) shall contain a summary of the information contained in the State reports submitted under subsection (a), and shall reflect the findings and actions taken as a result of any evaluation conducted by the Corporation.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §172, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3159; Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §114, title IV, §402(b)(1), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 861, 918; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1602, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1529; Pub. L. 112–81, div. A, title X, §1063(c), Dec. 31, 2011, 125 Stat. 1586.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(A), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, known as the National and Community Service Act of 1990, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2011—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 112–81 struck out subsec. (c). Prior to amendment, text read as follows:

"(1) STUDY.—The Secretary of Defense shall annually conduct a study of the effect of the programs carried out under this subchapter on recruitment for the Armed Forces.

"(2) REPORT.—The Secretary of Defense shall annually submit a report to the authorizing committees, the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives, and the Committee on Armed Services of the Senate containing the findings of the study described in paragraph (1) and such recommendations for legislative and administrative reform as the Secretary may determine to be appropriate."

2009—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1602(1), which directed substitution of "authorizing committees, the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives, and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate" for "appropriate authorizing and appropriations Committees of Congress", was executed by making the substitution for "appropriate authorizing and appropriation Committees of Congress" to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1602(2), substituted "the authorizing committees, the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives, and the Committee on Armed Services of the Senate" for "the appropriate committees of Congress".

1993—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission".

Subsec. (a)(3)(A). Pub. L. 103–82, §114(1), substituted "section 12637" for "sections 12637 and 12523(9)".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–82, §114(2)(A), substituted "Report to Congress by Corporation" for "Report to Congress" in heading.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission".

Pub. L. 103–82, §114(2)(B), substituted "the national service laws" for "this subchapter".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103–82, §114(3), added subsec. (c).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 114 of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

Amendment by section 402(b)(1) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 406(a) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 5061 of this title.

§12633. Supplementation

(a) In general

Assistance provided under this subchapter shall be used to supplement the level of State and local public funds expended for services of the type assisted under this subchapter in the previous fiscal year.

(b) Aggregate expenditure

Subsection (a) shall be satisfied, with respect to a particular program, if the aggregate expenditure for such program for the fiscal year in which services are to be provided will not be less than the aggregate expenditure for such program in the previous fiscal year, excluding the amount of Federal assistance provided and any other amounts used to pay the remainder of the costs of programs assisted under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §173, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3160.)

§12634. Prohibition on use of funds

(a) Prohibited uses

No assistance made available under a grant under this subchapter shall be used to provide religious instruction, conduct worship services, or engage in any form of proselytization.

(b) Political activity

Assistance provided under this subchapter shall not be used by program participants and program staff to—

(1) assist, promote, or deter union organizing; or

(2) finance, directly or indirectly, any activity designed to influence the outcome of an election to Federal office or the outcome of an election to a State or local public office.

(c) Contracts or collective bargaining agreements

A program that receives assistance under this subchapter shall not impair existing contracts for services or collective bargaining agreements.

(d) Referrals for Federal assistance

A program may not receive assistance under the national service laws for the sole purpose of referring individuals to Federal assistance programs or State assistance programs funded in part by the Federal Government.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §174, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3160; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1603, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1529.)

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–13 added subsec. (d).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

§12635. Nondiscrimination

(a) In general

(1) Basis

An individual with responsibility for the operation of a project that receives assistance under this subchapter shall not discriminate against a participant in, or member of the staff of, such project on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, age, or political affiliation of such participant or member, or on the basis of disability, if the participant or member is a qualified individual with a disability.

(2) "Qualified individual with a disability" defined

As used in paragraph (1), the term "qualified individual with a disability" has the meaning given the term in section 12111(8) of this title.

(b) Federal financial assistance

Any assistance provided under this subchapter shall constitute Federal financial assistance for purposes of title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. 2000d et seq.), title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972 (20 U.S.C. 1681 et seq.), section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 794), and the Age Discrimination Act of 1975 (42 U.S.C. 6101 et seq.), and shall constitute Federal financial assistance to an education program or activity for purposes of the Education Amendments of 1972 (20 U.S.C. 1681 et seq.).

(c) Religious discrimination

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (2), an individual with responsibility for the operation of a project that receives assistance under this subchapter shall not discriminate on the basis of religion against a participant in such project or a member of the staff of such project who is paid with funds received under this subchapter.

(2) Exception

Paragraph (1) shall not apply to the employment, with assistance provided under this subchapter, of any member of the staff, of a project that receives assistance under this subchapter, who was employed with the organization operating the project on the date the grant under this subchapter was awarded.

(d) Rules and regulations

The Chief Executive Officer shall promulgate rules and regulations to provide for the enforcement of this section that shall include provisions for summary suspension of assistance for not more than 30 days, on an emergency basis, until notice and an opportunity to be heard can be provided.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §175, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3161; Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §115, Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 862.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Civil Rights Act of 1964, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 88–352, July 2, 1964, 78 Stat. 241, as amended. Title VI of the Act is classified generally to subchapter V (§2000d et seq.) of chapter 21 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2000a of this title and Tables.

The Education Amendments of 1972, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 92–318, June 23, 1972, 86 Stat. 235, as amended. Title IX of the Act, known as the Patsy Takemoto Mink Equal Opportunity in Education Act, is classified principally to chapter 38 (§1681 et seq.) of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of title IX to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1681 of Title 20 and Tables.

The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, referred to in subsec. (b), is title III of Pub. L. 94–135, Nov. 28, 1975, 89 Stat. 728, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 76 (§6101 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6101 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–82 amended section generally, making revisions relating to discrimination based on disability, the laws for which assistance under this subchapter constitutes Federal financial assistance, and the responsibility for promulgating regulations.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12636. Notice, hearing, and grievance procedures

(a) In general

(1) Suspension of payments

The Corporation may in accordance with the provisions of this subchapter, suspend or terminate payments under a contract or grant providing assistance under this subchapter, or revoke the designation of positions, related to the grant or contract, as approved national service positions, whenever the Corporation determines there is a material failure to comply with this subchapter or the applicable terms and conditions of any such grant or contract issued pursuant to this subchapter.

(2) Procedures to ensure assistance

The Corporation shall prescribe procedures to ensure that—

(A) assistance provided under this subchapter shall not be suspended for failure to comply with the applicable terms and conditions of this subchapter except, in emergency situations, a suspension may be granted for 1 or more periods of 30 days not to exceed a total of 90 days; and

(B) assistance provided under this subchapter shall not be terminated or revoked for failure to comply with applicable terms and conditions of this subchapter unless the recipient of such assistance has been afforded reasonable notice and opportunity for a full and fair hearing.

(b) Hearings

Hearings or other meetings that may be necessary to fulfill the requirements of this section shall be held at locations convenient to the recipient of assistance under this subchapter.

(c) Transcript or recording

A transcript or recording shall be made of a hearing conducted under this section and shall be available for inspection by any individual.

(d) State legislation

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to preclude the enactment of State legislation providing for the implementation, consistent with this subchapter, of the programs administered under this subchapter.

(e) Construction

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to link performance of service with receipt of Federal student financial assistance, other than assistance provided pursuant to this chapter.

(f) Grievance procedure

(1) In general

An entity that receives assistance under this subchapter shall establish and maintain a procedure for the filing and adjudication of grievances from participants, labor organizations, and other interested individuals concerning projects that receive assistance under this subchapter, including grievances regarding proposed placements of such participants in such projects.

(2) Deadline for grievances

Except for a grievance that alleges fraud or criminal activity, a grievance shall be made not later than 1 year after the date of the alleged occurrence of the event that is the subject of the grievance.

(3) Deadline for hearing and decision

(A) Hearing

A hearing on any grievance conducted under this subsection shall be conducted not later than 30 days after the filing of such grievance.

(B) Decision

A decision on any such grievance shall be made not later than 60 days after the filing of such grievance.

(4) Arbitration

(A) In general

(i) Jointly selected arbitrator

In the event of a decision on a grievance that is adverse to the party who filed such grievance, or 60 days after the filing of such grievance if no decision has been reached, such party shall be permitted to submit such grievance to binding arbitration before a qualified arbitrator who is jointly selected and independent of the interested parties.

(ii) Appointed arbitrator

If the parties cannot agree on an arbitrator, the Chief Executive Officer shall appoint an arbitrator from a list of qualified arbitrators within 15 days after receiving a request for such appointment from one of the parties to the grievance.

(B) Deadline for proceeding

An arbitration proceeding shall be held not later than 45 days after the request for such arbitration proceeding, or, if the arbitrator is appointed by the Chief Executive Officer in accordance with subparagraph (A)(ii), not later than 30 days after the appointment of such arbitrator.

(C) Deadline for decision

A decision concerning a grievance shall be made not later than 30 days after the date such arbitration proceeding begins.

(D) Cost

(i) In general

Except as provided in clause (ii), the cost of an arbitration proceeding shall be divided evenly between the parties to the arbitration.

(ii) Exception

If a participant, labor organization, or other interested individual described in paragraph (1) prevails under a binding arbitration proceeding, the State or local applicant described in paragraph (1) that is a party to such grievance shall pay the total cost of such proceeding and the attorneys' fees of such participant, labor organization, or individual, as the case may be.

(5) Proposed placement

If a grievance is filed regarding a proposed placement of a participant in a project that receives assistance under this subchapter, such placement shall not be made unless the placement is consistent with the resolution of the grievance pursuant to this subsection.

(6) Remedies

Remedies for a grievance filed under this subsection include—

(A) suspension of payments for assistance under this subchapter;

(B) termination of such payments;

(C) prohibition of the placement described in paragraph (5);

(D) in a case in which the grievance is filed by an individual applicant or participant—

(i) the applicant's selection or the participant's reinstatement, as the case may be; and

(ii) other changes in the terms and conditions of service applicable to the individual; and

(E) in a case in which the grievance involves a violation of subsection (a) or (b) of section 12637 of this title and the employer of the displaced employee is the recipient of assistance under this subchapter—

(i) reinstatement of the displaced employee to the position held by such employee prior to displacement;

(ii) payment of lost wages and benefits of the displaced employee;

(iii) reestablishment of other relevant terms, conditions, and privileges of employment of the displaced employee; and

(iv) such equitable relief as is necessary to correct any violation of subsection (a) or (b) of section 12637 of this title or to make the displaced employee whole.

(7) Enforcement

Suits to enforce arbitration awards under this section may be brought in any district court of the United States having jurisdiction of the parties, without regard to the amount in controversy and without regard to the citizenship of the parties.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §176, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3161; Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §116, title IV, §402(b)(1), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 863, 918; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1604, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1529.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (e), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, known as the National and Community Service Act of 1990, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1604(1), substituted "1 or more periods of 30 days not to exceed a total of 90 days" for "30 days".

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1604(2)(A), substituted "An entity" for "A State or local applicant".

Subsec. (f)(6)(D), (E). Pub. L. 111–13, §1604(2)(B), added subpar. (D) and redesignated former subpar. (D) as (E).

1993—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission" in two places.

Pub. L. 103–82, §116(a)(1), inserted ", or revoke the designation of positions, related to the grant or contract, as approved national service positions," after "assistance under this subchapter".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(2)(B). Pub. L. 103–82, §116(a)(2), inserted "or revoked" after "terminated".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 103–82, §116(b), inserted before period at end ", other than assistance provided pursuant to this chapter".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 103–82, §116(c), amended subsec. (f) generally, substituting pars. (1) to (6) for former pars. (1) to (6) relating to same subjects and adding par. (7).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 116 of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

Amendment by section 402(b)(1) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 406(a) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 5061 of this title.

§12637. Nonduplication and nondisplacement

(a) Nonduplication

(1) In general

Assistance provided under the national service laws shall be used only for a program that does not duplicate, and is in addition to, an activity otherwise available in the locality of such program.

(2) Private nonprofit entity

Assistance made available under the national service laws shall not be provided to a private nonprofit entity to conduct activities that are the same or substantially equivalent to activities provided by a State or local government agency that such entity resides in, unless the requirements of subsection (b) are met.

(b) Nondisplacement

(1) In general

An employer shall not displace an employee, position, or volunteer (other than a participant under the national service laws), including partial displacement such as reduction in hours, wages, or employment benefits, as a result of the use by such employer of a participant in a program receiving assistance under the national service laws.

(2) Service opportunities

A service opportunity shall not be created under the national service laws that will infringe in any manner on the promotional opportunity of an employed individual.

(3) Limitation on services

(A) Duplication of services

A participant in a program receiving assistance under the national service laws shall not perform any services or duties or engage in activities that would otherwise be performed by an

employee as part of the assigned duties of such employee.

(B) Supplantation of hiring

A participant in any program receiving assistance under the national service laws shall not perform any services or duties, or engage in activities, that—

(i) will supplant the hiring of employed workers; or

(ii) are services, duties, or activities with respect to which an individual has recall rights pursuant to a collective bargaining agreement or applicable personnel procedures.

(C) Duties formerly performed by another employee

A participant in any program receiving assistance under the national service laws shall not perform services or duties that have been performed by or were assigned to any—

(i) presently employed worker;

(ii) employee who recently resigned or was discharged;

(iii) employee who—

(I) is subject to a reduction in force; or

(II) has recall rights pursuant to a collective bargaining agreement or applicable personnel procedures;

(iv) employee who is on leave (terminal, temporary, vacation, emergency, or sick); or

(v) employee who is on strike or who is being locked out.

(c) Labor market information

The Secretary of Labor shall make available to the Corporation and to any program agency under this subchapter such labor market information as is appropriate for use in carrying out the purposes of this subchapter.

(d) Treatment of benefits

Allowances, earnings, and payments to individuals participating in programs that receive assistance under this subchapter shall not be considered to be income for the purposes of determining eligibility for and the amount of income transfer and in-kind aid furnished under any Federal or federally assisted program based on need, other than as provided under the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 301 et seq.).

(e) Standards of conduct

Programs that receive assistance under this subchapter shall establish and stringently enforce standards of conduct at the program site to promote proper moral and disciplinary conditions.

(f) Parental involvement

(1) In general

Programs that receive assistance under the national service laws shall consult with the parents or legal guardians of children in developing and operating programs that include and serve children.

(2) Parental permission

Programs that receive assistance under the national service laws shall, before transporting minor children, provide the children's parents with the reason for the transportation and obtain the parents' written permission for such transportation, consistent with State law.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §177, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3163; Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §117, title IV, §402(b)(1), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 864, 918; Pub. L. 105–277, div. A, §101(f) [title VIII, §405(d)(42)(A)], Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–337, 2681–427; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1605, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1530.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (d), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620, which is classified generally to chapter 7 (§301 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code,

see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(1), (2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1605(1), substituted "under the national service laws" for "under this subchapter".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1605(1), (2), substituted "employee, position, or volunteer (other than a participant under the national service laws)" for "employee or position" and "under the national service laws" for "under this subchapter".

Subsec. (b)(2), (3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1605(1), substituted "under the national service laws" for "under this subchapter" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–13, §1605(3), added subsec. (f).

1998—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 105–277 amended heading and text of subsec. (d) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Section 142(b) of the Job Training Partnership Act shall apply to the projects conducted under this subchapter as such projects were conducted under the Job Training Partnership Act."

1993—Subsec. (b)(3)(B). Pub. L. 103–82, §117(1), amended heading and text of subpar. (B) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A participant in any program receiving assistance under this subchapter shall not perform any services or duties or engage in activities that will supplant the hiring of employed workers."

Subsec. (b)(3)(C)(iii). Pub. L. 103–82, §117(2), amended cl. (iii) generally. Prior to amendment, cl. (iii) read as follows: "employee who is subject to a reduction in force;".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 117 of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

Amendment by section 402(b)(1) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 406(a) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 5061 of this title.

§12638. State Commissions on National and Community Service

(a) Existence required

(1) State Commission

Except as provided in paragraph (2), to be eligible to receive a grant or allotment under division B or C or to receive a distribution of approved national service positions under division C, a State shall maintain a State Commission on National and Community Service that satisfies the requirements of this section.

(2) Alternative administrative entity

The chief executive officer of a State may apply to the Corporation for approval to use an alternative administrative entity to carry out the duties otherwise entrusted to a State Commission under this chapter. The chief executive officer shall ensure that any alternative administrative entity used in lieu of a State Commission provides for the individuals described in paragraph (1), and some of the individuals described in paragraph (2), of subsection (c) to play a significant policymaking role in carrying out the duties otherwise entrusted to a State Commission, including the submission of applications on behalf of the State under section 12582 of this title.

(b) Appointment and size

Except as provided in subsection (c)(3), the members of a State Commission for a State shall be appointed by the chief executive officer of the State. A State Commission shall consist of not fewer than 15, and not more than 25, voting members, and any ex officio nonvoting members, as described in paragraph (3) or (4) of subsection (c).

(c) Composition and membership

(1) Required members

The State Commission for a State shall include as voting members at least one of each of the following individuals:

(A) An individual with expertise in the educational, training, and development needs of youth, particularly disadvantaged youth.

(B) An individual with experience in promoting the involvement of older adults in service and voluntarism.

(C) A representative of community-based agencies or community-based organizations within the State.

(D) The head of the State educational agency.

(E) A representative of local governments in the State.

(F) A representative of local labor organizations in the State.

(G) A representative of business.

(H) An individual between the ages of 16 and 25 who is a participant or supervisor in a program.

(I) A representative of a national service program described in subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572 of this title.

(J) A representative of the volunteer sector.

(2) Sources of other members

The State Commission for a State may include as voting members the following individuals:

(A) Members selected from among local educators.

(B) Members selected from among experts in the delivery of human, educational, environmental, or public safety services to communities and persons.

(C) Representatives of Indian tribes.

(D) Members selected from among out-of-school youth or other at-risk youth.

(E) Representatives of entities that receive assistance under the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4950 et seq.).

(3) Corporation representative

The representative of the Corporation designated under section 12651f(c) of this title for a State shall be an ex officio nonvoting member of the State Commission or alternative administrative entity for that State.

(4) Ex officio State representatives

The chief executive officer of a State may appoint, as ex officio nonvoting members of the State Commission for the State, representatives selected from among officers and employees of State agencies operating community service, youth service, education, social service, senior service, and job training programs.

(5) Limitation on number of State employees as members

The number of voting members of a State Commission selected under paragraph (1) or (2) who are officers or employees of the State may not exceed 25 percent (reduced to the nearest whole number) of the total membership of the State Commission.

(d) Miscellaneous matters

(1) Membership balance

The chief executive officer of a State shall ensure, to the maximum extent practicable, that the membership of the State Commission for the State is diverse with respect to race, ethnicity, age, gender, and disability characteristics. Not more than 50 percent of the voting members of a State Commission, plus one additional member, may be from the same political party.

(2) Terms

Each member of the State Commission for a State shall serve for a term of 3 years, except that

the chief executive officer of a State shall initially appoint a portion of the members to terms of 1 year and 2 years.

(3) Vacancies

If a vacancy occurs on a State Commission, a new member shall be appointed by the chief executive officer of the State and serve for the remainder of the term for which the predecessor of such member was appointed. The vacancy shall not affect the power of the remaining members to execute the duties of the State Commission.

(4) Compensation

A member of a State Commission or alternative administrative entity shall not receive any additional compensation by reason of service on the State Commission or alternative administrative entity, except that the State may authorize the reimbursement of travel expenses, including a per diem in lieu of subsistence, in the same manner as other employees serving intermittently in the service of the State.

(5) Chairperson

The voting members of a State Commission shall elect one of the voting members to serve as chairperson of the State Commission.

(6) Limitation on member participation

(A) General limitation

Except as provided in subparagraph (B), a voting member of the State Commission (or of an alternative administrative entity) shall not participate in the administration of the grant program (including any discussion or decision regarding the provision of assistance or approved national service positions, or the continuation, suspension, or termination of such assistance or such positions, to any program or entity) described in subsection (e)(9) if—

(i) a grant application relating to such program is pending before the Commission (or such entity); and

(ii) the application was submitted by a program or entity of which such member is, or in the 1-year period before the submission of such application was, an officer, director, trustee, full-time volunteer, or employee.

(B) Exception

If, as a result of the operation of subparagraph (A), the number of voting members of the Commission (or of such entity) is insufficient to establish a quorum for the purpose of administering such program, then voting members excluded from participation by subparagraph (A) may participate in the administration of such program, notwithstanding the limitation in subparagraph (A), to the extent permitted by regulations issued under section 12651d(b)(12) of this title by the Corporation.

(C) Rule of construction

Subparagraph (A) shall not be construed to limit the authority of any voting member of the Commission (or of such entity) to participate in—

(i) discussion of, and hearing and forums on—

(I) the general duties, policies, and operations of the Commission (or of such entity); or

(II) the general administration of such program; or

(ii) similar general matters relating to the Commission (or such entity).

(e) Duties of a State Commission

The State Commission or alternative administrative entity for a State shall be responsible for the following duties:

(1) Preparation of a national service plan for the State that—

(A) is developed, through an open and public process (such as through regional forums, hearings, and other means) that provides for maximum participation and input from the private

sector, organizations, and public agencies, using service and volunteerism as strategies to meet critical community needs, including service through programs funded under the national service laws;

(B) covers a 3-year period, the beginning of which may be set by the State;

(C) is subject to approval by the chief executive officer of the State;

(D) includes measurable goals and outcomes for the State national service programs in the State consistent with the performance levels for national service programs as described in section 12639(k) of this title;

(E) ensures outreach to diverse community-based agencies that serve underrepresented populations, through established networks and registries at the State level, or through the development of such networks and registries;

(F) provides for effective coordination of funding applications submitted by the State and other organizations within the State under the national service laws;

(G) is updated annually, reflecting changes in practices and policies that will improve the coordination and effectiveness of Federal, State, and local resources for service and volunteerism within the State;

(H) ensures outreach to, and coordination with, municipalities (including large cities) and county governments regarding the national service laws; and

(I) contains such information as the State Commission considers to be appropriate or as the Corporation may require.

(2) Preparation of the applications of the State under section 12582 of this title for financial assistance.

(3) Assistance in the preparation of the application of the State educational agency for assistance under section 12525 of this title.

(4) Preparation of the application of the State under section 12582 of this title for the approval of service positions that include the national service educational award described in division D.

(5) Make recommendations to the Corporation with respect to priorities for programs receiving assistance under the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4950 et seq.).

(6) Make technical assistance available to enable applicants for assistance under section 12571 of this title—

(A) to plan and implement service programs; and

(B) to apply for assistance under the national service laws using, if appropriate, information and materials available through a clearinghouse established under section 12653a [1] of this title.

(7) Assistance in the provision of health care and child care benefits under section 12594 of this title to participants in national service programs that receive assistance under section 12571 of this title.

(8) Development of a State system for the recruitment and placement of participants in programs that receive assistance under the national service laws and dissemination of information concerning national service programs that receive such assistance or approved national service positions.

(9) Administration of the grant program in support of national service programs that is conducted by the State using assistance provided to the State under section 12571 of this title, including selection, oversight, and evaluation of grant recipients.

(10) Development of projects, training methods, curriculum materials, and other materials and activities related to national service programs that receive assistance directly from the Corporation (to be made available in a case in which such a program requests such a project, method, material, or activity) or from the State using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title, for use by programs that request such projects, methods, materials, and activities.

(f) Relief from administrative requirements

Upon approval of a State plan submitted under subsection (e)(1), the Chief Executive Officer may

waive for the State, or specify alternatives for the State to, administrative requirements (other than statutory provisions) otherwise applicable to grants made to States under the national service laws, including those requirements identified by the State as impeding the coordination and effectiveness of Federal, State, and local resources for service and volunteerism within the State.

(g) State service plan for adults age 55 or older

(1) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of this section, to be eligible to receive a grant or allotment under division B or C or to receive a distribution of approved national service positions under division C, a State shall work with appropriate State agencies and private entities to develop a comprehensive State service plan for service by adults age 55 or older.

(2) Matters included

The State service plan shall include—

(A) recommendations for policies to increase service for adults age 55 or older, including how to best use such adults as sources of social capital, and how to utilize their skills and experience to address community needs;

(B) recommendations to the State agency (as defined in section 3002 of this title) on—

(i) a marketing outreach plan to businesses; and

(ii) outreach to—

(I) nonprofit organizations;

(II) the State educational agency;

(III) institutions of higher education; and

(IV) other State agencies;

(C) recommendations for civic engagement and multigenerational activities, such as—

(i) early childhood education and care, family literacy, and after school programs;

(ii) respite services for adults age 55 or older and caregivers; and

(iii) transitions for older adults age 55 or older to purposeful work in their post-career lives; and

(D) recommendations for encouraging the development of Encore service programs in the State.

(3) Knowledge base

The State service plan shall incorporate the current knowledge base (as of the time of the plan) regarding—

(A) the economic impact of the roles of workers age 55 or older in the economy;

(B) the social impact of the roles of such workers in the community; and

(C) the health and social benefits of active engagement for adults age 55 or older.

(4) Publication

The State service plan shall be made available to the public and be transmitted to the Chief Executive Officer.

(h) Activity ineligible for assistance

A State Commission or alternative administrative entity may not directly carry out any national service program that receives assistance under section 12571 of this title.

(i) Delegation

Subject to such requirements as the Corporation may prescribe, a State Commission may delegate nonpolicymaking duties to a State agency or public or private nonprofit organization.

(j) Approval of State Commission or alternative

(1) Submission to Corporation

The chief executive officer for a State shall notify the Corporation of the establishment or designation of the State Commission or use of an alternative administrative entity for the State. The notification shall include a description of—

(A) the composition and membership of the State Commission or alternative administrative entity; and

(B) the authority of the State Commission or alternative administrative entity regarding national service activities carried out by the State.

(2) Approval of alternative administrative entity

Any designation of a State Commission or use of an alternative administrative entity to carry out the duties of a State Commission shall be subject to the approval of the Corporation, which shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Corporation shall approve an alternative administrative entity if such entity provides for individuals described in paragraph (1), and some of the individuals described in paragraph (2), of subsection (c) to play a significant policymaking role in carrying out the duties otherwise entrusted to a State Commission, including the duties described in paragraphs (1) through (4) of subsection (e).

(3) Rejection

The Corporation may reject a State Commission if the Corporation determines that the composition, membership, or duties of the State Commission do not comply with the requirements of this section. The Corporation may reject a request to use an alternative administrative entity in lieu of a State Commission if the Corporation determines that the entity does not provide for the individuals described in paragraph (1), and some of the individuals described in paragraph (2), of subsection (c) to play a significant policymaking role as described in paragraph (2). If the Corporation rejects a State Commission or alternative administrative entity under this paragraph, the Corporation shall promptly notify the State of the reasons for the rejection.

(4) Resubmission and reconsideration

The Corporation shall provide a State notified under paragraph (3) with a reasonable opportunity to revise the rejected State Commission or alternative administrative entity. At the request of the State, the Corporation shall provide technical assistance to the State as part of the revision process. The Corporation shall promptly reconsider any resubmission of a notification under paragraph (1) or application to use an alternative administrative entity under paragraph (2).

(5) Subsequent changes

This subsection shall also apply to any change in the composition or duties of a State Commission or an alternative administrative entity made after approval of the State Commission or the alternative administrative entity.

(6) Rights

An alternative administrative entity approved by the Corporation under this subsection shall have the same rights as a State Commission.

(k) Coordination

(1) Coordination with other State agencies

The State Commission or alternative administrative entity for a State shall coordinate the activities of the Commission or entity under this chapter with the activities of other State agencies that administer Federal financial assistance programs under the Community Services Block Grant Act (42 U.S.C. 9901 et seq.) or other appropriate Federal financial assistance programs.

(2) Coordination with volunteer service programs

(A) In general

The State Commission or alternative administrative entity for a State shall coordinate functions of the Commission or entity (including recruitment, public awareness, and training activities) with such functions of any division of the Corporation that carries out volunteer

service programs in the State.

(B) Agreement

In coordinating functions under this paragraph, such Commission or entity, and such division, may enter into an agreement to—

(i) carry out such a function jointly;

(ii) to [2] assign responsibility for such a function to the Commission or entity; or

(iii) to [2] assign responsibility for such a function to the division.

(C) Information

The State Commission or alternative entity for a State, and the head of any such division, shall exchange information about—

(i) the programs carried out in the State by the Commission, entity, or division, as appropriate; and

(ii) opportunities to coordinate activities.

(l) Liability

(1) Liability of State

Except as provided in paragraph (2)(B), a State shall agree to assume liability with respect to any claim arising out of or resulting from any act or omission by a member of the State Commission or alternative administrative entity of the State, within the scope of the service of the member on the State Commission or alternative administrative entity.

(2) Other claims

(A) In general

A member of the State Commission or alternative administrative entity shall have no personal liability with respect to any claim arising out of or resulting from any act or omission by such person, within the scope of the service of the member on the State Commission or alternative administrative entity.

(B) Limitation

This paragraph shall not be construed to limit personal liability for criminal acts or omissions, willful or malicious misconduct, acts or omissions for private gain, or any other act or omission outside the scope of the service of such member on the State Commission or alternative administrative entity.

(3) Effect on other law

This subsection shall not be construed—

(A) to affect any other immunities and protections that may be available to such member under applicable law with respect to such service;

(B) to affect any other right or remedy against the State under applicable law, or against any person other than a member of the State Commission or alternative administrative entity; or

(C) to limit or alter in any way the immunities that are available under applicable law for State officials and employees not described in this subsection.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §178, as added and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §201(a), title IV, §405(p)(1), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 867, 922; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1606, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1530.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2) and (k)(1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, known as the National and Community Service Act of 1990, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsecs. (c)(2)(E) and (e)(5), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394, which is classified principally to chapter 66 (§4950 et seq.) of this title. For

complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

Section 12653a of this title, referred to in subsec. (e)(6)(B), was in the original "section 198A", meaning section 198A of Pub. L. 101–610, as added by section 104(c) of Pub. L. 103–82, which was repealed, and section 198B was redesignated section 198A, by Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1803(a)(1), (b), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1554. Provisions similar to section 12653a are now contained in section 12653o of this title.

The Community Services Block Grant Act, referred to in subsec. (k)(1), is subtitle B (§671 et seq.) of title VI of Pub. L. 97–35, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 511, which is classified generally to chapter 106 (§9901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 9901 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12638, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §178, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3164; Pub. L. 102–10, §8(1), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 31, provided that States applying for assistance under this subchapter be encouraged to establish a State Advisory Board for National and Community Service and set out additional provisions for membership and duties of such boards, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §201(a).

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1606(1), substituted "section 12582" for "sections 12543 and 12582".

Subsec. (c)(1)(I). Pub. L. 111–13, §1606(2)(A), substituted "subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 12572 of this title." for "section 12572(a) of this title, such as a youth corps program described in section 12572(a)(2) of this title."

Subsec. (c)(1)(J). Pub. L. 111–13, §1606(2)(B), added subpar. (J).

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1606(3), struck out ", unless the State permits the representative to serve as a voting member of the State Commission or alternative administrative entity" before period at end.

Subsec. (d)(6)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1606(4), substituted "section 12651d(b)(12)" for "section 12651d(b)(11)".

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1606(5)(A), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which related to preparation of a national service plan for the State.

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1606(5)(B), substituted "section 12582" for "sections 12543 and 12582".

Subsecs. (f) to (l). Pub. L. 111–13, §1606(6), (7), added subsecs. (f) and (g) and redesignated former subsecs. (f) to (j) as (h) to (l), respectively.

1993—Subsec. (i)(2)(A). Pub. L. 103–82, §405(p)(1), substituted "the Corporation" for "ACTION, or of the Corporation," before "that carries out".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 405(p)(1) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Apr. 4, 1994, see section 406(b) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 8332 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §201(c), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 873, provided that: "The amendments made by this section [enacting this section and repealing former section 12638 of this title] shall take effect on October 1, 1993."

TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS

Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §201(d), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 873, provided that:

"(1) USE OF ALTERNATIVES TO STATE COMMISSION.—If a State does not have a State Commission on National and Community Service that satisfies the requirements specified in section 178 of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 [42 U.S.C. 12638], as amended by subsection (a), the Corporation for National and Community Service may authorize the chief executive officer of the State to use an existing agency of the State to perform the duties otherwise reserved to a State Commission under subsection (e) of such section.

"(2) APPLICATION OF SUBSECTION.—This subsection shall apply only during the 27-month period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act [Sept. 21, 1993]."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

[2] *So in original. The word "to" probably should not appear.*

§12639. Evaluation

(a) In general

The Corporation shall provide, directly or through grants or contracts, for the continuing evaluation of programs that receive assistance under the national service laws, including evaluations that measure the impact of such programs, to determine—

(1) the effectiveness of programs receiving assistance under the national service laws in achieving stated goals and the costs associated with such programs, including an evaluation of each such program's performance based on the performance levels established under subsection (k); and

(2) the effectiveness of the structure and mechanisms for delivery of services, such as the effective utilization of the participants' time, the management of the participants, and the ease with which recipients were able to receive services, to maximize the cost effectiveness and the impact of such programs.

(b) Comparisons

The Corporation shall provide for inclusion in the evaluations required under subsection (a), where appropriate, comparisons of participants in such programs with individuals who have not participated in such programs.

(c) Conducting evaluations

Evaluations of programs under subsection (a) shall be conducted by individuals who are not directly involved in the administration of such program.

(d) Standards

The Corporation shall develop and publish general standards for the evaluation of program effectiveness in achieving the objectives of the national service laws.

(e) Community participation

In evaluating a program receiving assistance under the national service laws, the Corporation shall consider the opinions of participants and members of the communities where services are delivered concerning the strengths and weaknesses of such program.

(f) Comparison of program models

The Corporation shall evaluate and compare the effectiveness of different program models in meeting the program objectives described in subsection (g) including full- and part-time programs, programs involving different types of national service, programs using different recruitment methods, programs offering alternative voucher or post-service benefit options, and programs utilizing individual placements and teams.

(g) Program objectives

The Corporation shall ensure that programs that receive assistance under division C are evaluated to determine their effectiveness in—

(1) recruiting and enrolling diverse participants in such programs, consistent with the requirements of section 12575 [1] of this title, based on economic background, race, ethnicity, age, marital status, education levels, and disability;

(2) promoting the educational achievement of each participant in such programs, based on earning a high school diploma or the equivalent of such diploma and the future enrollment and completion of increasingly higher levels of education;

(3) encouraging each participant to engage in public and community service after completion of

the program based on career choices and service in other service programs such as the Volunteers in Service to America Program and National Senior Service Corps programs established under the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4950 et seq.), the Peace Corps (as established by the Peace Corps Act (22 U.S.C. 2501 et seq.)), the military, and part-time volunteer service;

(4) promoting of positive attitudes among each participant regarding the role of such participant in solving community problems based on the view of such participant regarding the personal capacity of such participant to improve the lives of others, the responsibilities of such participant as a citizen and community member, and other factors;

(5) enabling each participant to finance a lesser portion of the higher education of such participant through student loans;

(6) providing services and projects that benefit the community;

(7) supplying additional volunteer assistance to community agencies without overloading such agencies with more volunteers than can effectively be utilized;

(8) providing services and activities that could not otherwise be performed by employed workers and that will not supplant the hiring of, or result in the displacement of, employed workers or impair the existing contracts of such workers; and

(9) attracting a greater number of citizens to engage in service that benefits the community.

(h) Obtaining information

(1) In general

In conducting the evaluations required under this section, the Corporation may require each program participant and State or local applicant to provide such information as may be necessary to carry out the requirements of this section.

(2) Confidentiality

(A) In general

The Corporation shall maintain the confidentiality of information acquired under this subsection regarding individual participants.

(B) Disclosure

(i) Consent

The content of any information described in subparagraph (A) may be disclosed with the prior written consent of the individual participant with respect to whom the information is maintained.

(ii) Aggregate information

The Corporation may disclose information about the aggregate characteristics of such participants.

(i) Independent evaluation and report of demographics of national service participants and communities

(1) Independent evaluation

(A) In general

The Corporation shall, on an annual basis, arrange for an independent evaluation of the programs assisted under division C.

(B) Participants

(i) In general

The entity conducting such evaluation shall determine the demographic characteristics of the participants in such programs.

(ii) Characteristics

The entity shall determine, for the year covered by the evaluation, the total number of participants in the programs, and the number of participants within the programs in each

State, by sex, age, economic background, education level, ethnic group, disability classification, and geographic region.

(iii) Categories

The Corporation shall determine appropriate categories for analysis of each of the characteristics referred to in clause (ii) for purposes of such an evaluation.

(C) Communities

In conducting the evaluation, the entity shall determine the amount of assistance provided under section 12571 of this title during the year that has been expended for projects conducted under the programs in areas described in section 12585(c)(6) of this title.

(2) Report

The entity conducting the evaluation shall submit a report to the President, the authorizing committees, the Corporation, and each State Commission containing the results of the evaluation—

(A) with respect to the evaluation covering the year beginning on September 21, 1993, not later than 18 months after September 21, 1993; and

(B) with respect to the evaluation covering each subsequent year, not later than 18 months after the first day of each such year.

(j) Reserved program funds for accountability

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, in addition to amounts appropriated to carry out this section, the Corporation may reserve not more than 1 percent of the total funds appropriated for a fiscal year under section 12681 of this title and sections 501 and 502 of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 [42 U.S.C. 5081, 5082] to support program accountability activities under this section.

(k) Performance levels

The Corporation shall, in consultation with each recipient of assistance under the national service laws, establish performance levels for such recipient to meet during the term of the assistance. The performance levels may include, for each national service program carried out by the recipient, performance levels based on the following performance measures:

(1) Number of participants enrolled in the program and completing terms of service, as compared to the stated participation and retention goals of the program.

(2) Number of volunteers recruited from the community in which the program was implemented.

(3) If applicable based on the program design, the number of individuals receiving or benefitting from the service conducted.

(4) Number of disadvantaged and underrepresented youth participants.

(5) Measures of the sustainability of the program and the projects supported by the program, including measures to ascertain the level of community support for the program or projects.

(6) Measures to ascertain the change in attitude toward civic engagement among the participants and the beneficiaries of the service.

(7) Other quantitative and qualitative measures as determined to be appropriate by the recipient of assistance and the Corporation.

(l) Corrective action plans

(1) In general

A recipient of assistance under the national service laws that fails, as determined by the Corporation, to meet or exceed the performance levels agreed upon under subsection (k) for a national service program, shall reach an agreement with the Corporation on a corrective action plan to meet such performance levels.

(2) Assistance

(A) New program

For a program that has received assistance under the national service laws for less than 3 years and for which the recipient is failing to meet or exceed the performance levels agreed upon under subsection (k), the Corporation shall—

(i) provide technical assistance to the recipient to address targeted performance problems relating to the performance levels for the program; and

(ii) require the recipient to submit quarterly reports on the program's progress toward meeting the performance levels for the program to the—

(I) appropriate State, territory, or Indian tribe; and

(II) the Corporation.

(B) Established programs

For a program that has received assistance under the national service laws for 3 years or more and for which the recipient is failing to meet or exceed the performance levels agreed upon under subsection (k), the Corporation shall require the recipient to submit quarterly reports on the program's progress toward the performance levels for the program to—

(i) the appropriate State, territory, or Indian tribe; and

(ii) the Corporation.

(m) Failure to meet performance levels

If, after a period for correction as approved by the Corporation in accordance with subsection (l), a recipient of assistance under the national service laws fails to meet or exceed the performance levels for a national service program, the Corporation shall—

(1) reduce the annual amount of the assistance received by the underperforming recipient by at least 25 percent, for each remaining year of the grant period for that program; or

(2) terminate assistance to the underperforming recipient for that program, in accordance with section 12636(a) of this title.

(n) Reports

The Corporation shall submit to the authorizing committees not later than 2 years after April 21, 2009, and annually thereafter, a report containing information on the number of—

(1) recipients of assistance under the national service laws implementing corrective action plans under subsection (l)(1);

(2) recipients for which the Corporation provides technical assistance for a program under subsection (l)(2)(A)(i);

(3) recipients for which the Corporation terminates assistance for a program under subsection (m);

(4) entities whose application for assistance under a national service law was rejected; and

(5) recipients meeting or exceeding their performance levels under subsection (k).

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §179, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3164; Pub. L. 102–384, §§4, 9, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1455, 1456; Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §118, title II, §203(a)(1)(A), title IV, §402(b)(1), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 865, 891, 918; Pub. L. 103–160, div. A, title XI, §1182(d)(4), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1773; Pub. L. 104–106, div. A, title XV, §1501(e)(5), Feb. 10, 1996, 110 Stat. 501; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1607, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1532.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12575 of this title, referred to in subsec. (g)(1), was in the original a reference to section 145 of Pub. L. 101–610. Section 145 of Pub. L. 101–610 was omitted in the general amendment of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [former part D of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §102(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 816. Pub. L. 103–82 enacted a new section 125 of Pub. L. 101–610, relating to training and technical assistance, and a new section 145, relating to establishment of the National Service Trust, which are classified to sections 12575 and sections 12601, respectively, of this title. Provisions relating to the eligibility of individuals for participation in national service programs are now contained in section 12591 et seq. of this title.

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (g)(3), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973,

87 Stat. 394, which is classified principally to chapter 66 (§4950 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

The Peace Corps Act, referred to in subsec. (g)(3), is Pub. L. 87–293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, which is classified principally to chapter 34 (§2501 et seq.) of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse. For complete classification of that Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of Title 22 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1607(1), amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) directed the Corporation to provide, through grants or contracts, for continuing evaluation of programs receiving assistance under the national service laws to determine the effectiveness and costs of various program models and, with respect to programs authorized under division C, to determine the impact of those programs on the recruitment ability of VISTA and National Senior Volunteer Corps programs, each regular component of the Armed Forces, each of the reserve components of the Armed Forces, and the Peace Corps.

Subsec. (g)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1607(2)(A), substituted "National Senior Service Corps" for "National Senior Volunteer Corps".

Subsec. (g)(9). Pub. L. 111–13, §1607(2)(B), substituted "to engage in service that benefits the community." for "to public service, including service in the active and reserve components of the Armed Forces, the National Guard, the Peace Corps (as established by the Peace Corps Act (22 U.S.C. 2501 et seq.)), and the VISTA and National Senior Volunteer Corps programs established under the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4950 et seq.)."

Subsec. (i)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1607(3), substituted "the authorizing committees" for "Congress" in introductory provisions.

Subsecs. (j) to (n). Pub. L. 111–13, §1607(4), added subsecs. (j) to (n).

1996—Subsec. (a)(2)(C). Pub. L. 104–106 substituted "section 10101 of title 10" for "section 216(a) of title 5".

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission" in introductory provisions.

Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(1)(A), substituted "the national service laws" for "this subchapter" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 103–82, §118(1)(A), substituted "with respect to the programs authorized under division C of this subchapter" for "for purposes of the reports required by subsection (j) of this section" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(2)(A). Pub. L. 103–82, §118(1)(B), substituted "National Senior Volunteer Corps programs" for "older American volunteer programs".

Subsec. (a)(2)(B). Pub. L. 103–160 substituted "section 101(a)(4) of title 10" for "section 101(4) of title 10".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission".

Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(1)(A), substituted "the national service laws" for "this subchapter".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission".

Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(1)(A), substituted "the national service laws" for "this subchapter".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission" in introductory provisions.

Pub. L. 103–82, §118(2)(A), substituted "division C" for "part D" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (g)(3), (9). Pub. L. 103–82, §118(2)(B), substituted "National Senior Volunteer Corps programs" for "older American volunteer programs".

Subsec. (h)(1), (2)(A), (B)(ii). Pub. L. 103–82, §402(b)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission".

Subsecs. (i), (j). Pub. L. 103–82, §118(3), (4), added subsec. (i) and struck out former subsecs. (i) and (j) which related to deadline and report, respectively.

1992—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 102–384, §9(1), substituted "subsection (j)" for "subsection (h)".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102–384, §4, substituted "Commission" for "Secretary".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 102–384, §9(2), inserted "or post-service benefit" after "voucher".

Subsec. (h)(1). Pub. L. 102–384, §9(3)(A), substituted "this section" for "subsection (g) of this section".

Subsec. (h)(2). Pub. L. 102–384, §9(3)(B), added par. (2) and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "The Commission shall keep information acquired under this section confidential."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–106 effective as if included in the Reserve Officer Personnel Management Act, title XVI of Pub. L. 103–337, as enacted on Oct. 5, 1994, see section 1501(f)(3) of Pub. L. 104–106, set out as a note under section 113 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 118 of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

Amendment by section 203(a)(1)(A) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Apr. 4, 1994, see section 203(d) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

Amendment by section 402(b)(1) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 406(a) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 5061 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12639a. Civic Health Assessment and volunteering research and evaluation

(a) Definition of partnership

In this section, the term "partnership" means the Corporation, acting in conjunction with (consistent with the terms of an agreement entered into between the Corporation and the National Conference) the National Conference on Citizenship referred to in section 150701 of title 36 to carry out this section.

(b) In general

The partnership shall facilitate the establishment of a Civic Health Assessment by—

(1) after identifying public and private sources of civic health data, selecting a set of civic health indicators, in accordance with subsection (c), that shall comprise the Civic Health Assessment;

(2) obtaining civic health data relating to the Civic Health Assessment, in accordance with subsection (d); and

(3) conducting related analyses, and reporting the data and analyses, as described in paragraphs (4) and (5) of subsection (d) and subsections (e) and (f).

(c) Selection of indicators for Civic Health Assessment

(1) Identifying sources

The partnership shall select a set of civic health indicators that shall comprise the Civic Health Assessment. In making such selection, the partnership—

(A) shall identify public and private sources of civic health data;

(B) shall explore collaborating with other similar efforts to develop national indicators in the civic health domain; and

(C) may sponsor a panel of experts, such as one convened by the National Academy of Sciences, to recommend civic health indicators and data sources for the Civic Health Assessment.

(2) Technical advice

At the request of the partnership, the Director of the Bureau of the Census and the Commissioner of Labor Statistics shall provide technical advice to the partnership on the selection of the indicators for the Civic Health Assessment.

(3) Updates

The partnership shall periodically evaluate and update the Civic Health Assessment, and may expand or modify the indicators described in subsection (d)(1) as necessary to carry out the purposes of this section.

(d) Data on the indicators

(1) Sponsored data collection

In identifying the civic health indicators for the Civic Health Assessment, and obtaining data for the Assessment, the partnership may sponsor the collection of data for the Assessment or for the various civic health indicators being considered for inclusion in the Assessment, including indicators related to—

(A) volunteering and community service;

(B) voting and other forms of political and civic engagement;

(C) charitable giving;

(D) connecting to civic groups and faith-based organizations;

(E) interest in employment, and careers, in public service in the nonprofit sector or government;

(F) understanding and obtaining knowledge of United States history and government; and

(G) social enterprise and innovation.

(2) Data from statistical agencies

The Director of the Bureau of the Census and the Commissioner of Labor Statistics shall collect annually, to the extent practicable, data to inform the Civic Health Assessment, and shall report data from such collection to the partnership. In determining the data to be collected, the Director and the Commissioner shall examine privacy issues, response rates, and other relevant issues.

(3) Sources of data

To obtain data for the Civic Health Assessment, the partnership shall consider—

(A) data collected through public and private sources; and

(B) data collected by the Bureau of the Census, through the Current Population Survey, or by the Bureau of Labor Statistics, in accordance with paragraph (2).

(4) Demographic characteristics

The partnership shall seek to obtain data for the Civic Health Assessment that will permit the partnership to analyze the data by age group, race and ethnicity, education level, and other demographic characteristics of the individuals involved.

(5) Other issues

In obtaining data for the Civic Health Assessment, the partnership may also obtain such information as may be necessary to analyze—

(A) the role of Internet technology in strengthening and inhibiting civic activities;

(B) the role of specific programs in strengthening civic activities;

(C) the civic attitudes and activities of new citizens and immigrants; and

(D) other areas related to civic activities.

(e) Reporting of data

(1) In general

The partnership shall, not less often than once each year, prepare a report containing—

(A) detailed data obtained under subsection (d), including data on the indicators comprising the Civic Health Assessment; and

(B) the analyses described in paragraphs (4) and (5) of subsection (d), to the extent practicable based on the data the partnership is able to obtain.

(2) Aggregation and presentation

The partnership shall, to the extent practicable, aggregate the data on the civic health indicators comprising the Civic Health Assessment by community, by State, and nationally. The report described in paragraph (1) shall present the aggregated data in a form that enables communities

and States to assess their civic health, as measured on each of the indicators comprising the Civic Health Assessment, and compare those measures with comparable measures of other communities and States.

(3) Submission

The partnership shall submit the report to the authorizing committees, and make the report available to the general public on the Corporation's website.

(f) Public input

The partnership shall—

(1) identify opportunities for public dialogue and input on the Civic Health Assessment; and

(2) hold conferences and forums to discuss the implications of the data and analyses reported under subsection (e).

(g) Volunteering research and evaluation

(1) Research

The partnership shall provide for baseline research and tracking of domestic and international volunteering, and baseline research and tracking related to relevant data on the indicators described in subsection (d). In providing for the research and tracking under this subsection, the partnership shall consider data from the Supplements to the Current Populations Surveys conducted by the Bureau of the Census for the Bureau of Labor Statistics, and data from other public and private sources, including other data collected by the Bureau of the Census and the Bureau of Labor Statistics.

(2) Impact research and evaluation

The partnership shall sponsor an independent evaluation of the impact of domestic and international volunteering, including an assessment of best practices for such volunteering, and methods of improving such volunteering through enhanced collaboration among—

(A) entities that recruit, manage, support, and utilize volunteers;

(B) institutions of higher education; and

(C) research institutions.

(h) Database prohibition

Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to authorize the development, implementation, or maintenance of a Federal database of personally identifiable information on individuals participating in data collection for sources of information under this section.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §179A, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1608(a), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1534.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (h), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12640. Engagement of participants

A State shall not engage a participant to serve in any program that receives assistance under this subchapter unless and until amounts have been appropriated under section 12681 of this title for the provision of national service educational awards and for the payment of other necessary expenses and costs associated with such participant.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §180, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3166; Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §119, Sept. 21,

1993, 107 Stat. 866.)

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–82 substituted "national service educational awards" for "post-service benefits".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12641. Contingent extension

Section 1226a of title 20 shall apply to this chapter.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §181, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3166; Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §120(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 866; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1609, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1537.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13 made technical amendment to reference in original act which appears in text as reference to section 1226a of title 20.

1993—Pub. L. 103–82 amended section generally, reenacting subsec. (c) as entire section and striking out former subsecs. (a) and (b) which related to treatment of education and housing benefits and treatment of stipend for living expenses, respectively.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12642. Partnerships with schools

The head of each Federal agency and department shall design and implement a comprehensive strategy to involve employees of such agencies and departments in partnership programs with elementary schools and secondary schools. Such strategy shall include—

(1) a review of existing programs to identify and expand the opportunities for such employees to be adult volunteers in schools and for students and out-of-school youth;

(2) the designation of a senior official in each such agency and department who will be responsible for establishing partnership and youth service programs in each such agency and department and for developing partnership and youth service programs;

(3) the encouragement of employees of such agencies and departments to participate in partnership programs and other service projects;

(4) the annual recognition of outstanding service programs operated by Federal agencies; and

(5) the encouragement of businesses and professional firms to include community service among the factors considered in making hiring, compensation, and promotion decisions.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §182, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3167; Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §111(b)(1), (2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 860; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1610, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1537; Pub. L. 113–188, title III, §301(b), Nov. 26, 2014, 128 Stat. 2018.)

AMENDMENTS

2014—Pub. L. 113–188 struck out subsec. (a) designation and heading before "The head of each Federal agency" and struck out subsec. (b) which required submission of reports to the Corporation and to Congress.

2009—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Not later than 180 days after November 16, 1990, and on a regular basis thereafter, the head of each Federal agency and department shall prepare and submit, to the appropriate Committees of Congress, a report concerning the implementation of this section."

1993—Subsec. (a)(2), (3). Pub. L. 103–82 substituted "partnership" for "adult volunteer and partnership" wherever appearing.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12643. Rights of access, examination, and copying

(a) Comptroller General

Consistent with otherwise applicable law, the Comptroller General, or any of the duly authorized representatives of the Comptroller General, shall have access to, and the right to examine and copy, any books, documents, papers, records, and other recorded information in any form—

(1) within the possession or control of the Corporation or any State or local government, territory, Indian tribe, or public or private nonprofit organization receiving assistance directly or indirectly under this chapter; and

(2) that the Comptroller General, or his representative, considers necessary to the performance of an evaluation, audit, or review.

(b) Chief Financial Officer

Consistent with otherwise applicable law, the Chief Financial Officer of the Corporation shall have access to, and the right to examine and copy, any books, documents, papers, records, and other recorded information in any form—

(1) within the possession or control of the Corporation or any State or local government, territory [1] Indian tribe, or public or private nonprofit organization receiving assistance directly or indirectly under this chapter; and

(2) that relates to the duties of the Chief Financial Officer.

(c) Inspector General

Consistent with otherwise applicable law, the Inspector General of the Corporation shall have access to, and the right to examine and copy, any books, documents, papers, records, and other recorded information in any form—

(1) within the possession or control of the Corporation or any State or local government, territory, Indian tribe, or public or private nonprofit organization receiving assistance directly or indirectly under the national service laws; and

(2) that relates to—

(A) such assistance; and

(B) the duties of the Inspector General under the Inspector General Act of 1978 (5 U.S.C. App.).

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §183, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3167; Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §121(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 866; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1611, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1537.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1) and (b)(1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, known as the National and Community Service Act of 1990, which

is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

The Inspector General Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(B), is Pub. L. 95–452, Oct. 12, 1978, 92 Stat. 1101, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1611(1), substituted "Consistent with otherwise applicable law, the" for "The" in introductory provisions and inserted "territory," after "local government," in par. (1).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1611(2), substituted "Consistent with otherwise applicable law, the" for "The" in introductory provisions and inserted "territory" after "local government," in par. (1).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–13, §1611(3), added subsec. (c).

1993—Pub. L. 103–82 amended section generally, substituting provision relating to rights of access, examination, and copying for provision relating to service as tutors.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

[1] So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.

§12644. Drug-free workplace requirements

All programs receiving grants under this subchapter shall be subject to the Drug-Free Workplace Requirements for Federal Grant Recipients under sections 8101 and 8103 to 8106 of title 41.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §184, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3167.)

CODIFICATION

In text, "sections 8101 and 8103 to 8106 of title 41" substituted for "sections 5153 through 5158 of the Anti-Drug Abuse Act of 1988 (41 U.S.C. 702–707)" on authority of Pub. L. 111–350, §6(c), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 3854, which Act enacted Title 41, Public Contracts.

§12644a. Availability of assistance

A reference in division C, D, E, or H of this subchapter regarding an entity eligible to receive direct or indirect assistance to carry out a national service program shall include a non-profit organization promoting competitive and non-competitive sporting events involving individuals with disabilities (including the Special Olympics), which enhance the quality of life for individuals with disabilities.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §184A, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1613(a), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1541.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12644b. Consolidated application and reporting requirements

(a) In general

To promote efficiency and eliminate duplicative requirements, the Corporation shall consolidate or modify application procedures and reporting requirements for programs, projects, and activities

funded under the national service laws.

(b) Report to Congress

Not later than 18 months after the effective date of the Serve America Act, the Corporation shall submit to the authorizing committees a report containing information on the actions taken to consolidate or modify the application procedures and reporting requirements for programs, projects, and activities funded under the national service laws, including a description of the procedures for consultation with recipients of the funding.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §185, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1612, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1538.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the effective date of the Serve America Act, referred to in subsec. (b), as Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 185 of Pub. L. 101–610 amended sections 1070a–6 and 1087vv of title 20 prior to repeal by section 122(a) of Pub. L. 103–82.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12645. Sustainability

The Corporation, after consultation with State Commissions and recipients of assistance, may set sustainability goals for projects or programs under the national service laws, so that recipients of assistance under the national service laws are carrying out sustainable projects or programs. Such sustainability goals shall be in writing and shall be used—

(1) to build the capacity of the projects or programs that receive assistance under the national service laws to meet community needs;

(2) in providing technical assistance to recipients of assistance under the national service laws regarding acquiring and leveraging non-Federal funds for support of the projects or programs that receive such assistance; and

(3) to determine whether the projects or programs, receiving such assistance, are generating sufficient community support.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §186, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1612, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1538.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12645, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §186, as added Pub. L. 102–10, §8(2), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 31, directed Commission to issue final rules or regulations necessary to implement this subchapter, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §§122(a), 123, Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 867, effective Oct. 1, 1993.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12645a. Grant periods

Unless otherwise specifically provided, the Corporation has authority to award a grant or contract, or enter into a cooperative agreement, under the national service laws for a period of 3 years.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §187, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1612, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat.

1538.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12645b. Generation of volunteers

In making decisions on applications for assistance or approved national service positions under the national service laws, the Corporation shall take into consideration the extent to which the applicant's proposal will increase the involvement of volunteers in meeting community needs. In reviewing the application for this purpose, the Corporation may take into account the mission of the applicant.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §188, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1612, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1538.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12645c. Limitation on program grant costs

(a) Limitation on grant amounts

Except as otherwise provided by this section, the amount of funds approved by the Corporation for a grant to operate a program authorized under the national service laws, for supporting individuals serving in approved national service positions, may not exceed $18,000 per full-time equivalent position.

(b) Costs subject to limitation

The limitation under subsection (a), and the increased limitation under subsection (e)(1), shall apply to the Corporation's share of the member support costs, staff costs, and other costs to operate a program authorized under the national service laws incurred,[1] by the recipient of the grant.

(c) Costs not subject to limitation

The limitation under subsection (a), and the increased limitation under subsection (e)(1), shall not apply to expenses under a grant authorized under the national service laws to operate a program that are not included in the grant award for operating the program.

(d) Adjustments for inflation

The amounts specified in subsections (a) and (e)(1) shall be adjusted each year after 2008 for inflation as measured by the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Secretary of Labor.

(e) Waiver authority and reporting requirement

(1) Waiver

The Chief Executive Officer may increase the limitation under subsection (a) to not more than $19,500 per full-time equivalent position if necessary to meet the compelling needs of a particular program, such as—

(A) exceptional training needs for a program serving disadvantaged youth;

(B) the need to pay for increased costs relating to the participation of individuals with disabilities;

(C) the needs of tribal programs or programs located in the territories; and

(D) the need to pay for start-up costs associated with a first-time recipient of assistance under a program of the national service laws.

(2) Reports

The Chief Executive Officer shall report to the authorizing committees annually on all limitations increased under this subsection, with an explanation of the compelling needs justifying such increases.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §189, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1612, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1539.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

[1] *So in original. The comma probably should not appear.*

§12645d. Matching funds for severely economically distressed communities

(a) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, a severely economically distressed community that receives assistance from the Corporation for any program under the national service laws shall not be subject to any requirements to provide matching funds for any such program, and the Federal share of such assistance for such a community may be 100 percent.

(b) Severely economically distressed community

For the purposes of this section, the term "severely economically distressed community" means—

(1) an area that has a mortgage foreclosure rate, home price decline, and unemployment rate all of which are above the national average for such rates or level, for the most recent 12 months for which satisfactory data are available; or

(2) a residential area that lacks basic living necessities, such as water and sewer systems, electricity, paved roads, and safe, sanitary housing.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §189A, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1612, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1539.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12645e. Audits and reports

The Corporation shall comply with applicable audit and reporting requirements as provided in the Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990 (31 U.S.C. 901 note; Public Law 101–576) and chapter 91 of title 31 (commonly known as the "Government Corporation Control Act"). The Corporation shall report to the authorizing committees any failure to comply with such requirements.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §189B, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1612, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1540.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 101–576, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2838. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1990 Amendment note set out under section 501 of Title 31, Money and Finance, and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12645f. Restrictions on Federal Government and use of Federal funds

(a) General prohibition

Nothing in the national service laws shall be construed to authorize an officer or employee of the Federal Government to mandate, direct, or control a State, local educational agency, or school's curriculum, program of instruction, or allocation of State or local resources, or mandate a State or any subdivision thereof to spend any funds or incur any costs not paid for under this chapter.

(b) Prohibition on endorsement of curriculum

Notwithstanding any other prohibition of Federal law, no funds provided to the Corporation under this chapter may be used by the Corporation to endorse, approve, or sanction any curriculum designed to be used in an elementary school or secondary school.

(c) Prohibition on requiring Federal approval or certification standards

Notwithstanding any other provision of Federal law, not [1] State shall be required to have academic content or student academic achievement standards approved or certified by the Federal Government, in order to receive assistance under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §189C, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1612, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1540.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "no".*

§12645g. Criminal history checks

(a) In general

Each entity selecting individuals to serve in a position in which the individuals receive a living allowance, stipend, national service educational award, or salary through a program receiving assistance under the national service laws, shall, subject to regulations and requirements established by the Corporation, conduct criminal history checks for such individuals.

(b) Requirements

A criminal history check under subsection (a) shall, except in cases approved for good cause by the Corporation, include—

(1) a name-based search of the National Sex Offender Registry established under the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 (42 U.S.C. 16901 et seq.); and

(2)(A) a search of the State criminal registry or repository in the State in which the program is operating and the State in which the individual resides at the time of application; or

(B) submitting fingerprints to the Federal Bureau of Investigation for a national criminal history background check.

(c) Eligibility prohibition

An individual shall be ineligible to serve in a position described under subsection (a) if such individual—

(1) refuses to consent to the criminal history check described in subsection (b);

(2) makes a false statement in connection with such criminal history check;

(3) is registered, or is required to be registered, on a State sex offender registry or the National Sex Offender Registry established under the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 (42 U.S.C. 16901 et seq.); or

(4) has been convicted of murder, as described in section 1111 of title 18.

(d) Special rule for individuals working with vulnerable populations

(1) In general

Notwithstanding subsection (b), on and after the date that is 2 years after April 21, 2009, a criminal history check under subsection (a) for each individual described in paragraph (2) shall, except for an entity described in paragraph (3), include—

(A) a name-based search of the National Sex Offender Registry established under the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 (42 U.S.C. 16901 et seq.);

(B) a search of the State criminal registry or repository in the State in which the program is operating and the State in which the individual resides at the time of application; and

(C) submitting fingerprints to the Federal Bureau of Investigation for a national criminal history background check.

(2) Individuals with access to vulnerable populations

An individual described in this paragraph is an individual age 18 or older who—

(A) serves in a position in which the individual receives a living allowance, stipend, national service educational award, or salary through a program receiving assistance under the national service laws; and

(B) as a result of such individual's service in such position, has or will have access, on a recurring basis, to—

(i) children age 17 years or younger;

(ii) individuals age 60 years or older; or

(iii) individuals with disabilities.

(3) Exceptions

The provisions of this subsection shall not apply to an entity—

(A) where the service provided by individuals serving with the entity to a vulnerable population described in paragraph (2)(B) is episodic in nature or for a 1-day period;

(B) where the cost to the entity of complying with this subsection is prohibitive;

(C) where the entity is not authorized, or is otherwise unable, under State law, to access the national criminal history background check system of the Federal Bureau of Investigation;

(D) where the entity is not authorized, or is otherwise unable, under Federal law, to access the national criminal history background check system of the Federal Bureau of Investigation; or

(E) to which the Corporation otherwise provides an exemption from this subsection for good cause.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §189D, as added and amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §§1612, 1614(a), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1540, 1541.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006, referred to in subsecs. (b)(1), (c)(3), and (d)(1)(A), is Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 587, which enacted chapter 151 (§16901 et seq.) of this title and enacted, amended, and repealed numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13, §1614(a), added subsec. (d).

EFFECTIVE DATE

Enactment and amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

Division G—Corporation for National and Community Service

§12651. Corporation for National and Community Service

There is established a Corporation for National and Community Service that shall administer the programs established under the national service laws. The Corporation shall be a Government corporation, as defined in section 103 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §191, as added and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §§202(a), 203(a)(1)(B), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 873, 891.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12651, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §190, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3168; Pub. L. 102–10, §9, Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 31; Pub. L. 102–384, §§4, 10, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1455, 1456, provided for establishment of Commission on National and Community Service, prior to the general amendment of subtitle G of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 [former part G of this subchapter] by Pub. L. 103–82, §202(a).

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(1)(B), which directed amendment of section 191 of subtitle I of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 by substituting "the national service laws" for "this chapter", was executed to this section, which is section 191 of subtitle G of title I of the National Community Service Act of 1990, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §203(d), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 895, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), this section [amending this section and sections 12639, 12651b to 12651d, 12651f, and 12651g of this title, repealing sections 5041 and 5042 of this title, and enacting provisions set out below], and the amendments made by this section, shall take effect—

"(A) 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 21, 1993]; or

"(B) on such earlier date as the President shall determine to be appropriate and announce by proclamation published in the Federal Register.

"(2) TRANSITION.—Subsection (c)(10) [set out below] shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 21, 1993]."

[Section 203, and the amendments made by section 203, of Pub. L. 103–82 became effective Apr. 4, 1994, pursuant to Proc. No. 6662, Apr. 4, 1994, 59 F.R. 16507, set out below.]

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §202(i), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 891, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), or paragraph (2) or (3) of subsection (g) [amending sections 8F and 9 of the Inspector General Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–452, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 8F and 9 of such act], the amendments made by this section [enacting this division and section 8E of the Inspector General Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–452, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, amending section 5041 of this title, sections 4, 8F, 8G, 9, and 11 of the Inspector General Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–452, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, sections 9101 and 9105 of Title 31, Money and Finance, section 410 of Title 39, Postal Service, and section 484 of former Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works] shall take effect on October 1, 1993.

"(2) ESTABLISHMENT AND APPOINTMENT AUTHORITIES.—Sections 191, 192, and 193 of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 [42 U.S.C. 12651, 12651a, 12651c], as added by subsection (a), shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 21, 1993]."

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS OF COMMISSION ON NATIONAL AND COMMUNITY SERVICE

Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §202(c), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 888, provided that:

"(1) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this subsection, unless otherwise provided or indicated by the context, each term specified in section 203(c)(1) [set out below] shall have the meaning given the term in such section.

"(2) TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS.—There are transferred to the Corporation the functions that the Board

of Directors or Executive Director of the Commission on National and Community Service exercised before the effective date of this subsection (including all related functions of any officer or employee of the Commission).

"(3) APPLICATION.—The provisions of paragraphs (3) through (10) of section 203(c) [set out below] shall apply with respect to the transfer described in paragraph (2), except that—

"(A) for purposes of such application, references to the term 'ACTION Agency' shall be deemed to be references to the Commission on National and Community Service; and

"(B) paragraph (10) of such section shall not preclude the transfer of the members of the Board of Directors of the Commission to the Corporation if, on the effective date of this subsection, the Board of Directors of the Corporation has not been confirmed."

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS FROM ACTION AGENCY

Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §203(c), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 892, provided that:

"(1) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this subsection, unless otherwise provided or indicated by the context—

"(A) the term 'Chief Executive Officer' means the Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation;

"(B) the term 'Corporation' means the Corporation for National and Community Service, established under section 191 of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 [42 U.S.C. 12651];

"(C) the term 'Federal agency' has the meaning given to the term 'agency' by section 551(1) of title 5, United States Code;

"(D) the term 'function' means any duty, obligation, power, authority, responsibility, right, privilege, activity, or program; and

"(E) the term 'office' includes any office, administration, agency, institute, unit, organizational entity, or component thereof.

"(2) TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS.—There are transferred to the Corporation the functions that the Director of the ACTION Agency exercised before the effective date of this subsection [see Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note above] (including all related functions of any officer or employee of the ACTION Agency).

"(3) DETERMINATIONS OF CERTAIN FUNCTIONS BY THE OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET.—If necessary, the Office of Management and Budget shall make any determination of the functions that are transferred under paragraph (2).

"(4) REORGANIZATION.—The Chief Executive Officer is authorized to allocate or reallocate any function transferred under paragraph (2) among the officers of the Corporation.

"(5) TRANSFER AND ALLOCATIONS OF APPROPRIATIONS AND PERSONNEL.—Except as otherwise provided in this subsection, the personnel employed in connection with, and the assets, liabilities, contracts, property, records, and unexpended balances of appropriations, authorizations, allocations, and other funds employed, used, held, arising from, available to, or to be made available in connection with the functions transferred by this subsection, subject to section 1531 of title 31, United States Code, shall be transferred to the Corporation. Unexpended funds transferred pursuant to this paragraph shall be used only for the purposes for which the funds were originally authorized and appropriated.

"(6) INCIDENTAL TRANSFER.—The Director of the Office of Management and Budget, at such time or times as the Director shall provide, is authorized to make such determinations as may be necessary with regard to the functions transferred by this subsection, and to make such additional incidental dispositions of personnel, assets, liabilities, grants, contracts, property, records, and unexpended balances of appropriations, authorizations, allocations, and other funds held, used, arising from, available to, or to be made available in connection with such functions, as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of this subsection. The Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall provide for the termination of the affairs of all entities terminated by this subsection and for such further measures and dispositions as may be necessary to effectuate the purposes of this subsection.

"(7) EFFECT ON PERSONNEL.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise provided by this subsection, the transfer pursuant to this subsection of full-time personnel (except special Government employees) and part-time personnel holding permanent positions shall be to positions in the Corporation subject to section 195(a) of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 [42 U.S.C. 12651f(a)], as added by section 202(a) of this Act, and shall not cause any such employee to be separated or reduced in grade or compensation, or to have the benefits of the employee reduced, for 1 year after the date of transfer of such employee under this subsection, and such transfer shall be deemed to be a transfer of functions for purposes of section 3503 of title 5, United States Code.

"(B) EXECUTIVE SCHEDULE POSITIONS.—Except as otherwise provided in this subsection, any person who, on the day preceding the effective date of this subsection [see Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note above], held a position compensated in accordance with the Executive Schedule prescribed in chapter 53 of title 5, United States Code, and who, without a break in service, is appointed in the Corporation to a position having duties comparable to the duties performed immediately preceding such appointment shall continue to be compensated in such new position at not less than the rate provided for such previous position, for the duration of the service of such person in such new position.

"(C) TERMINATION OF CERTAIN POSITIONS.—Positions whose incumbents are appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, the functions of which are transferred by this subsection, shall terminate on the effective date of this subsection.

"(8) SAVINGS PROVISIONS.—

"(A) CONTINUING EFFECT OF LEGAL DOCUMENTS.—All orders, determinations, rules, regulations, permits, agreements, grants, contracts, certificates, licenses, registrations, privileges, and other administrative actions—

"(i) that have been issued, made, granted, or allowed to become effective by the President, any Federal agency or official thereof, or by a court of competent jurisdiction, in the performance of functions that are transferred under this subsection; and

"(ii) that are in effect at the time this subsection takes effect [see Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note above], or were final before the effective date of this subsection and are to become effective on or after the effective date of this subsection,

shall continue in effect according to their terms until modified, terminated, superseded, set aside, or revoked in accordance with law by the President, the Chief Executive Officer, or other authorized official, a court of competent jurisdiction, or by operation of law.

"(B) PROCEEDINGS NOT AFFECTED.—The provisions of this subsection shall not affect any proceedings, including notices of proposed rulemaking, or any application for any license, permit, certificate, or financial assistance pending before the ACTION Agency at the time this subsection takes effect, with respect to functions transferred by this subsection. Such proceedings and applications shall be continued. Orders shall be issued in such proceedings, appeals shall be taken therefrom, and payments shall be made pursuant to such orders, as if this subsection had not been enacted, and orders issued in any such proceedings shall continue in effect until modified, terminated, superseded, or revoked by a duly authorized official, by a court of competent jurisdiction, or by operation of law. Nothing in this subparagraph shall be deemed to prohibit the discontinuance or modification of any such proceeding under the same terms and conditions and to the same extent that such proceeding could have been discontinued or modified if this subsection had not been enacted.

"(C) SUITS NOT AFFECTED.—The provisions of this subsection shall not affect suits commenced before the effective date of this subsection, and in all such suits, proceedings shall be had, appeals taken, and judgments rendered in the same manner and with the same effect as if this subsection had not been enacted.

"(D) NONABATEMENT OF ACTIONS.—No suit, action, or other proceeding commenced by or against the ACTION Agency, or by or against any individual in the official capacity of such individual as an officer of the ACTION Agency, shall abate by reason of the enactment of this subsection.

"(E) ADMINISTRATIVE ACTIONS RELATING TO PROMULGATION OF REGULATIONS .—Any administrative action relating to the preparation or promulgation of a regulation by the ACTION Agency relating to a function transferred under this subsection may be continued by the Corporation with the same effect as if this subsection had not been enacted.

"(9) SEVERABILITY.—If a provision of this subsection or its application to any person or circumstance is held invalid, neither the remainder of this subsection nor the application of the provision to other persons or circumstances shall be affected.

"(10) TRANSITION.—Prior to, or after, any transfer of a function under this subsection, the Chief Executive Officer is authorized to utilize—

"(A) the services of such officers, employees, and other personnel of the ACTION Agency with respect to functions that will be or have been transferred to the Corporation by this subsection; and

"(B) funds appropriated to such functions for such period of time as may reasonably be needed to facilitate the orderly implementation of this subsection."

STUDY TO EXAMINE AND INCREASE SERVICE PROGRAMS FOR DISPLACED WORKERS IN SERVICES CORPS AND COMMUNITY SERVICE AND TO DEVELOP PILOT PROGRAM PLANNING STUDY

Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1710, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1549, provided that:

"(a) PLANNING STUDY.—The Corporation shall conduct a study to identify—

"(1) specific areas of need for displaced workers;

"(2) how existing programs and activities (as of the time of the study) carried out under the national service laws could better serve displaced workers and communities that have been adversely affected by plant closings and job losses;

"(3) prospects for better utilization of displaced workers as resources and volunteers; and

"(4) methods for ensuring the efficient financial organization of services directed towards displaced workers.

"(b) CONSULTATION.—The study shall be carried out in consultation with the Secretary of Labor, State labor agencies, and other individuals and entities the Corporation considers appropriate.

"(c) REPORT.—Not later than 1 year after the effective date of this Act [for general effective date of Pub. L. 111–13 as Oct. 1, 2009, see Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title], the Corporation shall submit to the authorizing committees a report on the results of the planning study required by subsection (a), together with a plan for implementation of a pilot program using promising strategies and approaches for better targeting and serving displaced workers.

"(d) PILOT PROGRAM.—From amounts made available to carry out this section, the Corporation shall develop and carry out a pilot program based on the findings and plan in the report submitted under subsection (c).

"(e) DEFINITIONS.—In this section, the terms 'Corporation', 'authorizing committees', and 'national service laws' have the meanings given the terms in section 101 of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12511).

"(f) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2010 through 2014."

CONTINUING PERFORMANCE OF CERTAIN FUNCTIONS BY COMMISSION ON NATIONAL AND COMMUNITY SERVICE

Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §202(d), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 888, provided that: "The individuals who, on the day before the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 21, 1993], are performing any of the functions required by section 190 of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12651), as in effect on such date, to be performed by the members of the Board of Directors of the Commission on National and Community Service may, subject to section 193A of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 [42 U.S.C. 12651d], as added by subsection (a) of this section, continue to perform such functions until the date on which the Board of Directors of the Corporation for National and Community Service conducts the first meeting of the Board. The service of such individuals as members of the Board of Directors of such Commission, and the employment of such individuals as special Government employees, shall terminate on such date."

BUSINESS PLAN FOR CORPORATION FOR NATIONAL AND COMMUNITY SERVICE

Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §204, Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 895, provided that:

"(a) BUSINESS PLAN REQUIRED.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Corporation for National and Community Service (referred to in this section as the 'Corporation') shall prepare and submit to Congress a business plan. The Corporation may not provide assistance under section 121 of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 [42 U.S.C. 12571] before the twentieth day of continuous session of Congress after the date on which the Corporation submits the business plan to Congress.

"(2) COMPUTATION.—For purposes of the computation of the 20-day period referred to in paragraph (1), continuity of a session of the Congress shall be considered to be broken only by—

"(A) an adjournment of the Congress sine die; and

"(B) the days on which either House is not in session because of an adjournment of more than 3 days to a date certain.

"(b) REQUIRED ELEMENTS OF BUSINESS PLAN.—

"(1) ALLOCATION OF FUNDS.—The business plan shall contain—

"(A) a description of the manner in which the Corporation will allocate funds for programs carried out by the Corporation after October 1, 1993;

"(B) information on the principal offices and officers of the Corporation that will allocate such funds; and

"(C) information that indicates how accountability for such funds can be determined, in terms of the office or officer responsible for such funds.

"(2) INVESTIGATIVE AND AUDIT FUNCTIONS.—The business plan shall include a description of

the plans of the Corporation—

"(A) to ensure continuity, during the transition period, and after the transition period, in the investigative and audit functions carried out by the Inspector General of ACTION prior to such period, consistent with the Inspector General Act of 1978 (5 U.S.C. App.); and

"(B) to carry out investigative and audit functions and implement financial management controls regarding programs carried out by the Corporation after October 1, 1993, consistent with the Inspector General Act of 1978, including a specific description of—

"(i) the manner in which the Office of Inspector General shall be established in the Corporation, in accordance with section 194(b) of the National Community Service Act of 1990 [42 U.S.C. 12651e(b)], as added by section 202 of this Act; and

"(ii) the manner in which grants made by the Corporation shall be audited by such Office and the financial management controls that shall apply with regard to such grants and programs.

"(3) ACCOUNTABILITY MEASURES.—The business plan shall include a detailed description of the accountability measures to be established by the Corporation to ensure effective control of all funds for programs carried out by the Corporation after October 1, 1993.

"(4) INFORMATION RESOURCES.—The business plan shall include a description of an information resource management program that will support the program and financial management needs of the Corporation.

"(5) CORPORATION STAFFING AND INTEGRATION OF ACTION.—

"(A) TRANSFERS.—The business plan shall include a report on the progress and plans of the President for transferring the functions, programs, and related personnel of ACTION to the Corporation, and shall include a timetable for the transfer.

"(B) DETAILS AND ASSIGNMENTS.—The report shall specify the number of ACTION employees detailed or assigned to the Corporation, and describe the hiring activity of the Corporation, during the transition period.

"(C) STRUCTURE.—The business plan shall include a description of the organizational structure of the Corporation during the transition period.

"(D) STAFFING.—The business plan shall include a description of—

"(i) measures to ensure adequate staffing during the transition period with respect to programs carried out by the Corporation after October 1, 1993; and

"(ii) the responsibilities and authorities of the Managing Directors and other key personnel of the Corporation.

"(E) SENIOR EXECUTIVE SERVICE.—The business plan shall include—

"(i) an explanation of the number of the employees of the Corporation who will be paid at or above the rate of pay for level 1 of the Senior Executive Service Schedule under section 5382 of title 5, United States Code; and

"(ii) information justifying such pay for such employees.

"(6) DUPLICATION OF FUNCTIONS.—The business plan shall include a description of the measures that the Corporation is taking or will take to minimize duplication of functions in the Corporation caused by the transfer of the functions of the Commission on National and Community Service, and the transfer of the functions of ACTION, to the Corporation. This description shall address functions at both the national and State levels.

"(c) DEFINITION.—The term 'transition period' means the period beginning on October 1, 1993 and ending on the day before the effective date of section 203(c)(2) [see Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note above]."

PROC. NO. 6662. TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS OF ACTION AGENCY TO CORPORATION FOR NATIONAL AND COMMUNITY SERVICE

Proc. No. 6662, Apr. 4, 1994, 59 F.R. 16507, provided:

On September 21, 1993, I had the honor of signing into law the National and Community Service Trust Act of 1993 [Pub. L. 103–82, see Tables for classification], which created the Corporation for National and Community Service. The Corporation was designed to involve Americans of all ages and backgrounds in community projects to address many of our Nation's most important needs—from educating our children to ensuring public safety to protecting our environment. It was chartered to foster civic responsibility, strengthening the ties that bind us together as a people, while providing educational opportunity for those who make the commitment to serve.

In the few short months since the Corporation's establishment, enormous progress has been made toward the achievement of these invaluable goals. Final regulations have been published governing the Corporation's

new grant programs, grant application packages have been developed, and a national recruitment effort has begun. As a result of intensive outreach efforts, most states have already established State Commissions on National and Community Service, and many local programs, national nonprofit organizations, institutions of higher education, and Federal agencies are eager to participate. Grant competitions have begun for a summer program that will focus on our Nation's public safety concerns, and all community service grant competitions will be completed by this summer. Finally, the Corporation has established the National Civilian Community Corps, which will take advantage of closed and down-sized military bases to launch environmental clean-up and preservation efforts.

The ACTION Agency, provided for by the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 [42 U.S.C. 4950 et seq.], has worked closely with the Corporation, sharing its many years of experience in engaging Americans in service to their communities. Because the Corporation's initiatives and those programs operated by the ACTION Agency involve similar goals, the National and Community Service Trust Act calls for the merger of ACTION with the Corporation no later than March 22, 1995. To build upon the tremendous accomplishments already achieved by the Corporation, and to facilitate the further development of community service programs across the country, I am pleased to order that the functions of the Director of the ACTION Agency be transferred to the Corporation for National and Community Service.

NOW, THEREFORE, I, WILLIAM J. CLINTON, President of the United States of America, acting under the authority vested in me by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including but not limited to sections 203(c)(2) and (d)(1)(B) of the National and Community Service Trust Act of 1993 [set out above], proclaim that all functions of the Director of the ACTION Agency are hereby transferred to the Corporation for National and Community Service, effective April 4, 1994.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand this fourth day of April, in the year of our Lord nineteen hundred and ninety-four, and of the Independence of the United States of America the two hundred and eighteenth.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

EX. ORD. NO. 12819. ESTABLISHING PRESIDENTIAL YOUTH AWARD FOR COMMUNITY SERVICE

Ex. Ord. No. 12819, Oct. 28, 1992, 57 F.R. 49369, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including section 12651 of title 42 of the United States Code [see 42 U.S.C. 12653a], it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. A youth award for community service is hereby established. The award shall recognize outstanding voluntary community service contributions made by individuals between the ages of 5 and 22.

SEC. 2. The Director of the White House Office of National Service shall establish the criteria for the award. The criteria shall be based upon participation in voluntary community service activity. The award may be bestowed upon any eligible individual who meets the established criteria.

SEC. 3. The selection process for the award shall be administered by the Commission on National and Community Service and the White House Office of National Service. Such other individuals and entities as the Director of the White House Office of National Service deems appropriate may participate in the selection process.

SEC. 4. The award shall be presented by the President, his designee or designees, or individuals designated by the Director of the White House Office of National Service.

SEC. 5. The name and design of the award shall be approved by the President upon the recommendation of the Director of the White House Office of National Service.

GEORGE BUSH.

EX. ORD. NO. 13285. PRESIDENT'S COUNCIL ON SERVICE AND CIVIC PARTICIPATION

Ex. Ord. No. 13285, Jan. 29, 2003, 68 F.R. 5203, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 13371, Jan. 27, 2005, 70 F.R. 5041; Ex. Ord. No. 13424, Jan. 26, 2007, 72 F.R. 4409; Ex. Ord. No. 13471, Aug. 28, 2008, 73 F.R. 51209, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, and in order to encourage the recognition of volunteer service and civic participation by all Americans, and especially America's youth, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *The President's Council on Service and Civic Participation*. (a) There is hereby established within the Corporation for National and Community Services [Service] (CNCS) the President's Council on Service and Civic Participation (Council).

(b) The Council shall be composed of up to 25 members, including representatives of America's youth,

appointed by the President. Each member shall serve for a term of 2 years and may continue to serve after the expiration of their term until a successor is appointed. The President shall designate one member to serve as Chair and one member to serve as Vice Chair. Subject to the direction of the Chief Executive Officer of the CNCS, the Chair, and in the Chair's absence the Vice Chair, shall convene and preside at the meetings of the Council, determine its agenda, and direct its work.

(c) To conduct and vote on official business during meetings, the Council must convene a quorum of at least 10 Council members.

SEC. 2. *Mission and Functions of the Council.*

(a) The mission and functions of the Council shall be to:

(i) promote volunteer service and civic participation in American society;

(ii) encourage the recognition of outstanding volunteer service through the presentation of the President's Volunteer Service Award by Council members and Certifying Organizations, thereby encouraging more such activity;

(iii) promote the efforts and needs of local non-profits and volunteer organizations, including volunteer centers;

(iv) promote greater public access to information about existing volunteer opportunities, including via the Internet;

(v) assist with the promotion of Federally administered volunteer programs and the link that they have to increasing and strengthening community volunteer service; and

(vi) promote increased and sustained private sector sponsorship of and engagement in volunteer service.

(b) In carrying out its mission, the Council shall:

(i) encourage broad participation in the President's Volunteer Service Award program by qualified individuals and groups, especially students in primary schools, secondary schools, and institutions of higher learning;

(ii) exchange information and ideas with interested individuals and organizations on ways to expand and improve volunteer service and civic participation;

(iii) advise the Chief Executive Officer of the CNCS on broad dissemination, especially among schools and youth organizations, of information regarding recommended practices for the promotion of volunteer service and civic participation, and other relevant educational and promotional materials;

(iv) monitor and advise the Chief Executive Officer of the CNCS on the need for the enhancement of materials disseminated pursuant to subsection 2(b)(iii) of this order; and

(v) make recommendations from time to time to the President, through the Director of the USA Freedom Corps, on ways to encourage greater levels of volunteer service and civic participation by individuals, schools, and organizations.

SEC. 3. *Administration*. (a) Each Federal agency, to the extent permitted by law and subject to the availability of appropriations, shall furnish such information and assistance to the Council as the Council may, with the approval of the Director of the USA Freedom Corps, request.

(b) The members of the Council shall serve without compensation for their work on the Council. Members of the Council who are not officers or employees of the United States may receive travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by law for persons serving intermittently in the Government (5 U.S.C. 5701–5707).

(c) To the extent permitted by law, the Chief Executive Officer of the CNCS shall furnish the Council with necessary staff, supplies, facilities, and other administrative services and shall pay the expenses of the Council.

(d) The Chief Executive Officer of the CNCS shall appoint an Executive Director to head the staff of the Council.

(e) The Council, with the approval of the Chief Executive Officer of the CNCS, may establish subcommittees of the Council, consisting exclusively of members of the Council, as appropriate to aid the Council in carrying out its mission under this order.

SEC. 4. *General Provisions*. (a) Insofar as the Federal Advisory Committee Act, as amended (5 U.S.C. App.) (Act), may apply to the administration of any portion of this order, any functions of the President under the Act, except that of reporting to the Congress, shall be performed by the Chief Executive Officer of CNCS in accordance with the guidelines and procedures issued by the Administrator of General Services.

(b) Unless further extended by the President, this order shall expire on June 30, 2009.

(c) This order is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity, by any party against the United States, its departments, agencies, or entities, its officers, employees, or agents, or any other person.

GEORGE W. BUSH.

§12651a. Board of Directors

(a) Composition

(1) In general

There shall be in the Corporation a Board of Directors (referred to in this division as the "Board") that shall be composed of—

(A) 15 members, including an individual between the ages of 16 and 25 who—

(i) has served in a school-based or community-based service-learning program; or

(ii) is or was a participant or a supervisor in a program;

to be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate; and

(B) the ex officio nonvoting members described in paragraph (3).

(2) Qualifications

To the maximum extent practicable, the President shall appoint members—

(A) who have extensive experience in volunteer or service activities, which may include programs funded under one of the national service laws, and in State government;

(B) who represent a broad range of viewpoints;

(C) who are experts in the delivery of human, educational, environmental, or public safety services;

(D) so that the Board shall be diverse according to race, ethnicity, age, gender, and disability characteristics; and

(E) so that no more than 50 percent of the appointed members of the Board, plus 1 additional appointed member, are from a single political party.

(3) Ex officio members

The Secretary of Education, the Secretary of Health and Human Services, the Secretary of Labor, the Secretary of the Interior, the Secretary of Agriculture, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, the Secretary of Defense, the Attorney General, the Director of the Peace Corps, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, and the Chief Executive Officer shall serve as ex officio nonvoting members of the Board.

(b) Officers

(1) Chairperson

The President shall appoint a member of the Board to serve as the initial Chairperson of the Board. Each subsequent Chairperson shall be elected by the Board from among its members.

(2) Vice Chairperson

The Board shall elect a Vice Chairperson from among its membership.

(3) Other officers

The Board may elect from among its membership such additional officers of the Board as the Board determines to be appropriate.

(c) Terms

Subject to subsection (e), each appointed member shall serve for a term of 5 years.

(d) Vacancies

If a vacancy occurs on the Board, a new member shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and serve for the remainder of the term for which the predecessor of such member was appointed. The vacancy shall not affect the power of the remaining members to execute the duties of the Board.

(e) Service until appointment of successor

A voting member of the Board whose term has expired may continue to serve on the Board until the date on which the member's successor takes office, which period shall not exceed 1 year.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §192, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §202(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 873; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1701, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1544.)

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–13, §1701(1), added subsec. (c) and struck out former subsec. (c), which provided term lengths for members first appointed to the Board.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–13, §1701(2), added subsec. (e).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Sept. 21, 1993, see section 202(i)(2) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

§12651b. Authorities and duties of the Board of Directors

(a) Meetings

The Board shall meet not less often than 3 times each year. The Board shall hold additional meetings at the call of the Chairperson of the Board, or if 6 members of the Board request such meetings in writing.

(b) Quorum

A majority of the appointed members of the Board shall constitute a quorum.

(c) Authorities of officers

(1) Chairperson

The Chairperson of the Board may call and conduct meetings of the Board.

(2) Vice Chairperson

The Vice Chairperson of the Board may conduct meetings of the Board in the absence of the Chairperson.

(d) Expenses

While away from their homes or regular places of business on the business of the Board, members of such Board shall be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, at rates authorized for employees of agencies under subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5 for persons employed intermittently in the Government service.

(e) Special Government employees

For purposes of the provisions of chapter 11 of part I of title 18, and any other provision of Federal law, a member of the Board (to whom such provisions would not otherwise apply except for this subsection) shall be a special Government employee.

(f) Status of members

(1) Tort claims

For the purposes of the tort claims provisions of chapter 171 of title 28, a member of the Board shall be considered to be a Federal employee.

(2) Other claims

A member of the Board shall have no personal liability under Federal law with respect to any claim arising out of or resulting from any act or omission by such person, within the scope of the service of the member on the Board, in connection with any transaction involving the provision of

financial assistance by the Corporation. This paragraph shall not be construed to limit personal liability for criminal acts or omissions, willful or malicious misconduct, acts or omissions for private gain, or any other act or omission outside the scope of the service of such member on the Board.

(3) Effect on other law

This subsection shall not be construed—

(A) to affect any other immunities and protections that may be available to such member under applicable law with respect to such transactions;

(B) to affect any other right or remedy against the Corporation, against the United States under applicable law, or against any person other than a member of the Board participating in such transactions; or

(C) to limit or alter in any way the immunities that are available under applicable law for Federal officials and employees not described in this subsection.

(g) Duties

The Board shall have responsibility for setting overall policy for the Corporation and shall—

(1) review and approve the strategic plan described in section 12651d(b)(1) of this title, and annual updates of the plan, and review the budget proposal in advance of submission to the Office of Management and Budget;

(2) review and approve the proposal described in section 12651d(b)(2)(A) of this title, with respect to the grants, allotments, contracts, financial assistance, payment, and positions referred to in such section;

(3) review and approve the proposal described in section 12651d(b)(3)(A) of this title, regarding the regulations, standards, policies, procedures, programs, and initiatives referred to in such section;

(4) review and approve the evaluation plan described in section 12651d(b)(4)(A) of this title;

(5)(A) review, and advise the Chief Executive Officer regarding, the actions of the Chief Executive Officer with respect to the personnel of the Corporation, and with respect to such standards, policies, procedures, programs, and initiatives as are necessary or appropriate to carry out the national service laws;

(B) inform the Chief Executive Officer of any aspects of the actions of the Chief Executive Officer that are not in compliance with the annual strategic plan referred to in paragraph (1), the proposals referred to in paragraphs (2) and (3), or the plan referred to in paragraph (4), or are not consistent with the objectives of the national service laws; and

(C) review the performance of the Chief Executive Officer annually and forward a report on that review to the President;

(6) receive any report as provided under subsection (b), (c), or (d) of section 8E [1] of the Inspector General Act of 1978;

(7) make recommendations relating to a program of research for the Corporation with respect to national and community service programs, including service-learning programs;

(8) advise the President and the authorizing committees concerning developments in national and community service that merit the attention of the President and the authorizing committees;

(9) ensure effective dissemination of information regarding the programs and initiatives of the Corporation;

(10) notwithstanding any other provision of law—

(A) make grants to or contracts with Federal and other public departments or agencies, and private nonprofit organizations, for the assignment or referral of volunteers under the provisions of title I of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 [42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq.] (except as provided in section 108 of such Act [42 U.S.C. 4958]), which may provide that the agency or organization shall pay all or a part of the costs of the program; and

(B) enter into agreements with other Federal agencies or private nonprofit organizations for the support of programs under the national service laws, which—

(i) may provide that the agency or organization shall pay all or a part of the costs of the

program, except as is provided in section 12571(b) of this title; and

(ii) shall provide that the program (including any program operated by another Federal agency) will comply with all requirements related to evaluation, performance, and other goals applicable to similar programs under the national service laws, as determined by the Corporation,

(11) prepare and make recommendations to the authorizing committees and the President for changes in the national service laws resulting from the studies and demonstrations the Chief Executive Officer is required to carry out under section 12651d(b)(11) of this title, which recommendations shall be submitted to the authorizing committees and President not later than January 1, 2012.

(h) Administration

The Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.) shall not apply with respect to the Board.

(i) Limitation on participation

All employees and officers of the Corporation shall recuse themselves from decisions that would constitute conflicts of interest.

(j) Coordination with other Federal activities

As part of the agenda of meetings of the Board under subsection (a), the Board shall review projects and programs conducted or funded by the Corporation under the national service laws to improve the coordination between such projects and programs, and the activities of other Federal agencies that deal with the individuals and communities participating in or benefiting from such projects and programs. The ex officio members of the Board specified in section 12651a(a)(3) of this title shall jointly plan, implement, and fund activities in connection with projects and programs conducted under the national service laws to ensure that Federal efforts attempt to address the total needs of participants in such programs and projects, their communities, and the persons and communities the participants serve.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §192A, as added and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §§202(a), 203(a)(1)(B), (2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 875, 891; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1702, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1544.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 8E of the Inspector General Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (g)(6), is section 8E of Pub. L. 95–452, as added by Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §202(g)(1), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 889, which was renumbered section 8F of the Act by Pub. L. 103–204, §23(a)(3), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2408, and is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (g)(10)(A), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§4951 et seq.) of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (h), is Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–13, §1702(1), substituted "shall have responsibility for setting overall policy for the Corporation and shall—" for "shall—" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1702(2), inserted ", and review the budget proposal in advance of submission to the Office of Management and Budget" before semicolon at end.

Subsec. (g)(5)(C). Pub. L. 111–13, §1702(3), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (g)(8). Pub. L. 111–13, §1702(4), substituted "the authorizing committees" for "the Congress" in two places.

Subsec. (g)(10). Pub. L. 111–13, §1702(5), added par. (10) and struck out former par. (10) which read as follows: "notwithstanding any other provision of law, make grants to or contracts with Federal or other public departments or agencies and private nonprofit organizations for the assignment or referral of volunteers under the provisions of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (except as provided in section 108 of the

Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973), which may provide that the agency or organization shall pay all or a part of the costs of the program; and".

Subsec. (g)(11). Pub. L. 111–13, §1702(6), substituted "authorizing committees" for "Congress" in two places, "section 12651d(b)(11)" for "section 12651d(b)(10)", and "January 1, 2012" for "September 30, 1995".

1993—Subsec. (g)(5)(A), (B). Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(1)(B), which directed amendment of section 192A(g)(5) of subtitle I of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 by substituting "the national service laws" for "this chapter", was executed to subsec. (g)(5) of this section, which is section 192A of subtitle G of title I of the National Community Service Act of 1990, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (g)(9). Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(2)(A), struck out "and" at end.

Subsec. (g)(10). Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(2)(C), added par. (10). Former par. (10) redesignated (11).

Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(1)(B), which directed amendment of section 192A(g)(10) of subtitle I of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 by substituting "the national service laws" for "this chapter", was executed to subsec. (g)(10) of this section, which is section 192A of subtitle G of title I of the National Community Service Act of 1990, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (g)(11). Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(2)(B), redesignated par. (10) as (11).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 203(a)(1)(B), (2) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Apr. 4, 1994, see section 203(d) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 202(i) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12651c. Chief Executive Officer

(a) Appointment

The Corporation shall be headed by an individual who shall serve as Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation, and who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

(b) Compensation

The Chief Executive Officer shall be compensated at the rate provided for level III of the Executive Schedule under section 5314 of title 5, plus 3 percent.

(c) Regulations

The Chief Executive Officer shall prescribe such rules and regulations as are necessary or appropriate to carry out the national service laws.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §193, as added and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §§202(a), 203(a)(1)(B), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 877, 891; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1703, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1545.)

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13 inserted ", plus 3 percent" before period at end.

1993—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(1)(B), which directed amendment of section 193(c) of subtitle I of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 by substituting "the national service laws" for "this chapter", was executed to subsec. (c) of this section, which is section 193 of subtitle G of title I of the National Community Service Act of 1990, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 203(a)(1)(B) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Apr. 4, 1994, see section 203(d) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Sept. 21, 1993, see section 202(i)(2) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 111–13, title VI, §6101(b), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1600, provided that: "Effective on the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 21, 2009], the Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation for National and Community Service may issue such regulations as may be necessary to carry out this Act [see Short Title of 2009 Amendment note set out under section 12501 of this title] and the amendments made by this Act."

§12651d. Authorities and duties of the Chief Executive Officer

(a) General powers and duties

The Chief Executive Officer shall be responsible for the exercise of the powers and the discharge of the duties of the Corporation that are not reserved to the Board, and shall have authority and control over all personnel of the Corporation, except as provided in section 8E [1] of the Inspector General Act of 1978.

(b) Duties

In addition to the duties conferred on the Chief Executive Officer under any other provision of the national service laws, the Chief Executive Officer, in collaboration with the State Commissions, shall—

(1) prepare and submit to the Board a strategic plan, including a plan for having 50 percent of all approved national service positions be full-time positions by 2012, every 3 years, and annual updates of the plan, for the Corporation with respect to the major functions and operations of the Corporation;

(2)(A) prepare and submit to the Board a proposal with respect to such grants and allotments, contracts, other financial assistance, and designation of positions as approved national service positions, as are necessary or appropriate to carry out the national service laws; and

(B) after receiving and reviewing an approved proposal under section 12651b(g)(2) of this title, make such grants and allotments, enter into such contracts, award such other financial assistance, make such payments (in lump sum or installments, and in advance or by way of reimbursement, and in the case of financial assistance otherwise authorized under the national service laws, with necessary adjustments on account of overpayments and underpayments), and designate such positions as approved national service positions, approved summer of service positions, and approved silver scholar positions as are necessary or appropriate to carry out the national service laws;

(3)(A) prepare and submit to the Board a proposal regarding, the regulations established under section 12651f(b)(3)(A) of this title, and such other standards, policies, procedures, programs, and initiatives as are necessary or appropriate to carry out the national service laws; and

(B) after receiving and reviewing an approved proposal under section 12651b(g)(3) of this title—

(i) establish such standards, policies, and procedures as are necessary or appropriate to carry out the national service laws; and

(ii) establish and administer such programs and initiatives as are necessary or appropriate to carry out the national service laws;

(4)(A) prepare and submit to the Board a plan for the evaluation of programs established under the national service laws, in accordance with section 12639 of this title; and

(B) after receiving an approved proposal under section 12651b(g)(4) of this title—

(i) establish measurable performance goals and objectives for such programs, in accordance with section 12639 of this title; and

(ii) provide for periodic evaluation of such programs to assess the manner and extent to which the programs achieve the goals and objectives, in accordance with such section;

(5) consult with appropriate Federal agencies in administering the programs and initiatives;

(6) suspend or terminate payments and positions described in paragraph (2)(B), in accordance with section 12636 of this title;

(7) prepare and submit to the authorizing committees and the Board an annual report on actions taken to achieve the goal of having 50 percent of all approved national service positions be full-time positions by 2012 as described in paragraph (1), including an assessment of the progress made toward achieving that goal and the actions to be taken in the coming year toward achieving that goal;

(8) prepare and submit to the Board an annual report, and such interim reports as may be necessary, describing the major actions of the Chief Executive Officer with respect to the personnel of the Corporation, and with respect to such standards, policies, procedures, programs, and initiatives;

(9) inform the Board of, and provide an explanation to the Board regarding, any substantial differences regarding the implementation of the national service laws between—

(A) the actions of the Chief Executive Officer; and

(B)(i) the strategic plan approved by the Board under section 12651b(g)(1) of this title;

(ii) the proposals approved by the Board under paragraph (2) or (3) of section 12651b(g) of this title; or

(iii) the evaluation plan approved by the Board under section 12651b(g)(4) of this title;

(10) prepare and submit to the authorizing committees an annual report, and such interim reports as may be necessary, describing—

(A) the services referred to in paragraph (1), and the money and property referred to in paragraph (2), of section 12651g(a) of this title that have been accepted by the Corporation;

(B) the manner in which the Corporation used or disposed of such services, money, and property; and

(C) information on the results achieved by the programs funded under the national service laws during the year preceding the year in which the report is prepared;

(11) provide for studies (including the evaluations described in subsection (f)) and demonstrations that evaluate, and prepare and submit to the Board periodically, a report containing recommendations regarding, issues related to—

(A) the administration and organization of programs authorized under the national service laws or under Public Law 91–378 [16 U.S.C. 1701 et seq.] (referred to in this subparagraph as "service programs"), including—

(i) whether the State and national priorities, as described in section 12572(f)(1) of this title, designed to meet unmet human, education, environmental, or public safety needs are being addressed by this chapter;

(ii) the manner in which—

(I) educational and other outcomes of both stipended and nonstipended service and service-learning are defined and measured in such service programs; and

(II) such outcomes should be defined and measured in such service programs;

(iii) whether stipended service programs, and service programs providing educational benefits in return for service, should focus on economically disadvantaged individuals or

at-risk youth or whether such programs should include a mix of individuals, including individuals from middle- and upper-income families;

(iv) the role and importance of stipends and educational benefits in achieving desired outcomes in the service programs;

(v) the potential for cost savings and coordination of support and oversight services from combining functions performed by ACTION State offices and State Commissions;

(vi) the implications of the results from such studies and demonstrations for authorized funding levels for the service programs; and

(vii) other issues that the Director determines to be relevant to the administration and organization of the service programs; and

(B) the number, potential consolidation, and future organization of national service or domestic volunteer service programs that are authorized under Federal law, including VISTA, service corps assisted under division C and other programs authorized by this chapter, programs administered by the Public Health Service, the Department of Defense, or other Federal agencies, programs regarding teacher corps, and programs regarding work-study and higher education loan forgiveness or forbearance programs authorized by the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.) related to community service;

(12) for purposes of section 12638(d)(6)(B) of this title, issue regulations to waive the disqualification of members of the Board and members of the State Commissions selectively in a random, nondiscretionary manner and only to the extent necessary to establish the quorum involved, including rules that forbid each member of the Board and each voting member of a State Commission to participate in any discussion or decision regarding the provision of assistance or approved national service positions, or the continuation, suspension, or termination of such assistance or such positions, to any program or entity of which such member of the Board or such member of the State Commission is, or in the 1-year period before the submission of the application referred to in such section was, an officer, director, trustee, full-time volunteer, or employee;

(13) bolster the public awareness of and recruitment efforts for the wide range of service opportunities for citizens of all ages, regardless of socioeconomic status or geographic location, through a variety of methods, including—

(A) print media;

(B) the Internet and related emerging technologies;

(C) television;

(D) radio;

(E) presentations at public or private forums;

(F) other innovative methods of communication; and

(G) outreach to offices of economic development, State employment security agencies, labor organizations and trade associations, local educational agencies, institutions of higher education, agencies and organizations serving veterans and individuals with disabilities, and other institutions or organizations from which participants for programs receiving assistance from the national service laws can be recruited;

(14) identify and implement methods of recruitment to—

(A) increase the diversity of participants in the programs receiving assistance under the national service laws; and

(B) increase the diversity of service sponsors of programs desiring to receive assistance under the national service laws;

(15) coordinate with organizations of former participants of national service programs for service opportunities that may include capacity building, outreach, and recruitment for programs receiving assistance under the national service laws;

(16) collaborate with organizations with demonstrated expertise in supporting and accommodating individuals with disabilities, including institutions of higher education, to identify and implement methods of recruitment to increase the number of participants who are individuals with disabilities in the programs receiving assistance under the national service laws;

(17) identify and implement recruitment strategies and training programs for bilingual volunteers in the National Senior Service Corps under title II of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 [42 U.S.C. 5000 et seq.];

(18) collaborate with organizations that have established volunteer recruitment programs to increase the recruitment capacity of the Corporation;

(19) where practicable, provide application materials in languages other than English for individuals with limited English proficiency who wish to participate in a national service program;

(20) collaborate with the training and technical assistance programs described in division K with respect to the activities described in section 12657(b) of this title); [2]

(21) coordinate the clearinghouses described in section 12653o of this title;

(22) coordinate with entities receiving funds under division C in establishing the National Service Reserve Corps under section 12653h of this title, through which alumni of the national service programs and veterans can serve in disasters and emergencies (as such terms are defined in section 12653h(a) of this title); [1]

(23) identify and implement strategies to increase awareness among Indian tribes of the types and availability of assistance under the national service laws, increase Native American participation in programs under the national service laws, collect information on challenges facing Native American communities, and designate a Strategic Advisor for Native American Affairs to be responsible for the execution of those activities under the national service laws;

(24) conduct outreach to ensure the inclusion of economically disadvantaged individuals in national service programs and activities authorized under the national service laws; and

(25) ensure that outreach, awareness, and recruitment efforts are consistent with the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101 et seq.) and section 794 of title 29.

(c) Powers

In addition to the authority conferred on the Chief Executive Officer under any other provision of the national service laws, the Chief Executive Officer may—

(1) establish, alter, consolidate, or discontinue such organizational units or components within the Corporation as the Chief Executive Officer considers necessary or appropriate, consistent with Federal law, and shall, to the maximum extent practicable, consolidate such units or components of the divisions of the Corporation described in section 12651e(a)(3) of this title as may be appropriate to enable the two divisions to coordinate common support functions;

(2) with the approval of the President, arrange with and reimburse the heads of other Federal agencies for the performance of any of the provisions of the national service laws;

(3) with their consent, utilize the services and facilities of Federal agencies with or without reimbursement, and, with the consent of any State, or political subdivision of a State, accept and utilize the services and facilities of the agencies of such State or subdivisions without reimbursement;

(4) allocate and expend funds made available under the national service laws;

(5) disseminate, without regard to the provisions of section 3204 of title 39, data and information, in such form as the Chief Executive Officer shall determine to be appropriate to public agencies, private organizations, and the general public;

(6) collect or compromise all obligations to or held by the Chief Executive Officer and all legal or equitable rights accruing to the Chief Executive Officer in connection with the payment of obligations in accordance with chapter 37 of title 31 (commonly known as the "Federal Claims Collection Act of 1966");

(7) file a civil action in any court of record of a State having general jurisdiction or in any district court of the United States, with respect to a claim arising under this chapter;

(8) exercise the authorities of the Corporation under section 12651g of this title;

(9) consolidate the reports to the authorizing committees required under the national service laws, and the report required under section 9106 of title 31, into a single report, and submit the report to the authorizing committees on an annual basis;

(10) obtain the opinions of peer reviewers in evaluating applications to the Corporation for assistance under this subchapter; and

(11) generally perform such functions and take such steps consistent with the objectives and provisions of the national service laws, as the Chief Executive Officer determines to be necessary or appropriate to carry out such provisions.

(d) Delegation

(1) "Function" defined

As used in this subsection, the term "function" means any duty, obligation, power, authority, responsibility, right, privilege, activity, or program.

(2) In general

Except as otherwise prohibited by law or provided in the national service laws, the Chief Executive Officer may delegate any function under the national service laws, and authorize such successive redelegations of such function as may be necessary or appropriate. No delegation of a function by the Chief Executive Officer under this subsection or under any other provision of the national service laws shall relieve such Chief Executive Officer of responsibility for the administration of such function.

(3) Function of Board

The Chief Executive Officer may not delegate a function of the Board without the permission of the Board.

(e) Actions

In an action described in subsection (c)(7)—

(1) a district court referred to in such subsection shall have jurisdiction of such a civil action without regard to the amount in controversy;

(2) such an action brought by the Chief Executive Officer shall survive notwithstanding any change in the person occupying the office of Chief Executive Officer or any vacancy in that office;

(3) no attachment, injunction, garnishment, or other similar process, mesne or final, shall be issued against the Chief Executive Officer or the Board or property under the control of the Chief Executive Officer or the Board; and

(4) nothing in this section shall be construed to except litigation arising out of activities under this chapter from the application of sections 509, 517, 547, and 2679 of title 28.

(f) Evaluations

(1) Evaluation of living allowance

The Corporation shall arrange for an independent evaluation to determine the levels of living allowances paid in all programs under divisions C and I, individually, by State, and by region. Such evaluation shall determine the effects that such living allowances have had on the ability of individuals to participate in such programs.

(2) Evaluation of success of investment in national service

(A) Evaluation required

The Corporation shall arrange for the independent evaluation of the operation of division C to determine the levels of participation of economically disadvantaged individuals in national service programs carried out or supported using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title.

(B) Period covered by evaluation

The evaluation required by this paragraph shall cover the period beginning on the date the

Corporation first makes a grant under section 12571 of this title, and ending on a date that is as close as is practicable to the the [3] first date that a report is submitted under subsection (b)(11) after the effective date of the Serve America Act.

(C) Income levels of participants

The evaluating entity shall determine the total income of each participant who serves, during the period covered by the evaluation, in a national service program carried out or supported using assistance provided under section 12571 of this title or in an approved national service position. The total income of the participant shall be determined as of the date the participant was first selected to participate in such a program and shall include family total income unless the evaluating entity determines that the participant was independent at the time of selection.

(D) Assistance for distressed areas

The evaluating entity shall also determine the amount of assistance provided under section 12571 of this title during the period covered by the report that has been expended for projects conducted in areas of economic distress described in section 12585(c)(6) of this title.

(E) Definitions

As used in this paragraph:

(i) Independent

The term "independent" has the meaning given the term in section 480(d) of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1087vv(d)).

(ii) Total income

The term "total income" has the meaning given the term in section 480(a) of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1087vv(a)).

(g) Recruitment and public awareness functions

(1) Effort

The Chief Executive Officer shall ensure that the Corporation, in carrying out the recruiting and public awareness functions of the Corporation, shall expend at least the level of effort on recruitment and public awareness activities related to the programs carried out under the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4950 et seq.) as ACTION expended on recruitment and public awareness activities related to programs under the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 during fiscal year 1993.

(2) Personnel

The Chief Executive Officer shall assign or hire, as necessary, such additional national, regional, and State personnel to carry out such recruiting and public awareness functions as may be necessary to ensure that such functions are carried out in a timely and effective manner. The Chief Executive Officer shall give priority in the hiring of such additional personnel to individuals who have formerly served as volunteers in the programs carried out under the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 [42 U.S.C. 4950 et seq.] or similar programs, and to individuals who have specialized experience in the recruitment of volunteers.

(3) Funds

For the first fiscal year after the effective date of this subsection, and for each fiscal year thereafter, for the purpose of carrying out such recruiting and public awareness functions, the Chief Executive Officer shall obligate not less than 1.5 percent of the amounts appropriated for the fiscal year under section 501(a) of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 [42 U.S.C. 5081(a)].

(h) Authority to contract with businesses

The Chief Executive Officer may, through contracts or cooperative agreements, carry out the marketing duties described in subsection (b)(13), with priority given to those entities that have

established expertise in the recruitment of disadvantaged youth, members of Indian tribes, and older adults.

(i) Campaign to solicit funds

The Chief Executive Officer may conduct a campaign to solicit funds to conduct outreach and recruitment campaigns to recruit a diverse population of service sponsors of, and participants in, programs and projects receiving assistance under the national service laws.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §193A, as added and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §§202(a), 203(a)(1)(B), (3), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 877, 891; Pub. L. 103–304, §3(b)(2), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1567; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1704, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1545.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 8E of the Inspector General Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (a), is section 8E of Pub. L. 95–452, as added by Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §202(g)(1), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 889, which was renumbered section 8F of the Act by Pub. L. 103–204, §23(a)(3), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2408, and is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Public Law 91–378, referred to in subsec. (b)(11)(A), is Pub. L. 91–378, Aug. 13, 1970, 84 Stat. 794, popularly known as the Youth Conservation Corps Act of 1970, which is classified generally to chapter 37 (§1701 et seq.) of Title 16, Conservation. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1701 of Title 16 and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b)(11)(A)(i), (B), (c)(7), and (e)(4), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

The Higher Education Act of 1965, referred to in subsec. (b)(11)(B), is Pub. L. 89–329, Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1219, which is classified generally to chapter 28 (§1001 et seq.) of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 20 and Tables.

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsecs. (b)(17) and (g)(1), (2), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394, which is classified principally to chapter 66 (§4950 et seq.) of this title. Title II of the Act is classified generally to subchapter II (§5000 et seq.) of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

Section 12653h(a) of this title, referred to in subsec. (b)(22), does not contain definitions of disasters and emergencies.

The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, referred to in subsec. (b)(25), is Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, which is classified principally to chapter 126 (§12101 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

For the effective date of the Serve America Act, referred to in subsec. (f)(2)(B), as Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

For the effective date of this subsection, referred to in subsec. (g)(3), see Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note below.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1704(1)(A), substituted ", in collaboration with the State Commissions, shall" for "shall" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1704(1)(B), inserted ", including a plan for having 50 percent of all approved national service positions be full-time positions by 2012," after "a strategic plan".

Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1704(1)(C), inserted ", approved summer of service positions, and approved silver scholar positions" after "approved national service positions".

Subsec. (b)(7) to (9). Pub. L. 111–13, §1704(1)(D), (E), added par. (7) and redesignated former pars. (7) and (8) as (8) and (9), respectively. Former par. (9) redesignated (10).

Subsec. (b)(10). Pub. L. 111–13, §1704(1)(D), (F), redesignated par. (9) as (10) and substituted "authorizing committees" for "appropriate committees of Congress" in introductory provisions. Former par. (10) redesignated (11).

Subsec. (b)(11). Pub. L. 111–13, §1704(1)(D), (G)(i), redesignated par. (10) as (11) and substituted "periodically," for "by June 30, 1995," in introductory provisions. Former par. (11) redesignated (12).

Subsec. (b)(11)(A)(i). Pub. L. 111–13, §1704(1)(G)(ii), substituted "national priorities, as described in

section 12572(f)(1) of this title, designed to meet" for "national priorities designed to meet the" and struck out "described in section 12572(c)(1) of this title" after "public safety needs".

Subsec. (b)(12) to (25). Pub. L. 111–13, §1704(1)(D), (G)(iii)–(I), redesignated par. (11) as (12) and added pars. (13) to (25).

Subsec. (c)(9). Pub. L. 111–13, §1704(2)(A)(i), substituted "the authorizing committees" for "Congress" in two places.

Subsec. (c)(10), (11). Pub. L. 111–13, §1704(2)(A)(ii)–(C), added par. (10) and redesignated former par. (10) as (11).

Subsec. (f)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1704(3), substituted "the first date that a report is submitted under subsection (b)(11) after the effective date of the Serve America Act" for "date specified in subsection (b)(10) of this section".

Subsecs. (h), (i). Pub. L. 111–13, §1704(4), added subsecs. (h) and (i).

1994—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 103–304 made technical amendment to directory language of Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(3). See 1993 Amendment note below.

1993—Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(1)(B), which directed amendment of section 193A of subtitle I of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 by substituting "the national service laws" for "this chapter" was executed wherever appearing in the following provisions of this section, which is section 193A of subtitle G of title I of the National Community Service Act of 1990, to reflect the probable intent of Congress: introductory provisions and pars. (2) to (4)(A), (8), and (9)(C) of subsec. (b), introductory provisions and pars. (2), (4), (9), and (10) of subsec. (c), and subsec. (d)(2).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(3), as amended by Pub. L. 103–304, added subsec. (g).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–304 effective as of Oct. 1, 1993, see section 3(b)(10)(B) of Pub. L. 103–304, set out as a note under section 4953 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 203(a)(1)(B), (3) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Apr. 4, 1994, see section 203(d) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 202(i) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

[1] See References in Text note below.

[2] So in original. The closing parenthesis probably should not appear.

[3] So in original.

§12651e. Officers

(a) Managing Directors

(1) In general

There shall be in the Corporation 2 Managing Directors, who shall be appointed by the President, and who shall report to the Chief Executive Officer.

(2) Compensation

The Managing Directors shall be compensated at the rate provided for level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5.

(3) Duties

The Corporation shall determine the programs for which the Managing Directors shall have primary responsibility and shall establish the divisions of the Corporation to be headed by the Managing Directors.

(b) Inspector General

(1) Office

There shall be in the Corporation an Office of the Inspector General.

(2) Appointment

The Office shall be headed by an Inspector General, appointed in accordance with the Inspector General Act of 1978 [5 U.S.C. App.].

(c) Chief Financial Officer

(1) In general

There shall be in the Corporation a Chief Financial Officer, who shall be appointed by the Chief Executive Officer pursuant to subsections (a) and (b) of section 12651f of this title.

(2) Duties

The Chief Financial Officer shall—

(A) report directly to the Chief Executive Officer regarding financial management matters;

(B) oversee all financial management activities relating to the programs and operations of the Corporation;

(C) develop and maintain an integrated accounting and financial management system for the Corporation, including financial reporting and internal controls;

(D) develop and maintain any joint financial management systems with the Department of Education necessary to carry out the programs of the Corporation; and

(E) direct, manage, and provide policy guidance and oversight of the financial management personnel, activities, and operations of the Corporation.

(d) Assistant Directors for VISTA and National Senior Service Corps

(1) Appointment

One of the Managing Directors appointed under subsection (a) shall, in accordance with applicable provisions of title 5, appoint 4 Assistant Directors who shall report directly to such Managing Director, of which—

(A) 1 Assistant Director shall be responsible for programs carried out under parts A [42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq.] and B [1] of title I of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (the Volunteers in Service to America (VISTA) program) and other antipoverty programs under title I of that Act [42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq.];

(B) 1 Assistant Director shall be responsible for programs carried out under part A of title II of that Act [42 U.S.C. 5001 et seq.] (relating to the Retired Senior Volunteer Program);

(C) 1 Assistant Director shall be responsible for programs carried out under part B of title II of that Act [42 U.S.C. 5011 et seq.] (relating to the Foster Grandparent Program); and

(D) 1 Assistant Director shall be responsible for programs carried out under part C of title II of that Act [42 U.S.C. 5013] (relating to the Senior Companion Program).

(2) Effective date for exercise of authority

Each Assistant Director appointed pursuant to paragraph (1) may exercise the authority assigned to each such Director only after the effective date of section 203(c)(2) of the National and Community Service Trust Act of 1993.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §194, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §202(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 882; amended Pub. L. 110–409, §4(a)(4), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4304; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1705, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1547; Pub. L. 112–166, §2(p), Aug. 10, 2012, 126 Stat. 1288.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Inspector General Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is Pub. L. 95–452, Oct. 12, 1978, 92 Stat. 1101, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§4951 et seq.) of chapter 66 of this title. Part A of title I of the Act is classified generally to part A (§4951 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 66 of this title. Part B of title I of the Act, which was classified generally to part B (§4971 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 66 of this title, was repealed by Pub. L. 111–13, title II, §2121, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1584. Parts A, B, and C of title II of the Act are classified generally to parts A (§5001 et seq.), B (§5011 et seq.), and C (§5013 et seq.), respectively, of subchapter II of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

Section 203(c)(2) of the National and Community Service Trust Act of 1993, referred to in subsec. (d)(2), is section 203(c)(2) of Pub. L. 103–82, which is set out as a note under section 12651 of this title. For the effective date of section 203(c)(2) of this Act, see section 203(d) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as an Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note under section 12651 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2012—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 112–166 struck out ", by and with the advice and consent of the Senate" after "President".

2009—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–13 added par. (1), redesignated par. (3) as (2), and struck out former pars. (1) and (2) which read as follows:

"(1) OFFICE.—There shall be in the Corporation a Chief Financial Officer, who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

"(2) COMPENSATION.—The Chief Financial Officer shall be compensated at the rate provided for level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5."

2008—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 110–409 struck out par. (3). Text read as follows: "The Inspector General shall be compensated at the rate provided for level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2012 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 112–166 effective 60 days after Aug. 10, 2012, and applicable to appointments made on and after that effective date, including any nomination pending in the Senate on that date, see section 6(a) of Pub. L. 112–166, set out as a note under section 113 of Title 6, Domestic Security.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 202(i) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12651f. Employees, consultants, and other personnel

(a) Employees

Except as provided in subsection (b), section 12651e(d) of this title, and section 8E [1] of the Inspector General Act of 1978, the Chief Executive Officer shall, in accordance with applicable provisions of title 5, appoint and determine the compensation of such employees as the Chief Executive Officer determines to be necessary to carry out the duties of the Corporation.

(b) Alternative personnel system

(1) Authority

The Chief Executive Officer may designate positions in the Corporation as positions to which the Chief Executive Officer may make appointments, and for which the Chief Executive Officer may determine compensation, without regard to the provisions of title 5 governing appointments

in the competitive service, and without regard to the provisions of chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of such title relating to classification and General Schedule pay rates, to the extent the Chief Executive Officer determines that such a designation is appropriate and desirable to further the effective operation of the Corporation. The Chief Executive Officer may provide for appointments to such positions to be made on a limited term basis.

(2) Appointment in the competitive service after employment under alternative personnel system

The Director of the Office of Personnel Management may grant competitive status for appointment to the competitive service, under such conditions as the Director may prescribe, to an employee who is appointed under this subsection and who is separated from the Corporation (other than by removal for cause).

(3) Selection and compensation system

(A) Establishment of system

The Chief Executive Officer, after obtaining the approval of the Director of the Office of Personnel Management, shall issue regulations establishing a selection and compensation system for employees of the Corporation appointed under paragraph (1). In issuing such regulations, the Chief Executive Officer shall take into consideration the need for flexibility in such a system.

(B) Application

The Chief Executive Officer shall appoint and determine the compensation of employees in accordance with the selection and compensation system established under subparagraph (A).

(C) Selection

The system established under subparagraph (A) shall provide for the selection of employees—

(i) through a competitive process; and

(ii) on the basis of the qualifications of applicants and the requirements of the positions.

(D) Compensation

The system established under subparagraph (A) shall include a scheme for the classification of positions in the Corporation. The system shall require that the compensation of an employee be determined in part on the basis of the job performance of the employee, and in a manner consistent with the principles described in section 5301 of title 5. The rate of compensation for each employee compensated under the system shall not exceed the annual rate of basic pay payable for level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5.

(c) Corporation representative in each State

(1) Designation of representative

The Corporation shall designate 1 employee of the Corporation for each State or group of States to serve as the representative of the Corporation in the State or States and to assist the Corporation in carrying out the activities described in the national service laws in the State or States.

(2) Duties

The representative designated under this subsection for a State or group of States shall serve as the liaison between—

(A) the Corporation and the State Commission that is established in the State or States;

(B) the Corporation and any subdivision of a State, territory, Indian tribe, public or private nonprofit organization, or institution of higher education, in the State or States, that is awarded a grant under section 12571 of this title directly from the Corporation; and

(C) after the effective date of section 203(c)(2) of the National and Community Service Trust Act of 1993, the State Commission and the Corporation employee responsible for programs under the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 [42 U.S.C. 4950 et seq.] in the State, if the

employee is not the representative described in paragraph (1) for the State.

(3) Nonvoting member of State Commission

The representative designated under this subsection for a State or group of States shall also serve as a nonvoting member of the State Commission established in the State or States, as described in section 12638(c)(3) of this title.

(4) Compensation

If the employee designated under paragraph (1) is an employee whose appointment was made pursuant to subsection (b), the rate of compensation for such employee may not exceed the maximum rate of basic pay payable for GS–13 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5.

(d) Consultants

The Chief Executive Officer may procure the temporary and intermittent services of experts and consultants and compensate the experts and consultants in accordance with section 3109(b) of title 5.

(e) Details of personnel

The head of any Federal department or agency may detail on a reimbursable basis, or on a nonreimbursable basis for not to exceed 180 calendar days during any fiscal year, as agreed upon by the Chief Executive Officer and the head of the Federal agency, any of the personnel of that department or agency to the Corporation to assist the Corporation in carrying out the duties of the Corporation under the national service laws. Any detail shall not interrupt or otherwise affect the civil service status or privileges of the Federal employee.

(f) Advisory committees

(1) Establishment

The Chief Executive Officer, acting upon the recommendation of the Board, may establish advisory committees in the Corporation to advise the Board with respect to national service issues, such as the type of programs to be established or assisted under the national service laws, priorities and criteria for such programs, and methods of conducting outreach for, and evaluation of, such programs.

(2) Composition

Such an advisory committee shall be composed of members appointed by the Chief Executive Officer, with such qualifications as the Chief Executive Officer may specify.

(3) Expenses

Members of such an advisory committee may be allowed travel expenses as described in section 12651b(d) of this title.

(4) Staff

(A) In general

Except as provided in subparagraph (B), the Chief Executive Officer is authorized to appoint and fix the compensation of such staff as the Chief Executive Officer determines to be necessary to carry out the functions of the advisory committee, without regard to—

(i) the provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service; and

(ii) the provisions of chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of such title relating to classification and General Schedule pay rates.

(B) Compensation

If a member of the staff appointed under subparagraph (A) was appointed without regard to the provisions described in clauses (i) and (ii) of subparagraph (A), the rate of compensation for such member may not exceed the maximum rate of basic pay payable for GS–13 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5.

(g) Personal services contracts

The Corporation may enter into personal services contracts to carry out research, evaluation, and public awareness related to the national service laws.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195, as added and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §§202(a), 203(a)(1)(B), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 883, 891; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1706, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1547.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 8E of the Inspector General Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (a), is section 8E of Pub. L. 95–452, as added by Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §202(g)(1), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 889, which was renumbered section 8F of the Act by Pub. L. 103–204, §23(a)(3), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2408, and is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Section 203(c)(2) of the National and Community Service Trust Act of 1993, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(C), is section 203(c)(2) of Pub. L. 103–82, which is set out as a note under section 12651 of this title. For the effective date of section 203(c)(2) of this Act, see section 203(d) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as an Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note under section 12651 of this title.

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(C), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394, which is classified generally to chapter 66 (§4950 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 195 of Pub. L. 101–610 was renumbered section 151 by Pub. L. 103–82 and is classified to section 12611 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (c)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1706(1)(A), inserted "territory," after "subdivision of a State,".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1706(1)(B), substituted "Nonvoting member" for "Member" in heading and inserted "nonvoting" before "member" in text.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–13, §1706(2), added subsec. (g).

1993—Subsecs. (c)(1), (e). Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(1)(B), which directed amendment of section 195(c) and (e) of subtitle I of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 by substituting "the national service laws" for "this chapter", was executed to subsecs. (c)(1) and (e) of this section, which is section 195 of subtitle G of title I of the National Community Service Act of 1990, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 203(a)(1)(B) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Apr. 4, 1994, see section 203(d) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 202(i) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12651g. Administration

(a) Donations

(1) Services

(A) Organizations and individuals

Notwithstanding section 1342 of title 31, the Corporation may solicit and accept the services of organizations and individuals (other than participants) to assist the Corporation in carrying out the duties of the Corporation under the national service laws, and may provide to such

individuals the travel expenses described in section 12651b(d) of this title.

(B) Limitation

A person who provides assistance, either individually or as a member of an organization, in accordance with subparagraph (A) shall not be considered to be a Federal employee and shall not be subject to the provisions of law relating to Federal employment, including those relating to hours of work, rates of compensation, leave, unemployment compensation, and Federal employee benefits, except that—

(i) for the purposes of the tort claims provisions of chapter 171 of title 28, such a person shall be considered to be a Federal employee;

(ii) for the purposes of subchapter I of chapter 81 of title 5 relating to compensation to Federal employees for work injuries, such persons shall be considered to be employees, as defined in section 8101(1)(B) of title 5 and the provisions of such subchapter shall apply; and

(iii) for purposes of the provisions of chapter 11 of part I of title 18, such a person (to whom such provisions would not otherwise apply except for this subsection) shall be a special Government employee.

(C) Inherently governmental function

(i) In general

Such a person shall not carry out an inherently governmental function.

(ii) Regulations

The Chief Executive Officer shall promulgate regulations to carry out this subparagraph.

(iii) "Inherently governmental function" defined

As used in this subparagraph, the term "inherently governmental function" means any activity that is so intimately related to the public interest as to mandate performance by an officer or employee of the Federal Government, including an activity that requires either the exercise of discretion in applying the authority of the Government or the use of value judgment in making a decision for the Government.

(2) Property

(A) In general

The Corporation may solicit, accept, hold, administer, use, and dispose of, in furtherance of the purposes of the national service laws, donations of any money or property, real, personal, or mixed, tangible or intangible, received by gift, devise, bequest, or otherwise. Donations accepted under this subparagraph shall be used as nearly as possible in accordance with the terms, if any, of such donation.

(B) Status of contribution

Any donation accepted under subparagraph (A) shall be considered to be a gift, devise, or bequest to, or for the use of, the United States.

(C) Rules

The Chief Executive Officer shall establish written rules to ensure that the solicitation, acceptance, holding, administration, and use of property described in subparagraph (A)—

(i) will not reflect unfavorably upon the ability of the Corporation, or of any officer or employee of the Corporation, to carry out the responsibilities or official duties of the Corporation in a fair and objective manner; and

(ii) will not compromise the integrity of the programs of the Corporation or any official or employee of the Corporation involved in such programs.

(D) Disposition

Upon completion of the use by the Corporation of any property accepted pursuant to subparagraph (A) (other than money or monetary proceeds from sales of property so accepted), such completion shall be reported to the General Services Administration and such property

shall be disposed of in accordance with title II of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949.[1]

(b) Contracts

Subject to chapters 1 to 11 of title 40 and division C (except sections 3302, 3307(e), 3501(b), 3509, 3906, 4710, and 4711) of subtitle I of title 41, the Corporation may enter into contracts, and cooperative and interagency agreements, with Federal and State agencies, private firms, institutions, and individuals to conduct activities necessary to assist the Corporation in carrying out the duties of the Corporation under the national service laws.

(c) Office of Management and Budget

Appropriate circulars of the Office of Management and Budget shall apply to the Corporation.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §196, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §§202(a), 203(a)(1)(B), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 885, 891; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1707, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1548.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(D), is act June 30, 1949, ch. 288, 63 Stat. 377. Title II of the Act, which was classified principally to subchapter II (§§481, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487 to 490, 491, 492) of chapter 10 and section 758 of former Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works, was repealed by Pub. L. 107–217, §6(b), Aug. 21, 2002, 116 Stat. 1304, which Act enacted Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works. For disposition of sections of former Title 40 to revised Title 40, see Table preceding section 101 of Title 40. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b), "chapters 1 to 11 of title 40 and division C (except sections 3302, 3307(e), 3501(b), 3509, 3906, 4710, and 4711) of subtitle I of title 41" substituted for "the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949" on authority of Pub. L. 107–217, §5(c), Aug. 21, 2002, 116 Stat. 1303, which Act enacted Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works, and Pub. L. 111–350, §6(c), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 3854, which Act enacted Title 41, Public Contracts.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 111–13, §1707(1)(A), added subpar. (A) and struck out former subpar. (A). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Notwithstanding section 1342 of title 31, the Corporation may solicit and accept the voluntary services of individuals to assist the Corporation in carrying out the duties of the Corporation under the national service laws, and may provide to such individuals the travel expenses described in section 12651b(d) of this title."

Subsec. (a)(1)(B). Pub. L. 111–13, §1707(1)(B)(i), substituted "A person who provides assistance, either individually or as a member of an organization, in accordance with subparagraph (A)" for "Such a volunteer" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(1)(B)(i). Pub. L. 111–13, §1707(1)(B)(ii), substituted "such a person" for "a volunteer under this division".

Subsec. (a)(1)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 111–13, §1707(1)(B)(iii), substituted "such persons" for "volunteers under this division".

Subsec. (a)(1)(B)(iii). Pub. L. 111–13, §1707(1)(B)(iv), substituted "such a person" for "such a volunteer".

Subsec. (a)(1)(C)(i). Pub. L. 111–13, §1707(1)(C), substituted "Such a person" for "Such a volunteer".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1707(2), struck out par. (3). Text read as follows: "As used in this subsection, the term 'volunteer' does not include a participant."

1993—Subsecs. (a)(1)(A), (2)(A), (b). Pub. L. 103–82, §203(a)(1)(B), which directed amendment of section 196(a) and (b) of subtitle I of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 by substituting "the national service laws" for "this chapter", was executed to subsecs. (a)(1)(A), (2)(A) and (b) of this section, which is section 196 of subtitle G of title I of the National Community Service Act of 1990, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 203(a)(1)(B) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Apr. 4, 1994, see section 203(d) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 202(i) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12651h. Corporation State offices

(a) In general

The Chief Executive Officer shall establish and maintain a decentralized field structure that provides for an office of the Corporation for each State. The office for a State shall be located in, or in reasonable proximity to, such State. Only one such office may carry out the duties described in subsection (b) with respect to a State at any particular time. Such State office may be directed by the representative designated under section 12651f(c) of this title.

(b) Duties

Each State office established pursuant to subsection (a) shall—

(1) provide to the State Commissions established under section 12638 of this title technical and other assistance for the development and implementation of national service plans under section 12638(e)(1) of this title;

(2) provide to community-based agencies and other entities within the State technical assistance for the preparation of applications for assistance under the national service laws, utilizing, as appropriate, information and materials provided by the clearinghouses established pursuant to section 12653a [1] of this title;

(3) provide to the State Commission and other entities within the State support and technical assistance necessary to assure the existence of an effective system of recruitment, placement, and training of volunteers within the State;

(4) monitor and evaluate the performance of all programs and projects within the State that receive assistance under the national service laws; and

(5) perform such other duties and functions as may be assigned or delegated by the Chief Executive Officer.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §196A, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §202(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 887.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12653a of this title, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), was in the original "section 198A", meaning section 198A of Pub. L. 101–610, as added by section 104(c) of Pub. L. 103–82, which was repealed, and section 198B was redesignated section 198A, by Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1803(a)(1), (b), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1554. Provisions similar to section 12653a are now contained in section 12653o of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 202(i) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12651i. VISTA Advance Payments Revolving Fund

Notwithstanding section 101,[1] the level for "Corporation for National and Community Service, Domestic Volunteer Service Programs, Operating Expenses" shall be $316,550,000, of which $3,500,000 shall be for establishment in the Treasury of a VISTA Advance Payments Revolving Fund (in this section referred to as the "Fund") for the Corporation for National and Community Service which, in addition to reimbursements collected from eligible public agencies and private nonprofit organizations pursuant to cost-share agreements, shall be available until expended to make advance payments in furtherance of title I of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 [42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq.]: *Provided*, That up to 10 percent of funds appropriated to carry out title I of such Act may be transferred to the Fund if the Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation for National and Community Service determines that the amounts in the Fund are not sufficient to cover expenses of the Fund: *Provided further*, That the Corporation for National and Community Service shall provide detailed information on the activities and financial status of the Fund during the preceding fiscal year in the annual congressional budget justifications to the Committees on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Senate.

(Pub. L. 109–289, div. B, title II, §20638, as added Pub. L. 110–5, §2, Feb. 15, 2007, 121 Stat. 36.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 101, referred to in text, is section 101 of title I of div. B of Pub. L. 109–289, as added by Pub. L. 110–5, §2, Feb. 15, 2007, 121 Stat. 8. Subsec. (b) of section 101 is classified as a note under this section. Subsecs. (a) and (c) of section 101 are not classified to the Code.

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§4951 et seq.) of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Continuing Appropriations Resolution, 2007, and not as part of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 which comprises this chapter.

DEFINITIONS

Pub. L. 109–289, div. B, title I, §101(b), as added by Pub. L. 110–5, §2, Feb. 15, 2007, 121 Stat. 9, provided that: "For purposes of this division [see Tables for classification], the term 'level' means an amount."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12651j. Assignment to State Commissions

(a) Assignment

In accordance with section 12651d(c)(1) of this title, the Chief Executive Officer may assign to State Commissions specific programmatic functions upon a determination that such an assignment will increase efficiency in the operation or oversight of a program under the national service laws. In carrying out this section, and before executing any assignment of authority, the Corporation shall seek input from and consult Corporation employees, State Commissions, State educational agencies, and other interested stakeholders.

(b) Report

Not later than 2 years after the effective date of the Serve America Act, the Corporation shall submit a report to the authorizing committees describing the consultation process described in subsection (a), including the stakeholders consulted, the recommendation of stakeholders, and any actions taken by the Corporation under this section.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §196B, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1708, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1548.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the effective date of the Serve America Act, referred to in subsec. (b), as Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12651k. Study of involvement of veterans

(a) Study and report

The Corporation shall conduct a study and submit a report to the authorizing committees, not later than 3 years after the effective date of the Serve America Act, on—

(1) the number of veterans serving in national service programs historically by year;

(2) strategies being undertaken to identify the specific areas of need of veterans, including any goals set by the Corporation for veterans participating in the service programs;

(3) the impact of the strategies described in paragraph (2) and the Veterans Corps on enabling greater participation by veterans in the national service programs carried out under the national service laws;

(4) how existing programs and activities carried out under the national service laws could be improved to serve veterans, veterans service organizations, families of active-duty military, including gaps in services to veterans;

(5) the extent to which existing programs and activities carried out under the national service laws are coordinated and recommendations to improve such coordination including the methods for ensuring the efficient financial organization of services directed towards veterans; and

(6) how to improve utilization of veterans as resources and volunteers.

(b) Consultation

In conducting the studies and preparing the reports required under this subsection, the Corporation shall consult with veterans' service organizations, the Secretary of Veterans Affairs, State veterans agencies, the Secretary of Defense, as appropriate, and other individuals and entities the Corporation considers appropriate.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §196C, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1709, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1549.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the effective date of the Serve America Act, referred to in subsec. (a), as Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

Division H—Investment for Quality and Innovation

PRIOR PROVISIONS

This division is comprised of subtitle H, §§198–198C, 198H, 198K, 198O, 198P, and 198S, of title I of Pub. L. 101–610. A prior part H (§12653 et seq.), comprised of subtitle H, §§195–195O, of title I of Pub. L. 101–610, was renumbered subtitle E, §§151–166, of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b), and transferred to division E (§12611 et seq.) of this subchapter.

PART I—ADDITIONAL CORPORATION ACTIVITIES TO SUPPORT NATIONAL SERVICE

§12653. Additional Corporation activities to support national service

(a) Methods of conducting activities

The Corporation may carry out this section directly (except as provided in subsection (g)) or through grants, contracts, and cooperative agreements with other entities.

(b) Innovation and quality improvement

The Corporation may undertake activities to address emergent needs through summer programs and other activities, and to support service-learning programs and national service programs, including—

(1) programs, including programs for rural youth, under division B or C;
(2) employer-based retiree programs;
(3) intergenerational programs;
(4) programs involving individuals with disabilities as participants providing service; and
(5) programs sponsored by Governors.

(c) Conferences and materials

The Corporation may organize and hold conferences, and prepare and publish materials, to disseminate information and promote the sharing of information among programs for the purpose of improving the quality of programs and projects.

(d) Research

The Corporation may support research on national service, including service-learning.

(e) Youth leadership

The Corporation may support activities to enhance the ability of youth and young adults to play leadership roles in national service.

(f) National program identity

The Corporation may support the development and dissemination of materials, including training materials, and arrange for uniforms and insignia, designed to promote unity and shared features among programs that receive assistance under the national service laws.

(g) Global Youth Service Day

(1) Designation

April 24, 2009, and April 23, 2010, are each designated as "Global Youth Service Days". The President is authorized and directed to issue a proclamation calling on the people of the United States to observe the day with appropriate youth-led community improvement and service-learning activities.

(2) Federal activities

In order to observe Global Youth Service Day at the Federal level, the Corporation and other Federal departments and agencies may organize and carry out appropriate youth-led community improvement and service-learning activities.

(3) Activities

The Corporation and other Federal departments and agencies may make grants to public or private nonprofit organizations with demonstrated ability to carry out appropriate activities, in order to support such activities on Global Youth Service Day.

(h) Assistance for Head Start

The Corporation may make grants to, and enter into contracts and cooperative agreements with,

public or nonprofit private agencies and organizations that receive grants or contracts under the Foster Grandparent Program (part B of title II of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 [42 U.S.C. 5011 et seq.]), for projects of the type described in section 211(a) of such Act [42 U.S.C. 5011] operating under memoranda of agreement with the Corporation, for the purpose of increasing the number of low-income individuals who provide services under such program to children who participate in Head Start programs under the Head Start Act (42 U.S.C 9831 et seq).

(i) Martin Luther King, Jr., Service Day

(1) Assistance

The Corporation may make grants to eligible entities described in paragraph (2) to pay for the Federal share of the cost of planning and carrying out service opportunities in conjunction with the Federal legal holiday honoring the birthday of Martin Luther King, Jr. Such service opportunities shall consist of activities reflecting the life and teachings of Martin Luther King, Jr., such as cooperation and understanding among racial and ethnic groups, nonviolent conflict resolution, equal economic and educational opportunities, and social justice.

(2) Eligible entities

Any entity otherwise eligible for assistance under the national services laws shall be eligible to receive a grant under this subsection.

(3) Repealed. Pub. L. 105–354, §2(b), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3244

(4) Federal share

Grants provided under this subsection to an eligible entity to support the planning and carrying out of a service opportunity in conjunction with the Federal legal holiday honoring the birthday of Martin Luther King, Jr., together with all other Federal funds used to plan or carry out the service opportunity, may not exceed 30 percent of the cost of planning and carrying out the service opportunity.

(5) Calculation of entity contributions

In determining the non-Federal share of the costs of planning and carrying out a service opportunity supported by a grant under this subsection, the Corporation shall consider in-kind contributions (including facilities, equipment, and services) made to plan or carry out the service opportunity.

(j) Call to Service Campaign

Not later than 180 days after April 21, 2009, the Corporation shall conduct a nationwide "Call To Service" campaign, to encourage all people of the United States, regardless of age, race, ethnicity, religion, or economic status, to engage in full- or part-time national service, long- or short-term public service in the nonprofit sector or government, or volunteering. In conducting the campaign, the Corporation may collaborate with other Federal agencies and entities, State Commissions, Governors, nonprofit and faith-based organizations, businesses, institutions of higher education, elementary schools, and secondary schools.

(k) September 11th Day of Service

(1) Federal activities

The Corporation may organize and carry out appropriate ceremonies and activities, which may include activities that are part of the broader Call to Service Campaign under subsection (j), in order to observe the September 11th National Day of Service and Remembrance at the Federal level.

(2) Activities

The Corporation may make grants and provide other support to community-based organizations to assist in planning and carrying out appropriate service, charity, and remembrance opportunities in conjunction with the September 11th National Day of Service and Remembrance.

(3) Consultation

The Corporation may consult with and make grants or provide other forms of support to nonprofit organizations with expertise in representing families of victims of the September 11, 2001 terrorist attacks and other impacted constituencies, and in promoting the establishment of September 11 as an annually recognized National Day of Service and Remembrance.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §198, as added and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(c), title IV, §405(p)(2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, 922; Pub. L. 103–304, §3(a), (b)(6), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1566, 1568; Pub. L. 105–354, §2(b), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3244; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1802, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1552.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (h), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Title I and part B of title II of the Act are classified generally to subchapter I (§4951 et seq.) and part B (§5011 et seq.) of subchapter II, respectively, of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

The Head Start Act, referred to in subsec. (h), is subchapter B (§§635–657) of chapter 8 of subtitle A of title VI of Pub. L. 97–35, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 499, which is classified generally to subchapter II (§9831 et seq.) of chapter 105 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 9801 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12653, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2522, which stated purpose of Civilian Community Corps, was renumbered section 151 of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b), and transferred to section 12611 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Pub. L. 111–13, §1802(a)(3), redesignated subsecs. (g), (k), (n), (o), (q), (r), and (s) as (c) to (i), respectively, and struck out former subsecs. (c) to (f), (h) to (j), (l), (m), and (p), which related to summer programs, community-based agencies, improving ability to apply for assistance, national service fellowships, Peace Corps and VISTA training, promotion and recruitment, training, intergenerational support, planning coordination, and service-learning, respectively.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1802(a)(1), substituted "subsection (g)" for "subsection (r) of this section".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–13, §1802(a)(2), substituted "to address emergent needs through summer programs and other activities, and to support service-learning programs and national service programs, including—" for "to improve the quality of national service programs, including service-learning programs, and to support innovative and model programs, including—" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–13, §1802(b)(1)(A), substituted "Global" for "National" in heading.

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 111–13, §1802(b)(1)(B), (C), substituted "April 24, 2009, and April 23, 2010, are each designated as 'Global Youth Service Days'." for "April 19, 1994, and April 18, 1995, are each designated as 'National Youth Service Day'." and "appropriate youth-led community improvement and service-learning activities" for "appropriate ceremonies and activities".

Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1802(b)(1)(B), (D), substituted "Global Youth" for "National Youth", inserted "and other Federal departments and agencies" after "Corporation", and substituted "youth-led community improvement and service-learning activities" for "ceremonies and activities".

Subsec. (g)(3). Pub. L. 111–13, §1802(b)(1)(B), (E), inserted "and other Federal departments and agencies" after "Corporation" and substituted "Global Youth" for "National Youth".

Subsecs. (j), (k). Pub. L. 111–13, §1802(c), added subsecs. (j) and (k).

1998—Subsec. (s)(3). Pub. L. 105–354 struck out heading and text of par. (3). Text read as follows: "In making grants under this subsection, the Corporation shall consult with the Martin Luther King, Jr. Federal Holiday Commission established under section 169j–1 of title 36."

1994—Subsec. (q)(1). Pub. L. 103–304, §3(b)(6), substituted "1995," for "1995".

Subsec. (s). Pub. L. 103–304, §3(a), added subsec. (s).

1993—Subsec. (r). Pub. L. 103–82, §405(p)(2), substituted "Corporation" for "ACTION Agency".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a

note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 405(p)(2) of Pub. L. 103–82 effective Apr. 4, 1994, see section 406(b) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 8332 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Division effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as an Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 13560

Ex. Ord. No. 13560, Dec. 14, 2010, 75 F.R. 78875, which established the White House Council for Community Solutions, was superseded and revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 13748, §5, Nov. 16, 2016, 81 F.R. 83621, set out as a note under section 601 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§12653a. Presidential awards for service

(a) Presidential awards

(1) In general

The President, acting through the Corporation, may make Presidential awards for service to individuals providing significant service, and to outstanding service programs.

(2) Individuals and programs

Notwithstanding section 12511 of this title—

(A) an individual receiving an award under this subsection need not be a participant in a program authorized under this chapter; and

(B) a program receiving an award under this subsection need not be a program authorized under this chapter.

(3) Nature of award

In making an award under this section to an individual or program, the President, acting through the Corporation—

(A) is authorized to incur necessary expenses for the honorary recognition of the individual or program; and

(B) is not authorized to make a cash award to such individual or program.

(b) Information

The President, acting through the Corporation, shall ensure that information concerning individuals and programs receiving awards under this section is widely disseminated.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §198A, formerly §198B, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(c), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 843; renumbered §198A and amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §§1803(b), 1804, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1554.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12653b of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12653a, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §198A, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(c), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 842, related to clearinghouses, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1803(a)(1), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1554, effective Oct. 1, 2009.

Another prior section 12653a, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195A, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X,

§1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2523, which provided for establishment of Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program, was renumbered section 152 of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b), and transferred to section 12612 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 111–13, §1804, substituted "section 12511" for "section 12511(19)".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

§12653b. ServeAmerica Fellowships

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Area of national need

The term "area of national need" means an area involved in efforts to—

(A) improve education in schools for economically disadvantaged students;
(B) expand and improve access to health care;
(C) improve energy efficiency and conserve natural resources;
(D) improve economic opportunities for economically disadvantaged individuals; or
(E) improve disaster preparedness and response.

(2) Eligible fellowship recipient

The term "eligible fellowship recipient" means an individual who is selected by a State Commission under subsection (c) and, as a result of such selection, is eligible for a ServeAmerica Fellowship.

(3) Fellow

The term "fellow" means an eligible fellowship recipient who is awarded a ServeAmerica Fellowship and is designated a fellow under subsection (e)(2).

(4) Small service sponsor organization

The term "small service sponsor organization" means a service sponsor organization described in subsection (d)(1) that has not more than 10 full-time employees and 10 part-time employees.

(b) Grants

(1) In general

From the amounts appropriated under section 12681(a)(4)(B) of this title and allotted under paragraph (2)(A), the Corporation shall make grants (including financial assistance and a corresponding allotment of approved national service positions), to the State Commission of each of the several States, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico with an application approved under this section, to enable such State Commissions to award ServeAmerica Fellowships under subsection (e).

(2) Allotment; administrative costs

(A) Allotment

The amount allotted to a State Commission for a fiscal year shall be equal to an amount that bears the same ratio to the amount appropriated under section 12681(a)(4)(B) of this title, as the population of the State bears to the total population of the several States, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

(B) Reallotment

If a State Commission does not apply for an allotment under this subsection for any fiscal

year, or if the State Commission's application is not approved, the Corporation shall reallot the amount of the State Commission's allotment to the remaining State Commissions in accordance with subparagraph (A).

(C) Administrative costs

Of the amount allotted to a State Commission under subparagraph (A), not more than 1.5 percent of such amount may be used for administrative costs.

(3) Number of positions

The Corporation shall—

(A) establish or increase the number of approved national service positions under this subsection during each of fiscal years 2010 through 2014;

(B) establish the number of approved positions at 500 for fiscal year 2010; and

(C) increase the number of the approved positions to—

(i) 750 for fiscal year 2011;

(ii) 1,000 for fiscal year 2012;

(iii) 1,250 for fiscal year 2013; and

(iv) 1,500 for fiscal year 2014.

(4) Uses of grant funds

(A) Required uses

A grant awarded under this subsection shall be used to enable fellows to carry out service projects in areas of national need.

(B) Permitted uses

A grant awarded under this subsection may be used for—

(i) oversight activities and mechanisms for the service sites of the fellows, as determined necessary by the State Commission or the Corporation, which may include site visits;

(ii) activities to augment the experience of fellows, including activities to engage the fellows in networking opportunities with other national service participants; and

(iii) recruitment or training activities for fellows.

(5) Applications

To be eligible to receive a grant under this subsection, a State Commission shall submit an application to the Corporation at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Corporation may require, including information on the criteria and procedures that the State Commission will use for overseeing ServeAmerica Fellowship placements for service projects, under subsection (e).

(c) Eligible fellowship recipients

(1) Application

(A) In general

An applicant desiring to become an eligible fellowship recipient shall submit an application to a State Commission that has elected to participate in the program authorized under this section, at such time and in such manner as the Commission may require, and containing the information described in subparagraph (B) and such additional information as the Commission may require. An applicant may submit such application to only 1 State Commission for a fiscal year.

(B) Contents

The Corporation shall specify information to be provided in an application submitted under this subsection, which—

(i) shall include—

(I) a description of the area of national need that the applicant intends to address in the service project;

(II) a description of the skills and experience the applicant has to address the area of national need;

(III) a description of the type of service the applicant plans to provide as a fellow; and

(IV) information identifying the local area within the State served by the Commission in which the applicant plans to serve for the service project; and

(ii) may include, if the applicant chooses, the size of the registered service sponsor organization with which the applicant hopes to serve.

(2) Selection

Each State Commission shall—

(A) select, from the applications received by the State Commission for a fiscal year, the number of eligible fellowship recipients that may be supported for that fiscal year based on the amount of the grant received by the State Commission under subsection (b); and

(B) make an effort to award one-third of the fellowships available to the State Commission for a fiscal year, based on the amount of the grant received under subsection (b), to applicants who propose to serve the fellowship with small service sponsor organizations registered under subsection (d).

(d) Service sponsor organizations

(1) In general

Each service sponsor organization shall—

(A) be a nonprofit organization;

(B) satisfy qualification criteria established by the Corporation or the State Commission, including standards relating to organizational capacity, financial management, and programmatic oversight;

(C) not be a recipient of other assistance, approved national service positions, or approved summer of service positions under the national service laws; and

(D) at the time of registration with a State Commission, enter into an agreement providing that the service sponsor organization shall—

(i) abide by all program requirements;

(ii) provide an amount described in subsection (e)(3)(b) [1] for each fellow serving with the organization through the ServeAmerica Fellowship;

(iii) be responsible for certifying whether each fellow serving with the organization successfully completed the ServeAmerica Fellowship, and record and certify in a manner specified by the Corporation the number of hours served by a fellow for purposes of determining the fellow's eligibility for benefits; and

(iv) provide timely access to records relating to the ServeAmerica Fellowship to the State Commission, the Corporation, and the Inspector General of the Corporation.

(2) Registration

(A) Requirement

No service sponsor organization may receive a fellow under this section until the organization registers with the State Commission.

(B) Clearinghouse

The State Commission shall maintain a list of registered service sponsor organizations on a public website.

(C) Revocation

If a State Commission determines that a service sponsor organization is in violation of any of the applicable provisions of this section—

(i) the State Commission shall revoke the registration of the organization;

(ii) the organization shall not be eligible to receive assistance, approved national service

positions, or approved summer of service positions under this subchapter for not less than 5 years; and

(iii) the State Commission shall have the right to remove a fellow from the organization and relocate the fellow to another site.

(e) Fellows

(1) In general

To be eligible to participate in a service project as a fellow and receive a ServeAmerica Fellowship, an eligible fellowship recipient shall—

(A) within 3 months after being selected as an eligible fellowship recipient by a State Commission, select a registered service sponsor organization described in subsection (d)—

(i) with which the recipient is interested in serving under this section; and

(ii) that is located in the State served by the State Commission;

(B) enter into an agreement with the organization—

(i) that specifies the service the recipient will provide if the placement is approved; and

(ii) in which the recipient agrees to serve for 1 year on a full-time or part-time basis (as determined by the Corporation); and

(C) submit such agreement to the State Commission.

(2) Award

Upon receiving the eligible fellowship recipient's agreement under paragraph (1), the State Commission shall award a ServeAmerica Fellowship to the recipient and designate the recipient as a fellow.

(3) Fellowship amount

(A) In general

From amounts received under subsection (b), each State Commission shall award each of the State's fellows a ServeAmerica Fellowship amount that is equal to 50 percent of the amount of the average annual VISTA subsistence allowance.

(B) Amount from service sponsor organization

(i) In general

Except as provided in clause (ii) and subparagraph (E), the service sponsor organization shall award to the fellow serving such organization an amount that will ensure that the total award received by the fellow for service in the service project (consisting of such amount and the ServeAmerica Fellowship amount the fellow receives under subparagraph (A)) is equal to or greater than 70 percent of the average annual VISTA subsistence allowance.

(ii) Small service sponsor organizations

In the case of a small service sponsor organization, the small service sponsor organization may decrease the amount of the service sponsor organization award required under clause (i) to not less than an amount that will ensure that the total award received by the fellow for service in the service project (as calculated in clause (i)) is equal to or greater than 60 percent of the average annual VISTA subsistence allowance.

(C) Maximum living allowance

The total amount that may be provided to a fellow under this subparagraph shall not exceed 100 percent of the average annual VISTA subsistence allowance.

(D) Proration of amount

In the case of a fellow who is authorized to serve a part-time term of service under the agreement described in paragraph (1)(B)(ii), the amount provided to a fellow under this paragraph shall be prorated accordingly.

(E) Waiver

The Corporation may allow a State Commission to waive the amount required under subparagraph (B) from the service sponsor organization for a fellow serving the organization if—

(i) such requirement is inconsistent with the objectives of the ServeAmerica Fellowship program; and

(ii) the amount provided to the fellow under subparagraph (A) is sufficient to meet the necessary costs of living (including food, housing, and transportation) in the area in which the ServeAmerica Fellowship program is located.

(F) Definition

In this paragraph, the term "average annual VISTA subsistence allowance" means the total average annual subsistence allowance provided to VISTA volunteers under section 4955 of this title.

(f) Compliance with ineligible service categories

Service under a ServeAmerica Fellowship shall comply with section 12584(a) of this title. For purposes of applying that section to this subsection, a reference to assistance shall be considered to be a reference to assistance provided under this section.

(g) Reports

Each service sponsor organization that receives a fellow under this section shall, on a biweekly basis, report to the Corporation on the number of hours served and the services provided by that fellow. The Corporation shall establish a web portal for the organizations to use in reporting the information.

(h) Educational awards

A fellow who serves in a service project under this section shall be considered to have served in an approved national service position and, upon meeting the requirements of section 12603 of this title for full-time or part-time national service, shall be eligible for a national service educational award described in such section. The Corporation shall transfer an appropriate amount of funds to the National Service Trust to provide for the national service educational award for such fellow.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §198B, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1805, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1554.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12653b, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §198B, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(c), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 843, which related to Presidential awards for service to individuals providing significant service and to outstanding service programs, was renumbered section 198A of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1803(b), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1554, and transferred to section 12653a of this title.

Another prior section 12653b, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195B, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2523, which related to national service program component of Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program, was renumbered section 153 of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 840, and transferred to section 12613 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "(e)(3)(B)".*

§12653c. Silver Scholarships and Encore Fellowships

(a) Silver Scholarship Grant Program

(1) Establishment

The Corporation may award fixed-amount grants (in accordance with section 12581(l) of this title) to community-based entities to carry out a Silver Scholarship Grant Program for individuals age 55 or older, in which such individuals complete not less than 350 hours of service in a year carrying out projects of national need and receive a Silver Scholarship in the form of a $1,000 national service educational award. Under such a program, the Corporation shall establish criteria for the types of the [1] service required to be performed to receive such award.

(2) Term

Each program funded under this subsection shall be carried out over a period of 3 years (which may include 1 planning year), with a 1-year extension possible, if the program meets performance levels developed in accordance with section 12639(k) of this title and any other criteria determined by the Corporation.

(3) Applications

To be eligible for a grant under this subsection, a community-based entity shall—

(A) submit to the Corporation an application at such time and in such manner as the Chief Executive Officer may reasonably require; and

(B) be a listed organization as described in subsection (b)(4).

(4) Collaboration encouraged

A community-based entity awarded a grant under this subsection is encouraged to collaborate with programs funded under title II of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 [42 U.S.C. 5001 et seq.] in carrying out this program.

(5) Eligibility for fellowship

An individual is eligible to receive a Silver Scholarship if the community-based entity certifies to the Corporation that the individual has completed not less than 350 hours of service under this section in a 1-year period.

(6) Transfer to trust

The Corporation shall transfer an appropriate amount of funds to the National Service Trust to provide for the national service educational award for each silver scholar under this subsection.

(7) Support services

A community-based entity receiving a fixed-amount grant under this subsection may use a portion of the grant to provide transportation services to an eligible individual to allow such individual to participate in a service project.

(b) Encore Fellowships

(1) Establishment

The Corporation may award 1-year Encore Fellowships to enable individuals age 55 or older to—

(A) carry out service projects in areas of national need; and

(B) receive training and development in order to transition to full- or part-time public service in the nonprofit sector or government.

(2) Program

In carrying out the program, the Corporation shall—

(A) maintain a list of eligible organizations for which Encore Fellows may be placed to carry out service projects through the program and shall provide the list to all Fellowship recipients; and

(B) at the request of a Fellowship recipient—

(i) determine whether the requesting recipient is able to meet the service needs of a listed organization, or another organization that the recipient requests in accordance with paragraph (5)(B), for a service project; and

(ii) upon making a favorable determination under clause (i), award the recipient with an Encore Fellowship, and place the recipient with the organization as an Encore Fellow under paragraph (5)(C).

(3) Eligible recipients

(A) In general

An individual desiring to be selected as a Fellowship recipient shall—

(i) be an individual who—

(I) is age 55 or older as of the time the individual applies for the program; and

(II) is not engaged in, but who wishes to engage in, full- or part-time public service in the nonprofit sector or government; and

(ii) submit an application to the Corporation, at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Corporation may require, including—

(I) a description of the area of national need that the applicant hopes to address through the service project;

(II) a description of the skills and experience the applicant has to address an area of national need; and

(III) information identifying the region of the United States in which the applicant wishes to serve.

(B) Selection basis

In determining which individuals to select as Fellowship recipients, the Corporation shall—

(i) select not more than 10 individuals from each State; and

(ii) give priority to individuals with skills and experience for which there is an ongoing high demand in the nonprofit sector and government.

(4) Listed organizations

To be listed under paragraph (2)(A), an organization shall—

(A) be a nonprofit organization; and

(B) submit an application to the Corporation at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Corporation may require, including—

(i) a description of—

(I) the services and activities the organization carries out generally;

(II) the area of national need that the organization seeks to address through a service project; and

(III) the services and activities the organization seeks to carry out through the proposed service project;

(ii) a description of the skills and experience that an eligible Encore Fellowship recipient needs to be placed with the organization as an Encore Fellow for the service project;

(iii) a description of the training and leadership development the organization shall provide an Encore Fellow placed with the organization to assist the Encore Fellow in obtaining a public service job in the nonprofit sector or government after the period of the Encore Fellowship; and

(iv) evidence of the organization's financial stability.

(5) Placement

(A) Request for placement with listed organizations

To be placed with a listed organization in accordance with paragraph (2)(B) for a service project, an eligible Encore Fellowship recipient shall submit an application for such placement to the Corporation at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Corporation may require.

(B) Request for placement with other organization

An eligible Encore Fellowship recipient may apply to the Corporation to serve the recipient's Encore Fellowship year with a nonprofit organization that is not a listed organization. Such application shall be submitted to the Corporation at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Corporation shall require, and shall include—

(i) an identification and description of—

(I) the organization;

(II) the area of national need the organization seeks to address; and

(III) the services or activities the organization carries out to address such area of national need;

(ii) a description of the services the eligible Encore Fellowship recipient shall provide for the organization as an Encore Fellow; and

(iii) a letter of support from the leader of the organization, including—

(I) a description of the organization's need for the eligible Encore Fellowship recipient's services;

(II) evidence that the organization is financially sound;

(III) an assurance that the organization will provide training and leadership development to the eligible Encore Fellowship recipient if placed with the organization as an Encore Fellow, to assist the Encore Fellow in obtaining a public service job in the nonprofit sector or government after the period of the Encore Fellowship; and

(IV) a description of the training and leadership development to be provided to the Encore Fellowship recipient if so placed.

(C) Placement and award of Fellowship

If the Corporation determines that the eligible Encore Fellowship recipient is able to meet the service needs (including skills and experience to address an area of national need) of the organization that the eligible fellowship recipient requests under subparagraph (A) or (B), the Corporation shall—

(i) approve the placement of the eligible Encore Fellowship recipient with the organization;

(ii) award the eligible Encore Fellowship recipient an Encore Fellowship for a period of 1 year and designate the eligible Encore Fellowship recipient as an Encore Fellow; and

(iii) in awarding the Encore Fellowship, make a payment, in the amount of $11,000, to the organization to enable the organization to provide living expenses to the Encore Fellow for the year in which the Encore Fellow agrees to serve.

(6) Matching funds

An organization that receives an Encore Fellow under this subsection shall agree to provide, for the living expenses of the Encore Fellow during the year of service, non-Federal contributions in an amount equal to not less than $1 for every $1 of Federal funds provided to the organization for the Encore Fellow through the Encore Fellowship.

(7) Training and assistance

Each organization that receives an Encore Fellow under this subsection shall provide training, leadership development, and assistance to the Encore Fellow, and conduct oversight of the service provided by the Encore Fellow.

(8) Leadership development

Each year, the Corporation shall convene current and former Encore Fellows to discuss the Encore Fellows' experiences related to service under this subsection and discuss strategies for increasing leadership and careers in public service in the nonprofit sector or government.

(c) Evaluations

The Corporation shall conduct an independent evaluation of the programs authorized under subsections (a) and (b) and widely disseminate the results, including recommendations for

improvement, to the service community through multiple channels, including the Corporation's Resource Center or a clearinghouse of effective strategies.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §198C, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1805, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1559.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (a)(4), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Title II of the Act is classified generally to subchapter II (§5000 et seq.) of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12653c, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §198C, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(c), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 843; amended Pub. L. 105–277, div. A, §101(f) [title VIII, §405(d)(42)(B), (f)(33)(A)], Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–337, 2681–428, 2681–434, which related to military installation conversion demonstration programs, was repealed by Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1803(a)(2), title VI, §6101(a), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1554, 1600, effective Oct. 1, 2009.

Another prior section 12653c, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195C, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2524, which related to summer national service program of Civilian Community Corps Demonstration Program, was renumbered section 154 of Pub. L. 101–610 by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b), and transferred to section 12614 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

[1] *So in original.*

§12653d. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1803(a)(3), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1554

Section, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §198D, as added Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §104(c), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 845, related to special demonstration projects for the Yukon-Kuskokwim delta of Alaska.

Prior sections 12653d to 12653g were renumbered by Pub. L. 103–82, §104(b), and transferred as follows:

Section 12653d, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195D, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2524, which related to organization and membership of the Corps, was renumbered section 155 of Pub. L. 101–610 and transferred to section 12615 of this title.

Section 12653e, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195E, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2525, which provided for training of Corps members, was renumbered section 156 of Pub. L. 101–610 and transferred to section 12616 of this title.

Section 12653f, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195F, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2526, which related to service projects carried out by the Corps, was renumbered section 157 of Pub. L. 101–610 and transferred to section 12617 of this title.

Section 12653g, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195G, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2526, which related to authorized benefits for Corps members, was renumbered section 158 of Pub. L. 101–610 and transferred to section 12618 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

PART II—NATIONAL SERVICE RESERVE CORPS

§12653h. National Service Reserve Corps

(a) Definitions

In this section—

(1) the term "National Service Reserve Corps member" means an individual who—

(A) has completed a term of national service or is a veteran;

(B) has successfully completed training described in subsection (c) within the previous 2 years;

(C) completes not less than 10 hours of volunteering each year (which may include the training session described in subparagraph (B)); and

(D) has indicated interest to the Corporation in responding to disasters and emergencies in a timely manner through the National Service Reserve Corps; and

(2) the term "term of national service" means a term or period of service under section 12573 of this title.

(b) Establishment of National Service Reserve Corps

(1) In general

In consultation with the Federal Emergency Management Agency, the Corporation shall establish a National Service Reserve Corps to prepare and deploy National Service Reserve Corps members to respond to disasters and emergencies in support of national service programs and other requesting programs and agencies.

(2) Grants or contracts

In carrying out this section, the Corporation may enter into a grant or contract with an organization experienced in responding to disasters or in coordinating individuals who have completed a term of national service or are veterans, or may directly deploy National Service Reserve Corps members, as the Corporation determines necessary.

(c) Annual training

The Corporation shall conduct or coordinate annual training sessions, consistent with the training requirements of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, for individuals who have completed a term of national service or are veterans, and who wish to join the National Service Reserve Corps.

(d) Designation of organizations

(1) In general

The Corporation shall designate organizations with demonstrated experience in responding to disasters or emergencies, including through using volunteers, for participation in the program under this section.

(2) Requirements

The Corporation shall ensure that every designated organization is—

(A) prepared to respond to disasters or emergencies;

(B) prepared and able to utilize National Service Reserve Corps members in responding to disasters or emergencies; and

(C) willing to respond in a timely manner when notified by the Corporation of a disaster or emergency.

(e) Databases

The Corporation shall develop or contract with an outside organization to develop—

(1) a database of all National Service Reserve Corps members; and

(2) a database of all nonprofit organizations that have been designated by the Corporation under subsection (d).

(f) Deployment of National Service Reserve Corps

(1) Major disasters or emergencies

If a major disaster or emergency is declared by the President pursuant to section 102 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Assistance Act [1] (42 U.S.C. 5122), the Administrator of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, in consultation with the Corporation, may task the National Service Reserve Corps to assist in response.

(2) Other disasters or emergencies

For a disaster or emergency that is not declared a major disaster or emergency under section 102 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Assistance Act [1] (42 U.S.C. 5122), the Corporation may directly, or through a grant or contract, deploy the National Service Reserve Corps.

(3) Deployment

Under paragraph (1) or (2), the Corporation may—

(A) deploy interested National Service Reserve Corps members on assignments of not more than 30 days to assist with local needs related to preparing or recovering from the incident in the affected area, either directly or through organizations designated under subsection (d);

(B) make travel arrangements for the deployed National Service Reserve Corps members to the site of the incident; and

(C) provide funds to those organizations that are responding to the incident with deployed National Service Reserve Corps members, to enable the organizations to coordinate and provide housing, living stipends, and insurance for those deployed members.

(4) Allowance

Any amounts that are utilized by the Corporation from funds appropriated under section 12681(a)(4)(D) of this title to carry out paragraph (1) for a fiscal year shall be kept in a separate fund. Any amounts in such fund that are not used during a fiscal year shall remain available to use to pay National Service Reserve Corps members an allowance, determined by the Corporation, for out-of-pocket expenses.

(5) Information

(A) National service participants

The Corporation, the State Commissions, and entities receiving financial assistance for programs under division C of this subchapter,[1] or under part A of title I of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq.), shall inform participants about the National Service Reserve Corps upon the participants' completion of their term of national service.

(B) Veterans

The Secretary of Veterans Affairs, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, shall inform veterans who are recently discharged, released, or separated from the Armed Forces about the National Service Reserve Corps.

(6) Coordination

In deploying National Service Reserve Corps members under this subsection, the Corporation shall—

(A) avoid duplication of activities directed by the Federal Emergency Management Agency; and

(B) consult and, as appropriate, partner with Citizen Corps programs and other local disaster agencies, including State and local emergency management agencies, voluntary organizations active in disaster, State Commissions, and similar organizations, in the affected area.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §198H, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1806, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1562.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 102 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5122), referred to in

subsec. (f)(1), (2), probably means section 102 of Pub. L. 93–288, May 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 143, known as the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act, which is classified to section 5122 of this title.

Division C of this subchapter, referred to in subsec. (f)(5)(A), was in the original "subtitle C of this Act" which was translated as meaning subtitle C of title I of Pub. L. 101–610, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (f)(5)(A), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Part A of title I of the Act is classified generally to part A of subchapter I (§4951 et seq.) of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12653h, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195H, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2528, which related to administration of the Corps, was renumbered section 159 of Pub. L. 101–610 and transferred to section 12619 of this title.

Prior sections 12653i and 12653j were renumbered by section 104(b) of Pub. L. 103–82 and transferred as follows:

Section 12653i, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195I, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2530, which related to status of Corps members and Corps personnel under Federal law, was renumbered section 160 of Pub. L. 101–610 and transferred to section 12620 of this title.

Section 12653j, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195J, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2530, which provided for contract and grant authority of Corps Director, was renumbered section 161 of Pub. L. 101–610 and transferred to section 12621 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Part effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

PART III—SOCIAL INNOVATION FUNDS PILOT PROGRAM

§12653k. Funds

(a) Findings

Congress finds the following:

(1) Social entrepreneurs and other nonprofit community organizations are developing innovative and effective solutions to national and local challenges.

(2) Increased public and private investment in replicating and expanding proven effective solutions, and supporting new solutions, developed by social entrepreneurs and other nonprofit community organizations could allow those entrepreneurs and organizations to replicate and expand proven initiatives, and support new initiatives, in communities.

(3) A network of Social Innovation Funds could leverage Federal investments to increase State, local, business, and philanthropic resources to replicate and expand proven solutions and invest in supporting new innovations to tackle specific identified community challenges.

(b) Purposes

The purposes of this section are—

(1) to recognize and increase the impact of social entrepreneurs and other nonprofit community organizations in tackling national and local challenges;

(2) to stimulate the development of a network of Social Innovation Funds that will increase private and public investment in nonprofit community organizations that are effectively addressing national and local challenges to allow such organizations to replicate and expand proven initiatives

or support new initiatives;

(3) to assess the effectiveness of such Funds in—

(A) leveraging Federal investments to increase State, local, business, and philanthropic resources to address national and local challenges;

(B) providing resources to replicate and expand effective initiatives; and

(C) seeding experimental initiatives focused on improving outcomes in the areas described in subsection (f)(3); and

(4) to strengthen the infrastructure to identify, invest in, replicate, and expand initiatives with effective solutions to national and local challenges.

(c) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Community organization

The term "community organization" means a nonprofit organization that carries out innovative, effective initiatives to address community challenges.

(2) Covered entity

The term "covered entity" means—

(A) an existing grantmaking institution (existing as of the date on which the institution applies for a grant under this section); or

(B) a partnership between—

(i) such an existing grantmaking institution; and

(ii) an additional grantmaking institution, a State Commission, or a chief executive officer of a unit of general local government.

(3) Issue area

The term "issue area" means an area described in subsection (f)(3).

(d) Program

From the amounts appropriated to carry out this section that are not reserved under subsections (l) and (m), the Corporation shall establish a Social Innovation Funds grant program to make grants on a competitive basis to eligible entities for Social Innovation Funds.

(e) Periods; amounts

The Corporation shall make such grants for periods of 5 years, and may renew the grants for additional periods of 5 years, in amounts of not less than $1,000,000 and not more than $10,000,000 per year.

(f) Eligibility

To be eligible to receive a grant under subsection (d), an entity shall—

(1) be a covered entity;

(2) propose to focus on—

(A) serving a specific local geographical area; or

(B) addressing a specific issue area;

(3) propose to focus on improving measurable outcomes relating to—

(A) education for economically disadvantaged elementary or secondary school students;

(B) child and youth development;

(C) reductions in poverty or increases in economic opportunity for economically disadvantaged individuals;

(D) health, including access to health services and health education;

(E) resource conservation and local environmental quality;

(F) individual or community energy efficiency;

(G) civic engagement; or

(H) reductions in crime;

(4) have an evidence-based decisionmaking strategy, including—

(A) use of evidence produced by prior rigorous evaluations of program effectiveness including, where available, well-implemented randomized controlled trials; and

(B) a well-articulated plan to—

(i)(I) replicate and expand research-proven initiatives that have been shown to produce sizeable, sustained benefits to participants or society; or

(II) support new initiatives with a substantial likelihood of significant impact; or

(ii) partner with a research organization to carry out rigorous evaluations to assess the effectiveness of such initiatives; and

(5) have appropriate policies, as determined by the Corporation, that protect against conflict of interest, self-dealing, and other improper practices.

(g) Application

To be eligible to receive a grant under subsection (d) for national leveraging capital, an eligible entity shall submit an application to the Corporation at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Corporation may specify, including, at a minimum—

(1) an assurance that the eligible entity will—

(A) use the funds received through that capital in order to make subgrants to community organizations that will use the funds to replicate or expand proven initiatives, or support new initiatives, in low-income communities;

(B) in making decisions about subgrants for communities, consult with a diverse cross section of community representatives in the decisions, including individuals from the public, nonprofit private, and for-profit private sectors; and

(C) make subgrants of a sufficient size and scope to enable the community organizations to build their capacity to manage initiatives, and sustain replication or expansion of the initiatives;

(2) an assurance that the eligible entity will not make any subgrants to the parent organizations of the eligible entity, a subsidiary organization of the parent organization, or, if the eligible entity applied for funds under this section as a partnership, any member of the partnership;

(3) an identification of, as appropriate—

(A) the specific local geographical area referred to in subsection (f)(2)(A) that the eligible entity is proposing to serve; or

(B) the issue area referred to in subsection (f)(2)(B) that the eligible entity will address, and the geographical areas that the eligible entity is likely to serve in addressing such issue area;

(4)(A) information identifying the issue areas in which the eligible entity will work to improve measurable outcomes;

(B) statistics on the needs related to those issue areas in, as appropriate—

(i) the specific local geographical area described in paragraph (3)(A); or

(ii) the geographical areas described in paragraph (3)(B), including statistics demonstrating that those geographical areas have high need in the specific issue area that the eligible entity is proposing to address; and

(C) information on the specific measurable outcomes related to the issue areas involved that the eligible entity will seek to improve;

(5) information describing the process by which the eligible entity selected, or will select, community organizations to receive the subgrants, to ensure that the community organizations—

(A) are institutions—

(i) with proven initiatives and a demonstrated track record of achieving specific outcomes related to the measurable outcomes for the eligible entity; or

(ii) that articulate a new solution with a significant likelihood for substantial impact;

(B) articulate measurable outcomes for the use of the subgrant funds that are connected to the measurable outcomes for the eligible entity;

(C) will use the funds to replicate, expand, or support their initiatives;

(D) provide a well-defined plan for replicating, expanding, or supporting the initiatives funded;

(E) can sustain the initiatives after the subgrant period concludes through reliable public revenues, earned income, or private sector funding;

(F) have strong leadership and financial and management systems;

(G) are committed to the use of data collection and evaluation for improvement of the initiatives;

(H) will implement and evaluate innovative initiatives, to be important contributors to knowledge in their fields; and

(I) will meet the requirements for providing matching funds specified in subsection (k);

(6) information about the eligible entity, including its experience managing collaborative initiatives, or assessing applicants for grants and evaluating the performance of grant recipients for outcome-focused initiatives, and any other relevant information;

(7) a commitment to meet the requirements of subsection (i) and a plan for meeting the requirements, including information on any funding that the eligible entity has secured to provide the matching funds required under that subsection;

(8) a description of the eligible entity's plan for providing technical assistance and support, other than financial support, to the community organizations that will increase the ability of the community organizations to achieve their measurable outcomes;

(9) information on the commitment, institutional capacity, and expertise of the eligible entity concerning—

(A) collecting and analyzing data required for evaluations, compliance efforts, and other purposes;

(B) supporting relevant research; and

(C) submitting regular reports to the Corporation, including information on the initiatives of the community organizations, and the replication or expansion of such initiatives;

(10) a commitment to use data and evaluations to improve the eligible entity's own model and to improve the initiatives funded by the eligible entity; and

(11) a commitment to cooperate with any evaluation activities undertaken by the Corporation.

(h) Selection criteria

In selecting eligible entities to receive grants under subsection (d), the Corporation shall—

(1) select eligible entities on a competitive basis;

(2) select eligible entities on the basis of the quality of their selection process, as described in subsection (g)(5), the capacity of the eligible entities to manage Social Innovation Funds, and the potential of the eligible entities to sustain the Funds after the conclusion of the grant period;

(3) include among the grant recipients eligible entities that propose to provide subgrants to serve communities (such as rural low-income communities) that the eligible entities can demonstrate are significantly philanthropically underserved;

(4) select a geographically diverse set of eligible entities; and

(5) take into account broad community perspectives and support.

(i) Matching funds for grants

(1) In general

The Corporation may not make a grant to an eligible entity under subsection (d) for a Social Innovation Fund unless the entity agrees that, with respect to the cost described in subsection (d) for that Fund, the entity will make available matching funds in an amount equal to not less than $1 for every $1 of funds provided under the grant.

(2) Additional requirements

(A) Type and sources

The eligible entity shall provide the matching funds in cash. The eligible entity shall provide the matching funds from State, local, or private sources, which may include State or local agencies, businesses, private philanthropic organizations, or individuals.

(B) Eligible entities including State Commissions or local government offices

(i) In general

In a case in which a State Commission, a local government office, or both entities are a part of the eligible entity, the State involved, the local government involved, or both entities, respectively, shall contribute not less than 30 percent and not more than 50 percent of the matching funds.

(ii) Local government office

In this subparagraph, the term "local government office" means the office of the chief executive officer of a unit of general local government.

(3) Reduction

The Corporation may reduce by 50 percent the matching funds required by paragraph (1) for an eligible entity serving a community (such as a rural low-income community) that the eligible entity can demonstrate is significantly philanthropically underserved.

(j) Subgrants

(1) Subgrants authorized

An eligible entity receiving a grant under subsection (d) is authorized to use the funds made available through the grant to award, on a competitive basis, subgrants to expand or replicate proven initiatives, or support new initiatives with a substantial likelihood of success, to—

(A) community organizations serving low-income communities within the specific local geographical area described in the eligible entity's application in accordance with subsection (g)(3)(A); or

(B) community organizations addressing a specific issue area described in the eligible entity's application in accordance with subsection (g)(3)(B), in low-income communities in the geographical areas described in the application.

(2) Periods; amounts

The eligible entity shall make such subgrants for periods of not less than 3 and not more than 5 years, and may renew the subgrants for such periods, in amounts of not less than $100,000 per year.

(3) Applications

To be eligible to receive a subgrant from an eligible entity under this section, including receiving a payment for that subgrant each year, a community organization shall submit an application to an eligible entity that serves the specific local geographical area, or geographical areas, that the community organization proposes to serve, at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the eligible entity may require, including—

(A) a description of the initiative the community organization carries out and plans to replicate or expand, or of the new initiative the community organization intends to support, using funds received from the eligible entity, and how the initiative relates to the issue areas in which the eligible entity has committed to work in the eligible entity's application, in accordance with subsection (g)(4)(A);

(B) data on the measurable outcomes the community organization has improved, and information on the measurable outcomes the community organization seeks to improve by

replicating or expanding a proven initiative or supporting a new initiative, which shall be among the measurable outcomes that the eligible entity identified in the eligible entity's application, in accordance with subsection (g)(4)(C);

(C) an identification of the community in which the community organization proposes to carry out an initiative, which shall be within a local geographical area described in the eligible entity's application in accordance with subparagraph (A) or (B) of subsection (g)(3), as applicable;

(D) a description of the evidence-based decisionmaking strategies the community organization uses to improve the measurable outcomes, including—

(i) use of evidence produced by prior rigorous evaluations of program effectiveness including, where available, well-implemented randomized controlled trials; or

(ii) a well-articulated plan to conduct, or partner with a research organization to conduct, rigorous evaluations to assess the effectiveness of initiatives addressing national or local challenges;

(E) a description of how the community organization uses data to analyze and improve its initiatives;

(F) specific evidence of how the community organization will meet the requirements for providing matching funds specified in subsection (k);

(G) a description of how the community organization will sustain the replicated or expanded initiative after the conclusion of the subgrant period; and

(H) any other information the eligible entity may require, including information necessary for the eligible entity to fulfill the requirements of subsection (g)(5).

(k) Matching funds for subgrants

(1) In general

An eligible entity may not make a subgrant to a community organization under this section for an initiative described in subsection (j)(3)(A) unless the organization agrees that, with respect to the cost of carrying out that initiative, the organization will make available, on an annual basis, matching funds in an amount equal to not less than $1 for every $1 of funds provided under the subgrant. If the community organization fails to make such matching funds available for a fiscal year, the eligible entity shall not make payments for the remaining fiscal years of the subgrant period, notwithstanding any other provision of this part.

(2) Types and sources

The community organization shall provide the matching funds in cash. The community organization shall provide the matching funds from State, local, or private sources, which may include funds from State or local agencies or private sector funding.

(l) Direct support

(1) Program authorized

The Corporation may use not more than 10 percent of the funds appropriated for this section to award grants to community organizations serving low-income communities or addressing a specific issue area in geographical areas that have the highest need in that issue area, to enable such community organizations to replicate or expand proven initiatives or support new initiatives.

(2) Terms and conditions

A grant awarded under this subsection shall be subject to the same terms and conditions as a subgrant awarded under subsection (j).

(3) Application; matching funds

Paragraphs (2) and (3) of subsection (j) and subsection (k) shall apply to a community organization receiving or applying for a grant under this subsection in the same manner as such subsections apply to a community organization receiving or applying for a subgrant under

subsection (j), except that references to a subgrant shall mean a grant and references to an eligible entity shall mean the Corporation.

(m) Research and evaluation

(1) In general

The Corporation may reserve not more than 5 percent of the funds appropriated for this section for a fiscal year to support, directly or through contract with an independent entity, research and evaluation activities to evaluate the eligible entities and community organizations receiving grants under subsections (d) and (l) and the initiatives supported by the grants.

(2) Research and evaluation activities

(A) Research and reports

(i) In general

The entity carrying out this subsection shall collect data and conduct or support research with respect to the eligible entities and community organizations receiving grants under subsections (d) and (l), and the initiatives supported by such eligible entities and community organizations, to determine the success of the program carried out under this section in replicating, expanding, and supporting initiatives, including—

(I) the success of the initiatives in improving measurable outcomes; and

(II) the success of the program in increasing philanthropic investments in philanthropically underserved communities.

(ii) Reports

The Corporation shall submit periodic reports to the authorizing committees including—

(I) the data collected and the results of the research under this subsection;

(II) information on lessons learned about best practices from the activities carried out under this section, to improve those activities; and

(III) a list of all eligible entities and community organizations receiving funds under this section.

(iii) Public information

The Corporation shall annually post the list described in clause (ii)(III) on the Corporation's website.

(B) Technical assistance

The Corporation shall, directly or through contract, provide technical assistance to the eligible entities and community organizations that receive grants under subsections (d) and (l).

(C) Knowledge management

The Corporation shall, directly or through contract, maintain a clearinghouse for information on best practices resulting from initiatives supported by the eligible entities and community organizations.

(D) Reservation

Of the funds appropriated under section 12681(a)(4)(E) of this title for a fiscal year, not more than 5 percent may be used to carry out this subsection.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §198K, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1807, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1564.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12653k, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195K, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2531, which set out other departments' responsibilities to the Corps, was renumbered section 162 of Pub. L. 101–610 and transferred to section 12622 of this title.

Prior sections 12653l to 12653n were renumbered by section 104(b) of Pub. L. 103–82 and transferred as follows:

Section 12653l, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195L, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2532, which related to Advisory Board for the Corps, was renumbered section 163 of Pub. L. 101–610 and transferred to section 12623 of this title.

Section 12653m, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195M, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2532, which provided for annual evaluations of Corps programs, was renumbered section 164 of Pub. L. 101–610 and transferred to section 12624 of this title.

Section 12653n, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195N, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2532, which limited funding for Corps programs, was renumbered section 165 of Pub. L. 101–610 and transferred to section 12625 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1515, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1528.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Part effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

PART IV—NATIONAL SERVICE PROGRAMS CLEARINGHOUSES; VOLUNTEER GENERATION FUND

§12653*o*. National service programs clearinghouses

(a) In general

The Corporation shall provide assistance, by grant, contract, or cooperative agreement, to entities with expertise in the dissemination of information through clearinghouses to establish 1 or more clearinghouses for information regarding the national service laws, which shall include information on service-learning and on service through other programs receiving assistance under the national service laws.

(b) Function of clearinghouse

Such a clearinghouse may—

(1) assist entities carrying out State or local service-learning and national service programs with needs assessments and planning;

(2) conduct research and evaluations concerning service-learning or programs receiving assistance under the national service laws, except that such clearinghouse may not conduct such research and evaluations if the recipient of the grant, contract, or cooperative agreement establishing the clearinghouse under this section is receiving funds for such purpose under part III of division B or under this division (not including this section);

(3)(A) provide leadership development and training to State and local service-learning program administrators, supervisors, service sponsors, and participants; and

(B) provide training to persons who can provide the leadership development and training described in subparagraph (A);

(4) facilitate communication among—

(A) entities carrying out service-learning programs and programs offered under the national service laws; and

(B) participants in such programs;

(5) provide and disseminate information and curriculum materials relating to planning and operating service-learning programs and programs offered under the national service laws, to States, territories, Indian tribes, and local entities eligible to receive financial assistance under the national service laws;

(6) provide and disseminate information regarding methods to make service-learning programs and programs offered under the national service laws accessible to individuals with disabilities;

(7) disseminate applications in languages other than English;

(8)(A) gather and disseminate information on successful service-learning programs and programs offered under the national service laws, components of such successful programs, innovative curricula related to service-learning, and service-learning projects; and

(B) coordinate the activities of the clearinghouse with appropriate entities to avoid duplication of effort;

(9) make recommendations to State and local entities on quality controls to improve the quality of service-learning programs and programs offered under the national service laws;

(10) assist organizations in recruiting, screening, and placing a diverse population of service-learning coordinators and program sponsors;

(11) disseminate effective strategies for working with disadvantaged youth in national service programs, as determined by organizations with an established expertise in working with such youth; and

(12) carry out such other activities as the Chief Executive Officer determines to be appropriate.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §198O, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1808, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1572.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12653o, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §195O, as added Pub. L. 102–484, div. A, title X, §1092(a)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2532, which defined terms used in former part H of this subchapter, was renumbered section 166 of Pub. L. 101–610 and transferred to section 12626 of this title and subsequently renumbered section 165 of Pub. L. 101–610 by section 1516(1) of Pub. L. 111–13.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Part effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

§12653p. Volunteer generation fund

(a) Grants authorized

Subject to the availability of appropriations for this section, the Corporation may make grants to State Commissions and nonprofit organizations for the purpose of assisting the State Commissions and nonprofit organizations to—

(1) develop and carry out volunteer programs described in subsection (c); and

(2) make subgrants to support and create new local community-based entities that recruit, manage, or support volunteers as described in such subsection.

(b) Application

(1) In general

Each State Commission or nonprofit organization desiring a grant under this section shall submit an application to the Corporation at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such information as the Corporation may reasonably require.

(2) Contents

Each application submitted pursuant to paragraph (1) shall contain—

(A)(i) [1] a description of the program that the applicant will provide;

(B) an assurance that the applicant will annually collect information on—

(i) the number of volunteers recruited for activities carried out under this section, using funds received under this section, and the type and amount of activities carried out by such volunteers; and

(ii) the number of volunteers managed or supported using funds received under this section, and the type and amount of activities carried out by such volunteers;

(C) a description of the outcomes the applicant will use to annually measure and track

performance with regard to—

(i) activities carried out by volunteers; and

(ii) volunteers recruited, managed, or supported; and

(D) such additional assurances as the Corporation determines to be essential to ensure compliance with the requirements of this section.

(c) Eligible volunteer programs

A State Commission or nonprofit organization receiving a grant under this section shall use the assistance—

(1) directly to carry out volunteer programs or to develop and support community-based entities that recruit, manage, or support volunteers, by carrying out activities consistent with the goals of the subgrants described in paragraph (2); or

(2) through subgrants to community-based entities to carry out volunteer programs or develop and support such entities that recruit, manage, or support volunteers, through 1 or more of the following types of subgrants:

(A) A subgrant to a community-based entity for activities that are consistent with the priorities set by the State's national service plan as described in section 12638(e) of this title, or by the Corporation.

(B) A subgrant to recruit, manage, or support volunteers to a community-based entity such as a volunteer coordinating agency, a nonprofit resource center, a volunteer training clearinghouse, an institution of higher education, or a collaborative partnership of faith-based and community-based organizations.

(C) A subgrant to a community-based entity that provides technical assistance and support to—

(i) strengthen the capacity of local volunteer infrastructure organizations;

(ii) address areas of national need (as defined in section 12653b(a) of this title); and

(iii) expand the number of volunteers nationally.

(d) Allocation of funds

(1) In general

Of the funds allocated by the Corporation for provision of assistance under this section for a fiscal year—

(A) the Corporation shall use 50 percent of such funds to award grants, on a competitive basis, to State Commissions and nonprofit organizations for such fiscal year; and

(B) the Corporation shall use 50 percent of such funds make [2] an allotment to the State Commissions of each of the several States, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico based on the formula described in subsections (e) and (f) of section 12581 of this title, subject to paragraph (2).

(2) Minimum grant amount

In order to ensure that each State Commission is able to improve efforts to recruit, manage, or support volunteers, the Corporation may determine a minimum grant amount for allotments under paragraph (1)(B).

(e) Limitation on administrative costs

Not more than 5 percent of the amount of any grant provided under this section for a fiscal year may be used to pay for administrative costs incurred by either the recipient of the grant or any community-based entity receiving assistance or a subgrant under such grant.

(f) Matching fund requirements

The Corporation share of the cost of carrying out a program that receives assistance under this section, whether the assistance is provided directly or as a subgrant from the original recipient of the assistance, may not exceed—

(1) 80 percent of such cost for the first year in which the recipient receives such assistance;

(2) 70 percent of such cost for the second year in which the recipient receives such assistance;
(3) 60 percent of such cost for the third year in which the recipient receives such assistance; and
(4) 50 percent of such cost for the fourth year in which the recipient receives such assistance and each year thereafter.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §198P, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1808, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1573.)

[1] *So in original. No cl. (ii) has been enacted.*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be preceded by "to".*

PART V—NONPROFIT CAPACITY BUILDING PROGRAM

§12653s. Nonprofit capacity building

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Intermediary nonprofit grantee

The term "intermediary nonprofit grantee" means an intermediary nonprofit organization that receives a grant under subsection (b).

(2) Intermediary nonprofit organization

The term "intermediary nonprofit organization" means an experienced and capable nonprofit entity with meaningful prior experience in providing organizational development assistance, or capacity building assistance, focused on small and midsize nonprofit organizations.

(3) Nonprofit

The term "nonprofit", used with respect to an entity or organization, means—
(A) an entity or organization described in section 501(c)(3) of title 26 and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of such title; and
(B) an entity or organization described in paragraph (1) or (2) of section 170(c) of such title.

(4) State

The term "State" means each of the several States, and the District of Columbia.

(b) Grants

The Corporation shall establish a Nonprofit Capacity Building Program to make grants to intermediary nonprofit organizations to serve as intermediary nonprofit grantees. The Corporation shall make the grants to enable the intermediary nonprofit grantees to pay for the Federal share of the cost of delivering organizational development assistance, including training on best practices, financial planning, grantwriting, and compliance with the applicable tax laws, for small and midsize nonprofit organizations, especially those nonprofit organizations facing resource hardship challenges. Each of the grantees shall match the grant funds by providing a non-Federal share as described in subsection (f).

(c) Amount

To the extent practicable, the Corporation shall make such a grant to an intermediary nonprofit organization in each State, and shall make such grant in an amount of not less than $200,000.

(d) Application

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, an intermediary nonprofit organization shall submit an application to the Corporation at such time, in such manner, and containing such

information as the Corporation may require. The intermediary nonprofit organization shall submit in the application information demonstrating that the organization has secured sufficient resources to meet the requirements of subsection (f).

(e) Preference and considerations

(1) Preference

In making such grants, the Corporation shall give preference to intermediary nonprofit organizations seeking to become intermediary nonprofit grantees in areas where nonprofit organizations face significant resource hardship challenges.

(2) Considerations

In determining whether to make a grant the Corporation shall consider—

(A) the number of small and midsize nonprofit organizations that will be served by the grant;

(B) the degree to which the activities proposed to be provided through the grant will assist a wide number of nonprofit organizations within a State, relative to the proposed amount of the grant; and

(C) the quality of the organizational development assistance to be delivered by the intermediary nonprofit grantee, including the qualifications of its administrators and representatives, and its record in providing services to small and midsize nonprofit organizations.

(f) Federal share

(1) In general

The Federal share of the cost as referenced in subsection (b) shall be 50 percent.

(2) Non-Federal share

(A) In general

The non-Federal share of the cost as referenced in subsection (b) shall be 50 percent and shall be provided in cash.

(B) Third party contributions

(i) In general

Except as provided in clause (ii), an intermediary nonprofit grantee shall provide the non-Federal share of the cost through contributions from third parties. The third parties may include charitable grantmaking entities and grantmaking vehicles within existing organizations, entities of corporate philanthropy, corporations, individual donors, and regional, State, or local government agencies, or other non-Federal sources.

(ii) Exception

If the intermediary nonprofit grantee is a private foundation (as defined in section 509(a) of title 26), a donor advised fund (as defined in section 4966(d)(2) of such title), an organization which is described in section 4966(d)(4)(A)(i) of such title, or an organization which is described in section 4966(d)(4)(B) of such title, the grantee shall provide the non-Federal share from within that grantee's own funds.

(iii) Maintenance of effort, prior year third-party funding levels

For purposes of maintaining private sector support levels for the activities specified by this program, a non-Federal share that includes donations by third parties shall be composed in a way that does not decrease prior levels of funding from the same third parties granted to the nonprofit intermediary grantee in the preceding year.

(g) Reservation

Of the amount authorized to provide financial assistance under this division, there shall be made available to carry out this section $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2010 through 2014.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §198S, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1809, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat.

1575.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Part effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

Division I—American Conservation and Youth Service Corps

CODIFICATION

Subtitle I of title I of Pub. L. 101–610, comprising this division, was formerly classified to part C (§12541 et seq.) of this subchapter prior to the general amendment by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a).

§12655. General authority

The Corporation may make grants to States or local applicants and may transfer funds to the Secretary of Agriculture or to the Secretary of the Interior for the creation or expansion of full-time, part-time, year-round, or summer, youth corps programs [1] To the extent practicable, the Corporation shall apply the provisions of division C in making grants under this section.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199A, formerly §121, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3140; Pub. L. 102–384, §5, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1455; renumbered §199A and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), (e)(1), (2), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, 815.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12541 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a).

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(1), (2), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission", substituted "or to the Secretary of the Interior" for ", to the Secretary of the Interior, or to the Director of ACTION", struck out "under section 12512 of this title" after "may make grants", and inserted at end "To the extent practicable, the Corporation shall apply the provisions of division C in making grants under this section."

1992—Pub. L. 102–384 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: "The Commission may make grants under section 12512 of this title to States or local applicants, to the Secretary of Agriculture, to the Secretary of the Interior, or to the Director of ACTION for the creation or expansion of full-time or summer youth corps programs."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

SHORT TITLE

For short title of subtitle I of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 which enacted this division, as the American Conservation and Youth Service Corps Act of 1990, see section 199 of Pub. L. 101–610, set out as a note under section 12501 of this title.

[1] So in original. Probably should be followed by a period.

§12655a. Limitation on purchase of capital equipment

Not to exceed 10 percent of the amount of assistance made available to a program agency under this division shall be used for the purchase of major capital equipment.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199B, formerly §122, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3140; Pub. L. 102–10, §5(2), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 30; renumbered §199B and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a),

(e)(3), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, 815.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12542 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a).

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(3), amended section generally, substituting provisions relating to limitation on purchase of capital equipment for provisions relating to allocation of funds.

1991—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 102–10 inserted "service" after "youth".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12655b. State application

(a) Submission

To be eligible to receive a grant under this division, a State or Indian tribe (or a local applicant if section 12655 of this title applies) shall prepare and submit to the Corporation, an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Corporation may reasonably require.

(b) General content

An application submitted under subsection (a) shall describe—

(1) any youth corps program proposed to be conducted directly by such applicant with assistance provided under this division; and

(2) any grant program proposed to be conducted by such State with assistance provided under this division for the benefit of entities within such State.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199C, formerly §123, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3141; Pub. L. 102–10, §5(3), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 30; renumbered §199C and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), (e)(1), (4), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, 815.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12543 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a).

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(1), (4)(A), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission" in two places and "section 12655 of this title" for "section 12542(b) of this title" and struck out before period at end ", including the information required under subsection (b) of this section".

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(4)(B), struck out subsec. (c) which specified required contents of State applications and subsec. (d) which required State applicants to establish and implement programs to make grants to applicants within the State.

1991—Subsec. (c)(14), (15). Pub. L. 102–10 added par. (14) and redesignated former par. (14) as (15).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12655c. Focus of programs

(a) In general

Programs that receive assistance under this division may carry out activities that—

(1) in the case of conservation corps programs, focus on—

(A) conservation, rehabilitation, and the improvement of wildlife habitat, rangelands, parks,

and recreational areas;

(B) urban and rural revitalization, historical and cultural site preservation, and reforestation of both urban and rural areas;

(C) fish culture, wildlife habitat maintenance and improvement, and other fishery assistance;

(D) road and trail maintenance and improvement;

(E) erosion, flood, drought, and storm damage assistance and controls;

(F) stream, lake, waterfront harbor, and port improvement;

(G) wetlands protection and pollution control;

(H) insect, disease, rodent, and fire prevention and control;

(I) the improvement of abandoned railroad beds and rights-of-way;

(J) energy conservation projects, renewable resource enhancement, and recovery of biomass;

(K) reclamation and improvement of strip-mined land;

(L) forestry, nursery, and cultural operations; and

(M) making public facilities accessible to individuals with disabilities.

(2) in the case of youth service corps programs, include participant service in—

(A) State, local, and regional governmental agencies;

(B) nursing homes, hospices, senior centers, hospitals, local libraries, parks, recreational facilities, child and adult day care centers, programs serving individuals with disabilities, and schools;

(C) law enforcement agencies,[1] and penal and probation systems;

(D) private nonprofit organizations that primarily focus on social service such as community action agencies;

(E) activities that focus on the rehabilitation or improvement of public facilities, neighborhood improvements, literacy training that benefits educationally disadvantaged individuals, weatherization of and basic repairs to low-income housing including housing occupied by older adults, energy conservation (including solar energy techniques), removal of architectural barriers to access by individuals with disabilities to public facilities, activities that focus on drug and alcohol abuse education, prevention and treatment, and conservation, maintenance, or restoration of natural resources on publicly held lands; and

(F) any other nonpartisan civic activities and services that the Corporation determines to be of a substantial social benefit in meeting unmet human, educational, or environmental needs (particularly needs related to poverty) or in the community where volunteer service is to be performed; or

(3) encompass the focuses and services described in both paragraphs (1) and (2).

(b) Limitation on service

No participant shall perform any specific activity for more than a 6-month period. No participant shall remain enrolled in programs assisted under this division for more than 24 months.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199D, formerly §124, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3143; Pub. L. 102–10, §5(4), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 30; renumbered §199D and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), (e)(1), (5), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, 815, 816.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12544 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a).

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a)(2)(F). Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission".

Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(5), redesignated subsec. (c) as (b) and struck out former subsec. (b) which related to ineligible service categories.

1991—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 102–10, §5(4)(A), substituted "youth service" for "human services" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 102–10, §5(4)(B), substituted "any specific activity for more than a 6-month period. No participant shall remain enrolled in programs" for "services in any project for more than a 6-month period. No participant shall remain enrolled in projects".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

[1] *So in original. The comma probably should not appear.*

§12655d. Related programs

An activity administered under the authority of the Secretary of Health and Human Services, that is operated for the same purpose as a program eligible to be carried out under this division, is encouraged to use services available under this division.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199E, formerly §125, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3144; renumbered §199E, Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12545 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a).

§12655e. Public lands or Indian lands

(a) Limitation

To be eligible to receive assistance through a grant provided under this division, a program shall carry out activities on public lands or Indian lands, or result in a public benefit.

(b) Review of applications

In reviewing applications submitted under section 12655b of this title that propose programs or projects to be carried out on public lands or Indian lands, the Corporation shall consult with the Secretary of the Interior.

(c) Consistency

A program carried out with assistance provided under this division for conservation, rehabilitation, or improvement of any public lands or Indian lands shall be consistent with—

(1) the provisions of law and policies relating to the management and administration of such lands, and all other applicable provisions of law; and

(2) all management, operational, and other plans and documents that govern the administration of such lands.

(d) Participation by other conservation programs

Any land or water conservation program (or any related program) administered in any State under the authority of any Federal program is encouraged to use services available under this part [1] to carry out its program.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199F, formerly §126, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3144; renumbered §199F and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), (e)(1), (6), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, 815, 816.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsec. (d), is unidentifiable in the original because subtitle I (§§199 to 199O) of title I of Pub. L. 101–610 does not contain parts.

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12546 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82,

§101(a).

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(1), (6), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission" and "section 12655b of this title" for "section 12543 of this title".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12655f. Training and education services

(a) Assessment of skills

Each program agency shall assess the educational level of participants at the time of their entrance into the program, using any available records or simplified assessment means or methodology and shall, where appropriate, refer such participants for testing for specific learning disabilities.

(b) Enhancement of skills

Each program agency shall, through the programs and activities administered under this division, enhance the educational skills of participants.

(c) Provision of pre-service and in-service training and education

(1) Requirement

Each program agency shall use not less than 10 percent of the assistance made available to such agency under this division in each fiscal year to provide pre-service and in-service training and educational materials and services for participants in such a program. Program participants shall be provided with information concerning the benefits to the community that result from the activities undertaken by such participants.

(2) Agreements for academic study

A program agency may enter into arrangements with academic institutions or education providers, including—

(A) local education agencies;
(B) community colleges;
(C) 4-year colleges;
(D) area vocational-technical schools; and
(E) community based organizations;

to evaluate the basic skills of participants and to make academic study available to participants to enable such participants to upgrade literacy skills, to obtain high school diplomas or the equivalent of such diplomas, to obtain college degrees, or to enhance employable skills.

(3) Counseling

Career and educational guidance and counseling shall be provided to a participant during a period of in-service training as described in this subsection. Each graduating participant shall be provided with counseling with respect to additional study, job skills training or employment and shall be provided job placement assistance where appropriate.

(4) Priority for participants without high school diplomas

A program agency shall give priority to participants who have not obtained a high school diploma or the equivalent of such diploma, in providing services under this subsection.

(d) Standards and procedures

(1) Consistency with State and local requirements

Appropriate State and local officials shall certify that standards and procedures with respect to the awarding of academic credit and the certification of educational attainment in programs conducted under subsection (c) are consistent with the requirements of applicable State and local law and regulations.

(2) Academic standards

The standards and procedures described in paragraph (1) shall provide that an individual serving in a program that receives assistance under this division—

(A) who is not a high school graduate, participate in an educational curriculum so that such individual can earn a high school diploma or the equivalent of such diploma; and

(B) may arrange to receive academic credit in recognition of the education and skills obtained from service satisfactorily completed.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199G, formerly §127, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3145; renumbered §199G, Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12547 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a).

§12655g. Repealed. Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(e)(8)(A), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 816

Section, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199H, formerly §128, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3146; Pub. L. 102–10, §5(5), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 30; renumbered §199H, Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, related to amount of award and matching requirement.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as an Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12655h. Preference for certain projects

(a) In general

In the consideration of applications submitted under section 12655b of this title, the Corporation shall give preference to programs that—

(1) will provide long-term benefits to the public;

(2) will instill a work ethic and a sense of public service in the participants;

(3) will be labor intensive, and involve youth operating in crews;

(4) can be planned and initiated promptly; and

(5) will enhance skills development and educational level and opportunities for the participants.

(b) Special rule

In the consideration of applications under this division the Corporation shall ensure the equitable treatment of both urban and rural areas.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199H, formerly §129, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3146; renumbered §199I, renumbered §199H, and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), (e)(1), (7), (8)(B), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, 815, 816.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12549 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 199H of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12655g of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(8)(A).

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(1), (7), in introductory provisions, substituted "Corporation" for "Commission" and "section 12655b" for "section 12543".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12655i. Age and citizenship criteria for enrollment

(a) Age and citizenship

Enrollment in programs that receive assistance under this division shall be limited to individuals who, at the time of enrollment, are—

(1) not less than 16 years nor more than 25 years of age, except that summer programs may include individuals not less than 14 years nor more than 21 years of age at the time of the enrollment of such individuals; and

(2) citizens or nationals of the United States or lawful permanent resident aliens of the United States.

(b) Participation of disadvantaged youth

Programs that receive assistance under this division shall ensure that educationally and economically disadvantaged youth, including youth in foster care who are becoming too old for foster care, youth with disabilities, youth with limited English proficiency, youth with limited basic skills or learning disabilities and homeless youth, are offered opportunities to enroll.

(c) Special corps members

Notwithstanding subsection (a)(1), program agencies may enroll a limited number of special corps members over age 25 so that the corps may draw on their special skills to fulfill the purposes of this chapter. Programs are encouraged to consider senior citizens as special corps members.

(d) Joint projects with senior citizens organizations

Program agencies shall use not more than 2 percent of amounts received under this division to conduct joint projects with senior citizens organizations to enable senior citizens to serve as mentors for youth participants.

(e) Construction

Nothing in subsection (a) shall be construed to prohibit any program agency from limiting enrollment to any age subgroup within the range specified in subsection (a)(1).

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199I, formerly §130, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3146; Pub. L. 102–384, §6, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1456; renumbered §199J, renumbered §199I, Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), (e)(8)(B), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, 816.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (c), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, as amended, known as the National and Community Service Act of 1990, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12550 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a).

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102–384 substituted "14" for "15".

§12655j. Use of volunteers

Program agencies may use volunteer services for purposes of assisting projects carried out under this division and may expend funds made available for those purposes to the agency, including funds made available under this division, to provide for services or costs incidental to the utilization of such volunteers, including transportation, supplies, lodging, recruiting, training, and supervision. The use of volunteer services under this section shall be subject to the condition that such use does not result in the displacement of any participant.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199J, formerly §131, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3147; renumbered §199K, renumbered §199J, Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), (e)(8)(B), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, 816.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12551 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a).

§12655k. Repealed. Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(e)(8)(A), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 816

Section, Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199L, formerly §132, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3147; renumbered §199L, Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, related to post-service benefits.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as an Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12655*l*. Living allowance

(a) Full-time service

(1) Living allowance required

Subject to paragraph (3), each participant in a full-time youth corps program that receives assistance under this division shall receive a living allowance in an amount equal to or greater than the average annual subsistence allowance provided to VISTA volunteers under section 4955 of this title.

(2) Limitation on Federal share

The amount of the annual living allowance provided under paragraph (1) that may be paid using assistance provided under this division, section 12571 of this title, and any other Federal funds shall not exceed 85 percent of the total average annual subsistence allowance provided to VISTA volunteers under section 4955 of this title.

(3) Maximum living allowance

The total amount of an annual living allowance that may be provided to a participant in a full-time youth corps program that receives assistance under this division shall not exceed 200 percent of the average annual subsistence allowance provided to VISTA volunteers under section 4955 of this title.

(4) Waiver or reduction of living allowance

The Corporation may waive or reduce the requirement of paragraph (1) with respect to such national service program if such program demonstrates that—

(A) such requirement is inconsistent with the objectives of the program; and

(B) the amount of the living allowance that will be provided to each full-time participant is

sufficient to meet the necessary costs of living (including food, housing, and transportation) in the area in which the program is located.

(5) Exemption

The requirement of paragraph (1) shall not apply to any program that was in existence on September 21, 1993.

(b) Reduction in existing program benefits

(1) In general

Nothing in this section shall be construed to require a program in existence on November 16, 1990, to decrease any stipends, salaries, or living allowances provided to participants under such program so long as the amount of any such stipends, salaries, or living allowances that is in excess of the levels provided for in this section are paid from non-Federal sources.

(2) Fair Labor Standards Act of 1938

For purposes of the Fair Labor Standards Act of 1938 [29 U.S.C. 201 et seq.], residential youth corps programs under this division will be considered an organized camp.

(c) Health insurance

In addition to the living allowance provided under subsection (a), program agencies are encouraged to provide health insurance to each participant in a full-time youth corps program who does not otherwise have access to health insurance.

(d) Facilities, services, and supplies

(1) In general

The program agency may deduct, from amounts provided under subsection (a) to a participant, a reasonable portion of the costs of the rates for any room and board that is provided for such participant at a residential facility. Such deducted funds shall be deposited into rollover accounts that shall be used solely to defray the costs of room and board for participants.

(2) Evaluation

The program agency shall establish the amount of the deductions and rates under paragraph (1) after evaluating the costs of providing such room and board to the participant.

(3) Duties of program agency

A program agency may provide facilities, quarters, and board and shall provide limited and emergency medical care, transportation from administrative facilities to work sites, accommodations for individuals with disabilities, and other appropriate services, supplies, and equipment to each participant.

(4) Other Federal agencies

(A) In general

The Corporation may provide services, facilities, supplies, and equipment, including any surplus food and equipment available from other Federal programs, to any program agency carrying out projects under this division.

(B) Secretary of Defense

Whenever possible, the Corporation shall make arrangements with the Secretary of Defense to have logistical support provided by a military installation near the work site, including the provision of temporary tent centers where needed, and other supplies and equipment.

(5) Health and safety standards

The Corporation and program agencies shall establish standards and enforcement procedures concerning the health and safety of participants for all projects, consistent with Federal, State, and local health and safety standards.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199K, formerly §133, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3147; Pub. L. 102–10,

§5(6), Mar. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 30; renumbered §199M, renumbered §199K, and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), (d), (e)(1), (8)(B), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, 814–816.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Fair Labor Standards Act of 1938, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is act June 25, 1938, ch. 676, 52 Stat. 1060, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 8 (§201 et seq.) of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 201 of Title 29 and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12553 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a).

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–82, §101(d), added pars. (1) to (5) and struck out former pars. (1) and (2) which read as follows:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—From assistance provided under this part, each participant in a full-time youth corps program that receives assistance under this part shall receive a living allowance of not more than an amount equal to 100 percent of the poverty line for a family of two (as defined in section 9902(2) of this title).

"(2) NON-FEDERAL SOURCES.—Notwithstanding paragraph (1), a program agency may provide participants with additional amounts that are made available from non-Federal sources."

Subsec. (d)(4)(A), (B), (5). Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission".

1991—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 102–10 substituted "subsection (a)" for "subsections (a) and (c)".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12655m. Joint programs

(a) Development

The Corporation may develop, in cooperation with the heads of other Federal agencies, regulations designed to permit, where appropriate, joint programs in which activities supported with assistance made available under this division are coordinated with activities supported with assistance made available under programs administered by the heads of such agencies (including title I of the Workforce Innovation and Opportunity Act [29 U.S.C. 3111 et seq.]).

(b) Standards

Regulations promulgated under subsection (a) shall establish standards for the approval of joint programs that meet both the purposes of this subchapter and the purposes of such statutes under which assistance is made available to support such projects.

(c) Operation of management agreements

Program agencies may enter into contracts and other appropriate arrangements with local government agencies and nonprofit organizations for the operation or management of any projects or facilities under the program.

(d) Coordination

The Corporation and program agencies carrying out programs under this division shall coordinate the programs with related Federal, State, local, and private activities.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199L, formerly §134, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3148; renumbered §199N, renumbered §199L, and amended Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), (e)(1), (8)(B), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, 815, 816; Pub. L. 105–277, div. A, §101(f) [title VIII, §405(d)(42)(C), (f)(33)(B)], Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–337, 2681–428, 2681–434; Pub. L. 113–128, title V, §512(u)(2), July 22, 2014, 128 Stat. 1712.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Workforce Innovation and Opportunity Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 113–128, July 22, 2014, 128 Stat. 1425. Title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§3111 et seq.) of chapter 32 of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3101 of Title 29 and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12554 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a).

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 199L of Pub. L. 101–610 was classified to section 12655k of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(8)(A).

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 113–128 substituted "coordinated with activities supported with assistance made available under programs administered by the heads of such agencies (including title I of the Workforce Innovation and Opportunity Act)" for "coordinated with activities supported with assistance made available under programs administered by the heads of such agencies (including title I of the Workforce Investment Act of 1998)".

1998—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 105–277, §101(f) [title VIII, §405(f)(33)(B)], struck out "the Job Training Partnership Act and" after "(including".

Pub. L. 105–277, §101(f) [title VIII, §405(d)(42)(C)], substituted "the Job Training Partnership Act and title I of the Workforce Investment Act of 1998" for "the Job Training Partnership Act (29 U.S.C. 1501 et seq.)".

1993—Subsecs. (a), (d). Pub. L. 103–82, §101(e)(1), substituted "Corporation" for "Commission".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2014 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–128 effective on the first day of the first full program year after July 22, 2014 (July 1, 2015), see section 506 of Pub. L. 113–128, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3101 of Title 29, Labor.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 101(f) [title VIII, §405(d)(42)(C)] of Pub. L. 105–277 effective Oct. 21, 1998, and amendment by section 101(f) [title VIII, §405(f)(33)(B)] of Pub. L. 105–277 effective July 1, 2000, see section 101(f) [title VIII, §405(g)(1), (2)(B)] of Pub. L. 105–277, set out as a note under section 3502 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–82 effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

§12655n. Federal and State employee status

(a) In general

Participants and crew leaders shall be responsible to, or be the responsibility of, the program agency administering the program on which such participants, crew leaders, and volunteers work.

(b) Non-Federal employees

(1) In general

Except as otherwise provided in this subsection, a participant or crew leader in a program that receives assistance under this division shall not be considered a Federal employee and shall not be subject to the provisions of law relating to Federal employment.

(2) Work-related injury

For purposes of subchapter I of chapter 81 of title 5, relating to the compensation of Federal employees for work injuries, a participant or crew leader serving in a program that receives

assistance under this division shall be considered an employee of the United States within the meaning of the term "employee" as defined in section 8101 of title 5 and the provision [1] of that subchapter shall apply, except—

(A) the term "performance of duty", as used in such subchapter, shall not include an act of a participant or crew leader while absent from the assigned post of duty of such participant or crew leader, except while participating in an activity authorized by or under the direction and supervision of a program agency (including an activity while on pass or during travel to or from such post of duty); and

(B) compensation for disability shall not begin to accrue until the day following the date that the employment of the injured participant or crew leader is terminated.

(3) Tort claims procedure

For purposes of chapter 171 of title 28, relating to tort claims procedure, a participant or crew leaders assigned to a youth corps program for which a grant has been made to the Secretary of Agriculture, Secretary of the Interior, or the Director of ACTION, shall be considered an employee of the United States within the meaning of the term "employee of the government" as defined in section 2671 of such title.

(4) Allowance for quarters

For purposes of section 5911 of title 5, relating to allowances for quarters, a participant or crew leader shall be considered an employee of the United States within the meaning of the term "employee" as defined in paragraph (3) of subsection (a) of such section.

(c) Availability of appropriation

Contract authority under this division shall be subject to the availability of appropriations. Assistance made available under this division shall only be used for activities that are in addition to those which would otherwise be carried out in the area in the absence of such funds.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199M, formerly §135, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3149; renumbered §199O, renumbered §199M, Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §101(a), (e)(8)(B), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 788, 816, as amended Pub. L. 103–304, §3(b)(1), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1567.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 12555 of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a).

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103–304 amended directory language of Pub. L. 103–82, §101(a)(3), which renumbered section 135 of Pub. L. 101–610 as section 199O.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–304 effective as of Oct. 1, 1993, see section 3(b)(10)(B) of Pub. L. 103–304, set out as a note under section 4953 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Director of ACTION Agency (including all related functions of any officer or employee of ACTION Agency) to Corporation for National and Community Service, and effective date of such transfer, see section 203(c), (d) of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as a note under section 12651 of this title.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "provisions".*

Division J—Miscellaneous

§12656. Urban Youth Corps

(a) Findings

The Congress finds the following:

(1) The rehabilitation, reclamation, and beautification of urban public housing, recreational sites, youth and senior centers, and public roads and public works facilities through the efforts of young people in the United States in an Urban Youth Corps can benefit these youths, while also benefiting their communities, by—

(A) providing them with education and work opportunities;

(B) furthering their understanding and appreciation of the challenges faced by individuals residing in urban communities; and

(C) providing them with a means to pay for higher education or to repay indebtedness they have incurred to obtain higher education.

(2) A significant number of housing units for low-income individuals in urban areas has become substandard and unsafe and the deterioration of urban roadways, mass transit systems, and transportation facilities in the United States have contributed to the blight encountered in many cities in the United States.

(3) As a result, urban housing, public works, and transportation resources are in need of labor intensive rehabilitation, reclamation, and beautification work that has been neglected in the past and cannot be adequately carried out by Federal, State, and local government at existing personnel levels.

(4) Urban youth corps have established a good record of rehabilitating, reclaiming, and beautifying these kinds of resources in a cost-efficient manner, especially when they have worked in partnership with government housing, public works, and transportation authorities and agencies.

(b) Purpose

It is the purpose of this section—

(1) to perform, in a cost-effective manner, appropriate service projects to rehabilitate, reclaim, beautify, and improve public housing and public works and transportation facilities and resources in urban areas suffering from high rates of poverty where work will not be performed by existing employees;

(2) to assist government housing, public works, and transportation authorities and agencies;

(3) to expose young people in the United States to public service while furthering their understanding and appreciation of their community;

(4) to expand educational opportunity for individuals who participate in the Urban Youth Corps established by this section by providing them with an increased ability to pursue postsecondary education or job training; and

(5) to stimulate interest among young people in the United States in lifelong service to their communities and the United States.

(c) Definitions

For purposes of this section:

(1) Appropriate service project

The term "appropriate service project" means any project for the rehabilitation, reclamation, or beautification of urban public housing and public works and transportation resources or facilities.

(2) Corps and Urban Youth Corps

The term "Corps" and "Urban Youth Corps" mean the Urban Youth Corps established under subsection (d)(1).

(3) Qualified urban youth corps

The term "qualified urban youth corps" means any program established by a State or local government or by a nonprofit organization that—

(A) is capable of offering meaningful, full-time, productive work for individuals between the ages of 16 and 25, inclusive, in an urban or public works or transportation setting;

(B) gives participants a mix of work experience, basic and life skills, education, training, and support services; and

(C) provides participants with the opportunity to develop citizenship values and skills through service to their communities and the United States.

(4) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development or the Secretary of Transportation.

(5) State

The term "State" means any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, the Virgin Islands of the United States, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(d) Establishment of Urban Youth Corps

(1) Establishment

There is hereby established in the Department of Housing and Urban Development and the Department of Transportation an Urban Youth Corps. The Corps shall consist of individuals between the ages of 16 and 25, inclusive, who are enrolled as participants in the Corps by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development and the Secretary of Transportation. To be eligible for enrollment in the Corps, an individual shall satisfy the criteria specified in section 139(b) of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 [42 U.S.C. 12593(b)]. The Secretaries may enroll such individuals in the Corps without regard to the civil service and classification laws, rules, or regulations of the United States. The Secretaries may establish a preference for the enrollment in the Corps of individuals who are economically, physically, or educationally disadvantaged.

(2) Use of qualified urban youth corps

The Secretaries are authorized to enter into contracts and cooperative agreements with any qualified urban youth corps to perform appropriate service projects described in paragraph (3). As part of the Urban Youth Corps established in the Department of Transportation, the Secretary of Transportation may make grants to States (and through States to local governments) for the purpose of establishing, operating, or supporting qualified urban youth corps that will perform appropriate service projects relating to transportation resources or facilities.

(3) Service projects

The Secretaries may each utilize the Corps or any qualified urban youth corps to carry out appropriate service projects that the Secretary involved is authorized to carry out under other authority of law involving public housing projects or public works resources or facilities.

(4) Preference for certain projects

In selecting an appropriate service project to be carried out under this section, the Secretaries shall give a preference to those projects which—

(A) will provide long-term benefits to the public;

(B) will instill in the participant a work ethic and a sense of public service;

(C) will be labor intensive;

(D) can be planned and initiated promptly; and

(E) will provide academic, experiential, or community education opportunities.

(5) Consistency

Each appropriate service project carried out under this section in any public housing project or public works resource or facility shall be consistent with the provisions of law and policies relating to the management and administration of such projects, facilities, or resources, with all other applicable provisions of law, and with all management, operational, and other plans and documents which govern the administration of such projects, facilities, or resources.

(e) Living allowances

The Secretaries shall provide each participant in the Urban Youth Corps with a living allowance in an amount not to exceed the maximum living allowance authorized by section 140(a)(3) [1] of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 for participants in a national service program assisted under subtitle C of title I of such Act [42 U.S.C. 12571 et seq.].

(f) Terms of service

Each participant in the Urban Youth Corps shall agree to participate in the Corps for a term of service established by the Secretary involved, consistent with the terms of service required under section 139(b) of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 [42 U.S.C. 12593(b)] for participants in a national service program assisted under subtitle C of title I of such Act [42 U.S.C. 12571 et seq.].

(g) Educational awards

(1) Eligibility

Each participant in the Urban Youth Corps shall be eligible for a national service educational award in the manner prescribed in subtitle D of title I of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 [42 U.S.C. 12601 et seq.] if such participant complies with such requirements as may be established under this subtitle by the Secretary involved respecting eligibility for the award. The period during which the award may be used, the purposes for which the award may be used, and the amount of the award shall be determined as provided under such subtitle.

(2) Forbearance in the collection of Stafford loans

For purposes of section 1078 of title 20, in the case of borrowers who are participants in the Urban Youth Corps, upon written request, a lender shall grant a borrower forbearance on such terms as are otherwise consistent with the regulations of the Secretary of Education, during periods in which the borrower is serving as such a participant and eligible for a national service educational award under paragraph (1).

(h) Nondisplacement

The nondisplacement requirements of section 177 of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 [42 U.S.C. 12637] shall be applicable to all activities carried out by the Urban Youth Corps and to all activities carried out under this section by a qualified urban youth corps.

(i) Cost sharing

(1) Projects by qualified urban youth corps

The Secretaries are each authorized to pay not more than 75 percent of the costs of any appropriate service project carried out pursuant to this section by a qualified urban youth corps. The remaining 25 percent of the costs of such a project may be provided from nonfederal sources in the form of funds, services, facilities, materials, equipment, or any combination of the foregoing.

(2) Donations

The Secretaries are each authorized to accept donations of funds, services, facilities, materials, or equipment for the purposes of operating the Urban Youth Corps and carrying out appropriate service projects by the Corps. However, nothing in this section shall be construed to require any cost sharing for any project carried out directly by the Corps.

(3) Funds available under National and Community Service Act

In order to carry out the Urban Youth Corps or to support qualified urban youth corps under this section, the Secretaries shall be eligible to apply for and receive assistance under section 121(b) of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 [42 U.S.C. 12571(b)].

(Pub. L. 103–82, title I, §106, Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 854.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 140(a)(3) of the National and Community Service Act of 1990, referred to in subsec. (e), was redesignated section 140(a)(2) of the Act by Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1315(1)(C), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1511, and is classified to section 12594(a)(2) of this title.

The National and Community Service Act of 1990, referred to in subsecs. (e), (f), and (g)(1), is Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127. Subtitles C and D of title I of the Act are classified generally to divisions C (§12571 et seq.) and D (§12601 et seq.), respectively, of this subchapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the National and Community Service Trust Act of 1993, and not as part of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 which comprises this chapter.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1993, see section 123 of Pub. L. 103–82, set out as an Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note under section 1701 of Title 16, Conservation.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

Division K—Training and Technical Assistance

§12657. Training and technical assistance

(a) In general

The Corporation shall, directly or through grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements (including through State Commissions), conduct appropriate training for and provide technical assistance to—

(1) programs receiving assistance under the national service laws; and

(2) entities (particularly entities in rural areas and underserved communities) that desire to—

(A) carry out or establish national service programs; or

(B) apply for assistance (including subgrants) under the national service laws.

(b) Activities included

Such training and technical assistance activities may include—

(1) providing technical assistance to entities applying to carry out national service programs or entities carrying out national service programs;

(2) promoting leadership development in national service programs;

(3) improving the instructional and programmatic quality of national service programs;

(4) developing the management and budgetary skills of individuals operating or overseeing national service programs, including developing skills to increase the cost effectiveness of the programs under the national service laws;

(5) providing for or improving the training provided to the participants in programs under the national service laws;

(6) facilitating the education of individuals participating in national service programs in risk management procedures, including the training of participants in appropriate risk management practices;

(7) training individuals operating or overseeing national service programs—

(A) in volunteer recruitment, management, and retention to improve the abilities of such individuals to use participants and other volunteers in an effective manner, which training results in high-quality service and the desire of participants and volunteers to continue to serve in other capacities after the program is completed;

(B) in program evaluation and performance measures to inform practices to augment the capacity and sustainability of the national service programs; or

(C) to effectively accommodate individuals with disabilities to increase the participation of

individuals with disabilities in national service programs, which training may utilize funding from the reservation of funds under section 12581(k) of this title to increase the participation of individuals with disabilities;

(8) establishing networks and collaboration among employers, educators, and other key stakeholders in the community to further leverage resources to increase local participation in national service programs, and to coordinate community-wide planning and service with respect to national service programs;

(9) providing training and technical assistance for the National Senior Service Corps, including providing such training and technical assistance to programs receiving assistance under section 5001 of this title; and

(10) carrying out such other activities as the Chief Executive Officer determines to be appropriate.

(c) Priority

In carrying out this section, the Corporation shall give priority to programs under the national service laws and entities eligible to establish such programs that seek training or technical assistance and that—

(1) seek to carry out high-quality programs where the services are needed most;

(2) seek to carry out high-quality programs where national service programs do not exist or where the programs are too limited to meet community needs;

(3) seek to carry out high-quality programs that focus on and provide service opportunities for underserved rural and urban areas and populations; and

(4) seek to assist programs in developing a service component that combines students, out-of-school youths, and older adults as participants to provide needed community services.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title I, §199N, as added Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1821, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1577.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Part effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER II—POINTS OF LIGHT FOUNDATION

§§12661 to 12664. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1831(a), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1578

Section 12661, Pub. L. 101–610, title III, §302, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3180, related to findings and purpose of the Points of Light Foundation.

Section 12662, Pub. L. 101–610, title III, §303, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3181; Pub. L. 103–82, title IV, §402(b)(4), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 919, granted Presidential authority to designate for funding a private, nonprofit organization known as the Points of Light Foundation.

Section 12663, Pub. L. 101–610, title III, §304, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3181, related to grants to the Foundation.

Section 12664, Pub. L. 101–610, title III, §305, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3181, related to eligibility of the Foundation for grants.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as an Effective Date of 2009 Amendment note under section 4950 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER III—PROJECTS HONORING VICTIMS OF TERRORIST ATTACKS

§12671. Projects

(a) Definition

In this section, the term "administrative organization" means a nonprofit private organization that enters into an agreement with the Corporation to carry out this section.

(b) Identification of projects

(1) Estimated number

Not later than March 1, 2002, the administrative organization, after obtaining the guidance of the heads of appropriate Federal agencies, such as the Director of the Office of Homeland Security and the Attorney General, shall—

(A) make an estimate of the number of victims killed as a result of the terrorist attacks on September 11, 2001 (referred to in this section as the "estimated number"); and

(B) compile a list that specifies, for each individual that the administrative organization determines to be such a victim, the name of the victim and the State in which the victim resided.

(2) Identified projects

The administrative organization may identify approximately the estimated number of community-based national and community service projects that meet the requirements of subsection (d). The administrative organization may name projects in honor of victims described in subsection (b)(1)(A), after obtaining the permission of an appropriate member of the victim's family and the entity carrying out the project.

(c) Eligible entities

To be eligible to have a project named under this section, the entity carrying out the project shall be a political subdivision of a State, a business, a nonprofit organization (which may be a religious organization), an Indian tribe, or an institution of higher education.

(d) Projects

The administrative organization shall name, under this section, projects—

(1) that advance the goals of unity, and improving the quality of life in communities; and

(2) that will be planned, or for which implementation will begin, within a reasonable period after January 10, 2002, as determined by the administrative organization.

(e) Website and database

The administrative organization shall create and maintain websites and databases, to describe projects named under this section and serve as appropriate vehicles for recognizing the projects.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title IV, §401, as added Pub. L. 107–117, div. B, §1301(b), Jan. 10, 2002, 115 Stat. 2339; amended Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1831(b), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1578.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12671, Pub. L. 101–610, title IV, §401, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3183, stated sense of Congress concerning State enactment of model Good Samaritan Food Donation Act, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 104–210, §1(a)(1), Oct. 1, 1996, 110 Stat. 3011.

A prior section 12672, Pub. L. 101–610, title IV, §402, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3183, which set forth the model Good Samaritan Food Donation Act, was renumbered section 22 of the Child Nutrition Act of 1966 by Pub. L. 104–210, §1(b), Oct. 1, 1996, 110 Stat. 3012, and is classified to section 1791 of this title.

A prior section 12673, Pub. L. 101–610, title IV, §403, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3185, provided that model Good Samaritan Food Donation Act was intended only to serve as model law for enactment by States, District

of Columbia, Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, and territories and possessions of United States, and that enactment of section 12672 of this title was to have no force or effect in law, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 104–210, §1(a)(1), Oct. 1, 1996, 110 Stat. 3011.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1831(b)(1), substituted "term 'administrative organization' means a nonprofit private organization that enters into an agreement with the Corporation to carry out this section." for "term 'Foundation' means the Points of Light Foundation funded under section 301, or another nonprofit private organization, that enters into an agreement with the Corporation to carry out this section."

Subsecs. (b), (d), (e). Pub. L. 111–13, §1831(b)(2), substituted "administrative organization" for "Foundation" wherever appearing.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER IV—AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS

§12681. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Subchapter I

(1) Division B

(A) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to provide financial assistance under division B of subchapter I—

(i) $97,000,000 for fiscal year 2010; and

(ii) such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2011 through 2014.

(B) Part IV reservation

Of the amount appropriated under subparagraph (A) for a fiscal year, the Corporation may reserve such sums as may be necessary to carry out part IV of division B of subchapter I.

(C) Section 12561a

Of the amount appropriated under subparagraph (A) and not reserved under subparagraph (B) for a fiscal year, not more than $7,000,000 shall be made available for awards to Campuses of Service under section 12561a of this title.

(D) Section 12563(c)(8)

Of the amount appropriated under subparagraph (A) and not reserved under subparagraph (B) for a fiscal year, not more than $10,000,000 shall be made available for summer of service program grants under section 12563(c)(8) of this title, and not more than $10,000,000 shall be deposited in the National Service Trust to support summer of service educational awards, consistent with section 12563(c)(8) of this title.

(E) Section 12563(c)(9)

Of the amount appropriated under subparagraph (A) and not reserved under subparagraph (B) for a fiscal year, not more than $20,000,000 shall be made available for youth engagement zone programs under section 12563(c)(9) of this title.

(F) General programs

Of the amount remaining after the application of subparagraphs (A) through (E) for a fiscal year—

(i) not more than 60 percent shall be available to provide financial assistance under part I

of division B of subchapter I;

(ii) not more than 25 percent shall be available to provide financial assistance under part II of such division; and

(iii) not less than 15 percent shall be available to provide financial assistance under part III of such division.

(2) Divisions C and D

There are authorized to be appropriated, for each of fiscal years 2010 through 2014, such sums as may be necessary to provide financial assistance under division C of subchapter I and to provide national service educational awards under division D of subchapter I for the number of participants described in section 12571(f)(1) of this title for each such fiscal year.

(3) Division E

(A) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to operate the National Civilian Community Corps and provide financial assistance under division E of subchapter I, such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2010 through 2014.

(B) Priority

Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, in obligating the amounts made available pursuant to the authorization of appropriations in this paragraph, priority shall be given to programs carrying out activities in areas for which the President has declared the existence of a major disaster, in accordance with section 5170 of this title, including a major disaster as a consequence of Hurricane Katrina or Rita.

(4) Division H

(A) Authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2010 through 2014 to provide financial assistance under division H of subchapter I.

(B) Section 12653b

Of the amount authorized under subparagraph (A) for a fiscal year, such sums as may be necessary shall be made available to provide financial assistance under section 12653b of this title and to provide national service educational awards under division D of subchapter I to the number of participants in national service positions established or increased as provided in section 12653b(b)(3) of this title for such year.

(C) Section 12653c

Of the amount authorized under subparagraph (A) for a fiscal year, $12,000,000 shall be made available to provide financial assistance under section 12653c of this title.

(D) Section 12653h

Of the amount authorized under subparagraph (A) for a fiscal year, such sums as may be necessary shall be made available to provide financial assistance under section 12653h of this title.

(E) Section 12653k

Of the amount authorized under subparagraph (A), there shall be made available to carry out section 12653k of this title—

(i) $50,000,000 for fiscal year 2010;
(ii) $60,000,000 for fiscal year 2011;
(iii) $70,000,000 for fiscal year 2012;
(iv) $80,000,000 for fiscal year 2013; and
(v) $100,000,000 for fiscal year 2014.

(F) Section 12653p

Of the amount authorized under subparagraph (A), there shall be made available to carry out section 12653p of this title—

(i) $50,000,000 for fiscal year 2010;
(ii) $60,000,000 for fiscal year 2011;
(iii) $70,000,000 for fiscal year 2012;
(iv) $80,000,000 for fiscal year 2013; and
(v) $100,000,000 for fiscal year 2014.

(5) Administration

(A) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated for the administration of this chapter, including financial assistance under section 12576(a) of this title, such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2010 through 2014.

(B) Corporation

Of the amounts appropriated under subparagraph (A) for a fiscal year, a portion shall be made available to provide financial assistance under section 12576(a) of this title.

(6) Evaluation, training, and technical assistance

Notwithstanding paragraphs (1), (2), and (4) and any other provision of law, of the amounts appropriated for a fiscal year under divisions B, C, and H of subchapter I of this chapter and under titles I and II of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 [42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq., 5000 et seq.], the Corporation shall reserve not more than 2.5 percent to carry out sections 12523(e) and 12639a of this title and division K of subchapter I,[1] of which $1,000,000 shall be used by the Corporation to carry out section 12639a of this title. Notwithstanding subsection (b), amounts so reserved shall be available only for the fiscal year for which the amounts are reserved.

(b) Availability of appropriations

Funds appropriated under this section shall remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 101–610, title V, §501, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3185; Pub. L. 102–384, §11, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1459; Pub. L. 103–82, title III, §301(a), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 897; Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1841, Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1579.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(B), (5)(A), (6), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101–610, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3127, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12501 of this title and Tables.

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (a)(6), is Pub. L. 93–113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394. Title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§4951 et seq.) of chapter 66 of this title. Title II of the Act is classified generally to subchapter II (§5000 et seq.) of chapter 66 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of this title and Tables.

Division K of subchapter I, referred to in subsec. (a)(6), was in the original "subtitle J" which was translated as meaning subtitle J of title I of Pub. L. 101–610, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–13, §1841(1), added subsec. (a) and struck out former subsec. (a) which authorized appropriations for subchapter I of this chapter.

Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 111–13, §1841(2), (3), redesignated subsec. (c) as (b) and struck out former subsec. (b), which authorized appropriations for subchapter II of this chapter, and subsec. (d), which specified the budget function for the appropriations authorized in this section.

1993—Pub. L. 103–82 amended section generally, substituting subsecs. (a) to (d) for former subsecs. (a) and (b) which authorized appropriations to carry out subchapter I for fiscal year 1993 and subchapter II for fiscal years 1991 to 1993.

1992—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102–384, §11(a), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out subchapter I of this chapter, $56,000,000

for fiscal year 1991, $95,500,000 for fiscal year 1992, and $105,000,000 for fiscal year 1993."

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 102–384, §11(b), substituted "paragraph (1)(A)" for "paragraph (1)" in introductory provisions, redesignated subpars. (B) to (D) as (A) to (C), respectively, added subpar. (D), and struck out former subpar. (A) which read as follows: "$2,000,000 shall be made available to carry out part G of subchapter I of this chapter in each such fiscal year;".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–13 effective Oct. 1, 2009, see section 6101(a) of Pub. L. 111–13, set out as a note under section 4950 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 103–82, title III, §301(b), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 898, provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1993."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12682. Actions under national service laws to be subject to availability of appropriations

No action involving the obligation or expenditure of funds may be taken under one of the national service laws (as defined in section 12511(15) [1] of this title) unless and until the Corporation for National and Community Service has sufficient appropriations available at the time such action is taken to satisfy the obligation to be incurred or make the expenditure to be made.

(Pub. L. 103–82, title II, §205, Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 897.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12511(15) of this title, referred to in text, was redesignated section 12511(26) by Pub. L. 111–13, title I, §1102(b)(1), Apr. 21, 2009, 123 Stat. 1467.

CODIFICATION

Section enacted as part of the National and Community Service Trust Act of 1993, and not as part of the National and Community Service Act of 1990 which comprises this chapter.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

CHAPTER 130—NATIONAL AFFORDABLE HOUSING

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS AND POLICIES

Sec.

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS AND POLICIES

§12701. National housing goal

The Congress affirms the national goal that every American family be able to afford a decent home in a suitable environment.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title I, §101, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4085.)

SHORT TITLE OF 2003 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 108–186, title I, §101, Dec. 16, 2003, 117 Stat. 2685, provided that: "This title [amending part E of subchapter II of this chapter] may be cited as the 'American Dream Downpayment Act'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2000 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 106–569, title I, §101, Dec. 27, 2000, 114 Stat. 2946, provided that: "This title [amending sections 5307, 12705c, and 12705d of this title] may be cited as the 'Housing Affordability Barrier Removal Act of 2000'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 101–625, §1(a), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4079, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act'."

Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §201, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4094, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter II of this chapter, amending section 1437f of this title, and repealing sections 1437o and 1452b of this title, section 1706e of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and provisions set out as a note under section 1715l of Title 12] may be cited as the 'HOME Investment Partnerships Act'."

Pub. L. 101–625, title III, §301, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4129, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle A (§§301–310) of title III of Pub. L. 101–625, enacting subchapter III of this chapter] may be cited as the 'National Homeownership Trust Act'."

MILLENNIAL HOUSING COMMISSION

Pub. L. 107–73, title II, Nov. 26, 2001, 115 Stat. 671, provided for necessary expenses of the Millennial Housing Commission and set a revised final report due date of May 30, 2002, and Commission termination date of Aug. 30, 2002.

Pub. L. 106–74, title II, §206, Oct. 20, 1999, 113 Stat. 1070, as amended by Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(4) [div. B, title X, §1001], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–310, established the Millennial Housing Commission to study and report back to Congress on improving Federal housing policy.

COMMISSION ON AFFORDABLE HOUSING AND HEALTH FACILITY NEEDS FOR SENIORS IN THE 21ST CENTURY

Pub. L. 107–73, title II, Nov. 26, 2001, 115 Stat. 671, provided for necessary expenses of the Commission on Affordable Housing and Health Facility Needs for Seniors in the 21st Century and set a revised final report due date of June 30, 2002 and Commission termination date of Sept. 30, 2002.

Pub. L. 106–74, title V, §525, Oct. 20, 1999, 113 Stat. 1106, as amended by Pub. L. 106–377, §1(a)(1) [title II, §230], Oct. 27, 2000, 114 Stat. 1441, 1441A–31, established the Commission on Affordable Housing and Health Facility Needs for Seniors in the 21st Century to study and report back to Congress on housing and health care facility needs for seniors.

§12702. Objective of national housing policy

The objective of national housing policy shall be to reaffirm the long-established national commitment to decent, safe, and sanitary housing for every American by strengthening a nationwide partnership of public and private institutions able—

(1) to ensure that every resident of the United States has access to decent shelter or assistance in avoiding homelessness;

(2) to increase the Nation's supply of decent housing that is affordable to low-income and moderate-income families and accessible to job opportunities;

(3) to improve housing opportunities for all residents of the United States, particularly members of disadvantaged minorities, on a nondiscriminatory basis;

(4) to help make neighborhoods safe and livable;

(5) to expand opportunities for homeownership;

(6) to provide every American community with a reliable, readily available supply of mortgage finance at the lowest possible interest rates; and

(7) to encourage tenant empowerment and reduce generational poverty in federally assisted and public housing by improving the means by which self-sufficiency may be achieved.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title I, §102, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4085.)

§12703. Purposes of Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act

The purposes of this Act are—

(1) to help families not owning a home to save for a down payment for the purchase of a home;

(2) to retain wherever feasible as housing affordable to low-income families those dwelling units produced for such purpose with Federal assistance;

(3) to extend and strengthen partnerships among all levels of government and the private sector, including for-profit and nonprofit organizations, in the production and operation of housing affordable to low-income and moderate-income families;

(4) to expand and improve Federal rental assistance for very low-income families; and

(5) to increase the supply of supportive housing, which combines structural features and services needed to enable persons with special needs to live with dignity and independence.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title I, §103, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4085.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4079, known as the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12701 of this title and Tables.

§12704. Definitions

As used in this subchapter and in subchapter II:

(1) The term "unit of general local government" means a city, town, township, county, parish, village, or other general purpose political subdivision of a State; the Federated States of Micronesia and Palau, the Marshall Islands, or a general purpose political subdivision thereof; a consortium of such political subdivisions recognized by the Secretary in accordance with section 12746(2) of this title; and any agency or instrumentality thereof that is established pursuant to legislation and designated by the chief executive to act on behalf of the jurisdiction with regard to provisions of this Act.

(2) The term "State" means any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, or any agency or instrumentality thereof that is established pursuant to legislation and designated by the chief executive officer to act on behalf of the State with regard to the provisions of this Act.

(3) The term "jurisdiction" means a State or unit of general local government.

(4) The term "participating jurisdiction" means any State or unit of general local government that has been so designated in accordance with section 12746 of this title.

(5) The term "nonprofit organization" means any private, nonprofit organization (including a State or locally chartered, nonprofit organization) that—

(A) is organized under State or local laws,

(B) has no part of its net earnings inuring to the benefit of any member, founder, contributor, or individual,

(C) complies with standards of financial accountability acceptable to the Secretary, and

(D) has among its purposes significant activities related to the provision of decent housing that is affordable to low-income and moderate-income persons.

(6) The term "community housing development organization" means a nonprofit organization as defined in paragraph (5), that—

(A) has among its purposes the provision of decent housing that is affordable to low-income and moderate-income persons;

(B) maintains, through significant representation on the organization's governing board and otherwise, accountability to low-income community residents and, to the extent practicable, low-income beneficiaries with regard to decisions on the design, siting, development, and management of affordable housing;

(C) has a demonstrated capacity for carrying out activities assisted under this Act; and

(D) has a history of serving the local community or communities within which housing to be assisted under this Act is to be located.

In the case of an organization serving more than one county, the Secretary may not require that such organization, to be considered a community housing development organization for purposes of this Act, include as members on the organization's governing board low-income persons residing in each county served.

(7) The term "government-sponsored mortgage finance corporations" means the Federal National Mortgage Association, the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation, and the Federal Agricultural Mortgage Corporation.

(8) The term "housing" includes manufactured housing and manufactured housing lots and elder cottage housing opportunity units that are small, free-standing, barrier-free, energy-efficient, removable, and designed to be installed adjacent to existing 1- to 4-family dwellings.

(9) The term "very low-income families" means low-income families whose incomes do not exceed 50 percent of the median family income for the area, as determined by the Secretary with adjustments for smaller and larger families, except that the Secretary may establish income ceilings higher or lower than 50 percent of the median for the area on the basis of the Secretary's findings that such variations are necessary because of prevailing levels of construction costs or fair market rents, or unusually high or low family incomes.

(10) The term "low-income families" means families whose incomes do not exceed 80 percent of the median income for the area, as determined by the Secretary with adjustments for smaller and larger families, except that the Secretary may establish income ceilings higher or lower than 80 percent of the median for the area on the basis of the Secretary's findings that such variations are necessary because of prevailing levels of construction costs or fair market rents, or unusually high or low family incomes.

(11) The term "families" has the same meaning given that term by section 1437a of this title.

(12) The term "security" has the same meaning as in section 77b of title 15.

(13) The term "displaced homemaker" means an individual who—

(A) is an adult;

(B) has not worked full-time full-year in the labor force for a number of years but has, during such years, worked primarily without remuneration to care for the home and family; and

(C) is unemployed or underemployed and is experiencing difficulty in obtaining or upgrading employment.

(14) The term "first-time homebuyer" means an individual and his or her spouse who have not owned a home during the 3-year period prior to purchase of a home with assistance under subchapter II, except that—

(A) any individual who is a displaced homemaker may not be excluded from consideration as a first-time homebuyer under this paragraph on the basis that the individual, while a homemaker, owned a home with his or her spouse or resided in a home owned by the spouse;

(B) any individual who is a single parent may not be excluded from consideration as a first-time homebuyer under this paragraph on the basis that the individual, while married, owned a home with his or her spouse or resided in a home owned by the spouse; and

(C) an individual shall not be excluded from consideration as a first-time homebuyer under

this paragraph on the basis that the individual owns or owned, as a principal residence during such 3-year period, a dwelling unit whose structure is—

(i) not permanently affixed to a permanent foundation in accordance with local or other applicable regulations, or

(ii) not in compliance with State, local, or model building codes, or other applicable codes, and cannot be brought into compliance with such codes for less than the cost of constructing a permanent structure.

(15) The term "single parent" means an individual who—

(A) is unmarried or legally separated from a spouse; and

(B)(i) has 1 or more minor children for whom the individual has custody or joint custody; or

(ii) is pregnant.

(16) The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, unless otherwise specified in this Act.

(17) The term "substantial rehabilitation" means the rehabilitation of residential property at an average cost in excess of $25,000 per dwelling unit.

(18) The term "public housing agency" has the meaning given the term in section 1437a(b) of this title.

(19) The term "metropolitan city" has the meaning given the term in section 5302(a)(4) of this title.

(20) The term "urban county" has the meaning given the term in section 5302(a)(6) of this title.

(21) The term "certification" means a written assertion, based on supporting evidence, which shall be kept available for inspection by the Secretary, the Inspector General and the public, which assertion shall be deemed to be accurate for purposes of this Act, unless the Secretary determines otherwise after inspecting the evidence and providing due notice and opportunity for comment.

(23) [1] The term "to demonstrate to the Secretary" means to submit to the Secretary a written assertion together with supporting evidence that, in the determination of the Secretary, supports the accuracy of the assertion.

(24) [2] The term "insular area" means any of the following: Guam, the Northern Mariana Islands, the Virgin Islands, and American Samoa.

(24) [2] The term "energy efficient mortgage" means a mortgage that provides financing incentives for the purchase of energy efficient homes, or that provides financing incentives to make energy efficiency improvements in existing homes by incorporating the cost of such improvements in the mortgage.

(25) The term "energy efficient mortgage" means a mortgage that provides financing incentives for the purchase of energy efficient homes, or that provides financing incentives to make energy efficiency improvements in existing homes by incorporating the cost of such improvements in the mortgage.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title I, §104, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4085; Pub. L. 102–229, title I, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1709; Pub. L. 101–230, §2, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1720; Pub. L. 102–486, title I, §105(a), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2792; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §§211(a)(1), 217(a), 218, 219, title IX, §914(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3756, 3760, 3761, 3877; Pub. L. 103–233, title II, §201, Apr. 11, 1994, 108 Stat. 363.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in pars. (1), (2), (6), (16), and (21), is Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4079, as amended, known as the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12701 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Par. (2). Pub. L. 103–233 struck out "and" after "Columbia," and inserted before period at end ", or any agency or instrumentality thereof that is established pursuant to legislation and designated by the chief executive officer to act on behalf of the State with regard to the provisions of this Act".

1992—Par. (1). Pub. L. 102–550, §211(a)(1), amended this section to read as if amendment made by Pub. L. 102–230, §2(1), had not been enacted. See 1991 Amendment note below.

Par. (6). Pub. L. 102–550, §217(a), inserted concluding provisions.

Par. (8). Pub. L. 102–550, §218, inserted before period at end "and elder cottage housing opportunity units that are small, free-standing, barrier-free, energy-efficient, removable, and designed to be installed adjacent to existing 1- to 4-family dwellings".

Par. (14)(C). Pub. L. 102–550, §219, added subpar. (C).

Par. (24). Pub. L. 102–550, §211(a)(1), amended this section to read as if amendment made by Pub. L. 102–230, §2(2), had not been enacted. See 1991 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 102–486 added par. (24) defining "energy efficient mortgage".

Par. (25). Pub. L. 102–550, §914(a), added par. (25).

1991—Par. (1). Pub. L. 102–230, §2(1), directed the substitution of "the insular areas" for "Guam, the Northern Mariana Islands, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, the Federated States of Micronesia and Palau, the Marshall Islands". See 1992 Amendment note above.

Pub. L. 102–229 struck out "Guam, the Northern Mariana Islands, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa," after "of a State;".

Par. (24). Pub. L. 102–230, §2(2), directed the addition of a par. (24) to read as follows: "(24) The term 'insular areas' means Guam, the Northern Mariana Islands, the United States Virgin Islands, and American Samoa." See 1992 Amendment note above.

Pub. L. 102–229 added par. (24) defining "insular area".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–233 applicable with respect to any amounts made available to carry out subchapter II (§12721 et seq.) of this chapter after Apr. 11, 1994, and any amounts made available to carry out that subchapter before that date that remain uncommitted on that date, with Secretary to issue any regulations necessary to carry out such amendment not later than end of 45-day period beginning on that date, see section 209 of Pub. L. 103–233, set out as a note under section 5301 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §211(b), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3757, provided that: "The amendments made by subsection (a) [amending this section and section 12747 of this title] shall apply with respect to fiscal year 1993 and thereafter."

Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §223, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3762, provided that: "The amendments made by this title [enacting section 12810 of this title and amending this section and sections 12705, 12724, 12742, 12745 to 12748, 12750, 12771, 12773, 12774, 12782, and 12784 of this title] shall apply to unexpended funds allocated under title II of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 12721 et seq.] in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided."

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §222, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3762, provided that: "The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall issue any final regulations necessary to implement the provisions of this title [enacting section 12810 of this title, amending this section and sections 12705, 12724, 12742, 12745 to 12748, 12750, 12771, 12773, 12774, 12782, and 12784 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 12746, 12747, and 12750 of this title] and the amendments made by this title not later than the expiration of the 180-day period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1992], except as expressly provided otherwise in this title and the amendments made by this title. Such regulations shall be issued after notice and opportunity for public comment pursuant to the provisions of section 553 of title 5, United States Code (notwithstanding subsections (a)(2), (b)(B), and (d)(3) of such section)."

TRANSITION RULE

Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §217(b), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3760, provided that: "For the purposes of determining compliance with the requirements of section 104(6) of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 12704(6)], the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development may provide an exception for organizations that meet the definition of community housing development organization, except for significant representation of low-income community residents on the board, if such organization fulfills such requirement within 6 months of receiving funds under title II of such Act [42 U.S.C. 12721 et seq.] or September 30, 1993, whichever is sooner."

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "(22)".*

[2] *So in original. Two pars. (24) have been enacted.*

§12705. State and local housing strategies

(a) In general

The Secretary shall provide assistance directly to a jurisdiction only if—

(1) the jurisdiction submits to the Secretary a comprehensive housing affordability strategy (hereafter in this section referred to as the "housing strategy");

(2) the jurisdiction submits annual updates of the housing strategy; and

(3) the housing strategy, and any annual update of such strategy, is approved by the Secretary.

The Secretary shall establish such dates and manner for the submission and approval of housing strategies under this section that the Secretary determines will facilitate orderly program management by jurisdictions and provide for timely investment or other use of funds made available under subchapter II of this chapter and other programs requiring submission of a housing strategy. If the Secretary finds there is good cause, the Secretary may provide reasonable extensions of any deadlines for submission of a jurisdiction's housing strategy.

(b) Contents

A housing strategy submitted under this section shall be in a form that the Secretary determines to be appropriate for the assistance the jurisdiction may be provided and shall—

(1) describe the jurisdiction's estimated housing needs projected for the ensuing 5-year period, and the jurisdiction's need for assistance for very low-income, low-income, and moderate-income families, specifying such needs for different types of tenure and for different categories of residents, such as very low-income, low-income, and moderate-income families, the elderly, persons with disabilities, single persons, large families, residents of nonmetropolitan areas, families who are participating in an organized program to achieve economic independence and self-sufficiency, persons with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking and other categories of persons residing in or expected to reside in the jurisdiction that the Secretary determines to be appropriate;

(2) describe the nature and extent of homelessness, including rural homelessness, within the jurisdiction, providing an estimate of the special needs of various categories of persons who are homeless or threatened with homelessness, including tabular representation of such information, and a description of the jurisdiction's strategy for (A) helping low-income families avoid becoming homeless; (B) addressing the emergency shelter and transitional housing needs of homeless persons (including a brief inventory of facilities and services that meet such needs within that jurisdiction); and (C) helping homeless persons make the transition to permanent housing and independent living;

(3) describe the significant characteristics of the jurisdiction's housing market, indicating how those characteristics will influence the use of funds made available for rental assistance, production of new units, rehabilitation of old units, or acquisition of existing units;

(4) explain whether the cost of housing or the incentives to develop, maintain, or improve affordable housing in the jurisdiction are affected by public policies, particularly by policies of the jurisdiction, including tax policies affecting land and other property, land use controls, zoning ordinances, building codes, fees and charges, growth limits, and policies that affect the return on residential investment, and describe the jurisdiction's strategy to remove or ameliorate negative effects, if any, of such policies, except that, if a State requires a unit of general local government to submit a regulatory barrier assessment that is substantially equivalent to the information required under this paragraph, as determined by the Secretary, the unit of general local government may submit its assessment submitted to the State to the Secretary and shall be considered to have complied with this paragraph;

(5) explain the institutional structure, including private industry, nonprofit organizations, and public institutions, through which the jurisdiction will carry out its housing strategy, assessing the strengths and gaps in that delivery system and describing what the jurisdiction will do to overcome those gaps;

(6) indicate resources from private and non-Federal public sources that are reasonably expected to be made available to carry out the purposes of this Act, explaining how funds made available will leverage those additional resources and identifying, where the jurisdiction deems it appropriate, publicly owned land or property located within the jurisdiction that may be utilized to carry out the purposes of this Act;

(7) set forth the jurisdiction's plan for investment or other use of housing funds made available under subchapter II of this chapter, the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437 et seq.], the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974, and the McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act [42 U.S.C. 11301 et seq.], during the ensuing year or such longer period as the Secretary determines to be appropriate, indicating the general priorities for allocating investment geographically within the jurisdiction and among different activities and housing needs;

(8) describe how the jurisdiction's plan will address the housing needs identified pursuant to subparagraphs [1] (1) and (2), describe the reasons for allocation priorities, and identify any obstacles to addressing underserved needs;

(9) describe the means of cooperation and coordination among the State and any units of general local government in the development, submission, and implementation of their housing strategies;

(10) in the case of a unit of local government, describe the number of public housing units in the jurisdiction, the physical condition of such units, the restoration and revitalization needs of public housing projects within the jurisdiction, the public housing agency's strategy for improving the management and operation of such public housing, and the public housing agency's strategy for improving the living environment of low- and very-low-income families residing in public housing;

(11) describe the manner in which the plan of the jurisdiction will help address the needs of public housing;

(12) in the case of a State, describe the strategy to coordinate the Low-Income Tax Credit with development of housing, including public housing, that is affordable to very low-income and low-income families;

(13) describe the jurisdiction's activities to encourage public housing residents to become more involved in management and participate in homeownership;

(14) describe the standards and procedures according to which the jurisdiction will monitor activities authorized under this Act and ensure long-term compliance with the provisions of this Act;

(15) include a certification that the jurisdiction will affirmatively further fair housing;

(16) include a certification that the jurisdiction has in effect and is following a residential antidisplacement and relocation assistance plan that, in any case of any such displacement in connection with any activity assisted with amounts provided under subchapter II, requires the same actions and provides the same rights as required and provided under a residential antidisplacement and relocation assistance plan under section 104(d) of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974 [42 U.S.C. 5304(d)] in the event of displacement in connection with a development project assisted under section 106 or 119 of such Act [42 U.S.C. 5306, 5318];

(17) estimate the number of housing units within the jurisdiction that are occupied by low-income families or very low-income families and that contain lead-based paint hazards, as defined in section 4851b of this title, outline the actions proposed or being taken to evaluate and reduce lead-based paint hazards, and describe how lead-based paint hazard reduction will be integrated into housing policies and programs;

(18) include the number of families to whom the jurisdiction will provide affordable housing as defined in section 12745 of this title using funds made available;

(19) for any housing strategy submitted for fiscal year 1994 or any fiscal year thereafter and taking into consideration factors over which the jurisdiction has control, describe the jurisdiction's goals, programs, and policies for reducing the number of households with incomes below the poverty line (as defined by the Office of Management and Budget and revised annually), and, in consultation with other appropriate public and private agencies, state how the jurisdiction's goals, programs, and policies for producing and preserving affordable housing set forth in the housing strategy will be coordinated with other programs and services for which the jurisdiction is responsible and the extent to which they will reduce (or assist in reducing) the number of households with incomes below the poverty line; and

(20) describe the jurisdictions activities to enhance coordination between public and assisted housing providers and private and governmental health, mental health, and service agencies.

The Secretary may provide for the submission of abbreviated housing strategies by jurisdictions that are not otherwise expected to be participating jurisdictions under subchapter II of this chapter. Such an abbreviated housing strategy shall be appropriate to the types and amounts of assistance the jurisdiction is to receive as determined by the Secretary.

(c) Approval

(1) In general

The Secretary shall review the housing strategy upon receipt. Not later than 60 days after receipt by the Secretary, the housing strategy shall be approved unless the Secretary determines before that date that (A) the housing strategy is inconsistent with the purposes of this Act, or (B) the information described in subsection (b) has not been provided in a substantially complete manner. For the purpose of the preceding sentence, the adoption or continuation of a public policy identified pursuant to subsection (b)(4) shall not be a basis for the Secretary's disapproval of a housing strategy. During the 18-month period following November 28, 1990, the Secretary may extend the review period to not longer than 90 days.

(2) Actions in case of disapproval

If the Secretary disapproves the housing strategy, the Secretary shall immediately notify the jurisdiction of such disapproval. Not later than 15 days after the Secretary's disapproval, the Secretary shall inform the jurisdiction in writing of (A) the reasons for disapproval, and (B) actions that the jurisdiction could take to meet the criteria for approval. If the Secretary fails to inform the jurisdiction of the reasons for disapproval within such 15-day period, the housing strategy shall be deemed to have been approved.

(3) Amendments and resubmission

The Secretary shall, for a period of not less than 45 days following the date of first disapproval, permit amendments to, or the resubmission of, any housing strategy that is disapproved. The Secretary shall approve or disapprove a housing strategy not less than 30 days after receipt of such amendments or resubmission.

(d) Coordination of State and local housing strategies

The Secretary may establish such requirements as the Secretary deems appropriate to encourage coordination between and among the housing strategies of a State and any participating jurisdictions within the State, except that a unit of general local government shall not be required to have elements of its housing strategy approved by the State.

(e) Consultation with social service agencies

(1) In general

When preparing a housing strategy for submission under this section, a jurisdiction shall make reasonable efforts to confer with appropriate social service agencies regarding the housing needs of children, elderly persons, persons with disabilities, homeless persons, and other persons served by such agencies.

(2) Lead-based paint hazards

When preparing that portion of a housing strategy required by subsection (b)(16), a jurisdiction shall consult with State or local health and child welfare agencies and examine existing data related to lead-based paint hazards and poisonings, including health department data on the addresses of housing units in which children have been identified as lead poisoned.

(f) Barrier removal

Not later than 4 months after completion of the final report of the Secretary's Advisory Commission on Regulatory Barriers to Affordable Housing, the Secretary shall submit to the Congress a written report outlining the Secretary's recommendations for legislative and administrative actions to facilitate the removal or modification of excessive, duplicative, or unnecessary regulations or other requirements of Federal, State, or local governments that (1) inflate the costs of or otherwise inhibit the construction, rehabilitation, or management of housing, particularly housing that otherwise could be affordable to low-income and moderate-income families, or (2) contribute to economic or racial discrimination.

(g) Treatment of troubled public housing agencies

(1) Effect of troubled status on CHAS

The comprehensive housing affordability strategy (or any consolidated plan incorporating such strategy) for the State or unit of general local government in which any troubled public housing agency is located shall not be considered to comply with the requirements under this section unless such plan includes a description of the manner in which the State or unit will provide financial or other assistance to such troubled agency in improving its operations to remove such designation.

(2) Definition

For purposes of this subsection, the term "troubled public housing agency" means a public housing agency that, upon the effective date of the Quality Housing and Work Responsibility Act of 1998, is designated under section 6(j)(2) of the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437d(j)(2)] as a troubled public housing agency.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title I, §105, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4088; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §220, title VI, §681, title X, §1014, title XII, §1206, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3761, 3830, 3908, 3940; Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §§568, 583, Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2634, 2644; Pub. L. 106–400, §2, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1675; Pub. L. 109–162, title VI, §604, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3040.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsecs. (b)(6), (14) and (c)(1), is Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4079, known as the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12701 of this title and Tables.

The United States Housing Act of 1937, referred to in subsec. (b)(7), is act Sept. 1, 1937, ch. 896, as revised generally by Pub. L. 93–383, title II, §201(a), Aug. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 653, which is classified generally to chapter 8 (§1437 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1437 of this title and Tables.

The Housing and Community Development Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (b)(7), is Pub. L. 93–383, Aug. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 633, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5301 of this title and Tables.

The McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(7), is Pub. L. 100–77, July 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 482, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 119 (§11301 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 11301 of this title and Tables.

The effective date of the Quality Housing and Work Responsibility Act of 1998, referred to in subsec. (g)(2), probably means the general effective date for title V of Pub. L. 105–276, included in section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276 which is set out as an Effective Date of 1998 Amendment note under section 1437 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 109–162 inserted "victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking" after "immunodeficiency syndrome,".

2000—Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 106–400 substituted "McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act" for "Stewart B. McKinney Homeless Assistance Act".

1998—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–276, §583(1), transferred flush provisions relating to abbreviated housing strategies to end of subsection to follow last numbered paragraph.

Subsec. (b)(11) to (15). Pub. L. 105–276, §583(6), (7), added par. (11) and redesignated former pars. (11) to (14) as (12) to (15), respectively. Former par. (15) redesignated (16).

Subsec. (b)(16). Pub. L. 105–276, §583(6), redesignated par. (15) as (16). Former par. (16), relating to housing units that contain lead-based paint hazards, redesignated (17), and former par. (16), relating to number of families to whom jurisdiction will provide affordable housing, redesignated (18).

Pub. L. 105–276, §583(5)(A), substituted "programs;" for "programs." in par. (16) relating to housing units that contain lead-based paint hazards.

Pub. L. 105–276, §583(4)(A), struck out "and" at end of par. (16) relating to number of families to whom jurisdiction will provide affordable housing.

Subsec. (b)(17). Pub. L. 105–276, §583(5)(B), redesignated par. (16), relating to housing units that contain lead-based paint hazards, as (17). Former par. (17), relating to reducing the number of households within a jurisdiction with incomes below the poverty line, redesignated (19), and former par. (17), relating to activities to enhance coordination, redesignated (20).

Subsec. (b)(18). Pub. L. 105–276, §583(4)(B), redesignated par. (16), relating to number of families to whom jurisdiction will provide affordable housing, as (18).

Subsec. (b)(19). Pub. L. 105–276, §583(3), redesignated par. (17), relating to reducing the number of households within a jurisdiction with incomes below the poverty line, as (19).

Subsec. (b)(20). Pub. L. 105–276, §583(2), redesignated par. (17), relating to activities to enhance coordination, as (20).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 105–276, §568, added subsec. (g).

1992—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 102–550, §681(1), inserted "persons with disabilities," after "the elderly,".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 102–550, §220(a), inserted ", including rural homelessness," after "extent of homelessness" and "including tabular representation of such information," after "with homelessness,".

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 102–550, §1206, inserted before semicolon at end ", except that, if a State requires a unit of general local government to submit a regulatory barrier assessment that is substantially equivalent to the information required under this paragraph, as determined by the Secretary, the unit of general local government may submit its assessment submitted to the State to the Secretary and shall be considered to have complied with this paragraph".

Subsec. (b)(8). Pub. L. 102–550, §220(c)(2), added par. (8). Former par. (8) redesignated (9).

Subsec. (b)(9) to (13). Pub. L. 102–550, §220(c)(1), redesignated pars. (8) to (12) as (9) to (13), respectively. Former par. (13) redesignated (14).

Subsec. (b)(14). Pub. L. 102–550, §220(c)(1), redesignated par. (13) as (14). Former par. (14) redesignated (15).

Pub. L. 102–550, §220(b)(1), added par. (14) and struck out former par. (14) which read as follows: "include a certification that the jurisdiction is in compliance with a residential antidisplacement and relocation assistance plan under section 104(d) of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974 (to the extent that such a plan applies to the jurisdiction); and".

Subsec. (b)(15). Pub. L. 102–550, §220(c)(1), redesignated par. (14) as (15). Former par. (15) redesignated (16).

Subsec. (b)(16). Pub. L. 102–550, §1014(3), added par. (16) relating to housing units that contain lead-based paint hazards.

Pub. L. 102–550, §220(c)(1), redesignated par. (15) as (16). Former par. (16) redesignated (17).

Pub. L. 102–550, §220(b)(3), added at end par. (16) relating to reducing the number of households within a jurisdiction with incomes below the poverty line.

Subsec. (b)(17). Pub. L. 102–550, §681(2), which directed amendment of subsec. (b) by adding "after paragraph (16), as added by the preceding provisions of this Act", a new par. (17) relating to activities to enhance coordination, was executed by adding that par. (17) after par. (17) (formerly par. (16), relating to reducing the number of households within a jurisdiction with incomes below the poverty line, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 102–550, §220(c)(1), redesignated par. (16), relating to reducing the number of households within a jurisdiction with incomes below the poverty line, as (17).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 102–550, §1014(4), designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted heading, and

added par. (2).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by title V of Pub. L. 105–276 effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement amendment before such date, except to extent that such amendment provides otherwise, and with savings provision, see section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as a note under section 1437 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 220 of Pub. L. 102–550 applicable to unexpended funds allocated under subchapter II of this chapter in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided, see section 223 of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12704 of this title.

Amendment by subtitles B through F of title VI [§§621–685] of Pub. L. 102–550 applicable upon expiration of 6-month period beginning Oct. 28, 1992, except as otherwise provided, see section 13642 of this title.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "paragraphs".*

§12705a. Purposes of Removal of Regulatory Barriers to Affordable Housing Act

The purposes of sections 12705a to 12705d of this title are—

(1) to encourage State and local governments to further identify and remove regulatory barriers to affordable housing (including barriers that are excessive, unnecessary, duplicative, or exclusionary) that significantly increase housing costs and limit the supply of affordable housing; and

(2) to strengthen the connection between Federal housing assistance and State and local efforts to identify and eliminate regulatory barriers.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title XII, §1202, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3938.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 12705a to 12705d of this title, referred to in text, were in the original "this title", meaning title XII of Pub. L. 102–550, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3938, known as the Removal of Regulatory Barriers to Affordable Housing Act of 1992, which enacted sections 12705a to 12705d of this title, amended sections 5306 and 12705 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note below.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Removal of Regulatory Barriers to Affordable Housing Act of 1992, and also as part of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992, and not as part of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act which comprises this chapter.

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 102–550, title XII, §1201, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3938, provided that: "This title [enacting this section and sections 12705b to 12705d of this title, amending sections 5306 and 12705 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note below] may be cited as the 'Removal of Regulatory Barriers to Affordable Housing Act of 1992'."

REPORT BY SECRETARY

Pub. L. 102–550, title XII, §1207, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3941, provided that not later than 2 years after Oct. 28, 1992, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development submit a report to Congress describing any successful State and local strategies for removal of barriers to affordable housing, assessing impact of identified regulatory barriers on housing patterns of minorities, and describing any strategies developed or implemented by Department of Housing and Urban Development for reducing barriers to affordable housing imposed by Federal Government, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 105–362, title VII, §701(b), Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3287.

§12705b. Definition of regulatory barriers to affordable housing

For purposes of sections 12705a to 12705d of this title, the terms "regulatory barriers to affordable housing" and "regulatory barriers" mean any public policies (including policies embodied in statutes, ordinances, regulations, or administrative procedures or processes) required to be identified by a jurisdiction in connection with its comprehensive housing affordability strategy under section 12705(b)(4) of this title. Such terms do not include policies relating to rents imposed on a structure by a jurisdiction or policies that have served to create or preserve, or can be shown to create or preserve, housing for low- and very low-income families, including displacement protections, demolition controls, replacement housing requirements, relocation benefits, housing trust funds, dedicated funding sources, waiver of local property taxes and builder fees, inclusionary zoning, rental zoning overlays, long-term use restrictions, and rights of first refusal.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title XII, §1203, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3938.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 12705a to 12705d of this title, referred to in text, were in the original "this title", meaning title XII of Pub. L. 102–550, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3938, known as the Removal of Regulatory Barriers to Affordable Housing Act of 1992, which enacted sections 12705a to 12705d of this title, amended sections 5306 and 12705 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as notes under section 12705a of this title.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Removal of Regulatory Barriers to Affordable Housing Act of 1992, and also as part of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992, and not as part of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act which comprises this chapter.

§12705c. Grants for regulatory barrier removal strategies and implementation

(a) Funding

There is authorized to be appropriated for grants under subsections (b) and (c) [1] such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, and 2005.

(b) Grant authority

The Secretary may make grants to States and units of general local government (including consortia of such governments) for the costs of developing and implementing strategies to remove regulatory barriers to affordable housing, including the costs of—

(1) identifying, assessing, and monitoring State and local regulatory barriers;

(2) identifying State and local policies (including laws and regulations) that permit or encourage regulatory barriers;

(3) developing legislation to provide State, local, or regional programs to reduce regulatory barriers and developing a strategy for adoption of such legislation;

(4) developing model State or local standards and ordinances to reduce regulatory barriers and assisting in the adoption and use of the standards and ordinances;

(5) carrying out the simplification and consolidation of administrative procedures and processes constituting regulatory barriers to affordable housing, including the issuance of permits; and

(6) providing technical assistance and information to units of general local government for implementation of legislative and administrative reform programs to remove regulatory barriers to affordable housing.

(c) Repealed. Pub. L. 106–569, title I, §102(c), Dec. 27, 2000, 114 Stat. 2947

(d) Definitions

For purposes of this section, the terms "regulatory barriers to affordable housing" and "regulatory barriers" have the meaning given such terms in section 12705b of this title.

(e) Application and selection

The Secretary shall provide for the form and manner of applications for grants under this section,

which shall describe how grant amounts will assist the State or unit of general local government in developing and implementing strategies to remove regulatory barriers to affordable housing. The Secretary shall establish criteria for approval of applications under this subsection and such criteria shall require that grant amounts be used in a manner consistent with the strategy contained in the comprehensive housing affordability strategy for the jurisdiction pursuant to section 12705(b)(4) of this title.

(f) Selection of grantees

To the extent amounts are made available to carry out this section, the Secretary shall provide grants on a competitive basis to eligible grantees based on the proposed uses of such amounts, as provided in applications under subsection (e).

(g) Coordination with clearinghouse

Each State and unit of general local government receiving a grant under this section, shall consult, coordinate, and exchange information with the clearinghouse established under section 12705d of this title.

(h) Reports to Secretary

Each State and unit of general local government receiving a grant under this section shall submit a report to the Secretary, not less than 12 months after receiving the grant, describing any activities carried out with the grant amounts. The report shall contain an assessment of the impact of any regulatory barriers identified by the grantee on the housing patterns of minorities.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title XII, §1204, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3938; Pub. L. 106–569, title I, §102(a)–(e), Dec. 27, 2000, 114 Stat. 2946, 2947.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subsection (c) of this section, referred to in subsec. (a), was repealed by Pub. L. 106–569, title I, §102(c), Dec. 27, 2000, 114 Stat. 2947.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Removal of Regulatory Barriers to Affordable Housing Act of 1992, and also as part of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992, and not as part of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act which comprises this chapter.

Section is comprised of section 1204 of Pub. L. 102–550. Subsection (i) of section 1204 of Pub. L. 102–550 amended section 5306 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–569, §102(a), amended heading and text of subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The amounts set aside under section 5307 of this title for the purpose of this subsection shall be available for grants under subsection (b) and (c) of this section."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 106–569, §102(b)(1), (2), substituted "Grant authority" for "State grants" in heading and inserted "and units of general local government (including consortia of such governments)" after "States" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 106–569, §102(b)(3), substituted "State, local, or regional programs to reduce" for "a State program to reduce State and local".

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 106–569, §102(b)(4), inserted "or local" after "State".

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 106–569, §102(b)(5), struck out "State" before "administrative procedures".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 106–569, §102(c), struck out heading and text of subsec. (c) which related to local grants.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 106–569, §102(d), substituted "and such criteria shall require that grant amounts be used in a manner consistent with the strategy contained in the comprehensive housing affordability strategy for the jurisdiction pursuant to section 12705(b)(4) of this title" for "and for the selection of units of general local government to receive grants under subsection (f)(2) of this section" before period at end.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 106–569, §102(e), amended heading and text of subsec. (f) generally, substituting provisions relating to selection of grantees for provisions relating to allocation of amounts.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12705d. Regulatory barriers clearinghouse

(a) Establishment

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall establish a clearinghouse to serve as a national repository to receive, collect, process, assemble, and disseminate information regarding—

(1) State and local laws, regulations, and policies affecting the development, maintenance, improvement, availability, or cost of affordable housing (including tax policies affecting land and other property, land use controls, zoning ordinances, building codes, fees and charges, growth limits, and policies that affect the return on investment in residential property), and the prevalence and effects on affordable housing of such laws, regulations, and policies;

(2) State and local activities, strategies, and plans to remove or ameliorate the negative effects, if any, of such laws, regulations, and policies, including particularly innovative or successful activities, strategies, and plans; and

(3) State and local strategies, activities and plans that promote affordable housing and housing desegregation, including particularly innovative or successful strategies, activities, and plans.

(b) Functions

The clearinghouse established under subsection (a) shall—

(1) respond to inquiries from State and local governments, other organizations, and individuals requesting information regarding State and local laws, regulations, policies, activities, strategies, and plans described in subsection (a);

(2) provide assistance in identifying, examining, and understanding such laws, regulations, policies, activities, strategies, and plans; and

(3) by making available through a World Wide Web site of the Department, by electronic mail, or otherwise, provide to each housing agency of a unit of general local government that serves an area having a population greater than 100,000, an index of all State and local strategies and plans submitted under subsection (a) to the clearinghouse, which—

(A) shall describe the types of barriers to affordable housing that the strategy or plan was designed to ameliorate or remove; and

(B) shall, not later than 30 days after submission to the clearinghouse of any new strategy or plan, be updated to include the new strategy or plan submitted.

(c) Organization

The clearinghouse under this section shall be established within the Office of Policy Development of the Department of Housing and Urban Development and shall be under the direction of the Assistant Secretary for Policy Development and Research.

(d) Timing

The clearinghouse under this section (as amended by section 103 of the Housing Affordability Barrier Removal Act of 2000) shall be established and commence carrying out the functions of the clearinghouse under this section not later than 1 year after December 27, 2000. The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development may comply with the requirements under this section by reestablishing the clearinghouse that was originally established to comply with this section and updating and improving such clearinghouse to the extent necessary to comply with the requirements of this section as in effect pursuant to the enactment of such Act.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title XII, §1205, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3940; Pub. L. 106–569, title I, §103, Dec. 27, 2000, 114 Stat. 2947.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Housing Affordability Barrier Removal Act of 2000, referred to in subsec. (d), is title I of Pub. L. 106–569, Dec. 27, 2000, 114 Stat. 2946. Section 103 of the Act amended this section. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2000 Amendment note set out under section 12701 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Removal of Regulatory Barriers to Affordable Housing Act of 1992, and also as part of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992, and not as part of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act which comprises this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–569, §103(1)(A), substituted "serve as a national repository to receive, collect, process, assemble, and disseminate" for "receive, collect, process, and assemble" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 106–569, §103(1)(B), substituted "(including" for ", including" and inserted "), and the prevalence and effects on affordable housing of such laws, regulations, and policies" before semicolon at end.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 106–569, §103(1)(C), inserted before semicolon ", including particularly innovative or successful activities, strategies, and plans".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 106–569, §103(1)(D), inserted before period at end ", including particularly innovative or successful strategies, activities, and plans".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 106–569, §103(2), added par. (3).

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 106–569, §103(3), added subsecs. (c) and (d).

§12706. Certification

The Secretary shall, by regulation or otherwise, as deemed by the Secretary to be appropriate, require any application for housing assistance under subchapter II of this chapter, assistance under the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974, or assistance under the McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act [42 U.S.C. 11301 et seq.], to contain or be accompanied by a certification by an appropriate State or local public official that the proposed housing activities are consistent with the housing strategy of the jurisdiction to be served.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title I, §106, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4091; Pub. L. 106–400, §2, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1675.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Housing and Community Development Act of 1974, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 93–383, Aug. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 633, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5301 of this title and Tables.

The McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 100–77, July 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 482, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 119 (§11301 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 11301 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Pub. L. 106–400 substituted "McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act" for "Stewart B. McKinney Homeless Assistance Act".

§12707. Citizen participation

(a) In general

Before submitting a housing strategy under this section,[1] a jurisdiction shall—

(1) make available to its citizens, public agencies, and other interested parties information concerning the amount of assistance the jurisdiction expects to receive and the range of investment or other uses of such assistance that the jurisdiction may undertake;

(2) publish a proposed housing strategy in a manner that, in the determination of the Secretary, affords affected citizens, public agencies, and other interested parties a reasonable opportunity to examine its content and to submit comments on the proposed housing strategy;

(3) hold one or more public hearings to obtain the views of citizens, public agencies, and other interested parties on the housing needs of the jurisdiction; and

(4) provide citizens, public agencies, and other interested parties with reasonable access to records regarding any uses of any assistance the jurisdiction may have received during the preceding 5 years.

(b) Notice and comment

Before submitting any performance report or substantial amendment to a housing strategy under this section,[1] a participating jurisdiction shall provide citizens with reasonable notice of, and opportunity to comment on, such performance report or substantial amendment prior to its submission.

(c) Consideration of comments

A participating jurisdiction shall consider any comments or views of citizens in preparing a final housing strategy, amendment to a housing strategy or performance report for submission. A summary of such comments or views shall be attached when a housing strategy, amendment to a housing strategy or performance report is submitted. The submitted housing strategy, amendment, or report shall be made available to the public.

(d) Regulations

The Secretary shall by regulation establish procedures appropriate and practicable for providing a fair hearing and timely resolution of citizen complaints related to housing strategies or performance reports.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title I, §107, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4091.)

[1] So in original. The words "this section" probably should be "section 12705 of this title".

§12708. Compliance

(a) Performance reports

(1) In general

Each participating jurisdiction shall annually review and report, in a form acceptable to the Secretary, on the progress it has made in carrying out its housing strategy, which report shall include an evaluation of the jurisdiction's progress in meeting its goal established in section 12705(b)(15) [1] of this title, and information on the number and types of households served, including the number of very low-income, low-income, and moderate-income persons served and the racial and ethnic status of persons served that will be assisted with funds made available.

(2) Submission

The Secretary shall (A) establish dates for submission of reports under this subsection, and (B) review such reports and make such recommendations as the Secretary deems appropriate to carry out the purposes of this Act.

(3) Failure to report

If a jurisdiction fails to submit a report satisfactory to the Secretary in a timely manner, assistance to the jurisdiction under subchapter II of this chapter or the other programs referred to in section 12706 of this title may be—

(A) suspended until a report satisfactory to the Secretary is submitted; or

(B) withdrawn and reallocated if the Secretary finds, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, that the jurisdiction will not submit a satisfactory report.

(b) Performance review by Secretary

(1) In general

The Secretary shall ensure that activities of each jurisdiction required to submit a housing strategy under section 12705 of this title are reviewed not less frequently than annually. Such

review shall include, insofar as practicable, on-site visits by employees of the Department of Housing and Urban Development and shall include an assessment of the jurisdiction's—

(A) management of funds made available under programs administered by the Secretary;

(B) compliance with its housing strategy;

(C) accuracy in the preparation of performance reports under subsection (a); and

(D) efforts to ensure that housing assisted under programs administered by the Secretary are in compliance with contractual agreements and the requirements of law.

(2) Report by Secretary

The Secretary shall report on the performance review in writing. The Secretary shall give the jurisdiction not less than 30 days to review and comment on the report. After taking into consideration the comments of the jurisdiction, the Secretary may revise the report and shall make the jurisdiction's comments and the report, with any revisions, readily available to the public within 30 days after receipt of the jurisdiction's comments.

(c) Review by courts

The adequacy of information submitted under section 12705(b)(4) of this title shall not be reviewable by any Federal, State, or other court. Review of a housing strategy by any Federal, State, or other court shall be limited to determining whether the process of development and the content of the strategy are in substantial compliance with the requirements of this Act. During the pendency of any action challenging the adequacy of a housing strategy or the action of the Secretary in approving a strategy, the court shall not have the authority to enjoin activities taken by the jurisdiction to implement an approved housing strategy. Any housing assisted during the pendency of such action shall not be subject to any order of the court resulting from such action.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title I, §108, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4092.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12705(b)(15) of this title, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), was redesignated section 12705(b)(16) of this title by Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §220(c)(1), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3762, and was subsequently redesignated section 12705(b)(18) of this title by Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §583(4)(A), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2644.

This Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2) and (c), is Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4079, known as the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12701 of this title and Tables.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12709. Energy efficiency standards

(a) Establishment

(1) In general

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development and the Secretary of Agriculture shall, not later than September 30, 2006, jointly establish, by rule, energy efficiency standards for—

(A) new construction of public and assisted housing and single family and multifamily residential housing (other than manufactured homes) subject to mortgages insured under the National Housing Act [12 U.S.C. 1701 et seq.];

(B) new construction of single family housing (other than manufactured homes) subject to mortgages insured, guaranteed, or made by the Secretary of Agriculture under title V of the Housing Act of 1949 [42 U.S.C. 1471 et seq.]; and

(C) rehabilitation and new construction of public and assisted housing funded by HOPE VI revitalization grants under section 1437v of this title.

(2) Contents

Such standards shall meet or exceed the requirements of the 2006 International Energy Conservation Code (hereafter in this section referred to as "the 2006 IECC"), or, in the case of multifamily high rises, the requirements of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers Standard 90.1–2004 (hereafter in this section referred to as "ASHRAE Standard 90.1–2004"), and shall be cost-effective with respect to construction and operating costs on a life-cycle cost basis. In developing such standards, the Secretaries shall consult with an advisory task force composed of homebuilders, national, State, and local housing agencies (including public housing agencies), energy agencies, building code organizations and agencies, energy efficiency organizations, utility organizations, low-income housing organizations, and other parties designated by the Secretaries.

(b) International Energy Conservation Code

If the Secretaries have not, by September 30, 2006, established energy efficiency standards under subsection (a), all new construction and rehabilitation of housing specified in such subsection shall meet the requirements of the 2006 IECC, or, in the case of multifamily high rises, the requirements of ASHRAE Standard 90.1–2004.

(c) Revisions of the International Energy Conservation Code

If the requirements of the 2006 IECC, or, in the case of multifamily high rises, ASHRAE Standard 90.1–2004, are revised at any time, the Secretaries shall, not later than 1 year after such revision, amend the standards established under subsection (a) to meet or exceed the requirements of such revised code or standard unless the Secretaries determine that compliance with such revised code or standard would not result in a significant increase in energy efficiency or would not be technologically feasible or economically justified.

(d) Failure to amend the standards

If the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development and the Secretary of Agriculture have not, within 1 year after the requirements of the 2006 IECC or the ASHRAE Standard 90.1–2004 are revised, amended the standards or made a determination under subsection (c), all new construction and rehabilitation of housing specified in subsection (a) shall meet the requirements of the revised code or standard if—

(1) the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development or the Secretary of Agriculture make a determination that the revised codes do not negatively affect the availability or affordability of new construction of assisted housing and single family and multifamily residential housing (other than manufactured homes) subject to mortgages insured under the National Housing Act (12 U.S.C. 1701 et seq.) or insured, guaranteed, or made by the Secretary of Agriculture under title V of the Housing Act of 1949 (42 U.S.C. 1471 et seq.), respectively; and

(2) the Secretary of Energy has made a determination under section 6833 of this title that the revised code or standard would improve energy efficiency.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title I, §109, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4093; Pub. L. 102–486, title I, §101(c)(1), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2786; Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §153, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 649; Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §481, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1648.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Housing Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1)(A) and (d)(1), is act June 27, 1934, ch. 847, 48 Stat. 1246, which is classified principally to chapter 13 (§1701 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1701 of Title 12 and Tables.

The Housing Act of 1949, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1)(B) and (d)(1), is act July 15, 1949, ch. 338, 63 Stat. 413. Title V of the Act is classified generally to subchapter III (§1471 et seq.) of chapter 8A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1441 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2007—Pub. L. 110–140, §481(6), substituted "2004" for "1989" wherever appearing in subsecs. (a) to (c).

Subsec. (a)(1)(C). Pub. L. 110–140, §481(1)(A), struck out ", where such standards are determined to be cost effective by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development" before period at end.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 110–140, §481(1)(B), (5), in first sentence, substituted "2006 International Energy Conservation Code" for "Council of American Building Officials Model Energy Code, 1992" and "the 2006 IECC" for "CABO Model Energy Code, 1992" and struck out ", and, with respect to rehabilitation and new construction of public and assisted housing funded by HOPE VI revitalization grants under section 1437v of this title, the 2003 International Energy Conservation Code" before ", and shall be".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–140, §481(2), (5), in heading, substituted "International Energy Conservation" for "Model Energy" and, in text, inserted "and rehabilitation" after "all new construction", substituted "the 2006 IECC" for "CABO Model Energy Code, 1992", and struck out ", and, with respect to rehabilitation and new construction of public and assisted housing funded by HOPE VI revitalization grants under section 1437v of this title, the 2003 International Energy Conservation Code" before period at end.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 110–140, §481(3), (5), in heading, struck out "Model Energy Code and" after "Revisions of" and, in text, substituted "the 2006 IECC" for "CABO Model Energy Code, 1992", and struck out ", or, with respect to rehabilitation and new construction of public and assisted housing funded by HOPE VI revitalization grants under section 1437v of this title, the 2003 International Energy Conservation Code" before ", are revised".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 110–140, §481(4), added subsec. (d).

2005—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 109–58, §153(1)(A)(i), substituted "September 30, 2006" for "1 year after October 24, 1992" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(1)(C). Pub. L. 109–58, §153(1)(A)(ii)–(iv), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 109–58, §153(1)(B), inserted ", and, with respect to rehabilitation and new construction of public and assisted housing funded by HOPE VI revitalization grants under section 1437v of this title, the 2003 International Energy Conservation Code" after "90.1–1989')".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 109–58, §153(2), substituted "by September 30, 2006" for "within 1 year after October 24, 1992" and inserted ", and, with respect to rehabilitation and new construction of public and assisted housing funded by HOPE VI revitalization grants under section 1437v of this title, the 2003 International Energy Conservation Code" before period at end.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 109–58, §153(3), inserted "and the International Energy Conservation Code" after "Model Energy Code" in heading and ", or, with respect to rehabilitation and new construction of public and assisted housing funded by HOPE VI revitalization grants under section 1437v of this title, the 2003 International Energy Conservation Code" after "90.1–1989" in text.

1992—Pub. L. 102–486 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: "The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall, not later than one year after November 28, 1990, promulgate energy efficiency standards for new construction of public and assisted housing and single-family and multifamily residential housing (other than manufactured homes) subject to mortgages under the National Housing Act. Such standards shall meet or exceed the provisions of the most recent edition of the Model Energy Code of the Council of American Building Officials and shall be cost-effective with respect to construction and operating costs. In developing such standards the Secretary shall consult with an advisory task force composed of homebuilders, national, State, and local housing agencies (including public housing agencies), energy agencies and building code organizations and agencies, energy efficiency organizations, utility organizations, low-income housing organizations, and other parties designated by the Secretary."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§12710. Capacity study

(a) In general

The Secretary shall ensure that the Department of Housing and Urban Development has adequate capacity and resources, including staff and training programs, to carry out its mission and responsibilities to implement the provisions of this Act, including the ability of the Department to carry out the multifamily mortgage insurance program, and the ability to respond to areas identified as "material weaknesses" by the Office of the Inspector General in financial audits or other reports.

(b) Report

Not later than 60 days after November 28, 1990, and annually thereafter, the Secretary shall prepare and submit to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives a study detailing the Department's plan to maintain such capacity, together with any recommendations for legislative and administrative action as the Secretary determines to be appropriate.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title I, §110, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4093; Pub. L. 102–550, title IV, §407, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3778.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4079, known as the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12701 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102–550 struck out ", and" after "responsibilities" and substituted for period at end "and the ability to respond to areas identified as 'material weaknesses' by the Office of the Inspector General in financial audits or other reports."

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104–14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress. Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives abolished and replaced by Committee on Financial Services of House of Representatives, and jurisdiction over matters relating to securities and exchanges and insurance generally transferred from Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 5, One Hundred Seventh Congress, Jan. 3, 2001.

§12711. Protection of State and local authority

Notwithstanding any other provision of this subchapter or subchapter II, the Secretary shall not establish any criteria for allocating or denying funds made available under programs administered by the Secretary based on the adoption, continuation, or discontinuation by a jurisdiction of any public policy, regulation, or law that is (1) adopted, continued, or discontinued in accordance with the jurisdiction's duly established authority, and (2) not in violation of any Federal law.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title I, §111, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4093.)

§12712. 5-year energy efficiency plan

(a) Establishment

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall establish a plan for activities to be undertaken and policies to be adopted by the Secretary within the 5-year period beginning upon the submission of the plan to the Congress under subsection (d) to provide for, encourage, and improve energy efficiency in newly constructed, rehabilitated, and existing housing. In developing the plan, the Secretary shall consider, as appropriate, any energy assessments under section 944.

(b) Initial plan

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall establish the first plan under this section not later than the expiration of the 1-year period beginning on November 28, 1990.

(c) Updates

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall revise and update the plan under this section not less than once for each 2-year period, the first such 2-year period beginning on the date of the submission of the initial plan under subsection (b) to the Congress (as provided in subsection (d)). Each such update shall revise the plan for the 5-year period beginning upon the submission of the updated plan to the Congress.

(d) Submission to Congress

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall submit the initial plan established under subsection (b) and any updated plans under subsection (c) to the Congress not later than the date by which such plans are to be established or updated under such paragraphs.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IX, §945, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4416.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 944, referred to in subsec. (a), is section 944 of Pub. L. 101–625, which is set out below.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of title IX of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act, and not as part of title I of such Act which comprises this subchapter.

BUDGET-NEUTRAL DEMONSTRATION PROGRAM FOR ENERGY AND WATER CONSERVATION IMPROVEMENTS AT MULTIFAMILY RESIDENTIAL UNITS

Pub. L. 114–94, div. G, title LXXXI, §81001, Dec. 4, 2015, 129 Stat. 1792, provided that:

"(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development (in this section referred to as the 'Secretary') shall establish a demonstration program under which the Secretary may execute budget-neutral, performance-based agreements in fiscal years 2016 through 2019 that result in a reduction in energy or water costs with such entities as the Secretary determines to be appropriate under which the entities shall carry out projects for energy or water conservation improvements at not more than 20,000 residential units in multifamily buildings participating in—

"(1) the project-based rental assistance program under section 8 of the United States Housing Act of 1937 (42 U.S.C. 1437f), other than assistance provided under section 8(o) of that Act;

"(2) the supportive housing for the elderly program under section 202 of the Housing Act of 1959 (12 U.S.C. 1701q); or

"(3) the supportive housing for persons with disabilities program under section 811(d)(2) of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act (42 U.S.C. 8013(d)(2)).

"(b) REQUIREMENTS.—

"(1) PAYMENTS CONTINGENT ON SAVINGS.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall provide to an entity a payment under an agreement under this section only during applicable years for which an energy or water cost savings is achieved with respect to the applicable multifamily portfolio of properties, as determined by the Secretary, in accordance with subparagraph (B).

"(B) PAYMENT METHODOLOGY.—

"(i) IN GENERAL.—Each agreement under this section shall include a pay-for-success provision that—

"(I) shall serve as a payment threshold for the term of the agreement; and

"(II) requires that payments shall be contingent on realized cost savings associated with reduced utility consumption in the participating properties.

"(ii) LIMITATIONS.—A payment made by the Secretary under an agreement under this section—

"(I) shall be contingent on documented utility savings; and

"(II) shall not exceed the utility savings achieved by the date of the payment, and not previously paid, as a result of the improvements made under the agreement.

"(C) THIRD-PARTY VERIFICATION.—Savings payments made by the Secretary under this section shall be based on a measurement and verification protocol that includes at least—

"(i) establishment of a weather-normalized and occupancy-normalized utility consumption baseline established pre-retrofit;

"(ii) annual third-party confirmation of actual utility consumption and cost for utilities;

"(iii) annual third-party validation of the tenant utility allowances in effect during the applicable year and vacancy rates for each unit type; and

"(iv) annual third-party determination of savings to the Secretary.

An agreement under this section with an entity shall provide that the entity shall cover costs associated with third-party verification under this subparagraph.

"(2) TERMS OF PERFORMANCE-BASED AGREEMENTS.—A performance-based agreement under this section shall include—

"(A) the period that the agreement will be in effect and during which payments may be made, which may not be longer than 12 years;

"(B) the performance measures that will serve as payment thresholds during the term of the agreement;

"(C) an audit protocol for the properties covered by the agreement;

"(D) a requirement that payments shall be contingent on realized cost savings associated with reduced utility consumption in the participating properties; and

"(E) such other requirements and terms as determined to be appropriate by the Secretary.

"(3) ENTITY ELIGIBILITY.—The Secretary shall—

"(A) establish a competitive process for entering into agreements under this section; and

"(B) enter into such agreements only with entities that, either jointly or individually, demonstrate significant experience relating to—

"(i) financing or operating properties receiving assistance under a program identified in subsection (a);

"(ii) oversight of energy or water conservation programs, including oversight of contractors; and

"(iii) raising capital for energy or water conservation improvements from charitable organizations or private investors.

"(4) GEOGRAPHICAL DIVERSITY.—Each agreement entered into under this section shall provide for the inclusion of properties with the greatest feasible regional and State variance.

"(5) PROPERTIES.—A property may only be included in the demonstration under this section only if the property is subject to affordability restrictions for at least 15 years after the date of the completion of any conservation improvements made to the property under the demonstration program. Such restrictions may be made through an extended affordability agreement for the property under a new housing assistance payments contract with the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development or through an enforceable covenant with the owner of the property.

"(c) PLAN AND REPORTS.—

"(1) PLAN.—Not later than 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 4, 2015], the Secretary shall submit to the Committees on Appropriations and Financial Services of the House of Representatives and the Committees on Appropriations and Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate a detailed plan for the implementation of this section.

"(2) REPORTS.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, and annually thereafter, the Secretary shall—

"(A) conduct an evaluation of the program under this section; and

"(B) submit to Congress a report describing each evaluation conducted under subparagraph (A).

"(d) FUNDING.—For each fiscal year during which an agreement under this section is in effect, the Secretary may use to carry out this section any funds appropriated to the Secretary for the renewal of contracts under a program described in subsection (a)."

ENERGY ASSESSMENT REPORT

Pub. L. 101–625, title IX, §944, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4415, directed Secretary of Housing and Urban Development to submit a report to Congress, not later than one year after Nov. 28, 1990, assessing any activity undertaken by the Secretary to increase energy efficiency in housing, such report to include an analysis of the Aug. 15, 1990, DOE-HUD program to expand energy efficiency and increase affordability of federally-assisted housing, and provided that in such report Secretary of Housing and Urban Development (in consultation with Secretary of Energy) was to establish, and include a description of, a standard measure by which changes over time in residential energy efficiency could be compared.

UNIFORM MORTGAGE FINANCING PLAN FOR ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Pub. L. 101–625, title IX, §946, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4416, as amended by Pub. L. 102–486, title I, §105(b), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2792; Pub. L. 102–550, title IX, §914(b), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3877, provided that:

"(a) UNIFORM PLAN.—The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, in consultation with the Secretary of Energy, shall promulgate a uniform plan to make housing more affordable through energy efficient mortgages (as such term is defined in section 104 of this Act [42 U.S.C. 12704]). The plan shall be promulgated not later than 2 years after the date of the enactment of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act [Nov. 28, 1990].

"(b) TASK FORCE.—To develop the plan, the Secretary shall form a task force to make recommendation[s] on financing energy efficiency in private mortgages, through the policies of Federal agencies and federally chartered financial institutions, mortgage bankers, homebuilders, real estate brokers, private mortgage insurers, energy suppliers, and nonprofit housing and energy organizations. The task force

shall include, but not be limited to, individuals representing the Federal Housing Administration mortgage programs of the Department of Housing and Urban Development, the Farmers Home Administration mortgage loan and insurance programs of Department of Agriculture, the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation, and the Federal National Mortgage Association. The Task Force shall determine whether notifying potential home purchasers of the availability of energy efficient mortgages would promote energy efficiency in residential buildings, and if so, the Task Force shall recommend appropriate notification guidelines, and agencies and organizations referred to in the preceding sentence are authorized to implement such guidelines."

ENERGY EFFICIENCY DEMONSTRATION

Pub. L. 101–625, title IX, §961, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4424, directed Secretary of Housing and Urban Development to establish a program to demonstrate various methods of improving the energy efficiency of existing housing, provided for funding, provided that the demonstration determine appropriate design, improvement, and rehabilitation methods and practices for increasing residential energy efficiency in housing already constructed, and directed Secretary, as soon as practicable after Sept. 30, 1991, to submit to Congress a report setting forth the findings and recommendations of the Secretary as a result of the demonstration.

§12713. Eligibility under first-time homebuyer programs

(a) Eligibility of displaced homemakers and single parents for Federal assistance for first-time homebuyers

(1) Displaced homemakers

No individual who is a displaced homemaker may be denied eligibility under any Federal program to assist first-time homebuyers on the basis that the individual, while a homemaker, owned a home with his or her spouse or resided in a home owned by the spouse.

(2) Single parents

No individual who is a single parent may be denied eligibility under any Federal program to assist first-time homebuyers on the basis that the individual, while married, owned a home with his or her spouse or resided in a home owned by the spouse.

(b) Definitions

For purposes of this section:

(1) Displaced homemaker

The term "displaced homemaker" means an individual who—

(A) is an adult;

(B) has not worked full-time, full-year in the labor force for a number of years but has, during such years, worked primarily without remuneration to care for the home and family; and

(C) is unemployed or underemployed and is experiencing difficulty in obtaining or upgrading employment.

(2) First-time homebuyer

The term "first-time homebuyer" means an individual who has never, or has not during a specified period of time, had any present ownership interest in a principal residence.

(3) Single parent

The term "single parent" means an individual who—

(A) is unmarried or legally separated from a spouse; and

(B)(i) has 1 or more minor children for whom the individual has custody or joint custody; or

(ii) is pregnant.

(c) Applicability

This section shall apply to any Federal program to assist first-time homebuyers, unless the program is exempted from this section by a statute that amends this subsection or explicitly refers to this subsection.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IX, §956, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4421.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of title IX of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act, and not as part of title I of such Act which comprises this subchapter.

§12714. Repealed. Pub. L. 104–99, title IV, §404(a), Jan. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 44

Section, Pub. L. 101–625, title IX, §957, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4422, related to maximum annual limitation on rent increases resulting from employment.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Pub. L. 104–99, title IV, §404(a), Jan. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 44, provided in part that this section is repealed retroactive to Nov. 28, 1990, and shall be of no effect.

ECONOMIC INDEPENDENCE

Pub. L. 102–550, title IX, §923, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3884, which provided that Secretary of Housing and Urban Development was to immediately implement section 12714 of this title and that other Federal agencies authorized to assist low-income families were to take similar steps to encourage economic independence and the accumulation of assets, was repealed retroactive to Oct. 28, 1992, by Pub. L. 104–99, title IV, §404(b), Jan. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 44, which further provided that section 923 of Pub. L. 102–550 was to be of no effect.

SUBCHAPTER II—INVESTMENT IN AFFORDABLE HOUSING

§12721. Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) the Nation has not made adequate progress toward the goal of national housing policy, as set out in the Housing Act of 1949 [42 U.S.C. 1441 et seq.] and reaffirmed in the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968, which would provide decent, safe, sanitary, and affordable living environments for all Americans;

(2) the supply of affordable rental housing is diminishing;

(3) the Tax Reform Act of 1986 removed major tax incentives for the production of affordable rental housing;

(4) the living environments of an increasing number of Americans have deteriorated over the past several years as a result of reductions in Federal assistance to low-income and moderate-income families;

(5) many Americans face the possibility of homelessness unless Federal, State, and local governments work together with the private sector to develop and rehabilitate the housing stock of the Nation to provide decent, safe, sanitary, and affordable housing for very low-income and low-income families;

(6) reliable Federal leadership is needed to achieve an adequate supply of affordable housing for all Americans;

(7) to achieve the goal of national housing policy, there is a need to strengthen nationwide a cost-effective community-based housing partnership designed to—

(A) expand the supply of rental housing that is affordable to very low-income and low-income families,

(B) improve homeownership opportunities for low-income families,

(C) carry out comprehensive housing strategies tailored to local housing market conditions, and

(D) protect the Federal, State, and local investment in low-income housing to ensure

affordability of the housing for the remaining useful life of the property;

(8) direct assistance to expand the supply of affordable rental housing should be provided in a way that is more cost-effective and targeted than tax incentives;

(9) much of the Nation's housing system works very well and provides a strong base on which national housing policy should build;

(10) an increasing number of States and local governments have been successful in producing cost-effective low-income and moderate-income housing by working in partnership with the private sector, including nonprofit community development corporations, community action agencies, neighborhood housing services corporations, trade unions, groups sponsored by religious organizations, limited equity cooperatives, and other tenant organizations;

(11) during the 1980's, nonprofit community housing development organizations, despite severe obstacles caused by inadequate funding, have played an increasingly important role in the production and rehabilitation of affordable housing in communities across the Nation;

(12) additional financial resources and technical skills must be made available in local communities if the Nation is to mobilize the capacity of the private sector, including nonprofit community housing development organizations, to provide a more adequate supply of decent, safe, and sanitary housing that is affordable to very low-income, low-income, and moderate-income families and meets the need for large family units and other additional units that are available to very low-income families receiving rental assistance payments from Federal, State, and local governments; and

(13) the long-term success of efforts to provide more affordable housing depends upon tenants and homeowners being fiscally responsible and able managers.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §202, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4094.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Housing Act of 1949, referred to in par. (1), is act July 15, 1949, ch. 338, 63 Stat. 413, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 8A (§1441 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1441 of this title and Tables.

The Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968, referred to in par. (1), is Pub. L. 90–448, Aug. 1, 1968, 82 Stat. 476, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1968 Amendments note set out under section 1701 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and Tables.

The Tax Reform Act of 1986, referred to in par. (3), is Pub. L. 99–514, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2085, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1986 Amendments note set out under section 1 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

For short title of this subchapter as the "HOME Investment Partnerships Act", see Short Title note set out under section 12701 of this title.

§12722. Purposes

The purposes of this subchapter are—

(1) to expand the supply of decent, safe, sanitary, and affordable housing, with primary attention to rental housing, for very low-income and low-income Americans;

(2) to mobilize and strengthen the abilities of States and units of general local government throughout the United States to design and implement strategies for achieving an adequate supply of decent, safe, sanitary, and affordable housing;

(3) to provide participating jurisdictions, on a coordinated basis, with the various forms of Federal housing assistance, including capital investment, mortgage insurance, rental assistance, and other Federal assistance, needed—

(A) to expand the supply of decent, safe, sanitary, and affordable housing;

(B) to make new construction, rehabilitation, substantial rehabilitation, and acquisition of such housing feasible; and

(C) to promote the development of partnerships among the Federal Government, States and units of general local government, private industry, and nonprofit organizations able to utilize effectively all available resources to provide more of such housing;

(4) to make housing more affordable for very low-income and low-income families through the use of tenant-based rental assistance;

(5) to develop and refine, on an ongoing basis, a selection of model programs incorporating the most effective methods for providing decent, safe, sanitary, and affordable housing, and accelerate the application of such methods where appropriate throughout the United States to achieve the prudent and efficient use of funds made available under this subchapter;

(6) to expand the capacity of nonprofit community housing development organizations to develop and manage decent, safe, sanitary, and affordable housing;

(7) to ensure that Federal investment produces housing stock that is available and affordable to low-income families for the property's remaining useful life, is appropriate to the neighborhood surroundings, and, wherever appropriate, is mixed income housing;

(8) to increase the investment of private capital and the use of private sector resources in the provision of decent, safe, sanitary, and affordable housing;

(9) to allocate Federal funds for investment in affordable housing among participating jurisdictions by formula allocation;

(10) to leverage those funds insofar as practicable with State and local matching contributions and private investment;

(11) to establish for each participating jurisdiction a HOME Investment Trust Fund with a line of credit for investment in affordable housing, with repayments back to its HOME Investment Trust Fund being made available for reinvestment by the jurisdiction;

(12) to provide credit enhancement for affordable housing by utilizing the capacities of existing agencies and mortgage finance institutions when most efficient and supplementing their activities when appropriate; and

(13) to assist very low-income and low-income families to obtain the skills and knowledge necessary to become responsible homeowners and tenants.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §203, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4095.)

§12723. Coordinated Federal support for housing strategies

The Secretary shall make assistance under this subchapter available to participating jurisdictions, through the Office of the Assistant Secretary for Housing-FHA Commissioner of the Department of Housing and Urban Development, to the maximum extent practicable, in coordination with mortgage insurance, rental assistance, and other housing assistance appropriate to the efficient and timely completion of activities under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §204, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4096.)

§12724. Authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subchapter $2,086,000,000 for fiscal year 1993, and $2,173,612,000 for fiscal year 1994, of which—

(1) not more than $14,000,000 for fiscal year 1993, and $25,000,000 for fiscal year 1994, shall be for community housing partnership activities authorized under section 12773 of this title; and

(2) not more than $11,000,000 for fiscal year 1993, and $22,000,000 for fiscal year 1994, shall be for activities in support of State and local housing strategies authorized under part C.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §205, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4096; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §201, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3751; Pub. L. 103–120, §5, Oct. 27, 1993, 107 Stat. 1148.)

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–120 substituted "$25,000,000 for fiscal year 1994" for "$14,000,000 for fiscal year 1994" in par. (1) and "$22,000,000 for fiscal year 1994" for "$11,000,000 for fiscal year 1994" in par. (2).

1992—Pub. L. 102–550 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subchapter $1,000,000,000 for fiscal year 1991, and $2,086,000,000 for fiscal year 1992, of which—

"(1) not more than $14,000,000 for fiscal year 1991, and $14,000,000 for fiscal year 1992, shall be for community housing partnership activities authorized under section 12773 of this title; and

"(2) not more than $11,000,000 for fiscal year 1991, and $11,000,000 for fiscal year 1992, shall be for activities in support of State and local housing strategies authorized under part C of this subchapter."

§12725. Notice

The Secretary shall issue regulations to implement the provisions of this subchapter after notice and an opportunity for comment pursuant to section 553 of title 5. Such regulations shall become effective not later than 180 days after November 28, 1990.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §206, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4096.)

PART A—HOME INVESTMENT PARTNERSHIPS

§12741. Authority

The Secretary is authorized to make funds available to participating jurisdictions for investment to increase the number of families served with decent, safe, sanitary, and affordable housing and expand the long-term supply of affordable housing in accordance with provisions of this part.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §211, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4096.)

§12742. Eligible uses of investment

(a) Housing uses

(1) In general

Funds made available under this part may be used by participating jurisdictions to provide incentives to develop and support affordable rental housing and homeownership affordability through the acquisition, new construction, reconstruction, or moderate or substantial rehabilitation of affordable housing, including real property acquisition, site improvement, conversion, demolition, and other expenses, including financing costs, relocation expenses of any displaced persons, families, businesses, or organizations, to provide for the payment of reasonable administrative and planning costs, to provide for the payment of operating expenses of community housing development organizations, and to provide tenant-based rental assistance. For the purpose of this part, the term "affordable housing" includes permanent housing for disabled homeless persons, transitional housing, and single room occupancy housing.

(2) Preference to rehabilitation

A participating jurisdiction shall give preference to rehabilitation of substandard housing unless the jurisdiction determines that—

(A) such rehabilitation is not the most cost effective way to meet the jurisdiction's need to expand the supply of affordable housing; and

(B) the jurisdiction's housing needs cannot be met through rehabilitation of the available stock.

The Secretary shall not restrict a participating jurisdiction's choice of rehabilitation, substantial rehabilitation, new construction, reconstruction, acquisition, or other eligible housing use unless such restriction is explicitly authorized under section 12753(2) of this title.

(3) Tenant-based rental assistance

(A) In general

A participating jurisdiction may use funds provided under this part for tenant-based rental assistance only if—

(i) the jurisdiction certifies that the use of funds under this part for tenant-based rental assistance is an essential element of the jurisdiction's annual housing strategy for expanding the supply, affordability, and availability of decent, safe, sanitary, and affordable housing, and specifies the local market conditions that lead to the choice of this option; and

(ii) the tenant-based rental assistance is provided in accordance with written tenant selection policies and criteria that are consistent with the purposes of providing housing to very low- and low-income families and are reasonably related to preference rules established under section 1437d(c)(4)(A) [1] of this title.

(B) Fair share not affected

A jurisdiction's section 8 [42 U.S.C. 1437f] fair share allocation shall be unaffected by the use of assistance under this subchapter.

(C) 24-month contracts

Rental assistance contracts made available with assistance under this subchapter shall be for not more than 24 months, except that assistance to a family may be renewed.

(D) Use of section 1437f assistance

In any case where assistance under section 1437f of this title becomes available to a participating jurisdiction, recipients of rental assistance under this subchapter shall qualify for tenant selection preferences to the same extent as when they received the rental assistance under this subchapter. A rental assistance program under this subchapter shall meet minimum criteria prescribed by the Secretary, such as housing quality standards and standards regarding the reasonableness of the rent.

(E) Security deposit assistance

A jurisdiction using funds provided under this part for tenant-based rental assistance may use such funds to provide loans or grants to very low- and low-income families for security deposits for rental of dwelling units. Assistance under this subparagraph does not preclude assistance under any other provision of this paragraph.

(4) Redesignated (3)

(5) Lead-based paint hazards

A participating jurisdiction may use funds provided under this part for the evaluation and reduction of lead-based paint hazards, as defined in section 4851b of this title.

(b) Investments

Participating jurisdictions shall have discretion to invest funds made available under this part as equity investments, interest-bearing loans or advances, noninterest-bearing loans or advances, interest subsidies or other forms of assistance that the Secretary has determined to be consistent with the purposes of this subchapter. Each participating jurisdiction shall have the right to establish the terms of assistance.

(c) Administrative costs

In each fiscal year, each participating jurisdiction may use not more than 10 percent of the funds made available under this part to the jurisdiction for such year for any administrative and planning costs of the jurisdiction in carrying out this part, including the costs of the salaries of persons

engaged in administering and managing activities assisted with funds made available under this part.

(d) Prohibited uses

Funds made available under this part may not be used to—

(1) defray any administrative cost of a participating jurisdiction that exceed the amount specified under subsection (c),

(2) provide tenant-based rental assistance for the special purposes of the existing section 8 [42 U.S.C. 1437f] program, including replacing public housing that is demolished or disposed of, preserving federally assisted housing, assisting in the disposition of housing owned or held by the Secretary, preventing displacement from rental rehabilitation projects, or extending or renewing tenant-based assistance under section 1437f of this title,

(3) provide non-Federal matching contributions required under any other Federal program,

(4) provide assistance authorized under section 1437g of this title,

(5) carry out activities authorized under section 1437g(d)(1) [1] of this title, or

(6) provide assistance to eligible low-income housing under the Emergency Low Income Housing Preservation Act of 1987 or the Low-Income Housing Preservation and Resident Homeownership Act of 1990 [12 U.S.C. 4101 et seq.].

(e) Cost limits

(1) In general

The Secretary shall establish limits on the amount of funds under this part that may be invested on a per unit basis. For multifamily housing, such limits shall not be less than the per unit dollar amount limitations set forth in section 1715l(d)(3)(ii) of title 12, as such limitations may be adjusted in accordance therewith, except that for purposes of this subsection the Secretary shall, by regulation, increase the per unit dollar amount limitations in any geographical area by an amount, not to exceed 140 percent, that equals the amount by which the costs of multifamily housing construction in the area exceed the national average of such costs. The limits shall be established on a market-by-market basis, with adjustments made for number of bedrooms, and shall reflect the actual cost of new construction, reconstruction, or rehabilitation of housing that meets applicable State and local housing and building codes and the cost of land, including necessary site improvements. Adjustments shall be made annually to reflect inflation. Separate limits may be set for different eligible activities.

(2) Criteria

In calculating per unit limits, the Secretary shall take into account that assistance under this subchapter is intended to—

(A) provide nonluxury housing with suitable amenities;

(B) operate effectively in all jurisdictions;

(C) facilitate mixed-income housing; and

(D) reflect the costs associated with meeting the special needs of tenants or homeowners that the housing is designed to serve.

(3) Consultation

In calculating cost limits, the Secretary shall consult with organizations that have expertise in the development of affordable housing, including national nonprofit organizations and national organizations representing private development firms and State and local governments.

(f) Certification of compliance

The requirements of section 3545(d) of this title shall be satisfied by a certification by a participating jurisdiction to the Secretary that the combination of Federal assistance provided to any housing project shall not be any more than is necessary to provide affordable housing.

(g) Limitation on operating assistance

A participating jurisdiction may not use more than 5 percent of its allocation under this part for the payment of operating expenses for community housing development organizations.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §212, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4097; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §§203(a), 204–207(b), (d), title X, §1012(e), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3752–3754, 3905; Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §522(b)(5), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2565.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1437d(c)(4)(A) of this title, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(A)(ii), was in the original "section 6(c)(4)(A) of the Housing Act of 1937", and was translated as reading "section 6(c)(4)(A) of the United States Housing Act of 1937", act Sept. 1, 1937, ch. 896, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Section 1437g(d)(1) of this title, referred to in subsec. (d)(5), was in the original "section 9(d)(1) of the Housing Act of 1937", and was translated as reading "section 9(d)(1) of the United States Housing Act of 1937", act Sept. 1, 1937, ch. 896, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

The Emergency Low Income Housing Preservation Act of 1987, referred to in subsec. (d)(6), is title II of Pub. L. 100–242, Feb. 5, 1988, 102 Stat. 1877, as amended, which was classified principally as a note under section 1715l of Title 12, Banks and Banking. Title II of Pub. L. 100–242, was amended generally by Pub. L. 101–625, title VI, §601(a), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4249, and is now known as the Low-Income Housing Preservation and Resident Homeownership Act of 1990, which is classified principally to chapter 42 (§4101 et seq.) of Title 12. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4101 of Title 12 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (d)(5). Pub. L. 105–276 substituted "section 1437g(d)(1)" for "section 1437l".

1992—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102–550, §207(a), inserted "to provide for the payment of reasonable administrative and planning costs, to provide for the payment of operating expenses of community housing development organizations," after "or organizations,".

Pub. L. 102–550, §205, inserted at end "For the purpose of this part, the term 'affordable housing' includes permanent housing for disabled homeless persons, transitional housing, and single room occupancy housing."

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 102–550, §203(a)(1), struck out "under paragraph (3) of this subsection or" after "authorized" in concluding provisions.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 102–550, §204(b), added cl. (ii) of par. (3)(A) and struck out former cl. (ii) which read as follows: "the tenant-based rental assistance is provided to persons from the waiting lists eligible for section 8 assistance in accordance with the applicable preferences."

Pub. L. 102–550, §204(a), added subpar. (E).

Pub. L. 102–550, §203(a)(2), (3), redesignated par. (4) as (3) and struck out former par. (3) which provided for conditions for new construction of housing.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 102–550, §203(a)(3), redesignated par. (4) as (3).

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 102–550, §1012(e), added par. (5).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 102–550, §207(b)(3), added subsec. (c). Former subsec. (c) redesignated (d).

Pub. L. 102–550, §207(b)(1), inserted before comma at end of par. (1) "that exceed the amount specified under subsection (c)".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102–550, §207(b)(2), redesignated subsec. (c) as (d). Former subsec. (d) redesignated (e).

Pub. L. 102–550, §206, inserted after first sentence of par. (1) "For multifamily housing, such limits shall not be less than the per unit dollar amount limitations set forth in section 1715l(d)(3)(ii) of title 12, as such limitations may be adjusted in accordance therewith, except that for purposes of this subsection the Secretary shall, by regulation, increase the per unit dollar amount limitations in any geographical area by an amount, not to exceed 140 percent, that equals the amount by which the costs of multifamily housing construction in the area exceed the national average of such costs."

Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 102–550, §207(b)(2), redesignated subsecs. (d) and (e) as (e) and (f), respectively.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 102–550, §207(d), added subsec. (g).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by title V of Pub. L. 105–276 effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement amendment before such date, except to extent that such amendment provides otherwise, and with savings provision, see section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as a note under section 1437 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 203–207 of Pub. L. 102–550 applicable to unexpended funds allocated under subchapter II of this chapter in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided, see section 223 of

Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12704 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12743. Development of model programs

(a) In general

The Secretary shall—

(1) in cooperation with participating jurisdictions, government-sponsored mortgage finance corporations, nonprofit organizations, the private sector, and other appropriate parties, develop, test, evaluate, refine, and, as necessary, replace a selection of model programs designed to carry out the purposes of this subchapter;

(2) make available to participating jurisdictions alternative model programs, which shall include suggested guidelines, procedures, forms, legal documents and such other elements as the Secretary determines to be appropriate;

(3) assure, insofar as is feasible, the availability of an appropriate variety of model programs designed for local market conditions, housing problems, project characteristics, and managerial capacities as they differ among participating jurisdictions;

(4) negotiate and enter into agreements with agencies of the Federal Government, participating jurisdictions, private financial institutions, government-sponsored mortgage finance corporations, nonprofit organizations, and other entities to provide such services, products, or financing as may be required for the implementation of a model program;

(5) provide detailed information on model programs as requested by participating jurisdictions, private financial institutions, developers, nonprofit organizations, and other interested parties; and

(6) encourage the use of such model programs to achieve efficiency, economies of scale, and effectiveness in the investment of funds made available under this part through third-party training, printed materials, and such other means of support as the Secretary determines will achieve the purpose of this subchapter.

(b) Adoption of programs

Except as provided in section 12753(2) of this title, each participating jurisdiction shall have the discretion to adopt one or more model programs, adapt one or more model programs to its own requirements, design additional forms of assistance by itself or in cooperation with other participating jurisdictions, and suggest additional model programs for adoption by the Secretary as the participating jurisdiction may deem appropriate, and the Secretary may assist a participating jurisdiction in adopting, adapting, or designing one or more model programs.

(c) Part D programs

The selection of model programs to be made available for adoption or adaptation shall include programs meeting the criteria set forth in part D.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §213, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4100.)

§12744. Income targeting

Each participating jurisdiction shall invest funds made available under this part within each fiscal year so that—

(1) with respect to rental assistance and rental units—

(A) not less than 90 percent of (i) the families receiving such rental assistance are families whose incomes do not exceed 60 percent of the median family income for the area, as determined by the Secretary with adjustments for smaller and larger families, (except that the Secretary may establish income ceilings higher or lower than 60 percent of the median for the area on the basis of the Secretary's findings that such variations are necessary because of

prevailing levels of construction cost or fair market rent, or unusually high or low family income) at the time of occupancy or at the time funds are invested, whichever is later, or (ii) the dwelling units assisted with such funds are occupied by families having such incomes; and

(B) the remainder of (i) the families receiving such rental assistance are households that qualify as low-income families (other than families described in subparagraph (A)) at the time of occupancy or at the time funds are invested, whichever is later, or (ii) the dwelling units assisted with such funds are occupied by such households;

(2) with respect to homeownership assistance, 100 percent of such funds are invested with respect to dwelling units that are occupied by households that qualify as low-income families; and

(3) all such funds are invested with respect to housing that qualifies as affordable housing under section 12745 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §214, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4101; Pub. L. 103–233, title II, §202, Apr. 11, 1994, 108 Stat. 364; Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §599B(a), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2660.)

AMENDMENTS

1998—Par. (2). Pub. L. 105–276 struck out "at the time of occupancy or at the time funds are invested, whichever is later" before "; and".

1994—Par. (1)(A). Pub. L. 103–233, §202(1), substituted "(i) the families receiving such rental assistance are" for "such funds are invested with respect to dwelling units that are occupied by", ", or" for ", and" before cl. (ii), and added cl. (ii).

Par. (1)(B). Pub. L. 103–233, §202(2), substituted "(i) the families receiving such rental assistance are" for "such funds are invested with respect to dwelling units that are occupied by" and added cl. (ii).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §599B(c), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2660, provided that: "The amendments made by this section [amending this section and section 12745 of this title] are made on, and shall apply beginning upon, the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 21, 1998]."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–233 applicable with respect to any amounts made available to carry out this subchapter after Apr. 11, 1994, and any amounts made available to carry out this subchapter before that date that remain uncommitted on that date, with Secretary to issue any regulations necessary to carry out such amendment not later than end of 45-day period beginning on that date, see section 209 of Pub. L. 103–233, set out as a note under section 5301 of this title.

§12745. Qualification as affordable housing

(a) Rental housing

(1) Qualification

Housing that is for rental shall qualify as affordable housing under this subchapter only if the housing—

(A) bears rents not greater than the lesser of (i) the existing fair market rent for comparable units in the area as established by the Secretary under section 1437f of this title, or (ii) a rent that does not exceed 30 percent of the adjusted income of a family whose income equals 65 percent of the median income for the area, as determined by the Secretary, with adjustment for number of bedrooms in the unit, except that the Secretary may establish income ceilings higher or lower than 65 percent of the median for the area on the basis of the Secretary's findings that such variations are necessary because of prevailing levels of construction costs or fair market rents, or unusually high or low family incomes;

(B) has not less than 20 percent of the units (i) occupied by very low-income families who pay as a contribution toward rent (excluding any Federal or State rental subsidy provided on behalf of the family) not more than 30 percent of the family's monthly adjusted income as determined by the Secretary, or (ii) occupied by very low-income families and bearing rents not

greater than the gross rent for rent-restricted residential units as determined under section 42(g)(2) of title 26;

(C) is occupied only by households that qualify as low-income families;

(D) is not refused for leasing to a holder of a voucher or certificate of eligibility under section 1437f of this title because of the status of the prospective tenant as a holder of such voucher or certificate of eligibility;

(E) will remain affordable, according to binding commitments satisfactory to the Secretary, for the remaining useful life of the property, as determined by the Secretary, without regard to the term of the mortgage or to transfer of ownership, or for such other period that the Secretary determines is the longest feasible period of time consistent with sound economics and the purposes of this Act, except upon a foreclosure by a lender (or upon other transfer in lieu of foreclosure) if such action (i) recognizes any contractual or legal rights of public agencies, nonprofit sponsors, or others to take actions that would avoid termination of low-income affordability in the case of foreclosure or transfer in lieu of foreclosure, and (ii) is not for the purpose of avoiding low income affordability restrictions, as determined by the Secretary; and

(F) if newly constructed, meets the energy efficiency standards promulgated by the Secretary in accordance with section 12709 of this title.

(2) Adjustment of qualifying rent

The Secretary may adjust the qualifying rent established for a project under subparagraph (A) of paragraph (1), only if the Secretary finds that such adjustment is necessary to support the continued financial viability of the project and only by such amount as the Secretary determines is necessary to maintain continued financial viability of the project.

(3) Increases in tenant income

Housing shall qualify as affordable housing despite a temporary noncompliance with subparagraph (B) or (C) of paragraph (1) if such noncompliance is caused by increases in the incomes of existing tenants and if actions satisfactory to the Secretary are being taken to ensure that all vacancies are filled in accordance with paragraph (1) until such noncompliance is corrected. Tenants who no longer qualify as low-income families shall pay as rent the lesser of the amount payable by the tenant under State or local law or 30 percent of the family's adjusted monthly income, as recertified annually. The preceding sentence shall not apply with respect to funds made available under this Act for units that have been allocated a low-income housing tax credit by a housing credit agency pursuant to section 42 of title 26.

(4) Mixed-income project

Housing that accounts for less than 100 percent of the dwelling units in a project shall qualify as affordable housing if such housing meets the criteria of this section.

(5) Mixed-use project

Housing in a project that is designed in part for uses other than residential use shall qualify as affordable housing if such housing meets the criteria of this section.

(6) Waiver of qualifying rent

(A) In general

For the purpose of providing affordable housing appropriate for families described in subparagraph (B), the Secretary may, upon the application of the project owner, waive the applicability of subparagraph (A) of paragraph (1) with respect to a dwelling unit if—

(i) the unit is occupied by such a family, on whose behalf tenant-based assistance is provided under section 1437f of this title;

(ii) the rent for the unit is not greater than the existing fair market rent for comparable units in the area, as established by the Secretary under section 1437f of this title; and

(iii) the Secretary determines that the waiver, together with waivers under this paragraph for other dwelling units in the project, will result in the use of amounts described in clause (iii) [1] in an effective manner that will improve the provision of affordable housing for such

families.

(B) Eligible families

A family described in this subparagraph is a family that consists of at least one elderly person (who is the head of household) and one or more of such person's grand [2] children, great grandchildren, great nieces, great nephews, or great great grandchildren (as defined by the Secretary), but does not include any parent of such grandchildren, great grandchildren, great nieces, great nephews, or great great grandchildren. Such term includes any such grandchildren, great grandchildren, great nieces, great nephews, or great great grandchildren who have been legally adopted by such elderly person.

(b) Homeownership

Housing that is for homeownership shall qualify as affordable housing under this subchapter only if the housing—

(1) has an initial purchase price that does not exceed 95 percent of the median purchase price for the area, as determined by the Secretary with such adjustments for differences in structure, including whether the housing is single-family or multifamily, and for new and old housing as the Secretary determines to be appropriate;

(2) is the principal residence of an owner whose family qualifies as a low-income family—

(A) in the case of a contract to purchase existing housing, at the time of purchase;

(B) in the case of a lease-purchase agreement for existing housing or for housing to be constructed, at the time the agreement is signed; or

(C) in the case of a contract to purchase housing to be constructed, at the time the contract is signed;

(3) is subject to resale restrictions that are established by the participating jurisdiction and determined by the Secretary to be appropriate to—

(A) allow for subsequent purchase of the property only by persons who meet the qualifications specified under paragraph (2), at a price which will—

(i) provide the owner with a fair return on investment, including any improvements, and

(ii) ensure that the housing will remain affordable to a reasonable range of low-income homebuyers; or

(B) recapture the investment provided under this subchapter in order to assist other persons in accordance with the requirements of this subchapter, except where there are no net proceeds or where the net proceeds are insufficient to repay the full amount of the assistance; and

(4) if newly constructed, meets the energy efficiency standards promulgated by the Secretary in accordance with section 12709 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §215, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4101; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §§208, 209, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3754; Pub. L. 103–233, title II, §203, Apr. 11, 1994, 108 Stat. 364; Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §599B(b), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2660; Pub. L. 106–569, title IX, §904, Dec. 27, 2000, 114 Stat. 3027.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(E), (3), is Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4079, known as the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12701 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 106–569 added par. (6).

1998—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 105–276 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "is the principal residence of an owner whose family qualifies as a low-income family at the time of purchase;".

1994—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 103–233, §203(a), redesignated par. (4) as (3) and struck out former par. (3)

which read as follows: "is made available for initial purchase only to first-time homebuyers;".

Subsec. (b)(3)(B). Pub. L. 103–233, §203(b), substituted "subchapter" for "subsection" after "requirements of this".

Subsec. (b)(4), (5). Pub. L. 103–233, §203(a)(2), redesignated pars. (4) and (5) as (3) and (4), respectively.

1992—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 102–550, §208(a)(1), substituted "number of bedrooms in the unit" for "smaller and larger families".

Subsec. (a)(1)(E). Pub. L. 102–550, §208(b), inserted before semicolon ", except upon a foreclosure by a lender (or upon other transfer in lieu of foreclosure) if such action (i) recognizes any contractual or legal rights of public agencies, nonprofit sponsors, or others to take actions that would avoid termination of low-income affordability in the case of foreclosure or transfer in lieu of foreclosure, and (ii) is not for the purpose of avoiding low income affordability restrictions, as determined by the Secretary".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 102–550, §208(a)(2), (3), substituted "the lesser of the amount payable by the tenant under State or local law or" for "not less than" in second sentence and inserted at end "The preceding sentence shall not apply with respect to funds made available under this Act for units that have been allocated a low-income housing tax credit by a housing credit agency pursuant to section 42 of title 26."

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 102–550, §209, added par. (4) and struck out former par. (4) which read as follows: "is made available for subsequent purchase only—

"(A) to persons who meet the qualifications specified under paragraph (2), and

"(B) at a price consistent with guidelines that are established by the participating jurisdiction and determined by the Secretary to be appropriate—

"(i) to provide the owner with a fair return on investment, including any improvements, and

"(ii) to ensure that the housing will remain affordable to a reasonable range of low income homebuyers; and".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 105–276 made on, and applicable beginning upon, Oct. 21, 1998, see section 599B(c) of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as a note under section 12744 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–233 applicable with respect to any amounts made available to carry out this subchapter after Apr. 11, 1994, and any amounts made available to carry out this subchapter before that date that remain uncommitted on that date, with Secretary to issue any regulations necessary to carry out such amendment not later than end of 45-day period beginning on that date, see section 209 of Pub. L. 103–233, set out as a note under section 5301 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102–550 applicable to unexpended funds allocated under subchapter II of this chapter in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided, see section 223 of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12704 of this title.

HOME INVESTMENT PARTNERSHIPS PROGRAM

Pub. L. 114–113, div. L, title II, Dec. 18, 2015, 129 Stat. 2878, provided in part: "That with respect to funds made available under this heading [HOME INVESTMENT PARTNERSHIPS PROGRAM, see 129 Stat. 2878] pursuant to such Act [probably means title II of Pub. L. 101–625] and funds provided in prior and subsequent appropriations acts that were or are used by community land trusts for the development of affordable homeownership housing pursuant to section 215(b) of such Act [42 U.S.C. 12745(b)], such community land trusts, notwithstanding section 215(b)(3)(A) of such Act [42 U.S.C. 12745(b)(3)(A)], may hold and exercise purchase options, rights of first refusal or other preemptive rights to purchase the housing to preserve affordability, including but not limited to the right to purchase the housing in lieu of foreclosure".

[1] *So in original.*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be "grandchildren".*

§12746. Participation by States and local governments

The Secretary shall designate a State or unit of general local government to be a participating

jurisdiction when it complies with procedures that the Secretary shall establish by regulation, which procedures shall only provide for the following:

(1) Allocation

Not later than 20 days after funds to carry out this part become available (or, during the first year after November 28, 1990, not later than 20 days after (A) funds to carry out this part are provided in an appropriations Act, or (B) regulations to implement this part are promulgated, whichever is later), the Secretary shall allocate funds in accordance with section 12747 of this title and promptly notify each jurisdiction receiving a formula allocation of its allocation amount. If a jurisdiction is not already a participating jurisdiction, the Secretary shall inform the jurisdiction in writing how the jurisdiction may become a participating jurisdiction.

(2) Consortia

A consortium of geographically contiguous units of general local government shall be deemed to be a unit of general local government for purposes of this subchapter if the Secretary determines that the consortium—

(A) has sufficient authority and administrative capability to carry out the purposes of this subchapter on behalf of its member jurisdictions, and

(B) will, according to a written certification by the State (or States, if the consortium includes jurisdictions in more than one State), direct its activities to alleviation of housing problems within the State or States.

(3) Eligibility

(A) Except as provided in paragraph (10), a jurisdiction receiving a formula allocation under section 12747 of this title shall be eligible to become a participating jurisdiction if its formula allocation is $750,000 or greater, or if the Secretary finds that—

(i) the jurisdiction has a local housing authority and has demonstrated a capacity to carry out provisions of this part, and

(ii) the State has authorized the Secretary to transfer to the jurisdiction a portion of the State's allocation that is equal to or greater than the difference between the jurisdiction's formula allocation and $750,000, or the State or jurisdiction has made available from the State's or jurisdiction's own sources an equal amount for use by the jurisdiction in conformance with the provisions of this part.

(B) If a jurisdiction has met the requirements of subparagraph (A), the jurisdiction's formula allocation for a fiscal year shall subsequently be deemed to equal the sum of the jurisdiction's allocation under section 12747(a)(1) of this title and the amount made available to the jurisdiction under subparagraph (A)(ii).

(4) Notification

If an eligible jurisdiction notifies the Secretary in writing, not later than 30 days after receiving notification under paragraph (1), of its intention to become a participating jurisdiction, the Secretary shall reserve an amount equal to the jurisdiction's allocation (plus any reallocations for which the jurisdiction is eligible under section 12747(d)(1) of this title) pending the jurisdiction's designation as a participating jurisdiction. The Secretary shall reallocate, in accordance with paragraph (6) of this section, any funds reserved under the previous sentence if the Secretary determines that the jurisdiction will not meet the requirements for designation as a participating jurisdiction within a reasonable period of time.

(5) Submission of strategy

Not later than 90 days after providing notification under paragraph (4), an eligible jurisdiction shall submit to the Secretary a comprehensive housing affordability strategy in accordance with section 12705 of this title.

(6) Reallocation

If the Secretary determines that a jurisdiction has failed to meet the requirements of the previous

3 paragraphs or if the Secretary, after providing for amendments and resubmissions in accordance with section 12705(c)(3) of this title, disapproves the jurisdiction's comprehensive housing affordability strategy, the Secretary shall reallocate any funds reserved for the jurisdiction as follows:

(A) State

If a State has failed to meet the requirements, the Secretary shall—

(i) make any funds reserved for the State available by direct reallocation among applications submitted by units of general local government within the State or consortia that include units of general local government within the State, insofar as approvable applications meeting the selection criteria under section 12747(c) of this title are received within 12 months after the funds become available for the direct reallocation, and

(ii) reallocate the remainder by formula in accordance with section 12747(b) of this title.

(B) Local

If a unit of general local government has failed to meet the requirements and is located in a State that is a participating jurisdiction, the Secretary shall reallocate to the State any funds reserved for the locality, with preference going to the provision of affordable housing within the locality.

(C) Direct reallocation

If a unit of general local government has failed to meet the requirements and is located in a State that is not a participating jurisdiction, the Secretary shall—

(i) make any funds reserved for the locality available for use within the State by direct reallocation among units of general local government and community housing development organizations, insofar as approvable applications meeting the selection criteria under section 12747(c) of this title are received within 12 months after the funds become available for the direct reallocation with priority going to applications for affordable housing within the locality, and

(ii) reallocate the remainder in accordance with section 12747(b) of this title.

(D) Certain jurisdictions deemed to be participating jurisdictions

If a State or unit of general local government is meeting the requirements of paragraphs (3), (4), and (5), it shall be deemed to be a participating jurisdiction for purposes of reallocation under this paragraph.

(7) Designation

The Secretary shall designate an eligible jurisdiction to be a participating jurisdiction as soon as its comprehensive housing affordability strategy is approved in accordance with section 12705 of this title.

(8) Continuous designation

Once a State or unit of general local government is designated a participating jurisdiction, it shall remain a participating jurisdiction for subsequent fiscal years, except as provided in paragraph (9). The provisions of paragraphs (3) through (6) shall not apply to participating jurisdictions.

(9) Revocation

The Secretary may revoke a jurisdiction's designation as a participating jurisdiction if—

(A) the Secretary finds, after reasonable notice and opportunity for hearing, that the jurisdiction is unwilling or unable to carry out the provisions of this subchapter, or

(B) the jurisdiction's allocation falls below $750,000 for 3 consecutive years, below $625,000 for 2 consecutive years, or the jurisdiction does not receive a formula allocation of $500,000 or more in any 1 year, except as provided in paragraph (10).

If a jurisdiction's designation as a participating jurisdiction is revoked, any remaining line of credit

in the jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund established under section 12748 of this title shall be reallocated in accordance with paragraph (6) of this section.

(10) Threshold reduction

If the amount appropriated pursuant to section 12724 of this title for any fiscal year is less than $1,500,000,000, then this section shall be applied during that year—

(A) by substituting "$500,000" for "$750,000" both places it appears in paragraph (3); and

(B) by substituting "$500,000", "$410,000", and "$335,000" for "$750,000", "$625,000", and "$500,000", respectively, where they appear in paragraph (9).

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §216, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4103; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §202(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3751.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Par. (3)(A). Pub. L. 102–550, §202(a)(1), substituted "Except as provided in paragraph (10), a jurisdiction" for "A jurisdiction".

Par. (9)(B). Pub. L. 102–550, §202(a)(2), inserted ", except as provided in paragraph (10)" after "in any 1 year".

Par. (10). Pub. L. 102–550, §202(a)(3), added par. (10).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102–550 applicable to unexpended funds allocated under subchapter II of this chapter in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided, see section 223 of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12704 of this title.

APPLICABILITY OF GRANT THRESHOLDS

Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §202(c), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3752, provided that: "Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the grant thresholds provided for in section 216 [42 U.S.C. 12746], as amended by this section, and the grant thresholds provided for in section 217(b) of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 12747(b)], as amended by this section, shall apply."

§12747. Allocation of resources

(a) In general

(1) States and units of general local government

After reserving amounts under paragraph (3) for the insular areas, the Secretary shall allocate funds approved in an appropriation Act to carry out this subchapter by formula as provided in subsection (b). Of the funds made available under the preceding sentence, the Secretary shall initially allocate 60 percent among units of general local government and 40 percent among States.

(2) Repealed. Pub. L. 104–330, title V, §505(a)(1)(B), Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4044

(3) [1] Insular areas

For each fiscal year, of any amounts approved in appropriation Acts to carry out this subchapter, the Secretary shall reserve for grants to the insular areas the greater of (A) $750,000, or (B) 0.2 percent of the amounts appropriated under such Acts. The Secretary shall provide for the distribution of amounts reserved under this paragraph among the insular areas pursuant to specific criteria for such distribution, which shall be contained in a regulation issued by the Secretary.

(b) Formula allocation

(1) In general

(A) Basic formula

The Secretary shall establish in [2] regulation an allocation formula that reflects each jurisdiction's share of total need among eligible jurisdiction [3] for an increased supply of

affordable housing for very low-income and low-income families of different size, as identified by objective measures of inadequate housing supply, substandard housing, the number of low-income families in housing likely to be in need of rehabilitation, the costs of producing housing, poverty, and the relative fiscal incapacity of the jurisdiction to carry out housing activities eligible under section 12742 of this title without Federal assistance. Allocation among units of general local government shall take into account the housing needs of metropolitan cities, urban counties, and approved consortia of units of general local government.

(B) Source of data

The data to be used for formula allocation of funds within a fiscal year shall be data obtained from a standard source that are available to the Secretary 90 days prior to the beginning of that fiscal year.

(C) Use of basic formula

The basic formula established under subparagraph (A) shall be used for all formula allocations and reallocations provided for in this part.

(D) Weights

When allocation is made among States, the Secretary shall apply the formula in subparagraph (A) giving 20 percent weight to measures of need for the whole State and 80 percent weight to measures of need among units of general local government that are not receiving an allocation under section 12746(1) of this title.

(E) Adjustments

In developing the basic formula in subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall (i) avoid the allocation of an excessively large share of amounts made available under this part to any one State or unit of general local government, and (ii) take into account the need for a geographic distribution of amounts made available under this part that appropriately reflects the housing need in each region of the Nation.

(F) Consultation

The Secretary shall develop the formula in subparagraph (A) in ongoing consultation with (i) the Subcommittee on Housing and Urban Affairs of the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate, (ii) the Subcommittee on Housing and Community Development of the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives, and (iii) organizations representing States and units of general local government. Not less than 60 days prior to publishing a formula for comment, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives a copy of the formula the Secretary intends to propose.

(2) Minimum State allocation

(A) In general

If the formula, when applied to funds approved under this section in appropriations Acts for a fiscal year, would allocate less than $3,000,000 to any State, the allocation for such State shall be $3,000,000, and the increase shall be deducted pro rata from the allocations of other States.

(B) Increased minimum allocation

If no unit of general local government within a State receives an allocation under paragraph (3), the State's allocation shall be increased by $500,000. Priority for use of such increased allocation shall go to the provision of affordable housing within the boundaries of metropolitan cities, urban counties, and approved consortia within the State, based on the need for such funds. The increased allocation to a State under the preceding sentence shall be derived by a pro rata deduction from the allocations to units of general local government in all States, except that such pro rata deduction shall not reduce the allocation of any unit of general local government below $500,000.

(3) Minimum local allocation

The Secretary shall allocate funds available for formula allocation to units of general local government that, as of the end of the previous fiscal year, qualified as metropolitan cities, urban counties, and consortia approved by the Secretary in accordance with section 12746(2) of this title so that, when all such funds are initially allocated by formula, jurisdictions that are allocated an amount of $500,000 or more, and participating jurisdictions (other than consortia that fail to renew the membership of all of their member jurisdictions) that are allocated an amount less than $500,000, shall receive an allocation. Prior to announcing initial allocations, the Secretary shall successively recalculate the allocations to jurisdictions under this subsection so that the maximum number of such jurisdictions can receive initial allocations, except as provided in paragraph (4).

(4) Threshold reduction

If the amount appropriated pursuant to section 12724 of this title for any fiscal year is less than $1,500,000,000, then this section shall be applied during that year by substituting "$335,000" for "$500,000" where it appears in paragraph (3).

(c) Criteria for direct reallocation

The Secretary shall establish objective criteria for making direct reallocations to any participating jurisdiction and other eligible entities. A jurisdiction shall be eligible for a direct reallocation under this subsection only if the jurisdiction, in a form acceptable to the Secretary, submits an application that demonstrates to the satisfaction of the Secretary that the jurisdiction is engaged, or has made good faith efforts to engage, in cooperative efforts between the State and appropriate participating jurisdictions within the State to develop, coordinate, and implement housing strategies under this subchapter. The Secretary shall by regulation establish objective selection criteria for such direct reallocations, which criteria shall take into account—

(1) the applicant's demonstrated commitment to expand the supply of affordable rental housing, including units developed by public housing agencies, as indicated by the additional number of units of affordable housing made available through production or rehabilitation within the previous 2 years, making adjustment for regional variations in construction and rehabilitation costs and giving special consideration to the number of additional units made available under this subchapter through production or rehabilitation, including units developed by public housing agencies, in relation to the amounts made available under this program;

(2) the applicant's actions that—

(A) direct funds made available under this part to benefit very low-income families, with a range of incomes, in amounts that exceed the income targeting requirements of section 12744 of this title, with extra consideration given for activities that expand the supply of affordable housing for very low-income families whose incomes do not exceed 30 percent of the median family income for the area, as determined by the Secretary;

(B) apply the tenant selection preference categories applicable under section 1437f of this title to the selection of tenants for housing assisted under this part;

(C) provide matching resources in excess of funds required under section 12750 of this title; and

(D) stimulate a high degree of investment and participation in development by the private sector, including nonprofit organizations; and

(3) the degree to which the applicant is pursuing policies that—

(A) make existing housing more affordable;

(B) remove or ameliorate any negative effects that public policies identified by the applicant pursuant to section 12705(b)(4) of this title may have on the cost of housing or the incentives to develop, maintain, or improve affordable housing in the jurisdiction;

(C) preserve the affordability of privately-owned housing that is vulnerable to conversion, demolition, disinvestment, or abandonment;

(D) increase the supply of housing that is affordable to very low-income and low-income persons, particularly in areas that are accessible to expanding job opportunities; and

(E) remedy the effects of discrimination and improve housing opportunities for disadvantaged minorities.

(d) Reallocations

(1) In general

The Secretary shall make any reallocations periodically throughout each fiscal year so as to ensure that all funds to be reallocated are made available to eligible jurisdictions as soon as possible, consistent with orderly program administration. Jurisdictions eligible for such reallocations shall include participating jurisdictions and jurisdictions meeting the requirements of paragraphs (3), (4), and (5) of section 12746 of this title.

(2) Commitments

The Secretary shall establish procedures according to which participating jurisdictions may make commitments to invest funds made available under this section. Such procedures shall provide for appropriate stages of commitment of funds to a project from initial reservation through binding commitment. Notwithstanding any other provision of this subchapter, funds that the Secretary determines are needed to fulfill binding commitments shall not be available for reallocation.

(3) Limitation

Unless otherwise specified in this part, any reallocation of funds from a State shall be made only among all participating States, and any reallocation of funds from units of general local government shall be made only among all participating units of general local government.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §217, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4105; Pub. L. 102–229, title I, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1709; Pub. L. 102–230, §1, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1720; Pub. L. 102–273, §1, Apr. 21, 1992, 106 Stat. 113; Pub. L. 102–389, title II, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1581; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §§202(b), 203(b), 211(a)(2), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3751, 3752, 3756; Pub. L. 104–330, title V, §505(a)(1), Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4044; Pub. L. 105–65, title II, §214, Oct. 27, 1997, 111 Stat. 1366.)

AMENDMENTS

1997—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 105–65, in first sentence, substituted "jurisdictions that are allocated an amount of $500,000 or more, and participating jurisdictions (other than consortia that fail to renew the membership of all of their member jurisdictions) that are allocated an amount less than $500,000, shall receive an allocation" for "only those jurisdictions that are allocated an amount of $500,000 or greater shall receive an allocation".

1996—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 104–330, §505(a)(1)(A), struck out "reserving amounts under paragraph (2) for Indian tribes and after" after "After".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 104–330, §505(a)(1)(B), struck out heading and text of par. (2). Text read as follows: "For each fiscal year, of the amount approved in an appropriations Act to carry out this subchapter, the Secretary shall reserve for grants to Indian tribes 1 percent of the amount appropriated under such section. The Secretary shall provide for distribution of amounts under this paragraph to Indian tribes on the basis of a competition conducted pursuant to specific criteria for the selection of Indian tribes to receive such amounts. The criteria shall be contained in a regulation promulgated by the Secretary after notice and public comment."

1992—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102–550, §211(a)(2)(A), added first sentence and struck out former first sentence which read as follows: "After reserving amounts for Indian tribes as required by paragraph (2) of this subsection and after reserving amounts for the insular areas under paragraph (3), the Secretary shall allocate funds approved in an appropriations Act to carry out this subchapter by formula as provided in subsection (b) of this section."

Pub. L. 102–389 made identical amendment to those made by Pub. L. 102–229 and Pub. L. 102–230, §1(1). See 1991 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 102–550, §211(a)(2)(D), and Pub. L. 102–389 both added new pars. (3) related to insular areas. The text reflects the par. (3) added by Pub. L. 102–550. The par. (3) added by Pub. L. 102–389 read as follows: "For each fiscal year, of any amounts approved in appropriations Acts to carry out this subchapter, the Secretary shall reserve for grants to the insular areas the greater of (A) $750,000, or (B) 0.2 percent of the amounts appropriated under such Acts. The Secretary shall provide for the distribution of

amounts reserved under this paragraph among the insular areas pursuant to specific criteria for such distribution. The criteria shall be contained in a regulation promulgated by the Secretary after notice and public comment."

Pub. L. 102–550, §211(a)(2)(C), struck out par. (3), as added by Pub. L. 102–230, §1(2), which read as follows:

"(A) IN GENERAL.—For each fiscal year, of any amount approved in an appropriations Act to carry out this subchapter, the Secretary shall reserve for grants to the insular areas an amount that reflects—

"(i) their share of the total population of eligible jurisdictions; and

"(ii) any adjustments that the Secretary determines are reasonable in light of available data that are related to factors set forth in subsection (b)(1)(B) of this section.

"(B) SPECIFIC CRITERIA.—The Secretary shall provide for the distribution of amounts reserved under this paragraph among the insular areas in accordance with specific criteria to be set forth in a regulation promulgated by the Secretary after notice and public comment.

"(C) TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS.—For fiscal year 1992, the reservation for insular areas specified in subparagraph (A) shall be made from any funds which become available for reallocation in accordance with the provisions of section 12746(6)(A) of this title."

Pub. L. 102–550, §211(a)(2)(B), struck out par. (3), as added by Pub. L. 102–229, which read as follows: "For each fiscal year, of any amounts approved in appropriations Acts to carry out this subchapter, the Secretary shall reserve for grants to the insular areas the greater of (A) $750,000, or (B) 0.5 percent of the amounts appropriated under such Acts. The Secretary shall provide for the distribution of amounts reserved under this paragraph among the insular areas pursuant to specific criteria for such distribution. The criteria shall be contained in a regulation promulgated by the Secretary after notice and public comment."

Subsec. (b)(1)(A). Pub. L. 102–550, §203(b)(1), (6), redesignated subpar. (B) as (A) and struck out former subpar. (A) which provided for a formula for allocation of funds for production of affordable rental housing through new construction or substantial rehabilitation.

Pub. L. 102–273 added cl. (iii) reading as follows: "Notwithstanding clauses (i) and (ii), any jurisdiction receiving amounts made available under such clause may, at the discretion of the jurisdiction, use such amounts for other eligible uses in accordance with section 12742 of this title if the jurisdiction determines that such use will better meet the housing needs within the jurisdiction. This clause shall be effective only with respect to funds provided under the Departments of Veterans Affairs and Housing and Urban Development, and Independent Agencies Appropriations Act, 1992 (Public Law 102–139; 105 Stat. 744), which suspends the requirement of contributions by participating jurisdictions, and shall become ineffective if such requirement is reimposed."

Subsec. (b)(1)(B), (C). Pub. L. 102–550, §203(b)(6), redesignated subpars. (C) and (D) as (B) and (C), respectively. Former subpar. (B) redesignated (A).

Subsec. (b)(1)(D). Pub. L. 102–550, §203(b)(6), redesignated subpar. (E) as (D). Former subpar. (D) redesignated (C).

Pub. L. 102–550, §203(b)(2), substituted "The basic formula established under subparagraph (A)" for "Except as provided in subparagraph (A), the basic formula established under subparagraph (B)".

Subsec. (b)(1)(E). Pub. L. 102–550, §203(b)(6), redesignated subpar. (F) as (E). Former subpar. (E) redesignated (D).

Pub. L. 102–550, §203(b)(3), substituted "formula in subparagraph (A)" for "formulas in subparagraph (B)".

Subsec. (b)(1)(F). Pub. L. 102–550, §203(b)(6), redesignated subpar. (G) as (F). Former subpar. (F) redesignated (E).

Pub. L. 102–550, §203(b)(4), substituted "basic formula in subparagraph (A)" for "basic formula in subparagraph (B)" and struck out at end "If a jurisdiction receives an allocation under subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall make such adjustments in the jurisdiction's allocation under the formula in subparagraph (B) as may be necessary to ensure that the combined effect of the formulas in subparagraphs (A) and (B) does not reduce the allocation of any jurisdiction below the allocation it would receive if allocations were made according to the formula under subparagraph (B) alone."

Subsec. (b)(1)(G). Pub. L. 102–550, §203(b)(6), redesignated subpar. (G) as (F).

Pub. L. 102–550, §203(b)(5), substituted "formula in subparagraph (A)" for "formulas in subparagraphs (A) and (B)".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 102–550, §202(b)(1), inserted before period at end ", except as provided in paragraph (4)".

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 102–550, §202(b)(2), added par. (4).

1991—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102–229 and Pub. L. 102–230, §1(1), amended par. (1) identically, inserting

before first comma "and after reserving amounts for the insular areas under paragraph (3)".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 102–229 and Pub. L. 102–230, §1(2), which were enacted on the same day, both added new pars. (3) relating to insular areas.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104–14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress. Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives abolished and replaced by Committee on Financial Services of House of Representatives, and jurisdiction over matters relating to securities and exchanges and insurance generally transferred from Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 5, One Hundred Seventh Congress, Jan. 3, 2001.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–330 effective Oct. 1, 1997, except as otherwise expressly provided, see section 107 of Pub. L. 104–330, set out as an Effective Date note under section 4101 of Title 25, Indians.

Pub. L. 104–330, title V, §505(b), Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4044, provided that: "The amendments under subsection (a) [amending this section and section 12838 of this title] shall apply with respect to amounts made available for assistance under title II of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 12721 et seq.] for fiscal year 1998 and fiscal years thereafter."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 211(a)(2) of Pub. L. 102–550 applicable with respect to fiscal year 1993 and thereafter, see section 211(b) of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12704 of this title.

Amendment by sections 202(b) and 203(b) of Pub. L. 102–550 applicable to unexpended funds allocated under subchapter II of this chapter in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided, see section 223 of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12704 of this title.

APPLICABILITY OF GRANT THRESHOLDS

Grant thresholds provided for in subsec. (b) of this section as amended by Pub. L. 102–550 to apply notwithstanding any other provision of law, see section 202(c) of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12746 of this title.

EXPEDITED ISSUANCE OF REGULATION

Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §211(a)(3), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3757, provided that: "The regulation referred to in the amendment made by paragraph (2)(D) [amending this section] shall take effect not later than the expiration of the 90-day period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1992]. The regulation shall not be subject to the requirements of subsections (b) and (c) of section 553 of title 5, United States Code, or section 7(o) of the Department of Housing and Urban Development Act [42 U.S.C. 3535(o)]."

[1] See 1992 Amendment note below.

[2] So in original. Probably should be "by".

[3] So in original. Probably should be "jurisdictions".

§12748. HOME Investment Trust Funds

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish for each participating jurisdiction a HOME Investment Trust Fund, which shall be an account (or accounts as provided in section 12749(c) of this title) for use solely to invest in affordable housing within the participating jurisdiction's boundaries or within the boundaries of contiguous jurisdictions in joint projects which serve residents from both jurisdictions in accordance with the provisions of this part.

(b) Line of credit

The Secretary shall establish a line of credit in the HOME Investment Trust Fund of each participating jurisdiction, which line of credit shall include—

(1) funds allocated or reallocated to the participating jurisdiction under section 12747 of this title, and

(2) any payment or repayment made pursuant to section 12749 of this title.

(c) Reductions

A participating jurisdiction's line of credit shall be reduced by—

(1) funds drawn from the HOME Investment Trust Fund by the participating jurisdiction,

(2) funds expiring under subsection (g), and

(3) any penalties assessed by the Secretary under section 12754 [1] of this title.

(d) Certification

A participating jurisdiction may draw funds from its HOME Investment Trust Fund, but not to exceed the remaining line of credit, only after providing certification that the funds shall be used pursuant to the participating jurisdiction's approved housing strategy and in compliance with all requirements of this subchapter. When such certification is received, the Secretary shall immediately disburse such funds in accordance with the form of the assistance determined by the participating jurisdiction.

(e) Investment within 15 days

The participating jurisdiction shall, not later than 15 days after funds are drawn from the jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund, invest such funds, together with any interest earned thereon, in the affordable housing for which the funds were withdrawn.

(f) No interest or fees

The Secretary shall not charge any interest or levy any other fee with regard to funds in a HOME Investment Trust Fund.

(g) Expiration of right to draw funds

If any funds becoming available to a participating jurisdiction under this subchapter are not placed under binding commitment to affordable housing within 24 months after the last day of the month in which such funds are deposited in the jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund, the jurisdiction's right to draw such funds from the HOME Investment Trust Fund shall expire. The Secretary shall reduce the line of credit in the participating jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund by the expiring amount and shall reallocate the funds by formula in accordance with section 12747(d) of this title.

(h) Administrative provision

The Secretary shall keep each participating jurisdiction informed of the status of its HOME Investment Trust Fund, including the status of amounts under various stages of commitment.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §218, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4109; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §§203(c), 221, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3752, 3762.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102–550, §221, inserted "or within the boundaries of contiguous jurisdictions in joint projects which serve residents from both jurisdictions" after "boundaries".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 102–550, §203(c), substituted "If" for "Except as provided in section 12747(b)(1)(A)(ii) of this title, if".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102–550 applicable to unexpended funds allocated under subchapter II of this chapter in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided, see section 223 of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12704 of this title.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be section "12753".*

§12749. Repayment of investment

(a) In general

Any repayment of funds drawn from a jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund, and any payment of interest or other return on the investment of such funds, shall be deposited in such jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund, except that, if the jurisdiction is not a participating jurisdiction when such payment or repayment is made, the amount of such payment or repayment shall be reallocated in accordance with section 12747(d) of this title.

(b) Assurance of repayment

Each participating jurisdiction shall enter into an agreement with the Secretary ensuring that funds invested in affordable housing under this part are repayable when the housing no longer qualifies as affordable housing. Any repayment under the previous sentence shall be for deposit in the HOME Investment Trust Fund of the jurisdiction making the investment; except that if such jurisdiction is not a participating jurisdiction when such repayment is made, the amount of such repayment shall be reallocated in accordance with section 12747(d) of this title.

(c) Availability

The Secretary shall take such actions as are necessary to ensure that any repayments deposited in a HOME Investment Trust Fund in accordance with this section shall be immediately available to the participating jurisdiction for investment subject to the provisions of this part that apply to funds that are allocated under section 12747 of this title. Actions authorized under the preceding sentence may include authorizing the establishment for a participating jurisdiction of a HOME Investment Trust Fund account outside of the Federal Government that, under arrangements satisfactory to the Secretary, shall be used solely to invest in affordable housing within the participating jurisdiction's boundaries in accordance with the provisions of this subchapter. Such accounts shall be established in such a manner that repayments are not receipts or collections of the Federal Government.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §219, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4110.)

§12750. Matching requirements

(a) Contribution

Each participating jurisdiction shall make contributions to housing that qualifies as affordable housing under this subchapter that total, throughout a fiscal year, not less than 25 percent of the funds drawn from the jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund in such fiscal year. Such contributions shall be in addition to any amounts made available under section 12746(3)(A)(ii) of this title.

(b) Recognition

(1) In general

A contribution shall be recognized for purposes of subsection (a) only if it—

(A) is made with respect to housing that qualifies as affordable housing under section 12745 of this title; or

(B) is made with respect to any portion of a project not less than 50 percent of the units of which qualify as affordable housing under section 12745 of this title.

(2) Administrative expenses

Contributions for administrative expenses may not be recognized for purposes of subsection (a).

(c) Form

Such contributions may be in the form of—

(1) cash contributions from non-Federal resources, which may not include funds from a grant

made under section 5306(b) or section 5306(d) of this title;

(2) the value of taxes, fees, or other charges that are normally and customarily imposed but are waived, foregone, or deferred in a manner that achieves affordability of housing assisted under this subchapter;

(3) the value of land or other real property as appraised according to procedures acceptable to the Secretary;

(4) the value of investment in on-site and off-site infrastructure directly required for affordable housing assisted under this subchapter;

(5) Redesignated (4)

(6) up to—

(A) 50 percent of proceeds from bond financing validly issued by a State or local government, agency or instrumentality thereof, or political subdivision thereof, and repayable with revenues derived from a multifamily affordable housing project financed, and

(B) 25 percent of proceeds from bond financing validly issued by a State or local government, agency or instrumentality thereof, or political subdivision thereof, and repayable with revenues derived from a single-family project financed,

but not more than 25 percent of the contribution required under subsection (a) may be derived from these sources;

(7) the reasonable value of any site-preparation and construction materials and any donated or voluntary labor in connection with the site-preparation for, or construction or rehabilitation of, affordable housing; and

(8) such other contributions to affordable housing as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(d) Reduction of requirement

(1) In general

The Secretary shall reduce the matching requirement under subsection (a) with respect to any funds drawn from a jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund Account during a fiscal year by—

(A) 50 percent for a jurisdiction that certifies that it is in fiscal distress; and

(B) 100 percent for a jurisdiction that certifies that it is in severe fiscal distress.

(2) Definitions

For purposes of this section—

(A) "fiscal distress" means a jurisdiction other than a State that satisfies 1 of the distress criteria set forth in paragraph (3); and

(B) "severe fiscal distress" means a jurisdiction other than a State that satisfies both of the distress criteria set forth in paragraph (3).

(3) Distress criteria

For purposes of a jurisdiction other than a State certifying that it is distressed, the following criteria shall apply:

(A) Poverty rate

The average poverty rate in the jurisdiction for the calendar year immediately preceding the year in which its fiscal year begins was equal to or greater than 125 percent of the average national poverty rate during such calendar year (as determined according to information of the Bureau of the Census).

(B) Per capita income

The average per capita income in the jurisdiction for the calendar year immediately preceding the year in which its fiscal year begins was less than 75 percent of the average national per capita income during such calendar year (as determined according to information of the Bureau of the Census).

(4) States

In determining the degree to which a jurisdiction that is a State is distressed, the Secretary shall take into consideration the State's fiscal capacity and expenditure needs as determined by a national organization which compiles the relevant data.

(5) Waiver in disaster areas

If a participating jurisdiction is located in an area in which a declaration of a disaster pursuant to the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act [42 U.S.C. 5121 et seq.] is in effect for any part of a fiscal year, the Secretary may reduce the matching requirement for that fiscal year under subsection (a) with respect to any funds drawn from a jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund Account during that fiscal year by up to 100 percent.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §220, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4111; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §§207(c), 210(a)–(c), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3753, 3755; Pub. L. 103–233, title II, §204, Apr. 11, 1994, 108 Stat. 364.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(5), is Pub. L. 93–288, May 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 143, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 68 (§5121 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5121 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–233 amended heading and text of subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Each participating jurisdiction shall make contributions to housing that qualifies as affordable housing under this subchapter that total, throughout a fiscal year, not less than—

"(1) 25 percent of the total funds drawn from the jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund in that fiscal year with respect to rental assistance, housing rehabilitation and substantial rehabilitation; and

"(2) 30 percent of the total funds drawn from the jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund in that fiscal year with respect to new construction.

Such contributions shall be in addition to any amounts made available under section 12746(3)(A)(ii) of this title."

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102–550, §210(a)(4), substituted "housing that qualifies as affordable housing under this subchapter" for "affordable housing assisted under this subchapter" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102–550, §210(a)(1), substituted ", housing rehabilitation and substantial rehabilitation; and" for "and housing rehabilitation;".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 102–550, §210(a)(2), substituted "30" for "33" and "new construction." for "substantial rehabilitation; and".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 102–550, §210(a)(3), struck out par. (3) which read as follows: "50 percent of the total funds drawn from the jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund in that fiscal year with respect to new construction."

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 102–550, §207(c)(1), substituted "may not be recognized for purposes of subsection (a)" for "shall be recognized only up to an amount equal to 7 percent of funds provided for investment under this subchapter".

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 102–550, §207(c)(2), redesignated par. (3) as (2) and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "payment of administrative expenses, as defined by the Secretary, from non-Federal resources, which may include funds from a grant made under section 5306(b) or section 5306(d) of this title;".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 102–550, §210(b)(1), which directed the striking of "and" at end of par. (4), was executed by striking "and" at end of par. (3) to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the redesignation of par. (4) as (3). See below.

Pub. L. 102–550, §207(c)(2)(B), redesignated par. (4) as (3). Former par. (3) redesignated (2).

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 102–550, §210(b)(2), which directed the substitution of a semicolon for the period at end of par. (5), was executed by making the substitution at end of par. (4) to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the redesignation of par. (5) as (4). See below.

Pub. L. 102–550, §207(c)(2)(B), redesignated par. (5) as (4). Former par. (4) redesignated (3).

Subsec. (c)(5). Pub. L. 102–550, §207(c)(2)(B), redesignated par. (5) as (4).

Subsec. (c)(6) to (8). Pub. L. 102–550, §210(b)(3), added pars. (6) to (8).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102–550, §210(c), added subsec. (d) and struck out former subsec. (d) which read as

follows: "If a jurisdiction demonstrates to the satisfaction of the Secretary that a reduction of the matching requirement specified in subsection (a) of this section is necessary to permit the jurisdiction to carry out the purposes of this subchapter, the Secretary may reduce the matching requirement during a period not to exceed 3 years after the jurisdiction is first designated as a participating jurisdiction. Such reduction shall be not more than 75 percent in the first year, not more than 50 percent in the second year, and not more than 25 percent in the third year."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–233 applicable with respect to any amounts made available to carry out this subchapter after Apr. 11, 1994, and any amounts made available to carry out this subchapter before that date that remain uncommitted on that date, with Secretary to issue any regulations necessary to carry out such amendment not later than end of 45-day period beginning on that date, see section 209 of Pub. L. 103–233, set out as a note under section 5301 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §210(d), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3756, provided that: "The amendments made by this section [amending this section] shall apply with respect to fiscal year 1993 and each fiscal year thereafter."

Amendment by section 207(c) of Pub. L. 102–550 applicable to unexpended funds allocated under subchapter II of this chapter in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided, see section 223 of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12704 of this title.

§12751. Private-public partnership

Each participating jurisdiction shall make all reasonable efforts, consistent with the purposes of this subchapter, to maximize participation by the private sector, including nonprofit organizations and for-profit entities, in the implementation of the jurisdiction's housing strategy, including participation in the financing, development, rehabilitation and management of affordable housing. Nothing in the previous sentence shall preclude public housing authorities from fully participating in the implementation of a jurisdiction's housing strategy.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §221, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4112.)

§12752. Distribution of assistance

(a) Local

Each participating jurisdiction shall, insofar as is feasible, distribute assistance under this part geographically within its boundaries and among different categories of housing need, according to the priorities of housing need identified in the jurisdiction's approved housing strategy.

(b) State

Participating States shall be responsible for distributing assistance throughout the State according to the State's assessment of the geographical distribution of the housing need within the State, as identified in the State's approved housing strategy. Participating States shall distribute assistance to rural areas in amounts that take into account the nonmetropolitan share of the State's total population and objective measures of rural housing need, such as poverty and substandard housing, as set forth in the State's housing strategy approved under section 12705 of this title. To the extent the need is within the boundaries of a participating unit of general local government, the State and the unit of general local government shall coordinate activities to address that need.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §222, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4112.)

§12753. Penalties for misuse of funds

If the Secretary finds after reasonable notice and opportunity for hearing that a participating

jurisdiction has failed to comply substantially with any provision of this part and until the Secretary is satisfied that there is no longer any such failure to comply, the Secretary shall reduce the line of credit in the participating jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund by the amount of any expenditures that were not in accordance with the requirements of this subchapter, and the Secretary may—

(1) prevent withdrawals from the participating jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund for activities affected by such failure to comply;

(2) restrict the participating jurisdiction's activities under this subchapter to activities that conform to one or more model programs made available under section 12743 of this title; or

(3) remove the participating jurisdiction from participation in allocations or reallocations of funds made available under this part.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §223, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4112.)

§12754. Limitation on jurisdictions under court order

(a) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of this Act, the Secretary shall ensure that funds provided under this part are not employed to carry out housing remedies or to pay fines, penalties, or costs associated with an action in which—

(1) a participating jurisdiction has been adjudicated, by a Federal, State, or local court, to be in violation of title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 [42 U.S.C. 2000d et seq.], the Fair Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 3601 et seq.], or any other Federal, State, or local law promoting fair housing or prohibiting discrimination, or

(2) a settlement has been entered into in any case where claims of such violations have been asserted against a participating jurisdiction, except to the extent permitted by subsection (b).

(b) Remedial use of funds permitted

In the case of settlement described in subsection (a)(2), a jurisdiction may use funds provided under this Act to carry out housing remedies with eligible activities.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §224, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4113.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4079, known as the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12701 of this title and Tables.

The Civil Rights Act of 1964, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is Pub. L. 88–352, July 2, 1964, 78 Stat. 241, as amended. Title VI of the Act is classified generally to subchapter V (§2000d et seq.) of chapter 21 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2000a of this title and Tables.

The Fair Housing Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is title VIII of Pub. L. 90–284, Apr. 11, 1968, 82 Stat. 81, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter I (§3601 et seq.) of chapter 45 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

§12755. Tenant and participant protections

(a) Lease

The lease between a tenant and an owner of affordable housing assisted under this subchapter for rental shall be for not less than one year, unless by mutual agreement between the tenant and the owner, and shall contain such terms and conditions as the Secretary shall determine to be appropriate.

(b) Termination of tenancy

An owner shall not terminate the tenancy or refuse to renew the lease of a tenant of rental housing assisted under this subchapter except for serious or repeated violation of the terms and conditions of the lease, for violation of applicable Federal, State, or local law, or for other good cause. Any termination or refusal to renew must be preceded by not less than 30 days by the owner's service upon the tenant of a written notice specifying the grounds for the action. Such 30-day waiting period is not required if the grounds for the termination or refusal to renew involve a direct threat to the safety of the tenants or employees of the housing, or an imminent and serious threat to the property (and the termination or refusal to renew is in accordance with the requirements of State or local law).

(c) Maintenance and replacement

The owner of rental housing assisted under this subchapter shall maintain the premises in compliance with all applicable housing quality standards and local code requirements.

(d) Tenant selection

The owner of rental housing assisted under this subchapter shall adopt written tenant selection policies and criteria that—

(1) are consistent with the purpose of providing housing for very low-income and low-income families,

(2) are reasonably related to program eligibility and the applicant's ability to perform the obligations of the lease,

(3) give reasonable consideration to the housing needs of families that would have a preference under section 1437d(c)(4)(A) of this title, and

(4) provide for (A) the selection of tenants from a written waiting list in the chronological order of their application, insofar as is practicable, and (B) for [2] the prompt notification in writing of any rejected applicant of the grounds for any rejection.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §225, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4113; Pub. L. 114–113, div. L, title II, §235, Dec. 18, 2015, 129 Stat. 2896.)

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 114–113 inserted at end "Such 30-day waiting period is not required if the grounds for the termination or refusal to renew involve a direct threat to the safety of the tenants or employees of the housing, or an imminent and serious threat to the property (and the termination or refusal to renew is in accordance with the requirements of State or local law)."

[2] So in original. The word "for" probably should not appear.

§12756. Monitoring of compliance

(a) Enforceable agreements

Each participating jurisdiction, through binding contractual agreements with owners and otherwise, shall ensure long-term compliance with the provisions of this subchapter. Such measures shall provide for (1) enforcement of the provisions of this subchapter by the jurisdiction or by the intended beneficiaries, and (2) remedies for the breach of such provisions.

(b) Periodic monitoring

Each participating jurisdiction, not less frequently than annually, shall review the activities of owners of affordable housing assisted under this subchapter for rental to assess compliance with the requirements of this subchapter. Such review shall include on-site inspection to determine compliance with housing codes and other applicable regulations. The results of each review shall be included in the jurisdiction's performance report submitted to the Secretary under section 12708(a) of this title and made available to the public.

(c) Special procedures for certain projects

In the case of small-scale or scattered site housing, the Secretary may provide for such streamlined

procedures for achieving the purposes of this section as the Secretary determines to be appropriate.
(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §226, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4114.)

PART B—COMMUNITY HOUSING PARTNERSHIP

§12771. Set-aside for community housing development organizations

(a) In general

For a period of 24 months after funds under part A are made available to a jurisdiction, the jurisdiction shall reserve not less than 15 percent of such funds for investment only in housing to be developed, sponsored, or owned by community housing development organizations. Each participating jurisdiction shall make reasonable efforts to identify community housing development organizations that are capable or can reasonably be expected to become capable of carrying out elements of the jurisdiction's housing strategy and to encourage such community housing development organizations to do so. If during the first 24 months of its participation under this subchapter, a participating jurisdiction is unable to identify a sufficient number of capable community housing development organizations, then up to 20 percent of the funds allocated to that jurisdiction under this section, but not to exceed $150,000, may be made available to carry out activities that develop the capacity of community housing development organizations in that jurisdiction. A participating jurisdiction is authorized to enter into contracts with community housing development organizations to carry out this section.

(b) Recapture and reuse

If any funds reserved under subsection (a) remain uninvested for a period of 24 months, then the Secretary shall deduct such funds from the line of credit in the participating jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund and make such funds available by direct reallocation (1) to other participating jurisdictions for affordable housing developed, sponsored or owned by community housing development organizations, or (2) to nonprofit intermediary organizations to carry out activities that develop the capacity of community housing development organizations consistent with section 12773 of this title, with preference to community housing development organizations serving the jurisdiction from which the funds were recaptured.

(c) Direct reallocation criteria

Insofar as practicable, direct reallocations under this section shall be made according to the selection criteria established under section 12747(c) of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §231, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4114; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §212(a), (b), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3757.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102–550 substituted "24" for "18" in first sentence and inserted after second sentence "If during the first 24 months of its participation under this subchapter, a participating jurisdiction is unable to identify a sufficient number of capable community housing development organizations, then up to 20 percent of the funds allocated to that jurisdiction under this section, but not to exceed $150,000, may be made available to carry out activities that develop the capacity of community housing development organizations in that jurisdiction."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102–550, §212(a), substituted "24" for "18".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102–550 applicable to unexpended funds allocated under subchapter II of this chapter in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided, see section 223 of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12704 of this title.

§12772. Project-specific assistance to community housing development organizations

(a) In general

Amounts reserved under section 12771 of this title may be used for activities eligible under section 12742 of this title and, in amounts not to exceed 10 percent of the amounts so reserved, for other activities specified under this section.

(b) Project-specific technical assistance and site control loans

(1) In general

Amounts reserved under section 12771 of this title may be used to provide technical assistance and site control loans to community housing development organizations in the early stages of site development for an eligible project. Such loans shall not exceed amounts that the jurisdiction determines to be customary and reasonable project preparation costs allowable under paragraph (2).

(2) Allowable expenses

A loan under this subsection may be provided to cover project expenses necessary to determine project feasibility (including costs of an initial feasibility study), consulting fees, costs of preliminary financial applications, legal fees, architectural fees, engineering fees, engagement of a development team, site control and title clearance.

(3) Repayment

A community housing development organization that receives a loan under this subsection shall repay the loan to the participating jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund from construction loan proceeds or other project income. The participating jurisdiction may waive repayment of the loan, in part or in whole, if there are impediments to project development that the participating jurisdiction determines are reasonably beyond the control of the borrower.

(c) Project-specific seed money loans

(1) In general

Amounts reserved under section 12771 of this title may be used to provide loans to community housing development organizations to cover preconstruction project costs that the jurisdiction determines to be customary and reasonable, including, but not limited to the costs of obtaining firm construction loan commitments, architectural plans and specifications, zoning approvals, engineering studies and legal fees.

(2) Eligible sponsors

A loan under this subsection may be provided only to a community housing development organization that has, with respect to the project concerned, site control, a preliminary financial commitment, and a capable development team.

(3) Repayment

A community housing development organization that receives a loan under this subsection shall repay the loan to the jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund from construction loan proceeds or other project income. The participating jurisdiction may waive repayment of the loan, in whole or in part, if there are impediments to project development that the participating jurisdiction determines are reasonably beyond the control of the borrower.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §232, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4115.)

§12773. Housing education and organizational support

(a) In general

The Secretary is authorized to provide education and organizational support assistance, in conjunction with other assistance made available under this part—

(1) to facilitate the education of low-income homeowners and tenants;

(2) to promote the ability of community housing development organizations, including community land trusts, to maintain, rehabilitate and construct housing for low-income and moderate-income families in conformance with the requirements of this subchapter; and

(3) to achieve the purposes under paragraphs (1) and (2) by helping women who reside in low- and moderate-income neighborhoods rehabilitate and construct housing in the neighborhoods.

(b) Eligible activities

Assistance under this section may be used only for the following eligible activities:

(1) Organizational support

Organizational support assistance may be made available to community housing development organizations to cover operational expenses and to cover expenses for training and technical, legal, engineering and other assistance to the board of directors, staff, and members of the community housing development organization.

(2) Housing education

Housing education assistance may be made available to community housing development organizations to cover expenses for providing or administering programs for educating, counseling, or organizing homeowners and tenants who are eligible to receive assistance under other provisions of this subchapter.

(3) Program-wide support of nonprofit development and management

Technical assistance, training, and continuing support may be made available to eligible community housing development organizations for managing and conserving properties developed under this subchapter.

(4) Benevolent loan funds

Technical assistance may be made available to increase the investment of private capital in housing for very low-income families, particularly by encouraging the establishment of benevolent loan funds through which private financial institutions will accept deposits at below-market interest rates and make those funds available at favorable rates to developers of low-income housing and to low-income homebuyers.

(5) Community development banks and credit unions

Technical assistance may be made available to establish privately owned, local community development banks and credit unions to finance affordable housing.

(6) Community land trusts

Organizational support, technical assistance, education, training, and continuing support under this subsection may be made available to community land trusts (as such term is defined in subsection (f)) and to community groups for the establishment of community land trusts.

(7) Facilitating women in homebuilding professions

Technical assistance may be made available to businesses, unions, and organizations involved in construction and rehabilitation of housing in low- and moderate-income areas to assist women residing in the area to obtain jobs involving such activities, which may include facilitating access by such women to, and providing, apprenticeship and other training programs regarding nontraditional skills, recruiting women to participate in such programs, providing continuing support for women at job sites, counseling and educating businesses regarding suitable work environments for women, providing information to such women regarding opportunities for establishing small housing construction and rehabilitation businesses, and providing materials and tools for training such women (in an amount not exceeding 10 percent of any assistance provided under this paragraph). The Secretary shall give priority under this paragraph to providing technical assistance for organizations rehabilitating single family or multifamily housing owned or

controlled by the Secretary pursuant to title II of the National Housing Act [12 U.S.C. 1707 et seq.] and which have women members in occupations in which women constitute 25 percent or less of the total number of workers in the occupation (in this section referred to as "nontraditional occupations").

(c) Delivery of assistance

The Secretary shall provide this assistance only through contract—

(1) with a nonprofit intermediary organization that, in the determination of the Secretary—

(A) customarily provides, in more than one community, services related to the provision of decent housing that is affordable to low-income and moderate-income persons or the revitalization of deteriorating neighborhoods;

(B) has demonstrated experience in providing a range of assistance (such as financing, technical assistance, construction and property management assistance, capacity building and training) to community housing development organizations or similar organizations that engage in community revitalization;

(C) has demonstrated the ability to provide technical assistance and training for community-based developers of affordable housing;

(D) has described the uses to which such assistance will be put and the intended beneficiaries of the assistance; and

(E) in the case of activities under subsection (b)(7), is a community-based organization (as such term is defined in section 4 of the Job Training Partnership Act) or public housing agency, which has demonstrated experience in preparing women for apprenticeship training in construction or administering programs for training women for construction or other nontraditional occupations (and such organizations may use assistance for activities under such subsection to employ women in housing construction and rehabilitation activities to the extent that the organization has the capacity to conduct such activities); or

(2) with another organization, if a participating jurisdiction demonstrates that the organization is qualified to carry out eligible activities and that the jurisdiction would not be served in a timely manner by intermediaries specified under paragraph (1).

Contracts under paragraph (2) shall be for activities specified in an application from the participating jurisdiction, which application shall include a certification that the activities are necessary to the effective implementation of the participating jurisdiction's housing strategy.

(d) Limitations

Contracts under this section with any one contractor for a fiscal year may not—

(1) exceed 40 percent of the amount appropriated for this section for such fiscal year; or

(2) provide more than 20 percent of the operating budget (which shall not include funds that are passed through to community housing development organizations) of the contracting organization for any one year.

(e) Single-State contractors

Not less than 25 percent of the funds made available for this section in an appropriations Act in any fiscal year shall be made available for eligible contractors that have worked primarily in one State. The Secretary shall provide assistance under this section, to the extent applications are submitted and approved, to contractors in each of the geographic regions having a regional office of the Department of Housing and Urban Development.

(f) "Community land trust" defined

For purposes of this section, the term "community land trust" means a community housing development organization (except that the requirements under subparagraphs (C) and (D) of section 12704(6) of this title shall not apply for purposes of this subsection)—

(1) that is not sponsored by a for-profit organization;

(2) that is established to carry out the activities under paragraph (3);

(3) that—

(A) acquires parcels of land, held in perpetuity, primarily for conveyance under long-term ground leases;

(B) transfers ownership of any structural improvements located on such leased parcels to the lessees; and

(C) retains a preemptive option to purchase any such structural improvement at a price determined by formula that is designed to ensure that the improvement remains affordable to low- and moderate-income families in perpetuity;

(4) whose corporate membership that is open to any adult resident of a particular geographic area specified in the bylaws of the organization; and

(5) whose board of directors—

(A) includes a majority of members who are elected by the corporate membership; and

(B) is composed of equal numbers of (i) lessees pursuant to paragraph (3)(B), (ii) corporate members who are not lessees, and (iii) any other category of persons described in the bylaws of the organization.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §233, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4116; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §213, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3757; Pub. L. 111–8, div. I, title II, §229(1), (2), Mar. 11, 2009, 123 Stat. 978.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Housing Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(7), is act June 27, 1934, ch. 847, 48 Stat. 1246. Title II of the Act is classified principally to subchapter II (§1707 et seq.) of chapter 13 of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1701 of Title 12 and Tables.

Section 4 of the Job Training Partnership Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(1)(E), which was classified to section 1503 of Title 29, Labor, was repealed by Pub. L. 105–220, title I, §199(b)(2), (c)(2)(B), Aug. 7, 1998, 112 Stat. 1059, effective July 1, 2000. Pursuant to former section 2940(b) of Title 29, references to a provision of the Job Training Partnership Act, effective Aug. 7, 1998, were deemed to refer to that provision or the corresponding provision of the Workforce Investment Act of 1998, Pub. L. 105–220, Aug. 7, 1998, 112 Stat. 936, and, effective July 1, 2000, were deemed to refer to the corresponding provision of the Workforce Investment Act of 1998. The Workforce Investment Act of 1998 was repealed by Pub. L. 113–128, title V, §§506, 511(a), July 22, 2014, 128 Stat. 1703, 1705, effective July 1, 2015. Pursuant to section 3361(a) of Title 29, references to a provision of the Workforce Investment Act of 1998 are deemed to refer to the corresponding provision of the Workforce Innovation and Opportunity Act, Pub. L. 113–128, July 22, 2014, 128 Stat. 1425, effective July 1, 2015. For complete classification of the Job Training Partnership Act and the Workforce Investment Act of 1998 to the Code, see Tables. For complete classification of the Workforce Innovation and Opportunity Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3101 of title 29 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 111–8, §229(1), substituted "40" for "20".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–8, §229(2), substituted "25" for "40".

1992—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 102–550, §213(a)(1), inserted ", including community land trusts," after "organizations".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 102–550, §213(b)(1), added par. (3).

Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 102–550, §213(a)(2), added par. (6).

Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 102–550, §213(b)(2), added par. (7).

Subsec. (c)(1)(E). Pub. L. 102–550, §213(b)(3), added subpar. (E).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 102–550, §213(b)(4), inserted at end "The Secretary shall provide assistance under this section, to the extent applications are submitted and approved, to contractors in each of the geographic regions having a regional office of the Department of Housing and Urban Development."

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 102–550, §213(a)(3), added subsec. (f).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102–550 applicable to unexpended funds allocated under subchapter II of this chapter in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided, see section 223 of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12704 of this title.

§12774. Other requirements

(a) Tenant participation plan

A community housing development organization that receives assistance under this part shall provide a plan for and follow a program of tenant participation in management decisions and shall adhere to a fair lease and grievance procedure approved by the participating jurisdiction.

(b) Limitation on assistance

A community housing development organization may not receive assistance under this subchapter for any fiscal year in an amount that provides more than 50 percent of the organization's total operating budget in the fiscal year or $50,000 annually, whichever is greater.

(c) Adjustments of other assistance

The Secretary shall take account of assistance provided to a project under this part when adjusting other assistance to be provided to the project as required by section 3545(d) of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §234, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4117; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §212(c), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3757.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102–550 struck out ", together with other Federal assistance," after "in an amount that" and inserted before period "or $50,000 annually, whichever is greater".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102–550 applicable to unexpended funds allocated under subchapter II of this chapter in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided, see section 223 of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12704 of this title.

PART C—OTHER SUPPORT FOR STATE AND LOCAL HOUSING STRATEGIES

§12781. Authority

The Secretary shall, insofar as is feasible through contract with eligible organizations, develop the capacity of participating jurisdictions, State and local housing finance agencies, nonprofit organizations and for-profit corporations, working in partnership, to identify and meet needs for an increased supply of decent, affordable housing.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §241, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4117.)

§12782. Priorities for capacity development

To carry out section 12781 of this title, the Secretary shall provide assistance under this part to—

(1) facilitate the exchange of information that would help participating jurisdictions carry out the purposes of this subchapter, including information on program design, housing finance, land use controls, and building construction techniques;

(2) improve the ability of States and units of general local government to design and implement comprehensive housing affordability strategies, particularly those States and units of general local government that are relatively inexperienced in the development of affordable housing;

(3) encourage private lenders and for-profit developers of low-income housing to participate in public-private partnerships to achieve the purposes of this subchapter;

(4) improve the ability of States and units of general local government, community housing

development organizations, private lenders, and for-profit developers of low-income housing to incorporate energy efficiency into the planning, design, financing, construction, and operation of affordable housing;

(5) facilitate the establishment and efficient operation of employer-assisted housing programs through research, technical assistance and demonstration projects; and

(6) facilitate the establishment and efficient operation of land bank programs, under which title to vacant and abandoned parcels of real estate located in or causing blighted neighborhoods is cleared for use consistent with the purposes of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §242, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4118; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §214(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3759.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Par. (6). Pub. L. 102–550 added par. (6).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102–550 applicable to unexpended funds allocated under subchapter II of this chapter in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided, see section 223 of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12704 of this title.

§12783. Conditions of contracts

(a) Eligible organizations

The Secretary shall carry out this part insofar as is practicable through contract with—

(1) a participating jurisdiction or agency thereof;

(2) a public purpose organization established pursuant to State or local legislation and responsible to the chief elected official of a participating jurisdiction;

(3) an agency or authority established by two or more participating jurisdictions to carry out activities consistent with the purposes of this subchapter;

(4) a national or regional nonprofit organization that has a membership comprised predominantly of entities or officials of entities that qualify under paragraph (1), (2), or (3); or

(5) a professional and technical services company or firm that has demonstrated capacity to provide services under this part.

(b) Contract terms

Contracts under this part shall be for not more than 3 years and shall provide not more than 20 percent of the operating budget of the contracting organization in any one year. Within any fiscal year, contracts with any one organization may not be entered into for a total of more than 40 percent of the funds appropriated under this part in that fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §243, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4118; Pub. L. 111–8, div. I, title II, §229(3), Mar. 11, 2009, 123 Stat. 978.)

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–8 substituted "40 percent of the funds" for "20 percent of the funds".

§12784. Research in housing affordability

The Secretary is authorized to support, through contracts with eligible organizations and otherwise, such research and to publish such reports as will assist in the achievement of the purposes of this subchapter. Activities authorized by the previous sentence may include an ongoing analysis of the impact of public policies at the Federal, State, and local levels, both individually and in the aggregate, on the incentives to expand and maintain the supply of energy-efficient affordable housing in the United States, particularly in areas with severe problems of housing affordability, through the use of cost-saving innovative building technology and construction techniques. For

purposes of this section, agencies of the United States, government-sponsored mortgage finance corporations, and qualified research organizations shall be included as eligible organizations in addition to eligible organizations specified under section 12783 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §244, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4118; Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §215, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3759.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102–550 inserted before period at end of second sentence ", through the use of cost-saving innovative building technology and construction techniques".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102–550 applicable to unexpended funds allocated under subchapter II of this chapter in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided, see section 223 of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as a note under section 12704 of this title.

§12785. REACH: asset recycling information dissemination

(a) In general

The Secretary shall make available upon request by any participating jurisdiction a list of eligible properties that are located within the jurisdiction and that are owned or controlled by the Department of Housing and Urban Development to facilitate the purchase, development, or rehabilitation of such properties with assistance made available under this subchapter.

(b) Eligible properties

An eligible property under this section shall—

(1) be an unoccupied single-family or multifamily dwelling, such that acquisition and rehabilitation of the dwelling would not result in the displacement of any residents of the dwelling; and

(2) have an appraised value that does not exceed (A) in the case of a 1- to 4-family dwelling, 95 percent of the median purchase price for the area for such dwellings, as determined by the Secretary, or (B) in the case of a dwelling with more than 4 units, the applicable maximum dollar amount limitation under section 1715l(d)(3)(ii) of title 12 for elevator-type structures.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §245, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4119.)

PART D—SPECIFIED MODEL PROGRAMS

§12801. General authority

Among the alternative model programs that the Secretary shall make available for use by participating jurisdictions under the provisions of section 12743 of this title shall be model programs specified in this part. The Secretary shall keep these specified model programs under review and submit to Congress such recommendations for change as the Secretary determines to be appropriate.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §251, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4119.)

§12802. Rental housing production

(a) Repayable advances

(1) In general

The Secretary shall make available a model program under which repayable advances may be

made to public and private project sponsors in constructing, acquiring, or substantially rehabilitating projects to be used as affordable rental housing, including limited equity cooperatives and mutual housing.

(2) Maximum amount of advance

An advance under this model program shall not exceed 50 percent of the total costs associated with the construction, acquisition, or substantial rehabilitation of the project, as determined by the participating jurisdiction.

(3) Terms of repayment

(A) Interest payments

(i) In general

Under the model program, advances shall be repaid with interest calculated at a rate of not more than 3 percent per year, as determined by the participating jurisdiction to be appropriate. Interest shall begin to accrue 1 year after the completion of the construction, acquisition, or substantial rehabilitation of the project and shall be payable in annual installments.

(ii) Exception

Interest and any accrued interest shall be payable only from the surplus cash flow of the project, after a minimum return on equity determined by the participating jurisdiction to be appropriate. As used in the previous sentence, the term "surplus cash flow" means the cash flow of the project after the payment of all amounts due under the first mortgage, operating expenses, and required replacement reserves, as determined by the participating jurisdiction.

(B) Additional interest payments

Under the model program, for any year in which the sum of the surplus cash flow of a project and the return on equity exceeds all interest payments due under subparagraph (A), 50 percent of the excess surplus cash flow shall be paid to the participating jurisdiction's HOME Investment Trust Fund as additional interest.

(C) Principal and unpaid interest

The principal amount of an advance under the model program, and any interest remaining unpaid pursuant to subparagraph (A)(ii) shall be repayable when the housing no longer qualifies as affordable housing in accordance with section 12749(b) of this title.

(b) Selection guidelines

(1) In general

The Secretary shall establish guidelines for the selection of projects by participating jurisdictions for assistance under the model program. Such guidelines shall be designed to select projects in areas and for markets demonstrating the greatest need for the production of affordable rental housing.

(2) Specific requirements

The selection guidelines may include—

(A) the extent of the shortage of rental housing in the area that is available to low-income families;

(B) the extent large families with children will be served by the project;

(C) the extent to which the project provides congregate facilities and has available supportive services that will permit elderly or handicapped residents who become frail and are in need of assistance in living to continue to reside in the project;

(D) the extent of very low-income and low-income occupancy in excess of the income targeting requirements in section 12744 of this title;

(E) the extent of the project sponsor's commitment of equity to the project (except that this criterion shall not apply to or affect the selection of applications submitted by public housing

agencies and nonprofit entities);

(F) the extent of the project sponsor's commitment of equity to the project in comparison to the value of all public assistance for the project, including assistance under this subchapter, other Federal assistance and financing, and State and local government contributions (except that this criterion shall not apply to or affect the selection of applications submitted by public housing agencies and nonprofit entities);

(G) the extent of non-Federal public or private assistance to the project;

(H) the extent to which the project provides supportive services for persons with disabilities; and

(I) any other factor determined by the Secretary to be appropriate.

(c) Guidelines

The Secretary shall publish guidelines for the model program under this section not later than 180 days after November 28, 1990.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §252, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4119.)

§12803. Rental rehabilitation

(a) In general

The Secretary shall make available a model program to support the rehabilitation of privately owned rental housing located in neighborhoods where the median income does not exceed 80 percent of the area median as determined by the Secretary and where rents can reasonably be expected not to change materially over an extended period of time.

(b) Amount of subsidy

The amount of the rehabilitation subsidy shall be moderate and shall generally not exceed 50 percent of the total costs associated with the rehabilitation of the housing.

(c) Additional restrictions

The guidelines of the model program shall generally comport with the additional protections and restrictions specified under section 1437o(c) [1] of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §253, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4121.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1437o of this title, referred to in subsec. (c), was repealed by Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §289(b), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4128.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12804. Rehabilitation loans

(a) In general

The Secretary shall make available a model program to provide direct loans to finance the rehabilitation of low and moderate income single family and multifamily residential properties.

(b) Condition of loans

The Secretary shall establish terms and conditions to ensure that such loans are acceptable risks, taking into consideration the need for rehabilitation, the security for the loan and the ability of the borrower to repay the loan. The Secretary may establish the interest rate for loans under the model program, which shall include special interest rates for loans to borrowers with incomes below 80 percent of the area median income.

(c) Additional restrictions

Guidelines for the model program may require that the property—

(1) be located in an area that contains a substantial number of dwellings in need of rehabilitation;

(2) the property [1] is residential and owner-occupied; and

(3) the property [1] is in need of rehabilitation or concentrated code enforcement within a reasonable time, and the rehabilitation of such property is consistent with a local plan for rehabilitation or code enforcement.

Additional guidelines for the model program shall generally comport with the additional protections and restrictions specified under section 1452b [2] of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §254, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4121.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1452b of this title, referred to in subsec. (c), was repealed by Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §289(b)(1), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4128, which is classified to section 12839(b)(1) of this title.

[1] So in original. The words "the property" probably should not appear.

[2] See References in Text note below.

§12805. Sweat equity model program

(a) In general

The Secretary shall make available a model program to provide grants to public and private nonprofit organizations and community housing development organizations to provide technical and supervisory assistance to low-income and very low-income families, including the homeless, in acquiring, rehabilitating, and constructing housing by the self-help housing method.

(b) Rehabilitation of properties

The program shall target for rehabilitation properties which have been acquired by the Federal, State, or local governments.

(c) Homeownership opportunities through sweat equity

(1) The program shall utilize the skilled or unskilled labor of eligible families in exchange for acquisition of the property.

(2) Training shall be provided to eligible families in building and home maintenance skills.

(d) Rental opportunities through sweat equity

(1) The program shall include rental opportunities for eligible families which will help expand the stock of affordable housing which is most appropriate for the target group.

(2) The use of the tenant's skilled or unskilled labor shall be encouraged in lieu of or as a supplement to rent payments by the tenant.

(e) "Self-help housing" defined

The term "self-help housing" means the same as in section 1490c of this title.

(f) Additional restrictions

The guidelines for the model program shall generally comport with the additional protections and restrictions specified under section 1490c of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §255, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4121.)

ASSISTANCE FOR SELF-HELP HOUSING PROVIDERS

Pub. L. 104–120, §11, Mar. 28, 1996, 110 Stat. 841, as amended by Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §599E(a), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2663; Pub. L. 106–569, title II, §202, Dec. 27, 2000, 114 Stat. 2951; Pub. L. 108–285,

§2, Aug. 2, 2004, 118 Stat. 917; Pub. L. 114–201, title V, §502, July 29, 2016, 130 Stat. 811, provided that:

"(a) GRANT AUTHORITY.—The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development may, to the extent amounts are available to carry out this section and the requirements of this section are met, make grants for use in accordance with this section to national and regional organizations and consortia that have experience in providing or facilitating self-help housing homeownership opportunities.

"(b) GOALS AND ACCOUNTABILITY.—In making grants under this section, the Secretary shall take such actions as may be necessary to ensure that—

"(1) assistance provided under this section is used to facilitate and encourage innovative homeownership opportunities through the provision of self-help housing, under which the homeowner contributes a significant amount of sweat equity toward the construction of the new dwellings;

"(2) assistance provided under this section for land acquisition and infrastructure development results in the development of not less than 4,000 new dwellings;

"(3) the dwellings constructed in connection with assistance provided under this section are quality dwellings that comply with local building and safety codes and standards and are available at prices below the prevailing market prices;

"(4) the provision of assistance under this section establishes and fosters a partnership between the Federal Government and organizations and consortia, resulting in efficient development of affordable housing with minimal governmental intervention, limited governmental regulation, and significant involvement by private entities;

"(5) activities to develop housing assisted pursuant to this section involve community participation in which volunteers assist in the construction of dwellings; and

"(6) dwellings are developed in connection with assistance under this section on a geographically diverse basis, which includes areas having high housing costs, rural areas, and areas underserved by other homeownership opportunities that are populated by low-income families unable to otherwise afford housing.

If, at any time, the Secretary determines that the goals under this subsection cannot be met by providing assistance in accordance with the terms of this section, the Secretary shall immediately notify the applicable Committees in writing of such determination and any proposed changes for such goals or this section.

"(c) NATIONAL COMPETITION.—The Secretary shall select organizations and consortia referred to in subsection (a) to receive grants through a national competitive process, which the Secretary shall establish.

"(d) USE.—

"(1) PURPOSE.—Amounts from grants made under this section, including any recaptured amounts, shall be used only for eligible expenses in connection with developing new decent, safe, and sanitary nonluxury dwellings in the United States for families and persons who otherwise would be unable to afford to purchase a dwelling.

"(2) ELIGIBLE EXPENSES.—For purposes of paragraph (1), the term 'eligible expenses' means costs only for the following activities:

"(A) LAND ACQUISITION.—Acquiring land (including financing and closing costs), which may include reimbursing an organization, consortium, or affiliate, upon approval of any required environmental review, for nongrant amounts of the organization, consortium, or affiliate advanced before such review to acquire land.

"(B) INFRASTRUCTURE IMPROVEMENT.—Installing, extending, constructing, rehabilitating, or otherwise improving utilities and other infrastructure.

Such term does not include any costs for the rehabilitation, improvement, or construction of dwellings.

"(e) ESTABLISHMENT OF GRANT FUND.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Any amounts from any grant made under this section shall be deposited by the grantee organization or consortium in a fund that is established by such organization or consortium for such amounts, administered by such organization or consortium, and available for use only for the purposes under subsection (d). Any interest, fees, or other earnings of the fund shall be deposited in the fund and shall be considered grant amounts for purposes of this section.

"(2) ASSISTANCE TO AFFILIATES.—Any organization or consortia that receives a grant under this section may use amounts in the fund established for such organization or consortia pursuant to paragraph (1) for the purposes under subsection (d) by providing assistance from the fund to local affiliates of such organization or consortia.

"(f) REQUIREMENTS FOR ASSISTANCE.—The Secretary may make a grant to an organization or consortium under subsection (a) only pursuant to—

"(1) an expression of interest by such organization or consortia to the Secretary for a grant for such

purposes;

"(2) a determination by the Secretary that the organization or consortia has the capability and has obtained financial commitments (or has the capacity to obtain financial commitments) necessary to—

"(A) develop not less than 30 dwellings in connection with the grant amounts; and

"(B) otherwise comply with a grant agreement under subsection (i); and

"(3) a grant agreement entered into under subsection (i).

"(g) ENERGY EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS.—The Secretary may not require any dwelling developed using amounts from a grant made under this section to meet any energy efficiency standards other than the standards applicable at such time pursuant to section 109 of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act (42 U.S.C. 12709) to housing specified in subsection (a) of such section.

"(h) GEOGRAPHICAL DIVERSITY.—In making grants under subsection (a), the Secretary shall ensure that grants are provided and grant amounts are used in a manner that results in national geographic diversity among housing developed using grant amounts under this section.

"(i) GRANT AGREEMENT.—A grant under this section shall be made only pursuant to a grant agreement entered into by the Secretary and the organization or consortia receiving the grant, which shall—

"(1) require such organization or consortia to use grant amounts only as provided in this section;

"(2) provide for the organization or consortia to develop a specific and reasonable number of dwellings using the grant amounts, which number shall be established taking into consideration costs and economic conditions in the areas in which the dwellings will be developed, but in no case shall be less than 30;

"(3) require the organization or consortia to use the grant amounts in a manner that leverages other sources of funding (other than grants under this section), including private or public funds, in developing the dwellings;

"(4) require the organization or consortia to comply with the other provisions of this section;

"(5) provide that the Secretary shall recapture any grant amounts provided to the organization or consortia that are not used within 24 months after such amounts are first disbursed to the organization or consortia, except that such period shall be 36 months in the case of grant amounts from amounts made available for fiscal year 1996 to carry out this section, and in the case of a [sic] grant amounts provided to a local affiliate of the organization or consortia that is developing five or more dwellings in connection with such grant amounts; and

"(6) contain such other terms as the Secretary may require to provide for compliance with subsection (b) and the requirements of this section.

"(j) FULFILLMENT OF GRANT AGREEMENT.—If the Secretary determines that an organization or consortia awarded a grant under this section has not, within 24 months after grant amounts are first made available to the organization or consortia (or, in the case of grant amounts from amounts made available for fiscal year 1996 to carry out this section and grant amounts provided to a local affiliate of the organization or consortia that is developing five or more dwellings in connection with such grant amounts, within 36 months), substantially fulfilled the obligations under the grant agreement, including development of the appropriate number of dwellings under the agreement, the Secretary shall use any such undisbursed amounts remaining from such grant for other grants in accordance with this section.

"(k) RECORDS AND AUDITS.—During the period beginning upon the making of a grant under this section and ending upon close-out of the grant under subsection (l)—

"(1) the organization awarded the grant shall keep such records and adopt such administrative practices as the Secretary may require to ensure compliance with the provisions of this section and the grant agreement; and

"(2) the Secretary and the Comptroller General of the United States, and any of their duly authorized representatives, shall have access for the purpose of audit and examination to any books, documents, papers, and records of the grantee organization or consortia and its affiliates that are pertinent to the grant made under this section.

"(l) CLOSE-OUT.—The Secretary shall close out a grant made under this section upon determining that the aggregate amount of any assistance provided from the fund established under subsection (e)(1) by the grantee organization or consortium exceeds the amount of the grant. For purposes of this paragraph, any interest, fees, and other earnings of the fund shall be excluded from the amount of the grant.

"(m) ENVIRONMENTAL REVIEW.—A grant under this section shall be considered to be funds for a special project for purposes of section 305(c) of the Multifamily Housing Property Disposition Reform Act of 1994 [42 U.S.C. 3547].

"(n) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—Not later than 90 days after close-out of all grants under this section is completed, the Secretary shall submit a report to the applicable Committees describing the grants made under this section, the grantees, the housing developed in connection with the grant amounts, and the purposes for

which the grant amounts were used.

"(o) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section, the following definitions shall apply:

"(1) APPLICABLE COMMITTEES.—The term 'applicable Committees' means the Committee on Banking and Financial Services [now Committee on Financial Services] of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate.

"(2) SECRETARY.—The term 'Secretary' means the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.

"(3) UNITED STATES.—The term 'United States' includes the States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, Guam, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, and any other territory or possession of the United States.

"(p) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section such sums as may be necessary for fiscal year 2001.

"(q) REGULATIONS.—The Secretary shall issue any final regulations necessary to carry out this section not later than 30 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Mar. 28, 1996]. The regulations shall take effect upon issuance and may not exceed, in length, 5 full pages in the Federal Register."

[Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §599E(b), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2664, provided that: "Notwithstanding the amendments made by subsection (a) [amending section 11 of Pub. L. 104–120, set out above], any grant under section 11 of the Housing Opportunity Program Extension Act of 1996 [Pub. L. 104–120] (42 U.S.C. 12805 note) from amounts appropriated in fiscal year 1998 or any prior fiscal year shall be governed by the provisions of such section 11 as in effect immediately before the enactment of this Act [Oct. 21, 1998], except that the amendments made by paragraphs (8) and (9) of subsection (a) of this section shall apply to such grants."]

[Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §599E(c), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2664, provided that: "This section [amending section 11 of Pub. L. 104–120, set out above, and enacting provisions set out as a note above] shall take effect, and the amendments made by this section are made on, and shall apply beginning upon, the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 21, 1998]."]

FUNDING FOR SELF-HELP HOUSING ASSISTANCE, NATIONAL CITIES IN SCHOOLS COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT PROGRAM, AND CAPACITY BUILDING THROUGH NATIONAL COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT INITIATIVE

Pub. L. 104–120, §12, Mar. 28, 1996, 110 Stat. 845, provided that:

"(a) AUTHORITY TO USE ASSISTED HOUSING AMOUNTS.—To the extent and for the purposes specified in subsection (b), the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development may use amounts in the account of the Department of Housing and Urban Development known as the Annual Contributions for Assisted Housing account, but only such amounts which—

"(1) have been appropriated for a fiscal year that occurs before the fiscal year for which the Secretary uses the amounts; and

"(2) have been obligated before becoming available for use under this section.

"(b) FISCAL YEAR 1996.—Of the amounts described in subsection (a), $60,000,000 shall be available to the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development for fiscal year 1996 in the following amounts for the following purposes:

"(1) SELF-HELP HOUSING ASSISTANCE.—$40,000,000 for carrying out section 11 of this Act [set out above].

"(2) NATIONAL CITIES IN SCHOOLS COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT PROGRAM .—$10,000,000 for carrying out section 930 of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992 (Public Law 102–550; 106 Stat. 3887).

"(3) CAPACITY BUILDING THROUGH NATIONAL COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT INITIATIVE.—$10,000,000 for carrying out section 4 of the HUD Demonstration Act of 1993 (42 U.S.C. 9816 note)."

§12806. Home repair services grants for older and disabled homeowners

(a) In general

The Secretary shall make available a model program to provide home repair services for older homeowners and disabled homeowners, including such services as the examination of homes, repair services, and follow-up to ensure the continued effectiveness of the repairs provided.

(b) Eligible recipients

Home repair services shall be provided to homeowners who—

(1) own and reside in the dwellings for which services are provided;

(2) are older or disabled; and

(3) are members of low-income families.

(c) Permitted restrictions

Guidelines for the model program shall require that—

(1) assisted dwelling units be the primary residence of the homeowner for whom services are provided;

(2) preferences be provided for (A) very low-income families, and (B) individuals with intense need characterized by noneconomic factors such as physical and mental disabilities, language barriers, and cultural, social, or geographical isolation caused by racial or ethnic status that restricts the ability of an individual to perform normal daily tasks or that threatens the capacity of the individual to live independently;

(3) any fees charged be based on the income of the individual receiving the home repair services.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §256, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4122.)

§12807. Low-income housing conservation and efficiency grant programs

(a) In general

The Secretary shall make available a model program to provide safe, energy-efficient affordable housing for low-income persons.

(b) Activities

The model program shall provide for—

(1) identification of housing that is—

(A) owned and occupied by low-income families who have received, are currently receiving, or are scheduled to receive assistance under the weatherization assistance for low-income persons program under part A of title IV of the Energy Conservation and Production Act [42 U.S.C. 6861 et seq.] (or a comparable Federal or State program);

(B) in danger of becoming uninhabitable within a 5-year period because of structural weaknesses or problems; and

(C) not sufficiently sound to permit energy conservation improvements without other repair or rehabilitation measures to protect such energy investments;

(2) repairs that will significantly prolong the habitability of units identified under paragraph (1), including roofing, electrical, plumbing, furnace, and foundation repairs or replacement that will prolong the use of the unit as a safe and energy-efficient residence for low-income persons; and

(3) reasonable steps to ensure that any units so repaired will remain occupied by persons or families eligible for assistance under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §257, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4122.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Energy Conservation and Production Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(A), is Pub. L. 94–385, Aug. 14, 1976, 90 Stat. 1142, as amended. Part A of title IV of the Act is classified generally to part A (§6861 et seq.) of subchapter III of chapter 81 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6801 of this title and Tables.

§12808. Second mortgage assistance for first-time homebuyers

(a) In general

The Secretary shall make available a model program under which units of general local government provide loans (secured by second mortgages) with deferred payment of interest and principal to first-time homebuyers.

(b) Homeownership counseling

The program under this section shall provide for homeownership counseling to first-time homebuyers assisted, which shall include—

(1) counseling before and after purchase of the property;

(2) assisting first-time homebuyers in identifying the most suitable and affordable properties;

(3) providing homebuyers with financial management assistance;

(4) assisting homebuyers in understanding mortgage transactions and home sales contracts; and

(5) assisting homebuyers with eliminating any credit problems that may prevent the homebuyers from purchasing the property.

(c) Eligibility requirements

Deferred payment loans secured by second mortgages may be provided under the model program under this section if—

(1) the homebuyer assisted is a first-time homebuyer;

(2) the property secured by the second mortgage is a single-family residence and is the principal residence of the homebuyer; and

(3) the principal obligation of the deferred payment loan secured by a second mortgage does not exceed 30 percent of the acquisition price of the residence to the homebuyer.

(d) Payment terms

(1) Period of deferral

The payment of any principal and interest on a loan under this section shall be deferred for not less than the 5-year period beginning on the date of the acquisition of the residence by the homebuyer.

(2) Interest rate

The interest rate on the unpaid balance of a loan under this section shall be at least 4 percent.

(3) Repayment period

A deferred payment loan secured by a second mortgage shall be repayable over the 15-year period beginning at the end of the deferral period.

(e) Security

A deferred payment loan assisted with amount [1] provided under a grant under this section shall be secured by a lien on the property involved, which lien shall be subordinate to the first mortgage on the property.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §258, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4123.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "amounts".*

§12809. Rehabilitation of State and local government in rem properties

(a) In general

The Secretary shall make available a model program under which States and units of general local government may convert in rem properties to provide affordable permanent housing for the homeless by leasing such properties to nonprofit organizations and permitting such organizations to rehabilitate the properties.

(b) Target

The program shall target vacant properties for rehabilitation by nonprofit organizations.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §259, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4124.)

§12810. Cost-saving building technologies and construction techniques

(a) In general

The Secretary shall make available a model program to utilize cost-saving building technologies and construction techniques for purposes of providing homeownership and rental opportunities under this subchapter.

(b) Selection criteria

The Secretary shall establish criteria for participating jurisdictions to select projects for assistance under the model program which may include—

(1) the extent to which innovative, cost-saving building and construction technologies are utilized;

(2) the extent to which innovative, cost-saving construction techniques are utilized;

(3) the extent to which units will be made available to low-income families and individuals;

(4) the extent to which non-Federal public or private assistance is utilized; and

(5) any other factor, determined by the Secretary to be appropriate.

(c) Guidelines

The Secretary shall publish guidelines for the model program under this section not later than 180 days after October 28, 1992.

(d) Report

The Secretary shall submit a biennial report to the Congress on the utilization of the model program under this section.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §260, as added Pub. L. 102–550, title II, §216, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3760.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section applicable to unexpended funds allocated under subchapter II of this chapter in fiscal year 1992, except as otherwise specifically provided, see section 223 of Pub. L. 102–550, set out as an Effective Date of 1992 Amendment note under section 12704 of this title.

PART E—OTHER ASSISTANCE

AMENDMENTS

2003—Pub. L. 108–186, title I, §102, Dec. 16, 2003, 117 Stat. 2686, amended heading generally. Prior to amendment, heading read "Mortgage Credit Enhancement".

§12821. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §271, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4124; Pub. L. 108–186, title I, §102, Dec. 16, 2003, 117 Stat. 2686; Pub. L. 111–8, div. I, title II, §229(4), Mar. 11, 2009, 123 Stat. 978, which related to downpayment assistance toward the purchase of single family housing, was omitted from the Code upon the expiration of Secretary's authority on Dec. 31, 2011, to make grants to participating jurisdictions to assist low-income families to achieve homeownership.

PART F—GENERAL PROVISIONS

§12831. Equal opportunity

(a) Solicitation of contracts

Each participating jurisdiction shall prescribe procedures acceptable to the Secretary to establish and oversee a minority outreach program within each such jurisdiction to ensure the inclusion, to the maximum extent possible, of minorities and women, and entities owned by minorities and women, including, without limitation, real estate firms, construction firms, appraisal firms, management firms, financial institutions, investment banking firms, underwriters, accountants, and providers of legal services, in all contracts, entered into by the participating jurisdiction with such persons or entities, public and private, in order to facilitate the activities of the participating jurisdiction to provide affordable housing authorized under this Act or any other Federal housing law applicable to such jurisdiction.

(b) Report to Congress

Before the end of the 180-day period beginning on the date the first allocation of funds is made under section 12747 of this title, the Secretary shall submit to the Congress a report containing a description of the actions taken by each participating jurisdiction pursuant to subsection (a) and such recommendations for administrative and legislative action as the Secretary may determine to be appropriate to carry out the purposes of such subsection.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §281, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4125.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4079, known as the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12701 of this title and Tables.

§12832. Nondiscrimination

No person in the United States shall on the grounds of race, color, national origin, religion, or sex be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity funded in whole or in part with funds made available under this subchapter. Any prohibition against discrimination on the basis of age under the Age Discrimination Act of 1975 [42 U.S.C. 6101 et seq.] or with respect to an otherwise qualified handicapped individual as provided in section 794 of title 29 shall also apply to any such program or activity. The Secretary may waive this section in connection with the use of funds made available under this subchapter on lands set aside under the Hawaiian Homes Commission Act, 1920 (42 Stat. 108).

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §282, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4125; Pub. L. 104–204, title II, §213, Sept. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 2904.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, referred to in text, is title III of Pub. L. 94–135, Nov. 28, 1975, 89 Stat. 728, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 76 (§6101 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6101 of this title and Tables.

The Hawaiian Homes Commission Act, 1920, referred to in text, is act July 9, 1921, ch. 42, 42 Stat. 108, as amended, which was classified generally to sections 691 to 718 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions, and was omitted from the Code.

AMENDMENTS

1996—Pub. L. 104–204 inserted at end "The Secretary may waive this section in connection with the use of funds made available under this subchapter on lands set aside under the Hawaiian Homes Commission Act, 1920 (42 Stat. 108)."

§12833. Audits by Comptroller General

(a) Audits of HOME Investment Partnerships program

The Comptroller General, when the Comptroller General deems it to be appropriate or when requested by the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate or the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives, shall conduct a full financial audit of the records of the HOME Investment Partnerships program for any fiscal year. The report of the Comptroller General shall be submitted promptly to the Secretary and the Congress and shall be published.

(b) Audits of recipients

The financial transactions of participating jurisdictions and of other recipients of funds provided under this subchapter may, insofar as they relate to funds provided under this subchapter, be audited by the Government Accountability Office under such rules and regulations as may be prescribed by the Comptroller General of the United States. The representatives of the Government Accountability Office shall have access to all books, accounts, records, reports, files, and other papers, things, or property belonging to or in use by such recipients pertaining to such financial transactions and necessary to facilitate the audit.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §283, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4125; Pub. L. 103–233, title II, §205, Apr. 11, 1994, 108 Stat. 364; Pub. L. 108–271, §8(b), July 7, 2004, 118 Stat. 814.)

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 108–271 substituted "Government Accountability Office" for "General Accounting Office" in two places.

1994—Pub. L. 103–233, §205(1), substituted "Audits by Comptroller General" for "Annual audits and accountability" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–233, §205(4), struck out after first sentence "The initiation of an audit for a fiscal year under the previous sentence shall obviate the requirement for an audit by an independent accounting firm under paragraph (a) for that fiscal year."

Pub. L. 103–233, §205(3)(B), (C), redesignated subsec. (b)(1) as (a) and realigned margins.

Pub. L. 103–233, §205(2), struck out heading and text of subsec. (a). Text read as follows: "The Secretary, except as provided in paragraph (b)(1), shall contract annually with an independent accounting firm to provide for a full financial audit of the records of the HOME Investment Partnerships program for each fiscal year. Funds available for departmental administration may be used to provide for such audits. Each audit shall be performed as soon as practicable after the close of the fiscal year and in accordance with generally accepted Government auditing standards approved by the Comptroller General of the United States (hereinafter referred to as the 'Comptroller General'), and shall be consistent with the requirements of sections 9105 and 9106 of title 31. The Secretary shall promptly submit the report of the independent accounting firm to the Congress, consistent with the requirements of section 9106 of title 31, and such report shall be published. The requirement for an audit under this section shall be in lieu of the requirement for an audit by the Comptroller General under section 9105(a) of title 31."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–233, §205(3), struck out heading "AUDITS BY THE COMPTROLLER GENERAL.—", redesignated subsec. (b)(2) as (b), and realigned margins.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104–14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress. Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives abolished and replaced by Committee on Financial Services of House of Representatives, and jurisdiction over matters relating to securities and exchanges and insurance generally transferred from Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 5, One Hundred Seventh Congress, Jan. 3, 2001.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–233 applicable with respect to any amounts made available to carry out this subchapter after Apr. 11, 1994, and any amounts made available to carry out this subchapter before that date that remain uncommitted on that date, with Secretary to issue any regulations necessary to carry out such

amendment not later than end of 45-day period beginning on that date, see section 209 of Pub. L. 103–233, set out as a note under section 5301 of this title.

§12834. Uniform recordkeeping and reports to Congress

(a) Uniform requirements

The Secretary shall develop and establish uniform recordkeeping, performance reporting, and auditing requirements for use by participating jurisdictions.

(b) Omitted

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §284, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4126.)

CODIFICATION

Subsec. (b) of this section, which required the Secretary to make an annual report to Congress that summarizes and assesses the results of reports provided under this section, terminated, effective May 15, 2000, pursuant to section 3003 of Pub. L. 104–66, as amended, set out as a note under section 1113 of Title 31, Money and Finance. See, also, the 3rd item on page 102 of House Document No. 103–7.

§12835. Citizen participation

The Secretary shall ensure that each participating jurisdiction, and each jurisdiction seeking to become a participating jurisdiction, complies with the requirements of section 12707 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §285, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4126.)

§12836. Labor

(a) In general

Any contract for the construction of affordable housing with 12 or more units assisted with funds made available under this part shall contain a provision requiring that not less than the wages prevailing in the locality, as predetermined by the Secretary of Labor pursuant to sections 3141–3144, 3146, and 3147 of title 40, shall be paid to all laborers and mechanics employed in the development of affordable housing involved, and participating jurisdictions shall require certification as to compliance with the provisions of this section prior to making any payment under such contract.

(b) Waiver

Subsection (a) shall not apply if the individual receives no compensation or is paid expenses, reasonable benefits, or a nominal fee to perform the services for which the individual volunteered and such persons are not otherwise employed at any time in the construction work.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §286, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4126.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), "sections 3141–3144, 3146, and 3147 of title 40" substituted for "the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a—276a–5)" on authority of Pub. L. 107–217, §5(c), Aug. 21, 2002, 116 Stat. 1303, the first section of which enacted Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works.

§12837. Interstate agreements

The consent of the Congress is hereby given to any two or more States to enter into agreements or compacts, not in conflict with any law of the United States, for cooperative efforts and mutual

assistance in support of activities authorized under this subchapter as they pertain to interstate areas and to localities within such States, and to establish such agencies, joint or otherwise, as they may deem desirable for making such agreements and compacts effective.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §287, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4127.)

§12838. Environmental review

(a) In general

In order to assure that the policies of the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 [42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq.] and other provisions of law which further the purposes of such Act (as specified in regulations issued by the Secretary) are most effectively implemented in connection with the expenditure of funds under this subchapter, and to assure to the public undiminished protection of the environment, the Secretary, in lieu of the environmental protection procedures otherwise applicable, may under regulations provide for the release of funds for particular projects to jurisdictions or insular areas under this subchapter who assume all of the responsibilities for environmental review, decisionmaking, and action pursuant to such Act, and such other provisions of law as the regulations of the Secretary specify, that would apply to the Secretary were he to undertake such projects as Federal projects. The Secretary shall issue regulations to carry out this section only after consultation with the Council on Environmental Quality. The regulations shall provide—

(1) for the monitoring of the environmental reviews performed under this section;

(2) in the discretion of the Secretary, to facilitate training for the performance of such reviews; and

(3) for the suspension or termination of the assumption under this section.

The Secretary's duty under the preceding sentence shall not be construed to limit or reduce any responsibility assumed by a State or unit of general local government with respect to any particular release of funds.

(b) Procedure

The Secretary shall approve the release of funds subject to the procedures authorized by this section only if, at least 15 days prior to such approval and prior to any commitment of funds to such projects [1] the jurisdiction or insular area has submitted to the Secretary a request for such release accompanied by a certification which meets the requirements of subsection (c). The Secretary's approval of any such certification shall be deemed to satisfy his responsibilities under the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 [42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq.] and such other provisions of law as the regulations of the Secretary specify insofar as those responsibilities relate to the releases of funds for projects to be carried out pursuant thereto which are covered by such certification.

(c) Certification

A certification under the procedures authorized by this section shall—

(1) be in a form acceptable to the Secretary,

(2) be executed by the chief executive officer or other officer of the recipient of assistance under this subchapter qualified under regulations of the Secretary,

(3) specify that the recipient of assistance under this subchapter has fully carried out its responsibilities as described under subsection (a), and

(4) specify that the certifying officer (A) consents to assume the status of a responsible Federal official under the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 [42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq.] and each provision of law specified in regulations issued by the Secretary insofar as the provisions of such Act or other such provision of law apply pursuant to subsection (a), and (B) is authorized and consents on behalf of the jurisdiction or insular area and himself to accept the jurisdiction of the Federal courts for the purpose of enforcement of his responsibilities as such an official.

(d) Assistance to units of general local government from a State

In the case of assistance to units of general local government from a State, the State shall perform those actions of the Secretary described in subsection (b) and the performance of such actions shall be deemed to satisfy the Secretary's responsibilities referred to in the second sentence of such subsection.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §288, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4127; Pub. L. 103–233, title II, §206, Apr. 11, 1994, 108 Stat. 365; Pub. L. 104–330, title V, §505(a)(2), Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4044.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b), and (c)(4), is Pub. L. 91–190, Jan. 1, 1970, 83 Stat. 852, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 55 (§4321 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4321 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–330, §505(a)(2)(A), struck out ", Indian tribes," after "projects to jurisdictions" in introductory provisions.

Subsecs. (b), (c)(4). Pub. L. 104–330, §505(a)(2)(B), (C), struck out ", Indian tribe," after "the jurisdiction".

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–233, §206(1), substituted "jurisdictions, Indian tribes, or insular areas" for "participating jurisdictions" and inserted before period at end "The regulations shall provide—

"(1) for the monitoring of the environmental reviews performed under this section;

"(2) in the discretion of the Secretary, to facilitate training for the performance of such reviews; and

"(3) for the suspension or termination of the assumption under this section.

The Secretary's duty under the preceding sentence shall not be construed to limit or reduce any responsibility assumed by a State or unit of general local government with respect to any particular release of funds."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–233, §206(2), substituted "jurisdiction, Indian tribe, or insular area" for "participating jurisdiction".

Subsec. (c)(4)(B). Pub. L. 103–233, §206(3), substituted "jurisdiction, Indian tribe, or insular area" for "participating jurisdiction".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103–233, §206(4), substituted "Assistance to units of general local government from a State" for "Assistance to a State" in heading and "In the case of assistance to units of general local government from a State" for "In the case of assistance to States" in text.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–330 effective Oct. 1, 1997, except as otherwise expressly provided, see section 107 of Pub. L. 104–330, set out as an Effective Date note under section 4101 of Title 25, Indians.

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–330 applicable with respect to amounts made available for assistance under this subchapter for fiscal year 1998 and fiscal years thereafter, see section 505(b) of Pub. L. 104–330, set out as a note under section 12747 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–233 applicable with respect to any amounts made available to carry out this subchapter after Apr. 11, 1994, and any amounts made available to carry out this subchapter before that date that remain uncommitted on that date, with Secretary to issue any regulations necessary to carry out such amendment not later than end of 45-day period beginning on that date, see section 209 of Pub. L. 103–233, set out as a note under section 5301 of this title.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.*

§12839. Termination of existing housing programs

(a) In general

Except with respect to projects and programs for which binding commitments have been entered into prior to October 1, 1991, no new grants or loans shall be made after October 1, 1991, under—

(1) section 17 of the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437o];

(2) section 312 of the Housing Act of 1964 [42 U.S.C. 1452b];

(3) title VI of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1987;

(4) section 8(e)(2) of the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437f(e)(2)], except for funds allocated under such section for single room occupancy dwellings as authorized by title IV of the McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act [42 U.S.C. 11360 et seq.]; and

(5) section 810 of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974 [12 U.S.C. 1706e].

(b) Repeals

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (2), effective on October 1, 1991, the provisions of law referred to in subsection (a) are repealed.

(2) No effect on SRO program

The provision of law referred to in subsection (a)(4) shall remain in effect with respect to single room occupancy dwellings as authorized by title IV of the McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act [42 U.S.C. 11360 et seq.].

(c) Disposition of repayments

Any amounts received on or after October 1, 1991, as repayments or recaptures in connection with the programs referred to in subsection (a) and any other amounts for such programs that remain or become unobligated on or after such date, shall be paid into the general fund of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §289, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4128; Pub. L. 106–400, §2, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1675.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Title VI of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1987 [Pub. L. 100–242], referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is set out as a note under section 1715l of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

The McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(4) and (b)(2), is Pub. L. 100–77, July 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 482. Title IV of the Act is classified generally to subchapter IV (§11360 et seq.) of chapter 119 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 11301 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsecs. (a)(4), (b)(2). Pub. L. 106–400 substituted "McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act" for "Stewart B. McKinney Homeless Assistance Act".

§12840. Suspension of requirements for disaster areas

For funds designated under this subchapter by a recipient to address the damage in an area for which the President has declared a disaster under title IV of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act [42 U.S.C. 5170 et seq.], the Secretary may suspend all statutory requirements for purposes of assistance under this subchapter for that area, except for those related to public notice of funding availability, nondiscrimination, fair housing, labor standards, environmental standards, and low-income housing affordability.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title II, §290, as added Pub. L. 103–233, title II, §208, Apr. 11, 1994, 108 Stat. 366.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 93–288, May 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 143, as amended. Title IV of the Act is classified generally to subchapter IV (§5170 et seq.) of chapter 68 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5121 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section applicable with respect to any amounts made available to carry out this subchapter after Apr. 11,

1994, and any amounts made available to carry out this subchapter before that date that remain uncommitted on that date, with Secretary to issue any regulations necessary to carry out this section not later than end of 45-day period beginning on that date, see section 209 of Pub. L. 103–233, set out as an Effective Date of 1994 Amendment note under section 5301 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER III—NATIONAL HOMEOWNERSHIP TRUST DEMONSTRATION

§12851. National Homeownership Trust

(a) Establishment

There is established the National Homeownership Trust, which shall be in the Department of Housing and Urban Development and shall provide assistance to first-time homebuyers in accordance with this subchapter.

(b) Board of Directors

The Trust shall be governed by a Board of Directors, which shall be composed of—

(1) the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, who shall be the chairperson of the Board;

(2) the Secretary of the Treasury;

(3) the chairperson of the Board of Directors of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

(4) the chairperson of the Federal Housing Finance Board;

(5) the chairperson of the Board of Directors of the Federal National Mortgage Association;

(6) the chairperson of the Board of Directors of the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation; and

(7) 1 individual representing consumer interests, who shall be appointed by the President of the United States, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

(c) Powers of Trust

The Trust shall have the same powers as the powers given the Government National Mortgage Association in section 1723a(a) of title 12.

(d) Travel and per diem

Members of the Board of Directors shall receive no additional compensation by reason of service on the Board, but shall be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as provided for employees of the Federal Government or in the same manner as persons employed intermittently in the Government service are allowed under section 5703 of title 5, as appropriate.

(e) Director and staff

(1) Director

The Board of Directors may appoint an executive director of the Trust and fix the compensation of the executive director, which shall be paid from amounts in the National Homeownership Trust Fund.

(2) Staff

Subject to such rules as the Board of Directors may prescribe, the Trust may appoint and hire such staff and provide for offices as may be necessary to carry out its duties. The Trust may fix the compensation of the staff, which shall be paid from amounts in the National Homeownership Trust Fund.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title III, §302, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4129.)

SHORT TITLE

For short title of this subchapter as the "National Homeownership Trust Act", see Short Title note set out under section 12701 of this title.

§12852. Assistance for first-time homebuyers

(a) In general

The Trust shall provide assistance payments for first-time homebuyers (including homebuyers buying shares in limited equity cooperatives) in the following manners:

(1) Interest rate buydowns

Assistance payments so that the rate of interest payable on the mortgages by the homebuyers does not exceed 6 percent.

(2) Downpayment assistance

Assistance payments to provide amounts for downpayments (including closing costs and other costs payable at the time of closing) on mortgages for such homebuyers.

(3) Assistance in connection with mortgage revenue bonds financing

Interest rate buydowns and downpayment assistance in the manner provided in subsection (e).

(4) Second mortgage assistance

Assistance payments to provide loans (secured by second mortgages) with deferred payment of interest and principal; and [1]

(5) Capitalization of revolving loan funds

Grants to public organizations or agencies to establish revolving loan funds to provide homeownership assistance to eligible first-time homebuyers consistent with the requirements of this subchapter. Such grants shall be matched by an equal amount of local investment in such revolving loan funds. Any proceeds or repayments from loans made under this paragraph shall be returned to the revolving loan fund established under this paragraph to be used for purposes related to this section.

(b) Eligibility requirements

Assistance payments under this subchapter may be made only to homebuyers and for mortgages meeting the following requirements:

(1) First-time homebuyer

The homebuyer is an individual who—

(A) (and whose spouse) has had no ownership in a principal residence during the 3-year period ending on the date of purchase of the property with respect to which assistance payments are made under this subchapter;

(B) is a displaced homemaker who, except for owning a home with his or her spouse or residing in a home owned by the spouse, meets the requirements of subparagraph (A);

(C) is a single parent who, except for owning a home with his or her spouse or residing in a home owned by the spouse while married, meets the requirements of subparagraph (A); or

(D) meets the requirements of subparagraph (A), (B), or (C), except for owning, as a principal residence, a dwelling unit whose structure is—

(i) not permanently affixed to a permanent foundation in accordance with local or other applicable regulations; or

(ii) not in compliance with State, local, or model building codes, or other applicable codes, and cannot be brought into compliance with such codes for less than the cost of constructing a permanent structure.

(2) Maximum income of homebuyer

The aggregate annual income of the homebuyer and the members of the family of the homebuyer residing with the homebuyer, for the 12-month period preceding the date of the

application of the homebuyer for assistance under this subchapter, does not exceed—

(A) 95 percent of the median income for a family of 4 persons (adjusted by family size) in the applicable metropolitan statistical area (or such other area that the Board of Directors determines for areas outside of metropolitan statistical areas); or

(B) 115 percent of such median income (adjusted by family size) in the case of an area that is subject to a high cost area mortgage limit under title II of the National Housing Act [12 U.S.C. 1707 et seq.].

The Board of Directors shall provide for certification of such income for purposes of initial eligibility for assistance payments under this subchapter and shall provide for recertification of homebuyers (and families of homebuyers) so assisted not less than every 2 years thereafter.

(3) Certification

The homebuyer (and spouse, where applicable) shall certify that the homebuyer has made a good faith effort to obtain a market rate mortgage and has been denied because the annual income of the homebuyer and the members of the family of the homebuyer residing with the homebuyer is insufficient.

(4) Principal residence

The property securing the mortgage is a single-family residence or unit in a cooperative and is the principal residence of the homebuyer.

(5) Maximum mortgage amount

The principal obligation of the mortgage does not exceed the principal amount that could be insured with respect to the property under the National Housing Act [12 U.S.C. 1701 et seq.].

(6) Maximum interest rate

The interest payable on the mortgage is established at a fixed rate that does not exceed a maximum rate of interest established by the Trust taking into consideration prevailing interest rates on similar mortgages.

(7) Responsible mortgagee

The mortgage has been made to, and is held by, a mortgagee that is federally insured or that is otherwise approved by the Trust as responsible and able to service the mortgage properly.

(8) Minimum downpayment

For a first-time homebuyer to receive downpayment assistance under subsection (a)(2), the homebuyer shall have paid not less than 1 percent of the cost of acquisition of the property (excluding any mortgage insurance premium paid at the time the mortgage is insured), as such cost is estimated by the Board of Directors.

(c) Terms of assistance

(1) Security

Assistance payments under this subchapter shall be secured by a lien on the property involved. The lien shall be subordinate to all mortgages existing on the property on the date on which the first assistance payment is made.

(2) Repayment upon sale

Assistance payments under this subchapter shall be repayable from the net proceeds of the sale, without interest, upon the sale of the property for which the assistance payments are made. If the sale results in no net proceeds or the net proceeds are insufficient to repay the amount of the assistance payments in full, the Board of Directors shall release the lien to the extent that the debt secured by the lien remains unpaid.

(3) Repayment upon increased income

If the aggregate annual income of the homebuyer (and family of the homebuyer) assisted under this subchapter exceeds the applicable maximum income allowable under subsection (b)(2) for

any 2-year period after such assistance is provided, the Board of Directors may provide for the repayment, on a monthly basis, of all or a portion of such assistance payments, based on the amount of assistance provided and the income of the homebuyer (and family of the homebuyer).

(4) Repayment if property ceases to be principal residence

If the property for which assistance payments are made ceases to be the principal residence of the first-time homebuyer (or the family of the homebuyer), the Board of Directors may provide for the repayment of all or a portion of the assistance payments.

(5) Available assistance

The Trust may make assistance payments under paragraphs (1) and (2) of subsection (a) with respect to a single mortgage of an eligible homebuyer.

(d) Allocation formula

Amounts available in any fiscal year for assistance under this subchapter shall be allocated for homebuyers in each State on the basis of the need of eligible first-time homebuyers in each State for such assistance in comparison with the need of eligible first-time homebuyers for such assistance among all States.

(e) Assistance in connection with housing financed with mortgage revenue bonds

(1) Authority

The Trust shall provide assistance for first-time homebuyers in the form of interest rate buydowns and downpayment assistance under this subsection. Such assistance shall be available only with respect to mortgages for the purchase of residences (A) financed with the proceeds of a qualified mortgage bond (as such term is defined in section 143 of title 26), or (B) for which a credit is allowable under section 25 of title 26.

(2) Eligibility

To be eligible for assistance under this subsection, homebuyers and mortgages shall also meet the requirements under subsection (b) of this section, except that—

(A) the certification under subsection (b)(3) shall not be required for assistance under this subsection;

(B) the provisions of subsection (b)(2) shall not apply to assistance under this section; and

(C) the aggregate income of the homebuyer and the members of the family of the homebuyer residing with the homebuyer, for the 12-month period preceding the date of the application of the homebuyer for assistance under this subsection, shall not exceed 80 percent of the median income for a family of 4 persons (as adjusted for family size) in the applicable metropolitan statistical area.

(3) Limitation of assistance

Notwithstanding subsection (a), assistance payments for first-time homebuyers under this subsection shall be provided in the following manners:

(A) Interest rate buydowns

Assistance payments to decrease the rate of interest payable on the mortgages by the homebuyers, in an amount not exceeding—

(i) in the first year of the mortgage, 2.0 percent of the total principal obligation of the mortgage;

(ii) in the second year of the mortgage, 1.5 percent of the total principal obligation of the mortgage;

(iii) in the third year of the mortgage, 1.0 percent of the total principal obligation of the mortgage; and

(iv) in the fourth year of the mortgage, 0.5 percent of the total principal obligation of the mortgage.

(B) Downpayment assistance

Assistance payments to provide amounts for downpayments on mortgages by the homebuyers, in an amount not exceeding 2.5 percent of the principal obligation of the mortgage.

(3) [2] Availability

The Trust may make assistance payments under subparagraphs (A) and (B) of paragraph (3) with respect to a single mortgage of a homebuyer.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title III, §303, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4130; Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §182(c)–(e), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3737, 3738.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Housing Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(B), (5), is act June 27, 1934, ch. 847, 48 Stat. 1246, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 13 (§1701 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. Title II of the Act is classified principally to subchapter II (§1707 et seq.) of chapter 13 of Title 12. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1701 of Title 12 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 102–550, §182(c)(2), added par. (3).
Subsec. (a)(4), (5). Pub. L. 102–550, §182(e), added pars. (4) and (5).
Subsec. (b)(1)(D). Pub. L. 102–550, §182(d), added subpar. (D).
Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 102–550, §182(c)(1), added subsec. (e).

[1] So in original. The "; and" probably should be a period.

[2] So in original. Probably should be "(4)".

§12853. National Homeownership Trust Fund

(a) Establishment

There is established in the Treasury of the United States a revolving fund, to be known as the National Homeownership Trust Fund.

(b) Assets

The Fund shall consist of—

(1) any amount approved in appropriation Acts under section 12857 of this title for purposes of carrying out this subchapter;

(2) any amount received by the Trust as repayment for payments made under this subchapter; and

(3) any amount received by the Trust under subsection (d).

(c) Use of amounts

The Fund shall, to the extent approved in appropriations Acts, be available to the Trust for purposes of carrying out this subchapter.

(d) Investment of excess amounts

Any amounts in the Fund determined by the Trust to be in excess of the amounts currently required to carry out the provisions of this subchapter shall be invested by the Trust in obligations of, or obligations guaranteed as to both principal and interest by, the United States or any agency of the United States.

(e) Demonstration programs

Using not more than $20,000,000 of any amounts appropriated for the Fund under section 12857 of this title in fiscal year 1991, the Secretary shall carry out demonstration programs for combining housing activities and economic development activities, as follows:

(1) In Milwaukee, Wisconsin, in an amount not to exceed $4,200,000, for development,

rehabilitation, and revitalization of 2 vacant structures in a blighted minority neighborhood.

(2) In Washington, District of Columbia, in an amount not to exceed $10,000,000, for nonprofit neighborhood-based groups to acquire and rehabilitate vacant public and private housing for resale or rent to low- and moderate-income families and to the extent of and subject to engage in neighborhood-based economic development activities.

(3) In Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, in an amount not to exceed $1,000,000, for technical assistance and organizational support for a community development corporation that is a city-wide public/private partnership engaged in the provision of technical assistance to neighborhood community development corporations.

(4) In other areas, as the Secretary may determine.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title III, §304, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4132.)

§12854. Definitions

For purposes of this subchapter:

(1) Board of Directors

The term "Board of Directors" or "Board" means the Board of Directors of the National Homeownership Trust under section 12851(b) of this title.

(2) Displaced homemaker

The term "displaced homemaker" means an individual who—

(A) is an adult;

(B) has not worked full-time full-year in the labor force for a number of years, but has during such years, worked primarily without remuneration to care for the home and family; and

(C) is unemployed or underemployed and is experiencing difficulty in obtaining or upgrading employment.

(3) Fund

The term "Fund" means the National Homeownership Trust Fund established in section 12853 of this title.

(4) Single parent

The term "single parent" means an individual who—

(A) is unmarried or legally separated from a spouse; and

(B)(i) has 1 or more minor children for whom the individual has custody or joint custody; or

(ii) is pregnant.

(5) State

The term "State" means the States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, Guam, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, and any other territory or possession of the United States.

(6) Trust

The term "Trust" means the National Homeownership Trust established in section 12851 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title III, §305, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4132.)

TERMINATION OF TRUST TERRITORY OF THE PACIFIC ISLANDS

For termination of Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, see note set out preceding section 1681 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions.

§12855. Regulations

The Board of Directors shall issue any regulations necessary to carry out this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title III, §306, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4133.)

§12856. Report

The Board of Directors shall submit to the Congress, not later than the expiration of the 90-day period beginning on the date of the termination of the Trust under section 12859 of this title, a report containing a description of the activities of the Trust and an analysis of the effectiveness of the Trust in assisting first-time homebuyers.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title III, §307, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4133.)

§12857. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for assistance payments under this subchapter $520,665,600 for fiscal year 1993 and $542,533,555 for fiscal year 1994, of which such sums as may be necessary shall be available in each such fiscal year for use under section 12852(e) of this title. Any amount appropriated under this section shall be deposited in the Fund and shall remain available until expended, subject to the provisions of section 12858 [1] of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title III, §308, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4133; Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §182(b), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3736.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12858 of this title, referred to in text, was in the original "section 311", and was translated as reading "section 309", meaning section 309 of Pub. L. 101–625, to reflect the probable intent of Congress, because Pub. L. 101–625 does not contain a section 311.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102–550 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subchapter $250,000,000 for fiscal year 1991 and $521,500,000 for fiscal year 1992. Any amount appropriated under this section shall be deposited in the Fund and remain available until expended, subject to the provisions of section 12858 of this title."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12858. Transition

(a) Authority of Secretary

Upon the termination of the Trust as provided in section 12859 of this title, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall exercise any authority of the Board of Directors and the Trust in accordance with the provisions of this subchapter as may be necessary to provide for the conclusion of the outstanding affairs of the Trust.

(b) Applicability of Trust provisions

Any assistance under this subchapter shall, after termination of the Trust, be subject to the provisions of this subchapter that would have applied to such assistance if the termination had not occurred.

(c) Certification of Fund to Treasury

Upon a determination by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development that the National Homeownership Trust Fund is no longer necessary, the Secretary shall certify any amounts remaining in the Fund to the Secretary of the Treasury and the Secretary of the Treasury shall deposit into the general fund of the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts any amounts remaining in the Fund.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title III, §309, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4133.)

§12859. Termination

The Trust shall terminate September 30, 1994.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title III, §310, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4133; Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §182(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3736.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102–550 substituted "September 30, 1994" for "on September 30, 1993".

SUBCHAPTER IV—HOPE FOR HOMEOWNERSHIP OF MULTIFAMILY AND SINGLE FAMILY HOMES

§12870. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Fiscal year 1993

There are authorized to be appropriated for grants under this title [1] $855,000,000 for fiscal year 1993, of which—

(1) $285,000,000 shall be available for activities authorized under title III of the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437aaa et seq.], of which up to $4,500,000 of any amounts appropriated may be made available for technical assistance to potential applicants, applicants and recipients of assistance under this [2] title;

(2) $285,000,000 shall be available for activities authorized under part A, of which up to $3,250,000 of any amounts appropriated may be made available for technical assistance to potential applicants, applicants and recipients of assistance under this [2] part; and

(3) $285,000,000 shall be available for activities under part B, of which up to $2,250,000 of any amounts appropriated may be made available for technical assistance to potential applicants, applicants and recipients of assistance under this [2] part.

Any amount appropriated pursuant to this subsection shall remain available until expended.

(b) Fiscal year 1994

There are authorized to be appropriated for grants under this title [1] $883,641,000 for fiscal year 1994, of which—

(1) $294,547,000 shall be available for activities authorized under title III of the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437aaa et seq.], up to $4,500,000 of which may be made available for technical assistance to potential applicants, applicants and recipients of assistance under this [2] title;

(2) $294,547,000 shall be available for activities authorized under part A, up to $3,250,000 of which may be made available for technical assistance to potential applicants, applicants and recipients of assistance under this [2] part; and

(3) $294,547,000 shall be available for activities under part B, up to $2,250,000 of which may be made available for technical assistance to potential applicants, applicants and recipients of assistance under this [2] part.

Any amount appropriated pursuant to this subsection shall remain available until expended.

(c) Technical assistance

Technical assistance made available under title III of the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437aaa et seq.] or part A or part B of this subchapter may include, but shall not be limited to, training, clearinghouse services, the collection, processing and dissemination of program information useful for local and national program management, and provision of seed money. Such technical assistance may be made available directly, or indirectly under contracts and grants, as appropriate. In any fiscal year, no single applicant, potential applicant, or recipient under title III of the United States Housing Act of 1937, or part A or part B of this subchapter may receive technical assistance in an amount exceeding 20 percent of the total amount made available for technical assistance under such title or part for the fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §402, as added Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §181(a)(1), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3734; amended Pub. L. 109–281, §2(d)(3), Sept. 22, 2006, 120 Stat. 1181.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in introductory provisions of subsecs. (a) and (b), is title IV of Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4148, known as the Homeownership and Opportunity Through HOPE Act, which enacted this subchapter and subchapter II–A (§1437aaa et seq.) of chapter 8 of this title, amended sections 1437c, 1437f, 1437l, 1437p, 1437r, and 1437s of this title and section 1709 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 1437c, 1437aa, and 1437aaa of this title. For complete classification of title IV to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1437aaa of this title and Tables.

The United States Housing Act of 1937, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (b)(1), and (c), is act Sept. 1, 1937, ch. 896, as revised generally by Pub. L. 93–383, title II, §201(a), Aug. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 653. Title III of the Act is classified generally to subchapter II–A (§1437aaa et seq.) of chapter 8 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1437 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–281 struck out the second sentence, which read as follows: "Of the amounts appropriated pursuant to this subsection, up to $40,000,000, but not less than 5 percent, shall be available for activities authorized under part C of this subchapter."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 109–281 struck out the second sentence, which read as follows: "Of the amounts appropriated pursuant to this subsection, up to $41,680,000, but not less than 5 percent, shall be available for activities authorized under part C of this subchapter."

GAO AUDIT OF TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE CONTRACTS

Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §181(a)(3), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3735, provided that: "The Comptroller General of the United States shall conduct an audit of all of the technical assistance contracts awarded for fiscal years 1993 and 1994 pursuant to section 402 of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 12870]. The Comptroller General shall submit a report to the Congress describing the results of such audit not later than September 30, 1994."

[1] See References in Text note below.

[2] So in original. Probably should be "such".

PART A—HOPE FOR HOMEOWNERSHIP OF MULTIFAMILY UNITS

§12871. Program authority

(a) In general

The Secretary is authorized to make—

(1) planning grants to enable applicants to develop homeownership programs; and

(2) implementation grants to enable applicants to carry out homeownership programs.

(b) Authority to reserve housing assistance

In connection with a grant under this part, the Secretary may reserve authority to provide assistance under section 1437f of this title to the extent necessary to provide rental assistance for a nonpurchasing tenant who resides in the project on the date the Secretary approves the application for an implementation grant, for use by the tenant in another project.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §421, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4162; Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §181(a)(2)(B)(i), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3735.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle B (§§421–431) of title IV of Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4162, which enacted this part and amended section 1709 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 102–550 struck out subsec. (c) which read as follows: "AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There is authorized to be appropriated for grants under this part $51,000,000 for fiscal year 1991 and $280,000,000 for fiscal year 1992. Any amounts appropriated pursuant to this subsection shall remain available until expended."

§12872. Planning grants

(a) Grants

The Secretary is authorized to make planning grants to applicants for the purpose of developing homeownership programs under this part. The amount of a planning grant under this section may not exceed $200,000, except that the Secretary may for good cause approve a grant in a higher amount.

(b) Eligible activities

Planning grants may be used for activities to develop homeownership programs (which may include programs for cooperative ownership), including—

(1) development of resident management corporations and resident councils;

(2) training and technical assistance of applicants related to the development of a specific homeownership program;

(3) studies of the feasibility of a homeownership program;

(4) inspection for lead-based paint hazards, as required by section 4822(a) of this title;

(5) preliminary architectural and engineering work;

(6) tenant and homebuyer counseling and training;

(7) planning for economic development, job training, and self-sufficiency activities that promote economic self-sufficiency for homebuyers and homeowners under the homeownership program;

(8) development of security plans; and

(9) preparation of an application for an implementation grant under this part.

(c) Application

(1) Form and procedures

An application for a planning grant shall be submitted by an applicant in such form and in accordance with such procedures as the Secretary shall establish.

(2) Minimum requirements

The Secretary shall require that an application contain at a minimum—

(A) a request for a planning grant, specifying the activities proposed to be carried out, the schedule for completing the activities, the personnel necessary to complete the activities, and the amount of the grant requested;

(B) a description of the applicant and a statement of its qualifications;

(C) identification and description of the eligible property involved, and a description of the composition of the tenants, including family size and income;

(D) a certification by the public official responsible for submitting the comprehensive housing affordability strategy under section 12705 of this title that the proposed activities are consistent with the approved housing strategy of the State or unit of general local government within which the project is located (or, during the first 12 months after November 28, 1990, that the application is consistent with such other existing State or local housing plan or strategy that the Secretary shall determine to be appropriate); and

(E) a certification that the applicant will comply with the requirements of the Fair Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 3601 et seq.], title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 [42 U.S.C. 2000d et seq.], section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 [29 U.S.C. 794], and the Age Discrimination Act of 1975 [42 U.S.C. 6101 et seq.], and will affirmatively further fair housing.

(d) Selection criteria

The Secretary shall, by regulation, establish selection criteria for a national competition for assistance under this section, which shall include—

(1) the qualifications or potential capabilities of the applicant;

(2) the extent of tenant interest in the development of a homeownership program for the property;

(3) the potential of the applicant for developing a successful and affordable homeownership program and the suitability of the property for homeownership;

(4) national geographic diversity among housing for which applicants are selected to receive assistance; and

(5) such other factors that the Secretary shall require that (in the determination of the Secretary) are appropriate for purposes of carrying out the program established by this part in an effective and efficient manner.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §422, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4162; Pub. L. 102–550, title X, §1012(i)(1), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3906.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Fair Housing Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(E), is title VIII of Pub. L. 90–284, Apr. 11, 1968, 82 Stat. 81, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter I (§3601 et seq.) of chapter 45 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

The Civil Rights Act of 1964, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(E), is Pub. L. 88–352, July 2, 1964, 78 Stat. 241, as amended. Title VI of the Act is classified generally to subchapter V (§2000d et seq.) of chapter 21 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2000a of this title and Tables.

The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(E), is title III of Pub. L. 94–135, Nov. 28, 1975, 89 Stat. 728, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 76 (§6101 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6101 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (b)(4) to (9). Pub. L. 102–550 added par. (4) and redesignated former pars. (4) to (8) as (5) to (9), respectively.

§12873. Implementation grants

(a) Grants

The Secretary is authorized to make implementation grants to applicants for the purpose of carrying out homeownership programs approved under this part.

(b) Eligible activities

Implementation grants may be used for activities to carry out homeownership programs (including programs for cooperative ownership), including the following activities:

(1) Architectural and engineering work.

(2) Acquisition of the eligible property for the purpose of transferring ownership to eligible families in accordance with a homeownership program that meets the requirements under this part.

(3) Rehabilitation of any property covered by the homeownership program, in accordance with standards established by the Secretary.

(4) Abatement of lead-based paint hazards, as required by section 4822(a) of this title.

(5) Administrative costs of the applicant, which may not exceed 15 percent of the amount of the assistance provided under this section.

(6) Development of resident management corporations and resident management councils, but only if the applicant has not received assistance under section 12872 [1] of this title for such activities.

(7) Counseling and training of homebuyers and homeowners under the homeownership program.

(8) Relocation of tenants who elect to move.

(9) Any necessary temporary relocation of tenants during rehabilitation.

(10) Planning for establishment of for- or not-for-profit small businesses by or on behalf of residents, job training, and other activities that promote economic self-sufficiency of homebuyers and homeowners of the property covered by the homeownership program and economic development of the neighborhood.

(11) Funding of operating expenses and replacement reserves of the property covered by the homeownership program.

(12) Legal fees.

(13) Defraying costs for the ongoing training needs of the recipient that are related to developing and carrying out the homeownership program.

(14) Economic development activities that promote economic self-sufficiency of homebuyers, residents, and homeowners under the homeownership program.

(c) Matching funding

(1) In general

Each recipient shall assure that contributions equal to not less than 33 percent of the grant amounts made available under this section, excluding any amounts provided for post-sale operating expense, shall be provided from non-Federal sources to carry out the homeownership program.

(2) Form

Such contributions may be in the form of—

(A) cash contributions from non-Federal resources, which may not include funds from a grant made under section 5306(b) or section 5306(d) of this title;

(B) payment of administrative expenses, as defined by the Secretary, from non-Federal resources, including funds from a grant made under section 5306(b) or section 5306(d) of this title;

(C) the value of taxes, fees, or other charges that are normally and customarily imposed but are waived, foregone, or deferred in a manner that facilitates the implementation of a homeownership program assisted under this part;

(D) the value of land or other real property as appraised according to procedures acceptable to the Secretary;

(E) the value of investment in on-site and off-site infrastructure required for a homeownership program assisted under this part; or

(F) such other in-kind contributions as the Secretary may approve.

Contributions for administrative expenses shall be recognized only up to an amount equal to 7 percent of the total amount of grants made available under this section.

(d) [2] Application

(1) Form and procedure

An application for an implementation grant shall be submitted by an applicant in such form and in accordance with such procedures as the Secretary shall establish.

(2) Minimum requirements

The Secretary shall require that an application contain at a minimum—

(A) a request for an implementation grant, specifying the amount of the grant requested and its proposed uses;

(B) if applicable, an application for assistance under section 1437f of this title, specifying the proposed uses of such assistance and the period during which the assistance will be needed;

(C) a description of the qualifications and experience of the applicant in providing low-income housing;

(D) a description of the proposed homeownership program, consistent with section 12874 [3] of this title and the other requirements of this part, specifying the activities proposed to be carried out and their estimated costs, identifying reasonable schedules for carrying it out, and demonstrating the program will comply with the affordability requirements under section 12874(b) [3] of this title;

(E) identification and description of the property involved, and a description of the composition of the tenants, including family size and income;

(F) a description of and commitment for the resources that are expected to be made available to provide the matching funding required under subsection (c) and of other resources that are expected to be made available in support of the homeownership program;

(G) identification and description of the financing proposed for any (i) rehabilitation and (ii) acquisition (I) of the property, by an entity for transfer to eligible families, and (II) by eligible families of ownership interests in, or shares representing, units in the project;

(H) the proposed sales price, the basis for such price determination, and terms to an entity, if any, that will purchase the property for resale to eligible families;

(I) the proposed sales prices, if any, and terms to eligible families;

(J) any proposed restrictions on the resale of units under a homeownership program;

(K) identification and description of the entity that will operate and manage the property;

(L) a certification by the public official responsible for submitting the comprehensive housing affordability strategy under section 12705 of this title that the proposed activities are consistent with the approved housing strategy of the State or unit of general local government within which the project is located (or, during the first 12 months after November 28, 1990, that the application is consistent with such other existing State or local housing plan or strategy that the Secretary shall determine to be appropriate); and

(M) a certification that the applicant will comply with the requirements of the Fair Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 3601 et seq.], title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 [42 U.S.C. 2000d et seq.], section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 [29 U.S.C. 794], and the Age Discrimination Act of 1975 [42 U.S.C. 6101 et seq.], and will affirmatively further fair housing.

(d) [4] Selection criteria

The Secretary shall establish selection criteria for assistance under this section, which shall include—

(1) the qualifications or potential capabilities of the applicant;

(2) the feasibility of the homeownership program;

(3) the extent of tenant interest in the development of a homeownership program for the property;

(4) the potential for developing an affordable homeownership program and the suitability of the property for homeownership;

(5) national geographic diversity among housing for which applicants are selected to receive assistance;

(6) the extent to which a sufficient supply of affordable rental housing of the type assisted under

this title [5] exists in the locality, so that the implementation of the homeownership program will not appreciably reduce the number of such rental units available to residents currently residing in such units or eligible for residency in such units; and

(7) such other factors as the Secretary determines to be appropriate for purposes of carrying out the program established by the [6] part in an effective and efficient manner.

(e) Approval

The Secretary shall notify each applicant, not later than 6 months after the date of the submission of the application, whether the application is approved or not approved. The Secretary may approve the application for an implementation grant with a statement that the application for the section 8 [42 U.S.C. 1437f] assistance for residents of the project not purchasing units is conditionally approved, subject to the availability of appropriations in subsequent fiscal years.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §423, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4163; Pub. L. 102–550, title X, §1012(i)(2), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3906.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12872 of this title, referred to in subsec. (b)(6), was in the original "section 322" and was translated as reading "section 422", meaning section 422 of Pub. L. 101–625, to reflect the probable intent of Congress. Section 322 of Pub. L. 101–625 amended section 1708 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Section 12874 of this title and section 12874(b) of this title, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(D), were in the original "section 324" and "section 324(b)", respectively, and were translated as reading "section 424" and "section 424(b)", respectively, meaning section 424 of Pub. L. 101–625, to reflect the probable intent of Congress. Section 324 of Pub. L. 101–625, which proposed an amendment to section 1709 of Title 12, never took effect pursuant to section 351 of Pub. L. 101–625. Such section 324 did not contain a subsec. (b).

The Fair Housing Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(M), is title VIII of Pub. L. 90–284, Apr. 11, 1968, 82 Stat. 81, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter I (§3601 et seq.) of chapter 45 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

The Civil Rights Act of 1964, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(M), is Pub. L. 88–352, July 2, 1964, 78 Stat. 241, as amended. Title VI of the Act is classified generally to subchapter V (§2000d et seq.) of chapter 21 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2000a of this title and Tables.

The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(M), is title III of Pub. L. 94–135, Nov. 28, 1975, 89 Stat. 728, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 76 (§6101 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6101 of this title and Tables.

This title, referred to in subsec. (d)(6), means title IV of Pub. L. 101–625, known as the Homeownership and Opportunity Through HOPE Act, and probably should have been "this subtitle", meaning subtitle B (§§421–431) of title IV of Pub. L. 101–625, which is classified principally to this part. For complete classification of title IV of Pub. L. 101–625 to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1437aaa of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (b)(4) to (14). Pub. L. 102–550 added par. (4) and redesignated former pars. (4) to (13) as (5) to (14), respectively.

[1] See References in Text note below.

[2] So in original. Two subsecs. (d) have been enacted.

[3] See References in Text note below.

[4] So in original. Two subsecs. (d) have been enacted.

[5] See References in Text note below.

[6] *So in original. Probably should be "this".*

§12874. Homeownership program requirements

(a) In general

A homeownership program under this part shall provide for acquisition by eligible families of ownership interest in, or shares representing, the units in an eligible property under any arrangement determined by the Secretary to be appropriate, such as cooperative ownership (including limited equity cooperative ownership) and fee simple ownership (including condominium ownership), for occupancy by the eligible families.

(b) Affordability

A homeownership program under this part shall provide for the establishment of sales prices (including principal, insurance, taxes, and interest and closing costs) for initial acquisition of the property, and for sales to eligible families, such that the eligible family shall not be required to expend more than 30 percent of the adjusted income of the family per month to complete a sale under the homeownership program.

(c) Plan

A homeownership program under this part shall provide, and include a plan, for—

(1) identifying and selecting eligible families to participate in the homeownership program;

(2) providing relocation assistance to families who elect to move;

(3) ensuring continued affordability by tenants, homebuyers, and homeowners in the property; and

(4) providing ongoing training and counseling for homebuyers and homeowners.

(d) Acquisition and rehabilitation limitation

Acquisition or rehabilitation of a property under a homeownership program under this part may not consist of acquisition or rehabilitation of less than all of the units in the property. The provisions of this subsection may be waived upon a finding by the Secretary that the sale of less than all the buildings in a project is feasible and will not result in a hardship to any tenants of the project who are not included in the homeownership program.

(e) Financing

(1) In general

The application shall identify and describe the proposed financing for (A) any rehabilitation, and (B) acquisition (i) of the project, where applicable, by an entity for transfer to eligible families, and (ii) by eligible families of ownership interests in, or shares representing, units in the project. Financing may include use of the implementation grant, sale for cash, or other sources of financing (subject to applicable requirements), including conventional mortgage loans and mortgage loans insured under title II of the National Housing Act [12 U.S.C. 1707 et seq.].

(2) Prohibition against pledges

Property transferred under this part shall not be pledged as collateral for debt or otherwise encumbered except when the Secretary determines that—

(A) such encumbrance will not threaten the long-term availability of the property for occupancy by low-income families;

(B) neither the Federal Government nor the public housing agency will be exposed to undue risks related to action that may have to be taken pursuant to paragraph (3);

(C) any debt obligation can be serviced from project income, including operating assistance; and

(D) the proceeds of such encumbrance will be used only to meet housing standards in accordance with subsection (f) or to make such additional capital improvements as the Secretary

determines to be consistent with the purposes of this part.

(3) Opportunity to cure

Any lender that provides financing in connection with a homeownership program under this part shall give the public housing agency, resident management corporation, individual owner, or other appropriate entity a reasonable opportunity to cure a financial default before foreclosing on the property, or taking other action as a result of the default.

(f) Housing quality standards

The application shall include a plan ensuring that the unit—

(1) will be free from any defects that pose a danger to health or safety before transfer of an ownership interest in, or shares representing, a unit to an eligible family; and

(2) will, not later than 2 years after the transfer to an eligible family, meet minimum housing standards established by the Secretary for the purpose of this title.[1]

(g) Protection of nonpurchasing families

(1) In general

No tenant residing in a dwelling unit in a property on the date the Secretary approves an application for an implementation grant may be evicted by reason of a homeownership program approved under this part.

(2) Rental assistance

If a tenant decides not to purchase a unit, or is not qualified to do so, the Secretary shall, subject to the availability of appropriations, ensure that rental assistance under section 1437f of this title is available for use by each otherwise qualified tenant in that or another property.

(3) Relocation assistance

The recipient shall also inform each such tenant that if the tenant chooses to move, the recipient will pay relocation assistance in accordance with the approved homeownership program.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §424, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4166.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Housing Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(1), is act June 27, 1934, ch. 847, 48 Stat. 1246, as amended. Title II of the Act is classified principally to subchapter II (§1707 et seq.) of chapter 13 of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1701 of Title 12 and Tables.

This title, referred to in subsec. (f)(2), is title IV of Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4148, known as the Homeownership and Opportunity Through HOPE Act, which enacted this subchapter and subchapter II–A (§1437aaa et seq.) of chapter 8 of this title, amended sections 1437c, 1437f, 1437l, 1437p, 1437r, and 1437s of this title and section 1709 of Title 12, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 1437c, 1437aa, and 1437aaa of this title. For complete classification of title IV to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1437aaa of this title and Tables.

Section 1437f of this title, referred to in subsec. (g)(2), was in the original "section 8", and was translated as reading "section 8 of the United States Housing Act of 1937" to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12875. Other program requirements

(a) Preferences

In selecting eligible families for homeownership, the recipient shall give a first preference to otherwise qualified current tenants and a second preference to otherwise qualified eligible families who have completed participation in an economic self-sufficiency program specified by the Secretary.

(b) Cost limitations

The Secretary may establish cost limitations on eligible activities under this part, subject to the provisions of this part.

(c) Use of proceeds from sales to eligible families

The entity that transfers ownership interests in, or shares representing, units to eligible families, or another entity specified in the approved application, shall use the proceeds, if any, from the initial sale for costs of the homeownership program, including operating expenses, improvements to the project, business opportunities for low-income families, supportive services related to the homeownership program, additional homeownership opportunities, and other activities approved by the Secretary.

(d) Restrictions on resale by homeowners

(1) In general

(A) Transfer permitted

A homeowner under a homeownership program may transfer the homeowner's ownership interest in, or shares representing, the unit, except that a homeownership program may establish restrictions on the resale of units under the program.

(B) Right to purchase

Where a resident management corporation, resident council, or cooperative has jurisdiction over the unit, the corporation, council, or cooperative shall have the right to purchase the ownership interest in, or shares representing, the unit from the homeowner for the amount specified in a firm contract between the homeowner and a prospective buyer. If such an entity does not have jurisdiction over the unit or elects not to purchase and if the prospective buyer is not a low-income family, the public housing agency or the implementation grant recipient shall have the right to purchase the ownership interest in, or shares representing, the unit for the same amount.

(C) Promissory note required

The homeowner shall execute a promissory note equal to the difference between the market value and the purchase price, payable to the public housing agency or other entity designated in the homeownership plan, together with a mortgage securing the obligation of the note.

(2) 6 years or less

In the case of a transfer within 6 years of the acquisition under the program, the homeownership program shall provide for appropriate restrictions to assure that an eligible family may not receive any undue profit. The plan shall provide for limiting the family's consideration for its interest in the property to the total of—

(A) the contribution to equity paid by the family;

(B) the value, as determined by such means as the Secretary shall determine through regulation, of any improvements installed at the expense of the family during the family's tenure as owner; and

(C) the appreciated value determined by an inflation allowance at a rate which may be based on a cost-of-living index, an income index, or market index as determined by the Secretary through regulation and agreed to by the purchaser and the entity that transfers ownership interests in, or shares representing, units to eligible families (or another entity specified in the approved application), at the time of initial sale, and applied against the contribution to equity.

Such an entity may, at the time of initial sale, enter into an agreement with the family to set a maximum amount which this appreciation may not exceed.

(3) 6–20 years

In the case of a transfer during the period beginning 6 years after the acquisition and ending 20 years after the acquisition, the homeownership program shall provide for the recapture by the

Secretary or the program of an amount equal to the amount of the declining balance on the note described in paragraph (1)(C).

(4) Use of recaptured funds

Fifty percent of any portion of the net sales proceeds that may not be retained by the homeowner under the plan approved pursuant to this subsection shall be paid to the entity that transferred ownership interests in, or shares representing, units to eligible families, or another entity specified in the approved application, for use for improvements to the project, business opportunities for low-income families, supportive services related to the homeownership program, additional homeownership opportunities, and other activities approved by the Secretary. The remaining 50 percent shall be returned to the Secretary for use under this part, subject to limitations contained in appropriations Acts. Such entity shall keep and make available to the Secretary all records necessary to calculate accurately payments due the Secretary under this subsection.

(e) Third party rights

The requirements under this part regarding quality standards, resale, or transfer of the ownership interest of a homeowner shall be judicially enforceable against the grant recipient with respect to actions involving rehabilitation, and against purchasers of property under this subsection or their successors in interest with respect to other actions by affected low-income families, resident management corporations, resident councils, public housing agencies, and any agency, corporation, or authority of the United States Government. The parties specified in the preceding sentence shall be entitled to reasonable attorney fees upon prevailing in any such judicial action.

(f) Dollar limitation on economic development activities

Not more than an aggregate of $250,000 from amounts made available under sections 12872 and 12873 of this title may be used for economic development activities under sections 12872(b)(6) and 12873(b)(9) [1] of this title for any project.

(g) Timely homeownership

Recipients shall transfer ownership of the property to tenants within a specified period of time that the Secretary determines to be reasonable. During the interim period when the property continues to be operated and managed as rental housing, the recipient shall utilize written tenant selection policies and criteria that are approved by the Secretary as consistent with the purpose of improving housing opportunities for low-income families. The recipient shall promptly notify in writing any rejected applicant of the grounds for any rejection.

(h) Records and audit of recipients of assistance

(1) In general

Each recipient shall keep such records as may be reasonably necessary to fully disclose the amount and the disposition by such recipient of the proceeds of assistance received under this part (and any proceeds from financing obtained or sales under subsections (c) and (d)), the total cost of the homeownership program in connection with which such assistance is given or used, and the amount and nature of that portion of the program supplied by other sources, and such other sources as will facilitate an effective audit.

(2) Access by Secretary

The Secretary shall have access for the purpose of audit and examination to any books, documents, papers, and records of the recipient that are pertinent to assistance received under this part.

(3) Access by Comptroller General

The Comptroller General of the United States, or any of the duly authorized representatives of the Comptroller General, shall also have access for the purpose of audit and examination to any books, documents, papers, and records of the recipient that are pertinent to assistance received

under this part.

(i) Certain entities not eligible

Any entity that assumes, as determined by the Secretary, a mortgage covering eligible property in connection with the acquisition of the property from an owner under this section must comply with any low-income affordability restrictions for the remaining term of the mortgage. This requirement shall only apply to an entity, such as a cooperative association, that, as determined by the Secretary, intends to own the housing on a permanent basis.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §425, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4168.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 12872(b)(6) and 12873(b)(9) of this title, referred to in subsec. (f), were redesignated sections 12872(b)(7) and 12873(b)(10) of this title, respectively, by Pub. L. 102–550, title X, §1012(i), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3906.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12876. Definitions

For purposes of this part:

(1) The term "applicant" means the following entities that may represent the tenants of the housing:

(A) A resident management corporation established in accordance with the requirements of the Secretary under section 1437r of this title.

(B) A resident council.

(C) A cooperative association.

(D) A public or private nonprofit organization.

(E) A public body (including an agency or instrumentality thereof).

(F) A public housing agency (including an Indian housing authority).

(G) A mutual housing association.

(2) The term "eligible family" means a family or individual—

(A) who is a tenant of the eligible property on the date the Secretary approves an implementation grant; or

(B) whose income does not exceed 80 percent of the median income for the area, as determined by the Secretary with adjustments for smaller and larger families.

(3) The term "eligible property" means a multifamily rental property, containing 5 or more units, that is—

(A) owned or held by the Secretary;

(B) financed by a loan or mortgage held by the Secretary or insured by the Secretary;

(C) determined by the Secretary to have serious physical or financial problems under the terms of an insurance or loan program administered by the Secretary; or

(D) owned or held by the Secretary of Agriculture, the Resolution Trust Corporation, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Transportation, the General Services Administration, any other Federal agency, or a State or local government or an agency or instrumentality thereof.

(4) The term "homeownership program" means a program for homeownership under this part.

(5) The term "Indian housing authority" has the meaning given such term in section 1437a(b)(11) [1] of this title.

(6) The term "low-income family" has the meaning given such term in section 1437a(b)(2) of this title.

(7) The term "public housing agency" has the meaning given such term in section 1437a(b)(6) of this title.

(8) The term "recipient" means an applicant approved to receive a grant under this title [1] or such other entity specified in the approved application that will assume the obligations of the recipient under this part.

(9) The term "resident council" means any incorporated nonprofit organization or association that—

(A) is representative of the tenants of the housing;

(B) adopts written procedures providing for the election of officers on a regular basis; and

(C) has a democratically elected governing board, elected by the tenants of the housing.

(10) The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §426, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4170; Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §181(d), (e), (h), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3735, 3736.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1437a(b)(11) of this title, referred to in par. (5), was repealed by Pub. L. 104–330, title V, §501(b)(1)(D), Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4041, and a new section 1437a(b)(11), defining "public housing agency plan", was enacted by Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §506(4), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2524.

This title, referred to in par. (8), means title IV of Pub. L. 101–625, known as the Homeownership and Opportunity Through HOPE Act, and probably should have been "this subtitle", meaning subtitle B (§§421–431) of title IV of Pub. L. 101–625, which is classified principally to this part. For complete classification of title IV of Pub. L. 101–625 to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1437aaa of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Par. (1)(G). Pub. L. 102–550, §181(d), added subpar. (G).

Par. (3)(D). Pub. L. 102–550, §181(e), (h), inserted "the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Transportation, the General Services Administration, any other Federal agency," after "Corporation," and "or an agency or instrumentality thereof" before period at end.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12877. Exemption

Eligible property covered by a homeownership program approved under this part shall not be subject to—

(1) the Low-Income Housing Preservation and Resident Homeownership Act of 1990 [12 U.S.C. 4101 et seq.], or

(2) the requirements of section 1701z–11 of title 12 applicable to the sale of projects either at foreclosure or after acquisition by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §427, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4171.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Low-Income Housing Preservation and Resident Homeownership Act of 1990, referred to in par. (1), is title II of Pub. L. 100–242, as amended by Pub. L. 101–625, title VI, §601(a), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4249, which is classified principally to chapter 42 (§4101 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4101 of Title 12 and Tables.

§12878. Limitation on selection criteria

In establishing criteria for selecting applicants to receive assistance under this part, the Secretary may not establish any selection criterion or criteria that grant or deny such assistance to an applicant

(or have the effect of granting or denying assistance) based on the implementation, continuation, or discontinuation of any public policy, regulation, or law of any jurisdiction in which the applicant or project is located.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §428, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4171.)

§12879. Implementation

Not later than the expiration of the 180-day period beginning on the date that funds authorized under this part first become available for obligation, the Secretary shall by notice establish such requirements as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of this part. Such requirements shall be subject to section 553 of title 5. The Secretary shall issue regulations based on the initial notice before the expiration of the 8-month period beginning on the date of the notice.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §430, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4172.)

§12880. Report

The Secretary shall no later than December 31, 1995, submit to the Congress a report setting forth—

(1) the number, type and cost of eligible properties transferred pursuant to this part;

(2) the income, race, gender, children and other characteristics of families participating (or not participating) in homeownership programs funded under this part;

(3) the amount and type of financial assistance provided under and in conjunction with this part;

(4) the amount of financial assistance provided under this part that was needed to ensure continued affordability and meet future maintenance and repair costs; and

(5) the recommendations of the Secretary for statutory and regulatory improvements to the program.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §431, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4172; Pub. L. 104–66, title I, §1072(a), Dec. 21, 1995, 109 Stat. 721.)

AMENDMENTS

1995—Pub. L. 104–66 in section catchline substituted "Report" for "Annual report", and in introductory provisions substituted "The Secretary shall no later than December 31, 1995," for "The Secretary shall annually".

PART B—HOPE FOR HOMEOWNERSHIP OF SINGLE FAMILY HOMES

§12891. Program authority

The Secretary is authorized to make—

(1) planning grants to help applicants develop homeownership programs in accordance with this part; and

(2) implementation grants to enable applicants to carry out homeownership programs in accordance with this part.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §441, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4172; Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §181(a)(2)(B)(ii), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3735.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102–550 struck out "(a) IN GENERAL" before "The Secretary is authorized" and subsec. (b) which read as follows: "AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There are authorized to be appropriated for grants under this part $36,000,000 for fiscal year 1991, and $195,000,000 for fiscal year

1992. Any amounts appropriated pursuant to this subsection shall remain available until expended."

§12892. Planning grants

(a) Grants

The Secretary is authorized to make planning grants to applicants for the purpose of developing homeownership programs under this part. The amount of a planning grant under this section may not exceed $200,000, except that the Secretary may for good cause approve a grant in a higher amount.

(b) Eligible activities

Planning grants may be used for activities to develop homeownership programs (which may include programs for cooperative ownership), including—

(1) identifying eligible properties;

(2) training and technical assistance of applicants related to the development of a specific homeownership program;

(3) studies of the feasibility of specific homeownership programs;

(4) inspection for lead-based paint hazards, as required by section 4822(a) of this title;

(5) preliminary architectural and engineering work;

(6) homebuyer counseling and training;

(7) planning for economic development, job training, and self-sufficiency activities that promote economic self-sufficiency for homebuyers and homeowners under the homeownership program;

(8) development of security plans; and

(9) preparation of an application for an implementation grant under this part.

(c) Application

(1) Form and procedures

An application for a planning grant shall be submitted by an applicant in such form and in accordance with such procedures as the Secretary shall establish.

(2) Minimum requirements

The Secretary shall require that an application contain at a minimum—

(A) a request for a planning grant, specifying the activities proposed to be carried out, the schedule for completing the activities, the personnel necessary to complete the activities, and the amount of the grant requested;

(B) a description of the applicant and a statement of its qualifications;

(C) identification and description of the eligible properties likely to be involved, and a description of the composition of the potential homebuyers and residents of the areas in which such eligible properties are located, including family size and income;

(D) a certification by the public official responsible for submitting the comprehensive housing affordability strategy under section 12705 of this title that the proposed activities are consistent with the approved housing strategy of the State or unit of general local government within which the project is located (or, during the first 12 months after November 28, 1990, that the application is consistent with such other existing State or local housing plan or strategy that the Secretary shall determine to be appropriate); and

(E) a certification that the applicant will comply with the requirements of the Fair Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 3601 et seq.], title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 [42 U.S.C. 2000d et seq.], section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 [29 U.S.C. 794], and the Age Discrimination Act of 1975 [42 U.S.C. 6101 et seq.], and will affirmatively further fair housing.

(d) Selection criteria

The Secretary shall, by regulation, establish selection criteria for a national competition for assistance under this section, which shall include—

(1) the qualifications or potential capabilities of the applicant;

(2) the extent of interest in the development of a homeownership program;

(3) the potential of the applicant for developing a successful and affordable homeownership program and the availability and suitability of eligible properties in the applicable geographic area with respect to the application;

(4) national geographic diversity among housing for which applicants are selected to receive assistance; and

(5) such other factors that the Secretary shall require that (in the determination of the Secretary) are appropriate for purposes of carrying out the program established by this part in an effective and efficient manner.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §442, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4172; Pub. L. 102–550, title X, §1012(j)(1), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3906.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Fair Housing Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(E), is title VIII of Pub. L. 90–284, Apr. 11, 1968, 82 Stat. 81, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter I (§3601 et seq.) of chapter 45 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

The Civil Rights Act of 1964, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(E), is Pub. L. 88–352, July 2, 1964, 78 Stat. 241, as amended. Title VI of the Act is classified generally to subchapter V (§2000d et seq.) of chapter 21 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2000a of this title and Tables.

The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(E), is title III of Pub. L. 94–135, Nov. 28, 1975, 89 Stat. 728, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 76 (§6101 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6101 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (b)(4) to (9). Pub. L. 102–550 added par. (4) and redesignated former pars. (4) to (8) as (5) to (9), respectively.

§12893. Implementation grants

(a) Grants

The Secretary is authorized to make implementation grants to applicants for the purpose of carrying out homeownership programs approved under this part.

(b) Eligible activities

Implementation grants may be used for activities to carry out homeownership programs (which may include programs for cooperative ownership), including the following activities:

(1) Architectural and engineering work.

(2) Acquisition of the property for the purpose of transferring ownership to eligible families in accordance with a homeownership program meeting the requirements of this part.

(3) Rehabilitation of the property covered by the homeownership program, in accordance with standards established by the Secretary.

(4) Abatement of lead-based paint hazards, as required by section 4822(a) of this title.

(5) Administrative costs of the applicant, which may not exceed 15 percent of the amount of assistance provided under this section.

(6) Counseling and training of homebuyers and homeowners under the homeownership program.

(7) Relocation of eligible families who elect to move.

(8) Any necessary temporary relocation of homebuyers during rehabilitation.

(9) Legal fees.

(10) Defraying costs for the ongoing training needs of the recipient that are related to developing and carrying out the homeownership program.

(11) Economic development activities that promote economic self-sufficiency of homebuyers and homeowners under the homeownership program.

(c) Matching funding

(1) In general

Each recipient shall assure that contributions equal to not less than 25 percent of the grant amounts under this section are provided from non-Federal sources to carry out the homeownership program.

(2) Form

Such contributions may be in the form of—

(A) cash contributions from non-Federal resources which may not include funds from a grant made under section 5306(b) or section 5306(d) of this title;

(B) payment of administrative expenses, as defined by the Secretary, from non-Federal resources, including funds from a grant made under section 5306(b) or section 5306(d) of this title;

(C) the value of taxes, fees, or other charges that are normally and customarily imposed but are waived, foregone, or deferred in a manner that facilitates the implementation of a homeownership program assisted under this part;

(D) the value of investment in on-site and off-site infrastructure required for a homeownership program assisted under this part; or

(E) such other in-kind contributions as the Secretary may approve.

Contributions for administrative expenses shall be recognized only up to an amount equal to 7 percent of the total amount of grants made available under this section.

(d) Application

(1) Form and procedure

An application for an implementation grant shall be submitted by an applicant in such form and in accordance with such procedures as the Secretary shall establish.

(2) Minimum requirements

The Secretary shall require that an application contain at a minimum—

(A) a request for an implementation grant, specifying the amount of the grant requested and its proposed uses;

(B) a description of the qualifications and experience of the applicant in providing low-income housing;

(C) a description of the proposed homeownership program, consistent with section 12894 of this title and the other requirements of this part specifying the activities proposed to be carried out and their estimated costs, identifying reasonable schedules for carrying it out, and demonstrating that the program will comply with the affordability requirements under section 12894(b) of this title;

(D) an identification and description of the properties to be acquired under the homeownership program and a description of the composition of potential eligible families, including family size and income;

(E) a description of and commitment for the resources that are expected to be made available to provide the matching funding required under subsection (c) and of other resources that are expected to be made available in support of the homeownership program;

(F) identification and description of the financing proposed for any (i) rehabilitation and (ii) acquisition (I) of the project, where applicable, by an entity for transfer to eligible families, and (II) by eligible families of ownership interests in, or shares representing, units in the project;

(G) the proposed sales prices for the properties, the basis for such price determinations, and terms to an entity, if any, that will purchase that property for resale to eligible families;

(H) the proposed sales prices, if any, and terms to eligible families;

(I) identification and description of the entity that will operate and manage the property;

(J) a certification by the public official responsible for submitting the comprehensive housing affordability strategy under section 12705 of this title that the proposed activities are consistent with the approved housing strategy of the State or unit of general local government within which the project is located (or, during the first 12 months after November 28, 1990, that the application is consistent with such other existing State or local housing plan or strategy that the Secretary shall determine to be appropriate); and

(K) a certification that the applicant will comply with the requirements of the Fair Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 3601 et seq.], title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 [42 U.S.C. 2000d et seq.], section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 [29 U.S.C. 794], and the Age Discrimination Act of 1975 [42 U.S.C. 6101 et seq.], and will affirmatively further fair housing.

(e) Selection criteria

The Secretary shall establish selection criteria for assistance under this part, which shall include—

(1) the ability of the applicant to develop and carry out the proposed homeownership program, taking into account the qualifications and experience of the applicant and the quality of any related ongoing program of the applicant;

(2) the feasibility of the homeownership program;

(3) the quality and viability of the proposed homeownership program;

(4) the extent to which suitable eligible property is available for use under the program in the area to be served, and the extent to which the types of property expected to be covered by the proposed homeownership program are federally owned;

(5) whether the approved comprehensive housing affordability strategy for the jurisdiction within which the eligible property is located includes the proposed homeownership program as one of the general priorities identified pursuant to section 12705(b)(7) of this title;

(6) national geographic diversity among housing for which applicants are selected to receive assistance; and

(7) the extent to which a sufficient supply of affordable rental housing of the type assisted under this part exists in the locality, so that the implementation of the homeownership program will not appreciably reduce the number of such rental units available to residents currently residing in such units or eligible for residency in such units.

(f) Approval

The Secretary shall notify each applicant, not later than 6 months after the date of the submission of the application, whether the application is approved or not approved.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §443, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4174; Pub. L. 102–550, title X, §1012(j)(2), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3906; Pub. L. 103–233, title II, §221, Apr. 11, 1994, 108 Stat. 366.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Fair Housing Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(K), is title VIII of Pub. L. 90–284, Apr. 11, 1968, 82 Stat. 81, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter I (§3601 et seq.) of chapter 45 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

The Civil Rights Act of 1964, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(K), is Pub. L. 88–352, July 2, 1964, 78 Stat. 241, as amended. Title VI of the Act is classified generally to subchapter V (§2000d et seq.) of chapter 21 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2000a of this title and Tables.

The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(K), is title III of Pub. L. 94–135, Nov. 28, 1975, 89 Stat. 728, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 76 (§6101 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6101 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 103–233 substituted "25 percent" for "33 percent".

1992—Subsec. (b)(4) to (11). Pub. L. 102–550 added par. (4) and redesignated former pars. (4) to (10) as

(5) to (11), respectively.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–233 applicable with respect to any amounts made available to carry out subchapter II (§12721 et seq.) of this chapter after Apr. 11, 1994, and any amounts made available to carry out that subchapter before that date that remain uncommitted on that date, with Secretary to issue any regulations necessary to carry out such amendment not later than end of 45-day period beginning on that date, see section 209 of Pub. L. 103–233, set out as a note under section 5301 of this title.

§12894. Homeownership program requirements

(a) In general

A homeownership program under this part shall provide for acquisition by eligible families of ownership interests in, or shares representing, units in an eligible property under any arrangement determined by the Secretary to be appropriate, such as cooperative ownership (including limited equity cooperative ownership) and fee simple ownership (including condominium ownership), for occupancy by the eligible families.

(b) Affordability

A homeownership program under this part shall provide for the establishment of sales prices (including principal, insurance, taxes, and interest and closing costs) for initial acquisition of the property, and for sales to eligible families, such that the eligible family shall not be required to expend more than 30 percent of the adjusted income of the family per month to complete a sale under the homeownership program.

(c) Eligible property

A property may not participate in a homeownership program under this part unless all tenants or occupants of the property (at the time of [1] the application for the implementation grant covering the property is filed with the Secretary) participate in the homeownership program.

(d) Plan

A homeownership program under this part shall provide, and include a plan, for—

(1) identifying and selecting eligible families to participate in the homeownership program;

(2) providing relocation assistance to families who elect to move; and

(3) ensuring continued affordability of the property to homebuyers and homeowners.

(e) Housing quality standards

The application shall include a plan ensuring that the unit—

(1) will be free from any defects that pose a danger to health or safety before transfer of an ownership interest in, or shares representing, a unit to an eligible family; and

(2) will, not later than 2 years after the transfer to an eligible family, meet minimum housing standards established by the Secretary for the purpose of this title.[2]

(f) Preference for acquisition of vacant units

Each homeownership program under this part shall provide that, in making vacant units in eligible properties available for acquisition by eligible families, preference shall be given to eligible families who reside in public or Indian housing.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §444, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4176; Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §181(f), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3736.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in subsec. (e)(2), is title IV of Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4148, known as the Homeownership and Opportunity Through HOPE Act, which enacted this subchapter and subchapter II–A (§1437aaa et seq.) of chapter 8 of this title, amended sections 1437c, 1437f, 1437l, 1437p, 1437r, and 1437s of this title and section 1709 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and enacted provisions set out as notes

under sections 1437c, 1437aa, and 1437aaa of this title. For complete classification of title IV to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1437aaa of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 102–550 added subsec. (f).

[1] *So in original. The word "of" probably should not appear.*

[2] *So in original. See References in Text note below.*

§12895. Other program requirements

(a) Cost limitations

The Secretary may establish cost limitations on eligible activities under this part, subject to the provisions of this part.

(b) Use of proceeds from sales to eligible families

Any entity that transfers ownership interests in, or shares representing, units to eligible families, or another entity specified in the approved application, may use the proceeds, if any, from the initial sale for costs of the homeownership program, including operating expenses, improvements to the project, business opportunities for low-income families, supportive services related to the homeownership program, additional homeownership opportunities, and other activities approved by the Secretary.

(c) Restrictions on resale by homeowners

(1) In general

(A) Transfer permitted

A homeowner under a homeownership program may transfer the homeowner's ownership interest in, or shares representing, the unit, except that a homeownership program may establish restrictions on the resale of units under the program.

(B) Right to purchase

Where a resident management corporation, resident council, or cooperative has jurisdiction over the unit, the corporation, council, or cooperative shall have the right to purchase the ownership interest in, or shares representing, the unit from the homeowner for the amount specified in a firm contract between the homeowner and a prospective buyer. If such an entity does not have jurisdiction over the unit or elects not to purchase and if the prospective buyer is not a low-income family, the public housing agency or the implementation grant recipient shall have the right to purchase the ownership interest in, or shares representing, the unit for the same amount.

(C) Promissory note required

The homeowner shall execute a promissory note equal to the difference between the market value and the purchase price, payable to the public housing agency or other entity designated in the homeownership plan, together with a mortgage securing the obligation of the note.

(2) 6 years or less

In the case of a transfer within 6 years of the acquisition under the program, the homeownership program shall provide for appropriate restrictions to assure that an eligible family may not receive any undue profit. The plan shall provide for limiting the family's consideration for its interest in the property to the total of—

(A) the contribution to equity paid by the family;

(B) the value, as determined by such means as the Secretary shall determine through regulation, of any improvements installed at the expense of the family during the family's tenure

as owner; and

(C) the appreciated value determined by an inflation allowance at a rate which may be based on a cost-of-living index, an income index, or market index as determined by the Secretary through regulation and agreed to by the purchaser and the entity that transfers ownership interests in, or shares representing, units to eligible families (or another entity specified in the approved application), at the time of initial sale, and applied against the contribution to equity.

Such an entity may, at the time of initial sale, enter into an agreement with the family to set a maximum amount which this appreciation may not exceed.

(3) 6–20 years

In the case of a transfer during the period beginning 6 years after the acquisition and ending 20 years after the acquisition, the homeownership program shall provide for the recapture by the Secretary or the program of an amount equal to the amount of the declining balance on the note described in paragraph (1)(C).

(4) Use of recaptured funds

Fifty percent of any portion of the net sales proceeds that may not be retained by the homeowner under the plan approved pursuant to this subsection shall be paid to the entity that transferred ownership interests in, or shares representing, units to eligible families, or another entity specified in the approved application, for use for improvements to the project, business opportunities for low-income families, supportive services related to the homeownership program, additional homeownership opportunities, and other activities approved by the Secretary. The remaining 50 percent shall be returned to the Secretary for use under this part, subject to limitations contained in appropriations Acts. Such entity shall keep and make available to the Secretary all records necessary to calculate accurately payments due the Secretary under this subsection.

(d) Third party rights

The requirements under this part regarding quality standards, resale, or transfer of the ownership interest of a homeowner shall be judicially enforceable against the grant recipient with respect to actions involving rehabilitation, and against purchasers of property under this subsection or their successors in interest with respect to other actions by affected low-income families, resident management corporations, resident councils, public housing agencies, and any agency, corporation, or authority of the United States Government. The parties specified in the preceding sentence shall be entitled to reasonable attorney fees upon prevailing in any such judicial action.

(e) Protection of nonpurchasing families

No tenant residing in a dwelling unit in a property on the date the Secretary approves an application for an implementation grant may be evicted by reason of a homeownership program approved under this part.

(h) [1] Records and audit of recipients of assistance

(1) In general

Each recipient shall keep such records as may be reasonably necessary to fully disclose the amount and the disposition by such recipient of the proceeds of assistance received under this part (and any proceeds from financing obtained or sales under subsections (b) and (c)), the total cost of the homeownership program in connection with which such assistance is given or used, and the amount and nature of that portion of the program supplied by other sources, and such other sources as will facilitate an effective audit.

(2) Access by Secretary

The Secretary shall have access for the purpose of audit and examination to any books, documents, papers, and records of the recipient that are pertinent to assistance received under this part.

(3) Access by Comptroller General

The Comptroller General of the United States, or any of the duly authorized representatives of the Comptroller General, shall also have access for the purpose of audit and examination to any books, documents, papers, and records of the recipient that are pertinent to assistance received under this part.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §445, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4177.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "(f)".*

§12896. Definitions

For purposes of this part:

(1) The term "applicant" means a private nonprofit organization, cooperative association, or a public agency (including an agency or instrumentality thereof) in cooperation with a private nonprofit organization.

(2) The term "displaced homemaker" has the same meaning as in section 12704 of this title.

(3) The term "eligible family" means a family or individual who—

(A) has an income that does not exceed 80 percent of the median income for the area, as determined by the Secretary with adjustments for smaller and larger families; and

(B) is a first-time homebuyer.

(4) The term "eligible property" means a single family property, containing no more than four units, that is owned or held by the Secretary, the Secretary of Veterans Affairs, the Secretary of Agriculture, the Resolution Trust Corporation, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Transportation, the General Services Administration, any other Federal agency, a State or local government (including any in rem property), or a public housing agency or an Indian housing authority (excluding public or Indian housing under the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437 et seq.] and including properties held by institutions within the jurisdiction of the Resolution Trust Corporation).

(5) The term "first-time homebuyer" has the same meaning as in section 12704 of this title.

(6) The term "homeownership program" means a program for homeownership under this part.

(7) The term "Indian housing authority" has the meaning given such term in section 3(b)(11) [1] of the United States Housing Act of 1937.

(8) The term "low-income family" has the meaning given such term in section 3(b)(2) of the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437a(b)(2)].

(9) The term "public housing agency" has the meaning given such term in section 3(b)(6) of the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437a(b)(6)].

(10) The term "recipient" means an applicant approved to receive a grant under this part or such other entity specified in the approved application that will assume the obligations of the recipient under this part.

(11) The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.

(12) The term "single parent" means an individual who—

(A) is unmarried or legally separated from a spouse; and

(B)(i) has 1 or more minor children for whom the individual has custody or joint custody; or

(ii) is pregnant.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §446, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4179; Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §181(g)(2), (h), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3736.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The United States Housing Act of 1937, referred to in par. (4), is act Sept. 1, 1937, ch. 896, as revised generally by Pub. L. 93–383, title II, §201(a), Aug. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 653, and amended, which is classified generally to chapter 8 (§1437 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see

Short Title note set out under section 1437 of this title and Tables.

Section 3(b)(11) of the United States Housing Act of 1937, referred to in par. (7), was classified to section 1437a(b)(11) of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 104–330, title V, §501(b)(1)(D), Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4041, and a new section 1437a(b)(11), defining "public housing agency plan", was enacted by Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §506(4), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2524.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Par. (4). Pub. L. 102–550 inserted "the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Transportation, the General Services Administration, any other Federal agency," after "Corporation," and substituted "(excluding public or Indian housing under the United States Housing Act of 1937 and including" for "(including scattered site single family properties, and".

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12897. Limitation on selection criteria

In establishing criteria for selecting applicants to receive assistance under this part, the Secretary may not establish any selection criterion or criteria that grant or deny such assistance to an applicant (or have the effect of granting or denying assistance) based on the implementation, continuation, or discontinuation of any public policy, regulation, or law of any jurisdiction in which the applicant or project is located.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §447, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4180.)

§12898. Implementation

Not later than the expiration of the 180-day period beginning on the date funds authorized under this part first become available for obligation, the Secretary shall by notice establish such requirements as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of this part. Such requirements shall be subject to section 553 of title 5. The Secretary shall issue regulations based on the initial notice before the expiration of the 8-month period beginning on the date of the notice.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §448, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4180.)

§12898a. Enterprise zone homeownership opportunity grants

(a) Statement of purpose

It is the purpose of this section—

(1) to encourage homeownership by families in the United States who are not otherwise able to afford homeownership;

(2) to encourage the redevelopment of economically depressed areas; and

(3) to provide better housing opportunities in federally approved and equivalent State-approved enterprise zones.

(b) Definitions

For purposes of this section the following definitions shall apply:

(1) Home

The term "home" means any 1- to 4-family dwelling. Such term includes any dwelling unit in a condominium project or cooperative project consisting of not more than 4 dwelling units, any town house, and any manufactured home.

(2) Metropolitan statistical area

The term "metropolitan statistical area" means a metropolitan statistical area as established by the Office of Management and Budget.

(3) Nonprofit organization

The term "nonprofit organization" means a private nonprofit corporation, or other private nonprofit legal entity, that is approved by the Secretary as to financial responsibility.

(4) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.

(5) State

The term "State" means each of the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Northern Mariana Islands, the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, and any other territory or possession of the United States.

(6) Unit of general local government

The term "unit of general local government" means any borough, city, county, parish, town, township, village, or other general purpose political subdivision of a State.

(c) Assistance to nonprofit organizations

(1) In general

The Secretary may provide assistance to nonprofit organizations to carry out enterprise zone homeownership opportunity programs to promote homeownership in federally approved and equivalent State-approved enterprise zones in accordance with the provisions of this section. Such assistance shall be made in the form of grants.

(2) Applications

Applications for assistance under this section shall be made in such form, and in accordance with such procedures, as the Secretary may prescribe.

(d) Eligible uses of assistance

(1) In general

Any nonprofit organization receiving assistance under this section shall use such assistance to provide loans to families purchasing homes constructed or rehabilitated in accordance with an enterprise zone homeownership opportunity program approved under this section.

(2) Specific requirements

Each loan made to a family under this subsection shall—

(A) be secured by a second mortgage held by the Secretary on the property involved;

(B) be in an amount not exceeding $15,000;

(C) bear no interest; and

(D) be repayable to the Secretary upon the sales, lease, or other transfer of such property.

(e) Program requirements

(1) In general

Assistance provided under this section may be used only in connection with an enterprise zone homeownership opportunity program of construction or rehabilitation of homes.

(2) Family need

Each family purchasing a home under this section shall—

(A) have a family income on the date of such purchase that is not more than the median income for a family of 4 persons (adjusted for family size) in the metropolitan statistical area in which a federally approved or equivalent State-approved enterprise zone is located; and

(B) not have owned a home during the 3-year period preceding such purchase.

(3) Downpayment

Each family purchasing a home under this section shall make a downpayment of not less than 5 percent of the sale price of such home.

(4) Leasing prohibition

No family purchasing a home under this section may lease such home.

(f) Terms and conditions of assistance

(1) Local consultation

No proposed enterprise zone homeownership opportunity program may be approved by the Secretary under this section unless the applicant involved demonstrates to the satisfaction of the Secretary that—

(A) it has consulted with and received the support of residents of the neighborhood in which such program is to be located; and

(B) it has the approval of each unit of general local government in which such program is to be located.

(2) Program schedule

Each applicant for assistance under this section shall submit to the Secretary an estimated schedule for completion of its proposed enterprise zone homeownership opportunity program, which schedule shall have been agreed to by each unit of general local government in which such program is to be located.

(3) Location

All homes constructed or rehabilitated under such program will be located in federally approved or equivalent State-approved enterprise zones.

(4) Sales contracts

Sales contracts entered into under such program will contain provisions requiring repayment of any loan made under this section upon the sale or other transfer of the home involved, unless the Secretary approves a transfer of such home without repayment (in which case the second mortgage held by the Secretary on such home shall remain in force until such loan is fully repaid).

(g) Program selection criteria

(1) In general

In selecting enterprise zone homeownership opportunity programs for assistance under this section from among eligible programs, the Secretary shall make such selection on the basis of the extent to which—

(A) non-Federal public or private entities will contribute land necessary to make each program feasible;

(B) non-Federal public and private financial or other contributions (including tax abatements, waivers of fees related to development, waivers of construction, development, or zoning requirements, and direct financial contributions) will reduce the cost of home [1] constructed or rehabilitated under each program;

(C) each program will produce the greatest number of units for the least amount of assistance provided under this section, taking into consideration the cost differences among different market areas; and

(D) each program provides for the involvement of local residents in the planning, and construction or rehabilitation, of homes.

(2) Exception

To the extent that non-Federal public entities are prohibited by the law of any State from making any form of contribution described in subparagraph (A) or (B) of paragraph (1), the Secretary shall not consider such form of contribution in evaluating such program.

(h) Regulations

Not later than 180 days after October 28, 1992, the Secretary shall issue final regulations to carry out the provisions of this title.[2] Any such regulations shall be issued in accordance with section 553 of title 5, notwithstanding the provisions of subsection (a)(2) of such section.

(i) Funding

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $30,000,000 in each of fiscal years 1993 and 1994.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §186, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3748.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992, and not as part of subtitle C (§§441–448) of title IV of Pub. L. 101–625 which comprises this part.

TERMINATION OF TRUST TERRITORY OF THE PACIFIC ISLANDS

For termination of Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, see note set out preceding section 1681 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "homes".*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be "this section."*

PART C—HOPE FOR YOUTH: YOUTHBUILD

§§12899 to 12899i. Repealed. Pub. L. 109–281, §2(e), Sept. 22, 2006, 120 Stat. 1181

Section 12899, Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §451, as added Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §164, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3723, set forth the statement of purpose of this part.

Section 12899a, Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §452, as added Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §164, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3723, authorized the Secretary to make planning and implementation grants.

Section 12899b, Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §453, as added Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §164, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3723, related to planning grants.

Section 12899c, Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §454, as added Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §164, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3725; amended Pub. L. 105–277, div. A, §101(f) [title VIII, §405(d)(43)(A), (f)(34)], Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–337, 2681–428, 2681–434, related to implementation grants.

Section 12899d, Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §455, as added Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §164, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3728; amended Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §514(a)(2)(B), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2547; Pub. L. 106–400, §2, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1675, set forth Youthbuild program requirements.

Section 12899e, Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §456, as added Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §164, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3730; amended Pub. L. 105–277, div. A, §101(f) [title VIII, §405(d)(43)(B)], Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–337, 2681–428, set forth additional program requirements.

Section 12899f, Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §457, as added Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §164, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3731; amended Pub. L. 103–382, title III, §394(d), Oct. 20, 1994, 108 Stat. 4027; Pub. L. 105–244, title I, §102(a)(13)(M), Oct. 7, 1998, 112 Stat. 1621; Pub. L. 106–400, §2, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1675; Pub. L. 109–136, §5, Dec. 22, 2005, 119 Stat. 2644, defined terms.

Section 12899g, Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §458, as added Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §164, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3733, related to management and technical assistance.

Section 12899h, Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §459, as added Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §164, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3733, related to contracts.

Section 12899h–1, Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §460, as added Pub. L. 104–330, title V, §504(a)(2), Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4044; amended Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §595(e)(15), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2659; Pub. L. 109–136, §6, Dec. 22, 2005, 119 Stat. 2644, rendered Indian tribes, Indian housing authorities, and other agencies primarily serving Indians or Indian areas ineligible for amounts made available for assistance under this part for fiscal years 1998 through 2005.

Section 12899i, Pub. L. 101–625, title IV, §461, formerly §460, as added Pub. L. 102–550, title I, §164, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3733; renumbered §461, Pub. L. 104–330, title V, §504(a)(1), Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4043, authorized the Secretary to issue any regulations necessary to carry out this part.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

All functions which the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development exercised before Sept. 22, 2006, relating to subtitle D of title IV of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act (42 U.S.C. 12899 et seq.) transferred to the Department of Labor, see section 3(b) of Pub. L. 109–281, set out as a Transfer of Functions and Savings Provisions note under section 3226 of Title 29, Labor.

CHAPTER 131—HOUSING OPPORTUNITIES FOR PERSONS WITH AIDS

Sec.

§12901. Purpose

The purpose of this chapter [1] is to provide States and localities with the resources and incentives to devise long-term comprehensive strategies for meeting the housing needs of persons with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and families of such persons.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title VIII, §852, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4375; Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §606(j)(1), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3810.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", and was translated as reading "this subtitle", meaning subtitle D (§§851–863) of title VIII of Pub. L. 101–625, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102–550 inserted before period at end "and families of such persons".

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 101–625, title VIII, §851, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4375, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle D (§§851–863) of title VIII of Pub. L. 101–625, enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'AIDS Housing Opportunity Act'."

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §606(k), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3811, provided that:

"(1) INTERIM REGULATIONS.—Not later than the expiration of the 30-day period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1992], the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall submit to the Congress a copy of proposed interim regulations implementing subtitle D of title VIII of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 12901 et seq.] (as amended by this section). Not later than the expiration of the 45-day period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act, but not before the expiration of the 15-day period beginning upon the submission of the proposed interim regulations to the Congress, the Secretary shall publish interim regulations implementing such subtitle (as amended), which shall take effect upon publication.

"(2) FINAL REGULATIONS.—Not later than the expiration of the 90-day period beginning upon the publication of interim regulations under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall issue final regulations implementing subtitle D of title VIII of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act (as amended by this

section) after notice and opportunity for public comment regarding the interim regulations, pursuant to the provisions of section 553 of title 5, United States Code (notwithstanding subsections (a)(2), (b)(B), and (d)(3) of such section). The duration of the period for public comment under such section 553 shall be not less than 60 days, and the final regulations shall take effect upon issuance."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12902. Definitions

For purposes of this chapter:

(1) The term "acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and related diseases" or "AIDS" means the disease of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or any conditions arising from the etiologic agent for acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.

(2) The term "applicant" means a State, a unit of general local government, or a nonprofit organization eligible to receive assistance under this chapter.

(3) The term "low-income individual" means any individual or family whose incomes do not exceed 80 percent of the median income for the area, as determined by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, with adjustments for smaller and larger families, except that the Secretary may establish income ceilings higher or lower than 80 percent of the median income for the area if the Secretary finds that such variations are necessary because of prevailing levels of construction costs or unusually high or low family incomes.

(4) The term "grantee" means a State or unit of general local government receiving grants from the Secretary under this chapter.

(5) The term "metropolitan statistical area" means a metropolitan statistical area as established by the Office of Management and Budget. Such term includes the District of Columbia.

(6) The term "locality" means the geographical area within the jurisdiction of a local government.

(7) The term "recipient" means a grantee or other applicant receiving funds under this chapter.[1]

(8) The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.

(9) The term "State" means a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, or any agency or instrumentality thereof that is established pursuant to legislation and designated by the chief executive to act on behalf of the jurisdiction with regard to provisions of this chapter.

(10) The term "unit of general local government" has the same meaning as in section 12704 of this title.

(11) The term "city" has the meaning given the term in section 5302(a) of this title.

(12) The term "eligible person" means a person with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or a related disease and the family of such person.

(13) The term "nonprofit organization" means any nonprofit organization (including a State or locally chartered, nonprofit organization) that—

(A) is organized under State or local laws;

(B) has no part of its net earnings inuring to the benefit of any member, founder, contributor, or individual;

(C) complies with standards of financial accountability acceptable to the Secretary; and

(D) has among its purposes significant activities related to providing services or housing to persons with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases.

(14) The term "project sponsor" means a nonprofit organization or a housing agency of a State or unit of general local government that contracts with a grantee to receive assistance under this chapter.

(15) The term "HIV" means infection with the human immunodeficiency virus.

(16) The term "individuals living with HIV or AIDS" means, with respect to the counting of

cases in a geographic area during a period of time, the sum of—

(A) the number of living non-AIDS cases of HIV in the area; and

(B) the number of living cases of AIDS in the area.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title VIII, §853, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4375; Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §606(c), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3807; Pub. L. 114–201, title VII, §701(b), July 29, 2016, 130 Stat. 814.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in par. (7), was in the original "this title", and was translated as reading "this subtitle", meaning subtitle D (§§851–863) of title VIII of Pub. L. 101–625, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Par. (1). Pub. L. 114–201, §701(b)(1), inserted "or 'AIDS' " before "means".

Pars. (15), (16). Pub. L. 114–201, §701(b)(2), added pars. (15) and (16).

1992—Par. (2). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(c)(1), substituted "organization eligible to receive assistance under this chapter" for "sponsor receiving assistance from a grantee".

Par. (5). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(c)(2), substituted "term 'metropolitan statistical area' means" for "term 'metropolitan area' means".

Pars. (11) to (14). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(c)(3), added pars. (11) to (14).

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12903. General authority

(a) Grants authorized

The Secretary shall, to the extent of amounts approved in appropriations Acts under section 12912 of this title, make grants to States, units of general local government, and nonprofit organizations.

(b) Implementation of eligible activities

A grantee shall carry out eligible activities under section 12904 of this title through project sponsors. Any grantee that is a State that enters into a contract with a nonprofit organization to carry out eligible activities in a locality shall obtain the approval of the unit of general local government for the locality before entering into the contract.

(c) Allocation of resources

(1) Allocation of resources

(A) Allocation formula

The Secretary shall allocate 90 percent of the amount approved in appropriations Acts under section 12912 of this title among States and metropolitan statistical areas as follows:

(I) [1] 75 percent of such amounts among—

(I) cities that are the most populous unit of general local government in a metropolitan statistical area with a population greater than 500,000, as determined on the basis of the most recent census, and with more than 2,000 individuals living with HIV or AIDS, using the data specified in subparagraph (B); and

(II) States with more than 2,000 individuals living with HIV or AIDS outside of metropolitan statistical areas.

(ii) 25 percent of such amounts among States and metropolitan statistical areas based on the method described in subparagraph (C).

(B) Source of data

For purposes of allocating amounts under this paragraph for any fiscal year, the number of individuals living with HIV or AIDS shall be the number of such individuals as confirmed by

the Director of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, as of December 31 of the most recent calendar year for which such data is available.

(C) Allocation under subparagraph (A)(ii)

For purposes of allocating amounts under subparagraph (A)(ii), the Secretary shall develop a method that accounts for—

(I) [1] differences in housing costs among States and metropolitan statistical areas based on the fair market rental established pursuant to section 1437f(c) of this title or another methodology established by the Secretary through regulation; and

(ii) differences in poverty rates among States and metropolitan statistical areas based on area poverty indexes or another methodology established by the Secretary through regulation.

(2) Maintaining grants

(A) Continued eligibility of fiscal year 2016 grantees

A grantee that received an allocation in fiscal year 2016 shall continue to be eligible for allocations under paragraph (1) in subsequent fiscal years, subject to—

(I) [1] the amounts available from appropriations Acts under section 12912 of this title;

(ii) approval by the Secretary of the most recent comprehensive housing affordability strategy for the grantee approved under section 12705 of title; [2] and

(iii) the requirements of subparagraph (C).

(B) Adjustments

Allocations to grantees described in subparagraph (A) shall be adjusted annually based on the administrative provisions included in fiscal year 2016 appropriations Acts.

(C) Redetermination of continued eligibility

The Secretary shall redetermine the continued eligibility of a grantee that received an allocation in fiscal year 2016 at least once during the 10-year period following fiscal year 2016.

(D) Adjustment to grants

For each of fiscal years 2017, 2018, 2019, 2020, and 2021, the Secretary shall ensure that a grantee that received an allocation in the prior fiscal year does not receive an allocation that is 5 percent less than or 10 percent greater than the amount allocated to such grantee in the preceding fiscal year.

(3) Alternative grantees

(A) Requirements

The Secretary may award funds reserved for a grantee eligible under paragraph (1) to an alternative grantee if—

(I) [1] the grantee submits to the Secretary a written agreement between the grantee and the alternative grantee that describes how the alternative grantee will take actions consistent with the applicable comprehensive housing affordability strategy approved under section 12705 of this title; [2]

(ii) the Secretary approves the written agreement described in clause (I) and agrees to award funds to the alternative grantee; and

(iii) the written agreement does not exceed a term of 10 years.

(B) Renewal

An agreement approved pursuant to subparagraph (A) may be renewed by the parties with the approval of the Secretary.

(C) Definition

In this paragraph, the term "alternative grantee" means a public housing agency (as defined in section 1437a(b) of this title), a unified funding agency (as defined in section 11360 of this title), a State, a unit of general local government, or an instrumentality of State or local

government.

(4) Reallocations

If a State or metropolitan statistical area declines an allocation under paragraph (1)(A), or the Secretary determines, in accordance with criteria specified in regulation, that a State or metropolitan statistical area that is eligible for an allocation under paragraph (1)(A) is unable to properly administer such allocation, the Secretary shall reallocate any funds reserved for such State or metropolitan statistical area as follows:

(A) For funds reserved for a State—

(I) [1] to eligible metropolitan statistical areas within the State on a pro rata basis; or

(ii) if there is no eligible metropolitan statistical areas within a State, to metropolitan cities and urban counties within the State that are eligible for grant under section 5306 of this title, on a pro rata basis.

(B) For funds reserved for a metropolitan statistical area, to the State in which the metropolitan statistical area is located.

(C) If the Secretary is unable to make a reallocation under subparagraph (A) or (B), the Secretary shall make such funds available on a pro rata basis under the formula in paragraph (1)(A).

(5) Nonformula allocation

(A) In general

The Secretary shall allocate 10 percent of the amounts appropriated under section 12912 of this title among—

(i) States and units of general local government that do not qualify for allocation of amounts under paragraph (1); and

(ii) States, units of general local government, and nonprofit organizations, to fund special projects of national significance.

(B) Selection

In selecting projects under this paragraph, the Secretary shall consider (i) relative numbers of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome cases and per capita acquired immunodeficiency syndrome incidence; (ii) housing needs of eligible persons in the community; (iii) extent of local planning and coordination of housing programs for eligible persons; and (iv) the likelihood of the continuation of State and local efforts.

(C) National significance projects

For the purpose of subparagraph (A)(ii), in selecting projects of national significance the Secretary shall consider (i) the need to assess the effectiveness of a particular model for providing supportive housing for eligible persons; (ii) the innovative nature of the proposed activity; and (iii) the potential replicability of the proposed activity in other similar localities or nationally.

(d) Applications

Funds made available under this section shall be allocated among applications submitted by applicants and approved by the Secretary. Applications for assistance under this section shall be submitted by an applicant in such form and in accordance with such procedures as the Secretary shall establish. Such applications shall contain—

(1) a description of the proposed activities;

(2) a description of the size and characteristics of the population that would be served by the proposed activities;

(3) a description of the public and private resources that are expected to be made available in connection with the proposed activities;

(4) assurances satisfactory to the Secretary that any property purchased, leased, rehabilitated, renovated, or converted with assistance under this section shall be operated for not less than 10

years for the purpose specified in the application, except as otherwise specified in this chapter;

(5) evidence in a form acceptable to the Secretary that the proposed activities will meet urgent needs that are not being met by available public and private sources; and

(6) such other information or certifications that the Secretary determines to be necessary to achieve the purposes of this section.

(e) Additional requirement for metropolitan areas

In addition to the other requirements of this section, to be eligible for a grant to a metropolitan area under this section, the major city, urban county, and any city with a population of 50,000 or more in that metropolitan area shall establish or designate a governmental agency or organization for receipt and use of amounts received from a grant under this section and shall submit to the Secretary, together with the application under subsection (d) a proposal for the operation of such agency or organization.

(f) Additional requirement for city formula grantees

In addition to the other requirements of this section, to be eligible for a grant pursuant to subsection (c)(1), a city shall provide such assurances as the Secretary may require that any grant amounts received will be allocated among eligible activities in a manner that addresses the needs within the metropolitan statistical area in which the city is located, including areas not within the jurisdiction of the city. Any such city shall coordinate with other units of general local government located within the metropolitan statistical area to provide such assurances and comply with the assurances.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title VIII, §854, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4376; Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §606(d), (j)(2), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3807, 3810; Pub. L. 114–201, title VII, §701(a), July 29, 2016, 130 Stat. 812.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12705 of this title, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(A)(ii) and (3)(A)(I), was in the original "section 105 of this Act", meaning section 105 of the AIDS Housing Opportunity Act, and was translated as meaning section 105 of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act, to reflect the probable intent of Congress. The AIDS Housing Opportunity Act does not contain a section 105.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 114–201 added pars. (1) to (4), redesignated former par. (3) as (5), and struck out former pars. (1) and (2) which related to formula allocation and minimum grant, respectively.

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(d)(1), substituted ", units of general local government, and nonprofit organizations" for "and units of general local government".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(d)(2), added subsec. (b) and struck out former subsec. (b) which read as follows: "ELIGIBILITY.—A jurisdiction shall be eligible to receive a grant only if it has obtained an approved housing strategy (or an approved abbreviated housing strategy) in accordance with section 12705 of this title. A grantee shall carry out activities authorized under this chapter through contracts with project sponsors, except that a grantee that is a State shall obtain the approval of the unit of general local government for the locality in which a project is to be located prior to entering into such contracts."

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(d)(3), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "IN GENERAL.—90 percent of the amounts approved in appropriations Acts under section 12912 of this title shall be allocated among eligible grantees on the basis of the incidence of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Of the amounts made available under the previous sentence, the Secretary shall allocate—

"(A) 75 percent among units of general local government located in metropolitan statistical areas with populations in excess of 500,000 and more than 1,500 cases of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and States with more than 1,500 cases of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome outside of metropolitan statistical areas described in subparagraph (A), and

"(B) 25 percent among units of general local government in metropolitan statistical areas with populations in excess of 500,000 and more than 1,500 cases of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, that have a higher than average per capita incidence of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome."

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(d)(4)(A), substituted "Nonformula allocation" for "Noneligible grantees" in heading.

Subsec. (c)(3)(A). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(d)(4)(B), added subpar. (A) and struck out former subpar. (A) which read as follows: "IN GENERAL.—10 percent of the amounts appropriated under section 12912 of this title shall be distributed to grantees and recipients by the Secretary—

"(i) to meet housing needs in States and localities that do not qualify under paragraph (1), or that do qualify under paragraph (1) but do not have an approved housing strategy under section 12705 of this title, and

"(ii) to fund special projects of national significance."

Subsec. (c)(3)(B), (C). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(2), substituted "eligible persons" for "persons with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(d)(5), substituted "applications submitted by applicants and approved by the Secretary" for "approvable applications submitted by eligible applicants" in first sentence.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(d)(6), substituted "other requirements of this section" for "requirements of subsection (b) of this section".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(d)(7), added subsec. (f).

CHANGE OF NAME

Centers for Disease Control changed to Centers for Disease Control and Prevention by Pub. L. 102–531, title III, §312, Oct. 27, 1992, 106 Stat. 3504.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "(i)".

[2] See References in Text note below.

§12904. Eligible activities

Grants allocated under this chapter shall be available only for approved activities to carry out strategies designed to prevent homelessness among eligible persons. Approved activities shall include activities that—

(1) enable public and nonprofit organizations or agencies to provide housing information to such persons and coordinate efforts to expand housing assistance resources for such persons under section 12906 of this title;

(2) facilitate the development and operation of shelter and services for such persons under section 12907 of this title;

(3) provide rental assistance to such persons under section 12908 of this title;

(4) facilitate (through project-based rental assistance or other means) the moderate rehabilitation of single room occupancy dwellings (SROs) that would be made available only to such persons under section 12909 of this title;

(5) facilitate the development of community residences for eligible persons under section 12910 of this title;

(6) carry out other activities that the Secretary develops in cooperation with eligible States and localities, except that activities developed under this paragraph may be assisted only with amounts provided under section 12903(c)(3) [1] of this title.

The Secretary shall establish standards and guidelines for approved activities. The Secretary shall permit grantees to refine and adapt such standards and guidelines for individual projects, where such refinements and adaptations are made necessary by local circumstances.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title VIII, §855, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4378; Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §606(e), (h)(2), (j)(3), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3808, 3810.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12903(c)(3) of this title, referred to in par. (6), was redesignated section 12903(c)(5) of this title by Pub. L. 114–201, title VII, §701(a)(1), July 29, 2016, 130 Stat. 812.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(3)(A), in introductory provisions, substituted "eligible persons" for "such persons with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome".

Par. (3). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(h)(2), struck out "short-term" after "provide".

Par. (5). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(3)(B), struck out "with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome" after "persons".

Par. (6). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(e), inserted before period at end ", except that activities developed under this paragraph may be assisted only with amounts provided under section 12903(c)(3) of this title".

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12905. Responsibilities of grantees

(a) Prohibition of substitution of funds

Amounts received from grants under this chapter may not be used to replace other amounts made available or designated by State or local governments for use for the purposes under this chapter.

(b) Capability

The recipient shall have, in the determination of the grantee or the Secretary, the capacity and capability to effectively administer a grant under this chapter.

(c) Cooperation

The recipient shall agree to cooperate and coordinate in providing assistance under this chapter with the agencies of the relevant State and local governments responsible for services in the area served by the applicant for eligible persons and other public and private organizations and agencies providing services for such eligible persons.

(d) Prohibition of fees

The recipient shall agree that no fee will be charged to any eligible person for any housing or services provided with amounts from a grant under this chapter.

(e) Confidentiality

The recipient shall agree to ensure the confidentiality of the name of any individual assisted with amounts from a grant under this chapter and any other information regarding individuals receiving such assistance.

(f) Financial records

The recipient shall agree to maintain and provide the grantee or the Secretary with financial records sufficient, in the determination of the Secretary, to ensure proper accounting and disbursing of amounts received from a grant under this chapter.

(g) Administrative expenses

(1) Grantees

Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, each grantee may use not more than 3 percent of the grant amount for administrative costs relating to administering grant amounts and allocating such amounts to project sponsors.

(2) Project sponsors

Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, each project sponsor receiving amounts from grants made under this chapter [1] may use not more than 7 percent of the amounts received for administrative costs relating to carrying out eligible activities under section 12904 of this title, including the costs of staff necessary to carry out eligible activities.

(h) Environmental review

For purposes of environmental review, a grant under this chapter shall be treated as assistance for a special project that is subject to section 3547 of this title, and shall be subject to the regulations

issued by the Secretary to implement such section.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title VIII, §856, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4378; Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §606(f), (j)(4), (11)(A), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3809–3811; Pub. L. 106–377, §1(a)(1) [title II, §203(c)], Oct. 27, 2000, 114 Stat. 1441, 1441A–24.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Under this chapter, referred to in subsec. (g)(2), was in the original "under this title", and was translated as reading "under this subtitle", meaning under subtitle D (§§851–863) of title VIII of Pub. L. 101–625, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 106–377 added subsec. (h).

1992—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(4), (11)(A), substituted "eligible persons" for "individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases" and "services for such eligible persons" for "services for such individuals".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(f)(1), added subsec. (d) and struck out former subsec. (d) which read as follows: "NO FEE.—The recipient shall agree that no fee will be charged of any low-income individual for any services provided with amounts from a grant under this chapter and that if fees are charged of any other individuals, the fees will be based on the income and resources of the individual."

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(f)(2), added subsec. (g).

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12906. Grants for AIDS housing information and coordination services

Grants under this section may only be used for the following activities:

(1) Housing information services

To provide (or contract to provide) counseling, information, and referral services to assist eligible persons to locate, acquire, finance, and maintain housing and meet their housing needs.

(2) Resource identification

To identify, coordinate, and develop housing assistance resources (including conducting preliminary research and making expenditures necessary to determine the feasibility of specific housing-related initiatives) for eligible persons.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title VIII, §857, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4379; Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §606(j)(11)(B), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3811.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pars. (1), (2). Pub. L. 102–550 substituted "eligible persons" for "individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases".

§12907. AIDS short-term supported housing and services

(a) Use of grants

Any amounts received from grants under this section may only be used to carry out a program to provide (or contract to provide) assistance to eligible persons who are homeless or in need of housing assistance to prevent homelessness, which may include the following activities:

(1) Short-term supported housing

Purchasing, leasing, renovating, repairing, and converting facilities to provide short-term shelter and services.

(2) Short-term housing payments assistance

Providing rent assistance payments for short-term supported housing and rent, mortgage, and

utilities payments to prevent homelessness of the tenant or mortgagor of a dwelling.

(3) Supportive services

Providing supportive services, to eligible persons assisted under paragraphs (1) and (2), including health, mental health, assessment, permanent housing placement, drug and alcohol abuse treatment and counseling, day care, and nutritional services (except that health services under this paragraph may only be provided to individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases), and providing technical assistance to eligible persons to provide assistance in gaining access to benefits and services for homeless individuals provided by the Federal Government and State and local governments.

(4) Operation

Providing for the operation of short-term supported housing provided under this section, including the costs of security, operation insurance, utilities, furnishings, equipment, supplies, and other incidental costs.

(5) Administration

Providing staff to carry out the program under this section (subject to the provisions of section 12905(g) of this title).

(b) Program requirements

(1) Minimum use period for structures

(A) In general

Any building or structure assisted with amounts from a grant under this section shall be maintained as a facility to provide short-term supported housing or assistance for eligible persons—

(i) in the case of assistance involving substantial rehabilitation or acquisition of the building, for a period of not less than 10 years; and

(ii) in the case of assistance under paragraph (1), (3), or (4) of subsection (a), for a period of not less than 3 years.

(B) Waiver

The Secretary may waive the requirement under subparagraph (A) with respect to any building or structure if the organization or agency that received the grant under which the building was assisted demonstrates, to the satisfaction of the Secretary, that—

(i) the structure is no longer needed to provide short-term supported housing or assistance or the continued operation of the structure for such purposes is no longer feasible; and

(ii) the structure will be used to benefit individuals or families whose incomes do not exceed 80 percent of the median income for the area, as determined by the Secretary, with adjustments for smaller and larger families, except that the Secretary may establish income ceilings higher or lower than 80 percent of the median income for the area if the Secretary finds that such variations are necessary because of prevailing levels of construction costs or unusually high or low family incomes.

(2) Residency and location limitations on short-term supported housing

(A) Residency

A short-term supported housing facility assisted with amounts from a grant under this section may not provide shelter or housing at any single time for more than 50 families or individuals.

(B) Waiver

The Secretary may, as the Secretary determines appropriate, waive the limitation under subparagraph (A) for any program or short-term supported housing facility.

(3) Term of assistance

(A) Supported housing assistance

A program assisted under this section may not provide residence in a short-term housing facility assisted under this section to any individual for a sum of more than 60 days during any 6-month period.

(B) Housing payments assistance

A program assisted under this section may not provide assistance for rent, mortgage, or utilities payments to any individual for rent, mortgage, or utilities costs accruing over a period of more than 21 weeks of any 52-week period.

(C) Waiver

Notwithstanding subparagraphs (A) and (B), the Secretary may waive the applicability of the requirements under such subparagraphs with respect to any individual for which the project sponsor has made a good faith effort to acquire permanent housing (in accordance with paragraph (4)) and has been unable to do so.

(4) Placement

A program assisted under this section shall provide for any individual who has remained in short-term supported housing assisted under the demonstration program, to the maximum extent practicable, the opportunity for placement in permanent housing or an environment appropriate to the health and social needs of the individual.

(5) Presumption for independent living

In providing assistance under this section in any case in which the residence of an individual is appropriate to the needs of the individual, a program assisted under this section shall, when reasonable, provide for assistance in a manner appropriate to maintain the individual in such residence.

(6) Case management services

A program assisted under this section shall provide each individual assisted under the program with an opportunity, if eligible, to receive case management services available from the appropriate social service agencies.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title VIII, §858, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4379; Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §606(g), (j)(5), (11)(C), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3809–3811.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(11)(C)(i), substituted "eligible persons" for "individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(g)(1)(A), (j)(5), substituted "to eligible persons assisted under" for "to individuals assisted under" and inserted before period at end "(except that health services under this paragraph may only be provided to individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases), and providing technical assistance to eligible persons to provide assistance in gaining access to benefits and services for homeless individuals provided by the Federal Government and State and local governments".

Subsec. (a)(4), (5). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(g)(1)(B), (C), added pars. (4) and (5) and struck out former pars. (4) and (5) which read as follows:

"(4) MAINTENANCE AND ADMINISTRATION.—Providing for maintenance, administration, security, operation, insurance, utilities, furnishings, equipment, supplies, and other incidental costs relating to any short-term supported housing provided under the demonstration program under this section.

"(5) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.—Providing technical assistance to such individuals to provide assistance in gaining access to benefits and services for homeless individuals provided by the Federal Government and State and local governments."

Subsec. (b)(1)(A). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(11)(C)(ii), substituted "eligible persons" for "individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(g)(2)(A)(i), (iii), redesignated subpar. (C) as (B) and struck out former subpar. (B) which read as follows: "LOCATION.—A facility for short-term supported housing

assisted with amounts from a grant under this section may not be located in or contiguous to any other facility for emergency or short-term housing that is not limited to use by individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases."

Subsec. (b)(2)(C). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(g)(2)(A)(ii), (iii), substituted "limitation under subparagraph (A)" for "limitations under subparagraphs (A) and (B)" and redesignated subpar. (C) as (B).

Subsec. (b)(3)(C). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(g)(2)(B), added subpar. (C).

§12908. Rental assistance

(a) Use of funds

(1) In general

Grants under this section may be used only for assistance to provide rental assistance for low-income eligible persons. Such assistance may be project based or tenant based and shall be provided to the extent practicable in the manner provided for under section 1437f of this title. Grantees shall ensure that the housing provided is decent, safe, and sanitary.

(2) Shared housing arrangements

Grants under this section may be used to assist individuals who elect to reside in shared housing arrangements in the manner provided under section 1437f(p) of this title, except that, notwithstanding such section, assistance under this section may be made available to nonelderly individuals. The Secretary shall issue any standards for shared housing under this paragraph that vary from standards issued under section 1437f(p) of this title only to the extent necessary to provide for circumstances of shared housing arrangements under this paragraph that differ from circumstances of shared housing arrangements for elderly families under section 1437f(p) of this title.

(b) Limitations

A recipient under this section shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Services

The recipient shall provide for qualified service providers in the area to provide appropriate services to the eligible persons assisted under this section.

(2) Intensive assistance

For any individual with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases who requires more care than can be provided in housing assisted under this section, the recipient shall provide for the locating of a care provider who can appropriately care for the individual and referral of the individual to the care provider.

(c) Administrative costs

A project sponsor providing rental assistance under this section may use amounts from any grant received under this section for administrative expenses involved in providing such assistance, subject to the provisions of 12905(g)(2) [1] of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title VIII, §859, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4381; Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §606(h)(1), (j)(6), (7), (11)(D), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3810, 3811.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102–550, §606(h)(1)(A), substituted "Rental assistance" for "Short-term rental assistance" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(h)(1)(B), (j)(11)(D), struck out "short-term" before "rental assistance" and substituted "eligible persons" for "individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(6), substituted "eligible persons" for "individuals".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(7), inserted "with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases" after "any individual".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(h)(1)(C), added subsec. (c).

[1] *So in original. Probably should be preceded by "section".*

§12909. Single room occupancy dwellings

(a) Use of grants

Grants under this section may be used to provide project-based rental assistance or grants to facilitate the development of single room occupancy dwellings. To the extent practicable, a program under this section shall be carried out in the manner provided for under section 1437f(n) [1] of this title.

(b) Limitation

Recipients under this section shall require the provision to individuals assisted under this section of the following assistance:

(1) Services

Appropriate services provided by qualified service providers in the area.

(2) Intensive assistance

For any individual with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases who requires more care than can be provided in housing assisted under this section, locating a care provider who can appropriately care for the individual and referral of the individual to the care provider.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title VIII, §860, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4381; Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §606(j)(7), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3810.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1437f(n) of this title, referred to in subsec. (a), was repealed by Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §550(a)(7), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2609.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 102–550 inserted "with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases" after "any individual".

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§12910. Grants for community residences and services

(a) Grant authority

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development may make grants to States and metropolitan areas to develop and operate community residences and provide services for eligible persons.

(b) Community residences and services

(1) Community residences

(A) In general

A community residence under this section shall be a multiunit residence designed for eligible persons for the following purposes:

(i) To provide a lower cost residential alternative to institutional care and to prevent or delay the need for institutional care.

(ii) To provide a permanent or transitional residential setting with appropriate services that enhances the quality of life for individuals who are unable to live independently.

(iii) To prevent homelessness among eligible persons by increasing available suitable

housing resources.

(iv) To integrate eligible persons into local communities and provide services to maintain the abilities of such eligible persons to participate as fully as possible in community life.

(B) Rent

Except to the extent that the costs of providing residence are reimbursed or provided by any other assistance from Federal or non-Federal public sources, each resident in a community residence shall pay as rent for a dwelling unit an amount equal to the following:

(i) For low-income individuals, the amount of rent paid under section 3(a) of the United States Housing Act of 1937 (42 U.S.C. 1437a(a)) by a low-income family (as the term is defined in section 3(b)(2) of such Act (42 U.S.C. 1437a(b)(2))) for a dwelling unit assisted under such Act [42 U.S.C. 1437 et seq.].

(ii) For any resident that is not a low-income resident, an amount based on a formula, which shall be determined by the Secretary, under which rent is determined by the income and resources of the resident.

(C) Fees

Fees may be charged for any services provided under subsection (c)(2) to residents of a community residence, except that any fees charged shall be based on the income and resources of the resident and the provision of services to any resident of a community residence may not be withheld because of an inability of the resident to pay such fee.

(D) Section 1437f assistance

Assistance made available under section 8 of the United States Housing Act of 1937 (42 U.S.C. 1437f) may be used in conjunction with a community residence under this subsection for tenant-based assistance.

(2) Services

Services provided with a grant under this section shall consist of services appropriate in assisting eligible persons to enhance their quality of life, enable such individuals to more fully participate in community life, and delay or prevent the placement of such individuals in hospitals or other institutions.

(c) Use of grants

Any amounts received from a grant under this section may be used only as follows:

(1) Community residences

For providing assistance in connection with community residences under subsection (b)(1) for the following activities:

(A) Physical improvements

Construction, acquisition, rehabilitation, conversion, retrofitting, and other physical improvements necessary to make a structure suitable for use as a community residence.

(B) Operating costs

Operating costs for a community residence.

(C) Technical assistance

Technical assistance in establishing and operating a community residence, which may include planning and other predevelopment or preconstruction expenses, and expenses relating to community outreach and educational activities regarding acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and related diseases provided for individuals residing in proximity of eligible persons assisted under this chapter.

(D) In-house services

Services appropriate for individuals residing in a community residence, which may include staff training and recruitment.

(2) Services

For providing services under subsection (b)(2) to any individuals assisted under this chapter.

(3) Administrative expenses

For administrative expenses related to the planning and carrying out activities under this section (subject to the provisions of section 12905(g) of this title).

(d) Limitations on use of grants

(1) Community residences

Any jurisdiction that receives a grant under this section may not use any amounts received under the grant for the purposes under subsection (c)(1), except for planning and other expenses preliminary to construction or other physical improvement under subsection (c)(1)(A), unless the jurisdiction certifies to the Secretary, as the Secretary shall require, the following:

(A) Service agreement

That the jurisdiction has entered into a written agreement with service providers qualified to deliver any services included in the proposal under subsection (c) to provide such services to eligible persons assisted by the community residence.

(B) Funding and capability

That the jurisdiction will have sufficient funding for such services and the service providers are qualified to assist eligible persons.

(C) Zoning and building codes

That any construction or physical improvements carried out with amounts received from the grant will comply with any applicable State and local housing codes and licensing requirements in the jurisdiction in which the building or structure is located.

(D) Intensive assistance

That, for any individual with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases who resides in a community residence assisted under the grant and who requires more intensive care than can be provided by the community residence, the jurisdiction will locate for and refer the individual to a service provider who can appropriately care for the individual.

(2) Services

Any jurisdiction that receives a grant under this section may use any amounts received under the grant for the purposes under subsection (c)(2) only for the provision of services by service providers qualified to provide such services to eligible persons.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title VIII, §861, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4382; Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §606(i), (j)(8)–(10), (11)(E), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3810, 3811; Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §550(b), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2609.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The United States Housing Act of 1937, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(B)(i), is act Sept. 1, 1937, ch. 896, as revised generally by Pub. L. 93–383, title II, §201(a), Aug. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 653, and amended, which is classified generally to chapter 8 (§1437 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1437 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (b)(1)(D). Pub. L. 105–276 substituted "assistance" for "certificates or vouchers".

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(8), substituted "eligible persons" for "persons with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases".

Subsec. (b)(1)(A). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(11)(E)(i), substituted "eligible persons" for "individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases" in introductory provisions and cl. (iii).

Subsec. (b)(1)(A)(iv). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(9), (11)(E)(i), substituted "eligible persons" for "individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases" and "such eligible persons" for "such individuals".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(11)(E)(i), which directed the substitution of "eligible persons" for "individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases" wherever appearing in subsec. (b), was executed by making the substitution for "individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and related diseases" in par. (2) to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (c)(1)(C). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(i)(1), inserted before period at end ", and expenses relating to community outreach and educational activities regarding acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and related diseases provided for individuals residing in proximity of eligible persons assisted under this chapter".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(i)(2), added par. (3) and struck out former par. (3) which read as follows: "For administrative expenses related to the planning and execution of activities under this section, except that a jurisdiction that receives a grant under this section may expend not more than 10 percent of the amount received under the grant for such administrative expenses. Administrative expenses under this paragraph may include expenses relating to community outreach and educational activities regarding acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and related diseases, for staff carrying out activities assisted with a grant under this section and for individuals who reside in proximity of individuals assisted under this chapter."

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(11)(E)(ii), which directed the substitution of "eligible persons" for "individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases" wherever appearing in subsec. (d), was executed by making the substitution for "individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and related diseases" in pars. (1)(B) and (2) to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (d)(1)(A). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(10)(A), substituted "eligible persons" for "individuals".

Subsec. (d)(1)(D). Pub. L. 102–550, §606(j)(10)(B), inserted "with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or related diseases" after "any individual".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by title V of Pub. L. 105–276 effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement amendment before such date, except to extent that such amendment provides otherwise, and with savings provision, see section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as a note under section 1437 of this title.

§12911. Report

Any organization or agency that receives a grant under this chapter shall submit to the Secretary, for any fiscal year in which the organization or agency receives a grant under this chapter, a report describing the use of the amounts received, which shall include the number of individuals assisted, the types of assistance provided, and any other information that the Secretary determines to be appropriate.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title VIII, §862, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4384.)

§12912. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this chapter $150,000,000 for fiscal year 1993 and $156,300,000 for fiscal year 1994.

(Pub. L. 101–625, title VIII, §863, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4384; Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §606(b), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3806.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102–550 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this chapter $75,000,000 for fiscal year 1991, and $156,500,000 for fiscal year 1992."

CHAPTER 132—VICTIMS OF CHILD ABUSE

SUBCHAPTER I—IMPROVING INVESTIGATION AND PROSECUTION OF CHILD ABUSE CASES

SUBCHAPTER I—IMPROVING INVESTIGATION AND PROSECUTION OF CHILD ABUSE CASES

§13001. Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) over 2,000,000 reports of suspected child abuse and neglect are made each year, and drug abuse is associated with a significant portion of these;

(2) the investigation and prosecution of child abuse cases is extremely complex, involving numerous agencies and dozens of personnel;

(3) traditionally, community agencies and professionals have different roles in the prevention, investigation, and intervention process;

(4) in such cases, too often the system does not pay sufficient attention to the needs and welfare of the child victim, aggravating the trauma that the child victim has already experienced;

(5) there is a national need to enhance coordination among community agencies and professionals involved in the intervention system;

(6) multidisciplinary child abuse investigation and prosecution programs have been developed that increase the reporting of child abuse cases, reduce the trauma to the child victim, and increase the successful prosecution of child abuse offenders; and

(7) such programs have proven effective, and with targeted Federal assistance, could be

duplicated in many jurisdictions throughout the country.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §211, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4792; Pub. L. 102–586, §6(a), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5029.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pars. (3) to (7). Pub. L. 102–586 added pars. (3) and (5) and redesignated former pars. (3), (4), and (5) as (4), (6), and (7), respectively.

SHORT TITLE OF 2014 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 113–163, §1, Aug. 8, 2014, 128 Stat. 1864, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 13005 of this title and amending sections 10601 and 13004 of this title] may be cited as the 'Victims of Child Abuse Act Reauthorization Act of 2013'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §201, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4792, provided that: "This title [enacting this chapter, sections 3796aa to 3796aa–8 of this title, and sections 403, 2258, and 3509 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and amending sections 3742, 3782, 3783, 3789, 3793, and 3797 of this title] may be cited as the 'Victims of Child Abuse Act of 1990'."

§13001a. Definitions

For purposes of this subchapter—

(1) the term "Administrator" means the agency head designated under section 5611(b) of this title;

(2) the term "applicant" means a child protective service, law enforcement, legal, medical and mental health agency or other agency that responds to child abuse cases;

(3) the term "board" means the Children's Advocacy Advisory Board established under section 13001b(e) of this title;

(4) the term "census region" means 1 of the 4 census regions (northeast, south, midwest, and west) that are designated as census regions by the Bureau of the Census as of November 4, 1992;

(5) the term "child abuse" means physical or sexual abuse or neglect of a child, including human trafficking and the production of child pornography;

(6) the term "Director" means the Director of the National Center on Child Abuse and Neglect;

(7) the term "multidisciplinary response to child abuse" means a response to child abuse that is based on mutually agreed upon procedures among the community agencies and professionals involved in the intervention, prevention, prosecution, and investigation systems that best meets the needs of child victims and their nonoffending family members;

(8) the term "nonoffending family member" means a member of the family of a victim of child abuse other than a member who has been convicted or accused of committing an act of child abuse; and

(9) the term "regional children's advocacy program" means the children's advocacy program established under section 13001b(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §212, as added Pub. L. 102–586, §6(b)(2), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5029; amended Pub. L. 114–22, title I, §104(1), May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 236.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 212 of Pub. L. 101–647 was renumbered section 214 and is classified to section 13002 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Par. (5). Pub. L. 114–22 inserted ", including human trafficking and the production of child pornography" before semicolon at end.

§13001b. Regional children's advocacy centers

(a) Establishment of regional children's advocacy program

The Administrator, in coordination with the Director and with the Director of the Office of Victims of Crime, shall establish a children's advocacy program to—

(1) focus attention on child victims by assisting communities in developing child-focused, community-oriented, facility-based programs designed to improve the resources available to children and families;

(2) provide support for nonoffending family members;

(3) enhance coordination among community agencies and professionals involved in the intervention, prevention, prosecution, and investigation systems that respond to child abuse cases; and

(4) train physicians and other health care and mental health care professionals in the multidisciplinary approach to child abuse so that trained medical personnel will be available to provide medical support to community agencies and professionals involved in the intervention, prevention, prosecution, and investigation systems that respond to child abuse cases.

(b) Activities of regional children's advocacy program

(1) Administrator

The Administrator, in coordination with the Director, shall—

(A) establish regional children's advocacy program centers;

(B) fund existing regional centers with expertise in the prevention, judicial handling, and treatment of child abuse and neglect; and

(C) fund the establishment of freestanding facilities in multidisciplinary programs within communities that have yet to establish such facilities,

for the purpose of enabling grant recipients to provide information, services, and technical assistance to aid communities in establishing multidisciplinary programs that respond to child abuse.

(2) Grant recipients

A grant recipient under this section shall—

(A) assist communities—

(i) in developing a comprehensive, multidisciplinary response to child abuse that is designed to meet the needs of child victims and their families;

(ii) in establishing a freestanding facility where interviews of and services for abused children can be provided;

(iii) in preventing or reducing trauma to children caused by multiple contacts with community professionals;

(iv) in providing families with needed services and assisting them in regaining maximum functioning;

(v) in maintaining open communication and case coordination among community professionals and agencies involved in child protection efforts;

(vi) in coordinating and tracking investigative, preventive, prosecutorial, and treatment efforts;

(vii) in obtaining information useful for criminal and civil proceedings;

(viii) in holding offenders accountable through improved prosecution of child abuse cases;

(ix) in enhancing professional skills necessary to effectively respond to cases of child abuse through training; and

(x) in enhancing community understanding of child abuse; and

(B) provide training and technical assistance to local children's advocacy centers in its census region that are grant recipients under section 13002 of this title.

(c) Operation of regional children's advocacy program

(1) Solicitation of proposals

Not later than 1 year after November 4, 1992, the Administrator shall solicit proposals for assistance under this section.

(2) Minimum qualifications

In order for a proposal to be selected, the Administrator may require an applicant to have in existence, at the time the proposal is submitted, 1 or more of the following:

(A) A proven record in conducting activities of the kinds described in subsection (c).

(B) A facility where children who are victims of sexual or physical abuse and their nonoffending family members can go for the purpose of evaluation, intervention, evidence gathering, and counseling.

(C) Multidisciplinary staff experienced in providing remedial counseling to children and families.

(D) Experience in serving as a center for training and education and as a resource facility.

(E) National expertise in providing technical assistance to communities with respect to the judicial handling of child abuse and neglect.

(3) Proposal requirements

(A) In general

A proposal submitted in response to the solicitation under paragraph (1) shall—

(i) include a single or multiyear management plan that outlines how the applicant will provide information, services, and technical assistance to communities so that communities can establish multidisciplinary programs that respond to child abuse;

(ii) demonstrate the ability of the applicant to operate successfully a multidisciplinary child abuse program or provide training to allow others to do so; and

(iii) state the annual cost of the proposal and a breakdown of those costs.

(B) Content of management plan

A management plan described in paragraph (3)(A) shall—

(i) outline the basic activities expected to be performed;

(ii) describe the entities that will conduct the basic activities;

(iii) establish the period of time over which the basic activities will take place; and

(iv) define the overall program management and direction by—

(I) identifying managerial, organizational, and administrative procedures and responsibilities;

(II) demonstrating how implementation and monitoring of the progress of the children's advocacy program after receipt of funding will be achieved; and

(III) providing sufficient rationale to support the costs of the plan.

(4) Selection of proposals

(A) Competitive basis

Proposals shall be selected under this section on a competitive basis.

(B) Criteria

The Administrator, in coordination with the Director, shall select proposals for funding that—

(i) best result in developing and establishing multidisciplinary programs that respond to child abuse by assisting, training, and teaching community agencies and professionals called upon to respond to child abuse cases;

(ii) assist in resolving problems that may occur during the development, operation, and implementation of a multidisciplinary program that responds to child abuse;

(iii) carry out the objectives developed by the board under subsection (e)(2)(A);

(iv) to the greatest extent possible and subject to available appropriations, ensure that at least 1 applicant is selected from each of the 4 census regions of the country; and

(v) otherwise best carry out the purposes of this section.

(5) Funding of program

From amounts made available in separate appropriation Acts, the Administrator shall provide to each grant recipient the financial and technical assistance and other incentives that are necessary and appropriate to carry out this section.

(6) Coordination of effort

In order to carry out activities that are in the best interests of abused and neglected children, a grant recipient shall consult with other grant recipients on a regular basis to exchange ideas, share information, and review children's advocacy program activities.

(d) Review

(1) Evaluation of regional children's advocacy program activities

The Administrator, in coordination with the Director, shall regularly monitor and evaluate the activities of grant recipients and shall determine whether each grant recipient has complied with the original proposal and any modifications.

(2) Annual report

A grant recipient shall provide an annual report to the Administrator and the Director that—

(A) describes the progress made in satisfying the purpose of the children's advocacy program; and

(B) states whether changes are needed and are being made to carry out the purpose of the children's advocacy program.

(3) Discontinuation of funding

(A) Failure to implement program activities

If a grant recipient under this section substantially fails in the implementation of the program activities, the Administrator shall not discontinue funding until reasonable notice and an opportunity for reconsideration is given.

(B) Solicitation of new proposals

Upon discontinuation of funding of a grant recipient under this section, the Administrator shall solicit new proposals in accordance with subsection (c).

(e) Children's advocacy advisory board

(1) Establishment of board

(A) In general

Not later than 120 days after November 4, 1992, the Administrator and the Director, after consulting with representatives of community agencies that respond to child abuse cases, shall establish a children's advocacy advisory board to provide guidance and oversight in implementing the selection criteria and operation of the regional children's advocacy program.

(B) Membership

(i) The board—

(I) shall be composed of 12 members who are selected by the Administrator, in coordination with the Director, a majority of whom shall be individuals experienced in the child abuse investigation, prosecution, prevention, and intervention systems;

(II) shall include at least 1 member from each of the 4 census regions; and

(III) shall have members appointed for a term not to exceed 3 years.

(ii) Members of the board may be reappointed for successive terms.

(2) Review and recommendations

(A) Objectives

Not later than 180 days after November 4, 1992, and annually thereafter, the board shall

develop and submit to the Administrator and the Director objectives for the implementation of the children's advocacy program activities described in subsection (b).

(B) Review

The board shall annually—

(i) review the solicitation and selection of children's advocacy program proposals and make recommendations concerning how each such activity can be altered so as to better achieve the purposes of this section; and

(ii) review the program activities and management plan of each grant recipient and report its findings and recommendations to the Administrator and the Director.

(3) Rules and regulations

The board shall promulgate such rules and regulations as it deems necessary to carry out its duties under this section.

(f) Reporting

The Attorney General and the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall submit to Congress, by March 1 of each year, a detailed review of the progress of the regional children's advocacy program activities.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §213, as added Pub. L. 102–586, §6(b)(2), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5030; amended Pub. L. 108–21, title III, §381(a), Apr. 30, 2003, 117 Stat. 667.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 213 of Pub. L. 101–647 was renumbered section 214A and is classified to section 13003 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2003—Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 108–21, §381(a)(1), struck out "and" at end of cl. (ii) of subpar. (B), substituted "board" for "Board" in cl. (iii) of subpar. (B), and redesignated subpars. (C) and (D) as cls. (iv) and (v), respectively, of subpar. (B).

Subsec. (e)(1)(B)(ii), (2)(A), (3). Pub. L. 108–21, §381(a)(2), substituted "board" for "Board".

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY BOARDS

Advisory boards established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless, in the case of a board established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such board is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a board established by Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See sections 3(2) and 14 of Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§13002. Local children's advocacy centers

(a) In general

The Administrator, in coordination with the Director and with the Director of the Office of Victims of Crime, shall make grants to develop and implement multidisciplinary child abuse investigation and prosecution programs.

(b) Direct services for victims of child pornography

The Administrator, in coordination with the Director and with the Director of the Office of Victims of Crime, may make grants to develop and implement specialized programs to identify and provide direct services to victims of child pornography.

(c) Grant criteria

(1) The Director shall establish the criteria to be used in evaluating applications for grants under this section consistent with sections 5673 and 5676 of this title.

(2) In general, the grant criteria established pursuant to paragraph (1) may require that a program

include any of the following elements:

(A) A written agreement between local law enforcement, social service, health, and other related agencies to coordinate child abuse investigation, prosecution, treatment, and counseling services.

(B) An appropriate site for referring, interviewing, treating, and counseling child victims of sexual and serious physical abuse and neglect and nonoffending family members (referred to as the "counseling center").

(C) Referral of all sexual and serious physical abuse and neglect cases to the counseling center not later than 24 hours after notification of an incident of abuse.

(D) Joint initial investigative interviews of child victims by personnel from law enforcement, health, and social service agencies.

(E) A requirement that, to the extent practicable, the same agency representative who conducts an initial interview conduct all subsequent interviews.

(F) A requirement that, to the extent practicable, all interviews and meetings with a child victim occur at the counseling center.

(G) Coordination of each step of the investigation process to minimize the number of interviews that a child victim must attend.

(H) Designation of a director for the multidisciplinary program.

(I) Assignment of a volunteer or staff advocate to each child in order to assist the child and, when appropriate, the child's family, throughout each step of judicial proceedings.

(J) Such other criteria as the Director shall establish by regulation.

(d) Distribution of grants

In awarding grants under this section, the Director shall ensure that grants are distributed to both large and small States and to rural, suburban, and urban jurisdictions.

(e) Consultation with regional children's advocacy centers

A grant recipient under this section shall consult from time to time with regional children's advocacy centers in its census region that are grant recipients under section 13001b of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §214, formerly §212, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4793; renumbered §214 and amended Pub. L. 102–586, §6(b)(1), (c), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5029, 5034; Pub. L. 107–273, div. C, title II, §12221(b)(1)(A), Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1894; Pub. L. 114–22, title I, §104(2), May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 236.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 214 of Pub. L. 101–647 was renumbered section 214B and is classified to section 13004 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsecs. (b) to (e). Pub. L. 114–22 added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsecs. (b) to (d) as (c) to (e), respectively.

2002—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 107–273 substituted "sections 5673 and 5676 of this title" for "sections 5665a, 5673, and 5676 of this title".

1992—Pub. L. 102–586, §6(c)(1), substituted "Local children's advocacy centers" for "Authority of Director to make grants" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102–586, §6(c)(2), substituted "The Administrator, in coordination with the Director and with the Director of the Office of Victims of Crime," for "The Director of the Office of Victims of Crime (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the 'Director'), in consultation with officials of the Department of Health and Human Services,".

Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 102–586, §6(c)(3), inserted "and nonoffending family members" after "neglect".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102–586, §6(c)(4), added subsec. (d).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 107–273 effective on the first day of the first fiscal year that begins after Nov. 2, 2002, and applicable only with respect to fiscal years beginning on or after the first day of the first fiscal year that begins after Nov. 2, 2002, see section 12223 of Pub. L. 107–273, as amended, set out as a note under

section 5601 of this title.

§13003. Grants for specialized technical assistance and training programs

(a) In general

The Administrator shall make grants to national organizations to provide technical assistance and training to attorneys and others instrumental to the criminal prosecution of child abuse cases in State or Federal courts, for the purpose of improving the quality of criminal prosecution of such cases.

(b) Grantee organizations

An organization to which a grant is made pursuant to subsection (a) shall be one that has, or is affiliated with one that has, broad membership among attorneys who prosecute criminal cases in State courts and has demonstrated experience in providing training and technical assistance for prosecutors.

(c) Grant criteria

(1) The Administrator shall establish the criteria to be used for evaluating applications for grants under this section, consistent with sections 5673 and 5676 of this title.

(2) The grant criteria established pursuant to paragraph (1) shall require that a program provide training and technical assistance that includes information regarding improved child interview techniques, thorough investigative methods, interagency coordination and effective presentation of evidence in court, including the use of alternative courtroom procedures described in this title.[1]

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §214A, formerly §213, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4793; renumbered §214A and amended Pub. L. 102–586, §6(b)(1), (d), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5029, 5034; Pub. L. 107–273, div. C, title II, §12221(b)(1)(B), Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1894.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), means title II of Pub. L. 101–647, known as the Victims of Child Abuse Act of 1990, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13001 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 107–273 substituted "sections 5673 and 5676 of this title" for "sections 5665a, 5673, and 5676 of this title".

1992—Subsecs. (a), (c)(1). Pub. L. 102–586, §6(d), substituted "Administrator" for "Director".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 107–273 effective on the first day of the first fiscal year that begins after Nov. 2, 2002, and applicable only with respect to fiscal years beginning on or after the first day of the first fiscal year that begins after Nov. 2, 2002, see section 12223 of Pub. L. 107–273, as amended, set out as a note under section 5601 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13004. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Sections 13001b and 13002

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out sections 13001b and 13002 of this title, $15,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, and 2018.

(b) Section 13003

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out section 13003 of this title, $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, and 2018.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §214B, formerly §214, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4794; renumbered §214B and amended Pub. L. 102–586, §6(b)(1), (e), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5029, 5034; Pub. L. 104–235, title II, §232, Oct. 3, 1996, 110 Stat. 3092; Pub. L. 108–21, title III, §381(b), Apr. 30, 2003, 117 Stat. 667; Pub. L. 113–163, §2(a), Aug. 8, 2014, 128 Stat. 1864.)

AMENDMENTS

2014—Pub. L. 113–163 substituted "fiscal years 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, and 2018" for "fiscal years 2004 and 2005" in subsecs. (a) and (b).

2003—Pub. L. 108–21 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section authorized appropriations to carry out sections 13001b and 13002 of $15,000,000 for fiscal year 1993 and such sums as necessary in fiscal years 1994 through 2000 and appropriations to carry out section 13003 of $5,000,000 for fiscal year 1993 and such sums as necessary in fiscal years 1994 through 2000.

1996—Subsecs. (a)(2), (b)(2). Pub. L. 104–235 substituted "1996, and each of the fiscal years 1997 through 2000" for "and 1996".

1992—Pub. L. 102–586, §6(e), amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section authorized appropriations to carry out this subchapter of $20,000,000 in fiscal year 1991 and such sums as may be necessary in fiscal years 1992 and 1993 and provided that not less than 90 percent was to be used for grants under section 13002 of this title.

§13005. Accountability

All grants awarded by the Administrator under this subchapter shall be subject to the following accountability provisions:

(1) Audit requirement

(A) Definition

In this paragraph, the term "unresolved audit finding" means a finding in the final audit report of the Inspector General of the Department of Justice that the audited grantee has utilized grant funds for an unauthorized expenditure or otherwise unallowable cost that is not closed or resolved within 12 months from the date when the final audit report is issued and any appeal has been completed.

(B) Audit

The Inspector General of the Department of Justice shall conduct audits of recipients of grants under this subchapter to prevent waste, fraud, and abuse of funds by grantees. The Inspector General shall determine the appropriate number of grantees to be audited each year.

(C) Mandatory exclusion

A recipient of grant funds under this subchapter that is found to have an unresolved audit finding shall not be eligible to receive grant funds under this subchapter during the following 2 fiscal years.

(D) Priority

In awarding grants under this subchapter, the Administrator shall give priority to eligible entities that did not have an unresolved audit finding during the 3 fiscal years prior to submitting an application for a grant under this subchapter.

(E) Reimbursement

If an entity is awarded grant funds under this subchapter during the 2-fiscal-year period in which the entity is barred from receiving grants under paragraph (2), the Administrator shall—

(i) deposit an amount equal to the grant funds that were improperly awarded to the grantee into the General Fund of the Treasury; and

(ii) seek to recoup the costs of the repayment to the fund from the grant recipient that was erroneously awarded grant funds.

(2) Nonprofit organization requirements

(A) Definition

For purposes of this paragraph, the term "nonprofit organization" means an organization that is described in section 501(c)(3) of title 26 and is exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of such title.

(B) Prohibition

The Administrator may not award a grant under any grant program described in this subchapter to a nonprofit organization that holds money in offshore accounts for the purpose of avoiding paying the tax described in section 511(a) of title 26.

(C) Disclosure

Each nonprofit organization that is awarded a grant under this subchapter and uses the procedures prescribed in regulations to create a rebuttable presumption of reasonableness for the compensation of its officers, directors, trustees and key employees, shall disclose to the Administrator, in the application for the grant, the process for determining such compensation, including the independent persons involved in reviewing and approving such compensation, the comparability data used, and contemporaneous substantiation of the deliberation and decision. Upon request, the Administrator shall make the information disclosed under this subparagraph available for public inspection.

(3) Conference expenditures

(A) Limitation

No amounts authorized to be appropriated to the Department of Justice under this subchapter may be used by the Administrator, or by any individual or organization awarded discretionary funds through a cooperative agreement under this Act, to host or support any expenditure for conferences that uses more than $20,000 in Department funds, unless the Deputy Attorney General or such Assistant Attorney Generals, Directors, or principal deputies as the Deputy Attorney General may designate, including the Administrator, provides prior written authorization through an award process or subsequent application that the funds may be expended to host a conference.

(B) Written approval

Written approval under subparagraph (A) shall include a written estimate of all costs associated with the conference, including the cost of all food and beverages, audiovisual equipment, honoraria for speakers, and any entertainment.

(C) Report

The Deputy Attorney General shall submit an annual report to the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives on all approved conference expenditures referenced in this paragraph.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §214C, as added Pub. L. 113–163, §2(b), Aug. 8, 2014, 128 Stat. 1864.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in par. (3)(A), probably means the Victims of Child Abuse Act of 1990, title II of Pub. L. 101–647, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4792, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13001 of this title and Tables.

SUBCHAPTER II—COURT-APPOINTED SPECIAL ADVOCATE PROGRAM

§13011. Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) Court Appointed Special Advocates, who may serve as guardians ad litem, are trained volunteers appointed by courts to advocate for the best interests of children who are involved in the juvenile and family court system due to abuse or neglect; and

(2) in 2003, Court Appointed Special Advocate volunteers represented 288,000 children, more than 50 percent of the estimated 540,000 children in foster care because of substantiated cases of child abuse or neglect.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §215, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4794; Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §112(a), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2985.)

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pars. (1), (2). Pub. L. 109–162 added pars. (1) and (2) and struck out former pars. (1) and (2), which read as follows:

"(1) the National Court-Appointed Special Advocate provides training and technical assistance to a network of 13,000 volunteers in 377 programs operating in 47 States; and

"(2) in 1988, these volunteers represented 40,000 children, representing approximately 15 percent of the estimated 270,000 cases of child abuse and neglect in juvenile and family courts."

§13012. Purpose

The purpose of this subchapter is to ensure that by January 1, 2015, a court-appointed special advocate shall be available to every victim of child abuse or neglect in the United States that needs such an advocate.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §216, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4794; Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40156(a)(2), Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1923; Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §112(b), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2986; Pub. L. 113–4, title I, §106(1), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 77.)

AMENDMENTS

2013—Pub. L. 113–4 substituted "January 1, 2015" for "January 1, 2010".

2006—Pub. L. 109–162 substituted "January 1, 2010" for "January 1, 1995".

1994—Pub. L. 103–322 made technical amendment to reference to this subchapter to correct reference to corresponding provision of original act.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

§13013. Strengthening of court-appointed special advocate program

(a) In general

The Administrator of the Office of Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention shall make grants to initiate, sustain, and expand the court-appointed special advocate program.

(b) Grantee organizations

(1) An organization to which a grant is made pursuant to subsection (a)—

(A) shall be a national organization that has broad membership among court-appointed special advocates and has demonstrated experience in grant administration of court-appointed special advocate programs and in providing training and technical assistance to court-appointed special advocate program; or

(B) may be a local public or not-for-profit agency that has demonstrated the willingness to initiate, sustain, and expand a court-appointed special advocate program.

(2) An organization described in paragraph (1)(A) that receives a grant may be authorized to make

subgrants and enter into contracts with public and not-for-profit agencies to initiate, sustain, and expand the court-appointed special advocate program. Should a grant be made to a national organization for this purpose, the Administrator shall specify an amount not exceeding 5 percent that can be used for administrative purposes by the national organization.

(c) Grant criteria

(1) The Administrator shall establish criteria to be used in evaluating applications for grants under this section, consistent with sections 5673 and 5676 of this title.

(2) In general, the grant criteria established pursuant to paragraph (1) shall require that a court-appointed special advocate program provide screening, training, and supervision of court-appointed special advocates in accordance with standards developed by the National Court-Appointed Special Advocate Association. Such criteria may include the requirements that—

(A) a court-appointed special advocate association program have a mission and purpose in keeping with the mission and purpose of the National Court-Appointed Special Advocate Association and that it abide by the National Court-Appointed Special Advocate Association Standards for Programs;

(B) a court-appointed special advocate association program operate with access to legal counsel;

(C) the management and operation of a court-appointed special advocate program assure adequate supervision of court-appointed special advocate volunteers;

(D) a court-appointed special advocate program keep written records on the operation of the program in general and on each applicant, volunteer, and case;

(E) a court-appointed special advocate program have written management and personnel policies and procedures, screening requirements, and training curriculum;

(F) a court-appointed special advocate program not accept volunteers who have been convicted of, have charges pending for, or have in the past been charged with, a felony or misdemeanor involving a sex offense, violent act, child abuse or neglect, or related acts that would pose risks to children or to the court-appointed special advocate program's credibility;

(G) a court-appointed special advocate program have an established procedure to allow the immediate reporting to a court or appropriate agency of a situation in which a court-appointed special advocate volunteer has reason to believe that a child is in imminent danger;

(H) a court-appointed special advocate volunteer be an individual who has been screened and trained by a recognized court-appointed special advocate program and appointed by the court to advocate for children who come into the court system primarily as a result of abuse or neglect; and

(I) a court-appointed special advocate volunteer serve the function of reviewing records, facilitating prompt, thorough review of cases, and interviewing appropriate parties in order to make recommendations on what would be in the best interests of the child.

(3) In awarding grants under this section, the Administrator shall ensure that grants are distributed to localities that have no existing court-appointed special advocate program and to programs in need of expansion.

(d) Background checks

State and local Court Appointed Special Advocate programs are authorized to request fingerprint-based criminal background checks from the Federal Bureau of Investigation's criminal history database for prospective volunteers. The requesting program is responsible for the reasonable costs associated with the Federal records check.

(e) Reporting

An organization that receives a grant under this section for a fiscal year shall submit to the Administrator a report regarding the use of the grant for the fiscal year, including a discussion of outcome performance measures (which shall be established by the Administrator) to determine the effectiveness of the programs of the organization in meeting the needs of children in the child welfare system.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §217, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4794; Pub. L. 107–273, div. C, title II,

§12221(b)(1)(C), Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1894; Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §112(c), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2986; Pub. L. 113–4, title I, §106(2), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 77.)

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (c)(2)(A). Pub. L. 113–4, §106(2)(A), substituted "Standards for Programs" for "Code of Ethics".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 113–4, §106(2)(B), added subsec. (e).

2006—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–162, §112(c)(1), substituted "to initiate, sustain, and expand" for "to expand".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 109–162, §112(c)(2)(A), substituted "subsection (a)—" for "subsection (a)", inserted subpar. (A) designation before "shall be", and substituted "(B) may be" for "(2) may be" and "to initiate, sustain, and expand" for "to initiate or expand".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 109–162, §112(c)(2)(B), substituted "(1)(A)" for "(1)(a)" and "to initiate, sustain, and expand" for "to initiate and to expand".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 109–162, §112(c)(3), added subsec. (d).

2002—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 107–273 substituted "sections 5673 and 5676 of this title" for "sections 5665a, 5673, and 5676 of this title".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 107–273 effective on the first day of the first fiscal year that begins after Nov. 2, 2002, and applicable only with respect to fiscal years beginning on or after the first day of the first fiscal year that begins after Nov. 2, 2002, see section 12223 of Pub. L. 107–273, as amended, set out as a note under section 5601 of this title.

§13013a. Report

(a) Report required

Not later than December 31, 2006, the Inspector General of the Department of Justice shall submit to Congress a report on the types of activities funded by the National Court-Appointed Special Advocate Association and a comparison of outcomes in cases where court-appointed special advocates are involved and cases where court-appointed special advocates are not involved.

(b) Elements of report

The report submitted under subsection (a) shall include information on the following:

(1) The types of activities the National Court-Appointed Special Advocate Association has funded since 1993.

(2) The outcomes in cases where court-appointed special advocates are involved as compared to cases where court-appointed special advocates are not involved, including—

(A) the length of time a child spends in foster care;

(B) the extent to which there is an increased provision of services;

(C) the percentage of cases permanently closed; and

(D) achievement of the permanent plan for reunification or adoption.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §218, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §112(d)(2), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2986.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 218 of Pub. L. 101–647 was renumbered section 219 and is classified to section 13014 of this title.

§13014. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Authorization

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subchapter $12,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018.

(b) Limitation

No funds are authorized to be appropriated for a fiscal year to carry out this subchapter unless the aggregate amount appropriated to carry out title II of the Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5611 et seq.) for such fiscal year is not less than the aggregate amount appropriated to carry out such title for the preceding fiscal year.

(c) Prohibition on lobbying

No funds authorized under this subchapter may be used for lobbying activities in contravention of OMB Circular No. A–122.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §219, formerly §218, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4796; Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40156(a)(1), Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1922; Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title III, §1302(a), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1511; renumbered §219 and amended Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §112(d)(1), (e), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2986; Pub. L. 113–4, title I, §106(3), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 77.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 93–415, Sept. 7, 1974, 88 Stat. 1109, as amended. Title II of the Act is classified principally to subchapter II (§5611 et seq.) of chapter 72 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 113–4 substituted "fiscal years 2014 through 2018" for "fiscal years 2007 through 2011".

2006—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–162, §112(e)(1), added subsec. (a) and struck out heading and text of former subsec. (a). Text read as follows: "There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subchapter $12,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2001 through 2005."

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 109–162, §112(e)(2), added subsec. (c).

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–386 added subsec. (a) and struck out heading and text of former subsec. (a). Text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subchapter—

"(1) $6,000,000 for fiscal year 1996;

"(2) $6,000,000 for fiscal year 1997;

"(3) $7,000,000 for fiscal year 1998;

"(4) $9,000,000 for fiscal year 1999; and

"(5) $10,000,000 for fiscal year 2000."

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–322 amended heading and text of subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this chapter—

"(1) $5,000,000 in fiscal year 1991; and

"(2) such sums as may be necessary to carry out this subchapter in each of fiscal years 1992, 1993, and 1994."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

SUBCHAPTER III—CHILD ABUSE TRAINING PROGRAMS FOR JUDICIAL PERSONNEL AND PRACTITIONERS

§13021. Findings and purpose

(a) Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) a large number of juvenile and family courts are inundated with increasing numbers of cases due to increased reports of abuse and neglect, increasing drug-related maltreatment, and insufficient court resources;

(2) the amendments made to the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 301 et seq.] by the Adoption Assistance and Child Welfare Act of 1980 make substantial demands on the courts handling abuse and neglect cases, but provide no assistance to the courts to meet those demands;

(3) the Adoption [1] and Child Welfare Act of 1980 requires courts to—

(A) determine whether the agency made reasonable efforts to prevent foster care placement;

(B) approve voluntary nonjudicial placement; and

(C) provide procedural safeguards for parents when their parent-child relationship is affected;

(4) social welfare agencies press the courts to meet such requirements, yet scarce resources often dictate that courts comply pro forma without undertaking the meaningful judicial inquiry contemplated by Congress in the Adoption [1] and Child Welfare Act of 1980;

(5) compliance with the Adoption [1] and Child Welfare Act of 1980 and overall improvements in the judicial response to abuse and neglect cases can best come about through action by top level court administrators and judges with administrative functions who understand the unique aspects of decisions required in child abuse and neglect cases; and

(6) the Adoption [1] and Child Welfare Act of 1980 provides financial incentives to train welfare agency staff to meet the requirements, but provides no resources to train judges.

(b) Purpose

The purpose of this subchapter is to provide expanded technical assistance and training to judicial personnel and attorneys, particularly personnel and practitioners in juvenile and family courts, to improve the judicial system's handling of child abuse and neglect cases with specific emphasis on the role of the courts in addressing reasonable efforts that can safely avoid unnecessary and unnecessarily prolonged foster care placement.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §221, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4796; Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40156(b)(2), Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1923.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 7 (§301 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

The Adoption Assistance and Child Welfare Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 96–272, June 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 500, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1980 Amendments note set out under section 1305 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–322 made technical amendment to reference to this subchapter to correct reference to corresponding provision of original act.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "Adoption Assistance".

§13022. Grants for juvenile and family court personnel

In order to improve the judicial system's handling of child abuse and neglect cases, the Administrator of the Office of Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention shall make grants for the purpose of providing—

(1) technical assistance and training to judicial personnel and attorneys, particularly personnel and practitioners in juvenile and family courts; and

(2) administrative reform in juvenile and family courts.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §222, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4797.)

§13023. Specialized technical assistance and training programs

(a) Grants to develop model programs

(1) The Administrator shall make grants to national organizations to develop 1 or more model technical assistance and training programs to improve the judicial system's handling of child abuse and neglect cases.

(2) An organization to which a grant is made pursuant to paragraph (1) shall be one that has broad membership among juvenile and family court judges and has demonstrated experience in providing training and technical assistance for judges, attorneys, child welfare personnel, and lay child advocates.

(b) Grants to juvenile and family courts

(1) In order to improve the judicial system's handling of child abuse and neglect cases, the Administrator shall make grants to State courts or judicial administrators for programs that provide or contract for, the implementation of—

(A) training and technical assistance to judicial personnel and attorneys in juvenile and family courts; and

(B) administrative reform in juvenile and family courts.

(2) The criteria established for the making of grants pursuant to paragraph (1) shall give priority to programs that improve—

(A) procedures for determining whether child service agencies have made reasonable efforts to prevent placement of children in foster care;

(B) procedures for determining whether child service agencies have, after placement of children in foster care, made reasonable efforts to reunite the family; and

(C) procedures for coordinating information and services among health professionals, social workers, law enforcement professionals, prosecutors, defense attorneys, and juvenile and family court personnel, consistent with subchapter I.

(c) Grant criteria

The Administrator shall make grants under subsections (a) and (b) consistent with sections 5666, 5673, and 5676 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §223, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4797; Pub. L. 107–273, div. C, title II, §12221(b)(1)(D), Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1894.)

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 107–273 substituted "sections 5666, 5673, and 5676 of this title" for "section 5665a, 5673, and 5676 of this title".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 107–273 effective on the first day of the first fiscal year that begins after Nov. 2, 2002, and applicable only with respect to fiscal years beginning on or after the first day of the first fiscal year that begins after Nov. 2, 2002, see section 12223 of Pub. L. 107–273, as amended, set out as a note under section 5601 of this title.

§13024. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Authorization

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subchapter $2,300,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018.

(b) Use of funds

Of the amounts appropriated in subsection (a), not less than 80 percent shall be used for grants under section 13023(b) of this title.

(c) Limitation

No funds are authorized to be appropriated for a fiscal year to carry out this subchapter unless the aggregate amount appropriated to carry out title II of the Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5611 et seq.) for such fiscal year is not less than the aggregate amount appropriated to carry out such title for the preceding fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §224, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4798; Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40156(b)(1), Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1923; Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title III, §1302(b), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1511; Pub. L. 113–4, title XI, §1105, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 135.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 93–415, Sept. 7, 1974, 88 Stat. 1109, as amended. Title II of the Act is classified principally to subchapter II (§5611 et seq.) of chapter 72 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 113–4 substituted "$2,300,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018." for "$2,300,000 for each of fiscal years 2001 through 2005."

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–386 added subsec. (a) and struck out heading and text of former subsec. (a). Text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subchapter—

"(1) $750,000 for fiscal year 1996;

"(2) $1,000,000 for fiscal year 1997;

"(3) $2,000,000 for fiscal year 1998;

"(4) $2,000,000 for fiscal year 1999; and

"(5) $2,300,000 for fiscal year 2000."

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–322 amended heading and text of subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this chapter—

"(1) $10,000,000 in fiscal year 1991; and

"(2) such sums as may be necessary to carry out this chapter in each of fiscal years 1992, 1993, and 1994."

SUBCHAPTER IV—REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

§13031. Child abuse reporting

(a) In general

A person who, while engaged in a professional capacity or activity described in subsection (b) on Federal land or in a federally operated (or contracted) facility, learns of facts that give reason to suspect that a child has suffered an incident of child abuse, shall as soon as possible make a report of the suspected abuse to the agency designated under subsection (d) and to the agency or agencies provided for in subsection (e), if applicable.

(b) Covered professionals

Persons engaged in the following professions and activities are subject to the requirements of subsection (a):

(1) Physicians, dentists, medical residents or interns, hospital personnel and administrators, nurses, health care practitioners, chiropractors, osteopaths, pharmacists, optometrists, podiatrists,

emergency medical technicians, ambulance drivers, undertakers, coroners, medical examiners, alcohol or drug treatment personnel, and persons performing a healing role or practicing the healing arts.

(2) Psychologists, psychiatrists, and mental health professionals.

(3) Social workers, licensed or unlicensed marriage, family, and individual counselors.

(4) Teachers, teacher's aides or assistants, school counselors and guidance personnel, school officials, and school administrators.

(5) Child care workers and administrators.

(6) Law enforcement personnel, probation officers, criminal prosecutors, and juvenile rehabilitation or detention facility employees.

(7) Foster parents.

(8) Commercial film and photo processors.

(c) Definitions

For the purposes of this section—

(1) the term "child abuse" means the physical or mental injury, sexual abuse or exploitation, or negligent treatment of a child;

(2) the term "physical injury" includes but is not limited to lacerations, fractured bones, burns, internal injuries, severe bruising or serious bodily harm;

(3) the term "mental injury" means harm to a child's psychological or intellectual functioning which may be exhibited by severe anxiety, depression, withdrawal or outward aggressive behavior, or a combination of those behaviors, which may be demonstrated by a change in behavior, emotional response or cognition;

(4) the term "sexual abuse" includes the employment, use, persuasion, inducement, enticement, or coercion of a child to engage in, or assist another person to engage in, sexually explicit conduct or the rape, molestation, prostitution, or other form of sexual exploitation of children, or incest with children;

(5) the term "sexually explicit conduct" means actual or simulated—

(A) sexual intercourse, including sexual contact in the manner of genital-genital, oral-genital, anal-genital, or oral-anal contact, whether between persons of the same or of opposite sex; sexual contact means the intentional touching, either directly or through clothing, of the genitalia, anus, groin, breast, inner thigh, or buttocks of any person with an intent to abuse, humiliate, harass, degrade, or arouse or gratify sexual desire of any person;

(B) bestiality;

(C) masturbation;

(D) lascivious exhibition of the genitals or pubic area of a person or animal; or

(E) sadistic or masochistic abuse;

(6) the term "exploitation" means child pornography or child prostitution;

(7) the term "negligent treatment" means the failure to provide, for reasons other than poverty, adequate food, clothing, shelter, or medical care so as to seriously endanger the physical health of the child; and

(8) the term "child abuse" shall not include discipline administered by a parent or legal guardian to his or her child provided it is reasonable in manner and moderate in degree and otherwise does not constitute cruelty.

(d) Agency designated to receive report and action to be taken

For all Federal lands and all federally operated (or contracted) facilities in which children are cared for or reside, the Attorney General shall designate an agency to receive and investigate the reports described in subsection (a). By formal written agreement, the designated agency may be a non-Federal agency. When such reports are received by social services or health care agencies, and involve allegations of sexual abuse, serious physical injury, or life-threatening neglect of a child, there shall be an immediate referral of the report to a law enforcement agency with authority to take emergency action to protect the child. All reports received shall be promptly investigated, and

whenever appropriate, investigations shall be conducted jointly by social services and law enforcement personnel, with a view toward avoiding unnecessary multiple interviews with the child.

(e) Reporters and recipient of report involving children and homes of members of the Armed Forces

(1) Recipients of reports

In the case of an incident described in subsection (a) involving a child in the family or home of member of the Armed Forces (regardless of whether the incident occurred on or off a military installation), the report required by subsection (a) shall be made to the appropriate child welfare services agency or agencies of the State in which the child resides. The Attorney General, the Secretary of Defense, and the Secretary of Homeland Security (with respect to the Coast Guard when it is not operating as a service in the Navy) shall jointly, in consultation with the chief executive officers of the States, designate the child welfare service agencies of the States that are appropriate recipients of reports pursuant to this subsection. Any report on an incident pursuant to this subsection is in addition to any other report on the incident pursuant to this section.

(2) Makers of reports

For purposes of the making of reports under this section pursuant to this subsection, the persons engaged in professions and activities described in subsection (b) shall include members of the Armed Forces who are engaged in such professions and activities for members of the Armed Forces and their dependents.

(f) Reporting form

In every federally operated (or contracted) facility, and on all Federal lands, a standard written reporting form, with instructions, shall be disseminated to all mandated reporter groups. Use of the form shall be encouraged, but its use shall not take the place of the immediate making of oral reports, telephonically or otherwise, when circumstances dictate.

(g) Immunity for good faith reporting and associated actions

All persons who, acting in good faith, make a report by subsection (a), or otherwise provide information or assistance in connection with a report, investigation, or legal intervention pursuant to a report, shall be immune from civil and criminal liability arising out of such actions. There shall be a presumption that any such persons acted in good faith. If a person is sued because of the person's performance of one of the above functions, and the defendant prevails in the litigation, the court may order that the plaintiff pay the defendant's legal expenses. Immunity shall not be accorded to persons acting in bad faith.

(h) Training of prospective reporters

All individuals in the occupations listed in subsection (b)(1) who work on Federal lands, or are employed in federally operated (or contracted) facilities, shall receive periodic training in the obligation to report, as well as in the identification of abused and neglected children.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §226, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4806; Pub. L. 114–328, div. A, title V, §575(b), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2142.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 226 of Pub. L. 101–647. Subsec. (g) of section 226 of Pub. L. 101–647 enacted section 2258 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 114–328, §575(b)(1), inserted before period at end "and to the agency or agencies provided for in subsection (e), if applicable".

Subsecs. (e) to (g). Pub. L. 114–328, §575(b)(2), (3), added subsec. (e) and redesignated former subsecs. (e) and (f) as (f) and (g), respectively.

§13032. Repealed. Pub. L. 110–401, title V, §501(b)(1), Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4251

Section, Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §227, as added Pub. L. 105–314, title VI, §604(a), Oct. 30, 1998, 112 Stat. 2983; amended Pub. L. 106–113, div. B, §1000(a)(1) [title I, §121], Nov. 29, 1999, 113 Stat. 1535, 1501A–23; Pub. L. 108–21, title V, §508(a), Apr. 30, 2003, 117 Stat. 683; Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §130, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 601, required certain electronic communication service or remote computing service providers to report child pornography violations, established conditions for disclosure of the information reported, and limited civil liability and scope of reports by informants.

SUBCHAPTER V—CHILD CARE WORKER EMPLOYEE BACKGROUND CHECKS

§13041. Requirement for background checks

(a) In general

(1) Each agency of the Federal Government, and every facility operated by the Federal Government (or operated under contract with the Federal Government), that hires (or contracts for hire) individuals involved with the provision to children under the age of 18 of child care services shall assure that all existing and newly-hired employees undergo a criminal history background check. All existing staff shall receive such checks not later than May 29, 1991. Except as provided in subsection (b)(3), no additional staff shall be hired without a check having been completed.

(2) For the purposes of this section, the term "child care services" means child protective services (including the investigation of child abuse and neglect reports), social services, health and mental health care, child (day) care, education (whether or not directly involved in teaching), foster care, residential care, recreational or rehabilitative programs, and detention, correctional, or treatment services.

(b) Criminal history check

(1) A background check required by subsection (a) shall be—

(A) based on a set of the employee's fingerprints obtained by a law enforcement officer and on other identifying information;

(B) conducted through the Identification Division of the Federal Bureau of Investigation and through the State criminal history repositories of all States that an employee or prospective employee lists as current and former residences in an employment application; and

(C) initiated through the personnel programs of the applicable Federal agencies.

(2) The results of the background check shall be communicated to the employing agency.

(3) An agency or facility described in subsection (a)(1) may hire a staff person provisionally prior to the completion of a background check if, at all times prior to receipt of the background check during which children are in the care of the person, the person is within the sight and under the supervision of a staff person with respect to whom a background check has been completed.

(c) Applicable criminal histories

Any conviction for a sex crime, an offense involving a child victim, or a drug felony, may be ground for denying employment or for dismissal of an employee in any of the positions listed in subsection (a)(2). In the case of an incident in which an individual has been charged with one of those offenses, when the charge has not yet been disposed of, an employer may suspend an employee from having any contact with children while on the job until the case is resolved. Conviction of a crime other than a sex crime may be considered if it bears on an individual's fitness to have responsibility for the safety and well-being of children.

(d) Employment applications

(1) Employment applications for individuals who are seeking work for an agency of the Federal Government, or for a facility or program operated by (or through contract with) the Federal Government, in any of the positions listed in subsection (a)(1), shall contain a question asking whether the individual has ever been arrested for or charged with a crime involving a child, and if so requiring a description of the disposition of the arrest or charge. An application shall state that it is being signed under penalty of perjury, with the applicable Federal punishment for perjury stated on the application.

(2) A Federal agency seeking a criminal history record check shall first obtain the signature of the employee or prospective employee indicating that the employee or prospective employee has been notified of the employer's obligation to require a record check as a condition of employment and the employee's right to obtain a copy of the criminal history report made available to the employing Federal agency and the right to challenge the accuracy and completeness of any information contained in the report.

(e) Encouragement of voluntary criminal history checks for others who may have contact with children

Federal agencies and facilities are encouraged to submit identifying information for criminal history checks on volunteers working in any of the positions listed in subsection (a) and on adult household members in places where child care or foster care services are being provided in a home.

(Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §231, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4808; Pub. L. 102–190, div. A, title X, §1094(a), Dec. 5, 1991, 105 Stat. 1488.)

AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102–190, §1094(a)(1), substituted "May 29, 1991. Except as provided in subsection (b)(3), no additional staff" for "6 months after November 29, 1990, and no additional staff".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 102–190, §1094(a)(2), added par. (3).

SUBCHAPTER VI—TREATMENT FOR JUVENILE OFFENDERS WHO ARE VICTIMS OF CHILD ABUSE OR NEGLECT

§§13051 to 13055. Repealed. Pub. L. 102–586, §2(i)(2), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5015

Section 13051, Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §251, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4814, authorized Administrator to make grants to public and nonprofit private organizations to develop, establish, and support projects for juvenile offenders who are victims of child abuse or neglect.

Section 13052, Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §252, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4815, related to administrative requirements.

Section 13053, Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §253, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4815, provided that Administrator in making grants give priority to applicants with experience and not disapprove an application solely because applicant proposes treating or serving juveniles whose offenses were not serious crimes.

Section 13054, Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §254, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4815, authorized appropriations to carry out this subchapter.

Section 13055, Pub. L. 101–647, title II, §255, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4815, defined "Administrator" and "juvenile" for purposes of this subchapter.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Pub. L. 102–586, §2(i)(2), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5015, provided that the repeal by that section is effective Sept. 30, 1993.

CHAPTER 133—POLLUTION PREVENTION

Sec.

§13101. Findings and policy

(a) Findings

The Congress finds that:

(1) The United States of America annually produces millions of tons of pollution and spends tens of billions of dollars per year controlling this pollution.

(2) There are significant opportunities for industry to reduce or prevent pollution at the source through cost-effective changes in production, operation, and raw materials use. Such changes offer industry substantial savings in reduced raw material, pollution control, and liability costs as well as help protect the environment and reduce risks to worker health and safety.

(3) The opportunities for source reduction are often not realized because existing regulations, and the industrial resources they require for compliance, focus upon treatment and disposal, rather than source reduction; existing regulations do not emphasize multi-media management of pollution; and businesses need information and technical assistance to overcome institutional barriers to the adoption of source reduction practices.

(4) Source reduction is fundamentally different and more desirable than waste management and pollution control. The Environmental Protection Agency needs to address the historical lack of attention to source reduction.

(5) As a first step in preventing pollution through source reduction, the Environmental Protection Agency must establish a source reduction program which collects and disseminates information, provides financial assistance to States, and implements the other activities provided for in this chapter.

(b) Policy

The Congress hereby declares it to be the national policy of the United States that pollution should be prevented or reduced at the source whenever feasible; pollution that cannot be prevented should be recycled in an environmentally safe manner, whenever feasible; pollution that cannot be prevented or recycled should be treated in an environmentally safe manner whenever feasible; and disposal or other release into the environment should be employed only as a last resort and should be conducted in an environmentally safe manner.

(Pub. L. 101–508, title VI, §6602, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–321.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(5), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle F (§§6501, 6601–6610) of title VI, Pub. L. 101–508, which is classified generally to this chapter. For complete classification of subtitle F to the Code, see Short Title note below and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 101–508, title VI, §6601, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–321, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle F (§§6501, 6601–6610) of title VI of Pub. L. 101–508, enacting this chapter and section 4370c of this title] may be cited as the 'Pollution Prevention Act of 1990'."

§13102. Definitions

For purposes of this chapter—

(1) The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency.

(2) The term "Agency" means the Environmental Protection Agency.

(3) The term "toxic chemical" means any substance on the list described in section 11023(c) of this title.

(4) The term "release" has the same meaning as provided by section 11049(8) of this title.

(5)(A) The term "source reduction" means any practice which—

(i) reduces the amount of any hazardous substance, pollutant, or contaminant entering any waste stream or otherwise released into the environment (including fugitive emissions) prior to recycling, treatment, or disposal; and

(ii) reduces the hazards to public health and the environment associated with the release of such substances, pollutants, or contaminants.

The term includes equipment or technology modifications, process or procedure modifications, reformulation or redesign of products, substitution of raw materials, and improvements in housekeeping, maintenance, training, or inventory control.

(B) The term "source reduction" does not include any practice which alters the physical, chemical, or biological characteristics or the volume of a hazardous substance, pollutant, or contaminant through a process or activity which itself is not integral to and necessary for the production of a product or the providing of a service.

(6) The term "multi-media" means water, air, and land.

(7) The term "SIC codes" refers to the 2-digit code numbers used for classification of economic activity in the Standard Industrial Classification Manual.

(Pub. L. 101–508, title VI, §6603, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–321.)

§13103. EPA activities

(a) Authorities

The Administrator shall establish in the Agency an office to carry out the functions of the Administrator under this chapter. The office shall be independent of the Agency's single-medium program offices but shall have the authority to review and advise such offices on their activities to promote a multi-media approach to source reduction. The office shall be under the direction of such officer of the Agency as the Administrator shall designate.

(b) Functions

The Administrator shall develop and implement a strategy to promote source reduction. As part of the strategy, the Administrator shall—

(1) establish standard methods of measurement of source reduction;

(2) ensure that the Agency considers the effect of its existing and proposed programs on source reduction efforts and shall review regulations of the Agency prior and subsequent to their proposal to determine their effect on source reduction;

(3) coordinate source reduction activities in each Agency Office [1] and coordinate with appropriate offices to promote source reduction practices in other Federal agencies, and generic research and development on techniques and processes which have broad applicability;

(4) develop improved methods of coordinating, streamlining and assuring public access to data collected under Federal environmental statutes;

(5) facilitate the adoption of source reduction techniques by businesses. This strategy shall include the use of the Source Reduction Clearinghouse and State matching grants provided in this chapter to foster the exchange of information regarding source reduction techniques, the dissemination of such information to businesses, and the provision of technical assistance to

businesses. The strategy shall also consider the capabilities of various businesses to make use of source reduction techniques;

(6) identify, where appropriate, measurable goals which reflect the policy of this chapter, the tasks necessary to achieve the goals, dates at which the principal tasks are to be accomplished, required resources, organizational responsibilities, and the means by which progress in meeting the goals will be measured;

(8) [2] establish an advisory panel of technical experts comprised of representatives from industry, the States, and public interest groups, to advise the Administrator on ways to improve collection and dissemination of data;

(9) establish a training program on source reduction opportunities, including workshops and guidance documents, for State and Federal permit issuance, enforcement, and inspection officials working within all agency program offices.[3]

(10) identify and make recommendations to Congress to eliminate barriers to source reduction including the use of incentives and disincentives;

(11) identify opportunities to use Federal procurement to encourage source reduction;

(12) develop, test and disseminate model source reduction auditing procedures designed to highlight source reduction opportunities; and

(13) establish an annual award program to recognize a company or companies which operate outstanding or innovative source reduction programs.

(Pub. L. 101–508, title VI, §6604, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–322.)

[1] So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.

[2] So in original. Subsec. (b) enacted without a par. (7).

[3] So in original. The period probably should be a semicolon.

§13104. Grants to States for State technical assistance programs

(a) General authority

The Administrator shall make matching grants to States for programs to promote the use of source reduction techniques by businesses.

(b) Criteria

When evaluating the requests for grants under this section, the Administrator shall consider, among other things, whether the proposed State program would accomplish the following:

(1) Make specific technical assistance available to businesses seeking information about source reduction opportunities, including funding for experts to provide onsite technical advice to business [1] seeking assistance and to assist in the development of source reduction plans.

(2) Target assistance to businesses for whom lack of information is an impediment to source reduction.

(3) Provide training in source reduction techniques. Such training may be provided through local engineering schools or any other appropriate means.

(c) Matching funds

Federal funds used in any State program under this section shall provide no more than 50 per centum of the funds made available to a State in each year of that State's participation in the program.

(d) Effectiveness

The Administrator shall establish appropriate means for measuring the effectiveness of the State grants made under this section in promoting the use of source reduction techniques by businesses.

(e) Information

States receiving grants under this section shall make information generated under the grants available to the Administrator.

(Pub. L. 101–508, title VI, §6605, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–323.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "businesses".*

§13105. Source Reduction Clearinghouse

(a) Authority

The Administrator shall establish a Source Reduction Clearinghouse to compile information including a computer data base which contains information on management, technical, and operational approaches to source reduction. The Administrator shall use the clearinghouse to—

(1) serve as a center for source reduction technology transfer;

(2) mount active outreach and education programs by the States to further the adoption of source reduction technologies; and

(3) collect and compile information reported by States receiving grants under section 13104 of this title on the operation and success of State source reduction programs.

(b) Public availability

The Administrator shall make available to the public such information on source reduction as is gathered pursuant to this chapter and such other pertinent information and analysis regarding source reduction as may be available to the Administrator. The data base shall permit entry and retrieval of information to any person.

(Pub. L. 101–508, title VI, §6606, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–324.)

§13106. Source reduction and recycling data collection

(a) Reporting requirements

Each owner or operator of a facility required to file an annual toxic chemical release form under section 11023 of this title for any toxic chemical shall include with each such annual filing a toxic chemical source reduction and recycling report for the preceeding [1] calendar year. The toxic chemical source reduction and recycling report shall cover each toxic chemical required to be reported in the annual toxic chemical release form filed by the owner or operator under section 11023(c) of this title. This section shall take effect with the annual report filed under section 11023 of this title for the first full calendar year beginning after November 5, 1990.

(b) Items included in report

The toxic chemical source reduction and recycling report required under subsection (a) shall set forth each of the following on a facility-by-facility basis for each toxic chemical:

(1) The quantity of the chemical entering any waste stream (or otherwise released into the environment) prior to recycling, treatment, or disposal during the calendar year for which the report is filed and the percentage change from the previous year. The quantity reported shall not include any amount reported under paragraph (7). When actual measurements of the quantity of a toxic chemical entering the waste streams are not readily available, reasonable estimates should be made based on best engineering judgment.

(2) The amount of the chemical from the facility which is recycled (at the facility or elsewhere) during such calendar year, the percentage change from the previous year, and the process of recycling used.

(3) The source reduction practices used with respect to that chemical during such year at the facility. Such practices shall be reported in accordance with the following categories unless the

Administrator finds other categories to be more appropriate.

(A) Equipment, technology, process, or procedure modifications.

(B) Reformulation or redesign of products.

(C) Substitution of raw materials.

(D) Improvement in management, training, inventory control, materials handling, or other general operational phases of industrial facilities.

(4) The amount expected to be reported under paragraph [2] (1) and (2) for the two calendar years immediately following the calendar year for which the report is filed. Such amount shall be expressed as a percentage change from the amount reported in paragraphs (1) and (2).

(5) A ratio of production in the reporting year to production in the previous year. The ratio should be calculated to most closely reflect all activities involving the toxic chemical. In specific industrial classifications subject to this section, where a feedstock or some variable other than production is the primary influence on waste characteristics or volumes, the report may provide an index based on that primary variable for each toxic chemical. The Administrator is encouraged to develop production indexes to accommodate individual industries for use on a voluntary basis.

(6) The techniques which were used to identify source reduction opportunities. Techniques listed should include, but are not limited to, employee recommendations, external and internal audits, participative team management, and material balance audits. Each type of source reduction listed under paragraph (3) should be associated with the techniques or multiples of techniques used to identify the source reduction technique.

(7) The amount of any toxic chemical released into the environment which resulted from a catastrophic event, remedial action, or other one-time event, and is not associated with production processes during the reporting year.

(8) The amount of the chemical from the facility which is treated (at the facility or elsewhere) during such calendar year and the percentage change from the previous year. For the first year of reporting under this subsection, comparison with the previous year is required only to the extent such information is available.

(c) SARA provisions

The provisions of sections 11042, 11045(c), and 11046 of this title shall apply to the reporting requirements of this section in the same manner as to the reports required under section 11023 of this title. The Administrator may modify the form required for purposes of reporting information under section 11023 of this title to the extent he deems necessary to include the additional information required under this section.

(d) Additional optional information

Any person filing a report under this section for any year may include with the report additional information regarding source reduction, recycling, and other pollution control techniques in earlier years.

(e) Availability of data

Subject to section 11042 of this title, the Administrator shall make data collected under this section publicly available in the same manner as the data collected under section 11023 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–508, title VI, §6607, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–324.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

SARA, referred to in the heading of subsec. (c), means the Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986, Pub. L. 99–499, Oct. 17, 1986, 100 Stat. 1613, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1986 Amendment note set out under section 9601 of this title and Tables.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "preceding".

[2] So in original. Probably should be "paragraphs".

§13107. EPA report

(a) Biennial reports

The Administrator shall provide Congress with a report within eighteen months after November 5, 1990, and biennially thereafter, containing a detailed description of the actions taken to implement the strategy to promote source reduction developed under section 13103(b) [1] of this title and of the results of such actions. The report shall include an assessment of the effectiveness of the clearinghouse and grant program established under this chapter in promoting the goals of the strategy, and shall evaluate data gaps and data duplication with respect to data collected under Federal environmental statutes.

(b) Subsequent reports

Each biennial report submitted under subsection (a) after the first report shall contain each of the following:

(1) An analysis of the data collected under section 13106 of this title on an industry-by-industry basis for not less than five SIC codes or other categories as the Administrator deems appropriate. The analysis shall begin with those SIC codes or other categories of facilities which generate the largest quantities of toxic chemical waste. The analysis shall include an evaluation of trends in source reduction by industry, firm size, production, or other useful means. Each such subsequent report shall cover five SIC codes or other categories which were not covered in a prior report until all SIC codes or other categories have been covered.

(2) An analysis of the usefulness and validity of the data collected under section 13106 of this title for measuring trends in source reduction and the adoption of source reduction by business.

(3) Identification of regulatory and nonregulatory barriers to source reduction, and of opportunities for using existing regulatory programs, and incentives and disincentives to promote and assist source reduction.

(4) Identification of industries and pollutants that require priority assistance in multi-media source reduction [2]

(5) Recommendations as to incentives needed to encourage investment and research and development in source reduction.

(6) Identification of opportunities and development of priorities for research and development in source reduction methods and techniques.

(7) An evaluation of the cost and technical feasibility, by industry and processes, of source reduction opportunities and current activities and an identification of any industries for which there are significant barriers to source reduction with an analysis of the basis of this identification.

(8) An evaluation of methods of coordinating, streamlining, and improving public access to data collected under Federal environmental statutes.

(9) An evaluation of data gaps and data duplication with respect to data collected under Federal environmental statutes.

In the report following the first biennial report provided for under this subsection, paragraphs (3) through (9) may be included at the discretion of the Administrator.

(Pub. L. 101–508, title VI, §6608, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–326.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 13103(b) of this title, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "section 4(b)" and was translated as reading "section 6604(b)", meaning section 6604(b) of Pub. L. 101–508, because Pub. L. 101–508 has no section 4 but section 6604(b) of Pub. L. 101–508 relates to development of a strategy to promote source reduction.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be followed by a period.*

§13108. Savings provisions

(a) Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to modify or interfere with the implementation of title III of the Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986 [42 U.S.C. 11001 et seq.].

(b) Nothing contained in this chapter shall be construed, interpreted or applied to supplant, displace, preempt or otherwise diminish the responsibilities and liabilities under other State or Federal law, whether statutory or common.

(Pub. L. 101–508, title VI, §6609, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–327.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Title III of the Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986, referred to in subsec. (a), is title III of Pub. L. 99–499, Oct. 17, 1986, 100 Stat. 1728, known as the Emergency Planning and Community Right-To-Know Act of 1986, which is classified generally to chapter 116 (§11001 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of title III to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 11001 of this title and Tables.

§13109. Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Administrator $8,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1991, 1992, and 1993 for functions carried out under this chapter (other than State Grants),[1] and $8,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1991, 1992, and 1993, for grant programs to States issued pursuant to section 13104 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101–508, title VI, §6610, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–327.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.*

CHAPTER 134—ENERGY POLICY

Sec.

SUBCHAPTER IX—ENERGY AND ENVIRONMENT

PART A—IMPROVED ENERGY EFFICIENCY

PART B—ELECTRICITY GENERATION AND USE

PART C—ADVANCED NUCLEAR REACTORS

SUBCHAPTER X—ENERGY AND ECONOMIC GROWTH

SUBCHAPTER XI—POLICY AND ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS

SUBCHAPTER XII—MISCELLANEOUS

PART A—GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART B—OTHER MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§13201. "Secretary" defined

For purposes of this Act, the term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Energy.

(Pub. L. 102–486, §2, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2782.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2776, known as the Energy Policy Act of 1992. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note below and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 102–486, §1(a), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2776, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Energy Policy Act of 1992'."

EX. ORD. NO. 13211. ACTIONS CONCERNING REGULATIONS THAT SIGNIFICANTLY AFFECT ENERGY SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, OR USE

Ex. Ord. No. 13211, May 18, 2001, 66 F.R. 28355, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, and in order to appropriately weigh and consider the effects of the Federal Government's regulations on the supply, distribution, and use of energy, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Policy*. The Federal Government can significantly affect the supply, distribution, and use of energy. Yet there is often too little information regarding the effects that governmental regulatory action can have on energy. In order to provide more useful energy-related information and hence improve the quality of agency decisionmaking, I am requiring that agencies shall prepare a Statement of Energy Effects when undertaking certain agency actions. As described more fully below, such Statements of Energy Effects shall describe the effects of certain regulatory actions on energy supply, distribution, or use.

SEC. 2. *Preparation of a Statement of Energy Effects*. (a) To the extent permitted by law, agencies shall prepare and submit a Statement of Energy Effects to the Administrator of the Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs, Office of Management and Budget, for those matters identified as significant energy actions.

(b) A Statement of Energy Effects shall consist of a detailed statement by the agency responsible for the significant energy action relating to:

(i) any adverse effects on energy supply, distribution, or use (including a shortfall in supply, price increases, and increased use of foreign supplies) should the proposal be implemented, and

(ii) reasonable alternatives to the action with adverse energy effects and the expected effects of such alternatives on energy supply, distribution, and use.

(c) The Administrator of the Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs shall provide guidance to the agencies on the implementation of this order and shall consult with other agencies as appropriate in the implementation of this order.

SEC. 3. *Submission and Publication of Statements*. (a) Agencies shall submit their Statements of Energy Effects to the Administrator of the Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs, Office of Management and Budget, whenever they present the related submission under Executive Order 12866 of September 30, 1993 [5 U.S.C. 601 note], or any successor order.

(b) Agencies shall publish their Statements of Energy Effects, or a summary thereof, in each related Notice of Proposed Rulemaking and in any resulting Final Rule.

SEC. 4. *Definitions*. For purposes of this order:

(a) "Regulation" and "rule" have the same meaning as they do in Executive Order 12866 [5 U.S.C. 601 note] or any successor order.

(b) "Significant energy action" means any action by an agency (normally published in the Federal Register) that promulgates or is expected to lead to the promulgation of a final rule or regulation, including notices of

inquiry, advance notices of proposed rulemaking, and notices of proposed rulemaking:

(1)(i) that is a significant regulatory action under Executive Order 12866 or any successor order, and

(ii) is likely to have a significant adverse effect on the supply, distribution, or use of energy; or

(2) that is designated by the Administrator of the Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs as a significant energy action.

(c) "Agency" means any authority of the United States that is an "agency" under 44 U.S.C. 3502(1), other than those considered to be independent regulatory agencies, as defined in 44 U.S.C. 3502(5).

SEC. 5. *Judicial Review*. Nothing in this order shall affect any otherwise available judicial review of agency action. This order is intended only to improve the internal management of the Federal Government and does not create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or equity by a party against the United States, its agencies or instrumentalities, its officers or employees, or any other person.

GEORGE W. BUSH.

EX. ORD. NO. 13212. ACTIONS TO EXPEDITE ENERGY-RELATED PROJECTS

Ex. Ord. No. 13212, May 18, 2001, 66 F.R. 28357, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 13286, §10, Feb. 28, 2003, 68 F.R. 10622; Ex. Ord. No. 13302, §1, May 15, 2003, 68 F.R. 27429, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, and in order to take additional steps to expedite the increased supply and availability of energy to our Nation, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Policy*. The increased production and transmission of energy in a safe and environmentally sound manner is essential to the well-being of the American people. In general, it is the policy of this Administration that executive departments and agencies (agencies) shall take appropriate actions, to the extent consistent with applicable law, to expedite projects that will increase the production, transmission, or conservation of energy and projects that will strengthen pipeline safety.

SEC. 2. *Actions to Expedite Energy-Related Projects*. For energy-related projects (including pipeline safety projects), agencies shall expedite their review of permits or take other actions as necessary to accelerate the completion of such projects, while maintaining safety, public health, and environmental protections. The agencies shall take such actions to the extent permitted by law and regulation, and where appropriate.

SEC. 3. *Interagency Task Force*. (a) There is established, within the Department of Energy for administrative purposes, an interagency task force (Task Force) to perform the following functions:

(i) monitor and assist the agencies in their efforts to expedite their reviews of permits or similar actions, as necessary, to accelerate the completion of energy-related projects (including pipeline safety projects), increase energy production and conservation, and improve the transmission of energy;

(ii) monitor and assist agencies in setting up appropriate mechanisms to coordinate Federal, State, tribal, and local permitting in geographic areas where increased permitting activity is expected; and

(iii) perform the functions of the interagency committee for which section 60133 of title 49, United States Code, provides.

(b)(i) The Task Force shall consist exclusively of the following members:

(A) in the performance of all Task Force functions set out in sections 3(a)(i) and (ii) of this order, the Secretaries of State, the Treasury, Defense, Agriculture, Housing and Urban Development, Commerce, Transportation, the Interior, Labor, Education, Health and Human Services, Energy, and Veterans Affairs, the Attorney General, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, the Director of Central Intelligence, the Administrator of General Services, the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, the Chairman of the Council of Economic Advisers, the Assistant to the President for Domestic Policy, the Assistant to the President for Economic Policy, and such other heads of agencies as the Chairman of the Council on Environmental Quality may designate; and

(B) in the performance of the functions to which section 3(a)(iii) of this order refers, the officers listed in section 60133(a)(2)(A)–(H) of title 49, United States Code, and such other representatives of Federal agencies with responsibilities relating to pipeline repair projects as the Chairman of the Council on Environmental Quality may designate.

(ii) A member of the Task Force may designate, to perform the Task Force functions of the member, a full-time officer or employee of that member's agency or office.

(c) The Chairman of the Council on Environmental Quality shall chair the Task Force.

(d) Consultation in the implementation of this order with State and local officials and other persons who are not full-time or permanent part-time employees of the Federal Government shall be conducted in a manner that elicits fully the individual views of each official or other person consulted, without deliberations or efforts to achieve consensus on advice or recommendations.

(e) This order shall be implemented in a manner consistent with the President's constitutional authority to

supervise the unitary executive branch.

SEC. 4. *Judicial Review*. Nothing in this order shall affect any otherwise available judicial review of agency action. This order is intended only to improve the internal management of the Federal Government and does not create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or equity by a party against the United States, its agencies or instrumentalities, its officers or employees, or any other person.

GEORGE W. BUSH.

SUBCHAPTER I—ALTERNATIVE FUELS—GENERAL

§13211. Definitions

For purposes of this subchapter, subchapter II, and subchapter III (unless otherwise specified)—

(1) the term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency;

(2) the term "alternative fuel" means methanol, denatured ethanol, and other alcohols; mixtures containing 85 percent or more (or such other percentage, but not less than 70 percent, as determined by the Secretary, by rule, to provide for requirements relating to cold start, safety, or vehicle functions) by volume of methanol, denatured ethanol, and other alcohols with gasoline or other fuels; natural gas, including liquid fuels domestically produced from natural gas; liquefied petroleum gas; hydrogen; coal-derived liquid fuels; fuels (other than alcohol) derived from biological materials; electricity (including electricity from solar energy); and any other fuel the Secretary determines, by rule, is substantially not petroleum and would yield substantial energy security benefits and substantial environmental benefits;

(3) ALTERNATIVE FUELED VEHICLE.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term "alternative fueled vehicle" means a dedicated vehicle or a dual fueled vehicle;

(B) INCLUSIONS.—The term "alternative fueled vehicle" includes—

(i) a new qualified fuel cell motor vehicle (as defined in section 30B(b)(3) of title 26);

(ii) a new advanced lean burn technology motor vehicle (as defined in section 30B(c)(3) of that title);

(iii) a new qualified hybrid motor vehicle (as defined in section 30B(d)(3) of that title); and

(iv) any other type of vehicle that the Administrator demonstrates to the Secretary would achieve a significant reduction in petroleum consumption.[1]

(4) the term "comparable conventionally fueled motor vehicle" means a motor vehicle which is, as determined by the Secretary—

(A) commercially available at the time the comparability of the vehicle is being assessed;

(B) powered by an internal combustion engine that utilizes gasoline or diesel fuel as its fuel source; and

(C) provides passenger capacity or payload capacity the same or similar to the alternative fueled vehicle to which it is being compared;

(5) "covered person" means a person that owns, operates, leases, or otherwise controls—

(A) a fleet that contains at least 20 motor vehicles that are centrally fueled or capable of being centrally fueled, and are used primarily within a metropolitan statistical area or a consolidated metropolitan statistical area, as established by the Bureau of the Census, with a 1980 population of 250,000 or more; and

(B) at least 50 motor vehicles within the United States;

(6) the term "dedicated vehicle" means—

(A) a dedicated automobile, as such term is defined in section 32901(a)(7) [2] of title 49; or

(B) a motor vehicle, other than an automobile, that operates solely on alternative fuel;

(7) the term "domestic" means derived from resources within the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, or any other Commonwealth, territory, or possession of the United States, including the outer Continental Shelf, as such term is defined in the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act [43 U.S.C. 1331 et seq.], or from resources within a Nation with which there is in effect a free trade agreement requiring national treatment for trade;

(8) the term "dual fueled vehicle" means—

(A) dual fueled automobile, as such term is defined in section 32901(a)(8) [2] of title 49; or

(B) a motor vehicle, other than an automobile, that is capable of operating on alternative fuel and is capable of operating on gasoline or diesel fuel;

(9) the term "fleet" means a group of 20 or more light duty motor vehicles, used primarily in a metropolitan statistical area or consolidated metropolitan statistical area, as established by the Bureau of the Census, with a 1980 population of more than 250,000, that are centrally fueled or capable of being centrally fueled and are owned, operated, leased, or otherwise controlled by a governmental entity or other person who owns, operates, leases, or otherwise controls 50 or more such vehicles, by any person who controls such person, by any person controlled by such person, and by any person under common control with such person, except that such term does not include—

(A) motor vehicles held for lease or rental to the general public;

(B) motor vehicles held for sale by motor vehicle dealers, including demonstration motor vehicles;

(C) motor vehicles used for motor vehicle manufacturer product evaluations or tests;

(D) law enforcement motor vehicles;

(E) emergency motor vehicles, including vehicles directly used in the emergency repair of transmission lines and in the restoration of electricity service following power outages, as determined by the Secretary;

(F) motor vehicles acquired and used for military purposes that the Secretary of Defense has certified to the Secretary must be exempt for national security reasons;

(G) nonroad vehicles, including farm and construction motor vehicles; or

(H) motor vehicles which under normal operations are garaged at personal residences at night;

(10) the term "fuel supplier" means—

(A) any person engaged in the importing, refining, or processing of crude oil to produce motor fuel;

(B) any person engaged in the importation, production, storage, transportation, distribution, or sale of motor fuel; and

(C) any person engaged in generating, transmitting, importing, or selling at wholesale or retail electricity;

(11) the term "light duty motor vehicle" means a light duty truck or light duty vehicle, as such terms are defined under section 7550(7) of this title, of less than or equal to 8,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating;

(12) the term "motor fuel" means any substance suitable as a fuel for a motor vehicle;

(13) the term "motor vehicle" has the meaning given such term under section 7550(2) of this title; and

(14) the term "replacement fuel" means the portion of any motor fuel that is methanol, ethanol, or other alcohols, natural gas, liquefied petroleum gas, hydrogen, coal derived liquid fuels, fuels

(other than alcohol) derived from biological materials, electricity (including electricity from solar energy), ethers, or any other fuel the Secretary determines, by rule, is substantially not petroleum and would yield substantial energy security benefits and substantial environmental benefits.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title III, §301, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2866; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(4) [div. B, title I, §122], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–229; Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §707, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 818; Pub. L. 110–181, div. B, title XXVIII, §2862, Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 559.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in introductory provisions, was in the original "this title", meaning title III of Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2866, which enacted this subchapter, amended section 6374 of this title, and repealed provisions set out as a note under section 6374 of this title. For complete classification of title III to the Code, see Tables.

Subchapter II, referred to in introductory provisions, was in the original "title IV", meaning title IV of Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2875, which enacted subchapter II (§13231 et seq.) of this chapter, amended sections 6374a and 6374b and former section 6374c of this title and sections 717, 717a, 2001, 2002, 2006, and 2013 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, enacted provisions set out as notes under former section 79b and section 717 of Title 15, and repealed provisions set out as a note under section 717c of Title 15. For complete classification of title IV to the Code, see Tables.

Paragraphs (7) and (8) of section 32901(a) of title 49, referred to in pars. (6)(A) and (8)(A), were redesignated as pars. (8) and (9), respectively, and a new par. (7) was enacted by Pub. L. 110–140, title I, §103(a)(2), (3), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1501.

The Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act, referred to in par. (7), is act Aug. 7, 1953, ch. 345, 67 Stat. 462, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§1331 et seq.) of chapter 29 of Title 43, Public Lands. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1301 of Title 43 and Tables.

CODIFICATION

In pars. (6)(A) and (8)(A), "section 32901(a)(7) of title 49" substituted for "section 513(h)(1)(C) of the Motor Vehicle Information and Cost Savings Act" and "section 32901(a)(8) of title 49" substituted for "section 513(h)(1)(D) of the Motor Vehicle Information and Cost Savings Act" on authority of Pub. L. 103–272, §6(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1378, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49, Transportation.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Par. (3). Pub. L. 110–181 designated existing provisions as subpar. (A), inserted par. and subpar. headings, substituted "The term" for "the term", and added subpar. (B).

2005—Par. (9)(E). Pub. L. 109–58 inserted ", including vehicles directly used in the emergency repair of transmission lines and in the restoration of electricity service following power outages, as determined by the Secretary" before semicolon at end.

2000—Par. (2). Pub. L. 106–554 inserted ", including liquid fuels domestically produced from natural gas" after "natural gas".

[1] So in original. The period probably should be a semicolon.

[2] See References in Text note below.

§13212. Minimum Federal fleet requirement

(a) General requirements

(1) The Federal Government shall acquire at least—

(A) 5,000 light duty alternative fueled vehicles in fiscal year 1993;

(B) 7,500 light duty alternative fueled vehicles in fiscal year 1994; and

(C) 10,000 light duty alternative fueled vehicles in fiscal year 1995.

(2) The Secretary shall allocate the acquisitions necessary to meet the requirements under

paragraph (1).

(b) Percentage requirements

(1) Of the total number of vehicles acquired by a Federal fleet, at least—

(A) 25 percent in fiscal year 1996;

(B) 33 percent in fiscal year 1997;

(C) 50 percent in fiscal year 1998; and

(D) 75 percent in fiscal year 1999 and thereafter,

shall be alternative fueled vehicles.

(2) The Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator of General Services where appropriate, may permit a Federal fleet to acquire a smaller percentage than is required in paragraph (1), so long as the aggregate percentage acquired by all Federal fleets is at least equal to the required percentage.

(3) For purposes of this subsection, the term "Federal fleet" means 20 or more light duty motor vehicles, located in a metropolitan statistical area or consolidated metropolitan statistical area, as established by the Bureau of the Census, with a 1980 population of more than 250,000, that are centrally fueled or capable of being centrally fueled and are owned, operated, leased, or otherwise controlled by or assigned to any Federal executive department, military department, Government corporation, independent establishment, or executive agency, the United States Postal Service, the Congress, the courts of the United States, or the Executive Office of the President. Such term does not include—

(A) motor vehicles held for lease or rental to the general public;

(B) motor vehicles used for motor vehicle manufacturer product evaluations or tests;

(C) law enforcement vehicles;

(D) emergency vehicles;

(E) motor vehicles acquired and used for military purposes that the Secretary of Defense has certified to the Secretary must be exempt for national security reasons; or

(F) nonroad vehicles, including farm and construction vehicles.

(c) Allocation of incremental costs

The General Services Administration and any other Federal agency that procures motor vehicles for distribution to other Federal agencies shall allocate the incremental cost of alternative fueled vehicles over the cost of comparable gasoline vehicles across the entire fleet of motor vehicles distributed by such agency.

(d) Application of requirements

The provisions of section 6374 of this title relating to the Federal acquisition of alternative fueled vehicles shall apply to the acquisition of vehicles pursuant to this section.

(e) Resale

The Administrator of General Services shall take all feasible steps to ensure that all alternative fueled vehicles sold by the Federal Government shall remain alternative fueled vehicles at time of sale.

(f) Vehicle emission requirements

(1) Definitions

In this subsection:

(A) Federal agency

The term "Federal agency" does not include any office of the legislative branch, except that it does include the House of Representatives with respect to an acquisition described in paragraph (2)(C).

(B) Medium duty passenger vehicle

The term "medium duty passenger vehicle" has the meaning given that term [1] section 523.2

of title 49 of the Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on December 19, 2007.

(C) Member's Representational Allowance

The term "Member's Representational Allowance" means the allowance described in section 5341(a) of title 2.

(2) Prohibition

(A) In general

Except as provided in subparagraph (B), no Federal agency shall acquire a light duty motor vehicle or medium duty passenger vehicle that is not a low greenhouse gas emitting vehicle.

(B) Exception

The prohibition in subparagraph (A) shall not apply to acquisition of a vehicle if the head of the agency certifies in writing, in a separate certification for each individual vehicle purchased, either—

(i) that no low greenhouse gas emitting vehicle is available to meet the functional needs of the agency and details in writing the functional needs that could not be met with a low greenhouse gas emitting vehicle; or

(ii) that the agency has taken specific alternative more cost-effective measures to reduce petroleum consumption that—

(I) have reduced a measured and verified quantity of greenhouse gas emissions equal to or greater than the quantity of greenhouse gas reductions that would have been achieved through acquisition of a low greenhouse gas emitting vehicle over the lifetime of the vehicle; or

(II) will reduce each year a measured and verified quantity of greenhouse gas emissions equal to or greater than the quantity of greenhouse gas reductions that would have been achieved each year through acquisition of a low greenhouse gas emitting vehicle.

(C) Special rule for vehicles provided by funds contained in Members' Representational Allowance

This paragraph shall apply to the acquisition of a light duty motor vehicle or medium duty passenger vehicle using any portion of a Member's Representational Allowance, including an acquisition under a long-term lease.

(3) Guidance

(A) In general

Each year, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency shall issue guidance identifying the makes and model numbers of vehicles that are low greenhouse gas emitting vehicles.

(B) Consideration

In identifying vehicles under subparagraph (A), the Administrator shall take into account the most stringent standards for vehicle greenhouse gas emissions applicable to and enforceable against motor vehicle manufacturers for vehicles sold anywhere in the United States.

(C) Requirement

The Administrator shall not identify any vehicle as a low greenhouse gas emitting vehicle if the vehicle emits greenhouse gases at a higher rate than such standards allow for the manufacturer's fleet average grams per mile of carbon dioxide-equivalent emissions for that class of vehicle, taking into account any emissions allowances and adjustment factors such standards provide.

(g) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for carrying out this section, such sums as may be necessary for fiscal years 1993 through 1998, to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title III, §303, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2871; Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §702, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 815; Pub. L. 110–140, title I, §141, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1517.)

AMENDMENTS

2007—Subsecs. (f), (g). Pub. L. 110–140 added subsec. (f) and redesignated former subsec. (f) as (g).
2005—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 109–58 substituted "shall" for "may".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12844

Ex. Ord. No. 12844, Apr. 21, 1993, 58 F.R. 21885, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12974, §3(b), Sept. 29, 1995, 60 F.R. 51876, which required the Federal Government to institute a Federal fleet vehicle acquisition program and established the Federal Fleet Conversion Task Force to advise on implementation of the program, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 13031, §9, Dec. 13, 1996, 61 F.R. 66531, formerly set out below.

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 13031

Ex. Ord. No. 13031, Dec. 13, 1996, 61 F.R. 66529, which provided that the Federal Government exercise leadership in the use of alternative fueled vehicles, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 13149, §501, Apr. 21, 2000, 65 F.R. 24610, formerly set out below.

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 13149

Ex. Ord. No. 13149, Apr. 21, 2000, 65 F.R. 24607, which directed the Federal Government to exercise leadership in the reduction of petroleum consumption through improvements in fleet fuel efficiency and the use of alternative fuel vehicles and alternative fuels, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 13423, §11(a)(v), Jan. 24, 2007, 72 F.R. 3923, formerly set out in a note under section 4321 of this title.

[1] *So in original. The word "in" probably should appear after "term".*

§13213. Refueling

(a) In general

Federal agencies shall, to the maximum extent practicable, arrange for the fueling of alternative fueled vehicles acquired under section 13212 of this title at commercial fueling facilities that offer alternative fuels for sale to the public. If publicly available fueling facilities are not convenient or accessible to the location of Federal alternative fueled vehicles purchased under section 13212 of this title, Federal agencies are authorized to enter into commercial arrangements for the purposes of fueling Federal alternative fueled vehicles, including, as appropriate, purchase, lease, contract, construction, or other arrangements in which the Federal Government is a participant.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section such sums as may be necessary for fiscal years 1993 through 1998, to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title III, §304, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2872.)

§13214. Federal agency promotion, education, and coordination

(a) Promotion and education

The Secretary, in cooperation with the Administrator of General Services, shall promote programs and educate officials and employees of Federal agencies on the merits of alternative fueled vehicles. The Secretary, in cooperation with the Administrator of General Services, shall provide and disseminate information to Federal agencies on—

(1) the location of refueling and maintenance facilities available to alternative fueled vehicles in

the Federal fleet;

(2) the range and performance capabilities of alternative fueled vehicles;

(3) State and local government and commercial alternative fueled vehicle programs;

(4) Federal alternative fueled vehicle purchases and placements;

(5) the operation and maintenance of alternative fueled vehicles in accordance with the manufacturer's standards and recommendations; and

(6) incentive programs established pursuant to sections 13215 [1] and 13216 of this title.

(b) Assistance in procurement and placement

The Secretary, in cooperation with the Administrator of General Services, shall provide guidance, coordination and technical assistance to Federal agencies in the procurement and geographic location of alternative fueled vehicles purchased through the Administrator of General Services. The procurement and geographic location of such vehicles shall comply with the purchase requirements under section 13212 of this title.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title III, §305, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2872.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 13215 of this title, referred to in subsec. (a)(6), was omitted from the Code since the section ceased to be effective after Oct. 24, 1995.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13215. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 102–486, title III, §306, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2873, which related to incentives for Federal agencies to encourage and promote use of alternative fueled vehicles, ceased to be effective after Oct. 24, 1995.

§13216. Recognition and incentive awards program

(a) Awards program

The Administrator of General Services shall establish annual awards program to recognize those Federal employees who demonstrate the strongest commitment to the use of alternative fuels and fuel conservation in Federal motor vehicles.

(b) Criteria

The Administrator of General Services shall provide annual awards to Federal employees who best demonstrate a commitment—

(1) to the success of the Federal alternative fueled vehicle program through—

(A) exemplary promotion of alternative fueled vehicle use within Federal agencies;

(B) proper alternative fueled vehicle care and maintenance;

(C) coordination with Federal, State, and local efforts;

(D) innovative alternative fueled vehicle procurement, refueling, and maintenance arrangements with commercial entities;

(E) making regular requests for alternative fueled vehicles for agency use; and

(F) maintaining a high number of alternative fueled vehicles used relative to comparable conventionally fueled motor vehicles used; and

(2) to fuel efficiency in Federal motor vehicle use through the promotion of such measures as increased use of fuel-efficient vehicles, carpooling, ride-sharing, regular maintenance, and other conservation and awareness measures.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for the purpose of carrying out this section not more than $35,000 for fiscal year 1994 and such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 1995 and 1996.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title III, §307, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2873.)

§13217. Measurement of alternative fuel use

The Administrator of General Services shall use such means as may be necessary to measure the percentage of alternative fuel use in dual-fueled vehicles procured by the Administrator of General Services. Not later than one year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator of General Services, shall issue guidelines to Federal agencies for use in measuring the aggregate percentage of alternative fuel use in dual-fueled vehicles in their fleets.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title III, §308, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2874.)

§13218. Reports

(a) Omitted

(b) Compliance report

(1) In general

Not later than February 15, 2006, and annually thereafter for the next 14 years, the head of each Federal agency which is subject to this Act and Executive Order No. 13031 shall prepare, and submit to Congress, a report that—

(A) summarizes the compliance by such Federal agency with the alternative fuel purchasing requirements for Federal fleets under this Act and Executive Order No. 13031; and

(B) includes a plan of compliance that contains specific dates for achieving compliance using reasonable means.

(2) Contents

(A) In general

Each report submitted under paragraph (1) shall include—

(i) any information on any failure to meet statutory requirements or requirements under Executive Order No. 13031;

(ii)(I) any plan of compliance that the agency head is required to submit under Executive Order No. 13031; or

(II) if a plan of compliance referred to in subclause (I) does not contain specific dates by which the Federal agency is to achieve compliance, a revised plan of compliance that contains specific dates for achieving compliance; and

(iii) any related information the agency head is required to submit to the Director of the Office of Management and Budget under Executive Order No. 13031.

(B) Penultimate report

The penultimate report submitted under paragraph (1) shall include an announcement that the report for the next year shall be the final report submitted under paragraph (1).

(3) Public dissemination of report

Each report submitted under paragraph (1) shall be made public, including—

(A) placing such report on a publicly available website on the Internet; and

(B) publishing the availability of the report, including such website address, in the Federal Register.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title III, §310, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2874; Pub. L. 105–388, §8(a), Nov. 13,

1998, 112 Stat. 3481; Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §705, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 817.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 102 Stat. 2776, known as the Energy Policy Act of 1992. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13201 of this title and Tables.

Executive Order No. 13031, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), (2)(A), was Ex. Ord. No. 13031, Dec. 13, 1996, 61 F.R. 66529, which was set out as a note under section 13212 of this title prior to revocation by Ex. Ord. No. 13149, §501, Apr. 21, 2000, 65 F.R. 24610, formerly set out as a note under section 13212 of this title.

CODIFICATION

Subsec. (a) of this section, which required the Administrator of General Services to report biennially to Congress on the General Services Administration's alternative fueled vehicle program under the Energy Policy Act of 1992, terminated, effective May 15, 2000, pursuant to section 3003 of Pub. L. 104–66, as amended, set out as a note under section 1113 of Title 31, Money and Finance. See, also, the 4th item on page 173 of House Document No. 103–7.

AMENDMENTS

2005—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 109–58 substituted "February 15, 2006" for "1 year after November 13, 1998" in introductory provisions.

1998—Pub. L. 105–388 substituted "Reports" for "General Services Administration report" in section catchline, designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and inserted heading, and added subsec. (b).

§13219. United States Postal Service

(a) Omitted

(b) Coordination

To the maximum extent practicable, the Postmaster General shall coordinate the Postal Service's alternative fueled vehicle procurement, placement, refueling, and maintenance programs with those at the Federal, State, and local level. The Postmaster General shall communicate, share, and disseminate, on a regular basis, information on such programs with the Secretary, the Administrator of General Services, and heads of appropriate Federal agencies.

(c) Program criteria

The Postmaster General shall consider the following criteria in the procurement and placement of alternative fueled vehicles:

(1) The procurement plans of State and local governments and other public and private institutions.

(2) The current and future availability of refueling and repair facilities.

(3) The reduction in emissions of the Postal fleet.

(4) Whether the vehicle is to be used in a nonattainment area as specified in the Clean Air Act Amendments of 1990.

(5) The operational requirements of the Postal fleet.

(6) The contribution to the reduction in the consumption of oil in the transportation sector.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title III, §311, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2874.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Clean Air Act Amendments of 1990, referred to in subsec. (c)(4), probably means Pub. L. 101–549, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2399. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1990 Amendment note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Subsec. (a) of this section, which required the Postmaster General to biennially submit to Congress a report on the Postal Service's alternative fueled vehicle program, terminated, effective May 15, 2000, pursuant to section 3003 of Pub. L. 104–66, as amended, set out as a note under section 1113 of Title 31, Money and

Finance. See, also, the 15th item on page 194 of House Document No. 103–7.

§13220. Biodiesel fuel use credits

(a) Allocation of credits

(1) In general

The Secretary shall allocate one credit under this section to a fleet or covered person for each qualifying volume of the biodiesel component of fuel containing at least 20 percent biodiesel by volume purchased after the date of the enactment of this section, for use by the fleet or covered person in vehicles owned or operated by the fleet or covered person that weigh more than 8,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating.

(2) Exceptions

No credits shall be allocated under paragraph (1) for a purchase of biodiesel—

(A) for use in alternative fueled vehicles; or

(B) that is required by Federal or State law.

(3) Authority to modify percentage

The Secretary may, by rule, lower the 20 percent biodiesel volume requirement in paragraph (1) for reasons related to cold start, safety, or vehicle function considerations.

(4) Documentation

A fleet or covered person seeking a credit under this section shall provide written documentation to the Secretary supporting the allocation of a credit to such fleet or covered person under paragraph (1).

(b) Use of credits

(1) In general

At the request of a fleet or covered person allocated a credit under subsection (a), the Secretary shall, for the year in which the purchase of a qualifying volume is made, treat that purchase as the acquisition of one alternative fueled vehicle the fleet or covered person is required to acquire under this subchapter, subchapter II, or subchapter III.

(2) Limitation

Credits allocated under subsection (a) may not be used to satisfy more than 50 percent of the alternative fueled vehicle requirements of a fleet or covered person under this subchapter, subchapter II, and subchapter III. This paragraph shall not apply to a fleet or covered person that is a biodiesel alternative fuel provider described in section 13251(a)(2)(A) of this title.

(c) Credit not a section 13258 credit

A credit under this section shall not be considered a credit under section 13258 of this title.

(d) Issuance of rule

The Secretary shall, before January 1, 1999, issue a rule establishing procedures for the implementation of this section.

(e) Collection of data

The Secretary shall collect such data as are required to make a determination described in subsection (f)(2)(B).

(f) Definitions

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term "biodiesel"—

(A) means a diesel fuel substitute produced from nonpetroleum renewable resources that meets the registration requirements for fuels and fuel additives established by the

Environmental Protection Agency under section 7545 of this title;

(B) includes biodiesel derived from—

(i) animal wastes, including poultry fats and poultry wastes, and other waste materials; or

(ii) municipal solid waste and sludges and oils derived from wastewater and the treatment of wastewater; and

(2) the term "qualifying volume" means—

(A) 450 gallons; or

(B) if the Secretary determines by rule that the average annual alternative fuel use in light duty vehicles by fleets and covered persons exceeds 450 gallons or gallon equivalents, the amount of such average annual alternative fuel use.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title III, §312, as added Pub. L. 105–277, div. A, §101(a) [title XII, §1201(a)], Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681, 2681–48; Pub. L. 105–388, §7(a), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3480; Pub. L. 109–58, title XV, §1515, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1091.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of this section, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), probably means October 21, 1998, the date of the enactment of this section by Pub. L. 105–277, rather than Nov. 13, 1998, the date of the enactment of this section by Pub. L. 105–388.

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this title", meaning title III of Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2866, which enacted this subchapter, amended section 6374 of this title, and repealed provisions set out as a note under section 6374 of this title. For complete classification of title III to the Code, see Tables.

Subchapter II, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "title IV", meaning title IV of Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2875, which enacted subchapter II (§13231 et seq.) of this chapter, amended sections 6374a and 6374b and former section 6374c of this title and sections 717, 717a, 2001, 2002, 2006, and 2013 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, enacted provisions set out as notes under former section 79b and section 717 of Title 15, and repealed provisions set out as a note under section 717c of Title 15. For complete classification of title IV to the Code, see Tables.

CODIFICATION

Pub. L. 105–277 and Pub. L. 105–388 enacted identical sections.

AMENDMENTS

2005—Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 109–58 inserted dash after " 'biodiesel' ", designated remainder of existing provisions as subpar. (A), and added subpar. (B).

SUBCHAPTER II—ALTERNATIVE FUELS—NON-FEDERAL PROGRAMS

§13231. Public information program

The Secretary, in consultation with appropriate Federal agencies and individuals and organizations with practical experience in the production and use of alternative fuels and alternative fueled vehicles, shall, for the purposes of promoting the use of alternative fuels and alternative fueled vehicles, establish a public information program on the benefits and costs of the use of alternative fuels in motor vehicles. Within 18 months after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall produce and make available an information package for consumers to assist them in choosing among alternative fuels and alternative fueled vehicles. Such information package shall provide relevant and objective information on motor vehicle characteristics and fuel characteristics as compared to gasoline, on a life cycle basis, including environmental performance, energy efficiency, domestic content, cost, maintenance requirements, reliability, and safety. Such information package shall also include information with respect to the conversion of conventional motor vehicles to alternative fueled vehicles. The Secretary shall include such other information as the Secretary determines is

reasonable and necessary to help promote the use of alternative fuels in motor vehicles. Such information package shall be updated annually to reflect the most recent available information.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title IV, §405, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2880.)

§13232. Labeling requirements

(a) Establishment of requirements

The Federal Trade Commission, in consultation with the Secretary, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, and the Secretary of Transportation, shall, within 18 months after October 24, 1992, issue a notice of proposed rulemaking for a rule to establish uniform labeling requirements, to the greatest extent practicable, for alternative fuels and alternative fueled vehicles, including requirements for appropriate information with respect to costs and benefits, so as to reasonably enable the consumer to make choices and comparisons. Required labeling under the rule shall be simple and, where appropriate, consolidated with other labels providing information to the consumer. In formulating the rule, the Federal Trade Commission shall give consideration to the problems associated with developing and publishing useful and timely cost and benefit information, taking into account lead time, costs, the frequency of changes in costs and benefits that may occur, and other relevant factors. The Commission shall obtain the views of affected industries, consumer organizations, Federal and State agencies, and others in formulating the rule. A final rule shall be issued within 1 year after the notice of proposed rulemaking is issued. Such rule shall be updated periodically to reflect the most recent available information.

(b) Technical assistance and coordination

The Secretary shall provide technical assistance to the Federal Trade Commission in developing labeling requirements under subsection (a). The Secretary shall coordinate activities under this section with activities under section 13231 of this title.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title IV, §406, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2880.)

§13233. Data acquisition program

(a) Not later than one year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary, through the Energy Information Administration, and in cooperation with appropriate State, regional, and local authorities, shall establish a data collection program to be conducted in at least 5 geographically and climatically diverse regions of the United States for the purpose of collecting data which would be useful to persons seeking to manufacture, convert, sell, own, or operate alternative fueled vehicles or alternative fueling facilities. Such data shall include—

(1) identification of the number and types of motor vehicle trips made daily and miles driven per trip, including commuting, business, and recreational trips;

(2) the projections of the Secretary as to the most likely combination of alternative fueled vehicle use and other forms of transit, including rail and other forms of mass transit;

(3) cost, performance, environmental, energy, and safety data on alternative fuels and alternative fueled vehicles; and

(4) other appropriate demographic information and consumer preferences.

(b) The Secretary shall consult with interested parties, including other appropriate Federal agencies, manufacturers, public utilities, owners and operators of fleets of light duty motor vehicles, and State or local governmental entities, to determine the types of data to be collected and analyzed under subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 102–486, title IV, §407, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2881.)

§13234. Federal Energy Regulatory Commission authority to approve recovery of certain expenses in advance

(a) Natural gas motor vehicles

The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission may, under section 717c of title 15, allow recovery of expenses in advance by natural-gas companies for research, development, and demonstration activities by the Gas Research Institute for projects on the use of natural gas, including fuels derived from natural gas, for transportation, and projects on the use of natural gas to control pollutants and to control emissions from the combustion of other fuels, if the Commission finds that the benefits, including environmental benefits, to existing and future ratepayers resulting from such activities exceed all direct costs to existing and future ratepayers. To the maximum extent practicable, through the establishment of cofunding requirements applicable to such projects, the Commission shall ensure that the costs of such activities shall be provided in part, through contributions of cash, personnel, services, equipment, and other resources, by sources other than the recovery of expenses pursuant to this section.

(b) Electric motor vehicles

The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission may, under section 824d of title 16, allow recovery of expenses in advance by electric utilities for research, development, and demonstration activities by the Electric Power Research Institute for projects on electric motor vehicles, if the Commission finds that the benefits, including environmental benefits, to existing and future ratepayers resulting from such activities exceed all direct costs to existing and future ratepayers. To the maximum extent practicable, through the establishment of cofunding requirements applicable to each project, the costs of such activities shall be provided, in part, through contributions of cash, personnel, services, equipment, and other resources, by sources other than the recovery of expenses pursuant to this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title IV, §408, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2881.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 408 of Pub. L. 102–486. Subsec. (c) of section 408 of Pub. L. 102–486 repealed provisions of title III of Pub. L. 102–104, formerly set out as a note under section 717c of Title 15, Commerce and Trade.

§13235. State and local incentives programs

(a) Establishment of program

(1) The Secretary shall, within one year after October 24, 1992, issue regulations establishing guidelines for comprehensive State alternative fuels and alternative fueled vehicle incentives and program plans designed to accelerate the introduction and use of such fuels and vehicles. Such guideline [1] shall address the development, modification, and implementation of such State plans and shall describe those program elements, as described in paragraph (3), to be addressed in such plans.

(2) The Secretary, after consultation with the Secretary of Transportation and the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, shall invite the Governor of each State to submit to the Secretary a State plan within one year after the effective date of the regulations issued under paragraph (1). Such plan shall include—

(A) provisions designed to result in scheduled progress toward, and achievement of, the goal of introducing substantial numbers of alternative fueled vehicles in such State by the year 2000; and

(B) a detailed description of the requirements, including the estimated cost of implementation, of such plan.

(3) Each proposed State plan, in order to be eligible for Federal assistance under this section, shall describe the manner in which coordination shall be achieved with Federal and local governmental entities in implementing such plan, and shall include an examination of—

(A) exemption from State sales tax or other State or local taxes or surcharges (other than such taxes or surcharges which are dedicated for transportation purposes) with respect to alternative fueled vehicles, alternative fuels, or alternative fueling facilities;

(B) the introduction of alternative fueled vehicles into State-owned or operated motor vehicle fleets;

(C) special parking at public buildings and airport and transportation facilities;

(D) programs of public education to promote the use of alternative fueled vehicles;

(E) the treatment of sales of alternative fuels for use in alternative fueled vehicles;

(F) methods by which State and local governments might facilitate—

(i) the availability of alternative fuels; and

(ii) the ability to recharge electric motor vehicles at public locations;

(G) allowing public utilities to include in rates the incremental cost of—

(i) new alternative fueled vehicles;

(ii) converting conventional vehicles to operate on alternative fuels; and

(iii) installing alternative fuel fueling facilities,

but only to the extent that the inclusion of such costs in rates would not create competitive disadvantages for other market participants, and taking into consideration the effect inclusion of such costs would have on rates, service, and reliability to other utility customers;

(H) such other programs and incentives as the State may describe;

(I) whether accomplishing any of the goals in this subsection would require amendment to State law or regulation, including traffic safety prohibitions;

(J) services provided by municipal, county, and regional transit authorities; and

(K) effects of such plan on programs authorized by the Intermodal Surface Transportation Efficiency Act of 1991 and amendments made by that Act.

(b) Federal assistance to States

(1) Upon request of the Governor of any State with a plan approved under this section, the Secretary may provide to such State—

(A) information and technical assistance, including model State laws and proposed regulations relating to alternative fueled vehicles;

(B) grants of Federal financial assistance for the purpose of assisting such State in the implementation of such plan or any part thereof; and

(C) grants of Federal financial assistance for the acquisition of alternative fueled vehicles.

(2) In determining whether to approve a State plan submitted under subsection (a), and in determining the amount of Federal financial assistance, if any, to be provided to any State under this subsection, the Secretary shall take into account—

(A) the energy-related and environmental-related impacts, on a life cycle basis, of the introduction and use of alternative fueled vehicles included in the plan compared to conventional motor vehicles;

(B) the number of alternative fueled vehicles likely to be introduced by the year 2000, as a result of successful implementation of the plan; and

(C) such other factors as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(3) The Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator of General Services, shall provide assistance to States in procuring alternative fueled vehicles, including coordination with Federal procurements of such vehicles.

(4) The Secretary may not approve a State plan submitted under subsection (a) unless the State agrees to provide at least 20 percent of the cost of activities for which assistance is provided under paragraph (1).

(c) General provisions

(1) In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall consult with the Secretary of Transportation on matters relating to transportation and with other appropriate Federal and State departments and agencies.

(2) The Secretary shall report annually to the President and the Congress, and shall furnish copies of such report to the Governor of each State participating in the program, on the operation of the program under this section. Such report shall include—

(A) an estimate of the number of alternative fueled vehicles in use in each State;

(B) the degree of each State's participation in the program;

(C) a description of Federal, State, and local programs undertaken in the various States, whether pursuant to a State plan under this section or not, to provide incentives for introduction of alternative fueled vehicles;

(D) an estimate of the energy and environmental benefits of the program; and

(E) the recommendations of the Secretary, if any, for additional action by the Federal Government.

(d) Definitions

For the purposes of this section, the following definitions apply:

(1) Governor

The term "Governor" means the chief executive of a State.

(2) State

The term "State" means each of the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and any other Commonwealth, territory, or possession of the United States.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for carrying out this section, $10,000,000 for each of the 5 fiscal years beginning after October 24, 1992.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title IV, §409, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2882.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Intermodal Surface Transportation Efficiency Act of 1991, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(K), is Pub. L. 102–240, Dec. 18, 1991, 105 Stat. 1914. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1991 Amendment note set out under section 101 of Title 49, Transportation, and Tables.

TERMINATION OF REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

For termination, effective May 15, 2000, of provisions in subsec. (c)(2) of this section relating to annual reports to Congress, see section 3003 of Pub. L. 104–66, as amended, set out as a note under section 1113 of Title 31, Money and Finance, and the 8th item on page 86 of House Document No. 103–7.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "guidelines".*

§13236. Alternative fuel bus program

(a) Cooperative agreements and joint ventures

(1) The Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Secretary, may enter into cooperative agreements and joint ventures proposed by any municipal, county, or regional transit authority in an urban area with a population over 100,000 (according to latest available census information) to demonstrate the feasibility of commercial application, including safety of specific vehicle design, of using alternative fuels for urban buses and other motor vehicles used for mass transit.

(2) The cooperative agreements and joint ventures under paragraph (1) may include interested or affected private firms willing to provide assistance in cash, or in kind, for any such demonstration.

(3) Federal assistance provided under cooperative agreements and joint ventures entered into under paragraph (1) to demonstrate the feasibility of commercial application of using alternative fuels for urban buses shall be in addition to Federal assistance provided under any other law for such purpose.

(b) Limitations

(1) The Secretary of Transportation may not enter into cooperative agreement or joint venture under subsection (a) with any municipal, county, or regional transit authority, unless such government body agrees to provide 20 percent of the costs of such demonstration.

(2) The Secretary of Transportation may grant such priority under this section to any entity that demonstrates that the use of alternative fuels for transportation would have a significant beneficial effect on the environment.

(c) School buses

The Secretary of Transportation may also provide, in accordance with such rules as he may prescribe, financial assistance to any agency, municipality, or political subdivision in an urban area referred to in subsection (a), of any State or the District of Columbia for the purpose of meeting the incremental costs of school buses that are dedicated vehicles and used regularly for such transportation during the school term. Such costs may include the purchase and installation of alternative fuel refueling facilities to be used for school bus refueling, and the conversion of school buses to dedicated vehicles. The Secretary of Transportation may provide such assistance directly to a person who is a contractor of such agency, municipality, or political subdivision, upon the request of the agency, municipality, or political subdivision, and who, under such contract, provides for such transportation. Any conversion under this subsection shall comply with the warranty and safety requirements for alternative fuel conversions contained in section 7587 [1] of this title.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated not more than $30,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1993, 1994, and 1995 for purposes of this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title IV, §410, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2884.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 7587 of this title, referred to in subsec. (c), was in the original "section 247 of the Clean Air Act Amendments of 1990", Pub. L. 101–549, and was translated as reading "section 247 of the Clean Air Act", meaning section 247 of act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, title II, as added Nov. 15, 1990, Pub. L. 101–549, title II, §229(a), 104 Stat. 2523, to reflect the probable intent of Congress, because the Clean Air Act Amendments of 1990 does not contain a section 247, and section 247 of the Clean Air Act relates to alternate fuel conversions for vehicles.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13237. Certification of training programs

The Secretary shall ensure that the Federal Government establishes and carries out a program for the certification of training programs for technicians who are responsible for motor vehicle installation of equipment that converts gasoline or diesel-fueled motor vehicles into dedicated vehicles or dual fueled vehicles, and for the maintenance of such converted motor vehicles. A training program shall not be certified under the program established under this section unless it provides technicians with instruction on the proper and safe installation procedures and techniques, adherence to specifications (including original equipment manufacturer specifications), motor vehicle operating procedures, emissions testing, and other appropriate mechanical concerns applicable to these motor vehicle conversions. The Secretary shall ensure that, in the development of the program required under this section, original equipment manufacturers, fuel suppliers, companies that convert conventional vehicles to use alternative fuels, and other affected persons are consulted.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title IV, §411, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2885.)

§13238. Alternative fuel use in nonroad vehicles and engines

(a) Nonroad vehicles and engines

(1) The Secretary shall conduct a study to determine whether the use of alternative fuels in nonroad vehicles and engines would contribute substantially to reduced reliance on imported energy sources. Such study shall be completed, and the results thereof reported to Congress, within 2 years after October 24, 1992.

(2) The study shall assess the potential of nonroad vehicles and engines to run on alternative fuels. Taking into account the nonroad vehicles and engines for which running on alternative fuels is feasible, the study shall assess the potential reduction in reliance on foreign energy sources that could be achieved if such vehicles were to run on alternative fuels.

(3) The report required under paragraph (1) may include the Secretary's recommendations for encouraging or requiring nonroad vehicles and engines which can feasibly be run on alternative fuels, to utilize such alternative fuels.

(b) Definition of nonroad vehicles and engines

Nonroad vehicles and engines, for purposes of this section, shall include nonroad vehicles and engines used for surface transportation or principally for industrial or commercial purposes, vehicles used for rail transportation, vehicles used at airports, vehicles or engines used for marine purposes, and other vehicles or engines at the discretion of the Secretary.

(c) Designation

Upon completion of the study required pursuant to subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary may designate such vehicles and engines as qualifying for loans pursuant to section 13239 of this title.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title IV, §412, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2886.)

§13239. Low interest loan program

(a) Establishment

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall establish a program for making low interest loans, giving preference to small businesses that own or operate fleets, for—

(1) the conversion of motor vehicles to operation on alternative fuels;

(2) covering the incremental costs of the purchase of motor vehicles which operate on alternative fuels, when compared with purchase costs of comparable conventionally fueled motor vehicles; or

(3) covering the incremental costs of purchase of non-road vehicles and engines designated by the Secretary pursuant to section 13238(c) of this title.

(b) Loan terms

The Secretary, to the extent practicable, shall establish reasonable terms for loans made under this subsection, with preference given to repayment schedules that enable such loans to be repaid by the borrower from the cost differential between gasoline and the alternative fuel on which the motor vehicle operates.

(c) Criteria

In deciding to whom loans shall be made under this subsection, the Secretary shall consider—

(1) the financial need of the applicant;

(2) the goal of assisting the greatest number of applicants; and

(3) the ability of an applicant to repay the loan, taking into account the fuel cost savings likely to accrue to the applicant.

(d) Priorities

Priority shall be given under this section to fleets where the use of alternative fuels would have a significant beneficial effect on energy security and the environment.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section, $25,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1993, 1994, and 1995.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title IV, §414, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2886.)

SUBCHAPTER III—AVAILABILITY AND USE OF REPLACEMENT FUELS, ALTERNATIVE FUELS, AND ALTERNATIVE FUELED PRIVATE VEHICLES

§13251. Mandate for alternative fuel providers

(a) In general

(1) The Secretary shall, before January 1, 1994, issue regulations requiring that of the new light duty motor vehicles acquired by a covered person described in paragraph (2), the following percentages shall be alternative fueled vehicles for the following model years:

(A) 30 percent for model year 1996.
(B) 50 percent for model year 1997.
(C) 70 percent for model year 1998.
(D) 90 percent for model year 1999 and thereafter.

(2) For purposes of this section, a person referred to in paragraph (1) is—

(A) a covered person whose principal business is producing, storing, refining, processing, transporting, distributing, importing, or selling at wholesale or retail any alternative fuel other than electricity;

(B) a non-Federal covered person whose principal business is generating, transmitting, importing, or selling at wholesale or retail electricity; or

(C) a covered person—

(i) who produces, imports, or produces and imports in combination, an average of 50,000 barrels per day or more of petroleum; and

(ii) a substantial portion of whose business is producing alternative fuels.

(3)(A) In the case of a covered person described in paragraph (2) with more than one affiliate, division, or other business unit, only an affiliate, division, or business unit which is substantially engaged in the alternative fuels business (as determined by the Secretary by rule) shall be subject to this subsection.

(B) No covered person or affiliate, division, or other business unit of such person whose principal business is—

(i) transforming alternative fuels into a product that is not an alternative fuel; or

(ii) consuming alternative fuels as a feedstock or fuel in the manufacture of a product that is not an alternative fuel,

shall be subject to this subsection.

(4) The vehicles purchased pursuant to this section shall be operated solely on alternative fuels except when operating in an area where the appropriate alternative fuel is unavailable.

(5) Regulations issued under paragraph (1) shall provide for the prompt exemption by the Secretary, through a simple and reasonable process, from the requirements of paragraph (1) of any

covered person, in whole or in part, if such person demonstrates to the satisfaction of the Secretary that—

(A) alternative fueled vehicles that meet the normal requirements and practices of the principal business of that person are not reasonably available for acquisition; or

(B) alternative fuels that meet the normal requirements and practices of the principal business of that person are not available in the area in which the vehicles are to be operated.

(b) Revisions and extensions

With respect to model years 1997 and thereafter, the Secretary may—

(1) revise the percentage requirements under subsection (a)(1) downward, except that under no circumstances shall the percentage requirement for a model year be less than 20 percent; and

(2) extend the time under subsection (a)(1) for up to 2 model years.

(c) Option for electric utilities

The Secretary shall, within 1 year after October 24, 1992, issue regulations requiring that, in the case of a covered person whose principal business is generating, transmitting, importing, or selling at wholesale or retail electricity, the requirements of subsection (a)(1) shall not apply until after December 31, 1997, with respect to electric motor vehicles. Any covered person described in this subsection which plans to acquire electric motor vehicles to comply with the requirements of this section shall so notify the Secretary before January 1, 1996.

(d) Report to Congress

The Secretary shall, before January 1, 1998, submit a report to the Congress providing detailed information on actions taken to carry out this section, and the progress made and problems encountered thereunder.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §501, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2887.)

§13252. Replacement fuel supply and demand program

(a) Establishment of program

The Secretary shall establish a program to promote the development and use in light duty motor vehicles of domestic replacement fuels. Such program shall promote the replacement of petroleum motor fuels with replacement fuels to the maximum extent practicable. Such program shall, to the extent practicable, ensure the availability of those replacement fuels that will have the greatest impact in reducing oil imports, improving the health of our Nation's economy and reducing greenhouse gas emissions.

(b) Development plan and production goals

Under the program established under subsection (a), the Secretary, before October 1, 1993, in consultation with the Administrator, the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Agriculture, the Secretary of Commerce, and the heads of other appropriate agencies, shall review appropriate information and—

(1) estimate the domestic and nondomestic production capacity for replacement fuels and alternative fueled vehicles needed to implement this section;

(2) determine the technical and economic feasibility of achieving the goals of producing sufficient replacement fuels to replace, on an energy equivalent basis—

(A) at least 10 percent by the year 2000; and

(B) at least 30 percent by the year 2010,

of the projected consumption of motor fuel in the United States for each such year, with at least one half of such replacement fuels being domestic fuels;

(3) determine the most suitable means and methods of developing and encouraging the production, distribution, and use of replacement fuels and alternative fueled vehicles in a manner that would meet the program goals described in subsection (a);

(4) identify ways to encourage the development of reliable replacement fuels and alternative fueled vehicle industries in the United States, and the technical, economic, and institutional barriers to such development; and

(5) determine the greenhouse gas emission implications of increasing the use of replacement fuels, including an estimate of the maximum feasible reduction in such emissions from the use of replacement fuels.

The Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register the results of actions taken under this subsection, and provide for an opportunity for public comment.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §502, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2888.)

§13253. Replacement fuel demand estimates and supply information

(a) Estimates

Not later than October 1, 1993, and annually thereafter, the Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator, the Secretary of Transportation, and other appropriate State and Federal officials, shall estimate for the following calendar year—

(1) the number of each type of alternative fueled vehicle likely to be in use in the United States;

(2) the probable geographic distribution of such vehicles;

(3) the amount and distribution of each type of replacement fuel; and

(4) the greenhouse gas emissions likely to result from replacement fuel use.

(b) Information

Beginning on October 1, 1994, the Secretary shall annually require—

(1) fuel suppliers to report to the Secretary on the amount of each type of replacement fuel that such supplier—

(A) has supplied in the previous calendar year; and

(B) plans to supply for the following calendar year;

(2) suppliers of alternative fueled vehicles to report to the Secretary on the number of each type of alternative fueled vehicle that such supplier—

(A) has made available in the previous calendar year; and

(B) plans to make available for the following calendar year; and

(3) such fuel suppliers to provide the Secretary information necessary to determine the greenhouse gas emissions from the replacement fuels used, taking into account the entire fuel cycle.

(c) Protection of information

Information provided to the Secretary under subsection (b) shall be subject to applicable provisions of law protecting the confidentiality of trade secrets and business and financial information, including section 1905 of title 18.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §503, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2889.)

§13254. Modification of goals; additional rulemaking authority

(a) Examination of goals

Within 3 years after October 24, 1992, and periodically thereafter, the Secretary shall examine the goals established under section 13252(b)(2) of this title, in the context of the program goals stated under section 13252(a) of this title, to determine if the goals under section 13252(b)(2) of this title,

including the applicable percentage requirements and dates, should be modified under this section. The Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register the results of each examination under this subsection and provide an opportunity for public comment.

(b) Modification of goals

If, after analysis of information obtained in connection with carrying out subsection (a) or section 13252 of this title, or other information, and taking into account the determination of technical and economic feasibility made under section 13252(b)(2) of this title, the Secretary determines that goals described in section 13252(b)(2) of this title, including the percentage requirements or dates, are not achievable, the Secretary, in consultation with appropriate Federal agencies, shall, by rule, establish goals that are achievable, for purposes of this subchapter. The modification of goals under this section may include changing the target dates specified in section 13252(b)(2) of this title.

(c) Additional rulemaking authority

If the Secretary determines that the achievement of goals described in section 13252(b)(2) of this title would result in a significant and correctable failure to meet the program goals described in section 13252(a) of this title, the Secretary shall issue such additional regulations as are necessary to remedy such failure. The Secretary shall have no authority under this Act to mandate the production of alternative fueled vehicles or to specify, as applicable, the models, lines, or types of, or marketing or pricing practices, policies, or strategies for, vehicles subject to this Act. Nothing in this Act shall be construed to give the Secretary authority to mandate marketing or pricing practices, policies, or strategies for alternative fuels or to mandate the production or delivery of such fuels.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §504, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2890.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2776, known as the Energy Policy Act of 1992. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13201 of this title and Tables.

§13255. Voluntary supply commitments

The Secretary shall, by January 1, 1994, and thereafter, undertake to obtain voluntary commitments in geographically diverse regions of the United States—

(1) from fuel suppliers to make available to the public replacement fuels, including providing for the construction or availability of related fuel delivery systems;

(2) from owners of 10 or more motor vehicles to acquire and use alternative fueled vehicles and alternative fuels; and

(3) from suppliers of alternative fueled vehicles to make available to the public alternative fueled vehicles and to ensure the availability of necessary related services,

in sufficient volume to achieve the goals described in section 13252(b)(2) of this title or as modified under section 13254 of this title, and in order to meet any fleet requirement program established by rule under this subchapter. The Secretary shall periodically report to the Congress on the results of efforts under this section. All voluntary commitments obtained pursuant to this section shall be available to the public, except to the extent provided in applicable provisions of law protecting the confidentiality of trade secrets and business and financial information, including section 1905 of title 18.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §505, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2890.)

§13256. Technical and policy analysis

(a) Requirement

Not later than March 1, 1995, and March 1, 1997, the Secretary shall prepare and transmit to the

President and the Congress a technical and policy analysis under this section. The Secretary shall utilize the analytical capability and authorities of the Energy Information Administration and such other offices of the Department of Energy as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(b) Purposes

The technical and policy analysis prepared under this section shall be based on the best available data and information obtainable by the Secretary under section 13253 of this title, or otherwise, and on experience under this subchapter and other provisions of law in the development and use of replacement fuels and alternative fueled vehicles, and shall evaluate—

(1) progress made in achieving the goals described in section 13252(b)(2) of this title, as modified under section 13254 of this title;

(2) the actual and potential role of replacement fuels and alternative fueled vehicles in significantly reducing United States reliance on imported oil to the extent of the goals referred to in paragraph (1); and

(3) the actual and potential availability of various domestic replacement fuels and dedicated vehicles and dual fueled vehicles.

(c) Publication

The Secretary shall publish a proposed version of each analysis under this section in the Federal Register for public comment before transmittal to the President and the Congress. Public comment received in response to such publication shall be preserved for use in rulemaking proceedings under section 13257 of this title.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §506, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2891.)

§13257. Fleet requirement program

(a) Fleet program purchase goals

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), the following percentages of new light duty motor vehicles acquired in each model year for a fleet, other than a Federal fleet, State fleet, or fleet owned, operated, leased, or otherwise controlled by a covered person subject to section 13251 of this title, shall be alternative fueled vehicles:

(A) 20 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model years 1999, 2000, and 2001;
(B) 30 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 2002;
(C) 40 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 2003;
(D) 50 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 2004;
(E) 60 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 2005; and
(F) 70 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 2006 and thereafter.

(2) The Secretary may not establish percentage requirements higher than those described in paragraph (1). The Secretary may, if appropriate, and pursuant to a rule under subsection (b), establish a lesser percentage requirement for any model year. The Secretary may, by rule, establish a date later than 1998 (or model year 1999) for initiating the fleet requirements under paragraph (1).

(3) The Secretary shall publish an advance notice of proposed rulemaking for the purpose of—

(A) evaluating the progress toward achieving the goals of replacement fuel use described in section 13252(b)(2) of this title, as modified under section 13254 of this title;
(B) identifying the problems associated with achieving those goals;
(C) assessing the adequacy and practicability of those goals; and
(D) considering all actions needed to achieve those goals.

The Secretary shall provide for at least 3 regional hearings on the advance notice of proposed rulemaking, with respect to which official transcripts shall be maintained. The comment period in connection with such advance notice of proposed rulemaking shall be completed within 7 months after publication of the advance notice.

(4) After the completion of such advance notice of proposed rulemaking, the Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register a proposed rule for the rule required under subsection (b), and shall provide for a public comment period, with hearings, of not less than 90 days.

(b) Early rulemaking

(1) Not earlier than 1 year after October 24, 1992, and after carrying out the requirements of subsection (a), the Secretary shall initiate a rulemaking to determine whether a fleet requirement program to begin in calendar year 1998 (when model year 1999 begins), or such other later date as he may select pursuant to subsection (a), is necessary under this section. Such rule, consistent with subsection (a)(1), shall establish the annual applicable model year percentage. No rule under this subsection may be promulgated after December 15, 1996, and be enforceable. A fleet requirement program shall be considered necessary and a rule therefor shall be promulgated if the Secretary finds that—

(A) the goal of replacement fuel use described in section 13252(b)(2)(B) of this title, as modified under section 13254 of this title, is not expected to be actually achieved by 2010, or such other date as is established under section 13254 of this title, by voluntary means or pursuant to this subchapter or any other law without such a fleet requirement program, taking into consideration the status of the achievement of the interim goal described in section 13252(b)(2)(A) of this title, as modified under section 13254 of this title;

(B) such goal is practicable and actually achievable within periods specified in section 13252(b)(2) of this title, as modified under section 13254 of this title, through implementation of such a fleet requirement program in combination with voluntary means and the application of other programs relevant to achieving such goals; and

(C) by 1998 (when model year 1999 begins) or the date specified by the Secretary in such rule for initiating a fleet requirement program—

(i) there exists sufficient evidence to ensure that the fuel and the needed infrastructure, including the supply and deliverability systems, will be installed and located at convenient places in the fleet areas subject to the rule and will be fully operational when the rule is effective to offer a reliable and timely supply of the applicable alternative fuel at reasonable costs (as compared to conventional fuels) to meet the fleet requirement program, as demonstrated through use of the provisions of section 13255(1) of this title regarding voluntary commitments or other adequate, reliable, and convincing forms of agreements, arrangements, or representations that such fuels and infrastructure are in existence or will exist when the rule is effective and will be expanded as the percentages increase annually;

(ii) there will be a sufficient number of new alternative fueled vehicles from original equipment manufacturers that comply with all applicable requirements of the Clean Air Act [42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.] and chapter 301 of title 49;

(iii) such new vehicles will meet the applicable non-Federal and non-State fleet performance requirements of such fleets (including range, passenger or cargo-carrying capacity, reliability, refueling capability, vehicle mix, and economical operation and maintenance); and

(iv) establishment of a fleet requirement program by rule under this subsection will not result in unfair competitive advantages or disadvantages, or result in undue economic hardship, to the affected fleets.

(2) The Secretary shall not promulgate a rule under this subsection if he is unable to make affirmative findings in the case of each of the subparagraphs under paragraph (1), and each of the clauses under subparagraph (C) of paragraph (1).

(3) If the Secretary does not determine that such program is necessary under this subsection, the provisions of subsection (e) shall apply to the consideration in the future of any fleet requirement program. The record of this rulemaking, including the Secretary's findings, shall be incorporated into a rulemaking under that subsection. If the Secretary determines under this subsection that such program is necessary, the Secretary shall not initiate the later rulemaking under subsection (e).

(c) Advance notice of proposed rulemaking

Not later than April 1, 1998, the Secretary shall publish an advance notice of proposed rulemaking for the purpose of—

(1) evaluating the progress toward achieving the goals of replacement fuel use described in section 13252(b)(2) of this title, as modified under section 13254 of this title;

(2) identifying the problems associated with achieving those goals;

(3) assessing the adequacy and practicability of those goals; and

(4) considering all actions needed to achieve those goals.

The Secretary shall provide for at least 3 regional hearings on the advance notice of proposed rulemaking, with respect to which official transcripts shall be maintained. The comment period in connection with such advance notice of proposed rulemaking shall be completed within 7 months after publication of the advance notice.

(d) Proposed rule

Before May 1, 1999, the Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register a proposed rule for the rule required under subsection (g), and shall provide for a public comment period, with hearings, of not less than 90 days.

(e) Determination

(1) Not later than January 1, 2000, the Secretary shall, through the rule required under subsection (g), determine whether a fleet requirement program is necessary under this section. Such a program shall be considered necessary and a rule therefor shall be promulgated if the Secretary finds that—

(A) the goal of replacement fuel use described in section 13252(b)(2)(B) of this title, as modified under section 13254 of this title, is not expected to be actually achieved by 2010, or such other date as is established under section 13254 of this title, by voluntary means or pursuant to this subchapter or any other law without such a fleet requirement program, taking into consideration the status of the achievement of the interim goal described in section 13252(b)(2)(A) of this title, as modified under section 13254 of this title; and

(B) such goal is practicable and actually achievable within periods specified in section 13252(b)(2) of this title, as modified under section 13254 of this title, through implementation of such a fleet requirement program in combination with voluntary means and the application of other programs relevant to achieving such goals.

(2) The rule under subsection (b) or (g) shall also modify the goal described in section 13252(b)(2)(B) of this title and establish a revised goal pursuant to section 13254 of this title if the Secretary determines, based on the proceeding required under subsection (a) or (c), that the goal in effect at the time of that proceeding is inadequate or impracticable, and not expected to be achievable. Such goal as modified and established shall be applicable in making the findings described in paragraph (1). If the Secretary modifies the goal under this paragraph, he may also modify the percentages stated in subsection (a)(1) or (g)(1) and the minimum percentage stated in subsection (a)(2) or (g)(2) shall be not less than 10 percent.

(f) Explanation of determination that fleet requirement program is not necessary

If the Secretary determines, based on findings under subsection (b) or (e), that a fleet requirement program under this section is not necessary, the Secretary shall—

(1) by December 15, 1996, with respect to a rulemaking under subsection (b); and

(2) by January 1, 2000, with respect to a rulemaking under subsection (e),

publish such determination in the Federal Register as a final agency action, including an explanation of the findings on which such determination is made and the basis for the determination.

(g) Fleet requirement program

(1) If the Secretary determines under subsection (e) that a fleet requirement program is necessary, the Secretary shall, by January 1, 2000, by rule require that, except as provided in paragraph (2), of

the total number of new light duty motor vehicles acquired for a fleet, other than a Federal fleet, State fleet, or fleet owned, operated, leased, or otherwise controlled by a covered person under section 13251 of this title—

(A) 20 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 2002;
(B) 40 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 2003;
(C) 60 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 2004; and
(D) 70 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 2005 and thereafter,

shall be alternative fueled vehicles.

(2) The Secretary may not establish percentage requirements higher than those described in paragraph (1). The Secretary may, if appropriate, and pursuant to a rule under subsection (g), establish a lesser percentage requirement for any model year. The Secretary may, by rule, establish a date later than 2002 (when model year 2003 begins) for initiating the fleet requirements under paragraph (1).

(3) Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed as requiring any fleet to acquire alternative fueled vehicles or alternative fuels that do not meet the normal business requirements and practices and needs of that fleet.

(4) A vehicle operating only on gasoline that complies with applicable requirements of the Clean Air Act [42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.] shall not be considered an alternative fueled vehicle under subsection (b) or this subsection, except that the Secretary, as part of the rule under subsection (b) or this subsection, may determine that such vehicle should be treated as an alternative fueled vehicle for purposes of this section, for fleets subject to part C of title II of the Clean Air Act [42 U.S.C. 7581 et seq.], taking into consideration the impact on energy security and the goals stated in section 13252(a) of this title.

(h) Extension of deadlines

The Secretary may, by notice published in the Federal Register, extend the deadlines established under subsections (e), (f)(2), and (g) for an additional 90 days if the Secretary is unable to meet such deadlines. Such extension shall not be reviewable.

(i) Exemptions

(1) A rule issued under subsection (b), (g), or (o) shall provide for the prompt exemption by the Secretary, through a simple and reasonable process, of any fleet from the requirements of subsection (b), (g), or (o), in whole or in part, if it is demonstrated to the satisfaction of the Secretary that—

(A) alternative fueled vehicles that meet the normal requirements and practices of the principal business of the fleet owner are not reasonably available for acquisition;
(B) alternative fuels that meet the normal requirements and practices of the principal business of the fleet owner are not available in the area in which the vehicles are to be operated; or
(C) in the case of State and local government entities, the application of such requirements would pose an unreasonable financial hardship.

(2) In the case of private fleets, if the motor vehicles, when under normal operations, are garaged at personal residences at night, such motor vehicles shall be exempt from the requirements of subsections (b) and (g).

(j) Conversions

Nothing in this subchapter or the amendments made by this subchapter shall require a fleet owner to acquire conversion vehicles.

(k) Inclusion of law enforcement vehicles and urban buses

(1) If the Secretary determines, by rule, that the inclusion of fleets of law enforcement motor vehicles in the fleet requirement program established under subsection (g) would contribute to achieving the goal described in section 13252(b)(2)(B) of this title, as modified under section 13254

of this title, and the Secretary finds that such inclusion would not hinder the use of the motor vehicles for law enforcement purposes, the Secretary may include such fleets in such program. The Secretary may only initiate one rulemaking under this paragraph.

(2) If the Secretary determines, by rule, that the inclusion of new urban buses, as defined by the Administrator under title II of the Clean Air Act [42 U.S.C. 7521 et seq.], in a fleet requirement program established under subsection (g) would contribute to achieving the goal described in section 13252(b)(2)(B) of this title, as modified under section 13254 of this title, the Secretary may include such urban buses in such program, if the Secretary finds that such application will be consistent with energy security goals and the needs and objectives of encouraging and facilitating the greater use of such urban buses by the public, taking into consideration the impact of such application on public transit entities. The Secretary may only initiate one rulemaking under this paragraph.

(3) Rulemakings under paragraph (1) or (2) shall be separate from a rulemaking under subsection (g), but may not occur unless a rulemaking is carried out under subsection (g).

(l) Consideration of factors

In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall take into consideration energy security, costs, safety, lead time requirements, vehicle miles traveled annually, effect on greenhouse gases, technological feasibility, energy requirements, economic impacts, including impacts on workers and the impact on consumers (including users of the alternative fuel for purposes such as for residences, agriculture, process use, and non-fuel purposes) and fleets, the availability of alternative fuels and alternative fueled vehicles, and other relevant factors.

(m) Consultation and participation of other Federal agencies

In carrying out this section and section 13256 of this title, the Secretary shall consult with the Secretary of Transportation, the Administrator, and other appropriate Federal agencies. The Secretary shall provide for the participation of the Secretary of Transportation and the Administrator in the development and issuance of the rule under this section, including the public process concerning such rule.

(n) Petitions

As part of the rule promulgated either pursuant to subsection (b) or (g) of this section, the Secretary shall establish procedures for any fleet owner or operator or motor vehicle manufacturer to request that the Secretary modify or suspend a fleet requirement program established under either subsection nationally, by region, or in an applicable fleet area because, as demonstrated by the petitioner, the infrastructure or fuel supply or distribution system for an applicable alternative fuel is inadequate to meet the needs of a fleet. In the event that the Secretary determines that a modification or suspension of the fleet requirement program on a regional basis would detract from the nationwide character of any fleet requirement program established by rule or would sufficiently diminish the economies of scale for the production of alternative fueled vehicles or alternative fuels and thereafter the practicability and effectiveness of such program, the Secretary may only modify or suspend the program nationally. The procedures shall include provisions for notice and public hearings. The Secretary shall deny or grant the petition within 180 days after filing.

(o) Mandatory State fleet programs

(1) Pursuant to a rule promulgated by the Secretary, beginning in calendar year 1995 (when model year 1996 begins), the following percentages of new light duty motor vehicles acquired annually for State government fleets, including agencies thereof, but not municipal fleets, shall be alternative fueled vehicles:

(A) 10 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 1996;
(B) 15 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 1997;
(C) 25 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 1998;
(D) 50 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 1999;
(E) 75 percent of the motor vehicles acquired in model year 2000 and thereafter.

(2)(A) The Secretary shall within 18 months after October 24, 1992, promulgate a rule providing

that a State may submit a plan within 12 months after such promulgation containing a light duty alternative fueled vehicle plan for State fleets to meet the annual percentages established under paragraph (1) for the acquisition of light duty motor vehicles. The plan shall provide for the voluntary conversion or acquisition or combination thereof, beyond any acquisition required by this subchapter, of such motor vehicles by State, local, or private fleets, in numbers greater than or equal to the number of State alternative fueled vehicles required pursuant to paragraph (1).

(B) The plan, if approved by the Secretary, would be in lieu of the State meeting such annual percentages solely through purchases of new State-owned vehicles. All conversions or acquisitions or combinations thereof of any alternative fueled vehicles under the plan must be voluntary and must conform with the requirements of section 247 of the Clean Air Act [42 U.S.C. 7587] and must comply with applicable safety requirements. The Secretary of Transportation shall within 3 years after enactment promulgate rules setting forth safety standards in accordance with chapter 301 of title 49 applicable to all conversions.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §507, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2891.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Clean Air Act, referred to in subsecs. (b)(1)(C)(ii), (g)(4), and (k)(2), is act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, 69 Stat. 322, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 85 (§7401 et seq.) of this title. Title II of the Act, known as the National Emission Standards Act, is classified generally to subchapter II (§7521 et seq.) of chapter 85 of this title. Part C of title II of the Act is classified generally to part C (§7581 et seq.) of chapter 85 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

This subchapter, referred to in subsecs. (b)(1)(A), (e)(1)(A), (g)(3), (j), and (o)(2)(A), was in the original "this title" meaning title V of Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 102 Stat. 2887, which is classified generally to this subchapter.

CODIFICATION

In subsecs. (b)(1)(C)(ii) and (o)(2)(B), "chapter 301 of title 49" substituted for "the National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act of 1966 [15 U.S.C. 1381 et seq.]" on authority of Pub. L. 103–272, §6(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1378, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49, Transportation.

§13258. Credits

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Fuel cell electric vehicle

The term "fuel cell electric vehicle" means an on-road or non-road vehicle that uses a fuel cell (as defined in section 16152 of this title).

(2) Hybrid electric vehicle

The term "hybrid electric vehicle" means a new qualified hybrid motor vehicle (as defined in section 30B(d)(3) of title 26).

(3) Medium- or heavy-duty electric vehicle

The term "medium- or heavy-duty electric vehicle" means an electric, hybrid electric, or plug-in hybrid electric vehicle with a gross vehicle weight of more than 8,501 pounds.

(4) Neighborhood electric vehicle

The term "neighborhood electric vehicle" means a 4-wheeled on-road or nonroad vehicle that—

(A) has a top attainable speed in 1 mile of more than 20 mph and not more than 25 mph on a paved level surface; and

(B) is propelled by an electric motor and on-board, rechargeable energy storage system that is rechargeable using an off-board source of electricity.

(5) Plug-in electric drive vehicle

The term "plug-in electric drive vehicle" means a vehicle that—

(A) draws motive power from a battery with a capacity of at least 4 kilowatt-hours;

(B) can be recharged from an external source of electricity for motive power; and

(C) is a light-, medium-, or heavy duty motor vehicle or nonroad vehicle (as those terms are defined in section 7550 of this title).

(b) In general

(1) Allocation

The Secretary shall allocate a credit to a fleet or covered person that is required to acquire an alternative fueled vehicle under this subchapter, if that fleet or person acquires an alternative fueled vehicle in excess of the number that fleet or person is required to acquire under this subchapter or acquires an alternative fueled vehicle before the date that fleet or person is required to acquire an alternative fueled vehicle under such subchapter.

(2) Electric vehicles

Not later than January 31, 2009, the Secretary shall—

(A) allocate credit in an amount to be determined by the Secretary for—

(i) acquisition of—

(I) a hybrid electric vehicle;

(II) a plug-in electric drive vehicle;

(III) a fuel cell electric vehicle;

(IV) a neighborhood electric vehicle; or

(V) a medium- or heavy-duty electric vehicle; and

(ii) investment in qualified alternative fuel infrastructure or nonroad equipment, as determined by the Secretary; and

(B) allocate more than 1, but not to exceed 5, credits for investment in an emerging technology relating to any vehicle described in subparagraph (A) to encourage—

(i) a reduction in petroleum demand;

(ii) technological advancement; and

(iii) a reduction in vehicle emissions.

(c) Allocation

In allocating credits under subsection (b), the Secretary shall allocate one credit for each alternative fueled vehicle the fleet or covered person acquires that exceeds the number of alternative fueled vehicles that fleet or person is required to acquire under this subchapter or that is acquired before the date that fleet or person is required to acquire an alternative fueled vehicle under such subchapter. In the event that a vehicle is acquired before the date otherwise required, the Secretary shall allocate one credit per vehicle for each year the vehicle is acquired before the required date. The credit shall be allocated for the same type vehicle as the excess vehicle or earlier acquired vehicle.

(d) Use of credits

At the request of a fleet or covered person allocated a credit under this section, the Secretary shall treat the credit as the acquisition of one alternative fueled vehicle of the type for which the credit is allocated in the year designated by that fleet or person when determining whether that fleet or person has complied with this subchapter in the year designated. A credit may be counted toward compliance for only one year.

(e) Transferability

A fleet or covered person allocated a credit under this section or to whom a credit is transferred under this section, may transfer freely the credit to another fleet or person who is required to comply with this subchapter. At the request of the fleet or person to whom a credit is transferred, the Secretary shall treat the transferred credit as the acquisition of one alternative fueled vehicle of the

type for which the credit is allocated in the year designated by the fleet or person to whom the credit is transferred when determining whether that fleet or person has complied with this subchapter in the year designated. A transferred credit may be counted toward compliance for only one year. In the case of the alternative fuel provider program under section 13251 of this title, a transferred credit may be counted toward compliance only if the requirement of section 13251(a)(4) of this title is met.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2013.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §508, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2897; Pub. L. 110–140, title I, §133, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1511.)

AMENDMENTS

2007—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–140, §133(2), added subsec. (a). Former subsec. (a) redesignated (b).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–140, §133(1), (3), redesignated subsec. (a) as (b), designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted par. heading, and added par. (2). Former subsec. (b) redesignated (c).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 110–140, §133(1), (4), redesignated subsec. (b) as (c) and substituted "subsection (b)" for "subsection (a)". Former subsec. (c) redesignated (d).

Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 110–140, §133(1), redesignated subsecs. (c) and (d) as (d) and (e), respectively.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 110–140, §133(5), added subsec. (f).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§13259. Secretary's recommendations to Congress

(a) Recommendations to require availability or acquisition

If the Secretary determines, under section 13257(f) of this title, that a fleet requirement program under section 13257 of this title is not necessary, the Secretary shall so notify the Congress. If the Secretary so notifies the Congress, the Secretary shall, within 2 years after such notification and by rule, prepare and submit to the Congress recommendations for requirements or incentives for—

(1) fuel suppliers to make available to the public replacement fuels, including providing for the construction or availability of related fuel delivery systems;

(2) suppliers of alternative fueled vehicles to make available to the public alternative fueled vehicles and to ensure the availability of necessary related services; and

(3) motor vehicle drivers to use replacement fuels,

to the extent necessary to achieve such goals of replacement fuel use and to ensure that the availability of alternative fuels and of alternative fueled vehicles are consistent with each other.

(b) Fair and equitable application

In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall recommend the imposition of requirements proportionately on all appropriate fuel suppliers and purchasers of motor fuels and suppliers and purchasers of motor vehicles in a fair and equitable manner.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §509, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2898.)

§13260. Effect on other laws

(a) In general

Nothing in this Act or the amendments made by this Act shall be construed to alter, affect, or modify the provisions of the Clean Air Act [42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.], or regulations issued thereunder.

(b) Compliance by alternative fueled vehicles

Alternative fueled vehicles, whether dedicated vehicles or dual fueled vehicles, and the alternative fuels for operating such vehicles, shall comply with requirements of the Clean Air Act [42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.] applicable to such vehicles and fuels.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §510, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2898.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2776, known as the Energy Policy Act of 1992. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13201 of this title and Tables.

The Clean Air Act, referred to in text, is act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, 69 Stat. 322, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 85 (§7401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

§13261. Prohibited acts

It shall be unlawful for any person to violate any provision of section 13251, 13253(b), 13257, or 13263a of this title, or any regulation issued under such sections.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §511, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2899; Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §703(b), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 816.)

AMENDMENTS

2005—Pub. L. 109–58 substituted "13257, or 13263a" for "or 13257".

§13262. Enforcement

(a) Violation

Whoever violates section 13261 of this title shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than $5,000 for each violation.

(b) Willful violation

Whoever willfully violates section 13261 of this title shall be fined not more than $10,000 for each violation.

(c) Knowing and willful violation following prior violation and penalty

Any person who knowingly and willfully violates section 13261 of this title after having been subjected to a civil penalty for a prior violation of section 13261 of this title shall be fined not more than $50,000.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §512, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2899.)

§13263. Powers of Secretary

For the purpose of carrying out subchapter I, subchapter II, this subchapter, and subchapter IV, the Secretary, or the duly designated agent of the Secretary, may hold such hearings, take such testimony, sit and act at such times and places, administer such oaths, and require, by subpena, the attendance and testimony of such witnesses and the production of such books, papers, correspondence, memorandums, contracts, agreements, or other records as the Secretary of Transportation is authorized to do under section 32910(a)(1) of title 49.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §513, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2899.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subchapter I, referred to in text, was in the original "title III" meaning title III of Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2866, which enacted subchapter I of this chapter, amended section 6374 of this title, and

repealed provisions set out as a note under section 6374 of this title.

Subchapter II, referred to in text, was in the original "title IV" meaning title IV of Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2875, which enacted subchapter II of this chapter, amended sections 6374a to 6374c of this title and sections 717, 717a, 2001, 2002, 2006, and 2013 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 79b and 717 of Title 15, and repealed provisions set out as a note under section 717c of Title 15.

CODIFICATION

In text, "section 32910(a)(1) of title 49" substituted for "section 505(b)(1) of the Motor Vehicle Information and Cost Savings Act (15 U.S.C. 2005(b)(1))" on authority of Pub. L. 103–272, §6(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1378, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49, Transportation.

§13263a. Alternative compliance

(a) Application for waiver

Any covered person subject to section 13251 of this title and any State subject to section 13257(o) of this title may petition the Secretary for a waiver of the applicable requirements of section 13251 or 13257(o) of this title.

(b) Grant of waiver

The Secretary shall grant a waiver of the requirements of section 13251 or 13257(o) of this title on a showing that the fleet owned, operated, leased, or otherwise controlled by the State or covered person—

(1) will achieve a reduction in the annual consumption of petroleum fuels by the fleet equal to—

(A) the reduction in consumption of petroleum that would result from 100 percent cumulative compliance with the fuel use requirements of section 13251 of this title; or

(B) in the case of an entity covered under section 13257(o) of this title, a reduction equal to the annual consumption by the State entity of alternative fuels if all of the cumulative alternative fuel vehicles of the State entity given credit under section 13258 of this title were to use alternative fuel 100 percent of the time; and

(2) is in compliance with all applicable vehicle emission standards established by the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency under the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.).

(c) Reporting requirement

Not later than December 31 of a model year, any State or covered person granted a waiver under this section for the preceding model year shall submit to the Secretary an annual report that—

(1) certifies the quantity of the petroleum motor fuel reduction of the State or covered person during the preceding model year; and

(2) projects the baseline quantity of the petroleum motor fuel reduction of the State or covered person during the following model year.

(d) Revocation of waiver

If a State or covered person that receives a waiver under this section fails to comply with this section, the Secretary—

(1) shall revoke the waiver; and

(2) may impose on the State or covered person a penalty under section 13262 of this title.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §514, as added Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §703(a)(2), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 815.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Clean Air Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, 69 Stat. 322, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 85 (§7401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act

to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 514 of Pub. L. 102–486 was renumbered 515 and is classified to section 13264 of this title.

§13264. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this subchapter $10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1993 through 1997, and such sums as may be necessary for fiscal years 1998 through 2000.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title V, §515, formerly §514, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2899; renumbered §515, Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §703(a)(1), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 815.)

SUBCHAPTER IV—ELECTRIC MOTOR VEHICLES

§13271. Definitions

For the purposes of this subchapter—

(1) the term "antitrust laws" means the Acts set forth in section 12 of title 15;

(2) the term "associated equipment" means equipment necessary for the regeneration, refueling, or recharging of batteries or other forms of electric energy used to power an electric motor vehicle and, in the case of electric-hybrid vehicles, such term includes nonpetroleum-related equipment necessary for, and solely related to, the demonstration of such vehicles;

(3) the term "discount payment" means the amount determined pursuant to section 13283 of this title;

(4) the term "electric motor vehicle" means a motor vehicle primarily powered by an electric motor that draws current from rechargeable storage batteries, fuel cells, photovoltaic arrays, or other sources of electric current and may include an electric-hybrid vehicle;

(5) the term "electric-hybrid vehicle" means a vehicle primarily powered by an electric motor that draws current from rechargeable storage batteries, fuel cells, or other source of electric current and also relies on a non-electric source of power;

(6) the term "eligible metropolitan area" means any Metropolitan Area (as such term is defined by the Office of Management and Budget pursuant to section 3504 of title 44) with a 1980 population of 250,000 or more that has been designated by a proposer and the Secretary for a demonstration project under this subchapter, except that the Secretary may designate an area with a 1990 population of 50,000 or more as an eligible metropolitan area;

(7) the term "infrastructure and support systems" includes support and maintenance services and facilities, electricity delivery mechanisms and methods, regulatory treatment of investment in electric motor vehicles and associated equipment, consumer education programs, safety and health procedures, and battery availability, replacement, recycling, and disposal, that may be required to enable electric utilities, manufacturers, and others to support the operation and maintenance of electric motor vehicles and associated equipment;

(8) the term "motor vehicle" has the meaning given such term under section 7550(2) of this title;

(9) the term "non-Federal person" means an entity not part of the Federal Government that is either—

(A) organized under the laws of the United States or the laws of a State of the United States; or

(B) a unit of State or local government;

(10) the term "proposer" means a non-Federal person that submits a proposal to conduct a

demonstration project under this subchapter;

(11) the term "price differential" means—

(A) in the case of a purchased electric motor vehicle, the difference between the manufacturer's suggested retail price of such electric motor vehicle and the manufacturer's suggested retail price of a comparable conventionally fueled motor vehicle; and

(B) in the case of a leased electric motor vehicle, the difference between the monthly lease payment of such electric motor vehicle over the life of the lease and the monthly lease payment of a comparable conventionally fueled motor vehicle over the life of the lease; and

(12) the term "user" means a person or entity that purchases or leases an electric motor vehicle.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title VI, §601, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2899.)

PART A—ELECTRIC MOTOR VEHICLE COMMERCIAL DEMONSTRATION PROGRAM

§13281. Program and solicitation

(a) Program

The Secretary shall conduct a program to demonstrate electric motor vehicles and the associated equipment of such vehicles, in consultation with the Electric and Hybrid Vehicle Program Site Operators, manufacturers, the electric utility industry, and such other persons as the Secretary considers appropriate. Such program shall be—

(1) designed to accelerate the development and use of electric motor vehicles; and

(2) structured to evaluate the performance of such electric motor vehicles in field operation, including fleet operation, and evaluate the necessary supporting infrastructure.

(b) Solicitation

(1) Not later than 18 months after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals to demonstrate electric motor vehicles and associated equipment in one or more eligible metropolitan areas. The Secretary may make additional solicitations for proposals if the Secretary determines that such solicitations are necessary to carry out this part.

(2)(A) Solicitations for proposals under this subsection shall require the proposer to include a description, including the manufacturer or manufacturers of the electric motor vehicles; the proposed users of the electric motor vehicles; the eligible metropolitan area or areas involved; the number of electric motor vehicles to be demonstrated and their type, characteristics, and life-cycle costs; the price differential; the proposed discount payment; the contributions of State or local governments and other persons to the demonstration project; the type of associated equipment to be demonstrated; the domestic content of the electric motor vehicles and associated equipment; and any other information the Secretary considers appropriate.

(B) If the proposal includes a lease arrangement, the proposal shall indicate the terms of such lease arrangement for the electric motor vehicles or associated equipment.

(3) The solicitation for proposals under this subsection shall establish a closing date for receipt of proposals. The Secretary may, if necessary, extend the closing date for receipt of proposals for a period not to exceed 90 days.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title VI, §611, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2900.)

§13282. Selection of proposals

(a) Selection

(1) The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Commerce, and the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, shall, not later than 120 days after the closing date, as established by the Secretary, for receipt of proposals under section 13281 of this title, select at least one, but not more than 10, proposals to receive financial assistance under section 13283 of this title.

(2) The Secretary may select more than 10 proposals under this section, if the Secretary determines that the total amount of available funds is not likely to be otherwise utilized.

(3) Any proposal selected under paragraph (1) must satisfy the limitations set forth in section 13283(c) of this title.

(4) No one project selected under this section shall receive more than 25 percent of the funds authorized under section 13286 of this title.

(5) A demonstration project may not include electric motor vehicles in more than one eligible metropolitan area, unless the total number of electric motor vehicles in that project is equal to, or greater than, 100.

(b) Criteria

In selecting a proposal and in negotiating financial assistance under this section, the Secretary shall consider—

(1) the ability of the manufacturer, directly, indirectly, or in combination with the proposer, to develop, assist in the demonstration of, manufacture, distribute, sell, provide warranties for, service, and ensure the continued availability of parts for, electric motor vehicles in the demonstration project;

(2) the geographic and climatic diversity of the eligible metropolitan area or areas in which the demonstration project is to be undertaken, when considered in combination with other proposals and other selected demonstration projects;

(3) the long-term technical and competitive viability of the electric motor vehicles;

(4) the suitability of the electric motor vehicles for their intended uses;

(5) the environmental effects of the use of the proposed electric motor vehicles;

(6) the price differential and the proposed discount payment;

(7) the extent of involvement of State or local government and other persons in the demonstration project, and whether such involvement will—

(A) permit a reduction of the Federal cost share per vehicle; or

(B) otherwise be used to allow the Federal contribution to be provided for a greater number of electric motor vehicles;

(8) the proportion of domestic content of the electric motor vehicles and associated equipment;

(9) the safety of the electric motor vehicles; and

(10) such other criteria as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(c) Conditions

The Secretary shall require that—

(1) as a part of a demonstration project, the user or users of the electric motor vehicles will provide to the proposer and the manufacturer information regarding the operation, maintenance, performance, and use of the electric motor vehicles for 5 years after the beginning of the demonstration project;

(2) the proposer shall provide to the Secretary such information regarding the operation, maintenance, performance, and use of the electric motor vehicles as the Secretary may request during the period of the demonstration project;

(3) in the case of a demonstration project including automobiles or light duty trucks, the number of electric motor vehicles to be included in the demonstration project shall be no less than 50, except that the Secretary may select a demonstration project with fewer than 50 electric motor vehicles if the Secretary determines that selection of such a proposal will ensure that there is

geographic or climatic diversity among the proposals selected and that an adequate demonstration to accelerate the development and use of electric motor vehicles can be undertaken with fewer than 50 electric motor vehicles; and

(4) the procurement practices of the manufacturer do not discriminate against United States producers of vehicle parts.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title VI, §612, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2901.)

§13283. Discount payments

(a) Certification

The Secretary shall provide a discount payment to a proposer of a proposal selected under this part for purposes of reimbursing the proposer for a discount provided to the users if the proposer certifies to the Secretary that—

(1) the electric motor vehicles have been purchased or leased by a user or users in accordance with the requirements of this part; and

(2) the proposer has provided to the user or users a discount payment in accordance with the requirements of this part.

(b) Payment

Not later than 30 days after receipt from the proposer of certification that the Secretary determines satisfies the requirements of subsection (a), the Secretary shall pay to the proposer the full amount of the discount payment, to the extent provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

(c) Calculations of discount payments

(1) The discount payment shall be no greater than—

(A) the price differential; or

(B) the price of the comparable conventionally fueled motor vehicle.

(2) The purchase price of the electric motor vehicle, less the discount payment and less any additional reduction in the purchase price of the electric motor vehicle that may result from contributions provided by other parties, may not be less than the manufacturer's suggested retail price of a comparable conventionally fueled motor vehicle.

(3) The maximum discount payment shall be no greater than $10,000 per electric motor vehicle.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title VI, §613, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2902.)

§13284. Cost-sharing

(a) Requirement

The Secretary shall require at least 50 percent of the costs directly and specifically related to any project under this part to be from non-Federal sources. Such share may be in the form of cash, personnel, services, equipment, and other resources.

(b) Reduction

The Secretary may reduce the amount of costs required to be provided by non-Federal sources under subsection (a) if the Secretary determines that the reduction is necessary and appropriate—

(1) considering the technological risks involved in the project; and

(2) in order to meet the objectives of this part.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title VI, §614, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2903.)

§13285. Reports to Congress

(a) Progress reports

The Secretary shall report annually to Congress on the progress being made, through demonstration projects supported under this part, to accelerate the development and use of electric motor vehicles.

(b) Report on encouraging purchase and use of electric motor vehicles

Within 18 months after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit to the Congress a report on methods for encouraging the purchase and use of electric motor vehicles. Such report shall—

(1) address the potential cost of purchasing and maintaining electric motor vehicles, including the initial cost of the batteries and the cost of replacement batteries;

(2) identify methods for reducing, subsidizing, or sharing such costs; and

(3) include recommendations for legislative and administrative measures to encourage the purchase and use of electric motor vehicles.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title VI, §615, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2903.)

§13286. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for purposes of this part $50,000,000 for the 10-year period beginning with the first full fiscal year after October 24, 1992, to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title VI, §616, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2903.)

PART B—ELECTRIC MOTOR VEHICLE INFRASTRUCTURE AND SUPPORT SYSTEMS DEVELOPMENT PROGRAM

§13291. General authority

(a) Program

The Secretary shall undertake a program with one or more non-Federal persons, including fleet operators, for cost-shared research, development, demonstration, or commercial application of an infrastructure and support systems program.

(b) Eligibility

A non-Federal person shall be eligible to receive financial assistance under this part only if such person demonstrates, to the satisfaction of the Secretary, that the person will conduct a substantial portion of activities under the project in the United States using domestic labor and materials.

(c) Coordination

Activities under this part shall be coordinated with activities under part A.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title VI, §621, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2904.)

§13292. Proposals

(a) Solicitation

Not later than one year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals from non-Federal persons, including fleet operators, for projects under this part. Within 240 days after proposals have been solicited, the Secretary shall select proposals.

(b) Criteria

(1) The Secretary shall provide financial assistance to no more than 10 projects under this part, unless the Secretary determines that the total amount of available funds is not likely to be otherwise used.

(2) The proposals selected by the Secretary shall, to the extent practicable, represent geographically and climatically diverse regions of the United States.

(3) The aggregate Federal financial assistance for each project under this part may not exceed $4,000,000.

(c) Projects

The infrastructure and support systems programs for which projects are selected under this part may address—

(1) the ability to service electric motor vehicles and to provide or service associated equipment;

(2) the installation of charging facilities;

(3) rates and cost recovery for electric utilities who invest in infrastructure capital-related expenditures;

(4) the development of safety and health procedures and guidelines related to battery charging, watering, and emissions;

(5) the conduct of information dissemination programs; and

(6) such other subjects as the Secretary considers necessary in order to address the infrastructure and support systems needed to support the development and use of energy storage technologies, including advanced batteries, and the demonstration of electric motor vehicles.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title VI, §622, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2904.)

§13293. Protection of proprietary information

(a) In general

In the case of activities, including joint venture activities, under this subchapter, and in the case of any existing or future activities, including joint venture activities, related primarily to battery technology for electric motor vehicles under other provisions of law, where the knowledge resulting from research and development activities conducted pursuant to such activities, including joint venture activities, is for the benefit of the participants (particularly domestic companies) that provide financial resources to a project under this subchapter, the Secretary, for a period of up to 5 years after the development of information that—

(1) results from research and development activities conducted under this subchapter; and

(2) would be a trade secret or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential if the information had been obtained from a participant,

shall, notwithstanding any other provision of law, provide appropriate protections against the dissemination of such information to the public, and the provisions of section 1905 of title 18 shall apply to such information. Nothing in this subsection provides protections against the dissemination of such information to Congress.

(b) "Domestic companies" defined

For purposes of subsection (a), the term "domestic companies" means entities which are substantially involved in the United States in the domestic production of motor vehicles for sale in the United States and have a substantial percentage of their production facilities in the United States.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title VI, §623, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2904.)

§13294. Compliance with existing law

Nothing in this subchapter shall be deemed to convey to any person, partnership, corporation, or other entity, immunity from civil or criminal liability under any antitrust law or to create defenses to

actions under any antitrust law.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title VI, §624, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2905.)

§13295. Repealed. Pub. L. 105–362, title IV, §401(b), Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3282

Section, Pub. L. 102–486, title VI, §625, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2905, related to electric utility participation study.

§13296. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for purposes of this part $40,000,000 for the 5-year period beginning with the first full fiscal year after October 24, 1992, to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title VI, §626, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2905.)

SUBCHAPTER V—RENEWABLE ENERGY

§13311. Purposes

The purposes of this subchapter are to promote—

(1) increases in the production and utilization of energy from renewable energy resources;

(2) further advances of renewable energy technologies; and

(3) exports of United States renewable energy technologies and services.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XII, §1201, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2956.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title" meaning title XII of Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2956, which enacted this subchapter and amended sections 6276, 12001 to 12003, 12005, and 12006 of this title.

§13312. Renewable energy export technology training

(a) Establishment of program

The Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, shall establish a program for the training of individuals from developing countries in the operation and maintenance of renewable energy and energy efficiency technologies in accordance with this section. The Secretary and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall, within one year after October 24, 1992, enter into a written agreement to carry out this program.

(b) Purpose

The purpose of the program established under this section shall be to train appropriate persons in the system design, operation, and maintenance of renewable energy and energy efficiency equipment manufactured in the United States, including equipment for water pumping, heating and purification, and the production of electric power in remote areas.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary $6,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1994, 1995, and 1996, to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XII, §1203, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2961.)

§13313. Renewable Energy Advancement Awards

(a) Authority

The Secretary shall make Renewable Energy Advancement Awards in recognition of developments that advance the practical application of biomass, geothermal, hydroelectric, photovoltaic, solar thermal, ocean thermal, and wind technologies to consumer, utility, or industrial uses, in accordance with this section. Except as provided in subsection (f), Renewable Energy Advancement Awards shall include a cash award.

(b) Selection criteria

The Secretary, in consultation with the Advisory Committee on Demonstration and Commercial Application of Renewable Energy and Energy Efficiency Technologies (in this section referred to as the "Advisory Committee"), under section 12005 of this title, shall develop criteria to be applied in the selection of award recipients under this section. Such criteria shall include the following:

(1) The degree to which the technological development increases the utilization of renewable energy.

(2) The degree to which the development will have a significant impact, by benefitting a large number of people, by reducing the costs of an important industrial process or commercial product or service, or otherwise.

(3) The ingenuity of the development.

(4) Whether the application has significant export potential.

(5) The environmental soundness of the development.

(c) Selection

Beginning in fiscal year 1994, and annually thereafter for a period of 10 years, the Secretary, in consultation with the Advisory Committee, shall select developments described in subsection (a) that are worthy of receiving an award under this section, and shall make such awards.

(d) Eligibility

Awards may be made under this section only to individuals who are United States nationals or permanent resident aliens, or to non-Federal organizations that are organized under the laws of the United States or the laws of a State of the United States.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary $50,000 for each of the fiscal years 1994, 1995, and 1996 for carrying out this section.

(f) Awards made in absence of appropriations

The Secretary shall make honorary awards under this section if sufficient funds are not available for financial awards in any fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XII, §1204, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2961.)

§13314. Study of tax and rate treatment of renewable energy projects

(a) The Secretary, in conjunction with State regulatory commissions, shall undertake a study to determine if conventional taxation and ratemaking procedures result in economic barriers to or incentives for renewable energy power plants compared to conventional power plants.

(b) Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit a report to the Congress on the results of the study undertaken under subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XII, §1205, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2962.)

§13315. Data system and energy technology evaluation

The Secretary of Commerce, in his or her role as a member of the interagency working group established under section 6276 of this title, shall—

(1) develop a comprehensive data base and information dissemination system, using the National Trade Data Bank and the Commercial Information Management System of the Department of Commerce, that will provide information on the specific energy technology needs of foreign countries, and the technical and economic competitiveness of various renewable energy and energy efficiency products and technologies;

(2) make such information available to industry, Federal and multilateral lending agencies, nongovernmental organizations, host-country and donor-agency officials, and such others as the Secretary of Commerce considers necessary; and

(3) prepare and transmit to the Congress not later than June 1, 1993, and biennially thereafter, a comprehensive report evaluating the full range of energy and environmental technologies necessary to meet the energy needs of foreign countries, including—

(A) information on the specific energy needs of foreign countries;

(B) an inventory of United States technologies and services to meet those needs;

(C) an update on the status of ongoing bilateral and multilateral programs which promote United States exports of renewable energy and energy efficiency products and technologies; and

(D) an evaluation of current programs (and recommendations for future programs) that develop and promote energy efficiency and sustainable use of indigenous renewable energy resources in foreign countries to reduce the generation of greenhouse gases.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XII, §1209, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2964.)

§13316. Innovative renewable energy technology transfer program

(a) Establishment of program

The Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and in consultation with the other members of the interagency working group established under section 6276(d) of this title (in this section referred to as the "interagency working group"), shall establish a renewable energy technology transfer program to carry out the purposes described in subsection (b). Within 150 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall enter into a written agreement to carry out this section. The agreement shall establish a procedure for resolving any disputes between the Secretary and the Administrator regarding the implementation of specific projects. With respect to countries not assisted by the Agency for International Development, the Secretary may enter into agreements with other appropriate Federal agencies. If the Secretary and the Administrator, or the Secretary and an agency described in the previous sentence, are unable to reach an agreement, each shall send a memorandum to the President outlining an appropriate agreement. Within 90 days after receipt of either memorandum, the President shall determine which version of the agreement shall be in effect. Any agreement entered into under this subsection shall be provided to the appropriate committees of the Congress and made available to the public.

(b) Purposes of program

The purposes of the technology transfer program under this section are to—

(1) reduce the United States balance of trade deficit through the export of United States renewable energy technologies and technological expertise;

(2) retain and create manufacturing and related service jobs in the United States;

(3) encourage the export of United States renewable energy technologies, including services related thereto, to those countries that have a need for developmentally sound facilities to provide energy derived from renewable resources;

(4) develop markets for United States renewable energy technologies to be utilized in meeting the energy and environmental requirements of foreign countries;

(5) better ensure that United States participation in energy-related projects in foreign countries includes participation by United States firms as well as utilization of United States technologies that have been developed or demonstrated in the United States through publicly or privately funded demonstration programs;

(6) ensure the introduction of United States firms and expertise in foreign countries;

(7) provide financial assistance by the Federal Government to foster greater participation by United States firms in the financing, ownership, design, construction, or operation of renewable energy technology projects in foreign countries;

(8) assist foreign countries in meeting their energy needs through the use of renewable energy in an environmentally acceptable manner, consistent with sustainable development policies; and

(9) assist United States firms, especially firms that are in competition with firms in foreign countries, to obtain opportunities to transfer technologies to, or undertake projects in, foreign countries.

(c) Identification

Pursuant to the agreements required by subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and after consultation with the interagency working group, United States firms, and representatives from foreign countries, shall develop mechanisms to identify potential energy projects in host countries, and shall identify a list of such projects within 240 days after October 24, 1992, and periodically thereafter.

(d) Financial mechanisms

(1) Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, shall—

(A) establish appropriate financial mechanisms to increase the participation of United States firms in energy projects utilizing United States renewable energy technologies, and services related thereto, in developing countries;

(B) utilize available financial assistance authorized by this section to counterbalance assistance provided by foreign governments to non-United States firms; and

(C) provide financial assistance to support projects.

(2) The financial assistance authorized by this section may be—

(A) provided in combination with other forms of financial assistance, including non-United States funding that is available to the project; and

(B) utilized to assist United States firms in the development of innovative financing packages for renewable energy technology projects that utilize other financial assistance programs available through the Federal Government.

(3) United States obligations under the Arrangement on Guidelines for Officially Supported Export Credits established through the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development shall be applicable to this section.

(e) Solicitations for project proposals

(1) Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, within one year after October 24, 1992, and subsequently as appropriate thereafter, shall solicit proposals from United States firms for the design, construction, testing, and operation of the project or projects identified under subsection (c) which propose to utilize a United States renewable energy technology. Each solicitation under this section shall establish a closing date for receipt of proposals.

(2) The solicitation under this subsection shall, to the extent appropriate, be modeled after the RFP No. DE–PS01–90FE62271 Clean Coal Technology IV, as administered by the Department of Energy.

(3) Any solicitation made under this subsection shall include the following requirements:

(A) The United States firm that submits a proposal in response to the solicitation shall have an

equity interest in the proposed project.

(B) The project shall utilize a United States renewable energy technology, including services related thereto, in meeting the applicable energy and environmental requirements of the host country.

(C) Proposals for projects shall be submitted by and undertaken with a United States firm, although a joint venture or other teaming arrangement with a non-United States manufacturer or other non-United States entity is permissible.

(f) Assistance to United States firms

Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and in consultation with the interagency working group, shall establish a procedure to provide financial assistance to United States firms under this section for a project identified under subsection (c) where solicitations for the project are being conducted by the host country or by a multilateral lending institution.

(g) Other program requirements

Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and in consultation with the working group, shall—

(1) establish eligibility criteria for host countries;

(2) periodically review the energy needs of such countries and export opportunities for United States firms for the development of projects in such countries;

(3) consult with government officials in host countries and, as appropriate, with representatives of utilities or other entities in host countries, to determine interest in and support for potential projects; and

(4) determine whether each project selected under this section is developmentally sound, as determined under the criteria developed by the Development Assistance Committee of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development.

(h) Selection of projects

(1) Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, shall, not later than 120 days after receipt of proposals in response to a solicitation under subsection (e), select one or more proposals under this section.

(2) In selecting a proposal under this section, the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, shall consider—

(A) the ability of the United States firm, in cooperation with the host country, to undertake and complete the project;

(B) the degree to which the equipment to be included in the project is designed and manufactured in the United States;

(C) the long-term technical and competitive viability of the United States technology, and services related thereto, and the ability of the United States firm to compete in the development of additional energy projects using such technology in the host country and in other foreign countries;

(D) the extent of technical and financial involvement of the host country in the project;

(E) the extent to which the proposed project meets the purposes stated in section 13311(b) [1] of this title;

(F) the extent of technical, financial, management, and marketing capabilities of the participants in the project, and the commitment of the participants to completion of a successful project in a manner that will facilitate acceptance of the United States technology for future application; and

(G) such other criteria as may be appropriate.

(3) In selecting among proposed projects, the Secretary shall seek to ensure that, relative to otherwise comparable projects in the host country, a selected project will meet 1 or more of the following criteria:

(A) It will reduce environmental emissions to an extent greater than required by applicable

provisions of law.

(B) It will make greater use of indigenous renewable energy resources.

(C) It will be a more cost-effective technological alternative, based on life cycle capital and operating costs per unit of energy produced and, where applicable, costs per unit of product produced.

Priority in selection shall be given to those projects which, in the judgment of the Secretary, best meet one or more of these criteria.

(i) United States-Asia Environmental Partnership

Activities carried out under this section shall be coordinated with the United States-Asia Environmental Partnership.

(j) Buy America

In carrying out this section, the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), shall ensure—

(1) the maximum percentage, but in no case less than 50 percent, of the cost of any equipment furnished in connection with a project authorized under this section shall be attributable to the manufactured United States components of such equipment; and

(2) the maximum participation of United States firms.

In determining whether the cost of United States components equals or exceeds 50 percent, the cost of assembly of such United States components in the host country shall not be considered a part of the cost of such United States component.

(k) Reports to Congress

The Secretary and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall report annually to the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate and the appropriate committees of the House of Representatives on the progress being made to introduce renewable energy technologies into foreign countries.

(l) Definitions

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term "host country" means a foreign country which is—

(A) the participant in or the site of the proposed renewable energy technology project; and

(B) either—

(i) classified as a country eligible to participate in development assistance programs of the Agency for International Development pursuant to applicable law or regulation; or

(ii) a developing country.

(2) the term "developing country" includes, but is not limited to, countries in Central and Eastern Europe or in the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

(m) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out the program required by this section, $100,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1993, 1994, 1995, 1996, 1997, and 1998.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XII, §1211, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2965.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be section "13316(b)".*

§13317. Renewable energy production incentive

(a) Incentive payments

(1) For electric energy generated and sold by a qualified renewable energy facility during the

incentive period, the Secretary shall make, subject to the availability of appropriations, incentive payments to the owner or operator of such facility.

(2) The amount of such payment made to any such owner or operator shall be as determined under subsection (e).

(3) Payments under this section may only be made upon receipt by the Secretary of an incentive payment application which establishes that the applicant is eligible to receive such payment.

(4)(A) Subject to subparagraph (B), if there are insufficient appropriations to make full payments for electric production from all qualified renewable energy facilities for a fiscal year, the Secretary shall assign—

(i) 60 percent of appropriated funds for the fiscal year to facilities that use solar, wind, ocean (including tidal, wave, current, and thermal), geothermal, or closed-loop (dedicated energy crops) biomass technologies to generate electricity; and

(ii) 40 percent of appropriated funds for the fiscal year to other projects.

(B) After submitting to Congress an explanation of the reasons for the alteration, the Secretary may alter the percentage requirements of subparagraph (A).

(b) Qualified renewable energy facility

For purposes of this section, a qualified renewable energy facility is a facility which is owned by a not-for-profit electric cooperative, a public utility described in section 115 of title 26, a State, Commonwealth, territory, or possession of the United States, or the District of Columbia, or a political subdivision thereof, an Indian tribal government or subdivision thereof, or a Native Corporation (as defined in section 1602 of title 43), and which generates electric energy for sale in, or affecting, interstate commerce using solar, wind, biomass, landfill gas, livestock methane, ocean (including tidal, wave, current, and thermal), or geothermal energy, except that—

(1) the burning of municipal solid waste shall not be treated as using biomass energy; and

(2) geothermal energy shall not include energy produced from a dry steam geothermal reservoir which has—

(A) no mobile liquid in its natural state;

(B) steam quality of 95 percent water; and

(C) an enthalpy for the total produced fluid greater than or equal to 1200 Btu/lb (British thermal units per pound).

(c) Eligibility window

Payments may be made under this section only for electricity generated from a qualified renewable energy facility first used before October 1, 2016.

(d) Payment period

A qualified renewable energy facility may receive payments under this section for a 10-fiscal year period. Such period shall begin with the fiscal year in which electricity generated from the facility is first eligible for such payments, or in which the Secretary determines that all necessary Federal and State authorizations have been obtained to begin construction of the facility.

(e) Amount of payment

(1) In general

Incentive payments made by the Secretary under this section to the owner or operator of any qualified renewable energy facility shall be based on the number of kilowatt hours of electricity generated by the facility through the use of solar, wind, biomass, landfill gas, livestock methane, ocean (including tidal, wave, current, and thermal), or geothermal energy during the payment period referred to in subsection (d). For any facility, the amount of such payment shall be 1.5 cents per kilowatt hour, adjusted as provided in paragraph (2).

(2) Adjustments

The amount of the payment made to any person under this subsection as provided in paragraph (1) shall be adjusted for inflation for each fiscal year beginning after calendar year 1993 in the

same manner as provided in the provisions of section 29(d)(2)(B) of title 26,[1] except that in applying such provisions the calendar year 1993 shall be substituted for calendar year 1979.

(f) Sunset

No payment may be made under this section to any facility after September 30, 2026, and no payment may be made under this section to any facility after a payment has been made with respect to such facility for a 10-fiscal year period.

(g) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2026, to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XII, §1212, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2969; Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §202, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 651.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 29 of title 26, referred to in subsec. (e)(2), was renumbered section 45K of title 26 by Pub. L. 109–58, title XIII, §1322(a)(1), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1011.

AMENDMENTS

2005—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–58, §202(a), designated first, second, and third sentences as pars. (1) to (3), respectively, in par. (3) struck out "and which satisfies such other requirements as the Secretary deems necessary" after "receive such payment", struck out at end "Such application shall be in such form, and shall be submitted at such time, as the Secretary shall establish.", and added par. (4).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 109–58, §202(b), in introductory provisions, substituted "a not-for-profit electric cooperative, a public utility described in section 115 of title 26, a State, Commonwealth, territory, or possession of the United States, or the District of Columbia, or a political subdivision thereof, an Indian tribal government or subdivision thereof, or a Native Corporation (as defined in section 1602 of title 43)," for "a State or any political subdivision of a State (or an agency, authority, or instrumentality of a State or a political subdivision), by any corporation or association which is wholly owned, directly or indirectly, by one or more of the foregoing, or by a nonprofit electrical cooperative" and inserted "landfill gas, livestock methane, ocean (including tidal, wave, current, and thermal)," after "wind, biomass,".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 109–58, §202(c), substituted "before October 1, 2016" for "during the 10-fiscal year period beginning with the first full fiscal year occurring after October 24, 1992".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 109–58, §202(d), inserted ", or in which the Secretary determines that all necessary Federal and State authorizations have been obtained to begin construction of the facility" after "eligible for such payments".

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 109–58, §202(e), inserted "landfill gas, livestock methane, ocean (including tidal, wave, current, and thermal)," after "wind, biomass,".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 109–58, §202(f), substituted "September 30, 2026" for "the expiration of the 20-fiscal year period beginning with the first full fiscal year occurring after October 24, 1992".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 109–58, §202(g), added subsec. (g) and struck out heading and text of former subsec. (g). Text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for fiscal years 1993, 1994, and 1995 such sums as may be necessary to carry out the purposes of this section."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

SUBCHAPTER VI—COAL

PART A—RESEARCH, DEVELOPMENT, DEMONSTRATION, AND COMMERCIAL APPLICATION

§13331. Coal research, development, demonstration, and commercial application programs

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall, in accordance with section [1] 13541 and 13542 of this title, conduct programs for research, development, demonstration, and commercial application on coal-based technologies. Such research, development, demonstration, and commercial application programs shall include the programs established under this part, and shall have the goals and objectives of—

(1) ensuring a reliable electricity supply;

(2) complying with applicable environmental requirements;

(3) achieving the control of sulfur oxides, oxides of nitrogen, air toxics, solid and liquid wastes, greenhouse gases, or other emissions resulting from coal use or conversion at levels of proficiency greater than or equal to applicable currently available commercial technology;

(4) achieving the cost competitive conversion of coal into energy forms usable in the transportation sector;

(5) demonstrating the conversion of coal to synthetic gaseous, liquid, and solid fuels;

(6) demonstrating, in cooperation with other Federal and State agencies, the use of coal-derived fuels in mobile equipment, with opportunities for industrial cost sharing participation;

(7) ensuring the timely commercial application of cost-effective technologies or energy production processes or systems utilizing coal which achieve—

(A) greater efficiency in the conversion of coal to useful energy when compared to currently available commercial technology for the use of coal; and

(B) the control of emissions from the utilization of coal; and

(8) ensuring the availability for commercial use of such technologies by the year 2010.

(b) Demonstration and commercial application programs

(1) In selecting either a demonstration project or a commercial application project for financial assistance under this part, the Secretary shall seek to ensure that, relative to otherwise comparable commercially available technologies or products, the selected project will meet one or more of the following criteria:

(A) It will reduce environmental emissions to an extent greater than required by applicable provisions of law.

(B) It will increase the overall efficiency of the utilization of coal, including energy conversion efficiency and, where applicable, production of products derived from coal.

(C) It will be a more cost-effective technological alternative, based on life cycle capital and operating costs per unit of energy produced and, where applicable, costs per unit of product produced.

Priority in selection shall be given to those projects which, in the judgment of the Secretary, best meet one or more of these criteria.

(2) In administering demonstration and commercial application programs authorized by this part, the Secretary shall establish accounting and project management controls that will be adequate to control costs.

(3)(A) Not later than 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall establish procedures and criteria for the recoupment of the Federal share of each cost shared demonstration and commercial application project authorized pursuant to this part. Such recoupment shall occur within a reasonable period of time following the date of completion of such project, but not later than 20 years following such date, taking into account the effect of recoupment on—

(i) the commercial competitiveness of the entity carrying out the project;

(ii) the profitability of the project; and

(iii) the commercial viability of the coal-based technology utilized.

(B) The Secretary may at any time waive or defer all or some portion of the recoupment requirement as necessary for the commercial viability of the project.

(4) Projects selected by the Secretary under this part for demonstration or commercial application of a technology shall, in the judgment of the Secretary, be capable of enhancing the state of the art for such technology.

(c) Report

Within 240 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall transmit to the Committee on Energy and Commerce and the Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of the House of Representatives and to the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate a report which shall include each of the following:

(1) A detailed description of ongoing research, development, demonstration, and commercial application activities regarding coal-based technologies undertaken by the Department of Energy, other Federal or State government departments or agencies and, to the extent such information is publicly available, other public or private organizations in the United States and other countries.

(2) A listing and analysis of current Federal and State government regulatory and financial incentives that could further the goals of the programs established under this part.

(3) Recommendations regarding the manner in which any ongoing coal-based demonstration and commercial application program might be modified and extended in order to ensure the timely demonstrations of advanced coal-based technologies so as to ensure that the goals established under this section are achieved and that such demonstrated technologies are available for commercial use by the year 2010.

(4) Recommendations, if any, regarding the manner in which the cost sharing demonstrations conducted pursuant to the Clean Coal Program established by Public Law 98–473 might be modified and extended in order to ensure the timely demonstration of advanced coal-based technologies.

(5) A detailed plan for conducting the research, development, demonstration, and commercial application programs to achieve the goals and objectives of subsection (a) of this section, which plan shall include a description of—

(A) the program elements and management structure to be utilized;

(B) the technical milestones to be achieved with respect to each of the advanced coal-based technologies included in the plan; and

(C) the dates at which further deadlines for additional cost sharing demonstrations shall be established.

(d) Status reports

Within one year after transmittal of the report described in subsection (c), and every 2 years thereafter for a period of 6 years, the Secretary shall transmit to the Congress a report that provides a detailed description of the status of development of the advanced coal-based technologies and the research, development, demonstration, and commercial application activities undertaken to carry out the programs required by this part.

(e) Consultation

In carrying out research, development, demonstration, and commercial application activities under this part, the Secretary shall consult with the National Coal Council and other representatives of the public and private sectors as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1301, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2970.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Public Law 98–473, referred to in subsec. (c)(4), is Pub. L. 98–473, Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1837, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104–14, set out as a note preceding section

21 of Title 2, The Congress. Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives, and jurisdiction over matters relating to securities and exchanges and insurance generally transferred to Committee on Financial Services of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 5, One Hundred Seventh Congress, Jan. 3, 2001.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "sections".*

§13332. Coal-fired diesel engines

The Secretary shall conduct a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application for utilizing coal-derived liquid or gaseous fuels, including ultra-clean coal-water slurries, in diesel engines. The program shall address—

(1) required engine retrofit technology;
(2) coal-fuel production technology;
(3) emission control requirements;
(4) the testing of low-Btu highly reactive fuels;
(5) fuel delivery and storage systems requirements; and
(6) other infrastructure required to support commercial deployment.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1302, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2972.)

§13333. Clean coal, waste-to-energy

The Secretary shall establish a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application with respect to the use of solid waste combined with coal as a fuel source for clean coal combustion technologies. The program shall address—

(1) the feasibility of cofiring coal and used vehicle tires in fluidized bed combustion units;
(2) the combined gasification of coal and municipal sludge using integrated gasification combined cycle technology;
(3) the creation of fuel pellets combining coal and material reclaimed from solid waste;
(4) the feasibility of cofiring, in fluidized bed combustion units, waste methane from coal mines, including ventilation air, together with coal or coal wastes; and
(5) other sources of waste and coal mixtures in other applications that the Secretary considers appropriate.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1303, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2972.)

§13334. Nonfuel use of coal

(a) Program

The Secretary shall prepare a plan for and carry out a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application with respect to technologies for the nonfuel use of coal, including—

(1) production of coke and other carbon products derived from coal;
(2) production of coal-derived, carbon-based chemical intermediates that are precursors of value-added chemicals and polymers;
(3) production of chemicals from coal-derived synthesis gas;
(4) coal treatment processes, including methodologies such as solvent-extraction techniques that produce low ash, low sulfur, coal-based chemical feedstocks; and
(5) waste utilization, including recovery, processing, and marketing of products derived from sulfur, carbon dioxide, nitrogen, and ash from coal.

(b) Plan contents

The plan described in subsection (a) shall address and evaluate—

(1) the known and potential processes for using coal in the creation of products in the chemical, utility, fuel, and carbon-based materials industries;

(2) the costs, benefits, and economic feasibility of using coal products in the chemical and materials industries, including value-added chemicals, carbon-based products, coke, and waste derived from coal;

(3) the economics of coproduction of products from coal in conjunction with the production of electric power, thermal energy, and fuel;

(4) the economics of the refining of coal and coal byproducts to produce nonfuel products;

(5) the economics of coal utilization in comparison with other feedstocks that might be used for the same purposes;

(6) the steps that can be taken by the public and private sectors to bring about commercialization of technologies developed under the program recommended; and

(7) the past development, current status, and future potential of coal products and processes associated with nonfuel uses of coal.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1304, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2973.)

§13335. Coal refinery program

(a) Program

The Secretary shall conduct a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application for coal refining technologies.

(b) Objectives

The program shall include technologies for refining high sulfur coals, low sulfur coals, sub-bituminous coals, and lignites to produce clean-burning transportation fuels, compliance boiler fuels, fuel additives, lubricants, chemical feedstocks, and carbon-based manufactured products, either alone or in conjunction with the generation of electricity or process heat, or the manufacture of a variety of products from coal. The objectives of such program shall be to achieve—

(1) the timely commercial application of technologies, including mild gasification, hydrocracking and other hydropyrolysis processes, and other energy production processes or systems to produce coal-derived fuels and coproducts, which achieve greater efficiency and economy in the conversion of coal to electrical energy and coproducts than currently available technology;

(2) the production of energy, fuels, and products which, on a complete energy system basis, will result in environmental emissions no greater than those produced by existing comparable energy systems utilized for the same purpose;

(3) the capability to produce a range of coal-derived transportation fuels, including oxygenated hydrocarbons, boiler fuels, turbine fuels, and coproducts, which can reduce dependence on imported oil by displacing conventional petroleum in the transportation sector and other sectors of the economy;

(4) reduction in the cost of producing such coal-derived fuels and coproducts;

(5) the control of emissions from the combustion of coal-derived fuels; and

(6) the availability for commercial use of such technologies by the year 2000.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1305, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2973.)

§13336. Coalbed methane recovery

(a) Study of barriers and environmental and safety aspects

The Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency and the Secretary of the Interior, shall conduct a study of—

(1) technical, economic, financial, legal, regulatory, institutional, or other barriers to coalbed methane recovery, and of policy options for eliminating such barriers; and

(2) the environmental and safety aspects of flaring coalbed methane liberated from coal mines.

Within two years after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit a report to the Congress detailing the results of such study.

(b) Information dissemination

Beginning one year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency and the Secretary of the Interior, shall disseminate to the public information on state-of-the-art coalbed methane recovery techniques, including information on costs and benefits.

(c) Demonstration and commercial application program

The Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency and the Secretary of the Interior, shall establish a coalbed methane recovery demonstration and commercial application program, which shall emphasize gas enrichment technology. Such program shall address—

(1) gas enrichment technologies for enriching medium-quality methane recovered from coal mines to pipeline quality;

(2) technologies to use mine ventilation air in nearby power generation facilities, including gas turbines, internal combustion engines, or other coal fired powerplants;

(3) technologies for cofiring methane recovered from mines, including methane from ventilation systems and degasification systems, together with coal in conventional or clean coal technology boilers; and

(4) other technologies for producing and using methane from coal mines that the Secretary considers appropriate.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1306, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2974.)

§13337. Metallurgical coal development

(a) The Secretary shall establish a research, development, demonstration, and commercial application program on metallurgical coal utilization for the purpose of developing techniques that will lead to the greater and more efficient utilization of the Nation's metallurgical coal resources.

(b) The program referred to in subsection (a) shall include the use of metallurgical coal—

(1) as a boiler fuel for the purpose of generating steam to produce electricity, including blending metallurgical coal with other coals in order to enhance its efficient application as a boiler fuel;

(2) as an ingredient in the manufacturing of steel; and

(3) as a source of pipeline quality coalbed methane.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1307, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2975.)

§13338. Utilization of coal wastes

(a) Coal waste utilization program

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of the Interior, shall establish a research, development, demonstration, and commercial application program on coal waste utilization for the purpose of developing techniques that will lead to the greater and more efficient utilization of coal wastes from mining and processing, other than coal ash.

(b) Use as boiler fuel

The program referred to in subsection (a) shall include projects to facilitate the use of coal wastes from mining and processing as a boiler fuel for the purpose of generating steam to produce

electricity.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1308, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2975.)

§13339. Underground coal gasification

(a) Program

The Secretary shall conduct a research, development, demonstration, and commercial application program for underground coal gasification technology for in-situ conversion of coal to a cleaner burning, easily transportable gaseous fuel. The goal and objective of this program shall be to accelerate the development and commercialization of underground coal gasification. In carrying out this program, the Secretary shall give equal consideration to all ranks of coal.

(b) Demonstration projects

As part of the program authorized in subsection (a), the Secretary may solicit proposals for underground coal gasification technology projects to fulfill the goal and objective of subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1309, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2975.)

§13340. Low-rank coal research and development

The Secretary shall pursue a program of research and development with respect to the technologies needed to expand the use of low-rank coals which take into account the unique properties of lignites and sub-bituminous coals, including, but not limited to, the following areas—

(1) high value-added carbon products;

(2) fuel cell applications;

(3) emissions control and combustion efficiencies;

(4) coal water fuels and underground coal gasification;

(5) distillates; and

(6) any other technologies which will assist in the development of niche markets for lignites and sub-bituminous coals.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1310, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2975.)

§13341. Magnetohydrodynamics

(a) Program

The Secretary shall carry out a research, development, demonstration, and commercial application program in magnetohydrodynamics. The purpose of this program shall be to determine the adequacy of the engineering and design information completed to date under Department of Energy contracts related to magnetohydrodynamics retrofit systems and to determine whether any further Federal investment in this technology is warranted.

(b) Solicitation of proposals

In order to carry out the program authorized in subsection (a), the Secretary may solicit proposals from the private sector and seek to enter into an agreement with appropriate parties.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1311, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2976.)

§13342. Oil substitution through coal liquefaction

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall conduct a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application for the purpose of developing economically and environmentally acceptable advanced

technologies for oil substitution through coal liquefaction.

(b) Program goals

The goals of the program established under subsection (a) shall include—

(1) improved resource selection and product quality;

(2) the development of technologies to increase net yield of liquid fuel product per ton of coal;

(3) an increase in overall thermal efficiency; and

(4) a reduction in capital and operating costs through technology improvements.

(c) Proposals

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for conducting activities under this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1312, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2976.)

§13343. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this part $278,139,000 for fiscal year 1993 and such sums as may be necessary for fiscal years 1994 through 1997.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1313, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2976.)

PART B—CLEAN COAL TECHNOLOGY PROGRAM

§13351. Additional clean coal technology solicitations

(a) Program design

Additional clean coal technology solicitations described in subsection (b) shall be designed to ensure the timely development of cost-effective technologies or energy production processes or systems utilizing coal that achieve greater efficiency in the conversion of coal to useful energy when compared to currently commercially available technology for the use of coal and the control of emissions from the combustion of coal. Such program shall be designed to ensure, to the greatest extent possible, the availability for commercial use of such technologies by the year 2010.

(b) Additional solicitations

In conducting the Clean Coal Program established by Public Law 98–473, the Secretary shall consider the potential benefits of conducting additional solicitations pursuant to such program and, based on the results of that consideration, may carry out such additional solicitations, which shall be similar in scope and percentage of Federal cost sharing as that provided by Public Law 101–121.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1321, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2976.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Public Law 98–473, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 98–473, Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1837, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

Public Law 101–121, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 101–121, Oct. 23, 1989, 103 Stat. 701, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

PART C—OTHER COAL PROVISIONS

§13361. Clean coal technology export promotion and interagency coordination

(a) Establishment

There shall be established within the Trade Promotion Coordinating Committee (established by the President on May 23, 1990) a Clean Coal Technology Subgroup (in this part referred to as the "CCT Subgroup") to focus interagency efforts on clean coal technologies. The CCT Subgroup shall seek to expand the export and use of clean coal technologies, particularly in those countries which can benefit from gains in the efficiency of, and the control of environmental emissions from, coal utilization.

(b) Membership

The CCT Subgroup shall include 1 member from each agency represented on the Energy, Environment, and Infrastructure Working Group of the Trade Promotion Coordinating Committee as of October 24, 1992. The Secretary shall serve as chair of the CCT Subgroup and shall be responsible for ensuring that the functions of the CCT Subgroup are carried out through its member agencies.

(c) Consultation

(1) In carrying out this section, the CCT Subgroup shall consult with representatives from the United States coal industry, representatives of railroads and other transportation industries, organizations representing workers, the electric utility industry, manufacturers of equipment utilizing clean coal technology, members of organizations formed to further the goals of environmental protection or to promote the development and use of clean coal technologies that are developed, manufactured, or controlled by United States firms, and other appropriate interested members of the public.

(2) The CCT Subgroup shall maintain ongoing liaison with other elements of the Trade Promotion Coordinating Committee relating to clean coal technologies or regions where these technologies could be important, including Eastern Europe, Asia, and the Pacific.

(d) Duties

The Secretary, acting through the CCT Subgroup, shall—

(1) facilitate the establishment of technical training for the consideration, planning, construction, and operation of clean coal technologies by end users and international development personnel;

(2) facilitate the establishment of and, where practicable, cause to be established, consistent with the goals and objectives stated in section 13331(a) of this title, within existing departments and agencies—

(A) financial assistance programs (including grants, loan guarantees, and no interest and low interest loans) to support prefeasibility and feasibility studies for projects that will utilize clean coal technologies; and

(B) loan guarantee programs, grants, and no interest and low interest loans designed to facilitate access to capital and credit in order to finance such clean coal technology projects;

(3) develop and ensure the execution of programs, including the establishment of financial incentives, to encourage and support private sector efforts in exports of clean coal technologies that are developed, manufactured, or controlled by United States firms;

(4) encourage the training in, and understanding of, clean coal technologies by representatives of foreign companies or countries intending to use coal or clean coal technologies by providing technical or financial support for training programs, workshops, and other educational programs sponsored by United States firms;

(5) educate loan officers and other officers of international lending institutions, commercial and energy attachés of the United States, and such other personnel as the CCT Subgroup considers appropriate, for the purposes of providing information about clean coal technologies to foreign governments or potential project sponsors of clean coal technology projects;

(6) develop policies and practices to be conducted by commercial and energy attachés of the United States, and such other personnel as the CCT Subgroup considers appropriate, in order to

promote the exports of clean coal technologies to those countries interested in or intending to utilize coal resources;

(7) augment budgets for trade and development programs supported by Federal agencies for the purpose of financially supporting prefeasibility or feasibility studies for projects in foreign countries that will utilize clean coal technologies;

(8) review ongoing clean coal technology projects and review and advise Federal agencies on the approval of planned clean coal technology projects which are sponsored abroad by any Federal agency to determine whether such projects are consistent with the overall goals and objectives of this section;

(9) coordinate the activities of the appropriate Federal agencies in order to ensure that Federal clean coal technology export promotion policies are implemented in a timely fashion;

(10) work with CCT Subgroup member agencies to develop an overall strategy for promoting clean coal technology exports, including setting goals and allocating specific responsibilities among member agencies, consistent with applicable statutes; and

(11) coordinate with multilateral institutions to ensure that United States technologies are properly represented in their projects.

(e) Data and information

(1) The CCT Subgroup, consistent with other applicable provisions of law, shall ensure the development of a comprehensive data base and information dissemination system, using the National Trade Data Bank and the Commercial Information Management System of the Department of Commerce, relating to the availability of clean coal technologies and the potential need for such technologies, particularly in developing countries and countries making the transition from nonmarket to market economies.

(2) The Secretary, acting through the CCT Subgroup, shall assess and prioritize foreign markets that have the most potential for the export of clean coal technologies that are developed, manufactured, or controlled by United States firms. Such assessment shall include—

(A) an analysis of the financing requirements for clean coal technology projects in foreign countries and whether such projects are dependent upon financial assistance from foreign countries or multilateral institutions;

(B) the availability of other fuel or energy resources that may be available to meet the energy requirements intended to be met by the clean coal technology projects;

(C) the priority of environmental considerations in the selection of such projects;

(D) the technical competence of those entities likely to be involved in the planning and operation of such projects;

(E) an objective comparison of the environmental, energy, and economic performance of each clean coal technology relative to conventional technologies;

(F) a list of United States vendors of clean coal technologies; and

(G) answers to commonly asked questions about clean coal technologies,[1]

The Secretary, acting through the CCT Subgroup, shall make such information available to the House of Representatives and the Senate, and to the appropriate committees of each House of Congress, industry, Federal and international financing organizations, nongovernmental organizations, potential customers abroad, governments of countries where such clean coal technologies might be used, and such others as the CCT Subgroup considers appropriate.

(f) Report

Within 180 days after the Secretary submits the report to the Congress as required by section 409 of Public Law 101–549, the Secretary, acting through the CCT Subgroup, shall provide to the appropriate committees of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate, a plan which details actions to be taken in order to address those recommendations and findings made in the report submitted pursuant to section 409 of Public Law 101–549. As a part of the plan required by this subsection, the Secretary, acting through the CCT Subgroup, shall specifically address the adequacy of financial assistance available from Federal

departments and agencies and international financing organizations to aid in the financing of prefeasibility and feasibility studies and projects that would use a clean coal technology in developing countries and countries making the transition from nonmarket to market economies.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1331, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2977.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this subtitle" meaning subtitle C of title XIII of Pub. L. 102–486, which enacted this part and provisions set out as a note under section 824a–3 of Title 16, Conservation.

Section 409 of Public Law 101–549, referred to in subsec. (f), is section 409 of Pub. L. 101–549, title IV, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2634, which directed the Secretary of Energy, in consultation with the Secretary of Commerce, to submit a report to Congress within one year of November 15, 1990, respecting clean coal technology programs, and which is not classified to the Code.

[1] *So in original. The comma probably should be a period.*

§13362. Innovative clean coal technology transfer program

(a) Establishment of program

The Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and in consultation with the other members of the CCT Subgroup, shall establish a clean coal technology transfer program to carry out the purposes described in subsection (b). Within 150 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall enter into a written agreement to carry out this section. The agreement shall establish a procedure for resolving any disputes between the Secretary and the Administrator regarding the implementation of specific projects. With respect to countries not assisted by the Agency for International Development, the Secretary may enter into agreements with other appropriate United States agencies. If the Secretary and the Administrator, or the Secretary and an agency described in the previous sentence, are unable to reach an agreement, each shall send a memorandum to the President outlining an appropriate agreement. Within 90 days after receipt of either memorandum, the President shall determine which version of the agreement shall be in effect. Any agreement entered into under this subsection shall be provided to the appropriate committees of the Congress and made available to the public.

(b) Purposes of program

The purposes of the technology transfer program under this section are to—

(1) reduce the United States balance of trade deficit through the export of United States energy technologies and technological expertise;

(2) retain and create manufacturing and related service jobs in the United States;

(3) encourage the export of United States technologies, including services related thereto, to those countries that have a need for developmentally sound facilities to provide energy derived from coal resources;

(4) develop markets for United States technologies and, where appropriate, United States coal resources to be utilized in meeting the energy and environmental requirements of foreign countries;

(5) better ensure that United States participation in energy-related projects in foreign countries includes participation by United States firms as well as utilization of United States technologies that have been developed or demonstrated in the United States through publicly or privately funded demonstration programs;

(6) provide for the accelerated deployment of United States technologies that will serve to introduce into foreign countries United States technologies intended to use coal resources in a more efficient, cost-effective, and environmentally acceptable manner;

(7) serve to ensure the introduction of United States firms and expertise in foreign countries;

(8) provide financial assistance by the Federal Government to foster greater participation by

United States firms in the financing, ownership, design, construction, or operation of clean coal technology projects in foreign countries;

(9) assist foreign countries in meeting their energy needs through the use of coal in an environmentally acceptable manner, consistent with sustainable development policies; and

(10) assist United States firms, especially firms that are in competition with firms in foreign countries, to obtain opportunities to transfer technologies to, or undertake projects in, foreign countries.

(c) Identification

Pursuant to the agreements required by subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and after consultation with the CCT Subgroup, United States firms, and representatives from foreign countries, shall develop mechanisms to identify potential energy projects in host countries, and shall identify a list of such projects within 240 days after October 24, 1992, and periodically thereafter.

(d) Financial mechanisms

(1) Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, shall—

(A) establish appropriate financial mechanisms to increase the participation of United States firms in energy projects utilizing United States clean coal technologies, and services related thereto, in developing countries and countries making the transition from nonmarket to market economies;

(B) utilize available financial assistance authorized by this section to counterbalance assistance provided by foreign governments to non-United States firms; and

(C) provide financial assistance to support projects, including—

(i) financing the incremental costs of a clean coal technology project attributable only to expenditures to prevent or abate emissions;

(ii) providing the difference between the costs of a conventional energy project in the host country and a comparable project that would utilize a clean coal technology capable of achieving greater efficiency of energy products and improved environmental emissions compared to such conventional project; and

(iii) such other forms of financial assistance as the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, considers appropriate.

(2) The financial assistance authorized by this section may be—

(A) provided in combination with other forms of financial assistance, including non-United States funding that is available to the project; and

(B) utilized to assist United States firms to develop innovative financing packages for clean coal technology projects that seek to utilize other financial assistance programs available through other Federal agencies.

(3) United States obligations under the Arrangement on Guidelines for Officially Supported Export Credits established through the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development shall be applicable to this section.

(e) Solicitations for project proposals

(1) Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, within one year after October 24, 1992, and subsequently as appropriate thereafter, shall solicit proposals from United States firms for the design, construction, testing, and operation of the project or projects identified under subsection (c) which propose to utilize a United States technology. Each solicitation under this section shall establish a closing date for receipt of proposals.

(2) The solicitation under this subsection shall, to the extent appropriate, be modeled after the RFP No. DE–PS01–90FE62271 Clean Coal Technology IV as administered by the Department of Energy.

(3) Any solicitation made under this subsection shall include the following requirements:

(A) The United States firm that submits a proposal in response to the solicitation shall have an equity interest in the proposed project.

(B) The project shall utilize a United States clean coal technology, including services related thereto, and, where appropriate, United States coal resources, in meeting the applicable energy and environmental requirements of the host country.

(C) Proposals for projects shall be submitted by and undertaken with a United States firm, although a joint venture or other teaming arrangement with a non-United States manufacturer or other non-United States entity is permissible.

(f) Assistance to United States firms

Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and in consultation with the CCT Subgroup, shall establish a procedure to provide financial assistance to United States firms under this section for a project identified under subsection (c) where solicitations for the project are being conducted by the host country or by a multilateral lending institution.

(g) Other program requirements

Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and in consultation with the CCT Subgroup, shall—

(1) establish eligibility criteria for countries that will host projects;

(2) periodically review the energy needs of such countries and export opportunities for United States firms for the development of projects in such countries;

(3) consult with government officials in host countries and, as appropriate, with representatives of utilities or other entities in host countries, to determine interest in and support for potential projects; and

(4) determine whether each project selected under this section is developmentally sound, as determined under the criteria developed by the Development Assistance Committee of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development.

(h) Selection of projects

(1) Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, shall, not later than 120 days after receipt of proposals in response to a solicitation under subsection (e), select one or more proposals under this section.

(2) In selecting a proposal under this section, the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, shall consider—

(A) the ability of the United States firm, in cooperation with the host country, to undertake and complete the project;

(B) the degree to which the equipment to be included in the project is designed and manufactured in the United States;

(C) the long-term technical and competitive viability of the United States technology, and services related thereto, and the ability of the United States firm to compete in the development of additional energy projects using such technology in the host country and in other foreign countries;

(D) the extent of technical and financial involvement of the host country in the project;

(E) the extent to which the proposed project meets the goals and objectives stated in section 13331(a) of this title;

(F) the extent of technical, financial, management, and marketing capabilities of the participants in the project, and the commitment of the participants to completion of a successful project in a manner that will facilitate acceptance of the United States technology for future application; and

(G) such other criteria as may be appropriate.

(3) In selecting among proposed projects, the Secretary shall seek to ensure that, relative to otherwise comparable projects in the host country, a selected project will meet 1 or more of the

following criteria:

(A) It will reduce environmental emissions to an extent greater than required by applicable provisions of law.

(B) It will increase the overall efficiency of the utilization of coal, including energy conversion efficiency and, where applicable, production of products derived from coal.

(C) It will be a more cost-effective technological alternative, based on life cycle capital and operating costs per unit of energy produced and, where applicable, costs per unit of product produced.

Priority in selection shall be given to those projects which, in the judgment of the Secretary, best meet one or more of these criteria.

(i) United States-Asia Environmental Partnership

Activities carried out under this section shall be coordinated with the United States-Asia Environmental Partnership.

(j) Buy America

In carrying out this section, the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), shall ensure—

(1) the maximum percentage, but in no case less than 50 percent, of the cost of any equipment furnished in connection with a project authorized under this section shall be attributable to the manufactured United States components of such equipment; and

(2) the maximum participation of United States firms.

In determining whether the cost of United States components equals or exceeds 50 percent, the cost of assembly of such United States components in the host country shall not be considered a part of the cost of such United States component.

(k) Reports to Congress

The Secretary and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall report annually to the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate and the appropriate committees of the House of Representatives on the progress being made to introduce clean coal technologies into foreign countries.

(l) "Host country" defined

For purposes of this section, the term "host country" means a foreign country which is—

(1) the participant in or the site of the proposed clean coal technology project; and

(2) either—

(A) classified as a country eligible to participate in development assistance programs of the Agency for International Development pursuant to applicable law or regulation; or

(B) a developing country or country with an economy in transition from a nonmarket to a market economy.

(m) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out the program required by this section, $100,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1993, 1994, 1995, 1996, 1997, and 1998.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1332, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2979.)

§13363. Conventional coal technology transfer

If the Secretary determines that the utilization of a clean coal technology is not practicable for a proposed project and that a United States conventional coal technology would constitute a substantial improvement in efficiency, costs, and environmental performance relative to the technology being used in a developing country or country making the transition from nonmarket to market economies, with significant indigenous coal resources, such technology shall, for purposes of sections 13361 and

13362 [1] of this title, be considered a clean coal technology. In the case of combustion technologies, only the retrofit, repowering, or replacement of a conventional technology shall constitute a substantial improvement for purposes of this section. In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall give highest priority to promoting the most environmentally sound and energy efficient technologies.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1333, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2984.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 13361 and 13362 of this title, referred to in text, was in the original "sections 1321 and 1322" and was translated as reading "sections 1331 and 1332" meaning sections 1331 and 1332 of Pub. L. 102–486, to reflect the probable intent of Congress, because Pub. L. 102–486 does not contain a section 1322 and sections 1331 and 1332 of Pub. L. 102–486 relate to export of clean coal technology.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13364. Study of utilization of coal combustion byproducts

(a) "Coal combustion byproducts" defined

As used in this section, the term "coal combustion byproducts" means the residues from the combustion of coal including ash, slag, and flue gas desulfurization materials.

(b) Study and report to Congress

(1) The Secretary shall conduct a detailed and comprehensive study on the institutional, legal, and regulatory barriers to increased utilization of coal combustion byproducts by potential governmental and commercial users. Such study shall identify and investigate barriers found to exist at the Federal, State, or local level, which may have limited or may have the foreseeable effect of limiting the quantities of coal combustion byproducts that are utilized. In conducting this study, the Secretary shall consult with other departments and agencies of the Federal Government, appropriate State and local governments, and the private sector.

(2) Not later than one year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit a report to the Congress containing the results of the study required by paragraph (1) and the Secretary's recommendations for action to be taken to increase the utilization of coal combustion byproducts. At a minimum, such report shall identify actions that would increase the utilization of coal combustion byproducts in—

(A) bridge and highway construction;

(B) stabilizing wastes;

(C) procurement by departments and agencies of the Federal Government and State and local governments; and

(D) federally funded or federally subsidized procurement by the private sector.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1334, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2984.)

§13365. Coal fuel mixtures

Within one year following October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit a report to the Committee on Energy and Commerce and the Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate on the status of technologies for combining coal with other materials, such as oil or water fuel mixtures. The report shall include—

(1) a technical and economic feasibility assessment of such technologies;

(2) projected developments in such technologies;

(3) an assessment of the market potential of such technologies, including the potential to displace imported crude oil and refined petroleum products;

(4) identification of barriers to commercialization of such technologies; and

(5) recommendations for addressing barriers to commercialization.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1336, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2985.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104–14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress. Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives, and jurisdiction over matters relating to securities and exchanges and insurance generally transferred to Committee on Financial Services of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 5, One Hundred Seventh Congress, Jan. 3, 2001.

§13366. National clearinghouse

(a) Feasibility

(1) The Secretary shall assess the feasibility of establishing a national clearinghouse for the exchange and dissemination of technical information on technology relating to coal and coal-derived fuels.

(2) In assessing the feasibility, the Secretary shall consider whether such a clearinghouse would be appropriate for purposes of—

(A) collecting information and data on technology relating to coal, and coal-derived fuels, which can be utilized to improve environmental quality and increase energy independence;

(B) disseminating to appropriate individuals, governmental departments, agencies, and instrumentalities, institutions of higher education, and other entities, information and data collected pursuant to this section;

(C) maintaining a library of technology publications and treatises relating to technology information and data collected pursuant to this section;

(D) organizing and conducting seminars for government officials, utilities, coal companies, and other entities or institutions relating to technology using coal and coal-derived fuels that will improve environmental quality and increase energy independence;

(E) gathering information on research grants made for the purpose of improving or enhancing technology relating to the use of coal, and coal-derived fuels, which will improve environmental quality and increase energy independence;

(F) translating into English foreign research papers, articles, seminar proceedings, test results that affect, or could affect, clean coal use technology, and other documents;

(G) encouraging, during the testing of technologies, the use of coal from a variety of domestic sources, and collecting or developing, or both, complete listings of test results using coals from all sources;

(H) establishing and maintaining an index or compilation of research projects relating to clean coal technology carried out throughout the world; and

(I) conducting economic modeling for feasibility of projects.

(b) Authority to establish clearinghouse

Based upon the assessment under subsection (a), the Secretary may establish a clearinghouse.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1337, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2985.)

§13367. Coal exports

(a) Plan

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary of Commerce, in cooperation with the Secretary and other appropriate Federal agencies, shall submit to the appropriate committees of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate a plan for expanding exports of coal mined in the United States.

(b) Plan contents

The plan submitted under subsection (a) shall include—

(1) a description of the location, size, and projected growth in potential export markets for coal mined in the United States;

(2) the identification by country of the foreign trade barriers to the export of coal mined in the United States, including foreign coal production and utilization subsidies, tax treatment, labor practices, tariffs, quotas, and other nontariff barriers;

(3) recommendations and a plan for addressing any such trade barriers;

(4) an evaluation of existing infrastructure in the United States and any new infrastructure requirements in the United States to support an expansion of exports of coal mined in the United States, including ports, vessels, rail lines, and any other supporting infrastructure; and

(5) an assessment of environmental implications of coal exports and the identification of export opportunities for blending coal mined in the United States with coal indigenous to other countries to enhance energy efficiency and environmental performance.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1338, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2986.)

§13368. Ownership of coalbed methane

(a) Federal lands and mineral rights

In the case of any deposit of coalbed methane where the United States is the owner of the surface estate or where the United States has transferred the surface estate but reserved the subsurface mineral estate, the Secretary of the Interior shall administer this section. This section and the definitions contained herein shall be applicable only on lands within Affected States.

(b) Affected States

Not later than 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary of the Interior, with the participation of the Secretary of Energy, shall publish in the Federal Register a list of Affected States which shall be comprised of States—

(1) in which the Secretary of the Interior, with the participation of the Secretary of Energy, determines that disputes, uncertainty, or litigation exist, regarding the ownership of coalbed methane gas;

(2) in which the Secretary of the Interior, with the participation of the Secretary of Energy, determines that development of significant deposits of coalbed methane gas is being impeded by such existing disputes, uncertainty, or litigation regarding ownership of such coalbed methane;

(3) which do not have in effect a statutory or regulatory procedure or existing case law permitting and encouraging the development of coalbed methane gas within that State; and

(4) which do not have extensive development of coalbed methane gas.

The Secretary of the Interior, with the participation of the Secretary of Energy, shall revise such list of Affected States from time to time. Any Affected State shall be deleted from the list of Affected States upon the receipt by the Secretary of the Interior of a Governor's petition requesting such deletion, a State law requesting such deletion, or a resolution requesting such deletion enacted by the legislative body of the State. A Governor intending to petition the Secretary of the Interior to delete a State from the list of Affected States shall provide the State's legislative body with 6 months notice of such petition during a legislative session. At the end of such 6-month period, the Governor may petition the Secretary of the Interior to delete a State from the list of Affected States, unless during such 6-month period, the State's legislative body has enacted a law or resolution disapproving the Governor's petition. Until the Secretary of the Interior, with the participation of the Secretary of Energy, publishes a different list, the States of West Virginia, Pennsylvania, Kentucky, Ohio, Tennessee, Indiana, and Illinois shall be the Affected States, effective on October 24, 1992. The

States of Colorado, Montana, New Mexico, Wyoming, Utah, Virginia, Washington, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Alabama shall not be included on the Secretary of the Interior's list of Affected States or any extension or revision thereof.

(c) Failure to adopt statutory or regulatory procedure

If an Affected State has not placed in effect, by statute or by regulation, a substantial program promoting the permitting, drilling and production of coalbed methane wells (including pooling arrangements) within that State within 3 years after becoming an Affected State, the Secretary of the Interior, with the participation of the Secretary of Energy, shall administer this section and shall promulgate such regulations as are necessary to carry out this section in that State.

(d) Implementation by Secretary of the Interior

In implementing this section, the Secretary of the Interior, with the participation of the Secretary of Energy, shall—

(A) consider existing and future coal mining plans,

(B) preserve the mineability of coal seams, and

(C) provide for the prevention of waste and maximization of recovery of coal and coalbed methane gas in a manner which will protect the rights of all entities owning an interest in such coalbed methane resource.

(e) Spacing

Except where State law in an Affected State contains existing spacing requirements regarding the minimum distance between coalbed methane wells and the minimum distance of a coalbed methane well from a property line, the Secretary of the Interior shall establish such requirements within 90 days after the assertion of jurisdiction pursuant to subsection (c) of this section.

(f) Spacing units

Applications to establish spacing units for the drilling and operation of coalbed methane gas wells may be filed by any entity claiming a coalbed methane ownership interest within a proposed spacing unit. Upon receipt and approval of an application, the Secretary of the Interior shall issue an order establishing the boundaries of the coalbed methane spacing unit. Spacing units shall generally be uniform in size.

(g) Development under pooling arrangement

Following issuance of an order establishing a spacing unit under subsection (f), and pursuant to an application for pooling filed by the entity claiming a coalbed methane ownership interest and proposing to drill a coalbed methane gas well, the Secretary of the Interior shall hold a hearing to consider the application for pooling and shall, if the criteria of this section are met, issue an order allowing the proposed pooling of acreage within the designated spacing unit for purposes of drilling and production of coalbed methane from the spacing unit. The pooling order shall not be issued before notice or a reasonable and diligent effort to provide notice has been made to each entity which may claim an ownership interest in the coalbed methane gas within such spacing unit and each such entity has been offered an opportunity to appear before the Secretary of the Interior at the hearing. Upon issuance of a pooling order, each owner or claimant of an ownership interest shall be allowed to make one of the following elections:

(1) An election to sell or lease its coalbed methane ownership interest to the unit operator at a rate determined by the Secretary of the Interior as set forth in the pooling order.

(2) An election to become a participating working interest owner by bearing a share of the risks and costs of drilling, completing, equipping, gathering, operating (including all disposal costs), plugging and abandoning the well, and receiving a share of production from the well.

(3) An election to share in the operation of the well as a nonparticipating working interest owner by relinquishing its working interest to participating working interest owners until the proceeds allocable to its share equal 300 percent of the share of such costs allocable to its interest. Thereafter, the nonparticipating working interest owner shall become a participating working interest owner.

The pooling order shall designate a unit operator who shall be authorized to drill and operate the spacing unit. The pooling order shall provide that any entity claiming an ownership interest in the coalbed methane within such spacing unit which does not make an election under the pooling order shall be deemed to have leased its coalbed methane interest to the unit operator under such terms and conditions as the pooling order may provide. No pooling order may be issued under this paragraph for any spacing unit if all entities claiming an ownership interest in the coalbed methane in the spacing unit have entered into a voluntary agreement providing for the drilling and operation of the coalbed methane gas well for the spacing unit.

(h) Escrow account

(1) Each pooling order issued under subsection (g) shall provide for the establishment of an escrow account into which the payment of costs and proceeds attributable to the conflicting interests shall be deposited and held for the interest of the claimants as follows:

(A) Each participating working interest owner, except for the unit operator, shall deposit in the escrow account its proportionate share of the costs allocable to the ownership interest claimed by each such participating working interest owner as set forth in the pooling order issued by the Secretary of the Interior.

(B) The unit operator shall deposit in the escrow account all proceeds attributable to the conflicting interests of lessees, plus all proceeds in excess of ongoing operational expenses (including reasonable overhead costs) attributable to conflicting working interests.

(2) The Secretary of the Interior shall order payment of principal and accrued interest from the escrow account to all legally entitled entities within 30 days of receipt by the Secretary of the Interior of notification of the final legal determination of entitlement or upon agreement of all entities claiming an ownership interest in the coalbed methane gas. Upon such final determination—

(A) each legally entitled participating working interest owner shall receive a proportionate share of the proceeds attributable to the conflicting ownership interest;

(B) each legally entitled nonparticipating working interest owner shall receive a proportionate share of the proceeds attributable to the conflicting ownership interest, less the cost of being carried as a nonparticipating working interest owner (as determined by the election of the entity under the applicable pooling order);

(C) each entity leasing (or deemed to have leased) its coalbed methane ownership interest to the unit operator shall receive a share of the royalty proceeds (as set out in the applicable pooling order) attributable to the conflicting interests of lessees; and

(D) the unit operator shall receive the costs contributed to the escrow account by each legally entitled participating working interest owner.

The Secretary of the Interior shall enact rules and regulations for the administration and protection of funds delivered to the escrow accounts.

(i) Approval of Secretary of the Interior

No entity may drill any well for the production of coalbed methane gas from a coal seam, subject to the provisions of subsection (g), in an Affected State unless the drilling of such well has been approved by the Secretary of the Interior.

(j) Authorization to stimulate coal seam

(1) No operator of a coalbed methane well may stimulate a coal seam without the written consent of each entity which, at the time that the coalbed methane operator applies for a drilling permit, is operating a coal mine, or has by virtue of his property rights in the coal the ability to operate a coal mine, located within a horizontal or vertical distance from the point of stimulation as established by the Secretary of the Interior pursuant to paragraph (3) of this subsection. In seeking the coal

operator's consent, a coalbed methane well operator shall provide the coal operator with necessary information about such stimulation, including relevant information to ensure compliance with coal mine safety laws and rules.

(2) In the absence of a written consent pursuant to paragraph (1) and at the request of a coalbed methane operator, the Secretary of the Interior shall make a determination regarding stimulation of a coal seam. Such request shall include an affidavit which shall—

(A) state that an entity from which consent is required pursuant to paragraph (1) has refused to provide written consent;

(B) set forth in detail the efforts undertaken by the applicant to obtain such written consent;

(C) state the known reasons for the consent not being provided;

(D) set forth the conditions and compensation, if any, offered by the applicant as part of the efforts to obtain consent; and

(E) provide prima facie evidence that the method of stimulation proposed by the coalbed methane operator will not (i) cause unreasonable loss or damage to the coal seam considering all factors, including the prospect, taking into consideration the economics of the coal industry, that coal seams for which no actual or proposed mining plans exist will be mined at some future date, or (ii) violate mine safety requirements. If a denial of consent by a coal operator is based on reasons related to safety, the Secretary of the Interior shall seek the views and recommendations of the appropriate State or Federal coal mine safety agency. Any determination by the Secretary of the Interior shall be in accordance with all applicable Federal and State coal mine safety laws and such views and recommendations. A determination by the Secretary of the Interior approving a method of stimulation may include reasonable conditions including, but not limited to, conditions to mitigate, to the extent practicable, economic damage to the coal seam. Any determination approving or denying a method of stimulation by the Secretary of the Interior shall be subject to appeal. Interested entities shall be allowed to participate in and comment on proceedings under this paragraph.

(3) The Secretary of the Interior shall by rule establish, for an Affected State, a region thereof, or a multi-State region comprised of Affected States, the boundaries within which a coalbed methane operator shall be required to obtain written consent from a coal operator pursuant to paragraph (1). Such boundaries shall be stated in terms of a horizontal and a vertical distance from the point of stimulation and shall be determined based on an evaluation of the maximum length, height and depth of fracture producible in a coal seam in such Affected State, region thereof, or multi-State region comprised of Affected States.

(4) The consent required under this subsection shall in no way be deemed to impair, abridge, or affect any contractual rights or objections arising out of a coalbed methane gas contract or coalbed methane gas lease in existence as of October 24, 1992,[1] between the coalbed methane operator and the coal operator, and the existence of such lease or contractual agreement and any extensions or renewals of such lease shall be deemed to fully meet the requirements of this section.

(5) Nothing in this subsection precludes either a coal operator or a coalbed methane operator from seeking in the appropriate State forum compensation for the consequences of a determination by the Secretary of the Interior pursuant to paragraph (2).

(k) Notice and objection

(1) The Secretary of the Interior shall not approve the drilling of any coalbed methane well unless the unit operator has notified each entity which is operating, or has the ability, by virtue of his property rights in the coal, to operate, a coal mine in any portion of the coalbed that would be affected by such well within the distances established pursuant to the rules promulgated under subsection (j)(3). Any notified entity may object to the drilling of such well within 30 days after receipt of a notice. Upon receipt of a timely objection to the drilling of any coalbed methane gas well submitted by a notified entity, the Secretary of the Interior may refuse to approve the drilling of the well based on any of the following:

(A) The proposed activity, due to its proximity to any coal mine opening, shaft, underground

workings, or to any proposed extension of the coal mine, would adversely affect any operating, inactive or abandoned coal mine, including any coal mine already surveyed and platted but not yet being operated.

(B) The proposed activity would not conform with a coal operator's development plan for an existing or proposed operation.

(C) There would be an unreasonable interference from the proposed activity with present or future coal mining operations, including the ability to comply with other applicable laws and regulations.

(D) The presence of evidence indicating that the proposed drilling activities would be unsafe, taking into consideration the dangers from creeps, squeezes or other disturbances due to the extraction of coal.

(E) The proposed activity would unreasonably interfere with the safe recovery of coal, oil and gas.

(2) In the event the Secretary of the Interior does not approve the drilling of a coalbed methane well pursuant to paragraph (1), the Secretary of the Interior shall consider whether such drilling could be approved if the unit operator modifies the proposed activities to take into account any of the following:

(A) The proposed activity could instead be reasonably done through an existing or planned pillar of coal, or in close proximity to an existing well or such pillar of coal, taking into consideration surface topography.

(B) The proposed activity could instead be moved to a mined-out area, below the coal outcrop or to some other feasible area.

(C) The unit operator agrees to a drilling moratorium of not more than two years in order to permit completion of coal mining operations.

(D) The practicality of locating the proposed spacing unit or well on a uniform pattern with other spacing units or wells.

(l) Plugging

All coalbed methane wells drilled after October 24, 1992, that penetrate coal seams with remaining reserves shall provide for subsequent safe mining through the well in accordance with standards prescribed by the Secretary of the Interior, in consultation with any Federal and State agencies having authority over coal mine safety. Well plugging costs should be allocated in accordance with State law or private contractual arrangement, as the case may be.

(m) Notice and objection by other parties

The Secretary of the Interior shall not approve the drilling of any coalbed methane well unless such well complies with the spacing and other requirements established by the Secretary of the Interior and each of the following:

(1) The unit operator of such well has notified, or has made a reasonable and diligent effort to notify, all entities claiming ownership of coalbed methane to be drained by such well and provided an opportunity to object in accordance with requirements established by the Secretary of the Interior.

(2) Where conflicting interests exist, an order under subsection (g) establishing pooling requirements has been issued.

The notification requirements of this subsection shall be additional to the notification referred to in subsection (k). The Secretary of the Interior shall establish the conditions under which entities claiming ownership of coalbed methane may object to the drilling of a coalbed methane well.

(n) Venting for safety

Nothing in this section shall be construed to prevent or inhibit the entity which has the right to develop and mine coal in any mine from venting coalbed methane gas to ensure safe mine operations.

(o) Other laws

The Secretary of the Interior shall comply with all applicable Federal and State coal mine safety laws and regulations.

(p) Definitions

As used in this section—

(1) The term "Affected State" means a State listed by the Secretary of the Interior, with the participation of the Secretary of Energy, under subsection (b).

(2) The term "coalbed methane gas" means occluded natural gas produced (or which may be produced) from coalbeds and rock strata associated therewith.

(3) The term "unit operator" means the entity designated in a pooling order to develop a spacing unit by the drilling of one or more wells on the unit.

(4) The term "nonparticipating working interest owner" means a gas or oil owner of a tract included in a spacing unit which elects to share in the operation of the well on a carried basis by agreeing to have its proportionate share of the costs allocable to its interest charged against its share of production of the well in accordance with subsection (f)(3).

(5) The term "participating working interest owner" means a gas or oil owner which elects to bear a share of the risks and costs of drilling, completing, equipping, gathering, operating (including any and all disposal costs) [2] plugging, and abandoning a well on a spacing unit and to receive a share of production from the well equal to the proportion which the acreage in the spacing unit it owns or holds under lease bears to the total acreage of the spacing unit.

(6) The term "coal seam" means any stratum of coal 20 inches or more in thickness, unless a stratum of less thickness is being commercially worked, or can in the judgment of the Secretary of the Interior forseeably [3] be commercially worked and will require protection if wells are being drilled through it.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1339, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2986.)

CODIFICATION

October 24, 1992, referred to in subsec. (j)(4), was in the original "the effective date of this section", which was translated as meaning the date of enactment of Pub. L. 102–486, which enacted this section.

FEDERAL COALBED METHANE REGULATION

Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §387, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 744, provided that: "Any State currently on the list of Affected States established under section 1339(b) of the Energy Policy Act of 1992 (42 U.S.C. 13368(b)) shall be removed from the list if, not later than 3 years after the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 8, 2005], the State takes, or prior to the date of enactment has taken, any of the actions required for removal from the list under such section 1339(b)."

[1] See Codification note below.

[2] So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.

[3] So in original. Probably should be "foreseeably".

§13369. Establishment of data base and study of transportation rates

(a) Data base

The Secretary shall review the information currently collected by the Federal Government and shall determine whether information on transportation rates for rail and pipeline transport of domestic coal, oil, and gas during the period of January 1, 1988, through December 31, 1997, is reasonably available. If he determines that such information is not reasonably available, the Secretary shall establish a data base containing, to the maximum extent practicable, information on all such rates. The confidentiality of contract rates shall be preserved. To obtain data pertaining to

rail contract rates, the Secretary shall acquire such data in aggregate form only from the Surface Transportation Board, under terms and conditions that maintain the confidentiality of such rates.

(b) Study

The Energy Information Administration shall determine the extent to which any agency of the Federal Government is studying the rates and distribution patterns of domestic coal, oil, and gas to determine the impact of the Clean Air Act [42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.] as amended by the Act entitled "An Act to amend the Clean Air Act to provide for attainment and maintenance of health protective national ambient air quality standards, and for other purposes.", enacted November 15, 1990 (Public Law 101–549), and other Federal policies on such rates and distribution patterns. If the Energy Information Administration finds that no such study is underway, or that reports of the results of such study will not be available to the Congress providing the information specified in this subsection and subsection (a) by the dates established in subsection (c), the Energy Information Administration shall initiate such a study.

(c) Reports to Congress

Within one year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall report to the Congress on the determination the Energy Information Administration is required to make under subsection (b). Within three years after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit reports on any data base or study developed under this section. Any such reports shall be updated and resubmitted to the Congress within eight years after October 24, 1992. If the Energy Information Administration has determined pursuant to subsection (b) that another study or studies will provide all or part of the information called for in this section, the Secretary shall transmit the results of that study by the dates established in this subsection, together with his comments.

(d) Consultation with other agencies

The Secretary and the Energy Information Administration shall consult with the Chairmen of the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission and the Surface Transportation Board in implementing this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1340, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2992; Pub. L. 104–88, title III, §320, Dec. 29, 1995, 109 Stat. 949.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Clean Air Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, 69 Stat. 322, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 85 (§7401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

An Act to amend the Clean Air Act to provide for attainment and maintenance of health protective national ambient air quality standards, and for other purposes, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 101–549, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2399, popularly known as the Clean Air Act Amendments of 1990. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1990 Amendment note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsecs. (a), (d). Pub. L. 104–88 substituted "Surface Transportation Board" for "Interstate Commerce Commission".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–88 effective Jan. 1, 1996, see section 2 of Pub. L. 104–88, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1301 of Title 49, Transportation.

§13370. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this part, other than section 13362 [1] of this title, such sums as may be necessary for fiscal years 1993 through 1998.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XIII, §1341, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2993.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 13362 of this title, referred to in text, was in the original "section 1322" and was translated as reading "section 1332" meaning section 1332 of Pub. L. 102–486, to reflect the probable intent of Congress, because Pub. L. 102–486 does not contain a section 1322.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

SUBCHAPTER VII—GLOBAL CLIMATE CHANGE

§13381. Report

Not later than 2 years after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit a report to the Congress that includes an assessment of—

(1) the feasibility and economic, energy, social, environmental, and competitive implications, including implications for jobs, of stabilizing the generation of greenhouse gases in the United States by the year 2005;

(2) the recommendations made in chapter 9 of the 1991 National Academy of Sciences report entitled "Policy Implications of Greenhouse Warming", including an analysis of the benefits and costs of each recommendation;

(3) the extent to which the United States is responding, compared with other countries, to the recommendations made in chapter 9 of the 1991 National Academy of Sciences report;

(4) the feasibility of reducing the generation of greenhouse gases;

(5) the feasibility and economic, energy, social, environmental, and competitive implications, including implications for jobs, of achieving a 20 percent reduction from 1988 levels in the generation of carbon dioxide by the year 2005 as recommended by the 1988 Toronto Scientific World Conference on the Changing Atmosphere;

(6) the potential economic, energy, social, environmental, and competitive implications, including implications for jobs, of implementing the policies necessary to enable the United States to comply with any obligations under the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change or subsequent international agreements.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XVI, §1601, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2999.)

§13382. Least-cost energy strategy

(a) Strategy

The first National Energy Policy Plan (in this subchapter referred to as the "Plan") under section 7321 of this title prepared and required to be submitted by the President to Congress after February 1, 1993, and each subsequent such Plan, shall include a least-cost energy strategy prepared by the Secretary. In developing the least-cost energy strategy, the Secretary shall take into consideration the economic, energy, social, environmental, and competitive costs and benefits, including costs and benefits for jobs, of his choices. Such strategy shall also take into account the report required under section 13381 of this title and relevant Federal, State, and local requirements. Such strategy shall be designed to achieve to the maximum extent practicable and at least-cost to the Nation—

(1) the energy production, utilization, and energy conservation priorities of subsection (d);

(2) the stabilization and eventual reduction in the generation of greenhouse gases;

(3) an increase in the efficiency of the Nation's total energy use by 30 percent over 1988 levels by the year 2010;

(4) an increase in the percentage of energy derived from renewable resources by 75 percent over 1988 levels by the year 2005; and

(5) a reduction in the Nation's oil consumption from the 1990 level of approximately 40 percent

of total energy use to 35 percent by the year 2005.

(b) Additional contents

The least-cost energy strategy shall also include—

(1) a comprehensive inventory of available energy and energy efficiency resources and their projected costs, taking into account all costs of production, transportation, distribution, and utilization of such resources, including—

(A) coal, clean coal technologies, coal seam methane, and underground coal gasification;

(B) energy efficiency, including existing technologies for increased efficiency in production, transportation, distribution, and utilization of energy, and other technologies that are anticipated to be available through further research and development; and

(C) other energy resources, such as renewable energy, solar energy, nuclear fission, fusion, geothermal, biomass, fuel cells, hydropower, and natural gas;

(2) a proposed two-year program for ensuring adequate supplies of the energy and energy efficiency resources and technologies described in paragraph (1), and an identification of administrative actions that can be undertaken within existing Federal authority to ensure their adequate supply;

(3) estimates of life-cycle costs for existing energy production facilities;

(4) basecase forecasts of short-term and long-term national energy needs under low and high case assumptions of economic growth; and

(5) an identification of all applicable Federal authorities needed to achieve the purposes of this section, and of any inadequacies in those authorities.

(c) Secretarial consideration

In developing the least-cost energy strategy, the Secretary shall give full consideration to—

(1) the relative costs of each energy and energy efficiency resource based upon a comparison of all direct and quantifiable net costs for the resource over its available life, including the cost of production, transportation, distribution, utilization, waste management, environmental compliance, and, in the case of imported energy resources, maintaining access to foreign sources of supply; and

(2) the economic, energy, social, environmental, and competitive consequences resulting from the establishment of any particular order of Federal priority as determined under subsection (d).

(d) Priorities

The least-cost energy strategy shall identify Federal priorities, including policies that—

(1) implement standards for more efficient use of fossil fuels;

(2) increase the energy efficiency of existing technologies;

(3) encourage technologies, including clean coal technologies, that generate lower levels of greenhouse gases;

(4) promote the use of renewable energy resources, including solar, geothermal, sustainable biomass, hydropower, and wind power;

(5) affect the development and consumption of energy and energy efficiency resources and electricity through tax policy;

(6) encourage investment in energy efficient equipment and technologies; and

(7) encourage the development of energy technologies, such as advanced nuclear fission and nuclear fusion, that produce energy without greenhouse gases as a byproduct, and encourage the deployment of nuclear electric generating capacity.

(e) Assumptions

The Secretary shall include in the least-cost energy strategy an identification of all of the assumptions used in developing the strategy and priorities thereunder, and the reasons for such assumptions.

(f) Preference

When comparing an energy efficiency resource to an energy resource, a higher priority shall be

assigned to the energy efficiency resource whenever all direct and quantifiable net costs for the resource over its available life are equal to the estimated cost of the energy resource.

(g) Public review and comment

The Secretary shall provide for a period of public review and comment of the least-cost energy strategy, for a period of at least 30 days, to be completed at least 60 days before the issuance of such strategy. The Secretary shall also provide for public review and comment before the issuance of any update to the least-cost energy strategy required under this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XVI, §1602, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2999.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this title" meaning title XVI of Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2999, which enacted this subchapter and repealed sections 7361 to 7364 of this title.

§13383. Director of Climate Protection

Within 6 months after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall establish, within the Department of Energy, a Director of Climate Protection (in this section referred to as the "Director"). The Director shall—

(1) in the absence of the Secretary, serve as the Secretary's representative for interagency and multilateral policy discussions of global climate change, including the activities of the Committee on Earth and Environmental Sciences as established by the Global Change Research Act of 1990 (Public Law 101–606) [15 U.S.C. 2921 et seq.] and the Policy Coordinating Committee Working Group on Climate Change;

(2) monitor, in cooperation with other Federal agencies, domestic and international policies for their effects on the generation of greenhouse gases; and

(3) have the authority to participate in the planning activities of relevant Department of Energy programs.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XVI, §1603, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3001.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Global Change Research Act of 1990, referred to in par. (1), is Pub. L. 101–606, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3096, which is classified generally to chapter 56A (§2921 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2921 of Title 15 and Tables.

§13384. Assessment of alternative policy mechanisms for addressing greenhouse gas emissions

Not later than 18 months after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall transmit a report to Congress containing a comparative assessment of alternative policy mechanisms for reducing the generation of greenhouse gases. Such assessment shall include a short-run and long-run analysis of the social, economic, energy, environmental, competitive, and agricultural costs and benefits, including costs and benefits for jobs and competition, and the practicality of each of the following policy mechanisms:

(1) Various systems for controlling the generation of greenhouse gases, including caps for the generation of greenhouse gases from major sources and emissions trading programs.

(2) Federal standards for energy efficiency for major sources of greenhouse gases, including efficiency standards for power plants, industrial processes, automobile fuel economy, appliances, and buildings, and for emissions of methane.

(3) Various Federal and voluntary incentives programs.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XVI, §1604, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3002.)

§13385. National inventory and voluntary reporting of greenhouse gases

(a) National inventory

Not later than one year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary, through the Energy Information Administration, shall develop, based on data available to, and obtained by, the Energy Information Administration, an inventory of the national aggregate emissions of each greenhouse gas for each calendar year of the baseline period of 1987 through 1990. The Administrator of the Energy Information Administration shall annually update and analyze such inventory using available data. This subsection does not provide any new data collection authority.

(b) Voluntary reporting

(1) Issuance of guidelines

Not later than 18 months after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall, after opportunity for public comment, issue guidelines for the voluntary collection and reporting of information on sources of greenhouse gases. Such guidelines shall establish procedures for the accurate voluntary reporting of information on—

(A) greenhouse gas emissions—
(i) for the baseline period of 1987 through 1990; and
(ii) for subsequent calendar years on an annual basis;

(B) annual reductions of greenhouse gas emissions and carbon fixation achieved through any measures, including fuel switching, forest management practices, tree planting, use of renewable energy, manufacture or use of vehicles with reduced greenhouse gas emissions, appliance efficiency, energy efficiency, methane recovery, cogeneration, chlorofluorocarbon capture and replacement, and power plant heat rate improvement;

(C) reductions in greenhouse gas emissions achieved as a result of—
(i) voluntary reductions;
(ii) plant or facility closings; and
(iii) State or Federal requirements; and

(D) an aggregate calculation of greenhouse gas emissions by each reporting entity.

Such guidelines shall also establish procedures for taking into account the differential radiative activity and atmospheric lifetimes of each greenhouse gas.

(2) Reporting procedures

The Administrator of the Energy Information Administration shall develop forms for voluntary reporting under the guidelines established under paragraph (1), and shall make such forms available to entities wishing to report such information. Persons reporting under this subsection shall certify the accuracy of the information reported.

(3) Confidentiality

Trade secret and commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential shall be protected as provided in section 552(b)(4) of title 5.

(4) Establishment of data base

Not later than 18 months after October 24, 1992, the Secretary, through the Administrator of the Energy Information Administration, shall establish a data base comprised of information voluntarily reported under this subsection. Such information may be used by the reporting entity to demonstrate achieved reductions of greenhouse gases.

(c) Consultation

In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall consult, as appropriate, with the Administrator of

the Environmental Protection Agency.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XVI, §1605, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3002.)

§13386. Export of domestic energy resource technologies to developing countries

The Secretary, through the Trade Promotion Coordinating Council, shall develop policies and programs to encourage the export and promotion of domestic energy resource technologies, including renewable energy, energy efficiency, and clean coal technologies, to developing countries.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XVI, §1607, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3003.)

§13387. Innovative environmental technology transfer program

(a) Establishment of program

The Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and in consultation with the interagency working group established under section 6276(d) of this title (in this section referred to as the "interagency working group",[1] shall establish a technology transfer program to carry out the purposes described in subsection (b). Within 150 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall enter into a written agreement to carry out this section. The agreement shall establish a procedure for resolving any disputes between the Secretary and the Administrator regarding the implementation of specific projects. With respect to countries not assisted by the Agency for International Development, the Secretary may enter into agreements with other appropriate Federal agencies. If the Secretary and the Administrator, or the Secretary and an agency described in the previous sentence, are unable to reach an agreement, each shall send a memorandum to the President outlining an appropriate agreement. Within 90 days after receipt of either memorandum, the President shall determine which version of the agreement shall be in effect. Any agreement entered into under this subsection shall be provided to the appropriate committees of the Congress and made available to the public.

(b) Purposes of program

The purposes of the technology transfer program under this section are to—

(1) reduce the United States balance of trade deficit through the export of United States energy technologies and technological expertise;

(2) retain and create manufacturing and related service jobs in the United States;

(3) encourage the export of United States technologies, including services related thereto, to those countries that have a need for developmentally sound facilities to provide energy derived from technologies that substantially reduce environmental pollutants, including greenhouse gases;

(4) develop markets for United States technologies, including services related thereto, that substantially reduce environmental pollutants, including greenhouse gases, that meet the energy and environmental requirements of foreign countries;

(5) better ensure that United States participation in energy-related projects in foreign countries includes participation by United States firms as well as utilization of United States technologies;

(6) ensure the introduction of United States firms and expertise in foreign countries;

(7) provide financial assistance by the Federal Government to foster greater participation by United States firms in the financing, ownership, design, construction, or operation of technologies or services that substantially reduce environmental pollutants, including greenhouse gases; and

(8) assist United States firms, especially firms that are in competition with firms in foreign countries, to obtain opportunities to transfer technologies to, or undertake projects in, foreign countries.

(c) Identification

Pursuant to the agreements required by subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and after consultation with the interagency working group, United States

firms, and representatives from foreign countries, shall develop mechanisms to identify potential energy projects in host countries that substantially reduce environmental pollutants, including greenhouse gases, and shall identify a list of such projects within 240 days after October 24, 1992, and periodically thereafter.

(d) Financial mechanisms

(1) Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, shall—

(A) establish appropriate financial mechanisms to increase the participation of United States firms in energy projects, and services related thereto, that substantially reduce environmental pollutants, including greenhouse gases in foreign countries;

(B) utilize available financial assistance authorized by this section to counterbalance assistance provided by foreign governments to non-United States firms; and

(C) provide financial assistance to support projects.

(2) The financial assistance authorized by this section may be—

(A) provided in combination with other forms of financial assistance, including non-Federal funding that may be available for the project; and

(B) utilized in conjunction with financial assistance programs available through other Federal agencies.

(3) United States obligations under the Arrangement on Guidelines for Officially Supported Export Credits established through the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development shall be applicable to this section.

(e) Solicitations for project proposals

(1) Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, within one year after October 24, 1992, and subsequently as appropriate thereafter, shall solicit proposals from United States firms for the design, construction, testing, and operation of the project or projects identified under subsection (c) which propose to utilize a United States technology or service. Each solicitation under this section shall establish a closing date for receipt of proposals.

(2) The solicitation under this subsection shall, to the extent appropriate, be modeled after the RFP No. DE–PS01–90FE62271 Clean Coal Technology IV, as administered by the Department of Energy.

(3) Any solicitation made under this subsection shall include the following requirements:

(A) The United States firm that submits a proposal in response to the solicitation shall have an equity interest in the proposed project.

(B) The project shall utilize a United States technology, including services related thereto, that substantially reduce environmental pollutants, including greenhouse gases, in meeting the applicable energy and environmental requirements of the host country.

(C) Proposals for projects shall be submitted by and undertaken with a United States firm, although a joint venture or other teaming arrangement with a non-United States manufacturer or other non-United States entity is permissible.

(f) Assistance to United States firms

Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and in consultation with the interagency working group, shall establish a procedure to provide financial assistance to United States firms under this section for a project identified under subsection (c) where solicitations for the project are being conducted by the host country or by a multilateral lending institution.

(g) Other program requirements

Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and in consultation with the interagency working group, shall—

(1) establish eligibility criteria for countries that will host projects;

(2) periodically review the energy needs of such countries and export opportunities for United States firms for the development of projects in such countries;

(3) consult with government officials in host countries and, as appropriate, with representatives of utilities or other entities in host countries, to determine interest in and support for potential projects; and

(4) determine whether each project selected under this section is developmentally sound, as determined under the criteria developed by the Development Assistance Committee of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development.

(h) Eligible technologies

Not later than 6 months after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall prepare a list of eligible technologies and services under this section. In preparing such a list, the Secretary shall consider fuel cell powerplants, aeroderivitive gas turbines and catalytic combustion technologies for aeroderivitive gas turbines, ocean thermal energy conversion technology, anaerobic digester and storage tanks, and other renewable energy and energy efficiency technologies.

(i) Selection of projects

(1) Pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, shall, not later than 120 days after receipt of proposals in response to a solicitation under subsection (e), select one or more proposals under this section.

(2) In selecting a proposal under this section, the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, shall consider—

(A) the ability of the United States firm, in cooperation with the host country, to undertake and complete the project;

(B) the degree to which the equipment to be included in the project is designed and manufactured in the United States;

(C) the long-term technical and competitive viability of the United States technology, and services related thereto, and the ability of the United States firm to compete in the development of additional energy projects using such technology in the host country and in other foreign countries;

(D) the extent of technical and financial involvement of the host country in the project;

(E) the extent to which the proposed project meets the purposes of this section;

(F) the extent of technical, financial, management, and marketing capabilities of the participants in the project, and the commitment of the participants to completion of a successful project in a manner that will facilitate acceptance of the United States technology or service for future application; and

(G) such other criteria as may be appropriate.

(3) In selecting among proposed projects, the Secretary shall seek to ensure that, relative to otherwise comparable projects in the host country, a selected project will meet the following criteria:

(A) It will reduce environmental emissions, including greenhouse gases, to an extent greater than required by applicable provisions of law.

(B) It will be a more cost-effective technological alternative, based on life cycle capital and operating costs per unit of energy produced and, where applicable, costs per unit of product produced.

(C) It will increase the overall efficiency of energy use.

Priority in selection shall be given to those projects which, in the judgment of the Secretary, best meet these criteria.

(j) United States-Asia Environmental Partnership

Activities carried out under this section shall be coordinated with the United States-Asia Environmental Partnership.

(k) Buy America

In carrying out this section, the Secretary, through the Agency for International Development, and pursuant to the agreements under subsection (a), shall ensure—

(1) the maximum percentage, but in no case less than 50 percent, of the cost of any equipment furnished in connection with a project authorized under this section shall be attributable to the manufactured United States components of such equipment; and

(2) the maximum participation of United States firms.

In determining whether the cost of United States components equals or exceeds 50 percent, the cost of assembly of such United States components in the host country shall not be considered a part of the cost of such United States component.

(l) Report to Congress

The Secretary and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall report annually to the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate and the appropriate committees of the House of Representatives on the progress being made to introduce innovative energy technologies, and services related thereto, that substantially reduce environmental pollutants, including greenhouse gases, into foreign countries.

(m) Definitions

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term "host country" means a foreign country which is—

(A) the participant in or the site of the proposed innovative energy technology project; and

(B) either—

(i) classified as a country eligible to participate in development assistance programs of the Agency for International Development pursuant to applicable law or regulation; or

(ii) a developing country; and

(2) the term "developing country" includes, but is not limited to, countries in Central and Eastern Europe or in the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

(n) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out the program required by this section, $100,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1993, 1994, 1995, 1996, 1997, and 1998.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XVI, §1608, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3003.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be preceded by a closing parenthesis.*

§13388. Global Climate Change Response Fund

(a) Establishment of Fund

The Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with the Secretary of State, shall establish a Global Climate Change Response Fund to act as a mechanism for United States contributions to assist global efforts in mitigating and adapting to global climate change.

(b) Restrictions on deposits

No deposits shall be made to the Global Climate Change Response Fund until the United States has ratified the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change.

(c) Use of Fund

Moneys deposited into the Fund shall be used by the President, to the extent authorized and appropriated under section 2222 of title 22, solely for contributions to a financial mechanism negotiated pursuant to the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change, including all

protocols or agreements related thereto.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for deposit in the Fund to carry out the purposes of this section, $50,000,000 for fiscal year 1994 and such sums as may be necessary for fiscal years 1995 and 1996.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XVI, §1609, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3007.)

§13389. Greenhouse gas intensity reducing strategies

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Advisory Committee

The term "Advisory Committee" means the Climate Change Technology Advisory Committee established under subsection (f)(1).

(2) Carbon sequestration

The term "carbon sequestration" means the capture of carbon dioxide through terrestrial, geological, biological, or other means, which prevents the release of carbon dioxide into the atmosphere.

(3) Committee

The term "Committee" means the Committee on Climate Change Technology established under subsection (b)(1).

(4) Developing country

The term "developing country" has the meaning given the term in section 13387(m) of this title.

(5) Greenhouse gas

The term "greenhouse gas" means—

(A) carbon dioxide;
(B) methane;
(C) nitrous oxide;
(D) hydrofluorocarbons;
(E) perfluorocarbons; and
(F) sulfur hexafluoride.

(6) Greenhouse gas intensity

The term "greenhouse gas intensity" means the ratio of greenhouse gas emissions to economic output.

(7) National Laboratory

The term "National Laboratory" has the meaning given the term in section 15801(3) [1] of this title.

(b) Committee on Climate Change Technology

(1) In general

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, the President shall establish a Committee on Climate Change Technology to—

(A) integrate current Federal climate reports; and
(B) coordinate Federal climate change technology activities and programs carried out in furtherance of the strategy developed under subsection (c)(1).

(2) Membership

The Committee shall be composed of at least 7 members, including—

(A) the Secretary, who shall chair the Committee;
(B) the Secretary of Commerce;
(C) the Chairman of the Council on Environmental Quality;
(D) the Secretary of Agriculture;
(E) the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency;
(F) the Secretary of Transportation;
(G) the Director of the Office of Science and Technology Policy; and
(H) other representatives as may be determined by the President.

(3) Staff

The members of the Committee shall provide such personnel as are necessary to enable the Committee to perform its duties.

(c) National climate change technology policy

(1) In general

Not later than 18 months after August 8, 2005, the Committee shall, based on applicable Federal climate reports, submit to the Secretary and the President a national strategy to promote the deployment and commercialization of greenhouse gas intensity reducing technologies and practices developed through research and development programs conducted by the National Laboratories, other Federal research facilities, institutions of higher education, and the private sector.

(2) Updates

The Committee shall—

(A) at the time of submission of the strategy to the President under paragraph (1), also make the strategy available to the public; and

(B) update the strategy every 5 years, or more frequently as the Committee determines to be necessary.

(d) Climate Change Technology Program

Not later than 180 days after the date on which the Committee is established under subsection (b)(1), the Secretary, in consultation with the Committee, shall establish within the Department of Energy the Climate Change Technology Program to—

(1) assist the Committee in the interagency coordination of climate change technology research, development, demonstration, and deployment to reduce greenhouse gas intensity; and

(2) carry out the programs authorized under this section.

(e) Technology inventory

(1) In general

The Secretary shall conduct and make public an inventory and evaluation of greenhouse gas intensity reducing technologies that have been developed, or are under development, by the National Laboratories, other Federal research facilities, institutions of higher education, and the private sector to determine which technologies are suitable for commercialization and deployment.

(2) Report

Not later than 180 days after the completion of the inventory under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report that includes the results of the completed inventory and any recommendations of the Secretary.

(3) Use

The Secretary shall use the results of the inventory as guidance in the commercialization and deployment of greenhouse gas intensity reducing technologies.

(4) Updated inventory

The Secretary shall—

(A) periodically update the inventory under paragraph (1), including when determined

necessary by the Committee; and

(B) make the updated inventory available to the public.

(f) Climate Change Technology Advisory Committee

(1) In general

The Secretary, in consultation with the Committee, may establish under section 7234 of this title a Climate Change Technology Advisory Committee to identify statutory, regulatory, economic, and other barriers to the commercialization and deployment of greenhouse gas intensity reducing technologies and practices in the United States.

(2) Composition

The Advisory Committee shall be composed of the following members, to be appointed by the Secretary, in consultation with the Committee:

(A) 1 representative shall be appointed from each National Laboratory.

(B) 3 members shall be representatives of energy-producing trade organizations.

(C) 3 members shall represent energy-intensive trade organizations.

(D) 3 members shall represent groups that represent end-use energy and other consumers.

(E) 3 members shall be employees of the Federal Government who are experts in energy technology, intellectual property, and tax.

(F) 3 members shall be representatives of institutions of higher education with expertise in energy technology development that are recommended by the National Academy of Engineering.

(3) Report

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, and annually thereafter, the Advisory Committee shall submit to the Committee a report that describes—

(A) the findings of the Advisory Committee; and

(B) any recommendations of the Advisory Committee for the removal or reduction of barriers to commercialization, deployment, and increasing the use of greenhouse gas intensity reducing technologies and practices.

(g) Greenhouse gas intensity reducing technology deployment

(1) In general

Based on the strategy developed under subsection (c)(1), the technology inventory conducted under subsection (e)(1), the greenhouse gas intensity reducing technology study report submitted under subsection (e)(2), and reports under subsection (f)(3), if any, the Committee shall develop recommendations that would provide for the removal of domestic barriers to the commercialization and deployment of greenhouse gas intensity reducing technologies and practices.

(2) Requirements

In developing the recommendations under paragraph (1), the Committee shall consider in the aggregate—

(A) the cost-effectiveness of the technology;

(B) fiscal and regulatory barriers;

(C) statutory and other barriers; and

(D) intellectual property issues.

(3) Demonstration projects

In developing recommendations under paragraph (1), the Committee may identify the need for climate change technology demonstration projects.

(4) Report

Not later than 18 months after August 8, 2005, the Committee shall submit to the President and Congress a report that—

(A) identifies, based on the report submitted under subsection (f)(3), any barriers to, and commercial risks associated with, the deployment of greenhouse gas intensity reducing technologies; and

(B) includes a plan for carrying out demonstration projects.

(5) Updates

The Committee shall—

(A) at the time of submission of the report to Congress under paragraph (4), also make the report available to the public; and

(B) update the report every 5 years, or more frequently as the Committee determines to be necessary.

(h) Procedures for calculating, monitoring, and analyzing greenhouse gas intensity

The Secretary, in collaboration with the Committee and the National Institute of Standards and Technology, and after public notice and opportunity for comment, shall develop standards and best practices for calculating, monitoring, and analyzing greenhouse gas intensity.

(i) Demonstration projects

(1) In general

The Secretary shall, subject to the availability of appropriations, support demonstration projects that—

(A) increase the reduction of the greenhouse gas intensity to levels below that which would be achieved by technologies being used in the United States as of August 8, 2005;

(B) maximize the potential return on Federal investment;

(C) demonstrate distinct roles in public-private partnerships;

(D) produce a large-scale reduction of greenhouse gas intensity if commercialization occurred; and

(E) support a diversified portfolio to mitigate the uncertainty associated with a single technology.

(2) Cost sharing

In supporting a demonstration project under this subsection, the Secretary shall require cost-sharing in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(3) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this subsection.

(j) Cooperative research and development agreements

In carrying out greenhouse gas intensity reduction research and technology deployment activities under this subtitle,[2] the Secretary may enter into cooperative research and development agreements under section 3710a of title 15.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XVI, §1610, as added Pub. L. 109–58, title XVI, §1601, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1109.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 15801(3) of this title, referred to in subsec. (a)(7), was in the original "section 3(3) of the Energy Policy Act of 2005" and was translated as meaning section 2(3) of that Act to reflect the probable intent of Congress, because the Energy Policy Act of 2005 does not contain a section 3 and section 2(3) defines "National Laboratory".

This subtitle, referred to in subsec. (j), appearing in the original, is unidentifiable because title XVI of Pub. L. 102–486, of which this section is a part, does not contain subtitles.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

[2] *So in original. See References in Text note below.*

SUBCHAPTER VIII—REDUCTION OF OIL VULNERABILITY

§13401. Goals

It is the goal of the United States in carrying out energy supply and energy conservation research and development—

(1) to strengthen national energy security by reducing dependence on imported oil;

(2) to increase the efficiency of the economy by meeting future needs for energy services at the lowest total cost to the Nation, including environmental costs, giving comparable consideration to technologies that enhance energy supply and technologies that improve the efficiency of energy end uses;

(3) to reduce the air, water, and other environmental impacts (including emissions of greenhouse gases) of energy production, distribution, transportation, and utilization, through the development of an environmentally sustainable energy system;

(4) to maintain the technological competitiveness of the United States and stimulate economic growth through the development of advanced materials and technologies;

(5) to foster international cooperation by developing international markets for domestically produced sustainable energy technologies, and by transferring environmentally sound, advanced energy systems and technologies to developing countries to promote sustainable development;

(6) to consider the comparative environmental and public health impacts of the energy to be produced or saved by the specific activities;

(7) to consider the obstacles inherent in private industry's development of new energy technologies and steps necessary for establishing or maintaining technological leadership in the area of energy and energy efficiency resource technologies; and

(8) to consider the contribution of a given activity to fundamental scientific knowledge.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2001, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3057.)

PART A—OIL AND GAS SUPPLY ENHANCEMENT

§13411. Enhanced oil recovery

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall conduct a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, on technologies to increase the recoverability of domestic oil resources to—

(1) improve reservoir characterization;

(2) improve analysis and field verification;

(3) field test and demonstrate enhanced oil recovery processes, including advanced processes, in reservoirs the Secretary considers to be of high priority, ranked primarily on the basis of oil recovery potential and risk of abandonment;

(4) transfer proven recovery technologies to producers and operators of wells, including stripper wells, that would otherwise be likely to be abandoned in the near term due to declining production;

(5) improve enhanced oil recovery process technology for more economic and efficient oil production;

(6) identify and develop new recovery technologies;

(7) study reservoir properties and how they affect oil recovery from porous media;

(8) improve techniques for meeting environmental requirements;

(9) improve data bases of reservoir and environmental conditions; and

(10) lower lifting costs on stripper wells by utilizing advanced renewable energy technologies such as small wind turbines and others.

(b) Program goals

(1) Near-term priorities

The near-term priorities of the program include preserving access to high potential reservoirs, identifying available technologies that can extend the lifetime of wells and of stripper well property, and developing environmental field operations for waste disposal and injection practices.

(2) Mid-term priorities

The mid-term priorities of the program include developing and testing identified but unproven technologies, and transferring those technologies for widespread use.

(3) Long-term priorities

The long-term priorities of the program include developing advanced techniques to recover oil not recoverable by other techniques.

(c) Accelerated program plan

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall prepare and submit to the Congress a plan for carrying out under this section the accelerated field testing of technologies to achieve the priorities stated in subsection (b). In preparing the plan, the Secretary shall consult with appropriate representatives of industry, institutions of higher education, Federal agencies, including national laboratories, and professional and technical societies, and with the Advisory Board established under section 13522 of this title.

(d) Proposals

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for conducting activities under this section.

(e) Consultation

In carrying out the provisions of this section, the Secretary shall consult representatives of the oil and gas industry with respect to innovative research and development proposals to improve oil and gas recovery and shall consider relevant technical data from industry and other research and information centers and institutes.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section, including advanced extraction and process technology, $57,250,000 for fiscal year 1993 and $70,000,000 for fiscal year 1994.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2011, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3057.)

§13412. Oil shale

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall conduct a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, on oil shale extraction and conversion, including research and development on both eastern and western shales, as provided in this section.

(b) Program goals

The goals of the program established under this section include—

(1) supporting the development of economically competitive and environmentally acceptable technologies to produce domestic supplies of liquid fuels from oil shale;

(2) increasing knowledge of environmentally acceptable oil shale waste disposal technologies and practices;

(3) increasing knowledge of the chemistry and kinetics of oil shale retorting;

(4) increasing understanding of engineering issues concerning the design and scale-up of oil shale extraction and conversion technologies;

(5) improving techniques for oil shale mining systems; and

(6) providing for cooperation with universities and other private sector entities.

(c) Eastern oil shale program

(1) As part of the program authorized by this section, the Secretary shall carry out a program on oil shale that includes applied research, in cooperation with universities and the private sector, on eastern oil shale that may have the potential to decrease United States dependence on energy imports.

(2) As part of the program authorized by this subsection, the Secretary shall consider the potential benefits of including in that program applied research carried out in cooperation with universities and other private sector entities that are, as of October 24, 1992, engaged in research on eastern oil shale retorting and associated processes.

(3) The program carried out under this subsection shall be cost-shared with universities and the private sector to the maximum extent possible.

(d) Western oil shale program

As part of the program authorized by this section, the Secretary shall carry out a program on extracting oil from western oil shales that includes, if appropriate, establishment and utilization of at least one field testing center for the purpose of testing, evaluating, and developing improvements in oil shale technology at the field test level. In establishing such a center, the Secretary shall consider sites with existing oil shale mining and processing infrastructure and facilities. Sixty days prior to establishing any such field testing center, the Secretary shall submit a report to Congress on the center to be established.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section $5,250,000 for fiscal year 1993 and $6,000,000 for fiscal year 1994.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2012, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3058.)

§13413. Natural gas supply

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall conduct a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, to increase the recoverable natural gas resource base including, but not limited to—

(1) more intensive recovery of natural gas from discovered conventional resources;

(2) the extraction of natural gas from tight gas sands and devonian shales or other unconventional sources;

(3) surface gasification of coal; and

(4) recovery of methane from biofuels including municipal solid waste.

(b) Proposals

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for conducting activities under this section.

(c) Cofiring of natural gas and coal

(1) Program

The Secretary shall establish and carry out a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, on cofiring natural gas with coal in utility and large industrial boilers in order to determine optimal natural gas injection levels for both environmental and operational benefits.

(2) Financial assistance

The Secretary shall enter into agreements with, and provide financial assistance to, appropriate

parties for application of cofiring technologies to boilers to demonstrate this technology.

(3) Report to Congress

The Secretary shall, before December 31, 1995, submit to the Congress a report on the progress made in carrying out this subsection.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section and sections 13414 and 13415 of this title, $29,745,000 for fiscal year 1993 and $45,000,000 for fiscal year 1994.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2013, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3059.)

§13414. Natural gas end-use technologies

The Secretary shall carry out a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, on new and advanced natural gas utilization technologies including, but not limited to—

(1) stationary source emissions control and efficiency improvements including combustion systems, industrial processes, cogeneration, and waste fuels; and

(2) natural gas storage including increased deliverability from existing gas storage facilities and new capabilities for storage near demand centers, and on-site storage at major energy consuming facilities.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2014, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3060.)

§13415. Midcontinent Energy Research Center

(a) Finding

Congress finds that petroleum resources in the midcontinent region of the United States are very large but are being prematurely abandoned.

(b) Purposes

The purposes of this section are to—

(1) improve the efficiency of petroleum recovery;

(2) increase ultimate petroleum recovery; and

(3) delay the abandonment of resources.

(c) Establishment

The Secretary may establish the Midcontinent Energy Research Center (referred to in this section as the "Center") to—

(1) conduct research in petroleum geology and engineering focused on improving the recovery of petroleum from existing fields and established plays in the upper midcontinent region of the United States; and

(2) ensure that the results of the research described in paragraph (1) are transferred to users.

(d) Research

(1) In general

In conducting research under this section, the Center shall, to the extent practicable, cooperate with agencies of the Federal Government, the States in the midcontinent region of the United States, and the affected industry.

(2) Programs

Research programs conducted by the Center may include—

(A) data base development and transfer of technology;

(B) reservoir management;

(C) reservoir characterization;

(D) advanced recovery methods; and
(E) development of new technology.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2015, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3060.)

PART B—OIL AND GAS DEMAND REDUCTION AND SUBSTITUTION

§13431. General transportation

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall conduct a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, on cost effective technologies to reduce the demand for oil in the transportation sector for all motor vehicles, including existing vehicles, through increased energy efficiency and the use of alternative fuels. Such program shall include a broad range of technological approaches, and shall include field demonstrations of sufficient scale and number in operating environments to prove technical and economic viability to meet the goals stated in section 13401 of this title. Such program shall include the activities required under sections 13432 through 13437 of this title, and ongoing activities of a similar nature at the Department of Energy.

(b) Program plan

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall prepare and submit to the Congress a 5-year program plan to guide activities under this part. In preparing the program plan, the Secretary shall consult with appropriate representatives of industry, utilities, institutions of higher education, Federal agencies, including national laboratories, and professional and technical societies.

(c) Proposals

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for conducting activities under this section.

(d) "Alternative fuels" defined

For purposes of this part, the term "alternative fuels" includes natural gas, liquefied petroleum gas, hydrogen, fuels other than alcohol that are derived from biological materials, and any fuel the content of which is at least 85 percent by volume methanol, ethanol, or other alcohol.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

(1) There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this part, including all transportation sector energy conservation research and development (other than activities under section 13435 of this title) and all transportation sector biofuels energy systems under solar energy, $119,144,000 for fiscal year 1993 and $160,000,000 for fiscal year 1994.

(2) There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out section 13435 of this title—

(A) $60,300,000 for fiscal year 1993;
(B) $75,000,000 for fiscal year 1994;
(C) $80,000,000 for fiscal year 1995;
(D) $80,000,000 for fiscal year 1996;
(E) $90,000,000 for fiscal year 1997; and
(F) $100,000,000 for fiscal year 1998.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2021, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3061.)

§13432. Advanced automotive fuel economy

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall conduct a program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, to supplement ongoing research activities of a similar nature at the Department of Energy, to accelerate the near-term and mid-term development of advanced technologies to improve the fuel economy of light-duty passenger vehicles powered by a piston engine, and hybrid vehicles powered by a combination of piston engine and electric motor.

(b) Program goal

The goal of the program established under subsection (a) shall be to stimulate the development of emerging technologies with the potential to achieve significant improvements in fuel economy while reducing emissions of air pollutants.

(c) Proposals

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for conducting activities under this section, making a special effort to involve small businesses in the program.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2022, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3061.)

§13433. Alternative fuel vehicle program

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall carry out a program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, on techniques related to improving natural gas and other alternative fuel vehicle technology, including—

(1) fuel injection;
(2) carburetion;
(3) manifolding;
(4) combustion;
(5) power optimization;
(6) efficiency;
(7) lubricants and detergents;
(8) engine durability;
(9) ignition, including fuel additives to assist ignition;
(10) multifuel engines;
(11) emissions control, including catalysts;
(12) novel gas compression concepts;
(13) advanced storage systems;
(14) advanced gaseous fueling technologies; and
(15) the incorporation of advanced materials in these areas.

(b) Cooperative agreements and assistance

The Secretary may enter into cooperative agreements with, and provide financial assistance to, public or private entities willing to provide 50 percent of the costs of a program to perform activities under subsection (a).

(c) Definitions

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term "alternative fuel vehicle" means a motor vehicle that operates on alternative fuels; and

(2) the term "motor vehicle" includes any automobile, truck, bus, van, or other on-road or off-road motor vehicle, including a boat.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2023, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3062.)

§13434. Biofuels user facility

(a) The Secretary shall establish a biofuels user facility to expedite industry adoption of biofuels technologies, including production of alcohol fuels from biomass.

(b) The Secretary, through such universities and colleges as the Secretary determines are qualified, shall establish a program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, with respect to the production and use of diesel fuels from vegetable oils or animal fats. The program shall investigate—

(1) the economic feasibility of production of oilseed crops for biofuels purposes; and

(2) the establishment of a mobile small-scale oilseed pressing and esterification unit and a stationary small-scale commercial oilseed pressing and esterification unit.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2024, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3062.)

§13435. Electric motor vehicles and associated equipment research and development

(a) General

The Secretary shall conduct, pursuant to the Federal Nonnuclear Energy Research and Development Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5901–5920), a research and development program on electric motor vehicles and associated equipment. Such program shall be conducted in cooperation with the electric utility industry, and automobile industry, battery manufacturers, and such other persons as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(b) Comprehensive plan

(1) The Secretary shall prepare a comprehensive 5-year program plan for carrying out the purposes of this section. Such comprehensive plan shall be updated biennially for a period of not less than 10 years after October 24, 1992.

(2) The comprehensive plan under paragraph (1) shall be prepared in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Commerce, the heads of other appropriate Federal agencies, representatives of the electric utility industry, electric motor vehicle manufacturers, the United States automobile industry, and such other persons as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(3) The comprehensive plan shall include—

(A) a prioritization of research areas critical to the commercialization of electric motor vehicles, including advanced battery technology;

(B) the program elements, management structure, and activities, including program responsibilities, of Federal agencies;

(C) the program strategies, including technical milestones to be achieved toward specific goals during each fiscal year of the comprehensive plan for all major activities and projects;

(D) the estimated costs of individual program elements, including estimated costs for each of the fiscal years of the comprehensive plan for each of the participating Federal agencies;

(E) a description of the methods of technology transfer;

(F) a proposal for participation by non-Federal entities in the implementation of the comprehensive plan; and

(G) such other information as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(4) Not later than 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall transmit the comprehensive plan to the Congress. Biennial updates shall be submitted to the Congress.

(c) Cooperative agreements

The Secretary, consistent with the comprehensive plan under subsection (b), may enter into cooperative agreements to conduct research and development projects with industry in such areas of technology development as—

(1) high efficiency electric power trains, including advanced motors, motor controllers, and hybrid power trains for electric motor vehicle range improvement;

(2) light-weight structures for electric motor vehicle weight reduction;

(3) advanced batteries with high energy density and power density, and improved range or recharging cycles for a given unit weight, for electric motor vehicle application;

(4) hybrid power trains incorporating an electric motor and recyclable battery charged by an onboard liquid fuel engine, designed to significantly improve fuel economies while maintaining acceleration characteristics comparable to a conventionally fueled vehicle;

(5) batteries and fuel cells for electric-hybrid vehicle application;

(6) fuel cells and fuel cell systems for primary electric motor vehicle power sources; and

(7) photovoltaics for use with electric motor vehicles.

(d) Solicitation of proposals

(1) Within one year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for cooperative agreements for research and development under subsection (c).

(2) Thereafter, the Secretary may solicit additional proposals for cooperative agreements under subsection (c) if, in the judgment of the Secretary, such cooperative agreements could contribute to the development of electric motor vehicles and associated equipment.

(e) Cost-sharing

(1) The Secretary shall require at least 50 percent of the costs directly and specifically related to any cooperative agreement under this section, other than a cooperative agreement under subsection (j), to be from non-Federal sources. Such share may be in the form of cash, personnel, services, equipment, and other resources.

(2) The Secretary may reduce the amount of costs required to be provided by non-Federal sources under paragraph (1), if the Secretary determines that the reduction is necessary and appropriate—

(A) considering the technological risks involved in the project; and

(B) in order to meet the objectives of this section.

(f) Deployment

(1) The Secretary shall conduct a program designed to accelerate deployment of advanced battery technologies for use with electric motor vehicles.

(2) In carrying out the program authorized by this subsection, the Secretary shall—

(A) undertake an inventory and assessment of advanced battery technologies and electric motor vehicle technologies and the commercial capability of such technologies; and

(B) develop a Federal industry information exchange program to improve the deployment or use of such technologies, which may consist of workshops, publications, conferences, and a data base for use by the public and private sectors.

(g) Domestic parts manufacturers

In carrying out this section, the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Commerce, shall issue regulations to ensure that the procurement practices of participating electric motor vehicle and associated equipment manufacturers do not discriminate against the United States manufacturers of vehicle parts.

(h) Hold harmless

Nothing in this section shall be construed to alter, affect, modify, or change any activities or agreements initiated prior to October 24, 1992, with domestic motor vehicle manufacturers through joint venture or consortium agreements regarding batteries for electric motor vehicles.

(i) Consultation

The Secretary shall consult with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency and the Secretary of Transportation in carrying out this section.

(j) Fuel cells for transportation

(1) The Secretary shall develop and implement a comprehensive program of research, development, and demonstration of fuel cells and related systems for transportation applications through the establishment of one or more cooperative programs among industry, government, and

research institutions to develop and demonstrate the use of fuel cells as the primary power source for private and mass transit vehicles and other mobile applications.

(2) Research, development, and demonstration activities under this subsection shall be designed to incorporate one or more of the following priorities:

(A) The potential for near-term to mid-term commercialization.

(B) The ability of the systems to use a variety of renewable and nonfossil fuels.

(C) Emission reduction and energy conservation potential.

(D) The potential to utilize fuel cells and fuel cell systems developed under Department of Defense and National Aeronautics and Space Administration programs.

(E) The potential to take maximum practical advantage of advances made in electric motor vehicle research, stationary source fuel cell research, and other research activities authorized by this subchapter.

(3)(A) Research, development, and demonstration projects selected by the Secretary under this subsection shall apply to—

(i) passenger vehicles;

(ii) vans and utility vehicles;

(iii) light rail systems and locomotives;

(iv) trucks, including long-haul trucks, dump trucks, and garbage trucks;

(v) passenger buses;

(vi) non-chlorofluorocarbon mobile refrigeration systems;

(vii) marine vessels, including recreational marine engines; or

(viii) mobile engines and power generation, including recreational generators, and industrial and construction equipment.

(B) The Secretary shall establish programs to undertake research, development, and demonstration activities for the applications listed in clauses (i) through (viii) of subparagraph (A) in each of fiscal years 1993, 1994, 1995, and 1996, based on the priorities established in paragraph (2), so that by the end of the period, research, development, and demonstration activities are under way for the applications under each such clause. The initiatives authorized and implemented pursuant to this subsection shall be in addition to any other fuel cell programs authorized in existing law.

(k) Definitions

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term "advanced battery technology" means electrochemical storage devices and systems, including fuel cells, and associated technology necessary to charge, discharge, recharge, or regenerate such devices, for use as a source of power for an electric motor vehicle and any other associated equipment;

(2) the term "associated equipment" means equipment necessary for the regeneration, refueling, or recharging of batteries or other forms of electric energy used to power an electric motor vehicle and, in the case of electric-hybrid vehicles, such term includes nonpetroleum-related equipment necessary for, and solely related to, the demonstration of such vehicles;

(3) the term "electric motor vehicle" means a motor vehicle primarily powered by an electric motor that draws current from rechargeable storage batteries, fuel cells, photovoltaic arrays, or other sources of electric current and may include an electric-hybrid vehicle; and

(4) the term "electric-hybrid vehicle" means vehicle primarily powered by an electric motor that draws current from rechargeable storage batteries, fuel cells, or other sources of electric current and also relies on a nonelectric source of power that also operates on or is capable of operating on a nonelectrical source of power.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2025, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3063; Pub. L. 105–362, title IV, §402(a), Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3283.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Nonnuclear Energy Research and Development Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub.

L. 93–577, Dec. 31, 1974, 88 Stat. 1878, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 74 (§5901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5901 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 105–362, §402(a)(1), substituted "biennially" for "annually" in second sentence.

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 105–362, §402(a)(2), substituted "Biennial updates" for "Annual updates" in second sentence.

§13436. Repealed. Pub. L. 104–271, title I, §103(b)(2), Oct. 9, 1996, 110 Stat. 3306

Section, Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2026, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3066; Pub. L. 104–271, title I, §103(b)(1), Oct. 9, 1996, 110 Stat. 3306, related to a 5-year program on renewable hydrogen energy systems.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Pub. L. 104–271, title I, §103(b)(2), Oct. 9, 1996, 110 Stat. 3306, provided that the repeal made by section 103(b)(2) is effective Oct. 1, 1998.

§13437. Advanced diesel emissions program

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall initiate a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, on diesel engine combustion and engine systems, related advanced materials, and fuels and lubricants to reduce emissions oxides of nitrogen and particulates. Activities conducted under this program shall supplement activities of a similar nature at the Department of Energy. Such program shall include field demonstrations of sufficient scale and number in operating environments to prove technical and economic viability to meet the goal stated in subsection (b).

(b) Program goal

The goal of the program established under subsection (a) shall be to accelerate the ability of United States diesel manufacturers to meet current and future oxides of nitrogen and particulate emissions requirements.

(c) Program plan

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary, in consultation with appropriate representatives of industry, institutions of higher education, Federal agencies, including national laboratories, and professional and technical societies, shall prepare and submit to the Congress a 5-year program plan to guide the activities under this section. Such plan shall be included as part of the plan required by section 13431(b) of this title.

(d) Solicitation of proposals

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for conducting activities consistent with the 5-year program plan.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2027, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3066.)

§13438. Telecommuting study

(a) Study

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation, shall conduct a study of the potential costs and benefits to the energy and transportation sectors of telecommuting. The study shall include—

(1) an estimation of the amount and type of reduction of commuting by form of transportation

type and numbers of commuters;

(2) an estimation of the potential number of lives saved;

(3) an estimation of the reduction in environmental pollution, in consultation with the Environmental Protection Agency;

(4) an estimation of the amount and type of reduction of energy use and savings by form of transportation type; and

(5) an estimation of the social impact of widespread use of telecommuting.

(b) Report to Congress

This study shall be completed no more than one hundred and eighty days after October 24, 1992. A report, summarizing the results of the study, shall be transmitted to the United States House of Representatives and the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the United States Senate no more than sixty days after completion of this study.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XX, §2028, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3067.)

SUBCHAPTER IX—ENERGY AND ENVIRONMENT

PART A—IMPROVED ENERGY EFFICIENCY

§13451. General improved energy efficiency

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall conduct a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, on cost effective technologies to improve energy efficiency and increase the use of renewable energy in the buildings, industrial, and utility sectors. Such program shall include a broad range of technological approaches, and shall include field demonstrations of sufficient scale and number to prove technical and economic viability to meet the goals stated in section 13401 of this title. Such program shall include the activities required under sections 13452, 13453, 13454, 13455, 13456, and 13457 of this title and section 2106 [1] and ongoing activities of a similar nature at the Department of Energy. Such program shall also include the activities conducted pursuant to the Steel and Aluminum Energy Conservation and Technology Competitiveness Act of 1988 (Public Law 100–680) [15 U.S.C. 5101 et seq.] and the Department of Energy Metal Casting Competitiveness Research Act of 1990 (Public Law 101–425) [15 U.S.C. 5301 et seq.].

(b) Program goals

The goals of the program established under subsection (a) shall include—

(1) in the buildings sector—

(A) to accelerate the development of technologies that will increase energy efficiency;

(B) to increase the use of renewable energy; and

(C) to reduce environmental impacts;

(2) in the industrial sector—

(A) to accelerate the development of technologies that will increase energy efficiency in order to improve productivity;

(B) to increase the use of renewable energy; and

(C) to reduce environmental impacts; and

(3) in the utility sector—

(A) to accelerate the development of technologies that will increase energy efficiency; and

(B) to increase the use of integrated resource planning.

(c) Program plan

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall prepare and submit to the Congress a 5-year program plan to guide activities under this part. In preparing the program plan, the Secretary shall consult with appropriate representatives of industry, utilities, institutions of higher education, Federal agencies, including national laboratories, and professional and technical societies.

(d) Proposals

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for conducting activities under this section.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this part, including all building, industry, and utility sectors energy conservation research and development, and inventions and innovation under energy conservation technical and financial assistance, $178,250,000 for fiscal year 1993 and $275,000,000 for fiscal year 1994.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2101, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3067.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2106, referred to in subsec. (a), means section 2106 of Pub. L. 102–486, which amended sections 5103, 5107, 5108, 5110, and 5307 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade.

The Steel and Aluminum Energy Conservation and Technology Competitiveness Act of 1988, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 100–680, Nov. 17, 1988, 102 Stat. 4073, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 77 (§5101 et seq.) of Title 15. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5101 of Title 15 and Tables.

The Department of Energy Metal Casting Competitiveness Research Act of 1990, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 101–425, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 915, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 79 (§5301 et seq.) of Title 15. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5301 of Title 15 and Tables.

This part, referred to in subsecs. (c) and (e), was in the original "this subtitle" meaning subtitle A of title XXI of Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3067, which enacted this part and amended sections 5103, 5107, 5108, 5110, and 5307 of Title 15.

DISTRICT HEATING AND COOLING PROGRAMS

Pub. L. 102–486, title I, §172, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2865, as amended by Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §206(b), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 655, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary, in consultation with appropriate industry organizations, shall conduct a study to—

"(1) assess existing district heating and cooling technologies to determine cost-effectiveness, technical performance, energy efficiency, and environmental impacts as compared to alternative methods for heating and cooling buildings;

"(2) estimate the economic value of benefits that may result from implementation of district heating and cooling systems but that are not currently recognized, such as reduced emissions of air pollutants, local economic development, and energy security;

"(3) evaluate the cost-effectiveness, including the economic value referred to in paragraph (2), of cogenerated district heating and cooling technologies compared to other alternatives for generating or conserving electricity;

"(4) assess and make recommendations for reducing institutional and other constraints on the implementation of district heating and cooling systems; and

"(5) evaluate the use of renewable energy systems (as such term is defined in section 415(c) of the Energy Conservation and Production Act (42 U.S.C. 6865(c))) in residential buildings.

"(b) REPORT.—Not later than 2 years after the date of the enactment of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 [Aug. 8, 2005], the Secretary shall transmit to the Congress a report containing the findings, conclusions and recommendations, if any, of the Secretary for carrying out Federal, State, and local programs as a result of the study conducted under subsection (a)."

STUDY AND REPORT ON VIBRATION REDUCTION TECHNOLOGIES

Pub. L. 102–486, title I, §173, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2865, as amended by Pub. L. 105–362, title IV, §401(c), Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3282, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall, in consultation with the appropriate industry representatives, conduct a study to assess the cost-effectiveness, technical performance, energy efficiency, and environmental impacts of active noise and vibration cancellation technologies that use fast adapting algorithms.

"(b) PROCEDURE.—In carrying out such study, the Secretary shall—

"(1) estimate the potential for conserving energy and the economic and environmental benefits that may result from implementing active noise and vibration abatement technologies in demand side management; and

"(2) evaluate the cost-effectiveness of active noise and vibration cancellation technologies as compared to other alternatives for reducing noise and vibration.

"(c) DEMONSTRATION.—The Secretary may, based on the findings and conclusions of the study carried out under this section, conduct at least one project designed to demonstrate the commercial application of active noise and vibration cancellation technologies using fast adapting algorithms in products or equipment with a significant potential for increased energy efficiency."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13452. Natural gas and electric heating and cooling technologies

(a) Program direction

(1) The Secretary shall conduct a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, on energy efficient natural gas and electric heating and cooling technologies for residential and commercial buildings.

(2) The natural gas heating and cooling program shall include activities on—

(A) thermally activated heat pumps, including absorption heat pumps and engine-driven heat pumps; and

(B) other advanced natural gas technologies, including fuel cells for residential and commercial applications.

(3) The electric heating and cooling program shall focus on—

(A) advanced heat pumps;

(B) thermal storage; and

(C) advanced electric HVAC (heating, ventilating, and air conditioning) and refrigeration systems that utilize replacements for chlorofluorocarbons.

(b) Proposals

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for conducting activities under this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2102, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3068.)

§13453. Pulp and paper

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall conduct a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, on advanced pulp and paper technologies. Such program shall include activities on energy generation technologies, boilers, combustion processes, pulping processes (excluding de-inking), chemical recovery, causticizing, source reduction processes, and other related technologies that can improve the energy efficiency of, and reduce the adverse environmental impacts of, pulp and papermaking operations. This section does not authorize projects involving the combustion of waste paper, other than gasification.

(b) Proposals

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for conducting activities under this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2103, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3069.)

§13454. Advanced buildings for 2005

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall initiate a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, to increase building energy efficiency, while maintaining affordability, by the year 2005. Such program shall include activities on—

(1) building design, design methods, and construction techniques;
(2) building materials, including recycled materials, and components;
(3) on-site energy supply conversion systems such as photovoltaics;
(4) automated energy management systems;
(5) methods of evaluating performance; and
(6) insulation products manufactured with nonozone depleting materials.

(b) Proposals

(1) Solicitation

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for conducting activities under this section.

(2) Contents of proposals

Proposals submitted under this subsection shall include and be judged upon—

(A) evidence of knowledge of current building practices in the United States and in other countries;

(B) an explanation of how the proposal will encourage the commercialization of the technologies resulting from activities in subsection (a);

(C) evidence of consideration of collaboration with Department of Energy national laboratories;

(D) evidence of collaboration with relevant industry or other groups or organizations; and

(E) a demonstration of the ability of the proposers to undertake and complete the project proposed.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2104, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3069.)

§13455. Electric drives

(a) Program

The Secretary shall conduct a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, to increase the efficiency of electric drive technologies, including adjustable speed drives, high speed motors, and high efficiency motors.

(b) Proposals

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for projects under this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2105, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3070.)

§13456. Improving efficiency in energy-intensive industries

(a) Secretarial action

The Secretary, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, shall—

(1) pursue a research, development, demonstration and commercial application program intended to improve energy efficiency and productivity in energy-intensive industries and industrial processes; and

(2) undertake joint ventures to encourage the commercialization of technologies developed under paragraph (1).

(b) Joint ventures

(1) The Secretary shall—

(A) conduct a competitive solicitation for proposals from private firms and investors for such joint ventures under subsection (a)(2); and

(B) provide financial assistance to at least five such joint ventures.

(2) The purpose of the joint ventures shall be to design, test, and demonstrate changes to industrial processes that will result in improved energy efficiency and productivity. The joint ventures may also demonstrate other improvements of benefit to such industries so long as demonstration of energy efficiency improvements is the principal objective of the joint venture.

(3) In evaluating proposals for financial assistance and joint ventures under this section, the Secretary shall consider—

(A) whether the activities conducted under this section improve the quality and energy efficiency of industries or industrial processes;

(B) the regional distribution of the energy-intensive industries and industrial processes; and

(C) whether the proposed joint venture project would be located in the region which has the energy-intensive industry and industrial processes that would benefit from the project.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2107, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3070.)

§13457. Energy efficient environmental program

(a) Program direction

The Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, is authorized to continue to carry out a 5-year program to improve the energy efficiency and cost effectiveness of pollution prevention technologies and processes, including source reduction and waste minimization technologies and processes. The purposes of this section shall be to—

(1) apply a systems approach to minimizing adverse environmental effects of industrial production in the most cost effective and energy efficient manner; and

(2) incorporate consideration of the entire materials and energy cycle with the goal of minimizing adverse environmental impacts.

(b) Identification of opportunities

Within 9 months after October 24, 1992, the Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, shall identify opportunities for the demonstration of energy efficient pollution prevention technologies and processes.

(c) Report

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit a report to Congress evaluating the opportunities identified under subsection (b). Such report shall include—

(1) an assessment of the technologies available to increase productivity and simultaneously reduce the consumption of energy and material resources and the production of wastes;

(2) an assessment of the current use of such technologies by industry in the United States;

(3) the status of any such technologies currently being developed, together with projected schedules of their commercial availability;

(4) the energy savings resulting from the use of such technologies;

(5) the environmental benefits of such technologies;

(6) the costs of such technologies;

(7) an evaluation of any existing Federal or State regulatory disincentives for the employment of such technologies; and

(8) an evaluation of any other barriers to the use of such technologies.

In preparing the report required by this subsection, the Secretary shall consult with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, any other Federal, State, or local official the Secretary considers necessary, representatives of appropriate industries, members of organizations formed to further the goals of environmental protection or energy efficiency, and other appropriate interested members of the public, as determined by the Secretary.

(d) Proposals

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, shall solicit proposals for activities under this section. Proposals selected under this subsection shall demonstrate—

(1) technical viability and cost effectiveness; and

(2) procedures for technology transfer and information outreach during and after completion of the project.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2108, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3071.)

§13458. Energy efficient lighting and building centers

(a) Purpose

The purpose of this section is to encourage energy efficiency in buildings through the establishment of regional centers to promote energy efficient lighting, heating and cooling, and building design.

(b) Grants for establishment

Not later than 18 months after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall make grants to nonprofit institutions, or to consortiums that may include nonprofit institutions, State and local governments, universities, and utilities, to establish or enhance one regional building energy efficiency center (hereafter in this section referred to as a "regional center") in each of the 10 regions served by a Department of Energy regional support office.

(c) Permitted activities

Each regional center established under this section may—

(1) provide information, training, and technical assistance to building professionals such as architects, designers, engineers, contractors, and building code officials, on building energy efficiency methods and technologies, including lighting, heating and cooling, and passive solar;

(2) operate an outreach program to inform such building professionals of the benefits and opportunities of energy efficiency, and of the services of the center;

(3) provide displays demonstrating building energy efficiency methods and technologies, such as lighting, windows, and heating and cooling equipment;

(4) coordinate its activities and programs with other institutions within the region, such as State and local governments, utilities, and educational institutions, in order to support their efforts to promote building energy efficiency;

(5) serve as a clearinghouse to ensure that information about new building energy efficiency technologies, including case studies of successful applications, is disseminated to end-users in the region;

(6) study the building energy needs of the region and make available region-specific energy efficiency information to facilitate the adoption of cost-effective energy efficiency improvements;

(7) assist educational institutions in establishing building energy efficiency engineering and technical programs and curricula; and

(8) evaluate the performance of the center in promoting building energy efficiency.

(d) Application

Any nonprofit institution or consortium interested in receiving a grant under this section shall submit to the Secretary an application in such form and containing such information as the Secretary may require. A lighting or building energy center in existence on October 24, 1992, which is owned and operated by a nonprofit institution or a consortium as described in subsection (b) shall be eligible for a grant under this section.

(e) Selection criteria

The Secretary shall select recipients of grants under this section on the basis of the following criteria:

(1) The capability of the grant recipient to establish a board of directors for the regional center composed of representatives from utilities, State and local governments, building trade and professional organizations, manufacturers, and nonprofit energy and environmental organizations.

(2) The demonstrated or potential resources available to the grant recipient for carrying out this subsection.

(3) The demonstrated or potential ability of the grant recipient to promote building energy efficiency by carrying out the activities specified in subsection (c).

(4) The activities which the grant recipient proposes to carry out under the grant.

(f) Requirement of matching funds

(1) Federal share

The Federal share of a grant under this section shall be no more than 50 percent of the costs of establishing, and no more than 25 percent of the cost of operating the regional center.

(2) Non-Federal contributions

No grant may be made under this section in any fiscal year unless the recipient of such grant enters into such agreements with the Secretary as the Secretary may require to ensure that such recipient will provide the necessary non-Federal contributions. Such non-Federal contributions may be provided by utilities, State and local governments, nonprofit institutions, foundations, corporations, and other non-Federal entities.

(g) Task force

The Secretary shall establish a task force to—

(1) advise the Secretary on activities to be carried out by grant recipients;

(2) review and evaluate programs carried out by grant recipients; and

(3) make recommendations regarding the building energy efficiency center grant program.

(h) Membership terms and administration of task force

(1) In general

The task force shall be composed of approximately 20 members, appointed by the Secretary, with expertise in the area of building energy efficiency, including representatives from—

(A) State or local energy offices;

(B) utilities;

(C) building construction trade or professional associations;

(D) architecture, engineering or professional associations;

(E) building component or equipment manufacturers;

(F) from [1] national laboratories;

(G) building code officials or professional associations; and

(H) nonprofit energy or environmental organizations.

(2) Geographic representation

The Secretary shall ensure that there is broad geographical representation among task force members.

(3) Terms

Members shall be appointed for a term of 3 years. A vacancy in the task force shall be filled in the manner in which the original appointment was made.

(4) Pay

Members shall serve without pay. Each member shall receive travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in accordance with sections 5702 and 5703 of title 5.

(5) Chairperson

The Chairperson and Vice Chairperson of the task force shall be elected by the members.

(6) Meetings

The task force shall meet biannually and at the call of the Chairperson.

(7) Inapplicability of termination date

Section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act shall not apply to the task force.

(i) Omitted

(j) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated for purposes of carrying out this section, to remain available until expended, not more than $10,000,000 for each of fiscal years 1994, 1995, and 1996.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title I, §103, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2789.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (h)(7), is section 14 of Pub. L. 92–463, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

CODIFICATION

Subsec. (i) of this section, which required the Secretary to transmit annually to Congress a report on the activities of regional centers established under this section, including the degree to which matching funds are being leveraged from private sources to establish and operate such centers, terminated, effective May 15, 2000, pursuant to section 3003 of Pub. L. 104–66, as amended, set out as a note under section 1113 of Title 31, Money and Finance. See, also, the 6th item on page 88 of House Document No. 103–7.

Section was enacted as part of title I of the Energy Policy Act, and not as part of title XXI of that Act which comprises this subchapter.

[1] So in original. The word "from" probably should not appear.

PART B—ELECTRICITY GENERATION AND USE

§13471. Renewable energy

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall conduct a comprehensive 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, to provide cost-effective options for the generation of electricity from renewable energy sources for grid and nongrid application, including field demonstrations of sufficient scale and number in operating environments to prove technical and economic feasibility for providing cost effective generation and for meeting the goal stated in section 13401(3) of this title and section 13382(a)(4) of this title.

(b) Program plan

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall prepare and submit to the Congress a 5-year program plan to guide the activities under this section. In preparing the program plan, the

Secretary shall consult with appropriate representatives of industry, institutions of higher education, Federal agencies, including national laboratories, and professional and technical societies.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section, including all solar energy programs (other than activities under section 13431 of this title), geothermal systems, electric energy systems, and energy storage systems, $208,975,000 for fiscal year 1993 and $275,000,000 for fiscal year 1994.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2111, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3072.)

§13472. High efficiency heat engines

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall conduct a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, to improve the efficiency of heat engines. Such program shall—

(1) include field demonstrations of sufficient scale and number so as to demonstrate technical and economic feasibility;

(2) incorporate materials that increase engine efficiency; and

(3) cover advanced engine designs for electric and industrial power generation for a range of small-, mid-, and large-scale applications, including—

(A) mechanically recuperated gas turbines;

(B) intercooled gas turbines with steam injection or recuperation;

(C) gas turbines utilizing reformed fuels or hydrogen; and

(D) high efficiency, simple cycle gas turbines.

(b) Program goal

The goal of the program established under subsection (a) shall be to develop heat engines that can achieve over 50 percent efficiency in the mid-term.

(c) Program plan

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall prepare and submit to the Congress a 5-year program plan, to be included in the plan required under section 13451(c) of this title, to guide the activities under this section. In preparing the program plan, the Secretary shall consult with appropriate representatives of industry, institutions of higher education, Federal agencies, including the Environmental Protection Agency and national laboratories, and professional and technical societies.

(d) Proposals

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for conducting activities under this section.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section such sums as may be necessary to be derived from sums authorized under section 13451(e) of this title.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2112, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3072.)

§13473. Civilian nuclear waste

(a) Study

The Secretary shall conduct a study of the potential for minimizing the volume and toxic lifetime of nuclear waste, including an analysis of the viability of existing technologies and an assessment of the extent of research and development required for new technologies.

(b) Program

Based on the results of the study required under subsection (a), the Secretary shall prepare and submit to Congress a 5-year program plan for carrying out a program of research and development on new technologies for minimizing the volume and toxic lifetime of, and thereby mitigating hazards associated with, nuclear waste.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section $4,700,000 for fiscal year 1993 and such sums as may be necessary for fiscal year 1994.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2113, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3073.)

§13474. Fusion energy

(a) Program

The Secretary shall conduct a fusion energy 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, that by the year 2010 will result in a technology demonstration which verifies the practicability of commercial electric power production.

(b) Program goals

The goals of the program established under subsection (a) shall include—

(1) a broad based fusion energy program;

(2) United States participation in the Engineering Design Activity of the International Thermonuclear Experimental Reactor (ITER) program and in the related research and technology development efforts;

(3) the development of technology for fusion power and industrial participation in the development of such technology;

(4) the design and construction of a major new machine for fusion research and technology development consistent with paragraphs (2) and (3); and

(5) research and development for Inertial Confinement Fusion Energy and development of a Heavy Ion Inertial Confinement Fusion experiment.

(c) Management plan

(1) Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall prepare a comprehensive management plan for the fusion energy program. The plan shall include specific program objectives, milestones and schedules for technology development, and cost estimates and program management resource requirements.

(2) The plan shall also include a description of—

(A) United States participation in the Engineering Design Activity of ITER, including industrial participation;

(B) potential United States participation in the construction and operation of an ITER facility; and

(C) the requirements needed to build and test an inertial fusion energy reactor for the purpose of power production.

(3) As part of the plan required under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall evaluate the status of international fusion programs and evaluate whether the Federal Government should initiate efforts to strengthen existing international cooperative agreements in fusion energy or enter into new cooperative agreements to accomplish the purposes of this section.

(4) The plan shall also evaluate the extent to which university or private sector participation is appropriate or necessary in order to carry out the purposes of this section.

(5) The President shall include in the budget submitted to the Congress each year under section 1105 of title 31 a report prepared by the Secretary describing the progress made in meeting the program objectives, milestones, and schedules established in the management plan. Each such report

shall also describe the organization of the program, the personnel assigned and funds committed to the program, and expenditures made in carrying out the program objectives. The report shall be submitted with the plan required under section 13523 of this title.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section $339,710,000 for fiscal year 1993 and $380,000,000 for fiscal year 1994.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2114, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3073; Pub. L. 104–66, title I, §1052(i), Dec. 21, 1995, 109 Stat. 719.)

AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (c)(5). Pub. L. 104–66 inserted first sentence and struck out former first sentence which read as follows: "Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, and every 2 years thereafter, the Secretary shall issue a report describing the progress made in meeting the program objectives, milestones, and schedules established in the management plan."

§13475. Fuel cells

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall conduct a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title, on efficient and environmentally benign power generation using fuel cells. The program may include activities on molten carbonate, solid oxide, including tubular, monolithic, and planar technologies, and advanced concepts.

(b) Program goal

The goal of the program established under subsection (a) is the development of cost-effective, efficient, and environmentally benign fuel cell systems which will operate on fossil fuels in multiple end use sectors.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section $51,555,000 for fiscal year 1993 and $56,000,000 for fiscal year 1994.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2115, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3074.)

§13476. Environmental restoration and waste management program

(a) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for fiscal year 1993 $70,000,000 for the Fast Flux Test Facility to maintain the operational status of the reactor, such sums to be derived from amounts appropriated to the Secretary for the environmental restoration and waste management program.

(b) Long-term missions

The Secretary shall aggressively pursue the development and implementation of long-term missions for the Fast Flux Test Facility. Within 6 months after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit to the Congress a report on the progress made in carrying out this subsection.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2116, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3075.)

§13477. High-temperature superconductivity program

(a) Program

The Secretary shall carry out a 5-year program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of

this title, on high-temperature superconducting electric power equipment technologies. Elements of the program shall include, but are not limited to—

(1) activities that address the development of high-temperature superconducting materials that have increased electrical current capacity, which shall be the emphasis of the program for the near-term;

(2) the development of prototypes, where appropriate, of the major elements of a superconducting electric power system such as motors, generators, transmission lines, transformers, and magnetic energy storage systems;

(3) activities that will improve the efficiency of materials performance of higher temperatures and at all magnetic field orientations;

(4) development of prototypes based on high-temperature superconducting wire, that operate at the highest temperature possible, and refrigeration systems using cryogenics such as nitrogen;

(5) activities that will assist the private sector with designs for more efficient electric power generation and delivery systems which are cost competitive with conventional energy systems; and

(6) development of prototypes that have application in both the commercial and defense sectors.

The Secretary is also encouraged to expedite government, laboratory, industry, and university collaborative agreements under existing mechanisms at the Department of Energy in coordination with other Federal agencies.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section $21,900,000 for fiscal year 1993 and such sums as may be necessary for subsequent fiscal years, to be derived from sums authorized under section 13471(c) of this title.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2117, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3075.)

§13478. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2118, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3075; Pub. L. 105–23, §1, July 3, 1997, 111 Stat. 237, which authorized the Secretary to establish an electric and magnetic fields research and public information dissemination program, expired on Dec. 31, 1998.

§13479. Spark M. Matsunaga Renewable Energy and Ocean Technology Center

(a) Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) the late Spark M. Matsunaga, United States Senator from Hawaii, was a longstanding champion of research and development of renewable energy, particularly wind and ocean energy, photovoltaics, and hydrogen fuels;

(2) it was Senator Matsunaga's vision that renewable energy could provide a sustained source of non-polluting energy and that such forms of alternative energy might ultimately be employed in the production of liquid hydrogen as a transportation fuel and energy storage medium available as an energy export;

(3) Senator Matsunaga also believed that research on other aspects of renewable energy and ocean resources, such as advanced materials, could be crucial to full development of energy storage and conversion systems; and

(4) Keahole Point, Hawaii is particularly well-suited as a site to conduct renewable energy and associated marine research.

(b) Purpose

It is the purpose of this section to establish the facilities and equipment located at Keahole Point, Hawaii as a cooperative research and development facility, to be known as the Spark M. Matsunaga Renewable Energy and Ocean Technology Center.

(c) Establishment

The facilities and equipment located at Keahole Point, Hawaii are established as the Spark M. Matsunaga Renewable Energy and Ocean Technology Center (in this section referred to as the "Center").

(d) Administration

(1) Not later than 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary may authorize a cooperative agreement with a qualified research institution to administer the Center.

(2) For the purpose of paragraph (1), a qualified research institution is a research institution located in the State of Hawaii that has demonstrated competence and will be the lead organization in the State in renewable energy and ocean technologies.

(e) Activities

The Center may carry out research, development, educational, and technology transfer activities on—

(1) renewable energy;

(2) energy storage, including the production of hydrogen from renewable energy;

(3) materials applications related to energy and marine environments;

(4) other environmental and ocean research concepts, including sea ranching and global climate change; and

(5) such other matters as the Secretary may direct.

(f) Matching funds

To be eligible for Federal funds under this section, the Center must provide funding in cash or in kind from non-Federal sources for each amount provided by the Secretary.

(g) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section such sums as may be necessary, to be derived from sums authorized under section 13471(c) of this title.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2119, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3080.)

PART C—ADVANCED NUCLEAR REACTORS

§13491. Purposes and definitions

(a) Purposes

The purposes of this part are—

(1) to require the Secretary to carry out civilian nuclear programs in a way that will lead toward the commercial availability of advanced nuclear reactor technologies; and

(2) to authorize such activities to further the timely availability of advanced nuclear reactor technologies, including technologies that utilize standardized designs or exhibit passive safety features.

(b) Definitions

For purposes of this part—

(1) the term "advanced nuclear reactor technologies" means—

(A) advanced light water reactors that may be commercially available in the near-term, including but not limited to mid-sized reactors with passive safety features for the generation of

commercial electric power from nuclear fission; and

(B) other advanced nuclear reactor technologies that may require prototype demonstration prior to commercial availability in the mid- or long-term, including but not limited to high-temperature, gas-cooled reactors and liquid metal reactors, for the generation of commercial electric power from nuclear fission;

(2) the term "Commission" means the Nuclear Regulatory Commission;

(3) the term "standardized design" means a design for a nuclear power plant that may be utilized for a multiple number of units or a multiple number of sites; and

(4) the term "certification" means approval by the Commission of a standardized design.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2121, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3081.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle" meaning subtitle C of title XXI of Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3081, which enacted this part and amended sections 12003 and 12004 of this title.

§13492. Program, goals, and plan

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall conduct a program to encourage the deployment of advanced nuclear reactor technologies that to the maximum extent practicable—

(1) are cost effective in comparison to alternative sources of commercial electric power of comparable availability and reliability, taking into consideration life cycle environmental costs;

(2) facilitate the design, licensing, construction, and operation of a nuclear powerplant using a standardized design;

(3) exhibit enhanced safety features; and

(4) incorporate features that advance the objectives of the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 [22 U.S.C. 3201 et seq.].

(b) Program goals

The goals of the program established under subsection (a) shall include—

(1) for the near-term—

(A) to facilitate the completion, by September 30, 1996, for certification by the Commission, of standardized advanced light water reactor technology designs that the Secretary determines have the characteristics described in subsection (a)(1) through (4);

(B) to facilitate the completion of submissions, by September 30, 1996, for preliminary design approvals by the Commission of standardized designs for the modular high-temperature gas-cooled reactor technology and the liquid metal reactor technology; and

(C) to evaluate by September 30, 1996, actinide burn technology to determine if it can reduce the volume of long-lived fission byproducts;

(2) for the mid-term—

(A) to facilitate increased efficiency of enhanced safety, advanced light water reactors to produce electric power at the lowest cost to the customer;

(B) to develop advanced reactor concepts that are passively safe and environmentally acceptable; and

(C) to complete necessary research and development on high-temperature gas-cooled reactor technology and liquid metal reactor technology to support the selection, by September 30, 1998, of one or both of those technologies as appropriate for prototype demonstration; and

(3) for the long-term, to complete research and development and demonstration to support the design of advanced reactor technologies capable of providing electric power to a utility grid as

soon as practicable but no later than the year 2010.

(c) Program plan

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall prepare and submit to the Congress a 5-year program plan to guide the activities under this section. The program plan shall include schedule milestones, Federal funding requirements, and non-Federal cost sharing requirements. In preparing the program plan, the Secretary shall take into consideration—

(1) the need for, and the potential for future adoption by electric utilities or other entities of, advanced nuclear reactor technologies that are available, under development, or have the potential for being developed, for the generation of energy from nuclear fission;

(2) how the Federal Government, acting through the Secretary, can be effective in ensuring the availability of such technologies when they are needed;

(3) how the Federal Government can most effectively cooperate with the private sector in the accomplishment of the goals set forth in subsection (b); and

(4) potential alternative funding sources for carrying out this section.

In preparing the program plan, the Secretary shall consult with appropriate representatives of industry, institutions of higher education, Federal agencies, including national laboratories, and professional and technical societies. The Secretary shall update the program plan annually and submit such update to Congress. Each such update shall describe any activities that are behind schedule, any funding shortfalls, and any other circumstances that might affect the ability of the Secretary to meet the goals set forth in subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2122, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3082.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (a)(4), is Pub. L. 95–242, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 120, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 47 (§3201 et seq.) of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3201 of Title 22 and Tables.

§13493. Commercialization of advanced light water reactor technology

(a) Certification of designs

In order to achieve the goal of certification of completed standardized designs by the Commission by 1996 as set forth in section 13492(b) of this title, the Secretary shall conduct a 5-year program of technical and financial assistance to encourage the development and submission for certification of advanced light water reactor designs which, in the judgment of the Secretary, can be certified by the Commission by no later than the end of fiscal year 1996.

(b) First-of-a-kind engineering

(1) Establishment of program

The Secretary shall conduct a program of Federal financial and technical assistance for the first-of-a-kind engineering design of standardized commercial nuclear powerplants which are included, as of October 24, 1992, in the Department of Energy's program for certification of advanced light water reactor designs.

(2) Selection criteria

In order to be eligible for assistance under this subsection, an entity shall certify to the satisfaction of the Secretary that—

(A) the entity, or its members, are bona fide entities engaged in the design, engineering, manufacture, construction, or operation of nuclear reactors;

(B) the entity, or its members, have the financial resources necessary for, and fully intend to pursue the design, engineering, manufacture, construction, and operation in the United States of

nuclear power plants [1] through completion of construction and into operation;

(C) the design proposed is scheduled for certification by the Commission under the Department of Energy's program for certification of light water reactor designs; and

(D) at least 50 percent of the funding for the project shall be obtained from non-Federal sources, and a substantial portion of that non-Federal funding shall be obtained from utilities or entities whose primary purpose is the production of electrical power for public consumption.

(3) Program documents

The Secretary shall prepare and submit to the Congress a program document for each design selected under this subsection, specifying goals and objectives, major milestones for achieving those goals and objectives, and the work products to be provided to the Secretary or made available for inspection.

(4) Funding limitations

(A) Before entering into an agreement with an entity under this subsection, the Secretary shall establish a cost ceiling for the contribution of the Federal Government for the project, and shall report such cost ceiling to the Congress.

(B) No entity shall receive assistance under this subsection for a period greater than 4 years.

(C) The aggregate funding provided by the Secretary for projects under this subsection shall not exceed $100,000,000 for the period encompassing fiscal years 1993 through 1997.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2123, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3083.)

CODIFICATION

Subsec. (b)(5) of this section, which required the Secretary to submit annually to Congress a status report on each project receiving assistance under subsec. (b), terminated, effective May 15, 2000, pursuant to section 3003 of Pub. L. 104–66, as amended, set out as a note under section 1113 of Title 31, Money and Finance. See, also, the last item on page 85 of House Document No. 103–7.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "powerplants".*

§13494. Prototype demonstration of advanced nuclear reactor technology

(a) Solicitation of proposals

Within 3 years after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for carrying out the preliminary engineering design of not more than 2 prototype advanced nuclear reactor technologies developed by the Department of Energy, other than advanced light water reactor technologies, necessary to support a decision on whether to recommend construction of a prototype demonstration reactor with the characteristics described in section 13493(a) of this title. Proposals submitted under this subsection shall be for modular design concepts of sufficient size to address requirements related to the certification of a standardized design.

(b) Recommendation to Congress

(1) Not later than September 30, 1998, the Secretary shall submit to Congress recommendations on whether to build one or more prototype demonstration reactors under this section. Such recommendations shall—

(A) specify a preferred technology or technologies;

(B) include detailed information on milestones for construction and operation;

(C) include an estimate of the funding requirements; and

(D) specify the extent and type of non-Federal financial support anticipated.

In developing the recommendations under this paragraph, the Secretary shall provide for public notice and an opportunity for comment, and shall solicit the views of the Commission and other parties with technical expertise the Secretary considers useful in the development of such

recommendations.

(2) The prototype demonstration program under this section shall be carried out to the maximum extent practicable with private sector funding. At least 50 percent of the funding for such program shall be non-Federal funding. The extent of non-Federal cost sharing proposed for any demonstration project shall be a criterion for the selection of the project.

(c) Selection of technology

Any technology selected by the Secretary for recommendation for prototype demonstration under this section shall to the maximum extent possible exhibit the characteristics set forth in section 13493(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2124, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3084.)

§13495. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this part $212,804,000 for fiscal year 1993 and such sums as may be necessary for fiscal year 1994. Amounts authorized or otherwise made available for program direction, space reactor power systems, advanced radioisotope power systems, and the space exploration initiative under nuclear energy research and development shall be in addition to the amounts authorized in the preceding sentence.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXI, §2126, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3085.)

SUBCHAPTER X—ENERGY AND ECONOMIC GROWTH

§13501. National Advanced Materials Program

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall establish a 5-year National Advanced Materials Program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title. Such program shall foster the commercialization of techniques for processing, synthesizing, fabricating, and manufacturing advanced materials and associated components. At a minimum, the Program shall expedite the private sector deployment of advanced materials for use in high performance energy efficient and renewable energy technologies in the industrial, transportation, and buildings sectors that can foster economic growth and competitiveness. The Program shall include field demonstrations of sufficient scale and number to prove technical and economic feasibility.

(b) Program plan

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary, in consultation with appropriate representatives of industry, institutions of higher education, Department of Energy national laboratories, and professional and technical societies, shall prepare and submit to the Congress a 5-year program plan to guide activities under this section. The Secretary shall biennially update and resubmit the program plan to Congress.

(c) Proposals

(1) Solicitation

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for conducting activities consistent with the 5-year program plan. Such proposals may be submitted by one or more parties.

(2) Contents of proposals

Proposals submitted under this subsection shall include—

(A) an explanation of how the proposal will expedite the commercialization of advanced materials in energy efficiency or renewable energy in the near-term to mid-term;

(B) evidence of consideration of whether the unique capabilities of Department of Energy national laboratories warrants collaboration with such laboratories, and the extent of such collaboration proposed;

(C) a description of the extent to which the proposal includes collaboration with relevant industry or other groups or organizations; and

(D) evidence of the ability of the proposers to undertake and complete the proposed project.

(d) General Services Administration demonstration program

The Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator of General Services, shall establish a program to expedite the use, in goods and services acquired by the General Services Administration, of advanced materials technologies. Such program shall include a demonstration of the use of advanced materials technologies as may be necessary to establish technical and economic feasibility. The Secretary shall transfer funds to the General Services Administration for carrying out this subsection.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section such sums as may be necessary, to be derived for energy efficient applications from section 13451(e) of this title and for renewable applications from section 13471(c) of this title, including Department of Energy national laboratory participation in proposals submitted under subsection (c), and including transferring funds to the General Services Administration.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXII, §2201, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3085.)

TERMINATION OF REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

For termination, effective May 15, 2000, of provisions in subsec. (b) of this section relating to the biennial resubmittal of the program plan to Congress, see section 3003 of Pub. L. 104–66, as amended, set out as a note under section 1113 of Title 31, Money and Finance, and the 1st item on page 86 of House Document No. 103–7.

§13502. National Advanced Manufacturing Technologies Program

(a) Program direction

The Secretary shall establish a 5-year National Advanced Manufacturing Technologies Program, in accordance with sections 13541 and 13542 of this title. Such program shall foster the commercialization of advanced manufacturing technologies to improve energy efficiency and productivity in manufacturing. At a minimum, the Program shall expedite the private sector deployment of advanced manufacturing technologies to improve productivity, quality, and control in manufacturing processes that can foster economic growth, energy efficiency, and competitiveness. The program [1] shall include field demonstrations of sufficient scale and number to prove technical and economic feasibility.

(b) Program plan

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary, in consultation with appropriate representatives of industry, institutions of higher education, Department of Energy national laboratories, and professional and technical societies, shall prepare and submit to the Congress a 5-year program plan to guide activities under this section. The Secretary shall biennially update and resubmit the program plan to Congress.

(c) Proposals

(1) Solicitation

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for conducting activities consistent with the 5-year program plan. Such proposals may be submitted by one or

more parties.

(2) Contents of proposals

Proposals submitted under this subsection shall include—

(A) an explanation of how the proposal will expedite the commercialization of advanced manufacturing technologies to improve energy efficiency in the building, industry, and transportation sectors;

(B) evidence of consideration of whether the unique capabilities of Department of Energy national laboratories warrants collaboration with such laboratories, and the extent of such collaboration proposed;

(C) a description of the extent to which the proposal includes collaboration with relevant industry or other groups or organizations; and

(D) evidence of the ability of the proposers to undertake and complete the proposed project.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section such sums as may be necessary, to be derived from sums authorized under section 13451(e) of this title, including Department of Energy national laboratory participation in proposals submitted under subsection (c).

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXII, §2202, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3086.)

TERMINATION OF REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

For termination, effective May 15, 2000, of provisions in subsec. (b) of this section relating to the biennial resubmittal of the program plan to Congress, see section 3003 of Pub. L. 104–66, as amended, set out as a note under section 1113 of Title 31, Money and Finance, and the 2nd item on page 86 of House Document No. 103–7.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be capitalized.*

§13503. Supporting research and technical analysis

(a) Basic energy sciences

(1) Program direction

The Secretary shall continue to support a vigorous program of basic energy sciences to provide basic research support for the development of energy technologies. Such program shall focus on the efficient production and use of energy, and the expansion of our knowledge of materials, chemistry, geology, and other related areas of advancing technology development.

(2) User facilities

(A) As part of the program referred to in paragraph (1), the Secretary shall carry out planning, construction, and operation of user facilities to provide special scientific and research capabilities, including technical expertise and support as appropriate, to serve the research needs of our Nation's universities, industry, private laboratories, Federal laboratories, and others. Research institutions or individuals from other nations shall be accommodated at such user facilities in cases where reciprocal accommodations are provided to United States research institutions and individuals or where the Secretary considers such accommodation to be in the national interest.

(B) The construction of the Advanced Photon Source at the Argonne National Laboratory is hereby authorized.

(C) The Secretary shall not change the user fee practice in effect as of October 1, 1991, with respect to user facilities unless the Secretary notifies Congress 90 days before the effective date of any change.

(D) The Secretary shall expedite the design for construction of the Advanced Neutron Source at the Oak Ridge National Laboratory, in order to provide critical research capabilities in support of our national research initiatives for advanced materials and biotechnology, as well as a broad

range of research. Such action shall be consistent with the Basic Energy Sciences Advisory Committee's Technical Evaluation of accelerator and reactor neutron source technologies. Within 90 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit to the Congress a plan for such design, including a schedule for construction.

(3) Cost sharing

The Secretary shall not require cost sharing for research and development pursuant to this subsection, except—

(A) as otherwise provided for in cooperative research and development agreements or other agreements entered into under existing law;

(B) for fees for user facilities, as determined by the Secretary; or

(C) in the case of specific projects, where the Secretary determines that the benefits of such research and development accrue to a specific industry or group of industries, in which case cost sharing under section 13542 of this title shall apply.

(b) University and science education

(1) The Secretary shall support programs for improvements and upgrading of university research reactors and associated instrumentation and equipment. Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit to the Congress a report on the condition and status of university research reactors, which includes a 5-year plan for upgrading and improving such facilities, instrumentation capabilities, and related equipment.

(2) The Secretary shall develop a method to evaluate the effectiveness of science and mathematics education programs provided by the Department of Energy and its laboratories, including specific evaluation criteria.

(3)(A)(i) The Director of the Office of Science shall operate an Experimental Program to Stimulate Competitive Research (in this paragraph referred to as "EPSCoR") as part of the Department of Energy's University and Science Education Programs.

(ii) The objectives of EPSCoR shall be—

(I) to enhance the competitiveness of the peer-review process within academic institutions in eligible States; and

(II) to increase the probability of long-term growth of competitive funding to investigators at institutions from eligible States.

(iii) In order to carry out the objectives stated in clause (ii), EPSCoR shall provide for activities which may include (but not be limited to) competitive research awards and graduate traineeships.

(iv) EPSCoR shall assist those States that—

(I) historically have received relatively little Federal research and development funding; and

(II) have demonstrated a commitment to develop their research bases and improve science and engineering research and education programs at their universities and colleges.

(B) For purposes of this paragraph, the term "eligible States" means States that received a Department-EPSCoR planning or traineeship grant in fiscal year 1991 or fiscal year 1992.

(C) No more than $5,000,000 of the funds appropriated to EPSCoR in any fiscal year, through fiscal year 1997, are authorized to be appropriated for graduate traineeships.

(c) Technology transfer

The Secretary shall support technology transfer activities conducted by the National Laboratories. Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit to the Congress a report on the adequacy of funding for such activities, along with a proposal recommending ways to reduce the length of time required to consummate cooperative research and development agreements.

(d) Facilities support for multiprogram energy laboratories

(1) Facility policy

The Secretary shall develop and implement a least cost strategy for correcting facility problems,

closing unneeded facilities, making facility modifications, and building new facilities at multiprogram energy laboratories.

(2) Facility plan

Within 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall prepare and submit to the Congress a comprehensive plan for conducting future facility maintenance, making repairs, modifications, and new additions, and constructing new facilities at multiprogram energy laboratories. Such plan shall provide for facilities work in accordance with the following priorities, listed in descending order of priority:

(A) Providing for the safety and health of employees, visitors, and the general public with regard to correcting existing structural, mechanical, electrical, and environmental deficiencies.

(B) Providing for the repair and rehabilitation of existing facilities to keep them in use and prevent deterioration.

(C) Providing engineering design and construction services for those facilities which require modification or additions in order to meet the needs of new or expanded programs.

Such plan shall include plans for new facilities and facility modifications which will be required to meet the Department of Energy's changing missions of the twenty-first century, including schedules and estimates for implementation, and including a section outlining long-term funding requirements consistent with anticipated budgets and annual authorization of appropriations. Such plan shall address the coordination of modernization and consolidation of facilities in order to meet changing mission requirements, and shall provide for annual reports to Congress on accomplishments, conformance to schedules, commitments, and expenditures.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for Supporting Research and Technical Analysis, including Basic Energy Sciences, Energy Research Analysis, University and Science Education, Technology Transfer, Advisory and Oversight Program Direction, and Facilities Support for Multiprogram Energy Laboratories, $966,804,000 for fiscal year 1993 and such sums as may be necessary for fiscal year 1994.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXII, §2203, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3087; Pub. L. 105–245, title III, §309(b)(2)(F), Oct. 7, 1998, 112 Stat. 1853.)

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (b)(3)(A)(i). Pub. L. 105–245 substituted "Office of Science" for "Office of Energy Research".

§13504. Math and science education program

(a) Program

The Secretary shall enter into contracts with existing qualified entities to conduct science and mathematics education programs that supplement the Special Programs for Students from Disadvantaged Backgrounds carried out by the Secretary of Education under sections 1070d through 1070d–1d of title 20.[1]

(b) Purpose

(1) The purpose of the programs shall be to provide support to Federal, State, and private programs designed to promote the participation of low-income and first generation college students as defined in section 1070d of title 20 [1] in post-secondary science and mathematics education.

(2) Support activities may include—

(A) the development of educational materials;

(B) the training of teachers and counselors;

(C) the establishment of student internships;

(D) the development of seminars on mathematics and science;
(E) tutoring in mathematics and science;
(F) academic counseling;
(G) the development of opportunities for research; and
(H) such other activities that may promote the participation of low-income and first generation college students in post-secondary science and mathematics education.

(c) Support

(1) In carrying out the purpose of this section, the entities may provide support under subsection (b)(2) to—
(A) low-income and first generation college students; and
(B) institutions of higher education, public and private agencies and organizations, and secondary and middle schools that principally benefit low-income students.

(2) The qualified entities shall, to the extent practicable, coordinate support activities under this section with the Secretary of Education and the Secretary.

(d) Cooperation with qualified entities

The Secretary shall cooperate with qualified entities and, to the extent practicable, make available to the entities such personnel, facilities, and other resources of the Department of Energy as may be necessary to carry out the duties of the entities.

(e) Report

Not later than October 1 of each year, the entities shall report to the Secretary, the Secretary of Education, and the Congress on—
(1) progress made to promote the participation of low-income and first generation college students in post-secondary science and mathematics education by—
(A) the qualified entities;
(B) other mathematics and science education programs of the Department of Energy; and
(C) the Special Programs for Students from Disadvantaged Backgrounds of the Department of Education; and

(2) recommendations for such additional actions as may be needed to promote the participation of low-income students in post-secondary science and mathematics education.

(f) Effect on existing programs

The programs in this section shall supplement and be developed in cooperation with the current mathematics and science education programs of the Department of Energy and the Department of Education but shall not supplant them.

(g) "Qualified entity" defined

For purposes of this section, the term "qualified entity" means a nonprofit corporation, association, or institution that has demonstrated special knowledge of, and experience with, the education of low-income and first generation college students and whose primary mission is the operation of national programs that focus on low-income students and provide training and other services to educators.

(h) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary, to be derived from section 13503(e) of this title and the Environmental Restoration and Waste Management program, to carry out the purposes of this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXII, §2204, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3089.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 1070d through 1070d–1d of title 20, referred to in subsec. (a), and section 1070d of title 20, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), were repealed by Pub. L. 102–325, title IV, §402(a)(1), July 23, 1992, 106 Stat.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13505. Integration of research and development

Within 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary, in consultation with appropriate representatives of industry, institutions of higher education, Department of Energy national laboratories, and professional and technical societies, shall prepare and submit to Congress a 5-year program plan for improving the integration of basic energy research programs with other energy programs within the Department of Energy. Such program plan shall include—

(1) an evaluation of current procedures and mechanisms used to achieve such integration;

(2) an assessment of the role that the Department of Energy national laboratories play in such integration;

(3) an identification and evaluation of models that could enhance such integration;

(4) an identification and evaluation of new programs, mechanisms, and related policy options that could improve the integrating process, including—

(A) set aside funding for matching or leveraging basic and applied programs;

(B) more formal linkages; and

(C) program coordination;

(5) recommendations for expanded research and development and new technology areas; and

(6) budget estimates for activities under this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXII, §2205, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3091.)

§13506. Definitions

For purposes of this subchapter—

(1) the term "advanced manufacturing technology" means processes, equipment, techniques, practices, and capabilities that are applied for the purpose of—

(A) improving the productivity, quality, or energy efficiency of the design, development, testing, or manufacture of a product; or

(B) expanding the technical capability to design, develop, test, or manufacture a product that is fundamentally different in character from existing products and that will result in improved energy efficiency;

(2) the term "advanced materials" means materials that are processed, synthesized, fabricated, and manufactured to develop high performance properties that exceed the corresponding properties of conventional materials for structural, electronic, magnetic, or photonic applications, or for joining, welding, bonding, or packaging components into complex assemblies, including—

(A) advanced monolithic materials such as metals, ceramics, and polymers;

(B) advanced composite materials such as metal matrix (including intermetallics), polymer matrix, ceramic matrix, continuous fiber ceramic composite, and carbon matrix composites; and

(C) advanced electronic, magnetic, and photonic materials, including superconducting, semiconductor, electrooptic, magnetooptic, thin-film, and special purpose coating materials used in technologies for energy efficiency, renewable energy, or electric power applications; and

(3) the term "United States" means the 50 States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, Guam, the Northern Mariana Islands, and any other territory or possession of the United States.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXII, §2206, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3091.)

SUBCHAPTER XI—POLICY AND ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS

§13521. Policy on major construction projects

(a) Report and management plan

The Secretary shall submit to the Congress a report and management plan for any major construction project involving $100,000,000 or more, prior to the expenditure of those funds.

(b) Congressional review

Expenditure of funds for a project described in subsection (a) may be made after a period of 30 calendar days (not including any day on which either House of Congress is not in session because of adjournment of more than 3 calendar days prior to a day certain) has passed after receipt of the report and management plan by Congress.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXIII, §2301, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3092.)

§13522. Energy Research, Development, Demonstration, and Commercial Application Advisory Board

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish an Energy Research, Development, Demonstration, and Commercial Application Advisory Board (hereafter in this section referred to as the "Advisory Board").

(b) Responsibilities

The Advisory Board shall provide impartial technical advice to the Secretary to assist in the development of energy research, development, demonstration, and commercial application plans and reports under sections 5905 and 5914 [1] of this title, under section 7321 of this title, and as otherwise provided in subchapters VIII through XI of this chapter. The Advisory Board shall also periodically review such plans and reports and their implementation in relation to the goals stated in section 13401 of this title, and report the results of such review to the Secretary and the Congress. Such report shall be included as part of the report required under section 5914 [1] of this title.

(c) Use of existing advisory board

The Secretary may use an existing advisory board to carry out the responsibilities described in subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXIII, §2302, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3092.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subchapters VIII through XI of this chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "titles XX through XXIII of this Act", meaning titles XX through XXIII of Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3057–3092, which enacted subchapters VIII through XI of this chapter and amended sections 5103, 5107, 5108, 5110, 5307, 5905, 12003, 12004, and 12006 of this title.

Section 5914 of this title, referred to in subsec. (b), was omitted from the Code.

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY BOARDS

Advisory boards established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless, in the case of a board established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such board is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such

2-year period, or in the case of a board established by Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See sections 3(2) and 14 of Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13523. Management plan

(a) Plan preparation

The Secretary, in consultation with the Advisory Board established under section 13522 of this title, shall prepare a management plan for the conduct of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of energy technologies that is consistent with the goals stated in section 13401 of this title.

(b) Contents of plan

The management plan under subsection (a) shall provide for—

(1) investigation of promising energy and energy efficiency resource technologies that have been identified as potentially significant future contributors to national energy security;

(2) development of energy and energy efficiency resource technologies that have the potential to reduce energy supply vulnerability, and to minimize adverse impacts on the environment, the global climate, and the economy; and

(3) creation of opportunities for export of energy and energy efficiency resource technologies from the United States that can enhance the Nation's competitiveness.

(c) Energy technology inventory and status report

As part of the management plan, the Secretary, with the advice of the Advisory Board established under section 13522 of this title, shall develop an inventory and status report of technologies to enhance energy supply and to improve the efficiency of energy end uses. The inventory and status report shall include fossil, renewable, nuclear, and energy conservation technologies which have not yet achieved the status of fully reliable and cost-competitive commercial availability, but which the Secretary projects may become available with additional research, development, and demonstration. The inventory and status report shall provide, for each technology—

(1) an assessment of its—

(A) degree of technological maturity; and

(B) principal research, development, and demonstration issues, including—

(i) the barriers posed by capital, operating, and maintenance costs;

(ii) technical performance; and

(iii) potential environmental impacts;

(2) the projected time frame for commercial availability, specifying at a minimum whether the technology will be commercially available in the near-term, mid-term, or long-term, whether there are too many uncertainties to project availability, or whether it is unlikely that the technology will ever be commercial; and

(3) a projection of the future cost-competitiveness of the technology in comparison with alternative technologies to provide the same energy service.

(d) Public comment

The Secretary shall publish the proposed management plan for a written public comment period of at least 90 days. The Secretary shall consider such comments and include a summary thereof in the management plan.

(e) Plan submission

Within one year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit the first management plan under this section to Congress. Thereafter, the Secretary shall submit a revised management plan

biennially, at the time of submittal of the President's annual budget submission to the Congress.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXIII, §2304, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3093.)

§13524. Costs related to decommissioning and storage and disposal of nuclear waste

(a) Award of contracts

(1) Prime contractors

In awarding contracts to perform nuclear hot cell services, the Secretary, in evaluating bids for such contracts, shall exclude from consideration costs related to the decommissioning of nuclear facilities or the storage and disposal of nuclear waste, if—

(A) one or more of the parties bidding to perform such services is a United States company that is subject to such costs; and

(B) one or more of the parties bidding to perform such services is a foreign company that is not subject to comparable costs.

(2) Subcontractors

Any person awarded a contract subject to the restrictions described in paragraph (1) who subcontracts with a person to perform the services described in such paragraph shall be subject to the same restrictions in evaluating bids among potential subcontractors, as the Secretary was subject to in evaluating bids among prime contractors.

(b) Issuance of regulations

The Secretary shall issue regulations not later than 90 days after October 24, 1992, to carry out the requirements of subsection (a).

(c) Definitions

As used in this section—

(1) the term "costs related to decommissioning of nuclear facilities" means any cost associated with the compliance with regulatory requirements governing the decommissioning of nuclear facilities licensed by the Nuclear Regulatory Commission;

(2) the term "costs related to storage and disposal of nuclear waste" means any costs, whether required by regulation or incurred as a matter of prudent business practice, associated with the storage or disposal of nuclear waste;

(3) the term "nuclear hot cell services" means services related to the examination of, or performance of various operations on, nuclear fuel rods, control assemblies, or other components that are emitting large quantities of ionizing radiation; and

(4) the term "nuclear waste" means any radioactive waste material subject to regulation by the Nuclear Regulatory Commission or the Department of Energy.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXIII, §2305, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3094.)

§13525. Limits on participation by companies

A company shall be eligible to receive financial assistance under subchapters VIII through XI of this chapter only if—

(1) the Secretary finds that the company's participation in any program under such subchapters would be in the economic interest of the United States, as evidenced by investments in the United States in research, development, and manufacturing (including, for example, the manufacture of major components or subassemblies in the United States); significant contributions to employment in the United States; an agreement with respect to any technology arising from assistance provided

under this section to promote the manufacture within the United States of products resulting from that technology (taking into account the goals of promoting the competitiveness of United States industry), and to procure parts and materials from competitive suppliers; and

(2) either—

(A) the company is a United States-owned company; or

(B) the Secretary finds that the company is incorporated in the United States and has a parent company which is incorporated in a country which affords to United States-owned companies opportunities, comparable to those afforded to any other company, to participate in any joint venture similar to those authorized under this Act; affords to United States-owned companies local investment opportunities comparable to those afforded to any other company; and affords adequate and effective protection for the intellectual property rights of United States-owned companies.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXIII, §2306, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3095.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subchapters VIII through XI of this chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "titles XX through XXIII of this Act", meaning titles XX through XXIII of Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3057–3092, which enacted subchapters VIII through XI of this chapter and amended sections 5103, 5107, 5108, 5110, 5307, 5905, 12003, 12004, and 12006 of this title.

This Act, referred to in par. (2)(B), is Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2776, known as the Energy Policy Act of 1992. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13201 of this title and Tables.

§13526. Uncosted obligations

(a) Report

Along with the submission of each of the President's annual budget requests to Congress, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report which—

(1) identifies the amount of Department of Energy funds that were, as of the end of the previous fiscal year—

(A) committed uncosted obligations; and

(B) uncommitted uncosted obligations;

(2) specifically describes the purposes for which all such funds are intended; and

(3) explains the effect that information contained in the report has had on the annual budget request for the Department of Energy being simultaneously submitted.

(b) Definitions

Within 90 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall submit a report to the Congress containing definitions of the terms "uncosted obligation", "committed uncosted obligation", and "uncommitted uncosted obligation" for purposes of reports to be submitted under subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXIII, §2307, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3096.)

SUBCHAPTER XII—MISCELLANEOUS

PART A—GENERAL PROVISIONS

§13541. Research, development, demonstration, and commercial application

activities

(a) Research, development, and demonstration

(1) Except as otherwise provided in this Act, research, development, and demonstration activities under this Act may be carried out under the procedures of the Federal Nonnuclear Research and Development Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5901–5920), the Atomic Energy Act of 1954 (42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.), or any other Act under which the Secretary is authorized to carry out such activities, but only to the extent the Secretary is authorized to carry out such activities under each such Act. An objective of any demonstration program under this Act shall be to determine the technical and commercial feasibility of energy technologies.

(2) Except as otherwise provided in this Act, in carrying out research, development, and demonstration programs and activities under this Act, the Secretary may use, to the extent authorized under applicable provisions of law, contracts, cooperative agreements, cooperative research and development agreements under the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980 [15 U.S.C. 3701 et seq.], grants, joint ventures, and any other form of agreement available to the Secretary.

(b) Commercial application

Except as otherwise provided in this Act, in carrying out commercial application programs and commercial application activities under this Act, the Secretary may use, to the extent authorized under applicable provisions of law, contracts, cooperative agreements, cooperative research and development agreements under the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980 [15 U.S.C. 3701 et seq.], grants, joint ventures, and any other form of agreement available to the Secretary. An objective of any commercial application program under this Act shall be to accelerate the transition of technologies from the research and development stage.

(c) "Joint venture" defined

For purposes of this section, the term "joint venture" has the meaning given the term "joint research and development venture" under section 4301(a)(6) and (b) of title 15, except that such term may apply under this section to research, development, demonstration, and commercial application joint ventures.

(d) Protection of information

Section 12(c)(7) of the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980 [15 U.S.C. 3710a(c)(7)], relating to the protection of information, shall apply to research, development, demonstration, and commercial application programs and activities under this Act.

(e) Guidelines and procedures

The Secretary shall provide guidelines and procedures for the transition, where appropriate, of energy technologies from research through development and demonstration under subsection (a) to commercial application under subsection (b). Nothing in this section shall preclude the Secretary from—

(1) entering into a contract, cooperative agreement, cooperative research and development agreement under the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980 [15 U.S.C. 3701 et seq.], grant, joint venture, or any other form of agreement available to the Secretary under this section that relates to research, development, demonstration, and commercial application; or

(2) extending a contract, cooperative agreement, cooperative research and development agreement under the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980, grant, joint venture, or any other form of agreement available to the Secretary that relates to research, development, and demonstration to cover commercial application.

(f) Application of section

This section shall not apply to any contract, cooperative agreement, cooperative research and development agreement under the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980 [15 U.S.C. 3701 et seq.], grant, joint venture, or any other form of agreement available to the Secretary that is in effect as of October 24, 1992.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXX, §3001, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3126.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b), and (d), is Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2776, known as the Energy Policy Act of 1992. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13201 of this title and Tables.

The Federal Nonnuclear Research and Development Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), probably means the Federal Nonnuclear Energy Research and Development Act of 1974, Pub. L. 93–577, Dec. 31, 1974, 88 Stat. 1878, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 74 (§5901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5901 of this title and Tables.

The Atomic Energy Act of 1954, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is act Aug. 1, 1946, ch. 724, as added by act Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1073, §1, 68 Stat. 919, which is classified principally to chapter 23 (§2011 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2011 of this title and Tables.

The Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2), (b), (e)(1), (2), and (f), is Pub. L. 96–480, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2311, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 63 (§3701 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3701 of Title 15 and Tables.

§13542. Cost sharing

(a) Research and development

Except as otherwise provided in this Act, for research and development programs carried out under this Act, the Secretary shall require a commitment from non-Federal sources of at least 20 percent of the cost of the project. The Secretary may reduce or eliminate the non-Federal requirement under this subsection if the Secretary determines that the research and development is of a basic or fundamental nature.

(b) Demonstration and commercial application

Except as otherwise provided in this Act, the Secretary shall require at least 50 percent of the costs directly and specifically related to any demonstration or commercial application project under this Act to be provided from non-Federal sources. The Secretary may reduce the non-Federal requirement under this subsection if the Secretary determines that the reduction is necessary and appropriate considering the technological risks involved in the project and is necessary to meet the objectives of this Act.

(c) Calculation of amount

In calculating the amount of the non-Federal commitment under paragraph (1) or (2), the Secretary shall include cash, personnel, services, equipment, and other resources.

(d) Tennessee Valley Authority

Funds derived by the Tennessee Valley Authority from its power program may be used for all or part of any cost sharing requirements under this section, except to the extent that such funds are provided by annual appropriation Acts.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXX, §3002, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3127.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), is Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2776, known as the Energy Policy Act of 1992. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13201 of this title and Tables.

PART B—OTHER MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§13551. Repealed. Pub. L. 104–182, title III, §301, Aug. 6, 1996, 110 Stat. 1683

Section, Pub. L. 102–486, title XXX, §3013, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3128, related to geothermal heat pumps.

§13552. Use of energy futures for fuel purchases

(a) Fuel study

The Secretary shall conduct a study—

(1) to ascertain if the use of energy futures and options contracts could provide cost-effective protection for Government entities (including Government purchases for military purposes and for the Strategic Petroleum Reserve) and consumer cooperatives (or any organization whose purpose is to purchase fuel in bulk) from unanticipated surges in the price of fuel; and

(2) to ascertain how such Government entities or consumer cooperatives may be educated in the prudent use of energy futures and options contracts to maximize their purchasing effectiveness, protect themselves against unanticipated surges in the price of fuel, and minimize fuel costs.

(b) Pilot program

The Secretary shall conduct a pilot program, commencing not later than 30 days after the transmission of the study required in subsection (b),[1] to educate such governmental entities, consumer cooperatives, or other organizations on the prudent and cost-effective use of energy futures and options contracts to increase their protection against unanticipated surges in the price of fuel and thereby increase the efficiency of their fuel purchase or assistance programs.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXX, §3014, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3128; Pub. L. 105–362, title IV, §401(f), Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3282.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subsection (b), referred to in subsec. (b), was repealed and subsec. (c) of this section was redesignated (b) by Pub. L. 105–362, title IV, §401(f), Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3282. See 1998 Amendment note below.

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 105–362 redesignated subsecs. (c) and (d) as (b) and (c), respectively, and struck out heading and text of former subsec. (b). Text read as follows: "The Secretary, no later than 12 months after October 24, 1992, shall transmit the study required in this section to the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13553. Energy subsidy study

(a) In general

The Secretary shall contract with the National Academy of Sciences to conduct a study of energy subsidies that—

(1) are in effect on October 24, 1992; or

(2) have been in effect prior to October 24, 1992.

(b) Report to Congress

Not later than 18 months after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall transmit to the Congress,[1] the

results of such study to be accompanied by recommendations for legislation, if any.

(c) Contents

(1) In general

The study shall identify and quantify the direct and indirect subsidies and other legal and institutional factors that influence decisions in the marketplace concerning fuels and energy technologies.

(2) Topics for examination

The study shall examine—

(A) fuel and technology choices that are—

(i) available on October 24, 1992; or

(ii) reasonably foreseeable on October 24, 1992;

(B) production subsidies for the extraction of raw materials;

(C) subsidies encouraging investment in large capital projects;

(D) indemnification;

(E) fuel cycle subsidies, including waste disposal;

(F) government research and development support; and

(G) other relevant incentives and disincentives.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $500,000 for each of the fiscal years 1993 and 1994.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXX, §3015, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3129.)

[1] *So in original. The comma probably should not appear.*

§13554. Tar sands

(a) Policy

It is the policy of the United States to promote the development and production, by all means consistent with sound engineering, economic, and environmental practices, of deposits of tar sands.

(b) "Tar sands" defined

(1) For purposes of this section, the term "tar sands" means any consolidated or unconsolidated rock (other than coal, oil shale, or gilsonite) that either—

(A) contains a hydrocarbonaceous material with a gas-free viscosity, at original reservoir temperature, greater than 10,000 centipoise; or

(B) contains a hydrocarbonaceous material and is produced by mining or quarrying.

(2) Nothing in this section is intended or shall be construed to affect in any way the definition of the term tar sands under any other provision of Federal law.

(c) Study

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of the Interior, shall submit a study to the House of Representatives and the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate within one year after October 24, 1992. Such study shall identify and evaluate the development potential of sources of tar sands in the United States. The study shall also identify and evaluate processes for extracting oil from the identified tar sand sources, including existing tar sands waste tailings, and evaluate the environmental benefits of, and the potential for co-production of minerals and metals from, such processes.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 1993 and 1994 to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXX, §3016, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3129.)

§13555. Consultative Commission on Western Hemisphere Energy and Environment

(a) Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) there is growing mutual economic interdependence among the countries of the Western Hemisphere;

(2) energy and environmental issues are intrinsically linked and must be considered together when formulating policy on the broader issue of sustainable economic development for the Western Hemisphere as a whole;

(3) when developing their respective energy infrastructures, countries in the Western Hemisphere must consider existing and emerging environmental constraints, and do so in a way that results in sustainable long-term economic growth;

(4) the coordination of respective national energy and environmental policies of the governments of the Western Hemisphere could be substantially improved through regular consultation among these countries;

(5) the development, production and consumption of energy can affect environmental quality, and the environmental consequences of energy-related activities are not confined within national boundaries, but are regional and global in scope;

(6) although the Western Hemisphere is richly endowed with indigenous energy resources, an insufficient energy supply would severely constrain future opportunities for sustainable economic development and growth in each of these member countries; and

(7) the energy markets of the United States are linked with those in other countries of the Western Hemisphere and the world.

(b) "Commission" defined

For purposes of this section, the term "Commission" means the Consultative Commission on Western Hemisphere Energy and Environment.

(c) Negotiations

The President is authorized to direct the United States representative to the Organization of American States to initiate negotiations with the Organization of American States for the establishment of a Consultative Commission on Western Hemisphere Energy and Environment under the auspices of the Organization of American States.

(d) The Commission

In the course of the negotiations, the following shall be pursued:

(1) Objectives

The objectives of the Commission shall be—

(A) to evaluate from the viewpoint of the Western Hemisphere as a whole the energy and environmental situations, trends, and policies of the countries of the participating governments necessary to support sustainable economic development;

(B) to recommend to the participating governments actions, policies, and institutional arrangements that will enhance cooperation and policy coordination among their respective countries in the future development and use of indigenous energy resources and technologies, and in the future development and implementation of measures to protect the environment of the Western Hemisphere; and

(C) to recommend to the participating governments actions and policies that will enhance

energy and environmental cooperation and coordination among the countries of the Western Hemisphere and the world.

(2) Composition of Commission

The Commission shall include representatives of—

(A) the respective foreign energy and environmental ministries or departments of the participating governments;

(B) the parliamentary or legislative bodies with legislative responsibilities for energy and environmental matters; and

(C) other governmental and non-governmental observers appointed by the heads of each participating government on the basis of their experience and expertise.

(3) Secretariat

A small secretariat shall be chosen by the participating governments for their expertise in the areas of energy and the environment.

(4) Sunset provision

The Commission's authority—

(A) shall terminate five years from the date of the agreement under which it was created; and

(B) may be extended for a five-year term at the expiration of the previous term by agreement of the participating governments.

(e) Report

The President shall, within one year after October 24, 1992, report to the Committee on Energy and Commerce and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, and to the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, on the progress toward the establishment of the Commission and achievement of the purposes of this section.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXX, §3020, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3131.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104–14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress. Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives, and jurisdiction over matters relating to securities and exchanges and insurance generally transferred to Committee on Financial Services of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 5, One Hundred Seventh Congress, Jan. 3, 2001.

§13556. Disadvantaged business enterprises

(a) General rule

To the extent practicable, the head of each agency shall provide that the obligation of not less than 10 percent of the total combined amounts obligated for contracts and subcontracts by each agency under this Act and amendments made by this Act pursuant to competitive procedures within the meaning of either division C (except sections 3302, 3307(e), 3501(b), 3509, 3906, 4710, and 4711) of subtitle I of title 41, or chapter 137 of title 10, shall be expended either with—

(1) small business concerns controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals or women;

(2) historically Black colleges and universities;

(3) colleges and universities having a student body in which more than 20 percent of the students are Hispanic Americans or Native Americans; or

(4) qualified HUBZone small business concerns.

(b) Definitions

For purposes of this section, the following definitions shall apply:

(1) The term "small business concern" has the meaning such term has under section 632 of title 15. However, for purposes of contracts and subcontracts requiring engineering services the applicable size standard shall be that established for military and aerospace equipment and military weapons.

(2) The term "socially and economically disadvantaged individuals" has the meaning such term has under section 637(d) of title 15 and relevant subcontracting regulations promulgated pursuant thereto.

(3) The term "qualified HUBZone small business concern" has the meaning given that term in section 632(p) of title 15.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXX, §3021, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3133; Pub. L. 105–135, title VI, §604(g), Dec. 2, 1997, 111 Stat. 2634.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2776, known as the Energy Policy Act of 1992. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13201 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), "division C (except sections 3302, 3307(e), 3501(b), 3509, 3906, 4710, and 4711) of subtitle I of title 41" substituted for "the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 (41 U.S.C. 251 et seq.)" on authority of Pub. L. 111–350, §6(c), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 3854, which Act enacted Title 41, Public Contracts.

AMENDMENTS

1997—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 105–135, §604(g)(1), added par. (4).
Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 105–135, §604(g)(2), added par. (3).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1997 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 105–135 effective Oct. 1, 1997, see section 3 of Pub. L. 105–135, set out as a note under section 631 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade.

§13557. Sense of Congress on risk assessments

It is the sense of Congress that Federal agencies conducting assessments of risks to human health and the environment from energy technology, production, transport, transmission, distribution, storage, use, or conservation activities shall use sound and objective scientific practices in assessing such risks, shall consider the best available science (including peer reviewed studies), and shall include a description of the weight of the scientific evidence concerning such risks.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXX, §3022, as added Pub. L. 109–58, title XIV, §1401, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1061.)

SUBCHAPTER XIII—CLEAN AIR COAL PROGRAM

§13571. Purposes

The purposes of this subchapter are to—

(1) promote national energy policy and energy security, diversity, and economic competitiveness benefits that result from the increased use of coal;

(2) mitigate financial risks, reduce the cost of clean coal generation, and increase the marketplace acceptance of clean coal generation and pollution control equipment and processes; and

(3) facilitate the environmental performance of clean coal generation.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXXI, §3101, as added Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §421(a), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 757.)

§13572. Authorization of program

(a) In general

The Secretary shall carry out a program of financial assistance to—

(1) facilitate the production and generation of coal-based power, through the deployment of clean coal electric generating equipment and processes that, compared to equipment or processes that are in operation on a full scale—

(A) improve—

(i) energy efficiency; or

(ii) environmental performance consistent with relevant Federal and State clean air requirements, including those promulgated under the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.); and

(B) are not yet cost competitive; and

(2) facilitate the utilization of existing coal-based electricity generation plants through projects that—

(A) deploy advanced air pollution control equipment and processes; and

(B) are designed to voluntarily enhance environmental performance above current applicable obligations under the Clean Air Act and State implementation efforts pursuant to such Act.

(b) Financial criteria

As determined by the Secretary for a particular project, financial assistance under this subchapter shall be in the form of—

(1) cost-sharing of an appropriate percentage of the total project cost, not to exceed 50 percent as calculated under section 16352 of this title; or

(2) financial assistance, including grants, cooperative agreements, or loans as authorized under this Act or other statutory authority of the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXXI, §3102, as added Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §421(a), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 757.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Clean Air Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(A)(ii), (2)(B), is act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, 69 Stat. 322, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 85 (§7401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2776, known as the Energy Policy Act of 1992. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13201 of this title and Tables.

§13573. Generation projects

(a) Eligible projects

Projects supported under section 13572(a)(1) of this title may include—

(1) equipment or processes previously supported by a Department of Energy program;

(2) advanced combustion equipment and processes that the Secretary determines will be cost-effective and could substantially contribute to meeting environmental or energy needs, including gasification, gasification fuel cells, gasification coproduction, oxidation combustion techniques, ultra-supercritical boilers, and chemical looping; and

(3) hybrid gasification/combustion systems, including systems integrating fuel cells with

gasification or combustion units.

(b) Criteria

The Secretary shall establish criteria for the selection of generation projects under section 13572(a)(1) of this title. The Secretary may modify the criteria as appropriate to reflect improvements in equipment, except that the criteria shall not be modified to be less stringent. The selection criteria shall include—

(1) prioritization of projects whose installation is likely to result in significant air quality improvements in nonattainment air quality areas;

(2) prioritization of projects whose installation is likely to result in lower emission rates of pollution;

(3) prioritization of projects that result in the repowering or replacement of older, less efficient units;

(4) documented broad interest in the procurement of the equipment and utilization of the processes used in the projects by owners or operators of facilities for electricity generation;

(5) equipment and processes beginning in 2006 through 2011 that are projected to achieve a thermal efficiency of—

(A) 40 percent for coal of more than 9,000 Btu per pound based on higher heating values;

(B) 38 percent for coal of 7,000 to 9,000 Btu per pound passed on higher heating values; and

(C) 36 percent for coal of less than 7,000 Btu per pound based on higher heating values;

except that energy used for coproduction or cogeneration shall not be counted in calculating the thermal efficiency under this paragraph; and

(6) equipment and processes beginning in 2012 and 2013 that are projected to achieve a thermal efficiency of—

(A) 45 percent for coal of more than 9,000 Btu per pound based on higher heating values;

(B) 44 percent for coal of 7,000 to 9,000 Btu per pound passed on higher heating values; and

(C) 40 percent for coal of less than 7,000 Btu per pound based on higher heating values;

except that energy used for coproduction or cogeneration shall not be counted in calculating the thermal efficiency under this paragraph.

(c) Program balance and priority

In carrying out the program under section 13572(a)(1) of this title, the Secretary shall ensure, to the extent practicable, that—

(1) between 25 percent and 75 percent of the projects supported are for the sole purpose of electrical generation; and

(2) priority is given to projects that use electrical generation equipment and processes that have been developed and demonstrated and applied in actual production of electricity, but are not yet cost-competitive, and that achieve greater efficiency and environmental performance.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out section 13572(a)(1) of this title—

(1) $250,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(2) $350,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;

(3) $400,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2009 through 2012; and

(4) $300,000,000 for fiscal year 2013.

(e) Applicability

No technology, or level of emission reduction, shall be treated as adequately demonstrated for purpose [1] of section 7411 of this title, achievable for purposes of section 7479 of this title, or achievable in practice for purposes of section 7501 of this title solely by reason of the use of such technology, or the achievement of such emission reduction, by one or more facilities receiving assistance under section 13572(a)(1) of this title.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXXI, §3103, as added Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §421(a), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 758.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "purposes".*

§13574. Air quality enhancement program

(a) Eligible projects

Projects supported under section 13572(a)(2) of this title shall—

(1) utilize technologies that meet relevant Federal and State clean air requirements applicable to the unit or facility, including being adequately demonstrated for purposes of section 7411 of this title, achievable for purposes of section 7479 of this title, or achievable in practice for purposes of section 7501 of this title; or

(2) utilize equipment or processes that exceed relevant Federal or State clean air requirements applicable to the unit or facilities included in the projects by achieving greater efficiency or environmental performance.

(b) Priority in project selection

In making an award under section 13572(a)(2) of this title, the Secretary shall give priority to—

(1) projects whose installation is likely to result in significant air quality improvements in nonattainment air quality areas or substantially reduce the emission level of criteria pollutants and mercury air emissions;

(2) projects for pollution control that result in the mitigation or collection of more than 1 pollutant; and

(3) projects designed to allow the use of the waste byproducts or other byproducts of the equipment.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out section 13572(a)(2) of this title—

(1) $300,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;
(2) $100,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;
(3) $40,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;
(4) $30,000,000 for fiscal year 2010; and
(5) $30,000,000 for fiscal year 2011.

(d) Applicability

No technology, or level of emission reduction under subsection (a)(2) shall be treated as adequately demonstrated for purpose of Section [1] 7411 of this title, achievable for purposes of section 7479 of this title, or achievable in practice for purposes of section 7501 of this title solely by reason of the use of such technology, or the achievement of such emission reduction, by one or more facilities receiving assistance under section 13572(a)(2) of this title.

(Pub. L. 102–486, title XXXI, §3104, as added Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §421(a), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 759.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "purposes of section".*

CHAPTER 135—RESIDENCY AND SERVICE REQUIREMENTS IN FEDERALLY ASSISTED HOUSING

SUBCHAPTER I—STANDARDS AND OBLIGATIONS OF RESIDENCY IN FEDERALLY

ASSISTED HOUSING

SUBCHAPTER I—STANDARDS AND OBLIGATIONS OF RESIDENCY IN FEDERALLY ASSISTED HOUSING

§13601. Compliance by owners as condition of Federal assistance

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall require owners of federally assisted housing (as such term is defined in section 13641(2) of this title), as a condition of receiving housing assistance for such housing, to comply with the procedures and requirements established under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §641, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3820.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Chapter applicable upon expiration of 6-month period beginning Oct. 28, 1992, except as otherwise provided, see section 13642 of this title.

§13602. Compliance with criteria for occupancy as requirement for tenancy

In selecting tenants for occupancy of units in federally assisted housing, an owner of such housing

shall utilize the criteria for occupancy in federally assisted housing established by the Secretary, by regulation, under section 13603 of this title. If an owner determines that an applicant for occupancy in the housing does not meet such criteria, the owner may deny such applicant occupancy.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §642, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3821.)

§13603. Establishment of criteria for occupancy

(a) Task force

(1) Establishment

To assist the Secretary in establishing reasonable criteria for occupancy in federally assisted housing, the Secretary shall establish a task force to review all rules, policy statements, handbooks, technical assistance memoranda, and other relevant documents issued by the Department of Housing and Urban Development on the standards and obligations governing residency in federally assisted housing and make recommendations to the Secretary for the establishment of such criteria for occupancy.

(2) Members

The Secretary shall appoint members to the task force, which shall include individuals representing the interests of owners, managers, and tenants of federally assisted housing, public housing agencies, owner and tenant advocacy organizations, persons with disabilities and disabled families, organizations assisting homeless individuals, and social service, mental health, and other nonprofit servicer providers who serve federally assisted housing.

(3) Compensation

Members of the task force shall not receive compensation for serving on the task force.

(4) Duties

The task force shall—

(A) review all existing standards, regulations, and guidelines governing occupancy and tenant selection policies in federally assisted housing;

(B) review all existing standards, regulations, and guidelines governing lease provisions and other rules of occupancy for federally assisted housing;

(C) determine whether the standards, regulations, and guidelines reviewed under subparagraphs (A) and (B) provide sufficient guidance to owners and managers of federally assisted housing to—

(i) develop procedures for preselection inquiries sufficient to determine the capacity of applicants to comply with reasonable lease terms and conditions of occupancy;

(ii) utilize leases that prohibit behavior which endangers the health or safety of other tenants or violates the rights of other tenants to peaceful enjoyment of the premises;

(iii) assess the need to provide, and appropriate measures for providing, reasonable accommodations required under the Fair Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 3601 et seq.] and section 794 of title 29 for persons with various types of disabilities; and

(iv) comply with civil rights laws and regulations;

(D) propose criteria for occupancy in federally assisted housing, standards for the reasonable performance and behavior of tenants of federally assisted housing, compliance standards consistent with the reasonable accommodation of the requirements of the Fair Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 3601 et seq.] and section 794 of title 29, standards for compliance with other civil rights laws, and procedures for the eviction of tenants not complying with such standards consistent with sections 1437d and 1437f of this title; and

(E) report to the Congress and the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development pursuant to paragraph (7).

(5) Procedure

In carrying out its duties, the task force shall hold public hearings and receive written comments for a period of not less than 60 days.

(6) Support

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall cooperate fully with the task force and shall provide support staff and office space to assist the task force in carrying out its duties.

(7) Reports

Not later than 3 months after October 28, 1992, the task force shall submit to the Secretary and the Congress a preliminary report describing its initial actions. Not later than 6 months after October 28, 1992, the task force shall submit a report to the Secretary and the Congress, which shall include—

(A) a description of its findings; and

(B) recommendations to revise such standards, regulations, and guidelines to provide accurate and complete guidance to owners and managers of federally assisted housing as determined necessary under paragraph (4).

(b) Rulemaking

(1) Authority

The Secretary shall, by regulation, establish criteria for selection of tenants for occupancy in federally assisted housing and lease provisions for such housing.

(2) Standards

The criteria shall provide sufficient guidance to owners and managers of federally assisted housing to enable them to (A) select tenants capable of complying with reasonable lease terms, (B) utilize leases prohibiting behavior which endangers the health or safety of others or violates the right of other tenants to peaceful enjoyment of the premises, (C) comply with legal requirements to make reasonable accommodations for persons with disabilities, and (D) comply with civil rights laws. The criteria shall be consistent with the requirements under subsections (k) and (l) of section 1437d of this title and section 1437f(d)(1) of this title and any similar contract and lease requirements for federally assisted housing. In establishing the criteria, the Secretary shall take into consideration the report of the task force under subsection (a)(7).

(3) Procedure

Not later than 90 days after the submission of the final report under subsection (a)(7), the Secretary shall issue a notice of proposed rulemaking of the regulations under this subsection providing for notice and opportunity for public comment regarding the regulations, pursuant to the provisions of section 553 of title 5 (notwithstanding subsections (a)(2), (b)(B), and (d)(3) of such section). The duration of the period for public comment under such section 553 shall not be less than 60 days. The Secretary shall issue final regulations under this subsection not later than the expiration of the 60-day period beginning upon the conclusion of the comment period, which shall take effect upon issuance.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §643, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3821.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Fair Housing Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(C)(iii), (D), is title VIII of Pub. L. 90–284, Apr. 11, 1968, 82 Stat. 81, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter I (§3601 et seq.) of chapter 45 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

§13604. Assisted applications

(a) Authority

The Secretary shall provide that any individual or family applying for occupancy in federally assisted housing may include in the application for the housing the name, address, phone number, and other relevant information of a family member, friend, or social, health, advocacy, or other organization, and that the owner shall treat such information as confidential.

(b) Maintenance of information

The Secretary shall require the owner of any federally assisted housing receiving an application including such information to maintain such information for any applicants who become tenants of the housing, for the purposes of facilitating contact by the owner with such person or organization to assist in providing any services or special care for the tenant and assist in resolving any relevant tenancy issues arising during the tenancy of such tenant.

(c) Limitations

An owner of federally assisted housing may not require any individual or family applying for occupancy in the housing to provide the information described in subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §644, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3823.)

SUBCHAPTER II—AUTHORITY TO PROVIDE PREFERENCES FOR ELDERLY RESIDENTS AND UNITS FOR DISABLED RESIDENTS IN CERTAIN SECTION 8 ASSISTED HOUSING

§13611. Authority

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, an owner of a covered section 8 housing project (as such term is defined in section 13619 of this title) designed primarily for occupancy by elderly families may, in selecting tenants for units in the project that become available for occupancy, give preference to elderly families who have applied for occupancy in the housing, subject to the requirements of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §651, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3823.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle D of title VI of Pub. L. 102–550, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3823, which enacted this subchapter and amended section 1437f of this title.

§13612. Reservation of units for disabled families

(a) Requirement

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, for any project for which an owner gives preference in occupancy to elderly families pursuant to section 13611 of this title, such owner shall (subject to sections 13613, 13614, and 13615 of this title) reserve units in the project for occupancy only by disabled families who are not elderly or near-elderly families (and who have applied for occupancy in the housing) in the number determined under subsection (b).

(b) Number of units

Each owner required to reserve units in a project for occupancy under subsection (a) shall reserve a number of units in the project that is not less than the lesser of—

(1) the number of units equivalent to the higher of—

(A) the percentage of units in the project that were occupied by such disabled families upon October 28, 1992; or

(B) the percentage of units in the project that were occupied by such families upon January 1,

1992; or

(2) 10 percent of the number of units in the project.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §652, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3823.)

§13613. Secondary preferences

(a) Insufficient elderly families

If an owner of a covered section 8 housing project in which elderly families are given a preference for occupancy pursuant to section 13611 of this title determines (in accordance with regulations established by the Secretary) that there are insufficient numbers of elderly families who have applied for occupancy in the housing to fill all the units in the project not reserved under section 13612 of this title, the owner may give preference for occupancy of such units to disabled families who are near-elderly families and have applied for occupancy in the housing.

(b) Insufficient non-elderly disabled families

If an owner of a covered section 8 housing project in which elderly families are given a preference for occupancy pursuant to section 13611 of this title determines (in accordance with regulations established by the Secretary) that there are insufficient numbers of disabled families who are not elderly or near-elderly families and have applied for occupancy in the housing to fill all the units in the project reserved under section 13612 of this title, the owner may give preference for occupancy of units so reserved to disabled families who are near-elderly families and have applied for occupancy in the housing.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §653, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3824.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Covered section 8 housing, referred to in text, is defined in section 13619 of this title.

§13614. General availability of units

If an owner of a covered section 8 housing project in which disabled families who are near-elderly families are given a preference for occupancy pursuant to subsection (a) or (b) of section 13613 of this title determines (in accordance with regulations established by the Secretary) that there are an insufficient number of such families to fill all the units in the project for which the preference is applicable, the owner shall make such units generally available for occupancy by families who have applied, and are eligible, for occupancy in the housing, without regard to the preferences established pursuant to this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §654, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3824.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Covered section 8 housing, referred to in text, is defined in section 13619 of this title.

§13615. Preference within groups

Among disabled families qualifying for occupancy in units reserved under section 13612 of this title, and among elderly families and near-elderly families qualifying for preference for occupancy pursuant to section 13611 or 13613 of this title, preference for occupancy in units that are assisted under section 1437f of this title shall be given to disabled families according to any preferences established under any system established under section 1437f(d)(1)(A) of this title by the public housing agency.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §655, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3824; Pub. L. 104–99, title IV,

§402(d)(6)(C), Jan. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 43; Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §514(b)(2)(B), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2548.)

AMENDMENTS

1998—Pub. L. 105–276 substituted "shall be given to disabled families according to any preferences established under any system established under section 1437f(d)(1)(A) of this title by the public housing agency." for "shall be given to disabled families according to the preferences for occupancy referred to in section 1437f(d)(1)(A)(i) of this title and the first sentence of section 1437f(o)(3)(B) of this title, to elderly families according to such preferences, and to near-elderly families according to such preferences, respectively."

1996—Pub. L. 104–99, §402(d)(6)(C), (f), temporarily substituted "any preferences" for "the preferences for occupancy referred to in section 1437f(d)(1)(A)(i) of this title and the first sentence of section 1437f(o)(3)(B) of this title, to elderly families according to such preferences, and to near-elderly families according to such preferences, respectively". See Effective and Termination Dates of 1996 Amendment note below.

EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–99 effective Jan. 26, 1996, only for fiscal years 1996, 1997, and 1998, and to cease to be effective Oct. 21, 1998, see section 402(f) of Pub. L. 104–99, as amended, and section 514(f) of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as notes under section 1437a of this title.

§13616. Prohibition of evictions

Any tenant who, except for reservation of a percentage of the units of a project pursuant to section 13612 of this title or any preference for occupancy established pursuant to this subchapter, is lawfully residing in a dwelling unit in a covered section 8 housing project, may not be evicted or otherwise required to vacate such unit because of the reservation or preferences or because of any action taken by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development or the owner of the project pursuant to this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §656, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3824.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Covered section 8 housing, referred to in text, is defined in section 13619 of this title.

§13617. Treatment of covered section 8 housing not subject to elderly preference

If an owner of any covered section 8 housing project designed primarily for occupancy by elderly families does not give preference in occupancy to elderly families as authorized in this subchapter, then elderly families (as such term was defined in section 1437a of this title before October 28, 1992) shall be eligible for occupancy in such housing to the same extent that such families were eligible before October 28, 1992.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §657, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3825.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Covered section 8 housing, referred to in text, is defined in section 13619 of this title.

§13618. Treatment of other federally assisted housing

(a) Restricted occupancy

An owner of any federally assisted project (or portion of a project) as described in subparagraphs (D), (E), and (F) of section 13641(2) of this title that was designed for occupancy by elderly families

may continue to restrict occupancy in such project (or portion) to elderly families in accordance with the rules, standards, and agreements governing occupancy in such housing in effect at the time of the development of the housing.

(b) Prohibition of evictions

Any tenant who is lawfully residing in a dwelling unit in a housing project described in subsection (a) may not be evicted or otherwise required to vacate such unit because of any reservation or preferences under this subchapter or because of any action taken by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development or the owner of the project pursuant to this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §658, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3825.)

§13619. "Covered section 8 housing" defined

For purposes of this subchapter, the term "covered section 8 housing" means housing described in section 13641(2)(G) of this title that was originally designed for occupancy by elderly families.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §659, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3825.)

§13620. Study

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall conduct a study to determine the extent to which Federal housing programs serve elderly families, disabled families, and families with children, in relation to the need of such families who are eligible for assistance under such programs. The Secretary shall submit a report to the Congress describing the study and the findings of the study not later than the expiration of the 1-year period beginning on October 28, 1992.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §661, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3825.)

SUBCHAPTER III—SERVICE COORDINATORS FOR ELDERLY AND DISABLED RESIDENTS OF FEDERALLY ASSISTED HOUSING

§13631. Requirement to provide service coordinators

(a) In general

To the extent that amounts are made available for providing service coordinators under this section, the Secretary shall require owners of covered federally assisted housing projects (as such term is defined in subsection (d)) receiving such amounts to provide for employing or otherwise retaining the services of one or more individuals to coordinate the provision of supportive services for elderly and disabled families residing in the projects (in this section referred to as a "service coordinator"). No such elderly or disabled family may be required to accept services.

(b) Responsibilities

Each service coordinator of a covered federally assisted housing project provided pursuant to this subtitle [1] or the amendments made by this subtitle— [1]

(1) shall consult with the owner of the housing, tenants, any tenant organizations, any resident management organizations, service providers, and any other appropriate persons, to identify the particular needs and characteristics of elderly and disabled families who reside in the project and any supportive services related to such needs and characteristics;

(2) shall manage and coordinate the provision of such services for residents of the project;

(3) may provide training to tenants of the project in the obligations of tenancy or coordinate such training;

(4) shall meet the minimum qualifications and standards required under section 8011(d)(4) of this title; and

(5) may carry out other appropriate activities for residents of the project.

(c) Included services

Supportive services referred to under subsection (b)(1) may include health-related services, mental health services, services for nonmedical counseling, meals, transportation, personal care, bathing, toileting, housekeeping, chore assistance, safety, group and socialization activities, assistance with medications (in accordance with any applicable State laws), case management, personal emergency response, education and outreach regarding telemarketing fraud in accordance with the standards issued under subsection (f), and other appropriate services. The services may be provided through any agency of the Federal Government or any other public or private department, agency, or organization.

(d) Covered federally assisted housing

For purposes of this subtitle,[1] the term "covered federally assisted housing" means housing that is federally assisted housing (as such term is defined in section 13641(2) of this title), except that such term does not include housing described in subparagraphs (C) and (D) of such section.

(e) Services for low-income elderly or disabled families residing in vicinity of certain projects

To the extent only that this section applies to service coordinators for covered federally assisted housing described in subparagraphs (B), (C), (D), (E), (F), and (G) of section 13641(2) of this title, any reference in this section to elderly or disabled residents of a project shall be construed to include low-income elderly or disabled families living in the vicinity of such project.

(f) Protection against telemarketing fraud

(1) In general

The Secretary, in coordination with the Secretary of Health and Human Services, shall establish standards for service coordinators in federally assisted housing who are providing education and outreach to elderly persons residing in such housing regarding telemarketing fraud. The standards shall be designed to ensure that such education and outreach informs such elderly persons of the dangers of telemarketing fraud and facilitates the investigation and prosecution of telemarketers engaging in fraud against such residents.

(2) Contents

The standards established under this subsection shall require that any such education and outreach be provided in a manner that—

(A) informs such residents of—

(i) the prevalence of telemarketing fraud targeted against elderly persons;

(ii) how telemarketing fraud works;

(iii) how to identify telemarketing fraud;

(iv) how to protect themselves against telemarketing fraud, including an explanation of the dangers of providing bank account, credit card, or other financial or personal information over the telephone to unsolicited callers;

(v) how to report suspected attempts at telemarketing fraud; and

(vi) their consumer protection rights under Federal law;

(B) provides such other information as the Secretary considers necessary to protect such residents against fraudulent telemarketing; and

(C) disseminates the information provided by appropriate means, and in determining such appropriate means, the Secretary shall consider on-site presentations at federally assisted housing, public service announcements, a printed manual or pamphlet, an Internet website, and telephone outreach to residents whose names appear on "mooch lists" confiscated from fraudulent telemarketers.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §671, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3826; Pub. L. 106–569, title VIII, §851(b), (c)(2), Dec. 27, 2000, 114 Stat. 3024.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subtitle, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (d), means subtitle E of title VI of Pub. L. 102–550, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3826, which enacted this subchapter, amended sections 1437f, 1437g, and 8011 of this title and section 1701q of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 1701q of Title 12.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–569, §851(b)(1), in first sentence, substituted "for providing service coordinators under this section," for "to carry out this subtitle pursuant to the amendments made by this subtitle,".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 106–569, §851(c)(2)(A), in first sentence, inserted "education and outreach regarding telemarketing fraud in accordance with the standards issued under subsection (f)," after "response,".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 106–569, §851(b)(2), inserted closing parenthesis after "section 13641(2) of this title".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 106–569, §851(b)(3), added subsec. (e).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 106–569, §851(c)(2)(B), added subsec. (f).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2000 AMENDMENT

Amendment by title VIII of Pub. L. 106–569 effective Dec. 27, 2000, unless effectiveness or applicability upon another date certain is specifically provided for, with provisions relating to effect of regulatory authority, see section 803 of Pub. L. 106–569, set out as a note under section 1701q of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13632. Grants for costs of providing service coordinators in certain federally assisted housing

(a) Authority

The Secretary may make grants under this section to owners of federally assisted housing projects described in subparagraphs (B), (C), (D), (E), (F), and (G) of section 13641(2) of this title. Any grant amounts shall be used for the costs of employing or otherwise retaining the services of one or more service coordinators under section 13631 of this title to coordinate the provision of any services within the project for residents of the project who are elderly families and disabled families (as such terms are defined in section 13641 of this title). A service coordinator funded with a grant under this section for a project may provide services to low-income elderly or disabled families living in the vicinity of such project.

(b) Application and selection

The Secretary shall provide for the form and manner of applications for grants under this section and for selection of applicants to receive such grants.

(c) Eligible project expense

For any federally assisted housing project described in subparagraph (B), (C), (D), (E), (F), or (G) of section 13641(2) of this title that does not receive a grant under this section, the cost of employing or otherwise retaining the services of one or more service coordinators under section 13631 of this title and not more than 15 percent of the cost of providing services to the residents of the project shall be considered an eligible project expense, but only to the extent that amounts are available from project rent and other income for such costs.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §676, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3828; Pub. L. 106–569, title VIII, §851(a), Dec. 27, 2000, 114 Stat. 3023.)

AMENDMENTS

2000—Pub. L. 106–569, §851(a)(1), substituted "certain federally assisted housing" for "multifamily

housing assisted under National Housing Act" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–569, §851(a)(2), substituted "subparagraphs (B), (C), (D), (E), (F), and (G) of section 13641(2) of this title" for "subparagraphs (E) and (F) of section 13641(2) of this title", made technical amendment to reference in original act which appears in text as reference to section 13631 of this title, and inserted at end "A service coordinator funded with a grant under this section for a project may provide services to low-income elderly or disabled families living in the vicinity of such project."

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 106–569, §851(a)(4), redesignated subsec. (d) as (c) and struck out heading and text of former subsec. (c). Text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated for fiscal years 1993 and 1994 such sums as may be necessary for grants under this section."

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 106–569, §851(a)(4), redesignated subsec. (d) as (c).

Pub. L. 106–569, §851(a)(3), substituted "subparagraph (B), (C), (D), (E), (F), or (G) of section 13641(2) of this title" for "subparagraph (E) or (F) of section 13641(2) of this title" and made technical amendment to reference in original act which appears in text as reference to section 13631 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2000 AMENDMENT

Amendment by title VIII of Pub. L. 106–569 effective Dec. 27, 2000, unless effectiveness or applicability upon another date certain is specifically provided for, with provisions relating to effect of regulatory authority, see section 803 of Pub. L. 106–569, set out as a note under section 1701q of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

SUBCHAPTER IV—GENERAL PROVISIONS

§13641. Definitions

For purposes of this title: [1]

(1) Elderly, disabled, and near-elderly families

The terms "elderly family", "disabled family", and "near-elderly family" have the meanings given the terms under section 3(b)(3) of the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437a(b)(3)].

(2) Federally assisted housing

The terms "federally assisted housing" and "project" mean—

(A) a public housing project (as such term is defined in section 3(b) of the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437a(b)]);

(B) housing for which project-based assistance is provided under section 8 of the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437f];

(C) housing that is assisted under section 1701q of title 12;

(D) housing that is assisted under section 1701q of title 12, as such section existed before November 28, 1990;

(E) housing financed by a loan or mortgage insured under section 1715l(d)(3) of title 12 that bears interest at a rate determined under the proviso of section 1715l(d)(5) of title 12;

(F) housing insured, assisted, or held by the Secretary or a State or State agency under section 1715z–1 of title 12;

(G) housing constructed or substantially rehabilitated pursuant to assistance provided under section 8(b)(2) of the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437f(b)(2)], as in effect before October 1, 1983, that is assisted under a contract for assistance under such section; and

(H) housing that is assisted under section 8013 [1] of this title.

(3) Housing assistance

The term "housing assistance" means, with respect to federally assisted housing, the grant, contribution, capital advance, loan, mortgage insurance, or other assistance provided for the

housing under the provisions of law referred to in paragraph (2). The term also includes any related assistance provided for the housing by the Secretary, including any rental assistance for low-income occupants.

(4) Owner

The term "owner" means, with respect to federally assisted housing, the entity or private person, including a cooperative or public housing agency, that has the legal right to lease or sublease dwelling units in such housing.

(5) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §683, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3831; Pub. L. 111–8, div. I, title II, §228, Mar. 11, 2009, 123 Stat. 978.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in text, is title VI of Pub. L. 102–550, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3802, which enacted this chapter, amended sections 1437a, 1437c to 1437g, 1437l, 1437o, 1438, 8011 to 8013, 12705, 12901 to 12910, and 12912 of this title and section 1701q of Title 12, Banks and Banking, enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 1437a, 8011, and 12901 of this title and section 1701q of Title 12, and amended provisions set out as a note under section 1701q of Title 12. For complete classification of this title to the Code, see Short Title of 1992 Amendment note set out under section 5301 of this title and Tables.

Section 8013 of this title, referred to in par. (2)(H), was in the original "section 811 of the Cranston-Gonzalez Affording Housing Act (42 U.S.C. 8013)", and was translated as reading "section 811 of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act", which is classified to section 8013 of this title, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Par. (2)(H). Pub. L. 111–8 added subpar. (H).

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13642. Applicability

Except as otherwise provided in subtitles B through F of this title and the amendments made by such subtitles, such subtitles and the amendments made by such subtitles shall apply upon the expiration of the 6-month period beginning on October 28, 1992.

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §684, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3832.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subtitles B through F of this title, referred to in text, mean subtitles B to F of title VI of Pub. L. 102–550, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3812–3830, which enacted this chapter, amended sections 1437a, 1437c to 1437g, 1437l, 1437o, 1438, 8011, 8013, and 12705 of this title and section 1701q of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and enacted provisions set out as notes under section 1437a of this title and section 1701q of Title 12.

§13643. Regulations

The Secretary shall issue regulations necessary to carry out subtitles B through F of this title and the amendments made by such subtitles not later than the expiration of the 6-month period beginning on October 28, 1992. The regulations shall be issued after notice and opportunity for public comment pursuant to the provisions of section 553 of title 5 (notwithstanding subsections (a)(2), (b)(B), and (d)(3) of such section).

(Pub. L. 102–550, title VI, §685, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3832.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subtitles B through F of this title, referred to in text, mean subtitles B to F of title VI of Pub. L. 102–550, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3812–3830, which enacted this chapter, amended sections 1437a, 1437c to 1437g, 1437l, 1437o, 1438, 8011, 8013, and 12705 of this title and section 1701q of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and enacted provisions set out as notes under section 1437a of this title and section 1701q of Title 12.

SUBCHAPTER V—SAFETY AND SECURITY IN PUBLIC AND ASSISTED HOUSING

§13661. Screening of applicants for federally assisted housing

(a) Ineligibility because of eviction for drug crimes

Any tenant evicted from federally assisted housing by reason of drug-related criminal activity (as such term is defined in section 1437a(b) of this title) shall not be eligible for federally assisted housing during the 3-year period beginning on the date of such eviction, unless the evicted tenant successfully completes a rehabilitation program approved by the public housing agency (which shall include a waiver of this subsection if the circumstances leading to eviction no longer exist).

(b) Ineligibility of illegal drug users and alcohol abusers

(1) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, a public housing agency or an owner of federally assisted housing, as determined by the Secretary, shall establish standards that prohibit admission to the program or admission to federally assisted housing for any household with a member—

(A) who the public housing agency or owner determines is illegally using a controlled substance; or

(B) with respect to whom the public housing agency or owner determines that it has reasonable cause to believe that such household member's illegal use (or pattern of illegal use) of a controlled substance, or abuse (or pattern of abuse) of alcohol, may interfere with the health, safety, or right to peaceful enjoyment of the premises by other residents.

(2) Consideration of rehabilitation

In determining whether, pursuant to paragraph (1)(B), to deny admission to the program or federally assisted housing to any household based on a pattern of illegal use of a controlled substance or a pattern of abuse of alcohol by a household member, a public housing agency or an owner may consider whether such household member—

(A) has successfully completed a supervised drug or alcohol rehabilitation program (as applicable) and is no longer engaging in the illegal use of a controlled substance or abuse of alcohol (as applicable);

(B) has otherwise been rehabilitated successfully and is no longer engaging in the illegal use of a controlled substance or abuse of alcohol (as applicable); or

(C) is participating in a supervised drug or alcohol rehabilitation program (as applicable) and is no longer engaging in the illegal use of a controlled substance or abuse of alcohol (as applicable).

(c) Authority to deny admission to criminal offenders

Except as provided in subsections (a) and (b) of this section and in addition to any other authority to screen applicants, in selecting among applicants for admission to the program or to federally assisted housing, if the public housing agency or owner of such housing (as applicable) determines that an applicant or any member of the applicant's household is or was, during a reasonable time preceding the date when the applicant household would otherwise be selected for admission,

engaged in any drug-related or violent criminal activity or other criminal activity which would adversely affect the health, safety, or right to peaceful enjoyment of the premises by other residents, the owner, or public housing agency employees, the public housing agency or owner may—

(1) deny such applicant admission to the program or to federally assisted housing; and

(2) after the expiration of the reasonable period beginning upon such activity, require the applicant, as a condition of admission to the program or to federally assisted housing, to submit to the public housing agency or owner evidence sufficient (as the Secretary shall by regulation provide) to ensure that the individual or individuals in the applicant's household who engaged in criminal activity for which denial was made under paragraph (1) have not engaged in any criminal activity during such reasonable period.

(Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §576, Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2639.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Quality Housing and Work Responsibility Act of 1998, and not as part of subtitles C to F of title VI of Pub. L. 102–550 which comprise this chapter.

Section is comprised of section 576 of Pub. L. 105–276. Subsec. (d) of section 576 of Pub. L. 105–276 amended sections 1437d and 1437n of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Subchapter effective and applicable beginning upon Oct. 1, 1999, except as otherwise provided, with provision that Secretary may implement any provision of subchapter before such date, except to extent otherwise provided, see section 503 of Pub. L. 105–276, set out as an Effective Date of 1998 Amendment note under section 1437 of this title.

§13662. Termination of tenancy and assistance for illegal drug users and alcohol abusers in federally assisted housing

(a) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, a public housing agency or an owner of federally assisted housing (as applicable), shall establish standards or lease provisions for continued assistance or occupancy in federally assisted housing that allow the agency or owner (as applicable) to terminate the tenancy or assistance for any household with a member—

(1) who the public housing agency or owner determines is illegally using a controlled substance; or

(2) whose illegal use (or pattern of illegal use) of a controlled substance, or whose abuse (or pattern of abuse) of alcohol, is determined by the public housing agency or owner to interfere with the health, safety, or right to peaceful enjoyment of the premises by other residents.

(b) Consideration of rehabilitation

In determining whether, pursuant to subsection (a)(2), to terminate tenancy or assistance to any household based on a pattern of illegal use of a controlled substance or a pattern of abuse of alcohol by a household member, a public housing agency or an owner may consider whether such household member—

(1) has successfully completed a supervised drug or alcohol rehabilitation program (as applicable) and is no longer engaging in the illegal use of a controlled substance or abuse of alcohol (as applicable);

(2) has otherwise been rehabilitated successfully and is no longer engaging in the illegal use of a controlled substance or abuse of alcohol (as applicable); or

(3) is participating in a supervised drug or alcohol rehabilitation program (as applicable) and is no longer engaging in the illegal use of a controlled substance or abuse of alcohol (as applicable).

(Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §577, Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2640.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Quality Housing and Work Responsibility Act of 1998, and not as part of

subtitles C to F of title VI of Pub. L. 102–550 which comprise this chapter.

§13663. Ineligibility of dangerous sex offenders for admission to public housing

(a) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, an owner of federally assisted housing shall prohibit admission to such housing for any household that includes any individual who is subject to a lifetime registration requirement under a State sex offender registration program.

(b) Obtaining information

As provided in regulations issued by the Secretary to carry out this section—

(1) a public housing agency shall carry out criminal history background checks on applicants for federally assisted housing and make further inquiry with State and local agencies as necessary to determine whether an applicant for federally assisted housing is subject to a lifetime registration requirement under a State sex offender registration program; and

(2) State and local agencies responsible for the collection or maintenance of criminal history record information or information on persons required to register as sex offenders shall comply with requests of public housing agencies for information pursuant to this section.

(c) Requests by owners for PHAs to obtain information

A public housing agency may take any action under subsection (b) regarding applicants for, or tenants of, federally assisted housing other than federally assisted housing described in subparagraph (A) or (B) of section 13664(a)(2) of this title, but only if the housing is located within the jurisdiction of the agency and the owner of such housing has requested that the agency take such action on behalf of the owner. Upon such a request by the owner, the agency shall take the action requested under subsection (b). The agency may not make any information obtained pursuant to the action under subsection (b) available to the owner but shall perform determinations for the owner regarding screening, lease enforcement, and eviction based on criteria supplied by the owner.

(d) Opportunity to dispute

Before an adverse action is taken with respect to an applicant for federally assisted housing on the basis that an individual is subject to a lifetime registration requirement under a State sex offender registration program, the public housing agency obtaining the record shall provide the tenant or applicant with a copy of the registration information and an opportunity to dispute the accuracy and relevance of that information.

(e) Fee

A public housing agency may be charged a reasonable fee for taking actions under subsection (b). In the case of a public housing agency taking actions on behalf of another owner of federally assisted housing pursuant to subsection (c), the agency may pass such fee on to the owner making the request and may charge an additional reasonable fee for making the request on behalf of the owner.

(f) Records management

Each public housing agency shall establish and implement a system of records management that ensures that any criminal record or information regarding a lifetime registration requirement under a State sex offender registration program that is obtained under this section by the public housing agency is—

(1) maintained confidentially;

(2) not misused or improperly disseminated; and

(3) destroyed, once the purpose for which the record was requested has been accomplished.

(Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §578, Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2641.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Quality Housing and Work Responsibility Act of 1998, and not as part of subtitles C to F of title VI of Pub. L. 102–550 which comprise this chapter.

§13664. Definitions

(a) [1] Definitions

For purposes of this subchapter, the following definitions shall apply:

(1) Drug-related criminal activity

The term "drug-related criminal activity" has the meaning given the term in section 1437a(b) of this title.

(2) Federally assisted housing

The term "federally assisted housing" means a dwelling unit—

(A) in public housing (as such term is defined in section 1437a(b) of this title);

(B) assisted with tenant-based assistance under section 1437f of this title;

(C) in housing that is provided project-based assistance under section 1437f of this title, including new construction and substantial rehabilitation projects;

(D) in housing that is assisted under section 1701q of title 12 (as amended by section 801 of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act);

(E) in housing that is assisted under section 1701q of title 12, as such section existed before the enactment of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act [November 28, 1990];

(F) in housing that is assisted under section 8013 of this title;

(G) in housing financed by a loan or mortgage insured under section 1715l(d)(3) of title 12 that bears interest at a rate determined under the proviso of section 1715l(d)(5) of title 12;

(H) in housing insured, assisted, or held by the Secretary or a State or State agency under section 1715z–1 of title 12; or

(I) in housing assisted under section 1484 or 1485 of this title.

(3) Owner

The term "owner" means, with respect to federally assisted housing, the entity or private person (including a cooperative or public housing agency) that has the legal right to lease or sublease dwelling units in such housing.

(Pub. L. 105–276, title V, §579, Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2642.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 801 of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(D), is section 801 of Pub. L. 101–625.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Quality Housing and Work Responsibility Act of 1998, and not as part of subtitles C to F of title VI of Pub. L. 102–550 which comprise this chapter.

[1] So in original. No subsec. (b) has been enacted.

CHAPTER 136—VIOLENT CRIME CONTROL AND LAW ENFORCEMENT

SUBCHAPTER I—PRISONS

PART A—VIOLENT OFFENDER INCARCERATION AND TRUTH-IN-SENTENCING INCENTIVE GRANTS

Sec.

SUBCHAPTER I—PRISONS

PART A—VIOLENT OFFENDER INCARCERATION AND TRUTH-IN-SENTENCING INCENTIVE GRANTS

§13701. Definitions

Unless otherwise provided, for purposes of this part—

(1) the term "indeterminate sentencing" means a system by which—

(A) the court may impose a sentence of a range defined by statute; and

(B) an administrative agency, generally the parole board, or the court, controls release within the statutory range;

(2) the term "part 1 violent crime" means murder and nonnegligent manslaughter, forcible rape, robbery, and aggravated assault as reported to the Federal Bureau of Investigation for purposes of the Uniform Crime Reports; and

(3) the term "State" means a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Northern Mariana Islands.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20101, as added Pub. L. 104–134, title I, §101[(a)] [title I, §114(a)], Apr. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 1321, 1321–15; renumbered title I, Pub. L. 104–140, §1(a), May 2, 1996, 110 Stat. 1327.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13701, Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20101, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1815, related to grants for

correctional facilities prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 104–134.

SHORT TITLE OF 2016 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 114–324, §1, Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1948, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 3793c and 14136f of this title, amending sections 3752, 3793, 3797k to 3797m, 3797o, 10603, 14043e–11, 14136 to 14136b, 14136d, 14136e, 14163e, 15605, and 15607 of this title and sections 3583, 3600, 3600A, 3612, and 3613 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 3711 and 3752 of this title, amending provisions set out as a note under section 14136 of this title, and amending Rule 28 of the Federal Rules of Criminal Procedure, set out in the Appendix to Title 18] may be cited as the 'Justice for All Reauthorization Act of 2016'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2015 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 114–22, title IV, §401, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 256, provided that: "This title [enacting part N–2 (§14043h et seq.) of subchapter III of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Rape Survivor Child Custody Act'."

Pub. L. 114–12, §1, May 19, 2015, 129 Stat. 192, provided that: "This Act [enacting part F (§14165 et seq.) of subchapter IX of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Rafael Ramos and Wenjian Liu National Blue Alert Act of 2015'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2014 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 113–242, §1, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 2860, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 13727 and 13727a of this title] may be cited as the 'Death in Custody Reporting Act of 2013'."

Pub. L. 113–182, §1, Sept. 29, 2014, 128 Stat. 1918, provided that: "This Act [amending sections 14135, 14136, and 14136a of this title] may be cited as the 'Debbie Smith Reauthorization Act of 2014'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 113–4, §1, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 54, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Violence Against Women Reauthorization Act of 2013'."

Pub. L. 113–4, title X, §1001, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 127, provided that: "This title [amending section 14135 of this title and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 14135 of this title] may be cited as the 'Sexual Assault Forensic Evidence Reporting Act of 2013' or the 'SAFER Act of 2013'."

Pub. L. 112–253, §1, Jan. 10, 2013, 126 Stat. 2407, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 14137 to 14137c of this title and amending section 14135 of this title] may be cited as the 'Katie Sepich Enhanced DNA Collection Act of 2012'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 110–360, §1, Oct. 8, 2008, 122 Stat. 4008, provided that: "This Act [amending sections 14135, 14136, and 14136a of this title] may be cited as the 'Debbie Smith Reauthorization Act of 2008'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §611, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 632, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle B (§§611–617) of title VI of Pub. L. 109–248, amending provisions set out as a note under section 13751 of this title] may be cited as the 'National Police Athletic League Youth Enrichment Reauthorization Act of 2006'."

Pub. L. 109–162, §1, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2960, as amended Pub. L. 109–271, §1(a), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 750, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Violence Against Women and Department of Justice Reauthorization Act of 2005'.

"(b) SEPARATE SHORT TITLES.—Section 3 and titles I through IX of this Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Violence Against Women Reauthorization Act of 2005'. Title XI of this Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Department of Justice Appropriations Authorization Act of 2005'."

Pub. L. 109–162, title X, §1001, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3084, provided that: "This title [amending sections 14132, 14135, and 14135a of this title and sections 3142 and 3297 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure] may be cited as the 'DNA Fingerprint Act of 2005'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2004 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 108–405, §1(a), Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2260, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 10603d, 10603e, 14136 to 14136e, and 14163 to 14163e of this title and chapters 228A and 237 and section 3297 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, amending sections 3793, 3796gg to 3796gg–6, 3797k, 3797m, 14132, 14133, 14135, 14135a, and 14135e of this title, section 1565 of Title 10, Armed Forces, and section

2513 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure, repealing section 10606 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 3796gg–1 and 14136 of this title, sections 3297, 3600, and 3771 of Title 18, and section 531 of Title 28] may be cited as the 'Justice for All Act of 2004'."

Pub. L. 108–405, title II, §201, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2266, provided that: "This title [enacting section 3297 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, amending sections 3796gg–6, 14132, 14133, 14135, 14135a, and 14135e of this title and section 1565 of Title 10, Armed Forces, and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 3297 of Title 18 and section 531 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure] may be cited as the 'Debbie Smith Act of 2004'."

Pub. L. 108–405, title III, §301, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2272, provided that: "This title [enacting sections 14136 to 14136d of this title, amending sections 3793, 3796gg to 3796gg–5, 3797k, 3797m, 14132, and 14135e of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 3796gg–1 of this title] may be cited as the 'DNA Sexual Assault Justice Act of 2004'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2000 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 106–560, §1, Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2784, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 13726 to 13726c of this title] may be cited as the 'Interstate Transportation of Dangerous Criminals Act of 2000' or 'Jeanna's Act'."

Pub. L. 106–546, §1, Dec. 19, 2000, 114 Stat. 2726, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 14135 to 14135e of this title and section 1565 of Title 10, Armed Forces, amending sections 3753, 3796kk–2, 14132, and 14133 of this title and sections 3563, 3583, and 4209 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, enacting provisions set out as notes under section 14135 of this title and section 1565 of Title 10, and amending provisions set out as a note under section 531 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure] may be cited as the 'DNA Analysis Backlog Elimination Act of 2000'."

Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, §1001, Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1491, provided that: "This division [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Violence Against Women Act of 2000'."

Pub. L. 106–297, §1, Oct. 13, 2000, 114 Stat. 1045, provided that: "This Act [amending section 13704 of this title] may be cited as the 'Death in Custody Reporting Act of 2000'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1996 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 104–236, §1, Oct. 3, 1996, 110 Stat. 3093, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 14072 and 14073 of this title, amending section 14071 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 14071 of this title] may be cited as the 'Pam Lychner Sexual Offender Tracking and Identification Act of 1996'."

Pub. L. 104–145, §1, May 17, 1996, 110 Stat. 1345, provided that: "This Act [amending section 14071 of this title] may be cited as 'Megan's Law'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 103–322, §1, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1796, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994'."

Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31101, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1882, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle K (§§31101–31133) of title III of Pub. L. 103–322, enacting part G (§13821 et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter] may be cited as the 'National Community Economic Partnership Act of 1994'."

Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31901, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1892, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle S (§§31901–31922) of title III of Pub. L. 103–322, enacting part I (§13881 et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Family Unity Demonstration Project Act'."

Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40001, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1902, provided that: "This title [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Violence Against Women Act of 1994'."

Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40101, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1903, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle A (§§40101–40156) of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, enacting part A (§13931 et seq.) of subchapter III of this chapter, sections 300w–10, 3796gg to 3796gg–5, and 5712d of this title, section 1a–7a of Title 16, Conservation, and sections 2247, 2248, and 2259 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, amending sections 3793, 3796aa–1 to 3796aa–3, 3796aa–5, 3796aa–6, 3797, 13012, 13014, 13021, and 13024 of this title, section 460l–8 of Title 16, and Rule 412 of the Federal Rules of Evidence, repealing sections 3796aa–4 and 3796aa–7 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 994 and 2074 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure] may be cited as the 'Safe Streets for Women Act of 1994'."

Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40201, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1925, provided that: "This title [probably should be "subtitle", meaning subtitle B (§§40201–40295) of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, enacting part B (§13951 et seq.) of subchapter III of this chapter, sections 3796hh to 3796hh–4 and 10416 to 10418 of this title, and sections 2261 to 2266 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and amending sections 3782,

3783, 3793, 3797, 10402, and 10407 to 10410 of this title] may be cited as the 'Safe Homes for Women Act of 1994'."

Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40301, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1941, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle C (§§40301–40304) of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, enacting part C (§13981) of subchapter III of this chapter and amending section 1988 of this title and section 1445 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure] may be cited as the 'Civil Rights Remedies for Gender-Motivated Violence Act'."

Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40401, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1942, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle D (§§40401–40422) of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, enacting part D (§13991 et seq.) of subchapter III of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Equal Justice for Women in the Courts Act of 1994'."

Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41001, as added by Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §105(a), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2979, provided that subtitle J of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, enacting part I (§14043 et seq.) of subchapter III of this chapter, could be cited as the "Violence Against Women Act Court Training and Improvements Act of 2005", prior to repeal by Pub. L. 113–4, title I, §104(b), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 76.

Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200101, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2049, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle A (§§200101–200113) of title XX of Pub. L. 103–322, enacting part A (§14091 et seq.) of subchapter VIII of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Police Corps Act'."

Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200201, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2057, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle B (§§200201–200210) of title XX of Pub. L. 103–322, enacting part B (§14111 et seq.) of subchapter VIII of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Law Enforcement Scholarships and Recruitment Act'."

Pub. L. 103–322, title XXI, §210301, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2065, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle C (§§210301–210306) of title XXI of Pub. L. 103–322, enacting part A (§14131 et seq.) of subchapter IX of this chapter and sections 3796kk to 3796kk–6 of this title, amending sections 3751, 3753, 3793, and 3797 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 3751 of this title] may be cited as the 'DNA Identification Act of 1994'."

Pub. L. 103–322, title XXII, §220001, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2074, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter X (§14171) of this chapter and section 511A of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and amending section 511 of Title 18] may be cited as the 'Motor Vehicle Theft Prevention Act'."

§13702. Authorization of grants

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall provide Violent Offender Incarceration grants under section 13703 of this title and Truth-in-Sentencing Incentive grants under section 13704 of this title to eligible States—

(1) to build or expand correctional facilities to increase the bed capacity for the confinement of persons convicted of a part 1 violent crime or adjudicated delinquent for an act which if committed by an adult, would be a part 1 violent crime;

(2) to build or expand temporary or permanent correctional facilities, including facilities on military bases, prison barges, and boot camps, for the confinement of convicted nonviolent offenders and criminal aliens, for the purpose of freeing suitable existing prison space for the confinement of persons convicted of a part 1 violent crime;

(3) to build or expand jails; and

(4) to carry out any activity referred to in section 3797w(b) of this title.

(b) Regional compacts

(1) In general

Subject to paragraph (2), States may enter into regional compacts to carry out this part. Such compacts shall be treated as States under this part.

(2) Requirement

To be recognized as a regional compact for eligibility for a grant under section 13703 or 13704 of this title, each member State must be eligible individually.

(3) Limitation on receipt of funds

No State may receive a grant under this part both individually and as part of a compact.

(c) Applicability

Notwithstanding the eligibility requirements of section 13704 of this title, a State that certifies to the Attorney General that, as of April 26, 1996, such State has enacted legislation in reliance on this part, as enacted on September 13, 1994, and would in fact qualify under those provisions, shall be eligible to receive a grant for fiscal year 1996 as though such State qualifies under section 13704 of this title.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20102, as added Pub. L. 104–134, title I, §101[(a)] [title I, §114(a)], Apr. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 1321, 1321–15; renumbered title I, Pub. L. 104–140, §1(a), May 2, 1996, 110 Stat. 1327; amended Pub. L. 110–199, title I, §104(a), Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 669.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13702, Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20102, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1816, related to Truth in Sentencing Incentive Grants prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 104–134.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 110–199 added par. (4).

CONSTRUCTION OF 2008 AMENDMENT

For construction of amendments by Pub. L. 110–199 and requirements for grants made under such amendments, see section 17504 of this title.

§13703. Violent offender incarceration grants

(a) Eligibility for minimum grant

To be eligible to receive a minimum grant under this section, a State shall submit an application to the Attorney General that provides assurances that the State has implemented, or will implement, correctional policies and programs, including truth-in-sentencing laws that ensure that violent offenders serve a substantial portion of the sentences imposed, that are designed to provide sufficiently severe punishment for violent offenders, including violent juvenile offenders, and that the prison time served is appropriately related to the determination that the inmate is a violent offender and for a period of time deemed necessary to protect the public.

(b) Additional amount for increased percentage of persons sentenced and time served

A State that received a grant under subsection (a) is eligible to receive additional grant amounts if such State demonstrates that the State has, since 1993—

(1) increased the percentage of persons arrested for a part 1 violent crime sentenced to prison; or

(2) increased the average prison time actually served or the average percent of sentence served by persons convicted of a part 1 violent crime.

Receipt of grant amounts under this subsection does not preclude eligibility for a grant under subsection (c).

(c) Additional amount for increased rate of incarceration and percentage of sentence served

A State that received a grant under subsection (a) is eligible to receive additional grant amounts if such State demonstrates that the State has—

(1) since 1993, increased the percentage of persons arrested for a part 1 violent crime sentenced to prison, and has increased the average percent of sentence served by persons convicted of a part 1 violent crime; or

(2) has increased by 10 percent or more over the most recent 3-year period the number of new court commitments to prison of persons convicted of part 1 violent crimes.

Receipt of grant amounts under this subsection does not preclude eligibility for a grant under subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20103, as added Pub. L. 104–134, title I, §101[(a)] [title I, §114(a)], Apr.

26, 1996, 110 Stat. 1321, 1321–16; renumbered title I, Pub. L. 104–140, §1(a), May 2, 1996, 110 Stat. 1327.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13703, Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20103, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1817, related to Violent Offender Incarceration Grants prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 104–134.

CONTROLLED SUBSTANCE TESTING AND INTERVENTION; AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS

Pub. L. 104–208, div. A, title I, §101(a) [title I], Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009, 3009–14, provided in part: "That beginning in fiscal year 1999, and thereafter, no funds shall be available to make grants to a State pursuant to section 20103 or section 20104 of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 [42 U.S.C. 13703, 13704] unless no later than September 1, 1998, such State has implemented a program of controlled substance testing and intervention for appropriate categories of convicted offenders during periods of incarceration and criminal justice supervision, with sanctions including denial or revocation of release for positive controlled substance tests, consistent with guidelines issued by the Attorney General".

§13704. Truth-in-sentencing incentive grants

(a) Eligibility

To be eligible to receive a grant award under this section, a State shall submit an application to the Attorney General that demonstrates that—

(1)(A) such State has implemented truth-in-sentencing laws that—

(i) require persons convicted of a part 1 violent crime to serve not less than 85 percent of the sentence imposed (without counting time not actually served, such as administrative or statutory incentives for good behavior); or

(ii) result in persons convicted of a part 1 violent crime serving on average not less than 85 percent of the sentence imposed (without counting time not actually served, such as administrative or statutory incentives for good behavior);

(B) such State has truth-in-sentencing laws that have been enacted, but not yet implemented, that require such State, not later than 3 years after such State submits an application to the Attorney General, to provide that persons convicted of a part 1 violent crime serve not less than 85 percent of the sentence imposed (without counting time not actually served, such as administrative or statutory incentives for good behavior); or

(C) in the case of a State that on April 26, 1996, practices indeterminate sentencing with regard to any part 1 violent crime—

(i) persons convicted of a part 1 violent crime on average serve not less than 85 percent of the prison term established under the State's sentencing and release guidelines; or

(ii) persons convicted of a part 1 violent crime on average serve not less than 85 percent of the maximum prison term allowed under the sentence imposed by the court (not counting time not actually served such as administrative or statutory incentives for good behavior); and

(2) such State has provided assurances that it will follow guidelines established by the Attorney General in reporting, on a quarterly basis, information regarding the death of any person who is in the process of arrest, is en route to be incarcerated, or is incarcerated at a municipal or county jail, State prison, or other local or State correctional facility (including any juvenile facility) that, at a minimum, includes—

(A) the name, gender, race, ethnicity, and age of the deceased;

(B) the date, time, and location of death; and

(C) a brief description of the circumstances surrounding the death.

(b) Exception

Notwithstanding subsection (a), a State may provide that the Governor of the State may allow for the earlier release of—

(1) a geriatric prisoner; or

(2) a prisoner whose medical condition precludes the prisoner from posing a threat to the public, but only after a public hearing in which representatives of the public and the prisoner's victims have had an opportunity to be heard regarding a proposed release.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20104, as added Pub. L. 104–134, title I, §101[(a)] [title I, §114(a)], Apr. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 1321, 1321–16; renumbered title I, Pub. L. 104–140, §1(a), May 2, 1996, 110 Stat. 1327; amended Pub. L. 106–297, §2, Oct. 13, 2000, 114 Stat. 1045.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13704, Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20104, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1818, related to Federal share matching requirement prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 104–134.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–297 redesignated par. (1) as subpar. (A) and former subpars. (A) and (B) as cls. (i) and (ii), respectively, redesignated par. (2) as subpar. (B), redesignated par. (3) as subpar. (C) and former subpars. (A) and (B) as cls. (i) and (ii), respectively, and added par. (2).

§13705. Special rules

(a) Sharing of funds with counties and other units of local government

(1) Reservation

Each State shall reserve not more than 15 percent of the amount of funds allocated in a fiscal year pursuant to section 13706 of this title for counties and units of local government to construct, develop, expand, modify, or improve jails and other correctional facilities.

(2) Factors for determination of amount

To determine the amount of funds to be reserved under this subsection, a State shall consider the burden placed on a county or unit of local government that results from the implementation of policies adopted by the State to carry out section 13703 or 13704 of this title.

(b) Use of truth-in-sentencing and violent offender incarceration grants

Funds provided under section 13703 or 13704 of this title may be applied to the cost of—

(1) altering existing correctional facilities to provide separate facilities for juveniles under the jurisdiction of an adult criminal court who are detained or are serving sentences in adult prisons or jails;

(2) providing correctional staff who are responsible for supervising juveniles who are detained or serving sentences under the jurisdiction of an adult criminal court with orientation and ongoing training regarding the unique needs of such offenders; and

(3) providing ombudsmen to monitor the treatment of juveniles who are detained or serving sentences under the jurisdiction of an adult criminal court in adult facilities, consistent with guidelines issued by the Assistant Attorney General.

(c) Funds for juvenile offenders

Notwithstanding any other provision of this part, if a State, or unit of local government located in a State that otherwise meets the requirements of section 13703 or 13704 of this title, certifies to the Attorney General that exigent circumstances exist that require the State to expend funds to build or expand facilities to confine juvenile offenders other than juvenile offenders adjudicated delinquent for an act which, if committed by an adult, would be a part 1 violent crime, the State may use funds received under this part to build or expand juvenile correctional facilities or pretrial detention facilities for juvenile offenders.

(d) Private facilities

A State may use funds received under this part for the privatization of facilities to carry out the purposes of section 13702 of this title.

(e) "Part 1 violent crime" defined

For purposes of this part, "part 1 violent crime" means a part 1 violent crime as defined in section 13701(3) [1] of this title, or a crime in a reasonably comparable class of serious violent crimes as approved by the Attorney General.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20105, as added Pub. L. 104–134, title I, §101[(a)] [title I, §114(a)], Apr. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 1321, 1321–17; renumbered title I, Pub. L. 104–140, §1(a), May 2, 1996, 110 Stat. 1327; amended Pub. L. 105–277, div. E, §3, Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–760; Pub. L. 107–273, div. A, title III, §307, Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1783.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13705, Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20105, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1818, related to rules and regulations prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 104–134.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 107–273 substituted "Use of truth-in-sentencing and violent offender incarceration grants" for "Additional requirements" in heading and amended text generally, substituting provisions relating to use of funds for juveniles in adult prisons or under the jurisdiction of an adult criminal court for provisions relating to additional requirements for grant eligibility.

1998—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–277 amended heading and text of subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "To be eligible to receive a grant under section 13703 or 13704 of this title, a State shall provide assurances to the Attorney General that the State has implemented or will implement not later than 18 months after April 26, 1996, policies that provide for the recognition of the rights and needs of crime victims."

[1] So in original. Probably should be section "13701(2)".

§13706. Formula for grants

(a) Allocation of violent offender incarceration grants under section 13703

(1) Formula allocation

85 percent of the amount available for grants under section 13703 of this title for any fiscal year shall be allocated as follows (except that a State may not receive more than 9 percent of the total amount of funds made available under this paragraph):

(A) 0.75 percent shall be allocated to each State that meets the requirements of section 13703(a) of this title, except that the United States Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, if eligible under section 13703(a) of this title, shall each be allocated 0.05 percent.

(B) The amount remaining after application of subparagraph (A) shall be allocated to each State that meets the requirements of section 13703(b) of this title, in the ratio that the number of part 1 violent crimes reported by such State to the Federal Bureau of Investigation for the 3 years preceding the year in which the determination is made, bears to the average annual number of part 1 violent crimes reported by all States that meet the requirements of section 13703(b) of this title to the Federal Bureau of Investigation for the 3 years preceding the year in which the determination is made.

(2) Additional allocation

15 percent of the amount available for grants under section 13703 of this title for any fiscal year shall be allocated to each State that meets the requirements of section 13703(c) of this title as follows:

(A) 3.0 percent shall be allocated to each State that meets the requirements of section 13703(c) of this title, except that the United States Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, if eligible under such subsection, shall each be allocated 0.03 percent.

(B) The amount remaining after application of subparagraph (A) shall be allocated to each State that meets the requirements of section 13703(c) of this title, in the ratio that the number of part 1 violent crimes reported by such State to the Federal Bureau of Investigation for the 3 years preceding the year in which the determination is made, bears to the average annual number of part 1 violent crimes reported by all States that meet the requirements of section 13702(c) of this title to the Federal Bureau of Investigation for the 3 years preceding the year in which the determination is made.

(b) Allocation of truth-in-sentencing grants under section 13704

The amounts available for grants for section 13704 of this title shall be allocated to each State that meets the requirements of section 13704 of this title in the ratio that the average annual number of part 1 violent crimes reported by such State to the Federal Bureau of Investigation for the 3 years preceding the year in which the determination is made bears to the average annual number of part 1 violent crimes reported by States that meet the requirements of section 13704 of this title to the Federal Bureau of Investigation for the 3 years preceding the year in which the determination is made, except that a State may not receive more than 25 percent of the total amount available for such grants.

(c) Unavailable data

If data regarding part 1 violent crimes in any State is substantially inaccurate or is unavailable for the 3 years preceding the year in which the determination is made, the Attorney General shall utilize the best available comparable data regarding the number of violent crimes for the previous year for the State for the purposes of allocation of funds under this part.

(d) Regional compacts

In determining the amount of funds that States organized as a regional compact may receive, the Attorney General shall first apply the formula in either subsection (a) or (b) and (c) of this section to each member State of the compact. The States organized as a regional compact may receive the sum of the amounts so determined.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20106, as added Pub. L. 104–134, title I, §101[(a)] [title I, §114(a)], Apr. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 1321, 1321–18; renumbered title I, Pub. L. 104–140, §1(a), May 2, 1996, 110 Stat. 1327.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13706, Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20106, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1818, related to technical assistance and training prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 104–134.

§13707. Accountability

(a) Fiscal requirements

A State that receives funds under this part shall use accounting, audit, and fiscal procedures that conform to guidelines prescribed by the Attorney General, and shall ensure that any funds used to carry out the programs under section 13702(a) of this title shall represent the best value for the State governments at the lowest possible cost and employ the best available technology.

(b) Administrative provisions

The administrative provisions of sections 3782 and 3783 of this title shall apply to the Attorney General under this part in the same manner that such provisions apply to the officials listed in such sections.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20107, as added Pub. L. 104–134, title I, §101[(a)] [title I, §114(a)], Apr. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 1321, 1321–19; renumbered title I, Pub. L. 104–140, §1(a), May 2, 1996, 110 Stat. 1327.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13707, Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20107, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1818, related to evaluation of programs prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 104–134.

§13708. Authorization of appropriations

(a) In general

(1) Authorizations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part—

(A) $997,500,000 for fiscal year 1996;

(B) $1,330,000,000 for fiscal year 1997;

(C) $2,527,000,000 for fiscal year 1998;

(D) $2,660,000,000 for fiscal year 1999; and

(E) $2,753,100,000 for fiscal year 2000.

(2) Distribution

(A) In general

Of the amounts remaining after the allocation of funds for the purposes set forth under sections 13710, 13711, and 13709 of this title, the Attorney General shall, from amounts authorized to be appropriated under paragraph (1) for each fiscal year, distribute 50 percent for incarceration grants under section 13703 of this title, and 50 percent for incentive grants under section 13704 of this title.

(B) Distribution of minimum amounts

The Attorney General shall distribute minimum amounts allocated for section 13703(a) of this title to an eligible State not later than 30 days after receiving an application that demonstrates that such State qualifies for a Violent Offender Incarceration grant under section 13703 of this title or a Truth-in-Sentencing Incentive grant under section 13704 of this title.

(b) Limitations on funds

(1) Uses of funds

Except as provided in section [1] 13710 and 13711 of this title, funds made available pursuant to this section shall be used only to carry out the purposes described in section 13702(a) of this title.

(2) Nonsupplanting requirement

Funds made available pursuant to this section shall not be used to supplant State funds, but shall be used to increase the amount of funds that would, in the absence of Federal funds, be made available from State sources.

(3) Administrative costs

Not more than 3 percent of the funds that remain available after carrying out sections 13709, 13710, and 13711 of this title shall be available to the Attorney General for purposes of—

(A) administration;

(B) research and evaluation, including assessment of the effect on public safety and other effects of the expansion of correctional capacity and sentencing reforms implemented pursuant to this part;

(C) technical assistance relating to the use of grant funds, and development and implementation of sentencing reforms implemented pursuant to this part; and

(D) data collection and improvement of information systems relating to the confinement of violent offenders and other sentencing and correctional matters.

(4) Carryover of appropriations

Funds appropriated pursuant to this section during any fiscal year shall remain available until expended. Funds obligated, but subsequently unspent and deobligated, may remain available, to

the extent as may [2] provided in appropriations Acts, for the purpose described in section 13702(a)(4) of this title for any subsequent fiscal year. The further obligation of such funds by an official for such purpose shall not be delayed, directly or indirectly, in any manner by any officer or employee in the executive branch.

(5) Matching funds

The Federal share of a grant received under this part may not exceed 90 percent of the costs of a proposal as described in an application approved under this part.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20108, as added Pub. L. 104–134, title I, §101[(a)] [title I, §114(a)], Apr. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 1321, 1321–19; renumbered title I, Pub. L. 104–140, §1(a), May 2, 1996, 110 Stat. 1327; amended Pub. L. 110–199, title I, §104(b), Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 669.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13708, Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20108, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1818, defined terms in this part prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 104–134.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 110–199 inserted at end "Funds obligated, but subsequently unspent and deobligated, may remain available, to the extent as may provided in appropriations Acts, for the purpose described in section 13702(a)(4) of this title for any subsequent fiscal year. The further obligation of such funds by an official for such purpose shall not be delayed, directly or indirectly, in any manner by any officer or employee in the executive branch."

CONSTRUCTION OF 2008 AMENDMENT

For construction of amendments by Pub. L. 110–199 and requirements for grants made under such amendments, see section 17504 of this title.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "sections".

[2] So in original. Probably should be followed by "be".

§13709. Payments for incarceration on tribal lands

(a) Reservation of funds

Notwithstanding any other provision of this part, of amounts made available to the Attorney General to carry out programs relating to offender incarceration, the Attorney General shall reserve $35,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2011 through 2015 to carry out this section.

(b) Grants to Indian tribes

(1) In general

From the amounts reserved under subsection (a), the Attorney General shall provide grants—

(A) to Indian tribes for purposes of—

(i) construction and maintenance of jails on Indian land for the incarceration of offenders subject to tribal jurisdiction;

(ii) entering into contracts with private entities to increase the efficiency of the construction of tribal jails; and

(iii) developing and implementing alternatives to incarceration in tribal jails;

(B) to Indian tribes for the construction of tribal justice centers that combine tribal police, courts, and corrections services to address violations of tribal civil and criminal laws;

(C) to consortia of Indian tribes for purposes of constructing and operating regional detention centers on Indian land for long-term incarceration of offenders subject to tribal jurisdiction, as the applicable consortium determines to be appropriate.

(2) Priority of funding

in [1] providing grants under this subsection, the Attorney General shall take into consideration applicable—

(A) reservation crime rates;

(B) annual tribal court convictions; and

(C) bed space needs.

(3) Federal share

Because of the Federal nature and responsibility for providing public safety on Indian land, the Federal share of the cost of any activity carried out using a grant under this subsection shall be 100 percent.

(c) Applications

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, an Indian tribe or consortium of Indian tribes, as applicable, shall submit to the Attorney General an application in such form and containing such information as the Attorney General may by regulation require.

(d) Long-term plan

Not later than 1 year after July 29, 2010, the Attorney General, in coordination with the Bureau of Indian Affairs and in consultation with tribal leaders, tribal law enforcement officers, and tribal corrections officials, shall submit to Congress a long-term plan to address incarceration in Indian country, including—

(1) a description of proposed activities for—

(A) construction, operation, and maintenance of juvenile (in accordance with section 2453(a)(3) of title 25) and adult detention facilities (including regional facilities) in Indian country;

(B) contracting with State and local detention centers, on approval of the affected tribal governments; and

(C) alternatives to incarceration, developed in cooperation with tribal court systems;

(2) an assessment and consideration of the construction of Federal detention facilities in Indian country; and

(3) any other alternatives as the Attorney General, in coordination with the Bureau of Indian Affairs and in consultation with Indian tribes, determines to be necessary.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20109, as added Pub. L. 104–134, title I, §101[(a)] [title I, §114(a)], Apr. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 1321, 1321–20; renumbered title I, Pub. L. 104–140, §1(a), May 2, 1996, 110 Stat. 1327; amended Pub. L. 111–211, title II, §244, July 29, 2010, 124 Stat. 2294.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13709, Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20109, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1818, authorized appropriations to carry out this part prior to the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 104–134.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–211, §244(a), added subsec. (a) and struck out former subsec. (a). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Notwithstanding any other provision of this part other than section 13708(a)(2) of this title, from amounts appropriated to carry out sections 13703 and 13704 of this title, the Attorney General shall reserve, to carry out this section—

"(1) 0.3 percent in each of fiscal years 1996 and 1997; and

"(2) 0.2 percent in each of fiscal years 1998, 1999, and 2000."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–211, §244(b)(1), added subsec. (b) and struck out former subsec. (b). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "From the amounts reserved under subsection (a) of this section, the Attorney General may make grants to Indian tribes for the purposes of constructing jails on tribal lands for the incarceration of offenders subject to tribal jurisdiction."

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–211, §244(b)(2), inserted "or consortium of Indian tribes, as applicable," after "Indian tribe".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–211, §244(b)(3), added subsec. (d).

[1] *So in original. Probably should be capitalized.*

§13710. Payments to eligible States for incarceration of criminal aliens

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall make a payment to each State which is eligible under section 1252(j) [1] of title 8 in such amount as is determined under section 1252(j) [1] of title 8, and for which payment is not made to such State for such fiscal year under such section.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

Notwithstanding any other provision of this part, there are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section from amounts authorized under section 13708 of this title, an amount which when added to amounts appropriated to carry out section 1252(j) [1] of title 8 for fiscal year 1996 equals $500,000,000 and for each of the fiscal years 1997 through 2000 does not exceed $650,000,000.

(c) Administration

The amounts appropriated to carry out this section shall be reserved from the total amount appropriated for each fiscal year and shall be added to the other funds appropriated to carry out section 1252(j) [1] of title 8 and administered under such section.

(d) Report to Congress

Not later than May 15, 1999, the Attorney General shall submit a report to the Congress which contains the recommendation of the Attorney General concerning the extension of the program under this section.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20110, as added Pub. L. 104–134, title I, §101[(a)] [title I, §114(a)], Apr. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 1321, 1321–21; renumbered title I, Pub. L. 104–140, §1(a), May 2, 1996, 110 Stat. 1327.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1252(j) of title 8, referred to in subsecs. (a) to (c), was redesignated section 1231(i) of title 8 by Pub. L. 104–208, div. C, title III, §306(a)(1), Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009–607.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13711. Support of Federal prisoners in non-Federal institutions

(a) In general

The Attorney General may make payments to States and units of local government for the purposes authorized in section 4013 of title 18.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

Notwithstanding any other provision of this part other than section 13708(a)(2) of this title, there are authorized to be appropriated from amounts authorized under section 13708 of this title for each of fiscal years 1996 through 2000 such sums as may be necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20111, as added Pub. L. 104–134, title I, §101[(a)] [title I, §114(a)], Apr. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 1321, 1321–21; renumbered title I, Pub. L. 104–140, §1(a), May 2, 1996, 110 Stat. 1327.)

§13712. Report by Attorney General

Beginning on October 1, 1996, and each subsequent July 1 thereafter, the Attorney General shall report to the Congress on the implementation of this part, including a report on the eligibility of the States under sections 13703 and 13704 of this title, and the distribution and use of funds under this part.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20112, as added Pub. L. 104–134, title I, §101[(a)] [title I, §114(a)], Apr. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 1321, 1321–21; renumbered title I, Pub. L. 104–140, §1(a), May 2, 1996, 110 Stat. 1327.)

§13713. Aimee's Law

(a) Short title

This section may be cited as "Aimee's Law".

(b) Definitions

Pursuant to regulations promulgated by the Attorney General hereunder, in this section:

(1) Dangerous sexual offense

The term "dangerous sexual offense" means any offense under State law for conduct that would constitute an offense under chapter 109A of title 18 had the conduct occurred in the special maritime and territorial jurisdiction of the United States or in a Federal prison.

(2) Murder

The term "murder" has the meaning given the term in part I of the Uniform Crime Reports of the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

(3) Rape

The term "rape" has the meaning given the term in part I of the Uniform Crime Reports of the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

(c) Penalty

(1) Single State

Pursuant to regulations promulgated by the Attorney General hereunder, in any case in which a criminal-records-reporting State convicts an individual of murder, rape, or a dangerous sexual offense, who has a prior conviction for any one of those offenses in a State described in paragraph (3), it may, under subsection (d), apply to the Attorney General for $10,000, for its related apprehension and prosecution costs, and $22,500 per year (up to a maximum of 5 years), for its related incarceration costs with both amounts for costs adjusted annually for the rate of inflation.

(2) Multiple States

Pursuant to regulations promulgated by the Attorney General hereunder, in any case in which a criminal-records-reporting State convicts an individual of murder, rape, or a dangerous sexual offense, who has a prior conviction for any one or more of those offenses in more than one other State described in paragraph (3), it may, under subsection (d), apply to the Attorney General for $10,000, for its related apprehension and prosecution costs, and $22,500 per year (up to a maximum of 5 years), for its related incarceration costs with both amounts for costs adjusted annually for the rate of inflation.

(3) State described

Pursuant to regulations promulgated by the Attorney General hereunder, a State is described in this paragraph unless—

(A) the term of imprisonment imposed by the State on the individual described in paragraph (1) or (2), as applicable, was not less than the average term of imprisonment imposed for that offense in all States; or

(B) with respect to the individual described in paragraph (1) or (2), as applicable, the

individual had served not less than 85 percent of the term of imprisonment to which that individual was sentenced for the prior offense.

For purposes of subparagraph (B), in a State that has indeterminate sentencing, the term of imprisonment to which that individual was sentenced for the prior offense shall be based on the lower of the range of sentences.

(d) State applications

In order to receive an amount under subsection (c), the chief executive of a State shall submit to the Attorney General an application, in such form and containing such information as the Attorney General may reasonably require, which shall include a certification that the State has convicted an individual of murder, rape, or a dangerous sexual offense, who has a prior conviction for one of those offenses in another State.

(e) Source of funds

(1) In general

Pursuant to regulations promulgated by the Attorney General hereunder, any amount under subsection (c) shall be derived by reducing the amount of Federal law enforcement assistance funds received by the State pursuant to section 3755 of this title that convicted such individual of the prior offense before the distribution of the funds to the State. No amount described under this section shall be subject to section 3335(b) or 6503(d) of title 31 [1]

(2) Payment schedule

The Attorney General, in consultation with the chief executive of the State that convicted such individual of the prior offense, shall establish a payment schedule.

(f) Construction

Nothing in this section may be construed to diminish or otherwise affect any court ordered restitution.

(g) Exception

Pursuant to regulations promulgated by the Attorney General hereunder, this section does not apply if the individual convicted of murder, rape, or a dangerous sexual offense has been released from prison upon the reversal of a conviction for an offense described in subsection (c) and subsequently been convicted for an offense described in subsection (c).

(h) Report

The Attorney General shall—

(1) conduct a study evaluating the implementation of this section; and

(2) not later than October 1, 2006, submit to Congress a report on the results of that study.

(i) Collection of recidivism data

(1) In general

Beginning with calendar year 2002, and each calendar year thereafter, the Attorney General shall collect and maintain information relating to, with respect to each State (where practicable)—

(A) the number of convictions during that calendar year for—

(i) any dangerous sexual offense;

(ii) rape; and

(iii) murder; and

(B) the number of convictions described in subparagraph (A) that constitute second or subsequent convictions of the defendant of an offense described in that subparagraph.

(2) Report

The Attorney General shall submit to Congress—

(A) a report, by not later than 6 months after January 5, 2006, that provides national estimates of the nature and extent of recidivism (with an emphasis on interstate recidivism) by State inmates convicted of murder, rape, and dangerous sexual offenses;

(B) a report, by not later than October 1, 2007, and October 1 of each year thereafter, that provides statistical analysis and criminal history profiles of interstate recidivists identified in any State applications under this section; and

(C) reports, at regular intervals not to exceed every five years, that include the information described in paragraph (1).

(j) Effective date

This section shall take effect on January 1, 2002.

(Pub. L. 106–386, div. C, §2001, Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1539; Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1170, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3122; Pub. L. 109–271, §8(m), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 767.)

CODIFICATION

January 5, 2006, referred to in subsec. (i)(2)(A), was in the original "the date of enactment of this Act", which was translated as meaning the date of enactment of Pub. L. 109–162, which enacted subsec. (i)(2) of this section, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Section was enacted as Aimee's Law and also as part of the Victims of Trafficking and Violence Protection Act of 2000, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 109–162, §1170(1), substituted "Pursuant to regulations promulgated by the Attorney General hereunder, in this section" for "In this section" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 109–162, §1170(1), (2), substituted "Pursuant to regulations promulgated by the Attorney General hereunder, in any case" for "In any case", "a criminal-records-reporting State" for "a State" the first place appearing, and "(3), it may, under subsection (d), apply to the Attorney General for $10,000, for its related apprehension and prosecution costs, and $22,500 per year (up to a maximum of 5 years), for its related incarceration costs with both amounts for costs adjusted annually for the rate of inflation" for "(3), the Attorney General shall transfer an amount equal to the costs of incarceration, prosecution, and apprehension of that individual, from Federal law enforcement assistance funds that have been allocated to but not distributed to the State that convicted the individual of the prior offense, to the State account that collects Federal law enforcement assistance funds of the State that convicted that individual of the subsequent offense".

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 109–162, §1170(1), (2), substituted "Pursuant to regulations promulgated by the Attorney General hereunder, in any case" for "In any case", "a criminal-records-reporting State" for "a State", and "(3), it may, under subsection (d), apply to the Attorney General for $10,000, for its related apprehension and prosecution costs, and $22,500 per year (up to a maximum of 5 years), for its related incarceration costs with both amounts for costs adjusted annually for the rate of inflation" for "(3), the Attorney General shall transfer an amount equal to the costs of incarceration, prosecution, and apprehension of that individual, from Federal law enforcement assistance funds that have been allocated to but not distributed to each State that convicted such individual of the prior offense, to the State account that collects Federal law enforcement assistance funds of the State that convicted that individual of the subsequent offense".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 109–162, §1170(1), (3)(A), substituted "Pursuant to regulations promulgated by the Attorney General hereunder, a State" for "A State" and "unless" for "if" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(3)(A). Pub. L. 109–162, §1170(3)(B)(iii), (C), inserted "not" before "less" and struck out "convicted by the State is" after "as applicable, was".

Pub. L. 109–162, §1170(3)(B)(ii), which directed amendment of par. (3) by striking "individuals convicted of the offense for which," was executed by striking "individuals convicted of the offense for which" after "imposed by the State on" to reflect the probable intent of Congress, because there was no comma after "which".

Pub. L. 109–162, §1170(3)(B)(i), which directed that "average" be struck out, was executed by striking out "average" the first place appearing, after "(A) the", to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (c)(3)(B). Pub. L. 109–162, §1170(3)(C), inserted "not" before "less".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 109–162, §1170(4), struck out "transferred" after "receive an amount".

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 109–271 substituted "section 3755" for "section 3756".

Pub. L. 109–162, §1170(1), (4), (5), substituted "Pursuant to regulations promulgated by the Attorney General hereunder, any amount" for "Any amount transferred", inserted "pursuant to section 3756 of this title" before "that convicted", inserted "No amount described under this section shall be subject to section 3335(b) or 6503(d) of title 31" at end, and struck out former last sentence which read as follows: "The Attorney General shall provide the State with an opportunity to select the specific Federal law enforcement assistance funds to be so reduced (other than Federal crime victim assistance funds)."

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 109–162, §1170(1), substituted "Pursuant to regulations promulgated by the Attorney General hereunder, this section does not apply" for "This section does not apply".

Subsec. (i)(1). Pub. L. 109–162, §1170(6), substituted "State (where practicable)" for "State" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (i)(2). Pub. L. 109–162, §1170(7), added par. (2) and struck out heading and text of former par. (2). Text read as follows: "Not later than March 1, 2003, and on March 1 of each year thereafter, the Attorney General shall submit to Congress a report, which shall include—

"(A) the information collected under paragraph (1) with respect to each State during the preceding calendar year; and

"(B) the percentage of cases in each State in which an individual convicted of an offense described in paragraph (1)(A) was previously convicted of another such offense in another State during the preceding calendar year."

[1] *So in original. Probably should be followed by a period.*

PART B—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§13721. Task force on prison construction standardization and techniques

(a) Task force

The Director of the National Institute of Corrections shall, subject to availability of appropriations, establish a task force composed of Federal, State, and local officials expert in prison construction, and of at least an equal number of engineers, architects, and construction experts from the private sector with expertise in prison design and construction, including the use of cost-cutting construction standardization techniques and cost-cutting new building materials and technologies.

(b) Cooperation

The task force shall work in close cooperation and communication with other State and local officials responsible for prison construction in their localities.

(c) Performance requirements

The task force shall work to—

(1) establish and recommend standardized construction plans and techniques for prison and prison component construction; and

(2) evaluate and recommend new construction technologies, techniques, and materials,

to reduce prison construction costs at the Federal, State, and local levels and make such construction more efficient.

(d) Dissemination

The task force shall disseminate information described in subsection (c) to State and local officials involved in prison construction, through written reports and meetings.

(e) Promotion and evaluation

The task force shall—

(1) work to promote the implementation of cost-saving efforts at the Federal, State, and local levels;

(2) evaluate and advise on the results and effectiveness of such cost-saving efforts as adopted, broadly disseminating information on the results; and

(3) to the extent feasible, certify the effectiveness of the cost-savings efforts.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20406, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1826.)

§13722. Efficiency in law enforcement and corrections

(a) In general

In the administration of each grant program funded by appropriations authorized by this Act or by an amendment made by this Act, the Attorney General shall encourage—

(1) innovative methods for the low-cost construction of facilities to be constructed, converted, or expanded and the low-cost operation of such facilities and the reduction of administrative costs and overhead expenses; and

(2) the use of surplus Federal property.

(b) Assessment of construction components and designs

The Attorney General may make an assessment of the cost efficiency and utility of using modular, prefabricated, precast, and pre-engineered construction components and designs for housing nonviolent criminals.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20407, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1826.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1796, known as the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

§13723. Congressional approval of any expansion at Lorton and congressional hearings on future needs

(a) Congressional approval

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the existing prison facilities and complex at the District of Columbia Corrections Facility at Lorton, Virginia, shall not be expanded unless such expansion has been approved by the Congress under the authority provided to Congress in section 446 of the District of Columbia Home Rule Act.

(b) Senate hearings

The Senate directs the Subcommittee on the District of Columbia of the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate to conduct hearings regarding expansion of the prison complex in Lorton, Virginia, prior to any approval granted pursuant to subsection (a). The subcommittee shall permit interested parties, including appropriate officials from the County of Fairfax, Virginia, to testify at such hearings.

(c) "Expanded" and "expansion" defined

For purposes of this section, the terms "expanded" and "expansion" mean any alteration of the physical structure of the prison complex that is made to increase the number of inmates incarcerated at the prison.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20410, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1828; Pub. L. 105–33, title XI, §11717(b), Aug. 5, 1997, 111 Stat. 786.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 446 of the District of Columbia Home Rule Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is section 446 of Pub. L. 93–198, title IV, Dec. 24, 1973, 87 Stat. 801, as amended, which is not classified to the Code.

AMENDMENTS

1997—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 105–33 substituted "District of Columbia Home Rule Act" for "District of Columbia Self-Government and Governmental Reorganization Act".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1997 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 105–33 effective Oct. 1, 1997, except as otherwise provided in title XI of Pub. L. 105–33, see section 11721 of Pub. L. 105–33, set out as a note under section 4246 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

§13724. Conversion of closed military installations into Federal prison facilities

(a) Study of suitable bases

The Secretary of Defense and the Attorney General shall jointly conduct a study of all military installations selected before September 13, 1994, to be closed pursuant to a base closure law for the purpose of evaluating the suitability of any of these installations, or portions of these installations, for conversion into Federal prison facilities. As part of the study, the Secretary and the Attorney General shall identify the military installations so evaluated that are most suitable for conversion into Federal prison facilities.

(b) Suitability for conversion

In evaluating the suitability of a military installation for conversion into a Federal prison facility, the Secretary of Defense and the Attorney General shall consider the estimated cost to convert the installation into a prison facility and such other factors as the Secretary and the Attorney General consider to be appropriate.

(c) Time for study

The study required by subsection (a) shall be completed not later than the date that is 180 days after September 13, 1994.

(d) Construction of Federal prisons

(1) In general

In determining where to locate any new Federal prison facility, and in accordance with the Department of Justice's duty to review and identify a use for any portion of an installation closed pursuant to title II of the Defense Authorization Amendments and Base Closure and Realignment Act (Public Law 100–526) and the Defense Base Closure and Realignment Act of 1990 (part A of title XXIX of Public Law 101–510), the Attorney General shall—

(A) consider whether using any portion of a military installation closed or scheduled to be closed in the region pursuant to a base closure law provides a cost-effective alternative to the purchase of real property or construction of new prison facilities;

(B) consider whether such use is consistent with a reutilization and redevelopment plan; and

(C) give consideration to any installation located in a rural area the closure of which will have a substantial adverse impact on the economy of the local communities and on the ability of the communities to sustain an economic recovery from such closure.

(2) Consent

With regard to paragraph (1)(B), consent must be obtained from the local re-use authority for the military installation, recognized and funded by the Secretary of Defense, before the Attorney General may proceed with plans for the design or construction of a prison at the installation.

(3) Report on basis of decision

Before proceeding with plans for the design or construction of a Federal prison, the Attorney General shall submit to Congress a report explaining the basis of the decision on where to locate the new prison facility.

(4) Report on cost-effectiveness

If the Attorney General decides not to utilize any portion of a closed military installation or an installation scheduled to be closed for locating a prison, the report shall include an analysis of why installations in the region, the use of which as a prison would be consistent with a reutilization and redevelopment plan, does not provide a cost-effective alternative to the purchase of real property or construction of new prison facilities.

(e) "Base closure law" defined

In this section, "base closure law" means—

(1) the Defense Base Closure and Realignment Act of 1990 (part A of title XXIX of Public Law 101–510; 10 U.S.C. 2687 note); and

(2) title II of the Defense Authorization Amendments and Base Closure and Realignment Act (Public Law 100–526; 10 U.S.C. 2687 note).

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20413, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1829.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Defense Authorization Amendments and Base Closure and Realignment Act, referred to in subsecs. (d)(1) and (e)(2), is Pub. L. 100–526, Oct. 24, 1988, 102 Stat. 2623, as amended. Title II of the Act is set out as a note under section 2687 of Title 10, Armed Forces. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1988 Amendment note set out under section 2687 of Title 10 and Tables.

The Defense Base Closure and Realignment Act of 1990, referred to in subsecs. (d)(1) and (e)(1), is part A of title XXIX of div. B of Pub. L. 101–510, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1808, which is set out as a note under section 2687 of Title 10. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

§13725. Correctional job training and placement

(a) Purpose

It is the purpose of this section to encourage and support job training programs, and job placement programs, that provide services to incarcerated persons or ex-offenders.

(b) Definitions

As used in this section:

(1) Correctional institution

The term "correctional institution" means any prison, jail, reformatory, work farm, detention center, or halfway house, or any other similar institution designed for the confinement or rehabilitation of criminal offenders.

(2) Correctional job training or placement program

The term "correctional job training or placement program" means an activity that provides job training or job placement services to incarcerated persons or ex-offenders, or that assists incarcerated persons or ex-offenders in obtaining such services.

(3) Ex-offender

The term "ex-offender" means any individual who has been sentenced to a term of probation by a Federal or State court, or who has been released from a Federal, State, or local correctional institution.

(4) Incarcerated person

The term "incarcerated person" means any individual incarcerated in a Federal or State correctional institution who is charged with or convicted of any criminal offense.

(c) Establishment of Office

(1) In general

The Attorney General shall establish within the Department of Justice an Office of Correctional Job Training and Placement. The Office shall be headed by a Director, who shall be appointed by

the Attorney General.

(2) Timing

The Attorney General shall carry out this subsection not later than 6 months after September 13, 1994.

(d) Functions of Office

The Attorney General, acting through the Director of the Office of Correctional Job Training and Placement, in consultation with the Secretary of Labor, shall—

(1) assist in coordinating the activities of the Federal Bonding Program of the Department of Labor, the activities of the Department of Labor related to the certification of eligibility for targeted jobs credits under section 51 of title 26 with respect to ex-offenders, and any other correctional job training or placement program of the Department of Justice or Department of Labor;

(2) provide technical assistance to State and local employment and training agencies that—

(A) receive financial assistance under this Act; or

(B) receive financial assistance through other programs carried out by the Department of Justice or Department of Labor, for activities related to the development of employability;

(3) prepare and implement the use of special staff training materials, and methods, for developing the staff competencies needed by State and local agencies to assist incarcerated persons and ex-offenders in gaining marketable occupational skills and job placement;

(4) prepare and submit to Congress an annual report on the activities of the Office of Correctional Job Training and Placement, and the status of correctional job training or placement programs in the United States;

(5) cooperate with other Federal agencies carrying out correctional job training or placement programs to ensure coordination of such programs throughout the United States;

(6) consult with, and provide outreach to—

(A) State job training coordinating councils, administrative entities, and private industry councils, with respect to programs carried out under this Act; and

(B) other State and local officials, with respect to other employment or training programs carried out by the Department of Justice or Department of Labor;

(7) collect from States information on the training accomplishments and employment outcomes of a sample of incarcerated persons and ex-offenders who were served by employment or training programs carried out, or that receive financial assistance through programs carried out, by the Department of Justice or Department of Labor; and

(8)(A) collect from States and local governments information on the development and implementation of correctional job training or placement programs; and

(B) disseminate such information, as appropriate.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title II, §20418, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1835.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(A), (6)(A), is Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1796, known as the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

§13726. Findings

Congress finds the following:

(1) Increasingly, States are turning to private prisoner transport companies as an alternative to their own personnel or the United States Marshals Service when transporting violent prisoners.

(2) The transport process can last for days if not weeks, as violent prisoners are dropped off and picked up at a network of hubs across the country.

(3) Escapes by violent prisoners during transport by private prisoner transport companies have occurred.

(4) Oversight by the Attorney General is required to address these problems.

(5) While most governmental entities may prefer to use, and will continue to use, fully trained and sworn law enforcement officers when transporting violent prisoners, fiscal or logistical concerns may make the use of highly specialized private prisoner transport companies an option. Nothing in sections 13726 to 13726c of this title should be construed to mean that governmental entities should contract with private prisoner transport companies to move violent prisoners; however when a government entity opts to use a private prisoner transport company to move violent prisoners, then the company should be subject to regulation in order to enhance public safety.

(Pub. L. 106–560, §2, Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2784.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 13726 to 13726c of this title, referred to in par. (5), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–560, Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2784, known as the Interstate Transportation of Dangerous Criminals Act of 2000 or Jeanna's Act, which enacted this section and sections 13726a to 13726c of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 13701 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2000 Amendments note set out under 13701 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

This section was enacted as part of the Interstate Transportation of Dangerous Criminals Act of 2000 or Jeanna's Act, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§13726a. Definitions

In sections 13726 to 13726c of this title:

(1) Crime of violence

The term "crime of violence" has the same meaning as in section 924(c)(3) of title 18.

(2) Private prisoner transport company

The term "private prisoner transport company" means any entity, other than the United States, a State, or an inferior political subdivision of a State, which engages in the business of the transporting for compensation, individuals committed to the custody of any State or of an inferior political subdivision of a State, or any attempt thereof.

(3) Violent prisoner

The term "violent prisoner" means any individual in the custody of a State or an inferior political subdivision of a State who has previously been convicted of or is currently charged with a crime of violence or any similar statute of a State or the inferior political subdivisions of a State, or any attempt thereof.

(Pub. L. 106–560, §3, Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2784.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 13726 to 13726c of this title, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–560, Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2784, known as the Interstate Transportation of Dangerous Criminals Act of 2000 or Jeanna's Act, which enacted this section and sections 13726, 13726b, and 13726c of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 13701 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2000 Amendments note set out under 13701 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

This section was enacted as part of the Interstate Transportation of Dangerous Criminals Act of 2000 or Jeanna's Act, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§13726b. Federal regulation of prisoner transport companies

(a) In general

Not later than 180 days after December 21, 2000, the Attorney General, in consultation with the American Correctional Association and the private prisoner transport industry, shall promulgate regulations relating to the transportation of violent prisoners in or affecting interstate commerce.

(b) Standards and requirements

The regulations shall include the following:

(1) Minimum standards for background checks and preemployment drug testing for potential employees, including requiring criminal background checks, to disqualify persons with a felony conviction or domestic violence conviction as defined by section 921 of title 18 for eligibility for employment. Preemployment drug testing will be in accordance with applicable State laws.

(2) Minimum standards for the length and type of training that employees must undergo before they can transport prisoners not to exceed 100 hours of preservice training focusing on the transportation of prisoners. Training shall be in the areas of use of restraints, searches, use of force, including use of appropriate weapons and firearms, CPR, map reading, and defensive driving.

(3) Restrictions on the number of hours that employees can be on duty during a given time period. Such restriction shall not be more stringent than current applicable rules and regulations concerning hours of service promulgated under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Act.[1]

(4) Minimum standards for the number of personnel that must supervise violent prisoners. Such standards shall provide the transport entity with appropriate discretion, and, absent more restrictive requirements contracted for by the procuring government entity, shall not exceed a requirement of 1 agent for every 6 violent prisoners.

(5) Minimum standards for employee uniforms and identification that require wearing of a uniform with a badge or insignia identifying the employee as a transportation officer.

(6) Standards establishing categories of violent prisoners required to wear brightly colored clothing clearly identifying them as prisoners, when appropriate.

(7) Minimum requirements for the restraints that must be used when transporting violent prisoners, to include leg shackles and double-locked handcuffs, when appropriate.

(8) A requirement that when transporting violent prisoners, private prisoner transport companies notify local law enforcement officials 24 hours in advance of any scheduled stops in their jurisdiction.

(9) A requirement that in the event of an escape by a violent prisoner, private prisoner transport company officials shall immediately notify appropriate law enforcement officials in the jurisdiction where the escape occurs, and the governmental entity that contracted with the private prisoner transport company for the transport of the escaped violent prisoner.

(10) Minimum standards for the safety of violent prisoners in accordance with applicable Federal and State law.

(c) Federal standards

Except for the requirements of subsection (b)(6), the regulations promulgated under sections 13726 to 13726c of this title shall not provide stricter standards with respect to private prisoner transport companies than are applicable, without exception, to the United States Marshals Service, Federal Bureau of Prisons, and the Immigration and Naturalization Service when transporting violent prisoners under comparable circumstances.

(Pub. L. 106–560, §4, Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2785.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

No act with the title Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(3), has been enacted. Provisions authorizing the Secretary of Transportation to prescribe requirements relating to hours of service of employees of a motor carrier are contained in chapter 315 (§31501 et seq.) of Title 49, Transportation.

Sections 13726 to 13726c of this title, referred to in subsec. (c), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–560, Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2784, known as the Interstate Transportation of Dangerous Criminals Act of 2000 or Jeanna's Act, which enacted this section and sections 13726, 13726a, and 13726c of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 13701 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2000 Amendments note set out under 13701 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

This section was enacted as part of the Interstate Transportation of Dangerous Criminals Act of 2000 or Jeanna's Act, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

ABOLITION OF IMMIGRATION AND NATURALIZATION SERVICE AND TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For abolition of Immigration and Naturalization Service, transfer of functions, and treatment of related references, see note set out under section 1551 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13726c. Enforcement

Any person who is found in violation of the regulations established by sections 13726 to 13726c of this title shall—

(1) be liable to the United States for a civil penalty in an amount not to exceed $10,000 for each violation and, in addition, to the United States for the costs of prosecution; and

(2) make restitution to any entity of the United States, of a State, or of an inferior political subdivision of a State, which expends funds for the purpose of apprehending any violent prisoner who escapes from a prisoner transport company as the result, in whole or in part, of a violation of regulations promulgated pursuant to section 13726b(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 106–560, §5, Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2786.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 13726 to 13726c of this title, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–560, Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2784, known as the Interstate Transportation of Dangerous Criminals Act of 2000 or Jeanna's Act, which enacted this section and sections 13726 to 13726b of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 13701 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2000 Amendments note set out under 13701 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

This section was enacted as part of the Interstate Transportation of Dangerous Criminals Act of 2000 or Jeanna's Act, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§13727. State information regarding individuals who die in the custody of law enforcement

(a) In general

For each fiscal year after the expiration of the period specified in subsection (c)(1) in which a State receives funds for a program referred to in subsection (c)(2), the State shall report to the Attorney General, on a quarterly basis and pursuant to guidelines established by the Attorney General, information regarding the death of any person who is detained, under arrest, or is in the process of being arrested, is en route to be incarcerated, or is incarcerated at a municipal or county jail, State prison, State-run boot camp prison, boot camp prison that is contracted out by the State, any State or local contract facility, or other local or State correctional facility (including any juvenile facility).

(b) Information required

The report required by this section shall contain information that, at a minimum, includes—

(1) the name, gender, race, ethnicity, and age of the deceased;

(2) the date, time, and location of death;

(3) the law enforcement agency that detained, arrested, or was in the process of arresting the deceased; and

(4) a brief description of the circumstances surrounding the death.

(c) Compliance and ineligibility

(1) Compliance date

Each State shall have not more than 120 days from December 18, 2014, to comply with subsection (a), except that—

(A) the Attorney General may grant an additional 120 days to a State that is making good faith efforts to comply with such subsection; and

(B) the Attorney General shall waive the requirements of subsection (a) if compliance with such subsection by a State would be unconstitutional under the constitution of such State.

(2) Ineligibility for funds

For any fiscal year after the expiration of the period specified in paragraph (1), a State that fails to comply with subsection (a), shall, at the discretion of the Attorney General, be subject to not more than a 10-percent reduction of the funds that would otherwise be allocated for that fiscal year to the State under subpart 1 of part E of title I of the Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968 (42 U.S.C. 3750 et seq.), whether characterized as the Edward Byrne Memorial State and Local Law Enforcement Assistance Programs, the Local Government Law Enforcement Block Grants Program, the Edward Byrne Memorial Justice Assistance Grant Program, or otherwise.

(d) Reallocation

Amounts not allocated under a program referred to in subsection (c)(2) to a State for failure to fully comply with subsection (a) shall be reallocated under that program to States that have not failed to comply with such subsection.

(e) Definitions

In this section the terms "boot camp prison" and "State" have the meaning given those terms, respectively, in section 901(a) of the Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968 (42 U.S.C. 3791(a)).

(f) Study and report of information relating to deaths in custody

(1) Study required

The Attorney General shall carry out a study of the information reported under subsection (b) and section 13727a(a) of this title to—

(A) determine means by which such information can be used to reduce the number of such deaths; and

(B) examine the relationship, if any, between the number of such deaths and the actions of management of such jails, prisons, and other specified facilities relating to such deaths.

(2) Report

Not later than 2 years after December 18, 2014, the Attorney General shall prepare and submit to Congress a report that contains the findings of the study required by paragraph (1).

(Pub. L. 113–242, §2, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 2860.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), is Pub. L. 90–351, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 197. Subpart 1 of part E of title I of the Act is classified generally to part A (§3750 et seq.) of subchapter V of chapter 46 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3711 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

This section was enacted as part of the Death in Custody Reporting Act of 2013, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§13727a. Federal law enforcement death in custody reporting requirement

(a) In general

For each fiscal year (beginning after the date that is 120 days after December 18, 2014), the head of each Federal law enforcement agency shall submit to the Attorney General a report (in such form and manner specified by the Attorney General) that contains information regarding the death of any person who is—

(1) detained, under arrest, or is in the process of being arrested by any officer of such Federal law enforcement agency (or by any State or local law enforcement officer while participating in and for purposes of a Federal law enforcement operation, task force, or any other Federal law enforcement capacity carried out by such Federal law enforcement agency); or

(2) en route to be incarcerated or detained, or is incarcerated or detained at—

(A) any facility (including any immigration or juvenile facility) pursuant to a contract with such Federal law enforcement agency;

(B) any State or local government facility used by such Federal law enforcement agency; or

(C) any Federal correctional facility or Federal pre-trial detention facility located within the United States.

(b) Information required

Each report required by this section shall include, at a minimum, the information required by section 13727(b) of this title.

(c) Study and report

Information reported under subsection (a) shall be analyzed and included in the study and report required by section 13727(f) of this title.

(Pub. L. 113–242, §3, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 2861.)

CODIFICATION

This section was enacted as part of the Death in Custody Reporting Act of 2013, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

SUBCHAPTER II—CRIME PREVENTION

PART A—OUNCE OF PREVENTION COUNCIL

§13741. Ounce of Prevention Council

(a) Establishment

(1) In general

There is established an Ounce of Prevention Council (referred to in this subchapter as the "Council"), the members of which—

(A) shall include the Attorney General, the Secretary of Education, the Secretary of Health and Human Services, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, the Secretary of Labor, the Secretary of Agriculture, the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of the Interior, and the

Director of the Office of National Drug Control Policy; and

(B) may include other officials of the executive branch as directed by the President.

(2) Chair

The President shall designate the Chair of the Council from among its members (referred to in this subchapter as the "Chair").

(3) Staff

The Council may employ any necessary staff to carry out its functions, and may delegate any of its functions or powers to a member or members of the Council.

(b) Program coordination

For any program authorized under the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994, the Ounce of Prevention Council Chair, only at the request of the Council member with jurisdiction over that program, may coordinate that program, in whole or in part, through the Council.

(c) Administrative responsibilities and powers

In addition to the program coordination provided in subsection (b), the Council shall be responsible for such functions as coordinated planning, development of a comprehensive crime prevention program catalogue, provision of assistance to communities and community-based organizations seeking information regarding crime prevention programs and integrated program service delivery, and development of strategies for program integration and grant simplification. The Council shall have the authority to audit the expenditure of funds received by grantees under programs administered by or coordinated through the Council. In consultation with the Council, the Chair may issue regulations and guidelines to carry out this part and programs administered by or coordinated through the Council.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30101, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1836.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), (2), was in the original "this title", meaning title III of Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1836, which enacted this subchapter, sections 3796ff to 3796ff–4 of this title, and sections 6701 to 6720 of Title 31, Money and Finance, amended sections 3791, 3793, and 3797 of this title, former sections 2502 to 2504, 2506, and 2512 of Title 16, Conservation, and section 3621 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and enacted provisions set out as notes under section 13701 of this title and sections 6701 and 6702 of Title 31. For complete classification of title III to the Code, see Tables.

The Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1796. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

§13742. Ounce of prevention grant program

(a) In general

The Council may make grants for—

(1) summer and after-school (including weekend and holiday) education and recreation programs;

(2) mentoring, tutoring, and other programs involving participation by adult role models (such as D.A.R.E. America);

(3) programs assisting and promoting employability and job placement; and

(4) prevention and treatment programs to reduce substance abuse, child abuse, and adolescent pregnancy, including outreach programs for at-risk families.

(b) Applicants

Applicants may be Indian tribal governments, cities, counties, or other municipalities, school boards, colleges and universities, private nonprofit entities, or consortia of eligible applicants. Applicants must show that a planning process has occurred that has involved organizations,

institutions, and residents of target areas, including young people, and that there has been cooperation between neighborhood-based entities, municipality-wide bodies, and local private-sector representatives. Applicants must demonstrate the substantial involvement of neighborhood-based entities in the carrying out of the proposed activities. Proposals must demonstrate that a broad base of collaboration and coordination will occur in the implementation of the proposed activities, involving cooperation among youth-serving organizations, schools, health and social service providers, employers, law enforcement professionals, local government, and residents of target areas, including young people. Applications shall be geographically based in particular neighborhoods or sections of municipalities or particular segments of rural areas, and applications shall demonstrate how programs will serve substantial proportions of children and youth resident in the target area with activities designed to have substantial impact on their lives.

(c) Priority

In making such grants, the Council shall give preference to coalitions consisting of a broad spectrum of community-based and social service organizations that have a coordinated team approach to reducing gang membership and the effects of substance abuse, and providing alternatives to at-risk youth.

(d) Federal share

(1) In general

The Federal share of a grant made under this part [1] may not exceed 75 percent of the total costs of the projects described in the applications submitted under subsection (b) for the fiscal year for which the projects receive assistance under this subchapter.

(2) Waiver

The Council may waive the 25 percent matching requirement under paragraph (1) upon making a determination that a waiver is equitable in view of the financial circumstances affecting the ability of the applicant to meet that requirement.

(3) Non-Federal share

The non-Federal share of such costs may be in cash or in kind, fairly evaluated, including plant, equipment, and services.

(4) Nonsupplanting requirement

Funds made available under this subchapter to a governmental entity shall not be used to supplant State or local funds, or in the case of Indian tribal governments, funds supplied by the Bureau of Indian Affairs, but shall be used to increase the amount of funds that would, in the absence of Federal funds received under this subchapter, be made available from State or local sources, or in the case of Indian tribal governments, from funds supplied by the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

(5) Evaluation

The Council shall conduct a thorough evaluation of the programs assisted under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30102, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1837.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), appearing in the original is unidentifiable because subtitle A of title III of Pub. L. 103–322 does not contain parts.

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), (4), (5), was in the original "this title", meaning title III of Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1836, which enacted this subchapter, sections 3796ff to 3796ff–4 of this title, and sections 6701 to 6720 of Title 31, Money and Finance, amended sections 3791, 3793, and 3797 of this title, former sections 2502 to 2504, 2506, and 2512 of Title 16, Conservation, and section 3621 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and enacted provisions set out as notes under section 13701 of this title and sections 6701 and 6702 of Title 31. For complete classification of title III to the Code, see Tables.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13743. "Indian tribe" defined

In this part, "Indian tribe" means a tribe, band, pueblo, nation, or other organized group or community of Indians, including an Alaska Native village (as defined in or established under the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.),[1] that is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30103, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1838.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 92–203, §2, Dec. 18, 1971, 85 Stat. 688, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 33 (§1601 et seq.) of Title 43, Public Lands. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of Title 43 and Tables.

[1] So in original. A closing parenthesis probably should precede the comma.

§13744. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part—

(1) $1,500,000 for fiscal year 1995;
(2) $14,700,000 for fiscal year 1996;
(3) $18,000,000 for fiscal year 1997;
(4) $18,000,000 for fiscal year 1998;
(5) $18,900,000 for fiscal year 1999; and
(6) $18,900,000 for fiscal year 2000.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30104, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1838.)

PART B—LOCAL CRIME PREVENTION BLOCK GRANT PROGRAM

§§13751 to 13758. Repealed. Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1154(b)(1), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3113

Section 13751, Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30201, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1838, related to payments to local governments.

Section 13752, Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30202, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1841, authorized appropriations.

Section 13753, Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30203, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1841; Pub. L. 104–316, title I, §122(u), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3838, related to qualification for payment.

Section 13754, Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30204, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1842, related to allocation and distribution of funds.

Section 13755, Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30205, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1843, related to utilization of funds to contract with the private sector.

Section 13756, Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30206, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1843, related to public participation.

Section 13757, Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30207, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1844, related to application of administrative provisions.

Section 13758, Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30208, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1844, defined terms for purposes of this part.

YOUTH VIOLENCE REDUCTION DEMONSTRATION PROJECTS

Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1199, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3132, provided that:

"(a) ESTABLISHMENT OF YOUTH VIOLENCE REDUCTION DEMONSTRATION PROJECTS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Attorney General shall make up to 5 grants for the purpose of carrying out Youth Violence Demonstration Projects to reduce juvenile and young adult violence, homicides, and recidivism among high-risk populations.

"(2) ELIGIBLE ENTITIES.—An entity is eligible for a grant under paragraph (1) if it is a unit of local government or a combination of local governments established by agreement for purposes of undertaking a demonstration project.

"(b) SELECTION OF GRANT RECIPIENTS.—

"(1) AWARDS.—The Attorney General shall award grants for Youth Violence Reduction Demonstration Projects on a competitive basis.

"(2) AMOUNT OF AWARDS.—No single grant award made under subsection (a) shall exceed $15,000,000 per fiscal year.

"(3) APPLICATION.—An application for a grant under paragraph (1) shall be submitted to the Attorney General in such a form, and containing such information and assurances, as the Attorney General may require, and at a minimum shall propose—

"(A) a program strategy targeting areas with the highest incidence of youth violence and homicides;

"(B) outcome measures and specific objective indicia of performance to assess the effectiveness of the program; and

"(C) a plan for evaluation by an independent third party.

"(4) DISTRIBUTION.—In making grants under this section, the Attorney General shall ensure the following:

"(A) No less than 1 recipient is a city with a population exceeding 1,000,000 and an increase of at least 30 percent in the aggregated juvenile and young adult homicide victimization rate during calendar year 2005 as compared to calendar year 2004.

"(B) No less than one recipient is a nonmetropolitan county or group of counties with per capita arrest rates of juveniles and young adults for serious violent offenses that exceed the national average for nonmetropolitan counties by at least 5 percent.

"(5) CRITERIA.—In making grants under this section, the Attorney General shall give preference to entities operating programs that meet the following criteria:

"(A) A program focusing on—

"(i) reducing youth violence and homicides, with an emphasis on juvenile and young adult probationers and other juveniles and young adults who have had or are likely to have contact with the juvenile justice system;

"(ii) fostering positive relationships between program participants and supportive adults in the community; and

"(iii) accessing comprehensive supports for program participants through coordinated community referral networks, including job opportunities, educational programs, counseling services, substance abuse programs, recreational opportunities, and other services.

"(B) A program goal of almost daily contacts with and supervision of participating juveniles and young adults through small caseloads and a coordinated team approach among case managers drawn from the community, probation officers, and police officers.

"(C) The use of existing structures, local government agencies, and nonprofit organizations to operate the program.

"(D) Inclusion in program staff of individuals who live or have lived in the community in which the program operates; have personal experiences or cultural competency that build credibility in relationships with program participants; and will serve as a case manager, intermediary, and mentor.

"(E) Fieldwork and neighborhood outreach in communities where the young violent offenders live, including support of the program from local public and private organizations and community members.

"(F) Imposition of graduated probation sanctions to deter violent and criminal behavior.

"(G) A record of program operation and effectiveness evaluation over a period of at least five years prior to the date of enactment of this Act [Jan. 5, 2006].

"(H) A program structure that can serve as a model for other communities in addressing the problem of youth violence and juvenile and young adult recidivism.

"(c) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.—Amounts paid to an eligible entity under a grant award may be used for the following activities:

"(1) Designing and enhancing program activities.
"(2) Employing and training personnel.
"(3) Purchasing or leasing equipment.
"(4) Providing services and training to program participants and their families.
"(5) Supporting related law enforcement and probation activities, including personnel costs.
"(6) Establishing and maintaining a system of program records.
"(7) Acquiring, constructing, expanding, renovating, or operating facilities to support the program.
"(8) Evaluating program effectiveness.
"(9) Undertaking other activities determined by the Attorney General as consistent with the purposes and requirements of the demonstration program.

"(d) EVALUATION AND REPORTS.—

"(1) INDEPENDENT EVALUATION.—The Attorney General may use up to $500,000 of funds appropriated annually under this such section to—

"(A) prepare and implement a design for interim and overall evaluations of performance and progress of the funded demonstration projects;

"(B) provide training and technical assistance to grant recipients; and

"(C) disseminate broadly the information generated and lessons learned from the operation of the demonstration projects.

"(2) REPORTS TO CONGRESS.—Not later than 120 days after the last day of each fiscal year for which 1 or more demonstration grants are awarded, the Attorney General shall submit to Congress a report which shall include—

"(A) a summary of the activities carried out with such grants;

"(B) an assessment by the Attorney General of the program carried out; and

"(C) such other information as the Attorney General considers appropriate.

"(e) FEDERAL SHARE.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Federal share of a grant awarded under this Act [see Short Title of 2006 Amendment note set out under section 13701 of this title] shall not exceed 90 percent of the total program costs.

"(2) NON-FEDERAL SHARE.—The non-Federal share of such cost may be provided in cash or in-kind.

"(f) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

"(1) UNIT OF LOCAL GOVERNMENT.—The term 'unit of local government' means a county, township, city, or political subdivision of a county, township, or city, that is a unit of local government as determined by the Secretary of Commerce for general statistical purposes.

"(2) JUVENILE.—The term 'juvenile' means an individual who is 17 years of age or younger.

"(3) YOUNG ADULT.—The term 'young adult' means an individual who is 18 through 24 years of age.

"(g) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $50,000,000 for fiscal year 2007 and such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2009, to remain available until expended."

NATIONAL POLICE ATHLETIC/ACTIVITIES LEAGUE YOUTH ENRICHMENT

Pub. L. 106–367, Oct. 27, 2000, 114 Stat. 1412, as amended by Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §§612–617, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 632, 633, provided that:

"SECTION 1. SHORT TITLE.

"This Act may be cited as the 'National Police Athletic/Activities League Youth Enrichment Act of 2000'.

"SEC. 2. FINDINGS.

"Congress makes the following findings:

"(1) The goals of the Police Athletic/Activities League are to—

"(A) increase the academic success of youth participants in PAL programs;

"(B) promote a safe, healthy environment for youth under the supervision of law enforcement personnel where mutual trust and respect can be built;

"(C) develop life enhancing character and leadership skills in young people;

"(D) increase school attendance by providing alternatives to suspensions and expulsions;

"(E) reduce the juvenile crime rate in participating designated communities and the number of police calls involving juveniles during nonschool hours;

"(F) provide youths with alternatives to drugs, alcohol, tobacco, and gang activity;

"(G) create positive communications and interaction between youth and law enforcement personnel; and

"(H) prepare youth for the workplace.

"(2) The Police Athletic/Activities League, during its 90-year history as a national organization, has proven to be a positive force in the communities it serves.

"(3) The Police Athletic/Activities League is a network of 1,700 facilities serving over 3,000 communities. There are 350 PAL chapters throughout the United States, the Virgin Islands, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, serving 2,000,000 youth, ages 5 to 18, nationwide.

"(4) Based on PAL chapter demographics, approximately 85 percent of the youths who benefit from PAL programs live in inner cities and urban areas.

"(5) PAL chapters are locally operated, volunteer-driven organizations. Although most PAL chapters are sponsored by a law enforcement agency, PAL chapters rarely receive direct funding from law enforcement agencies and are dependent in large part on support from the private sector, such as individuals, business leaders, corporations, and foundations. PAL chapters have been exceptionally successful in balancing public funds with private sector donations and maximizing community involvement.

"(6) Today's youth face far greater risks than did their parents and grandparents. Law enforcement statistics demonstrate that youth between the ages of 12 and 18 are at risk of committing violent acts and being victims of violent acts between the hours of 3 p.m. and 8 p.m.

"(7) Greater numbers of students are dropping out of school and failing in school, even though the consequences of academic failure are more dire in 2005 than ever before.

"(8) Many distressed areas in the United States are still underserved by PAL chapters.

"SEC. 3. PURPOSE.

"The purpose of this Act is to provide adequate resources in the form of—

"(1) assistance for the 342 established PAL chapters to increase of services to the communities they are serving;

"(2) seed money for the establishment of 250 (50 per year over a 5-year period) additional local PAL chapters in public housing projects and other distressed areas, including distressed areas with a majority population of Native Americans, by not later than fiscal year 2010; and

"(3) support of an annual gathering of PAL chapters and designated youth leaders from such chapters to participate in a 3-day conference that addresses national and local issues impacting the youth of America and includes educational sessions to advance character and leadership skills.

"SEC. 4. DEFINITIONS.

"In this Act:

"(1) ASSISTANT ATTORNEY GENERAL.—The term 'Assistant Attorney General' means the Assistant Attorney General for the Office of Justice Programs of the Department of Justice.

"(2) DISTRESSED AREA.—The term 'distressed area' means an urban, suburban, or rural area with a high percentage of high-risk youth, as defined in section 509A of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 290aa–8(f)) [now 42 U.S.C. 290bb–23(g)].

"(3) PAL CHAPTER.—The term 'PAL chapter' means a chapter of a Police or Sheriff's Athletic/Activities League.

"(4) POLICE ATHLETIC/ACTIVITIES LEAGUE.—The term 'Police Athletic/Activities League' means the private, nonprofit, national representative organization for 320 Police or Sheriff's Athletic/Activities Leagues throughout the United States (including the Virgin Islands and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico).

"(5) PUBLIC HOUSING; PROJECT.—The terms 'public housing' and 'project' have the meanings given those terms in section 3(b) of the United States Housing Act of 1937 (42 U.S.C. 1437a(b)).

"SEC. 5. GRANTS AUTHORIZED.

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Subject to appropriations, for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010, the Assistant Attorney General shall award a grant to the Police Athletic/Activities League for the purpose of establishing PAL chapters to serve public housing projects and other distressed areas, and expanding existing PAL chapters to serve additional youths.

"(b) APPLICATION.—

"(1) SUBMISSION.—In order to be eligible to receive a grant under this section, the Police Athletic/Activities League shall submit to the Assistant Attorney General an application, which shall include—

"(A) a long-term strategy to establish 250 additional PAL chapters and detailed summary of those areas in which new PAL chapters will be established, or in which existing chapters will be expanded to serve additional youths, during the next fiscal year;

"(B) a plan to ensure that there are a total of not fewer than 500 PAL chapters in operation before January 1, 2010;

"(C) a certification that there will be appropriate coordination with those communities where new PAL chapters will be located; and

"(D) an explanation of the manner in which new PAL chapters will operate without additional, direct Federal financial assistance once assistance under this Act is discontinued.

"(2) REVIEW.—The Assistant Attorney General shall review and take action on an application submitted under paragraph (1) not later than 120 days after the date of such submission.

"SEC. 6. USE OF FUNDS.

"(a) IN GENERAL.—

"(1) ASSISTANCE FOR NEW AND EXPANDED CHAPTERS.—Amounts made available under a grant awarded under this Act shall be used by the Police Athletic/Activities League to provide funding for the establishment of PAL chapters serving public housing projects and other distressed areas, or the expansion of existing PAL chapters.

"(2) PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS.—Each new or expanded PAL chapter assisted under paragraph (1) shall carry out not less than two programs during nonschool hours, of which—

"(A) not less than one program shall provide—

"(i) mentoring assistance;

"(ii) academic assistance;

"(iii) recreational and athletic activities;

"(iv) technology training; or

"(v) character development and leadership training; and

"(B) any remaining programs shall provide—

"(i) drug, alcohol, and gang prevention activities;

"(ii) health and nutrition counseling;

"(iii) cultural and social programs;

"(iv) conflict resolution training, anger management, and peer pressure training;

"(v) job skill preparation activities; or

"(vi) Youth Police Athletic/Activities League Conferences or Youth Forums.

"(b) ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS.—In carrying out the programs under subsection (a), a PAL chapter shall, to the maximum extent practicable—

"(1) use volunteers from businesses, academic communities, social organizations, and law enforcement organizations to serve as mentors or to assist in other ways;

"(2) ensure that youth in the local community participate in designing the after-school activities;

"(3) develop creative methods of conducting outreach to youth in the community;

"(4) request donations of computer equipment and other materials and equipment; and

"(5) work with State and local park and recreation agencies so that activities funded with amounts made available under a grant under this Act will not duplicate activities funded from other sources in the community served.

"SEC. 7. REPORTS.

"(a) REPORT TO ASSISTANT ATTORNEY GENERAL.—For each fiscal year for which a grant is awarded under this Act, the Police Athletic/Activities League shall submit to the Assistant Attorney General a report on the use of amounts made available under the grant.

"(b) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—Not later than May 1 of each fiscal year for which amounts are made available to carry out this Act, the Assistant Attorney General shall submit to the Committees on the Judiciary of the Senate and the House of Representatives a report that details the progress made under this Act in establishing and expanding PAL chapters in public housing projects and other distressed areas, and the effectiveness of the PAL programs in reducing drug abuse, school dropouts, and juvenile crime.

"SEC. 8. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.

"(a) IN GENERAL.—There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this Act $16,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010.

"(b) FUNDING FOR PROGRAM ADMINISTRATION.—Of the amount made available to carry out this Act in each fiscal year—

"(1) not less than 2 percent shall be used for research and evaluation of the grant program under this Act;

"(2) not less than 1 percent shall be used for technical assistance related to the use of amounts made available under grants awarded under this Act; and

"(3) not less than 1 percent shall be used for the management and administration of the grant program under this Act, except that the total amount made available under this paragraph for administration of that program shall not exceed 6 percent."

[Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §612(3)(B), July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 632, which directed amendment of section 2(3) of Pub. L. 106–367, set out above, by substituting "2,000,000 youth" for "1,500,000 youth", was executed by making the substitution for "1,500,000 youths", to reflect the probable intent of Congress.]

KIDS 2000 CRIME PREVENTION AND COMPUTER EDUCATION INITIATIVE

Pub. L. 106–313, title I, §112, Oct. 17, 2000, 114 Stat. 1260, provided that:

"(a) SHORT TITLE.—This section may be cited as the 'Kids 2000 Act'.

"(b) FINDINGS.—Congress makes the following findings:

"(1) There is an increasing epidemic of juvenile crime throughout the United States.

"(2) It is well documented that the majority of juvenile crimes take place during after-school hours.

"(3) Knowledge of technology is becoming increasingly necessary for children in school and out of school.

"(4) The Boys and Girls Clubs of America have 2,700 clubs throughout all 50 States, serving over 3,000,000 boys and girls primarily from at-risk communities.

"(5) The Boys and Girls Clubs of America have the physical structures in place for immediate implementation of an after-school technology program.

"(6) Building technology centers and providing integrated content and full-time staffing at those centers in the Boys and Girls Clubs of America nationwide will help foster education, job training, and an alternative to crime for at-risk youth.

"(7) Partnerships between the public sector and the private sector are an effective way of providing after-school technology programs in the Boys and Girls Clubs of America.

"(8) PowerUp: Bridging the Digital Divide is an entity comprised of more than a dozen nonprofit organizations, major corporations, and Federal agencies that have joined together to launch a major new initiative to help ensure that America's underserved young people acquire the skills, experiences, and resources they need to succeed in the digital age.

"(9) Bringing PowerUp into the Boys and Girls Clubs of America will be an effective way to ensure that our youth have a safe, crime-free environment in which to learn the technological skills they need to close the divide between young people who have access to computer-based information and technology-related skills and those who do not.

"(c) AFTER-SCHOOL TECHNOLOGY GRANTS TO THE BOYS AND GIRLS CLUBS OF AMERICA.—

"(1) PURPOSES.—The Attorney General shall make grants to the Boys and Girls Clubs of America for the purpose of funding effective after-school technology programs, such as PowerUp, in order to provide—

"(A) constructive technology-focused activities that are part of a comprehensive program to provide access to technology and technology training to youth during after-school hours, weekends, and school vacations;

"(B) supervised activities in safe environments for youth; and

"(C) full-time staffing with teachers, tutors, and other qualified personnel.

"(2) SUBAWARDS.—The Boys and Girls Clubs of America shall make subawards to local boys and girls clubs authorizing expenditures associated with providing technology programs such as PowerUp, including the hiring of teachers and other personnel, procurement of goods and services, including computer equipment, or such other purposes as are approved by the Attorney General.

"(d) APPLICATIONS.—

"(1) ELIGIBILITY.—In order to be eligible to receive a grant under this section, an applicant for a subaward (specified in subsection (c)(2)) shall submit an application to the Boys and Girls Clubs of America, in such form and containing such information as the Attorney General may reasonably require.

"(2) APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS.—Each application submitted in accordance with paragraph (1) shall include—

"(A) a request for a subgrant to be used for the purposes of this section;

"(B) a description of the communities to be served by the grant, including the nature of juvenile

crime, violence, and drug use in the communities;

"(C) written assurances that Federal funds received under this section will be used to supplement and not supplant, non-Federal funds that would otherwise be available for activities funded under this section;

"(D) written assurances that all activities funded under this section will be supervised by qualified adults;

"(E) a plan for assuring that program activities will take place in a secure environment that is free of crime and drugs;

"(F) a plan outlining the utilization of content-based programs such as PowerUp, and the provision of trained adult personnel to supervise the after-school technology training; and

"(G) any additional statistical or financial information that the Boys and Girls Clubs of America may reasonably require.

"(e) GRANT AWARDS.—In awarding subgrants under this section, the Boys and Girls Clubs of America shall consider—

"(1) the ability of the applicant to provide the intended services;

"(2) the history and establishment of the applicant in providing youth activities; and

"(3) the extent to which services will be provided in crime-prone areas and technologically underserved populations, and efforts to achieve an equitable geographic distribution of the grant awards.

"(f) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—There is authorized to be appropriated $20,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2001 through 2006 to carry out this section.

"(2) SOURCE OF FUNDS.—Funds to carry out this section may be derived from the Violent Crime Reduction Trust Fund.

"(3) CONTINUED AVAILABILITY.—Amounts made available under this subsection shall remain available until expended."

ESTABLISHMENT OF BOYS AND GIRLS CLUBS

Pub. L. 104–294, title IV, §401, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3496, as amended by Pub. L. 105–133, §1, Dec. 2, 1997, 111 Stat. 2568; Pub. L. 107–273, div. B, title I, §1101, Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1791; Pub. L. 108–344, §1, Oct. 18, 2004, 118 Stat. 1376, provided that:

"(a) FINDINGS AND PURPOSE.—

"(1) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds that—

"(A) the Boys and Girls Clubs of America, chartered by an Act of Congress on December 10, 1991 [Pub. L. 102–199, see Tables for classification], during its 90-year history as a national organization, has proven itself as a positive force in the communities it serves;

"(B) there are 1,810 Boys and Girls Clubs facilities throughout the United States, Puerto Rico, and the United States Virgin Islands, serving 2,420,000 youths nationwide;

"(C) 71 percent of the young people who benefit from Boys and Girls Clubs programs live in our inner cities and urban areas;

"(D) Boys and Girls Clubs are locally run and have been exceptionally successful in balancing public funds with private sector donations and maximizing community involvement;

"(E) Boys and Girls Clubs are located in 289 public housing sites across the Nation;

"(F) public housing projects in which there is an active Boys and Girls Club have experienced a 25 percent reduction in the presence of crack cocaine, a 22 percent reduction in overall drug activity, and a 13 percent reduction in juvenile crime;

"(G) these results have been achieved in the face of national trends in which overall drug use by youth has increased 105 percent since 1992 and 10.9 percent of the Nation's young people use drugs on a monthly basis; and

"(H) many public housing projects and other distressed areas are still underserved by Boys and Girls Clubs.

"(2) PURPOSE.—The purpose of this section is to provide adequate resources in the form of seed money for the Boys and Girls Clubs of America to establish 1,500 additional local clubs where needed, with particular emphasis placed on establishing clubs in public housing projects and distressed areas, and to ensure that there are a total of not less than 5,000 Boys and Girls Clubs of America facilities in operation not later than December 31, 2010, serving not less than 5,000,000 young people.

"(b) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section—

"(1) the terms 'public housing' and 'project' have the same meanings as in section 3(b) of the United States Housing Act of 1937 [42 U.S.C. 1437a(b)]; and

"(2) the term 'distressed area' means an urban, suburban, rural area, or Indian reservation with a population of high risk youth as defined in section 517 of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 290bb–23) of sufficient size to warrant the establishment of a Boys and Girls Club.

"(c) ESTABLISHMENT.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—For each of the fiscal years 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, and 2010, the Director of the Bureau of Justice Assistance of the Department of Justice shall make a grant to the Boys and Girls Clubs of America for the purpose of establishing and extending Boys and Girls Clubs facilities where needed, with particular emphasis placed on establishing clubs in and extending services to public housing projects and distressed areas.

"(2) APPLICATIONS.—The Attorney General shall accept an application for a grant under this subsection if submitted by the Boys and Girls Clubs of America, and approve or deny the grant not later than 90 days after the date on which the application is submitted, if the application—

"(A) includes a long-term strategy to establish 1,500 additional Boys and Girls Clubs and detailed summary of those areas in which new facilities will be established, or in which existing facilities will be expanded to serve additional youths, during the next fiscal year;

"(B) includes a plan to ensure that there are a total of not less than 5,000 Boys and Girls Clubs of America facilities in operation before January 1, 2010;

"(C) certifies that there will be appropriate coordination with those communities where clubs will be located; and

"(D) explains the manner in which new facilities will operate without additional, direct Federal financial assistance to the Boys and Girls Clubs once assistance under this subsection is discontinued.

"(d) REPORT.—Not later than May 1 of each fiscal year for which amounts are made available to carry out this Act [see Tables for classification], the Attorney General shall submit to the Committees on the Judiciary of the Senate and the House of Representatives a report that details the progress made under this Act in establishing Boys and Girls Clubs in public housing projects and other distressed areas, and the effectiveness of the programs in reducing drug abuse and juvenile crime.

"(e) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

"(A) $80,000,000 for fiscal year 2006;

"(B) $85,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

"(C) $90,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;

"(D) $95,000,000 for fiscal year 2009; and

"(E) $100,000,000 for fiscal year 2010.

"[(2) Repealed. Pub. L. 107–273, div. B, title I, §1101(3), Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1791.]

"(f) ROLE MODEL GRANTS.—Of amounts made available under subsection (e) for any fiscal year—

"(1) not more than 5 percent may be used to provide a grant to the Boys and Girls Clubs of America for administrative, travel, and other costs associated with a national role-model speaking tour program; and

"(2) no amount may be used to compensate speakers other than to reimburse speakers for reasonable travel and accommodation costs associated with the program described in paragraph (1)."

[Effective Aug. 1, 2000, all functions of Director of Bureau of Justice Assistance, other than those enumerated in section 3742(3) to (6) of this title, transferred to Assistant Attorney General for Office of Justice Programs, see section 1000(a)(1) [title I, §108(b)] of Pub. L. 106–113, set out as a note under section 3741 of this title.]

PART C—MODEL INTENSIVE GRANT PROGRAMS

§13771. Grant authorization

(a) Establishment

(1) In general

The Attorney General may award grants to not more than 15 chronic high intensive crime areas to develop comprehensive model crime prevention programs that—

(A) involve and utilize a broad spectrum of community resources, including nonprofit community organizations, law enforcement organizations, and appropriate State and Federal

agencies, including the State educational agencies;

(B) attempt to relieve conditions that encourage crime; and

(C) provide meaningful and lasting alternatives to involvement in crime.

(2) Consultation with the Ounce of Prevention Council

The Attorney General may consult with the Ounce of Prevention Council in awarding grants under paragraph (1).

(b) Priority

In awarding grants under subsection (a), the Attorney General shall give priority to proposals that—

(1) are innovative in approach to the prevention of crime in a specific area;

(2) vary in approach to ensure that comparisons of different models may be made; and

(3) coordinate crime prevention programs funded under this program with other existing Federal programs to address the overall needs of communities that benefit from grants received under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30301, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1844.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(3), was in the original "this title", meaning title III of Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1836, which enacted this subchapter, sections 3796ff to 3796ff–4 of this title, and sections 6701 to 6720 of Title 31, Money and Finance, amended sections 3791, 3793, and 3797 of this title, former sections 2502 to 2504, 2506, and 2512 of Title 16, Conservation, and section 3621 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and enacted provisions set out as notes under section 13701 of this title and sections 6701 and 6702 of Title 31. For complete classification of title III to the Code, see Tables.

§13772. Uses of funds

(a) In general

Funds awarded under this part may be used only for purposes described in an approved application. The intent of grants under this part is to fund intensively comprehensive crime prevention programs in chronic high intensive crime areas.

(b) Guidelines

The Attorney General shall issue and publish in the Federal Register guidelines that describe suggested purposes for which funds under approved programs may be used.

(c) Equitable distribution of funds

In disbursing funds under this part, the Attorney General shall ensure the distribution of awards equitably on a geographic basis, including urban and rural areas of varying population and geographic size.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30302, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1845.)

§13773. Program requirements

(a) Description

An applicant shall include a description of the distinctive factors that contribute to chronic violent crime within the area proposed to be served by the grant. Such factors may include lack of alternative activities and programs for youth, deterioration or lack of public facilities, inadequate public services such as public transportation, street lighting, community-based substance abuse treatment facilities, or employment services offices, and inadequate police or public safety services, equipment, or facilities.

(b) Comprehensive plan

An applicant shall include a comprehensive, community-based plan to attack intensively the principal factors identified in subsection (a). Such plans shall describe the specific purposes for which funds are proposed to be used and how each purpose will address specific factors. The plan also shall specify how local nonprofit organizations, government agencies, private businesses, citizens groups, volunteer organizations, and interested citizens will cooperate in carrying out the purposes of the grant.

(c) Evaluation

An applicant shall include an evaluation plan by which the success of the plan will be measured, including the articulation of specific, objective indicia of performance, how the indicia will be evaluated, and a projected timetable for carrying out the evaluation.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30303, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1845.)

§13774. Applications

To request a grant under this part the chief local elected official of an area shall—

(1) prepare and submit to the Attorney General an application in such form, at such time, and in accordance with such procedures, as the Attorney General shall establish; and

(2) provide an assurance that funds received under this part shall be used to supplement, not supplant, non-Federal funds that would otherwise be available for programs funded under this part.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30304, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1845.)

§13775. Reports

Not later than December 31, 1998, the Attorney General shall prepare and submit to the Committees on the Judiciary of the House and Senate an evaluation of the model programs developed under this part and make recommendations regarding the implementation of a national crime prevention program.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30305, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1846.)

§13776. Definitions

In this part—

"chief local elected official" means an official designated under regulations issued by the Attorney General. The criteria used by the Attorney General in promulgating such regulations shall ensure administrative efficiency and accountability in the expenditure of funds and execution of funded projects under this part.

"chronic high intensity crime area" means an area meeting criteria adopted by the Attorney General by regulation that, at a minimum, define areas with—

(A) consistently high rates of violent crime as reported in the Federal Bureau of Investigation's "Uniform Crime Reports", and

(B) chronically high rates of poverty as determined by the Bureau of the Census.

"State" means a State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Northern Mariana Islands.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30306, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1846.)

§13777. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part—

(1) $100,000,000 for fiscal year 1996;
(2) $125,100,000 for fiscal year 1997;
(3) $125,100,000 for fiscal year 1998;
(4) $125,100,000 for fiscal year 1999; and
(5) $150,200,000 for fiscal year 2000.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30307, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1846.)

PART D—FAMILY AND COMMUNITY ENDEAVOR SCHOOLS GRANT PROGRAM

§13791. Community schools youth services and supervision grant program

(a) Short title

This section may be cited as the "Community Schools Youth Services and Supervision Grant Program Act of 1994".

(b) Definitions

In this section—

"child" means a person who is not younger than 5 and not older than 18 years old.

"community-based organization" means a private, locally initiated, community-based organization that—

(A) is a nonprofit organization, as defined in section 5603(23) of this title; and

(B) is operated by a consortium of service providers, consisting of representatives of 5 or more of the following categories of persons:

(i) Residents of the community.

(ii) Business and civic leaders actively involved in providing employment and business development opportunities in the community.

(iii) Educators.

(iv) Religious organizations (which shall not provide any sectarian instruction or sectarian worship in connection with an activity funded under this subchapter).

(v) Law enforcement agencies.

(vi) Public housing agencies.

(vii) Other public agencies.

(viii) Other interested parties.

"eligible community" means an area identified pursuant to subsection (e).

"Indian tribe" means a tribe, band, pueblo, nation, or other organized group or community of Indians, including an Alaska Native village (as defined in or established under the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.)), that is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians.

"poverty line" means the income official poverty line (as defined by the Office of Management and Budget, and revised annually in accordance with section 9902(2) of this title [1] applicable to a family of the size involved.

"public school" means a public elementary school, as defined in section 1001(i) [2] of title 20, and a public secondary school, as defined in section 1001(d) [2] of title 20.

"Secretary" means the Secretary of Health and Human Services, in consultation and coordination with the Attorney General.

"State" means a State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the United States Virgin Islands.

(c) Program authority

(1) In general

(A) Allocations for States and Indian country

For any fiscal year in which the sums appropriated to carry out this section equal or exceed $20,000,000, from the sums appropriated to carry out this subsection, the Secretary shall allocate, for grants under subparagraph (B) to community-based organizations in each State, an amount bearing the same ratio to such sums as the number of children in the State who are from families with incomes below the poverty line bears to the number of children in all States who are from families with incomes below the poverty line. In view of the extraordinary need for assistance in Indian country, an appropriate amount of funds available under this part shall be made available for such grants in Indian country.

(B) Grants to community-based organizations from allocations

For such a fiscal year, the Secretary may award grants from the appropriate State or Indian country allocation determined under subparagraph (A) on a competitive basis to eligible community-based organizations to pay for the Federal share of assisting eligible communities to develop and carry out programs in accordance with this section.

(C) Reallocation

If, at the end of such a fiscal year, the Secretary determines that funds allocated for community-based organizations in a State or Indian country under subparagraph (B) remain unobligated, the Secretary may use such funds to award grants to eligible community-based organizations in another State or Indian country to pay for such Federal share. In awarding such grants, the Secretary shall consider the need to maintain geographic diversity among the recipients of such grants. Amounts made available through such grants shall remain available until expended.

(2) Other fiscal years

For any fiscal year in which the sums appropriated to carry out this section are less than $20,000,000, the Secretary may award grants on a competitive basis to eligible community-based organizations to pay for the Federal share of assisting eligible communities to develop and carry out programs in accordance with this section.

(3) Administrative costs

The Secretary may use not more than 3 percent of the funds appropriated to carry out this section in any fiscal year for administrative costs.

(d) Program requirements

(1) Location

A community-based organization that receives a grant under this section to assist in carrying out such a program shall ensure that the program is carried out—

(A) when appropriate, in the facilities of a public school during nonschool hours; or

(B) in another appropriate local facility in a State or Indian country, such as a college or university, a local or State park or recreation center, church, or military base, that is—

(i) in a location that is easily accessible to children in the community; and

(ii) in compliance with all applicable local ordinances.

(2) Use of funds

Such community-based organization—

(A) shall use funds made available through the grant to provide, to children in the eligible community, services and activities that—

(i) [3] shall include supervised sports programs, and extracurricular and academic programs, that are offered—

(I) after school and on weekends and holidays, during the school year; and

(II) as daily full-day programs (to the extent available resources permit) or as part-day programs, during the summer months;

(B) in providing such extracurricular and academic programs, shall provide programs such as curriculum-based supervised educational, work force preparation, entrepreneurship, cultural, health programs, social activities, arts and crafts programs, dance programs, tutorial and mentoring programs, and other related activities;

(C) may use—

(i) such funds for minor renovation of facilities that are in existence prior to the operation of the program and that are necessary for the operation of the program for which the organization receives the grant, purchase of sporting and recreational equipment and supplies, reasonable costs for the transportation of participants in the program, hiring of staff, provision of meals for such participants, provision of health services consisting of an initial basic physical examination, provision of first aid and nutrition guidance, family counselling, parental training, and substance abuse treatment where appropriate; and

(ii) not more than 5 percent of such funds to pay for the administrative costs of the program; and

(D) may not use such funds to provide sectarian worship or sectarian instruction.

(e) Eligible community identification

(1) Identification

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, a community-based organization shall identify an eligible community to be assisted under this section.

(2) Criteria

Such eligible community shall be an area that meets such criteria with respect to significant poverty and significant juvenile delinquency, and such additional criteria, as the Secretary may by regulation require.

(f) Applications

(1) Application required

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, a community-based organization shall submit an application to the Secretary at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such information, as the Secretary may reasonably require, and obtain approval of such application.

(2) Contents of application

Each application submitted pursuant to paragraph (1) shall—

(A) describe the activities and services to be provided through the program for which the grant is sought;

(B) contain an assurance that the community-based organization will spend grant funds received under this section in a manner that the community-based organization determines will best accomplish the objectives of this section;

(C) contain a comprehensive plan for the program that is designed to achieve identifiable goals for children in the eligible community;

(D) set forth measurable goals and outcomes for the program that—

(i) will—

(I) where appropriate, make a public school the focal point of the eligible community; or

(II) make a local facility described in subsection (d)(1)(B) such a focal point; and

(ii) may include reducing the percentage of children in the eligible community that enter the juvenile justice system, increasing the graduation rates, school attendance, and academic success of children in the eligible community, and improving the skills of program participants;

(E) provide evidence of support for accomplishing such goals and outcomes from—
(i) community leaders;
(ii) businesses;
(iii) local educational agencies;
(iv) local officials;
(v) State officials;
(vi) Indian tribal government officials; and
(vii) other organizations that the community-based organization determines to be appropriate;

(F) contain an assurance that the community-based organization will use grant funds received under this section to provide children in the eligible community with activities and services that shall include supervised sports programs, and extracurricular and academic programs, in accordance with subparagraphs (A) and (B) of subsection (d)(2);
(G) contain a list of the activities and services that will be offered through the program for which the grant is sought and sponsored by private nonprofit organizations, individuals, and groups serving the eligible community, including—
(i) extracurricular and academic programs, such as programs described in subsection (d)(2)(B); and
(ii) activities that address specific needs in the community;

(H) demonstrate the manner in which the community-based organization will make use of the resources, expertise, and commitment of private entities in carrying out the program for which the grant is sought;
(I) include an estimate of the number of children in the eligible community expected to be served pursuant to the program;
(J) include a description of charitable private resources, and all other resources, that will be made available to achieve the goals of the program;
(K) contain an assurance that the community-based organization will use competitive procedures when purchasing, contracting, or otherwise providing for goods, activities, or services to carry out programs under this section;
(L) contain an assurance that the program will maintain a staff-to-participant ratio (including volunteers) that is appropriate to the activity or services provided by the program;
(M) contain an assurance that the program will maintain an average attendance rate of not less than 75 percent of the participants enrolled in the program, or will enroll additional participants in the program;
(N) contain an assurance that the community-based organization will comply with any evaluation under subsection (m),[4] any research effort authorized under Federal law, and any investigation by the Secretary;
(O) contain an assurance that the community-based organization shall prepare and submit to the Secretary an annual report regarding any program conducted under this section;
(P) contain an assurance that the program for which the grant is sought will, to the maximum extent possible, incorporate services that are provided solely through non-Federal private or nonprofit sources; and
(Q) contain an assurance that the community-based organization will maintain separate accounting records for the program.

(3) Priority

In awarding grants to carry out programs under this section, the Secretary shall give priority to community-based organizations who submit applications that demonstrate the greatest effort in generating local support for the programs.

(g) Eligibility of participants

(1) In general

To the extent possible, each child who resides in an eligible community shall be eligible to participate in a program carried out in such community that receives assistance under this section.

(2) Eligibility

To be eligible to participate in a program that receives assistance under this section, a child shall provide the express written approval of a parent or guardian, and shall submit an official application and agree to the terms and conditions of participation in the program.

(3) Nondiscrimination

In selecting children to participate in a program that receives assistance under this section, a community-based organization shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, or disability.

(h) Peer review panel

(1) Establishment

The Secretary may establish a peer review panel that shall be comprised of individuals with demonstrated experience in designing and implementing community-based programs.

(2) Composition

A peer review panel shall include at least 1 representative from each of the following:

(A) A community-based organization.
(B) A local government.
(C) A school district.
(D) The private sector.
(E) A charitable organization.
(F) A representative of the United States Olympic Committee, at the option of the Secretary.

(3) Functions

A peer review panel shall conduct the initial review of all grant applications received by the Secretary under subsection (f), make recommendations to the Secretary regarding—

(A) grant funding under this section; and
(B) a design for the evaluation of programs assisted under this section.

(i) Investigations and inspections

The Secretary may conduct such investigations and inspections as may be necessary to ensure compliance with the provisions of this section.

(j) Payments; Federal share; non-Federal share

(1) Payments

The Secretary shall, subject to the availability of appropriations, pay to each community-based organization having an application approved under subsection (f) the Federal share of the costs of developing and carrying out programs described in subsection (c).

(2) Federal share

The Federal share of such costs shall be no more than—

(A) 75 percent for each of fiscal years 1995 and 1996;
(B) 70 percent for fiscal year 1997; and
(C) 60 percent for fiscal year 1998 and thereafter.

(3) Non-Federal share

(A) In general

The non-Federal share of such costs may be in cash or in kind, fairly evaluated, including plant, equipment, and services (including the services described in subsection (f)(2)(P)), and funds appropriated by the Congress for the activity of any agency of an Indian tribal

government or the Bureau of Indian Affairs on any Indian lands may be used to provide the non-Federal share of the costs of programs or projects funded under this part.

(B) Special rule

At least 15 percent of the non-Federal share of such costs shall be provided from private or nonprofit sources.

(k) Evaluation

The Secretary shall conduct a thorough evaluation of the programs assisted under this section, which shall include an assessment of—

(1) the number of children participating in each program assisted under this section;
(2) the academic achievement of such children;
(3) school attendance and graduation rates of such children; and
(4) the number of such children being processed by the juvenile justice system.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30401, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1846; Pub. L. 105–244, title I, §102(a)(13)(N), Oct. 7, 1998, 112 Stat. 1621.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this title", meaning title III of Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1836, which enacted this subchapter, sections 3796ff to 3796ff–4 of this title, and sections 6701 to 6720 of Title 31, Money and Finance, amended sections 3791, 3793, and 3797 of this title, former sections 2502 to 2504, 2506, and 2512 of Title 16, Conservation, and section 3621 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and enacted provisions set out as notes under section 13701 of this title and sections 6701 and 6702 of Title 31. For complete classification of title III to the Code, see Tables.

The Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 92–203, Dec. 18, 1971, 85 Stat. 688, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 33 (§1601 et seq.) of Title 43, Public Lands. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of Title 43 and Tables.

Section 1001 of title 20, referred to in subsec. (b), does not have a subsec. (d) or (i) and does not define "elementary school" or "secondary school". However, such terms are defined in section 1003 of Title 20, Education.

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–244 substituted "section 1001(i)" for "section 1141(i)" and "section 1001(d)" for "section 1141(d)" in definition for "public school".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 105–244 effective Oct. 1, 1998, except as otherwise provided in Pub. L. 105–244, see section 3 of Pub. L. 105–244, set out as a note under section 1001 of Title 20, Education.

[1] So in original. Probably should be followed by a closing parenthesis.

[2] See References in Text note below.

[3] So in original. No cl. (ii) has been enacted.

[4] So in original. Probably should be subsection "(k)".

§13792. Repealed. Pub. L. 105–277, div. A, §101(f) [title VIII, §301(d)], Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–337, 2681–410

Section, Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30402, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1852, related to family and community endeavor schools grant program.

§13793. Authorization of appropriations

(a) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part—

(1) $37,000,000 for fiscal year 1995;
(2) $103,500,000 for fiscal year 1996;
(3) $121,500,000 for fiscal year 1997;
(4) $153,000,000 for fiscal year 1998;
(5) $193,500,000 for fiscal year 1999; and
(6) $201,500,000 for fiscal year 2000.

(b) Programs

Of the amounts appropriated under subsection (a) for any fiscal year—

(1) 70 percent shall be made available to carry out section 13791 of this title; and

(2) 30 percent shall be made available to carry out section 13792 [1] of this title.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30403, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1855.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 13792 of this title, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), was repealed by Pub. L. 105–277, div. A, §101(f) [title VIII, §301(d)], Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–337, 2681–410.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

PART E—ASSISTANCE FOR DELINQUENT AND AT-RISK YOUTH

§§13801, 13802. Repealed. Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1154(b)(2), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3113

Section 13801, Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30701, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1855, provided grant authority to the Attorney General to support the development and operation of projects to provide residential services to delinquent and at-risk youth.

Section 13802, Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30702, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1856, authorized appropriations.

PART F—POLICE RECRUITMENT

§13811. Grant authority

(a) Grants

(1) In general

The Attorney General may make grants to qualified community organizations to assist in meeting the costs of qualified programs which are designed to recruit and retain applicants to police departments.

(2) Consultation with the Ounce of Prevention Council

The Attorney General may consult with the Ounce of Prevention Council in making grants under paragraph (1).

(b) Qualified community organizations

An organization is a qualified community organization which is eligible to receive a grant under

subsection (a) if the organization—

(1) is a nonprofit organization; and

(2) has training and experience in—

(A) working with a police department and with teachers, counselors, and similar personnel,

(B) providing services to the community in which the organization is located,

(C) developing and managing services and techniques to recruit individuals to become members of a police department and to assist such individuals in meeting the membership requirements of police departments,

(D) developing and managing services and techniques to assist in the retention of applicants to police departments, and

(E) developing other programs that contribute to the community.

(c) Qualified programs

A program is a qualified program for which a grant may be made under subsection (a) if the program is designed to recruit and train individuals from underrepresented neighborhoods and localities and if—

(1) the overall design of the program is to recruit and retain applicants to a police department;

(2) the program provides recruiting services which include tutorial programs to enable individuals to meet police force academic requirements and to pass entrance examinations;

(3) the program provides counseling to applicants to police departments who may encounter problems throughout the application process; and

(4) the program provides retention services to assist in retaining individuals to stay in the application process of a police department.

(d) Applications

To qualify for a grant under subsection (a), a qualified organization shall submit an application to the Attorney General in such form as the Attorney General may prescribe. Such application shall—

(1) include documentation from the applicant showing—

(A) the need for the grant;

(B) the intended use of grant funds;

(C) expected results from the use of grant funds; and

(D) demographic characteristics of the population to be served, including age, disability, race, ethnicity, and languages used; and

(2) contain assurances satisfactory to the Attorney General that the program for which a grant is made will meet the applicable requirements of the program guidelines prescribed by the Attorney General under subsection (i).

(e) Action by Attorney General

Not later than 60 days after the date that an application for a grant under subsection (a) is received, the Attorney General shall consult with the police department which will be involved with the applicant and shall—

(1) approve the application and disburse the grant funds applied for; or

(2) disapprove the application and inform the applicant that the application is not approved and provide the applicant with the reasons for the disapproval.

(f) Grant disbursement

The Attorney General shall disburse funds under a grant under subsection (a) in accordance with regulations of the Attorney General which shall ensure—

(1) priority is given to applications for areas and organizations with the greatest showing of need;

(2) that grant funds are equitably distributed on a geographic basis; and

(3) the needs of underserved populations are recognized and addressed.

(g) Grant period

A grant under subsection (a) shall be made for a period not longer than 3 years.

(h) Grantee reporting

(1) For each year of a grant period for a grant under subsection (a), the recipient of the grant shall file a performance report with the Attorney General explaining the activities carried out with the funds received and assessing the effectiveness of such activities in meeting the purpose of the recipient's qualified program.

(2) If there was more than one recipient of a grant, each recipient shall file such report.

(3) The Attorney General shall suspend the funding of a grant, pending compliance, if the recipient of the grant does not file the report required by this subsection or uses the grant for a purpose not authorized by this section.

(i) Guidelines

The Attorney General shall, by regulation, prescribe guidelines on content and results for programs receiving a grant under subsection (a). Such guidelines shall be designed to establish programs which will be effective in training individuals to enter instructional programs for police departments and shall include requirements for—

(1) individuals providing recruiting services;

(2) individuals providing tutorials and other academic assistance programs;

(3) individuals providing retention services; and

(4) the content and duration of recruitment, retention, and counseling programs and the means and devices used to publicize such programs.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30801, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1857.)

§13812. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for grants under section 13811 of this title—

(1) $2,000,000 for fiscal year 1996;

(2) $4,000,000 for fiscal year 1997;

(3) $5,000,000 for fiscal year 1998;

(4) $6,000,000 for fiscal year 1999; and

(5) $7,000,000 for fiscal year 2000.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §30802, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1858.)

PART G—NATIONAL COMMUNITY ECONOMIC PARTNERSHIP

SUBPART 1—COMMUNITY ECONOMIC PARTNERSHIP INVESTMENT FUNDS

§13821. Purpose

It is the purpose of this subpart to increase private investment in distressed local communities and to build and expand the capacity of local institutions to better serve the economic needs of local residents through the provision of financial and technical assistance to community development corporations.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31111, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1882.)

SHORT TITLE

For short title of this part as the "National Community Economic Partnership Act of 1994", see section 31101 of Pub. L. 103–322, set out as a note under section 13701 of this title.

§13822. Provision of assistance

(a) Authority

The Secretary of Health and Human Services (referred to in this part as the "Secretary") may, in accordance with this subpart, provide nonrefundable lines of credit to community development corporations for the establishment, maintenance or expansion of revolving loan funds to be utilized to finance projects intended to provide business and employment opportunities for low-income, unemployed, or underemployed individuals and to improve the quality of life in urban and rural areas.

(b) Revolving loan funds

(1) Competitive assessment of applications

In providing assistance under subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary shall establish and implement a competitive process for the solicitation and consideration of applications from eligible entities for lines of credit for the capitalization of revolving funds.

(2) Eligible entities

To be eligible to receive a line of credit under this subpart an applicant shall—

(A) be a community development corporation;

(B) prepare and submit an application to the Secretary that shall include a strategic investment plan that identifies and describes the economic characteristics of the target area to be served, the types of business to be assisted and the impact of such assistance on low-income, underemployed, and unemployed individuals in the target area;

(C) demonstrate previous experience in the development of low-income housing or community or business development projects in a low-income community and provide a record of achievement with respect to such projects; and

(D) have secured one or more commitments from local sources for contributions (either in cash or in kind, letters of credit or letters of commitment) in an amount that is at least equal to the amount requested in the application submitted under subparagraph (B).

(3) Exception

Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (2)(D), the Secretary may reduce local contributions to not less than 25 percent of the amount of the line of credit requested by the community development corporation if the Secretary determines such to be appropriate in accordance with section 13826 of this title.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31112, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1882.)

§13823. Approval of applications

(a) In general

In evaluating applications submitted under section 13822(b)(2)(B) of this title, the Secretary shall ensure that—

(1) the residents of the target area to be served (as identified under the strategic development plan) would have an income that is less than the median income for the area (as determined by the Secretary);

(2) the applicant community development corporation possesses the technical and managerial capability necessary to administer a revolving loan fund and has past experience in the development and management of housing, community and economic development programs;

(3) the applicant community development corporation has provided sufficient evidence of the

existence of good working relationships with—

(A) local businesses and financial institutions, as well as with the community the corporation proposes to serve; and

(B) local and regional job training programs;

(4) the applicant community development corporation will target job opportunities that arise from revolving loan fund investments under this subpart so that 75 percent of the jobs retained or created under such investments are provided to—

(A) individuals with—

(i) incomes that do not exceed the Federal poverty line; or

(ii) incomes that do not exceed 80 percent of the median income of the area;

(B) individuals who are unemployed or underemployed;

(C) individuals who are participating or have participated in job training programs authorized under title I of the Workforce Innovation and Opportunity Act [29 U.S.C. 3111 et seq.] or the Family Support Act of 1988 (Public Law 100–485);

(D) individuals whose jobs may be retained as a result of the provision of financing available under this subpart; or

(E) individuals who have historically been underrepresented in the local economy; and

(5) a representative cross section of applicants are approved, including large and small community development corporations, urban and rural community development corporations and community development corporations representing diverse populations.

(b) Priority

In determining which application to approve under this subpart the Secretary shall give priority to those applicants proposing to serve a target area—

(1) with a median income that does not exceed 80 percent of the median for the area (as determined by the Secretary); and

(2) with a high rate of unemployment, as determined by the Secretary or in which the population loss is at least 7 percent from April 1, 1980, to April 1, 1990, as reported by the Bureau of the Census.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31113, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1883; Pub. L. 105–277, div. A, §101(f) [title VIII, §405(d)(44), (f)(35)], Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–337, 2681–428, 2681–434; Pub. L. 113–128, title V, §512(jj), July 22, 2014, 128 Stat. 1722.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Workforce Innovation and Opportunity Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(C), is Pub. L. 113–128, July 22, 2014, 128 Stat. 1425. Title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§3111 et seq.) of chapter 32 of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3101 of Title 29 and Tables.

The Family Support Act of 1988, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(C), is Pub. L. 100–485, Oct. 13, 1988, 102 Stat. 2343, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1988 Amendments note set out under section 1305 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (a)(4)(C). Pub. L. 113–128 substituted "job training programs authorized under title I of the Workforce Innovation and Opportunity Act or the Family Support Act of 1988 (Public Law 100–485)" for "job training programs authorized under title I of the Workforce Investment Act of 1998 or the Family Support Act of 1988 (Public Law 100–485)".

1998—Subsec. (a)(4)(C). Pub. L. 105–277, §101(f) [title VIII, §405(f)(35)], struck out "the Job Training Partnership Act or" after "authorized under".

Pub. L. 105–277, §101(f) [title VIII, §405(d)(44)], substituted "authorized under the Job Training Partnership Act or title I of the Workforce Investment Act of 1998" for "authorized under the Job Training Partnership Act (29 U.S.C. 1501 et seq.)".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2014 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–128 effective on the first day of the first full program year after July 22, 2014 (July 1, 2015), see section 506 of Pub. L. 113–128, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3101 of Title 29, Labor.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 101(f) [title VIII, §405(d)(44)] of Pub. L. 105–277 effective Oct. 21, 1998, and amendment by section 101(f) [title VIII, §405(f)(35)] of Pub. L. 105–277 effective July 1, 2000, see section 101(f) [title VIII, §405(g)(1), (2)(B)] of Pub. L. 105–277, set out as a note under section 3502 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§13824. Availability of lines of credit and use

(a) Approval of application

The Secretary shall provide a community development corporation that has an application approved under section 13823 of this title with a line of credit in an amount determined appropriate by the Secretary, subject to the limitations contained in subsection (b).

(b) Limitations on availability of amounts

(1) Maximum amount

The Secretary shall not provide in excess of $2,000,000 in lines of credit under this subpart to a single applicant.

(2) Period of availability

A line of credit provided under this subpart shall remain available over a period of time established by the Secretary, but in no event shall any such period of time be in excess of 3 years from the date on which such line of credit is made available.

(3) Exception

Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2), if a recipient of a line of credit under this subpart has made full and productive use of such line of credit, can demonstrate the need and demand for additional assistance, and can meet the requirements of section 13822(b)(2) of this title, the amount of such line of credit may be increased by not more than $1,500,000.

(c) Amounts drawn from line of credit

Amounts drawn from each line of credit under this subpart shall be used solely for the purposes described in section 13821 of this title and shall only be drawn down as needed to provide loans, investments, or to defray administrative costs related to the establishment of a revolving loan fund.

(d) Use of revolving loan funds

Revolving loan funds established with lines of credit provided under this subpart may be used to provide technical assistance to private business enterprises and to provide financial assistance in the form of loans, loan guarantees, interest reduction assistance, equity shares, and other such forms of assistance to business enterprises in target areas and who are in compliance with section 13823(a)(4) of this title.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31114, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1884.)

§13825. Limitations on use of funds

(a) Matching requirement

Not to exceed 50 percent of the total amount to be invested by an entity under this subpart may be derived from funds made available from a line of credit under this subpart.

(b) Technical assistance and administration

Not to exceed 10 percent of the amounts available from a line of credit under this subpart shall be used for the provision of training or technical assistance and for the planning, development, and management of economic development projects. Community development corporations shall be encouraged by the Secretary to seek technical assistance from other community development corporations, with expertise in the planning, development and management of economic development projects. The Secretary shall assist in the identification and facilitation of such technical assistance.

(c) Local and private sector contributions

To receive funds available under a line of credit provided under this subpart, an entity, using procedures established by the Secretary, shall demonstrate to the community development corporation that such entity agrees to provide local and private sector contributions in accordance with section 13822(b)(2)(D) of this title, will participate with such community development corporation in a loan, guarantee or investment program for a designated business enterprise, and that the total financial commitment to be provided by such entity is at least equal to the amount to be drawn from the line of credit.

(d) Use of proceeds from investments

Proceeds derived from investments made using funds made available under this subpart may be used only for the purposes described in section 13821 of this title and shall be reinvested in the community in which they were generated.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31115, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1884.)

§13826. Program priority for special emphasis programs

(a) In general

The Secretary shall give priority in providing lines of credit under this subpart to community development corporations that propose to undertake economic development activities in distressed communities that target women, Native Americans, at risk youth, farmworkers, population-losing communities, very low-income communities, single mothers, veterans, and refugees; or that expand employee ownership of private enterprises and small businesses, and to programs providing loans of not more than $35,000 to very small business enterprises.

(b) Reservation of funds

Not less than 5 percent of the amounts made available under section 13822(a)(2)(A) [1] of this title may be reserved to carry out the activities described in subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31116, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1885.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be section "13852(b)(1)".*

SUBPART 2—EMERGING COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT CORPORATIONS

§13841. Community development corporation improvement grants

(a) Purpose

It is the purpose of this section to provide assistance to community development corporations to upgrade the management and operating capacity of such corporations and to enhance the resources available to enable such corporations to increase their community economic development activities.

(b) Skill enhancement grants

(1) In general

The Secretary shall award grants to community development corporations to enable such corporations to attain or enhance the business management and development skills of the individuals that manage such corporations to enable such corporations to seek the public and private resources necessary to develop community economic development projects.

(2) Use of funds

A recipient of a grant under paragraph (1) may use amounts received under such grant—

(A) to acquire training and technical assistance from agencies or institutions that have extensive experience in the development and management of low-income community economic development projects; or

(B) to acquire such assistance from other highly successful community development corporations.

(c) Operating grants

(1) In general

The Secretary shall award grants to community development corporations to enable such corporations to support an administrative capacity for the planning, development, and management of low-income community economic development projects.

(2) Use of funds

A recipient of a grant under paragraph (1) may use amounts received under such grant—

(A) to conduct evaluations of the feasibility of potential low-income community economic development projects that address identified needs in the low-income community and that conform to those projects and activities permitted under subpart 1; [1]

(B) to develop a business plan related to such a potential project; or

(C) to mobilize resources to be contributed to a planned low-income community economic development project or strategy.

(d) Applications

A community development corporation that desires to receive a grant under this section shall prepare and submit to the Secretary an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary may require.

(e) Amount available for community development corporation

Amounts provided under this section to a community development corporation shall not exceed $75,000 per year. Such corporations may apply for grants under this section for up to 3 consecutive years, except that such corporations shall be required to submit a new application for each grant for which such corporation desires to receive and compete on the basis of such applications in the selection process.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31121, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1885.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subpart 1, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(A), was in the original "subtitle A", and was translated as reading "chapter 1", meaning chapter 1 of subtitle K of title III of Pub. L. 103–322, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13842. Emerging community development corporation revolving loan funds

(a) Authority

The Secretary may award grants to emerging community development corporations to enable such corporations to establish, maintain or expand revolving loan funds, to make or guarantee loans, or to make capital investments in new or expanding local businesses.

(b) Eligibility

To be eligible to receive a grant under subsection (a), an entity shall—

(1) be a community development corporation;

(2) have completed not less than one nor more than two community economic development projects or related projects that improve or provide job and employment opportunities to low-income individuals;

(3) prepare and submit to the Secretary an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary may require, including a strategic investment plan that identifies and describes the economic characteristics of the target area to be served, the types of business to be assisted using amounts received under the grant and the impact of such assistance on low-income individuals; and

(4) have secured one or more commitments from local sources for contributions (either in cash or in kind, letters of credit, or letters of commitment) in an amount that is equal to at least 10 percent of the amounts requested in the application submitted under paragraph (2).[1]

(c) Use of revolving loan fund

(1) In general

A revolving loan fund established or maintained with amounts received under this section may be utilized to provide financial and technical assistance, loans, loan guarantees or investments to private business enterprises to—

(A) finance projects intended to provide business and employment opportunities for low-income individuals and to improve the quality of life in urban and rural areas; and

(B) build and expand the capacity of emerging community development corporations and serve the economic needs of local residents.

(2) Technical assistance

The Secretary shall encourage emerging community development corporations that receive grants under this section to seek technical assistance from established community development corporations, with expertise in the planning, development and management of economic development projects and shall facilitate the receipt of such assistance.

(3) Limitation

Not to exceed 10 percent of the amounts received under this section by a grantee shall be used for training, technical assistance and administrative purposes.

(d) Use of proceeds from investments

Proceeds derived from investments made with amounts provided under this section may be utilized only for the purposes described in this part and shall be reinvested in the community in which they were generated.

(e) Amounts available

Amounts provided under this section to a community development corporation shall not exceed $500,000 per year.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31122, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1886.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be paragraph "(3)".*

SUBPART 3—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§13851. Definitions

As used in this part:

(1) Community development corporation

The term "community development corporation" means a private, nonprofit corporation whose board of directors is comprised of business, civic and community leaders, and whose principal purpose includes the provision of low-income housing or community economic development projects that primarily benefit low-income individuals and communities.

(2) Local and private sector contribution

The term "local and private sector contribution" means the funds available at the local level (by private financial institutions, State and local governments) or by any private philanthropic organization and private, nonprofit organizations that will be committed and used solely for the purpose of financing private business enterprises in conjunction with amounts provided under this part.

(3) Population-losing community

The term "population-losing community" means any county in which the net population loss is at least 7 percent from April 1, 1980 to April 1, 1990, as reported by the Bureau of the Census.

(4) Private business enterprise

The term "private business enterprise" means any business enterprise that is engaged in the manufacture of a product, provision of a service, construction or development of a facility, or that is involved in some other commercial, manufacturing or industrial activity, and that agrees to target job opportunities stemming from investments authorized under this part to certain individuals.

(5) Target area

The term "target area" means any area defined in an application for assistance under this part that has a population whose income does not exceed the median for the area within which the target area is located.

(6) Very low-income community

The term "very low-income community" means a community in which the median income of the residents of such community does not exceed 50 percent of the median income of the area.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31131, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1887.)

§13852. Authorization of appropriations

(a) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out subparts 1 and 2—

(1) $45,000,000 for fiscal year 1996;
(2) $72,000,000 for fiscal year 1997;
(3) $76,500,000 for fiscal year 1998; and
(4) $76,500,000 for fiscal year 1999.

(b) Earmarks

Of the aggregate amount appropriated under subsection (a) for each fiscal year—

(1) 60 percent shall be available to carry out subpart 1; and
(2) 40 percent shall be available to carry out subpart 2.

(c) Amounts

Amounts appropriated under subsection (a) shall remain available for expenditure without fiscal year limitation.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31132, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1888.)

§13853. Prohibition

None of the funds authorized under this part shall be used to finance the construction of housing.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31133, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1888.)

PART H—COMMUNITY-BASED JUSTICE GRANTS FOR PROSECUTORS

§13861. Grant authorization

(a) In general

The Attorney General may make grants to State, Indian tribal, or local prosecutors for the purpose of supporting the creation or expansion of community-based justice programs.

(b) Consultation

The Attorney General may consult with the Ounce of Prevention Council in making grants under subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31701, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1890.)

§13862. Use of funds

Grants made by the Attorney General under this section shall be used—

(1) to fund programs that require the cooperation and coordination of prosecutors, school officials, police, probation officers, youth and social service professionals, and community members in the effort to reduce the incidence of, and increase the successful identification and speed of prosecution of, young violent offenders;

(2) to fund programs in which prosecutors focus on the offender, not simply the specific offense, and impose individualized sanctions, designed to deter that offender from further antisocial conduct, and impose increasingly serious sanctions on a young offender who continues to commit offenses;

(3) to fund programs that coordinate criminal justice resources with educational, social service, and community resources to develop and deliver violence prevention programs, including mediation and other conflict resolution methods, treatment, counseling, educational, and recreational programs that create alternatives to criminal activity;

(4) in rural States (as defined in section 3796bb(b) of this title), to fund cooperative efforts between State and local prosecutors, victim advocacy and assistance groups, social and community service providers, and law enforcement agencies to investigate and prosecute child abuse cases, treat youthful victims of child abuse, and work in cooperation with the community to develop education and prevention strategies directed toward the issues with which such entities are concerned; and

(5) by a State, unit of local government, or Indian tribe to create and expand witness and victim protection programs to prevent threats, intimidation, and retaliation against victims of, and witnesses to, violent crimes.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31702, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1890; Pub. L. 110–177, title III, §301(a), Jan. 7, 2008, 121 Stat. 2538.)

AMENDMENTS

2008—Par. (5). Pub. L. 110–177 added par. (5).

§13863. Applications

(a) Eligibility

In order to be eligible to receive a grant under this part [1] for any fiscal year, a State, Indian tribal, or local prosecutor, in conjunction with the chief executive officer of the jurisdiction in which the program will be placed, shall submit an application to the Attorney General in such form and containing such information as the Attorney General may reasonably require.

(b) Requirements

Each applicant shall include—

(1) a request for funds for the purposes described in section 13862 of this title;

(2) a description of the communities to be served by the grant, including the nature of the youth crime, youth violence, and child abuse problems within such communities;

(3) assurances that Federal funds received under this part [1] shall be used to supplement, not supplant, non-Federal funds that would otherwise be available for activities funded under this section; and

(4) statistical information in such form and containing such information that the Attorney General may require.

(c) Comprehensive plan

Each applicant shall include a comprehensive plan that shall contain—

(1) a description of the youth violence or child abuse crime problem;

(2) an action plan outlining how the applicant will achieve the purposes as described in section 13862 of this title;

(3) a description of the resources available in the community to implement the plan together with a description of the gaps in the plan that cannot be filled with existing resources; and

(4) a description of how the requested grant will be used to fill gaps.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31703, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1891.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b)(3), appearing in the original is unidentifiable because subtitle Q of title III of Pub. L. 103–322 does not contain parts.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13864. Allocation of funds; limitations on grants

(a) Administrative cost limitation

The Attorney General shall use not more than 5 percent of the funds available under this program for the purposes of administration and technical assistance.

(b) Renewal of grants

A grant under this part [1] may be renewed for up to 2 additional years after the first fiscal year during which the recipient receives its initial grant under this part,[1] subject to the availability of funds, if—

(1) the Attorney General determines that the funds made available to the recipient during the previous years were used in a manner required under the approved application; and

(2) the Attorney General determines that an additional grant is necessary to implement the community prosecution program described in the comprehensive plan required by section 13863 of this title.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31704, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1891.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsec. (b), appearing in the original is unidentifiable because subtitle Q of title III of Pub. L. 103–322 does not contain parts.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13865. Award of grants

The Attorney General shall consider the following facts in awarding grants:

(1) Demonstrated need and evidence of the ability to provide the services described in the plan required under section 13863 of this title.

(2) The Attorney General shall attempt, to the extent practicable, to achieve an equitable geographic distribution of grant awards.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31705, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1891.)

§13866. Reports

(a) Report to Attorney General

State and local prosecutors that receive funds under this part shall submit to the Attorney General a report not later than March 1 of each year that describes progress achieved in carrying out the plan described under section 13863(c) of this title.

(b) Report to Congress

The Attorney General shall submit to the Congress a report by October 1 of each year in which grants are made available under this part which shall contain a detailed statement regarding grant awards, activities of grant recipients, a compilation of statistical information submitted by applicants, and an evaluation of programs established under this part.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31706, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1892.)

§13867. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $20,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2012 to carry out this part.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31707, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1892; Pub. L. 110–177, title III, §301(b), Jan. 7, 2008, 121 Stat. 2539.)

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–177 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section authorized appropriations of $7,000,000 for fiscal year 1996, $10,000,000 for each of fiscal years 1997 and 1998, $11,000,000 for fiscal year 1999, and $12,000,000 for fiscal year 2000.

§13868. Definitions

In this part—

"Indian tribe" means a tribe, band, pueblo, nation, or other organized group or community of Indians, including an Alaska Native village (as defined in or established under the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.)), that is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians.

"State" means a State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the United States Virgin Islands.

"young violent offenders" means individuals, ages 7 through 22, who have committed crimes of violence, weapons offenses, drug distribution, hate crimes and civil rights violations, and offenses against personal property of another.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31708, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1892.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 92–203, Dec. 18, 1971, 85 Stat. 688, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 33 (§1601 et seq.) of Title 43, Public Lands. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of Title 43 and Tables.

PART I—FAMILY UNITY DEMONSTRATION PROJECT

§13881. Purpose

The purpose of this part is to evaluate the effectiveness of certain demonstration projects in helping to—

(1) alleviate the harm to children and primary caretaker parents caused by separation due to the incarceration of the parents;

(2) reduce recidivism rates of prisoners by encouraging strong and supportive family relationships; and

(3) explore the cost effectiveness of community correctional facilities.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31902, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1892.)

SHORT TITLE

For short title of this part as the "Family Unity Demonstration Project Act", see section 31901 of Pub. L. 103–322, set out as a note under section 13701 of this title.

§13882. Definitions

In this part—

"child" means a person who is less than 7 years of age.

"community correctional facility" means a residential facility that—

(A) is used only for eligible offenders and their children under 7 years of age;

(B) is not within the confines of a jail or prison;

(C) houses no more than 50 prisoners in addition to their children; and

(D) provides to inmates and their children—

(i) a safe, stable, environment for children;

(ii) pediatric and adult medical care consistent with medical standards for correctional facilities;

(iii) programs to improve the stability of the parent-child relationship, including educating parents regarding—

(I) child development; and

(II) household management;

(iv) alcoholism and drug addiction treatment for prisoners; and

(v) programs and support services to help inmates—

(I) to improve and maintain mental and physical health, including access to counseling;

(II) to obtain adequate housing upon release from State incarceration;

(III) to obtain suitable education, employment, or training for employment; and

(IV) to obtain suitable child care.

"eligible offender" means a primary caretaker parent who—

(A) has been sentenced to a term of imprisonment of not more than 7 years or is awaiting sentencing for a conviction punishable by such a term of imprisonment; and

(B) has not engaged in conduct that—

(i) knowingly resulted in death or serious bodily injury;

(ii) is a felony for a crime of violence against a person; or

(iii) constitutes child neglect or mental, physical, or sexual abuse of a child.

"primary caretaker parent" means—

(A) a parent who has consistently assumed responsibility for the housing, health, and safety of a child prior to incarceration; or

(B) a woman who has given birth to a child after or while awaiting her sentencing hearing and who expresses a willingness to assume responsibility for the housing, health, and safety of that child,

a parent who, in the best interest of a child, has arranged for the temporary care of the child in the home of a relative or other responsible adult shall not for that reason be excluded from the category "primary caretaker".

"State" means a State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Northern Mariana Islands.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31903, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1893.)

§13883. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part—

(1) $3,600,000 for fiscal year 1996;

(2) $3,600,000 for fiscal year 1997;

(3) $3,600,000 for fiscal year 1998;

(4) $3,600,000 for fiscal year 1999; and

(5) $5,400,000 for fiscal year 2000.

(b) Availability of appropriations

Of the amount appropriated under subsection (a) for any fiscal year—

(1) 90 percent shall be available to carry out subpart 1; and

(2) 10 percent shall be available to carry out subpart 2.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31904, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1894.)

SUBPART 1—GRANTS TO STATES

§13891. Authority to make grants

(a) General authority

The Attorney General may make grants, on a competitive basis, to States to carry out in accordance with this part family unity demonstration projects that enable eligible offenders to live in community correctional facilities with their children.

(b) Preferences

For the purpose of making grants under subsection (a), the Attorney General shall give preference

to a State that includes in the application required by section 13892 of this title assurances that if the State receives a grant—

(1) both the State corrections agency and the State health and human services agency will participate substantially in, and cooperate closely in all aspects of, the development and operation of the family unity demonstration project for which such a grant is requested;

(2) boards made up of community members, including residents, local businesses, corrections officials, former prisoners, child development professionals, educators, and maternal and child health professionals will be established to advise the State regarding the operation of such project;

(3) the State has in effect a policy that provides for the placement of all prisoners, whenever possible, in correctional facilities for which they qualify that are located closest to their respective family homes;

(4) unless the Attorney General determines that a longer timeline is appropriate in a particular case, the State will implement the project not later than 180 days after receiving a grant under subsection (a) and will expend all of the grant during a 1-year period;

(5) the State has the capacity to continue implementing a community correctional facility beyond the funding period to ensure the continuity of the work;

(6) unless the Attorney General determines that a different process for selecting participants in a project is desirable, the State will—

(A) give written notice to a prisoner, not later than 30 days after the State first receives a grant under subsection (a) or 30 days after the prisoner is sentenced to a term of imprisonment of not more than 7 years (whichever is later), of the proposed or current operation of the project;

(B) accept at any time at which the project is in operation an application by a prisoner to participate in the project if, at the time of application, the remainder of the prisoner's sentence exceeds 180 days;

(C) review applications by prisoners in the sequence in which the State receives such applications; and

(D) not more than 50 days after reviewing such applications approve or disapprove the application; and

(7) for the purposes of selecting eligible offenders to participate in such project, the State has authorized State courts to sentence an eligible offender directly to a community correctional facility, provided that the court gives assurances that the offender would have otherwise served a term of imprisonment.

(c) Selection of grantees

The Attorney General shall make grants under subsection (a) on a competitive basis, based on such criteria as the Attorney General shall issue by rule and taking into account the preferences described in subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31911, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1894.)

§13892. Eligibility to receive grants

To be eligible to receive a grant under section 13891 of this title, a State shall submit to the Attorney General an application at such time, in such form, and containing such information as the Attorney General reasonably may require by rule.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31912, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1895.)

§13893. Report

(a) In general

A State that receives a grant under this subpart [1] shall, not later than 90 days after the 1-year

period in which the grant is required to be expended, submit a report to the Attorney General regarding the family unity demonstration project for which the grant was expended.

(b) Contents

A report under subsection (a) shall—

(1) state the number of prisoners who submitted applications to participate in the project and the number of prisoners who were placed in community correctional facilities;

(2) state, with respect to prisoners placed in the project, the number of prisoners who are returned to that jurisdiction and custody and the reasons for such return;

(3) describe the nature and scope of educational and training activities provided to prisoners participating in the project;

(4) state the number, and describe the scope of, contracts made with public and nonprofit private community-based organizations to carry out such project; and

(5) evaluate the effectiveness of the project in accomplishing the purposes described in section 13881 of this title.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31913, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1895.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subpart, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this title" and was translated as reading "this chapter", meaning chapter 1 of subtitle S of title III of Pub. L. 103–322, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

SUBPART 2—FAMILY UNITY DEMONSTRATION PROJECT FOR FEDERAL PRISONERS

§13901. Authority of Attorney General

(a) In general

With the funds available to carry out this part for the benefit of Federal prisoners, the Attorney General, acting through the Director of the Bureau of Prisons, shall select eligible prisoners to live in community correctional facilities with their children.

(b) General contracting authority

In implementing this part,[1] the Attorney General may enter into contracts with appropriate public or private agencies to provide housing, sustenance, services, and supervision of inmates eligible for placement in community correctional facilities under this part.[1]

(c) Use of State facilities

At the discretion of the Attorney General, Federal participants may be placed in State projects as defined in subpart 1. For such participants, the Attorney General shall, with funds available under section 13883(b)(2) of this title, reimburse the State for all project costs related to the Federal participant's placement, including administrative costs.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31921, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1896.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this title" and was translated as reading "this subtitle", meaning subtitle S of title III of Pub. L. 103–322, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§13902. Requirements

For the purpose of placing Federal participants in a family unity demonstration project under section 13901 of this title, the Attorney General shall consult with the Secretary of Health and Human Services regarding the development and operation of the project.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §31922, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1896.)

PART J—PREVENTION, DIAGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT OF TUBERCULOSIS IN CORRECTIONAL INSTITUTIONS

§13911. Prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of tuberculosis in correctional institutions

(a) Guidelines

The Attorney General, in consultation with the Secretary of Health and Human Services and the Director of the National Institute of Corrections, shall develop and disseminate to appropriate entities, including State, Indian tribal, and local correctional institutions and the Immigration and Naturalization Service, guidelines for the prevention, diagnosis, treatment, and followup care of tuberculosis among inmates of correctional institutions and persons held in holding facilities operated by or under contract with the Immigration and Naturalization Service.

(b) Compliance

The Attorney General shall ensure that prisons in the Federal prison system and holding facilities operated by or under contract with the Immigration and Naturalization Service comply with the guidelines described in subsection (a).

(c) Grants

(1) In general

The Attorney General shall make grants to State, Indian tribal, and local correction authorities and public health authorities to assist in establishing and operating programs for the prevention, diagnosis, treatment, and followup care of tuberculosis among inmates of correctional institutions.

(2) Federal share

The Federal share of funding of a program funded with a grant under paragraph (1) shall not exceed 50 percent.

(3) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

(A) $700,000 for fiscal year 1996;
(B) $1,000,000 for fiscal year 1997;
(C) $1,000,000 for fiscal year 1998;
(D) $1,100,000 for fiscal year 1999; and
(E) $1,200,000 for fiscal year 2000.

(d) Definitions

In this section—

"Indian tribe" means a tribe, band, pueblo, nation, or other organized group or community of Indians, including an Alaska Native village (as defined in or established under the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.),[1] that is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians.

"State" means a State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the United States Virgin Islands.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §32201, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1901.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, referred to in subsec. (d), is Pub. L. 92–203, Dec. 18, 1971, 85 Stat. 688, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 33 (§1601 et seq.) of Title 43, Public Lands. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of Title 43 and Tables.

ABOLITION OF IMMIGRATION AND NATURALIZATION SERVICE AND TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For abolition of Immigration and Naturalization Service, transfer of functions, and treatment of related references, see note set out under section 1551 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

[1] So in original. A closing parenthesis probably should precede the comma.

PART K—GANG RESISTANCE EDUCATION AND TRAINING

§13921. Gang Resistance Education and Training projects

(a) Establishment of projects

(1) In general

The Attorney General shall establish not less than 50 Gang Resistance Education and Training (GREAT) projects, to be located in communities across the country, in addition to the number of projects currently funded.

(2) Selection of communities

Communities identified for such GREAT projects shall be selected by the Attorney General on the basis of gang-related activity in that particular community.

(3) Amount of assistance per project; allocation

The Attorney General shall make available not less than $800,000 per project, subject to the availability of appropriations, and such funds shall be allocated—

(A) 50 percent to the affected State and local law enforcement and prevention organizations participating in such projects; and

(B) 50 percent to the Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms, and Explosives, Department of Justice for salaries, expenses, and associated administrative costs for operating and overseeing such projects.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

(1) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2006;
(2) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;
(3) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;
(4) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2009; and
(5) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2010.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title III, §32401, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1902; Pub. L. 107–296, title XI, §1112(p), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2278; Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1188, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3128.)

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 109–162, which directed the amendment of section 32401(b) of the Violent Crime Control Act of 1994 by adding pars. (1) to (5) and striking out former pars. (1) to (6), was executed by making the amendments to this section, which is section 32401(b) of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994, to reflect the probable intent of Congress. Former pars. (1) to (6) authorized appropriations for fiscal years 1995 through 2000.

2002—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 107–296, §1112(p)(1), substituted "Attorney General" for "Secretary of the Treasury" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (a)(3)(B). Pub. L. 107–296, §1112(p)(2), substituted "Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms, and Explosives, Department of Justice" for "Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 107–296 effective 60 days after Nov. 25, 2002, see section 4 of Pub. L. 107–296, set out as an Effective Date note under section 101 of Title 6, Domestic Security.

SUBCHAPTER III—VIOLENCE AGAINST WOMEN

§13925. Definitions and grant provisions

(a) Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) Alaska Native village

The term "Alaska Native village" has the same meaning given such term in the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.).

(2) Courts

The term "courts" means any civil or criminal, tribal, and Alaska Native Village, Federal, State, local or territorial court having jurisdiction to address domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault or stalking, including immigration, family, juvenile, and dependency courts, and the judicial officers serving in those courts, including judges, magistrate judges, commissioners, justices of the peace, or any other person with decisionmaking authority.

(3) Child abuse and neglect

The term "child abuse and neglect" means any recent act or failure to act on the part of a parent or caregiver with intent to cause death, serious physical or emotional harm, sexual abuse, or exploitation, or an act or failure to act which presents an imminent risk of serious harm to an unemancipated minor. This definition shall not be construed to mean that failure to leave an abusive relationship, in the absence of other action constituting abuse or neglect, is itself abuse or neglect.

(4) Community-based organization

The term "community-based organization" means a nonprofit, nongovernmental, or tribal organization that serves a specific geographic community that—

(A) focuses primarily on domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking;

(B) has established a specialized culturally specific program that addresses domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking;

(C) has a primary focus on underserved populations (and includes representatives of these populations) and domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking; or

(D) obtains expertise, or shows demonstrated capacity to work effectively, on domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking through collaboration.

(5) Child maltreatment

The term "child maltreatment" means the physical or psychological abuse or neglect of a child or youth, including sexual assault and abuse.

(6) Culturally specific

The term "culturally specific" means primarily directed toward racial and ethnic minority groups (as defined in section 1707(g) of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 300u–6(g)).[1]

(7) Culturally specific services

The term "culturally specific services" means community-based services that include culturally relevant and linguistically specific services and resources to culturally specific communities.

(8) Domestic violence

The term "domestic violence" includes felony or misdemeanor crimes of violence committed by a current or former spouse or intimate partner of the victim, by a person with whom the victim shares a child in common, by a person who is cohabitating with or has cohabitated with the victim as a spouse or intimate partner, by a person similarly situated to a spouse of the victim under the domestic or family violence laws of the jurisdiction receiving grant monies, or by any other person against an adult or youth victim who is protected from that person's acts under the domestic or family violence laws of the jurisdiction.

(9) Dating partner

The term "dating partner" refers to a person who is or has been in a social relationship of a romantic or intimate nature with the abuser, and where the existence of such a relationship shall be determined based on a consideration of—

(A) the length of the relationship;

(B) the type of relationship; and

(C) the frequency of interaction between the persons involved in the relationship.

(10) Dating violence

The term "dating violence" means violence committed by a person—

(A) who is or has been in a social relationship of a romantic or intimate nature with the victim; and

(B) where the existence of such a relationship shall be determined based on a consideration of the following factors:

(i) The length of the relationship.

(ii) The type of relationship.

(iii) The frequency of interaction between the persons involved in the relationship.

(11) Elder abuse

The term "elder abuse" means any action against a person who is 50 years of age or older that constitutes the willful—

(A) infliction of injury, unreasonable confinement, intimidation, or cruel punishment with resulting physical harm, pain, or mental anguish; or

(B) deprivation by a person, including a caregiver, of goods or services with intent to cause physical harm, mental anguish, or mental illness.

(12) Homeless

The term "homeless" has the meaning provided in section 14043e–2(6) of this title.

(13) Indian

The term "Indian" means a member of an Indian tribe.

(14) Indian country

The term "Indian country" has the same meaning given such term in section 1151 of title 18.

(15) Indian housing

The term "Indian housing" means housing assistance described in the Native American Housing

Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 (25 U.S.C. 4101 et seq., as amended).

(16) Indian tribe

The term "Indian tribe" means a tribe, band, pueblo, nation, or other organized group or community of Indians, including any Alaska Native village or regional or village corporation (as defined in, or established pursuant to, the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.)), that is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians.

(17) Indian law enforcement

The term "Indian law enforcement" means the departments or individuals under the direction of the Indian tribe that maintain public order.

(18) Law enforcement

The term "law enforcement" means a public agency charged with policing functions, including any of its component bureaus (such as governmental victim services programs or Village Public Safety Officers), including those referred to in section 2802 of title 25.

(19) Legal assistance

The term "legal assistance" includes assistance to adult and youth victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking in—

(A) family, tribal, territorial, immigration, employment, administrative agency, housing matters, campus administrative or protection or stay away order proceedings, and other similar matters; and

(B) criminal justice investigations, prosecutions and post-trial matters (including sentencing, parole, and probation) that impact the victim's safety and privacy.

Intake or referral, by itself, does not constitute legal assistance.

(20) Personally identifying information or personal information

The term "personally identifying information" or "personal information" means individually identifying information for or about an individual including information likely to disclose the location of a victim of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking, regardless of whether the information is encoded, encrypted, hashed, or otherwise protected, including—

(A) a first and last name;

(B) a home or other physical address;

(C) contact information (including a postal, e-mail or Internet protocol address, or telephone or facsimile number);

(D) a social security number, driver license number, passport number, or student identification number; and

(E) any other information, including date of birth, racial or ethnic background, or religious affiliation, that would serve to identify any individual.

(21) Population specific organization

The term "population specific organization" means a nonprofit, nongovernmental organization that primarily serves members of a specific underserved population and has demonstrated experience and expertise providing targeted services to members of that specific underserved population.

(22) Population specific services

The term "population specific services" means victim-centered services that address the safety, health, economic, legal, housing, workplace, immigration, confidentiality, or other needs of victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking, and that are designed primarily for and are targeted to a specific underserved population.

(23) Prosecution

The term "prosecution" means any public agency charged with direct responsibility for prosecuting criminal offenders, including such agency's component bureaus (such as governmental

victim assistance programs).

(24) Protection order or restraining order

The term "protection order" or "restraining order" includes—

(A) any injunction, restraining order, or any other order issued by a civil or criminal court for the purpose of preventing violent or threatening acts or harassment against, sexual violence or contact or communication with or physical proximity to, another person, including any temporary or final orders issued by civil or criminal courts whether obtained by filing an independent action or as a pendente lite order in another proceeding so long as any civil order was issued in response to a complaint, petition, or motion filed by or on behalf of a person seeking protection; and

(B) any support, child custody or visitation provisions, orders, remedies, or relief issued as part of a protection order, restraining order, or stay away injunction pursuant to State, tribal, territorial, or local law authorizing the issuance of protection orders, restraining orders, or injunctions for the protection of victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(25) Rape crisis center

The term "rape crisis center" means a nonprofit, nongovernmental, or tribal organization, or governmental entity in a State other than a Territory that provides intervention and related assistance, as specified in section 14043g(b)(2)(C) of this title, to victims of sexual assault without regard to their age. In the case of a governmental entity, the entity may not be part of the criminal justice system (such as a law enforcement agency) and must be able to offer a comparable level of confidentiality as a nonprofit entity that provides similar victim services.

(26) Rural area and rural community

The term "rural area" and "rural community" mean—

(A) any area or community, respectively, no part of which is within an area designated as a standard metropolitan statistical area by the Office of Management and Budget;

(B) any area or community, respectively, that is—

(i) within an area designated as a metropolitan statistical area or considered as part of a metropolitan statistical area; and

(ii) located in a rural census tract; or

(C) any federally recognized Indian tribe.

(27) Rural State

The term "rural State" means a State that has a population density of 57 or fewer persons per square mile or a State in which the largest county has fewer than 250,000 people, based on the most recent decennial census.

(28) Sex trafficking

The term "sex trafficking" means any conduct proscribed by section 1591 of title 18, whether or not the conduct occurs in interstate or foreign commerce or within the special maritime and territorial jurisdiction of the United States.

(29) Sexual assault

The term "sexual assault" means any nonconsensual sexual act proscribed by Federal, tribal, or State law, including when the victim lacks capacity to consent.

(30) Stalking

The term "stalking" means engaging in a course of conduct directed at a specific person that would cause a reasonable person to—

(A) fear for his or her safety or the safety of others; or

(B) suffer substantial emotional distress.

(31) State

The term "State" means each of the several States and the District of Columbia, and except as otherwise provided, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, American Samoa, the Virgin Islands, and the Northern Mariana Islands.

(32) State domestic violence coalition

The term "State domestic violence coalition" means a program determined by the Administration for Children and Families under sections 10402 and 10411 of this title.

(33) State sexual assault coalition

The term "State sexual assault coalition" means a program determined by the Center for Injury Prevention and Control of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention under the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 280b et seq.).

(34) Territorial domestic violence or sexual assault coalition

The term "territorial domestic violence or sexual assault coalition" means a program addressing domestic or sexual violence that is—

(A) an established nonprofit, nongovernmental territorial coalition addressing domestic violence or sexual assault within the territory; or

(B) a nongovernmental organization with a demonstrated history of addressing domestic violence or sexual assault within the territory that proposes to incorporate as a nonprofit, nongovernmental territorial coalition.

(35) Tribal coalition

The term "tribal coalition" means an established nonprofit, nongovernmental Indian organization, Alaska Native organization, or a Native Hawaiian organization that—

(A) provides education, support, and technical assistance to member Indian service providers in a manner that enables those member providers to establish and maintain culturally appropriate services, including shelter and rape crisis services, designed to assist Indian women and the dependents of those women who are victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking; and

(B) is comprised of board and general members that are representative of—

(i) the member service providers described in subparagraph (A); and

(ii) the tribal communities in which the services are being provided.

(36) Tribal government

The term "tribal government" means—

(A) the governing body of an Indian tribe; or

(B) a tribe, band, pueblo, nation, or other organized group or community of Indians, including any Alaska Native village or regional or village corporation (as defined in, or established pursuant to, the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.)), that is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians.

(37) Tribal nonprofit organization

The term "tribal nonprofit organization" means—

(A) a victim services provider that has as its primary purpose to assist Native victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking; and

(B) staff and leadership of the organization must include persons with a demonstrated history of assisting American Indian or Alaska Native victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(38) Tribal organization

The term "tribal organization" means—

(A) the governing body of any Indian tribe;

(B) any legally established organization of Indians which is controlled, sanctioned, or chartered by such governing body of a tribe or tribes to be served, or which is democratically

elected by the adult members of the Indian community to be served by such organization and which includes the maximum participation of Indians in all phases of its activities; or

(C) any tribal nonprofit organization.

(39) Underserved populations

The term "underserved populations" means populations who face barriers in accessing and using victim services, and includes populations underserved because of geographic location, religion, sexual orientation, gender identity, underserved racial and ethnic populations, populations underserved because of special needs (such as language barriers, disabilities, alienage status, or age), and any other population determined to be underserved by the Attorney General or by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, as appropriate.

(40) Unit of local government

The term "unit of local government" means any city, county, township, town, borough, parish, village, or other general purpose political subdivision of a State.

(41) Victim advocate

The term "victim advocate" means a person, whether paid or serving as a volunteer, who provides services to victims of domestic violence, sexual assault, stalking, or dating violence under the auspices or supervision of a victim services program.

(42) Victim assistant

The term "victim assistant" means a person, whether paid or serving as a volunteer, who provides services to victims of domestic violence, sexual assault, stalking, or dating violence under the auspices or supervision of a court or a law enforcement or prosecution agency.

(43) Victim service provider

The term "victim service provider" means a nonprofit, nongovernmental or tribal organization or rape crisis center, including a State or tribal coalition, that assists or advocates for domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking victims, including domestic violence shelters, faith-based organizations, and other organizations, with a documented history of effective work concerning domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(44) Victim services or services

The terms "victim services" and "services" mean services provided to victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking, including telephonic or web-based hotlines, legal advocacy, economic advocacy, emergency and transitional shelter, accompaniment and advocacy through medical, civil or criminal justice, immigration, and social support systems, crisis intervention, short-term individual and group support services, information and referrals, culturally specific services, population specific services, and other related supportive services.

(45) Youth

The term "youth" means a person who is 11 to 24 years old.

(b) Grant conditions

(1) Match

No matching funds shall be required for any grant or subgrant made under this Act for—

(A) any tribe, territory, or victim service provider; or

(B) any other entity, including a State, that—

(i) petitions for a waiver of any match condition imposed by the Attorney General or the Secretaries of Health and Human Services or Housing and Urban Development; and

(ii) whose petition for waiver is determined by the Attorney General or the Secretaries of Health and Human Services or Housing and Urban Development to have adequately demonstrated the financial need of the petitioning entity.

(2) Nondisclosure of confidential or private information

(A) In general

In order to ensure the safety of adult, youth, and child victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking, and their families, grantees and subgrantees under this subchapter shall protect the confidentiality and privacy of persons receiving services.

(B) Nondisclosure

Subject to subparagraphs (C) and (D), grantees and subgrantees shall not—

(i) disclose, reveal, or release any personally identifying information or individual information collected in connection with services requested, utilized, or denied through grantees' and subgrantees' programs, regardless of whether the information has been encoded, encrypted, hashed, or otherwise protected; or

(ii) disclose, reveal, or release individual client information without the informed, written, reasonably time-limited consent of the person (or in the case of an unemancipated minor, the minor and the parent or guardian or in the case of legal incapacity, a court-appointed guardian) about whom information is sought, whether for this program or any other Federal, State, tribal, or territorial grant program, except that consent for release may not be given by the abuser of the minor, incapacitated person, or the abuser of the other parent of the minor.

If a minor or a person with a legally appointed guardian is permitted by law to receive services without the parent's or guardian's consent, the minor or person with a guardian may release information without additional consent.

(C) Release

If release of information described in subparagraph (B) is compelled by statutory or court mandate—

(i) grantees and subgrantees shall make reasonable attempts to provide notice to victims affected by the disclosure of information; and

(ii) grantees and subgrantees shall take steps necessary to protect the privacy and safety of the persons affected by the release of the information.

(D) Information sharing

(i) Grantees and subgrantees may share—

(I) nonpersonally identifying data in the aggregate regarding services to their clients and nonpersonally identifying demographic information in order to comply with Federal, State, tribal, or territorial reporting, evaluation, or data collection requirements;

(II) court-generated information and law enforcement-generated information contained in secure, governmental registries for protection order enforcement purposes; and

(III) law enforcement-generated and prosecution-generated information necessary for law enforcement and prosecution purposes.

(ii) In no circumstances may—

(I) an adult, youth, or child victim of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking be required to provide a consent to release his or her personally identifying information as a condition of eligibility for the services provided by the grantee or subgrantee;

(II) any personally identifying information be shared in order to comply with Federal, tribal, or State reporting, evaluation, or data collection requirements, whether for this program or any other Federal, tribal, or State grant program.

(E) Statutorily mandated reports of abuse or neglect

Nothing in this section prohibits a grantee or subgrantee from reporting suspected abuse or neglect, as those terms are defined and specifically mandated by the State or tribe involved.

(F) Oversight

Nothing in this paragraph shall prevent the Attorney General from disclosing grant activities

authorized in this Act to the chairman and ranking members of the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives and the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate exercising Congressional oversight authority. All disclosures shall protect confidentiality and omit personally identifying information, including location information about individuals.

(G) Confidentiality assessment and assurances

Grantees and subgrantees must document their compliance with the confidentiality and privacy provisions required under this section.

(3) Approved activities

In carrying out the activities under this subchapter, grantees and subgrantees may collaborate with or provide information to Federal, State, local, tribal, and territorial public officials and agencies to develop and implement policies and develop and promote State, local, or tribal legislation or model codes designed to reduce or eliminate domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking.

(4) Non-supplantation

Any Federal funds received under this subchapter shall be used to supplement, not supplant, non-Federal funds that would otherwise be available for activities under this subchapter.

(5) Use of funds

Funds authorized and appropriated under this subchapter may be used only for the specific purposes described in this subchapter and shall remain available until expended.

(6) Reports

An entity receiving a grant under this subchapter shall submit to the disbursing agency a report detailing the activities undertaken with the grant funds, including and providing additional information as the agency shall require.

(7) Evaluation

Federal agencies disbursing funds under this subchapter shall set aside up to 3 percent of such funds in order to conduct—

(A) evaluations of specific programs or projects funded by the disbursing agency under this subchapter or related research; or

(B) evaluations of promising practices or problems emerging in the field or related research, in order to inform the agency or agencies as to which programs or projects are likely to be effective or responsive to needs in the field.

Final reports of such evaluations shall be made available to the public via the agency's website.

(8) Nonexclusivity

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to prohibit male victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking from receiving benefits and services under this subchapter.

(9) Prohibition on tort litigation

Funds appropriated for the grant program under this subchapter may not be used to fund civil representation in a lawsuit based on a tort claim. This paragraph should not be construed as a prohibition on providing assistance to obtain restitution in a protection order or criminal case.

(10) Prohibition on lobbying

Any funds appropriated for the grant program shall be subject to the prohibition in section 1913 of title 18, relating to lobbying with appropriated moneys.

(11) Technical assistance

Of the total amounts appropriated under this subchapter, not less than 3 percent and up to 8 percent, unless otherwise noted, shall be available for providing training and technical assistance relating to the purposes of this subchapter to improve the capacity of the grantees, subgrantees,

and other entities. If there is a demonstrated history that the Office on Violence Against Women has previously set aside amounts greater than 8 percent for technical assistance and training relating to grant programs authorized under this subchapter, the Office has the authority to continue setting aside amounts greater than 8 percent.

(12) Delivery of legal assistance

Any grantee or subgrantee providing legal assistance with funds awarded under this title shall comply with the eligibility requirements in section 1201(d) of the Violence Against Women Act of 2000 (42 U.S.C. 3796gg–6(d)).

(13) Civil rights

(A) Nondiscrimination

No person in the United States shall, on the basis of actual or perceived race, color, religion, national origin, sex, gender identity (as defined in paragraph 249(c)(4) of title 18), sexual orientation, or disability, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity funded in whole or in part with funds made available under the Violence Against Women Act of 1994 (title IV of Public Law 103–322; 108 Stat. 1902), the Violence Against Women Act of 2000 (division B of Public Law 106–386; 114 Stat. 1491), the Violence Against Women and Department of Justice Reauthorization Act of 2005 (title IX of Public Law 109–162; 119 Stat. 3080),[2] the Violence Against Women Reauthorization Act of 2013, and any other program or activity funded in whole or in part with funds appropriated for grants, cooperative agreements, and other assistance administered by the Office on Violence Against Women.

(B) Exception

If sex segregation or sex-specific programming is necessary to the essential operation of a program, nothing in this paragraph shall prevent any such program or activity from consideration of an individual's sex. In such circumstances, grantees may meet the requirements of this paragraph by providing comparable services to individuals who cannot be provided with the sex-segregated or sex-specific programming.

(C) Discrimination

The authority of the Attorney General and the Office of Justice Programs to enforce this paragraph shall be the same as it is under section 3789d of this title.[2]

(D) Construction

Nothing contained in this paragraph shall be construed, interpreted, or applied to supplant, displace, preempt, or otherwise diminish the responsibilities and liabilities under other State or Federal civil rights law, whether statutory or common.

(14) Clarification of victim services and legal assistance

Victim services and legal assistance under this subchapter also include services and assistance to victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking who are also victims of severe forms of trafficking in persons as defined by section 7102 of title 22.

(15) Conferral

(A) In general

The Office on Violence Against Women shall establish a biennial conferral process with State and tribal coalitions and technical assistance providers who receive funding through grants administered by the Office on Violence Against Women and authorized by this Act, and other key stakeholders.

(B) Areas covered

The areas of conferral under this paragraph shall include—

(i) the administration of grants;

(ii) unmet needs;
(iii) promising practices in the field; and
(iv) emerging trends.

(C) Initial conferral

The first conferral shall be initiated not later than 6 months after March 7, 2013.

(D) Report

Not later than 90 days after the conclusion of each conferral period, the Office on Violence Against Women shall publish a comprehensive report that—

(i) summarizes the issues presented during conferral and what, if any, policies it intends to implement to address those issues;

(ii) is made available to the public on the Office on Violence Against Women's website and submitted to the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives.

(16) Accountability

All grants awarded by the Attorney General under this Act shall be subject to the following accountability provisions:

(A) Audit requirement

(i) In general

Beginning in the first fiscal year beginning after the date of the enactment of this Act,[2] and in each fiscal year thereafter, the Inspector General of the Department of Justice shall conduct audits of recipients of grants under this Act to prevent waste, fraud, and abuse of funds by grantees. The Inspector General shall determine the appropriate number of grantees to be audited each year.

(ii) Definition

In this paragraph, the term "unresolved audit finding" means a finding in the final audit report of the Inspector General of the Department of Justice that the audited grantee has utilized grant funds for an unauthorized expenditure or otherwise unallowable cost that is not closed or resolved within 12 months from the date when the final audit report is issued.

(iii) Mandatory exclusion

A recipient of grant funds under this Act that is found to have an unresolved audit finding shall not be eligible to receive grant funds under this Act during the following 2 fiscal years.

(iv) Priority

In awarding grants under this Act, the Attorney General shall give priority to eligible entities that did not have an unresolved audit finding during the 3 fiscal years prior to submitting an application for a grant under this Act.

(v) Reimbursement

If an entity is awarded grant funds under this Act during the 2-fiscal-year period in which the entity is barred from receiving grants under paragraph (2), the Attorney General shall—

(I) deposit an amount equal to the grant funds that were improperly awarded to the grantee into the General Fund of the Treasury; and

(II) seek to recoup the costs of the repayment to the fund from the grant recipient that was erroneously awarded grant funds.

(B) Nonprofit organization requirements

(i) Definition

For purposes of this paragraph and the grant programs described in this Act, the term "nonprofit organization" means an organization that is described in section 501(c)(3) of title 26 and is exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of such title.

(ii) Prohibition

The Attorney General may not award a grant under any grant program described in this Act to a nonprofit organization that holds money in offshore accounts for the purpose of avoiding paying the tax described in section 511(a) of title 26.

(iii) Disclosure

Each nonprofit organization that is awarded a grant under a grant program described in this Act and uses the procedures prescribed in regulations to create a rebuttable presumption of reasonableness for the compensation of its officers, directors, trustees and key employees, shall disclose to the Attorney General, in the application for the grant, the process for determining such compensation, including the independent persons involved in reviewing and approving such compensation, the comparability data used, and contemporaneous substantiation of the deliberation and decision. Upon request, the Attorney General shall make the information disclosed under this subsection available for public inspection.

(C) Conference expenditures

(i) Limitation

No amounts authorized to be appropriated to the Department of Justice under this Act may be used by the Attorney General, or by any individual or organization awarded discretionary funds through a cooperative agreement under this Act, to host or support any expenditure for conferences that uses more than $20,000 in Department funds, unless the Deputy Attorney General or such Assistant Attorney Generals, Directors, or principal deputies as the Deputy Attorney General may designate, provides prior written authorization that the funds may be expended to host a conference.

(ii) Written approval

Written approval under clause (i) shall include a written estimate of all costs associated with the conference, including the cost of all food and beverages, audiovisual equipment, honoraria for speakers, and any entertainment.

(iii) Report

The Deputy Attorney General shall submit an annual report to the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives on all approved conference expenditures referenced in this paragraph.

(D) Annual certification

Beginning in the first fiscal year beginning after the date of the enactment of this Act,[2] the Attorney General shall submit, to the Committee on the Judiciary and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives, an annual certification that—

(i) all audits issued by the Office of the Inspector General under paragraph (1) have been completed and reviewed by the appropriate Assistant Attorney General or Director;

(ii) all mandatory exclusions required under subparagraph (A)(iii) have been issued;

(iii) all reimbursements required under subparagraph (A)(v) have been made; and

(iv) includes a list of any grant recipients excluded under subparagraph (A) from the previous year.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40002, as added Pub. L. 109–162, §3(a), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2964; amended Pub. L. 109–271, §§1(d)–(f), 2(e), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 751, 752; Pub. L. 111–320, title II, §202(d), Dec. 20, 2010, 124 Stat. 3509; Pub. L. 113–4, §3, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 56.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1902, known as the Violence Against Women Act of 1994. For complete classification of title IV to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

The Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), (16), (36)(B), is Pub. L. 92–203,

Dec. 18, 1971, 85 Stat. 688, which is classified generally to chapter 33 (§1601 et seq.) of Title 43, Public Lands. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of Title 43 and Tables.

The Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996, referred to in subsec. (a)(15), is Pub. L. 104–330, Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4016, which is classified principally to chapter 43 (§4101 et seq.) of Title 25, Indians. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4101 of Title 25 and Tables.

The Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(33), is act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682, which is classified generally to chapter 6A (§ 201 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), (2)(F), (15)(A), (16), is Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1796, known as the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

The Violence Against Women Act of 1994, referred to in subsec. (b)(13)(A), is title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1902. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

The Violence Against Women Act of 2000, referred to in subsec. (b)(13)(A), is div. B of Pub. L. 106–386, Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1491. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2000 Amendments note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

The Violence Against Women and Department of Justice Reauthorization Act of 2005, referred to in subsec. (b)(13)(A), is Pub. L. 109–162, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2960. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2006 Amendments note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

The Violence Against Women Reauthorization Act of 2013, referred to in subsec. (b)(13)(A), is Pub. L. 113–4, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 54. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2013 Amendment note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

Section 3789d of this title, referred to in subsec. (b)(13)(C), was in the original a reference to "section 3789d of title 42, United States Code" but probably should have been a reference to section 809 of Pub. L. 90–351, which is classified to section 3789d of this title.

The date of the enactment of this Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(16)(A)(i), (D), probably means the date of enactment of Pub. L. 113–4, which enacted subsec. (b)(16) of this section and was approved Mar. 7, 2013.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(3), added par. (1). Former par. (1) redesignated (2).

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(H), redesignated par. (1) as (2). Former par. (2) redesignated (3).

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(4), substituted "serious harm to an unemancipated minor." for "serious harm."

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(H), redesignated par. (2) as (3). Former par. (3) redesignated (4).

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(5), substituted "The term 'community-based organization' means a nonprofit, nongovernmental, or tribal organization that serves a specific geographic community that—" for "The term 'community-based organization' means an organization that—" in introductory provisions.

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(H), redesignated par. (3) as (4). Former par. (4) redesignated (5).

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(H), redesignated par. (4) as (5).

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(1), struck out par. (5), which defined "court-based" and "court-related personnel".

Subsec. (a)(6), (7). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(6), added pars. (6) and (7). Former pars. (6) and (7) redesignated (8) and (9), respectively.

Subsec. (a)(8). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(7), inserted "or intimate partner" after "former spouse" and after "as a spouse".

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(G), redesignated par. (6) as (8). Former par. (8) redesignated (10).

Subsec. (a)(9) to (11). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(G), redesignated pars. (7) to (9) as (9) to (11), respectively. Former pars. (10) and (11) redesignated (13) and (14), respectively.

Subsec. (a)(12). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(8), added par. (12). Former par. (12) redesignated (15).

Subsec. (a)(13) to (16). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(F), redesignated pars. (10) to (13) as (13) to (16), respectively. Former pars. (14) to (16) redesignated (17) to (19), respectively.

Subsec. (a)(17). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(F), redesignated par. (14) as (17).

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(1), struck out par. (17), which defined "linguistically and culturally specific services".

Subsec. (a)(18). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(9), inserted "or Village Public Safety Officers" after "governmental victim services programs".

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(F), redesignated par. (15) as (18).

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(1), struck out par. (18), which defined "personally identifying information" or "personal information".

Subsec. (a)(19). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(10), inserted at end "Intake or referral, by itself, does not constitute legal assistance."

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(F), redesignated par. (16) as (19). Former par. (19) redesignated (23).

Subsec. (a)(20) to (22). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(11), added pars. (20) to (22). Former pars. (20), (21), and (22) redesignated (24), (26), and (27), respectively.

Subsec. (a)(23). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(12), substituted "assistance" for "services".

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(E), redesignated par. (19) as (23).

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(1), struck out par. (23), which defined "sexual assault".

Subsec. (a)(24). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(E), redesignated par. (20) as (24). Former par. (24) redesignated (30).

Subsec. (a)(25). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(13), added par. (25). Former par. (25) redesignated (31).

Subsec. (a)(26). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(D), redesignated par. (21) as (26). Former par. (26) redesignated (32).

Subsec. (a)(26)(C). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(14), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (a)(27). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(15), substituted "57" for "52" and "250,000" for "150,000".

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(D), redesignated par. (22) as (27). Former par. (27) redesignated (33).

Subsec. (a)(28). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(16), added par. (28). Former par. (28) redesignated (34).

Subsec. (a)(29). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(16), added par. (29).

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(1), struck out par. (29) which defined "tribal coalition".

Subsec. (a)(30) to (32). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(C), redesignated pars. (24) to (26) as (30) to (32), respectively. Former pars. (30) to (32) redesignated (36) to (38), respectively.

Subsec. (a)(33). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(C), redesignated par. (27) as (33).

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(1), struck out par. (33) which defined "underserved populations".

Subsec. (a)(34). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(C), redesignated par. (28) as (34). Former par. (34) redesignated (41).

Subsec. (a)(35). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(17), added par. (35). Former par. (35) redesignated (42).

Subsec. (a)(36), (37). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(B), redesignated pars. (30) and (31) as (36) and (37), respectively.

Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(1), struck out pars. (36) and (37), which defined "victim services" or "victim service provider" and "youth", respectively.

Subsec. (a)(38). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(B), redesignated par. (32) as (38).

Subsec. (a)(39), (40). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(18), added pars. (39) and (40).

Subsec. (a)(41), (42). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(2)(A), redesignated pars. (34) and (35) as (41) and (42), respectively.

Subsec. (a)(43) to (45). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(a)(19), added pars. (43) to (45).

Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(b)(1)(A), added cls. (i) and (ii) and concluding provisions, and struck out former cls. (i) and (ii) which read as follows:

"(i) disclose any personally identifying information or individual information collected in connection with services requested, utilized, or denied through grantees' and subgrantees' programs; or

"(ii) reveal individual client information without the informed, written, reasonably time-limited consent of the person (or in the case of an unemancipated minor, the minor and the parent or guardian or in the case of persons with disabilities, the guardian) about whom information is sought, whether for this program or any other Federal, State, tribal, or territorial grant program, except that consent for release may not be given by the abuser of the minor, person with disabilities, or the abuser of the other parent of the minor."

Subsec. (b)(2)(D). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(b)(1)(B), amended subpar. (D) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows:"Grantees and subgrantees may share—

"(i) nonpersonally identifying data in the aggregate regarding services to their clients and nonpersonally identifying demographic information in order to comply with Federal, State, tribal, or territorial reporting, evaluation, or data collection requirements;

"(ii) court-generated information and law-enforcement generated information contained in secure, governmental registries for protection order enforcement purposes; and

"(iii) law enforcement- and prosecution-generated information necessary for law enforcement and prosecution purposes."

Subsec. (b)(2)(E) to (G). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(b)(1)(C)–(E), added subpars. (E) and (G) and redesignated former subpar. (E) as (F).

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(b)(2), added par. (3) and struck out former par. (3). Prior to amendment,

text read as follows: "In carrying out the activities under this subchapter, grantees and subgrantees may collaborate with and provide information to Federal, State, local, tribal, and territorial public officials and agencies to develop and implement policies to reduce or eliminate domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking."

Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(b)(3), inserted at end "Final reports of such evaluations shall be made available to the public via the agency's website."

Subsec. (b)(12) to (16). Pub. L. 113–4, §3(b)(4), added pars. (12) to (16).

2010—Subsec. (a)(26). Pub. L. 111–320 substituted "under sections 10402 and 10411 of this title" for "under the Family Violence Prevention and Services Act (42 U.S.C. 10410(b))".

2006—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 109–271, §1(e)(1), substituted "Alaska Native" for "Alaskan".

Subsec. (a)(23). Pub. L. 109–271, §1(d), substituted "proscribed" for "prescribed".

Subsec. (a)(31) to (37). Pub. L. 109–271, §1(e)(2), (3), added par. (31) and redesignated former pars. (31) to (36) as (32) to (37), respectively.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 109–271, §1(f), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "No matching funds shall be required for a grant or subgrant made under this subchapter for any tribe, territory, victim service provider, or any entity that the Attorney General determines has adequately demonstrated financial need."

Subsec. (b)(11). Pub. L. 109–271, §2(e), inserted "Of the total amounts appropriated under this subchapter, not less than 3 percent and up to 8 percent, unless otherwise noted, shall be available for providing training and technical assistance relating to the purposes of this subchapter to improve the capacity of the grantees, subgrantees, and other entities." before "If there is a demonstrated history".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

FINDINGS

Pub. L. 109–162, title II, §201, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2993, provided that: "Congress finds the following:

"(1) Nearly 1/3 of American women report physical or sexual abuse by a husband or boyfriend at some point in their lives.

"(2) According to the National Crime Victimization Survey, 248,000 Americans 12 years of age and older were raped or sexually assaulted in 2002.

"(3) Rape and sexual assault in the United States is estimated to cost $127,000,000,000 per year, including—

"(A) lost productivity;

"(B) medical and mental health care;

"(C) police and fire services;

"(D) social services;

"(E) loss of and damage to property; and

"(F) reduced quality of life.

"(4) Nonreporting of sexual assault in rural areas is a particular problem because of the high rate of nonstranger sexual assault.

"(5) Geographic isolation often compounds the problems facing sexual assault victims. The lack of anonymity and accessible support services can limit opportunities for justice for victims.

"(6) Domestic elder abuse is primarily family abuse. The National Elder Abuse Incidence Study found that the perpetrator was a family member in 90 percent of cases.

"(7) Barriers for older victims leaving abusive relationships include—

"(A) the inability to support themselves;

"(B) poor health that increases their dependence on the abuser;

"(C) fear of being placed in a nursing home; and

"(D) ineffective responses by domestic abuse programs and law enforcement.

"(8) Disabled women comprise another vulnerable population with unmet needs. Women with disabilities are more likely to be the victims of abuse and violence than women without disabilities because of their increased physical, economic, social, or psychological dependence on others.

"(9) Many women with disabilities also fail to report the abuse, since they are dependent on their abusers and fear being abandoned or institutionalized.

"(10) Of the 598 battered women's programs surveyed—

"(A) only 35 percent of these programs offered disability awareness training for their staff; and

"(B) only 16 percent dedicated a staff member to provide services to women with disabilities.

"(11) Problems of domestic violence are exacerbated for immigrants when spouses control the immigration status of their family members, and abusers use threats of refusal to file immigration papers and threats to deport spouses and children as powerful tools to prevent battered immigrant women from seeking help, trapping battered immigrant women in violent homes because of fear of deportation.

"(12) Battered immigrant women who attempt to flee abusive relationships may not have access to bilingual shelters or bilingual professionals, and face restrictions on public or financial assistance. They may also lack assistance of a certified interpreter in court, when reporting complaints to the police or a 9–1–1 operator, or even in acquiring information about their rights and the legal system.

"(13) More than 500 men and women call the National Domestic Violence Hotline every day to get immediate, informed, and confidential assistance to help deal with family violence.

"(14) The National Domestic Violence Hotline service is available, toll-free, 24 hours a day and 7 days a week, with bilingual staff, access to translators in 150 languages, and a TTY line for the hearing-impaired.

"(15) With access to over 5,000 shelters and service providers across the United States, Puerto Rico, and the United States Virgin Islands, the National Domestic Violence Hotline provides crisis intervention and immediately connects callers with sources of help in their local community.

"(16) Approximately 60 percent of the callers indicate that calling the Hotline is their first attempt to address a domestic violence situation and that they have not called the police or any other support services.

"(17) Between 2000 and 2003, there was a 27 percent increase in call volume at the National Domestic Violence Hotline.

"(18) Improving technology infrastructure at the National Domestic Violence Hotline and training advocates, volunteers, and other staff on upgraded technology will drastically increase the Hotline's ability to answer more calls quickly and effectively."

Pub. L. 109–162, title III, §301, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3003, provided that: "Congress finds the following:

"(1) Youth, under the age of 18, account for 67 percent of all sexual assault victimizations reported to law enforcement officials.

"(2) The Department of Justice consistently finds that young women between the ages of 16 and 24 experience the highest rate of non-fatal intimate partner violence.

"(3) In 1 year, over 4,000 incidents of rape or sexual assault occurred in public schools across the country.

"(4) Young people experience particular obstacles to seeking help. They often do not have access to money, transportation, or shelter services. They must overcome issues such as distrust of adults, lack of knowledge about available resources, or pressure from peers and parents.

"(5) A needs assessment on teen relationship abuse for the State of California, funded by the California Department of Health Services, identified a desire for confidentiality and confusion about the law as 2 of the most significant barriers to young victims of domestic and dating violence seeking help.

"(6) Only one State specifically allows for minors to petition the court for protection orders.

"(7) Many youth are involved in dating relationships, and these relationships can include the same kind of domestic violence and dating violence seen in the adult population. In fact, more than 40 percent of all incidents of domestic violence involve people who are not married.

"(8) 40 percent of girls ages 14 to 17 report knowing someone their age who has been hit or beaten by a boyfriend, and 13 percent of college women report being stalked.

"(9) Of college women who said they had been the victims of rape or attempted rape, 12.8 percent of completed rapes, 35 percent of attempted rapes, and 22.9 percent of threatened rapes took place on a date. Almost 60 percent of the completed rapes that occurred on campus took place in the victim's residence.

"(10) According to a 3-year study of student-athletes at 10 Division I universities, male athletes made up only 3.3 percent of the general male university population, but they accounted for 19 percent of the students reported for sexual assault and 35 percent of domestic violence perpetrators."

[1] *So in original. The period probably should be preceded by another closing parenthesis.*

[2] *See References in Text note below.*

PART A—SAFE STREETS FOR WOMEN

SUBPART 1—SAFETY FOR WOMEN IN PUBLIC TRANSIT

§13931. Grants for capital improvements to prevent crime in public transportation

(a) General purpose

There is authorized to be appropriated not to exceed $10,000,000, for the Secretary of Transportation (referred to in this section as the "Secretary") to make capital grants for the prevention of crime and to increase security in existing and future public transportation systems. None of the provisions of this Act may be construed to prohibit the financing of projects under this section where law enforcement responsibilities are vested in a local public body other than the grant applicant.

(b) Grants for lighting, camera surveillance, and security phones

(1) From the sums authorized for expenditure under this section for crime prevention, the Secretary is authorized to make grants and loans to States and local public bodies or agencies for the purpose of increasing the safety of public transportation by—

(A) increasing lighting within or adjacent to public transportation systems, including bus stops, subway stations, parking lots, or garages;

(B) increasing camera surveillance of areas within and adjacent to public transportation systems, including bus stops, subway stations, parking lots, or garages;

(C) providing emergency phone lines to contact law enforcement or security personnel in areas within or adjacent to public transportation systems, including bus stops, subway stations, parking lots, or garages; or

(D) any other project intended to increase the security and safety of existing or planned public transportation systems.

(2) From the sums authorized under this section, at least 75 percent shall be expended on projects of the type described in subsection (b)(1)(A) and (B).

(c) Reporting

All grants under this section are contingent upon the filing of a report with the Secretary and the Department of Justice, Office of Victims of Crime, showing crime rates in or adjacent to public transportation before, and for a 1-year period after, the capital improvement. Statistics shall be compiled on the basis of the type of crime, sex, race, ethnicity, language, and relationship of victim to the offender.

(d) Increased Federal share

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Federal share under this section for each capital improvement project that enhances the safety and security of public transportation systems and that is not required by law (including any other provision of this Act) shall be 90 percent of the net project cost of the project.

(e) Special grants for projects to study increasing security for women

From the sums authorized under this section, the Secretary shall provide grants and loans for the purpose of studying ways to reduce violent crimes against women in public transit through better design or operation of public transit systems.

(f) General requirements

All grants or loans provided under this section shall be subject to the same terms, conditions, requirements, and provisions applicable to grants and loans as specified in section 5321 of title 49.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40131, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1916.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d), is Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1796, known as the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

SUBPART 2—ASSISTANCE TO VICTIMS OF SEXUAL ASSAULT

§13941. Training programs

(a) In general

The Attorney General, after consultation with victim advocates and individuals who have expertise in treating sex offenders, shall establish criteria and develop training programs to assist probation and parole officers and other personnel who work with released sex offenders in the areas of—

(1) case management;
(2) supervision; and
(3) relapse prevention.

(b) Training programs

The Attorney General shall ensure, to the extent practicable, that training programs developed under subsection (a) are available in geographically diverse locations throughout the country.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40152, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1920; Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §108, title XI, §1167, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2984, 3121; Pub. L. 109–271, §2(a), (b), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 751, 752; Pub. L. 113–4, title I, §105, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 77.)

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 113–4 substituted "$5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018." for "$5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2011."

2006—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 109–271, §2(b), which directed amendment of section 1167 of the Violence Against Women Act of 2005, Pub. L. 109–162, by substituting "2007 through 2011" for "2006 through 2010", was executed to subsec. (c) of this section, which is section 40152 of the Violence Against Women Act of 1994, as amended by section 1167 of Pub. L. 109–162, to reflect the probable intent of Congress. See below.

Pub. L. 109–162, §1167, added subsec. (c) and struck out heading and text of former subsec. (c) which authorized appropriations to carry out this section for fiscal years 1996 and 1997.

Pub. L. 109–162, §108, which directed the striking of subsec. (c) and the insertion of a new subsec. (c), authorizing appropriations to carry out this section for fiscal years 2007 through 2011, was repealed by Pub. L. 109–271, §2(a).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

§13942. Confidentiality of communications between sexual assault or domestic violence victims and their counselors

(a) Study and development of model legislation

The Attorney General shall—

(1) study and evaluate the manner in which the States have taken measures to protect the confidentiality of communications between sexual assault or domestic violence victims and their therapists or trained counselors;

(2) develop model legislation that will provide the maximum protection possible for the confidentiality of such communications, within any applicable constitutional limits, taking into account the following factors:

(A) the danger that counseling programs for victims of sexual assault and domestic violence will be unable to achieve their goal of helping victims recover from the trauma associated with these crimes if there is no assurance that the records of the counseling sessions will be kept confidential;

(B) consideration of the appropriateness of an absolute privilege for communications between victims of sexual assault or domestic violence and their therapists or trained counselors, in light of the likelihood that such an absolute privilege will provide the maximum guarantee of confidentiality but also in light of the possibility that such an absolute privilege may be held to violate the rights of criminal defendants under the Federal or State constitutions by denying them the opportunity to obtain exculpatory evidence and present it at trial; and

(C) consideration of what limitations on the disclosure of confidential communications between victims of these crimes and their counselors, short of an absolute privilege, are most likely to ensure that the counseling programs will not be undermined, and specifically whether no such disclosure should be allowed unless, at a minimum, there has been a particularized showing by a criminal defendant of a compelling need for records of such communications, and adequate procedural safeguards are in place to prevent unnecessary or damaging disclosures; and

(3) prepare and disseminate to State authorities the findings made and model legislation developed as a result of the study and evaluation.

(b) Report and recommendations

Not later than the date that is 1 year after September 13, 1994, the Attorney General shall report to the Congress—

(1) the findings of the study and the model legislation required by this section; and

(2) recommendations based on the findings on the need for and appropriateness of further action by the Federal Government.

(c) Review of Federal evidentiary rules

The Judicial Conference of the United States shall evaluate and report to Congress its views on whether the Federal Rules of Evidence should be amended, and if so, how they should be amended, to guarantee that the confidentiality of communications between sexual assault victims and their therapists or trained counselors will be adequately protected in Federal court proceedings.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40153, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1921.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Rules of Evidence, referred to in subsec. (c), are set out in the Appendix to Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

§13943. Information programs

The Attorney General shall compile information regarding sex offender treatment programs and ensure that information regarding community treatment programs in the community into which a convicted sex offender is released is made available to each person serving a sentence of imprisonment in a Federal penal or correctional institution for a commission of an offense under chapter 109A of title 18 or for the commission of a similar offense, including halfway houses and psychiatric institutions.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40154, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1922.)

PART B—SAFE HOMES FOR WOMEN

SUBPART 1—CONFIDENTIALITY FOR ABUSED PERSONS

§13951. Confidentiality of abused person's address

(a) Regulations

Not later than 90 days after September 13, 1994, the United States Postal Service shall promulgate regulations to secure the confidentiality of domestic violence shelters and abused persons' addresses.

(b) Requirements

The regulations under subsection (a) shall require—

(1) in the case of an individual, the presentation to an appropriate postal official of a valid, outstanding protection order; and

(2) in the case of a domestic violence shelter, the presentation to an appropriate postal authority of proof from a State domestic violence coalition that meets the requirements of section 10410 [1] of this title verifying that the organization is a domestic violence shelter.

(c) Disclosure for certain purposes

The regulations under subsection (a) shall not prohibit the disclosure of addresses to State or Federal agencies for legitimate law enforcement or other governmental purposes.

(d) Existing compilations

Compilations of addresses existing at the time at which order is presented to an appropriate postal official shall be excluded from the scope of the regulations under subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40281, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1938.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 10410 of this title, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), was generally amended by Pub. L. 111–320, title II, §201, Dec. 20, 2010, 124 Stat. 3497, and, as so amended, no longer contains provisions relating to grants for State domestic violence coalitions. See section 10411 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

SUBPART 2—DATA AND RESEARCH

§13961. Research agenda

(a) Request for contract

The Attorney General shall request the National Academy of Sciences, through its National Research Council, to enter into a contract to develop a research agenda to increase the understanding and control of violence against women, including rape and domestic violence. In furtherance of the contract, the National Academy shall convene a panel of nationally recognized experts on violence against women, in the fields of law, medicine, criminal justice, and direct services to victims and experts on domestic violence in diverse, ethnic, social, and language minority communities and the

social sciences. In setting the agenda, the Academy shall focus primarily on preventive, educative, social, and legal strategies, including addressing the needs of underserved populations.

(b) Declination of request

If the National Academy of Sciences declines to conduct the study and develop a research agenda, it shall recommend a nonprofit private entity that is qualified to conduct such a study. In that case, the Attorney General shall carry out subsection (a) through the nonprofit private entity recommended by the Academy. In either case, whether the study is conducted by the National Academy of Sciences or by the nonprofit group it recommends, the funds for the contract shall be made available from sums appropriated for the conduct of research by the National Institute of Justice.

(c) Report

The Attorney General shall ensure that no later than 1 year after September 13, 1994, the study required under subsection (a) is completed and a report describing the findings made is submitted to the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40291, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1939.)

DEVELOPMENT OF RESEARCH AGENDA IDENTIFIED BY THE VIOLENCE AGAINST WOMEN ACT OF 1994

Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title IV, §1404, Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1514, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Attorney General shall—

"(1) direct the National Institute of Justice, in consultation and coordination with the Bureau of Justice Statistics and the National Academy of Sciences, through its National Research Council, to develop a research agenda based on the recommendations contained in the report entitled 'Understanding Violence Against Women' of the National Academy of Sciences; and

"(2) not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 2000], in consultation with the Secretary of the Department of Health and Human Services, submit to Congress a report which shall include—

"(A) a description of the research agenda developed under paragraph (1) and a plan to implement that agenda; and

"(B) recommendations for priorities in carrying out that agenda to most effectively advance knowledge about and means by which to prevent or reduce violence against women.

"(b) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary to carry out this section."

§13962. State databases

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall study and report to the States and to Congress on how the States may collect centralized databases on the incidence of sexual and domestic violence offenses within a State.

(b) Consultation

In conducting its study, the Attorney General shall consult persons expert in the collection of criminal justice data, State statistical administrators, law enforcement personnel, and nonprofit nongovernmental agencies that provide direct services to victims of domestic violence. The final report shall set forth the views of the persons consulted on the recommendations.

(c) Report

The Attorney General shall ensure that no later than 1 year after September 13, 1994, the study required under subsection (a) is completed and a report describing the findings made is submitted to the Committees on the Judiciary of the Senate and the House of Representatives.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $200,000 for fiscal year 1996.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40292, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1939.)

§13963. Number and cost of injuries

(a) Study

The Secretary of Health and Human Services, acting through the Centers for Disease Control Injury Control Division, shall conduct a study to obtain a national projection of the incidence of injuries resulting from domestic violence, the cost of injuries to health care facilities, and recommend health care strategies for reducing the incidence and cost of such injuries.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—$100,000 for fiscal year 1996.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40293, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1940.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Centers for Disease Control changed to Centers for Disease Control and Prevention by Pub. L. 102–531, title III, §312, Oct. 27, 1992, 106 Stat. 3504.

SUBPART 3—RURAL DOMESTIC VIOLENCE AND CHILD ABUSE ENFORCEMENT

§13971. Rural domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, and child abuse enforcement assistance

(a) Purposes

The purposes of this section are—

(1) to identify, assess, and appropriately respond to child, youth, and adult victims of domestic violence, sexual assault, dating violence, and stalking in rural communities, by encouraging collaboration among—

(A) domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking victim service providers;
(B) law enforcement agencies;
(C) prosecutors;
(D) courts;
(E) other criminal justice service providers;
(F) human and community service providers;
(G) educational institutions; and
(H) health care providers, including sexual assault forensic examiners;

(2) to establish and expand nonprofit, nongovernmental, State, tribal, territorial, and local government victim services in rural communities to child, youth, and adult victims; and

(3) to increase the safety and well-being of women and children in rural communities, by—

(A) dealing directly and immediately with domestic violence, sexual assault, dating violence, and stalking occurring in rural communities; and

(B) creating and implementing strategies to increase awareness and prevent domestic violence, sexual assault, dating violence, and stalking.

(b) Grants authorized

The Attorney General, acting through the Director of the Office on Violence Against Women (referred to in this section as the "Director"), may award grants to States, Indian tribes, local governments, and nonprofit, public or private entities, including tribal nonprofit organizations, to

carry out programs serving rural areas or rural communities that address domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking by—

(1) implementing, expanding, and establishing cooperative efforts and projects among law enforcement officers, prosecutors, victim service providers, and other related parties to investigate and prosecute incidents of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking, including developing multidisciplinary teams focusing on high risk cases with the goal of preventing domestic and dating violence homicides;

(2) providing treatment, counseling, advocacy, legal assistance, and other long-term and short-term victim and population specific services to adult and minor victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking in rural communities, including assistance in immigration matters;

(3) working in cooperation with the community to develop education and prevention strategies directed toward such issues; and

(4) developing, enlarging, or strengthening programs addressing sexual assault, including sexual assault forensic examiner programs, Sexual Assault Response Teams, law enforcement training, and programs addressing rape kit backlogs.

(5) developing programs and strategies that focus on the specific needs of victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking who reside in remote rural and geographically isolated areas, including addressing the challenges posed by the lack of access to shelters and victims services, and limited law enforcement resources and training, and providing training and resources to Community Health Aides involved in the delivery of Indian Health Service programs.

(c) Use of funds

Funds appropriated pursuant to this section shall be used only for specific programs and activities expressly described in subsection (a).

(d) Allotments and priorities

(1) Allotment for Indian tribes

(A) In general

Not less than 10 percent of the total amount available under this section for each fiscal year shall be available for grants under the program authorized by section 3796gg–10 of this title.

(B) Applicability of part [1]

The requirements of this section shall not apply to funds allocated for the program described in subparagraph (A).

(2) Allotment for sexual assault

(A) In general

Not less than 25 percent of the total amount appropriated in a fiscal year under this section shall fund services that meaningfully address sexual assault in rural communities, however at such time as the amounts appropriated reach the amount of $45,000,000, the percentage allocated shall rise to 30 percent of the total amount appropriated, at such time as the amounts appropriated reach the amount of $50,000,000, the percentage allocated shall rise to 35 percent of the total amount appropriated, and at such time as the amounts appropriated reach the amount of $55,000,000, the percentage allocated shall rise to 40 percent of the amounts appropriated.

(B) Multiple purpose applications

Nothing in this section shall prohibit any applicant from applying for funding to address sexual assault, domestic violence, stalking, or dating violence in the same application.

(3) Allotment for technical assistance

Of the amounts appropriated for each fiscal year to carry out this section, not more than 8 percent may be used by the Director for technical assistance costs. Of the amounts appropriated in

this subsection, no less than 25 percent of such amounts shall be available to a nonprofit, nongovernmental organization or organizations whose focus and expertise is in addressing sexual assault to provide technical assistance to sexual assault grantees.

(4) Underserved populations

In awarding grants under this section, the Director shall give priority to the needs of underserved populations.

(5) Allocation of funds for rural States

Not less than 75 percent of the total amount made available for each fiscal year to carry out this section shall be allocated to eligible entities located in rural States.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

(1) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated $50,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018 to carry out this section.

(2) Additional funding

In addition to funds received through a grant under subsection (b), a law enforcement agency may use funds received through a grant under part Q of title I of the Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968 (42 U.S.C. 3796dd et seq.) to accomplish the objectives of this section.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40295, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1940; Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title I, §§1105, 1109(d), title V, §1512(c), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1497, 1503, 1533; Pub. L. 109–162, title II, §203, title IX, §906(d), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2998, 3081; Pub. L. 109–271, §7(b)(1), (2)(A), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 113–4, title II, §202, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 81.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968, referred to in subsec. (e)(2), is Pub. L. 90–351, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 197, as amended. Part Q of title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter XII–E (§3796dd et seq.) of chapter 46 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3711 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (a)(1)(H). Pub. L. 113–4, §202(1), inserted ", including sexual assault forensic examiners" before semicolon at end.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 113–4, §202(2)(A), substituted "victim service providers" for "victim advocacy groups" and inserted ", including developing multidisciplinary teams focusing on high risk cases with the goal of preventing domestic and dating violence homicides" before semicolon at end.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 113–4, §202(2)(B)(i), substituted "legal assistance, and other long-term and short-term victim and population specific services" for "and other long- and short-term assistance".

Subsec. (b)(4), (5). Pub. L. 113–4, §202(2)(B)(ii), (C), (D), added pars. (4) and (5).

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 113–4, §202(3), substituted "$50,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018" for "$55,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2007 through 2011".

2006—Pub. L. 109–162, §203, amended section generally, substituting provisions relating to rural domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, and child abuse enforcement assistance for provisions relating to rural domestic violence and child abuse enforcement assistance.

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 109–162, §906(d), which directed the amendment of subsec. (c) by striking par. (3) and inserting a new par. (3) which read "Not less than 10 percent of the total amount available under this section for each fiscal year shall be available for grants under the program authorized in section 3796gg–10 of this title. The requirements of this paragraph shall not apply to funds allocated for such program.", was repealed by Pub. L. 109–271, §7(b)(2)(A).

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 109–271, §7(b)(1), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "Not less than 10 percent of the total amount made available for each fiscal year to carry out this section shall be allocated for grants to Indian tribes or tribal organizations."

2000—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 106–386, §1109(d)(1), inserted "and dating violence (as defined in section 3796gg–2 of this title)" after "domestic violence".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 106–386, §1512(c), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as

follows: "to provide treatment and counseling to victims of domestic violence and dating violence (as defined in section 3796gg–2 of this title) and child abuse; and".

Pub. L. 106–386, §1109(d)(2), inserted "and dating violence (as defined in section 3796gg–2 of this title)" after "domestic violence".

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 106–386, §1105(1), added par. (1) and struck out heading and text of former par. (1). Text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

"(A) $7,000,000 for fiscal year 1996;

"(B) $8,000,000 for fiscal year 1997; and

"(C) $15,000,000 for fiscal year 1998."

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 106–386, §1105(2), added par. (3).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 109–162 not effective until the beginning of fiscal year 2007, see section 4 of Pub. L. 109–162, set out as a note under section 3793 of this title.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "section".

SUBPART 3A—RESEARCH ON EFFECTIVE INTERVENTIONS TO ADDRESS VIOLENCE AGAINST WOMEN

CODIFICATION

This subpart was, in the original, chapter 11 of subtitle B of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, and has been designated as subpart 3a of this part for purposes of codification. Another chapter 11 of subtitle B of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322 was designated subpart 4 of this part.

§13973. Repealed. Pub. L. 113–4, title V, §501(b)(1), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 101

Section, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40297, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title V, §505, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3029, related to research on effective interventions in the health care setting.

SUBPART 4—TRANSITIONAL HOUSING ASSISTANCE GRANTS FOR VICTIMS OF DOMESTIC VIOLENCE, DATING VIOLENCE, SEXUAL ASSAULT, OR STALKING

CODIFICATION

This subpart was, in the original, chapter 11 of subtitle B of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, and has been designated as subpart 4 of this part for purposes of codification. Another chapter 11 of subtitle B of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322 was designated subpart 3a of this part.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Pub. L. 113–4, title VI, §602(1), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 109, substituted "VICTIMS OF DOMESTIC VIOLENCE, DATING VIOLENCE, SEXUAL ASSAULT, OR STALKING" for "CHILD VICTIMS OF DOMESTIC VIOLENCE, STALKING, OR SEXUAL ASSAULT" in heading.

§13975. Transitional housing assistance grants for victims of domestic violence,

dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking

(a) In general

The Attorney General, acting in consultation with the Director of the Violence Against Women Office of the Department of Justice, the Department of Housing and Urban Development, and the Department of Health and Human Services, shall award grants under this section to States, units of local government, Indian tribes, and other organizations, including domestic violence and sexual assault victim service providers, domestic violence and sexual assault coalitions, other nonprofit, nongovernmental organizations, or community-based and culturally specific organizations, that have a documented history of effective work concerning domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking (referred to in this section as the "recipient") to carry out programs to provide assistance to minors, adults, and their dependents—

(1) who are homeless, or in need of transitional housing or other housing assistance, as a result of a situation of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking; and

(2) for whom emergency shelter services or other crisis intervention services are unavailable or insufficient.

(b) Grants

Grants awarded under this section may be used for programs that provide—

(1) transitional housing, including funding for the operating expenses of newly developed or existing transitional housing.[1]

(2) short-term housing assistance, including rental or utilities payments assistance and assistance with related expenses such as payment of security deposits and other costs incidental to relocation to transitional housing for persons described in subsection (a); and

(3) support services designed to enable a minor, an adult, or a dependent of such minor or adult, who is fleeing a situation of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking to—

(A) locate and secure permanent housing;

(B) secure employment, including obtaining employment counseling, occupational training, job retention counseling, and counseling concerning re-entry in to [2] the workforce; and

(C) integrate into a community by providing that minor, adult, or dependent with services, such as transportation, counseling, child care services, case management, and other assistance.

Participation in the support services shall be voluntary. Receipt of the benefits of the housing assistance described in paragraph (2) shall not be conditioned upon the participation of the youth, adults, or their dependents in any or all of the support services offered them.

(c) Duration

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (2), a minor, an adult, or a dependent, who receives assistance under this section shall receive that assistance for not more than 24 months.

(2) Waiver

The recipient of a grant under this section may waive the restriction under paragraph (1) for not more than an additional 6 month period with respect to any minor, adult, or dependent, who—

(A) has made a good-faith effort to acquire permanent housing; and

(B) has been unable to acquire permanent housing.

(d) Application

(1) In general

Each eligible entity desiring a grant under this section shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such information as the Attorney General may reasonably require.

(2) Contents

Each application submitted pursuant to paragraph (1) shall—

(A) describe the activities for which assistance under this section is sought;

(B) provide assurances that any supportive services offered to participants in programs developed under subsection (b)(3) are voluntary and that refusal to receive such services shall not be grounds for termination from the program or eviction from the victim's housing; and

(C) provide such additional assurances as the Attorney General determines to be essential to ensure compliance with the requirements of this section.

(3) Application

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to require—

(A) victims to participate in the criminal justice system in order to receive services; or

(B) domestic violence advocates to breach client confidentiality.

(e) Report to the Attorney General

(1) In general

A recipient of a grant under this section shall annually prepare and submit to the Attorney General a report describing—

(A) the number of minors, adults, and dependents assisted under this section; and

(B) the types of housing assistance and support services provided under this section.

(2) Contents

Each report prepared and submitted pursuant to paragraph (1) shall include information regarding—

(A) the purpose and amount of housing assistance provided to each minor, adult, or dependent, assisted under this section and the reason for that assistance;

(B) the number of months each minor, adult, or dependent, received assistance under this section;

(C) the number of minors, adults, and dependents who—

(i) were eligible to receive assistance under this section; and

(ii) were not provided with assistance under this section solely due to a lack of available housing;

(D) the type of support services provided to each minor, adult, or dependent, assisted under this section; and

(E) the client population served and the number of individuals requesting services that the transitional housing program is unable to serve as a result of a lack of resources.

(f) Report to Congress

(1) Reporting requirement

The Attorney General, with the Director of the Violence Against Women Office, shall prepare and submit to the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives and the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate a report that contains a compilation of the information contained in the report submitted under subsection (e) of this section not later than 1 month after the end of each even-numbered fiscal year.

(2) Availability of report

In order to coordinate efforts to assist the victims of domestic violence, the Attorney General, in coordination with the Director of the Violence Against Women Office, shall transmit a copy of the report submitted under paragraph (1) to—

(A) the Office of Community Planning and Development at the United States Department of Housing and Urban Development; and

(B) the Office of Women's Health at the United States Department of Health and Human Services.

(g) Authorization of appropriations

(1) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $35,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018.

(2) Limitations

Of the amount made available to carry out this section in any fiscal year, up to 5 percent may be used by the Attorney General for evaluation, monitoring, technical assistance, salaries and administrative expenses.

(3) Minimum amount

(A) In general

Except as provided in subparagraph (B), unless all qualified applications submitted by any States, units of local government, Indian tribes, or organizations within a State for a grant under this section have been funded, that State, together with the grantees within the State (other than Indian tribes), shall be allocated in each fiscal year, not less than 0.75 percent of the total amount appropriated in the fiscal year for grants pursuant to this section.

(B) Exception

The United States Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Northern Mariana Islands shall each be allocated not less than 0.25 percent of the total amount appropriated in the fiscal year for grants pursuant to this section.

(C) Underserved populations

(i) INDIAN TRIBES.—

(I) IN GENERAL.—Not less than 10 percent of the total amount available under this section for each fiscal year shall be available for grants under the program authorized by section 3796gg–10 of this title.

(II) APPLICABILITY OF PART.— [3] The requirements of this section shall not apply to funds allocated for the program described in subclause (I).

(ii) Priority shall be given to projects developed under subsection (b) that primarily serve underserved populations.

(D) Qualified application defined

In this paragraph, the term "qualified application" means an application that—

(i) has been submitted by an eligible applicant;

(ii) does not propose any activities that may compromise victim safety, including—

(I) background checks of victims; or

(II) clinical evaluations to determine eligibility for services;

(iii) reflects an understanding of the dynamics of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking; and

(iv) does not propose prohibited activities, including mandatory services for victims.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40299, as added Pub. L. 108–21, title VI, §611, Apr. 30, 2003, 117 Stat. 693; amended Pub. L. 109–162, §3(b)(4), title VI, §602(a), title IX, §906(e), formerly §906(f), title XI, §1135(e), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2971, 3038, 3081, 3109, renumbered §906(e), Pub. L. 109–271, §7(b)(2)(B), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 109–271, §§2(d), 7(c)(1), 8(b), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 752, 764–766; Pub. L. 113–4, title VI, §602(2), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 109.)

AMENDMENTS

2013—Pub. L. 113–4, §602(2)(A), substituted "victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking" for "child victims of domestic violence, stalking, or sexual assault" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 113–4, §602(2)(B), struck out "fleeing" before "a situation".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 113–4, §602(2)(C), added subpar. (B), redesignated former subpar. (B) as (C), and, in subpar. (C), struck out "employment counseling," after "case management,".

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 113–4, §602(2)(D)(i), which directed substitution of "$35,000,000 for each of fiscal

years 2014 through 2018" for "$40,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2011", was executed by making the substitution for "$40,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2007 through 2011" to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (g)(3)(A). Pub. L. 113–4, §602(2)(D)(ii)(I), substituted "qualified" for "eligible".

Subsec. (g)(3)(D). Pub. L. 113–4, §602(2)(D)(ii)(II), added subpar. (D).

2006—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–162, §602(a)(1)(A), (B), in introductory provisions, inserted "the Department of Housing and Urban Development, and the Department of Health and Human Services," after "Department of Justice," and ", including domestic violence and sexual assault victim service providers, domestic violence and sexual assault coalitions, other nonprofit, nongovernmental organizations, or community-based and culturally specific organizations, that have a documented history of effective work concerning domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking" after "other organizations".

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 109–162, §602(a)(1)(C), inserted ", dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking" after "domestic violence".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 109–162, §602(a)(2)(C), added par. (1). Former par. (1) redesignated (2).

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 109–162, §602(a)(2)(A), redesignated par. (1) as (2). Former par. (2) redesignated (3).

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 109–162, §602(a)(2)(A), (B), redesignated par. (2) as (3) and inserted ", dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking" after "violence" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(3)(B). Pub. L. 109–162, §602(a)(2)(D), inserted "Participation in the support services shall be voluntary. Receipt of the benefits of the housing assistance described in paragraph (2) shall not be conditioned upon the participation of the youth, adults, or their dependents in any or all of the support services offered them." at end.

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 109–162, §602(a)(3), substituted "24 months" for "18 months".

Subsec. (d)(2)(B), (C). Pub. L. 109–162, §602(a)(4), added subpar. (B) and redesignated former subpar. (B) as (C).

Subsec. (e)(2)(A). Pub. L. 109–162, §602(a)(5)(A), inserted "purpose and" before "amount".

Subsec. (e)(2)(E). Pub. L. 109–162, §602(a)(5)(B)–(D), added subpar. (E).

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 109–162, §1135(e), which directed an amendment substantially identical to that made by Pub. L. 109–162, §3(b)(4), was repealed by Pub. L. 109–271, §§2(d) and 8(b).

Pub. L. 109–162, §3(b)(4), substituted "shall prepare and submit to the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives and the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate a report that contains a compilation of the information contained in the report submitted under subsection (e) of this section not later than 1 month after the end of each even-numbered fiscal year." for "shall annually prepare and submit to the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives and the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate a report that contains a compilation of the information contained in the report submitted under subsection (e) of this section."

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 109–162, §602(a)(6)(A)–(C), substituted "$40,000,000" for "$30,000,000", "2007" for "2004", and "2011" for "2008".

Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 109–162, §602(a)(6)(D), (E), substituted "up to 5 percent" for "not more than 3 percent" and inserted "evaluation, monitoring, technical assistance," before "salaries".

Subsec. (g)(3)(C). Pub. L. 109–162, §602(a)(6)(F), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (g)(3)(C)(i). Pub. L. 109–271, §7(c)(1)(A), added cl. (i) and struck out former cl. (i) which read as follows: "A minimum of 7 percent of the total amount appropriated in any fiscal year shall be allocated to tribal organizations serving adult and youth victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking, and their dependents."

Subsec. (g)(4). Pub. L. 109–271, §7(c)(1)(B), struck out par. (4) which read as follows: "Not less than 10 percent of the total amount available under this section for each fiscal year shall be available for grants under the program authorized in section 3796gg–10 of this title. The requirements of this paragraph shall not apply to funds allocated for such program."

Pub. L. 109–162, §906(e), formerly §906(f), as renumbered by Pub. L. 109–271, §7(b)(2)(B), added par. (4).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 602(a) and 906(e) of Pub. L. 109–162 not effective until the beginning of fiscal

year 2007, see section 4 of Pub. L. 109–162, set out as a note under section 3793 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of Office on Women's Health of the Public Health Service exercised prior to Mar. 23, 2010, transferred to Office on Women's Health established under section 237a of this title, see section 3509(a)(2) of Pub. L. 111–148, set out as a note under section 237a of this title.

[1] So in original. The period probably should be a semicolon.

[2] So in original. Probably should be "into".

[3] So in original. Probably should be "section.—".

PART C—CIVIL RIGHTS FOR WOMEN

§13981. Civil rights

(a) Purpose

Pursuant to the affirmative power of Congress to enact this part under section 5 of the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution, as well as under section 8 of Article I of the Constitution, it is the purpose of this part to protect the civil rights of victims of gender motivated violence and to promote public safety, health, and activities affecting interstate commerce by establishing a Federal civil rights cause of action for victims of crimes of violence motivated by gender.

(b) Right to be free from crimes of violence

All persons within the United States shall have the right to be free from crimes of violence motivated by gender (as defined in subsection (d)).

(c) Cause of action

A person (including a person who acts under color of any statute, ordinance, regulation, custom, or usage of any State) who commits a crime of violence motivated by gender and thus deprives another of the right declared in subsection (b) shall be liable to the party injured, in an action for the recovery of compensatory and punitive damages, injunctive and declaratory relief, and such other relief as a court may deem appropriate.

(d) Definitions

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term "crime of violence motivated by gender" means a crime of violence committed because of gender or on the basis of gender, and due, at least in part, to an animus based on the victim's gender; and

(2) the term "crime of violence" means— [1]

(A) an act or series of acts that would constitute a felony against the person or that would constitute a felony against property if the conduct presents a serious risk of physical injury to another, and that would come within the meaning of State or Federal offenses described in section 16 of title 18, whether or not those acts have actually resulted in criminal charges, prosecution, or conviction and whether or not those acts were committed in the special maritime, territorial, or prison jurisdiction of the United States; and

(B) includes an act or series of acts that would constitute a felony described in subparagraph (A) but for the relationship between the person who takes such action and the individual against whom such action is taken.

(e) Limitation and procedures

(1) Limitation

Nothing in this section entitles a person to a cause of action under subsection (c) for random acts of violence unrelated to gender or for acts that cannot be demonstrated, by a preponderance of the evidence, to be motivated by gender (within the meaning of subsection (d)).

(2) No prior criminal action

Nothing in this section requires a prior criminal complaint, prosecution, or conviction to establish the elements of a cause of action under subsection (c).

(3) Concurrent jurisdiction

The Federal and State courts shall have concurrent jurisdiction over actions brought pursuant to this part.

(4) Supplemental jurisdiction

Neither section 1367 of title 28 nor subsection (c) of this section shall be construed, by reason of a claim arising under such subsection, to confer on the courts of the United States jurisdiction over any State law claim seeking the establishment of a divorce, alimony, equitable distribution of marital property, or child custody decree.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40302, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1941.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (e)(3), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle C of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1941, which enacted this part, amended section 1988 of this title and section 1445 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 13701 of this title. For complete classification of this subtitle to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 40302 of Pub. L. 103–322. Subsec. (e)(5) of section 40302 of Pub. L. 103–322 amended section 1445 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

CONSTITUTIONALITY

For constitutionality of section 40302 of Pub. L. 103–322, see Congressional Research Service, The Constitution of the United States of America: Analysis and Interpretation, Appendix 1, Acts of Congress Held Unconstitutional in Whole or in Part by the Supreme Court of the United States.

SHORT TITLE

For short title of this part as the "Civil Rights Remedies for Gender-Motivated Violence Act", see section 40301 of Pub. L. 103–322, set out as a note under section 13701 of this title.

[1] So in original. The word "means" probably should appear after "(A)" below.

PART D—EQUAL JUSTICE FOR WOMEN IN COURTS

SUBPART 1—EDUCATION AND TRAINING FOR JUDGES AND COURT PERSONNEL IN STATE COURTS

§13991. Grants authorized

The State Justice Institute may award grants for the purpose of developing, testing, presenting, and disseminating model programs to be used by States (as defined in section 10701 of this title) in training judges and court personnel in the laws of the States and by Indian tribes in training tribal

judges and court personnel in the laws of the tribes on rape, sexual assault, domestic violence, dating violence, and other crimes of violence motivated by the victim's gender. Nothing shall preclude the attendance of tribal judges and court personnel at programs funded under this section for States to train judges and court personnel on the laws of the States.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40411, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1942; Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title IV, §1406(c)(2), (d)(1), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1516.)

AMENDMENTS

2000—Pub. L. 106–386 inserted "dating violence," after "domestic violence," and "Nothing shall preclude the attendance of tribal judges and court personnel at programs funded under this section for States to train judges and court personnel on the laws of the States." at end.

SHORT TITLE

For short title of this part as the "Equal Justice for Women in the Courts Act of 1994", see section 40401 of Pub. L. 103–322, set out as a note under section 13701 of this title.

§13992. Training provided by grants

Training provided pursuant to grants made under this part may include current information, existing studies, or current data on—

(1) the nature and incidence of rape and sexual assault by strangers and nonstrangers, marital rape, and incest;

(2) the underreporting of rape, sexual assault, and child sexual abuse;

(3) the physical, psychological, and economic impact of rape and sexual assault on the victim, the costs to society, and the implications for sentencing;

(4) the psychology of sex offenders, their high rate of recidivism, and the implications for sentencing;

(5) the historical evolution of laws and attitudes on rape and sexual assault;

(6) sex stereotyping of female and male victims of rape and sexual assault, racial stereotyping of rape victims and defendants, and the impact of such stereotypes on credibility of witnesses, sentencing, and other aspects of the administration of justice;

(7) application of rape shield laws and other limits on introduction of evidence that may subject victims to improper sex stereotyping and harassment in both rape and nonrape cases, including the need for sua sponte judicial intervention in inappropriate cross-examination;

(8) the use of expert witness testimony on rape trauma syndrome, child sexual abuse accommodation syndrome, post-traumatic stress syndrome, and similar issues;

(9) the legitimate reasons why victims of rape, sexual assault, and incest may refuse to testify against a defendant;

(10) the nature and incidence of domestic violence and dating violence (as defined in section 3796gg–2 [1] of this title);

(11) the physical, psychological, and economic impact of domestic violence and dating violence on the victim, the costs to society, and the implications for court procedures and sentencing;

(12) the psychology and self-presentation of batterers and victims and the implications for court proceedings and credibility of witnesses;

(13) sex stereotyping of female and male victims of domestic violence and dating violence, myths about presence or absence of domestic violence and dating violence in certain racial, ethnic, religious, or socioeconomic groups, and their impact on the administration of justice;

(14) historical evolution of laws and attitudes on domestic violence;

(15) proper and improper interpretations of the defenses of self-defense and provocation, and the use of expert witness testimony on battered woman syndrome;

(16) the likelihood of retaliation, recidivism, and escalation of violence by batterers, and the potential impact of incarceration and other meaningful sanctions for acts of domestic violence including violations of orders of protection;

(17) economic, psychological, social and institutional reasons for victims' inability to leave the batterer, to report domestic violence or dating violence or to follow through on complaints, including the influence of lack of support from police, judges, and court personnel, and the legitimate reasons why victims of domestic violence or dating violence may refuse to testify against a defendant;

(18) the need for orders of protection, and the implications of mutual orders of protection, dual arrest policies, and mediation in domestic violence and dating violence cases;

(19) recognition of and response to gender-motivated crimes of violence other than rape, sexual assault and domestic violence, such as mass or serial murder motivated by the gender of the victims;

(20) the issues raised by domestic violence in determining custody and visitation, including how to protect the safety of the child and of a parent who is not a predominant aggressor of domestic violence, the legitimate reasons parents may report domestic violence, the ways domestic violence may relate to an abuser's desire to seek custody, and evaluating expert testimony in custody and visitation determinations involving domestic violence;

(21) the issues raised by child sexual assault in determining custody and visitation, including how to protect the safety of the child, the legitimate reasons parents may report child sexual assault, and evaluating expert testimony in custody and visitation determinations involving child sexual assault, including the current scientifically-accepted and empirically valid research on child sexual assault; [2]

(22) the extent to which addressing domestic violence and victim safety contributes to the efficient administration of justice; [3]

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40412, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1943; Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title IV, §1406(a)(1), (d)(2), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1515, 1517.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 3796gg–2 of this title, referred to in par. (10), was subsequently repealed and a new section 3796gg–2 enacted which does not define the terms "domestic violence" or "dating violence". However, such terms are defined in section 13925 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Par. (10). Pub. L. 106–386, §1406(d)(2)(A), inserted "and dating violence (as defined in section 3796gg–2 of this title)" before the semicolon.

Par. (11). Pub. L. 106–386, §1406(d)(2)(B), inserted "and dating violence" after "domestic violence".

Par. (13). Pub. L. 106–386, §1406(d)(2)(C), inserted "and dating violence" after "domestic violence" in two places.

Par. (17). Pub. L. 106–386, §1406(d)(2)(D), inserted "or dating violence" after "domestic violence" in two places.

Par. (18). Pub. L. 106–386, §1406(d)(2)(E), inserted "and dating violence" after "domestic violence".

Pars. (20) to (22). Pub. L. 106–386, §1406(a)(1), added pars. (20) to (22).

[1] See References in Text note below.

[2] So in original. Probably should be followed by "and".

[3] So in original. The semicolon probably should be a period.

§13993. Cooperation in developing programs in making grants under this part

The State Justice Institute shall ensure that model programs carried out pursuant to grants made under this part are developed with the participation of law enforcement officials, public and private

nonprofit victim advocates, including national, State, tribal, and local domestic violence and sexual assault programs and coalitions, legal experts, prosecutors, defense attorneys, and recognized experts on gender bias in the courts.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40413, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1944; Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title IV, §1406(c)(1), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1516.)

AMENDMENTS

2000—Pub. L. 106–386 inserted ", including national, State, tribal, and local domestic violence and sexual assault programs and coalitions" after "victim advocates".

§13994. Authorization of appropriations

(a) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subpart $600,000 for fiscal year 1996 and $1,500,000 for each of the fiscal years 2001 through 2005.

(b) Model programs

Of amounts appropriated under this section, the State Justice Institute shall expend not less than 40 percent on model programs regarding domestic violence and not less than 40 percent on model programs regarding rape and sexual assault.

(c) State Justice Institute

The State Justice Institute may use up to 5 percent of the funds appropriated under this section for annually compiling and broadly disseminating (including through electronic publication) information about the use of funds and about the projects funded under this section, including any evaluations of the projects and information to enable the replication and adoption of the projects.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40414, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1944; Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title IV, §1406(a)(2), (c)(3), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1516.)

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–386, §1406(a)(2), inserted "and $1,500,000 for each of the fiscal years 2001 through 2005" after "1996".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 106–386, §1406(c)(3), added subsec. (c).

SUBPART 2—EDUCATION AND TRAINING FOR JUDGES AND COURT PERSONNEL IN FEDERAL COURTS

§14001. Authorization of circuit studies; education and training grants

(a) Studies

In order to gain a better understanding of the nature and the extent of gender bias in the Federal courts, the circuit judicial councils are encouraged to conduct studies of the instances, if any, of gender bias in their respective circuits and to implement recommended reforms.

(b) Matters for examination

The studies under subsection (a) may include an examination of the effects of gender on—

(1) the treatment of litigants, witnesses, attorneys, jurors, and judges in the courts, including before magistrate and bankruptcy judges;

(2) the interpretation and application of the law, both civil and criminal;

(3) treatment of defendants in criminal cases;

(4) treatment of victims of violent crimes in judicial proceedings;

(5) sentencing;
(6) sentencing alternatives and the nature of supervision of probation and parole;
(7) appointments to committees of the Judicial Conference and the courts;
(8) case management and court sponsored alternative dispute resolution programs;
(9) the selection, retention, promotion, and treatment of employees;
(10) appointment of arbitrators, experts, and special masters;
(11) the admissibility of the victim's past sexual history in civil and criminal cases; and
(12) the aspects of the topics listed in section 13992 of this title that pertain to issues within the jurisdiction of the Federal courts.

(c) Clearinghouse

The Administrative Office of the United States Courts shall act as a clearinghouse to disseminate any reports and materials issued by the gender bias task forces under subsection (a) and to respond to requests for such reports and materials. The gender bias task forces shall provide the Administrative Office of the Courts of the United States [1] with their reports and related material.

(d) Continuing education and training programs

The Federal Judicial Center, in carrying out section 620(b)(3) of title 28, shall include in the educational programs it prepares, including the training programs for newly appointed judges, information on the aspects of the topics listed in section 13992 of this title that pertain to issues within the jurisdiction of the Federal courts, and shall prepare materials necessary to implement this subsection.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40421, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1944; Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title IV, §1406(b)(1), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1516.)

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 106–386 amended heading and text of subsec. (d) generally, substituting provisions relating to continuing education and training programs for provisions relating to model programs.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "Administrative Office of the United States Courts".

§14002. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated—
(1) to the Salaries and Expenses Account of the Courts of Appeals, District Courts, and other Judicial Services to carry out section 14001(a) of this title $500,000 for fiscal year 1996;
(2) to the Federal Judicial Center to carry out section 14001(d) of this title $100,000 for fiscal year 1996 and $500,000 for each of the fiscal years 2001 through 2005; and
(3) to the Administrative Office of the United States Courts to carry out section 14001(c) of this title $100,000 for fiscal year 1996.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40422, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1945; Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title IV, §1406(b)(2), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1516.)

AMENDMENTS

2000—Par. (2). Pub. L. 106–386 inserted "and $500,000 for each of the fiscal years 2001 through 2005" after "1996".

PART E—VIOLENCE AGAINST WOMEN ACT IMPROVEMENTS

§14011. Payment of cost of testing for sexually transmitted diseases

(a) Omitted

(b) Limited testing of defendants

(1) Court order

The victim of an offense of the type referred to in subsection (a) [1] may obtain an order in the district court of the United States for the district in which charges are brought against the defendant charged with the offense, after notice to the defendant and an opportunity to be heard, requiring that the defendant be tested for the presence of the etiologic agent for acquired immune deficiency syndrome, and that the results of the test be communicated to the victim and the defendant. Any test result of the defendant given to the victim or the defendant must be accompanied by appropriate counseling.

(2) Showing required

To obtain an order under paragraph (1), the victim must demonstrate that—

(A) the defendant has been charged with the offense in a State or Federal court, and if the defendant has been arrested without a warrant, a probable cause determination has been made;

(B) the test for the etiologic agent for acquired immune deficiency syndrome is requested by the victim after appropriate counseling; and

(C) the test would provide information necessary for the health of the victim of the alleged offense and the court determines that the alleged conduct of the defendant created a risk of transmission, as determined by the Centers for Disease Control, of the etiologic agent for acquired immune deficiency syndrome to the victim.

(3) Follow-up testing

The court may order follow-up tests and counseling under paragraph (1) if the initial test was negative. Such follow-up tests and counseling shall be performed at the request of the victim on dates that occur six months and twelve months following the initial test.

(4) Termination of testing requirements

An order for follow-up testing under paragraph (3) shall be terminated if the person obtains an acquittal on, or dismissal of, all charges of the type referred to in subsection (a).[1]

(5) Confidentiality of test

The results of any test ordered under this subsection shall be disclosed only to the victim or, where the court deems appropriate, to the parent or legal guardian of the victim, and to the person tested. The victim may disclose the test results only to any medical professional, counselor, family member or sexual partner(s) the victim may have had since the attack. Any such individual to whom the test results are disclosed by the victim shall maintain the confidentiality of such information.

(6) Disclosure of test results

The court shall issue an order to prohibit the disclosure by the victim of the results of any test performed under this subsection to anyone other than those mentioned in paragraph (5). The contents of the court proceedings and test results pursuant to this section shall be sealed. The results of such test performed on the defendant under this section shall not be used as evidence in any criminal trial.

(7) Contempt for disclosure

Any person who discloses the results of a test in violation of this subsection may be held in contempt of court.

(c) Penalties for intentional transmission of HIV

Not later than 6 months after September 13, 1994, the United States Sentencing Commission shall conduct a study and prepare and submit to the committees [2] on the Judiciary of the Senate and the House of Representatives a report concerning recommendations for the revision of sentencing

guidelines that relate to offenses in which an HIV infected individual engages in sexual activity if the individual knows that he or she is infected with HIV and intends, through such sexual activity, to expose another to HIV.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40503, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1946; Pub. L. 104–294, title VI, §604(b)(1), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3506.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 40503 of Pub. L. 103–322. Subsec. (a) of section 40503 of Pub. L. 103–322 amended section 10607 of this title. Subsec. (c) of section 40503 of Pub. L. 103–322 also enacted provisions listed in a table relating to sentencing guidelines set out under section 994 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 104–294 substituted "paragraph (1)" for "paragraph (b)(1)".

CHANGE OF NAME

Centers for Disease Control changed to Centers for Disease Control and Prevention by Pub. L. 102–531, title III, §312, Oct. 27, 1992, 106 Stat. 3504.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–294 effective Sept. 13, 1994, see section 604(d) of Pub. L. 104–294, set out as a note under section 13 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

[1] See Codification note below.

[2] So in original. Probably should be capitalized.

§14012. National baseline study on campus sexual assault

(a) Study

The Attorney General, in consultation with the Secretary of Education, shall provide for a national baseline study to examine the scope of the problem of campus sexual assaults and the effectiveness of institutional and legal policies in addressing such crimes and protecting victims. The Attorney General may utilize the Bureau of Justice Statistics, the National Institute of Justice, and the Office for Victims of Crime in carrying out this section.

(b) Report

Based on the study required by subsection (a) and data collected under the Student Right-To-Know and Campus Security Act (20 U.S.C. 1001 note; Public Law 101–542) and amendments made by that Act, the Attorney General shall prepare a report including an analysis of—

(1) the number of reported allegations and estimated number of unreported allegations of campus sexual assaults, and to whom the allegations are reported (including authorities of the educational institution, sexual assault victim service entities, and local criminal authorities);

(2) the number of campus sexual assault allegations reported to authorities of educational institutions which are reported to criminal authorities;

(3) the number of campus sexual assault allegations that result in criminal prosecution in comparison with the number of non-campus sexual assault allegations that result in criminal prosecution;

(4) Federal and State laws or regulations pertaining specifically to campus sexual assaults;

(5) the adequacy of policies and practices of educational institutions in addressing campus sexual assaults and protecting victims, including consideration of—

(A) the security measures in effect at educational institutions, such as utilization of campus police and security guards, control over access to grounds and buildings, supervision of student

activities and student living arrangements, control over the consumption of alcohol by students, lighting, and the availability of escort services;

(B) the articulation and communication to students of the institution's policies concerning sexual assaults;

(C) policies and practices that may prevent or discourage the reporting of campus sexual assaults to local criminal authorities, or that may otherwise obstruct justice or interfere with the prosecution of perpetrators of campus sexual assaults;

(D) the nature and availability of victim services for victims of campus sexual assaults;

(E) the ability of educational institutions' disciplinary processes to address allegations of sexual assault adequately and fairly;

(F) measures that are taken to ensure that victims are free of unwanted contact with alleged assailants, and disciplinary sanctions that are imposed when a sexual assault is determined to have occurred; and

(G) the grounds on which educational institutions are subject to lawsuits based on campus sexual assaults, the resolution of these cases, and measures that can be taken to avoid the likelihood of lawsuits and civil liability;

(6) in conjunction with the report produced by the Department of Education in coordination with institutions of education under the Student Right-To-Know and Campus Security Act (20 U.S.C. 1001 note; Public Law 101–542) and amendments made by that Act, an assessment of the policies and practices of educational institutions that are of greatest effectiveness in addressing campus sexual assaults and protecting victims, including policies and practices relating to the particular issues described in paragraph (5); and

(7) any recommendations the Attorney General may have for reforms to address campus sexual assaults and protect victims more effectively, and any other matters that the Attorney General deems relevant to the subject of the study and report required by this section.

(c) Submission of report

The report required by subsection (b) shall be submitted to the Congress no later than September 1, 1996.

(d) "Campus sexual assaults" defined

For purposes of this section, "campus sexual assaults" includes sexual assaults occurring at institutions of postsecondary education and sexual assaults committed against or by students or employees of such institutions.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out the study required by this section—$200,000 for fiscal year 1996.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40506, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1948.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Student Right-To-Know and Campus Security Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 101–542, Nov. 8, 1990, 104 Stat. 2381, as amended, which amended sections 1085, 1092, 1094, and 1232g of Title 20, Education, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 1001 and 1092 of Title 20. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1990 Amendments note set out under section 1001 of Title 20 and Tables.

§14013. Report on battered women's syndrome

(a) Report

Not less than 1 year after September 13, 1994, the Attorney General and the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall transmit to the House Committee on Energy and Commerce, the Senate Committee on Labor and Human Resources, and the Committees on the Judiciary of the Senate and

the House of Representatives a report on the medical and psychological basis of "battered women's syndrome" and on the extent to which evidence of the syndrome has been considered in criminal trials.

(b) Components

The report under subsection (a) shall include—

(1) medical and psychological testimony on the validity of battered women's syndrome as a psychological condition;

(2) a compilation of State, tribal, and Federal court cases in which evidence of battered women's syndrome was offered in criminal trials; and

(3) an assessment by State, tribal, and Federal judges, prosecutors, and defense attorneys of the effects that evidence of battered women's syndrome may have in criminal trials.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40507, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1949.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104–14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress. Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives, and jurisdiction over matters relating to securities and exchanges and insurance generally transferred to Committee on Financial Services of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 5, One Hundred Seventh Congress, Jan. 3, 2001.

Committee on Labor and Human Resources of Senate changed to Committee on Health, Education, Labor, and Pensions of Senate by Senate Resolution No. 20, One Hundred Sixth Congress, Jan. 19, 1999.

§14014. Report on confidentiality of addresses for victims of domestic violence

(a) Report

The Attorney General shall conduct a study of the means by which abusive spouses may obtain information concerning the addresses or locations of estranged or former spouses, notwithstanding the desire of the victims to have such information withheld to avoid further exposure to abuse. Based on the study, the Attorney General shall transmit a report to Congress including—

(1) the findings of the study concerning the means by which information concerning the addresses or locations of abused spouses may be obtained by abusers; and

(2) analysis of the feasibility of creating effective means of protecting the confidentiality of information concerning the addresses and locations of abused spouses to protect such persons from exposure to further abuse while preserving access to such information for legitimate purposes.

(b) Use of components

The Attorney General may use the National Institute of Justice and the Office for Victims of Crime in carrying out this section.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40508, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1950.)

§14015. Report on recordkeeping relating to domestic violence

Not later than 1 year after September 13, 1994, the Attorney General shall complete a study of, and shall submit to Congress a report and recommendations on, problems of recordkeeping of criminal complaints involving domestic violence. The study and report shall examine—

(1) the efforts that have been made by the Department of Justice, including the Federal Bureau of Investigation, to collect statistics on domestic violence; and

(2) the feasibility of requiring that the relationship between an offender and victim be reported in Federal records of crimes of aggravated assault, rape, and other violent crimes.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40509, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1950.)

§14016. Enforcement of statutory rape laws

(a) Sense of Senate

It is the sense of the Senate that States and local jurisdictions should aggressively enforce statutory rape laws.

(b) Justice Department program on statutory rape

Not later than January 1, 1997, the Attorney General shall establish and implement a program that—

(1) studies the linkage between statutory rape and teenage pregnancy, particularly by predatory older men committing repeat offenses; and

(2) educates State and local criminal law enforcement officials on the prevention and prosecution of statutory rape, focusing in particular on the commission of statutory rape by predatory older men committing repeat offenses, and any links to teenage pregnancy.

(c) Violence against women initiative

The Attorney General shall ensure that the Department of Justice's Violence Against Women initiative addresses the issue of statutory rape, particularly the commission of statutory rape by predatory older men committing repeat offenses.

(Pub. L. 104–193, title IX, §906, Aug. 22, 1996, 110 Stat. 2349.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Personal Responsibility and Work Opportunity Reconciliation Act of 1996, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

PART F—NATIONAL STALKER AND DOMESTIC VIOLENCE REDUCTION

§14031. Grant program

(a) In general

The Attorney General is authorized to provide grants to States and units of local government to improve and implement processes for entering data regarding stalking and domestic violence into local, State, and national crime information databases.

(b) Eligibility

To be eligible to receive a grant under subsection (a), a State or unit of local government shall certify that it has or intends to establish a program that enters into the National Crime Information Center records of—

(1) warrants for the arrest of persons violating protection orders intended to protect victims from stalking or domestic violence;

(2) arrests or convictions of persons violating protection [1] or domestic violence; and

(3) protection orders for the protection of persons from stalking or domestic violence.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40602, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1951; Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title I, §1106(b), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1497.)

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–386 inserted "and implement" after "improve".

[1] *So in original. Probably should be followed by "orders intended to protect victims from stalking".*

§14032. Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part $3,000,000 for fiscal years 2014 through 2018.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40603, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1951; Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title I, §1106(a), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1497; Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §109, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2984; Pub. L. 113–4, title XI, §1103, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 135.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle F of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1950, which enacted this part, amended section 534 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 534 of Title 28.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Pub. L. 113–4 substituted "$3,000,000 for fiscal years 2014 through 2018." for "$3,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2011."

2006—Pub. L. 109–162, §109(2), which directed substitution of "2011" for "2006", was executed by substituting "2011" for "2005" to reflect the probable intent of Congress, because "2006" does not appear in text.

Pub. L. 109–162, §109(1), substituted "2007" for "2001".

2000—Pub. L. 106–386 reenacted section catchline without change and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part—

"(1) $1,500,000 for fiscal year 1996;

"(2) $1,750,000 for fiscal year 1997; and

"(3) $2,750,000 for fiscal year 1998."

§14033. Application requirements

An application for a grant under this part shall be submitted in such form and manner, and contain such information, as the Attorney General may prescribe. In addition, applications shall include documentation showing—

(1) the need for grant funds and that State or local funding, as the case may be, does not already cover these operations;

(2) intended use of the grant funds, including a plan of action to increase record input; and

(3) an estimate of expected results from the use of the grant funds.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40604, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1951.)

§14034. Disbursement

Not later than 90 days after the receipt of an application under this part, the Attorney General shall either provide grant funds or shall inform the applicant why grant funds are not being provided.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40605, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1952.)

§14035. Technical assistance, training, and evaluations

The Attorney General may provide technical assistance and training in furtherance of the purposes of this part, and may provide for the evaluation of programs that receive funds under this part, in

addition to any evaluation requirements that the Attorney General may prescribe for grantees. The technical assistance, training, and evaluations authorized by this section may be carried out directly by the Attorney General, or through contracts or other arrangements with other entities.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40606, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1952.)

§14036. Training programs for judges

The State Justice Institute, after consultation with nationally recognized nonprofit organizations with expertise in stalking and domestic violence cases, shall conduct training programs for State (as defined in section 10701 [1] of this title) and Indian tribal judges to ensure that a judge issuing an order in a stalking or domestic violence case has all available criminal history and other information, whether from State or Federal sources.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40607, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1952.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 10701 of this title, referred to in text, was in the original "section 202 of the State Justice Institute Authorization Act of 1984", and was translated as reading "section 202 of the State Justice Institute Act of 1984", which is section 202 of Pub. L. 98–620, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

[1] See References in Text note below.

§14037. Recommendations on intrastate communication

The State Justice Institute, after consultation with nationally recognized nonprofit associations with expertise in data sharing among criminal justice agencies and familiarity with the issues raised in stalking and domestic violence cases, shall recommend proposals regarding how State courts may increase intrastate communication between civil and criminal courts.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40608, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1952.)

§14038. Inclusion in National Incident-Based Reporting System

Not later than 2 years after September 13, 1994, the Attorney General, in accordance with the States, shall compile data regarding domestic violence and intimidation (including stalking) as part of the National Incident-Based Reporting System (NIBRS).

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40609, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1952.)

§14039. Report to Congress

Each even-numbered fiscal year, the Attorney General shall submit to the Congress a biennial report that provides information concerning the incidence of stalking and domestic violence, and evaluates the effectiveness of State antistalking efforts and legislation.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40610, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1952; Pub. L. 109–162, §3(b)(1), title XI, §1135(a), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2971, 3108; Pub. L. 109–271, §§2(d), 8(b), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 752, 766.)

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–162, §1135(a), which directed an amendment substantially identical to that directed by Pub. L. 109–162, §3(b)(1), was repealed by Pub. L. 109–271.

Pub. L. 109–162, §3(b)(1), which directed the substitution of "Each even-numbered fiscal year, the Attorney General shall submit to the Congress a biennial report that provides" for "The Attorney General shall submit to the Congress an annual report, beginning 1 year after September 13, 1994, that provides", was

executed by making the substitution for "The Attorney General shall submit to the Congress an annual report, beginning one year after September 13, 1994, that provides", to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

REPORT RELATING TO STALKING LAWS

Pub. L. 105–119, title I, §115(b)(2), Nov. 26, 1997, 111 Stat. 2467, provided that: "The Attorney General shall include in an annual report under section 40610 of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 (42 U.S.C. 14039) information concerning existing or proposed State laws and penalties for stalking crimes against children."

§14040. Definitions

As used in this part—

(1) the term "national crime information databases" refers to the National Crime Information Center and its incorporated criminal history databases, including the Interstate Identification Index; and

(2) the term "protection order" includes an injunction or any other order issued for the purpose of preventing violent or threatening acts or harassment against, or contact or communication with or physical proximity to, another person, including temporary and final orders issued by civil or criminal courts (other than support or child custody orders) whether obtained by filing an independent action or as a pendente lite order in another proceeding so long as any civil order was issued in response to a complaint, petition, or motion filed by or on behalf of a person seeking protection.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40611, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1952.)

PART G—ENHANCED TRAINING AND SERVICES TO END ABUSE LATER IN LIFE

CODIFICATION

This part was, in the original, subtitle H of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, as added by Pub. L. 106–386, and has been redesignated as part G of this subchapter for purposes of codification.

AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 113–4, title II, §204(a), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 82, substituted "ENHANCED TRAINING AND SERVICES TO END ABUSE LATER IN LIFE" for "ELDER ABUSE, NEGLECT, AND EXPLOITATION, INCLUDING DOMESTIC VIOLENCE AND SEXUAL ASSAULT AGAINST OLDER OR DISABLED INDIVIDUALS" in heading.

§14041. Enhanced training and services to end abuse in later life

(a) Definitions

In this section—

(1) the term "exploitation" has the meaning given the term in section 1397j of this title;

(2) the term "later life", relating to an individual, means the individual is 50 years of age or older; and

(3) the term "neglect" means the failure of a caregiver or fiduciary to provide the goods or services that are necessary to maintain the health or safety of an individual in later life.

(b) Grant program

(1) Grants authorized

The Attorney General may make grants to eligible entities to carry out the activities described in paragraph (2).

(2) Mandatory and permissible activities

(A) Mandatory activities

An eligible entity receiving a grant under this section shall use the funds received under the grant to—

(i) provide training programs to assist law enforcement agencies, prosecutors, agencies of States or units of local government, population specific organizations, victim service providers, victim advocates, and relevant officers in Federal, tribal, State, territorial, and local courts in recognizing and addressing instances of elder abuse;

(ii) provide or enhance services for victims of abuse in later life, including domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, exploitation, and neglect;

(iii) establish or support multidisciplinary collaborative community responses to victims of abuse in later life, including domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, exploitation, and neglect; and

(iv) conduct cross-training for law enforcement agencies, prosecutors, agencies of States or units of local government, attorneys, health care providers, population specific organizations, faith-based advocates, victim service providers, and courts to better serve victims of abuse in later life, including domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, exploitation, and neglect.

(B) Permissible activities

An eligible entity receiving a grant under this section may use the funds received under the grant to—

(i) provide training programs to assist attorneys, health care providers, faith-based leaders, or other community-based organizations in recognizing and addressing instances of abuse in later life, including domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, exploitation, and neglect; or

(ii) conduct outreach activities and awareness campaigns to ensure that victims of abuse in later life, including domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, exploitation, and neglect receive appropriate assistance.

(C) Waiver

The Attorney General may waive 1 or more of the activities described in subparagraph (A) upon making a determination that the activity would duplicate services available in the community.

(D) Limitation

An eligible entity receiving a grant under this section may use not more than 10 percent of the total funds received under the grant for an activity described in subparagraph (B)(ii).

(3) Eligible entities

An entity shall be eligible to receive a grant under this section if—

(A) the entity is—

(i) a State;

(ii) a unit of local government;

(iii) a tribal government or tribal organization;

(iv) a population specific organization with demonstrated experience in assisting individuals over 50 years of age;

(v) a victim service provider with demonstrated experience in addressing domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking; or

(vi) a State, tribal, or territorial domestic violence or sexual assault coalition; and

(B) the entity demonstrates that it is part of a multidisciplinary partnership that includes, at a minimum—

(i) a law enforcement agency;

(ii) a prosecutor's office;
(iii) a victim service provider; and
(iv) a nonprofit program or government agency with demonstrated experience in assisting individuals in later life;

(4) Underserved populations

In making grants under this section, the Attorney General shall give priority to proposals providing services to culturally specific and underserved populations.

(5) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $9,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40801, as added Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title II, §1209(a), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1508; amended Pub. L. 113–4, title II, §204(a), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 82.)

AMENDMENTS

2013—Pub. L. 113–4 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section defined terms for this part.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

§§14041a, 14041b. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Sections 14041a and 14041b were omitted in the general amendment of this part by Pub. L. 113–4, title II, §204(a), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 82.

Section 14041a, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40802, as added Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title II, §1209(a), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1509; amended Pub. L. 109–162, title II, §205(a), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3002, related to enhanced training and services to end violence against and abuse of women later in life.

Section 14041b, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40803, as added Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title II, §1209(a), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1509; amended Pub. L. 109–162, title II, §205(b), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3002, authorized appropriations for fiscal years 2007 through 2011.

PART H—DOMESTIC VIOLENCE TASK FORCE

CODIFICATION

This part was, in the original, subtitle I of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, as added by Pub. L. 106–386, and has been redesignated as part H of this subchapter for purposes of codification.

§14042. Task force

(a) Establish

The Attorney General, in consultation with national nonprofit, nongovernmental organizations whose primary expertise is in domestic violence, shall establish a task force to coordinate research on domestic violence and to report to Congress on any overlapping or duplication of efforts on domestic violence issues. The task force shall be comprised of representatives from all Federal agencies that fund such research.

(b) Uses of funds

Funds appropriated under this section shall be used to—

(1) develop a coordinated strategy to strengthen research focused on domestic violence education, prevention, and intervention strategies;

(2) track and report all Federal research and expenditures on domestic violence; and

(3) identify gaps and duplication of efforts in domestic violence research and governmental expenditures on domestic violence issues.

(c) Report

The Task Force shall report to Congress annually on its work under subsection (b).

(d) Definition

For purposes of this section, the term "domestic violence" has the meaning given such term by section 3796gg–2 [1] of this title.

(e) Authorization of Appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $500,000 for each of fiscal years 2001 through 2004.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §40901, as added Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title IV, §1407, Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1517.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 3796gg–2 of this title, referred to in subsec. (d), was subsequently repealed and a new section 3796gg–2 enacted which does not define "domestic violence". However, such term is defined in section 13925 of this title.

STUDY OF STATE LAWS REGARDING INSURANCE DISCRIMINATION AGAINST VICTIMS OF VIOLENCE AGAINST WOMEN

Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title II, §1206, Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1507, directed the Attorney General to conduct a national study to identify State laws that address insurance discrimination against victims of domestic violence and sexual assault and to submit to Congress a report and recommendations based on that study not later than 1 year after Oct. 28, 2000.

STUDY OF WORKPLACE EFFECTS FROM VIOLENCE AGAINST WOMEN

Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title II, §1207, Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1507, directed the Attorney General to conduct a national survey of programs to assist employers and employees on appropriate responses in the workplace to victims of domestic violence, stalking, or sexual assault, and not later than 18 months after Oct. 28, 2000, to submit to Congress a report and recommendations based on that survey.

STUDY OF UNEMPLOYMENT COMPENSATION FOR VICTIMS OF VIOLENCE AGAINST WOMEN

Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title II, §1208, Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1508, directed the Secretary of Labor, in consultation with the Attorney General, to conduct a national study to identify the impact of State unemployment compensation laws on victims of domestic violence when the victim's separation from employment is a direct result of the domestic violence and to submit to Congress a report and recommendations based on that study not later than 1 year after Oct. 28, 2000.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

PART I—VIOLENCE AGAINST WOMEN ACT COURT TRAINING AND IMPROVEMENTS

CODIFICATION

This part was, in the original, subtitle J of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, as added by Pub. L. 109–162, and has been redesignated as part I of this subchapter for purposes of codification.

§§14043 to 14043a–3. Repealed. Pub. L. 113–4, title I, §104(b), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 76

Section 14043, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41002, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §105(a), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2979, related to purpose of this part.

Section 14043a, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41003, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §105(a), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2980, related to grant requirements.

Section 14043a–1, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41004, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §105(a), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2980, related to national education curricula.

Section 14043a–2, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41005, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §105(a), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2981, related to tribal curricula.

Section 14043a—3, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41006, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §105(a), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2981; amended Pub. L. 109–271, §7(c)(2), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 765, authorized appropriations for fiscal years 2007 to 2011.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as an Effective Date of 2013 Amendment note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

PART J—PRIVACY PROTECTIONS FOR VICTIMS OF DOMESTIC VIOLENCE, DATING VIOLENCE, SEXUAL VIOLENCE, AND STALKING

CODIFICATION

This part was, in the original, subtitle K of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, as added by Pub. L. 109–162, and has been redesignated as part J of this subchapter for purposes of codification.

§14043b. Grants to protect the privacy and confidentiality of victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking

The Attorney General, through the Director of the Office on Violence Against Women, may award grants under this part to States, Indian tribes, territories, or local agencies or nonprofit, nongovernmental organizations to ensure that personally identifying information of adult, youth, and child victims of domestic violence, sexual violence, stalking, and dating violence shall not be released or disclosed to the detriment of such victimized persons.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41101, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §107, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2983.)

§14043b–1. Purpose areas

Grants made under this part may be used—

(1) to develop or improve protocols, procedures, and policies for the purpose of preventing the release of personally identifying information of victims (such as developing alternative identifiers);

(2) to defray the costs of modifying or improving existing databases, registries, and victim notification systems to ensure that personally identifying information of victims is protected from release, unauthorized information sharing and disclosure;

(3) to develop confidential opt out systems that will enable victims of violence to make a single request to keep personally identifying information out of multiple databases, victim notification systems, and registries; or

(4) to develop safe uses of technology (such as notice requirements regarding electronic

surveillance by government entities), to protect against abuses of technology (such as electronic or GPS stalking), or providing training for law enforcement on high tech electronic crimes of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41102, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §107, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2983.)

§14043b–2. Eligible entities

Entities eligible for grants under this part include—

(1) jurisdictions or agencies within jurisdictions having authority or responsibility for developing or maintaining public databases, registries or victim notification systems;

(2) nonprofit nongovernmental victim advocacy organizations having expertise regarding confidentiality, privacy, and information technology and how these issues are likely to impact the safety of victims;

(3) States or State agencies;

(4) local governments or agencies;

(5) Indian tribal governments or tribal organizations;

(6) territorial governments, agencies, or organizations; or

(7) nonprofit nongovernmental victim advocacy organizations, including statewide domestic violence and sexual assault coalitions.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41103, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §107, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2983.)

§14043b–3. Grant conditions

Applicants described in paragraph (1) and paragraphs (3) through (6) shall demonstrate that they have entered into a significant partnership with a State, tribal, territorial, or local victim service or advocacy organization or condition in order to develop safe, confidential, and effective protocols, procedures, policies, and systems for protecting personally identifying information of victims.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41104, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §107, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2984.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Paragraph (1) and paragraphs (3) through (6), referred to in text, probably mean paragraphs (1) and (3) through (6) of section 14043b–2 of this title.

§14043b–4. Authorization of appropriations

(a) In general

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2011.

(b) Tribal allocation

Of the amount made available under this section in each fiscal year, 10 percent shall be used for grants to Indian tribes for programs that assist victims of domestic violence, dating violence, stalking, and sexual assault.

(c) Technical assistance and training

Of the amount made available under this section in each fiscal year, not less than 5 percent shall be used for grants to organizations that have expertise in confidentiality, privacy, and technology

issues impacting victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking to provide technical assistance and training to grantees and non-grantees on how to improve safety, privacy, confidentiality, and technology to protect victimized persons.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41105, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §107, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2984.)

PART K—SERVICES, EDUCATION, PROTECTION AND JUSTICE FOR YOUNG VICTIMS OF VIOLENCE

CODIFICATION

This part was, in the original, subtitle L of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, as added by Pub. L. 109–162, and has been redesignated as part K of this subchapter for purposes of codification.

§14043c. Creating hope through outreach, options, services, and education for children and youth ("CHOOSE Children & Youth")

(a) Grants authorized

The Attorney General, working in collaboration with the Secretary of Health and Human Services and the Secretary of Education, shall award grants to enhance the safety of youth and children who are victims of, or exposed to, domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, or sex trafficking and prevent future violence.

(b) Program purposes

Funds provided under this section may be used for the following program purpose areas:

(1) Services to advocate for and respond to youth

To develop, expand, and strengthen victim-centered interventions and services that target youth who are victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, and sex trafficking. Services may include victim services, counseling, advocacy, mentoring, educational support, transportation, legal assistance in civil, criminal and administrative matters, such as family law cases, housing cases, child welfare proceedings, campus administrative proceedings, and civil protection order proceedings, population-specific services, and other activities that support youth in finding safety, stability, and justice and in addressing the emotional, cognitive, and physical effects of trauma. Funds may be used to—

(A) assess and analyze currently available services for youth victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, and sex trafficking, determining relevant barriers to such services in a particular locality, and developing a community protocol to address such problems collaboratively;

(B) develop and implement policies, practices, and procedures to effectively respond to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, or sex trafficking against youth; or

(C) provide technical assistance and training to enhance the ability of school personnel, victim service providers, child protective service workers, staff of law enforcement agencies, prosecutors, court personnel, individuals who work in after school programs, medical personnel, social workers, mental health personnel, and workers in other programs that serve children and youth to improve their ability to appropriately respond to the needs of children and youth who are victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, and sex trafficking, and to properly refer such children, youth, and their families to appropriate services.

(2) Supporting youth through education and protection

To enable middle schools, high schools, and institutions of higher education to—

(A) provide training to school personnel, including healthcare providers and security

personnel, on the needs of students who are victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, or sex trafficking;

(B) develop and implement prevention and intervention policies in middle and high schools, including appropriate responses to, and identification and referral procedures for, students who are experiencing or perpetrating domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, or sex trafficking, and procedures for handling the requirements of court protective orders issued to or against students;

(C) provide support services for student victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, or sex trafficking, such as a resource person who is either on-site or on-call;

(D) implement developmentally appropriate educational programming for students regarding domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, and sex trafficking and the impact of such violence on youth; or

(E) develop strategies to increase identification, support, referrals, and prevention programming for youth who are at high risk of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, or sex trafficking.

(c) Eligible applicants

(1) In general

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, an entity shall be—

(A) a victim service provider, tribal nonprofit, or population-specific or community-based organization with a demonstrated history of effective work addressing the needs of youth who are, including runaway or homeless youth affected by, victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, or sex trafficking;

(B) a victim service provider that is partnered with an entity that has a demonstrated history of effective work addressing the needs of youth; or

(C) a public, charter, tribal, or nationally accredited private middle or high school, a school administered by the Department of Defense under section 2164 of title 10 or section 921 of title 20, a group of schools, a school district, or an institution of higher education.

(2) Partnerships

(A) Education

To be eligible to receive a grant for the purposes described in subsection (b)(2), an entity described in paragraph (1) shall be partnered with a public, charter, tribal, or nationally accredited private middle or high school, a school administered by the Department of Defense under section 2164 of title 10 or section 921 of title 20, a group of schools, a school district, or an institution of higher education.

(B) Other partnerships

All applicants under this section are encouraged to work in partnership with organizations and agencies that work with the relevant population. Such entities may include—

(i) a State, tribe, unit of local government, or territory;

(ii) a population specific or community-based organization;

(iii) batterer intervention programs or sex offender treatment programs with specialized knowledge and experience working with youth offenders; or

(iv) any other agencies or nonprofit, nongovernmental organizations with the capacity to provide effective assistance to the adult, youth, and child victims served by the partnership.

(d) Grantee requirements

Applicants for grants under this section shall establish and implement policies, practices, and procedures that—

(1) require and include appropriate referral systems for child and youth victims;

(2) protect the confidentiality and privacy of child and youth victim information, particularly in the context of parental or third party involvement and consent, mandatory reporting duties, and working with other service providers all with priority on victim safety and autonomy; and

(3) ensure that all individuals providing intervention or prevention programming to children or youth through a program funded under this section have completed, or will complete, sufficient training in connection with domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, and sex trafficking.

(e) Definitions and grant conditions

In this section, the definitions and grant conditions provided for in section 13925 of this title shall apply.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section, $15,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018.

(g) Allotment

(1) In general

Not less than 50 percent of the total amount appropriated under this section for each fiscal year shall be used for the purposes described in subsection (b)(1).

(2) Indian tribes

Not less than 10 percent of the total amount appropriated under this section for each fiscal year shall be made available for grants under the program authorized by section 3796gg–10 of this title. The requirements of this section shall not apply to funds allocated under this paragraph.

(h) Priority

The Attorney General shall prioritize grant applications under this section that coordinate with prevention programs in the community.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41201, as added Pub. L. 113–4, title III, §302, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 84.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 14043c, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41201, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title III, §303, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3004, related to services to advocate for and respond to youth, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 113–4, title III, §302, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 84.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as an Effective Date of 2013 Amendment note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

§§14043c–1 to 14043c–3. Repealed. Pub. L. 113–4, title III, §302, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 84

Section 14043c–1, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41202, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title III, §303, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3005, related to access to justice for youth.

Section 14043c–2, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41203, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title III, §303, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3008, related to grants for training and collaboration on the intersection between domestic violence and child maltreatment.

Section 14043c–3, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41204, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title III, §303, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3010; amended Pub. L. 109–271, §4(a), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 758, related to grants to combat domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking in middle and high schools.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as an Effective Date of 2013 Amendment note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

PART L—STRENGTHENING AMERICA'S FAMILIES BY PREVENTING VIOLENCE AGAINST WOMEN AND CHILDREN

CODIFICATION

This part was, in the original, subtitle M of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, as added by Pub. L. 109–162, and has been redesignated as part L of this subchapter for purposes of codification.

§14043d. Findings

Congress finds that—

(1) the former United States Advisory Board on Child Abuse suggests that domestic violence may be the single major precursor to child abuse and neglect fatalities in this country;

(2) studies suggest that as many as 10,000,000 children witness domestic violence every year;

(3) studies suggest that among children and teenagers, recent exposure to violence in the home was a significant factor in predicting a child's violent behavior;

(4) a study by the Nurse-Family Partnership found that children whose parents did not participate in home visitation programs that provided coaching in parenting skills, advice and support, were almost 5 times more likely to be abused in their first 2 years of life;

(5) a child's exposure to domestic violence seems to pose the greatest independent risk for being the victim of any act of partner violence as an adult;

(6) children exposed to domestic violence are more likely to believe that using violence is an effective means of getting one's needs met and managing conflict in close relationships;

(7) children exposed to abusive parenting, harsh or erratic discipline, or domestic violence are at increased risk for juvenile crime; and

(8) in a national survey of more than 6,000 American families, 50 percent of men who frequently assaulted their wives also frequently abused their children.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41301, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title IV, §401, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3017.)

§14043d–1. Purpose

The purpose of this part is to—

(1) prevent crimes involving violence against women, children, and youth;

(2) increase the resources and services available to prevent violence against women, children, and youth;

(3) reduce the impact of exposure to violence in the lives of children and youth so that the intergenerational cycle of violence is interrupted;

(4) develop and implement education and services programs to prevent children in vulnerable families from becoming victims or perpetrators of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking;

(5) promote programs to ensure that children and youth receive the assistance they need to end the cycle of violence and develop mutually respectful, nonviolent relationships; and

(6) encourage collaboration among community-based organizations and governmental agencies serving children and youth, providers of health and mental health services and providers of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking victim services to prevent violence against women and children.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41302, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title IV, §401, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3018.)

§14043d–2. Saving money and reducing tragedies through prevention (SMART Prevention)

(a) Grants authorized

The Attorney General, in consultation with the Secretary of Health and Human Services and the Secretary of Education, is authorized to award grants for the purpose of preventing domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking by taking a comprehensive approach that focuses on youth, children exposed to violence, and men as leaders and influencers of social norms.

(b) Use of funds

Funds provided under this section may be used for the following purposes:

(1) Teen dating violence awareness and prevention

To develop, maintain, or enhance programs that change attitudes and behaviors around the acceptability of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking and provide education and skills training to young individuals and individuals who influence young individuals. The prevention program may use evidence-based, evidence-informed, or innovative strategies and practices focused on youth. Such a program should include—

(A) age and developmentally-appropriate education on domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, and sexual coercion, as well as healthy relationship skills, in school, in the community, or in health care settings;

(B) community-based collaboration and training for those with influence on youth, such as parents, teachers, coaches, healthcare providers, faith-leaders, older teens, and mentors;

(C) education and outreach to change environmental factors contributing to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking; and

(D) policy development targeted to prevention, including school-based policies and protocols.

(2) Children exposed to violence and abuse

To develop, maintain or enhance programs designed to prevent future incidents of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking by preventing, reducing and responding to children's exposure to violence in the home. Such programs may include—

(A) providing services for children exposed to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault or stalking, including direct counseling or advocacy, and support for the non-abusing parent; and

(B) training and coordination for educational, after-school, and childcare programs on how to safely and confidentially identify children and families experiencing domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking and properly refer children exposed and their families to services and violence prevention programs.

(3) Engaging men as leaders and role models

To develop, maintain or enhance programs that work with men to prevent domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking by helping men to serve as role models and social influencers of other men and youth at the individual, school, community or statewide levels.

(c) Eligible entities

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, an entity shall be—

(1) a victim service provider, community-based organization, tribe or tribal organization, or other non-profit, nongovernmental organization that has a history of effective work preventing domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking and expertise in the specific area for which they are applying for funds; or

(2) a partnership between a victim service provider, community-based organization, tribe or tribal organization, or other non-profit, nongovernmental organization that has a history of effective work preventing domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking and at least one of the following that has expertise in serving children exposed to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking, youth domestic violence, dating violence, sexual

assault, or stalking prevention, or engaging men to prevent domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking:

(A) A public, charter, tribal, or nationally accredited private middle or high school, a school administered by the Department of Defense under section 2164 of title 10 or section 921 of title 20, a group of schools, or a school district.

(B) A local community-based organization, population-specific organization, or faith-based organization that has established expertise in providing services to youth.

(C) A community-based organization, population-specific organization, university or health care clinic, faith-based organization, or other non-profit, nongovernmental organization with a demonstrated history of effective work addressing the needs of children exposed to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(D) A nonprofit, nongovernmental entity providing services for runaway or homeless youth affected by domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(E) Healthcare entities eligible for reimbursement under title XVIII of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1395 et seq.], including providers that target the special needs of children and youth.

(F) Any other agencies, population-specific organizations, or nonprofit, nongovernmental organizations with the capacity to provide necessary expertise to meet the goals of the program; or

(3) a public, charter, tribal, or nationally accredited private middle or high school, a school administered by the Department of Defense under section 2164 of title 10 or section 921 of title 20, a group of schools, a school district, or an institution of higher education.

(d) Grantee requirements

(1) In general

Applicants for grants under this section shall prepare and submit to the Director an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Director may require that demonstrates the capacity of the applicant and partnering organizations to undertake the project.

(2) Policies and procedures

Applicants under this section shall establish and implement policies, practices, and procedures that—

(A) include appropriate referral systems to direct any victim identified during program activities to highly qualified follow-up care;

(B) protect the confidentiality and privacy of adult and youth victim information, particularly in the context of parental or third party involvement and consent, mandatory reporting duties, and working with other service providers;

(C) ensure that all individuals providing prevention programming through a program funded under this section have completed or will complete sufficient training in connection with domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault or stalking; and

(D) document how prevention programs are coordinated with service programs in the community.

(3) Preference

In selecting grant recipients under this section, the Attorney General shall give preference to applicants that—

(A) include outcome-based evaluation; and

(B) identify any other community, school, or State-based efforts that are working on domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking prevention and explain how the grantee or partnership will add value, coordinate with other programs, and not duplicate existing efforts.

(e) Definitions and grant conditions

In this section, the definitions and grant conditions provided for in section 13925 of this title shall apply.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section, $15,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018. Amounts appropriated under this section may only be used for programs and activities described under this section.

(g) Allotment

(1) In general

Not less than 25 percent of the total amounts appropriated under this section in each fiscal year shall be used for each set of purposes described in paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of subsection (b).

(2) Indian tribes

Not less than 10 percent of the total amounts appropriated under this section in each fiscal year shall be made available for grants to Indian tribes or tribal organizations. If an insufficient number of applications are received from Indian tribes or tribal organizations, such funds shall be allotted to other population-specific programs.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41303, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title IV, §401, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3018; amended Pub. L. 113–4, title IV, §402(a), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 92.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(E), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Title XVIII of the Act is classified generally to subchapter XVIII (§1395 et seq.) of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Pub. L. 113–4 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section related to grants to assist children and youth exposed to violence.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

§§14043d–3, 14043d–4. Repealed. Pub. L. 113–4, title IV, §402(b)(1), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 95

Section 14043d–3, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41304, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title IV, §401, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3020, authorized grants for the development of curricula and pilot programs for home visitation projects.

Section 14043d–4, Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41305, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title IV, §401, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3021, authorized grants for engaging men and youth in preventing domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as an Effective Date of 2013 Amendment note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

PART M—ADDRESSING THE HOUSING NEEDS OF VICTIMS OF DOMESTIC VIOLENCE, DATING VIOLENCE, SEXUAL ASSAULT, AND STALKING

CODIFICATION

This part was, in the original, subtitle N of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, as added by Pub. L. 109–162, and

has been redesignated as part M of this subchapter for purposes of codification.

SUBPART 1—GRANT PROGRAMS

§14043e. Findings

Congress finds that:

(1) There is a strong link between domestic violence and homelessness. Among cities surveyed, 44 percent identified domestic violence as a primary cause of homelessness.

(2) Ninety-two percent of homeless women have experienced severe physical or sexual abuse at some point in their lives. Of all homeless women and children, 60 percent had been abused by age 12, and 63 percent have been victims of intimate partner violence as adults.

(3) Women and families across the country are being discriminated against, denied access to, and even evicted from public and subsidized housing because of their status as victims of domestic violence.

(4) A recent survey of legal service providers around the country found that these providers have responded to almost 150 documented eviction cases in the last year alone where the tenant was evicted because of the domestic violence crimes committed against her. In addition, nearly 100 clients were denied housing because of their status as victims of domestic violence.

(5) Women who leave their abusers frequently lack adequate emergency shelter options. The lack of adequate emergency options for victims presents a serious threat to their safety and the safety of their children. Requests for emergency shelter by homeless women with children increased by 78 percent of United States cities surveyed in 2004. In the same year, 32 percent of the requests for shelter by homeless families went unmet due to the lack of available emergency shelter beds.

(6) The average stay at an emergency shelter is 60 days, while the average length of time it takes a homeless family to secure housing is 6 to 10 months.

(7) Victims of domestic violence often return to abusive partners because they cannot find long-term housing.

(8) There are not enough Federal housing rent vouchers available to accommodate the number of people in need of long-term housing. Some people remain on the waiting list for Federal housing rent vouchers for years, while some lists are closed.

(9) Transitional housing resources and services provide an essential continuum between emergency shelter provision and independent living. A majority of women in transitional housing programs stated that had these programs not existed, they would have likely gone back to abusive partners.

(10) Because abusers frequently manipulate finances in an effort to control their partners, victims often lack steady income, credit history, landlord references, and a current address, all of which are necessary to obtain long-term permanent housing.

(11) Victims of domestic violence in rural areas face additional barriers, challenges, and unique circumstances, such as geographical isolation, poverty, lack of public transportation systems, shortages of health care providers, under-insurance or lack of health insurance, difficulty ensuring confidentiality in small communities, and decreased access to many resources (such as advanced education, job opportunities, and adequate childcare).

(12) Congress and the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development have recognized in recent years that families experiencing domestic violence have unique needs that should be addressed by those administering the Federal housing programs.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41401, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title VI, §601, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3030.)

§14043e–1. Purpose

The purpose of this subpart is to reduce domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking, and to prevent homelessness by—

(1) protecting the safety of victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking who reside in homeless shelters, public housing, assisted housing, tribally designated housing, or other emergency, transitional, permanent, or affordable housing, and ensuring that such victims have meaningful access to the criminal justice system without jeopardizing such housing;

(2) creating long-term housing solutions that develop communities and provide sustainable living solutions for victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking;

(3) building collaborations among victim service providers, homeless service providers, housing providers, and housing agencies to provide appropriate services, interventions, and training to address the housing needs of victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking; and

(4) enabling public and assisted housing agencies, tribally designated housing entities, private landlords, property management companies, and other housing providers and agencies to respond appropriately to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking, while maintaining a safe environment for all housing residents.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41402, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title VI, §601, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3031; amended Pub. L. 113–4, title VI, §601(a)(2), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 102.)

AMENDMENTS

2013—Pub. L. 113–4 substituted "subpart" for "part" in introductory provisions.

§14043e–2. Definitions

For purposes of this subpart—

(1) the term "assisted housing" means housing assisted—

(A) under sections [1] 1715e, 1715k, 1715l(d)(3), 1715l(d)(4), 1715n(e), 1715v, or 1715z–1 of title 12;

(B) under section 1701s of title 12;

(C) under section 1701q of title 12;

(D) under section 811 of the Cranston-Gonzales [2] National Affordable Housing Act (42 U.S.C. 8013);

(E) under title II of the Cranston-Gonzales [2] National Affordable Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 12721 et seq.];

(F) under subtitle D of title VIII of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act (42 U.S.C. 12901 et seq.);

(G) under title I of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5301 et seq.); or

(H) under section 1437f of this title;

(2) the term "continuum of care" means a community plan developed to organize and deliver housing and services to meet the specific needs of people who are homeless as they move to stable housing and achieve maximum self-sufficiency;

(3) the term "low-income housing assistance voucher" means housing assistance described in section 1437f of this title;

(4) the term "public housing" means housing described in section 1437a(b)(1) of this title;

(5) the term "public housing agency" means an agency described in section 1437a(b)(6) of this title;

(6) the terms "homeless", "homeless individual", and "homeless person"—

(A) mean an individual who lacks a fixed, regular, and adequate nighttime residence; and

(B) includes—

(i) an individual who—

(I) is sharing the housing of other persons due to loss of housing, economic hardship, or a similar reason;

(II) is living in a motel, hotel, trailer park, or campground due to the lack of alternative adequate accommodations;

(III) is living in an emergency or transitional shelter;

(IV) is abandoned in a hospital; or

(V) is awaiting foster care placement;

(ii) an individual who has a primary nighttime residence that is a public or private place not designed for or ordinarily used as a regular sleeping accommodation for human beings; or

(iii) migratory children (as defined in section 6399 of title 20) who qualify as homeless under this section because the children are living in circumstances described in this paragraph;

(7) the term "homeless service provider" means a nonprofit, nongovernmental homeless service provider, such as a homeless shelter, a homeless service or advocacy program, a tribal organization serving homeless individuals, or coalition or other nonprofit, nongovernmental organization carrying out a community-based homeless or housing program that has a documented history of effective work concerning homelessness;

(8) the term "tribally designated housing" means housing assistance described in the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 (25 U.S.C. 4101 et seq.); and

(9) the term "tribally designated housing entity" means a housing entity described in the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 (25 U.S.C. 4103(21)); [3]

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41403, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title VI, §601, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3031; amended Pub. L. 113–4, title VI, §601(a)(3), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 102.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act, referred to in par. (1)(E), (F), is Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4079, as amended. Title II of the Act, known as the HOME Investment Partnerships Act, is classified principally to subchapter II (§12721 et seq.) of chapter 130 of this title. Subtitle D of title VIII of the Act, known as the AIDS Housing Opportunity Act, is classified generally to chapter 131 (§12901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12701 of this title and Tables.

The Housing and Community Development Act of 1974, referred to in par. (1)(G), is Pub. L. 93–383, Aug. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 633, as amended. Title I of the Act is classified principally to chapter 69 (§5301 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5301 of this title and Tables.

The Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996, referred to in pars. (8) and (9), is Pub. L. 104–330, Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4016, which is classified principally to chapter 43 (§4101 et seq.) of Title 25, Indians. Par. (21) of section 4103 of Title 25 was redesignated par. (22) by Pub. L. 110–411, §3(2), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4320. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4101 of Title 25 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Pub. L. 113–4 substituted "subpart" for "part" in introductory provisions.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "section".

[2] So in original. Probably should be "Cranston-Gonzalez".

[3] So in original. The semicolon probably should be a period.

§14043e–3. Collaborative grants to increase the long-term stability of victims

(a) Grants authorized

(1) In general

The Secretary of Health and Human Services, acting through the Administration for Children and Families, in partnership with the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, shall award grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements for a period of not less than 2 years to eligible entities to develop long-term sustainability and self-sufficiency options for adult and youth victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking who are currently homeless or at risk for becoming homeless.

(2) Amount

The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall award funds in amounts—

(A) not less than $25,000 per year; and

(B) not more than $1,000,000 per year.

(b) Eligible entities

To be eligible to receive funds under this section, an entity shall demonstrate that it is a coalition or partnership, applying jointly, that—

(1) shall include a domestic violence victim service provider;

(2) shall include—

(A) a homeless service provider;

(B) a nonprofit, nongovernmental community housing development organization or a Department of Agriculture rural housing service program; or

(C) in the absence of a homeless service provider on tribal lands or nonprofit, nongovernmental community housing development organization on tribal lands, a tribally designated housing entity or tribal housing consortium;

(3) may include a dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking victim service provider;

(4) may include housing developers, housing corporations, State housing finance agencies, other housing agencies, and associations representing landlords;

(5) may include a public housing agency or tribally designated housing entity;

(6) may include tenant organizations in public or tribally designated housing, as well as nonprofit, nongovernmental tenant organizations;

(7) may include other nonprofit, nongovernmental organizations participating in the Department of Housing and Urban Development's Continuum of Care process;

(8) may include a State, tribal, territorial, or local government or government agency; and

(9) may include any other agencies or nonprofit, nongovernmental organizations with the capacity to provide effective help to adult and youth victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(c) Application

Each eligible entity seeking funds under this section shall submit an application to the Secretary of Health and Human Services at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary of Health and Human Services may require.

(d) Use of funds

Funds awarded to eligible entities under subsection (a) shall be used to design or replicate and implement new activities, services, and programs to increase the stability and self-sufficiency of, and create partnerships to develop long-term housing options for adult and youth victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking, and their dependents, who are currently homeless or at risk of becoming homeless. Such activities, services, or programs—

(1) shall develop sustainable long-term living solutions in the community by—

(A) coordinating efforts and resources among the various groups and organizations

comprised in the entity to access existing private and public funding;

(B) assisting with the placement of individuals and families in long-term housing; and

(C) providing services to help individuals or families find and maintain long-term housing, including financial assistance and support services;

(2) may develop partnerships with individuals, organizations, corporations, or other entities that provide capital costs for the purchase, preconstruction, construction, renovation, repair, or conversion of affordable housing units;

(3) may use funds for the administrative expenses related to the continuing operation, upkeep, maintenance, and use of housing described in paragraph (2); and

(4) may provide to the community information about housing and housing programs, and the process to locate and obtain long-term housing.

(e) Limitation

Funds provided under paragraph [1] (a) shall not be used for construction, modernization or renovation.

(f) Underserved populations and priorities

In awarding grants under this section, the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall—

(1) give priority to linguistically and culturally specific services;

(2) give priority to applications from entities that include a sexual assault service provider as described in subsection (b)(3); and

(3) award a minimum of 15 percent of the funds appropriated under this section in any fiscal year to tribal organizations.

(g) Definitions

For purposes of this section:

(1) Affordable housing

The term "affordable housing" means housing that complies with the conditions set forth in section 12745 of this title.

(2) Long-term housing

The term "long-term housing" means housing that is sustainable, accessible, affordable, and safe for the foreseeable future and is—

(A) rented or owned by the individual;

(B) subsidized by a voucher or other program which is not time-limited and is available for as long as the individual meets the eligibility requirements for the voucher or program; or

(C) provided directly by a program, agency, or organization and is not time-limited and is available for as long as the individual meets the eligibility requirements for the program, agency, or organization.

(h) Evaluation, monitoring, administration, and technical assistance

For purposes of this section—

(1) up to 5 percent of the funds appropriated under subsection (i) for each fiscal year may be used by the Secretary of Health and Human Services for evaluation, monitoring, and administration costs under this section; and

(2) up to 8 percent of the funds appropriated under subsection (i) for each fiscal year may be used to provide technical assistance to grantees under this section.

(i) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $4,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018 to carry out the provisions of this section.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41404, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title VI, §601, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3033; amended Pub. L. 109–271, §5(a), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 759; Pub. L. 113–4, title VI, §603(1), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 110.)

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 113–4 substituted "$4,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018" for "$10,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2011".

2006—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 109–271, §5(a)(1), substituted "for Children" for "of Children".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 109–271, §5(a)(2), struck out "(1) IN GENERAL.—" before "Funds awarded to", inserted "Such activities, services, or programs—" after "becoming homeless.", substituted "(1)" for "(2) ACTIVITIES, SERVICES, PROGRAMS.—Such activities, services, or programs described in paragraph (1)", redesignated pars. (3) to (5) as (2) to (4), respectively, and substituted "paragraph (2)" for "paragraph (3)" in par. (3), as so redesignated.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "subsection".*

§14043e–4. Grants to combat violence against women in public and assisted housing

(a) Purpose

It is the purpose of this section to assist eligible grantees in responding appropriately to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking so that the status of being a victim of such a crime is not a reason for the denial or loss of housing. Such assistance shall be accomplished through—

(1) education and training of eligible entities;

(2) development and implementation of appropriate housing policies and practices;

(3) enhancement of collaboration with victim service providers and tenant organizations; and

(4) reduction of the number of victims of such crimes who are evicted or denied housing because of crimes and lease violations committed or directly caused by the perpetrators of such crimes.

(b) Grants authorized

(1) In general

The Attorney General, acting through the Director of the Violence Against Women Office of the Department of Justice ("Director"), and in consultation with the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development ("Secretary"), and the Secretary of Health and Human Services, acting through the Administration for Children, Youth and Families ("ACYF"), shall award grants and contracts for not less than 2 years to eligible grantees to promote the full and equal access to and use of housing by adult and youth victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking.

(2) Amounts

Not less than 15 percent of the funds appropriated to carry out this section shall be available for grants to tribally designated housing entities.

(3) Award basis

The Attorney General shall award grants and contracts under this section on a competitive basis.

(4) Limitation

Appropriated funds may only be used for the purposes described in subsection (f).

(c) Eligible grantees

(1) In general

Eligible grantees are—

(A) public housing agencies;

(B) principally managed public housing resident management corporations, as determined by the Secretary;

(C) public housing projects owned by public housing agencies;
(D) tribally designated housing entities; and
(E) private, for-profit, and nonprofit owners or managers of assisted housing.

(2) Submission required for all grantees

To receive assistance under this section, an eligible grantee shall certify that—

(A) its policies and practices do not prohibit or limit a resident's right to summon police or other emergency assistance in response to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking;

(B) programs and services are developed that give a preference in admission to adult and youth victims of such violence, consistent with local housing needs, and applicable law and the Secretary's instructions;

(C) it does not discriminate against any person—

(i) because that person is or is perceived to be, or has a family or household member who is or is perceived to be, a victim of such violence; or

(ii) because of the actions or threatened actions of the individual who the victim, as certified in subsection (e), states has committed or threatened to commit acts of such violence against the victim, or against the victim's family or household member;

(D) plans are developed that establish meaningful consultation and coordination with local victim service providers, tenant organizations, linguistically and culturally specific service providers, State domestic violence and sexual assault coalitions, and, where they exist, tribal domestic violence and sexual assault coalitions; and

(E) its policies and practices will be in compliance with those described in this paragraph within the later of 1 year or a period selected by the Attorney General in consultation with the Secretary and ACYF.

(d) Application

Each eligible entity seeking a grant under this section shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such a time, in such a manner, and containing such information as the Attorney General may require.

(e) Certification

(1) In general

A public housing agency, tribally designated housing entity, or assisted housing provider receiving funds under this section may request that an individual claiming relief under this section certify that the individual is a victim of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking. The individual shall provide a copy of such certification to the public housing agency, tribally designated housing entity, or assisted housing provider within a reasonable period of time after the agency or authority requests such certification.

(2) Contents

An individual may satisfy the certification requirement of paragraph (1) by—

(A) providing the public housing agency, tribally designated housing entity, or assisted housing provider with documentation, signed by an employee, agent, or volunteer of a victim service provider, an attorney, a member of the clergy, a medical professional, or any other professional from whom the victim has sought assistance in addressing domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking, or the effects of abuse; or

(B) producing a Federal, State, tribal, territorial, or local police or court record.

(3) Limitation

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to require any housing agency, assisted housing provider, tribally designated housing entity, owner, or manager to demand that an individual produce official documentation or physical proof of the individual's status as a victim of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking, in order to receive any of the benefits

provided in this section. A housing agency, assisted housing provider, tribally designated housing entity, owner, or manager may provide benefits to an individual based solely on the individual's statement or other corroborating evidence.

(4) Confidentiality

(A) In general

All information provided to any housing agency, assisted housing provider, tribally designated housing entity, owner, or manager pursuant to paragraph (1), including the fact that an individual is a victim of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking, shall be retained in confidence by such agency, and shall neither be entered into any shared database, nor provided to any related housing agency, assisted housing provider, tribally designated housing entity, owner, or manager, except to the extent that disclosure is—

(i) requested or consented to by the individual in writing; or

(ii) otherwise required by applicable law.

(B) Notification

Public housing agencies must provide notice to tenants of their rights under this section, including their right to confidentiality and the limits thereof, and to owners and managers of their rights and obligations under this section.

(f) Use of funds

Grants and contracts awarded pursuant to subsection (a) shall provide to eligible entities personnel, training, and technical assistance to develop and implement policies, practices, and procedures, making physical improvements or changes, and developing or enhancing collaborations for the purposes of—

(1) enabling victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking with otherwise disqualifying rental, credit, or criminal histories to be eligible to obtain housing or housing assistance, if such victims would otherwise qualify for housing or housing assistance and can provide documented evidence that demonstrates the causal connection between such violence or abuse and the victims' negative histories;

(2) permitting applicants for housing or housing assistance to provide incomplete rental and employment histories, otherwise required as a condition of admission or assistance, if the victim believes that providing such rental and employment history would endanger the victim's or the victim children's safety;

(3) protecting victims' confidentiality, including protection of victims' personally identifying information, address, or rental history;

(4) assisting victims who need to leave a public housing, tribally designated housing, or assisted housing unit quickly to protect their safety, including those who are seeking transfer to a new public housing unit, tribally designated housing unit, or assisted housing unit, whether in the same or a different neighborhood or jurisdiction;

(5) enabling the public housing agency, tribally designated housing entity, or assisted housing provider, or the victim, to remove, consistent with applicable State law, the perpetrator of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking without evicting, removing, or otherwise penalizing the victim;

(6) enabling the public housing agency, tribally designated housing entity, or assisted housing provider, when notified, to honor court orders addressing rights of access to or control of the property, including civil protection orders issued to protect the victim and issued to address the distribution or possession of property among the household members in cases where a family breaks up;

(7) developing and implementing more effective security policies, protocols, and services;

(8) allotting not more than 15 percent of funds awarded under the grant to make modest physical improvements to enhance safety;

(9) training personnel to more effectively identify and respond to victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking; and

(10) effectively providing notice to applicants and residents of the above housing policies, practices, and procedures.

(g) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $4,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018 to carry out the provisions of this section.

(h) Technical assistance

Up to 12 percent of the amount appropriated under subsection (g) for each fiscal year shall be used by the Attorney General for technical assistance costs under this section.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41405, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title VI, §601, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3035; amended Pub. L. 113–4, title VI, §603(2), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 110.)

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 113–4 substituted "$4,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018" for "$10,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2011".

SUBPART 2—HOUSING RIGHTS

§14043e–11. Housing protections for victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking

(a) Definitions

In this subpart:

(1) Affiliated individual

The term "affiliated individual" means, with respect to an individual—

(A) a spouse, parent, brother, sister, or child of that individual, or an individual to whom that individual stands in loco parentis; or

(B) any individual, tenant, or lawful occupant living in the household of that individual.

(2) Appropriate agency

The term "appropriate agency" means, with respect to a covered housing program, the Executive department (as defined in section 101 of title 5) that carries out the covered housing program.

(3) Covered housing program

The term "covered housing program" means—

(A) the program under section 1701q of title 12;

(B) the program under section 811 of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act (42 U.S.C. 8013);

(C) the program under subtitle D of title VIII of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act (42 U.S.C. 12901 et seq.);

(D) the program under subtitle A of title IV of the McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 11360 et seq.);

(E) the program under subtitle A of title II of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act (42 U.S.C. 12741 et seq.);

(F) the program under paragraph (3) of section 1715l(d) of title 12 that bears interest at a rate determined under the proviso under paragraph (5) of such section 1715l(d);

(G) the program under section 1715z–1 of title 12;

(H) the programs under sections 1437d and 1437f of this title;

(I) rural housing assistance provided under sections 1484, 1485, 1486, 1490m, and 1490p–2

of this title; and

(J) the low income housing tax credit program under section 42 of title 26.

(b) Prohibited basis for denial or termination of assistance or eviction

(1) In general

An applicant for or tenant of housing assisted under a covered housing program may not be denied admission to, denied assistance under, terminated from participation in, or evicted from the housing on the basis that the applicant or tenant is or has been a victim of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking, if the applicant or tenant otherwise qualifies for admission, assistance, participation, or occupancy.

(2) Construction of lease terms

An incident of actual or threatened domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking shall not be construed as—

(A) a serious or repeated violation of a lease for housing assisted under a covered housing program by the victim or threatened victim of such incident; or

(B) good cause for terminating the assistance, tenancy, or occupancy rights to housing assisted under a covered housing program of the victim or threatened victim of such incident.

(3) Termination on the basis of criminal activity

(A) Denial of assistance, tenancy, and occupancy rights prohibited

No person may deny assistance, tenancy, or occupancy rights to housing assisted under a covered housing program to a tenant solely on the basis of criminal activity directly relating to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking that is engaged in by a member of the household of the tenant or any guest or other person under the control of the tenant, if the tenant or an affiliated individual of the tenant is the victim or threatened victim of such domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(B) Bifurcation

(i) In general

Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), a public housing agency or owner or manager of housing assisted under a covered housing program may bifurcate a lease for the housing in order to evict, remove, or terminate assistance to any individual who is a tenant or lawful occupant of the housing and who engages in criminal activity directly relating to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking against an affiliated individual or other individual, without evicting, removing, terminating assistance to, or otherwise penalizing a victim of such criminal activity who is also a tenant or lawful occupant of the housing.

(ii) Effect of eviction on other tenants

If public housing agency or owner or manager of housing assisted under a covered housing program evicts, removes, or terminates assistance to an individual under clause (i), and the individual is the sole tenant eligible to receive assistance under a covered housing program, the public housing agency or owner or manager of housing assisted under the covered housing program shall provide any remaining tenant or resident an opportunity to establish eligibility for the covered housing program. If a tenant or resident described in the preceding sentence cannot establish eligibility, the public housing agency or owner or manager of the housing shall provide the tenant or resident a reasonable time, as determined by the appropriate agency, to find new housing or to establish eligibility for housing under another covered housing program.

(C) Rules of construction

Nothing in subparagraph (A) shall be construed—

(i) to limit the authority of a public housing agency or owner or manager of housing assisted under a covered housing program, when notified of a court order, to comply with a

court order with respect to—

(I) the rights of access to or control of property, including civil protection orders issued to protect a victim of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking; or

(II) the distribution or possession of property among members of a household in a case;

(ii) to limit any otherwise available authority of a public housing agency or owner or manager of housing assisted under a covered housing program to evict or terminate assistance to a tenant for any violation of a lease not premised on the act of violence in question against the tenant or an affiliated person of the tenant, if the public housing agency or owner or manager does not subject an individual who is or has been a victim of domestic violence, dating violence, or stalking to a more demanding standard than other tenants in determining whether to evict or terminate;

(iii) to limit the authority to terminate assistance to a tenant or evict a tenant from housing assisted under a covered housing program if a public housing agency or owner or manager of the housing can demonstrate that an actual and imminent threat to other tenants or individuals employed at or providing service to the property would be present if the assistance is not terminated or the tenant is not evicted; or

(iv) to supersede any provision of any Federal, State, or local law that provides greater protection than this section for victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(c) Documentation

(1) Request for documentation

If an applicant for, or tenant of, housing assisted under a covered housing program represents to a public housing agency or owner or manager of the housing that the individual is entitled to protection under subsection (b), the public housing agency or owner or manager may request, in writing, that the applicant or tenant submit to the public housing agency or owner or manager a form of documentation described in paragraph (3).

(2) Failure to provide certification

(A) In general

If an applicant or tenant does not provide the documentation requested under paragraph (1) within 14 business days after the tenant receives a request in writing for such certification from a public housing agency or owner or manager of housing assisted under a covered housing program, nothing in this subpart may be construed to limit the authority of the public housing agency or owner or manager to—

(i) deny admission by the applicant or tenant to the covered program;

(ii) deny assistance under the covered program to the applicant or tenant;

(iii) terminate the participation of the applicant or tenant in the covered program; or

(iv) evict the applicant, the tenant, or a lawful occupant that commits violations of a lease.

(B) Extension

A public housing agency or owner or manager of housing may extend the 14-day deadline under subparagraph (A) at its discretion.

(3) Form of documentation

A form of documentation described in this paragraph is—

(A) a certification form approved by the appropriate agency that—

(i) states that an applicant or tenant is a victim of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking;

(ii) states that the incident of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking that is the ground for protection under subsection (b) meets the requirements under subsection (b); and

(iii) includes the name of the individual who committed the domestic violence, dating

violence, sexual assault, or stalking, if the name is known and safe to provide;

(B) a document that—

(i) is signed by—

(I) an employee, agent, or volunteer of a victim service provider, an attorney, a medical professional, or a mental health professional from whom an applicant or tenant has sought assistance relating to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking, or the effects of the abuse; and

(II) the applicant or tenant; and

(ii) states under penalty of perjury that the individual described in clause (i)(I) believes that the incident of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking that is the ground for protection under subsection (b) meets the requirements under subsection (b);

(C) a record of a Federal, State, tribal, territorial, or local law enforcement agency, court, or administrative agency; or

(D) at the discretion of a public housing agency or owner or manager of housing assisted under a covered housing program, a statement or other evidence provided by an applicant or tenant.

(4) Confidentiality

Any information submitted to a public housing agency or owner or manager under this subsection, including the fact that an individual is a victim of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking shall be maintained in confidence by the public housing agency or owner or manager and may not be entered into any shared database or disclosed to any other entity or individual, except to the extent that the disclosure is—

(A) requested or consented to by the individual in writing;

(B) required for use in an eviction proceeding under subsection (b); or

(C) otherwise required by applicable law.

(5) Documentation not required

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to require a public housing agency or owner or manager of housing assisted under a covered housing program to request that an individual submit documentation of the status of the individual as a victim of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(6) Compliance not sufficient to constitute evidence of unreasonable act

Compliance with subsection (b) by a public housing agency or owner or manager of housing assisted under a covered housing program based on documentation received under this subsection, shall not be sufficient to constitute evidence of an unreasonable act or omission by the public housing agency or owner or manager or an employee or agent of the public housing agency or owner or manager. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to limit the liability of a public housing agency or owner or manager of housing assisted under a covered housing program for failure to comply with subsection (b).

(7) Response to conflicting certification

If a public housing agency or owner or manager of housing assisted under a covered housing program receives documentation under this subsection that contains conflicting information, the public housing agency or owner or manager may require an applicant or tenant to submit third-party documentation, as described in subparagraph (B), (C), or (D) of paragraph (3).

(8) Preemption

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to supersede any provision of any Federal, State, or local law that provides greater protection than this subsection for victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(d) Notification

(1) Development

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall develop a notice of the rights of individuals under this section, including the right to confidentiality and the limits thereof.

(2) Provision

Each public housing agency or owner or manager of housing assisted under a covered housing program shall provide the notice developed under paragraph (1), together with the form described in subsection (c)(3)(A), to an applicant for or tenants of housing assisted under a covered housing program—

(A) at the time the applicant is denied residency in a dwelling unit assisted under the covered housing program;

(B) at the time the individual is admitted to a dwelling unit assisted under the covered housing program;

(C) with any notification of eviction or notification of termination of assistance; and

(D) in multiple languages, consistent with guidance issued by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development in accordance with Executive Order 13166 (42 U.S.C. 2000d–1 note; relating to access to services for persons with limited English proficiency).

(e) Emergency transfers

Each appropriate agency shall adopt a model emergency transfer plan for use by public housing agencies and owners or managers of housing assisted under covered housing programs that—

(1) allows tenants who are victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking to transfer to another available and safe dwelling unit assisted under a covered housing program if—

(A) the tenant expressly requests the transfer; and

(B)(i) the tenant reasonably believes that the tenant is threatened with imminent harm from further violence if the tenant remains within the same dwelling unit assisted under a covered housing program; or

(ii) in the case of a tenant who is a victim of sexual assault, the sexual assault occurred on the premises during the 90 day period preceding the request for transfer; and

(2) incorporates reasonable confidentiality measures to ensure that the public housing agency or owner or manager does not disclose the location of the dwelling unit of a tenant to a person that commits an act of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking against the tenant.

(f) Policies and procedures for emergency transfer

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall establish policies and procedures under which a victim requesting an emergency transfer under subsection (e) may receive, subject to the availability of tenant protection vouchers, assistance under section 1437f(o) of this title.

(g) Implementation

The appropriate agency with respect to each covered housing program shall implement this section, as this section applies to the covered housing program.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41411, as added Pub. L. 113–4, title VI, §601(a)(4), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 102; amended Pub. L. 114–324, §6, Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1951.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(C), (E), is Pub. L. 101–625, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 4079. Subtitle A of title II of the Act is classified generally to part A (§12741 et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 130 of this title. Subtitle D of title VIII of the Act, known as the AIDS Housing Opportunity Act, is classified generally to chapter 131 (§12901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12701 of this title and Tables.

The McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(D), is Pub. L. 100–77, July 22,

1987, 101 Stat. 482. Subtitle A of title IV of the Act is classified generally to part A (§11360 et seq.) of subchapter IV of chapter 119 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 11301 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (b)(3)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 114–324 inserted "or resident" after "any remaining tenant" in first sentence and "or resident" after "tenant" in two places in second sentence.

PART N—NATIONAL RESOURCE CENTER

CODIFICATION

Pub. L. 109–162, title VII, §701, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3052, which directed that subtitle N of the Violence Against Women Act of 1994 (part M of this subchapter) be amended by adding at the end a subtitle O consisting of section 41501 (42 U.S.C. 14043f), is reflected in the Code by setting out subtitle O as a separate part N (this part) and not as included in part M, as the probable intent of Congress.

§14043f. Grant for national resource center on workplace responses to assist victims of domestic and sexual violence

(a) Authority

The Attorney General, acting through the Director of the Office on Violence Against Women, may award a grant to an eligible nonprofit nongovernmental entity or tribal organization, in order to provide for the establishment and operation of a national resource center on workplace responses to assist victims of domestic and sexual violence. The resource center shall provide information and assistance to employers and labor organizations to aid in their efforts to develop and implement responses to such violence.

(b) Applications

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, an entity or organization shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Attorney General may require, including—

(1) information that demonstrates that the entity or organization has nationally recognized expertise in the area of domestic or sexual violence;

(2) a plan to maximize, to the extent practicable, outreach to employers (including private companies and public entities such as public institutions of higher education and State and local governments) and labor organizations described in subsection (a) concerning developing and implementing workplace responses to assist victims of domestic or sexual violence; and

(3) a plan for developing materials and training for materials for employers that address the needs of employees in cases of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking impacting the workplace, including the needs of underserved communities.

(c) Use of grant amount

(1) In general

An entity or organization that receives a grant under this section may use the funds made available through the grant for staff salaries, travel expenses, equipment, printing, and other reasonable expenses necessary to develop, maintain, and disseminate to employers and labor organizations described in subsection (a), information and assistance concerning workplace responses to assist victims of domestic or sexual violence.

(2) Responses

Responses referred to in paragraph (1) may include—

(A) providing training to promote a better understanding of workplace assistance to victims

of domestic or sexual violence;

(B) providing conferences and other educational opportunities; and

(C) developing protocols and model workplace policies.

(d) Liability

The compliance or noncompliance of any employer or labor organization with any protocol or policy developed by an entity or organization under this section shall not serve as a basis for liability in tort, express or implied contract, or by any other means. No protocol or policy developed by an entity or organization under this section shall be referenced or enforced as a workplace safety standard by any Federal, State, or other governmental agency.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $1,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018.

(f) Availability of grant funds

Funds appropriated under this section shall remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41501, as added Pub. L. 109–162, title VII, §701, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3052; amended Pub. L. 113–4, title VII, §701, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 110.)

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 113–4 substituted "fiscal years 2014 through 2018" for "fiscal years 2007 through 2011".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

PART N–1—SEXUAL ASSAULT SERVICES

§14043g. Sexual assault services program

(a) Purposes

The purposes of this section are—

(1) to assist States, Indian tribes, and territories in providing intervention, advocacy, accompaniment, support services, and related assistance for—

(A) adult, youth, and child victims of sexual assault;

(B) family and household members of such victims; and

(C) those collaterally affected by the victimization, except for the perpetrator of such victimization; and

(2) to provide for technical assistance and training relating to sexual assault to—

(A) Federal, State, tribal, territorial and local governments, law enforcement agencies, and courts;

(B) professionals working in legal, social service, and health care settings;

(C) nonprofit organizations;

(D) faith-based organizations; and

(E) other individuals and organizations seeking such assistance.

(b) Grants to States and territories

(1) Grants authorized

The Attorney General shall award grants to States and territories to support the establishment, maintenance, and expansion of rape crisis centers and other nongovernmental or tribal programs and projects to assist individuals who have been victimized by sexual assault, without regard to the age of the individual.

(2) Allocation and use of funds

(A) Administrative costs

Not more than 5 percent of the grant funds received by a State or territory governmental agency under this subsection for any fiscal year may be used for administrative costs.

(B) Grant funds

Any funds received by a State or territory under this subsection that are not used for administrative costs shall be used to provide grants to rape crisis centers and other nonprofit, nongovernmental organizations or tribal programs and activities for programs and activities within such State or territory that provide direct intervention and related assistance.

(C) Intervention and related assistance

Intervention and related assistance under subparagraph (B) may include—

(i) 24-hour hotline services providing crisis intervention services and referral;

(ii) accompaniment and advocacy through medical, criminal justice, and social support systems, including medical facilities, police, and court proceedings;

(iii) crisis intervention, short-term individual and group support services, and comprehensive service coordination and supervision to assist sexual assault victims and family or household members;

(iv) information and referral to assist the sexual assault victim and family or household members;

(v) community-based, culturally specific services and support mechanisms, including outreach activities for underserved communities; and

(vi) the development and distribution of materials on issues related to the services described in clauses (i) through (v).

(3) Application

(A) In general

Each eligible entity desiring a grant under this subsection shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such time and in such manner as the Attorney General may reasonably require.

(B) Contents

Each application submitted under subparagraph (A) shall—

(i) set forth procedures designed to ensure meaningful involvement of the State or territorial sexual assault coalition and representatives from underserved communities in the development of the application and the implementation of the plans;

(ii) set forth procedures designed to ensure an equitable distribution of grants and grant funds within the State or territory and between urban and rural areas within such State or territory;

(iii) identify the State or territorial agency that is responsible for the administration of programs and activities; and

(iv) meet other such requirements as the Attorney General reasonably determines are necessary to carry out the purposes and provisions of this section.

(4) Minimum amount

The Attorney General shall allocate to each State (including the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico) not less than 1.50 percent of the total amount appropriated in a fiscal year for grants under this section, except that the United States Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands shall each be allocated 0.25 percent of the total

appropriations. The remaining funds shall be allotted to each State and each territory in an amount that bears the same ratio to such remaining funds as the population of such State and such territory bears to the population of all the States and the territories.

(c) Grants for culturally specific programs addressing sexual assault

(1) Grants authorized

The Attorney General shall award grants to eligible entities to support the establishment, maintenance, and expansion of culturally specific intervention and related assistance for victims of sexual assault.

(2) Eligible entities

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, an entity shall—

(A) be a private nonprofit organization that focuses primarily on culturally specific communities;

(B) must have documented organizational experience in the area of sexual assault intervention or have entered into a partnership with an organization having such expertise;

(C) have expertise in the development of community-based, linguistically and culturally specific outreach and intervention services relevant for the specific communities to whom assistance would be provided or have the capacity to link to existing services in the community tailored to the needs of culturally specific populations; and

(D) have an advisory board or steering committee and staffing which is reflective of the targeted culturally specific community.

(3) Award basis

The Attorney General shall award grants under this section on a competitive basis.

(4) Distribution

(A) The Attorney General shall not use more than 2.5 percent of funds appropriated under this subsection in any year for administration, monitoring, and evaluation of grants made available under this subsection.

(B) Up to 5 percent of funds appropriated under this subsection in any year shall be available for technical assistance by a national, nonprofit, nongovernmental organization or organizations whose primary focus and expertise is in addressing sexual assault within underserved culturally specific populations.

(5) Term

The Attorney General shall make grants under this section for a period of no less than 2 fiscal years.

(6) Reporting

Each entity receiving a grant under this subsection shall submit a report to the Attorney General that describes the activities carried out with such grant funds.

(d) Grants to State, territorial, and tribal sexual assault coalitions

(1) Grants authorized

(A) In general

The Attorney General shall award grants to State, territorial, and tribal sexual assault coalitions to assist in supporting the establishment, maintenance, and expansion of such coalitions.

(B) Minimum amount

Not less than 10 percent of the total amount appropriated to carry out this section shall be used for grants under subparagraph (A).

(C) Eligible applicants

Each of the State, territorial, and tribal sexual assault coalitions.

(2) Use of funds

Grant funds received under this subsection may be used to—

(A) work with local sexual assault programs and other providers of direct services to encourage appropriate responses to sexual assault within the State, territory, or tribe;

(B) work with judicial and law enforcement agencies to encourage appropriate responses to sexual assault cases;

(C) work with courts, child protective services agencies, and children's advocates to develop appropriate responses to child custody and visitation issues when sexual assault has been determined to be a factor;

(D) design and conduct public education campaigns;

(E) plan and monitor the distribution of grants and grant funds to their State, territory, or tribe; or

(F) collaborate with and inform Federal, State, or local public officials and agencies to develop and implement policies to reduce or eliminate sexual assault.

(3) Allocation and use of funds

From amounts appropriated for grants under this subsection for each fiscal year—

(A) not less than 10 percent of the funds shall be available for grants to tribal sexual assault coalitions; and

(B) the remaining funds shall be available for grants to State and territorial coalitions, and the Attorney General shall allocate an amount equal to 1/56 of the amounts so appropriated to each of those State and territorial coalitions.

(4) Application

Each eligible entity desiring a grant under this subsection shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Attorney General determines to be essential to carry out the purposes of this section.

(5) First-time applicants

No entity shall be prohibited from submitting an application under this subsection during any fiscal year for which funds are available under this subsection because such entity has not previously applied or received funding under this subsection.

(e) Grants to tribes

(1) Grants authorized

The Attorney General may award grants to Indian tribes, tribal organizations, and nonprofit tribal organizations for the operation of sexual assault programs or projects in Indian tribal lands and Alaska Native villages to support the establishment, maintenance, and expansion of programs and projects to assist those victimized by sexual assault.

(2) Allocation and use of funds

(A) Administrative costs

Not more than 5 percent of the grant funds received by an Indian tribe, tribal organization, and nonprofit tribal organization under this subsection for any fiscal year may be used for administrative costs.

(B) Grant funds

Any funds received under this subsection that are not used for administrative costs shall be used to provide grants to tribal organizations and nonprofit tribal organizations for programs and activities within Indian country and Alaskan native villages that provide direct intervention and related assistance.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

(1) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated $40,000,000 to remain available until expended for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018 to carry out the provisions of this section.

(2) Allocations

Of the total amounts appropriated for each fiscal year to carry out this section—

(A) not more than 2.5 percent shall be used by the Attorney General for evaluation, monitoring, and other administrative costs under this section;

(B) not more than 2.5 percent shall be used for the provision of technical assistance to grantees and subgrantees under this section;

(C) not less than 65 percent shall be used for grants to States and territories under subsection (b);

(D) not less than 10 percent shall be used for making grants to State, territorial, and tribal sexual assault coalitions under subsection (d);

(E) not less than 10 percent shall be used for grants to tribes under subsection (e); and

(F) not less than 10 percent shall be used for grants for culturally specific programs addressing sexual assault under subsection (c).

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IV, §41601, as added Pub. L. 109–271, §3(b), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 754; amended Pub. L. 113–4, title II, §201, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 80.)

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 113–4, §201(a)(1), substituted "other nongovernmental or tribal programs and projects to assist individuals who have been victimized by sexual assault, without regard to the age of the individual." for "other programs and projects to assist those victimized by sexual assault."

Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 113–4, §201(a)(2)(A), inserted "or tribal programs and activities" after "nongovernmental organizations".

Subsec. (b)(2)(C)(v). Pub. L. 113–4, §201(a)(2)(B), struck out "linguistically and" before "culturally".

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 113–4, §201(a)(3)(B), which directed striking out "the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico," after "Guam", was executed by striking out such phrase after "Guam," to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 113–4, §201(a)(3)(A), (C), (D), inserted "(including the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico)" after "The Attorney General shall allocate to each State", substituted "0.25 percent" for "0.125 percent", and struck out at end "The District of Columbia shall be treated as a territory for purposes of calculating its allocation under the preceding formula."

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 113–4, §201(b), substituted "$40,000,000 to remain available until expended for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018" for "$50,000,000 to remain available until expended for each of the fiscal years 2007 through 2011".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

§14043g–1. Working Group

(a) In general

The Attorney General, in consultation with the Secretary of Health and Human Services (referred to in this section as the "Secretary"), shall establish a joint working group (referred to in this section as the "Working Group") to develop, coordinate, and disseminate best practices regarding the care and treatment of sexual assault survivors and the preservation of forensic evidence.

(b) Consultation with stakeholders

The Working Group shall consult with—

(1) stakeholders in law enforcement, prosecution, forensic laboratory, counseling, forensic examiner, medical facility, and medical provider communities; and

(2) representatives of not less than 3 entities with demonstrated expertise in sexual assault

prevention, sexual assault advocacy, or representation of sexual assault victims, of which not less than 1 representative shall be a sexual assault victim.

(c) Membership

The Working Group shall be composed of governmental or nongovernmental agency heads at the discretion of the Attorney General, in consultation with the Secretary.

(d) Duties

The Working Group shall—

(1) develop recommendations for improving the coordination of the dissemination and implementation of best practices and protocols regarding the care and treatment of sexual assault survivors and the preservation of evidence to hospital administrators, physicians, forensic examiners, and other medical associations and leaders in the medical community;

(2) encourage, where appropriate, the adoption and implementation of best practices and protocols regarding the care and treatment of sexual assault survivors and the preservation of evidence among hospital administrators, physicians, forensic examiners, and other medical associations and leaders in the medical community;

(3) develop recommendations to promote the coordination of the dissemination and implementation of best practices regarding the care and treatment of sexual assault survivors and the preservation of evidence to State attorneys general, United States attorneys, heads of State law enforcement agencies, forensic laboratory directors and managers, and other leaders in the law enforcement community;

(4) develop and implement, where practicable, incentives to encourage the adoption or implementation of best practices regarding the care and treatment of sexual assault survivors and the preservation of evidence among State attorneys general, United States attorneys, heads of State law enforcement agencies, forensic laboratory directors and managers, and other leaders in the law enforcement community;

(5) collect feedback from stakeholders, practitioners, and leadership throughout the Federal and State law enforcement, victim services, forensic science practitioner, and health care communities to inform development of future best practices or clinical guidelines regarding the care and treatment of sexual assault survivors; and

(6) perform other activities, such as activities relating to development, dissemination, outreach, engagement, or training associated with advancing victim-centered care for sexual assault survivors.

(e) Report

Not later than 2 years after October 7, 2016, the Working Group shall submit to the Attorney General, the Secretary, and Congress a report containing the findings and recommended actions of the Working Group.

(Pub. L. 114–236, §4, Oct. 7, 2016, 130 Stat. 968.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Survivors' Bill of Rights Act of 2016, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

PART N–2—RAPE SURVIVOR CHILD CUSTODY

§14043h. Definitions

In this part:

(1) Covered formula grant

The term "covered formula grant" means a grant under—

(A) part T of title I of the Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968 (42 U.S.C. 3796gg et seq.) (commonly referred to as the "STOP Violence Against Women Formula Grant Program"); or

(B) section 14043g of this title (commonly referred to as the "Sexual Assault Services Program").

(2) Termination

(A) In general

The term "termination" means, when used with respect to parental rights, a complete and final termination of the parent's right to custody of, guardianship of, visitation with, access to, and inheritance from a child.

(B) Rule of construction

Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to require a State, in order to receive an increase in the amount provided to the State under the covered formula grants under this part, to have in place a law that terminates any obligation of a person who fathered a child through rape to support the child.

(Pub. L. 114–22, title IV, §402, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 256.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968, referred to in par. (1)(A), is Pub. L. 90–351, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 197. Part T of title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter XII–H (§3796gg et seq.) of chapter 46 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3711 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Rape Survivor Child Custody Act and also as part of the Justice for Victims of Trafficking Act of 2015, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

SHORT TITLE

For short title of this part as the "Rape Survivor Child Custody Act", see section 401 of Pub. L. 114–22, set out as a Short Title of 2015 Amendment note under section 13701 of this title.

§14043h–1. Findings

Congress finds the following:

(1) Men who father children through rape should be prohibited from visiting or having custody of those children.

(2) Thousands of rape-related pregnancies occur annually in the United States.

(3) A substantial number of women choose to raise their child conceived through rape and, as a result, may face custody battles with their rapists.

(4) Rape is one of the most under-prosecuted serious crimes, with estimates of criminal conviction occurring in less than 5 percent of rapes.

(5) The clear and convincing evidence standard is the most common standard for termination of parental rights among the 50 States, territories, and the District of Columbia.

(6) The Supreme Court established that the clear and convincing evidence standard satisfies due process for allegations to terminate or restrict parental rights in Santosky v. Kramer (455 U.S. 745 (1982)).

(7) Currently only 10 States have statutes allowing rape survivors to petition for the termination of parental rights of the rapist based on clear and convincing evidence that the child was conceived through rape.

(8) A rapist pursuing parental or custody rights causes the survivor to have continued interaction with the rapist, which can have traumatic psychological effects on the survivor, and can make it more difficult for her to recover.

(9) These traumatic effects on the mother can severely negatively impact her ability to raise a healthy child.

(10) Rapists may use the threat of pursuing custody or parental rights to coerce survivors into not prosecuting rape, or otherwise harass, intimidate, or manipulate them.

(Pub. L. 114–22, title IV, §403, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 256.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Rape Survivor Child Custody Act and also as part of the Justice for Victims of Trafficking Act of 2015, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14043h–2. Increased funding for formula grants authorized

The Attorney General shall increase the amount provided to a State under the covered formula grants in accordance with this part if the State has in place a law that allows the mother of any child that was conceived through rape to seek court-ordered termination of the parental rights of her rapist with regard to that child, which the court is authorized to grant upon clear and convincing evidence of rape.

(Pub. L. 114–22, title IV, §404, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 257.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Rape Survivor Child Custody Act and also as part of the Justice for Victims of Trafficking Act of 2015, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14043h–3. Application

A State seeking an increase in the amount provided to the State under the covered formula grants shall include in the application of the State for each covered formula grant such information as the Attorney General may reasonably require, including information about the law described in section 14043h–2 of this title.

(Pub. L. 114–22, title IV, §405, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 257.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Rape Survivor Child Custody Act and also as part of the Justice for Victims of Trafficking Act of 2015, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14043h–4. Grant increase

The amount of the increase provided to a State under the covered formula grants under this part shall be equal to not more than 10 percent of the average of the total amount of funding provided to the State under the covered formula grants under the 3 most recent awards to the State.

(Pub. L. 114–22, title IV, §406, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 257.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Rape Survivor Child Custody Act and also as part of the Justice for Victims of Trafficking Act of 2015, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14043h–5. Period of increase

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall provide an increase in the amount provided to a State under the covered formula grants under this part for a 2-year period.

(b) Limit

The Attorney General may not provide an increase in the amount provided to a State under the covered formula grants under this part more than 4 times.

(Pub. L. 114–22, title IV, §407, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 257.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Rape Survivor Child Custody Act and also as part of the Justice for Victims of Trafficking Act of 2015, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14043h–6. Allocation of increased formula grant funds

The Attorney General shall allocate an increase in the amount provided to a State under the covered formula grants under this part such that—

(1) 25 percent [1] the amount of the increase is provided under the program described in section 14043h(1)(A) of this title; and

(2) 75 percent [1] the amount of the increase is provided under the program described in section 14043h(1)(B) of this title.

(Pub. L. 114–22, title IV, §408, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 258.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Rape Survivor Child Custody Act and also as part of the Justice for Victims of Trafficking Act of 2015, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

[1] So in original. Probably should be followed by "of".

§14043h–7. Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2015 through 2019.

(Pub. L. 114–22, title IV, §409, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 258.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Rape Survivor Child Custody Act and also as part of the Justice for Victims of Trafficking Act of 2015, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

PART O—COMBATTING DOMESTIC TRAFFICKING IN PERSONS

§14044. Prevention of domestic trafficking in persons

(a) Program to reduce trafficking in persons and demand for commercial sex acts in the United States

(1) Comprehensive research and statistical review and analysis of incidents of trafficking in

persons and commercial sex acts

(A) In general

The Attorney General shall use available data from State and local authorities as well as research data to carry out a biennial comprehensive research and statistical review and analysis of severe forms of trafficking in persons, and a biennial comprehensive research and statistical review and analysis of sex trafficking and unlawful commercial sex acts in the United States, and shall submit to Congress separate biennial reports on the findings.

(B) Contents

The research and statistical review and analysis under this paragraph shall consist of two separate studies, utilizing the same statistical data where appropriate, as follows:

(i) The first study shall address severe forms of trafficking in persons in the United States and shall include, but need not be limited to—

(I) the estimated number and demographic characteristics of persons engaged in acts of severe forms of trafficking in persons; and

(II) the number of investigations, arrests, prosecutions, and incarcerations of persons engaged in acts of severe forms of trafficking in persons by States and their political subdivisions.

(ii) The second study shall address sex trafficking and unlawful commercial sex acts in the United States and shall include, but need not be limited to—

(I) the estimated number and demographic characteristics of persons engaged in sex trafficking and commercial sex acts, including purchasers of commercial sex acts;

(II) the estimated value in dollars of the commercial sex economy, including the estimated average annual personal income derived from acts of sex trafficking;

(III) the number of investigations, arrests, prosecutions, and incarcerations of persons engaged in sex trafficking and unlawful commercial sex acts, including purchasers of commercial sex acts, by States and their political subdivisions; and

(IV) a description of the differences in the enforcement of laws relating to unlawful commercial sex acts across the United States.

(2) Trafficking conference

(A) In general

The Attorney General, in consultation and cooperation with the Secretary of Health and Human Services, shall conduct an annual conference in each of the fiscal years 2006, 2007, and 2008, and thereafter conduct a biennial conference, addressing severe forms of trafficking in persons and commercial sex acts that occur, in whole or in part, within the territorial jurisdiction of the United States. At each such conference, the Attorney General, or his designee, shall—

(i) announce and evaluate the findings contained in the research and statistical reviews carried out under paragraph (1);

(ii) disseminate best methods and practices for enforcement of laws prohibiting acts of severe forms of trafficking in persons and other laws related to acts of trafficking in persons, including, but not limited to, best methods and practices for training State and local law enforcement personnel on the enforcement of such laws;

(iii) disseminate best methods and practices for training State and local law enforcement personnel on the enforcement of laws prohibiting sex trafficking and commercial sex acts, including, but not limited to, best methods for investigating and prosecuting exploiters and persons who solicit or purchase an unlawful commercial sex act; and

(iv) disseminate best methods and practices for training State and local law enforcement personnel on collaborating with social service providers and relevant nongovernmental organizations and establishing trust of persons subjected to commercial sex acts or severe forms of trafficking in persons.

(B) Participation

Each annual conference conducted under this paragraph shall involve the participation of persons with expertise or professional responsibilities with relevance to trafficking in persons, including, but not limited to—

(i) Federal Government officials, including law enforcement and prosecutorial officials;

(ii) State and local government officials, including law enforcement and prosecutorial officials;

(iii) persons who have been subjected to severe forms of trafficking in persons or commercial sex acts;

(iv) medical personnel;

(v) social service providers and relevant nongovernmental organizations; and

(vi) academic experts.

(C) Reports

The Attorney General and the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall prepare and post on the respective Internet Web sites of the Department of Justice and the Department of Health and Human Services reports on the findings and best practices identified and disseminated at the conference described in this paragraph.

(b) Omitted

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated—

(1) $1,500,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2011 to carry out the activities described in subsection (a)(1)(B)(i) and $1,500,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2011 to carry out the activities described in subsection (a)(1)(B)(ii); and

(2) $250,000 for each of the fiscal years 2014 through 2017 to carry out the activities described in subsection (a)(2).

(Pub. L. 109–164, title II, §201, Jan. 10, 2006, 119 Stat. 3567; Pub. L. 110–457, title III, §302(2), Dec. 23, 2008, 122 Stat. 5087; Pub. L. 113–4, title XII, §1252(2), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 156.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 201 of Pub. L. 109–164. Subsec. (b) of section 201 of Pub. L. 109–164 amended section 7104 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse.

Section was enacted as part of the Trafficking Victims Protection Reauthorization Act of 2005, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 113–4 substituted "$250,000 for each of the fiscal years 2014 through 2017" for "$1,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2011".

2008—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 110–457, §302(2)(A), substituted "$1,500,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2011" for "$2,500,000 for each of the fiscal years 2006 and 2007" in two places.

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 110–457, §302(2)(B), which directed substitution of "2008 through 2011" for "2006 and 2007", was executed by making the substitution for "2006 through 2007", to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

RECOMMENDATIONS TO PREVENT SEX TRAFFICKING OF INDIAN WOMEN

Pub. L. 111–211, title II, §264, July 29, 2010, 124 Stat. 2300, provided that: "Any report of the Secretary of Health and Human Services to Congress on the development of Indian victim services and victim advocate training programs shall include any recommendations that the Secretary determines to be necessary to prevent the sex trafficking of Indian women."

§14044a. Establishment of a grant program to develop, expand, and strengthen assistance programs for certain persons subject to trafficking

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Assistant Secretary

The term "Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary for Children and Families of the Department of Health and Human Services.

(2) Assistant Attorney General

The term "Assistant Attorney General" means the Assistant Attorney General for the Office of Justice Programs of the Department of Justice.

(3) Eligible entity

The term "eligible entity" means a State or unit of local government that—

(A) has significant criminal activity involving sex trafficking of minors;

(B) has demonstrated cooperation between Federal, State, local, and, where applicable, tribal law enforcement agencies, prosecutors, and social service providers in addressing sex trafficking of minors;

(C) has developed a workable, multi-disciplinary plan to combat sex trafficking of minors, including—

(i) building or establishing a residential care facility for minor victims of sex trafficking;

(ii) the provision of rehabilitative care to minor victims of sex trafficking;

(iii) the provision of specialized training for law enforcement officers and social service providers for all forms of sex trafficking, with a focus on sex trafficking of minors;

(iv) prevention, deterrence, and prosecution of offenses involving sex trafficking of minors;

(v) cooperation or referral agreements with organizations providing outreach or other related services to runaway and homeless youth; and

(vi) law enforcement protocols or procedures to screen all individuals arrested for prostitution, whether adult or minor, for victimization by sex trafficking and by other crimes, such as sexual assault and domestic violence; and

(D) provides assurance that a minor victim of sex trafficking shall not be required to collaborate with law enforcement to have access to residential care or services provided with a grant under this section.

(4) Minor victim of sex trafficking

The term "minor victim of sex trafficking" means an individual who—

(A) is younger than 18 years of age, and is a victim of an offense described in section 1591(a) of title 18 or a comparable State law; or

(B)(i) is not younger than 18 years of age nor older than 20 years of age;

(ii) before the individual reached 18 years of age, was described in subparagraph (A); and

(iii) was receiving shelter or services as a minor victim of sex trafficking.

(5) Qualified nongovernmental organization

The term "qualified nongovernmental organization" means an organization that—

(A) is not a State or unit of local government, or an agency of a State or unit of local government;

(B) has demonstrated experience providing services to victims of sex trafficking or related populations (such as runaway and homeless youth), or employs staff specialized in the treatment of sex trafficking victims; and

(C) demonstrates a plan to sustain the provision of services beyond the period of a grant awarded under this section.

(6) Sex trafficking of a minor

The term "sex trafficking of a minor" means an offense described in section 1591(a) of title 18 or a comparable State law, against a minor.

(b) Sex trafficking block grants

(1) Grants authorized

(A) In general

The Assistant Attorney General, in consultation with the Assistant Secretary, may make block grants to 4 eligible entities located in different regions of the United States to combat sex trafficking of minors.

(B) Requirement

Not fewer than 1 of the block grants made under subparagraph (A) shall be awarded to an eligible entity with a State population of less than 5,000,000.

(C) Grant amount

Subject to the availability of appropriations under subsection (g) to carry out this section, each grant made under this section shall be for an amount not less than $1,500,000 and not greater than $2,000,000.

(D) Duration

(i) In general

A grant made under this section shall be for a period of 1 year.

(ii) Renewal

(I) In general

The Assistant Attorney General may renew a grant under this section for up to 3 1-year periods.

(II) Priority

In making grants in any fiscal year after the first fiscal year in which grants are made under this section, the Assistant Attorney General shall give priority to an eligible entity that received a grant in the preceding fiscal year and is eligible for renewal under this subparagraph, taking into account any evaluation of the eligible entity conducted under paragraph (4), if available.

(E) Consultation

In carrying out this section, the Assistant Attorney General shall consult with the Assistant Secretary with respect to—

(i) evaluations of grant recipients under paragraph (4);

(ii) avoiding unintentional duplication of grants; and

(iii) any other areas of shared concern.

(2) Use of funds

(A) Allocation

Not less than 67 percent of each grant made under paragraph (1) shall be used by the eligible entity to provide residential care and services (as described in clauses (i) through (iv) of subparagraph (B)) to minor victims of sex trafficking through qualified nongovernmental organizations.

(B) Authorized activities

Grants awarded pursuant to paragraph (2) may be used for—

(i) providing residential care to minor victims of sex trafficking, including temporary or long-term placement as appropriate;

(ii) providing 24-hour emergency social services response for minor victims of sex trafficking;

(iii) providing minor victims of sex trafficking with clothing and other daily necessities needed to keep such victims from returning to living on the street;

(iv) case management services for minor victims of sex trafficking;

(v) mental health counseling for minor victims of sex trafficking, including specialized counseling and substance abuse treatment;

(vi) legal services for minor victims of sex trafficking;

(vii) specialized training for social service providers, public sector personnel, and private sector personnel likely to encounter sex trafficking victims on issues related to the sex trafficking of minors and severe forms of trafficking in persons;

(viii) outreach and education programs to provide information about deterrence and prevention of sex trafficking of minors;

(ix) programs to provide treatment to individuals charged or cited with purchasing or attempting to purchase sex acts in cases where—

(I) a treatment program can be mandated as a condition of a sentence, fine, suspended sentence, or probation, or is an appropriate alternative to criminal prosecution; and

(II) the individual was not charged with purchasing or attempting to purchase sex acts with a minor; and

(x) screening and referral of minor victims of severe forms of trafficking in persons.

(3) Application

(A) In general

Each eligible entity desiring a grant under this section shall submit an application to the Assistant Attorney General at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such information as the Assistant Attorney General may reasonably require.

(B) Contents

Each application submitted pursuant to subparagraph (A) shall—

(i) describe the activities for which assistance under this section is sought; and

(ii) provide such additional assurances as the Assistant Attorney General determines to be essential to ensure compliance with the requirements of this section.

(4) Evaluation

The Assistant Attorney General shall enter into a contract with an academic or non-profit organization that has experience in issues related to sex trafficking of minors and evaluation of grant programs to conduct an annual evaluation of each grant made under this section to determine the impact and effectiveness of programs funded with the grant.

(c) Mandatory exclusion

An eligible entity that receives a grant under this section that is found to have utilized grant funds for any unauthorized expenditure or otherwise unallowable cost shall not be eligible for any grant funds awarded under the grant for 2 fiscal years following the year in which the unauthorized expenditure or unallowable cost is reported.

(d) Compliance requirement

An eligible entity shall not be eligible to receive a grant under this section if, during the 5 fiscal years before the eligible entity submits an application for the grant, the eligible entity has been found to have violated the terms or conditions of a Government grant program by utilizing grant funds for unauthorized expenditures or otherwise unallowable costs.

(e) Administrative cap

The cost of administering the grants authorized by this section shall not exceed 3 percent of the total amount appropriated to carry out this section.

(f) Audit requirement

For fiscal years 2016 and 2017, the Inspector General of the Department of Justice shall conduct an audit of all 4 eligible entities that receive block grants under this section.

(g) Match requirement

An eligible entity that receives a grant under this section shall provide a non-Federal match in an amount equal to not less than—

(1) 15 percent of the grant during the first year;
(2) 25 percent of the grant during the first renewal period;
(3) 40 percent of the grant during the second renewal period; and
(4) 50 percent of the grant during the third renewal period.

(h) No limitation on section 14044c grants

An entity that applies for a grant under section 14044c of this title is not prohibited from also applying for a grant under this section.

(i) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $8,000,000 to the Attorney General for each of the fiscal years 2014 through 2017 to carry out this section.

(j) GAO evaluation

Not later than 30 months after March 7, 2013, the Comptroller General of the United States shall submit a report to Congress that contains—

(1) an evaluation of the impact of this section in aiding minor victims of sex trafficking in the jurisdiction of the entity receiving the grant; and
(2) recommendations, if any, regarding any legislative or administrative action the Comptroller General determines appropriate.

(Pub. L. 109–164, title II, §202, Jan. 10, 2006, 119 Stat. 3569; Pub. L. 110–457, title III, §302(3), Dec. 23, 2008, 122 Stat. 5087; Pub. L. 113–4, title XII, §1241(a), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 149.)

AMENDMENT OF SECTION

For termination of amendment by section 1241(b) of Pub. L. 113–4, see Effective and Termination Dates of 2013 Amendment note below.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Trafficking Victims Protection Reauthorization Act of 2005, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Pub. L. 113–4 temporarily amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section consisted of subsecs. (a) to (d) relating to grant programs to develop, expand, and strengthen assistance programs for certain persons subject to trafficking. See Effective and Termination Dates of 2013 Amendment note below.

2008—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 110–457 substituted "$8,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2011" for "$10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2006 and 2007".

EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 113–4, title XII, §1241(b), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 153, provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall be effective during the 4-year period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act [March 7, 2013]."

§14044b. Victim-centered child human trafficking deterrence block grant program

(a) Grants authorized

The Attorney General may award block grants to an eligible entity to develop, improve, or expand domestic child human trafficking deterrence programs that assist law enforcement officers, prosecutors, judicial officials, and qualified victims' services organizations in collaborating to rescue and restore the lives of victims, while investigating and prosecuting offenses involving child human trafficking.

(b) Authorized activities

Grants awarded under subsection (a) may be used for—

(1) the establishment or enhancement of specialized training programs for law enforcement officers, first responders, health care officials, child welfare officials, juvenile justice personnel, prosecutors, and judicial personnel to—

(A) identify victims and acts of child human trafficking;

(B) address the unique needs of child victims of human trafficking;

(C) facilitate the rescue of child victims of human trafficking;

(D) investigate and prosecute acts of human trafficking, including the soliciting, patronizing, or purchasing of commercial sex acts from children, as well as training to build cases against complex criminal networks involved in child human trafficking; and

(E) utilize, implement, and provide education on safe harbor laws enacted by States, aimed at preventing the criminalization and prosecution of child sex trafficking victims for prostitution offenses, and other laws aimed at the investigation and prosecution of child human trafficking;

(2) the establishment or enhancement of dedicated anti-trafficking law enforcement units and task forces to investigate child human trafficking offenses and to rescue victims, including—

(A) funding salaries, in whole or in part, for law enforcement officers, including patrol officers, detectives, and investigators, except that the percentage of the salary of the law enforcement officer paid for by funds from a grant awarded under this section shall not be more than the percentage of the officer's time on duty that is dedicated to working on cases involving child human trafficking;

(B) investigation expenses for cases involving child human trafficking, including—

(i) wire taps;

(ii) consultants with expertise specific to cases involving child human trafficking;

(iii) travel; and

(iv) other technical assistance expenditures;

(C) dedicated anti-trafficking prosecution units, including the funding of salaries for State and local prosecutors, including assisting in paying trial expenses for prosecution of child human trafficking offenders, except that the percentage of the total salary of a State or local prosecutor that is paid using an award under this section shall be not more than the percentage of the total number of hours worked by the prosecutor that is spent working on cases involving child human trafficking;

(D) the establishment of child human trafficking victim witness safety, assistance, and relocation programs that encourage cooperation with law enforcement investigations of crimes of child human trafficking by leveraging existing resources and delivering child human trafficking victims' services through coordination with—

(i) child advocacy centers;

(ii) social service agencies;

(iii) State governmental health service agencies;

(iv) housing agencies;

(v) legal services agencies; and

(vi) nongovernmental organizations and shelter service providers with substantial experience in delivering wrap-around services to victims of child human trafficking; and

(E) the establishment or enhancement of other necessary victim assistance programs or personnel, such as victim or child advocates, child-protective services, child forensic interviews, or other necessary service providers;

(3) activities of law enforcement agencies to find homeless and runaway youth, including salaries and associated expenses for retired Federal law enforcement officers assisting the law enforcement agencies in finding homeless and runaway youth; and

(4) the establishment or enhancement of problem solving court programs for trafficking victims that include—

(A) mandatory and regular training requirements for judicial officials involved in the administration or operation of the court program described under this paragraph;

(B) continuing judicial supervision of victims of child human trafficking, including case worker or child welfare supervision in collaboration with judicial officers, who have been identified by a law enforcement or judicial officer as a potential victim of child human trafficking, regardless of whether the victim has been charged with a crime related to human trafficking;

(C) the development of a specialized and individualized, court-ordered treatment program for identified victims of child human trafficking, including—

(i) State-administered outpatient treatment;
(ii) life skills training;
(iii) housing placement;
(iv) vocational training;
(v) education;
(vi) family support services; and
(vii) job placement;

(D) centralized case management involving the consolidation of all of each child human trafficking victim's cases and offenses, and the coordination of all trafficking victim treatment programs and social services;

(E) regular and mandatory court appearances by the victim during the duration of the treatment program for purposes of ensuring compliance and effectiveness;

(F) the ultimate dismissal of relevant non-violent criminal charges against the victim, where such victim successfully complies with the terms of the court-ordered treatment program; and

(G) collaborative efforts with child advocacy centers, child welfare agencies, shelters, and nongovernmental organizations with substantial experience in delivering wrap-around services to victims of child human trafficking to provide services to victims and encourage cooperation with law enforcement.

(c) Application

(1) In general

An eligible entity shall submit an application to the Attorney General for a grant under this section in such form and manner as the Attorney General may require.

(2) Required information

An application submitted under this subsection shall—

(A) describe the activities for which assistance under this section is sought;

(B) include a detailed plan for the use of funds awarded under the grant;

(C) provide such additional information and assurances as the Attorney General determines to be necessary to ensure compliance with the requirements of this section; and

(D) disclose—

(i) any other grant funding from the Department of Justice or from any other Federal department or agency for purposes similar to those described in subsection (b) for which the eligible entity has applied, and which application is pending on the date of the submission of an application under this section; and

(ii) any other such grant funding that the eligible entity has received during the 5-year period ending on the date of the submission of an application under this section.

(3) Preference

In reviewing applications submitted in accordance with paragraphs (1) and (2), the Attorney General shall give preference to grant applications if—

(A) the application includes a plan to use awarded funds to engage in all activities described

under paragraphs (1) through (3) of subsection (b); or

(B) the application includes a plan by the State or unit of local government to continue funding of all activities funded by the award after the expiration of the award.

(4) Eligible entities soliciting data on child human trafficking

No eligible entity shall be disadvantaged in being awarded a grant under subsection (a) on the grounds that the eligible entity has only recently begun soliciting data on child human trafficking.

(d) Duration and renewal of award

(1) In general

A grant under this section shall expire 3 years after the date of award of the grant.

(2) Renewal

A grant under this section shall be renewable not more than 2 times and for a period of not greater than 2 years.

(e) Evaluation

The Attorney General shall—

(1) enter into a contract with a nongovernmental organization, including an academic or nonprofit organization, that has experience with issues related to child human trafficking and evaluation of grant programs to conduct periodic evaluations of grants made under this section to determine the impact and effectiveness of programs funded with grants awarded under this section;

(2) instruct the Inspector General of the Department of Justice to review evaluations issued under paragraph (1) to determine the methodological and statistical validity of the evaluations; and

(3) submit the results of any evaluation conducted pursuant to paragraph (1) to—

(A) the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate; and

(B) the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives.

(f) Mandatory exclusion

An eligible entity awarded funds under this section that is found to have used grant funds for any unauthorized expenditure or otherwise unallowable cost shall not be eligible for any grant funds awarded under the block grant for 2 fiscal years following the year in which the unauthorized expenditure or unallowable cost is reported.

(g) Compliance requirement

An eligible entity shall not be eligible to receive a grant under this section if within the 5 fiscal years before submitting an application for a grant under this section, the grantee has been found to have violated the terms or conditions of a Government grant program by utilizing grant funds for unauthorized expenditures or otherwise unallowable costs.

(h) Administrative cap

The cost of administering the grants authorized by this section shall not exceed 5 percent of the total amount expended to carry out this section.

(i) Federal share

The Federal share of the cost of a program funded by a grant awarded under this section shall be—

(1) 70 percent in the first year;

(2) 60 percent in the second year; and

(3) 50 percent in the third year, and in all subsequent years.

(j) Authorization of funding; fully offset

For purposes of carrying out this section, the Attorney General, in consultation with the Secretary of Health and Human Services, is authorized to award not more than $7,000,000 of the funds available in the Domestic Trafficking Victims' Fund, established under section 3014 of title 18, for each of fiscal years 2016 through 2020.

(k) Definitions

In this section—

(1) the term "child" means a person under the age of 18;

(2) the term "child advocacy center" means a center created under subtitle A of the Victims of Child Abuse Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 13001 et seq.);

(3) the term "child human trafficking" means 1 or more severe forms of trafficking in persons (as defined in section 7102 of title 22) involving a victim who is a child; and

(4) the term "eligible entity" means a State or unit of local government that—

(A) has significant criminal activity involving child human trafficking;

(B) has demonstrated cooperation between Federal, State, local, and, where applicable, tribal law enforcement agencies, prosecutors, and social service providers in addressing child human trafficking;

(C) has developed a workable, multi-disciplinary plan to combat child human trafficking, including—

(i) the establishment of a shelter for victims of child human trafficking, through existing or new facilities;

(ii) the provision of trauma-informed, gender-responsive rehabilitative care to victims of child human trafficking;

(iii) the provision of specialized training for law enforcement officers and social service providers for all forms of human trafficking, with a focus on domestic child human trafficking;

(iv) prevention, deterrence, and prosecution of offenses involving child human trafficking, including soliciting, patronizing, or purchasing human acts with children;

(v) cooperation or referral agreements with organizations providing outreach or other related services to runaway and homeless youth;

(vi) law enforcement protocols or procedures to screen all individuals arrested for prostitution, whether adult or child, for victimization by sex trafficking and by other crimes, such as sexual assault and domestic violence; and

(vii) cooperation or referral agreements with State child welfare agencies and child advocacy centers; and

(D) provides an assurance that, under the plan under subparagraph (C), a victim of child human trafficking shall not be required to collaborate with law enforcement officers to have access to any shelter or services provided with a grant under this section.

(l) Grant accountability; specialized victims' service requirement

No grant funds under this section may be awarded or transferred to any entity unless such entity has demonstrated substantial experience providing services to victims of human trafficking or related populations (such as runaway and homeless youth), or employs staff specialized in the treatment of human trafficking victims.

(Pub. L. 109–164, title II, §203, Jan. 10, 2006, 119 Stat. 3570; Pub. L. 110–457, title III, §302(4), Dec. 23, 2008, 122 Stat. 5087; Pub. L. 114–22, title I, §103(a), May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 231.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Victims of Child Abuse Act of 1990, referred to in subsec. (k)(2), is Pub. L. 101–647, title II, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4792. Subtitle A of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§13001 et seq.) of chapter 132 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13001 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Trafficking Victims Protection Reauthorization Act of 2005, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Pub. L. 114–22 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section related to pilot program for

protection of juvenile victims of trafficking in persons.

2008—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 110–457 substituted "2008 through 2011" for "2006 and 2007".

§14044b–1. Grant accountability

(a) Definition

In this section, the term "covered grant" means a grant awarded by the Attorney General under section 14044b of this title, as amended by section 103.

(b) Accountability

All covered grants shall be subject to the following accountability provisions:

(1) Audit requirement

(A) In general

Beginning in the first fiscal year beginning after May 29, 2015, and in each fiscal year thereafter, the Inspector General of the Department of Justice shall conduct audits of recipients of a covered grant to prevent waste, fraud, and abuse of funds by grantees. The Inspector General shall determine the appropriate number of grantees to be audited each year.

(B) Definition

In this paragraph, the term "unresolved audit finding" means a finding in the final audit report of the Inspector General that the audited grantee has utilized grant funds for an unauthorized expenditure or otherwise unallowable cost that is not closed or resolved within 12 months from the date when the final audit report is issued.

(C) Mandatory exclusion

A recipient of a covered grant that is found to have an unresolved audit finding shall not be eligible to receive a covered grant during the following 2 fiscal years.

(D) Priority

In awarding covered grants the Attorney General shall give priority to eligible entities that did not have an unresolved audit finding during the 3 fiscal years prior to submitting an application for a covered grant.

(E) Reimbursement

If an entity is awarded a covered grant during the 2-fiscal-year period in which the entity is barred from receiving grants under subparagraph (C), the Attorney General shall—

(i) deposit an amount equal to the grant funds that were improperly awarded to the grantee into the General Fund of the Treasury; and

(ii) seek to recoup the costs of the repayment to the fund from the grant recipient that was erroneously awarded grant funds.

(2) Nonprofit organization requirements

(A) Definition

For purposes of this paragraph and covered grants, the term "nonprofit organization" means an organization that is described in section 501(c)(3) of title 26 and is exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of title 26.

(B) Prohibition

The Attorney General may not award a covered grant to a nonprofit organization that holds money in offshore accounts for the purpose of avoiding paying the tax described in section 511(a) of title 26.

(C) Disclosure

Each nonprofit organization that is awarded a covered grant and uses the procedures

prescribed in regulations to create a rebuttable presumption of reasonableness for the compensation of its officers, directors, trustees and key employees, shall disclose to the Attorney General, in the application for the grant, the process for determining such compensation, including the independent persons involved in reviewing and approving such compensation, the comparability data used, and contemporaneous substantiation of the deliberation and decision. Upon request, the Attorney General shall make the information disclosed under this subsection available for public inspection.

(3) Conference expenditures

(A) Limitation

No amounts transferred to the Department of Justice under this title,[1] or the amendments made by this title,[1] may be used by the Attorney General, or by any individual or organization awarded discretionary funds through a cooperative agreement under this title,[1] or the amendments made by this title,[1] to host or support any expenditure for conferences that uses more than $20,000 in Department funds, unless the Deputy Attorney General or such Assistant Attorney Generals, Directors, or principal deputies as the Deputy Attorney General may designate, provides prior written authorization that the funds may be expended to host a conference.

(B) Written approval

Written approval under subparagraph (A) shall include a written estimate of all costs associated with the conference, including the cost of all food and beverages, audiovisual equipment, honoraria for speakers, and any entertainment.

(C) Report

The Deputy Attorney General shall submit an annual report to the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives on all approved conference expenditures referenced in this paragraph.

(D) Annual certification

Beginning in the first fiscal year beginning after May 29, 2015, the Attorney General shall submit, to the Committee on the Judiciary and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives, an annual certification that—

(i) all audits issued by the Office of the Inspector General under paragraph (1) have been completed and reviewed by the appropriate Assistant Attorney General or Director;

(ii) all mandatory exclusions required under paragraph (1)(C) have been issued;

(iii) all reimbursements required under paragraph (1)(E) have been made; and

(iv) includes a list of any grant recipients excluded under paragraph (1) from the previous year.

(4) Prohibition on lobbying activity

(A) In general

Amounts awarded under this title,[1] or any amendments made by this title,[1] may not be utilized by any grant recipient to—

(i) lobby any representative of the Department of Justice regarding the award of grant funding; or

(ii) lobby any representative of a Federal, State, local, or tribal government regarding the award of grant funding.

(B) Penalty

If the Attorney General determines that any recipient of a covered grant has violated subparagraph (A), the Attorney General shall—

(i) require the grant recipient to repay the grant in full; and

(ii) prohibit the grant recipient from receiving another covered grant for not less than 5 years.

(Pub. L. 114–22, title I, §117, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 245.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 103, referred to in subsec. (a), means section 103 of Pub. L. 114–22.

This title, referred to in subsec. (b)(3)(A), (4)(A), is title I of Pub. L. 114–22, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 228. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Justice for Victims of Trafficking Act of 2015, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§14044c. Enhancing State and local efforts to combat trafficking in persons

(a) Establishment of grant program for law enforcement

(1) In general

The Attorney General may make grants to States and local law enforcement agencies to establish, develop, expand, or strengthen programs—

(A) to investigate and prosecute acts of severe forms of trafficking in persons, and related offenses that occur, in whole or in part, within the territorial jurisdiction of the United States;

(B) to train law enforcement personnel how to identify victims of severe forms of trafficking in persons and related offenses;

(C) to investigate and prosecute persons who engage in the purchase of commercial sex acts and prioritize the investigations and prosecutions of those cases involving minor victims;

(D) to educate persons charged with, or convicted of, purchasing or attempting to purchase commercial sex acts; and

(E) to educate and train law enforcement personnel in how to establish trust of persons subjected to trafficking and encourage cooperation with prosecution efforts.

(2) Definition

In this subsection, the term "related offenses" includes violations of tax laws, transacting in illegally derived proceeds, money laundering, racketeering, and other violations of criminal laws committed in connection with an act of sex trafficking or a severe form of trafficking in persons.

(b) Multi-disciplinary approach required

Grants under subsection (a) may be made only for programs in which the State or local law enforcement agency works collaboratively with social service providers and relevant nongovernmental organizations, including organizations with experience in the delivery of services to persons who are the subject of trafficking in persons.

(c) Limitation on Federal share

The Federal share of a grant made under this section may not exceed 75 percent of the total costs of the projects described in the application submitted.

(d) No limitation on section 14044a grant applications

An entity that applies for a grant under section 14044a of this title is not prohibited from also applying for a grant under this section.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Attorney General to carry out this section $10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2014 through 2017.

(f) GAO evaluation and report

Not later than 30 months after March 7, 2013, the Comptroller General of the United States shall conduct a study of and submit to Congress a report evaluating the impact of this section on—

(1) the ability of law enforcement personnel to identify victims of severe forms of trafficking in persons and investigate and prosecute cases against offenders, including offenders who engage in the purchasing of commercial sex acts with a minor; and

(2) recommendations, if any, regarding any legislative or administrative action the Comptroller General determines appropriate to improve the ability described in paragraph (1).

(Pub. L. 109–164, title II, §204, Jan. 10, 2006, 119 Stat. 3571; Pub. L. 110–457, title III, §302(5), Dec. 23, 2008, 122 Stat. 5087; Pub. L. 113–4, title XII, §1242, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 153.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Trafficking Victims Protection Reauthorization Act of 2005, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 113–4, §1242(1)(A), struck out ", which involve United States citizens, or aliens admitted for permanent residence, and" after "related offenses".

Subsec. (a)(1)(B) to (E). Pub. L. 113–4, §1242(1)(B)–(D), added subpar. (B), redesignated former subpars. (B) to (D) as (C) to (E), respectively, and in subpar. (C) inserted "and prioritize the investigations and prosecutions of those cases involving minor victims" after "commercial sex acts".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 113–4, §1242(3), added subsec. (d). Former subsec. (d) redesignated (e).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 113–4, §1242(2), (4), redesignated subsec. (d) as (e) and substituted "$10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2014 through 2017" for "$20,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2011".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 113–4, §1242(5), added subsec. (f).

2008—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 110–457 substituted "$20,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2011" for "$25,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2006 and 2007".

§14044d. Senior Policy Operating Group

Each Federal department or agency involved in grant activities related to combatting trafficking or providing services to persons subjected to trafficking inside the United States shall apprise the Senior Policy Operating Group established by section 105(f) [1] of the Victims of Trafficking and Violence Protection Act of 2000 (22 U.S.C. 7103(f)), under the procedures established by the Senior Policy Operating Group, of such activities of the department or agency to ensure that the activities are consistent with the purposes of the Trafficking Victims Protection Act of 2000 (22 U.S.C. 7101 et seq.).

(Pub. L. 109–164, title II, §206, Jan. 10, 2006, 119 Stat. 3571; Pub. L. 110–457, title II, §233, Dec. 23, 2008, 122 Stat. 5074.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 105(f) of the Victims of Trafficking and Violence Protection Act of 2000, referred to in text, was redesignated 105(g) of the Victims of Trafficking and Violence Protection Act of 2000 by Pub. L. 113–4, title XII, §1201(3), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 136.

The Trafficking Victims Protection Act of 2000, referred to in text, is div. A of Pub. L. 106–386, Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1466, which is classified principally to chapter 78 (§7101 et seq.) of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7101 of Title 22 and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Trafficking Victims Protection Reauthorization Act of 2005, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–457 struck out ", as the department or agency determines appropriate," before "apprise

the Senior Policy Operating Group".

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§14044e. Definitions

In this part:

(1) Severe forms of trafficking in persons

The term "severe forms of trafficking in persons" has the meaning given the term in section 7102(9) of title 22.

(2) Sex trafficking

The term "sex trafficking" has the meaning given the term in section 7102(10) of title 22.

(3) Commercial sex act

The term "commercial sex act" has the meaning given the term in section 7102(4) of title 22.

(Pub. L. 109–164, title II, §207, Jan. 10, 2006, 119 Stat. 3572; Pub. L. 113–4, title XII, §1212(b)(2)(C), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 144.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title II of Pub. L. 109–164, Jan. 10, 2006, 119 Stat. 3567, which enacted sections 14044 to 14044e of this title and amended sections 7103 and 7104 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Trafficking Victims Protection Reauthorization Act of 2005, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Par. (1). Pub. L. 113–4, §1212(b)(2)(C)(i), substituted "section 7102(9)" for "section 7102(8)".
Par. (2). Pub. L. 113–4, §1212(b)(2)(C)(ii), substituted "section 7102(10)" for "section 7102(9)".
Par. (3). Pub. L. 113–4, §1212(b)(2)(C)(iii), substituted "section 7102(4)" for "section 7102(3)".

§14044f. Grants for law enforcement training programs

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Act of trafficking

The term "act of trafficking" means an act or practice described in paragraph (9) of section 7102 of title 22.

(2) Eligible entity

The term "eligible entity" means a State or a local government.

(3) State

The term "State" means any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, the United States Virgin Islands, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, and any other territory or possession of the United States.

(4) Victim of trafficking

The term "victim of trafficking" means a person subjected to an act of trafficking.

(b) Grants authorized

The Attorney General may award grants to eligible entities to provide training to State and local law enforcement personnel to identify and protect victims of trafficking.

(c) Use of funds

A grant awarded under this section shall be used to—

(1) train law enforcement personnel to identify and protect victims of trafficking, including training such personnel to utilize Federal, State, or local resources to assist victims of trafficking;

(2) train law enforcement or State or local prosecutors to identify, investigate, or prosecute acts of trafficking; or

(3) train law enforcement or State or local prosecutors to utilize laws that prohibit acts of trafficking and to assist in the development of State and local laws to prohibit acts of trafficking.

(d) Restrictions

(1) Administrative expenses

An eligible entity that receives a grant under this section may use not more than 5 percent of the total amount of such grant for administrative expenses.

(2) Nonexclusivity

Nothing in this section may be construed to restrict the ability of an eligible entity to apply for or obtain funding from any other source to carry out the training described in subsection (c).

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2007 through 2011 to carry out the provisions of this section.

(Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §111, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2984; Pub. L. 113–4, title XII, §1212(b)(2)(D), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 144.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Violence Against Women and Department of Justice Reauthorization Act of 2005, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 113–4 substituted "paragraph (9)" for "paragraph (8)".

§14044g. Combat Human Trafficking Act

(a) Short title

This section may be cited as the "Combat Human Trafficking Act of 2015".

(b) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Commercial sex act; severe forms of trafficking in persons; state; task force

The terms "commercial sex act", "severe forms of trafficking in persons", "State", and "Task Force" have the meanings given those terms in section 7102 of title 22.

(2) Covered offender

The term "covered offender" means an individual who obtains, patronizes, or solicits a commercial sex act involving a person subject to severe forms of trafficking in persons.

(3) Covered offense

The term "covered offense" means the provision, obtaining, patronizing, or soliciting of a commercial sex act involving a person subject to severe forms of trafficking in persons.

(4) Federal law enforcement officer

The term "Federal law enforcement officer" has the meaning given the term in section 115 of title 18.

(5) Local law enforcement officer

The term "local law enforcement officer" means any officer, agent, or employee of a unit of local government authorized by law or by a local government agency to engage in or supervise the prevention, detection, investigation, or prosecution of any violation of criminal law.

(6) State law enforcement officer

The term "State law enforcement officer" means any officer, agent, or employee of a State authorized by law or by a State government agency to engage in or supervise the prevention, detection, investigation, or prosecution of any violation of criminal law.

(c) Department of Justice training and policy for law enforcement officers, prosecutors, and judges

(1) Training

(A) Law enforcement officers

The Attorney General shall ensure that each anti-human trafficking program operated by the Department of Justice, including each anti-human trafficking training program for Federal, State, or local law enforcement officers, includes technical training on—

(i) effective methods for investigating and prosecuting covered offenders; and

(ii) facilitating the provision of physical and mental health services by health care providers to persons subject to severe forms of trafficking in persons.

(B) Federal prosecutors

The Attorney General shall ensure that each anti-human trafficking program operated by the Department of Justice for United States attorneys or other Federal prosecutors includes training on seeking restitution for offenses under chapter 77 of title 18 to ensure that each United States attorney or other Federal prosecutor, upon obtaining a conviction for such an offense, requests a specific amount of restitution for each victim of the offense without regard to whether the victim requests restitution.

(C) Judges

The Federal Judicial Center shall provide training to judges relating to the application of section 1593 of title 18 with respect to ordering restitution for victims of offenses under chapter 77 of such title.

(2) Policy for Federal law enforcement officers

The Attorney General shall ensure that Federal law enforcement officers are engaged in activities, programs, or operations involving the detection, investigation, and prosecution of covered offenders.

(d) Omitted

(e) Bureau of Justice Statistics report on State enforcement of human trafficking prohibitions

The Director of the Bureau of Justice Statistics shall—

(1) prepare an annual report on—

(A) the rates of—

(i) arrest of individuals by State law enforcement officers for a covered offense;

(ii) prosecution (including specific charges) of individuals in State court systems for a covered offense; and

(iii) conviction of individuals in State court systems for a covered offense; and

(B) sentences imposed on individuals convicted in State court systems for a covered offense; and

(2) submit the annual report prepared under paragraph (1) to—
(A) the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives;
(B) the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate;
(C) the Task Force;
(D) the Senior Policy Operating Group established under section 7103(g) of title 22; and
(E) the Attorney General.

(Pub. L. 114–22, title I, §114, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 241.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as the Combat Human Trafficking Act of 2015 and as part of the Justice for Victims of Trafficking Act of 2015, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

Section is comprised of section 114 of Pub. L. 114–22. Subsec. (d) of section 114 of Pub. L. 114–22 amended section 3583(k) of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

USING EXISTING TASK FORCES AND COMPONENTS TO TARGET OFFENDERS WHO EXPLOIT CHILDREN

Pub. L. 114–22, title I, §110, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 239, provided that: "Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [May 29, 2015], the Attorney General shall ensure that—

"(1) all task forces and working groups within the Innocence Lost National Initiative engage in activities, programs, or operations to increase the investigative capabilities of State and local law enforcement officers in the detection, investigation, and prosecution of persons who patronize, or solicit children for sex; and

"(2) all components and task forces with jurisdiction to detect, investigate, and prosecute cases of child labor trafficking engage in activities, programs, or operations to increase the capacity of such components to deter and punish child labor trafficking."

§14044h. Establishing a national strategy to combat human trafficking

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall implement and maintain a National Strategy for Combating Human Trafficking (referred to in this section as the "National Strategy") in accordance with this section.

(b) Required contents of National Strategy

The National Strategy shall include the following:

(1) Integrated Federal, State, local, and tribal efforts to investigate and prosecute human trafficking cases, including—

(A) the development by each United States attorney, in consultation with State, local, and tribal government agencies, of a district-specific strategic plan to coordinate the identification of victims and the investigation and prosecution of human trafficking crimes;

(B) the appointment of not fewer than 1 assistant United States attorney in each district dedicated to the prosecution of human trafficking cases or responsible for implementing the National Strategy;

(C) the participation in any Federal, State, local, or tribal human trafficking task force operating in the district of the United States attorney; and

(D) any other efforts intended to enhance the level of coordination and cooperation, as determined by the Attorney General.

(2) Case coordination within the Department of Justice, including specific integration, coordination, and collaboration, as appropriate, on human trafficking investigations between and among the United States attorneys, the Human Trafficking Prosecution Unit, the Child Exploitation and Obscenity Section, and the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

(3) Annual budget priorities and Federal efforts dedicated to preventing and combating human

trafficking, including resources dedicated to the Human Trafficking Prosecution Unit, the Child Exploitation and Obscenity Section, the Federal Bureau of Investigation, and all other entities that receive Federal support that have a goal or mission to combat the exploitation of adults and children.

(4) An ongoing assessment of the future trends, challenges, and opportunities, including new investigative strategies, techniques, and technologies, that will enhance Federal, State, local, and tribal efforts to combat human trafficking.

(5) Encouragement of cooperation, coordination, and mutual support between private sector and other entities and organizations and Federal agencies to combat human trafficking, including the involvement of State, local, and tribal government agencies to the extent Federal programs are involved.

(Pub. L. 114–22, title VI, §606, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 260.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Justice for Victims of Trafficking Act of 2015, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

PART P—MISCELLANEOUS AUTHORITIES

§14045. Grants for outreach and services to underserved populations

(a) Grants authorized

(1) In general

Of the amounts appropriated under the grant programs identified in paragraph (2), the Attorney General shall take 2 percent of such appropriated amounts and combine them to award grants to eligible entities described in subsection (b) of this section to develop and implement outreach strategies targeted at adult or youth victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking in underserved populations and to provide victim services to meet the needs of adult and youth victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking in underserved populations. The requirements of the grant programs identified in paragraph (2) shall not apply to this grant program.

(2) Programs covered

The programs covered by paragraph (1) are the programs carried out under the following provisions:

(A) Section 3796gg of this title (Grants to Combat Violent Crimes Against Women).

(B) Section 3796hh of this title (Grants to Encourage Arrest Policies and Enforcement of Protection Orders Program).

(b) Eligible entities

Eligible entities under this section are—

(1) population specific organizations that have demonstrated experience and expertise in providing population specific services in the relevant underserved communities, or population specific organizations working in partnership with a victim service provider or domestic violence or sexual assault coalition;

(2) victim service providers offering population specific services for a specific underserved population; or

(3) victim service providers working in partnership with a national, State, tribal, or local organization that has demonstrated experience and expertise in providing population specific services in the relevant underserved population.

(c) Planning grants

The Attorney General may use up to 25 percent of funds available under this section to make one-time planning grants to eligible entities to support the planning and development of specially designed and targeted programs for adult and youth victims in one or more underserved populations, including—

(1) identifying, building and strengthening partnerships with potential collaborators within underserved populations, Federal, State, tribal, territorial or local government entities, and public and private organizations;

(2) conducting a needs assessment of the community and the targeted underserved population or populations to determine what the barriers are to service access and what factors contribute to those barriers, using input from the targeted underserved population or populations;

(3) identifying promising prevention, outreach and intervention strategies for victims from a targeted underserved population or populations; and

(4) developing a plan, with the input of the targeted underserved population or populations, for implementing prevention, outreach and intervention strategies to address the barriers to accessing services, promoting community engagement in the prevention of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking within the targeted underserved populations, and evaluating the program.

(d) Implementation grants

The Attorney General shall make grants to eligible entities for the purpose of providing or enhancing population specific outreach and services to adult and youth victims in one or more underserved populations, including—

(1) working with Federal, State, tribal, territorial and local governments, agencies, and organizations to develop or enhance population specific services;

(2) strengthening the capacity of underserved populations to provide population specific services;

(3) strengthening the capacity of traditional victim service providers to provide population specific services;

(4) strengthening the effectiveness of criminal and civil justice interventions by providing training for law enforcement, prosecutors, judges and other court personnel on domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking in underserved populations; or

(5) working in cooperation with an underserved population to develop and implement outreach, education, prevention, and intervention strategies that highlight available resources and the specific issues faced by victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking from underserved populations.

(e) Application

An eligible entity desiring a grant under this section shall submit an application to the Director of the Office on Violence Against Women at such time, in such form, and in such manner as the Director may prescribe.

(f) Reports

Each eligible entity receiving a grant under this section shall submit to the Director of the Office on Violence Against Women a report that describes the activities carried out with grant funds.

(g) Authorization of appropriations

In addition to the funds identified in subsection (a)(1), there are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $2,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018.

(h) Definitions and grant conditions

In this section the definitions and grant conditions in section 13925 of this title shall apply.

(Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §120, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2990; Pub. L. 109–271, §§1(c)(2), 2(h), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 750, 752; Pub. L. 113–4, title I, §108, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 78.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Violence Against Women and Department of Justice Reauthorization Act of 2005, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Pub. L. 113–4 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section related to grants for outreach to underserved populations.

2006—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 109–271, §2(h), struck out ", every 18 months," after "Office of Violence Against Women".

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 109–271, §1(c)(2), added subsec. (i).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

§14045a. Enhancing culturally specific services for victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking

(a) Establishment

(1) In general

Of the amounts appropriated under certain grant programs identified in paragraph (a)(2) of this Section,[1] the Attorney General, through the Director of the Violence Against Women Office (referred to in this section as the "Director"), shall take 5 percent of such appropriated amounts and combine them to establish a new grant program to enhance culturally specific services for victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking. Grants made under this new program shall be administered by the Director. The requirements of the grant programs identified in paragraph (2) shall not apply to this new grant program.

(2) Programs covered

The programs covered by paragraph (1) are the programs carried out under the following provisions:

(A) Section 3796hh of this title (Grants to Encourage Arrest Policies and Enforcement of Protection Orders).

(B) Section 3796gg–6 of this title [2] (Legal Assistance for Victims).

(C) Section 13971 of this title (Rural Domestic Violence, Dating Violence, Sexual Assault, Stalking, and Child Abuse Enforcement Assistance).

(D) Section 14041a of this title (Enhanced Training and Services to End Violence Against Women Later in Life).[2]

(E) Section 3796gg–7 of this title (Education, Training, and Enhanced Services to End Violence Against and Abuse of Women with Disabilities).

(b) Purpose of program and grants

(1) General program purpose

The purpose of the program required by this section is to promote:

(A) The maintenance and replication of existing successful services in domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking community-based programs providing culturally specific services and other resources.

(B) The development of innovative culturally specific strategies and projects to enhance access to services and resources for victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking who face obstacles to using more traditional services and resources.

(2) Purposes for which grants may be used

The Director shall make grants to community-based programs for the purpose of enhancing culturally specific services for victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking. Grants under the program shall support community-based efforts to address distinctive cultural responses to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking, including—

(A) working with State and local governments and social service agencies to develop and enhance effective strategies to provide culturally specific services to victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking;

(B) increasing communities' capacity to provide culturally specific resources and support for victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking crimes and their families;

(C) strengthening criminal justice interventions, by providing training for law enforcement, prosecution, courts, probation, and correctional facilities on culturally specific responses to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking;

(D) enhancing traditional services to victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking through the leadership of culturally specific programs offering services to victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking;

(E) working in cooperation with the community to develop education and prevention strategies highlighting culturally specific issues and resources regarding victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking;

(F) providing culturally specific programs for children exposed to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking;

(G) providing culturally specific resources and services that address the safety, economic, housing, and workplace needs of victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking, including emergency assistance; or

(H) examining the dynamics of culture and its impact on victimization and healing.

(3) Technical assistance and training

The Director shall provide technical assistance and training to grantees of this and other programs under this Act regarding the development and provision of effective culturally specific community-based services by entering into cooperative agreements or contracts with an organization or organizations having a demonstrated expertise in and whose primary purpose is addressing the development and provision of culturally specific community-based services to victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking.

(c) Eligible entities

Eligible entities for grants under this Section [1] include—

(1) community-based programs whose primary purpose is providing culturally specific services to victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking; and

(2) community-based programs whose primary purpose is providing culturally specific services who can partner with a program having demonstrated expertise in serving victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking.

(d) Reporting

The Director shall issue a biennial report on the distribution of funding under this section, the progress made in replicating and supporting increased services to victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking who face obstacles to using more traditional services and resources, and the types of culturally accessible programs, strategies, technical assistance, and training developed or enhanced through this program.

(e) Grant period

The Director shall award grants for a 2-year period, with a possible extension of another 2 years to implement projects under the grant.

(f) Evaluation

The Director shall award a contract or cooperative agreement to evaluate programs under this

section to an entity with the demonstrated expertise in and primary goal of providing enhanced cultural access to services and resources for victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking who face obstacles to using more traditional services and resources.

(g) Non-exclusivity

Nothing in this Section [1] shall be interpreted to exclude culturally specific community-based programs from applying to other grant programs authorized under this Act.

(h) Definitions and grant conditions

In this section the definitions and grant conditions in section 13925 of this title shall apply.

(Pub. L. 109–162, title I, §121, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2991; Pub. L. 109–271, §§1(c)(3), 2(k), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 751, 753; Pub. L. 113–4, title I, §109, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 80.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 3796gg–6 of this title, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(B), was in the original "Section 14201 of division B of the Victims of Trafficking and Violence Protection Act of 2000 (42 U.S.C. 3796gg–6)", which was translated as meaning "Section 1201 of division B of the Victims of Trafficking and Violence Protection Act of 2000 (42 U.S.C. 3796gg–6)" to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

The parenthetical reference "(Enhanced Training and Services to End Violence Against Women Later in Life)" appearing after "Section 14041a of this title" in subsec. (a)(2)(D), probably should be "(Enhanced Training and Services to End Violence Against and Abuse of Women Later in Life)". Section 14041a of this title was omitted in the general amendment of Part G of subchapter III of this chapter by Pub. L. 113–4, title II, §204(a), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 82.

This Act, referred to in subsecs. (b)(3) and (g), is Pub. L. 109–162, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2960, known as the Violence Against Women and Department of Justice Reauthorization Act of 2005. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2006 Amendment note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Violence Against Women and Department of Justice Reauthorization Act of 2005, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Pub. L. 113–4, §109(1)–(3), struck out "and linguistically" after "culturally" in section catchline and wherever appearing in text and struck out "and linguistic" after "cultural" in subsecs. (b)(2) and (f).

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 113–4, §109(4), added par. (2) and struck out former par. (2) which related to covered programs.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 113–4, §109(5), struck out "linguistic and" before "culturally".

2006—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 109–271, §2(k)(1), inserted "The requirements of the grant programs identified in paragraph (2) shall not apply to this new grant program." at end.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 109–271, §2(k)(2), which directed substituting ", including—" and subpars. (A) to (H) for the period, was executed by making the substitution for the period at the end to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 109–271, §1(c)(3), added subsec. (h).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section not effective until the beginning of fiscal year 2007, see section 4 of Pub. L. 109–162, set out as an Effective Date of 2006 Amendment note under section 3793 of this title.

[1] So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.

[2] See References in Text note below.

§14045b. Grants to combat violent crimes on campuses

(a) Grants authorized

(1) In general

The Attorney General is authorized to make grants to institutions of higher education, for use by such institutions or consortia consisting of campus personnel, student organizations, campus administrators, security personnel, and regional crisis centers affiliated with the institution, to develop and strengthen effective security and investigation strategies to combat domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking on campuses, to develop and strengthen victim services in cases involving such crimes on campuses, which may include partnerships with local criminal justice authorities and community-based victim services agencies, and to develop and strengthen prevention education and awareness programs.

(2) Award basis

The Attorney General shall award grants and contracts under this section on a competitive basis for a period of 3 years. The Attorney General, through the Director of the Office on Violence Against Women, shall award the grants in amounts of not more than $300,000 for individual institutions of higher education and not more than $1,000,000 for consortia of such institutions.

(3) Equitable participation

The Attorney General shall make every effort to ensure—

(A) the equitable participation of private and public institutions of higher education in the activities assisted under this section;

(B) the equitable geographic distribution of grants under this section among the various regions of the United States; and

(C) the equitable distribution of grants under this section to tribal colleges and universities and traditionally black colleges and universities.

(b) Use of grant funds

Grant funds awarded under this section may be used for the following purposes:

(1) To provide personnel, training, technical assistance, data collection, and other equipment with respect to the increased apprehension, investigation, and adjudication of persons committing domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking on campus.

(2) To develop, strengthen, and implement campus policies, protocols, and services that more effectively identify and respond to the crimes of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault and stalking, including the use of technology to commit these crimes, and to train campus administrators, campus security personnel, and personnel serving on campus disciplinary or judicial boards on such policies, protocols, and services. Within 90 days after January 5, 2006, the Attorney General shall issue and make available minimum standards of training relating to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking on campus, for all campus security personnel and personnel serving on campus disciplinary or judicial boards.

(3) To implement and operate education programs for the prevention of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking.

(4) To develop, enlarge, or strengthen victim services programs and population specific services on the campuses of the institutions involved, including programs providing legal, medical, or psychological counseling, for victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking, and to improve delivery of victim assistance on campus. To the extent practicable, such an institution shall collaborate with any victim service providers in the community in which the institution is located. If appropriate victim services programs are not available in the community or are not accessible to students, the institution shall, to the extent practicable, provide a victim services program on campus or create a victim services program in collaboration with a community-based organization. The institution shall use not less than 20 percent of the funds

made available through the grant for a victim services program provided in accordance with this paragraph, regardless of whether the services are provided by the institution or in coordination with community victim service providers.

(5) To create, disseminate, or otherwise provide assistance and information about victims' options on and off campus to bring disciplinary or other legal action, including assistance to victims in immigration matters.

(6) To develop, install, or expand data collection and communication systems, including computerized systems, linking campus security to the local law enforcement for the purpose of identifying and tracking arrests, protection orders, violations of protection orders, prosecutions, and convictions with respect to the crimes of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking on campus.

(7) To provide capital improvements (including improved lighting and communications facilities but not including the construction of buildings) on campuses to address the crimes of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking.

(8) To support improved coordination among campus administrators, campus security personnel, and local law enforcement to reduce domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking on campus.

(9) To develop or adapt and provide developmental, culturally appropriate, and linguistically accessible print or electronic materials to address both prevention and intervention in domestic violence, dating violence, sexual violence, and stalking.

(10) To develop or adapt population specific strategies and projects for victims of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking from underserved populations on campus.

(c) Applications

(1) In general

In order to be eligible to be awarded a grant under this section for any fiscal year, an institution of higher education shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such time and in such manner as the Attorney General shall prescribe.

(2) Contents

Each application submitted under paragraph (1) shall—

(A) describe the need for grant funds and the plan for implementation for any of the purposes described in subsection (b);

(B) include proof that the institution of higher education collaborated with victim service providers, including domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking victim services programs in the community in which the institution is located;

(C) describe the characteristics of the population being served, including type of campus, demographics of the population, and number of students;

(D) describe how underserved populations in the campus community will be adequately served, including the provision of relevant population specific services;

(E) provide measurable goals and expected results from the use of the grant funds;

(F) provide assurances that the Federal funds made available under this section shall be used to supplement and, to the extent practical, increase the level of funds that would, in the absence of Federal funds, be made available by the institution for the purposes described in subsection (b); and

(G) include such other information and assurances as the Attorney General reasonably determines to be necessary.

(3) Compliance with campus crime reporting required

No institution of higher education shall be eligible for a grant under this section unless such institution is in compliance with the requirements of section 1092(f) of title 20. Up to $200,000 of the total amount of grant funds appropriated under this section for fiscal years 2014 through 2018 may be used to provide technical assistance in complying with the mandatory reporting requirements of section 1092(f) of title 20.

(d) General terms and conditions

(1) Nonmonetary assistance

In addition to the assistance provided under this section, the Attorney General may request any Federal agency to use the agency's authorities and the resources granted to the agency under Federal law (including personnel, equipment, supplies, facilities, and managerial, technical, and advisory services) in support of campus security, and investigation and victim service efforts.

(2) Grantee reporting

(A) Annual report

Each institution of higher education receiving a grant under this section shall submit a performance report to the Attorney General. The Attorney General shall suspend funding under this section for an institution of higher education if the institution fails to submit such a report.

(B) Final report

Upon completion of the grant period under this section, the institution shall file a performance report with the Attorney General and the Secretary of Education explaining the activities carried out under this section together with an assessment of the effectiveness of those activities in achieving the purposes described in subsection (b).

(3) Grantee minimum requirements

Each grantee shall comply with the following minimum requirements during the grant period:

(A) The grantee shall create a coordinated community response including both organizations external to the institution and relevant divisions of the institution.

(B) The grantee shall establish a mandatory prevention and education program on domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking for all incoming students.

(C) The grantee shall train all campus law enforcement to respond effectively to domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking.

(D) The grantee shall train all members of campus disciplinary boards to respond effectively to situations involving domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(4) Report to Congress

Not later than 180 days after the end of the fiscal year for which grants are awarded under this section, the Attorney General shall submit to Congress a report that includes—

(A) the number of grants, and the amount of funds, distributed under this section;

(B) a summary of the purposes for which the grants were provided and an evaluation of the progress made under the grant;

(C) a statistical summary of the persons served, detailing the nature of victimization, and providing data on age, sex, race, ethnicity, language, disability, relationship to offender, geographic distribution, and type of campus; and

(D) an evaluation of the effectiveness of programs funded under this part.[1]

(e) Authorization of appropriations

For the purpose of carrying out this section, there is authorized to be appropriated $12,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018.

(f) Omitted

(g) Definitions and grant conditions

In this section the definitions and grant conditions in section 13925 of this title shall apply.

(Pub. L. 109–162, title III, §304, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3013; Pub. L. 109–271, §§1(c)(1), 4(b), (d), Aug. 12, 2006, 120 Stat. 750, 758; Pub. L. 113–4, title III, §303, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 87.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsec. (d)(4)(D), appearing in the original is unidentifiable because title III of Pub. L. 109–162 does not contain parts.

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 304 of Pub. L. 109–162. Subsec. (f) of section 304 of Pub. L. 109–162 repealed section 1152 of Title 20, Education.

Section was enacted as part of the Violence Against Women and Department of Justice Reauthorization Act of 2005, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 113–4, §303(1)(A), substituted "stalking on campuses," for "stalking on campuses, and" and "crimes on" for "crimes against women on" and inserted ", and to develop and strengthen prevention education and awareness programs" before period at end.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 113–4, §303(1)(B), substituted "$300,000" for "$500,000".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 113–4, §303(2)(A), inserted ", strengthen," after "To develop" and "including the use of technology to commit these crimes," after "sexual assault and stalking,".

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 113–4, §303(2)(B), inserted "and population specific services" after "strengthen victim services programs" and ", regardless of whether the services are provided by the institution or in coordination with community victim service providers" before period at end, and substituted "victim service providers" for "entities carrying out nonprofit and other victim services programs, including domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking victim services programs".

Subsec. (b)(9), (10). Pub. L. 113–4, §303(2)(C), added pars. (9) and (10).

Subsec. (c)(2)(B). Pub. L. 113–4, §303(3)(A)(i), substituted "victim service providers" for "any non-profit, nongovernmental entities carrying out other victim services programs".

Subsec. (c)(2)(D) to (G). Pub. L. 113–4, §303(3)(A)(ii), (iii), added subpar. (D) and redesignated former subpars. (D) to (F) as (E) to (G), respectively.

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 113–4, §303(3)(B), substituted "2014 through 2018" for "2007 through 2011".

Subsec. (d)(3), (4). Pub. L. 113–4, §303(4), added par. (3) and redesignated former par. (3) as (4).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 113–4, §303(5), substituted "there is authorized to be appropriated $12,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2014 through 2018." for "there are authorized to be appropriated $12,000,000 for fiscal year 2007 and $15,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2011."

2006—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 109–271, §4(b), inserted first sentence and struck out former first sentence which read as follows: "To train campus administrators, campus security personnel, and personnel serving on campus disciplinary or judicial boards to develop and implement campus policies, protocols, and services that more effectively identify and respond to the crimes of domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, and stalking."

Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 109–271, §4(d), struck out "biennial" before "performance report".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 109–271, §1(c)(1), added subsec. (g).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–4 not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as a note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section not effective until the beginning of fiscal year 2007, see section 4 of Pub. L. 109–162, set out as an Effective Date of 2006 Amendment note under section 3793 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§14045c. Repealed. Pub. L. 113–4, title IV, §402(b)(2), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 95

Section, Pub. L. 109–162, title IV, §403, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3023, related to public awareness campaign.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal not effective until the beginning of the fiscal year following Mar. 7, 2013, see section 4 of Pub. L. 113–4, set out as an Effective Date of 2013 Amendment note under section 2261 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

§14045d. Consultation

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall conduct annual consultations with Indian tribal governments concerning the Federal administration of tribal funds and programs established under this Act, the Violence Against Women Act of 1994 (title IV of Public Law 103–322; 108 Stat. 1902), the Violence Against Women Act of 2000 (division B of Public Law 106–386; 114 Stat. 1491), and the Violence Against Women Reauthorization Act of 2013.

(b) Recommendations

During consultations under subsection (a), the Secretary of Health and Human Services, the Secretary of the Interior, and the Attorney General shall solicit recommendations from Indian tribes concerning—

(1) administering tribal funds and programs;

(2) enhancing the safety of Indian women from domestic violence, dating violence, sexual assault, stalking, and sex trafficking; and

(3) strengthening the Federal response to such violent crimes.

(c) Annual report

The Attorney General shall submit to Congress an annual report on the annual consultations required under subsection (a) that—

(1) contains the recommendations made under subsection (b) by Indian tribes during the year covered by the report;

(2) describes actions taken during the year covered by the report to respond to recommendations made under subsection (b) during the year or a previous year; and

(3) describes how the Attorney General will work in coordination and collaboration with Indian tribes, the Secretary of Health and Human Services, and the Secretary of the Interior to address the recommendations made under subsection (b).

(d) Notice

Not later than 120 days before the date of a consultation under subsection (a), the Attorney General shall notify tribal leaders of the date, time, and location of the consultation.

(Pub. L. 109–162, title IX, §903, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3078; Pub. L. 113–4, title IX, §903, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 120.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 109–162, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 2960, known as the Violence Against Women and Department of Justice Reauthorization Act of 2005. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2006 Amendment note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

The Violence Against Women Act of 1994, referred to in subsec. (a), is title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1902, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

The Violence Against Women Act of 2000, referred to in subsec. (a), is div. B of Pub. L. 106–386, Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1491, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2000 Amendments note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

The Violence Against Women Reauthorization Act of 2013, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 113–4, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 54. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2013 Amendment note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Violence Against Women and Department of Justice Reauthorization Act of 2005, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 113–4, §903(1), substituted ", the Violence Against Women Act of 2000" for "and the Violence Against Women Act of 2000" and inserted ", and the Violence Against Women Reauthorization Act of 2013" before period at end.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 113–4, §903(2)(A), substituted "Secretary of Health and Human Services, the Secretary of the Interior," for "Secretary of the Department of Health and Human Services" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 113–4, §903(2)(B), substituted "stalking, and sex trafficking" for "and stalking".

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 113–4, §903(3), added subsecs. (c) and (d).

SUBCHAPTER IV—DRUG CONTROL

§14051. Increased penalties for drug-dealing in "drug-free" zones

Pursuant to its authority under section 994 of title 28, the United States Sentencing Commission shall amend its sentencing guidelines to provide an appropriate enhancement for a defendant convicted of violating section 860 of title 21.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IX, §90102, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1987.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 90102 of Pub. L. 103–322 which is also listed in a table relating to sentencing guidelines set out under section 994 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

§14052. Enhanced penalties for illegal drug use in Federal prisons and for smuggling drugs into Federal prisons

(a) Declaration of policy

It is the policy of the Federal Government that the use or distribution of illegal drugs in the Nation's Federal prisons will not be tolerated and that such crimes shall be prosecuted to the fullest extent of the law.

(b) Sentencing guidelines

Pursuant to its authority under section 994 of title 28, the United States Sentencing Commission shall amend its sentencing guidelines to appropriately enhance the penalty for a person convicted of an offense—

(1) under section 844 of title 21 involving simple possession of a controlled substance within a Federal prison or other Federal detention facility; or

(2) under section 841(b) of title 21 involving the smuggling of a controlled substance into a Federal prison or other Federal detention facility or the distribution or intended distribution of a controlled substance within a Federal prison or other Federal detention facility.

(c) No probation

Notwithstanding any other law, the court shall not sentence a person convicted of an offense described in subsection (b) to probation.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IX, §90103, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1987.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 90103 of Pub. L. 103–322. Subsec. (b) of section 90103 of Pub. L. 103–322 is also listed in a table relating to sentencing guidelines set out under section 994 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

§14053. Violent crime and drug emergency areas

(a) Definitions

In this section—

"major violent crime or drug-related emergency" means an occasion or instance in which violent crime, drug smuggling, drug trafficking, or drug abuse violence reaches such levels, as determined by the President, that Federal assistance is needed to supplement State and local efforts and capabilities to save lives, and to protect property and public health and safety.

"State" means a State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Northern Mariana Islands.

(b) Declaration of violent crime and drug emergency areas

If a major violent crime or drug-related emergency exists throughout a State or a part of a State, the President may declare the State or part of a State to be a violent crime or drug emergency area and may take appropriate actions authorized by this section.

(c) Procedure

(1) In general

A request for a declaration designating an area to be a violent crime or drug emergency area shall be made, in writing, by the chief executive officer of a State or local government, respectively (or in the case of the District of Columbia, the mayor), and shall be forwarded to the Attorney General in such form as the Attorney General may by regulation require. One or more cities, counties, States, or the District of Columbia may submit a joint request for designation as a major violent crime or drug emergency area under this subsection.

(2) Finding

A request made under paragraph (1) shall be based on a written finding that the major violent crime or drug-related emergency is of such severity and magnitude that Federal assistance is necessary to ensure an effective response to save lives and to protect property and public health and safety.

(d) Irrelevancy of population density

The President shall not limit declarations made under this section to highly populated centers of violent crime or drug trafficking, drug smuggling, or drug use, but shall also consider applications from governments of less populated areas where the magnitude and severity of such activities is beyond the capability of the State or local government to respond.

(e) Requirements

As part of a request for a declaration under this section, and as a prerequisite to Federal violent crime or drug emergency assistance under this section, the chief executive officer of a State or local government shall—

(1) take appropriate action under State or local law and furnish information on the nature and amount of State and local resources that have been or will be committed to alleviating the major violent crime- or drug-related emergency;

(2) submit a detailed plan outlining that government's short- and long-term plans to respond to the violent crime or drug emergency, specifying the types and levels of Federal assistance requested and including explicit goals (including quantitative goals) and timetables; and

(3) specify how Federal assistance provided under this section is intended to achieve those goals.

(f) Review period

The Attorney General shall review a request submitted pursuant to this section, and the President shall decide whether to declare a violent crime or drug emergency area, within 30 days after receiving the request.

(g) Federal assistance

The President may—

(1) direct any Federal agency, with or without reimbursement, to utilize its authorities and the resources granted to it under Federal law (including personnel, equipment, supplies, facilities, financial assistance, and managerial, technical, and advisory services) in support of State and local assistance efforts; and

(2) provide technical and advisory assistance, including communications support and law enforcement-related intelligence information.

(h) Duration of Federal assistance

(1) In general

Federal assistance under this section shall not be provided to a violent crime or drug emergency area for more than 1 year.

(2) Extension

The chief executive officer of a jurisdiction may apply to the President for an extension of assistance beyond 1 year. The President may extend the provision of Federal assistance for not more than an additional 180 days.

(i) Regulations

Not later than 120 days after September 13, 1994, the Attorney General shall issue regulations to implement this section.

(j) No effect on existing authority

Nothing in this section shall diminish or detract from existing authority possessed by the President or Attorney General.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title IX, §90107, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1988.)

SUBCHAPTER V—CRIMINAL STREET GANGS

§14061. Juvenile anti-drug and anti-gang grants in federally assisted low-income housing

Grants authorized in this Act to reduce or prevent juvenile drug and gang-related activity in "public housing" may be used for such purposes in federally assisted, low-income housing.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XV, §150007, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2035.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1796, known as the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

§14062. Gang investigation coordination and information collection

(a) Coordination

The Attorney General (or the Attorney General's designee), in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury (or the Secretary's designee), shall develop a national strategy to coordinate gang-related investigations by Federal law enforcement agencies.

(b) Data collection

The Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation shall acquire and collect information on incidents of gang violence for inclusion in an annual uniform crime report.

(c) Report

The Attorney General shall prepare a report on national gang violence outlining the strategy developed under subsection (a) to be submitted to the President and Congress by January 1, 1996.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $1,000,000 for fiscal year 1996.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XV, §150008, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2036.)

SUBCHAPTER VI—CRIMES AGAINST CHILDREN

§§14071 to 14073. Repealed. Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §129(a), July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 600

Section 14071, Pub. L. 103–322, title XVII, §170101, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2038; Pub. L. 104–145, §2, May 17, 1996, 110 Stat. 1345; Pub. L. 104–236, §§3–7, Oct. 3, 1996, 110 Stat. 3096, 3097; Pub. L. 105–119, title I, §115(a)(1)–(5), Nov. 26, 1997, 111 Stat. 2461–2463; Pub. L. 105–314, title VI, §607(a), Oct. 30, 1998, 112 Stat. 2985; Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title VI, §1601(b)(1), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1537; Pub. L. 108–21, title VI, §§604(a), 605(a), 606, Apr. 30, 2003, 117 Stat. 688; Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1153(b), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3113, required the Attorney General to establish guidelines for State programs that required registration by persons convicted of a criminal offense against a minor or a sexually violent offense and by sexually violent predators.

Section 14072, Pub. L. 103–322, title XVII, §170102, as added Pub. L. 104–236, §2(a), Oct. 3, 1996, 110 Stat. 3093; amended Pub. L. 105–119, title I, §115(a)(6), Nov. 26, 1997, 111 Stat. 2463; Pub. L. 105–277, div. A, §101(b) [title I, §123], Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–50, 2681–72, required the Attorney General to establish a national database at the FBI to track sexual offenders.

Section 14073, Pub. L. 104–236, §8, Oct. 3, 1996, 110 Stat. 3097, immunized certain agencies and officials from liability for good faith conduct.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §129(b), July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 601, provided that: "Notwithstanding any other provision of this Act [see Tables for classification], this section [repealing sections 14071 to 14073 of this title] shall take effect on the date of the deadline determined in accordance with section 124(a) [42 U.S.C. 16924(a)] [3 years after July 27, 2006]."

SHORT TITLE

Subtitle A of title XVII of Pub. L. 103–322, which was classified generally to this subchapter prior to repeal, was popularly known as the Jacob Wetterling Crimes Against Children and Sexually Violent Offender Registration Act.

SUBCHAPTER VII—RURAL CRIME

§14081. Rural Crime and Drug Enforcement Task Forces

(a) Establishment

The Attorney General, in consultation with the Governors, mayors, and chief executive officers of State and local law enforcement agencies, may establish a Rural Crime and Drug Enforcement Task Force in judicial districts that encompass significant rural lands. Assets seized as a result of investigations initiated by a Rural Crime and Drug Enforcement Task Force and forfeited under Federal law shall be used, consistent with the guidelines on equitable sharing established by the Attorney General and of the Secretary of the Treasury, primarily to enhance the operations of the task force and its participating State and local law enforcement agencies.

(b) Task force membership

The Task Forces [1] established under subsection (a) shall be carried out under policies and procedures established by the Attorney General. The Attorney General may deputize State and local law enforcement officers and may cross-designate up to 100 Federal law enforcement officers, when necessary to undertake investigations pursuant to section 873(a) of title 21 or offenses punishable by a term of imprisonment of 10 years or more under title 18. The task forces—

(1) shall include representatives from—

(A) State and local law enforcement agencies;

(B) the office of the United States Attorney for the judicial district; and

(C) the Federal Bureau of Investigation, the Drug Enforcement Administration, the Immigration and Naturalization Service, and the United States Marshals Service; and

(2) may include representatives of other Federal law enforcement agencies, such as the United States Customs Service, United States Park Police, United States Forest Service, Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, and Firearms, and Bureau of Land Management.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XVIII, §180102, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2045.)

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions, personnel, assets, and liabilities of the United States Customs Service of the Department of the Treasury, including functions of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto, to the Secretary of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 203(1), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6. For establishment of U.S. Customs and Border Protection in the Department of Homeland Security, treated as if included in Pub. L. 107–296 as of Nov. 25, 2002, see section 211 of Title 6, as amended generally by Pub. L. 114–125, and section 802(b) of Pub. L. 114–125, set out as a note under section 211 of Title 6.

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, including the related functions of the Secretary of the Treasury, to the Department of Justice, see section 531(c) of Title 6, Domestic Security, and section 599A(c)(1) of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

ABOLITION OF IMMIGRATION AND NATURALIZATION SERVICE AND TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For abolition of Immigration and Naturalization Service, transfer of functions, and treatment of related references, see note set out under section 1551 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

[1] *So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.*

§14082. Rural drug enforcement training

(a) Specialized training for rural officers

The Director of the Federal Law Enforcement Training Center shall develop a specialized course of instruction devoted to training law enforcement officers from rural agencies in the investigation of drug trafficking and related crimes.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out subsection (a)—

(1) $1,000,000 for fiscal year 1996;

(2) $1,000,000 for fiscal year 1997;

(3) $1,000,000 for fiscal year 1998;

(4) $1,000,000 for fiscal year 1999; and

(5) $1,000,000 for fiscal year 2000.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XVIII, §180103, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2046.)

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions, personnel, assets, and liabilities of the Federal Law Enforcement Training Center of the Department of the Treasury to the Secretary of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 203(4), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

§14083. More agents for Drug Enforcement Administration

There are authorized to be appropriated for the hiring of additional Drug Enforcement Administration agents—

(1) $12,000,000 for fiscal year 1996;
(2) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 1997;
(3) $30,000,000 for fiscal year 1998;
(4) $40,000,000 for fiscal year 1999; and
(5) $48,000,000 for fiscal year 2000.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XVIII, §180104, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2046.)

SUBCHAPTER VIII—POLICE CORPS AND LAW ENFORCEMENT OFFICERS TRAINING AND EDUCATION

PART A—POLICE CORPS

§14091. Purposes

The purposes of this part are to—

(1) address violent crime by increasing the number of police with advanced education and training on community patrol; and

(2) provide educational assistance to law enforcement personnel and to students who possess a sincere interest in public service in the form of law enforcement.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200102, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2049.)

SHORT TITLE

For short title of this part as the "Police Corps Act", see section 200101 of Pub. L. 103–322, set out as a note under section 13701 of this title.

§14092. Definitions

In this part—

"academic year" means a traditional academic year beginning in August or September and ending in the following May or June.

"dependent child" means a natural or adopted child or stepchild of a law enforcement officer who at the time of the officer's death—

(A) was no more than 21 years old; or

(B) if older than 21 years, was in fact dependent on the child's parents for at least one-half of the child's support (excluding educational expenses), as determined by the Director.

"Director" means the Director of the Office of the Police Corps and Law Enforcement Education appointed under section 14093 [1] of this title.

"educational expenses" means expenses that are directly attributable to a course of education leading to the award of either a baccalaureate or graduate degree in a course of study which, in the judgment of the State or local police force to which the participant will be assigned, includes appropriate preparation for police service including the cost of tuition, fees, books, supplies, transportation, room and board and miscellaneous expenses.

"institution of higher education" has the meaning stated in the first sentence of section 1001 of title 20.

"participant" means a participant in the Police Corps program selected pursuant to section 14095 [2] of this title.

"State" means a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

"State Police Corps program" means a State police corps program that meets the requirements of section 14099 of this title.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200103, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2049; Pub. L. 104–134, title I, §101[(a)] [title I, §121], Apr. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 1321, 1321–22; renumbered title I, Pub. L. 104–140, §1(a), May 2, 1996, 110 Stat. 1327; Pub. L. 105–244, title I, §102(a)(13)(O), Oct. 7, 1998, 112 Stat. 1621.)

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–244 substituted "section 1001" for "section 1141(a)" in par. defining "institution of higher education".

1996—Pub. L. 104–134 amended generally par. defining "education expenses". Prior to amendment, par. read as follows: " 'educational expenses' means expenses that are directly attributable to—

"(A) a course of education leading to the award of the baccalaureate degree in legal- or criminal justice-related studies; or

"(B) a course of graduate study legal or criminal justice studies following award of a baccalaureate degree,

including the cost of tuition, fees, books, supplies, transportation, room and board and miscellaneous expenses."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 105–244 effective Oct. 1, 1998, except as otherwise provided in Pub. L. 105–244, see section 3 of Pub. L. 105–244, set out as a note under section 1001 of Title 20, Education.

[1] So in original. Section 14093 of this title does not provide for the appointment of a Director.

[2] So in original. Probably should be section "14096".

§14093. Establishment of Office of the Police Corps and Law Enforcement Education

There is established in the Department of Justice, under the general authority of the Attorney General, an Office of the Police Corps and Law Enforcement Education.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200104, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2050.)

§14094. Designation of lead agency and submission of State plan

(a) Lead agency

A State that desires to participate in the Police Corps program under this part shall designate a lead agency that will be responsible for—

(1) submitting to the Director a State plan described in subsection (b); and
(2) administering the program in the State.

(b) State plans

A State plan shall—

(1) contain assurances that the lead agency shall work in cooperation with the local law enforcement liaisons, representatives of police labor organizations and police management organizations, and other appropriate State and local agencies to develop and implement interagency agreements designed to carry out the program;

(2) contain assurances that the State shall advertise the assistance available under this part;

(3) contain assurances that the State shall screen and select law enforcement personnel for participation in the program; and

(4) meet the requirements of section 14099 of this title.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200105, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2050.)

§14095. Scholarship assistance

(a) Scholarships authorized

(1) The Director may award scholarships to participants who agree to work in a State or local police force in accordance with agreements entered into pursuant to subsection (d).

(2)(A) Except as provided in subparagraph (B), each scholarship payment made under this section for each academic year shall not exceed—

(i) $10,000; or

(ii) the cost of the educational expenses related to attending an institution of higher education.

(B) In the case of a participant who is pursuing a course of educational study during substantially an entire calendar year, the amount of scholarship payments made during such year shall not exceed $13,333.

(C) The total amount of scholarship assistance received by any one student under this section shall not exceed $40,000.

(3) Recipients of scholarship assistance under this section shall continue to receive such scholarship payments only during such periods as the Director finds that the recipient is maintaining satisfactory progress as determined by the institution of higher education the recipient is attending.

(4)(A) The Director shall make scholarship payments under this section directly to the institution of higher education that the student is attending.

(B) Each institution of higher education receiving a payment on behalf of a participant pursuant to subparagraph (A) shall remit to such student any funds in excess of the costs of tuition, fees, and room and board payable to the institution.

(b) Reimbursement authorized

(1) The Director may make payments to a participant to reimburse such participant for the costs of educational expenses if the student agrees to work in a State or local police force in accordance with the agreement entered into pursuant to subsection (d).

(2)(A) Each payment made pursuant to paragraph (1) for each academic year of study shall not exceed—

(i) $10,000; or

(ii) the cost of educational expenses related to attending an institution of higher education.

(B) In the case of a participant who is pursuing a course of educational study during substantially an entire calendar year, the amount of scholarship payments made during such year shall not exceed $13,333.

(C) The total amount of payments made pursuant to subparagraph (A) to any 1 student shall not exceed $40,000.

(c) Use of scholarship

Scholarships awarded under this subsection [1] shall only be used to attend a 4-year institution of higher education, except that—

(1) scholarships may be used for graduate and professional study; and

(2) if a participant has enrolled in the program upon or after transfer to a 4-year institution of higher education, the Director may reimburse the participant for the participant's prior educational expenses.

(d) Agreement

(1)(A) Each participant receiving a scholarship or a payment under this section shall enter into an agreement with the Director.

(B) An agreement under subparagraph (A) shall contain assurances that the participant shall—

(i) after successful completion of a baccalaureate program and training as prescribed in section 14097 of this title, work for 4 years in a State or local police force without there having arisen sufficient cause for the participant's dismissal under the rules applicable to members of the police force of which the participant is a member;

(ii) complete satisfactorily—

(I) an educational course of study and receipt of a baccalaureate degree (in the case of undergraduate study) or the reward of credit to the participant for having completed one or more graduate courses (in the case of graduate study); and

(II) Police Corps training and certification by the Director that the participant has met such performance standards as may be established pursuant to section 14097 of this title; and

(iii) repay all of the scholarship or payment received plus interest at the rate of 10 percent if the conditions of clauses (i) and (ii) are not complied with.

(2)(A) A recipient of a scholarship or payment under this section shall not be considered to be in violation of the agreement entered into pursuant to paragraph (1) if the recipient—

(i) dies; or

(ii) becomes permanently and totally disabled as established by the sworn affidavit of a qualified physician.

(B) If a scholarship recipient is unable to comply with the repayment provision set forth in paragraph (1)(B)(ii) [2] because of a physical or emotional disability or for good cause as determined by the Director, the Director may substitute community service in a form prescribed by the Director for the required repayment.

(C) The Director shall expeditiously seek repayment from a participant who violates an agreement described in paragraph (1).

(e) Dependent child

A dependent child of a law enforcement officer—

(1) who is a member of a State or local police force or is a Federal criminal investigator or uniformed police officer,

(2) who is not a participant in the Police Corps program, but

(3) who serves in a State for which the Director has approved a Police Corps plan, and

(4) who is killed in the course of performing police duties,

shall be entitled to the scholarship assistance authorized in this section for any course of study in any accredited institution of higher education. Such dependent child shall not incur any repayment obligation in exchange for the scholarship assistance provided in this section.

(f) Application

Each participant desiring a scholarship or payment under this section shall submit an application as prescribed by the Director in such manner and accompanied by such information as the Director

may reasonably require.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200106, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2050; Pub. L. 107–273, div. C, title I, §11006(1), Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1817.)

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsecs. (a)(2), (b)(2). Pub. L. 107–273 substituted "$10,000" for "$7,500" in subpar. (A)(i), "$13,333" for "$10,000" in subpar. (B), and "$40,000" for "$30,000" in subpar. (C).

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "section".*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be paragraph "(1)(B)(iii)".*

§14096. Selection of participants

(a) In general

Participants in State Police Corps programs shall be selected on a competitive basis by each State under regulations prescribed by the Director.

(b) Selection criteria and qualifications

(1) In order to participate in a State Police Corps program, a participant shall—

(A) be a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence in the United States;

(B) meet the requirements for admission as a trainee of the State or local police force to which the participant will be assigned pursuant to section 14099(5) of this title, including achievement of satisfactory scores on any applicable examination, except that failure to meet the age requirement for a trainee of the State or local police shall not disqualify the applicant if the applicant will be of sufficient age upon completing an undergraduate course of study;

(C) possess the necessary mental and physical capabilities and emotional characteristics to discharge effectively the duties of a law enforcement officer;

(D) be of good character and demonstrate sincere motivation and dedication to law enforcement and public service;

(E) in the case of an undergraduate, agree in writing that the participant will complete an educational course of study leading to the award of a baccalaureate degree and will then accept an appointment and complete 4 years of service as an officer in the State police or in a local police department within the State;

(F) in the case of a participant desiring to undertake or continue graduate study, agree in writing that the participant will accept an appointment and complete 4 years of service as an officer in the State police or in a local police department within the State before undertaking or continuing graduate study;

(G) contract, with the consent of the participant's parent or guardian if the participant is a minor, to serve for 4 years as an officer in the State police or in a local police department, if an appointment is offered; and

(H) except as provided in paragraph (2), be without previous law enforcement experience.

(2)(A) Until the date that is 5 years after September 13, 1994, up to 10 percent of the applicants accepted into the Police Corps program may be persons who—

(i) have had some law enforcement experience; and

(ii) have demonstrated special leadership potential and dedication to law enforcement.

(B)(i) The prior period of law enforcement of a participant selected pursuant to subparagraph (A) shall not be counted toward satisfaction of the participant's 4-year service obligation under section 14098 of this title, and such a participant shall be subject to the same benefits and obligations under

this part as other participants, including those stated in section [1] (b)(1)(E) and (F).

(ii) Clause (i) shall not be construed to preclude counting a participant's previous period of law enforcement experience for purposes other than satisfaction of the requirements of section 14098 of this title, such as for purposes of determining such a participant's pay and other benefits, rank, and tenure.

(3) It is the intent of this part that there shall be no more than 20,000 participants in each graduating class. The Director shall approve State plans providing in the aggregate for such enrollment of applicants as shall assure, as nearly as possible, annual graduating classes of 20,000. In a year in which applications are received in a number greater than that which will produce, in the judgment of the Director, a graduating class of more than 20,000, the Director shall, in deciding which applications to grant, give preference to those who will be participating in State plans that provide law enforcement personnel to areas of greatest need.

(c) Recruitment of minorities

Each State participating in the Police Corps program shall make special efforts to seek and recruit applicants from among members of all racial, ethnic or gender groups. This subsection does not authorize an exception from the competitive standards for admission established pursuant to subsections (a) and (b).

(d) Enrollment of applicant

(1) An applicant shall be accepted into a State Police Corps program on the condition that the applicant will be matriculated in, or accepted for admission at, a 4-year institution of higher education—

(A) as a full-time student in an undergraduate program; or

(B) for purposes of taking a graduate course.

(2) If the applicant is not matriculated or accepted as set forth in paragraph (1), the applicant's acceptance in the program shall be revoked.

(e) Leave of absence

(1) A participant in a State Police Corps program who requests a leave of absence from educational study, training or service for a period not to exceed 1 year (or 18 months in the aggregate in the event of multiple requests) due to temporary physical or emotional disability shall be granted such leave of absence by the State.

(2) A participant who requests a leave of absence from educational study, training or service for a period not to exceed 1 year (or 18 months in the aggregate in the event of multiple requests) for any reason other than those listed in paragraph (1) may be granted such leave of absence by the State.

(3) A participant who requests a leave of absence from educational study or training for a period not to exceed 30 months to serve on an official church mission may be granted such leave of absence.

(f) Admission of applicants

An applicant may be admitted into a State Police Corps program either before commencement of or during the applicant's course of educational study.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200107, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2052.)

[1] So in original. Probably should be "subsection".

§14097. Police Corps training

(a) In general

(1) The Director shall establish programs of training for Police Corps participants. Such programs may be carried out at up to 3 training centers established for this purpose and administered by the

Director, or by contracting with existing State training facilities. The Director shall contract with a State training facility upon request of such facility if the Director determines that such facility offers a course of training substantially equivalent to the Police Corps training program described in this part.

(2) The Director may enter into contracts with individuals, institutions of learning, and government agencies (including State and local police forces) to obtain the services of persons qualified to participate in and contribute to the training process.

(3) The Director may enter into agreements with agencies of the Federal Government to utilize on a reimbursable basis space in Federal buildings and other resources.

(4) The Director may authorize such expenditures as are necessary for the effective maintenance of the training centers, including purchases of supplies, uniforms, and educational materials, and the provision of subsistence, quarters, and medical care to participants.

(b) Training sessions

A participant in a State Police Corps program shall attend up to 24 weeks, but no less than 16 weeks, of training at a training center. The Director may approve training conducted in not more than 3 separate sessions.

(c) Further training

The Police Corps training authorized in this section is intended to serve as basic law enforcement training but not to exclude further training of participants by the State and local authorities to which they will be assigned. Each State plan approved by the Director under section 14099 [1] of this title shall include assurances that following completion of a participant's course of education each participant shall receive appropriate additional training by the State or local authority to which the participant is assigned. The time spent by a participant in such additional training, but not the time spent in Police Corps training, shall be counted toward fulfillment of the participant's 4-year service obligation.

(d) Course of training

The training sessions at training centers established under this section shall be designed to provide basic law enforcement training, including vigorous physical and mental training to teach participants self-discipline and organizational loyalty and to impart knowledge and understanding of legal processes and law enforcement.

(e) Evaluation of participants

A participant shall be evaluated during training for mental, physical, and emotional fitness, and shall be required to meet performance standards prescribed by the Director at the conclusion of each training session in order to remain in the Police Corps program.

(f) Stipend

The Director shall pay participants in training sessions a stipend of $400 a week during training.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200108, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2054; Pub. L. 105–277, div. C, title I, §138(a), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–597; Pub. L. 107–273, div. C, title I, §11006(2), Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1817.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 14099 of this title, referred to in subsec. (c), was in the original "section 10", and was translated as reading "section 200110", meaning section 200110 of Pub. L. 103–322, to reflect the probable intent of Congress, because Pub. L. 103–322 does not contain a section 10, and section 14099 of this title relates to requirements for State Police Corps plans.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 107–273 substituted "$400" for "$250".

1998—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–277, §138(a)(1), added subsec. (b) and struck out heading and text of former subsec. (b). Text read as follows: "A participant in a State Police Corps program shall attend two 8-week training sessions at a training center, one during the summer following completion of sophomore year

and one during the summer following completion of junior year. If a participant enters the program after sophomore year, the participant shall complete 16 weeks of training at times determined by the Director."

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 105–277, §138(a)(2), substituted "The Police Corps" for "The 16 weeks of Police Corps".

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§14098. Service obligation

(a) Swearing in

Upon satisfactory completion of the participant's course of education and training program established in section 14097 of this title and meeting the requirements of the police force to which the participant is assigned, a participant shall be sworn in as a member of the police force to which the participant is assigned pursuant to the State Police Corps plan, and shall serve for 4 years as a member of that police force.

(b) Rights and responsibilities

A participant shall have all of the rights and responsibilities of and shall be subject to all rules and regulations applicable to other members of the police force of which the participant is a member, including those contained in applicable agreements with labor organizations and those provided by State and local law.

(c) Discipline

If the police force of which the participant is a member subjects the participant to discipline such as would preclude the participant's completing 4 years of service, and result in denial of educational assistance under section 14095 of this title, the Director may, upon a showing of good cause, permit the participant to complete the service obligation in an equivalent alternative law enforcement service and, if such service is satisfactorily completed, section 14095(d)(1)(B)(iii) of this title shall not apply.

(d) Layoffs

If the police force of which the participant is a member lays off the participant such as would preclude the participant's completing 4 years of service, and result in denial of educational assistance under section 14095 of this title, the Director may permit the participant to complete the service obligation in an equivalent alternative law enforcement service and, if such service is satisfactorily completed, section 14095(d)(1)(B)(iii) of this title shall not apply.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200109, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2055.)

§14099. State plan requirements

A State Police Corps plan shall—

(1) provide for the screening and selection of participants in accordance with the criteria set out in section 14096 of this title;

(2) state procedures governing the assignment of participants in the Police Corps program to State and local police forces (except with permission of the Director, no more than 25 percent of all the participants assigned in each year by each State to be assigned to a statewide police force or forces);

(3) provide that participants shall be assigned to those geographic areas in which—

(A) there is the greatest need for additional law enforcement personnel; and

(B) the participants will be used most effectively;

(4) provide that to the extent consistent with paragraph (3), a participant shall be assigned to an area near the participant's home or such other place as the participant may request;

(5) provide that to the extent feasible, a participant's assignment shall be made at the time the participant is accepted into the program, subject to change—

(A) prior to commencement of a participant's fourth year of undergraduate study, under such circumstances as the plan may specify; and

(B) from commencement of a participant's fourth year of undergraduate study until completion of 4 years of police service by participant, only for compelling reasons or to meet the needs of the State Police Corps program and only with the consent of the participant;

(6) provide that no participant shall be assigned to serve with a local police force—

(A) whose size has declined by more than 5 percent since June 21, 1989; or

(B) which has members who have been laid off but not retired;

(7) provide that participants shall be placed and to the extent feasible kept on community and preventive patrol;

(8) ensure that participants will receive effective training and leadership;

(9) provide that the State may decline to offer a participant an appointment following completion of Federal training, or may remove a participant from the Police Corps program at any time, only for good cause (including failure to make satisfactory progress in a course of educational study) and after following reasonable review procedures stated in the plan; and

(10) provide that a participant shall, while serving as a member of a police force, be compensated at the same rate of pay and benefits and enjoy the same rights under applicable agreements with labor organizations and under State and local law as other police officers of the same rank and tenure in the police force of which the participant is a member.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200110, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2056; Pub. L. 107–273, div. C, title I, §11006(3), Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1817.)

AMENDMENTS

2002—Par. (2). Pub. L. 107–273 substituted "except with permission of the Director, no more than 25 percent" for "no more than 10 percent".

§14100. Repealed. Pub. L. 107–273, div. C, title I, §11006(4), Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1817

Section, Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200111, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2056, provided assistance to States and localities employing Police Corps officers.

§14101. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part $50,000,000 for fiscal year 1999, $70,000,000 for fiscal year 2000, $90,000,000 for fiscal year 2001, and $90,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2002 through 2005.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200112, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2057; Pub. L. 105–277, div. C, title I, §138(b), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–597; Pub. L. 107–273, div. C, title I, §11006(5), Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1817.)

AMENDMENTS

2002—Pub. L. 107–273 substituted "each of fiscal years 2002 through 2005" for "fiscal year 2002".

1998—Pub. L. 105–277 substituted "$50,000,000 for fiscal year 1999, $70,000,000 for fiscal year 2000, $90,000,000 for fiscal year 2001, and $90,000,000 for fiscal year 2002" for "$20,000 for each of the fiscal years 1996 through 2000".

§14102. Repealed. Pub. L. 112–189, §2(b)(1), Oct. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 1435

Section, Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200113, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2057, required the Director to submit an annual report describing participants in and the progress of the Police Corps program.

PART B—LAW ENFORCEMENT SCHOLARSHIP PROGRAM

§14111. Definitions

In this part—

"Director" means the Director of the Office of the Police Corps and Law Enforcement Education appointed under section 14093 [1] of this title.

"educational expenses" means expenses that are directly attributable to—

(A) a course of education leading to the award of an associate degree;

(B) a course of education leading to the award of a baccalaureate degree; or

(C) a course of graduate study following award of a baccalaureate degree,

including the cost of tuition, fees, books, supplies, and related expenses.

"institution of higher education" has the meaning stated in the first sentence of section 1001 of title 20.

"law enforcement position" means employment as an officer in a State or local police force, or correctional institution.

"State" means a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands of the United States, American Samoa, Guam, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200202, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2057; Pub. L. 105–244, title I, §102(a)(13)(P), Oct. 7, 1998, 112 Stat. 1621.)

AMENDMENTS

1998—Pub. L. 105–244 substituted "section 1001" for "section 1141(a)" in par. defining "institution of higher education".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 105–244 effective Oct. 1, 1998, except as otherwise provided in Pub. L. 105–244, see section 3 of Pub. L. 105–244, set out as a note under section 1001 of Title 20, Education.

SHORT TITLE

For short title of this part as the "Law Enforcement Scholarships and Recruitment Act", see section 200201 of Pub. L. 103–322, set out as a note under section 13701 of this title.

[1] So in original. Section 14093 of this title does not provide for the appointment of a Director.

§14112. Allotment

From amounts appropriated under section 14119 of this title, the Director shall allot—

(1) 80 percent of such amounts to States on the basis of the number of law enforcement officers in each State compared to the number of law enforcement officers in all States; and

(2) 20 percent of such amounts to States on the basis of the shortage of law enforcement personnel and the need for assistance under this part in the State compared to the shortage of law enforcement personnel and the need for assistance under this part in all States.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200203, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2058.)

§14113. Establishment of program

(a) Use of allotment

(1) In general

A State that receives an allotment pursuant to section 14112 of this title shall use the allotment to pay the Federal share of the costs of—

(A) awarding scholarships to in-service law enforcement personnel to enable such personnel to seek further education; and

(B) providing—

(i) full-time employment in summer; or

(ii) part-time (not to exceed 20 hours per week) employment for a period not to exceed 1 year.

(2) Employment

The employment described in paragraph (1)(B)—

(A) shall be provided by State and local law enforcement agencies for students who are juniors or seniors in high school or are enrolled in an institution of higher education and who demonstrate an interest in undertaking a career in law enforcement;

(B) shall not be in a law enforcement position; and

(C) shall consist of performing meaningful tasks that inform students of the nature of the tasks performed by law enforcement agencies.

(b) Payments; Federal share; non-Federal share

(1) Payments

Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Director shall pay to each State that receives an allotment under section 14112 of this title the Federal share of the cost of the activities described in the application submitted pursuant to section 14116 [1] of this title.

(2) Federal share

The Federal share shall not exceed 60 percent.

(3) Non-Federal share

The non-Federal share of the cost of scholarships and student employment provided under this part shall be supplied from sources other than the Federal Government.

(c) Responsibilities of Director

The Director shall be responsible for the administration of the programs conducted pursuant to this part and shall, in consultation with the Assistant Secretary for Postsecondary Education, issue rules to implement this part.

(d) Administrative expenses

A State that receives an allotment under section 14112 of this title may reserve not more than 8 percent of the allotment for administrative expenses.

(e) Special rule

A State that receives an allotment under section 14112 of this title shall ensure that each scholarship recipient under this part be compensated at the same rate of pay and benefits and enjoy the same rights under applicable agreements with labor organizations and under State and local law as other law enforcement personnel of the same rank and tenure in the office of which the scholarship recipient is a member.

(f) Supplementation of funding

Funds received under this part shall only be used to supplement, and not to supplant, Federal,

State, or local efforts for recruitment and education of law enforcement personnel.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200204, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2058.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 14116 of this title, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), was in the original "section 200203", and was translated as reading "section 200207", meaning section 200207 of Pub. L. 103–322, to reflect the probable intent of Congress, because section 200203 of Pub. L. 103–322, which is classified to section 14112 of this title, does not provide for submission of applications, and section 14116 does so provide.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§14114. Scholarships

(a) Period of award

Scholarships awarded under this part shall be for a period of 1 academic year.

(b) Use of scholarships

Each individual awarded a scholarship under this part may use the scholarship for educational expenses at an institution of higher education.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200205, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2059.)

§14115. Eligibility

(a) Scholarships

A person shall be eligible to receive a scholarship under this part if the person has been employed in law enforcement for the 2-year period immediately preceding the date on which assistance is sought.

(b) Ineligibility for student employment

A person who has been employed as a law enforcement officer is ineligible to participate in a student employment program carried out under this part.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200206, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2059.)

§14116. State application

(a) In general

Each State desiring an allotment under section 14112 of this title shall submit an application to the Director at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such information as the Director may reasonably require.

(b) Contents

An application under subsection (a) shall—

(1) describe the scholarship program and the student employment program for which assistance under this part is sought;

(2) contain assurances that the lead agency will work in cooperation with the local law enforcement liaisons, representatives of police labor organizations and police management organizations, and other appropriate State and local agencies to develop and implement interagency agreements designed to carry out this part;

(3) contain assurances that the State will advertise the scholarship assistance and student employment it will provide under this part and that the State will use such programs to enhance recruitment efforts;

(4) contain assurances that the State will screen and select law enforcement personnel for participation in the scholarship program under this part;

(5) contain assurances that under such student employment program the State will screen and select, for participation in such program, students who have an interest in undertaking a career in law enforcement;

(6) contain assurances that under such scholarship program the State will make scholarship payments to institutions of higher education on behalf of persons who receive scholarships under this part;

(7) with respect to such student employment program, identify—

(A) the employment tasks that students will be assigned to perform;

(B) the compensation that students will be paid to perform such tasks; and

(C) the training that students will receive as part of their participation in the program;

(8) identify model curriculum and existing programs designed to meet the educational and professional needs of law enforcement personnel; and

(9) contain assurances that the State will promote cooperative agreements with educational and law enforcement agencies to enhance law enforcement personnel recruitment efforts in institutions of higher education.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200207, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2059.)

§14117. Local application

(a) In general

A person who desires a scholarship or employment under this part shall submit an application to the State at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such information as the State may reasonably require.

(b) Contents

An application under subsection (a) shall describe—

(1) the academic courses for which a scholarship is sought; or

(2) the location and duration of employment that is sought.

(c) Priority

In awarding scholarships and providing student employment under this part, each State shall give priority to applications from persons who are—

(1) members of racial, ethnic, or gender groups whose representation in the law enforcement agencies within the State is substantially less than in the population eligible for employment in law enforcement in the State;

(2) pursuing an undergraduate degree; and

(3) not receiving financial assistance under the Higher Education Act of 1965 [20 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200208, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2060.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Higher Education Act of 1965, referred to in subsec. (c)(3), is Pub. L. 89–329, Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1219, which is classified generally to chapter 28 (§1001 et seq.) of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 20 and Tables.

§14118. Scholarship agreement

(a) In general

A person who receives a scholarship under this part shall enter into an agreement with the

Director.

(b) Contents

An agreement described in subsection (a) shall—

(1) provide assurances that the scholarship recipient will work in a law enforcement position in the State that awarded the scholarship in accordance with the service obligation described in subsection (c) after completion of the scholarship recipient's academic courses leading to an associate, bachelor, or graduate degree;

(2) provide assurances that the scholarship recipient will repay the entire scholarship in accordance with such terms and conditions as the Director shall prescribe if the requirements of the agreement are not complied with, unless the scholarship recipient—

(A) dies;

(B) becomes physically or emotionally disabled, as established by the sworn affidavit of a qualified physician; or

(C) has been discharged in bankruptcy; and

(3) set forth the terms and conditions under which the scholarship recipient may seek employment in the field of law enforcement in a State other than the State that awarded the scholarship.

(c) Service obligation

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (2), a person who receives a scholarship under this part shall work in a law enforcement position in the State that awarded the scholarship for a period of 1 month for each credit hour for which funds are received under the scholarship.

(2) Special rule

For purposes of satisfying the requirement of paragraph (1), a scholarship recipient shall work in a law enforcement position in the State that awarded the scholarship for not less than 6 months but shall not be required to work in such a position for more than 2 years.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200209, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2060.)

§14119. Authorization of appropriations

(a) General authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part—

(1) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 1996;

(2) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 1997;

(3) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 1998;

(4) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 1999; and

(5) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2000.

(b) Uses of funds

Of the funds appropriated under subsection (a) for a fiscal year—

(1) 80 percent shall be available to provide scholarships described in section 14113(a)(1)(A) of this title; and

(2) 20 percent shall be available to provide employment described in sections 14113(a)(1)(B) and 14113(a)(2) of this title.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XX, §200210, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2061.)

SUBCHAPTER IX—STATE AND LOCAL LAW ENFORCEMENT

EX. ORD. NO. 13684. ESTABLISHMENT OF THE PRESIDENT'S TASK FORCE ON 21ST CENTURY POLICING

Ex. Ord. No. 13684, Dec. 18, 2014, 79 F.R. 76865, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, and in order to identify the best means to provide an effective partnership between law enforcement and local communities that reduces crime and increases trust, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Establishment.* There is established a President's Task Force on 21st Century Policing (Task Force).

SEC. 2. *Membership*. (a) The Task Force shall be composed of not more than eleven members appointed by the President. The members shall include distinguished individuals with relevant experience or subject-matter expertise in law enforcement, civil rights, and civil liberties.

(b) The President shall designate two members of the Task Force to serve as Co-Chairs.

SEC. 3. *Mission*. (a) The Task Force shall, consistent with applicable law, identify best practices and otherwise make recommendations to the President on how policing practices can promote effective crime reduction while building public trust.

(b) The Task Force shall be solely advisory and shall submit a report to the President by March 2, 2015.

SEC. 4. *Administration*. (a) The Task Force shall hold public meetings and engage with Federal, State, tribal, and local officials, technical advisors, and nongovernmental organizations, among others, as necessary to carry out its mission.

(b) The Director of the Office of Community Oriented Policing Services shall serve as Executive Director of the Task Force and shall, as directed by the Co-Chairs, convene regular meetings of the Task Force and supervise its work.

(c) In carrying out its mission, the Task Force shall be informed by, and shall strive to avoid duplicating, the efforts of other governmental entities.

(d) The Department of Justice shall provide administrative services, funds, facilities, staff, equipment, and other support services as may be necessary for the Task Force to carry out its mission to the extent permitted by law and subject to the availability of appropriations.

(e) Members of the Task Force shall serve without any additional compensation for their work on the Task Force, but shall be allowed travel expenses, including per diem, to the extent permitted by law for persons serving intermittently in the Government service (5 U.S.C. 5701–5707).

SEC. 5. *Termination*. The Task Force shall terminate 30 days after the President requests a final report from the Task Force.

SEC. 6. *General Provisions*. (a) Nothing in this order shall be construed to impair or otherwise affect:

(i) the authority granted by law to a department, agency, or the head thereof; or

(ii) the functions of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget relating to budgetary, administrative, or legislative proposals.

(b) This order is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity by any party against the United States, its departments, agencies, or entities, its officers, employees, or agents, or any other person.

(c) Insofar as the Federal Advisory Committee Act, as amended (5 U.S.C. App.) (the "Act") may apply to the Task Force, any functions of the President under the Act, except for those in section 6 of the Act, shall be performed by the Attorney General.

BARACK OBAMA.

PART A—DNA IDENTIFICATION

§14131. Quality assurance and proficiency testing standards

(a) Publication of quality assurance and proficiency testing standards

(1)(A) Not later than 180 days after September 13, 1994, the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation shall appoint an advisory board on DNA quality assurance methods from among nominations proposed by the head of the National Academy of Sciences and professional societies of crime laboratory officials.

(B) The advisory board shall include as members scientists from State, local, and private forensic

laboratories, molecular geneticists and population geneticists not affiliated with a forensic laboratory, and a representative from the National Institute of Standards and Technology.

(C) The advisory board shall develop, and if appropriate, periodically revise, recommended standards for quality assurance, including standards for testing the proficiency of forensic laboratories, and forensic analysts, in conducting analyses of DNA.

(2) The Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, after taking into consideration such recommended standards, shall issue (and revise from time to time) standards for quality assurance, including standards for testing the proficiency of forensic laboratories, and forensic analysts, in conducting analyses of DNA.

(3) The standards described in paragraphs (1) and (2) shall specify criteria for quality assurance and proficiency tests to be applied to the various types of DNA analyses used by forensic laboratories. The standards shall also include a system for grading proficiency testing performance to determine whether a laboratory is performing acceptably.

(4) Until such time as the advisory board has made recommendations to the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation and the Director has acted upon those recommendations, the quality assurance guidelines adopted by the technical working group on DNA analysis methods shall be deemed the Director's standards for purposes of this section.

(b) Administration of advisory board

(1) For administrative purposes, the advisory board appointed under subsection (a) shall be considered an advisory board to the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

(2) Section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.) shall not apply with respect to the advisory board appointed under subsection (a).

(3) The DNA advisory board established under this section shall be separate and distinct from any other advisory board administered by the FBI, and is to be administered separately.

(4) The board shall cease to exist on the date 5 years after the initial appointments are made to the board, unless the existence of the board is extended by the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

(c) Proficiency testing program

(1) Not later than 1 year after the effective date of this Act,[1] the Director of the National Institute of Justice shall certify to the Committees on the Judiciary of the House and Senate that—

(A) the Institute has entered into a contract with, or made a grant to, an appropriate entity for establishing, or has taken other appropriate action to ensure that there is established, not later than 2 years after September 13, 1994, a blind external proficiency testing program for DNA analyses, which shall be available to public and private laboratories performing forensic DNA analyses;

(B) a blind external proficiency testing program for DNA analyses is already readily available to public and private laboratories performing forensic DNA analyses; or

(C) it is not feasible to have blind external testing for DNA forensic analyses.

(2) As used in this subsection, the term "blind external proficiency test" means a test that is presented to a forensic laboratory through a second agency and appears to the analysts to involve routine evidence.

(3) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Attorney General shall make available to the Director of the National Institute of Justice during the first fiscal year in which funds are distributed under this subtitle up to $250,000 from the funds available under part X of Title I of the Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968 [42 U.S.C. 3796kk et seq.] to carry out this subsection.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXI, §210303, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2068.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is section 14 of Pub. L. 92–463, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

The effective date of this Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), probably means the date of enactment of Pub. L. 103–322, which was approved Sept. 13, 1994.

This subtitle, referred to in subsec. (c)(3), is subtitle C (§§210301–210306) of title XXI of Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2065, known as the DNA Identification Act of 1994, which enacted this part and sections 3796kk to 3796kk–6 of this title, amended former sections 3751 and 3753 of this title and sections 3793 and 3797 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as notes under former section 3751 of this title and section 13701 of this title. For complete classification of this subtitle to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

The Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968, referred to in subsec. (c)(3), is Pub. L. 90–351, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 197, as amended. Part X of title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter XII–L (§3796kk et seq.) of chapter 46 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3711 of this title and Tables.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§14132. Index to facilitate law enforcement exchange of DNA identification information

(a) Establishment of index

The Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation may establish an index of—

(1) DNA identification records of—

(A) persons convicted of crimes;

(B) persons who have been charged in an indictment or information with a crime; and

(C) other persons whose DNA samples are collected under applicable legal authorities,

provided that DNA samples that are voluntarily submitted solely for elimination purposes shall not be included in the National DNA Index System;

(2) analyses of DNA samples recovered from crime scenes;

(3) analyses of DNA samples recovered from unidentified human remains; and

(4) analyses of DNA samples voluntarily contributed from relatives of missing persons.

(b) Information

The index described in subsection (a) shall include only information on DNA identification records and DNA analyses that are—

(1) based on analyses performed by or on behalf of a criminal justice agency (or the Secretary of Defense in accordance with section 1565 of title 10) in accordance with publicly available standards that satisfy or exceed the guidelines for a quality assurance program for DNA analysis, issued by the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation under section 14131 of this title;

(2) prepared by laboratories that—

(A) not later than 2 years after October 30, 2004, have been accredited by a nonprofit professional association of persons actively involved in forensic science that is nationally recognized within the forensic science community; and

(B) undergo external audits, not less than once every 2 years, that demonstrate compliance with standards established by the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation; and

(3) maintained by Federal, State, and local criminal justice agencies (or the Secretary of Defense in accordance with section 1565 of title 10) pursuant to rules that allow disclosure of stored DNA samples and DNA analyses only—

(A) to criminal justice agencies for law enforcement identification purposes;

(B) in judicial proceedings, if otherwise admissible pursuant to applicable statutes or rules;

(C) for criminal defense purposes, to a defendant, who shall have access to samples and analyses performed in connection with the case in which such defendant is charged; or

(D) if personally identifiable information is removed, for a population statistics database, for identification research and protocol development purposes, or for quality control purposes.

(c) Failure to comply

Access to the index established by this section is subject to cancellation if the quality control and privacy requirements described in subsection (b) are not met.

(d) Expungement of records

(1) By Director

(A) The Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation shall promptly expunge from the index described in subsection (a) the DNA analysis of a person included in the index—

(i) on the basis of conviction for a qualifying Federal offense or a qualifying District of Columbia offense (as determined under sections 14135a and 14135b of this title, respectively), if the Director receives, for each conviction of the person of a qualifying offense, a certified copy of a final court order establishing that such conviction has been overturned; or

(ii) on the basis of an arrest under the authority of the United States, if the Attorney General receives, for each charge against the person on the basis of which the analysis was or could have been included in the index, a certified copy of a final court order establishing that such charge has been dismissed or has resulted in an acquittal or that no charge was filed within the applicable time period.

(B) For purposes of subparagraph (A), the term "qualifying offense" means any of the following offenses:

(i) A qualifying Federal offense, as determined under section 14135a of this title.

(ii) A qualifying District of Columbia offense, as determined under section 14135b of this title.

(iii) A qualifying military offense, as determined under section 1565 of title 10.

(C) For purposes of subparagraph (A), a court order is not "final" if time remains for an appeal or application for discretionary review with respect to the order.

(2) By States

(A) As a condition of access to the index described in subsection (a), a State shall promptly expunge from that index the DNA analysis of a person included in the index by that State if—

(i) the responsible agency or official of that State receives, for each conviction of the person of an offense on the basis of which that analysis was or could have been included in the index, a certified copy of a final court order establishing that such conviction has been overturned; or

(ii) the person has not been convicted of an offense on the basis of which that analysis was or could have been included in the index, and the responsible agency or official of that State receives, for each charge against the person on the basis of which the analysis was or could have been included in the index, a certified copy of a final court order establishing that such charge has been dismissed or has resulted in an acquittal or that no charge was filed within the applicable time period.

(B) For purposes of subparagraph (A), a court order is not "final" if time remains for an appeal or application for discretionary review with respect to the order.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXI, §210304, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2069; Pub. L. 106–113, div. B, §1000(a)(1) [title I, §120], Nov. 29, 1999, 113 Stat. 1535, 1501A–23; Pub. L. 106–546, §6(b), Dec. 19, 2000, 114 Stat. 2733; Pub. L. 108–405, title II, §203(a), (d), title III, §302, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2269, 2270, 2272; Pub. L. 109–162, title X, §1002, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3084.)

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (a)(1)(C). Pub. L. 109–162, §1002(1), struck out "DNA profiles from arrestees who have not been charged in an indictment or information with a crime, and" after "provided that".

Subsec. (d)(1)(A). Pub. L. 109–162, §1002(2), added subpar. (A) and struck out former subpar. (A), which read as follows: "The Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation shall promptly expunge from the index described in subsection (a) of this section the DNA analysis of a person included in the index on the basis of a qualifying Federal offense or a qualifying District of Columbia offense (as determined under sections 14135a

and 14135b of this title, respectively) if the Director receives, for each conviction of the person of a qualifying offense, a certified copy of a final court order establishing that such conviction has been overturned."

Subsec. (d)(2)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 109–162, §1002(3), substituted "the responsible agency or official of that State receives, for each charge against the person on the basis of which the analysis was or could have been included in the index, a certified copy of a final court order establishing that such charge has been dismissed or has resulted in an acquittal or that no charge was filed within the applicable time period." for "all charges for which the analysis was or could have been included in the index have been dismissed or resulted in acquittal."

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 109–162, §1002(4), struck out heading and text of subsec. (e). Prior to amendment, text related to authority for keyboard searches.

2004—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 108–405, §203(a)(1), substituted "of—" for "of persons convicted of crimes;" and added subpars (A) to (C).

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 108–405, §302, amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "prepared by laboratories, and DNA analysts, that undergo semiannual external proficiency testing by a DNA proficiency testing program meeting the standards issued under section 14131 of this title; and".

Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 108–405, §203(a)(2)(B), (C), which directed that subsection (d)(2) be amended by substituting "; or" for period at end and by adding cl. (ii) at end, was executed by making the amendment to subpar. (A) of subsec. (d)(2) to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 108–405, §203(a)(2)(A), substituted "if—" for "if" and inserted cl. (i) designation before "the responsible agency".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 108–405, §203(d), added subsec. (e).

2000—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 106–546, §6(b)(1), inserted "(or the Secretary of Defense in accordance with section 1565 of title 10)" after "criminal justice agency".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 106–546, §6(b)(2), substituted "semiannual" for ", at regular intervals of not to exceed 180 days,".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 106–546, §6(b)(3), inserted "(or the Secretary of Defense in accordance with section 1565 of title 10)" after "criminal justice agencies" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 106–546, §6(b)(4), added subsec. (d).

1999—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 106–113 added par. (4).

§14133. Federal Bureau of Investigation

(a) Proficiency testing requirements

(1) Generally

(A) Personnel at the Federal Bureau of Investigation who perform DNA analyses shall undergo semiannual external proficiency testing by a DNA proficiency testing program meeting the standards issued under section 14131 of this title.

(B) Within 1 year after September 13, 1994, the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation shall arrange for periodic blind external tests to determine the proficiency of DNA analysis performed at the Federal Bureau of Investigation laboratory.

(C) In this paragraph, "blind external test" means a test that is presented to the laboratory through a second agency and appears to the analysts to involve routine evidence.

(2) Report

For 5 years after September 13, 1994, the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation shall submit to the Committees on the Judiciary of the House and Senate an annual report on the results of each of the tests described in paragraph (1).

(b) Privacy protection standards

(1) Generally

Except as provided in paragraph (2), the results of DNA tests performed for a Federal law enforcement agency for law enforcement purposes may be disclosed only—

(A) to criminal justice agencies for law enforcement identification purposes;

(B) in judicial proceedings, if otherwise admissible pursuant to applicable statues [1] or rules;

and

(C) for criminal defense purposes, to a defendant, who shall have access to samples and analyses performed in connection with the case in which such defendant is charged.

(2) Exception

If personally identifiable information is removed, test results may be disclosed for a population statistics database, for identification research and protocol development purposes, or for quality control purposes.

(c) Criminal penalty

(1) A person who—

(A) by virtue of employment or official position, has possession of, or access to, individually identifiable DNA information indexed in a database created or maintained by any Federal law enforcement agency; and

(B) knowingly discloses such information in any manner to any person or agency not authorized to receive it,

shall be fined not more than $100,000.

(2) A person who, without authorization, knowingly obtains DNA samples or individually identifiable DNA information indexed in a database created or maintained by any Federal law enforcement agency shall be fined not more than $250,000, or imprisoned for a period of not more than one year, or both.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXI, §210305, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2070; Pub. L. 106–546, §8(c), Dec. 19, 2000, 114 Stat. 2735; Pub. L. 108–405, title II, §203(e)(1), Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2270.)

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 108–405 substituted "$250,000, or imprisoned for a period of not more than one year, or both" for "$100,000".

2000—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 106–546 substituted "semiannual" for ", at regular intervals of not to exceed 180 days,".

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "statutes".*

§14134. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Federal Bureau of Investigation to carry out sections 14131, 14132, and 14133 of this title—

(1) $5,500,000 for fiscal year 1996;

(2) $8,000,000 for fiscal year 1997;

(3) $8,000,000 for fiscal year 1998;

(4) $2,500,000 for fiscal year 1999; and

(5) $1,000,000 for fiscal year 2000.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXI, §210306, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2071.)

§14135. The Debbie Smith DNA Backlog Grant Program

(a) Authorization of grants

The Attorney General may make grants to eligible States or units of local government for use by the State or unit of local government for the following purposes:

(1) To carry out, for inclusion in the Combined DNA Index System of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, DNA analyses of samples collected under applicable legal authority.

(2) To carry out, for inclusion in such Combined DNA Index System, DNA analyses of samples

from crime scenes, including samples from rape kits, samples from other sexual assault evidence, and samples taken in cases without an identified suspect.

(3) To increase the capacity of laboratories owned by the State or by units of local government to carry out DNA analyses of samples specified in paragraph (1) or (2).

(4) To collect DNA samples specified in paragraph (1).

(5) To ensure that DNA testing and analysis of samples from crimes, including sexual assault and other serious violent crimes, are carried out in a timely manner.

(6) To implement a DNA arrestee collection process consistent with sections 14137 to 14137c of this title.

(7) To conduct an audit consistent with subsection (n) of the samples of sexual assault evidence that are in the possession of the State or unit of local government and are awaiting testing.

(8) To ensure that the collection and processing of DNA evidence by law enforcement agencies from crimes, including sexual assault and other violent crimes against persons, is carried out in an appropriate and timely manner and in accordance with the protocols and practices developed under subsection (o)(1).

(b) Eligibility

For a State or unit of local government to be eligible to receive a grant under this section, the chief executive officer of the State or unit of local government shall submit to the Attorney General an application in such form and containing such information as the Attorney General may require. The application shall, as required by the Attorney General—

(1) provide assurances that the State or unit of local government has implemented, or will implement not later than 120 days after the date of such application, a comprehensive plan for the expeditious DNA analysis of samples in accordance with this section;

(2) include a certification that each DNA analysis carried out under the plan shall be maintained pursuant to the privacy requirements described in section 14132(b)(3) of this title;

(3) include a certification that the State or unit of local government has determined, by statute, rule, or regulation, those offenses under State law that shall be treated for purposes of this section as qualifying State offenses;

(4) specify the allocation that the State or unit of local government shall make, in using grant amounts to carry out DNA analyses of samples, as between samples specified in subsection (a)(1) and samples specified in subsection (a)(2);

(5) specify that portion of grant amounts that the State or unit of local government shall use for the purpose specified in subsection (a)(3);

(6) if submitted by a unit of local government, certify that the unit of local government has taken, or is taking, all necessary steps to ensure that it is eligible to include, directly or through a State law enforcement agency, all analyses of samples for which it has requested funding in the Combined DNA Index System; and

(7) specify that portion of grant amounts that the State or unit of local government shall use for the purpose specified in subsection (a)(4).

(c) Formula for distribution of grants

(1) In general

The Attorney General shall distribute grant amounts, and establish appropriate grant conditions under this section, in conformity with a formula or formulas that are designed to effectuate a distribution of funds among eligible States and units of local government that—

(A) maximizes the effective utilization of DNA technology to solve crimes and protect public safety; and

(B) allocates grants among eligible entities fairly and efficiently to address jurisdictions in which significant backlogs exist, by considering—

(i) the number of offender and casework samples awaiting DNA analysis in a jurisdiction;

(ii) the population in the jurisdiction; and

(iii) the number of part 1 violent crimes in the jurisdiction.

(2) Minimum amount

The Attorney General shall allocate to each State not less than 0.50 percent of the total amount appropriated in a fiscal year for grants under this section, except that the United States Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Northern Mariana Islands shall each be allocated 0.125 percent of the total appropriation.

(3) Limitation

Grant amounts distributed under paragraph (1) shall be awarded to conduct DNA analyses of samples from casework or from victims of crime under subsection (a)(2) in accordance with the following limitations:

(A) For fiscal year 2009, not less than 40 percent of the grant amounts shall be awarded for purposes under subsection (a)(2).

(B) For each of the fiscal years 2014 through 2019, not less than 40 percent of the grant amounts shall be awarded for purposes under subsection (a)(2).

(C) For each of fiscal years 2014 through 2019, not less than 75 percent of the total grant amounts shall be awarded for a combination of purposes under paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of subsection (a).

(4) Allocation of grant awards for audits

For each of fiscal years 2014 through 2017, not less than 5 percent, but not more than 7 percent, of the grant amounts distributed under paragraph (1) shall, if sufficient applications to justify such amounts are received by the Attorney General, be awarded for purposes described in subsection (a)(7), provided that none of the funds required to be distributed under this paragraph shall decrease or otherwise limit the availability of funds required to be awarded to States or units of local government under paragraph (3).

(d) Analysis of samples

(1) In general

A plan pursuant to subsection (b)(1) shall require that, except as provided in paragraph (3), each DNA analysis be carried out in a laboratory that satisfies quality assurance standards and is—

(A) operated by the State or a unit of local government; or

(B) operated by a private entity pursuant to a contract with the State or a unit of local government.

(2) Quality assurance standards

(A) The Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation shall maintain and make available to States and units of local government a description of quality assurance protocols and practices that the Director considers adequate to assure the quality of a forensic laboratory.

(B) For purposes of this section, a laboratory satisfies quality assurance standards if the laboratory satisfies the quality control requirements described in paragraphs (1) and (2) of section 14132(b) of this title.

(3) Use of vouchers or contracts for certain purposes

(A) In general

A grant for the purposes specified in paragraph (1), (2), or (5) of subsection (a) may be made in the form of a voucher or contract for laboratory services, even if the laboratory makes a reasonable profit for the services.

(B) Redemption

A voucher or contract under subparagraph (A) may be redeemed at a laboratory operated on a nonprofit or for-profit basis, by a private entity that satisfies quality assurance standards and has been approved by the Attorney General.

(C) Payments

The Attorney General may use amounts authorized under subsection (j) to make payments to

a laboratory described under subparagraph (B).

(e) Restrictions on use of funds

(1) Nonsupplanting

Funds made available pursuant to this section shall not be used to supplant State or local government funds, but shall be used to increase the amount of funds that would, in the absence of Federal funds, be made available from State or local government sources for the purposes of this Act.

(2) Administrative costs

A State or unit of local government may not use more than 3 percent of the funds it receives from this section for administrative expenses.

(f) Reports to the Attorney General

Each State or unit of local government which receives a grant under this section shall submit to the Attorney General, for each year in which funds from a grant received under this section is expended, a report at such time and in such manner as the Attorney General may reasonably require, which contains—

(1) a summary of the activities carried out under the grant and an assessment of whether such activities are meeting the needs identified in the application; and

(2) such other information as the Attorney General may require.

(g) Reports to Congress

Not later than 90 days after the end of each fiscal year for which grants are made under this section, the Attorney General shall submit to the Congress a report that includes—

(1) the aggregate amount of grants made under this section to each State or unit of local government for such fiscal year;

(2) a summary of the information provided by States or units of local government receiving grants under this section; and

(3) a description of the priorities and plan for awarding grants among eligible States and units of local government, and how such plan will ensure the effective use of DNA technology to solve crimes and protect public safety.

(h) Expenditure records

(1) In general

Each State or unit of local government which receives a grant under this section shall keep records as the Attorney General may require to facilitate an effective audit of the receipt and use of grant funds received under this section.

(2) Access

Each State or unit of local government which receives a grant under this section shall make available, for the purpose of audit and examination, such records as are related to the receipt or use of any such grant.

(i) Definition

For purposes of this section, the term "State" means a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Northern Mariana Islands.

(j) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Attorney General for grants under subsection (a) $151,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2015 through 2019.

(k) Use of funds for accreditation and audits

The Attorney General may distribute not more than 1 percent of the grant amounts under subsection (j)—

(1) to States or units of local government to defray the costs incurred by laboratories operated by each such State or unit of local government in preparing for accreditation or reaccreditation;

(2) in the form of additional grants to States, units of local government, or nonprofit professional organizations of persons actively involved in forensic science and nationally recognized within the forensic science community—

(A) to defray the costs of external audits of laboratories operated by such State or unit of local government, which participates in the National DNA Index System, to determine whether the laboratory is in compliance with quality assurance standards;

(B) to assess compliance with any plans submitted to the National Institute of Justice, which detail the use of funds received by States or units of local government under this Act; and

(C) to support future capacity building efforts; and

(3) in the form of additional grants to nonprofit professional associations actively involved in forensic science and nationally recognized within the forensic science community to defray the costs of training persons who conduct external audits of laboratories operated by States and units of local government and which participate in the National DNA Index System.

(l) Use of funds for other forensic sciences

The Attorney General may award a grant under this section to a State or unit of local government to alleviate a backlog of cases with respect to a forensic science other than DNA analysis if the State or unit of local government—

(1) certifies to the Attorney General that in such State or unit—

(A) all of the purposes set forth in subsection (a) have been met;

(B) a significant backlog of casework is not waiting for DNA analysis; and

(C) there is no need for significant laboratory equipment, supplies, or additional personnel for timely DNA processing of casework or offender samples; and

(2) demonstrates to the Attorney General that such State or unit requires assistance in alleviating a backlog of cases involving a forensic science other than DNA analysis.

(m) External audits and remedial efforts

In the event that a laboratory operated by a State or unit of local government which has received funds under this Act has undergone an external audit conducted to determine whether the laboratory is in compliance with standards established by the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, and, as a result of such audit, identifies measures to remedy deficiencies with respect to the compliance by the laboratory with such standards, the State or unit of local government shall implement any such remediation as soon as practicable.

(n) Use of funds for auditing sexual assault evidence backlogs

(1) Eligibility

The Attorney General may award a grant under this section to a State or unit of local government for the purpose described in subsection (a)(7) only if the State or unit of local government—

(A) submits a plan for performing the audit of samples described in such subsection; and

(B) includes in such plan a good-faith estimate of the number of such samples.

(2) Grant conditions

A State or unit of local government receiving a grant for the purpose described in subsection (a)(7)—

(A) may not enter into any contract or agreement with any non-governmental vendor laboratory to conduct an audit described in subsection (a)(7); and

(B) shall—

(i) not later than 1 year after receiving the grant, complete the audit referred to in paragraph (1)(A) in accordance with the plan submitted under such paragraph;

(ii) not later than 60 days after receiving possession of a sample of sexual assault evidence that was not in the possession of the State or unit of local government at the time of the initiation of an audit under paragraph (1)(A), subject to paragraph (4)(F), include in any required reports under clause (v), the information listed under paragraph (4)(B);

(iii) for each sample of sexual assault evidence that is identified as awaiting testing as part of the audit referred to in paragraph (1)(A)—

(I) assign a unique numeric or alphanumeric identifier to each sample of sexual assault evidence that is in the possession of the State or unit of local government and is awaiting testing; and

(II) identify the date or dates after which the State or unit of local government would be barred by any applicable statutes of limitations from prosecuting a perpetrator of the sexual assault to which the sample relates;

(iv) provide that—

(I) the chief law enforcement officer of the State or unit of local government, respectively, is the individual responsible for the compliance of the State or unit of local government, respectively, with the reporting requirements described in clause (v); or

(II) the designee of such officer may fulfill the responsibility described in subclause (I) so long as such designee is an employee of the State or unit of local government, respectively, and is not an employee of any governmental laboratory or non-governmental vendor laboratory; and

(v) comply with all grantee reporting requirements described in paragraph (4).

(3) Extension of initial deadline

The Attorney General may grant an extension of the deadline under paragraph (2)(B)(i) to a State or unit of local government that demonstrates that more time is required for compliance with such paragraph.

(4) Sexual assault forensic evidence reports

(A) In general

For not less than 12 months after the completion of an initial count of sexual assault evidence that is awaiting testing during an audit referred to in paragraph (1)(A), a State or unit of local government that receives a grant award under subsection (a)(7) shall, not less than every 60 days, submit a report to the Department of Justice, on a form prescribed by the Attorney General, which shall contain the information required under subparagraph (B).

(B) Contents of reports

A report under this paragraph shall contain the following information:

(i) The name of the State or unit of local government filing the report.

(ii) The period of dates covered by the report.

(iii) The cumulative total number of samples of sexual assault evidence that, at the end of the reporting period—

(I) are in the possession of the State or unit of local government at the reporting period;

(II) are awaiting testing; and

(III) the State or unit of local government has determined should undergo DNA or other appropriate forensic analyses.

(iv) The cumulative total number of samples of sexual assault evidence in the possession of the State or unit of local government that, at the end of the reporting period, the State or unit of local government has determined should not undergo DNA or other appropriate forensic analyses, provided that the reporting form shall allow for the State or unit of local government, at its sole discretion, to explain the reasoning for this determination in some or all cases.

(v) The cumulative total number of samples of sexual assault evidence in a total under clause (iii) that have been submitted to a laboratory for DNA or other appropriate forensic analyses.

(vi) The cumulative total number of samples of sexual assault evidence identified by an audit referred to in paragraph (1)(A) or under paragraph (2)(B)(ii) for which DNA or other appropriate forensic analysis has been completed at the end of the reporting period.

(vii) The total number of samples of sexual assault evidence identified by the State or unit of local government under paragraph (2)(B)(ii), since the previous reporting period.

(viii) The cumulative total number of samples of sexual assault evidence described under clause (iii) for which the State or unit of local government will be barred within 12 months by any applicable statute of limitations from prosecuting a perpetrator of the sexual assault to which the sample relates.

(C) Publication of reports

Not later than 7 days after the submission of a report under this paragraph by a State or unit of local government, the Attorney General shall, subject to subparagraph (D), publish and disseminate a facsimile of the full contents of such report on an appropriate internet website.

(D) Personally identifiable information

The Attorney General shall ensure that any information published and disseminated as part of a report under this paragraph, which reports information under this subsection, does not include personally identifiable information or details about a sexual assault that might lead to the identification of the individuals involved.

(E) Optional reporting

The Attorney General shall—

(i) at the discretion of a State or unit of local government required to file a report under subparagraph (A), allow such State or unit of local government, at their sole discretion, to submit such reports on a more frequent basis; and

(ii) make available to all States and units of local government the reporting form created pursuant to subparagraph (A), whether or not they are required to submit such reports, and allow such States or units of local government, at their sole discretion, to submit such reports for publication.

(F) Samples exempt from reporting requirement

The reporting requirements described in paragraph (2) shall not apply to a sample of sexual assault evidence that—

(i) is not considered criminal evidence (such as a sample collected anonymously from a victim who is unwilling to make a criminal complaint); or

(ii) relates to a sexual assault for which the prosecution of each perpetrator is barred by a statute of limitations.

(5) Definitions

In this subsection:

(A) Awaiting testing

The term "awaiting testing" means, with respect to a sample of sexual assault evidence, that—

(i) the sample has been collected and is in the possession of a State or unit of local government;

(ii) DNA and other appropriate forensic analyses have not been performed on such sample; and

(iii) the sample is related to a criminal case or investigation in which final disposition has not yet been reached.

(B) Final disposition

The term "final disposition" means, with respect to a criminal case or investigation to which a sample of sexual assault evidence relates—

(i) the conviction or acquittal of all suspected perpetrators of the crime involved;

(ii) a determination by the State or unit of local government in possession of the sample that the case is unfounded; or

(iii) a declaration by the victim of the crime involved that the act constituting the basis of the crime was not committed.

(C) Possession

(i) In general

The term "possession", used with respect to possession of a sample of sexual assault evidence by a State or unit of local government, includes possession by an individual who is acting as an agent of the State or unit of local government for the collection of the sample.

(ii) Rule of construction

Nothing in clause (i) shall be construed to create or amend any Federal rights or privileges for non-governmental vendor laboratories described in regulations promulgated under section 14131 of this title.

(o) Establishment of protocols, technical assistance, and definitions

(1) Protocols and practices

Not later than 18 months after March 7, 2013, the Director, in consultation with Federal, State, and local law enforcement agencies and government laboratories, shall develop and publish a description of protocols and practices the Director considers appropriate for the accurate, timely, and effective collection and processing of DNA evidence, including protocols and practices specific to sexual assault cases, which shall address appropriate steps in the investigation of cases that might involve DNA evidence, including—

(A) how to determine—

(i) which evidence is to be collected by law enforcement personnel and forwarded for testing;

(ii) the preferred order in which evidence from the same case is to be tested; and

(iii) what information to take into account when establishing the order in which evidence from different cases is to be tested;

(B) the establishment of a reasonable period of time in which evidence is to be forwarded by emergency response providers, law enforcement personnel, and prosecutors to a laboratory for testing;

(C) the establishment of reasonable periods of time in which each stage of analytical laboratory testing is to be completed;

(D) systems to encourage communication within a State or unit of local government among emergency response providers, law enforcement personnel, prosecutors, courts, defense counsel, crime laboratory personnel, and crime victims regarding the status of crime scene evidence to be tested; and

(E) standards for conducting the audit of the backlog for DNA case work in sexual assault cases required under subsection (n).

(2) Technical assistance and training

The Director shall make available technical assistance and training to support States and units of local government in adopting and implementing the protocols and practices developed under paragraph (1) on and after the date on which the protocols and practices are published.

(3) Definitions

In this subsection, the terms "awaiting testing" and "possession" have the meanings given those terms in subsection (n).

(Pub. L. 106–546, §2, Dec. 19, 2000, 114 Stat. 2726; Pub. L. 108–405, title II, §§202, 206, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2266, 2272; Pub. L. 109–162, title X, §1003, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3085; Pub. L. 110–360, §2, Oct. 8, 2008, 122 Stat. 4008; Pub. L. 112–253, §6, Jan. 10, 2013, 126 Stat. 2409; Pub. L. 113–4, title X, §§1002, 1004, 1006, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 127, 131, 134; Pub. L. 113–182, §2, Sept. 29, 2014, 128 Stat. 1918.)

AMENDMENT OF SECTION

For termination of amendment by section 1006 of Pub. L. 113–4, see Termination Date of 2013 Amendment note below.

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 14137 to 14137c of this title, referred to in subsec. (a)(6), was in the original "the Katie Sepich Enhanced DNA Collection Act of 2012", meaning Pub. L. 112–253, Jan. 10, 2013, 126 Stat. 2407, which enacted sections 14137 to 14137c of this title and amended section 14135 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2013 Amendment note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsecs. (e)(1), (k)(2)(B), and (m), is Pub. L. 106–546, Dec. 19, 2000, 114 Stat. 2726, known as the DNA Analysis Backlog Elimination Act of 2000. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2000 Amendments note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the DNA Analysis Backlog Elimination Act of 2000, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (c)(3)(B). Pub. L. 113–182, §2(1)(A), substituted "2014 through 2019" for "2010 through 2018".

Subsec. (c)(3)(C). Pub. L. 113–182, §2(1)(B), substituted "2019" for "2018".

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 113–182, §2(2), substituted "2015 through 2019" for "2009 through 2014".

2013—Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 113–4, §1006, struck out par. (6) which read as follows: "To implement a DNA arrestee collection process consistent with sections 14137 to 14137c of this title." See Termination Date of 2013 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 112–253 added par. (6).

Subsec. (a)(7), (8). Pub. L. 113–4, §1002(1), added pars. (7) and (8).

Subsec. (c)(3)(B). Pub. L. 113–4, §1004(a), substituted "2018" for "2014".

Subsec. (c)(3)(C). Pub. L. 113–4, §1004(b), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 113–4, §1002(2), added par. (4).

Subsec. (n).Pub. L. 113–4, §1006, struck out subsec. (n) which related to use of funds for auditing sexual assault evidence backlogs. See Termination Date of 2013 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 113–4, §1002(3), added subsec. (n).

Subsec. (o). Pub. L. 113–4, §1002(3), added subsec. (o).

2008—Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 110–360, §2(1)(B), which directed redesignation of subpar. (E) and subpar. (A), was executed by redesignating subpar. (E) as (A), to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (c)(3)(A). Pub. L. 110–360, §2(1)(A), struck out subpar. (A) which read as follows: "For fiscal year 2005, not less than 50 percent of the grant amounts shall be awarded for purposes under subsection (a)(2) of this section."

Subsec. (c)(3)(B) to (D). Pub. L. 110–360, §2(1)(A), (C), added subpar. (B) and struck out former subpars. (B) to (D) which read as follows:

"(B) For fiscal year 2006, not less than 50 percent of the grant amounts shall be awarded for purposes under subsection (a)(2) of this section.

"(C) For fiscal year 2007, not less than 45 percent of the grant amounts shall be awarded for purposes under subsection (a)(2) of this section.

"(D) For fiscal year 2008, not less than 40 percent of the grant amounts shall be awarded for purposes under subsection (a)(2) of this section."

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 110–360, §2(2), amended subsec. (j) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (j) authorized to be appropriated to the Attorney General for grants under subsection (a) $151,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2005 through 2009.

2006—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 109–162 substituted "collected under applicable legal authority" for "taken

from individuals convicted of a qualifying State offense (as determined under subsection (b)(3) of this section)".

2004—Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(1), substituted "The Debbie Smith DNA Backlog Grant Program" for "Authorization of grants" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(2)(A), in introductory provisions, inserted "or units of local government" after "eligible States" and "or unit of local government" after "State".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(2)(B), inserted ", including samples from rape kits, samples from other sexual assault evidence, and samples taken in cases without an identified suspect" before period at end.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(2)(C), (b)(1)(A), struck out "within the State" after "local government" and inserted "(1) or" before "(2)".

Subsec. (a)(4), (5). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(b)(1)(B), added pars. (4) and (5).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(3)(A), in introductory provisions, inserted "or unit of local government" after "State" in two places and ", as required by the Attorney General" after "application shall".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(3)(B), inserted "or unit of local government" after "State".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(3)(C), inserted "or unit of local government" after "that the State".

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(3)(D), inserted "or unit of local government" after "State" and struck out "and" at end.

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(3)(E), inserted "or unit of local government" after "State" and substituted semicolon for period at end.

Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(3)(F), added par. (6).

Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(b)(2), added par. (7).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(b)(3), amended heading and text of subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A State that proposes to allocate grant amounts under paragraph (4) or (5) of subsection (b) of this section for the purposes specified in paragraph (2) or (3) of subsection (a) of this section shall use such allocated amounts to conduct or facilitate DNA analyses of those samples that relate to crimes in connection with which there are no suspects."

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(4)(A), substituted "A plan pursuant to subsection (b)(1)" for "The plan" in introductory provisions and struck out "within the State" after "local government" in subpars. (A) and (B).

Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(4)(B), inserted "and units of local government" after "States".

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 108–405, §206, amended heading and text of par. (3) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A grant for the purposes specified in paragraph (1) or (2) of subsection (a) of this section may be made in the form of a voucher for laboratory services, which may be redeemed at a laboratory operated by a private entity approved by the Attorney General that satisfies quality assurance standards. The Attorney General may make payment to such a laboratory for the analysis of DNA samples using amounts authorized for those purposes under subsection (j) of this section."

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(5)(A), inserted "or local government" after "State" in two places.

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(5)(B), inserted "or unit of local government" after "State".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(6), inserted "or unit of local government" after "State" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(7)(A), inserted "or unit of local government" after "State".

Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(7)(B), inserted "or units of local government" after "States".

Subsec. (g)(3). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(b)(4), added par. (3).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(a)(8), inserted "or unit of local government" after "State" in pars. (1) and (2).

Subsec. (j)(1) to (5). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(b)(5), substituted pars. (1) to (5) for former pars. (1) and (2) which read as follows:

"(1) For grants for the purposes specified in paragraph (1) of such subsection—

"(A) $15,000,000 for fiscal year 2001;

"(B) $15,000,000 for fiscal year 2002; and

"(C) $15,000,000 for fiscal year 2003.

"(2) For grants for the purposes specified in paragraphs (2) and (3) of such subsection—

"(A) $25,000,000 for fiscal year 2001;

"(B) $50,000,000 for fiscal year 2002;

"(C) $25,000,000 for fiscal year 2003; and

"(D) $25,000,000 for fiscal year 2004."

Subsec. (k) to (m). Pub. L. 108–405, §202(b)(6), added subsecs. (k) to (m).

TERMINATION DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 113–4, title X, §1006, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 134, provided that: "Effective on December 31, 2018, subsections (a)(6) and (n) of section 2 of the DNA Analysis Backlog Elimination Act of 2000 (42 U.S.C. 14135(a)(6) and (n)) are repealed."

REPORTS TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 113–4, title X, §1003, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 131, provided that: "Not later than 90 days after the end of each fiscal year for which a grant is made for the purpose described in section 2(a)(7) of the DNA Analysis Backlog Elimination Act of 2000 [42 U.S.C. 14135(a)(7)], as amended by section 1002, the Attorney General shall submit to Congress a report that—

"(1) lists the States and units of local government that have been awarded such grants and the amount of the grant received by each such State or unit of local government;

"(2) states the number of extensions granted by the Attorney General under section 2(n)(3) of the DNA Analysis Backlog Elimination Act of 2000 [42 U.S.C. 14135(n)(3)], as added by section 1002; and

"(3) summarizes the processing status of the samples of sexual assault evidence identified in Sexual Assault Forensic Evidence Reports established under section 2(n)(4) of the DNA Analysis Backlog Elimination Act of 2000 [42 U.S.C. 14135(n)(4)], including the number of samples that have not been tested."

OVERSIGHT AND ACCOUNTABILITY

Pub. L. 113–4, title X, §1005, Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 132, provided that: "All grants awarded by the Department of Justice that are authorized under this title [amending this section and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 13701 of this title] shall be subject to the following:

"(1) AUDIT REQUIREMENT.—Beginning in fiscal year 2013, and each fiscal year thereafter, the Inspector General of the Department of Justice shall conduct audits of recipients of grants under this title to prevent waste, fraud, and abuse of funds by grantees. The Inspector General shall determine the appropriate number of grantees to be audited each year.

"(2) MANDATORY EXCLUSION.—A recipient of grant funds under this title that is found to have an unresolved audit finding shall not be eligible to receive grant funds under this title during the 2 fiscal years beginning after the 12-month period described in paragraph (5).

"(3) PRIORITY.—In awarding grants under this title, the Attorney General shall give priority to eligible entities that, during the 3 fiscal years before submitting an application for a grant under this title, did not have an unresolved audit finding showing a violation in the terms or conditions of a Department of Justice grant program.

"(4) REIMBURSEMENT.—If an entity is awarded grant funds under this Act [Pub. L. 113–4, see Tables for classification] during the 2-fiscal-year period in which the entity is barred from receiving grants under paragraph (2), the Attorney General shall—

"(A) deposit an amount equal to the grant funds that were improperly awarded to the grantee into the General Fund of the Treasury; and

"(B) seek to recoup the costs of the repayment to the fund from the grant recipient that was erroneously awarded grant funds.

"(5) DEFINED TERM.—In this section, the term 'unresolved audit finding' means an audit report finding in the final audit report of the Inspector General of the Department of Justice that the grantee has utilized grant funds for an unauthorized expenditure or otherwise unallowable cost that is not closed or resolved within a 12-month period beginning on the date when the final audit report is issued.

"(6) NONPROFIT ORGANIZATION REQUIREMENTS.—

"(A) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this section and the grant programs described in this title, the term 'nonprofit organization' means an organization that is described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 [26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3)] and is exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of such Code.

"(B) PROHIBITION.—The Attorney General shall not award a grant under any grant program described in this title to a nonprofit organization that holds money in offshore accounts for the purpose of avoiding paying the tax described in section 511(a) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 [26 U.S.C. 511(a)].

"(C) DISCLOSURE.—Each nonprofit organization that is awarded a grant under a grant program described in this title and uses the procedures prescribed in regulations to create a rebuttable presumption of reasonableness for the compensation of its officers, directors, trustees and key employees, shall disclose to the Attorney General, in the application for the grant, the process for determining such compensation, including the independent persons involved in reviewing and approving such

compensation, the comparability data used, and contemporaneous substantiation of the deliberation and decision. Upon request, the Attorney General shall make the information disclosed under this subsection available for public inspection.

"(7) ADMINISTRATIVE EXPENSES.—Unless otherwise explicitly provided in authorizing legislation, not more than 7.5 percent of the amounts authorized to be appropriated under this title may be used by the Attorney General for salaries and administrative expenses of the Department of Justice.

"(8) CONFERENCE EXPENDITURES.—

"(A) LIMITATION.—No amounts authorized to be appropriated to the Department of Justice under this title may be used by the Attorney General or by any individual or organization awarded discretionary funds through a cooperative agreement under this Act, to host or support any expenditure for conferences that uses more than $20,000 in Department funds, unless the Deputy Attorney General or the appropriate Assistant Attorney General, Director, or principal deputy as the Deputy Attorney General may designate, provides prior written authorization that the funds may be expended to host a conference.

"(B) WRITTEN APPROVAL.—Written approval under subparagraph (A) shall include a written estimate of all costs associated with the conference, including the cost of all food and beverages, audio/visual equipment, honoraria for speakers, and any entertainment.

"(C) REPORT.—The Deputy Attorney General shall submit an annual report to the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives on all conference expenditures approved by operation of this paragraph.

"(9) PROHIBITION ON LOBBYING ACTIVITY.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—Amounts authorized to be appropriated under this title may not be utilized by any grant recipient to—

"(i) lobby any representative of the Department of Justice regarding the award of grant funding; or

"(ii) lobby any representative of a Federal, state, local, or tribal government regarding the award of grant funding.

"(B) PENALTY.—If the Attorney General determines that any recipient of a grant under this title has violated subparagraph (A), the Attorney General shall—

"(i) require the grant recipient to repay the grant in full; and

"(ii) prohibit the grant recipient from receiving another grant under this title for not less than 5 years."

SENSE OF CONGRESS REGARDING THE OBLIGATION OF GRANTEE STATES TO ENSURE ACCESS TO POST-CONVICTION DNA TESTING AND COMPETENT COUNSEL IN CAPITAL CASES

Pub. L. 106–561, §4, Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2791, provided that:

"(a) FINDINGS.—Congress finds that—

"(1) over the past decade, deoxyribonucleic acid testing (referred to in this section as 'DNA testing') has emerged as the most reliable forensic technique for identifying criminals when biological material is left at a crime scene;

"(2) because of its scientific precision, DNA testing can, in some cases, conclusively establish the guilt or innocence of a criminal defendant;

"(3) in other cases, DNA testing may not conclusively establish guilt or innocence, but may have significant probative value to a finder of fact;

"(4) DNA testing was not widely available in cases tried prior to 1994;

"(5) new forensic DNA testing procedures have made it possible to get results from minute samples that could not previously be tested, and to obtain more informative and accurate results than earlier forms of forensic DNA testing could produce, resulting in some cases of convicted inmates being exonerated by new DNA tests after earlier tests had failed to produce definitive results;

"(6) DNA testing can and has resulted in the post-conviction exoneration of more than 75 innocent men and women, including some under sentence of death;

"(7) in more than a dozen cases, post-conviction DNA testing that has exonerated an innocent person has also enhanced public safety by providing evidence that led to the apprehension of the actual perpetrator;

"(8) experience has shown that it is not unduly burdensome to make DNA testing available to inmates in appropriate cases;

"(9) under current Federal and State law, it is difficult to obtain post-conviction DNA testing because of time limits on introducing newly discovered evidence;

"(10) the National Commission on the Future of DNA Evidence, a Federal panel established by the

Department of Justice and comprised of law enforcement, judicial, and scientific experts, has urged that post-conviction DNA testing be permitted in the relatively small number of cases in which it is appropriate, notwithstanding procedural rules that could be invoked to preclude such testing, and notwithstanding the inability of an inmate to pay for the testing;

"(11) only a few States have adopted post-conviction DNA testing procedures;

"(12) States have received millions of dollars in DNA-related grants, and more funding is needed to improve State forensic facilities and to reduce the nationwide backlog of DNA samples from convicted offenders and crime scenes that need to be tested or retested using upgraded methods;

"(13) States that accept such financial assistance should not deny the promise of truth and justice for both sides of our adversarial system that DNA testing offers;

"(14) post-conviction DNA testing and other post-conviction investigative techniques have shown that innocent people have been sentenced to death in this country;

"(15) a constitutional error in capital cases is incompetent defense lawyers who fail to present important evidence that the defendant may have been innocent or does not deserve to be sentenced to death; and

"(16) providing quality representation to defendants facing loss of liberty or life is essential to fundamental due process and the speedy final resolution of judicial proceedings.

"(b) SENSE OF CONGRESS.—It is the sense of Congress that—

"(1) Congress should condition forensic science-related grants to a State or State forensic facility on the State's agreement to ensure post-conviction DNA testing in appropriate cases; and

"(2) Congress should work with the States to improve the quality of legal representation in capital cases through the establishment of standards that will assure the timely appointment of competent counsel with adequate resources to represent defendants in capital cases at each stage of the proceedings."

Pub. L. 106–546, §11, Dec. 19, 2000, 114 Stat. 2735, enacted provisions substantially identical to those enacted by Pub. L. 106–561, §4, set out above.

§14135a. Collection and use of DNA identification information from certain Federal offenders

(a) Collection of DNA samples

(1) From individuals in custody

(A) The Attorney General may, as prescribed by the Attorney General in regulation, collect DNA samples from individuals who are arrested, facing charges, or convicted or from non-United States persons who are detained under the authority of the United States. The Attorney General may delegate this function within the Department of Justice as provided in section 510 of title 28 and may also authorize and direct any other agency of the United States that arrests or detains individuals or supervises individuals facing charges to carry out any function and exercise any power of the Attorney General under this section.

(B) The Director of the Bureau of Prisons shall collect a DNA sample from each individual in the custody of the Bureau of Prisons who is, or has been, convicted of a qualifying Federal offense (as determined under subsection (d)) or a qualifying military offense, as determined under section 1565 of title 10.

(2) From individuals on release, parole, or probation

The probation office responsible for the supervision under Federal law of an individual on probation, parole, or supervised release shall collect a DNA sample from each such individual who is, or has been, convicted of a qualifying Federal offense (as determined under subsection (d)) or a qualifying military offense, as determined under section 1565 of title 10.

(3) Individuals already in CODIS

For each individual described in paragraph (1) or (2), if the Combined DNA Index System (in this section referred to as "CODIS") of the Federal Bureau of Investigation contains a DNA analysis with respect to that individual, or if a DNA sample has been collected from that

individual under section 1565 of title 10, the Attorney General, the Director of the Bureau of Prisons, or the probation office responsible (as applicable) may (but need not) collect a DNA sample from that individual.

(4) Collection procedures

(A) The Attorney General, the Director of the Bureau of Prisons, or the probation office responsible (as applicable) may use or authorize the use of such means as are reasonably necessary to detain, restrain, and collect a DNA sample from an individual who refuses to cooperate in the collection of the sample.

(B) The Attorney General, the Director of the Bureau of Prisons, or the probation office, as appropriate, may enter into agreements with units of State or local government or with private entities to provide for the collection of the samples described in paragraph (1) or (2).

(5) Criminal penalty

An individual from whom the collection of a DNA sample is authorized under this subsection who fails to cooperate in the collection of that sample shall be—

(A) guilty of a class A misdemeanor; and

(B) punished in accordance with title 18.

(b) Analysis and use of samples

The Attorney General, the Director of the Bureau of Prisons, or the probation office responsible (as applicable) shall furnish each DNA sample collected under subsection (a) to the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, who shall carry out a DNA analysis on each such DNA sample and include the results in CODIS.

(c) Definitions

In this section:

(1) The term "DNA sample" means a tissue, fluid, or other bodily sample of an individual on which a DNA analysis can be carried out.

(2) The term "DNA analysis" means analysis of the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) identification information in a bodily sample.

(d) Qualifying Federal offenses

The offenses that shall be treated for purposes of this section as qualifying Federal offenses are the following offenses, as determined by the Attorney General:

(1) Any felony.

(2) Any offense under chapter 109A of title 18.

(3) Any crime of violence (as that term is defined in section 16 of title 18).

(4) Any attempt or conspiracy to commit any of the offenses in paragraphs (1) through (3).

(e) Regulations

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (2), this section shall be carried out under regulations prescribed by the Attorney General.

(2) Probation officers

The Director of the Administrative Office of the United States Courts shall make available model procedures for the activities of probation officers in carrying out this section.

(f) Commencement of collection

Collection of DNA samples under subsection (a) shall, subject to the availability of appropriations, commence not later than the date that is 180 days after December 19, 2000.

(Pub. L. 106–546, §3, Dec. 19, 2000, 114 Stat. 2728; Pub. L. 107–56, title V, §503, Oct. 26, 2001, 115 Stat. 364; Pub. L. 108–405, title II, §203(b), Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2270; Pub. L. 109–162, title X, §1004(a), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3085; Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §155, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 611.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the DNA Analysis Backlog Elimination Act of 2000, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 109–162, §1004(a)(1), added subpar. (A) and designated existing provisions as subpar. (B).

Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 109–248 substituted "arrested, facing charges, or convicted" for "arrested".

Subsec. (a)(3), (4). Pub. L. 109–162, §1004(a)(1)(B), substituted "Attorney General, the Director of the Bureau of Prisons," for "Director of the Bureau of Prisons" in par. (3) and subpars. (A) and (B) of par. (4).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 109–162, §1004(a)(2), substituted "Attorney General, the Director of the Bureau of Prisons," for "Director of the Bureau of Prisons".

2004—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 108–405 reenacted heading without change and amended text generally, substituting pars. (1) to (4) for former pars. (1) and (2) with multiple subpars. listing specific offenses.

2001—Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 107–56 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "The initial determination of qualifying Federal offenses shall be made not later than 120 days after December 19, 2000."

§14135b. Collection and use of DNA identification information from certain District of Columbia offenders

(a) Collection of DNA samples

(1) From individuals in custody

The Director of the Bureau of Prisons shall collect a DNA sample from each individual in the custody of the Bureau of Prisons who is, or has been, convicted of a qualifying District of Columbia offense (as determined under subsection (d)).

(2) From individuals on release, parole, or probation

The Director of the Court Services and Offender Supervision Agency for the District of Columbia shall collect a DNA sample from each individual under the supervision of the Agency who is on supervised release, parole, or probation who is, or has been, convicted of a qualifying District of Columbia offense (as determined under subsection (d)).

(3) Individuals already in CODIS

For each individual described in paragraph (1) or (2), if the Combined DNA Index System (in this section referred to as "CODIS") of the Federal Bureau of Investigation contains a DNA analysis with respect to that individual, the Director of the Bureau of Prisons or Agency (as applicable) may (but need not) collect a DNA sample from that individual.

(4) Collection procedures

(A) The Director of the Bureau of Prisons or Agency (as applicable) may use or authorize the use of such means as are reasonably necessary to detain, restrain, and collect a DNA sample from an individual who refuses to cooperate in the collection of the sample.

(B) The Director of the Bureau of Prisons or Agency, as appropriate, may enter into agreements with units of State or local government or with private entities to provide for the collection of the samples described in paragraph (1) or (2).

(5) Criminal penalty

An individual from whom the collection of a DNA sample is authorized under this subsection who fails to cooperate in the collection of that sample shall be—

(A) guilty of a class A misdemeanor; and

(B) punished in accordance with title 18.

(b) Analysis and use of samples

The Director of the Bureau of Prisons or Agency (as applicable) shall furnish each DNA sample

collected under subsection (a) to the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, who shall carry out a DNA analysis on each such DNA sample and include the results in CODIS.

(c) Definitions

In this section:

(1) The term "DNA sample" means a tissue, fluid, or other bodily sample of an individual on which a DNA analysis can be carried out.

(2) The term "DNA analysis" means analysis of the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) identification information in a bodily sample.

(d) Qualifying District of Columbia offenses

The government of the District of Columbia may determine those offenses under the District of Columbia Code that shall be treated for purposes of this section as qualifying District of Columbia offenses.

(e) Commencement of collection

Collection of DNA samples under subsection (a) shall, subject to the availability of appropriations, commence not later than the date that is 180 days after December 19, 2000.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Court Services and Offender Supervision Agency for the District of Columbia to carry out this section such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2001 through 2005.

(Pub. L. 106–546, §4, Dec. 19, 2000, 114 Stat. 2730.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the DNA Analysis Backlog Elimination Act of 2000, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14135c. Conditions of release generally

If the collection of a DNA sample from an individual on probation, parole, or supervised release is authorized pursuant to section 14135a or 14135b of this title or section 1565 of title 10, the individual shall cooperate in the collection of a DNA sample as a condition of that probation, parole, or supervised release.

(Pub. L. 106–546, §7(d), Dec. 19, 2000, 114 Stat. 2734.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the DNA Analysis Backlog Elimination Act of 2000, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14135d. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Attorney General to carry out this Act (including to reimburse the Federal judiciary for any reasonable costs incurred in implementing such Act, as determined by the Attorney General) such sums as may be necessary.

(Pub. L. 106–546, §9, Dec. 19, 2000, 114 Stat. 2735.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 106–546, Dec. 19, 2000, 114 Stat. 2726, known as the DNA Analysis Backlog Elimination Act of 2000. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2000 Amendments note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the DNA Analysis Backlog Elimination Act of 2000, and not as part of the

Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14135e. Privacy protection standards

(a) In general

Except as provided in subsection (b), any sample collected under, or any result of any analysis carried out under, section 14135, 14135a, or 14135b of this title may be used only for a purpose specified in such section.

(b) Permissive uses

A sample or result described in subsection (a) may be disclosed under the circumstances under which disclosure of information included in the Combined DNA Index System is allowed, as specified in subparagraphs (A) through (D) of section 14132(b)(3) of this title.

(c) Criminal penalty

A person who knowingly discloses a sample or result described in subsection (a) in any manner to any person not authorized to receive it, or obtains or uses, without authorization, such sample or result, shall be fined not more than $250,000, or imprisoned for a period of not more than one year. Each instance of disclosure, obtaining, or use shall constitute a separate offense under this subsection.

(Pub. L. 106–546, §10, Dec. 19, 2000, 114 Stat. 2735; Pub. L. 108–405, title II, §203(e)(2), title III, §309, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2271, 2275.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the DNA Analysis Backlog Elimination Act of 2000, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 108–405, §309, reenacted heading without change and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A person who knowingly—

"(1) discloses a sample or result described in subsection (a) of this section in any manner to any person not authorized to receive it; or

"(2) obtains, without authorization, a sample or result described in subsection (a) of this section,

shall be fined not more than $250,000, or imprisoned for a period of not more than one year, or both."

Pub. L. 108–405, §203(e)(2), substituted "$250,000, or imprisoned for a period of not more than one year, or both" for "$100,000" in concluding provisions.

§14136. DNA training and education for law enforcement, correctional personnel, and court officers

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall make grants to provide training, technical assistance, education, and information relating to the identification, collection, preservation, analysis, and use of DNA samples and DNA evidence by—

(1) law enforcement personnel, including police officers and other first responders, evidence technicians, investigators, and others who collect or examine evidence of crime;

(2) court officers, including State and local prosecutors, defense lawyers, and judges;

(3) forensic science professionals; and

(4) corrections personnel, including prison and jail personnel, and probation, parole, and other officers involved in supervision.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $12,500,000 for each of fiscal years 2015 through 2019 to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 108–405, title III, §303, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2273; Pub. L. 110–360, §3, Oct. 8, 2008, 122 Stat. 4008; Pub. L. 113–182, §3, Sept. 29, 2014, 128 Stat. 1918.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the DNA Sexual Assault Justice Act of 2004 and also as part of the Justice for All Act of 2004, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 113–182 substituted "2015 through 2019" for "2009 through 2014".
2008—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–360 substituted "2009 through 2014" for "2005 through 2009".

INCENTIVE GRANTS TO STATES TO ENSURE CONSIDERATION OF CLAIMS OF ACTUAL INNOCENCE

Pub. L. 108–405, title IV, §413, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2285, as amended by Pub. L. 114–324, §12(a), Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1957, provided that: "For each of fiscal years 2017 through 2021, all funds appropriated to carry out sections 303, 305, 308, and 412 [sections 14136, 14136b, 14136d, and 14136e of this title] shall be reserved for grants to eligible entities that—

"(1) meet the requirements under section 303, 305, 308, or 412, as appropriate; and

"(2) for eligible entities that are a State or unit of local government, provide a certification by the chief legal officer of the State in which the eligible entity operates or the chief legal officer of the jurisdiction in which the funds will be used for the purposes of the grants, that the State or jurisdiction—

"(A) provides DNA testing of specified evidence under a State statute or a State or local rule or regulation to persons sentenced to imprisonment or death for a State felony offense, in a manner intended to ensure a reasonable process for resolving claims of actual innocence that ensures post-conviction DNA testing in at least those cases that would be covered by section 3600(a) of title 18, United States Code, had they been Federal cases and, if the results of the testing exclude the applicant as the source of the DNA, permits the applicant to apply for post-conviction relief, notwithstanding any provision of law that would otherwise bar the application as untimely; and

"(B) preserves biological evidence, as defined in section 3600A of title 18, United States Code, under a State statute or a State or local rule, regulation, or practice in a manner intended to ensure that reasonable measures are taken by the State or jurisdiction to preserve biological evidence secured in relation to the investigation or prosecution of, at a minimum, murder, nonnegligent manslaughter and sexual offenses."

§14136a. Sexual assault forensic exam program grants

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall make grants to eligible entities to provide training, technical assistance, education, equipment, and information relating to the identification, collection, preservation, analysis, and use of DNA samples and DNA evidence by medical personnel and other personnel, including doctors, medical examiners, coroners, nurses, victim service providers, and other professionals involved in treating victims of sexual assault and sexual assault examination programs, including SANE (Sexual Assault Nurse Examiner), SAFE (Sexual Assault Forensic Examiner), and SART (Sexual Assault Response Team).

(b) Eligible entity

For purposes of this section, the term "eligible entity" includes—

(1) States;

(2) units of local government; and

(3) sexual assault examination programs, including—

(A) sexual assault nurse examiner (SANE) programs;

(B) sexual assault forensic examiner (SAFE) programs;

(C) sexual assault response team (SART) programs;

(D) State sexual assault coalitions;

(E) medical personnel, including doctors, medical examiners, coroners, and nurses, involved

in treating victims of sexual assault; and

(F) victim service providers involved in treating victims of sexual assault.

(c) Preference

(1) In general

In reviewing applications submitted in accordance with a program authorized, in whole or in part, by this section, the Attorney General shall give preference to any eligible entity that certifies that the entity will use the grant funds to—

(A) improve forensic nurse examiner programs in a rural area or for an underserved population, as those terms are defined in section 13925 [1] of this title;

(B) engage in activities that will assist in the employment of full-time forensic nurse examiners to conduct activities under subsection (a); or

(C) sustain or establish a training program for forensic nurse examiners.

(2) Directive to the Attorney General

Not later than the beginning of fiscal year 2018, the Attorney General shall coordinate with the Secretary of Health and Human Services to inform Federally Qualified Health Centers, Community Health Centers, hospitals, colleges and universities, and other appropriate health-related entities about the role of forensic nurses and existing resources available within the Department of Justice and the Department of Health and Human Services to train or employ forensic nurses to address the needs of communities dealing with sexual assault, domestic violence, and elder abuse. The Attorney General shall collaborate on this effort with nongovernmental organizations representing forensic nurses.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $30,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2015 through 2019 to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 108–405, title III, §304, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2273; Pub. L. 110–360, §4, Oct. 8, 2008, 122 Stat. 4009; Pub. L. 113–182, §4, Sept. 29, 2014, 128 Stat. 1918; Pub. L. 114–324, §4, Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1950.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 13925 of this title, referred to in subsec. (c)(1)(A), was in the original a reference to section "4002" of the Violence Against Women Act of 1994 and was translated as if it referred to section 40002 of that act to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the DNA Sexual Assault Justice Act of 2004 and also as part of the Justice for All Act of 2004, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 114–324 added subsec. (c) and redesignated former subsec. (c) as (d).
2014—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 113–182 substituted "2015 through 2019" for "2009 through 2014".
2008—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 110–360 substituted "2009 through 2014" for "2005 through 2009".

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§14136b. DNA research and development

(a) Improving DNA technology

The Attorney General shall make grants for research and development to improve forensic DNA technology, including increasing the identification accuracy and efficiency of DNA analysis, decreasing time and expense, and increasing portability.

(b) Demonstration projects

The Attorney General shall make grants to appropriate entities under which research is carried out through demonstration projects involving coordinated training and commitment of resources to law enforcement agencies and key criminal justice participants to demonstrate and evaluate the use of forensic DNA technology in conjunction with other forensic tools. The demonstration projects shall include scientific evaluation of the public safety benefits, improvements to law enforcement operations, and cost-effectiveness of increased collection and use of DNA evidence.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2017 through 2021 to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 108–405, title III, §305, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2273; Pub. L. 114–324, §8(a), Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1954.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the DNA Sexual Assault Justice Act of 2004 and also as part of the Justice for All Act of 2004, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 114–324 substituted "$5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2017 through 2021" for "$15,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2005 through 2009".

§14136f. Establishment of best practices for evidence retention

(a) In general

The Director of the National Institute of Justice, in consultation with Federal, State, and local law enforcement agencies and government laboratories, shall—

(1) establish best practices for evidence retention to focus on the preservation of forensic evidence; and

(2) assist State, local, and tribal governments in adopting and implementing the best practices established under paragraph (1).

(b) Deadline

Not later than 1 year after December 16, 2016, the Director of the National Institute of Justice shall publish the best practices established under subsection (a)(1).

(c) Limitation

Nothing in this section shall be construed to require or obligate compliance with the best practices established under subsection (a)(1).

(Pub. L. 108–405, title IV, §414, as added Pub. L. 114–324, §13(a), Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1958.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Innocence Protection Act 2004 and also as part of the Justice for All Act of 2004, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14136c. National Forensic Science Commission

(a) Appointment

The Attorney General shall appoint a National Forensic Science Commission (in this section referred to as the "Commission"), composed of persons experienced in criminal justice issues, including persons from the forensic science and criminal justice communities, to carry out the

responsibilities under subsection (b).

(b) Responsibilities

The Commission shall—

(1) assess the present and future resource needs of the forensic science community;

(2) make recommendations to the Attorney General for maximizing the use of forensic technologies and techniques to solve crimes and protect the public;

(3) identify potential scientific advances that may assist law enforcement in using forensic technologies and techniques to protect the public;

(4) make recommendations to the Attorney General for programs that will increase the number of qualified forensic scientists available to work in public crime laboratories;

(5) disseminate, through the National Institute of Justice, best practices concerning the collection and analyses of forensic evidence to help ensure quality and consistency in the use of forensic technologies and techniques to solve crimes and protect the public;

(6) examine additional issues pertaining to forensic science as requested by the Attorney General;

(7) examine Federal, State, and local privacy protection statutes, regulations, and practices relating to access to, or use of, stored DNA samples or DNA analyses, to determine whether such protections are sufficient;

(8) make specific recommendations to the Attorney General, as necessary, to enhance the protections described in paragraph (7) to ensure—

(A) the appropriate use and dissemination of DNA information;

(B) the accuracy, security, and confidentiality of DNA information;

(C) the timely removal and destruction of obsolete, expunged, or inaccurate DNA information; and

(D) that any other necessary measures are taken to protect privacy; and

(9) provide a forum for the exchange and dissemination of ideas and information in furtherance of the objectives described in paragraphs (1) through (8).

(c) Personnel; procedures

The Attorney General shall—

(1) designate the Chair of the Commission from among its members;

(2) designate any necessary staff to assist in carrying out the functions of the Commission; and

(3) establish procedures and guidelines for the operations of the Commission.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $500,000 for each of fiscal years 2005 through 2009 to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 108–405, title III, §306, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2274.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the DNA Sexual Assault Justice Act of 2004 and also as part of the Justice for All Act of 2004, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14136d. DNA identification of missing persons

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall make grants to promote the use of forensic DNA technology to identify missing persons and unidentified human remains.

(b) Requirement

Each State or unit of local government that receives funding under this section shall be required to

submit the DNA profiles of such missing persons and unidentified human remains to the National Missing Persons DNA Database of the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $2,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2017 through 2021 to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 108–405, title III, §308, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2275; Pub. L. 114–324, §8(c), Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1954.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the DNA Sexual Assault Justice Act of 2004 and also as part of the Justice for All Act of 2004, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 114–324 substituted "fiscal years 2017 through 2021" for "fiscal years 2005 through 2009".

§14136e. Kirk Bloodsworth Post-Conviction DNA Testing Grant Program

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall establish the Kirk Bloodsworth Post-Conviction DNA Testing Grant Program to award grants to States to help defray the costs of post-conviction DNA testing.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $10,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2017 through 2021 to carry out this section.

(c) State defined

For purposes of this section, the term "State" means a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Northern Mariana Islands.

(Pub. L. 108–405, title IV, §412, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2284; Pub. L. 114–324, §12(b), Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1957.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Innocence Protection Act 2004 and also as part of the Justice for All Act of 2004, and not as part of the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 114–324 substituted "$10,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2017 through 2021" for "$5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2005 through 2009".

§14137. Definitions

For purposes of sections 14137 to 14137c of this title:

(1) DNA arrestee collection process

The term "DNA arrestee collection process" means, with respect to a State, a process under which the State provides for the collection, for purposes of inclusion in the index described in section 14132(a) of this title (in sections 14137 to 14137c of this title referred to as the "National DNA Index System"), of DNA profiles or DNA data from the following individuals who are at least 18 years of age:

(A) Individuals who are arrested for or charged with a criminal offense under State law that

consists of a homicide.

(B) Individuals who are arrested for or charged with a criminal offense under State law that has an element involving a sexual act or sexual contact with another and that is punishable by imprisonment for more than 1 year.

(C) Individuals who are arrested for or charged with a criminal offense under State law that has an element of kidnaping or abduction and that is punishable by imprisonment for more than 1 year.

(D) Individuals who are arrested for or charged with a criminal offense under State law that consists of burglary punishable by imprisonment for more than 1 year.

(E) Individuals who are arrested for or charged with a criminal offense under State law that consists of aggravated assault punishable by imprisonment for more than 1 year.

(2) State

The term "State" means any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(Pub. L. 112–253, §2, Jan. 10, 2013, 126 Stat. 2407.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 14137 to 14137c of this title, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 112–253, Jan. 10, 2013, 126 Stat. 2407, known as the Katie Sepich Enhanced DNA Collection Act of 2012, which enacted sections 14137 to 14137c of this title and amended section 14135 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2013 Amendment note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Katie Sepich Enhanced DNA Collection Act of 2012, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14137a. Grants to States to implement DNA arrestee collection processes

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall, subject to amounts made available pursuant to section 14137c of this title, carry out a grant program for the purpose of assisting States with the costs associated with the implementation of DNA arrestee collection processes.

(b) Applications

(1) In general

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, in addition to any other requirements specified by the Attorney General, a State shall submit to the Attorney General an application that demonstrates that it has statutory authorization for the implementation of a DNA arrestee collection process.

(2) Non-supplanting funds

An application submitted under paragraph (1) by a State shall include assurances that the amounts received under the grant under this section shall be used to supplement, not supplant, State funds that would otherwise be available for the purpose described in subsection (a).

(3) Other requirements

The Attorney General shall require a State seeking a grant under this section to document how such State will use the grant to meet expenses associated with a State's implementation or planned implementation of a DNA arrestee collection process.

(c) Grant allocation

(1) In general

The amount available to a State under this section shall be based on the projected costs that will be incurred by the State to implement a DNA arrestee collection process. Subject to paragraph (2), the Attorney General shall retain discretion to determine the amount of each such grant awarded to an eligible State.

(2) Maximum grant allocation

In the case of a State seeking a grant under this section with respect to the implementation of a DNA arrestee collection process, such State shall be eligible for a grant under this section that is equal to no more than 100 percent of the first year costs to the State of implementing such process.

(d) Grant conditions

As a condition of receiving a grant under this section, a State shall have a procedure in place to—

(1) provide written notification of expungement provisions and instructions for requesting expungement to all persons who submit a DNA profile or DNA data for inclusion in the index;

(2) provide the eligibility criteria for expungement and instructions for requesting expungement on an appropriate public Web site; and

(3) make a determination on all expungement requests not later than 90 days after receipt and provide a written response of the determination to the requesting party.

(Pub. L. 112–253, §3, Jan. 10, 2013, 126 Stat. 2408.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Katie Sepich Enhanced DNA Collection Act of 2012, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14137b. Expungement of profiles

The expungement requirements under section 14132(d) of this title shall apply to any DNA profile or DNA data collected pursuant to sections 14137 to 14137c of this title for purposes of inclusion in the National DNA Index System.

(Pub. L. 112–253, §4, Jan. 10, 2013, 126 Stat. 2408.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 14137 to 14137c of this title, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 112–253, Jan. 10, 2013, 126 Stat. 2407, known as the Katie Sepich Enhanced DNA Collection Act of 2012, which enacted sections 14137 to 14137c of this title and amended section 14135 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2013 Amendment note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Katie Sepich Enhanced DNA Collection Act of 2012, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14137c. Offset of funds appropriated

Any funds appropriated to carry out sections 14137 to 14137c of this title, not to exceed $10,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2013 through 2015, shall be derived from amounts appropriated pursuant to subsection (j) of section 14135 of this title in each such fiscal year for grants under such section.

(Pub. L. 112–253, §5, Jan. 10, 2013, 126 Stat. 2409.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 14137 to 14137c of this title, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 112–253, Jan. 10, 2013, 126 Stat. 2407, known as the Katie Sepich Enhanced DNA Collection Act of 2012,

which enacted sections 14137 to 14137c of this title and amended section 14135 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2013 Amendment note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Katie Sepich Enhanced DNA Collection Act of 2012, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

PART B—POLICE PATTERN OR PRACTICE

§14141. Cause of action

(a) Unlawful conduct

It shall be unlawful for any governmental authority, or any agent thereof, or any person acting on behalf of a governmental authority, to engage in a pattern or practice of conduct by law enforcement officers or by officials or employees of any governmental agency with responsibility for the administration of juvenile justice or the incarceration of juveniles that deprives persons of rights, privileges, or immunities secured or protected by the Constitution or laws of the United States.

(b) Civil action by Attorney General

Whenever the Attorney General has reasonable cause to believe that a violation of paragraph (1) [1] has occurred, the Attorney General, for or in the name of the United States, may in a civil action obtain appropriate equitable and declaratory relief to eliminate the pattern or practice.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXI, §210401, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2071.)

[1] So in original. Probably should be "subsection (a) of this section".

§14142. Data on use of excessive force

(a) Attorney General to collect

The Attorney General shall, through appropriate means, acquire data about the use of excessive force by law enforcement officers.

(b) Limitation on use of data

Data acquired under this section shall be used only for research or statistical purposes and may not contain any information that may reveal the identity of the victim or any law enforcement officer.

(c) Annual summary

The Attorney General shall publish an annual summary of the data acquired under this section.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXI, §210402, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2071.)

PART C—IMPROVED TRAINING AND TECHNICAL AUTOMATION

§14151. Repealed. Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1154(b)(3), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3113

Section, Pub. L. 103–322, title XXI, §210501, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2072, related to grants for the purposes of improving criminal justice agency efficiency through computerized automation and technological

improvements, directed the expansion and improvement of training and investigative assistance, authorized appropriations, and defined terms.

PART D—OTHER STATE AND LOCAL AID

§14161. Repealed. Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1154(b)(4), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3113

Section, Pub. L. 103–322, title XXI, §210602, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2073, related to federal assistance to ease increased burdens on State court systems and authorized appropriations.

PART E—IMPROVING THE QUALITY OF REPRESENTATION IN STATE CAPITAL CASES

§14163. Capital representation improvement grants

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall award grants to States for the purpose of improving the quality of legal representation provided to indigent defendants in State capital cases.

(b) Defined term

In this section, the term "legal representation" means legal counsel and investigative, expert, and other services necessary for competent representation.

(c) Use of funds

Grants awarded under subsection (a)—

(1) shall be used to establish, implement, or improve an effective system for providing competent legal representation to—

(A) indigents charged with an offense subject to capital punishment;

(B) indigents who have been sentenced to death and who seek appellate or collateral relief in State court; and

(C) indigents who have been sentenced to death and who seek review in the Supreme Court of the United States; and

(2) shall not be used to fund, directly or indirectly, representation in specific capital cases.

(d) Apportionment of funds

(1) In general

Of the funds awarded under subsection (a)—

(A) not less than 75 percent shall be used to carry out the purpose described in subsection (c)(1)(A); and

(B) not more than 25 percent shall be used to carry out the purpose described in subsection (c)(1)(B).

(2) Waiver

The Attorney General may waive the requirement under this subsection for good cause shown.

(e) Effective system

As used in subsection (c)(1), an effective system for providing competent legal representation is a

system that—

(1) invests the responsibility for appointing qualified attorneys to represent indigents in capital cases—

(A) in a public defender program that relies on staff attorneys, members of the private bar, or both, to provide representation in capital cases;

(B) in an entity established by statute or by the highest State court with jurisdiction in criminal cases, which is composed of individuals with demonstrated knowledge and expertise in capital cases, except for individuals currently employed as prosecutors; or

(C) pursuant to a statutory procedure enacted before October 30, 2004, under which the trial judge is required to appoint qualified attorneys from a roster maintained by a State or regional selection committee or similar entity; and

(2) requires the program described in paragraph (1)(A), the entity described in paragraph (1)(B), or an appropriate entity designated pursuant to the statutory procedure described in paragraph (1)(C), as applicable, to—

(A) establish qualifications for attorneys who may be appointed to represent indigents in capital cases;

(B) establish and maintain a roster of qualified attorneys;

(C) except in the case of a selection committee or similar entity described in paragraph (1)(C), assign 2 attorneys from the roster to represent an indigent in a capital case, or provide the trial judge a list of not more than 2 pairs of attorneys from the roster, from which 1 pair shall be assigned, provided that, in any case in which the State elects not to seek the death penalty, a court may find, subject to any requirement of State law, that a second attorney need not remain assigned to represent the indigent to ensure competent representation;

(D) conduct, sponsor, or approve specialized training programs for attorneys representing defendants in capital cases;

(E)(i) monitor the performance of attorneys who are appointed and their attendance at training programs; and

(ii) remove from the roster attorneys who—

(I) fail to deliver effective representation or engage in unethical conduct;

(II) fail to comply with such requirements as such program, entity, or selection committee or similar entity may establish regarding participation in training programs; or

(III) during the past 5 years, have been sanctioned by a bar association or court for ethical misconduct relating to the attorney's conduct as defense counsel in a criminal case in Federal or State court; and

(F) ensure funding for the cost of competent legal representation by the defense team and outside experts selected by counsel, who shall be compensated—

(i) in the case of a State that employs a statutory procedure described in paragraph (1)(C), in accordance with the requirements of that statutory procedure; and

(ii) in all other cases, as follows:

(I) Attorneys employed by a public defender program shall be compensated according to a salary scale that is commensurate with the salary scale of the prosecutor's office in the jurisdiction.

(II) Appointed attorneys shall be compensated for actual time and service, computed on an hourly basis and at a reasonable hourly rate in light of the qualifications and experience of the attorney and the local market for legal representation in cases reflecting the complexity and responsibility of capital cases.

(III) Non-attorney members of the defense team, including investigators, mitigation specialists, and experts, shall be compensated at a rate that reflects the specialized skills needed by those who assist counsel with the litigation of death penalty cases.

(IV) Attorney and non-attorney members of the defense team shall be reimbursed for reasonable incidental expenses.

(Pub. L. 108–405, title IV, §421, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2286.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Innocence Protection Act 2004 and also as part of the Justice for All Act of 2004, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14163a. Capital prosecution improvement grants

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall award grants to States for the purpose of enhancing the ability of prosecutors to effectively represent the public in State capital cases.

(b) Use of funds

(1) Permitted uses

Grants awarded under subsection (a) shall be used for one or more of the following:

(A) To design and implement training programs for State and local prosecutors to ensure effective representation in State capital cases.

(B) To develop and implement appropriate standards and qualifications for State and local prosecutors who litigate State capital cases.

(C) To assess the performance of State and local prosecutors who litigate State capital cases, provided that such assessment shall not include participation by the assessor in the trial of any specific capital case.

(D) To identify and implement any potential legal reforms that may be appropriate to minimize the potential for error in the trial of capital cases.

(E) To establish a program under which State and local prosecutors conduct a systematic review of cases in which a death sentence was imposed in order to identify cases in which post-conviction DNA testing may be appropriate.

(F) To provide support and assistance to the families of murder victims.

(2) Prohibited use

Grants awarded under subsection (a) shall not be used to fund, directly or indirectly, the prosecution of specific capital cases.

(Pub. L. 108–405, title IV, §422, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2288.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Innocence Protection Act 2004 and also as part of the Justice for All Act of 2004, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14163b. Applications

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall establish a process through which a State may apply for a grant under this part.

(b) Application

(1) In general

A State desiring a grant under this part shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Attorney General may reasonably require.

(2) Contents

Each application submitted under paragraph (1) shall contain—

(A) a certification by an appropriate officer of the State that the State authorizes capital punishment under its laws and conducts, or will conduct, prosecutions in which capital punishment is sought;

(B) a description of the communities to be served by the grant, including the nature of existing capital defender services and capital prosecution programs within such communities;

(C) a long-term statewide strategy and detailed implementation plan that—

(i) reflects consultation with the judiciary, the organized bar, and State and local prosecutor and defender organizations; and

(ii) establishes as a priority improvement in the quality of trial-level representation of indigents charged with capital crimes and trial-level prosecution of capital crimes;

(D) in the case of a State that employs a statutory procedure described in section 14163(e)(1)(C) of this title, a certification by an appropriate officer of the State that the State is in substantial compliance with the requirements of the applicable State statute; and

(E) assurances that Federal funds received under this part shall be—

(i) used to supplement and not supplant non-Federal funds that would otherwise be available for activities funded under this part; and

(ii) allocated in accordance with section 14163e(b) of this title.

(Pub. L. 108–405, title IV, §423, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2288.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Innocence Protection Act 2004 and also as part of the Justice for All Act of 2004, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14163c. State reports

(a) In general

Each State receiving funds under this part shall submit an annual report to the Attorney General that—

(1) identifies the activities carried out with such funds; and

(2) explains how each activity complies with the terms and conditions of the grant.

(b) Capital representation improvement grants

With respect to the funds provided under section 14163 of this title, a report under subsection (a) shall include—

(1) an accounting of all amounts expended;

(2) an explanation of the means by which the State—

(A) invests the responsibility for identifying and appointing qualified attorneys to represent indigents in capital cases in a program described in section 14163(e)(1)(A) of this title, an entity described in section 14163(e)(1)(B) of this title, or a selection committee or similar entity described in section 14163(e)(1)(C) of this title; and

(B) requires such program, entity, or selection committee or similar entity, or other appropriate entity designated pursuant to the statutory procedure described in section 14163(e)(1)(C) of this title, to—

(i) establish qualifications for attorneys who may be appointed to represent indigents in capital cases in accordance with section 14163(e)(2)(A) of this title;

(ii) establish and maintain a roster of qualified attorneys in accordance with section 14163(e)(2)(B) of this title;

(iii) assign attorneys from the roster in accordance with section 14163(e)(2)(C) of this title;

(iv) conduct, sponsor, or approve specialized training programs for attorneys representing defendants in capital cases in accordance with section 14163(e)(2)(D) of this title;

(v) monitor the performance and training program attendance of appointed attorneys, and remove from the roster attorneys who fail to deliver effective representation or fail to comply with such requirements as such program, entity, or selection committee or similar entity may establish regarding participation in training programs, in accordance with section 14163(e)(2)(E) of this title; and

(vi) ensure funding for the cost of competent legal representation by the defense team and outside experts selected by counsel, in accordance with section 14163(e)(2)(F) of this title, including a statement setting forth—

(I) if the State employs a public defender program under section 14163(e)(1)(A) of this title, the salaries received by the attorneys employed by such program and the salaries received by attorneys in the prosecutor's office in the jurisdiction;

(II) if the State employs appointed attorneys under section 14163(e)(1)(B) of this title, the hourly fees received by such attorneys for actual time and service and the basis on which the hourly rate was calculated;

(III) the amounts paid to non-attorney members of the defense team, and the basis on which such amounts were determined; and

(IV) the amounts for which attorney and non-attorney members of the defense team were reimbursed for reasonable incidental expenses;

(3) in the case of a State that employs a statutory procedure described in section 14163(e)(1)(C) of this title, an assessment of the extent to which the State is in compliance with the requirements of the applicable State statute; and

(4) a statement confirming that the funds have not been used to fund representation in specific capital cases or to supplant non-Federal funds.

(c) Capital prosecution improvement grants

With respect to the funds provided under section 14163a of this title, a report under subsection (a) shall include—

(1) an accounting of all amounts expended;

(2) a description of the means by which the State has—

(A) designed and established training programs for State and local prosecutors to ensure effective representation in State capital cases in accordance with section 14163a(b)(1)(A) of this title;

(B) developed and implemented appropriate standards and qualifications for State and local prosecutors who litigate State capital cases in accordance with section 14163a(b)(1)(B) of this title;

(C) assessed the performance of State and local prosecutors who litigate State capital cases in accordance with section 14163a(b)(1)(C) of this title;

(D) identified and implemented any potential legal reforms that may be appropriate to minimize the potential for error in the trial of capital cases in accordance with section 14163a(b)(1)(D) of this title;

(E) established a program under which State and local prosecutors conduct a systematic review of cases in which a death sentence was imposed in order to identify cases in which post-conviction DNA testing may be appropriate in accordance with section 14163a(b)(1)(E) of this title; and

(F) provided support and assistance to the families of murder victims; and

(3) a statement confirming that the funds have not been used to fund the prosecution of specific capital cases or to supplant non-Federal funds.

(d) Public disclosure of annual State reports

The annual reports to the Attorney General submitted by any State under this section shall be made available to the public.

(Pub. L. 108–405, title IV, §424, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2289.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Innocence Protection Act 2004 and also as part of the Justice for All Act of 2004, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14163d. Evaluations by Inspector General and administrative remedies

(a) Evaluation by Inspector General

(1) In general

As soon as practicable after the end of the first fiscal year for which a State receives funds under a grant made under this part, the Inspector General of the Department of Justice (in this section referred to as the "Inspector General") shall—

(A) submit to the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives and the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate a report evaluating the compliance by the State with the terms and conditions of the grant; and

(B) if the Inspector General concludes that the State is not in compliance with the terms and conditions of the grant, specify any deficiencies and make recommendations to the Attorney General for corrective action.

(2) Priority

In conducting evaluations under this subsection, the Inspector General shall give priority to States that the Inspector General determines, based on information submitted by the State and other comments provided by any other person, to be at the highest risk of noncompliance.

(3) Determination for statutory procedure States

For each State that employs a statutory procedure described in section 14163(e)(1)(C) of this title, the Inspector General shall submit to the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives and the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate, not later than the end of the first fiscal year for which such State receives funds, a determination as to whether the State is in substantial compliance with the requirements of the applicable State statute.

(4) Comments from public

The Inspector General shall receive and consider comments from any member of the public regarding any State's compliance with the terms and conditions of a grant made under this part. To facilitate the receipt of such comments, the Inspector General shall maintain on its website a form that any member of the public may submit, either electronically or otherwise, providing comments. The Inspector General shall give appropriate consideration to all such public comments in reviewing reports submitted under section 14163c of this title or in establishing the priority for conducting evaluations under this section.

(b) Administrative review

(1) Comment

Upon the submission of a report under subsection (a)(1) or a determination under subsection (a)(3), the Attorney General shall provide the State with an opportunity to comment regarding the findings and conclusions of the report or the determination.

(2) Corrective action plan

If the Attorney General, after reviewing a report under subsection (a)(1) or a determination under subsection (a)(3), determines that a State is not in compliance with the terms and conditions of the grant, the Attorney General shall consult with the appropriate State authorities to enter into a plan for corrective action. If the State does not agree to a plan for corrective action that has been

approved by the Attorney General within 90 days after the submission of the report under subsection (a)(1) or the determination under subsection (a)(3), the Attorney General shall, within 30 days, issue guidance to the State regarding corrective action to bring the State into compliance.

(3) Report to Congress

Not later than 90 days after the earlier of the implementation of a corrective action plan or the issuance of guidance under paragraph (2), the Attorney General shall submit a report to the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives and the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate as to whether the State has taken corrective action and is in compliance with the terms and conditions of the grant.

(c) Penalties for noncompliance

If the State fails to take the prescribed corrective action under subsection (b) and is not in compliance with the terms and conditions of the grant, the Attorney General shall discontinue all further funding under sections 14163 and 14163a of this title and require the State to return the funds granted under such sections for that fiscal year. Nothing in this paragraph shall prevent a State which has been subject to penalties for noncompliance from reapplying for a grant under this part in another fiscal year.

(d) Periodic reports

During the grant period, the Inspector General shall periodically review the compliance of each State with the terms and conditions of the grant.

(e) Administrative costs

Not less than 2.5 percent of the funds appropriated to carry out this part for each of fiscal years 2005 through 2009 shall be made available to the Inspector General for purposes of carrying out this section. Such sums shall remain available until expended.

(f) Special rule for "statutory procedure" States not in substantial compliance with statutory procedures

(1) In general

In the case of a State that employs a statutory procedure described in section 14163(e)(1)(C) of this title, if the Inspector General submits a determination under subsection (a)(3) that the State is not in substantial compliance with the requirements of the applicable State statute, then for the period beginning with the date on which that determination was submitted and ending on the date on which the Inspector General determines that the State is in substantial compliance with the requirements of that statute, the funds awarded under this part shall be allocated solely for the uses described in section 14163 of this title.

(2) Rule of construction

The requirements of this subsection apply in addition to, and not instead of, the other requirements of this section.

(Pub. L. 108–405, title IV, §425, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2291.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Innocence Protection Act 2004 and also as part of the Justice for All Act of 2004, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14163e. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Authorization for grants

There are authorized to be appropriated [1]

(1) $2,500,000 for fiscal year 2017;

(2) $7,500,000 for fiscal year 2018;
(3) $12,500,000 for fiscal year 2019;
(4) $17,500,000 for fiscal year 2020; and
(5) $22,500,000 for fiscal year 2021.[2]
to carry out this part.

(b) Restriction on use of funds to ensure equal allocation

Each State receiving a grant under this part shall allocate the funds equally between the uses described in section 14163 of this title and the uses described in section 14163a of this title, except as provided in section 14163d(f) of this title, or upon a showing of good cause, and at the discretion of the Attorney General, the State may determine a fair allocation of funds across the uses described in sections 14163 and 14163a of this title.

(Pub. L. 108–405, title IV, §426, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2292; Pub. L. 114–324, §10, Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1956.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Innocence Protection Act 2004 and also as part of the Justice for All Act of 2004, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 114–324, §10(1), which directed substitution of pars. (1) to (5) for "$75,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2005 through 2009", was executed by making the substitution and setting out the remaining phrase "to carry out this part.", which was not directed to be struck out, as concluding provisions.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 114–324, §10(2), inserted before period at end ", or upon a showing of good cause, and at the discretion of the Attorney General, the State may determine a fair allocation of funds across the uses described in sections 14163 and 14163a of this title".

[1] *So in original. Probably should be followed by a dash.*

[2] *So in original.*

PART F—RAFAEL RAMOS AND WENJIAN LIU NATIONAL BLUE ALERT

§14165. Definitions

In this part:

(1) Coordinator

The term "Coordinator" means the Blue Alert Coordinator of the Department of Justice designated under section 14165b(a) of this title.

(2) Blue Alert

The term "Blue Alert" means information sent through the network relating to—
(A) the serious injury or death of a law enforcement officer in the line of duty;
(B) an officer who is missing in connection with the officer's official duties; or
(C) an imminent and credible threat that an individual intends to cause the serious injury or death of a law enforcement officer.

(3) Blue Alert plan

The term "Blue Alert plan" means the plan of a State, unit of local government, or Federal agency participating in the network for the dissemination of information received as a Blue Alert.

(4) Law enforcement officer

The term "law enforcement officer" shall have the same meaning as in section 3796b of this title.

(5) Network

The term "network" means the Blue Alert communications network established by the Attorney General under section 14165a of this title.

(6) State

The term "State" means each of the 50 States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(Pub. L. 114–12, §2, May 19, 2015, 129 Stat. 192.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Rafael Ramos and Wenjian Liu National Blue Alert Act of 2015, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14165a. Blue Alert communications network

The Attorney General shall establish a national Blue Alert communications network within the Department of Justice to issue Blue Alerts through the initiation, facilitation, and promotion of Blue Alert plans, in coordination with States, units of local government, law enforcement agencies, and other appropriate entities.

(Pub. L. 114–12, §3, May 19, 2015, 129 Stat. 193.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Rafael Ramos and Wenjian Liu National Blue Alert Act of 2015, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

§14165b. Blue Alert Coordinator; guidelines

(a) Coordination within Department of Justice

The Attorney General shall assign an existing officer of the Department of Justice to act as the national coordinator of the Blue Alert communications network.

(b) Duties of the Coordinator

The Coordinator shall—

(1) provide assistance to States and units of local government that are using Blue Alert plans;

(2) establish voluntary guidelines for States and units of local government to use in developing Blue Alert plans that will promote compatible and integrated Blue Alert plans throughout the United States, including—

(A) a list of the resources necessary to establish a Blue Alert plan;

(B) criteria for evaluating whether a situation warrants issuing a Blue Alert;

(C) guidelines to protect the privacy, dignity, independence, and autonomy of any law enforcement officer who may be the subject of a Blue Alert and the family of the law enforcement officer;

(D) guidelines that a Blue Alert should only be issued with respect to a law enforcement officer if—

(i) the law enforcement agency involved—

(I) confirms—

(aa) the death or serious injury of the law enforcement officer; or

(bb) the attack on the law enforcement officer and that there is an indication of the death or serious injury of the officer; or

(II) concludes that the law enforcement officer is missing in connection with the officer's official duties;

(ii) there is an indication of serious injury to or death of the law enforcement officer;
(iii) the suspect involved has not been apprehended; and
(iv) there is sufficient descriptive information of the suspect involved and any relevant vehicle and tag numbers;

(E) guidelines that a Blue Alert should only be issued with respect to a threat to cause death or serious injury to a law enforcement officer if—
(i) a law enforcement agency involved confirms that the threat is imminent and credible;
(ii) at the time of receipt of the threat, the suspect is wanted by a law enforcement agency;
(iii) the suspect involved has not been apprehended; and
(iv) there is sufficient descriptive information of the suspect involved and any relevant vehicle and tag numbers;

(F) guidelines—
(i) that information should be provided to the National Crime Information Center database operated by the Federal Bureau of Investigation under section 534 of title 28, and any relevant crime information repository of the State involved, relating to—
(I) a law enforcement officer who is seriously injured or killed in the line of duty; or
(II) an imminent and credible threat to cause the serious injury or death of a law enforcement officer;

(ii) that a Blue Alert should, to the maximum extent practicable (as determined by the Coordinator in consultation with law enforcement agencies of States and units of local governments), be limited to the geographic areas most likely to facilitate the apprehension of the suspect involved or which the suspect could reasonably reach, which should not be limited to State lines;
(iii) for law enforcement agencies of States or units of local government to develop plans to communicate information to neighboring States to provide for seamless communication of a Blue Alert; and
(iv) providing that a Blue Alert should be suspended when the suspect involved is apprehended or when the law enforcement agency involved determines that the Blue Alert is no longer effective; and

(G) guidelines for—
(i) the issuance of Blue Alerts through the network; and
(ii) the extent of the dissemination of alerts issued through the network;

(3) develop protocols for efforts to apprehend suspects that address activities during the period beginning at the time of the initial notification of a law enforcement agency that a suspect has not been apprehended and ending at the time of apprehension of a suspect or when the law enforcement agency involved determines that the Blue Alert is no longer effective, including protocols regulating—
(A) the use of public safety communications;
(B) command center operations; and
(C) incident review, evaluation, debriefing, and public information procedures;

(4) work with States to ensure appropriate regional coordination of various elements of the network;
(5) establish an advisory group to assist States, units of local government, law enforcement

agencies, and other entities involved in the network with initiating, facilitating, and promoting Blue Alert plans, which shall include—

(A) to the maximum extent practicable, representation from the various geographic regions of the United States; and

(B) members who are—

(i) representatives of a law enforcement organization representing rank-and-file officers;

(ii) representatives of other law enforcement agencies and public safety communications;

(iii) broadcasters, first responders, dispatchers, and radio station personnel; and

(iv) representatives of any other individuals or organizations that the Coordinator determines are necessary to the success of the network;

(6) act as the nationwide point of contact for—

(A) the development of the network; and

(B) regional coordination of Blue Alerts through the network; and

(7) determine—

(A) what procedures and practices are in use for notifying law enforcement and the public when—

(i) a law enforcement officer is killed or seriously injured in the line of duty;

(ii) a law enforcement officer is missing in connection with the officer's official duties; and

(iii) an imminent and credible threat to kill or seriously injure a law enforcement officer is received; and

(B) which of the procedures and practices are effective and that do not require the expenditure of additional resources to implement.

(c) Limitations

(1) Voluntary participation

The guidelines established under subsection (b)(2), protocols developed under subsection (b)(3), and other programs established under subsection (b), shall not be mandatory.

(2) Dissemination of information

The guidelines established under subsection (b)(2) shall, to the maximum extent practicable (as determined by the Coordinator in consultation with law enforcement agencies of States and units of local government), provide that appropriate information relating to a Blue Alert is disseminated to the appropriate officials of law enforcement agencies, public health agencies, and other agencies.

(3) Privacy and civil liberties protections

The guidelines established under subsection (b) shall—

(A) provide mechanisms that ensure that Blue Alerts comply with all applicable Federal, State, and local privacy laws and regulations; and

(B) include standards that specifically provide for the protection of the civil liberties, including the privacy, of law enforcement officers who are seriously injured or killed in the line of duty, is missing in connection with the officer's official duties, or who are threatened with death or serious injury, and the families of the officers.

(d) Cooperation with other agencies

The Coordinator shall cooperate with the Secretary of Homeland Security, the Secretary of Transportation, the Chairman of the Federal Communications Commission, and appropriate offices of the Department of Justice in carrying out activities under this part.

(e) Restrictions on Coordinator

The Coordinator may not—

(1) perform any official travel for the sole purpose of carrying out the duties of the Coordinator;

(2) lobby any officer of a State regarding the funding or implementation of a Blue Alert plan; or

(3) host a conference focused solely on the Blue Alert program that requires the expenditure of Federal funds.

(f) Reports

Not later than 1 year after May 19, 2015, and annually thereafter, the Coordinator shall submit to Congress a report on the activities of the Coordinator and the effectiveness and status of the Blue Alert plans that are in effect or being developed.

(Pub. L. 114–12, §4, May 19, 2015, 129 Stat. 193.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Rafael Ramos and Wenjian Liu National Blue Alert Act of 2015, and not as part of Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 which enacted this chapter.

SUBCHAPTER X—MOTOR VEHICLE THEFT PREVENTION

§14171. Motor vehicle theft prevention program

(a) In general

Not later than 180 days after September 13, 1994, the Attorney General shall develop, in cooperation with the States, a national voluntary motor vehicle theft prevention program (in this section referred to as the "program") under which—

(1) the owner of a motor vehicle may voluntarily sign a consent form with a participating State or locality in which the motor vehicle owner—

(A) states that the vehicle is not normally operated under certain specified conditions; and

(B) agrees to—

(i) display program decals or devices on the owner's vehicle; and

(ii) permit law enforcement officials in any State to stop the motor vehicle and take reasonable steps to determine whether the vehicle is being operated by or with the permission of the owner, if the vehicle is being operated under the specified conditions; and

(2) participating States and localities authorize law enforcement officials in the State or locality to stop motor vehicles displaying program decals or devices under specified conditions and take reasonable steps to determine whether the vehicle is being operated by or with the permission of the owner.

(b) Uniform decal or device designs

(1) In general

The motor vehicle theft prevention program developed pursuant to this section shall include a uniform design or designs for decals or other devices to be displayed by motor vehicles participating in the program.

(2) Type of design

The uniform design shall—

(A) be highly visible; and

(B) explicitly state that the motor vehicle to which it is affixed may be stopped under the specified conditions without additional grounds for establishing a reasonable suspicion that the vehicle is being operated unlawfully.

(c) Voluntary consent form

The voluntary consent form used to enroll in the program shall—

(1) clearly state that participation in the program is voluntary;

(2) clearly explain that participation in the program means that, if the participating vehicle is being operated under the specified conditions, law enforcement officials may stop the vehicle and take reasonable steps to determine whether it is being operated by or with the consent of the owner, even if the law enforcement officials have no other basis for believing that the vehicle is being operated unlawfully;

(3) include an express statement that the vehicle is not normally operated under the specified conditions and that the operation of the vehicle under those conditions would provide sufficient grounds for a prudent law enforcement officer to reasonably believe that the vehicle was not being operated by or with the consent of the owner; and

(4) include any additional information that the Attorney General may reasonably require.

(d) Specified conditions under which stops may be authorized

(1) In general

The Attorney General shall promulgate rules establishing the conditions under which participating motor vehicles may be authorized to be stopped under this section. These conditions may not be based on race, creed, color, national origin, gender, or age. These conditions may include—

(A) the operation of the vehicle during certain hours of the day; or

(B) the operation of the vehicle under other circumstances that would provide a sufficient basis for establishing a reasonable suspicion that the vehicle was not being operated by the owner, or with the consent of the owner.

(2) More than one set of conditions

The Attorney General may establish more than one set of conditions under which participating motor vehicles may be stopped. If more than one set of conditions is established, a separate consent form and a separate design for program decals or devices shall be established for each set of conditions. The Attorney General may choose to satisfy the requirement of a separate design for program decals or devices under this paragraph by the use of a design color that is clearly distinguishable from other design colors.

(3) No new conditions without consent

After the program has begun, the conditions under which a vehicle may be stopped if affixed with a certain decal or device design may not be expanded without the consent of the owner.

(4) Limited participation by States and localities

A State or locality need not authorize the stopping of motor vehicles under all sets of conditions specified under the program in order to participate in the program.

(e) Motor vehicles for hire

(1) Notification to lessees

Any person who is in the business of renting or leasing motor vehicles and who rents or leases a motor vehicle on which a program decal or device is affixed shall, prior to transferring possession of the vehicle, notify the person to whom the motor vehicle is rented or leased about the program.

(2) Type of notice

The notice required by this subsection shall—

(A) be in writing;

(B) be in a prominent format to be determined by the Attorney General; and

(C) explain the possibility that if the motor vehicle is operated under the specified conditions, the vehicle may be stopped by law enforcement officials even if the officials have no other basis for believing that the vehicle is being operated unlawfully.

(3) Fine for failure to provide notice

Failure to provide proper notice under this subsection shall be punishable by a fine not to exceed $5,000.

(f) Notification of police

As a condition of participating in the program, a State or locality must agree to take reasonable steps to ensure that law enforcement officials throughout the State or locality are familiar with the program, and with the conditions under which motor vehicles may be stopped under the program.

(g) Regulations

The Attorney General shall promulgate regulations to implement this section.

(h) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to carry out this section.[1]

(1) $1,500,000 for fiscal year 1996;
(2) $1,700,000 for fiscal year 1997; and
(3) $1,800,000 for fiscal year 1998.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXII, §220002, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2074.)

SHORT TITLE

For short title of this subchapter as the "Motor Vehicle Theft Prevention Act", see section 220001 of Pub. L. 103–322, set out as a note under section 13701 of this title.

[1] *So in original. The period probably should be a dash.*

SUBCHAPTER XI—PROTECTIONS FOR THE ELDERLY

§14181. Missing Alzheimer's Disease Patient Alert Program

(a) Grant

The Attorney General shall, subject to the availability of appropriations, award a grant to an eligible organization to assist the organization in paying for the costs of planning, designing, establishing, and operating a Missing Alzheimer's Disease Patient Alert Program, which shall be a locally based, proactive program to protect and locate missing patients with Alzheimer's disease and related dementias.

(b) Application

To be eligible to receive a grant under subsection (a), an organization shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Attorney General may require, including, at a minimum, an assurance that the organization will obtain and use assistance from private nonprofit organizations to support the program.

(c) Eligible organization

The Attorney General shall award the grant described in subsection (a) to a national voluntary organization that has a direct link to patients, and families of patients, with Alzheimer's disease and related dementias.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

(1) $900,000 for fiscal year 1996;
(2) $900,000 for fiscal year 1997; and
(3) $900,000 for fiscal year 1998.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXIV, §240001, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2080.)

SUBCHAPTER XII—PRESIDENTIAL SUMMIT ON VIOLENCE AND NATIONAL COMMISSION ON CRIME PREVENTION AND CONTROL

§14191. Presidential summit

Congress calls on the President to convene a national summit on violence in America prior to convening the Commission established under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXVII, §270001, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2089.)

§14192. Establishment; committees and task forces; representation

(a) Establishment and appointment of members

There is established a commission to be known as the "National Commission on Crime Control and Prevention". The Commission shall be composed of 28 members appointed as follows:

(1) 10 persons by the President, not more than 6 of whom shall be of the same major political party.

(2) 9 persons by the President pro tempore of the Senate, 5 of whom shall be appointed on the recommendation of the Majority Leader of the Senate and the chairman of the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate, and 4 of whom shall be appointed on the recommendation of the Minority Leader of the Senate and the ranking minority member of the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate.

(3) 9 persons appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives, in consultation with the chairman of the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives, and 4 of whom shall be appointed on the recommendation of the Minority Leader of the House of Representatives, in consultation with the ranking member of the Committee on the Judiciary.

(b) Committees and task forces

The Commission shall establish committees or task forces from among its members for the examination of specific subject areas and the carrying out of other functions or responsibilities of the Commission, including committees or task forces for the examination of the subject areas of crime and violence generally, the causes of the demand for drugs, violence in schools, and violence against women, as described in subsections (b) through (e) of section 14194 of this title.

(c) Representation

(1) At least 1 member of the Commission appointed by the President, at least 2 members of the Commission appointed by the President pro tempore of the Senate, and at least 2 members of the Commission appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives shall be persons well-qualified to participate in the Commission's examination of the subject area of crime and violence generally, with education, training, expertise, or experience in such areas as law enforcement, law, sociology, psychology, social work, and ethnography and urban poverty (including health care, housing, education, and employment).

(2) At least 1 member of the Commission appointed by the President, at least 2 members of the Commission appointed by the President pro tempore of the Senate, and at least 2 members of the Commission appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives shall be persons well-qualified to participate in the Commission's examination of the subject area of the causes of the demand for drugs, with education, training, expertise, or experience in such areas as addiction, biomedicine, sociology, psychology, law, and ethnography and urban poverty (including health care, housing, education, and employment).

(3) At least 1 member of the Commission appointed by the President, at least 2 members of the Commission appointed by the President pro tempore of the Senate, and at least 2 members of the Commission appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives shall be persons well-qualified to participate in the Commission's examination of the subject area of violence in

schools, with education, training, expertise, or experience in such areas as law enforcement, education, school governance policy and teaching, law, sociology, psychology, and ethnography and urban poverty (including health care, housing, education, and employment).

(4) At least 1 member of the Commission appointed by the President, at least 2 members of the Commission appointed by the President pro tempore of the Senate, and at least 2 members of the Commission appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives shall be persons well-qualified to participate in the Commission's examination of the subject area of violence against women, as survivors of violence, or as persons with education, training, expertise, or experience in such areas as law enforcement, law, judicial administration, prosecution, defense, victim services or advocacy in sexual assault or domestic violence cases (including medical services and counseling), and protection of victims' rights.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXVII, §270002, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2089.)

§14193. Purposes

The purposes of the Commission are as follows:

(1) To develop a comprehensive proposal for preventing and controlling crime and violence in the United States, including cost estimates for implementing any recommendations made by the Commission.

(2) To bring attention to successful models and programs in crime prevention and crime control.

(3) To reach out beyond the traditional criminal justice community for ideas for controlling and preventing crime.

(4) To recommend improvements in the coordination of local, State, Federal, and international crime control and prevention efforts, including efforts relating to crime near international borders.

(5) To make a comprehensive study of the economic and social factors leading to or contributing to crime and violence, including the causes of illicit drug use and other substance abuse, and to develop specific proposals for legislative and administrative actions to reduce crime and violence and the factors that contribute to it.

(6) To recommend means of utilizing criminal justice resources as effectively as possible, including targeting finite correctional facility space to the most serious and violent offenders, and considering increased use of intermediate sanctions for offenders who can be dealt with adequately by such means.

(7) To examine distinctive crime problems and the impact of crime on members of minority groups, Indians living on reservations, and other groups defined by race, ethnicity, religion, age, disability, or other characteristics, and to recommend specific responses to the distinctive crime problems of such groups.

(8) To examine the problem of sexual assaults, domestic violence, and other criminal and unlawful acts that particularly affect women, and to recommend Federal, State, and local strategies for more effectively preventing and punishing such crimes and acts.

(9) To examine the treatment of victims in Federal, State, and local criminal justice systems, and to develop recommendations to enhance and protect the rights of victims.

(10) To examine the ability of Federal, State, and local criminal justice systems to administer criminal law and criminal sanctions impartially without discrimination on the basis of race, ethnicity, religion, gender, or other legally proscribed grounds, and to make recommendations for correcting any deficiencies in the impartial administration of justice on these grounds.

(11) To examine the nature, scope, causes, and complexities of violence in schools and to recommend a comprehensive response to that problem.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXVII, §270003, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2091.)

§14194. Responsibilities of Commission

(a) In general

The responsibilities of the Commission shall include such study and consultation as may be necessary or appropriate to carry out the purposes set forth in section 14193 of this title, including the specific measures described in subsections (b) through (e) in relation to the subject areas addressed in those subsections.

(b) Crime and violence generally

In addressing the subject of crime and violence generally, the activities of the Commission shall include the following:

(1) Reviewing the effectiveness of traditional criminal justice approaches in preventing and controlling crime and violence.

(2) Examining the impact that changes in Federal and State law have had in controlling crime and violence.

(3) Examining the impact of changes in Federal immigration laws and policies and increased development and growth along United States international borders on crime and violence in the United States, particularly among the Nation's youth.

(4) Examining the problem of youth gangs and providing recommendations as to how to reduce youth involvement in violent crime.

(5) Examining the extent to which the use of dangerous weapons in the commission of crime has contributed to violence and murder in the United States.

(6) Convening field hearings in various regions of the country to receive testimony from a cross section of criminal justice professionals, business leaders, elected officials, medical doctors, and other persons who wish to participate.

(7) Reviewing all segments of the Nation's criminal justice systems, including the law enforcement, prosecution, defense, judicial, and corrections components in developing the crime control and prevention proposal.

(c) Causes of demand for drugs

In addressing the subject of the causes of the demand for drugs, the activities of the Commission shall include the following:

(1) Examining the root causes of illicit drug use and abuse in the United States, including by compiling existing research regarding those root causes, and including consideration of the following factors:

(A) The characteristics of potential illicit drug users and abusers or drug traffickers, including age and social, economic, and educational backgrounds.

(B) Environmental factors that contribute to illicit drug use and abuse, including the correlation between unemployment, poverty, and homelessness and drug experimentation and abuse.

(C) The effects of substance use and abuse by a relative or friend in contributing to the likelihood and desire of an individual to experiment with illicit drugs.

(D) Aspects of, and changes in cultural values, attitudes and traditions that contribute to illicit drug use and abuse.

(E) The physiological and psychological factors that contribute to the desire for illicit drugs.

(2) Evaluating Federal, State, and local laws and policies on the prevention of drug abuse, control of unlawful production, distribution and use of controlled substances, and the efficacy of sentencing policies with regard to those laws.

(3) Analyzing the allocation of resources among interdiction of controlled substances entering the United States, enforcement of Federal laws relating to the unlawful production, distribution, and use of controlled substances, education with regard to and the prevention of the unlawful use of controlled substances, and treatment and rehabilitation of drug abusers.

(4) Analyzing current treatment and rehabilitation methods and making recommendations for improvements.

(5) Identifying any existing gaps in drug abuse policy that result from the lack of attention to the

root causes of drug abuse.

(6) Assessing the needs of government at all levels for resources and policies for reducing the overall desire of individuals to experiment with and abuse illicit drugs.

(7) Making recommendations regarding necessary improvements in policies for reducing the use of illicit drugs in the United States.

(d) Violence in schools

In addressing the subject of violence in schools, the activities of the Commission shall include the following:

(1) Defining the causes of violence in schools.

(2) Defining the scope of the national problem of violence in schools.

(3) Providing statistics and data on the problem of violence in schools on a State-by-State basis.

(4) Investigating the problem of youth gangs and their relation to violence in schools and providing recommendations on how to reduce youth involvement in violent crime in schools.

(5) Examining the extent to which dangerous weapons have contributed to violence and murder in schools.

(6) Exploring the extent to which the school environment has contributed to violence in schools.

(7) Reviewing the effectiveness of current approaches in preventing violence in schools.

(e) Violence against women

In addressing the subject of sexual assault, domestic violence, and other criminal and unlawful acts that particularly affect women, the activities of the Commission shall include the following:

(1) Evaluating the adequacy of, and making recommendations regarding, current law enforcement efforts at the Federal, State, and local levels to reduce the incidence of such crimes and acts, and to punish those responsible for such crimes and acts.

(2) Evaluating the adequacy of, and making recommendations regarding, the responsiveness of prosecutors and courts to such crimes and acts.

(3) Evaluating the adequacy of rules of evidence, practice, and procedure to ensure the effective prosecution and conviction of perpetrators of such crimes and acts and to protect victims of such crimes and acts from abuse in legal proceedings, making recommendations, where necessary, to improve those rules.

(4) Evaluating the adequacy of pretrial release, sentencing, incarceration, and post-conviction release in relation to such crimes and acts.

(5) Evaluating the adequacy of, and making recommendations regarding, the adequacy of Federal and State laws on sexual assault and the need for a more uniform statutory response to sex offenses, including sexual assaults and other sex offenses committed by offenders who are known or related by blood or marriage to the victim.

(6) Evaluating the adequacy of, and making recommendations regarding, the adequacy of Federal and State laws on domestic violence and the need for a more uniform statutory response to domestic violence.

(7) Evaluating the adequacy of, and making recommendations regarding, the adequacy of current education, prevention, and protective services for victims of such crimes and acts.

(8) Assessing the issuance, formulation, and enforcement of protective orders, whether or not related to a criminal proceeding, and making recommendations for their more effective use in domestic violence and stalking cases.

(9) Assessing the problem of stalking and recommending effective means of response to the problem.

(10) Evaluating the adequacy of, and making recommendations regarding, programs for public awareness and public dissemination of information to prevent such crimes and acts.

(11) Evaluating the treatment of victims of such crimes and acts in Federal, State, and local criminal justice systems, and making recommendations designed to improve such treatment.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXVII, §270004, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2092.)

§14195. Administrative matters

(a) Chair

The President shall designate a member of the Commission to chair the Commission.

(b) No additional pay or benefits; per diem

Members of the Commission shall receive no pay or benefits by reason of their service on the Commission, but shall receive travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, at rates authorized for employees of agencies under sections 5702 and 5703 of title 5.

(c) Vacancies

Vacancies on the Commission shall be filled in the same manner as initial appointments.

(d) Meetings open to public

The Commission shall be considered to be an agency for the purposes of section 552b of title 5 relating to the requirement that meetings of Federal agencies be open to the public.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXVII, §270005, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2094.)

§14196. Staff and support services

(a) Director

With the approval of the Commission, the chairperson shall appoint a staff director for the Commission.

(b) Staff

With the approval of the Commission, the staff director may appoint and fix the compensation of staff personnel for the Commission.

(c) Civil service laws

The staff of the Commission shall be appointed without regard to the provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service. Staff compensation may be set without regard to the provisions of chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of that title relating to classification and General Schedule pay rates, but in no event shall any such personnel be compensated at a rate greater than the rate of basic pay for level ES–4 of the Senior Executive Service Schedule under section 5382 of that title. The staff director shall be paid at a rate not to exceed the rate of basic pay for level V of the Executive Schedule.

(d) Consultants

With the approval of the Commission, the staff director may procure temporary and intermittent services under section 3109(b) of title 5.

(e) Staff of Federal agencies

Upon the request of the Commission, the head of any Federal agency may detail, on a reimbursable basis, personnel of that agency to the Commission to assist in carrying out its duties.

(f) Physical facilities

The Administrator of the General Service Administration shall provide suitable office space for the operation of the Commission. The facilities shall serve as the headquarters of the Commission and shall include all necessary equipment and incidentals required for proper functioning.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXVII, §270006, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2094.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Level V of the Executive Schedule, referred to in subsec. (c), is set out in section 5316 of Title 5.

§14197. Powers

(a) Hearings

For the purposes of carrying out this subchapter, the Commission may conduct such hearings, sit and act at such times and places, take such testimony, and receive such evidence, as the Commission considers appropriate. The Commission may administer oaths before the Commission.

(b) Delegation

Any committee, task force, member, or agent, of the Commission may, if authorized by the Commission, take any action that the Commission is authorized to take under this subchapter.

(c) Access to information

The Commission may request directly from any Federal agency or entity in the executive or legislative branch such information as is needed to carry out its functions.

(d) Mail

The Commission may use the United States mails in the same manner and under the same conditions as other Federal agencies.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXVII, §270007, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2095.)

§14198. Report; termination

Not later than 2 years after the date on which the Commission is fully constituted under section 14191 of this title, the Commission shall submit a detailed report to the Congress and the President containing its findings and recommendations. The Commission shall terminate 30 days after the submission of its report.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXVII, §270008, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2095.)

§14199. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subchapter—

(1) [1] $1,000,000 for fiscal year 1996.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXVII, §270009, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2095.)

[1] So in original. No par. (2) has been enacted.

SUBCHAPTER XIII—VIOLENT CRIME REDUCTION TRUST FUND

§14211. Creation of Violent Crime Reduction Trust Fund

(a) Violent Crime Reduction Trust Fund

There is established a separate account in the Treasury, known as the "Violent Crime Reduction Trust Fund" (referred to in this section as the "Fund") into which shall be transferred, in accordance with subsection (b), savings realized from implementation of section 5 of the Federal Workforce Restructuring Act of 1994 (5 U.S.C. 3101 note; Public Law 103–226).

(b) Transfers into Fund

On the first day of the following fiscal years (or as soon thereafter as possible for fiscal year 1995), the following amounts shall be transferred from the general fund to the Fund—

(1) for fiscal year 1995, $2,423,000,000;

(2) for fiscal year 1996, $4,287,000,000;
(3) for fiscal year 1997, $5,000,000,000;
(4) for fiscal year 1998, $5,500,000,000;
(5) for fiscal year 1999, $6,500,000,000; and
(6) for fiscal year 2000, $6,500,000,000.

(c) Appropriations from Fund

(1) Amounts in the Fund may be appropriated exclusively for the purposes authorized in this Act and for those expenses authorized by any Act enacted before this Act that are expressly qualified for expenditure from the Fund.

(2) Amounts appropriated under paragraph (1) and outlays flowing from such appropriations shall not be taken into account for purposes of any budget enforcement procedures under the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 except section 251A [1] of that Act as added by subsection (g), or for purposes of section 665d(b) [1] of title 2. Amounts of new budget authority and outlays under paragraph (1) that are included in concurrent resolutions on the budget shall not be taken into account for purposes of sections 665(b), 665e(b), and 665e(c) of title 2,[1] or for purposes of section 24 of House Concurrent Resolution 218 (One Hundred Third Congress).

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXXI, §310001(a)–(c), Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2102, 2103.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This section, referred to in subsec. (a), is section 310001 of Pub. L. 103–322, which enacted this section and section 901a of Title 2, The Congress, and amended sections 665a and 904 of Title 2 and sections 1105 and 1321 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), is Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1796, known as the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

The Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), is title II of Pub. L. 99–177, Dec. 12, 1985, 99 Stat. 1038, as amended, which enacted chapter 20 (§900 et seq.) and sections 654 to 656 of Title 2, The Congress, amended section 911 of this title, sections 602, 622, 631 to 642, and 651 to 653 of Title 2, and sections 1104 to 1106, and 1109 of Title 31, Money and Finance, repealed section 661 of Title 2, enacted provisions set out as notes under section 911 of this title and section 900 of Title 2, and amended provisions set out as a note under section 621 of Title 2. Section 251A of the Act was classified to section 901a of Title 2 and was repealed by Pub. L. 105–33, title X, §10204(a)(1), Aug. 5, 1997, 111 Stat. 702. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 900 of Title 2 and Tables.

Sections 665, 665d, and 665e of title 2, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), were repealed by Pub. L. 105–33, title X, §10118(a), Aug. 5, 1997, 111 Stat. 695.

House Concurrent Resolution 218, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), is H. Con. Res. 218, May 12, 1994, 108 Stat. 5075, which is not classified to the Code.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§14212. Repealed. Pub. L. 105–33, title X, §10204(b), Aug. 5, 1997, 111 Stat. 702

Section, Pub. L. 103–322, title XXXI, §310002, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2105, related to conforming reduction in discretionary spending limits.

§14213. Extension of authorizations of appropriations for fiscal years for which full amount authorized is not appropriated

If, in making an appropriation under any provision of this Act or amendment made by this Act that authorizes the making of an appropriation for a certain purpose for a certain fiscal year in a certain amount, the Congress makes an appropriation for that purpose for that fiscal year in a lesser amount,

that provision or amendment shall be considered to authorize the making of appropriations for that purpose for later fiscal years in an amount equal to the difference between the amount authorized to be appropriated and the amount that has been appropriated.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXXI, §310003, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2105.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1796, known as the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

§14214. Flexibility in making of appropriations

(a) Federal law enforcement

In the making of appropriations under any provision of this Act or amendment made by this Act that authorizes the making of an appropriation for a Federal law enforcement program for a certain fiscal year in a certain amount out of the Violent Crime Reduction Trust Fund, not to exceed 10 percent of that amount is authorized to be appropriated for that fiscal year for any other Federal law enforcement program for which appropriations are authorized by any other Federal law enforcement provision of this Act or amendment made by this Act. The aggregate reduction in the authorization for any particular Federal law enforcement program may not exceed 10 percent of the total amount authorized to be appropriated from the Violent Crime Reduction Trust Fund for that program in this Act or amendment made by this Act.

(b) State and local law enforcement

In the making of appropriations under any provision of this Act or amendment made by this Act that authorizes the making of an appropriation for a State and local law enforcement program for a certain fiscal year in a certain amount out of the Violent Crime Reduction Trust Fund, not to exceed 10 percent of that amount is authorized to be appropriated for that fiscal year for any other State and local law enforcement program for which appropriations are authorized by any other State and local law enforcement provision of this Act or amendment made by this Act. The aggregate reduction in the authorization for any particular State and local law enforcement program may not exceed 10 percent of the total amount authorized to be appropriated from the Violent Crime Reduction Trust Fund for that program in this Act or amendment made by this Act.

(c) Prevention

In the making of appropriations under any provision of this Act or amendment made by this Act that authorizes the making of an appropriation for a prevention program for a certain fiscal year in a certain amount out of the Violent Crime Reduction Trust Fund, not to exceed 10 percent of that amount is authorized to be appropriated for that fiscal year for any other prevention program for which appropriations are authorized by any other prevention provision of this Act or amendment made by this Act. The aggregate reduction in the authorization for any particular prevention program may not exceed 10 percent of the total amount authorized to be appropriated from the Violent Crime Reduction Trust Fund for that program in this Act or amendment made by this Act.

(d) Definitions

In this section—"Federal law enforcement program" means a program authorized in any of the following sections:

(1) section 190001(a); [1]

(2) section 190001(b); [1]

(3) section 190001(c); [1]

(4) section 190001(d); [1]

(5) section 190001(e); [1]

(6) section 320925; [2]

(7) section 14062 of this title;
(8) section 14171 of this title;
(9) section 130002; [1]
(10) section 130005; [1]
(11) section 130006; [1]
(12) section 130007; [1]
(13) section 250005; [1]
(14) sections 14131–14134 of this title;
(15) section 14083 of this title; and
(16) section 14199 of this title.

"State and local law enforcement program" means a program authorized in any of the following sections:
(1) sections 10001–10003; [1]
(2) section 210201; [1]
(3) section 210603; [1]
(4) section 180101; [1]
(5) section 14082 of this title;
(6) sections 13861–13868 of this title;
(7) section 14161 [1] of this title;
(8) sections 13811–13812 of this title;
(9) section 210302; [1]
(10) section 14151 [1] of this title;
(11) section 210101;
(12) section 320930; [3]
(13) sections 13701–13709 of this title;
(14) section 20301; [1]
(15) section 13911 of this title; and
(16) section 20201. [1]

"prevention program" means a program authorized in any of the following sections:
(1) section 50001; [1]
(2) sections 13741–13744 of this title;
(3) sections 13751–13758 [1] of this title;
(4) sections 13771–13777 of this title;
(5) sections 13791–13793 of this title;
(6) sections 13801–13802 [1] of this title;
(7) chapter 67 of title 31;
(8) section 31101 [1] and sections 13821–13853 of this title;
(9) sections 31501–31505; [1]
(10) section 31901 [1] and sections 13881–13902 of this title;
(11) section 32001; [1]
(12) section 32101; [1]
(13) section 13921 of this title;
(14) section 40114; [1]
(15) section 40121; [1]
(16) section 300w–10 [1] of this title;
(17) section 13941 of this title;

(18) section 5712d [1] of this title;

(19) section 40156; [1]

(20) section 10413 of this title (relating to a hotline);

(21) section 40231; [1]

(22) sections 10401 through 10412 of this title;

(23) section 10417 [1] of this title;

(24) section 10414 of this title (relating to community projects to prevent family violence, domestic violence, and dating violence);

(25) section 13962 of this title;

(26) section 13963 of this title;

(27) section 13971 of this title;

(28) sections 13991–13994 of this title;

(29) sections 14001–14002 of this title;

(30) section 14012 of this title;

(31) section 40601 [1] and sections 14031–14040 of this title; and

(32) section 14181 [1] of this title.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXXI, §310004, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2106; Pub. L. 111–320, title II, §202(e), Dec. 20, 2010, 124 Stat. 3509.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsecs. (a) to (c), is Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1796, known as the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

Section 190001, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 190001 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 2048, which is not classified to the Code.

Section 130002, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 130002 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 2023, which is set out as a note under section 1226 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

Section 130005, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 130005 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 2028, which amended section 1158 of Title 8 and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 1158 of Title 8.

Section 130006, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 130006 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 2028, which is set out as a note under section 1101 of Title 8.

Section 130007, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 130007 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 2029, which is set out as a note under section 1228 of Title 8.

Section 250005, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 230005 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 2086, which is not classified to the Code.

Sections 10001–10003, referred to in subsec. (d), are sections 10001–10003 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1807, which enacted subchapter XII–E (§3796dd et seq.) of chapter 46 of this title, amended sections 3793 and 3797 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 3711 and 3796dd of this title.

Section 210201, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 210201 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 2062, which enacted subchapter XII–K (§3796jj et seq.) of chapter 46 of this title and amended sections 3793 and 3797 of this title.

Section 210603, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 210603 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 2074, which enacted provisions set out as a note under section 922 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and amended provisions set out as notes under section 922 of Title 18.

Section 180101, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 180101 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 2045, which amended sections 3793 and 3796bb of this title.

Section 14161 of this title, referred to in subsec. (d), was repealed by Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1154(b)(4), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3113.

Section 210302, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 210302 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 2065, which enacted subchapter XII–L (§3796kk et seq.) of chapter 46 of this title, amended former sections 3751 and 3753 of this title and sections 3793 and 3797 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under former section 3751 of this title.

Section 14151 of this title, referred to in subsec. (d), was repealed by Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1154(b)(3), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3113.

Section 210101, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 210101 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 2061, which is

not classified to the Code.

Section 20301, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 20301 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1823, which amended section 1252 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 1231 and 1252 of Title 8.

Section 20201, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 20201 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1819, which enacted subchapter XII–F (§3796ee et seq.) of chapter 46 of this title and amended sections 3791, 3793, and 3797 of this title.

Section 50001, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 50001 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1955, which enacted former subchapter XII–J (§3796ii et seq.) of chapter 46 of this title and amended sections 3793 and 3797 of this title.

Sections 13751–13758 of this title, referred to in subsec. (d), were repealed by Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1154(b)(1), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3113.

Sections 13801–13802 of this title, referred to in subsec. (d), were repealed by Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1154(b)(2), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3113.

Section 31101, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 31101 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1882, which is set out as a note under section 13701 of this title.

Sections 31501–31505, referred to in subsec. (d), are sections 31501–31505 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1888, 1889, which amended former sections 2502 to 2504, 2506, and 2512 of Title 16, Conservation.

Section 31901, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 31901 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1892, which enacted provisions set out as a note under section 13701 of this title.

Section 32001, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 32001 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1896, which amended section 3621 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Section 32101, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 32101 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1898, which enacted subchapter XII–G (§3796ff et seq.) of chapter 46 of this title and amended sections 3791, 3793, and 3797 of this title.

Section 40114, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 40114 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1910, which is not classified to the Code.

Section 40121, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 40121 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1910, which enacted subchapter XII–H (§3796gg et seq.) of chapter 46 of this title and amended sections 3793 and 3797 of this title.

Section 300w–10 of this title, referred to in subsec. (d), was repealed by Pub. L. 106–386, div. B, title IV, §1401(b), Oct. 28, 2000, 114 Stat. 1513.

Section 5712d of this title, referred to in subsec. (d), was repealed by Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1172(b), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3123.

Section 40156, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 40156 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1922, which amended sections 3793, 3796aa–1 to 3796aa–3, 3796aa–5, 3796aa–6, 13012, 13014, 13021, and 13024 of this title and repealed sections 3796aa–4 and 3796aa–7 of this title.

Section 40231, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 40231 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1932, which enacted subchapter XII–I (§3796hh et seq.) of chapter 46 of this title and amended sections 3782, 3783, 3793, and 3797 of this title.

Section 10417 of this title, referred to in subsec. (d), was repealed by Pub. L. 108–36, title IV, §412, June 25, 2003, 117 Stat. 829.

Section 40601, referred to in subsec. (d), is section 40601 of Pub. L. 103–322, 108 Stat. 1950, which amended section 534 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 534 of Title 28.

Section 14181 of this title, referred to in subsec. (d), was in the original "section 24001" and was translated as reading "section 240001", meaning section 240001 of Pub. L. 103–322, to reflect the probable intent of Congress, because Pub. L. 103–322 does not contain a section 24001.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (d)(20). Pub. L. 111–320, §202(e)(1), substituted "section 10413 of this title (relating to a hotline)" for "section 10416 of this title".

Subsec. (d)(22). Pub. L. 111–320, §202(e)(2), substituted "sections 10401 through 10412 of this title" for "section 40241".

Subsec. (d)(24). Pub. L. 111–320, §202(e)(3), substituted "section 10414 of this title (relating to community projects to prevent family violence, domestic violence, and dating violence)" for "section 10418 of this title".

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

[2] *So in original. Pub. L. 103–322 does not contain a section 320925.*

[3] *So in original. Pub. L. 103–322 does not contain a section 320930.*

SUBCHAPTER XIV—MISCELLANEOUS

§14221. Task force relating to introduction of nonindigenous species

(1) In general

The Attorney General is authorized to convene a law enforcement task force in Hawaii to facilitate the prosecution of violations of Federal laws, and laws of the State of Hawaii, relating to the wrongful conveyance, sale, or introduction of nonindigenous plant and animal species.

(2) Membership

(A) The task force shall be composed of representatives of—

(i) the Office of the United States Attorney for the District of Hawaii;
(ii) the United States Customs Service;
(iii) the Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service;
(iv) the Fish and Wildlife Service;
(v) the National Park Service;
(vi) the United States Forest Service;
(vii) the Military Customs Inspection Office of the Department of Defense;
(viii) the United States Postal Service;
(ix) the office of the Attorney General of the State of Hawaii;
(x) the Hawaii Department of Agriculture;
(xi) the Hawaii Department of Land and Natural Resources; and
(xii) such other individuals as the Attorney General deems appropriate.

(B) The Attorney General shall, to the extent practicable, select individuals to serve on the task force who have experience with the enforcement of laws relating to the wrongful conveyance, sale, or introduction of nonindigenous plant and animal species.

(3) Duties

The task force shall—

(A) facilitate the prosecution of violations of Federal and State laws relating to the conveyance, sale, or introduction of nonindigenous plant and animal species into Hawaii; and

(B) make recommendations on ways to strengthen Federal and State laws and law enforcement strategies designed to prevent the introduction of nonindigenous plant and animal species.

(4) Report

The task force shall report to the Attorney General, the Secretary of Agriculture, the Secretary of the Interior, and to the Committee on the Judiciary and Committee on Agriculture, Nutrition, and Forestry of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary, Committee on Agriculture, and Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries of the House of Representatives on—

(A) the progress of its enforcement efforts; and

(B) the adequacy of existing Federal laws and laws of the State of Hawaii that relate to the introduction of nonindigenous plant and animal species.

Thereafter, the task force shall make such reports as the task force deems appropriate.

(5) Consultation

The task force shall consult with Hawaii agricultural interests and representatives of Hawaii conservation organizations about methods of preventing the wrongful conveyance, sale, or introduction of nonindigenous plant and animal species into Hawaii.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXXII, §320108(a), Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2111.)

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions, personnel, assets, and liabilities of the United States Customs Service of the Department of the Treasury, including functions of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto, to the Secretary of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 203(1), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6. For establishment of U.S. Customs and Border Protection in the Department of Homeland Security, treated as if included in Pub. L. 107–296 as of Nov. 25, 2002, see section 211 of Title 6, as amended generally by Pub. L. 114–125, and section 802(b) of Pub. L. 114–125, set out as a note under section 211 of Title 6.

ABOLITION OF HOUSE COMMITTEE ON MERCHANT MARINE AND FISHERIES

Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries of House of Representatives abolished and its jurisdiction transferred by House Resolution No. 6, One Hundred Fourth Congress, Jan. 4, 1995. For treatment of references to Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries, see section 1(b)(3) of Pub. L. 104–14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

§14222. Coordination of substance abuse treatment and prevention programs

The Attorney General shall consult with the Secretary of the Department of Health and Human Services in establishing and carrying out the substance abuse treatment and prevention components of the programs authorized under this Act, to assure coordination of programs, eliminate duplication of efforts and enhance the effectiveness of such services.

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXXII, §320401, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2114.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1796, known as the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

§14223. Edward Byrne Memorial Formula Grant Program

Nothing in this Act shall be construed to prohibit or exclude the expenditure of appropriations to grant recipients that would have been or are eligible to receive grants under subpart 1 of part E of the Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968 [42 U.S.C. 3751 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 103–322, title XXXII, §320919, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2130.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1796, known as the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

The Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 90–351, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 197, as amended. The reference to subpart 1 of part E of the Act probably means subpart 1 of part E of title I of the Act which is classified generally to part A (§3750 et seq.) of subchapter V of chapter 46 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3711 of this title and Tables.

CHAPTER 137—MANAGEMENT OF RECHARGEABLE BATTERIES AND

BATTERIES CONTAINING MERCURY

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERALLY

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERALLY

§14301. Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) it is in the public interest to—

(A) phase out the use of mercury in batteries and provide for the efficient and cost-effective collection and recycling or proper disposal of used nickel cadmium batteries, small sealed lead-acid batteries, and other regulated batteries; and

(B) educate the public concerning the collection, recycling, and proper disposal of such batteries;

(2) uniform national labeling requirements for regulated batteries, rechargeable consumer products, and product packaging will significantly benefit programs for regulated battery collection and recycling or proper disposal; and

(3) it is in the public interest to encourage persons who use rechargeable batteries to participate in collection for recycling of used nickel-cadmium, small sealed lead-acid, and other regulated batteries.

(Pub. L. 104–142, §2, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1329.)

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 104–142, §1, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1329, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'Mercury-Containing and Rechargeable Battery Management Act'."

Pub. L. 104–142, title I, §101, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1332, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter II of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Rechargeable Battery Recycling Act'."

Pub. L. 104–142, title II, §201, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1336, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter III of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Mercury-Containing Battery Management Act'."

§14302. Definitions

For purposes of this chapter:

(1) Administrator

The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency.

(2) Button cell

The term "button cell" means a button- or coin-shaped battery.

(3) Easily removable

The term "easily removable", with respect to a battery, means detachable or removable at the end of the life of the battery—

(A) from a consumer product by a consumer with the use of common household tools; or

(B) by a retailer of replacements for a battery used as the principal electrical power source for a vehicle.

(4) Mercuric-oxide battery

The term "mercuric-oxide battery" means a battery that uses a mercuric-oxide electrode.

(5) Rechargeable battery

The term "rechargeable battery"—

(A) means 1 or more voltaic or galvanic cells, electrically connected to produce electric energy, that is designed to be recharged for repeated uses; and

(B) includes any type of enclosed device or sealed container consisting of 1 or more such cells, including what is commonly called a battery pack (and in the case of a battery pack, for the purposes of the requirements of easy removability and labeling under section 14322 of this title, means the battery pack as a whole rather than each component individually); but

(C) does not include—

(i) a lead-acid battery used to start an internal combustion engine or as the principal electrical power source for a vehicle, such as an automobile, a truck, construction equipment, a motorcycle, a garden tractor, a golf cart, a wheelchair, or a boat;

(ii) a lead-acid battery used for load leveling or for storage of electricity generated by an alternative energy source, such as a solar cell or wind-driven generator;

(iii) a battery used as a backup power source for memory or program instruction storage, timekeeping, or any similar purpose that requires uninterrupted electrical power in order to function if the primary energy supply fails or fluctuates momentarily; or

(iv) a rechargeable alkaline battery.

(6) Rechargeable consumer product

The term "rechargeable consumer product"—

(A) means a product that, when sold at retail, includes a regulated battery as a primary energy supply, and that is primarily intended for personal or household use; but

(B) does not include a product that only uses a battery solely as a source of backup power for memory or program instruction storage, timekeeping, or any similar purpose that requires uninterrupted electrical power in order to function if the primary energy supply fails or fluctuates momentarily.

(7) Regulated battery

The term "regulated battery" means a rechargeable battery that—

(A) contains a cadmium or a lead electrode or any combination of cadmium and lead electrodes; or

(B) contains other electrode chemistries and is the subject of a determination by the Administrator under section 14322(d) of this title.

(8) Remanufactured product

The term "remanufactured product" means a rechargeable consumer product that has been altered by the replacement of parts, repackaged, or repaired after initial sale by the original manufacturer.

(Pub. L. 104–142, §3, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1329.)

§14303. Information dissemination

The Administrator shall, in consultation with representatives of rechargeable battery manufacturers, rechargeable consumer product manufacturers, and retailers, establish a program to provide information to the public concerning the proper handling and disposal of used regulated batteries and rechargeable consumer products with nonremovable batteries.

(Pub. L. 104–142, §4, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1330.)

§14304. Enforcement

(a) Civil penalty

When on the basis of any information the Administrator determines that a person has violated, or is in violation of, any requirement of this chapter (except a requirement of section 14323 of this title) the Administrator—

(1) in the case of any violation, may issue an order assessing a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 for each violation, or requiring compliance immediately or within a reasonable specified time period, or both; or

(2) in the case of any violation or failure to comply with an order issued under this section, may commence a civil action in the United States district court in the district in which the violation occurred or in the district in which the violator resides for appropriate relief, including a temporary or permanent injunction.

(b) Contents of order

An order under subsection (a)(1) shall state with reasonable specificity the nature of the violation.

(c) Considerations

In assessing a civil penalty under subsection (a)(1), the Administrator shall take into account the seriousness of the violation and any good faith efforts to comply with applicable requirements.

(d) Finality of order; request for hearing

An order under subsection (a)(1) shall become final unless, not later than 30 days after the order is served, a person named in the order requests a hearing on the record.

(e) Hearing

On receiving a request under subsection (d), the Administrator shall promptly conduct a hearing on the record.

(f) Subpoena power

In connection with any hearing on the record under this section, the Administrator may issue subpoenas for the attendance and testimony of witnesses and for the production of relevant papers, books, and documents.

(g) Continued violation after expiration of period for compliance

If a violator fails to take corrective action within the time specified in an order under subsection (a)(1), the Administrator may assess a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 for the continued noncompliance with the order.

(h) Savings provision

The Administrator may not take any enforcement action against a person for selling, offering for sale, or offering for promotional purposes to the ultimate consumer a battery or product covered by this chapter that was—

(1) purchased ready for sale to the ultimate consumer; and

(2) sold, offered for sale, or offered for promotional purposes without modification.

The preceding sentence shall not apply to a person—
(A) who is the importer of a battery covered by this chapter, and
(B) who has knowledge of the chemical contents of the battery

when such chemical contents make the sale, offering for sale, or offering for promotional purposes of such battery unlawful under subchapter III of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 104–142, §5, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1331.)

§14305. Information gathering and access

(a) Records and reports

A person who is required to carry out the objectives of this chapter, including—
(1) a regulated battery manufacturer;
(2) a rechargeable consumer product manufacturer;
(3) a mercury-containing battery manufacturer; and
(4) an authorized agent of a person described in paragraph (1), (2), or (3),

shall establish and maintain such records and report such information as the Administrator may by regulation reasonably require to carry out the objectives of this chapter.

(b) Access and copying

The Administrator or the Administrator's authorized representative, on presentation of credentials of the Administrator, may at reasonable times have access to and copy any records required to be maintained under subsection (a).

(c) Confidentiality

The Administrator shall maintain the confidentiality of documents and records that contain proprietary information.

(Pub. L. 104–142, §6, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1332.)

§14306. State authority

Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to prohibit a State from enacting and enforcing a standard or requirement that is identical to a standard or requirement established or promulgated under this chapter. Except as provided in sections 14322(e) and 14323 of this title, nothing in this chapter shall be construed to prohibit a State from enacting and enforcing a standard or requirement that is more stringent than a standard or requirement established or promulgated under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 104–142, §7, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1332.)

§14307. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this chapter.

(Pub. L. 104–142, §8, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1332.)

SUBCHAPTER II—RECYCLING OF RECHARGEABLE BATTERIES

§14321. Purpose

The purpose of this subchapter is to facilitate the efficient recycling or proper disposal of used nickel-cadmium rechargeable batteries, used small sealed lead-acid rechargeable batteries, other regulated batteries, and such rechargeable batteries in used consumer products, by—

(1) providing for uniform labeling requirements and streamlined regulatory requirements for regulated battery collection programs; and

(2) encouraging voluntary industry programs by eliminating barriers to funding the collection and recycling or proper disposal of used rechargeable batteries.

(Pub. L. 104–142, title I, §102, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1332.)

§14322. Rechargeable consumer products and labeling

(a) Prohibition

(1) In general

No person shall sell for use in the United States a regulated battery that is ready for retail sale or a rechargeable consumer product that is ready for retail sale, if such battery or product was manufactured on or after the date 12 months after May 13, 1996, unless the labeling requirements of subsection (b) are met and, in the case of a regulated battery, the regulated battery—

(A) is easily removable from the rechargeable consumer product; or

(B) is sold separately.

(2) Application

Paragraph (1) does not apply to any of the following:

(A) The sale of a remanufactured product unit unless paragraph (1) applied to the sale of the unit when originally manufactured.

(B) The sale of a product unit intended for export purposes only.

(b) Labeling

Each regulated battery or rechargeable consumer product without an easily removable battery manufactured on or after the date that is 1 year after May 13, 1996, whether produced domestically or imported shall bear the following labels:

(1) 3 chasing arrows or a comparable recycling symbol.

(2)(A) On each regulated battery which is a nickel-cadmium battery, the chemical name or the abbreviation "Ni-Cd" and the phrase "BATTERY MUST BE RECYCLED OR DISPOSED OF PROPERLY.".

(B) On each regulated battery which is a lead-acid battery, "Pb" or the words "LEAD", "RETURN", and "RECYCLE" and if the regulated battery is sealed, the phrase "BATTERY MUST BE RECYCLED.".

(3) On each rechargeable consumer product containing a regulated battery that is not easily removable, the phrase "CONTAINS NICKEL-CADMIUM BATTERY. BATTERY MUST BE RECYCLED OR DISPOSED OF PROPERLY." or "CONTAINS SEALED LEAD BATTERY. BATTERY MUST BE RECYCLED.", as applicable.

(4) On the packaging of each rechargeable consumer product, and the packaging of each regulated battery sold separately from such a product, unless the required label is clearly visible through the packaging, the phrase "CONTAINS NICKEL-CADMIUM BATTERY. BATTERY MUST BE RECYCLED OR DISPOSED OF PROPERLY." or "CONTAINS SEALED LEAD BATTERY. BATTERY MUST BE RECYCLED.", as applicable.

(c) Existing or alternative labeling

(1) Initial period

For a period of 2 years after May 13, 1996, regulated batteries, rechargeable consumer products containing regulated batteries, and rechargeable consumer product packages that are labeled in

substantial compliance with subsection (b) shall be deemed to comply with the labeling requirements of subsection (b).

(2) Certification

(A) In general

On application by persons subject to the labeling requirements of subsection (b) or the labeling requirements promulgated by the Administrator under subsection (d), the Administrator shall certify that a different label meets the requirements of subsection (b) or (d), respectively, if the different label—

(i) conveys the same information as the label required under subsection (b) or (d), respectively; or

(ii) conforms with a recognized international standard that is consistent with the overall purposes of this subchapter.

(B) Constructive certification

Failure of the Administrator to object to an application under subparagraph (A) on the ground that a different label does not meet either of the conditions described in subparagraph (A)(i) or (ii) within 120 days after the date on which the application is made shall constitute certification for the purposes of this chapter.

(d) Rulemaking authority of Administrator

(1) In general

If the Administrator determines that other rechargeable batteries having electrode chemistries different from regulated batteries are toxic and may cause substantial harm to human health and the environment if discarded into the solid waste stream for land disposal or incineration, the Administrator may, with the advice and counsel of State regulatory authorities and manufacturers of rechargeable batteries and rechargeable consumer products, and after public comment—

(A) promulgate labeling requirements for the batteries with different electrode chemistries, rechargeable consumer products containing such batteries that are not easily removable batteries, and packaging for the batteries and products; and

(B) promulgate requirements for easy removability of regulated batteries from rechargeable consumer products designed to contain such batteries.

(2) Substantial similarity

The regulations promulgated under paragraph (1) shall be substantially similar to the requirements set forth in subsections (a) and (b).

(e) Uniformity

After the effective dates of a requirement set forth in subsection (a), (b), or (c) or a regulation promulgated by the Administrator under subsection (d), no Federal agency, State, or political subdivision of a State may enforce any easy removability or environmental labeling requirement for a rechargeable battery or rechargeable consumer product that is not identical to the requirement or regulation.

(f) Exemptions

(1) In general

With respect to any rechargeable consumer product, any person may submit an application to the Administrator for an exemption from the requirements of subsection (a) in accordance with the procedures under paragraph (2). The application shall include the following information:

(A) A statement of the specific basis for the request for the exemption.

(B) The name, business address, and telephone number of the applicant.

(2) Granting of exemption

Not later than 60 days after receipt of an application under paragraph (1), the Administrator shall approve or deny the application. On approval of the application the Administrator shall grant

an exemption to the applicant. The exemption shall be issued for a period of time that the Administrator determines to be appropriate, except that the period shall not exceed 2 years. The Administrator shall grant an exemption on the basis of evidence supplied to the Administrator that the manufacturer has been unable to commence manufacturing the rechargeable consumer product in compliance with the requirements of this section and with an equivalent level of product performance without the product—

(A) posing a threat to human health, safety, or the environment; or

(B) violating requirements for approvals from governmental agencies or widely recognized private standard-setting organizations (including Underwriters Laboratories).

(3) Renewal of exemption

A person granted an exemption under paragraph (2) may apply for a renewal of the exemption in accordance with the requirements and procedures described in paragraphs (1) and (2). The Administrator may grant a renewal of such an exemption for a period of not more than 2 years after the date of the granting of the renewal.

(Pub. L. 104–142, title I, §103, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1332.)

§14323. Requirements

(a) Batteries subject to certain regulations

The collection, storage, or transportation of used rechargeable batteries, batteries described in section 14302(5)(C) of this title or in subchapter III, and used rechargeable consumer products containing rechargeable batteries that are not easily removable rechargeable batteries, shall, notwithstanding any law of a State or political subdivision thereof governing such collection, storage, or transportation, be regulated under applicable provisions of the regulations promulgated by the Environmental Protection Agency at 60 Fed. Reg. 25492 (May 11, 1995), as effective on May 11, 1995, except as provided in paragraph (2) of subsection (b) and except that—

(1) the requirements of 40 CFR 260.20, 260.40, and 260.41 and the equivalent requirements of an approved State program shall not apply, and

(2) this section shall not apply to any lead acid battery managed under 40 CFR 266 subpart G or the equivalent requirements of an approved State program.

(b) Enforcement under Solid Waste Disposal Act

(1) Any person who fails to comply with the requirements imposed by subsection (a) of this section may be subject to enforcement under applicable provisions of the Solid Waste Disposal Act [42 U.S.C. 6901 et seq.].

(2) States may implement and enforce the requirements of subsection (a) if the Administrator finds that—

(A) the State has adopted requirements that are identical to those referred to in subsection (a) governing the collection, storage, or transportation of batteries referred to in subsection (a); and

(B) the State provides for enforcement of such requirements.

(Pub. L. 104–142, title I, §104, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1335.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Solid Waste Disposal Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is title II of Pub. L. 89–272, Oct. 20, 1965, 79 Stat. 997, as amended generally by Pub. L. 94–580, §2, Oct. 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 2795, which is classified generally to chapter 82 (§6901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6901 of this title and Tables.

SUBCHAPTER III—MANAGEMENT OF BATTERIES CONTAINING MERCURY

§14331. Purpose

The purpose of this subchapter is to phase out the use of batteries containing mercury.

(Pub. L. 104–142, title II, §202, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1336.)

§14332. Limitations on sale of alkaline-manganese batteries containing mercury

No person shall sell, offer for sale, or offer for promotional purposes any alkaline-manganese battery manufactured on or after May 13, 1996, with a mercury content that was intentionally introduced (as distinguished from mercury that may be incidentally present in other materials), except that the limitation on mercury content in alkaline-manganese button cells shall be 25 milligrams of mercury per button cell.

(Pub. L. 104–142, title II, §203, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1336.)

§14333. Limitations on sale of zinc-carbon batteries containing mercury

No person shall sell, offer for sale, or offer for promotional purposes any zinc-carbon battery manufactured on or after May 13, 1996, that contains mercury that was intentionally introduced as described in section 14332 of this title.

(Pub. L. 104–142, title II, §204, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1336.)

§14334. Limitations on sale of button cell mercuric-oxide batteries

No person shall sell, offer for sale, or offer for promotional purposes any button cell mercuric-oxide battery for use in the United States on or after May 13, 1996.

(Pub. L. 104–142, title II, §205, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1336.)

§14335. Limitations on sale of other mercuric-oxide batteries

(a) Prohibition

On or after May 13, 1996, no person shall sell, offer for sale, or offer for promotional purposes a mercuric-oxide battery for use in the United States unless the battery manufacturer, or the importer of such a battery—

(1) identifies a collection site in the United States that has all required Federal, State, and local government approvals, to which persons may send used mercuric-oxide batteries for recycling or proper disposal;

(2) informs each of its purchasers of mercuric-oxide batteries of the collection site identified under paragraph (1); and

(3) informs each of its purchasers of mercuric-oxide batteries of a telephone number that the purchaser may call to get information about sending mercuric-oxide batteries for recycling or proper disposal.

(b) Application of section

This section does not apply to a sale or offer of a mercuric-oxide button cell battery.

(Pub. L. 104–142, title II, §206, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1336.)

§14336. New product or use

On petition of a person that proposes a new use for a battery technology described in this subchapter or the use of a battery described in this subchapter in a new product, the Administrator may exempt from this subchapter the new use of the technology or the use of such a battery in the new product on the condition, if appropriate, that there exist reasonable safeguards to ensure that the resulting battery or product without an easily removable battery will not be disposed of in an incinerator, composting facility, or landfill (other than a facility regulated under subtitle C of the Solid Waste Disposal Act (42 U.S.C. 6921 et seq.)).

(Pub. L. 104–142, title II, §207, May 13, 1996, 110 Stat. 1336.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Solid Waste Disposal Act, referred to in text, is title II of Pub. L. 89–272, Oct. 20, 1965, 79 Stat. 997, as amended generally by Pub. L. 94–580, §2, Oct. 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 2795. Subtitle C of the Act is classified generally to subchapter III (§6921 et seq.) of chapter 82 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6901 of this title and Tables.

CHAPTER 138—ASSISTED SUICIDE FUNDING RESTRICTION

Sec.

§14401. Findings and purpose

(a) Findings

Congress finds the following:

(1) The Federal Government provides financial support for the provision of and payment for health care services, as well as for advocacy activities to protect the rights of individuals.

(2) Assisted suicide, euthanasia, and mercy killing have been criminal offenses throughout the United States and, under current law, it would be unlawful to provide services in support of such illegal activities.

(3) Because of recent legal developments, it may become lawful in areas of the United States to furnish services in support of such activities.

(4) Congress is not providing Federal financial assistance in support of assisted suicide, euthanasia, and mercy killing and intends that Federal funds not be used to promote such activities.

(b) Purpose

It is the principal purpose of this chapter to continue current Federal policy by providing explicitly that Federal funds may not be used to pay for items and services (including assistance) the purpose of which is to cause (or assist in causing) the suicide, euthanasia, or mercy killing of any individual.

(Pub. L. 105–12, §2, Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 23.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 105–12, Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 23, known as the Assisted Suicide Funding Restriction Act of 1997. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 105–12, §11, Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 29, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The provisions of this Act [see Short Title note below] (and the amendments made by this Act) take effect upon its enactment [Apr. 30, 1997] and apply, subject to subsection (b), to Federal payments made pursuant to obligations incurred after the date of the enactment of this Act for items and services provided on or after such date.

"(b) APPLICATION TO CONTRACTS.—Such provisions shall apply with respect to contracts entered into, renewed, or extended after the date of the enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1997] and shall also apply to a contract entered into before such date to the extent permitted under such contract."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 105–12, §1(a), Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 23, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter, section 238o of this title, section 1621x of Title 25, Indians, and section 1707 of Title 38, Veterans' Benefits, amending sections 295, 701, 1395y, 1395cc, 1396a, 1396b, 1397d, 2996f, 6022, 6042, 6062, 6082, and 10805 of this title, section 8902 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, section 1073 of Title 10, Armed Forces, section 4005 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, section 2504 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse, and section 794e of Title 29, Labor, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 295 of this title] may be cited as the 'Assisted Suicide Funding Restriction Act of 1997'."

CONSTRUCTION OF CONFORMING AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 105–12, §9(p), Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 29, provided that: "The fact that a law is not amended under this section [enacting section 238o of this title, section 1621x of Title 25, Indians, and section 1707 of Title 38, Veterans' Benefits, amending sections 701, 1395y, 1395cc, 1396a, 1396b, 1397d, 2996f, 6022, 6042, 6062, 6082, and 10805 of this title, section 8902 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, section 1073 of Title 10, Armed Forces, section 4005 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, section 2504 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse, and section 794e of Title 29, Labor] shall not be construed as indicating that the provisions of this Act [see Short Title note above] do not apply to such a law."

§14402. Restriction on use of Federal funds under health care programs

(a) Restriction on Federal funding of health care services

Subject to subsection (b), no funds appropriated by Congress for the purpose of paying (directly or indirectly) for the provision of health care services may be used—

(1) to provide any health care item or service furnished for the purpose of causing, or for the purpose of assisting in causing, the death of any individual, such as by assisted suicide, euthanasia, or mercy killing;

(2) to pay (directly, through payment of Federal financial participation or other matching payment, or otherwise) for such an item or service, including payment of expenses relating to such an item or service; or

(3) to pay (in whole or in part) for health benefit coverage that includes any coverage of such an item or service or of any expenses relating to such an item or service.

(b) Construction and treatment of certain services

Nothing in subsection (a), or in any other provision of this chapter (or in any amendment made by this chapter), shall be construed to apply to or to affect any limitation relating to—

(1) the withholding or withdrawing of medical treatment or medical care;

(2) the withholding or withdrawing of nutrition or hydration;

(3) abortion; or

(4) the use of an item, good, benefit, or service furnished for the purpose of alleviating pain or discomfort, even if such use may increase the risk of death, so long as such item, good, benefit, or service is not also furnished for the purpose of causing, or the purpose of assisting in causing, death, for any reason.

(c) Limitation on Federal facilities and employees

Subject to subsection (b), with respect to health care items and services furnished—

(1) by or in a health care facility owned or operated by the Federal government, or

(2) by any physician or other individual employed by the Federal government to provide health care services within the scope of the physician's or individual's employment,

no such item or service may be furnished for the purpose of causing, or for the purpose of assisting in causing, the death of any individual, such as by assisted suicide, euthanasia, or mercy killing.

(d) List of programs to which restrictions apply

(1) Federal health care funding programs

Subsection (a) applies to funds appropriated under or to carry out the following:

(A) Medicare program

Title XVIII of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1395 et seq.].

(B) Medicaid program

Title XIX of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1396 et seq.].

(C) Title XX social services block grant

Title XX of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1397 et seq.].

(D) Maternal and child health block grant program

Title V of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 701 et seq.].

(E) Public Health Service Act

The Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 201 et seq.].

(F) Indian Health Care Improvement Act

The Indian Health Care Improvement Act [25 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.].

(G) Federal employees health benefits program

Chapter 89 of title 5.

(H) Military health care system (including Tricare and CHAMPUS programs)

Chapter 55 of title 10.

(I) Veterans medical care

Chapter 17 of title 38.

(J) Health services for Peace Corps volunteers

Section 2504(e) of title 22.

(K) Medical services for Federal prisoners

Section 4005(a) of title 18.

(2) Federal facilities and personnel

The provisions of subsection (c) apply to facilities and personnel of the following:

(A) Military health care system

The Department of Defense operating under chapter 55 of title 10.

(B) Veterans medical care

The Veterans Health Administration of the Department of Veterans Affairs.

(C) Public Health Service

The Public Health Service.

(3) Nonexclusive list

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed as limiting the application of subsection (a) to the programs specified in paragraph (1) or the application of subsection (c) to the facilities and personnel specified in paragraph (2).

(Pub. L. 105–12, §3, Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 23.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 105–12, Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 23, known as the Assisted Suicide Funding Restriction Act of 1997, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14401 of this title and Tables.

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(1)(A)–(D), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Titles V, XVIII, XIX, and XX of the Act are classified generally to subchapters V (§701 et seq.), XVIII (§1395 et seq.), XIX (§1396 et seq.), and XX (§1397 et seq.), respectively, of chapter 7 of this title, respectively. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

The Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(1)(E), is act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682, which is classified generally to chapter 6A (§201 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

The Indian Health Care Improvement Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(1)(F), is Pub. L. 94–437, Sept. 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 1400, which is classified principally to chapter 18 (§1601 et seq.) of Title 25, Indians. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of Title 25 and Tables.

§14403. Restriction on use of Federal funds under certain grant programs

Subject to section 14402(b) of this title (relating to construction and treatment of certain services), no funds appropriated by Congress to carry out subtitle B, D, or E of the Developmental Disabilities Assistance and Bill of Rights Act of 2000 [42 U.S.C. 15021 et seq., 15061 et seq., 15081 et seq.] may be used to support or fund any program or service which has a purpose of assisting in procuring any item, benefit, or service furnished for the purpose of causing, or the purpose of assisting in causing, the death of any individual, such as by assisted suicide, euthanasia, or mercy killing.

(Pub. L. 105–12, §4, Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 25; Pub. L. 106–402, title IV, §401(b)(15)(A), Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1740.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Developmental Disabilities Assistance and Bill of Rights Act of 2000, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 106–402, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1677. Subtitles B, D, and E of the Act probably mean subtitles B, D, and E of title I of the Act, which are classified generally to parts B [§15021 et seq.], D [§15061 et seq.], and E [§15081 et seq.], respectively, of subchapter I of chapter 144 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15001 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Pub. L. 106–402, §401(b)(15)(A)(i), substituted "Restriction on use of Federal funds under certain grant programs" for "Restriction on use of Federal funds under certain grant programs under the Developmental Disabilities Assistance and Bill of Rights Act" in section catchline.

Pub. L. 106–402, §401(b)(15)(A)(ii), substituted "subtitle B, D, or E of the Developmental Disabilities Assistance and Bill of Rights Act of 2000" for "part B, D, or E of the Developmental Disabilities Assistance and Bill of Rights Act".

§14404. Restriction on use of Federal funds by advocacy programs

(a) In general

Subject to section 14402(b) of this title (relating to construction and treatment of certain services), no funds appropriated by Congress may be used to assist in, to support, or to fund any activity or service which has a purpose of assisting in, or to bring suit or provide any other form of legal assistance for the purpose of—

(1) securing or funding any item, benefit, program, or service furnished for the purpose of causing, or the purpose of assisting in causing, the suicide, euthanasia, or mercy killing of any individual;

(2) compelling any person, institution, governmental entity [1] to provide or fund any item, benefit, program, or service for such purpose; or

(3) asserting or advocating a legal right to cause, or to assist in causing, the suicide, euthanasia, or mercy killing of any individual.

(b) List of programs to which restrictions apply

(1) In general

Subsection (a) applies to funds appropriated under or to carry out the following:

(A) Protection and advocacy systems under the Developmental Disabilities Assistance and Bill of Rights Act of 2000

Subtitle C of the Developmental Disabilities Assistance and Bill of Rights Act of 2000 [42 U.S.C. 15041 et seq.].

(B) Protection and advocacy systems under the Protection and Advocacy for Mentally Ill Individuals Act

The Protection and Advocacy for Mentally Ill Individuals Act of 1986 [2] [42 U.S.C. 10801 et seq.].

(C) Protection and advocacy systems under the Rehabilitation Act of 1973

Section 509 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 794e).

(D) Ombudsman programs under the Older Americans Act of 1965

Ombudsman programs under the Older Americans Act of 1965 [42 U.S.C. 3001 et seq.].

(E) Legal assistance

Legal assistance programs under the Legal Services Corporation Act [42 U.S.C. 2996 et seq.].

(2) Nonexclusive list

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed as limiting the application of subsection (a) to the programs specified in paragraph (1).

(Pub. L. 105–12, §5, Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 25; Pub. L. 106–402, title IV, §401(b)(15)(B), Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1740.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Developmental Disabilities Assistance and Bill of Rights Act of 2000, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(A), is Pub. L. 106–402, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1677. Subtitle C of the Act probably means subtitle C of title I of the Act, which is classified generally to part C (§15041 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 144 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15001 of this title and Tables.

The Protection and Advocacy for Mentally Ill Individuals Act of 1986, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(B), was Pub. L. 99–319, May 23, 1986, 100 Stat. 478, as amended. Pub. L. 99–319 was renamed the Protection and Advocacy for Individuals with Mental Illness Act by Pub. L. 106–310, div. B, title XXXII, §3206(a), Oct. 17, 2000, 114 Stat. 1193, and is classified generally to chapter 114 (§10801 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 10801 of this title and Tables.

The Older Americans Act of 1965, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(D), is Pub. L. 89–73, July 14, 1965, 79 Stat. 218, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 35 (§3001 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3001 of this title and Tables.

The Legal Services Corporation Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(E), is title X of Pub. L. 88–452, as added by Pub. L. 93–355, §2, July 25, 1974, 88 Stat. 378, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter X (§2996 et seq.) of chapter 34 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2701 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (b)(1)(A). Pub. L. 106–402 added subpar. (A) and struck out heading and text of former subpar. (A). Text read as follows: "Part C of the Developmental Disabilities Assistance and Bill of Rights

Act."

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "or governmental entity".*

[2] *See References in Text note below.*

§14405. Restriction on use of other Federal funds

(a) In general

Subject to section 14402(b) of this title (relating to construction and treatment of certain services) and subsection (b) of this section, no funds appropriated by the Congress shall be used to provide, procure, furnish, or fund any item, good, benefit, activity, or service, furnished or performed for the purpose of causing, or assisting in causing, the suicide, euthanasia, or mercy killing of any individual.

(b) Nonduplication

Subsection (a) shall not apply to funds to which section 14402, 14403, or 14404 of this title applies, except that subsection (a), rather than section 14402 of this title, shall apply to funds appropriated to carry out title 10 (other than chapter 55), title 18 (other than section 4005(a)), and chapter 37 of title 28.

(Pub. L. 105–12, §6, Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 25.)

§14406. Clarification with respect to advance directives

Subject to section 14402(b) of this title (relating to construction and treatment of certain services), sections 1395cc(f) and 1396a(w) of this title shall not be construed—

(1) to require any provider or organization, or any employee of such a provider or organization, to inform or counsel any individual regarding any right to obtain an item or service furnished for the purpose of causing, or the purpose of assisting in causing, the death of the individual, such as by assisted suicide, euthanasia, or mercy killing; or

(2) to apply to or to affect any requirement with respect to a portion of an advance directive that directs the purposeful causing of, or the purposeful assisting in causing, the death of any individual, such as by assisted suicide, euthanasia, or mercy killing.

(Pub. L. 105–12, §7, Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 26.)

§14407. Application to District of Columbia

For purposes of this chapter, the term "funds appropriated by Congress" includes funds appropriated to the District of Columbia pursuant to an authorization of appropriations under title V of the District of Columbia Home Rule Act and the term "Federal government" includes the government of the District of Columbia.

(Pub. L. 105–12, §8, Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 26; Pub. L. 105–33, title XI, §11717(b), Aug. 5, 1997, 111 Stat. 786.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 105–12, Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 23, known as the Assisted Suicide Funding Restriction Act of 1997, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14401 of this title and Tables.

The District of Columbia Home Rule Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 93–198, Dec. 24, 1973, 87 Stat. 774, as amended. Title V of the Act was classified to the District of Columbia Code prior to repeal by Pub. L.

105–33, title XI, §11601, Aug. 5, 1997, 111 Stat. 777.

AMENDMENTS

1997—Pub. L. 105–33 substituted "District of Columbia Home Rule Act" for "District of Columbia Self-Government and Governmental Reorganization Act".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1997 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 105–33 effective Oct. 1, 1997, except as otherwise provided in title XI of Pub. L. 105–33, see section 11721 of Pub. L. 105–33, set out as a note under section 4246 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

§14408. Relation to other laws

The provisions of this chapter supersede other Federal laws (including laws enacted after April 30, 1997) except to the extent such laws specifically supersede the provisions of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 105–12, §10, Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 29.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 105–12, Apr. 30, 1997, 111 Stat. 23, known as the Assisted Suicide Funding Restriction Act of 1997, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14401 of this title and Tables.

CHAPTER 139—VOLUNTEER PROTECTION

Sec.

§14501. Findings and purpose

(a) Findings

The Congress finds and declares that—

(1) the willingness of volunteers to offer their services is deterred by the potential for liability actions against them;

(2) as a result, many nonprofit public and private organizations and governmental entities, including voluntary associations, social service agencies, educational institutions, and other civic programs, have been adversely affected by the withdrawal of volunteers from boards of directors and service in other capacities;

(3) the contribution of these programs to their communities is thereby diminished, resulting in fewer and higher cost programs than would be obtainable if volunteers were participating;

(4) because Federal funds are expended on useful and cost-effective social service programs, many of which are national in scope, depend heavily on volunteer participation, and represent some of the most successful public-private partnerships, protection of volunteerism through clarification and limitation of the personal liability risks assumed by the volunteer in connection with such participation is an appropriate subject for Federal legislation;

(5) services and goods provided by volunteers and nonprofit organizations would often otherwise be provided by private entities that operate in interstate commerce;

(6) due to high liability costs and unwarranted litigation costs, volunteers and nonprofit organizations face higher costs in purchasing insurance, through interstate insurance markets, to

cover their activities; and

(7) clarifying and limiting the liability risk assumed by volunteers is an appropriate subject for Federal legislation because—

(A) of the national scope of the problems created by the legitimate fears of volunteers about frivolous, arbitrary, or capricious lawsuits;

(B) the citizens of the United States depend on, and the Federal Government expends funds on, and provides tax exemptions and other consideration to, numerous social programs that depend on the services of volunteers;

(C) it is in the interest of the Federal Government to encourage the continued operation of volunteer service organizations and contributions of volunteers because the Federal Government lacks the capacity to carry out all of the services provided by such organizations and volunteers; and

(D)(i) liability reform for volunteers, will promote the free flow of goods and services, lessen burdens on interstate commerce and uphold constitutionally protected due process rights; and

(ii) therefore, liability reform is an appropriate use of the powers contained in article 1, section 8, clause 3 of the United States Constitution, and the fourteenth amendment to the United States Constitution.

(b) Purpose

The purpose of this chapter is to promote the interests of social service program beneficiaries and taxpayers and to sustain the availability of programs, nonprofit organizations, and governmental entities that depend on volunteer contributions by reforming the laws to provide certain protections from liability abuses related to volunteers serving nonprofit organizations and governmental entities.

(Pub. L. 105–19, §2, June 18, 1997, 111 Stat. 218.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 105–19, §7, June 18, 1997, 111 Stat. 223, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—This Act [enacting this chapter] shall take effect 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [June 18, 1997].

"(b) APPLICATION.—This Act applies to any claim for harm caused by an act or omission of a volunteer where that claim is filed on or after the effective date of this Act but only if the harm that is the subject of the claim or the conduct that caused such harm occurred after such effective date."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 105–19, §1, June 18, 1997, 111 Stat. 218, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'Volunteer Protection Act of 1997'."

§14502. Preemption and election of State nonapplicability

(a) Preemption

This chapter preempts the laws of any State to the extent that such laws are inconsistent with this chapter, except that this chapter shall not preempt any State law that provides additional protection from liability relating to volunteers or to any category of volunteers in the performance of services for a nonprofit organization or governmental entity.

(b) Election of State regarding nonapplicability

This chapter shall not apply to any civil action in a State court against a volunteer in which all parties are citizens of the State if such State enacts a statute in accordance with State requirements for enacting legislation—

(1) citing the authority of this subsection;

(2) declaring the election of such State that this chapter shall not apply, as of a date certain, to such civil action in the State; and

(3) containing no other provisions.

(Pub. L. 105–19, §3, June 18, 1997, 111 Stat. 219.)

§14503. Limitation on liability for volunteers

(a) Liability protection for volunteers

Except as provided in subsections (b) and (d), no volunteer of a nonprofit organization or governmental entity shall be liable for harm caused by an act or omission of the volunteer on behalf of the organization or entity if—

(1) the volunteer was acting within the scope of the volunteer's responsibilities in the nonprofit organization or governmental entity at the time of the act or omission;

(2) if appropriate or required, the volunteer was properly licensed, certified, or authorized by the appropriate authorities for the activities or practice in the State in which the harm occurred, where the activities were or practice was undertaken within the scope of the volunteer's responsibilities in the nonprofit organization or governmental entity;

(3) the harm was not caused by willful or criminal misconduct, gross negligence, reckless misconduct, or a conscious, flagrant indifference to the rights or safety of the individual harmed by the volunteer; and

(4) the harm was not caused by the volunteer operating a motor vehicle, vessel, aircraft, or other vehicle for which the State requires the operator or the owner of the vehicle, craft, or vessel to—

(A) possess an operator's license; or

(B) maintain insurance.

(b) Concerning responsibility of volunteers to organizations and entities

Nothing in this section shall be construed to affect any civil action brought by any nonprofit organization or any governmental entity against any volunteer of such organization or entity.

(c) No effect on liability of organization or entity

Nothing in this section shall be construed to affect the liability of any nonprofit organization or governmental entity with respect to harm caused to any person.

(d) Exceptions to volunteer liability protection

If the laws of a State limit volunteer liability subject to one or more of the following conditions, such conditions shall not be construed as inconsistent with this section:

(1) A State law that requires a nonprofit organization or governmental entity to adhere to risk management procedures, including mandatory training of volunteers.

(2) A State law that makes the organization or entity liable for the acts or omissions of its volunteers to the same extent as an employer is liable for the acts or omissions of its employees.

(3) A State law that makes a limitation of liability inapplicable if the civil action was brought by an officer of a State or local government pursuant to State or local law.

(4) A State law that makes a limitation of liability applicable only if the nonprofit organization or governmental entity provides a financially secure source of recovery for individuals who suffer harm as a result of actions taken by a volunteer on behalf of the organization or entity. A financially secure source of recovery may be an insurance policy within specified limits, comparable coverage from a risk pooling mechanism, equivalent assets, or alternative arrangements that satisfy the State that the organization or entity will be able to pay for losses up to a specified amount. Separate standards for different types of liability exposure may be specified.

(e) Limitation on punitive damages based on actions of volunteers

(1) General rule

Punitive damages may not be awarded against a volunteer in an action brought for harm based on the action of a volunteer acting within the scope of the volunteer's responsibilities to a nonprofit organization or governmental entity unless the claimant establishes by clear and

convincing evidence that the harm was proximately caused by an action of such volunteer which constitutes willful or criminal misconduct, or a conscious, flagrant indifference to the rights or safety of the individual harmed.

(2) Construction

Paragraph (1) does not create a cause of action for punitive damages and does not preempt or supersede any Federal or State law to the extent that such law would further limit the award of punitive damages.

(f) Exceptions to limitations on liability

(1) In general

The limitations on the liability of a volunteer under this chapter shall not apply to any misconduct that—

(A) constitutes a crime of violence (as that term is defined in section 16 of title 18) or act of international terrorism (as that term is defined in section 2331 of title 18) for which the defendant has been convicted in any court;

(B) constitutes a hate crime (as that term is used in the Hate Crime Statistics Act (28 U.S.C. 534 note));

(C) involves a sexual offense, as defined by applicable State law, for which the defendant has been convicted in any court;

(D) involves misconduct for which the defendant has been found to have violated a Federal or State civil rights law; or

(E) where the defendant was under the influence (as determined pursuant to applicable State law) of intoxicating alcohol or any drug at the time of the misconduct.

(2) Rule of construction

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to effect subsection (a)(3) or (e).

(Pub. L. 105–19, §4, June 18, 1997, 111 Stat. 219.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Hate Crime Statistics Act, referred to in subsec. (f)(1)(B), is Pub. L. 101–275, Apr. 23, 1990, 104 Stat. 140, which is set out as a note under section 534 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

§14504. Liability for noneconomic loss

(a) General rule

In any civil action against a volunteer, based on an action of a volunteer acting within the scope of the volunteer's responsibilities to a nonprofit organization or governmental entity, the liability of the volunteer for noneconomic loss shall be determined in accordance with subsection (b).

(b) Amount of liability

(1) In general

Each defendant who is a volunteer, shall be liable only for the amount of noneconomic loss allocated to that defendant in direct proportion to the percentage of responsibility of that defendant (determined in accordance with paragraph (2)) for the harm to the claimant with respect to which that defendant is liable. The court shall render a separate judgment against each defendant in an amount determined pursuant to the preceding sentence.

(2) Percentage of responsibility

For purposes of determining the amount of noneconomic loss allocated to a defendant who is a volunteer under this section, the trier of fact shall determine the percentage of responsibility of that defendant for the claimant's harm.

(Pub. L. 105–19, §5, June 18, 1997, 111 Stat. 221.)

§14505. Definitions

For purposes of this chapter:

(1) Economic loss

The term "economic loss" means any pecuniary loss resulting from harm (including the loss of earnings or other benefits related to employment, medical expense loss, replacement services loss, loss due to death, burial costs, and loss of business or employment opportunities) to the extent recovery for such loss is allowed under applicable State law.

(2) Harm

The term "harm" includes physical, nonphysical, economic, and noneconomic losses.

(3) Noneconomic losses

The term "noneconomic losses" means losses for physical and emotional pain, suffering, inconvenience, physical impairment, mental anguish, disfigurement, loss of enjoyment of life, loss of society and companionship, loss of consortium (other than loss of domestic service), hedonic damages, injury to reputation and all other nonpecuniary losses of any kind or nature.

(4) Nonprofit organization

The term "nonprofit organization" means—

(A) any organization which is described in section 501(c)(3) of title 26 and exempt from tax under section 501(a) of such title and which does not practice any action which constitutes a hate crime referred to in subsection (b)(1) of the first section of the Hate Crime Statistics Act (28 U.S.C. 534 note); or

(B) any not-for-profit organization which is organized and conducted for public benefit and operated primarily for charitable, civic, educational, religious, welfare, or health purposes and which does not practice any action which constitutes a hate crime referred to in subsection (b)(1) of the first section of the Hate Crime Statistics Act (28 U.S.C. 534 note).

(5) State

The term "State" means each of the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Northern Mariana Islands, any other territory or possession of the United States, or any political subdivision of any such State, territory, or possession.

(6) Volunteer

The term "volunteer" means an individual performing services for a nonprofit organization or a governmental entity who does not receive—

(A) compensation (other than reasonable reimbursement or allowance for expenses actually incurred); or

(B) any other thing of value in lieu of compensation,

in excess of $500 per year, and such term includes a volunteer serving as a director, officer, trustee, or direct service volunteer.

(Pub. L. 105–19, §6, June 18, 1997, 111 Stat. 221.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Hate Crime Statistics Act, referred to in par. (4), is Pub. L. 101–275, Apr. 23, 1990, 104 Stat. 140, which is set out as a note under section 534 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

CHAPTER 140—CRIMINAL JUSTICE IDENTIFICATION, INFORMATION, AND COMMUNICATION

SUBCHAPTER I—CRIME IDENTIFICATION TECHNOLOGY

§14601. State grant program for criminal justice identification, information, and communication

(a) In general

Subject to the availability of amounts provided in advance in appropriations Acts, the Office of Justice Programs relying principally on the expertise of the Bureau of Justice Statistics shall make a grant to each State, in a manner consistent with the national criminal history improvement program, which shall be used by the State, in conjunction with units of local government, State and local courts, other States, or combinations thereof, to establish or upgrade an integrated approach to develop information and identification technologies and systems to—

(1) upgrade criminal history and criminal justice record systems, including systems operated by law enforcement agencies and courts;

(2) improve criminal justice identification;

(3) promote compatibility and integration of national, State, and local systems for—

(A) criminal justice purposes;

(B) firearms eligibility determinations;

(C) identification of sexual offenders;

(D) identification of domestic violence offenders; and

(E) background checks for other authorized purposes unrelated to criminal justice; and

(4) capture information for statistical and research purposes to improve the administration of criminal justice.

(b) Use of grant amounts

Grants under this section may be used for programs to establish, develop, update, or upgrade—

(1) State centralized, automated, adult and juvenile criminal history record information systems, including arrest and disposition reporting;

(2) automated fingerprint identification systems that are compatible with standards established by the National Institute of Standards and Technology and interoperable with the Integrated Automated Fingerprint Identification System (IAFIS) of the Federal Bureau of Investigation;

(3) finger imaging, live scan, and other automated systems to digitize fingerprints and to communicate prints in a manner that is compatible with standards established by the National Institute of Standards and Technology and interoperable with systems operated by States and by the Federal Bureau of Investigation;

(4) programs and systems to facilitate full participation in the Interstate Identification Index of the National Crime Information Center;

(5) systems to facilitate full participation in any compact relating to the Interstate Identification Index of the National Crime Information Center;

(6) systems to facilitate full participation in the national instant criminal background check

system established under section 103(b) of the Brady Handgun Violence Prevention Act (18 U.S.C. 922 note) for firearms eligibility determinations;

(7) integrated criminal justice information systems to manage and communicate criminal justice information among law enforcement agencies, courts, prosecutors, and corrections agencies;

(8) noncriminal history record information systems relevant to firearms eligibility determinations for availability and accessibility to the national instant criminal background check system established under section 103(b) of the Brady Handgun Violence Prevention Act (18 U.S.C. 922 note);

(9) court-based criminal justice information systems that promote—

(A) reporting of dispositions to central State repositories and to the Federal Bureau of Investigation; and

(B) compatibility with, and integration of, court systems with other criminal justice information systems;

(10) ballistics identification and information programs that are compatible and integrated with the National Integrated Ballistics Network (NIBN);

(11) the capabilities of forensic science programs and medical examiner programs related to the administration of criminal justice, including programs leading to accreditation or certification of individuals or departments, agencies, or laboratories, and programs relating to the identification and analysis of deoxyribonucleic acid;

(12) sexual offender identification and registration systems;

(13) domestic violence offender identification and information systems;

(14) programs for fingerprint-supported background checks capability for noncriminal justice purposes, including youth service employees and volunteers and other individuals in positions of responsibility, if authorized by Federal or State law and administered by a government agency;

(15) criminal justice information systems with a capacity to provide statistical and research products including incident-based reporting systems that are compatible with the National Incident-Based Reporting System (NIBRS) and uniform crime reports;

(16) multiagency, multijurisdictional communications systems among the States to share routine and emergency information among Federal, State, and local law enforcement agencies;

(17) the capability of the criminal justice system to deliver timely, accurate, and complete criminal history record information to child welfare agencies, organizations, and programs that are engaged in the assessment of risk and other activities related to the protection of children, including protection against child sexual abuse, and placement of children in foster care; and

(18) notwithstanding subsection (c), antiterrorism purposes as they relate to any other uses under this section or for other antiterrorism programs.

(c) Assurances

(1) In general

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, a State shall provide assurances to the Attorney General that the State has the capability to contribute pertinent information to the national instant criminal background check system established under section 103(b) of the Brady Handgun Violence Prevention Act (18 U.S.C. 922 note).

(2) Information sharing

Such assurances shall include a provision that ensures that a statewide strategy for information sharing systems is underway, or will be initiated, to improve the functioning of the criminal justice system, with an emphasis on integration of all criminal justice components, law enforcement, courts, prosecution, corrections, and probation and parole. The strategy shall be prepared after consultation with State and local officials with emphasis on the recommendation of officials whose duty it is to oversee, plan, and implement integrated information technology systems, and shall contain—

(A) a definition and analysis of "integration" in the State and localities developing integrated information sharing systems;

(B) an assessment of the criminal justice resources being devoted to information technology;

(C) Federal, State, regional, and local information technology coordination requirements;

(D) an assurance that the individuals who developed the grant application took into consideration the needs of all branches of the State Government and specifically sought the advice of the chief of the highest court of the State with respect to the application;

(E) State and local resource needs;

(F) the establishment of statewide priorities for planning and implementation of information technology systems; and

(G) a plan for coordinating the programs funded under this subchapter with other federally funded information technology programs, including directly funded local programs such as the Edward Byrne Justice Assistance Grant Program and the M.O.R.E. program established pursuant to part Q of title I of the Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968 [42 U.S.C. 3796dd et seq.].

(d) Matching funds

The Federal share of a grant received under this subchapter may not exceed 90 percent of the costs of a program or proposal funded under this subchapter unless the Attorney General waives, wholly or in part, the requirements of this subsection.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

(1) In general

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $250,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2002 through 2007.

(2) Limitations

Of the amount made available to carry out this section in any fiscal year—

(A) not more than 3 percent may be used by the Attorney General for salaries and administrative expenses;

(B) not more than 5 percent may be used for technical assistance, training and evaluations, and studies commissioned by Bureau of Justice Statistics of the Department of Justice (through discretionary grants or otherwise) in furtherance of the purposes of this section; and

(C) the Attorney General shall ensure the amounts are distributed on an equitable geographic basis.

(f) Grants to Indian tribes

Notwithstanding any other provision of this section, the Attorney General may use amounts made available under this section to make grants to Indian tribes for use in accordance with this section.

(Pub. L. 105–251, title I, §102, Oct. 9, 1998, 112 Stat. 1871; Pub. L. 106–177, title I, §102, Mar. 10, 2000, 114 Stat. 35; Pub. L. 106–561, §2(c)(4), Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2791; Pub. L. 107–56, title X, §1015, Oct. 26, 2001, 115 Stat. 400; Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1111(c)(1), Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3101.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 103(b) of the Brady Handgun Violence Prevention Act, referred to in subsecs. (b)(6), (8) and (c)(1), is section 103(b) of Pub. L. 103–159, as amended, which is set out as a note under section 922 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

The Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(G), is Pub. L. 90–351, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 197, as amended. Part Q of title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter XII–E (§3796dd et seq.) of chapter 46 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3711 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (c)(2)(G). Pub. L. 109–162 substituted "such as the Edward Byrne Justice Assistance Grant Program and the M.O.R.E. program" for "such as the Local Law Enforcement Block Grant program

(described under the heading 'Violent Crime Reduction Programs, State and Local Law Enforcement Assistance' of the Departments of Commerce, Justice, and State, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1998 (Public Law 105–119)) and the M.O.R.E. program".

2001—Subsec. (b)(18). Pub. L. 107–56, §1015(1), added par. (18).

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 107–56, §1015(2), substituted "this section $250,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2002 through 2007" for "this section $250,000,000 for each of fiscal years 1999 through 2003".

2000—Subsec. (b)(17). Pub. L. 106–177 added par. (17).

Subsec. (e)(2)(B) to (D). Pub. L. 106–561 inserted "and" after semicolon in subpar. (B), redesignated subpar. (D) as (C), and struck out former subpar. (C) which read as follows: "not less than 20 percent shall be used by the Attorney General for the purposes described in paragraph (11) of subsection (b) of this section; and".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 109–162 applicable with respect to the first fiscal year beginning after Jan. 5, 2006, and each fiscal year thereafter, see section 1111(d) of Pub. L. 109–162, set out as a note under section 3750 of this title.

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 105–251, title I, §101, Oct. 9, 1998, 112 Stat. 1871, provided that: "This title [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the 'Crime Identification Technology Act of 1998'."

Pub. L. 105–251, title II, §201, Oct. 9, 1998, 112 Stat. 1874, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter II of this chapter, amending sections 5119a and 5119b of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 5101 of this title] may be cited as the 'National Criminal History Access and Child Protection Act'."

Pub. L. 105–251, title II, §211, Oct. 9, 1998, 112 Stat. 1874, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle A (§§211–217) of title II of Pub. L. 105–251, enacting subchapter II of this chapter] may be cited as the 'National Crime Prevention and Privacy Compact Act of 1998'."

SUBCHAPTER II—EXCHANGE OF CRIMINAL HISTORY RECORDS FOR NONCRIMINAL JUSTICE PURPOSES

§14611. Findings

Congress finds that—

(1) both the Federal Bureau of Investigation and State criminal history record repositories maintain fingerprint-based criminal history records;

(2) these criminal history records are shared and exchanged for criminal justice purposes through a Federal-State program known as the Interstate Identification Index System;

(3) although these records are also exchanged for legally authorized, noncriminal justice uses, such as governmental licensing and employment background checks, the purposes for and procedures by which they are exchanged vary widely from State to State;

(4) an interstate and Federal-State compact is necessary to facilitate authorized interstate criminal history record exchanges for noncriminal justice purposes on a uniform basis, while permitting each State to effectuate its own dissemination policy within its own borders; and

(5) such a compact will allow Federal and State records to be provided expeditiously to governmental and nongovernmental agencies that use such records in accordance with pertinent Federal and State law, while simultaneously enhancing the accuracy of the records and safeguarding the information contained therein from unauthorized disclosure or use.

(Pub. L. 105–251, title II, §212, Oct. 9, 1998, 112 Stat. 1874.)

§14612. Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) Attorney General

The term "Attorney General" means the Attorney General of the United States.

(2) Compact

The term "Compact" means the National Crime Prevention and Privacy Compact set forth in section 14616 of this title.

(3) Council

The term "Council" means the Compact Council established under Article VI of the Compact.

(4) FBI

The term "FBI" means the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

(5) Party State

The term "Party State" means a State that has ratified the Compact.

(6) State

The term "State" means any State, territory, or possession of the United States, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

(Pub. L. 105–251, title II, §213, Oct. 9, 1998, 112 Stat. 1874.)

§14613. Enactment and consent of the United States

The National Crime Prevention and Privacy Compact, as set forth in section 14616 of this title, is enacted into law and entered into by the Federal Government. The consent of Congress is given to States to enter into the Compact.

(Pub. L. 105–251, title II, §214, Oct. 9, 1998, 112 Stat. 1875.)

§14614. Effect on other laws

(a) Privacy Act of 1974

Nothing in the Compact shall affect the obligations and responsibilities of the FBI under section 552a of title 5 (commonly known as the "Privacy Act of 1974").

(b) Access to certain records not affected

Nothing in the Compact shall interfere in any manner with—

(1) access, direct or otherwise, to records pursuant to—

(A) section 9101 of title 5;

(B) the National Child Protection Act [42 U.S.C. 5119 et seq.];

(C) the Brady Handgun Violence Prevention Act (Public Law 103–159; 107 Stat. 1536);

(D) the Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994 (Public Law 103–322; 108 Stat. 2074) or any amendment made by that Act;

(E) the United States Housing Act of 1937 (42 U.S.C. 1437 et seq.); or

(F) the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 (25 U.S.C. 4101 et seq.); or

(2) any direct access to Federal criminal history records authorized by law.

(c) Authority of FBI under Departments of State, Justice, and Commerce, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1973

Nothing in the Compact shall be construed to affect the authority of the FBI under the Departments of State, Justice, and Commerce, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriation

Act, 1973 (Public Law 92–544 (86 Stat. 1115)).

(d) Federal Advisory Committee Act

The Council shall not be considered to be a Federal advisory committee for purposes of the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.).

(e) Members of Council not Federal officers or employees

Members of the Council (other than a member from the FBI or any at-large member who may be a Federal official or employee) shall not, by virtue of such membership, be deemed—

(1) to be, for any purpose other than to effect the Compact, officers or employees of the United States (as defined in sections 2104 and 2105 of title 5); or

(2) to become entitled by reason of Council membership to any compensation or benefit payable or made available by the Federal Government to its officers or employees.

(Pub. L. 105–251, title II, §215, Oct. 9, 1998, 112 Stat. 1875.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Privacy Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 93–579, Dec. 31, 1974, 88 Stat. 1896, as amended, which enacted section 552a of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and provisions set out as notes under section 552a of Title 5. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 552a of Title 5 and Tables.

The National Child Protection Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(B), probably means the National Child Protection Act of 1993, Pub. L. 103–209, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2490, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter VI (§5119 et seq.) of chapter 67 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1993 Amendment note set out under section 5101 of this title and Tables.

The Brady Handgun Violence Prevention Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(C), is title I of Pub. L. 103–159, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1536, which enacted section 925A of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, amended former section 3759 of this title and sections 921, 922, and 924 of Title 18, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 921 and 922 of Title 18. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1993 Amendment note set out under section 921 of Title 18 and Tables.

The Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act of 1994, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(D), is Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1796, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

The United States Housing Act of 1937, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(E), is act Sept. 1, 1937, ch. 896, as revised generally by Pub. L. 93–383, title II, §201(a), Aug. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 653, which is classified generally to chapter 8 (§1437 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1437 of this title and Tables.

The Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(F), is Pub. L. 104–330, Oct. 26, 1996, 110 Stat. 4016, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 43 (§4101 et seq.) of Title 25, Indians. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4101 of Title 25 and Tables.

The Departments of State, Justice, and Commerce, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1973, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 92–544, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1109, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (d), is Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§14615. Enforcement and implementation

All departments, agencies, officers, and employees of the United States shall enforce the Compact and cooperate with one another and with all Party States in enforcing the Compact and effectuating its purposes. For the Federal Government, the Attorney General shall make such rules, prescribe such instructions, and take such other actions as may be necessary to carry out the Compact and this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 105–251, title II, §216, Oct. 9, 1998, 112 Stat. 1875.)

§14616. National Crime Prevention and Privacy Compact

The Contracting Parties agree to the following:

OVERVIEW

(a) In general

This Compact organizes an electronic information sharing system among the Federal Government and the States to exchange criminal history records for noncriminal justice purposes authorized by Federal or State law, such as background checks for governmental licensing and employment.

(b) Obligations of parties

Under this Compact, the FBI and the Party States agree to maintain detailed databases of their respective criminal history records, including arrests and dispositions, and to make them available to the Federal Government and to Party States for authorized purposes. The FBI shall also manage the Federal data facilities that provide a significant part of the infrastructure for the system.

ARTICLE I—DEFINITIONS

In this Compact:

(1) Attorney General

The term "Attorney General" means the Attorney General of the United States.

(2) Compact officer

The term "Compact officer" means—

(A) with respect to the Federal Government, an official so designated by the Director of the FBI; and

(B) with respect to a Party State, the chief administrator of the State's criminal history record repository or a designee of the chief administrator who is a regular full-time employee of the repository.

(3) Council

The term "Council" means the Compact Council established under Article VI.

(4) Criminal history records

The term "criminal history records"—

(A) means information collected by criminal justice agencies on individuals consisting of identifiable descriptions and notations of arrests, detentions, indictments, or other formal criminal charges, and any disposition arising therefrom, including acquittal, sentencing, correctional supervision, or release; and

(B) does not include identification information such as fingerprint records if such information does not indicate involvement of the individual with the criminal justice system.

(5) Criminal history record repository

The term "criminal history record repository" means the State agency designated by the Governor or other appropriate executive official or the legislature of a State to perform centralized recordkeeping functions for criminal history records and services in the State.

(6) Criminal justice

The term "criminal justice" includes activities relating to the detection, apprehension, detention, pretrial release, post-trial release, prosecution, adjudication, correctional supervision, or

rehabilitation of accused persons or criminal offenders. The administration of criminal justice includes criminal identification activities and the collection, storage, and dissemination of criminal history records.

(7) Criminal justice agency

The term "criminal justice agency"—

(A) means—

(i) courts; and

(ii) a governmental agency or any subunit thereof that—

(I) performs the administration of criminal justice pursuant to a statute or Executive order; and

(II) allocates a substantial part of its annual budget to the administration of criminal justice; and

(B) includes Federal and State inspectors general offices.

(8) Criminal justice services

The term "criminal justice services" means services provided by the FBI to criminal justice agencies in response to a request for information about a particular individual or as an update to information previously provided for criminal justice purposes.

(9) Criterion offense

The term "criterion offense" means any felony or misdemeanor offense not included on the list of nonserious offenses published periodically by the FBI.

(10) Direct access

The term "direct access" means access to the National Identification Index by computer terminal or other automated means not requiring the assistance of or intervention by any other party or agency.

(11) Executive order

The term "Executive order" means an order of the President of the United States or the chief executive officer of a State that has the force of law and that is promulgated in accordance with applicable law.

(12) FBI

The term "FBI" means the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

(13) Interstate Identification System [1]

The term "Interstate Identification Index System" or "III System"—

(A) means the cooperative Federal-State system for the exchange of criminal history records; and

(B) includes the National Identification Index, the National Fingerprint File and, to the extent of their participation in such system, the criminal history record repositories of the States and the FBI.

(14) National Fingerprint File

The term "National Fingerprint File" means a database of fingerprints, or other uniquely personal identifying information, relating to an arrested or charged individual maintained by the FBI to provide positive identification of record subjects indexed in the III System.

(15) National Identification Index

The term "National Identification Index" means an index maintained by the FBI consisting of names, identifying numbers, and other descriptive information relating to record subjects about whom there are criminal history records in the III System.

(16) National indices

The term "National indices" means the National Identification Index and the National Fingerprint File.

(17) Nonparty State

The term "Nonparty State" means a State that has not ratified this Compact.

(18) Noncriminal justice purposes

The term "noncriminal justice purposes" means uses of criminal history records for purposes authorized by Federal or State law other than purposes relating to criminal justice activities, including employment suitability, licensing determinations, immigration and naturalization matters, and national security clearances.

(19) Party State

The term "Party State" means a State that has ratified this Compact.

(20) Positive identification

The term "positive identification" means a determination, based upon a comparison of fingerprints or other equally reliable biometric identification techniques, that the subject of a record search is the same person as the subject of a criminal history record or records indexed in the III System. Identifications based solely upon a comparison of subjects' names or other nonunique identification characteristics or numbers, or combinations thereof, shall not constitute positive identification.

(21) Sealed record information

The term "sealed record information" means—

(A) with respect to adults, that portion of a record that is—

(i) not available for criminal justice uses;

(ii) not supported by fingerprints or other accepted means of positive identification; or

(iii) subject to restrictions on dissemination for noncriminal justice purposes pursuant to a court order related to a particular subject or pursuant to a Federal or State statute that requires action on a sealing petition filed by a particular record subject; and

(B) with respect to juveniles, whatever each State determines is a sealed record under its own law and procedure.

(22) State

The term "State" means any State, territory, or possession of the United States, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

ARTICLE II—PURPOSES

The purposes of this Compact are to—

(1) provide a legal framework for the establishment of a cooperative Federal-State system for the interstate and Federal-State exchange of criminal history records for noncriminal justice uses;

(2) require the FBI to permit use of the National Identification Index and the National Fingerprint File by each Party State, and to provide, in a timely fashion, Federal and State criminal history records to requesting States, in accordance with the terms of this Compact and with rules, procedures, and standards established by the Council under Article VI;

(3) require Party States to provide information and records for the National Identification Index and the National Fingerprint File and to provide criminal history records, in a timely fashion, to criminal history record repositories of other States and the Federal Government for noncriminal justice purposes, in accordance with the terms of this Compact and with rules, procedures, and standards established by the Council under Article VI;

(4) provide for the establishment of a Council to monitor III System operations and to prescribe system rules and procedures for the effective and proper operation of the III System for

noncriminal justice purposes; and

(5) require the FBI and each Party State to adhere to III System standards concerning record dissemination and use, response times, system security, data quality, and other duly established standards, including those that enhance the accuracy and privacy of such records.

ARTICLE III—RESPONSIBILITIES OF COMPACT PARTIES

(a) FBI responsibilities

The Director of the FBI shall—

(1) appoint an FBI Compact officer who shall—

(A) administer this Compact within the Department of Justice and among Federal agencies and other agencies and organizations that submit search requests to the FBI pursuant to Article V(c);

(B) ensure that Compact provisions and rules, procedures, and standards prescribed by the Council under Article VI are complied with by the Department of Justice and the Federal agencies and other agencies and organizations referred to in Article III(1)(A); and

(C) regulate the use of records received by means of the III System from Party States when such records are supplied by the FBI directly to other Federal agencies;

(2) provide to Federal agencies and to State criminal history record repositories, criminal history records maintained in its database for the noncriminal justice purposes described in Article IV, including—

(A) information from Nonparty States; and

(B) information from Party States that is available from the FBI through the III System, but is not available from the Party State through the III System;

(3) provide a telecommunications network and maintain centralized facilities for the exchange of criminal history records for both criminal justice purposes and the noncriminal justice purposes described in Article IV, and ensure that the exchange of such records for criminal justice purposes has priority over exchange for noncriminal justice purposes; and

(4) modify or enter into user agreements with Nonparty State criminal history record repositories to require them to establish record request procedures conforming to those prescribed in Article V.

(b) State responsibilities

Each Party State shall—

(1) appoint a Compact officer who shall—

(A) administer this Compact within that State;

(B) ensure that Compact provisions and rules, procedures, and standards established by the Council under Article VI are complied with in the State; and

(C) regulate the in-State use of records received by means of the III System from the FBI or from other Party States;

(2) establish and maintain a criminal history record repository, which shall provide—

(A) information and records for the National Identification Index and the National Fingerprint File; and

(B) the State's III System-indexed criminal history records for noncriminal justice purposes described in Article IV;

(3) participate in the National Fingerprint File; and

(4) provide and maintain telecommunications links and related equipment necessary to support the services set forth in this Compact.

(c) Compliance with III System standards

In carrying out their responsibilities under this Compact, the FBI and each Party State shall comply with III System rules, procedures, and standards duly established by the Council concerning record dissemination and use, response times, data quality, system security, accuracy, privacy protection, and other aspects of III System operation.

(d) Maintenance of record services

(1) Use of the III System for noncriminal justice purposes authorized in this Compact shall be managed so as not to diminish the level of services provided in support of criminal justice purposes.

(2) Administration of Compact provisions shall not reduce the level of service available to authorized noncriminal justice users on the effective date of this Compact.

ARTICLE IV—AUTHORIZED RECORD DISCLOSURES

(a) State criminal history record repositories

To the extent authorized by section 552a of title 5, United States Code (commonly known as the "Privacy Act of 1974"), the FBI shall provide on request criminal history records (excluding sealed records) to State criminal history record repositories for noncriminal justice purposes allowed by Federal statute, Federal Executive order, or a State statute that has been approved by the Attorney General and that authorizes national indices checks.

(b) Criminal justice agencies and other governmental or nongovernmental agencies

The FBI, to the extent authorized by section 552a of title 5, United States Code (commonly known as the "Privacy Act of 1974"), and State criminal history record repositories shall provide criminal history records (excluding sealed records) to criminal justice agencies and other governmental or nongovernmental agencies for noncriminal justice purposes allowed by Federal statute, Federal Executive order, or a State statute that has been approved by the Attorney General, that authorizes national indices checks.

(c) Procedures

Any record obtained under this Compact may be used only for the official purposes for which the record was requested. Each Compact officer shall establish procedures, consistent with this Compact, and with rules, procedures, and standards established by the Council under Article VI, which procedures shall protect the accuracy and privacy of the records, and shall—

(1) ensure that records obtained under this Compact are used only by authorized officials for authorized purposes;

(2) require that subsequent record checks are requested to obtain current information whenever a new need arises; and

(3) ensure that record entries that may not legally be used for a particular noncriminal justice purpose are deleted from the response and, if no information authorized for release remains, an appropriate "no record" response is communicated to the requesting official.

ARTICLE V—RECORD REQUEST PROCEDURES

(a) Positive identification

Subject fingerprints or other approved forms of positive identification shall be submitted with all requests for criminal history record checks for noncriminal justice purposes.

(b) Submission of State requests

Each request for a criminal history record check utilizing the national indices made under any approved State statute shall be submitted through that State's criminal history record repository. A

State criminal history record repository shall process an interstate request for noncriminal justice purposes through the national indices only if such request is transmitted through another State criminal history record repository or the FBI.

(c) Submission of Federal requests

Each request for criminal history record checks utilizing the national indices made under Federal authority shall be submitted through the FBI or, if the State criminal history record repository consents to process fingerprint submissions, through the criminal history record repository in the State in which such request originated. Direct access to the National Identification Index by entities other than the FBI and State criminal history records repositories shall not be permitted for noncriminal justice purposes.

(d) Fees

A State criminal history record repository or the FBI—

(1) may charge a fee, in accordance with applicable law, for handling a request involving fingerprint processing for noncriminal justice purposes; and

(2) may not charge a fee for providing criminal history records in response to an electronic request for a record that does not involve a request to process fingerprints.

(e) Additional search

(1) If a State criminal history record repository cannot positively identify the subject of a record request made for noncriminal justice purposes, the request, together with fingerprints or other approved identifying information, shall be forwarded to the FBI for a search of the national indices.

(2) If, with respect to a request forwarded by a State criminal history record repository under paragraph (1), the FBI positively identifies the subject as having a III System-indexed record or records—

(A) the FBI shall so advise the State criminal history record repository; and

(B) the State criminal history record repository shall be entitled to obtain the additional criminal history record information from the FBI or other State criminal history record repositories.

ARTICLE VI—ESTABLISHMENT OF COMPACT COUNCIL

(a) Establishment

(1) In general

There is established a council to be known as the "Compact Council", which shall have the authority to promulgate rules and procedures governing the use of the III System for noncriminal justice purposes, not to conflict with FBI administration of the III System for criminal justice purposes.

(2) Organization

The Council shall—

(A) continue in existence as long as this Compact remains in effect;

(B) be located, for administrative purposes, within the FBI; and

(C) be organized and hold its first meeting as soon as practicable after the effective date of this Compact.

(b) Membership

The Council shall be composed of 15 members, each of whom shall be appointed by the Attorney General, as follows:

(1) Nine members, each of whom shall serve a 2-year term, who shall be selected from among the Compact officers of Party States based on the recommendation of the Compact officers of all

Party States, except that, in the absence of the requisite number of Compact officers available to serve, the chief administrators of the criminal history record repositories of Nonparty States shall be eligible to serve on an interim basis.

(2) Two at-large members, nominated by the Director of the FBI, each of whom shall serve a 3-year term, of whom—

(A) 1 shall be a representative of the criminal justice agencies of the Federal Government and may not be an employee of the FBI; and

(B) 1 shall be a representative of the noncriminal justice agencies of the Federal Government.

(3) Two at-large members, nominated by the Chairman of the Council, once the Chairman is elected pursuant to Article VI(c), each of whom shall serve a 3-year term, of whom—

(A) 1 shall be a representative of State or local criminal justice agencies; and

(B) 1 shall be a representative of State or local noncriminal justice agencies.

(4) One member, who shall serve a 3-year term, and who shall simultaneously be a member of the FBI's advisory policy board on criminal justice information services, nominated by the membership of that policy board.

(5) One member, nominated by the Director of the FBI, who shall serve a 3-year term, and who shall be an employee of the FBI.

(c) Chairman and Vice Chairman

(1) In general

From its membership, the Council shall elect a Chairman and a Vice Chairman of the Council, respectively. Both the Chairman and Vice Chairman of the Council—

(A) shall be a Compact officer, unless there is no Compact officer on the Council who is willing to serve, in which case the Chairman may be an at-large member; and

(B) shall serve a 2-year term and may be reelected to only 1 additional 2-year term.

(2) Duties of Vice Chairman

The Vice Chairman of the Council shall serve as the Chairman of the Council in the absence of the Chairman.

(d) Meetings

(1) In general

The Council shall meet at least once each year at the call of the Chairman. Each meeting of the Council shall be open to the public. The Council shall provide prior public notice in the Federal Register of each meeting of the Council, including the matters to be addressed at such meeting.

(2) Quorum

A majority of the Council or any committee of the Council shall constitute a quorum of the Council or of such committee, respectively, for the conduct of business. A lesser number may meet to hold hearings, take testimony, or conduct any business not requiring a vote.

(e) Rules, procedures, and standards

The Council shall make available for public inspection and copying at the Council office within the FBI, and shall publish in the Federal Register, any rules, procedures, or standards established by the Council.

(f) Assistance from FBI

The Council may request from the FBI such reports, studies, statistics, or other information or materials as the Council determines to be necessary to enable the Council to perform its duties under this Compact. The FBI, to the extent authorized by law, may provide such assistance or information upon such a request.

(g) Committees

The Chairman may establish committees as necessary to carry out this Compact and may prescribe their membership, responsibilities, and duration.

ARTICLE VII—RATIFICATION OF COMPACT

This Compact shall take effect upon being entered into by 2 or more States as between those States and the Federal Government. Upon subsequent entering into this Compact by additional States, it shall become effective among those States and the Federal Government and each Party State that has previously ratified it. When ratified, this Compact shall have the full force and effect of law within the ratifying jurisdictions. The form of ratification shall be in accordance with the laws of the executing State.

ARTICLE VIII—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

(a) Relation of Compact to certain FBI activities

Administration of this Compact shall not interfere with the management and control of the Director of the FBI over the FBI's collection and dissemination of criminal history records and the advisory function of the FBI's advisory policy board chartered under the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.) for all purposes other than noncriminal justice.

(b) No authority for nonappropriated expenditures

Nothing in this Compact shall require the FBI to obligate or expend funds beyond those appropriated to the FBI.

(c) Relating to Public Law 92–544

Nothing in this Compact shall diminish or lessen the obligations, responsibilities, and authorities of any State, whether a Party State or a Nonparty State, or of any criminal history record repository or other subdivision or component thereof, under the Departments of State, Justice, and Commerce, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1973 (Public Law 92–544), or regulations and guidelines promulgated thereunder, including the rules and procedures promulgated by the Council under Article VI(a), regarding the use and dissemination of criminal history records and information.

ARTICLE IX—RENUNCIATION

(a) In general

This Compact shall bind each Party State until renounced by the Party State.

(b) Effect

Any renunciation of this Compact by a Party State shall—

(1) be effected in the same manner by which the Party State ratified this Compact; and

(2) become effective 180 days after written notice of renunciation is provided by the Party State to each other Party State and to the Federal Government.

ARTICLE X—SEVERABILITY

The provisions of this Compact shall be severable, and if any phrase, clause, sentence, or provision of this Compact is declared to be contrary to the constitution of any participating State, or to the Constitution of the United States, or the applicability thereof to any government, agency,

person, or circumstance is held invalid, the validity of the remainder of this Compact and the applicability thereof to any government, agency, person, or circumstance shall not be affected thereby. If a portion of this Compact is held contrary to the constitution of any Party State, all other portions of this Compact shall remain in full force and effect as to the remaining Party States and in full force and effect as to the Party State affected, as to all other provisions.

ARTICLE XI—ADJUDICATION OF DISPUTES

(a) In general

The Council shall—

(1) have initial authority to make determinations with respect to any dispute regarding—

(A) interpretation of this Compact;

(B) any rule or standard established by the Council pursuant to Article V; and

(C) any dispute or controversy between any parties to this Compact; and

(2) hold a hearing concerning any dispute described in paragraph (1) at a regularly scheduled meeting of the Council and only render a decision based upon a majority vote of the members of the Council. Such decision shall be published pursuant to the requirements of Article VI(e).

(b) Duties of FBI

The FBI shall exercise immediate and necessary action to preserve the integrity of the III System, maintain system policy and standards, protect the accuracy and privacy of records, and to prevent abuses, until the Council holds a hearing on such matters.

(c) Right of appeal

The FBI or a Party State may appeal any decision of the Council to the Attorney General, and thereafter may file suit in the appropriate district court of the United States, which shall have original jurisdiction of all cases or controversies arising under this Compact. Any suit arising under this Compact and initiated in a State court shall be removed to the appropriate district court of the United States in the manner provided by section 1446 of title 28, United States Code, or other statutory authority.

(Pub. L. 105–251, title II, §217, Oct. 9, 1998, 112 Stat. 1876.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Privacy Act of 1974, referred to in Article IV(a), (b), is Pub. L. 93–579, Dec. 31, 1974, 88 Stat. 1896, as amended, which enacted section 552a of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and provisions set out as notes under section 552a of Title 5. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 552a of Title 5 and Tables.

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in Article VIII(a), is Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

The Departments of State, Justice, and Commerce, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1973, referred to in Article VIII(c), is Pub. L. 92–544, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1109, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "Interstate Identification Index System".

CHAPTER 140A—JENNIFER'S LAW

Sec.

§14661. Program authorized

The Attorney General is authorized to provide grant awards to States to enable States to improve the reporting of unidentified and missing persons.

(Pub. L. 106–177, title II, §202, Mar. 10, 2000, 114 Stat. 36.)

SHORT TITLE OF 2000 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 106–468, §1, Nov. 9, 2000, 114 Stat. 2027, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 14665 of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 14665 of this title] may be cited as 'Kristen's Act'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 106–177, title II, §201, Mar. 10, 2000, 114 Stat. 36, provided that: "This title [enacting this chapter] may be cited as 'Jennifer's Law'."

§14662. Eligibility

(a) Application

To be eligible to receive a grant award under this chapter, a State shall submit an application at such time and in such form as the Attorney General may reasonably require.

(b) Contents

Each such application shall include assurances that the State shall, to the greatest extent possible—

(1) report to the National Crime Information Center and when possible, to law enforcement authorities throughout the State regarding every deceased unidentified person, regardless of age, found in the State's jurisdiction;

(2) enter a complete profile of such unidentified person in compliance with the guidelines established by the Department of Justice for the National Crime Information Center Missing and Unidentified Persons File, including dental records, DNA records, x-rays, and fingerprints, if available;

(3) enter the National Crime Information Center number or other appropriate number assigned to the unidentified person on the death certificate of each such unidentified person; and

(4) retain all such records pertaining to unidentified persons until a person is identified.

(Pub. L. 106–177, title II, §203, Mar. 10, 2000, 114 Stat. 36.)

§14663. Uses of funds

A State that receives a grant award under this chapter may use such funds received to establish or expand programs developed to improve the reporting of unidentified persons in accordance with the assurances provided in the application submitted pursuant to section 14662(b) of this title.

(Pub. L. 106–177, title II, §204, Mar. 10, 2000, 114 Stat. 36.)

§14664. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this chapter $2,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2000, 2001, and 2002.

(Pub. L. 106–177, title II, §205, Mar. 10, 2000, 114 Stat. 37.)

§14665. Grants for the assistance of organizations to find missing adults

(a) In general

The Attorney General may make grants to public agencies or nonprofit private organizations, or combinations thereof, for programs—

(1) to assist law enforcement and families in locating missing adults;

(2) to maintain a national, interconnected database for the purpose of tracking missing adults who are determined by law enforcement to be endangered due to age, diminished mental capacity, or the circumstances of disappearance, when foul play is suspected or circumstances are unknown;

(3) to maintain statistical information of adults reported as missing;

(4) to provide informational resources and referrals to families of missing adults;

(5) to assist in public notification and victim advocacy related to missing adults; and

(6) to establish and maintain a national clearinghouse for missing adults.

(b) Regulations

The Attorney General may make such rules and regulations as may be necessary to carry out this Act.

(Pub. L. 106–468, §2, Nov. 9, 2000, 114 Stat. 2027.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 106–468, Nov. 9, 2000, 114 Stat. 2027, known as Kristen's Act, which enacted this section and provisions set out as notes under this section and section 14661 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of Kristen's Act, and not as part of Jennifer's Law which comprises this chapter.

AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS

Pub. L. 106–468, §3, Nov. 9, 2000, 114 Stat. 2028, provided that: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this Act [enacting this section and provisions set out as a note under section 14661 of this title] $1,000,000 each year for fiscal years 2001 through 2004."

CHAPTER 141—COMMERCIAL SPACE OPPORTUNITIES AND TRANSPORTATION SERVICES

§14701. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 105–303, §2, Oct. 28, 1998, 112 Stat. 2843, related to definitions. See section 50101 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

SUBCHAPTER I—PROMOTION OF COMMERCIAL SPACE OPPORTUNITIES

§14711. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 105–303, title I, §101, Oct. 28, 1998, 112 Stat. 2845, related to commercialization of Space Station. Subsec. (a) was repealed and reenacted as subsec. (a) of section 50111 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs. Subsec. (b), which required the Administrator to deliver certain studies and reports to Congress, the last of which was required before budget request for fiscal year 2000, was repealed as obsolete.

§14712. Repealed or Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 105–303, title I, §104, Oct. 28, 1998, 112 Stat. 2852, which related to promotion of United States Global Positioning System standards, was repealed in part and transferred in part. Subsec. (b) was repealed and reenacted as section 50112 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (a) was transferred and is set out as a note under section 50112 of Title 51.

§§14713 to 14715. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 14713, Pub. L. 105–303, title I, §105, Oct. 28, 1998, 112 Stat. 2852, related to acquisition of space science data. See section 50113 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 14714, Pub. L. 105–303, title I, §106, Oct. 28, 1998, 112 Stat. 2853, related to administration of commercial space centers. See section 50114 of Title 51.

Section 14715, Pub. L. 105–303, title I, §107, Oct. 28, 1998, 112 Stat. 2853, related to sources of Earth Science data. Subsecs. (a), (b), (d), and (e) were repealed and reenacted as subsecs. (a), (b), (c) and (d) of section 50115 of Title 51. Subsec (c), which required the Administrator to submit certain study results to Congress within six months after Oct. 28, 1998, was repealed as obsolete.

SUBCHAPTER II—FEDERAL ACQUISITION OF SPACE TRANSPORTATION SERVICES

§§14731 to 14735. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 14731, Pub. L. 105–303, title II, §201, Oct. 28, 1998, 112 Stat. 2854, related to requirement to procure commercial space transportation services. See section 50131 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 14732, Pub. L. 105–303, title II, §202, Oct. 28, 1998, 112 Stat. 2855, related to acquisition of commercial space transportation services. See section 50132 of Title 51.

Section 14733, Pub. L. 105–303, title II, §204, Oct. 28, 1998, 112 Stat. 2856, related to potential privatization of the Space Shuttle program. Subsec. (a) was repealed and reenacted as section 50133 of Title 51. Subsec. (b), requiring feasibility study, and subsec. (c), requiring reports to congressional committees within 60 days after Oct. 28, 1998, were repealed as obsolete.

Section 14734, Pub. L. 105–303, title II, §205, Oct. 28, 1998, 112 Stat. 2857; Pub. L. 106–65, div. A, title X, §1067(21), Oct. 5, 1999, 113 Stat. 775, related to use of excess intercontinental ballistic missiles. See section 50134 of Title 51.

Section 14735, Pub. L. 105–303, title II, §206, Oct. 28, 1998, 112 Stat. 2857, required report to certain congressional committees regarding national launch capability no later than 180 days after Oct. 28, 1998.

SUBCHAPTER III—COMMERCIAL REUSABLE IN-SPACE TRANSPORTATION

§14751. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 107–248, title IX, §902, Oct. 23, 2002, 116 Stat. 1573, which related to congressional findings, was transferred and is set out as a note under section 50301 of Title 51, National and Commercial

Space Programs.

§§14752, 14753. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 14752, Pub. L. 107–248, title IX, §903, Oct. 23, 2002, 116 Stat. 1574, related to loan guarantees for production of commercial reusable in-space transportation. See section 50302 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 14753, Pub. L. 107–248, title IX, §904, Oct. 23, 2002, 116 Stat. 1576, contained definitions. See section 50301 of Title 51.

CHAPTER 142—POISON CONTROL CENTER ENHANCEMENT AND AWARENESS

§§14801 to 14805. Repealed. Pub. L. 108–194, §4, Dec. 19, 2003, 117 Stat. 2891

Section 14801, Pub. L. 106–174, §2, Feb. 25, 2000, 114 Stat. 18, related to congressional findings regarding poison control centers. See provisions set out as a note under section 300d–71 of this title.

Section 14802, Pub. L. 106–174, §3, Feb. 25, 2000, 114 Stat. 18, defined "Secretary".

Section 14803, Pub. L. 106–174, §4, Feb. 25, 2000, 114 Stat. 18, established a national toll-free number to be used to access regional poison control centers. See section 300d–71 of this title.

Section 14804, Pub. L. 106–174, §5, Feb. 25, 2000, 114 Stat. 19, established a nationwide media campaign to educate the public and health care providers about poison prevention and the availability of poison control resources in local communities. See section 300d–72 of this title.

Section 14805, Pub. L. 106–174, §6, Feb. 25, 2000, 114 Stat. 19, related to the award of grants to certified regional poison control centers. See section 300d–73 of this title.

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 106–174, §1, Feb. 25, 2000, 114 Stat. 18, which provided that Pub. L. 106–174, enacting this chapter, could be cited as the "Poison Control Center Enhancement and Awareness Act", was repealed by Pub. L. 108–194, §4, Dec. 19, 2003, 117 Stat. 2891.

CHAPTER 143—INTERCOUNTRY ADOPTIONS

Sec.

§14901. Findings and purposes

(a) Findings

Congress recognizes—

(1) the international character of the Convention on Protection of Children and Co-operation in Respect of Intercountry Adoption (done at The Hague on May 29, 1993); and

(2) the need for uniform interpretation and implementation of the Convention in the United States and abroad,

and therefore finds that enactment of a Federal law governing adoptions and prospective adoptions subject to the Convention involving United States residents is essential.

(b) Purposes

The purposes of this chapter are—

(1) to provide for implementation by the United States of the Convention;

(2) to protect the rights of, and prevent abuses against, children, birth families, and adoptive parents involved in adoptions (or prospective adoptions) subject to the Convention, and to ensure that such adoptions are in the children's best interests; and

(3) to improve the ability of the Federal Government to assist United States citizens seeking to adopt children from abroad and residents of other countries party to the Convention seeking to adopt children from the United States.

(Pub. L. 106–279, §2, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATES; TRANSITION RULE

Pub. L. 106–279, title V, §505, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 844, provided that:

"(a) EFFECTIVE DATES.—

"(1) PROVISIONS EFFECTIVE UPON ENACTMENT.—Sections 2, 3, 101 through 103, 202 through 205, 401(a), 403, 503, and 505(a) [enacting this section and sections 14902, 14911 to 14913, 14922 to 14924, 14941(a), 14943, and 14953 of this title and amending section 622 of this title] shall take effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 6, 2000].

"(2) PROVISIONS EFFECTIVE UPON THE ENTRY INTO FORCE OF THE CONVENTION .—Subject to subsection (b), the provisions of this Act not specified in paragraph (1) [enacting sections 14914, 14921, 14931, 14932, 14941(b), (c), 14942, 14944, 14951, 14952, and 14954 of this title, amending sections 1101 and 1154 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section] shall take effect upon the entry into force of the Convention [Convention on Protection of Children and Co-operation in Respect of Intercountry Adoption] for the United States pursuant to Article 46(2)(a) of the Convention [The Convention entered into force for the United States on Apr. 1, 2008.].

"(b) TRANSITION RULE.—The Convention and this Act [see Short Title note below] shall not apply—

"(1) in the case of a child immigrating to the United States, if the application for advance processing of an orphan petition or petition to classify an orphan as an immediate relative for the child is filed before the effective date described in subsection (a)(2); or

"(2) in the case of a child emigrating from the United States, if the prospective adoptive parents of the child initiated the adoption process in their country of residence with the filing of an appropriate application before the effective date described in subsection (a)(2)."

SHORT TITLE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 112–276, §1, Jan. 14, 2013, 126 Stat. 2466, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 14925 of this title, amending sections 14922 and 14943 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 14925 of this title] may be cited as the 'Intercountry Adoption Universal Accreditation Act of 2012'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 106–279, §1(a), Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter and amending section 622 of this title and sections 1101 and 1154 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality] may be cited as the 'Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000'."

§14902. Definitions

As used in this chapter:

(1) Accredited agency

The term "accredited agency" means an agency accredited under subchapter II to provide adoption services in the United States in cases subject to the Convention.

(2) Accrediting entity

The term "accrediting entity" means an entity designated under section 14922(a) of this title to accredit agencies and approve persons under subchapter II.

(3) Adoption service

The term "adoption service" means—

(A) identifying a child for adoption and arranging an adoption;

(B) securing necessary consent to termination of parental rights and to adoption;

(C) performing a background study on a child or a home study on a prospective adoptive parent, and reporting on such a study;

(D) making determinations of the best interests of a child and the appropriateness of adoptive placement for the child;

(E) post-placement monitoring of a case until final adoption; and

(F) where made necessary by disruption before final adoption, assuming custody and providing child care or any other social service pending an alternative placement.

The term "providing", with respect to an adoption service, includes facilitating the provision of the service.

(4) Agency

The term "agency" means any person other than an individual.

(5) Approved person

The term "approved person" means a person approved under subchapter II to provide adoption services in the United States in cases subject to the Convention.

(6) Attorney General

Except as used in section 14944 of this title, the term "Attorney General" means the Attorney General, acting through the Commissioner of Immigration and Naturalization.

(7) Central authority

The term "central authority" means the entity designated as such by any Convention country

under Article 6(1) of the Convention.

(8) Central authority function

The term "central authority function" means any duty required to be carried out by a central authority under the Convention.

(9) Convention

The term "Convention" means the Convention on Protection of Children and Co-operation in Respect of Intercountry Adoption, done at The Hague on May 29, 1993.

(10) Convention adoption

The term "Convention adoption" means an adoption of a child resident in a foreign country party to the Convention by a United States citizen, or an adoption of a child resident in the United States by an individual residing in another Convention country.

(11) Convention record

The term "Convention record" means any item, collection, or grouping of information contained in an electronic or physical document, an electronic collection of data, a photograph, an audio or video tape, or any other information storage medium of any type whatever that contains information about a specific past, current, or prospective Convention adoption (regardless of whether the adoption was made final) that has been preserved in accordance with section 14941(a) of this title by the Secretary of State or the Attorney General.

(12) Convention country

The term "Convention country" means a country party to the Convention.

(13) Other Convention country

The term "other Convention country" means a Convention country other than the United States.

(14) Person

The term "person" shall have the meaning provided in section 1 of title 1 and shall not include any agency of government or tribal government entity.

(15) Person with an ownership or control interest

The term "person with an ownership or control interest" has the meaning given such term in section 1320a–3(a)(3) of this title.

(16) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of State.

(17) State

The term "State" means the 50 States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, Guam, and the Virgin Islands.

(Pub. L. 106–279, §3, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 826.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in introductory provisions, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, known as the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

Subchapter II, referred to in pars. (1), (2), and (5), was in the original "title II", meaning title II of Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 830, which enacted subchapter II of this chapter and amended section 622 of this title. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 6, 2000, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(1), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

ABOLITION OF IMMIGRATION AND NATURALIZATION SERVICE AND TRANSFER OF

FUNCTIONS

For abolition of Immigration and Naturalization Service, transfer of functions, and treatment of related references, see note set out under section 1551 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

SUBCHAPTER I—UNITED STATES CENTRAL AUTHORITY

§14911. Designation of central authority

(a) In general

For purposes of the Convention and this chapter—

(1) the Department of State shall serve as the central authority of the United States; and

(2) the Secretary shall serve as the head of the central authority of the United States.

(b) Performance of central authority functions

(1) Except as otherwise provided in this chapter, the Secretary shall be responsible for the performance of all central authority functions for the United States under the Convention and this chapter.

(2) All personnel of the Department of State performing core central authority functions in a professional capacity in the Office of Children's Issues shall have a strong background in consular affairs, personal experience in international adoptions, or professional experience in international adoptions or child services.

(c) Authority to issue regulations

Except as otherwise provided in this chapter, the Secretary may prescribe such regulations as may be necessary to carry out central authority functions on behalf of the United States.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title I, §101, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 827.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b)(1), and (c), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 6, 2000, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(1), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

§14912. Responsibilities of the Secretary of State

(a) Liaison responsibilities

The Secretary shall have responsibility for—

(1) liaison with the central authorities of other Convention countries; and

(2) the coordination of activities under the Convention by persons subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

(b) Information exchange

The Secretary shall be responsible for—

(1) providing the central authorities of other Convention countries with information concerning—

(A) accredited agencies and approved persons, agencies and persons whose accreditation or approval has been suspended or canceled, and agencies and persons who have been temporarily or permanently debarred from accreditation or approval;

(B) Federal and State laws relevant to implementing the Convention; and
(C) any other matters necessary and appropriate for implementation of the Convention;

(2) not later than the date of the entry into force of the Convention for the United States (pursuant to Article 46(2)(a) of the Convention) and at least once during each subsequent calendar year, providing to the central authority of all other Convention countries a notice requesting the central authority of each such country to specify any requirements of such country regarding adoption, including restrictions on the eligibility of persons to adopt, with respect to which information on the prospective adoptive parent or parents in the United States would be relevant;
(3) making responses to notices under paragraph (2) available to—
(A) accredited agencies and approved persons; and
(B) other persons or entities performing home studies under section 14921(b)(1) of this title;

(4) ensuring the provision of a background report (home study) on prospective adoptive parent or parents (pursuant to the requirements of section 14923(b)(1)(A)(ii) of this title), through the central authority of each child's country of origin, to the court having jurisdiction over the adoption (or, in the case of a child emigrating to the United States for the purpose of adoption, to the competent authority in the child's country of origin with responsibility for approving the child's emigration) in adequate time to be considered prior to the granting of such adoption or approval;
(5) providing Federal agencies, State courts, and accredited agencies and approved persons with an identification of Convention countries and persons authorized to perform functions under the Convention in each such country; and
(6) facilitating the transmittal of other appropriate information to, and among, central authorities, Federal and State agencies (including State courts), and accredited agencies and approved persons.

(c) Accreditation and approval responsibilities

The Secretary shall carry out the functions prescribed by the Convention with respect to the accreditation of agencies and the approval of persons to provide adoption services in the United States in cases subject to the Convention as provided in subchapter II. Such functions may not be delegated to any other Federal agency.

(d) Additional responsibilities

The Secretary—
(1) shall monitor individual Convention adoption cases involving United States citizens; and
(2) may facilitate interactions between such citizens and officials of other Convention countries on matters relating to the Convention in any case in which an accredited agency or approved person is unwilling or unable to provide such facilitation.

(e) Establishment of registry

The Secretary and the Attorney General shall jointly establish a case registry of all adoptions involving immigration of children into the United States and emigration of children from the United States, regardless of whether the adoption occurs under the Convention. Such registry shall permit tracking of pending cases and retrieval of information on both pending and closed cases.

(f) Methods of performing responsibilities

The Secretary may—
(1) authorize public or private entities to perform appropriate central authority functions for which the Secretary is responsible, pursuant to regulations or under agreements published in the Federal Register; and
(2) carry out central authority functions through grants to, or contracts with, any individual or public or private entity, except as may be otherwise specifically provided in this chapter.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title I, §102, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 828.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subchapter II, referred to in subsec. (c), was in the original "title II", meaning title II of Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 830, which enacted subchapter II of this chapter and amended section 622 of this title. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (f)(2), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, known as the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 6, 2000, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(1), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

§14913. Responsibilities of the Attorney General

In addition to such other responsibilities as are specifically conferred upon the Attorney General by this chapter, the central authority functions specified in Article 14 of the Convention (relating to the filing of applications by prospective adoptive parents to the central authority of their country of residence) shall be performed by the Attorney General.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title I, §103, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 829.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, known as the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 6, 2000, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(1), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

§14914. Annual report on intercountry adoptions

(a) Reports required

Beginning 1 year after the date of the entry into force of the Convention for the United States and each year thereafter, the Secretary, in consultation with the Attorney General and other appropriate agencies, shall submit a report describing the activities of the central authority of the United States under this chapter during the preceding year to the Committee on International Relations, the Committee on Ways and Means, and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations, the Committee on Finance, and the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate.

(b) Report elements

Each report under subsection (a) shall set forth with respect to the year concerned, the following:

(1) The number of intercountry adoptions involving immigration to the United States, regardless of whether the adoption occurred under the Convention, including the country from which each child emigrated, the State to which each child immigrated, and the country in which the adoption was finalized.

(2) The number of intercountry adoptions involving emigration from the United States, regardless of whether the adoption occurred under the Convention, including the country to which each child immigrated and the State from which each child emigrated.

(3) The number of Convention placements for adoption in the United States that were disrupted, including the country from which the child emigrated, the age of the child, the date of the placement for adoption, the reasons for the disruption, the resolution of the disruption, the agencies that handled the placement for adoption, and the plans for the child, and in addition, any

information regarding disruption or dissolution of adoptions of children from other countries received pursuant to section 622(b)(12) of this title.

(4) The average time required for completion of a Convention adoption, set forth by country from which the child emigrated.

(5) The current list of agencies accredited and persons approved under this chapter to provide adoption services.

(6) The names of the agencies and persons temporarily or permanently debarred under this chapter, and the reasons for the debarment.

(7) The range of adoption fees charged in connection with Convention adoptions involving immigration to the United States and the median of such fees set forth by the country of origin.

(8) The range of fees charged for accreditation of agencies and the approval of persons in the United States engaged in providing adoption services under the Convention.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title I, §104, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 829; Pub. L. 109–288, §6(f)(9), Sept. 28, 2006, 120 Stat. 1248.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b)(5), (6), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, known as the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 109–288 substituted "622(b)(12)" for "622(b)(14)".

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 6, One Hundred Tenth Congress, Jan. 5, 2007.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 109–288 effective Oct. 1, 2006, and applicable to payments under parts B and E of subchapter IV of chapter 7 of this title for calendar quarters beginning on or after such date, without regard to whether implementing regulations have been promulgated, and with delay permitted if State legislation is required to meet additional requirements, see section 12(a), (b) of Pub. L. 109–288, set out as a note under section 621 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective upon entry into force for the United States of the Convention on Protection of Children and Co-operation in Respect of Intercountry Adoption, pursuant to Article 46(2)(a) of the Convention, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(2), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER II—PROVISIONS RELATING TO ACCREDITATION AND APPROVAL

§14921. Accreditation or approval required in order to provide adoption services in cases subject to the Convention

(a) In general

Except as otherwise provided in this subchapter, no person may offer or provide adoption services in connection with a Convention adoption in the United States unless that person—

(1) is accredited or approved in accordance with this subchapter; or

(2) is providing such services through or under the supervision and responsibility of an accredited agency or approved person.

(b) Exceptions

Subsection (a) shall not apply to the following:

(1) Background studies and home studies

The performance of a background study on a child or a home study on a prospective adoptive parent, or any report on any such study by a social work professional or organization who is not providing any other adoption service in the case, if the background or home study is approved by an accredited agency.

(2) Child welfare services

The provision of a child welfare service by a person who is not providing any other adoption service in the case.

(3) Legal services

The provision of legal services by a person who is not providing any adoption service in the case.

(4) Prospective adoptive parents acting on own behalf

The conduct of a prospective adoptive parent on his or her own behalf in the case, to the extent not prohibited by the law of the State in which the prospective adoptive parent resides.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title II, §201, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 830.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this title", meaning title II of Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 830, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective upon entry into force for the United States of the Convention on Protection of Children and Co-operation in Respect of Intercountry Adoption, pursuant to Article 46(2)(a) of the Convention, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(2), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

§14922. Process for accreditation and approval; role of accrediting entities

(a) Designation of accrediting entities

(1) In general

The Secretary shall enter into agreements with one or more qualified entities under which such entities will perform the duties described in subsection (b) in accordance with the Convention, this subchapter, and the regulations prescribed under section 14923 of this title, and upon entering into each such agreement shall designate the qualified entity as an accrediting entity.

(2) Qualified entities

In paragraph (1), the term "qualified entity" means—

(A) a nonprofit private entity that has expertise in developing and administering standards for entities providing child welfare services and that meets such other criteria as the Secretary may by regulation establish; or

(B) a public entity (other than a Federal entity), including an agency or instrumentality of State government having responsibility for licensing adoption agencies, that—

(i) has expertise in developing and administering standards for entities providing child welfare services;

(ii) accredits only agencies located in the State in which the public entity is located; and

(iii) meets such other criteria as the Secretary may by regulation establish.

(b) Duties of accrediting entities

The duties described in this subsection are the following:

(1) Accreditation and approval

Accreditation of agencies, and approval of persons, to provide adoption services in the United States in cases subject to the Convention.

(2) Oversight

Ongoing monitoring of the compliance of accredited agencies and approved persons with applicable requirements, including review of complaints against such agencies and persons in accordance with procedures established by the accrediting entity and approved by the Secretary.

(3) Enforcement

Taking of adverse actions (including requiring corrective action, imposing sanctions, and refusing to renew, suspending, or canceling accreditation or approval) for noncompliance with applicable requirements, and notifying the agency or person against whom adverse actions are taken of the deficiencies necessitating the adverse action.

(4) Data, records, and reports

Collection of data, maintenance of records, and reporting to the Secretary, the United States central authority, State courts, and other entities (including on persons and agencies granted or denied approval or accreditation), to the extent and in the manner that the Secretary requires.

(5) Report on use of Federal funding

Not later than 90 days after an accrediting entity receives Federal funding authorized by section 14943 of this title, the entity shall submit a report to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives that describes—

(A) the amount of such funding the entity received; and

(B) how such funding was, or will be, used by the entity.

(c) Remedies for adverse action by accrediting entity

(1) Correction of deficiency

An agency or person who is the subject of an adverse action by an accrediting entity may re-apply for accreditation or approval (or petition for termination of the adverse action) on demonstrating to the satisfaction of the accrediting entity that the deficiencies necessitating the adverse action have been corrected.

(2) No other administrative review

An adverse action by an accrediting entity shall not be subject to administrative review.

(3) Judicial review

An agency or person who is the subject of an adverse action by an accrediting entity may petition the United States district court in the judicial district in which the agency is located or the person resides to set aside the adverse action. The court shall review the adverse action in accordance with section 706 of title 5, and for purposes of such review the accrediting entity shall be considered an agency within the meaning of section 701 of such title.

(d) Fees

The amount of fees assessed by accrediting entities for the costs of accreditation shall be subject to approval by the Secretary. Such fees may not exceed the costs of accreditation. In reviewing the level of such fees, the Secretary shall consider the relative size of, the geographic location of, and the number of Convention adoption cases managed by the agencies or persons subject to accreditation or approval by the accrediting entity.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title II, §202, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 831; Pub. L. 112–276, §3(b), Jan. 14, 2013, 126 Stat. 2467.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), was in the original "this title", meaning title II of Pub. L.

106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 830, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 112–276 added par. (5).

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 6, 2000, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(1), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

§14923. Standards and procedures for providing accreditation or approval

(a) In general

(1) Promulgation of regulations

The Secretary, shall, by regulation, prescribe the standards and procedures to be used by accrediting entities for the accreditation of agencies and the approval of persons to provide adoption services in the United States in cases subject to the Convention.

(2) Consideration of views

In developing such regulations, the Secretary shall consider any standards or procedures developed or proposed by, and the views of, individuals and entities with interest and expertise in international adoptions and family social services, including public and private entities with experience in licensing and accrediting adoption agencies.

(3) Applicability of notice and comment rules

Subsections (b), (c), and (d) of section 553 of title 5 shall apply in the development and issuance of regulations under this section.

(b) Minimum requirements

(1) Accreditation

The standards prescribed under subsection (a) shall include the requirement that accreditation of an agency may not be provided or continued under this subchapter unless the agency meets the following requirements:

(A) Specific requirements

(i) The agency provides prospective adoptive parents of a child in a prospective Convention adoption a copy of the medical records of the child (which, to the fullest extent practicable, shall include an English-language translation of such records) on a date which is not later than the earlier of the date that is 2 weeks before: (I) the adoption; or (II) the date on which the prospective parents travel to a foreign country to complete all procedures in such country relating to the adoption.

(ii) The agency ensures that a thorough background report (home study) on the prospective adoptive parent or parents has been completed in accordance with the Convention and with applicable Federal and State requirements and transmitted to the Attorney General with respect to each Convention adoption. Each such report shall include a criminal background check and a full and complete statement of all facts relevant to the eligibility of the prospective adopting parent or parents to adopt a child under any requirements specified by the central authority of the child's country of origin under section 14912(b)(3) of this title, including, in the case of a child emigrating to the United States for the purpose of adoption, the requirements of the child's country of origin applicable to adoptions taking place in such country. For purposes of this clause, the term "background report (home study)" includes any supplemental statement submitted by the agency to the Attorney General for the purpose of providing information relevant to any requirements specified by the child's country of origin.

(iii) The agency provides prospective adoptive parents with a training program that includes

counseling and guidance for the purpose of promoting a successful intercountry adoption before such parents travel to adopt the child or the child is placed with such parents for adoption.

(iv) The agency employs personnel providing intercountry adoption services on a fee for service basis rather than on a contingent fee basis.

(v) The agency discloses fully its policies and practices, the disruption rates of its placements for intercountry adoption, and all fees charged by such agency for intercountry adoption.

(B) Capacity to provide adoption services

The agency has, directly or through arrangements with other persons, a sufficient number of appropriately trained and qualified personnel, sufficient financial resources, appropriate organizational structure, and appropriate procedures to enable the agency to provide, in accordance with this chapter, all adoption services in cases subject to the Convention.

(C) Use of social service professionals

The agency has established procedures designed to ensure that social service functions requiring the application of clinical skills and judgment are performed only by professionals with appropriate qualifications and credentials.

(D) Records, reports, and information matters

The agency is capable of—

(i) maintaining such records and making such reports as may be required by the Secretary, the United States central authority, and the accrediting entity that accredits the agency;

(ii) cooperating with reviews, inspections, and audits;

(iii) safeguarding sensitive individual information; and

(iv) complying with other requirements concerning information management necessary to ensure compliance with the Convention, this chapter, and any other applicable law.

(E) Liability insurance

The agency agrees to have in force adequate liability insurance for professional negligence and any other insurance that the Secretary considers appropriate.

(F) Compliance with applicable rules

The agency has established adequate measures to comply (and to ensure compliance of their agents and clients) with the Convention, this chapter, and any other applicable law.

(G) Nonprofit organization with state license to provide adoption services

The agency is a private nonprofit organization licensed to provide adoption services in at least one State.

(2) Approval

The standards prescribed under subsection (a) shall include the requirement that a person shall not be approved under this subchapter unless the person is a private for-profit entity that meets the requirements of subparagraphs (A) through (F) of paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(3) Renewal of accreditation or approval

The standards prescribed under subsection (a) shall provide that the accreditation of an agency or approval of a person under this subchapter shall be for a period of not less than 3 years and not more than 5 years, and may be renewed on a showing that the agency or person meets the requirements applicable to original accreditation or approval under this subchapter.

(c) Temporary registration of community based agencies

(1) One-year registration period for medium community based agencies

For a 1-year period after the entry into force of the Convention and notwithstanding subsection (b), the Secretary may provide, in regulations issued pursuant to subsection (a), that an agency may register with the Secretary and be accredited to provide adoption services in the United States

in cases subject to the Convention during such period if the agency has provided adoption services in fewer than 100 intercountry adoptions in the preceding calendar year and meets the criteria described in paragraph (3).

(2) Two-year registration period for small community-based agencies

For a 2-year period after the entry into force of the Convention and notwithstanding subsection (b), the Secretary may provide, in regulations issued pursuant to subsection (a), that an agency may register with the Secretary and be accredited to provide adoption services in the United States in cases subject to the Convention during such period if the agency has provided adoption services in fewer than 50 intercountry adoptions in the preceding calendar year and meets the criteria described in paragraph (3).

(3) Criteria for registration

Agencies registered under this subsection shall meet the following criteria:

(A) The agency is licensed in the State in which it is located and is a nonprofit agency.

(B) The agency has been providing adoption services in connection with intercountry adoptions for at least 3 years.

(C) The agency has demonstrated that it will be able to provide the United States Government with all information related to the elements described in section 14914(b) of this title and provides such information.

(D) The agency has initiated the process of becoming accredited under the provisions of this chapter and is actively taking steps to become an accredited agency.

(E) The agency has not been found to be involved in any improper conduct relating to intercountry adoptions.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title II, §203, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 832.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this title", meaning title II of Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 830, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b)(1)(B), (D)(iv), (F) and (c)(3)(D) was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, known as the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 6, 2000, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(1), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

§14924. Secretarial oversight of accreditation and approval

(a) Oversight of accrediting entities

The Secretary shall—

(1) monitor the performance by each accrediting entity of its duties under section 14922 of this title and its compliance with the requirements of the Convention, this chapter, other applicable laws, and implementing regulations under this chapter; and

(2) suspend or cancel the designation of an accrediting entity found to be substantially out of compliance with the Convention, this chapter, other applicable laws, or implementing regulations under this chapter.

(b) Suspension or cancellation of accreditation or approval

(1) Secretary's authority

The Secretary shall suspend or cancel the accreditation or approval granted by an accrediting entity to an agency or person pursuant to section 14922 of this title when the Secretary finds

that—

(A) the agency or person is substantially out of compliance with applicable requirements; and

(B) the accrediting entity has failed or refused, after consultation with the Secretary, to take appropriate enforcement action.

(2) Correction of deficiency

At any time when the Secretary is satisfied that the deficiencies on the basis of which an adverse action is taken under paragraph (1) have been corrected, the Secretary shall—

(A) notify the accrediting entity that the deficiencies have been corrected; and

(B)(i) in the case of a suspension, terminate the suspension; or

(ii) in the case of a cancellation, notify the agency or person that the agency or person may re-apply to the accrediting entity for accreditation or approval.

(c) Debarment

(1) Secretary's authority

On the initiative of the Secretary, or on request of an accrediting entity, the Secretary may temporarily or permanently debar an agency from accreditation or a person from approval under this subchapter, but only if—

(A) there is substantial evidence that the agency or person is out of compliance with applicable requirements; and

(B) there has been a pattern of serious, willful, or grossly negligent failures to comply or other aggravating circumstances indicating that continued accreditation or approval would not be in the best interests of the children and families concerned.

(2) Period of debarment

The Secretary's debarment order shall state whether the debarment is temporary or permanent. If the debarment is temporary, the Secretary shall specify a date, not earlier than 3 years after the date of the order, on or after which the agency or person may apply to the Secretary for withdrawal of the debarment.

(3) Effect of debarment

An accrediting entity may take into account the circumstances of the debarment of an agency or person that has been debarred pursuant to this subsection in considering any subsequent application of the agency or person, or of any other entity in which the agency or person has an ownership or control interest, for accreditation or approval under this subchapter.

(d) Judicial review

A person (other than a prospective adoptive parent), an agency, or an accrediting entity who is the subject of a final action of suspension, cancellation, or debarment by the Secretary under this subchapter may petition the United States District Court for the District of Columbia or the United States district court in the judicial district in which the person resides or the agency or accrediting entity is located to set aside the action. The court shall review the action in accordance with section 706 of title 5.

(e) Failure to ensure a full and complete home study

(1) In general

Willful, grossly negligent, or repeated failure to ensure the completion and transmission of a background report (home study) that fully complies with the requirements of section 14923(b)(1)(A)(ii) of this title shall constitute substantial noncompliance with applicable requirements.

(2) Regulations

Regulations promulgated under section 14923 of this title shall provide for—

(A) frequent and careful monitoring of compliance by agencies and approved persons with the requirements of section 14923(b)(A)(ii) [1] of this title; and

(B) consultation between the Secretary and the accrediting entity where an agency or person has engaged in substantial noncompliance with the requirements of section 14923(b)(A)(ii) [1] of this title, unless the accrediting entity has taken appropriate corrective action and the noncompliance has not recurred.

(3) Repeated failures to comply

Repeated serious, willful, or grossly negligent failures to comply with the requirements of section 14923(b)(1)(A)(ii) of this title by an agency or person after consultation between Secretary and the accrediting entity with respect to previous noncompliance by such agency or person shall constitute a pattern of serious, willful, or grossly negligent failures to comply under subsection (c)(1)(B).

(4) Failure to comply with certain requirements

A failure to comply with the requirements of section 14923(b)(1)(A)(ii) of this title shall constitute a serious failure to comply under subsection (c)(1)(B) unless it is shown by clear and convincing evidence that such noncompliance had neither the purpose nor the effect of determining the outcome of a decision or proceeding by a court or other competent authority in the United States or the child's country of origin.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title II, §204, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 835.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, known as the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

This subchapter, referred to in subsecs. (c)(1), (3) and (d), was in the original "this title", meaning title II of Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 830, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 6, 2000, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(1), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

[1] So in original. Probably should be section "14923(b)(1)(A)(ii)".

§14925. Universal accreditation requirements

(a) In general

The provisions of title II and section 404 of the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000 (42 U.S.C. 14901 et seq.[, 42 U.S.C. 14944]), and related implementing regulations, shall apply to any person offering or providing adoption services in connection with a child described in section 1101(b)(1)(F) of title 8, to the same extent as they apply to the offering or provision of adoption services in connection with a Convention adoption. The Secretary of State, the Secretary of Homeland Security, the Attorney General (with respect to section 404(b) of the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000 (42 U.S.C. 14944[(b)])), and the accrediting entities shall have the duties, responsibilities, and authorities under title II and title IV of the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000 [42 U.S.C. 14921 et seq., 14941 et seq.] and related implementing regulations with respect to a person offering or providing such adoption services, irrespective of whether such services are offered or provided in connection with a Convention adoption.

(b) Effective date

The provisions of this section shall take effect 18 months after January 14, 2013.

(c) Transition rule

This Act shall not apply to a person offering or providing adoption services as described in subsection (a) in the case of a prospective adoption in which—

(1) an application for advance processing of an orphan petition or petition to classify an orphan as an immediate relative for a child is filed before the date that is 180 days after January 14, 2013; or

(2) the prospective adoptive parents of a child have initiated the adoption process with the filing of an appropriate application in a foreign country sufficient such that the Secretary of State is satisfied before the date that is 180 days after January 14, 2013.

(Pub. L. 112–276, §2, Jan. 14, 2013, 126 Stat. 2466.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825. Title II of the Act is classified principally to this subchapter, and title IV of the Act is classified generally to subchapter IV (§14941 et seq.) of this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 112–276, Jan. 14, 2013, 126 Stat. 2466, known as the Intercountry Adoption Universal Accreditation Act of 2012. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2013 Amendment note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Intercountry Adoption Universal Accreditation Act of 2012, and not as part of the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000 which comprises this chapter.

DEFINITIONS

Pub. L. 112–276, §4, Jan. 14, 2013, 126 Stat. 2467, provided that: "In this Act [see Short Title of 2013 Amendment note set out under section 14901 of this title], the terms 'accrediting entity', 'adoption service', 'Convention adoption', and 'person' have the meanings given those terms in section 3 of the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000 (42 U.S.C. 14902)."

SUBCHAPTER III—RECOGNITION OF CONVENTION ADOPTIONS IN THE UNITED STATES

§14931. Adoptions of children immigrating to the United States

(a) Legal effect of certificates issued by the Secretary of State

(1) Issuance of certificates by the Secretary of State

The Secretary of State shall, with respect to each Convention adoption, issue a certificate to the adoptive citizen parent domiciled in the United States that the adoption has been granted or, in the case of a prospective adoptive citizen parent, that legal custody of the child has been granted to the citizen parent for purposes of emigration and adoption, pursuant to the Convention and this chapter, if the Secretary of State—

(A) receives appropriate notification from the central authority of such child's country of origin; and

(B) has verified that the requirements of the Convention and this chapter have been met with respect to the adoption.

(2) Legal effect of certificates

If appended to an original adoption decree, the certificate described in paragraph (1) shall be treated by Federal and State agencies, courts, and other public and private persons and entities as conclusive evidence of the facts certified therein and shall constitute the certification required by section 1154(d)(2) of title 8.

(b) Legal effect of Convention adoption finalized in another Convention country

A final adoption in another Convention country, certified by the Secretary of State pursuant to subsection (a) of this section or section 14932(c) of this title, shall be recognized as a final valid adoption for purposes of all Federal, State, and local laws of the United States.

(c) Condition on finalization of Convention adoption by State court

In the case of a child who has entered the United States from another Convention country for the purpose of adoption, an order declaring the adoption final shall not be entered unless the Secretary of State has issued the certificate provided for in subsection (a) with respect to the adoption.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title III, §301, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 837.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective upon entry into force for the United States of the Convention on Protection of Children and Co-operation in Respect of Intercountry Adoption, pursuant to Article 46(2)(a) of the Convention, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(2), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

§14932. Adoptions of children emigrating from the United States

(a) Duties of accredited agency or approved person

In the case of a Convention adoption involving the emigration of a child residing in the United States to a foreign country, the accredited agency or approved person providing adoption services, or the prospective adoptive parent or parents acting on their own behalf (if permitted by the laws of such other Convention country in which they reside and the laws of the State in which the child resides), shall do the following:

(1) Ensure that, in accordance with the Convention—

(A) a background study on the child is completed;

(B) the accredited agency or approved person—

(i) has made reasonable efforts to actively recruit and make a diligent search for prospective adoptive parents to adopt the child in the United States; and

(ii) despite such efforts, has not been able to place the child for adoption in the United States in a timely manner; and

(C) a determination is made that placement with the prospective adoptive parent or parents is in the best interests of the child.

(2) Furnish to the State court with jurisdiction over the case—

(A) documentation of the matters described in paragraph (1);

(B) a background report (home study) on the prospective adoptive parent or parents (including a criminal background check) prepared in accordance with the laws of the receiving country; and

(C) a declaration by the central authority (or other competent authority) of such other Convention country—

(i) that the child will be permitted to enter and reside permanently, or on the same basis as the adopting parent, in the receiving country; and

(ii) that the central authority (or other competent authority) of such other Convention country consents to the adoption, if such consent is necessary under the laws of such country for the adoption to become final.

(3) Furnish to the United States central authority—

(A) official copies of State court orders certifying the final adoption or grant of custody for the purpose of adoption;

(B) the information and documents described in paragraph (2), to the extent required by the United States central authority; and

(C) any other information concerning the case required by the United States central authority to perform the functions specified in subsection (c) or otherwise to carry out the duties of the United States central authority under the Convention.

(b) Conditions on State court orders

An order declaring an adoption to be final or granting custody for the purpose of adoption in a case described in subsection (a) shall not be entered unless the court—

(1) has received and verified to the extent the court may find necessary—

(A) the material described in subsection (a)(2); and

(B) satisfactory evidence that the requirements of Articles 4 and 15 through 21 of the Convention have been met; and

(2) has determined that the adoptive placement is in the best interests of the child.

(c) Duties of the Secretary of State

In a case described in subsection (a), the Secretary, on receipt and verification as necessary of the material and information described in subsection (a)(3), shall issue, as applicable, an official certification that the child has been adopted or a declaration that custody for purposes of adoption has been granted, in accordance with the Convention and this chapter.

(d) Filing with registry regarding non-Convention adoptions

Accredited agencies, approved persons, and other persons, including governmental authorities, providing adoption services in an intercountry adoption not subject to the Convention that involves the emigration of a child from the United States shall file information required by regulations jointly issued by the Attorney General and the Secretary of State for purposes of implementing section 14912(e) of this title.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title III, §303, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 839.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (c), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, known as the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective upon entry into force for the United States of the Convention on Protection of Children and Co-operation in Respect of Intercountry Adoption, pursuant to Article 46(2)(a) of the Convention, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(2), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER IV—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

§14941. Access to Convention records

(a) Preservation of Convention records

(1) In general

Not later than 180 days after October 6, 2000, the Secretary, in consultation with the Attorney

General, shall issue regulations that establish procedures and requirements in accordance with the Convention and this section for the preservation of Convention records.

(2) Applicability of notice and comment rules

Subsections (b), (c), and (d) of section 553 of title 5 shall apply in the development and issuance of regulations under this section.

(b) Access to Convention records

(1) Prohibition

Except as provided in paragraph (2), the Secretary or the Attorney General may disclose a Convention record, and access to such a record may be provided in whole or in part, only if such record is maintained under the authority of the Immigration and Nationality Act [8 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.] and disclosure of, or access to, such record is permitted or required by applicable Federal law.

(2) Exception for administration of the Convention

A Convention record may be disclosed, and access to such a record may be provided, in whole or in part, among the Secretary, the Attorney General, central authorities, accredited agencies, and approved persons, only to the extent necessary to administer the Convention or this chapter.

(3) Penalties for unlawful disclosure

Unlawful disclosure of all or part of a Convention record shall be punishable in accordance with applicable Federal law.

(c) Access to non-Convention records

Disclosure of, access to, and penalties for unlawful disclosure of, adoption records that are not Convention records, including records of adoption proceedings conducted in the United States, shall be governed by applicable State law.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title IV, §401, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 841.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Immigration and Nationality Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is act June 27, 1952, ch. 477, 66 Stat. 163, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 12 (§1101 et seq.) of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1101 of Title 8 and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Subsec. (a) of this section effective Oct. 6, 2000, and subsecs. (b) and (c) of this section effective upon entry into force for the United States of the Convention on Protection of Children and Co-operation in Respect of Intercountry Adoption, pursuant to Article 46(2)(a) of the Convention, with transition rule, see section 505 of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

§14942. Documents of other Convention countries

Documents originating in any other Convention country and related to a Convention adoption case shall require no authentication in order to be admissible in any Federal, State, or local court in the United States, unless a specific and supported claim is made that the documents are false, have been altered, or are otherwise unreliable.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title IV, §402, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 841.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective upon entry into force for the United States of the Convention on Protection of Children and Co-operation in Respect of Intercountry Adoption, pursuant to Article 46(2)(a) of the Convention, with

transition rule, see section 505(a)(2), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

§14943. Authorization of appropriations; collection of fees

(a) Authorization of appropriations

(1) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary to agencies of the Federal Government implementing the Convention and the provisions of this chapter.

(2) Availability of funds

Amounts appropriated pursuant to paragraph (1) are authorized to remain available until expended.

(b) Assessment of fees

(1) The Secretary may charge a fee for new or enhanced services that will be undertaken by the Department of State to meet the requirements of this chapter with respect to intercountry adoptions under the Convention and comparable services with respect to other intercountry adoptions. Such fee shall be prescribed by regulation and shall not exceed the cost of such services.

(2) Fees collected under paragraph (1) shall be retained and deposited as an offsetting collection to any Department of State appropriation to recover the costs of providing such services. Such fees shall remain available for obligation until expended.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title IV, §403, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 841; Pub. L. 107–228, div. A, title II, §211(a), Sept. 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 1365; Pub. L. 112–276, §3(a), Jan. 14, 2013, 126 Stat. 2467.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, known as the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 112–276 struck out subsec. (c). Text read as follows: "No funds collected under the authority of this section may be made available to an accrediting entity to carry out the purposes of this chapter."

2002—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 107–228, §211(a)(1), inserted "Such fees shall remain available for obligation until expended." at end.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 107–228, §211(a)(2), struck out par. (3) which read as follows: "Fees authorized under this section shall be available for obligation only to the extent and in the amount provided in advance in appropriations Acts."

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 6, 2000, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(1), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

§14944. Enforcement

(a) Civil penalties

Any person who—

(1) violates section 14921 of this title;

(2) makes a false or fraudulent statement, or misrepresentation, with respect to a material fact, or offers, gives, solicits, or accepts inducement by way of compensation, intended to influence or affect in the United States or a foreign country—

(A) a decision by an accrediting entity with respect to the accreditation of an agency or

approval of a person under subchapter II;

(B) the relinquishment of parental rights or the giving of parental consent relating to the adoption of a child in a case subject to the Convention; or

(C) a decision or action of any entity performing a central authority function; or

(3) engages another person as an agent, whether in the United States or in a foreign country, who in the course of that agency takes any of the actions described in paragraph (1) or (2),

shall be subject, in addition to any other penalty that may be prescribed by law, to a civil money penalty of not more than $50,000 for a first violation, and not more than $100,000 for each succeeding violation.

(b) Civil enforcement

(1) Authority of Attorney General

The Attorney General may bring a civil action to enforce subsection (a) against any person in any United States district court.

(2) Factors to be considered in imposing penalties

In imposing penalties the court shall consider the gravity of the violation, the degree of culpability of the defendant, and any history of prior violations by the defendant.

(c) Criminal penalties

Whoever knowingly and willfully violates paragraph (1) or (2) of subsection (a) shall be subject to a fine of not more than $250,000, imprisonment for not more than 5 years, or both.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title IV, §404, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 842.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subchapter II, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(A), was in the original "title II", meaning title II of Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 830, which enacted subchapter II of this chapter and amended section 622 of this title. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective upon entry into force for the United States of the Convention on Protection of Children and Co-operation in Respect of Intercountry Adoption, pursuant to Article 46(2)(a) of the Convention, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(2), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER V—GENERAL PROVISIONS

§14951. Recognition of Convention adoptions

Subject to Article 24 of the Convention, adoptions concluded between two other Convention countries that meet the requirements of Article 23 of the Convention and that became final before the date of entry into force of the Convention for the United States shall be recognized thereafter in the United States and given full effect. Such recognition shall include the specific effects described in Article 26 of the Convention.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title V, §501, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 843.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective upon entry into force for the United States of the Convention on Protection of Children and Co-operation in Respect of Intercountry Adoption, pursuant to Article 46(2)(a) of the Convention, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(2), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

§14952. Special rules for certain cases

(a) Authority to establish alternative procedures for adoption of children by relatives

To the extent consistent with the Convention, the Secretary may establish by regulation alternative procedures for the adoption of children by individuals related to them by blood, marriage, or adoption, in cases subject to the Convention.

(b) Waiver authority

(1) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, to the extent consistent with the Convention, the Secretary may, on a case-by-case basis, waive applicable requirements of this chapter or regulations issued under this chapter, in the interests of justice or to prevent grave physical harm to the child.

(2) Nondelegation

The authority provided by paragraph (1) may not be delegated.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title V, §502, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 843.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective upon entry into force for the United States of the Convention on Protection of Children and Co-operation in Respect of Intercountry Adoption, pursuant to Article 46(2)(a) of the Convention, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(2), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

§14953. Relationship to other laws

(a) Preemption of inconsistent State law

The Convention and this chapter shall not be construed to preempt any provision of the law of any State or political subdivision thereof, or prevent a State or political subdivision thereof from enacting any provision of law with respect to the subject matter of the Convention or this chapter, except to the extent that such provision of State law is inconsistent with the Convention or this chapter, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency.

(b) Applicability of the Indian Child Welfare Act

The Convention and this chapter shall not be construed to affect the application of the Indian Child Welfare Act of 1978 (25 U.S.C. 1901 et seq.).

(c) Relationship to other laws

Sections 3506(c), 3507, and 3512 of title 44 shall not apply to information collection for purposes of sections 14914, 14922(b)(4), and 14932(d) of this title or for use as a Convention record as defined in this chapter.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title V, §503, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 843.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, known as the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

The Indian Child Welfare Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 95–608, Nov. 8, 1978, 92 Stat. 3069, which is classified principally to chapter 21 (§1901 et seq.) of Title 25, Indians. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1901 of Title 25 and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 6, 2000, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(1), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

§14954. No private right of action

The Convention and this chapter shall not be construed to create a private right of action to seek administrative or judicial relief, except to the extent expressly provided in this chapter.

(Pub. L. 106–279, title V, §504, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 843.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–279, Oct. 6, 2000, 114 Stat. 825, known as the Intercountry Adoption Act of 2000, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 14901 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective upon entry into force for the United States of the Convention on Protection of Children and Co-operation in Respect of Intercountry Adoption, pursuant to Article 46(2)(a) of the Convention, with transition rule, see section 505(a)(2), (b) of Pub. L. 106–279, set out as an Effective Dates; Transition Rule note under section 14901 of this title.

CHAPTER 144—DEVELOPMENTAL DISABILITIES ASSISTANCE AND BILL OF RIGHTS

SUBCHAPTER I—PROGRAMS FOR INDIVIDUALS WITH DEVELOPMENTAL DISABILITIES

PART A—GENERAL PROVISIONS

Sec.

PART B—FEDERAL ASSISTANCE TO STATE COUNCILS ON DEVELOPMENTAL DISABILITIES

SUBCHAPTER I—PROGRAMS FOR INDIVIDUALS WITH DEVELOPMENTAL DISABILITIES

PART A—GENERAL PROVISIONS

§15001. Findings, purposes, and policy

(a) Findings

Congress finds that—

(1) disability is a natural part of the human experience that does not diminish the right of individuals with developmental disabilities to live independently, to exert control and choice over

their own lives, and to fully participate in and contribute to their communities through full integration and inclusion in the economic, political, social, cultural, and educational mainstream of United States society;

(2) in 1999, there were between 3,200,000 and 4,500,000 individuals with developmental disabilities in the United States, and recent studies indicate that individuals with developmental disabilities comprise between 1.2 and 1.65 percent of the United States population;

(3) individuals whose disabilities occur during their developmental period frequently have severe disabilities that are likely to continue indefinitely;

(4) individuals with developmental disabilities often encounter discrimination in the provision of critical services, such as services in the areas of emphasis (as defined in section 15002 of this title);

(5) individuals with developmental disabilities are at greater risk than the general population of abuse, neglect, financial and sexual exploitation, and the violation of their legal and human rights;

(6) a substantial portion of individuals with developmental disabilities and their families do not have access to appropriate support and services, including access to assistive technology, from generic and specialized service systems, and remain unserved or underserved;

(7) individuals with developmental disabilities often require lifelong community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance, that are most effective when provided in a coordinated manner;

(8) there is a need to ensure that services, supports, and other assistance are provided in a culturally competent manner, that ensures that individuals from racial and ethnic minority backgrounds are fully included in all activities provided under this subchapter;

(9) family members, friends, and members of the community can play an important role in enhancing the lives of individuals with developmental disabilities, especially when the family members, friends, and community members are provided with the necessary community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance;

(10) current research indicates that 88 percent of individuals with developmental disabilities live with their families or in their own households;

(11) many service delivery systems and communities are not prepared to meet the impending needs of the 479,862 adults with developmental disabilities who are living at home with parents who are 60 years old or older and who serve as the primary caregivers of the adults;

(12) in almost every State, individuals with developmental disabilities are waiting for appropriate services in their communities, in the areas of emphasis;

(13) the public needs to be made more aware of the capabilities and competencies of individuals with developmental disabilities, particularly in cases in which the individuals are provided with necessary services, supports, and other assistance;

(14) as increasing numbers of individuals with developmental disabilities are living, learning, working, and participating in all aspects of community life, there is an increasing need for a well trained workforce that is able to provide the services, supports, and other forms of direct assistance required to enable the individuals to carry out those activities;

(15) there needs to be greater effort to recruit individuals from minority backgrounds into professions serving individuals with developmental disabilities and their families;

(16) the goals of the Nation properly include a goal of providing individuals with developmental disabilities with the information, skills, opportunities, and support to—

(A) make informed choices and decisions about their lives;

(B) live in homes and communities in which such individuals can exercise their full rights and responsibilities as citizens;

(C) pursue meaningful and productive lives;

(D) contribute to their families, communities, and States, and the Nation;

(E) have interdependent friendships and relationships with other persons;

(F) live free of abuse, neglect, financial and sexual exploitation, and violations of their legal and human rights; and

(G) achieve full integration and inclusion in society, in an individualized manner, consistent

with the unique strengths, resources, priorities, concerns, abilities, and capabilities of each individual; and

(17) as the Nation, States, and communities maintain and expand community living options for individuals with developmental disabilities, there is a need to evaluate the access to those options by individuals with developmental disabilities and the effects of those options on individuals with developmental disabilities.

(b) Purpose

The purpose of this subchapter is to assure that individuals with developmental disabilities and their families participate in the design of and have access to needed community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance that promote self-determination, independence, productivity, and integration and inclusion in all facets of community life, through culturally competent programs authorized under this subchapter, including specifically—

(1) State Councils on Developmental Disabilities in each State to engage in advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities that—

(A) are consistent with the purpose described in this subsection and the policy described in subsection (c); and

(B) contribute to a coordinated, consumer- and family-centered, consumer- and family-directed, comprehensive system that includes needed community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance that promote self-determination for individuals with developmental disabilities and their families;

(2) protection and advocacy systems in each State to protect the legal and human rights of individuals with developmental disabilities;

(3) University Centers for Excellence in Developmental Disabilities Education, Research, and Service—

(A) to provide interdisciplinary pre-service preparation and continuing education of students and fellows, which may include the preparation and continuing education of leadership, direct service, clinical, or other personnel to strengthen and increase the capacity of States and communities to achieve the purpose of this subchapter;

(B) to provide community services—

(i) that provide training and technical assistance for individuals with developmental disabilities, their families, professionals, paraprofessionals, policymakers, students, and other members of the community; and

(ii) that may provide services, supports, and assistance for the persons described in clause (i) through demonstration and model activities;

(C) to conduct research, which may include basic or applied research, evaluation, and the analysis of public policy in areas that affect or could affect, either positively or negatively, individuals with developmental disabilities and their families; and

(D) to disseminate information related to activities undertaken to address the purpose of this subchapter, especially dissemination of information that demonstrates that the network authorized under this part is a national and international resource that includes specific substantive areas of expertise that may be accessed and applied in diverse settings and circumstances; and

(4) funding for—

(A) national initiatives to collect necessary data on issues that are directly or indirectly relevant to the lives of individuals with developmental disabilities;

(B) technical assistance to entities who engage in or intend to engage in activities consistent with the purpose described in this subsection or the policy described in subsection (c); and

(C) other nationally significant activities.

(c) Policy

It is the policy of the United States that all programs, projects, and activities receiving assistance under this subchapter shall be carried out in a manner consistent with the principles that—

(1) individuals with developmental disabilities, including those with the most severe developmental disabilities, are capable of self-determination, independence, productivity, and integration and inclusion in all facets of community life, but often require the provision of community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance;

(2) individuals with developmental disabilities and their families have competencies, capabilities, and personal goals that should be recognized, supported, and encouraged, and any assistance to such individuals should be provided in an individualized manner, consistent with the unique strengths, resources, priorities, concerns, abilities, and capabilities of such individuals;

(3) individuals with developmental disabilities and their families are the primary decisionmakers regarding the services and supports such individuals and their families receive, including regarding choosing where the individuals live from available options, and play decisionmaking roles in policies and programs that affect the lives of such individuals and their families;

(4) services, supports, and other assistance should be provided in a manner that demonstrates respect for individual dignity, personal preferences, and cultural differences;

(5) specific efforts must be made to ensure that individuals with developmental disabilities from racial and ethnic minority backgrounds and their families enjoy increased and meaningful opportunities to access and use community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance available to other individuals with developmental disabilities and their families;

(6) recruitment efforts in disciplines related to developmental disabilities relating to pre-service training, community training, practice, administration, and policymaking must focus on bringing larger numbers of racial and ethnic minorities into the disciplines in order to provide appropriate skills, knowledge, role models, and sufficient personnel to address the growing needs of an increasingly diverse population;

(7) with education and support, communities can be accessible to and responsive to the needs of individuals with developmental disabilities and their families and are enriched by full and active participation in community activities, and contributions, by individuals with developmental disabilities and their families;

(8) individuals with developmental disabilities have access to opportunities and the necessary support to be included in community life, have interdependent relationships, live in homes and communities, and make contributions to their families, communities, and States, and the Nation;

(9) efforts undertaken to maintain or expand community-based living options for individuals with disabilities should be monitored in order to determine and report to appropriate individuals and entities the extent of access by individuals with developmental disabilities to those options and the extent of compliance by entities providing those options with quality assurance standards;

(10) families of children with developmental disabilities need to have access to and use of safe and appropriate child care and before-school and after-school programs, in the most integrated settings, in order to enrich the participation of the children in community life;

(11) individuals with developmental disabilities need to have access to and use of public transportation, in order to be independent and directly contribute to and participate in all facets of community life; and

(12) individuals with developmental disabilities need to have access to and use of recreational, leisure, and social opportunities in the most integrated settings, in order to enrich their participation in community life.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §101, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1678.)

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 106–402, §1(a), Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1677, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Developmental Disabilities Assistance and Bill of Rights Act of 2000'."

Pub. L. 106–402, title II, §201, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1728, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter

II of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Families of Children With Disabilities Support Act of 2000'."

SPECIAL OLYMPICS SPORT AND EMPOWERMENT

Pub. L. 108–406, Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2294, provided that:

"SECTION 1. SHORT TITLE.

"This Act may be cited as the 'Special Olympics Sport and Empowerment Act of 2004'.

"SEC. 2. FINDINGS AND PURPOSE.

"(a) FINDINGS.—Congress finds the following:

"(1) Special Olympics celebrates the possibilities of a world where everybody matters, everybody counts, every person has value, and every person has worth.

"(2) The Government and the people of the United States recognize the dignity and value the giftedness of children and adults with an intellectual disability.

"(3) The Government and the people of the United States are determined to end the isolation and stigmatization of people with an intellectual disability.

"(4) For more than 36 years, Special Olympics has encouraged skill, sharing, courage, and joy through year-round sports training and athletic competition for children and adults with intellectual disabilities.

"(5) Special Olympics provides year-round sports training and competitive opportunities to 1,500,000 athletes with intellectual disabilities in 26 sports and plans to expand the joy of participation through sport to hundreds of thousands of people with intellectual disabilities within the United States and worldwide over the next 5 years.

"(6) Special Olympics has demonstrated its ability to provide a major positive effect on the quality of life of people with intellectual disabilities, improving their health and physical well-being, building their confidence and self-esteem, and giving them a voice to become active and productive members of their communities.

"(7) In society as a whole, Special Olympics has become a vehicle and platform for breaking down artificial barriers, improving public health, changing negative attitudes in education, and helping athletes overcome the prejudice that people with intellectual disabilities face in too many places.

"(8) The Government of the United States enthusiastically supports Special Olympics, recognizes its importance in improving the lives of people with intellectual disabilities, and recognizes Special Olympics as a valued and important component of the global community.

"(b) PURPOSE.—The purposes of this Act are to—

"(1) provide support to Special Olympics to increase athlete participation in and public awareness about the Special Olympics movement;

"(2) dispel negative stereotypes about people with intellectual disabilities;

"(3) build athletic and family involvement through sport; and

"(4) promote the extraordinary gifts of people with intellectual disabilities.

"SEC. 3. ASSISTANCE FOR SPECIAL OLYMPICS.

"(a) EDUCATION ACTIVITIES.—The Secretary of Education may award grants to, or enter into contracts or cooperative agreements with, Special Olympics to carry out the following:

"(1) Activities to promote the expansion of Special Olympics, including activities to increase the participation of individuals with intellectual disabilities within the United States.

"(2) The design and implementation of Special Olympics education programs, including character education and volunteer programs that support the purposes of this Act, that can be integrated into classroom instruction and are consistent with academic content standards.

"(b) INTERNATIONAL ACTIVITIES.—The Secretary of State may award grants to, or enter into contracts or cooperative agreements with, Special Olympics to carry out the following:

"(1) Activities to increase the participation of individuals with intellectual disabilities in Special Olympics outside of the United States.

"(2) Activities to improve the awareness outside of the United States of the abilities and unique contributions that individuals with intellectual disabilities can make to society.

"(c) HEALTHY ATHLETES.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Health and Human Services may award grants to, or enter into contracts or cooperative agreements with, Special Olympics for the implementation of on-site health assessments, screening for health problems, health education, data collection, and referrals to direct health care services.

"(2) COORDINATION.—Activities under paragraph (1) shall be coordinated with private health providers, existing authorized programs of State and local jurisdictions, or the Department of Health and

Human Services, as applicable.

"(d) LIMITATION.—Amounts appropriated to carry out this section shall not be used for direct treatment of diseases, medical conditions, or mental health conditions. Nothing in the preceding sentence shall be construed to limit the use of non-Federal funds by Special Olympics.

"SEC. 4. APPLICATION AND ANNUAL REPORT.

"(a) APPLICATION.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—To be eligible for a grant, contract, or cooperative agreement under subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 3, Special Olympics shall submit an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary of Education, Secretary of State, or Secretary of Health and Human Services, as applicable, may require.

"(2) CONTENT.—At a minimum, an application under this subsection shall contain the following:

"(A) ACTIVITIES.—A description of activities to be carried out with the grant, contract, or cooperative agreement.

"(B) MEASURABLE GOALS.—Information on specific measurable goals and objectives to be achieved through activities carried out with the grant, contract, or cooperative agreement.

"(b) ANNUAL REPORT.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—As a condition on receipt of any funds under subsection (a), (b), or (c) of section 3, Special Olympics shall agree to submit an annual report at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary of Education, Secretary of State, or Secretary of Health and Human Services, as applicable, may require.

"(2) CONTENT.—At a minimum, each annual report under this subsection shall describe the degree to which progress has been made toward meeting the goals and objectives described in the applications submitted under subsection (a).

"SEC. 5. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.

"There are authorized to be appropriated—

"(1) for grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements under section 3(a), $5,500,000 for fiscal year 2005, and such sums as may be necessary for each of the 4 succeeding fiscal years;

"(2) for grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements under section 3(b), $3,500,000 for fiscal year 2005, and such sums as may be necessary for each of the 4 succeeding fiscal years; and

"(3) for grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements under section 3(c), $6,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2005 through 2009."

EX. ORD. NO. 12994. PRESIDENT'S COMMITTEE ON MENTAL RETARDATION

Ex. Ord. No. 12994, Mar. 21, 1996, 61 F.R. 13047, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 13309, July 25, 2003, 68 F.R. 44851; Ex. Ord. No. 13446, §5, Sept. 28, 2007, 72 F.R. 56176, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, and in order to promote full participation of people with intellectual disabilities in their communities, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Committee Continued and Responsibilities Expanded*. The President's Committee on Mental Retardation, with expanded membership and expanded responsibilities, and renamed the President's Committee for People with Intellectual Disabilities (Committee), is hereby continued in operation.

SEC. 2. *Composition of Committee*. (a) The Committee shall be composed of the following members:

(1) The Attorney General;

(2) The Secretary of the Interior;

(3) The Secretary of Commerce;

(4) The Secretary of Labor;

(5) The Secretary of Health and Human Services;

(6) The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development;

(7) The Secretary of Transportation;

(8) The Secretary of Education;

(9) The Secretary of Homeland Security;

(10) The Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation for National and Community Service;

(11) The Commissioner of Social Security;

(12) The Chairman of the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission;

(13) The Chairperson of the National Council on Disability; and

(14) No more than 21 other members who shall be appointed to the Committee by the President. These citizen members shall consist of individuals who represent a broad spectrum of perspectives, experience, and

expertise on intellectual disabilities; persons with intellectual disabilities and members of families with a child or adult with intellectual disabilities; and persons employed in either the public or the private sector. Except as the President may from time to time otherwise direct, appointees under this paragraph shall serve for two-year terms, except that an appointment made to fill a vacancy occurring before the expiration of a term shall be made for the balance of the unexpired term.

(b) The President shall designate the Chair of the Committee from the 21 citizen members. The Chair shall preside over meetings of the Committee and represent the Committee on appropriate occasions.

SEC. 3. *Functions of the Committee*. (a) Consistent with subsection (c) of this section, the Committee shall:

(1) provide such advice concerning intellectual disabilities as the President or the Secretary of Health and Human Services may request; and

(2) provide advice to the President concerning the following for people with intellectual disabilities:

(A) expansion of educational opportunities;

(B) promotion of homeownership;

(C) assurance of workplace integration;

(D) improvement of transportation options;

(E) expansion of full access to community living; and

(F) increasing access to assistive and universally designed technologies.

(b) The Committee shall provide an annual report to the President through the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Such additional reports may be made as the President may direct or as the Committee may deem appropriate.

(c) The members shall advise the President and carry out their advisory role consistent with the requirements of the Federal Advisory Committee Act, as amended (5 U.S.C. App.).

SEC. 4. *Cooperation by Agencies*. The heads of Federal departments and agencies shall:

(a) designate, when requested by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, an officer or employee of such department or agency to serve as a liaison with the Committee; and

(b) furnish such information and assistance to the Committee, to the extent permitted by law, as the Secretary of Health and Human Services may request to assist the Committee in performing its functions under this order.

SEC. 5. *Administration*. (a) The Department of Health and Human Services shall provide the Committee with necessary staff support, administrative services and facilities, and funding, to the extent permitted by law.

(b) Each member of the Committee, except any member who receives other compensation from the United States Government, may receive compensation for each day engaged in the work of the Committee, as authorized by law (5 U.S.C. 3109), and may also receive travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by law (5 U.S.C. 5701–5707), for persons employed intermittently in the Government service. Committee members with disabilities may be compensated for attendant expenses, consistent with Government procedures and practices.

(c) The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall perform such other functions with respect to the Committee as may be required by the Federal Advisory Committee Act, as amended (5 U.S.C. App.), except that of reporting to the Congress.

SEC. 6. *General*. (a) Nothing in this order shall be construed as subjecting any Federal agency, or any function vested by law in, or assigned pursuant to law to, any Federal agency, to the authority of the Committee or as abrogating or restricting any such function in any manner.

(b) This order is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity by any party against the United States, its departments, agencies, instrumentalities, or entities, its officers or employees, or any other person.

EXTENSION OF TERM OF PRESIDENT'S COMMITTEE FOR PEOPLE WITH INTELLECTUAL DISABILITIES (FORMERLY PRESIDENT'S COMMITTEE ON MENTAL RETARDATION)

Term of the President's Committee on Mental Retardation extended until Dec. 31, 1982, by Ex. Ord. No. 12258, Dec. 31, 1980, 46 F.R. 1251, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Term of the President's Committee on Mental Retardation extended until Sept. 30, 1984, by Ex. Ord. No. 12399, Dec. 31, 1982, 48 F.R. 379, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on Mental Retardation extended until Sept. 30, 1985, by Ex. Ord. No. 12489, Sept. 28, 1984, 49 F.R. 38927, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on Mental Retardation extended until Sept. 30, 1987, by Ex. Ord. No.

12534, Sept. 30, 1985, 50 F.R. 40319, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on Mental Retardation extended until Sept. 30, 1989, by Ex. Ord. No. 12610, Sept. 30, 1987, 52 F.R. 36901, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on Mental Retardation extended until Sept. 30, 1991, by Ex. Ord. No. 12692, Sept. 29, 1989, 54 F.R. 40627, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on Mental Retardation extended until Sept. 30, 1993, by Ex. Ord. No. 12774, Sept. 27, 1991, 56 F.R. 49835, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on Mental Retardation extended until Sept. 30, 1995, by Ex. Ord. No. 12869, Sept. 30, 1993, 58 F.R. 51751, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on Mental Retardation extended until Sept. 30, 1997, by Ex. Ord. No. 12974, Sept. 29, 1995, 60 F.R. 51875, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on Mental Retardation extended until Sept. 30, 1999, by Ex. Ord. No. 13062, §1(k), Sept. 29, 1997, 62 F.R. 51755, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on Mental Retardation extended until Sept. 30, 2001, by Ex. Ord. No. 13138, Sept. 30, 1999, 64 F.R. 53879, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on Mental Retardation extended until Sept. 30, 2003, by Ex. Ord. No. 13225, Sept. 28, 2001, 66 F.R. 50291, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Name of President's Committee on Mental Retardation changed to Committee for People with Intellectual Disabilities and term of such committee extended until Sept. 30, 2005, by Ex. Ord. No. 13309, §5, July 25, 2003, 68 F.R. 44851, formerly set out as a note under this section.

Term of the President's Committee for People with Intellectual Disabilities extended until Sept. 30, 2007, by Ex. Ord. No. 13385, Sept. 29, 2005, 70 F.R. 57989, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee for People with Intellectual Disabilities extended until Sept. 30, 2009, by Ex. Ord. No. 13446, Sept. 28, 2007, 72 F.R. 56175, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee for People with Intellectual Disabilities extended until Sept. 30, 2011, by Ex. Ord. No. 13511, Sept. 29, 2009, 74 F.R. 50909, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee for People with Intellectual Disabilities extended until Sept. 30, 2013, by Ex. Ord. No. 13585, Sept. 30, 2011, 76 F.R. 62281, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee for People with Intellectual Disabilities extended until Sept. 30, 2015, by Ex. Ord. No. 13652, Sept. 30, 2013, 78 F.R. 61817, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee for People with Intellectual Disabilities extended until Sept. 30, 2017, by Ex. Ord. No. 13708, Sept. 30, 2015, 80 F.R. 60271, set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

§15002. Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) American Indian Consortium

The term "American Indian Consortium" means any confederation of 2 or more recognized American Indian tribes, created through the official action of each participating tribe, that has a combined total resident population of 150,000 enrolled tribal members and a contiguous territory of Indian lands in 2 or more States.

(2) Areas of emphasis

The term "areas of emphasis" means the areas related to quality assurance activities, education activities and early intervention activities, child care-related activities, health-related activities, employment-related activities, housing-related activities, transportation-related activities, recreation-related activities, and other services available or offered to individuals in a community, including formal and informal community supports, that affect their quality of life.

(3) Assistive technology device

The term "assistive technology device" means any item, piece of equipment, or product system, whether acquired commercially, modified or customized, that is used to increase, maintain, or improve functional capabilities of individuals with developmental disabilities.

(4) Assistive technology service

The term "assistive technology service" means any service that directly assists an individual with a developmental disability in the selection, acquisition, or use of an assistive technology device. Such term includes—

(A) conducting an evaluation of the needs of an individual with a developmental disability, including a functional evaluation of the individual in the individual's customary environment;

(B) purchasing, leasing, or otherwise providing for the acquisition of an assistive technology device by an individual with a developmental disability;

(C) selecting, designing, fitting, customizing, adapting, applying, maintaining, repairing or replacing an assistive technology device;

(D) coordinating and using another therapy, intervention, or service with an assistive technology device, such as a therapy, intervention, or service associated with an education or rehabilitation plan or program;

(E) providing training or technical assistance for an individual with a developmental disability, or, where appropriate, a family member, guardian, advocate, or authorized representative of an individual with a developmental disability; and

(F) providing training or technical assistance for professionals (including individuals providing education and rehabilitation services), employers, or other individuals who provide services to, employ, or are otherwise substantially involved in the major life functions of, an individual with developmental disabilities.

(5) Center

The term "Center" means a University Center for Excellence in Developmental Disabilities Education, Research, and Service established under part D.

(6) Child care-related activities

The term "child care-related activities" means advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities that result in families of children with developmental disabilities having access to and use of child care services, including before-school, after-school, and out-of-school services, in their communities.

(7) Culturally competent

The term "culturally competent", used with respect to services, supports, or other assistance, means services, supports, or other assistance that is conducted or provided in a manner that is responsive to the beliefs, interpersonal styles, attitudes, language, and behaviors of individuals who are receiving the services, supports, or other assistance, and in a manner that has the greatest likelihood of ensuring their maximum participation in the program involved.

(8) Developmental disability

(A) In general

The term "developmental disability" means a severe, chronic disability of an individual that—

(i) is attributable to a mental or physical impairment or combination of mental and physical

impairments;

(ii) is manifested before the individual attains age 22;

(iii) is likely to continue indefinitely;

(iv) results in substantial functional limitations in 3 or more of the following areas of major life activity:

(I) Self-care.

(II) Receptive and expressive language.

(III) Learning.

(IV) Mobility.

(V) Self-direction.

(VI) Capacity for independent living.

(VII) Economic self-sufficiency; and

(v) reflects the individual's need for a combination and sequence of special, interdisciplinary, or generic services, individualized supports, or other forms of assistance that are of lifelong or extended duration and are individually planned and coordinated.

(B) Infants and young children

An individual from birth to age 9, inclusive, who has a substantial developmental delay or specific congenital or acquired condition, may be considered to have a developmental disability without meeting 3 or more of the criteria described in clauses (i) through (v) of subparagraph (A) if the individual, without services and supports, has a high probability of meeting those criteria later in life.

(9) Early intervention activities

The term "early intervention activities" means advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities provided to individuals described in paragraph (8)(B) and their families to enhance—

(A) the development of the individuals to maximize their potential; and

(B) the capacity of families to meet the special needs of the individuals.

(10) Education activities

The term "education activities" means advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities that result in individuals with developmental disabilities being able to access appropriate supports and modifications when necessary, to maximize their educational potential, to benefit from lifelong educational activities, and to be integrated and included in all facets of student life.

(11) Employment-related activities

The term "employment-related activities" means advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities that result in individuals with developmental disabilities acquiring, retaining, or advancing in paid employment, including supported employment or self-employment, in integrated settings in a community.

(12) Family support services

(A) In general

The term "family support services" means services, supports, and other assistance, provided to families with members who have developmental disabilities, that are designed to—

(i) strengthen the family's role as primary caregiver;

(ii) prevent inappropriate out-of-the-home placement of the members and maintain family unity; and

(iii) reunite families with members who have been placed out of the home whenever possible.

(B) Specific services

Such term includes respite care, provision of rehabilitation technology and assistive

technology, personal assistance services, parent training and counseling, support for families headed by aging caregivers, vehicular and home modifications, and assistance with extraordinary expenses, associated with the needs of individuals with developmental disabilities.

(13) Health-related activities

The term "health-related activities" means advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities that result in individuals with developmental disabilities having access to and use of coordinated health, dental, mental health, and other human and social services, including prevention activities, in their communities.

(14) Housing-related activities

The term "housing-related activities" means advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities that result in individuals with developmental disabilities having access to and use of housing and housing supports and services in their communities, including assistance related to renting, owning, or modifying an apartment or home.

(15) Inclusion

The term "inclusion", used with respect to individuals with developmental disabilities, means the acceptance and encouragement of the presence and participation of individuals with developmental disabilities, by individuals without disabilities, in social, educational, work, and community activities, that enables individuals with developmental disabilities to—

(A) have friendships and relationships with individuals and families of their own choice;

(B) live in homes close to community resources, with regular contact with individuals without disabilities in their communities;

(C) enjoy full access to and active participation in the same community activities and types of employment as individuals without disabilities; and

(D) take full advantage of their integration into the same community resources as individuals without disabilities, living, learning, working, and enjoying life in regular contact with individuals without disabilities.

(16) Individualized supports

The term "individualized supports" means supports that—

(A) enable an individual with a developmental disability to exercise self-determination, be independent, be productive, and be integrated and included in all facets of community life;

(B) are designed to—

(i) enable such individual to control such individual's environment, permitting the most independent life possible;

(ii) prevent placement into a more restrictive living arrangement than is necessary; and

(iii) enable such individual to live, learn, work, and enjoy life in the community; and

(C) include—

(i) early intervention services;

(ii) respite care;

(iii) personal assistance services;

(iv) family support services;

(v) supported employment services;

(vi) support services for families headed by aging caregivers of individuals with developmental disabilities; and

(vii) provision of rehabilitation technology and assistive technology, and assistive technology services.

(17) Integration

The term "integration", used with respect to individuals with developmental disabilities, means exercising the equal right of individuals with developmental disabilities to access and use the same

community resources as are used by and available to other individuals.

(18) Not-for-profit

The term "not-for-profit", used with respect to an agency, institution, or organization, means an agency, institution, or organization that is owned or operated by 1 or more corporations or associations, no part of the net earnings of which inures, or may lawfully inure, to the benefit of any private shareholder or individual.

(19) Personal assistance services

The term "personal assistance services" means a range of services, provided by 1 or more individuals, designed to assist an individual with a disability to perform daily activities, including activities on or off a job that such individual would typically perform if such individual did not have a disability. Such services shall be designed to increase such individual's control in life and ability to perform everyday activities, including activities on or off a job.

(20) Prevention activities

The term "prevention activities" means activities that address the causes of developmental disabilities and the exacerbation of functional limitation, such as activities that—

(A) eliminate or reduce the factors that cause or predispose individuals to developmental disabilities or that increase the prevalence of developmental disabilities;

(B) increase the early identification of problems to eliminate circumstances that create or increase functional limitations; and

(C) mitigate against the effects of developmental disabilities throughout the lifespan of an individual.

(21) Productivity

The term "productivity" means—

(A) engagement in income-producing work that is measured by increased income, improved employment status, or job advancement; or

(B) engagement in work that contributes to a household or community.

(22) Protection and advocacy system

The term "protection and advocacy system" means a protection and advocacy system established in accordance with section 15043 of this title.

(23) Quality assurance activities

The term "quality assurance activities" means advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities that result in improved consumer- and family-centered quality assurance and that result in systems of quality assurance and consumer protection that—

(A) include monitoring of services, supports, and assistance provided to an individual with developmental disabilities that ensures that the individual—

(i) will not experience abuse, neglect, sexual or financial exploitation, or violation of legal or human rights; and

(ii) will not be subject to the inappropriate use of restraints or seclusion;

(B) include training in leadership, self-advocacy, and self-determination for individuals with developmental disabilities, their families, and their guardians to ensure that those individuals—

(i) will not experience abuse, neglect, sexual or financial exploitation, or violation of legal or human rights; and

(ii) will not be subject to the inappropriate use of restraints or seclusion; or

(C) include activities related to interagency coordination and systems integration that result in improved and enhanced services, supports, and other assistance that contribute to and protect the self-determination, independence, productivity, and integration and inclusion in all facets of community life, of individuals with developmental disabilities.

(24) Recreation-related activities

The term "recreation-related activities" means advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities that result in individuals with developmental disabilities having access to and use of recreational, leisure, and social activities, in their communities.

(25) Rehabilitation technology

The term "rehabilitation technology" means the systematic application of technologies, engineering methodologies, or scientific principles to meet the needs of, and address the barriers confronted by, individuals with developmental disabilities in areas that include education, rehabilitation, employment, transportation, independent living, and recreation. Such term includes rehabilitation engineering, and the provision of assistive technology devices and assistive technology services.

(26) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

(27) Self-determination activities

The term "self-determination activities" means activities that result in individuals with developmental disabilities, with appropriate assistance, having—

(A) the ability and opportunity to communicate and make personal decisions;

(B) the ability and opportunity to communicate choices and exercise control over the type and intensity of services, supports, and other assistance the individuals receive;

(C) the authority to control resources to obtain needed services, supports, and other assistance;

(D) opportunities to participate in, and contribute to, their communities; and

(E) support, including financial support, to advocate for themselves and others, to develop leadership skills, through training in self-advocacy, to participate in coalitions, to educate policymakers, and to play a role in the development of public policies that affect individuals with developmental disabilities.

(28) State

The term "State", except as otherwise provided, includes, in addition to each of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(29) State Council on Developmental Disabilities

The term "State Council on Developmental Disabilities" means a Council established under section 15025 of this title.

(30) Supported employment services

The term "supported employment services" means services that enable individuals with developmental disabilities to perform competitive work in integrated work settings, in the case of individuals with developmental disabilities—

(A)(i) for whom competitive employment has not traditionally occurred; or

(ii) for whom competitive employment has been interrupted or intermittent as a result of significant disabilities; and

(B) who, because of the nature and severity of their disabilities, need intensive supported employment services or extended services in order to perform such work.

(31) Transportation-related activities

The term "transportation-related activities" means advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities that result in individuals with developmental disabilities having access to and use of transportation.

(32) Unserved and underserved

The term "unserved and underserved" includes populations such as individuals from racial and ethnic minority backgrounds, disadvantaged individuals, individuals with limited English proficiency, individuals from underserved geographic areas (rural or urban), and specific groups of individuals within the population of individuals with developmental disabilities, including individuals who require assistive technology in order to participate in and contribute to community life.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §102, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1682.)

§15003. Records and audits

(a) Records

Each recipient of assistance under this subchapter shall keep such records as the Secretary shall prescribe, including—

(1) records that fully disclose—

(A) the amount and disposition by such recipient of the assistance;

(B) the total cost of the project or undertaking in connection with which such assistance is given or used; and

(C) the amount of that portion of the cost of the project or undertaking that is supplied by other sources; and

(2) such other records as will facilitate an effective audit.

(b) Access

The Secretary and the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives, shall have access for the purpose of audit and examination to any books, documents, papers, and records of the recipients of assistance under this subchapter that are pertinent to such assistance.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §103, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1688.)

§15004. Responsibilities of the Secretary

(a) Program accountability

(1) In general

In order to monitor entities that received funds under this chapter to carry out activities under parts B, C, and D and determine the extent to which the entities have been responsive to the purpose of this subchapter and have taken actions consistent with the policy described in section 15001(c) of this title, the Secretary shall develop and implement an accountability process as described in this subsection, with respect to activities conducted after October 1, 2001.

(2) Areas of emphasis

The Secretary shall develop a process for identifying and reporting (pursuant to section 15005 of this title) on progress achieved through advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities, undertaken by the entities described in paragraph (1), that resulted in individuals with developmental disabilities and their families participating in the design of and having access to needed community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance that promote self-determination, independence, productivity, and integration and inclusion in all facets of community life. Specifically, the Secretary shall develop a process for identifying and reporting on progress achieved, through advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities, by the entities in the areas of emphasis.

(3) Indicators of progress

(A) In general

In identifying progress made by the entities described in paragraph (1) in the areas of emphasis, the Secretary, in consultation with the Commissioner of the Administration on Developmental Disabilities and the entities, shall develop indicators for each area of emphasis.

(B) Proposed indicators

Not later than 180 days after October 30, 2000, the Secretary shall develop and publish in the Federal Register for public comment proposed indicators of progress for monitoring how entities described in paragraph (1) have addressed the areas of emphasis described in paragraph (2) in a manner that is responsive to the purpose of this subchapter and consistent with the policy described in section 15001(c) of this title.

(C) Final indicators

Not later than October 1, 2001, the Secretary shall revise the proposed indicators of progress, to the extent necessary based on public comment, and publish final indicators of progress in the Federal Register.

(D) Specific measures

At a minimum, the indicators of progress shall be used to describe and measure—

(i) the satisfaction of individuals with developmental disabilities with the advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities provided under parts B, C, and D;

(ii) the extent to which the advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities provided through parts B, C, and D result in improvements in—

(I) the ability of individuals with developmental disabilities to make choices and exert control over the type, intensity, and timing of services, supports, and assistance that the individuals have used;

(II) the ability of individuals with developmental disabilities to participate in the full range of community life with persons of the individuals' choice; and

(III) the ability of individuals with developmental disabilities to access services, supports, and assistance in a manner that ensures that such an individual is free from abuse, neglect, sexual and financial exploitation, violation of legal and human rights, and the inappropriate use of restraints and seclusion; and

(iii) the extent to which the entities described in paragraph (1) collaborate with each other to achieve the purpose of this subchapter and the policy described in section 15001(c) of this title.

(4) Time line for compliance with indicators of progress

The Secretary shall require entities described in paragraph (1) to meet the indicators of progress described in paragraph (3). For fiscal year 2002 and each year thereafter, the Secretary shall apply the indicators in monitoring entities described in paragraph (1), with respect to activities conducted after October 1, 2001.

(b) Time line for regulations

Except as otherwise expressly provided in this subchapter, the Secretary, not later than 1 year after October 30, 2000, shall promulgate such regulations as may be required for the implementation of this subchapter.

(c) Interagency committee

(1) In general

The Secretary shall maintain the interagency committee authorized in section 6007 of this title as in effect on the day before October 30, 2000, except as otherwise provided in this subsection.

(2) Composition

The interagency committee shall be composed of representatives of—

(A) the Administration on Developmental Disabilities, the Administration on Children, Youth, and Families, the Administration on Aging, and the Health Resources and Services Administration, of the Department of Health and Human Services; and

(B) such other Federal departments and agencies as the Secretary of Health and Human Services considers to be appropriate.

(3) Duties

Such interagency committee shall meet regularly to coordinate and plan activities conducted by Federal departments and agencies for individuals with developmental disabilities.

(4) Meetings

Each meeting of the interagency committee (except for any meetings of any subcommittees of the committee) shall be open to the public. Notice of each meeting, and a statement of the agenda for the meeting, shall be published in the Federal Register not later than 14 days before the date on which the meeting is to occur.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §104, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1688.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 106–402, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1677, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15001 of this title and Tables.

Section 6007 of this title, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), was repealed by Pub. L. 106–402, title IV, §401(a), Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1737.

§15005. Reports of the Secretary

At least once every 2 years, the Secretary, using information submitted in the reports and information required under parts B, C, D, and E, shall prepare and submit to the President, Congress, and the National Council on Disability, a report that describes the goals and outcomes of programs supported under parts B, C, D, and E. In preparing the report, the Secretary shall provide—

(1) meaningful examples of how the councils, protection and advocacy systems, centers, and entities funded under parts B, C, D, and E, respectively—

(A) have undertaken coordinated activities with each other;

(B) have enhanced the ability of individuals with developmental disabilities and their families to participate in the design of and have access to needed community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance that promote self-determination, independence, productivity, and integration and inclusion in all facets of community life;

(C) have brought about advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities (including policy reform), and other actions on behalf of individuals with developmental disabilities and their families, including individuals who are traditionally unserved or underserved, particularly individuals who are members of ethnic and racial minority groups and individuals from underserved geographic areas; and

(D) have brought about advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities that affect individuals with disabilities other than individuals with developmental disabilities;

(2) information on the extent to which programs authorized under this subchapter have addressed—

(A) protecting individuals with developmental disabilities from abuse, neglect, sexual and financial exploitation, and violations of legal and human rights, so that those individuals are at no greater risk of harm than other persons in the general population; and

(B) reports of deaths of and serious injuries to individuals with developmental disabilities; and

(3) a summary of any incidents of noncompliance of the programs authorized under this

subchapter with the provisions of this subchapter, and corrections made or actions taken to obtain compliance.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §105, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1690.)

§15006. State control of operations

Except as otherwise specifically provided, nothing in this subchapter shall be construed as conferring on any Federal officer or employee the right to exercise any supervision or control over the administration, personnel, maintenance, or operation of any programs, services, and supports for individuals with developmental disabilities with respect to which any funds have been or may be expended under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §106, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1691.)

§15007. Employment of individuals with disabilities

As a condition of providing assistance under this subchapter, the Secretary shall require that each recipient of such assistance take affirmative action to employ and advance in employment qualified individuals with disabilities on the same terms and conditions required with respect to the employment of such individuals under the provisions of title V of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 791 et seq.) and the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101 et seq.), that govern employment.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §107, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1691.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Rehabilitation Act of 1973, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 93–112, Sept. 26, 1973, 87 Stat. 355, as amended. Title V of the Act is classified generally to subchapter V (§790 et seq.) of chapter 16 of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 701 of Title 29 and Tables.

The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 126 (§12101 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

§15008. Construction

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to preclude an entity funded under this subchapter from engaging in advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities for individuals with developmental disabilities that may also have a positive impact on individuals with other disabilities.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §108, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1692.)

§15009. Rights of individuals with developmental disabilities

(a) In general

Congress makes the following findings respecting the rights of individuals with developmental disabilities:

(1) Individuals with developmental disabilities have a right to appropriate treatment, services, and habilitation for such disabilities, consistent with section 15001(c) of this title.

(2) The treatment, services, and habitation [1] for an individual with developmental disabilities should be designed to maximize the potential of the individual and should be provided in the setting that is least restrictive of the individual's personal liberty.

(3) The Federal Government and the States both have an obligation to ensure that public funds

are provided only to institutional programs, residential programs, and other community programs, including educational programs in which individuals with developmental disabilities participate, that—

(A) provide treatment, services, and habilitation that are appropriate to the needs of such individuals; and

(B) meet minimum standards relating to—

(i) provision of care that is free of abuse, neglect, sexual and financial exploitation, and violations of legal and human rights and that subjects individuals with developmental disabilities to no greater risk of harm than others in the general population;

(ii) provision to such individuals of appropriate and sufficient medical and dental services;

(iii) prohibition of the use of physical restraint and seclusion for such an individual unless absolutely necessary to ensure the immediate physical safety of the individual or others, and prohibition of the use of such restraint and seclusion as a punishment or as a substitute for a habilitation program;

(iv) prohibition of the excessive use of chemical restraints on such individuals and the use of such restraints as punishment or as a substitute for a habilitation program or in quantities that interfere with services, treatment, or habilitation for such individuals; and

(v) provision for close relatives or guardians of such individuals to visit the individuals without prior notice.

(4) All programs for individuals with developmental disabilities should meet standards—

(A) that are designed to assure the most favorable possible outcome for those served; and

(B)(i) in the case of residential programs serving individuals in need of comprehensive health-related, habilitative, assistive technology or rehabilitative services, that are at least equivalent to those standards applicable to intermediate care facilities for the mentally retarded, promulgated in regulations of the Secretary on June 3, 1988, as appropriate, taking into account the size of the institutions and the service delivery arrangements of the facilities of the programs;

(ii) in the case of other residential programs for individuals with developmental disabilities, that assure that—

(I) care is appropriate to the needs of the individuals being served by such programs;

(II) the individuals admitted to facilities of such programs are individuals whose needs can be met through services provided by such facilities; and

(III) the facilities of such programs provide for the humane care of the residents of the facilities, are sanitary, and protect their rights; and

(iii) in the case of nonresidential programs, that assure that the care provided by such programs is appropriate to the individuals served by the programs.

(b) Clarification

The rights of individuals with developmental disabilities described in findings made in this section shall be considered to be in addition to any constitutional or other rights otherwise afforded to all individuals.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §109, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1692.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "habilitation".*

PART B—FEDERAL ASSISTANCE TO STATE COUNCILS ON DEVELOPMENTAL DISABILITIES

§15021. Purpose

The purpose of this part is to provide for allotments to support State Councils on Developmental Disabilities (referred to individually in this part as a "Council") in each State to—

(1) engage in advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities that are consistent with the purpose described in section 15001(b) of this title and the policy described in section 15001(c) of this title; and

(2) contribute to a coordinated, consumer- and family-centered, consumer- and family-directed, comprehensive system of community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance that enable individuals with developmental disabilities to exercise self-determination, be independent, be productive, and be integrated and included in all facets of community life.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §121, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1693.)

§15022. State allotments

(a) Allotments

(1) In general

(A) Authority

For each fiscal year, the Secretary shall, in accordance with regulations and this paragraph, allot the sums appropriated for such year under section 15029 of this title among the States on the basis of—

(i) the population;

(ii) the extent of need for services for individuals with developmental disabilities; and

(iii) the financial need,

of the respective States.

(B) Use of funds

Sums allotted to the States under this section shall be used to pay for the Federal share of the cost of carrying out projects in accordance with State plans approved under section 15024 of this title for the provision under such plans of services for individuals with developmental disabilities.

(2) Adjustments

The Secretary may make adjustments in the amounts of State allotments based on clauses (i), (ii), and (iii) of paragraph (1)(A) not more often than annually. The Secretary shall notify each State of any adjustment made under this paragraph and the percentage of the total sums appropriated under section 15029 of this title that the adjusted allotment represents not later than 6 months before the beginning of the fiscal year in which such adjustment is to take effect.

(3) Minimum allotment for appropriations less than or equal to $70,000,000

(A) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (4), for any fiscal year the allotment under this section—

(i) to each of American Samoa, Guam, the United States Virgin Islands, or the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands may not be less than $210,000; and

(ii) to any State not described in clause (i) may not be less than $400,000, the amount received by the State for the previous year, or the amount of Federal appropriations received in fiscal year 2000, 2001, or 2002, whichever is greater.

(B) Reduction of allotment

Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), if the aggregate of the amounts to be allotted to the States pursuant to subparagraph (A) for any fiscal year exceeds the total amount appropriated under section 15029 of this title for such fiscal year, the amount to be allotted to each State for such

fiscal year shall be proportionately reduced.

(4) Minimum allotment for appropriations in excess of $70,000,000

(A) In general

In any case in which the total amount appropriated under section 15029 of this title for a fiscal year is more than $70,000,000, the allotment under this section for such fiscal year—

(i) to each of American Samoa, Guam, the United States Virgin Islands, or the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands may not be less than $220,000; and

(ii) to any State not described in clause (i) may not be less than $450,000, the amount received by the State for the previous year, or the amount of Federal appropriations received in fiscal year 2000, 2001, or 2002, whichever is greater.

(B) Reduction of allotment

The requirements of paragraph (3)(B) shall apply with respect to amounts to be allotted to States under subparagraph (A), in the same manner and to the same extent as such requirements apply with respect to amounts to be allotted to States under paragraph (3)(A).

(5) State supports, services, and other activities

In determining, for purposes of paragraph (1)(A)(ii), the extent of need in any State for services for individuals with developmental disabilities, the Secretary shall take into account the scope and extent of the services, supports, and assistance described, pursuant to section 15024(c)(3)(A) of this title, in the State plan of the State.

(6) Increase in allotments

In any year in which the total amount appropriated under section 15029 of this title for a fiscal year exceeds the total amount appropriated under such section (or a corresponding provision) for the preceding fiscal year by a percentage greater than the most recent percentage change in the Consumer Price Index published by the Secretary of Labor under section 720(c)(1) of title 29 (if the percentage change indicates an increase), the Secretary shall increase each of the minimum allotments described in paragraphs (3) and (4). The Secretary shall increase each minimum allotment by an amount that bears the same ratio to the amount of such minimum allotment (including any increases in such minimum allotment under this paragraph (or a corresponding provision) for prior fiscal years) as the amount that is equal to the difference between—

(A) the total amount appropriated under section 15029 of this title for the fiscal year for which the increase in the minimum allotment is being made; minus

(B) the total amount appropriated under section 15029 of this title (or a corresponding provision) for the immediately preceding fiscal year,

bears to the total amount appropriated under section 15029 of this title (or a corresponding provision) for such preceding fiscal year.

(b) Unobligated funds

Any amount paid to a State for a fiscal year and remaining unobligated at the end of such year shall remain available to such State for the next fiscal year for the purposes for which such amount was paid.

(c) Obligation of funds

For the purposes of this part, State Interagency Agreements are considered valid obligations for the purpose of obligating Federal funds allotted to the State under this part.

(d) Cooperative efforts between States

If a State plan approved in accordance with section 15024 of this title provides for cooperative or joint effort between or among States or agencies, public or private, in more than 1 State, portions of funds allotted to 1 or more States described in this subsection may be combined in accordance with the agreements between the States or agencies involved.

(e) Reallotments

(1) In general

If the Secretary determines that an amount of an allotment to a State for a period (of a fiscal year or longer) will not be required by the State during the period for the purpose for which the allotment was made, the Secretary may reallot the amount.

(2) Timing

The Secretary may make such a reallotment from time to time, on such date as the Secretary may fix, but not earlier than 30 days after the Secretary has published notice of the intention of the Secretary to make the reallotment in the Federal Register.

(3) Amounts

The Secretary shall reallot the amount to other States with respect to which the Secretary has not made that determination. The Secretary shall reallot the amount in proportion to the original allotments of the other States for such fiscal year, but shall reduce such proportionate amount for any of the other States to the extent the proportionate amount exceeds the sum that the Secretary estimates the State needs and will be able to use during such period.

(4) Reallotment of reductions

The Secretary shall similarly reallot the total of the reductions among the States whose proportionate amounts were not so reduced.

(5) Treatment

Any amount reallotted to a State under this subsection for a fiscal year shall be deemed to be a part of the allotment of the State under subsection (a) for such fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §122, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1693; Pub. L. 108–154, §3(a), Dec. 3, 2003, 117 Stat. 1934.)

AMENDMENTS

2003—Subsec. (a)(3)(A)(ii), (4)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 108–154 inserted before period at end ", the amount received by the State for the previous year, or the amount of Federal appropriations received in fiscal year 2000, 2001, or 2002, whichever is greater".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2003 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 108–154, §3(b), Dec. 3, 2003, 117 Stat. 1934, provided that: "The amendments made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 2003 and apply to allotments beginning in fiscal year 2004."

§15023. Payments to the States for planning, administration, and services

(a) State plan expenditures

From each State's allotments for a fiscal year under section 15022 of this title, the Secretary shall pay to the State the Federal share of the cost, other than the cost for construction, incurred during such year for activities carried out under the State plan approved under section 15024 of this title. The Secretary shall make such payments from time to time in advance on the basis of estimates by the Secretary of the sums the State will expend for the cost under the State plan. The Secretary shall make such adjustments as may be necessary to the payments on account of previously made underpayments or overpayments under this section.

(b) Designated State agency expenditures

The Secretary may make payments to a State for the portion described in section 15024(c)(5)(B)(vi) of this title in advance or by way of reimbursement, and in such installments as the Secretary may determine.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §123, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1696.)

§15024. State plan

(a) In general

Any State desiring to receive assistance under this part shall submit to the Secretary, and obtain approval of, a 5-year strategic State plan under this section.

(b) Planning cycle

The plan described in subsection (a) shall be updated as appropriate during the 5-year period.

(c) State plan requirements

In order to be approved by the Secretary under this section, a State plan shall meet each of the following requirements:

(1) State Council

The plan shall provide for the establishment and maintenance of a Council in accordance with section 15025 of this title and describe the membership of such Council.

(2) Designated State agency

The plan shall identify the agency or office within the State designated to support the Council in accordance with this section and section 15025(d) of this title (referred to in this part as a "designated State agency").

(3) Comprehensive review and analysis

The plan shall describe the results of a comprehensive review and analysis of the extent to which services, supports, and other assistance are available to individuals with developmental disabilities and their families, and the extent of unmet needs for services, supports, and other assistance for those individuals and their families, in the State. The results of the comprehensive review and analysis shall include—

(A) a description of the services, supports, and other assistance being provided to individuals with developmental disabilities and their families under other federally assisted State programs, plans, and policies under which the State operates and in which individuals with developmental disabilities are or may be eligible to participate, including particularly programs relating to the areas of emphasis, including—

(i) medical assistance, maternal and child health care, services for children with special health care needs, children's mental health services, comprehensive health and mental health services, and institutional care options;

(ii) job training, job placement, worksite accommodation, and vocational rehabilitation, and other work assistance programs; and

(iii) social, child welfare, aging, independent living, and rehabilitation and assistive technology services, and such other services as the Secretary may specify;

(B) a description of the extent to which agencies operating such other federally assisted State programs, including activities authorized under section 3003 or 3004 of title 29, pursue interagency initiatives to improve and enhance community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance for individuals with developmental disabilities;

(C) an analysis of the extent to which community services and opportunities related to the areas of emphasis directly benefit individuals with developmental disabilities, especially with regard to their ability to access and use services provided in their communities, to participate in opportunities, activities, and events offered in their communities, and to contribute to community life, identifying particularly—

(i) the degree of support for individuals with developmental disabilities that are attributable to either physical impairment, mental impairment, or a combination of physical and mental impairments;

(ii) criteria for eligibility for services, including specialized services and special adaptation

of generic services provided by agencies within the State, that may exclude individuals with developmental disabilities from receiving services described in this clause;

(iii) the barriers that impede full participation of members of unserved and underserved groups of individuals with developmental disabilities and their families;

(iv) the availability of assistive technology, assistive technology services, or rehabilitation technology, or information about assistive technology, assistive technology services, or rehabilitation technology to individuals with developmental disabilities;

(v) the numbers of individuals with developmental disabilities on waiting lists for services described in this subparagraph;

(vi) a description of the adequacy of current resources and projected availability of future resources to fund services described in this subparagraph;

(vii) a description of the adequacy of health care and other services, supports, and assistance that individuals with developmental disabilities who are in facilities receive (based in part on each independent review (pursuant to section 1396a(a)(30)(C) of this title) of an Intermediate Care Facility (Mental Retardation) within the State, which the State shall provide to the Council not later than 30 days after the availability of the review); and

(viii) to the extent that information is available, a description of the adequacy of health care and other services, supports, and assistance that individuals with developmental disabilities who are served through home and community-based waivers (authorized under section 1396n(c) of this title) receive;

(D) a description of how entities funded under parts C and D, through interagency agreements or other mechanisms, collaborated with the entity funded under this part in the State, each other, and other entities to contribute to the achievement of the purpose of this part; and

(E) the rationale for the goals related to advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change to be undertaken by the Council to contribute to the achievement of the purpose of this part.

(4) Plan goals

The plan shall focus on Council efforts to bring about the purpose of this part, by—

(A) specifying 5-year goals, as developed through data driven strategic planning, for advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change related to the areas of emphasis, to be undertaken by the Council, that—

(i) are derived from the unmet needs of individuals with developmental disabilities and their families identified under paragraph (3); and

(ii) include a goal, for each year of the grant, to—

(I) establish or strengthen a program for the direct funding of a State self-advocacy organization led by individuals with developmental disabilities;

(II) support opportunities for individuals with developmental disabilities who are considered leaders to provide leadership training to individuals with developmental disabilities who may become leaders; and

(III) support and expand participation of individuals with developmental disabilities in cross-disability and culturally diverse leadership coalitions; and

(B) for each year of the grant, describing—

(i) the goals to be achieved through the grant, which, beginning in fiscal year 2002, shall be consistent with applicable indicators of progress described in section 15004(a)(3) of this title;

(ii) the strategies to be used in achieving each goal; and

(iii) the method to be used to determine if each goal has been achieved.

(5) Assurances

(A) In general

The plan shall contain or be supported by assurances and information described in

subparagraphs (B) through (N) that are satisfactory to the Secretary.

(B) Use of funds

With respect to the funds paid to the State under section 15022 of this title, the plan shall provide assurances that—

(i) not less than 70 percent of such funds will be expended for activities related to the goals described in paragraph (4);

(ii) such funds will contribute to the achievement of the purpose of this part in various political subdivisions of the State;

(iii) such funds will be used to supplement, and not supplant, the non-Federal funds that would otherwise be made available for the purposes for which the funds paid under section 15022 of this title are provided;

(iv) such funds will be used to complement and augment rather than duplicate or replace services for individuals with developmental disabilities and their families who are eligible for Federal assistance under other State programs;

(v) part of such funds will be made available by the State to public or private entities;

(vi) at the request of any State, a portion of such funds provided to such State under this part for any fiscal year shall be available to pay up to ½ (or the entire amount if the Council is the designated State agency) of the expenditures found to be necessary by the Secretary for the proper and efficient exercise of the functions of the designated State agency, except that not more than 5 percent of such funds provided to such State for any fiscal year, or $50,000, whichever is less, shall be made available for total expenditures for such purpose by the designated State agency; and

(vii) not more than 20 percent of such funds will be allocated to the designated State agency for service demonstrations by such agency that—

(I) contribute to the achievement of the purpose of this part; and

(II) are explicitly authorized by the Council.

(C) State financial participation

The plan shall provide assurances that there will be reasonable State financial participation in the cost of carrying out the plan.

(D) Conflict of interest

The plan shall provide an assurance that no member of such Council will cast a vote on any matter that would provide direct financial benefit to the member or otherwise give the appearance of a conflict of interest.

(E) Urban and rural poverty areas

The plan shall provide assurances that special financial and technical assistance will be given to organizations that provide community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance to individuals with developmental disabilities who live in areas designated as urban or rural poverty areas.

(F) Program accessibility standards

The plan shall provide assurances that programs, projects, and activities funded under the plan, and the buildings in which such programs, projects, and activities are operated, will meet standards prescribed by the Secretary in regulations and all applicable Federal and State accessibility standards, including accessibility requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101 et seq.), section 794d of title 29, and the Fair Housing Act (42 U.S.C. 3601 et seq.).

(G) Individualized services

The plan shall provide assurances that any direct services provided to individuals with developmental disabilities and funded under the plan will be provided in an individualized manner, consistent with the unique strengths, resources, priorities, concerns, abilities, and capabilities of such individual.

(H) Human rights

The plan shall provide assurances that the human rights of the individuals with developmental disabilities (especially individuals without familial protection) who are receiving services under programs assisted under this part will be protected consistent with section 15009 of this title (relating to rights of individuals with developmental disabilities).

(I) Minority participation

The plan shall provide assurances that the State has taken affirmative steps to assure that participation in programs funded under this part is geographically representative of the State, and reflects the diversity of the State with respect to race and ethnicity.

(J) Employee protections

The plan shall provide assurances that fair and equitable arrangements (as determined by the Secretary after consultation with the Secretary of Labor) will be provided to protect the interests of employees affected by actions taken under the plan to provide community living activities, including arrangements designed to preserve employee rights and benefits and provide training and retraining of such employees where necessary, and arrangements under which maximum efforts will be made to guarantee the employment of such employees.

(K) Staff assignments

The plan shall provide assurances that the staff and other personnel of the Council, while working for the Council, will be responsible solely for assisting the Council in carrying out the duties of the Council under this part and will not be assigned duties by the designated State agency, or any other agency, office, or entity of the State.

(L) Noninterference

The plan shall provide assurances that the designated State agency, and any other agency, office, or entity of the State, will not interfere with the advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities, budget, personnel, State plan development, or plan implementation of the Council, except that the designated State agency shall have the authority necessary to carry out the responsibilities described in section 15025(d)(3) of this title.

(M) State quality assurance

The plan shall provide assurances that the Council will participate in the planning, design or redesign, and monitoring of State quality assurance systems that affect individuals with developmental disabilities.

(N) Other assurances

The plan shall contain such additional information and assurances as the Secretary may find necessary to carry out the provisions (including the purpose) of this part.

(d) Public input and review, submission, and approval

(1) Public input and review

The plan shall be based on public input. The Council shall make the plan available for public review and comment, after providing appropriate and sufficient notice in accessible formats of the opportunity for such review and comment. The Council shall revise the plan to take into account and respond to significant comments.

(2) Consultation with the designated State agency

Before the plan is submitted to the Secretary, the Council shall consult with the designated State agency to ensure that the State plan is consistent with State law and to obtain appropriate State plan assurances.

(3) Plan approval

The Secretary shall approve any State plan and, as appropriate, amendments of such plan that comply with the provisions of subsections (a), (b), and (c) and this subsection. The Secretary may

take final action to disapprove a State plan after providing reasonable notice and an opportunity for a hearing to the State.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §124, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1696; Pub. L. 108–364, §3(a)(1), Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1736.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, referred to in subsec. (c)(5)(F), is Pub. L. 101–336, July 26, 1990, 104 Stat. 327, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 126 (§12101 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 12101 of this title and Tables.

The Fair Housing Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(5)(F), is title VIII of Pub. L. 90–284, Apr. 11, 1968, 82 Stat. 81, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter I (§3601 et seq.) of chapter 45 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (c)(3)(B). Pub. L. 108–364 substituted "section 3003 or 3004 of title 29" for "section 3011 or 3012 of title 29".

§15025. State Councils on Developmental Disabilities and designated State agencies

(a) In general

Each State that receives assistance under this part shall establish and maintain a Council to undertake advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities (consistent with subsections (b) and (c) of section 15001 of this title) that contribute to a coordinated, consumer- and family-centered, consumer- and family-directed, comprehensive system of community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance that contribute to the achievement of the purpose of this part. The Council shall have the authority to fulfill the responsibilities described in subsection (c).

(b) Council membership

(1) Council appointments

(A) In general

The members of the Council of a State shall be appointed by the Governor of the State from among the residents of that State.

(B) Recommendations

The Governor shall select members of the Council, at the discretion of the Governor, after soliciting recommendations from organizations representing a broad range of individuals with developmental disabilities and individuals interested in individuals with developmental disabilities, including the non-State agency members of the Council. The Council may, at the initiative of the Council, or on the request of the Governor, coordinate Council and public input to the Governor regarding all recommendations.

(C) Representation

The membership of the Council shall be geographically representative of the State and reflect the diversity of the State with respect to race and ethnicity.

(2) Membership rotation

The Governor shall make appropriate provisions to rotate the membership of the Council. Such provisions shall allow members to continue to serve on the Council until such members'

successors are appointed. The Council shall notify the Governor regarding membership requirements of the Council, and shall notify the Governor when vacancies on the Council remain unfilled for a significant period of time.

(3) Representation of individuals with developmental disabilities

Not less than 60 percent of the membership of each Council shall consist of individuals who are—

(A)(i) individuals with developmental disabilities;

(ii) parents or guardians of children with developmental disabilities; or

(iii) immediate relatives or guardians of adults with mentally impairing developmental disabilities who cannot advocate for themselves; and

(B) not employees of a State agency that receives funds or provides services under this part, and who are not managing employees (as defined in section 1126(b) of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1320a–5(b)) of any other entity that receives funds or provides services under this part.

(4) Representation of agencies and organizations

(A) In general

Each Council shall include—

(i) representatives of relevant State entities, including—

(I) State entities that administer funds provided under Federal laws related to individuals with disabilities, including the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 701 et seq.), the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1400 et seq.), the Older Americans Act of 1965 (42 U.S.C. 3001 et seq.), and titles V and XIX of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 701 et seq. and 1396 et seq.);

(II) Centers in the State; and

(III) the State protection and advocacy system; and

(ii) representatives, at all times, of local and nongovernmental agencies, and private nonprofit groups concerned with services for individuals with developmental disabilities in the State in which such agencies and groups are located.

(B) Authority and limitations

The representatives described in subparagraph (A) shall—

(i) have sufficient authority to engage in policy planning and implementation on behalf of the department, agency, or program such representatives represent; and

(ii) recuse themselves from any discussion of grants or contracts for which such representatives' departments, agencies, or programs are grantees, contractors, or applicants and comply with the conflict of interest assurance requirement under section 15024(c)(5)(D) of this title.

(5) Composition of membership with developmental disabilities

Of the members of the Council described in paragraph (3)—

(A) 1/3 shall be individuals with developmental disabilities described in paragraph (3)(A)(i);

(B) 1/3 shall be parents or guardians of children with developmental disabilities described in paragraph (3)(A)(ii), or immediate relatives or guardians of adults with developmental disabilities described in paragraph (3)(A)(iii); and

(C) 1/3 shall be a combination of individuals described in paragraph (3)(A).

(6) Institutionalized individuals

(A) In general

Of the members of the Council described in paragraph (5), at least 1 shall be an immediate relative or guardian of an individual with a developmental disability who resides or previously resided in an institution or shall be an individual with a developmental disability who resides or

previously resided in an institution.

(B) Limitation

Subparagraph (A) shall not apply with respect to a State if such an individual does not reside in that State.

(c) Council responsibilities

(1) In general

A Council, through Council members, staff, consultants, contractors, or subgrantees, shall have the responsibilities described in paragraphs (2) through (10).

(2) Advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities

The Council shall serve as an advocate for individuals with developmental disabilities and conduct or support programs, projects, and activities that carry out the purpose of this part.

(3) Examination of goals

At the end of each grant year, each Council shall—

(A) determine the extent to which each goal of the Council was achieved for that year;

(B) determine to the extent that each goal was not achieved, the factors that impeded the achievement;

(C) determine needs that require amendment of the 5-year strategic State plan required under section 15024 of this title;

(D) separately determine the information on the self-advocacy goal described in section 15024(c)(4)(A)(ii) of this title; and

(E) determine customer satisfaction with Council supported or conducted activities.

(4) State plan development

The Council shall develop the State plan and submit the State plan to the Secretary after consultation with the designated State agency under the State plan. Such consultation shall be solely for the purposes of obtaining State assurances and ensuring consistency of the plan with State law.

(5) State plan implementation

(A) In general

The Council shall implement the State plan by conducting and supporting advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities such as those described in subparagraphs (B) through (L).

(B) Outreach

The Council may support and conduct outreach activities to identify individuals with developmental disabilities and their families who otherwise might not come to the attention of the Council and assist and enable the individuals and families to obtain services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance, including access to special adaptation of generic community services or specialized services.

(C) Training

The Council may support and conduct training for persons who are individuals with developmental disabilities, their families, and personnel (including professionals, paraprofessionals, students, volunteers, and other community members) to enable such persons to obtain access to, or to provide, community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance, including special adaptation of generic community services or specialized services for individuals with developmental disabilities and their families. To the extent that the Council supports or conducts training activities under this subparagraph, such activities shall contribute to the achievement of the purpose of this part.

(D) Technical assistance

The Council may support and conduct technical assistance activities to assist public and private entities to contribute to the achievement of the purpose of this part.

(E) Supporting and educating communities

The Council may support and conduct activities to assist neighborhoods and communities to respond positively to individuals with developmental disabilities and their families—

(i) by encouraging local networks to provide informal and formal supports;

(ii) through education; and

(iii) by enabling neighborhoods and communities to offer such individuals and their families access to and use of services, resources, and opportunities.

(F) Interagency collaboration and coordination

The Council may support and conduct activities to promote interagency collaboration and coordination to better serve, support, assist, or advocate for individuals with developmental disabilities and their families.

(G) Coordination with related councils, committees, and programs

The Council may support and conduct activities to enhance coordination of services with—

(i) other councils, entities, or committees, authorized by Federal or State law, concerning individuals with disabilities (such as the State interagency coordinating council established under part C of the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1431 et seq.), the State Rehabilitation Council and the Statewide Independent Living Council established under the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 701 et seq.), the State mental health planning council established under subtitle B [1] of title XIX of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 300x et seq.], and the activities authorized under section 3003 or 3004 of title 29, and entities carrying out other similar councils, entities, or committees);

(ii) parent training and information centers under part D of the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1451 et seq.) and other entities carrying out federally funded projects that assist parents of children with disabilities; and

(iii) other groups interested in advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities to benefit individuals with disabilities.

(H) Barrier elimination, systems design and redesign

The Council may support and conduct activities to eliminate barriers to access and use of community services by individuals with developmental disabilities, enhance systems design and redesign, and enhance citizen participation to address issues identified in the State plan.

(I) Coalition development and citizen participation

The Council may support and conduct activities to educate the public about the capabilities, preferences, and needs of individuals with developmental disabilities and their families and to develop and support coalitions that support the policy agenda of the Council, including training in self-advocacy, education of policymakers, and citizen leadership skills.

(J) Informing policymakers

The Council may support and conduct activities to provide information to policymakers by supporting and conducting studies and analyses, gathering information, and developing and disseminating model policies and procedures, information, approaches, strategies, findings, conclusions, and recommendations. The Council may provide the information directly to Federal, State, and local policymakers, including Congress, the Federal executive branch, the Governors, State legislatures, and State agencies, in order to increase the ability of such policymakers to offer opportunities and to enhance or adapt generic services to meet the needs of, or provide specialized services to, individuals with developmental disabilities and their families.

(K) Demonstration of new approaches to services and supports

(i) In general

The Council may support and conduct, on a time-limited basis, activities to demonstrate new approaches to serving individuals with developmental disabilities that are a part of an overall strategy for systemic change. The strategy may involve the education of policymakers and the public about how to deliver effectively, to individuals with developmental disabilities and their families, services, supports, and assistance that contribute to the achievement of the purpose of this part.

(ii) Sources of funding

The Council may carry out this subparagraph by supporting and conducting demonstration activities through sources of funding other than funding provided under this part, and by assisting entities conducting demonstration activities to develop strategies for securing funding from other sources.

(L) Other activities

The Council may support and conduct other advocacy, capacity building, and systemic change activities to promote the development of a coordinated, consumer- and family-centered, consumer- and family-directed, comprehensive system of community services, individualized supports, and other forms of assistance that contribute to the achievement of the purpose of this part.

(6) Review of designated State agency

The Council shall periodically review the designated State agency and activities carried out under this part by the designated State agency and make any recommendations for change to the Governor.

(7) Reports

Beginning in fiscal year 2002, the Council shall annually prepare and transmit to the Secretary a report. Each report shall be in a form prescribed by the Secretary by regulation under section 15004(b) of this title. Each report shall contain information about the progress made by the Council in achieving the goals of the Council (as specified in section 15024(c)(4) of this title), including—

(A) a description of the extent to which the goals were achieved;

(B) a description of the strategies that contributed to achieving the goals;

(C) to the extent to which the goals were not achieved, a description of factors that impeded the achievement;

(D) separate information on the self-advocacy goal described in section 15024(c)(4)(A)(ii) of this title;

(E)(i) as appropriate, an update on the results of the comprehensive review and analysis described in section 15024(c)(3) of this title; and

(ii) information on consumer satisfaction with Council supported or conducted activities;

(F)(i) a description of the adequacy of health care and other services, supports, and assistance that individuals with developmental disabilities in Intermediate Care Facilities (Mental Retardation) receive; and

(ii) a description of the adequacy of health care and other services, supports, and assistance that individuals with developmental disabilities served through home and community-based waivers (authorized under section 1915(c) of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1396n(c)) receive;

(G) an accounting of the manner in which funds paid to the State under this part for a fiscal year were expended;

(H) a description of—

(i) resources made available to carry out activities to assist individuals with developmental disabilities that are directly attributable to Council actions; and

(ii) resources made available for such activities that are undertaken by the Council in collaboration with other entities; and

(I) a description of the method by which the Council will widely disseminate the annual report to affected constituencies and the general public and will assure that the report is available in accessible formats.

(8) Budget

Each Council shall prepare, approve, and implement a budget using amounts paid to the State under this part to fund and implement all programs, projects, and activities carried out under this part, including—

(A)(i) conducting such hearings and forums as the Council may determine to be necessary to carry out the duties of the Council; and

(ii) as determined in Council policy—

(I) reimbursing members of the Council for reasonable and necessary expenses (including expenses for child care and personal assistance services) for attending Council meetings and performing Council duties;

(II) paying a stipend to a member of the Council, if such member is not employed or must forfeit wages from other employment, to attend Council meetings and perform other Council duties;

(III) supporting Council member and staff travel to authorized training and technical assistance activities including in-service training and leadership development activities; and

(IV) carrying out appropriate subcontracting activities;

(B) hiring and maintaining such numbers and types of staff (qualified by training and experience) and obtaining the services of such professional, consulting, technical, and clerical staff (qualified by training and experience), consistent with State law, as the Council determines to be necessary to carry out the functions of the Council under this part, except that such State shall not apply hiring freezes, reductions in force, prohibitions on travel, or other policies to the staff of the Council, to the extent that such policies would impact the staff or functions funded with Federal funds, or would prevent the Council from carrying out the functions of the Council under this part; and

(C) directing the expenditure of funds for grants, contracts, interagency agreements that are binding contracts, and other activities authorized by the State plan approved under section 15024 of this title.

(9) Staff hiring and supervision

The Council shall, consistent with State law, recruit and hire a Director of the Council, should the position of Director become vacant, and supervise and annually evaluate the Director. The Director shall hire, supervise, and annually evaluate the staff of the Council. Council recruitment, hiring, and dismissal of staff shall be conducted in a manner consistent with Federal and State nondiscrimination laws. Dismissal of personnel shall be conducted in a manner consistent with State law and personnel policies.

(10) Staff assignments

The staff of the Council, while working for the Council, shall be responsible solely for assisting the Council in carrying out the duties of the Council under this part and shall not be assigned duties by the designated State agency or any other agency or entity of the State.

(11) Construction

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to authorize a Council to direct, control, or exercise any policymaking authority or administrative authority over any program assisted under the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 701 et seq.) or the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1400 et seq.).

(d) Designated State agency

(1) In general

Each State that receives assistance under this part shall designate a State agency that shall, on

behalf of the State, provide support to the Council. After April 6, 1994, any designation of a State agency under this paragraph shall be made in accordance with the requirements of this subsection.

(2) Designation

(A) Type of agency

Except as provided in this subsection, the designated State agency shall be—

(i) the Council if such Council may be the designated State agency under the laws of the State;

(ii) a State agency that does not provide or pay for services for individuals with developmental disabilities; or

(iii) a State office, including the immediate office of the Governor of the State or a State planning office.

(B) Conditions for continuation of State service agency designation

(i) Designation before April 6, 1994

If a State agency that provides or pays for services for individuals with developmental disabilities was a designated State agency for purposes of part B of the Developmental Disabilities Assistance and Bill of Rights Act on April 6, 1994, and the Governor of the State (or the legislature, where appropriate and in accordance with State law) determines prior to June 30, 1994, not to change the designation of such agency, such agency may continue to be a designated State agency for purposes of this part.

(ii) Criteria for continued designation

The determination, at the discretion of the Governor (or the legislature, as the case may be), shall be made after—

(I) the Governor has considered the comments and recommendations of the general public and a majority of the non-State agency members of the Council with respect to the designation of such State agency; and

(II) the Governor (or the legislature, as the case may be) has made an independent assessment that the designation of such agency will not interfere with the budget, personnel, priorities, or other action of the Council, and the ability of the Council to serve as an independent advocate for individuals with developmental disabilities.

(C) Review of designation

The Council may request a review of and change in the designation of the designated State agency by the Governor (or the legislature, as the case may be). The Council shall provide documentation concerning the reason the Council desires a change to be made and make a recommendation to the Governor (or the legislature, as the case may be) regarding a preferred designated State agency.

(D) Appeal of designation

After the review is completed under subparagraph (C), a majority of the non-State agency members of the Council may appeal to the Secretary for a review of and change in the designation of the designated State agency if the ability of the Council to serve as an independent advocate is not assured because of the actions or inactions of the designated State agency.

(3) Responsibilities

(A) In general

The designated State agency shall, on behalf of the State, have the responsibilities described in subparagraphs (B) through (G).

(B) Support services

The designated State agency shall provide required assurances and support services as requested by and negotiated with the Council.

(C) Fiscal responsibilities

The designated State agency shall—

(i) receive, account for, and disburse funds under this part based on the State plan required in section 15024 of this title; and

(ii) provide for such fiscal control and fund accounting procedures as may be necessary to assure the proper disbursement of, and accounting for, funds paid to the State under this part.

(D) Records, access, and financial reports

The designated State agency shall keep and provide access to such records as the Secretary and the Council may determine to be necessary. The designated State agency, if other than the Council, shall provide timely financial reports at the request of the Council regarding the status of expenditures, obligations, and liquidation by the agency or the Council, and the use of the Federal and non-Federal shares described in section 15026 of this title, by the agency or the Council.

(E) Non-Federal share

The designated State agency, if other than the Council, shall provide the required non-Federal share described in section 15026(c) of this title.

(F) Assurances

The designated State agency shall assist the Council in obtaining the appropriate State plan assurances and in ensuring that the plan is consistent with State law.

(G) Memorandum of understanding

On the request of the Council, the designated State agency shall enter into a memorandum of understanding with the Council delineating the roles and responsibilities of the designated State agency.

(4) Use of funds for designated State agency responsibilities

(A) Condition for Federal funding

(i) In general

The Secretary shall provide amounts to a State under section 15024(c)(5)(B)(vi) of this title for a fiscal year only if the State expends an amount from State sources for carrying out the responsibilities of the designated State agency under paragraph (3) for the fiscal year that is not less than the total amount the State expended from such sources for carrying out similar responsibilities for the previous fiscal year.

(ii) Exception

Clause (i) shall not apply in a year in which the Council is the designated State agency.

(B) Support services provided by other agencies

With the agreement of the designated State agency, the Council may use or contract with agencies other than the designated State agency to perform the functions of the designated State agency.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §125, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1701; Pub. L. 108–364, §3(a)(2), Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1736; Pub. L. 108–446, title III, §305(n)(1), Dec. 3, 2004, 118 Stat. 2806.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Rehabilitation Act of 1973, referred to in subsecs. (b)(4)(A)(i)(I) and (c)(5)(G)(i), (11), is Pub. L. 93–112, Sept. 26, 1973, 87 Stat. 355, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 16 (§701 et seq.) of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 701 of Title 29 and Tables.

The Individuals with Disabilities Education Act, referred to in subsecs. (b)(4)(A)(i)(I) and (c)(5)(G)(i), (ii), (11), is title VI of Pub. L. 91–230, Apr. 13, 1970, 84 Stat. 175, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 33 (§1400 et seq.) of Title 20, Education. Part C of the Act is classified generally to subchapter III (§1431 et seq.) of chapter 33 of Title 20. Part D of the Act is classified generally to subchapter IV (§1450 et

seq.) of chapter 33 of Title 20. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1400 of Title 20 and Tables.

The Older Americans Act of 1965, referred to in subsec. (b)(4)(A)(i)(I), is Pub. L. 89–73, July 14, 1965, 79 Stat. 218, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 35 (§3001 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3001 of this title and Tables.

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(4)(A)(i)(I), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620, as amended. Titles V and XIX of the Act are classified generally to subchapters V (§701 et seq.) and XIX (§1396 et seq.), respectively, of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

The Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(5)(G)(i), is act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682, as amended. The reference to subtitle B of title XIX of the Act probably means part B of title XIX of the Act which is classified generally to part B (§300x et seq.) of subchapter XVII of chapter 6A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

The Developmental Disabilities Assistance and Bill of Rights Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(B)(i), is title I of Pub. L. 88–164, as added by Pub. L. 98–527, §2, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2662, as amended, which was repealed by Pub. L. 106–402, title IV, §401(a), Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1737. Part B of the Act was classified generally to subchapter II (§6021 et seq.) of chapter 75 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (c)(5)(G)(i). Pub. L. 108–446 substituted "part C" for "subtitle C".
Pub. L. 108–364 substituted "section 3003 or 3004 of title 29" for "section 3011 or 3012 of title 29".

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§15026. Federal and non-Federal share

(a) Aggregate cost

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraphs (2) and (3), the Federal share of the cost of all projects in a State supported by an allotment to the State under this part may not be more than 75 percent of the aggregate necessary cost of such projects, as determined by the Secretary.

(2) Urban or rural poverty areas

In the case of projects whose activities or products target individuals with developmental disabilities who live in urban or rural poverty areas, as determined by the Secretary, the Federal share of the cost of all such projects may not be more than 90 percent of the aggregate necessary cost of such projects, as determined by the Secretary.

(3) State plan activities

In the case of projects undertaken by the Council or Council staff to implement State plan activities, the Federal share of the cost of all such projects may be not more than 100 percent of the aggregate necessary cost of such activities.

(b) Nonduplication

In determining the amount of any State's Federal share of the cost of such projects incurred by such State under a State plan approved under section 15024 of this title, the Secretary shall not consider—

(1) any portion of such cost that is financed by Federal funds provided under any provision of law other than section 15022 of this title; and

(2) the amount of any non-Federal funds required to be expended as a condition of receipt of the Federal funds described in paragraph (1).

(c) Non-Federal share

(1) In-kind contributions

The non-Federal share of the cost of any project supported by an allotment under this part may be provided in cash or in kind, fairly evaluated, including plant, equipment, or services.

(2) Contributions of political subdivisions and public or private entities

(A) In general

Contributions to projects by a political subdivision of a State or by a public or private entity under an agreement with the State shall, subject to such limitations and conditions as the Secretary may by regulation prescribe under section 15004(b) of this title, be considered to be contributions by such State, in the case of a project supported under this part.

(B) State contributions

State contributions, including contributions by the designated State agency to provide support services to the Council pursuant to section 15025(d)(4) of this title, may be counted as part of such State's non-Federal share of the cost of projects supported under this part.

(3) Variations of the non-Federal share

The non-Federal share required of each recipient of a grant from a Council under this part may vary.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §126, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1710.)

§15027. Withholding of payments for planning, administration, and services

Whenever the Secretary, after providing reasonable notice and an opportunity for a hearing to the Council and the designated State agency, finds that—

(1) the Council or agency has failed to comply substantially with any of the provisions required by section 15024 of this title to be included in the State plan, particularly provisions required by paragraphs (4)(A) and (5)(B)(vii) of section 15024(c) of this title, or with any of the provisions required by section 15025(b)(3) of this title; or

(2) the Council or agency has failed to comply substantially with any regulations of the Secretary that are applicable to this part,

the Secretary shall notify such Council and agency that the Secretary will not make further payments to the State under section 15022 of this title (or, in the discretion of the Secretary, that further payments to the State under section 15022 of this title for activities for which there is such failure), until the Secretary is satisfied that there will no longer be such failure. Until the Secretary is so satisfied, the Secretary shall make no further payments to the State under section 15022 of this title, or shall limit further payments under section 15022 of this title to such State to activities for which there is no such failure.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §127, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1711.)

§15028. Appeals by States

(a) Appeal

If any State is dissatisfied with the Secretary's action under section 15024(d)(3) or 15027 of this title, such State may appeal to the United States court of appeals for the circuit in which such State is located, by filing a petition with such court not later than 60 days after such action.

(b) Filing

The clerk of the court shall transmit promptly a copy of the petition to the Secretary, or any officer designated by the Secretary for that purpose. The Secretary shall file promptly with the court the record of the proceedings on which the Secretary based the action, as provided in section 2112 of

title 28.

(c) Jurisdiction

Upon the filing of the petition, the court shall have jurisdiction to affirm the action of the Secretary or to set the action aside, in whole or in part, temporarily or permanently. Until the filing of the record, the Secretary may modify or set aside the order of the Secretary relating to the action.

(d) Findings and remand

The findings of the Secretary about the facts, if supported by substantial evidence, shall be conclusive, but the court, for good cause shown, may remand the case involved to the Secretary for further proceedings to take further evidence. On remand, the Secretary may make new or modified findings of fact and may modify the previous action of the Secretary, and shall file with the court the record of the further proceedings. Such new or modified findings of fact shall likewise be conclusive if supported by substantial evidence.

(e) Finality

The judgment of the court affirming or setting aside, in whole or in part, any action of the Secretary shall be final, subject to review by the Supreme Court of the United States upon certiorari or certification as provided in section 1254 of title 28.

(f) Effect

The commencement of proceedings under this section shall not, unless so specifically ordered by a court, operate as a stay of the Secretary's action.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §128, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1711.)

§15029. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Funding for State allotments

Except as described in subsection (b), there are authorized to be appropriated for allotments under section 15022 of this title $76,000,000 for fiscal year 2001 and such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2002 through 2007.

(b) Reservation for technical assistance

(1) Lower appropriation years

For any fiscal year for which the amount appropriated under subsection (a) is less than $76,000,000, the Secretary shall reserve funds in accordance with section 15083(c) of this title to provide technical assistance to entities funded under this part.

(2) Higher appropriation years

For any fiscal year for which the amount appropriated under subsection (a) is not less than $76,000,000, the Secretary shall reserve not less than $300,000 and not more than 1 percent of the amount appropriated under subsection (a) to provide technical assistance to entities funded under this part.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §129, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1712.)

PART C—PROTECTION AND ADVOCACY OF INDIVIDUAL RIGHTS

§15041. Purpose

The purpose of this part is to provide for allotments to support a protection and advocacy system (referred to in this part as a "system") in each State to protect the legal and human rights of

individuals with developmental disabilities in accordance with this part.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §141, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1712.)

§15042. Allotments and payments

(a) Allotments

(1) In general

To assist States in meeting the requirements of section 15043(a) of this title, the Secretary shall allot to the States the amounts appropriated under section 15045 of this title and not reserved under paragraph (6). Allotments and reallotments of such sums shall be made on the same basis as the allotments and reallotments are made under subsections (a)(1)(A) and (e) of section 15022 of this title, except as provided in paragraph (2).

(2) Minimum allotments

In any case in which—

(A) the total amount appropriated under section 15045 of this title for a fiscal year is not less than $20,000,000, the allotment under paragraph (1) for such fiscal year—

(i) to each of American Samoa, Guam, the United States Virgin Islands, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands may not be less than $107,000; and

(ii) to any State not described in clause (i) may not be less than $200,000; or

(B) the total amount appropriated under section 15045 of this title for a fiscal year is less than $20,000,000, the allotment under paragraph (1) for such fiscal year—

(i) to each of American Samoa, Guam, the United States Virgin Islands, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands may not be less than $80,000; and

(ii) to any State not described in clause (i) may not be less than $150,000.

(3) Reduction of allotment

Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2), if the aggregate of the amounts to be allotted to the States pursuant to such paragraphs for any fiscal year exceeds the total amount appropriated for such allotments under section 15045 of this title for such fiscal year, the amount to be allotted to each State for such fiscal year shall be proportionately reduced.

(4) Increase in allotments

In any year in which the total amount appropriated under section 15045 of this title for a fiscal year exceeds the total amount appropriated under such section (or a corresponding provision) for the preceding fiscal year by a percentage greater than the most recent percentage change in the Consumer Price Index published by the Secretary of Labor under section 720(c)(1) of title 29 (if the percentage change indicates an increase), the Secretary shall increase each of the minimum allotments described in subparagraphs (A) and (B) of paragraph (2). The Secretary shall increase each minimum allotment by an amount that bears the same ratio to the amount of such minimum allotment (including any increases in such minimum allotment under this paragraph (or a corresponding provision) for prior fiscal years) as the amount that is equal to the difference between—

(A) the total amount appropriated under section 15045 of this title for the fiscal year for which the increase in the minimum allotment is being made; minus

(B) the total amount appropriated under section 15045 of this title (or a corresponding provision) for the immediately preceding fiscal year,

bears to the total amount appropriated under section 15045 of this title (or a corresponding provision) for such preceding fiscal year.

(5) Monitoring the administration of the system

In a State in which the system is housed in a State agency, the State may use not more than 5 percent of any allotment under this subsection for the costs of monitoring the administration of the system required under section 15043(a) of this title.

(6) Technical assistance and American Indian consortium

In any case in which the total amount appropriated under section 15045 of this title for a fiscal year is more than $24,500,000, the Secretary shall—

(A) use not more than 2 percent of the amount appropriated to provide technical assistance to eligible systems with respect to activities carried out under this part (consistent with requests by such systems for such assistance for the year); and

(B) provide a grant in accordance with section 15043(b) of this title, and in an amount described in paragraph (2)(A)(i), to an American Indian consortium to provide protection and advocacy services.

(b) Payment to systems

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary shall pay directly to any system in a State that complies with the provisions of this part the amount of the allotment made for the State under this section, unless the system specifies otherwise.

(c) Unobligated funds

Any amount paid to a system under this part for a fiscal year and remaining unobligated at the end of such year shall remain available to such system for the next fiscal year, for the purposes for which such amount was paid.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §142, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1712.)

§15043. System required

(a) System required

In order for a State to receive an allotment under part B or this part—

(1) the State shall have in effect a system to protect and advocate the rights of individuals with developmental disabilities;

(2) such system shall—

(A) have the authority to—

(i) pursue legal, administrative, and other appropriate remedies or approaches to ensure the protection of, and advocacy for, the rights of such individuals within the State who are or who may be eligible for treatment, services, or habilitation, or who are being considered for a change in living arrangements, with particular attention to members of ethnic and racial minority groups; and

(ii) provide information on and referral to programs and services addressing the needs of individuals with developmental disabilities;

(B) have the authority to investigate incidents of abuse and neglect of individuals with developmental disabilities if the incidents are reported to the system or if there is probable cause to believe that the incidents occurred;

(C) on an annual basis, develop, submit to the Secretary, and take action with regard to goals (each of which is related to 1 or more areas of emphasis) and priorities, developed through data driven strategic planning, for the system's activities;

(D) on an annual basis, provide to the public, including individuals with developmental disabilities attributable to either physical impairment, mental impairment, or a combination of physical and mental impairment, and their representatives, and as appropriate, non-State agency representatives of the State Councils on Developmental Disabilities, and Centers, in the State, an opportunity to comment on—

(i) the goals and priorities established by the system and the rationale for the establishment

of such goals; and

(ii) the activities of the system, including the coordination of services with the entities carrying out advocacy programs under the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 701 et seq.), the Older Americans Act of 1965 (42 U.S.C. 3001 et seq.), and the Protection and Advocacy for Mentally Ill Individuals Act of 1986 [1] (42 U.S.C. 10801 et seq.), and with entities carrying out other related programs, including the parent training and information centers funded under the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1400 et seq.), and activities authorized under section 3003 or 3004 of title 29;

(E) establish a grievance procedure for clients or prospective clients of the system to ensure that individuals with developmental disabilities have full access to services of the system;

(F) not be administered by the State Council on Developmental Disabilities;

(G) be independent of any agency that provides treatment, services, or habilitation to individuals with developmental disabilities;

(H) have access at reasonable times to any individual with a developmental disability in a location in which services, supports, and other assistance are provided to such an individual, in order to carry out the purpose of this part;

(I) have access to all records of—

(i) any individual with a developmental disability who is a client of the system if such individual, or the legal guardian, conservator, or other legal representative of such individual, has authorized the system to have such access;

(ii) any individual with a developmental disability, in a situation in which—

(I) the individual, by reason of such individual's mental or physical condition, is unable to authorize the system to have such access;

(II) the individual does not have a legal guardian, conservator, or other legal representative, or the legal guardian of the individual is the State; and

(III) a complaint has been received by the system about the individual with regard to the status or treatment of the individual or, as a result of monitoring or other activities, there is probable cause to believe that such individual has been subject to abuse or neglect; and

(iii) any individual with a developmental disability, in a situation in which—

(I) the individual has a legal guardian, conservator, or other legal representative;

(II) a complaint has been received by the system about the individual with regard to the status or treatment of the individual or, as a result of monitoring or other activities, there is probable cause to believe that such individual has been subject to abuse or neglect;

(III) such representative has been contacted by such system, upon receipt of the name and address of such representative;

(IV) such system has offered assistance to such representative to resolve the situation; and

(V) such representative has failed or refused to act on behalf of the individual;

(J)(i) have access to the records of individuals described in subparagraphs (B) and (I), and other records that are relevant to conducting an investigation, under the circumstances described in those subparagraphs, not later than 3 business days after the system makes a written request for the records involved; and

(ii) have immediate access, not later than 24 hours after the system makes such a request, to the records without consent from another party, in a situation in which services, supports, and other assistance are provided to an individual with a developmental disability—

(I) if the system determines there is probable cause to believe that the health or safety of the individual is in serious and immediate jeopardy; or

(II) in any case of death of an individual with a developmental disability;

(K) hire and maintain sufficient numbers and types of staff (qualified by training and

experience) to carry out such system's functions, except that the State involved shall not apply hiring freezes, reductions in force, prohibitions on travel, or other policies to the staff of the system, to the extent that such policies would impact the staff or functions of the system funded with Federal funds or would prevent the system from carrying out the functions of the system under this part;

(L) have the authority to educate policymakers; and

(M) provide assurances to the Secretary that funds allotted to the State under section 15042 of this title will be used to supplement, and not supplant, the non-Federal funds that would otherwise be made available for the purposes for which the allotted funds are provided;

(3) to the extent that information is available, the State shall provide to the system—

(A) a copy of each independent review, pursuant to section 1396a(a)(30)(C) of this title, of an Intermediate Care Facility (Mental Retardation) within the State, not later than 30 days after the availability of such a review; and

(B) information about the adequacy of health care and other services, supports, and assistance that individuals with developmental disabilities who are served through home and community-based waivers (authorized under section 1396n(c) of this title) receive; and

(4) the agency implementing the system shall not be redesignated unless—

(A) there is good cause for the redesignation;

(B) the State has given the agency notice of the intention to make such redesignation, including notice regarding the good cause for such redesignation, and given the agency an opportunity to respond to the assertion that good cause has been shown;

(C) the State has given timely notice and an opportunity for public comment in an accessible format to individuals with developmental disabilities or their representatives; and

(D) the system has an opportunity to appeal the redesignation to the Secretary, on the basis that the redesignation was not for good cause.

(b) American Indian consortium

Upon application to the Secretary, an American Indian consortium established to provide protection and advocacy services under this part, shall receive funding pursuant to section 15042(a)(6) of this title to provide the services. Such consortium shall be considered to be a system for purposes of this part and shall coordinate the services with other systems serving the same geographic area. The tribal council that designates the consortium shall carry out the responsibilities and exercise the authorities specified for a State in this part, with regard to the consortium.

(c) Record

In this section, the term "record" includes—

(1) a report prepared or received by any staff at any location at which services, supports, or other assistance is provided to individuals with developmental disabilities;

(2) a report prepared by an agency or staff person charged with investigating reports of incidents of abuse or neglect, injury, or death occurring at such location, that describes such incidents and the steps taken to investigate such incidents; and

(3) a discharge planning record.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §143, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1714; Pub. L. 108–364, §3(a)(3), Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1736.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Rehabilitation Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(D)(ii), is Pub. L. 93–112, Sept. 26, 1973, 87 Stat. 355, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 16 (§701 et seq.) of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 701 of Title 29 and Tables.

The Older Americans Act of 1965, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(D)(ii), is Pub. L. 89–73, July 14, 1965, 79 Stat. 218, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 35 (§3001 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3001 of this title and Tables.

The Protection and Advocacy for Mentally Ill Individuals Act of 1986, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(D)(ii), was Pub. L. 99–319, May 23, 1986, 100 Stat. 478, as amended. Pub. L. 99–319 was renamed the Protection and Advocacy for Individuals with Mental Illness Act by Pub. L. 106–310, div. B, title XXXII, §3206(a), Oct. 17, 2000, 114 Stat. 1193, and is classified generally to chapter 114 (§10801 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 10801 of this title and Tables.

The Individuals with Disabilities Education Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(D)(ii), is title VI of Pub. L. 91–230, Apr. 13, 1970, 84 Stat. 175, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 33 (§1400 et seq.) of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1400 of Title 20 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (a)(2)(D)(ii). Pub. L. 108–364 substituted "section 3003 or 3004 of title 29" for "section 3011 or 3012 of title 29".

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§15044. Administration

(a) Governing board

In a State in which the system described in section 15043 of this title is organized as a private nonprofit entity with a multimember governing board, or a public system with a multimember governing board, such governing board shall be selected according to the policies and procedures of the system, except that—

(1)(A) the governing board shall be composed of members who broadly represent or are knowledgeable about the needs of the individuals served by the system;

(B) a majority of the members of the board shall be—

(i) individuals with disabilities, including individuals with developmental disabilities, who are eligible for services, or have received or are receiving services through the system; or

(ii) parents, family members, guardians, advocates, or authorized representatives of individuals referred to in clause (i); and

(C) the board may include a representative of the State Council on Developmental Disabilities, the Centers in the State, and the self-advocacy organization described in section 15024(c)(4)(A)(ii)(I) of this title;

(2) not more than 1/3 of the members of the governing board may be appointed by the chief executive officer of the State involved, in the case of any State in which such officer has the authority to appoint members of the board;

(3) the membership of the governing board shall be subject to term limits set by the system to ensure rotating membership;

(4) any vacancy in the board shall be filled not later than 60 days after the date on which the vacancy occurs; and

(5) in a State in which the system is organized as a public system without a multimember governing or advisory board, the system shall establish an advisory council—

(A) that shall advise the system on policies and priorities to be carried out in protecting and advocating the rights of individuals with developmental disabilities; and

(B) on which a majority of the members shall be—

(i) individuals with developmental disabilities who are eligible for services, or have received or are receiving services, through the system; or

(ii) parents, family members, guardians, advocates, or authorized representatives of individuals referred to in clause (i).

(b) Legal action

(1) In general

Nothing in this subchapter shall preclude a system from bringing a suit on behalf of individuals with developmental disabilities against a State, or an agency or instrumentality of a State.

(2) Use of amounts from judgment

An amount received pursuant to a suit described in paragraph (1) through a court judgment may only be used by the system to further the purpose of this part and shall not be used to augment payments to legal contractors or to award personal bonuses.

(3) Limitation

The system shall use assistance provided under this part in a manner consistent with section 14404 of this title.

(c) Disclosure of information

For purposes of any periodic audit, report, or evaluation required under this part, the Secretary shall not require an entity carrying out a program to disclose the identity of, or any other personally identifiable information related to, any individual requesting assistance under such program.

(d) Public notice of Federal onsite review

The Secretary shall provide advance public notice of any Federal programmatic or administrative onsite review of a system conducted under this part and solicit public comment on the system through such notice. The Secretary shall prepare an onsite visit report containing the results of such review, which shall be distributed to the Governor of the State and to other interested public and private parties. The comments received in response to the public comment solicitation notice shall be included in the onsite visit report.

(e) Reports

Beginning in fiscal year 2002, each system established in a State pursuant to this part shall annually prepare and transmit to the Secretary a report that describes the activities, accomplishments, and expenditures of the system during the preceding fiscal year, including a description of the system's goals, the extent to which the goals were achieved, barriers to their achievement, the process used to obtain public input, the nature of such input, and how such input was used.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §144, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1717.)

§15045. Authorization of appropriations

For allotments under section 15042 of this title, there are authorized to be appropriated $32,000,000 for fiscal year 2001 and such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2002 through 2007.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §145, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1718.)

PART D—NATIONAL NETWORK OF UNIVERSITY CENTERS FOR EXCELLENCE IN DEVELOPMENTAL DISABILITIES EDUCATION, RESEARCH, AND SERVICE

§15061. Grant authority

(a) National network

From appropriations authorized under section 15066(a)(1) of this title, the Secretary shall make 5-year grants to entities in each State designated as University Centers for Excellence in Developmental Disabilities Education, Research, and Service to carry out activities described in section 15063(a) of this title.

(b) National training initiatives

From appropriations authorized under section 15066(a)(1) of this title and reserved under section 15066(a)(2) of this title, the Secretary shall make grants to Centers to carry out activities described in section 15063(b) of this title.

(c) Technical assistance

From appropriations authorized under section 15066(a)(1) of this title and reserved under section 15066(a)(3) of this title (or from funds reserved under section 15083 of this title, as appropriate), the Secretary shall enter into 1 or more cooperative agreements or contracts for the purpose of providing technical assistance described in section 15063(c) of this title.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §151, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1719.)

§15062. Grant awards

(a) Existing Centers

(1) In general

In awarding and distributing grant funds under section 15061(a)of this title for a fiscal year, the Secretary, subject to the availability of appropriations and the condition specified in subsection (d), shall award and distribute grant funds in equal amounts of $500,000 (adjusted in accordance with subsection (b)), to each Center that existed during the preceding fiscal year and that meets the requirements of this part, prior to making grants under subsection (c) or (d).

(2) Reduction of award

Notwithstanding paragraph (1), if the aggregate of the funds to be awarded to the Centers pursuant to paragraph (1) for any fiscal year exceeds the total amount appropriated under section 15066 of this title for such fiscal year, the amount to be awarded to each Center for such fiscal year shall be proportionately reduced.

(b) Adjustments

Subject to the availability of appropriations, for any fiscal year following a year in which each Center described in subsection (a) received a grant award of not less than $500,000 under subsection (a) (adjusted in accordance with this subsection), the Secretary shall adjust the awards to take into account the most recent percentage change in the Consumer Price Index published by the Secretary of Labor under section 720(c)(1) of title 29 (if the percentage change indicates an increase), prior to making grants under subsection (c) or (d).

(c) National training initiatives on critical and emerging needs

Subject to the availability of appropriations, for any fiscal year in which each Center described in subsection (a) receives a grant award of not less than $500,000, under subsection (a) (adjusted in accordance with subsection (b)), after making the grant awards, the Secretary shall make grants under section 15061(b) of this title to Centers to pay for the Federal share of the cost of training initiatives related to the unmet needs of individuals with developmental disabilities and their families, as described in section 15063(b) of this title.

(d) Additional grants

For any fiscal year in which each Center described in subsection (a) receives a grant award of not less than $500,000 under subsection (a) (adjusted in accordance with subsection (b)), after making the grant awards, the Secretary may make grants under section 15061(a) of this title for activities described in section 15063(a) of this title to additional Centers, or additional grants to Centers, for States or populations that are unserved or underserved by Centers due to such factors as—

(1) population;

(2) a high concentration of rural or urban areas; or

(3) a high concentration of unserved or underserved populations.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §152, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1719.)

§15063. Purpose and scope of activities

(a) National network of University Centers for Excellence in Developmental Disabilities Education, Research, and Service

(1) In general

In order to provide leadership in, advise Federal, State, and community policymakers about, and promote opportunities for individuals with developmental disabilities to exercise self-determination, be independent, be productive, and be integrated and included in all facets of community life, the Secretary shall award grants to eligible entities designated as Centers in each State to pay for the Federal share of the cost of the administration and operation of the Centers. The Centers shall be interdisciplinary education, research, and public service units of universities (as defined by the Secretary) or public or not-for-profit entities associated with universities that engage in core functions, described in paragraph (2), addressing, directly or indirectly, 1 or more of the areas of emphasis.

(2) Core functions

The core functions referred to in paragraph (1) shall include the following:

(A) Provision of interdisciplinary pre-service preparation and continuing education of students and fellows, which may include the preparation and continuing education of leadership, direct service, clinical, or other personnel to strengthen and increase the capacity of States and communities to achieve the purpose of this subchapter.

(B) Provision of community services—

(i) that provide training or technical assistance for individuals with developmental disabilities, their families, professionals, paraprofessionals, policymakers, students, and other members of the community; and

(ii) that may provide services, supports, and assistance for the persons described in clause (i) through demonstration and model activities.

(C) Conduct of research, which may include basic or applied research, evaluation, and the analysis of public policy in areas that affect or could affect, either positively or negatively, individuals with developmental disabilities and their families.

(D) Dissemination of information related to activities undertaken to address the purpose of this subchapter, especially dissemination of information that demonstrates that the network authorized under this part is a national and international resource that includes specific substantive areas of expertise that may be accessed and applied in diverse settings and circumstances.

(b) National training initiatives on critical and emerging needs

(1) Supplemental grants

After consultation with relevant, informed sources, including individuals with developmental disabilities and their families, the Secretary shall award, under section 15061(b) of this title, supplemental grants to Centers to pay for the Federal share of the cost of training initiatives related to the unmet needs of individuals with developmental disabilities and their families. The Secretary shall make the grants on a competitive basis, and for periods of not more than 5 years.

(2) Establishment of consultation process by the Secretary

Not later than 1 year after October 30, 2000, the Secretary shall establish a consultation process that, on an ongoing basis, allows the Secretary to identify and address, through supplemental grants authorized under paragraph (1), training initiatives related to the unmet needs of individuals with developmental disabilities and their families.

(c) Technical assistance

In order to strengthen and support the national network of Centers, the Secretary may enter into 1 or more cooperative agreements or contracts to—

(1) assist in national and international dissemination of specific information from multiple Centers and, in appropriate cases, other entities whose work affects the lives of individuals with developmental disabilities;

(2) compile, analyze, and disseminate state-of-the-art training, research, and demonstration results policies, and practices from multiple Centers and, in appropriate cases, other entities whose work affects the lives of persons with developmental disabilities;

(3) convene experts from multiple Centers to discuss and make recommendations with regard to national emerging needs of individuals with developmental disabilities;

(4)(A) develop portals that link users with every Center's website; and

(B) facilitate electronic information sharing using state-of-the-art Internet technologies such as real-time online discussions, multipoint video conferencing, and web-based audio/video broadcasts, on emerging topics that impact individuals with disabilities and their families;

(5) serve as a research-based resource for Federal and State policymakers on information concerning and issues impacting individuals with developmental disabilities and entities that assist or serve those individuals; or

(6) undertake any other functions that the Secretary determines to be appropriate;

to promote the viability and use of the resources and expertise of the Centers nationally and internationally.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §153, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1720.)

§15064. Applications

(a) Applications for core Center grants

(1) In general

To be eligible to receive a grant under section 15061(a) of this title for a Center, an entity shall submit to the Secretary, and obtain approval of, an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information, as the Secretary may require.

(2) Application contents

Each application described in paragraph (1) shall describe a 5-year plan, including a projected goal related to 1 or more areas of emphasis for each of the core functions described in section 15063(a) of this title.

(3) Assurances

The application shall be approved by the Secretary only if the application contains or is supported by reasonable assurances that the entity designated as the Center will—

(A) meet regulatory standards as established by the Secretary for Centers;

(B) address the projected goals, and carry out goal-related activities, based on data driven strategic planning and in a manner consistent with the objectives of this part, that—

(i) are developed in collaboration with the consumer advisory committee established pursuant to subparagraph (E);

(ii) are consistent with, and to the extent feasible complement and further, the Council goals contained in the State plan submitted under section 15024 of this title and the system goals established under section 15043 of this title; and

(iii) will be reviewed and revised annually as necessary to address emerging trends and needs;

(C) use the funds made available through the grant to supplement, and not supplant, the funds

that would otherwise be made available for activities described in section 15063(a) of this title;

(D) protect, consistent with the policy specified in section 15001(c) of this title (relating to rights of individuals with developmental disabilities), the legal and human rights of all individuals with developmental disabilities (especially those individuals under State guardianship) who are involved in activities carried out under programs assisted under this part;

(E) establish a consumer advisory committee—

(i) of which a majority of the members shall be individuals with developmental disabilities and family members of such individuals;

(ii) that is comprised of—

(I) individuals with developmental disabilities and related disabilities;

(II) family members of individuals with developmental disabilities;

(III) a representative of the State protection and advocacy system;

(IV) a representative of the State Council on Developmental Disabilities;

(V) a representative of a self-advocacy organization described in section 15024(c)(4)(A)(ii)(I) of this title; and

(VI) representatives of organizations that may include parent training and information centers assisted under section 1471 or 1472 of title 20, entities carrying out activities authorized under section 3003 or 3004 of title 29, relevant State agencies, and other community groups concerned with the welfare of individuals with developmental disabilities and their families;

(iii) that reflects the racial and ethnic diversity of the State; and

(iv) that shall—

(I) consult with the Director of the Center regarding the development of the 5-year plan, and shall participate in an annual review of, and comment on, the progress of the Center in meeting the projected goals contained in the plan, and shall make recommendations to the Director of the Center regarding any proposed revisions of the plan that might be necessary; and

(II) meet as often as necessary to carry out the role of the committee, but at a minimum twice during each grant year;

(F) to the extent possible, utilize the infrastructure and resources obtained through funds made available under the grant to leverage additional public and private funds to successfully achieve the projected goals developed in the 5-year plan;

(G)(i) have a director with appropriate academic credentials, demonstrated leadership, expertise regarding developmental disabilities, significant experience in managing grants and contracts, and the ability to leverage public and private funds; and

(ii) allocate adequate staff time to carry out activities related to each of the core functions described in section 15063(a) of this title; and

(H) educate, and disseminate information related to the purpose of this subchapter to, the legislature of the State in which the Center is located, and to Members of Congress from such State.

(b) Supplemental grant applications pertaining to national training initiatives in critical and emerging needs

To be eligible to receive a supplemental grant under section 15061(b) of this title, a Center may submit a supplemental application to the Secretary at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary may require, pursuant to the terms and conditions set by the Secretary consistent with section 15063(b) of this title.

(c) Peer review

(1) In general

The Secretary shall require that all applications submitted under this part be subject to technical and qualitative review by peer review groups established under paragraph (2). The Secretary may

approve an application under this part only if such application has been recommended by a peer review group that has conducted the peer review required under this paragraph. In conducting the review, the group may conduct onsite visits or inspections of related activities as necessary.

(2) Establishment of peer review groups

(A) In general

The Secretary, acting through the Commissioner of the Administration on Developmental Disabilities, may, notwithstanding—

(i) the provisions of title 5 concerning appointments to the competitive service; and

(ii) the provisions of chapter 51, and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5 concerning classification and General Schedule pay rates;

establish such peer review groups and appoint and set the rates of pay of members of such groups.

(B) Composition

Each peer review group shall include such individuals with disabilities and parents, guardians, or advocates of or for individuals with developmental disabilities, as are necessary to carry out this subsection.

(3) Waivers of approval

The Secretary may waive the provisions of paragraph (1) with respect to review and approval of an application if the Secretary determines that exceptional circumstances warrant such a waiver.

(d) Federal share

(1) In general

The Federal share of the cost of administration or operation of a Center, or the cost of carrying out a training initiative, supported by a grant made under this part may not be more than 75 percent of the necessary cost of such project, as determined by the Secretary.

(2) Urban or rural poverty areas

In the case of a project whose activities or products target individuals with developmental disabilities who live in an urban or rural poverty area, as determined by the Secretary, the Federal share of the cost of the project may not be more than 90 percent of the necessary costs of the project, as determined by the Secretary.

(3) Grant expenditures

For the purpose of determining the Federal share with respect to the project, expenditures on that project by a political subdivision of a State or by a public or private entity shall, subject to such limitations and conditions as the Secretary may by regulation prescribe under section 15004(b) of this title, be considered to be expenditures made by a Center under this part.

(e) Annual report

Each Center shall annually prepare and transmit to the Secretary a report containing—

(1) information on progress made in achieving the projected goals of the Center for the previous year, including—

(A) the extent to which the goals were achieved;

(B) a description of the strategies that contributed to achieving the goals;

(C) to the extent to which the goals were not achieved, a description of factors that impeded the achievement; and

(D) an accounting of the manner in which funds paid to the Center under this part for a fiscal year were expended;

(2) information on proposed revisions to the goals; and

(3) a description of successful efforts to leverage funds, other than funds made available under

this part, to pursue goals consistent with this part.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §154, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1722; Pub. L. 108–364, §3(a)(4), Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1737; Pub. L. 108–446, title III, §305(n)(2), Dec. 3, 2004, 118 Stat. 2806.)

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (a)(3)(E)(ii)(VI). Pub. L. 108–446 substituted "section 1471 or 1472 of title 20" for "section 1482 or 1483 of title 20".

Pub. L. 108–364 substituted "section 3003 or 3004 of title 29" for "section 3011 or 3012 of title 29".

§15065. Definition

In this part, the term "State" means each of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, and Guam.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §155, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1725.)

§15066. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Authorization and reservations

(1) Authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part (other than section 15063(c)(4) of this title) $30,000,000 for fiscal year 2001 and such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2002 through 2007.

(2) Reservation for training initiatives

From any amount appropriated for a fiscal year under paragraph (1) and remaining after each Center described in section 15062(a) of this title has received a grant award of not less than $500,000, as described in section 15062 of this title, the Secretary shall reserve funds for the training initiatives authorized under section 15063(b) of this title.

(3) Reservation for technical assistance

(A) Years before appropriation trigger

For any covered year, the Secretary shall reserve funds in accordance with section 15083(c) of this title to fund technical assistance activities under section 15063(c) of this title (other than section 15063(c)(4) of this title).

(B) Years after appropriation trigger

For any fiscal year that is not a covered year, the Secretary shall reserve not less than $300,000 and not more than 2 percent of the amount appropriated under paragraph (1) to fund technical assistance activities under section 15063(c) of this title (other than section 15063(c)(4) of this title).

(C) Covered year

In this paragraph, the term "covered year" means a fiscal year prior to the first fiscal year for which the amount appropriated under paragraph (1) is not less than $20,000,000.

(b) Limitation

The Secretary may not use, for peer review or other activities directly related to peer review conducted under this part—

(1) for fiscal year 2001, more than $300,000 of the funds made available under subsection (a); and

(2) for any succeeding fiscal year, more than the amount of funds used for the peer review and related activities in fiscal year 2001, adjusted to take into account the most recent percentage change in the Consumer Price Index published by the Secretary of Labor under section 720(c)(1)

of title 29 (if the percentage change indicates an increase).

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §156, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1725.)

PART E—PROJECTS OF NATIONAL SIGNIFICANCE

§15081. Purpose

The purpose of this part is to provide grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements for projects of national significance that—

(1) create opportunities for individuals with developmental disabilities to directly and fully contribute to, and participate in, all facets of community life; and

(2) support the development of national and State policies that reinforce and promote, with the support of families, guardians, advocates, and communities, of individuals with developmental disabilities, the self-determination, independence, productivity, and integration and inclusion in all facets of community life of such individuals through—

(A) family support activities;

(B) data collection and analysis;

(C) technical assistance to entities funded under parts B and D, subject to the limitations described in sections 15029(b), 15066(a)(3), and 15083(c) of this title; and

(D) other projects of sufficient size and scope that hold promise to expand or improve opportunities for such individuals, including—

(i) projects that provide technical assistance for the development of information and referral systems;

(ii) projects that provide technical assistance to self-advocacy organizations of individuals with developmental disabilities;

(iii) projects that provide education for policymakers;

(iv) Federal interagency initiatives;

(v) projects that enhance the participation of racial and ethnic minorities in public and private sector initiatives in developmental disabilities;

(vi) projects that provide aid to transition youth with developmental disabilities from school to adult life, especially in finding employment and postsecondary education opportunities and in upgrading and changing any assistive technology devices that may be needed as a youth matures;

(vii) initiatives that address the development of community quality assurance systems and the training related to the development, implementation, and evaluation of such systems, including training of individuals with developmental disabilities and their families;

(viii) initiatives that address the needs of aging individuals with developmental disabilities and aging caregivers of adults with developmental disabilities in the community;

(ix) initiatives that create greater access to and use of generic services systems, community organizations, and associations, and initiatives that assist in community economic development;

(x) initiatives that create access to increased living options;

(xi) initiatives that address the challenging behaviors of individuals with developmental disabilities, including initiatives that promote positive alternatives to the use of restraints and seclusion; and

(xii) initiatives that address other areas of emerging need.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §161, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1725.)

§15082. Grant authority

(a) In general

The Secretary shall award grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements to public or private nonprofit entities for projects of national significance relating to individuals with developmental disabilities to carry out activities described in section 15081(2) of this title.

(b) Federal interagency initiatives

(1) In general

(A) Authority

The Secretary may—

(i) enter into agreements with Federal agencies to jointly carry out activities described in section 15081(2) of this title or to jointly carry out activities of common interest related to the objectives of such section; and

(ii) transfer to such agencies for such purposes funds appropriated under this part, and receive and use funds from such agencies for such purposes.

(B) Relation to program purposes

Funds transferred or received pursuant to this paragraph shall be used only in accordance with statutes authorizing the appropriation of such funds. Such funds shall be made available through grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements only to recipients eligible to receive such funds under such statutes.

(C) Procedures and criteria

If the Secretary enters into an agreement under this subsection for the administration of a jointly funded project—

(i) the agreement shall specify which agency's procedures shall be used to award grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements and to administer such awards;

(ii) the participating agencies may develop a single set of criteria for the jointly funded project, and may require applicants to submit a single application for joint review by such agencies; and

(iii) unless the heads of the participating agencies develop joint eligibility requirements, an applicant for an award for the project shall meet the eligibility requirements of each program involved.

(2) Limitation

The Secretary may not construe the provisions of this subsection to take precedence over a limitation on joint funding contained in an applicable statute.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §162, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1727.)

§15083. Authorization of appropriations

(a) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out the projects specified in this section $16,000,000 for fiscal year 2001, and such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2002 through 2007.

(b) Use of funds

(1) Grants, contracts, and agreements

Except as provided in paragraph (2), the amount appropriated under subsection (a) for each fiscal year shall be used to award grants, or enter into contracts, cooperative agreements, or other agreements, under section 15082 of this title.

(2) Administrative costs

Not more than 1 percent of the amount appropriated under subsection (a) for each fiscal year

may be used to provide for the administrative costs (other than compensation of Federal employees) of the Administration on Developmental Disabilities for administering this part and parts B, C, and D, including monitoring the performance of and providing technical assistance to, entities that receive funds under this subchapter.

(c) Technical assistance for Councils and Centers

(1) In general

For each covered year, the Secretary shall expend, to provide technical assistance for entities funded under part B or D, an amount from funds appropriated under subsection (a) that is not less than the amount the Secretary expended on technical assistance for entities funded under that part (or a corresponding provision) in the previous fiscal year.

(2) Covered year

In this subsection, the term "covered year" means—

(A) in the case of an expenditure for entities funded under part B, a fiscal year for which the amount appropriated under section 15029(a) of this title is less than $76,000,000; and

(B) in the case of an expenditure for entities funded under part D, a fiscal year prior to the first fiscal year for which the amount appropriated under section 15066(a)(1) of this title is not less than $20,000,000.

(3) References

References in this subsection to part D shall not be considered to include section 15063(c)(4) of this title.

(d) Technical assistance on electronic information sharing

In addition to any funds reserved under subsection (c), the Secretary shall reserve $100,000 from the amount appropriated under subsection (a) for each fiscal year to carry out section 15063(c)(4) of this title.

(e) Limitation

For any fiscal year for which the amount appropriated under subsection (a) is not less than $10,000,000, not more than 50 percent of such amount shall be used for activities carried out under section 15081(2)(A) of this title.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title I, §163, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1727.)

SUBCHAPTER II—FAMILY SUPPORT

§15091. Findings, purposes, and policy

(a) Findings

Congress makes the following findings:

(1) It is in the best interest of our Nation to preserve, strengthen, and maintain the family.

(2) Families of children with disabilities provide support, care, and training to their children that can save States millions of dollars. Without the efforts of family caregivers, many persons with disabilities would receive care through State-supported out-of-home placements.

(3) Most families of children with disabilities, especially families in unserved and underserved populations, do not have access to family-centered and family-directed services to support such families in their efforts to care for such children at home.

(4) Medical advances and improved health care have increased the life span of many people with disabilities, and the combination of the longer life spans and the aging of family caregivers places a continually increasing demand on the finite service delivery systems of the States.

(5) In 1996, 49 States provided family support initiatives in response to the needs of families of

children with disabilities. Such initiatives included the provision of cash subsidies, respite care, and other forms of support. There is a need in each State, however, to strengthen, expand, and coordinate the activities of a system of family support services for families of children with disabilities that is easily accessible, avoids duplication, uses resources efficiently, and prevents gaps in services to families in all areas of the State.

(6) The goals of the Nation properly include the goal of providing to families of children with disabilities the family support services necessary—

(A) to support the family;

(B) to enable families of children with disabilities to nurture and enjoy their children at home;

(C) to enable families of children with disabilities to make informed choices and decisions regarding the nature of supports, resources, services, and other assistance made available to such families; and

(D) to support family caregivers of adults with disabilities.

(b) Purposes

The purposes of this subchapter are—

(1) to promote and strengthen the implementation of comprehensive State systems of family support services, for families with children with disabilities, that are family-centered and family-directed, and that provide families with the greatest possible decisionmaking authority and control regarding the nature and use of services and support;

(2) to promote leadership by families in planning, policy development, implementation, and evaluation of family support services for families of children with disabilities;

(3) to promote and develop interagency coordination and collaboration between agencies responsible for providing the services; and

(4) to increase the availability of, funding for, access to, and provision of family support services for families of children with disabilities.

(c) Policy

It is the policy of the United States that all programs, projects, and activities funded under this subchapter shall be family-centered and family-directed, and shall be provided in a manner consistent with the goal of providing families of children with disabilities with the support the families need to raise their children at home.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title II, §202, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1728.)

SHORT TITLE

For short title of this subchapter as the "Families of Children With Disabilities Support Act of 2000", see section 201 of Pub. L. 106–402, set out as a note under section 15001 of this title.

§15092. Definitions and special rule

(a) Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) Child with a disability

The term "child with a disability" means an individual who—

(A) has a significant physical or mental impairment, as defined pursuant to State policy to the extent that such policy is established without regard to type of disability; or

(B) is an infant or a young child from birth through age 8 and has a substantial developmental delay or specific congenital or acquired condition that presents a high probability of resulting in a disability if services are not provided to the infant or child.

(2) Family

(A) In general

Subject to subparagraph (B), for purposes of the application of this subchapter in a State, the

term "family" has the meaning given the term by the State.

(B) Exclusion of employees

The term does not include an employee who, acting in a paid employment capacity, provides services to a child with a disability in an out-of-home setting such as a hospital, nursing home, personal care home, board and care home, group home, or other facility.

(3) Family support for families of children with disabilities

The term "family support for families of children with disabilities" means supports, resources, services, and other assistance provided to families of children with disabilities pursuant to State policy that are designed to—

(A) support families in the efforts of such families to raise their children with disabilities in the home;

(B) strengthen the role of the family as primary caregiver for such children;

(C) prevent involuntary out-of-the-home placement of such children and maintain family unity; and

(D) reunite families with children with disabilities who have been placed out of the home, whenever possible.

(4) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

(5) State

The term "State" means each of the 50 States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(6) Systems change activities

The term "systems change activities" means efforts that result in laws, regulations, policies, practices, or organizational structures—

(A) that are family-centered and family-directed;

(B) that facilitate and increase access to, provision of, and funding for, family support services for families of children with disabilities; and

(C) that otherwise accomplish the purposes of this subchapter.

(b) Special rule

References in this subchapter to a child with a disability shall be considered to include references to an individual who is not younger than age 18 who—

(1) has a significant impairment described in subsection (a)(1)(A); and

(2) is residing with and receiving assistance from a family member.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title II, §203, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1729.)

§15093. Grants to States

(a) In general

The Secretary shall make grants to States on a competitive basis, in accordance with the provisions of this subchapter, to support systems change activities designed to assist States to develop and implement, or expand and enhance, a statewide system of family support services for families of children with disabilities that accomplishes the purposes of this subchapter.

(b) Award period and grant limitation

No grant shall be awarded under this section for a period of more than 3 years. No State shall be eligible for more than 1 grant under this section.

(c) Amount of grants

(1) Grants to States

(A) Federal matching share

From amounts appropriated under section 15101(a) of this title, the Secretary shall pay to each State that has an application approved under section 15094 of this title, for each year of the grant period, an amount that is—

(i) equal to not more than 75 percent of the cost of the systems change activities to be carried out by the State; and

(ii) not less than $100,000 and not more than $500,000.

(B) Non-Federal share

The non-Federal share of the cost of the systems change activities may be in cash or in kind, fairly evaluated, including plant, equipment, or services.

(2) Calculation of amounts

The Secretary shall calculate a grant amount described in paragraph (1) on the basis of—

(A) the amounts available for making grants under this section; and

(B) the child population of the State concerned.

(d) Priority for previously participating States

For the second and third fiscal years for which amounts are appropriated to carry out this section, the Secretary, in providing payments under this section, shall give priority to States that received payments under this section during the preceding fiscal year.

(e) Priorities for distribution

To the extent practicable, the Secretary shall award grants to States under this section in a manner that—

(1) is geographically equitable;

(2) distributes the grants among States that have differing levels of development of statewide systems of family support services for families of children with disabilities; and

(3) distributes the grants among States that attempt to meet the needs of unserved and underserved populations, such as individuals from racial and ethnic minority backgrounds, disadvantaged individuals, individuals with limited English proficiency, and individuals from underserved geographic areas (rural or urban).

(Pub. L. 106–402, title II, §204, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1730.)

§15094. Application

To be eligible to receive a grant under this subchapter, a State shall submit an application to the Secretary at such time, in such manner, and containing such information and assurances as the Secretary may require, including information about the designation of a lead entity, a description of available State resources, and assurances that systems change activities will be family-centered and family-directed.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title II, §205, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1731.)

§15095. Designation of the lead entity

(a) Designation

The Chief Executive Officer of a State that desires to receive a grant under section 15093 of this title, shall designate the office or entity (referred to in this subchapter as the "lead entity") responsible for—

(1) submitting the application described in section 15094 of this title on behalf of the State;

(2) administering and supervising the use of the amounts made available under the grant;

(3) coordinating efforts related to and supervising the preparation of the application;

(4) coordinating the planning, development, implementation (or expansion and enhancement), and evaluation of a statewide system of family support services for families of children with disabilities among public agencies and between public agencies and private agencies, including coordinating efforts related to entering into interagency agreements;

(5) coordinating efforts related to the participation by families of children with disabilities in activities carried out under a grant made under this subchapter; and

(6) submitting the report described in section 15097 of this title on behalf of the State.

(b) Qualifications

In designating the lead entity, the Chief Executive Officer may designate—

(1) an office of the Chief Executive Officer;

(2) a commission appointed by the Chief Executive Officer;

(3) a public agency;

(4) a council established under Federal or State law; or

(5) another appropriate office, agency, or entity.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title II, §206, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1731.)

§15096. Authorized activities

(a) In general

A State that receives a grant under section 15093 of this title shall use the funds made available through the grant to carry out systems change activities that accomplish the purposes of this subchapter.

(b) Special rule

In carrying out activities authorized under this subchapter, a State shall ensure that such activities address the needs of families of children with disabilities from unserved or underserved populations.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title II, §207, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1732.)

§15097. Reporting

A State that receives a grant under this subchapter shall prepare and submit to the Secretary, at the end of the grant period, a report containing the results of State efforts to develop and implement, or expand and enhance, a statewide system of family support services for families of children with disabilities.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title II, §208, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1732.)

§15098. Technical assistance

(a) In general

The Secretary shall enter into contracts or cooperative agreements with appropriate public or private agencies and organizations, including institutions of higher education, with documented experience, expertise, and capacity, for the purpose of providing technical assistance and information with respect to the development and implementation, or expansion and enhancement, of a statewide system of family support services for families of children with disabilities.

(b) Purpose

An agency or organization that provides technical assistance and information under this section in a State that receives a grant under this subchapter shall provide the technical assistance and information to the lead entity of the State, family members of children with disabilities,

organizations, service providers, and policymakers involved with children with disabilities and their families. Such an agency or organization may also provide technical assistance and information to a State that does not receive a grant under this subchapter.

(c) Reports to the Secretary

An entity providing technical assistance and information under this section shall prepare and submit to the Secretary periodic reports regarding Federal policies and procedures identified within the States that facilitate or impede the delivery of family support services to families of children with disabilities. The report shall include recommendations to the Secretary regarding the delivery of services, coordination with other programs, and integration of the policies described in section 15091 of this title in Federal law, other than this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title II, §209, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1732.)

§15099. Evaluation

(a) In general

The Secretary shall conduct a national evaluation of the program of grants to States authorized by this subchapter.

(b) Purpose

(1) In general

The Secretary shall conduct the evaluation under subsection (a) to assess the status and effects of State efforts to develop and implement, or expand and enhance, statewide systems of family support services for families of children with disabilities in a manner consistent with the provisions of this subchapter. In particular, the Secretary shall assess the impact of such efforts on families of children with disabilities, and recommend amendments to this subchapter that are necessary to assist States to accomplish fully the purposes of this subchapter.

(2) Information systems

The Secretary shall work with the States to develop an information system designed to compile and report, from information provided by the States, qualitative and quantitative descriptions of the impact of the program of grants to States authorized by this subchapter on—

(A) families of children with disabilities, including families from unserved and underserved populations;

(B) access to and funding for family support services for families of children with disabilities;

(C) interagency coordination and collaboration between agencies responsible for providing the services; and

(D) the involvement of families of children with disabilities at all levels of the statewide systems.

(c) Report to Congress

Not later than 2½ years after October 30, 2000, the Secretary shall prepare and submit to the appropriate committees of Congress a report concerning the results of the evaluation conducted under this section.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title II, §210, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1733.)

§15100. Projects of national significance

(a) Study by the Secretary

The Secretary shall review Federal programs to determine the extent to which such programs facilitate or impede access to, provision of, and funding for family support services for families of

children with disabilities, consistent with the policies described in section 15091 of this title.

(b) Projects of national significance

The Secretary shall make grants or enter into contracts for projects of national significance to support the development of national and State policies and practices related to the development and implementation, or expansion and enhancement, of family-centered and family-directed systems of family support services for families of children with disabilities.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title II, §211, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1733.)

§15101. Authorization of appropriations

(a) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subchapter such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2001 through 2007.

(b) Reservation

(1) In general

The Secretary shall reserve for each fiscal year 10 percent, or $400,000 (whichever is greater), of the amount appropriated pursuant to subsection (a) to carry out—

(A) section 15098 of this title (relating to the provision of technical assistance and information to States); and

(B) section 15099 of this title (relating to the conduct of evaluations).

(2) Special rule

For each year that the amount appropriated pursuant to subsection (a) is $10,000,000 or greater, the Secretary may reserve 5 percent of such amount to carry out section 15100 of this title.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title II, §212, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1734.)

SUBCHAPTER III—PROGRAM FOR DIRECT SUPPORT WORKERS WHO ASSIST INDIVIDUALS WITH DEVELOPMENTAL DISABILITIES

§15111. Findings

Congress finds that—

(1) direct support workers, especially young adults, have played essential roles in providing the support needed by individuals with developmental disabilities and expanding community options for those individuals;

(2) 4 factors have contributed to a decrease in the available pool of direct support workers, specifically—

(A) the small population of individuals who are age 18 through 25, an age group that has been attracted to direct support work in the past;

(B) the rapid expansion of the service sector, which attracts individuals who previously would have elected to pursue employment as direct support workers;

(C) the failure of wages in the human services sector to keep pace with wages in other service sectors; and

(D) the lack of quality training and career advancement opportunities available to direct support workers; and

(3) individuals with developmental disabilities benefit from assistance from direct support workers who are well trained, and benefit from receiving services from professionals who have

spent time as direct support workers.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title III, §301, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1734.)

§15112. Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) Developmental disability

The term "developmental disability" has the meaning given the term in section 15002 of this title.

(2) Institution of higher education

The term "institution of higher education" has the meaning given the term in section 1141 [1] of title 20.

(3) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title III, §302, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1734.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1141 of title 20, referred to in par. (2), was repealed by Pub. L. 105–244, §3, title I, §101(b), title VII, §702, Oct. 7, 1998, 112 Stat. 1585, 1616, 1803, effective Oct. 1, 1998. However, the term "institution of higher education" is defined in section 1001 of Title 20, Education.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§15113. Reaching up scholarship program

(a) Program authorization

The Secretary may award grants to eligible entities, on a competitive basis, to enable the entities to carry out scholarship programs by providing vouchers for postsecondary education to direct support workers who assist individuals with developmental disabilities residing in diverse settings. The Secretary shall award the grants to pay for the Federal share of the cost of providing the vouchers.

(b) Eligible entity

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, an entity shall be—

(1) an institution of higher education;

(2) a State agency; or

(3) a consortium of such institutions or agencies.

(c) Application requirements

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, an eligible entity shall submit to the Secretary an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary may require, including a description of—

(1) the basis for awarding the vouchers;

(2) the number of individuals to receive the vouchers; and

(3) the amount of funds that will be made available by the eligible entity to pay for the non-Federal share of the cost of providing the vouchers.

(d) Selection criteria

In awarding a grant under this section for a scholarship program, the Secretary shall give priority to an entity submitting an application that—

(1) specifies that individuals who receive vouchers through the program will be individuals—

(A) who are direct support workers who assist individuals with developmental disabilities

residing in diverse settings, while pursuing postsecondary education; and

(B) each of whom verifies, prior to receiving the voucher, that the worker has completed 250 hours as a direct support worker in the past 90 days;

(2) states that the vouchers that will be provided through the program will be in amounts of not more than $2,000 per year;

(3) provides an assurance that the eligible entity (or another specified entity that is not a voucher recipient) will contribute the non-Federal share of the cost of providing the vouchers; and

(4) meets such other conditions as the Secretary may specify.

(e) Federal share

The Federal share of the cost of providing the vouchers shall be not more than 80 percent.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title III, §303, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1735.)

§15114. Staff development curriculum authorization

(a) Funding

(1) In general

The Secretary shall award funding, on a competitive basis, through a grant, cooperative agreement, or contract, to a public or private entity or a combination of such entities, for the development, evaluation, and dissemination of a staff development curriculum, and related guidelines, for computer-assisted, competency-based, multimedia, interactive instruction, relating to service as a direct support worker.

(2) Participants

The curriculum shall be developed for individuals who—

(A) seek to become direct support workers who assist individuals with developmental disabilities or are such direct support workers; and

(B) seek to upgrade their skills and competencies related to being a direct support worker.

(b) Application requirements

To be eligible to receive an award under this section, an entity shall submit to the Secretary an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary may require, including—

(1) a comprehensive analysis of the content of direct support roles;

(2) information identifying an advisory group that—

(A) is comprised of individuals with experience and expertise with regard to the support provided by direct support workers, and effective ways to provide the support, for individuals with developmental disabilities in diverse settings; and

(B) will advise the entity throughout the development, evaluation, and dissemination of the staff development curriculum and guidelines;

(3) information describing how the entity will—

(A) develop, field test, and validate a staff development curriculum that—

(i) relates to the appropriate reading level for direct service workers who assist individuals with disabilities;

(ii) allows for multiple levels of instruction;

(iii) provides instruction appropriate for direct support workers who work in diverse settings; and

(iv) is consistent with subsections (b) and (c) of section 15001 of this title and section 15009 of this title;

(B) develop, field test, and validate guidelines for the organizations that use the curriculum

that provide for—

(i) providing necessary technical and instructional support to trainers and mentors for the participants;

(ii) ensuring easy access to and use of such curriculum by workers that choose to participate in using, and agencies that choose to use, the curriculum;

(iii) evaluating the proficiency of the participants with respect to the content of the curriculum;

(iv) providing necessary support to the participants to assure that the participants have access to, and proficiency in using, a computer in order to participate in the development, testing, and validation process;

(v) providing necessary technical and instructional support to trainers and mentors for the participants in conjunction with the development, testing, and validation process;

(vi) addressing the satisfaction of participants, individuals with developmental disabilities and their families, providers of services for such individuals and families, and other relevant entities with the curriculum; and

(vii) developing methods to maintain a record of the instruction completed, and the content mastered, by each participant under the curriculum; and

(C) nationally disseminate the curriculum and guidelines, including dissemination through—

(i) parent training and information centers funded under part D of the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1451 et seq.);

(ii) community-based organizations of and for individuals with developmental disabilities and their families;

(iii) entities funded under subchapter I;

(iv) centers for independent living;

(v) State educational agencies and local educational agencies;

(vi) entities operating appropriate medical facilities;

(vii) postsecondary education entities; and

(viii) other appropriate entities; and

(4) such other information as the Secretary may require.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title III, §304, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1735.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Individuals with Disabilities Education Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(3)(C)(i), is title VI of Pub. L. 91–230, Apr. 13, 1970, 84 Stat. 175, as amended. Part D of the Act is classified generally to subchapter IV (§1450 et seq.) of chapter 33 of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1400 of Title 20 and Tables.

§15115. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Scholarships

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out section 15113 of this title $800,000 for fiscal year 2001 and such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2002 through 2007.

(b) Staff development curriculum

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out section 15114 of this title $800,000 for fiscal year 2001 and such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2002 and 2003.

(Pub. L. 106–402, title III, §305, Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1737.)

CHAPTER 145—PUBLIC SAFETY OFFICER MEDAL OF VALOR AND

TRIBUTES

Sec.

§15201. Authorization of Medal

After September 1, 2001, the President may award, and present in the name of Congress, a Medal of Valor of appropriate design, with ribbons and appurtenances, to a public safety officer who is cited by the Attorney General, upon the recommendation of the Medal of Valor Review Board, for extraordinary valor above and beyond the call of duty. The Public Safety Medal of Valor shall be the highest national award for valor by a public safety officer.

(Pub. L. 107–12, §2, May 30, 2001, 115 Stat. 20.)

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 107–12, §1, May 30, 2001, 115 Stat. 20, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter and amending section 2214 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade] may be cited as the 'Public Safety Officer Medal of Valor Act of 2001'."

§15202. Medal of Valor Board

(a) Establishment of Board

There is established a Medal of Valor Review Board (hereinafter in this chapter referred to as the "Board"), which shall be composed of 11 members appointed in accordance with subsection (b) and shall conduct its business in accordance with this chapter.

(b) Membership

(1) Members

The members of the Board shall be individuals with knowledge or expertise, whether by experience or training, in the field of public safety, of which—

(A) two shall be appointed by the majority leader of the Senate;

(B) two shall be appointed by the minority leader of the Senate;

(C) two shall be appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives;

(D) two shall be appointed by the minority leader of the House of Representatives; and

(E) three shall be appointed by the President, including one with experience in firefighting, one with experience in law enforcement, and one with experience in emergency services.

(2) Term

The term of a Board member shall be 4 years.

(3) Vacancies

Any vacancy in the membership of the Board shall not affect the powers of the Board and shall be filled in the same manner as the original appointment.

(4) Operation of the Board

(A) Chairman

The Chairman of the Board shall be elected by the members of the Board from among the

members of the Board.

(B) Meetings

The Board shall conduct its first meeting not later than 90 days after the appointment of the last member appointed of the initial group of members appointed to the Board. Thereafter, the Board shall meet at the call of the Chairman of the Board. The Board shall meet not less often than twice each year.

(C) Voting and rules

A majority of the members shall constitute a quorum to conduct business, but the Board may establish a lesser quorum for conducting hearings scheduled by the Board. The Board may establish by majority vote any other rules for the conduct of the Board's business, if such rules are not inconsistent with this chapter or other applicable law.

(c) Duties

The Board shall select candidates as recipients of the Medal of Valor from among those applications received by the National Medal of Valor Office. Not more often than once each year, the Board shall present to the Attorney General the name or names of those it recommends as Medal of Valor recipients. In a given year, the Board shall not be required to select any recipients but may not select more than 5 individuals, or groups of individuals, as recipients. The Attorney General may in extraordinary cases increase the number of recipients in a given year. The Board shall set an annual timetable for fulfilling its duties under this chapter.

(d) Hearings

(1) In general

The Board may hold such hearings, sit and act at such times and places, administer such oaths, take such testimony, and receive such evidence as the Board considers advisable to carry out its duties.

(2) Witness expenses

Witnesses requested to appear before the Board may be paid the same fees as are paid to witnesses under section 1821 of title 28. The per diem and mileage allowances for witnesses shall be paid from funds appropriated to the Board.

(e) Information from Federal agencies

The Board may secure directly from any Federal department or agency such information as the Board considers necessary to carry out its duties. Upon the request of the Board, the head of such department or agency may furnish such information to the Board.

(f) Information to be kept confidential

The Board shall not disclose any information which may compromise an ongoing law enforcement investigation or is otherwise required by law to be kept confidential.

(Pub. L. 107–12, §3, May 30, 2001, 115 Stat. 20; Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1112, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3103.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b)(4)(C), and (c), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 107–12, May. 30, 2001, 115 Stat. 20, which enacted this chapter and amended section 2214 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15201 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 109–162 substituted "more than 5 individuals, or groups of individuals, as recipients" for "more than 5 recipients".

§15203. Board personnel matters

(a) Compensation of members

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), each member of the Board shall be compensated at a rate equal to the daily equivalent of the annual rate of basic pay prescribed for level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5 for each day (including travel time) during which such member is engaged in the performance of the duties of the Board.

(2) All members of the Board who serve as officers or employees of the United States, a State, or a local government, shall serve without compensation in addition to that received for those services.

(b) Travel expenses

The members of the Board shall be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, at rates authorized for employees of agencies under subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5, while away from their homes or regular places of business in the performance of service for the Board.

(Pub. L. 107–12, §4, May 30, 2001, 115 Stat. 21.)

§15204. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) Public safety officer

The term "public safety officer" means a person serving a public agency, with or without compensation, as a firefighter, law enforcement officer, or emergency services officer, as determined by the Attorney General. For the purposes of this paragraph, the term "law enforcement officer" includes a person who is a corrections or court officer or a civil defense officer.

(2) State

The term "State" means each of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(Pub. L. 107–12, §5, May 30, 2001, 115 Stat. 22.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in introductory provisions, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 107–12, May. 30, 2001, 115 Stat. 20, known as the Public Safety Officer Medal of Valor Act of 2001, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15201 of this title and Tables.

§15205. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Attorney General such sums as may be necessary to carry out this chapter.

(Pub. L. 107–12, §6, May 30, 2001, 115 Stat. 22.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 107–12, May. 30, 2001, 115 Stat. 20, known as the Public Safety Officer Medal of Valor Act of 2001, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15201 of this title and Tables.

§15206. National Medal of Valor Office

There is established within the Department of Justice a National Medal of Valor Office. The Office shall provide staff support to the Board to establish criteria and procedures for the submission of recommendations of nominees for the Medal of Valor and for the final design of the Medal of Valor.

(Pub. L. 107–12, §7, May 30, 2001, 115 Stat. 22.)

§15207. Consultation requirement

The Board shall consult with the Institute of Heraldry within the Department of Defense regarding the design and artistry of the Medal of Valor. The Board may also consider suggestions received by the Department of Justice regarding the design of the medal, including those made by persons not employed by the Department.

(Pub. L. 107–12, §9, May 30, 2001, 115 Stat. 22.)

§15208. Law enforcement tribute acts

(a) Short title

This section may be cited as the "Law Enforcement Tribute Act".

(b) Findings

Congress finds the following:

(1) The well-being of all citizens of the United States is preserved and enhanced as a direct result of the vigilance and dedication of law enforcement and public safety personnel.

(2) More than 700,000 law enforcement officers, both men and women, at great risk to their personal safety, serve their fellow citizens as guardians of peace.

(3) Nationwide, 51 law enforcement officers were killed in the line of duty in 2000, according to statistics released by the Federal Bureau of Investigation. This number is an increase of 9 from the 1999 total of 42.

(4) In 1999, 112 firefighters died while on duty, an increase of 21 deaths from the previous year.

(5) Every year, 1 in 9 peace officers is assaulted, 1 in 25 is injured, and 1 in 4,400 is killed in the line of duty.

(6) In addition, recent statistics indicate that 83 officers were accidentally killed in the performance of their duties in 2000, an increase of 18 from the 65 accidental deaths in 1999.

(7) A permanent tribute is a powerful means of honoring the men and women who have served our Nation with distinction. However, many law enforcement and public safety agencies lack the resources to honor their fallen colleagues.

(c) Program authorized

From amounts made available to carry out this section, the Attorney General may make grants to States, units of local government, and Indian tribes to carry out programs to honor, through permanent tributes, men and women of the United States who were killed or disabled while serving as law enforcement or public safety officers.

(d) Uses of funds

Grants awarded under this section shall be distributed directly to the State, unit of local government, or Indian tribe, and shall be used for the purposes specified in subsection (c).

(e) $150,000 limitation

A grant under this section may not exceed $150,000 to any single recipient.

(f) Matching funds

(1) The Federal portion of the costs of a program provided by a grant under this section may not

exceed 50 percent.

(2) Any funds appropriated by Congress for the activities of any agency of an Indian tribal government or the Bureau of Indian Affairs performing law enforcement or public safety functions on any Indian lands may be used to provide the non-Federal share of a matching requirement funded under this subsection.

(g) Applications

To request a grant under this section, the chief executive of a State, unit of local government, or Indian tribe shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such information as the Attorney General may require.

(h) Annual report to Congress

Not later than November 30 of each year, the Attorney General shall submit a report to the Congress regarding the activities carried out under this section. Each such report shall include, for the preceding fiscal year, the number of grants funded under this section, the amount of funds provided under those grants, and the activities for which those funds were used.

(i) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $3,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2002 through 2009.

(Pub. L. 107–273, div. C, title I, §11001, Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1815; Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1185, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3127.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as the Law Enforcement Tribute Act, and also as part of the 21st Century Department of Justice Appropriations Authorization Act, and not as part of the Public Safety Officer Medal of Valor Act of 2001 which comprises this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 109–162 substituted "2009" for "2006".

CHAPTER 145A—LAW ENFORCEMENT CONGRESSIONAL BADGE OF BRAVERY

Sec.

§15231. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) Federal agency head

The term "Federal agency head" means the head of any executive, legislative, or judicial branch Government entity that employs Federal law enforcement officers.

(2) Federal Board

The term "Federal Board" means the Federal Law Enforcement Congressional Badge of Bravery Board established under section 15243(a) of this title.

(3) Federal Board members

The term "Federal Board members" means the members of the Federal Board appointed under section 15243(c) of this title.

(4) Federal Law Enforcement Badge

The term "Federal Law Enforcement Badge" means the Federal Law Enforcement Congressional Badge of Bravery described in section 15241 of this title.

(5) Federal law enforcement officer

The term "Federal law enforcement officer"—

(A) means a Federal employee—

(i) who has statutory authority to make arrests or apprehensions;

(ii) who is authorized by the agency of the employee to carry firearms; and

(iii) whose duties are primarily—

(I) engagement in or supervision of the prevention, detection, investigation, or prosecution of, or the incarceration of any person for, any violation of law; or

(II) the protection of Federal, State, local, or foreign government officials against threats to personal safety; and

(B) includes a law enforcement officer employed by the Amtrak Police Department or Federal Reserve.

(6) Office

The term "Office" means the Congressional Badge of Bravery Office established under section 15261(a) of this title.

(7) State and Local Board

The term "State and Local Board" means the State and Local Law Enforcement Congressional Badge of Bravery Board established under section 15253(a) of this title.

(8) State and Local Board members

The term "State and Local Board members" means the members of the State and Local Board appointed under section 15253(c) of this title.

(9) State and Local Law Enforcement Badge

The term "State and Local Law Enforcement Badge" means the State and Local Law Enforcement Congressional Badge of Bravery described in section 15251 of this title.

(10) State or local agency head

The term "State or local agency head" means the head of any executive, legislative, or judicial branch entity of a State or local government that employs State or local law enforcement officers.

(11) State or local law enforcement officer

The term "State or local law enforcement officer" means an employee of a State or local government—

(A) who has statutory authority to make arrests or apprehensions;

(B) who is authorized by the agency of the employee to carry firearms; and

(C) whose duties are primarily—

(i) engagement in or supervision of the prevention, detection, investigation, or prosecution of, or the incarceration of any person for, any violation of law; or

(ii) the protection of Federal, State, local, or foreign government officials against threats to personal safety.

(Pub. L. 110–298, §2, July 31, 2008, 122 Stat. 2985.)

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 110–298, §1, July 31, 2008, 122 Stat. 2985, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'Law Enforcement Congressional Badge of Bravery Act of 2008'."

SUBCHAPTER I—FEDERAL LAW ENFORCEMENT CONGRESSIONAL BADGE OF BRAVERY

§15241. Authorization of a Badge

The Attorney General may award, and a Member of Congress or the Attorney General may present, in the name of Congress a Federal Law Enforcement Congressional Badge of Bravery to a Federal law enforcement officer who is cited by the Attorney General, upon the recommendation of the Federal Board, for performing an act of bravery while in the line of duty.

(Pub. L. 110–298, title I, §101, July 31, 2008, 122 Stat. 2986.)

§15242. Nominations

(a) In general

A Federal agency head may nominate for a Federal Law Enforcement Badge an individual—

(1) who is a Federal law enforcement officer working within the agency of the Federal agency head making the nomination; and

(2) who—

(A)(i) sustained a physical injury while—

(I) engaged in the lawful duties of the individual; and

(II) performing an act characterized as bravery by the Federal agency head making the nomination; and

(ii) put the individual at personal risk when the injury described in clause (i) occurred; or

(B) while not injured, performed an act characterized as bravery by the Federal agency head making the nomination that placed the individual at risk of serious physical injury or death.

(b) Contents

A nomination under subsection (a) shall include—

(1) a written narrative, of not more than 2 pages, describing the circumstances under which the nominee performed the act of bravery described in subsection (a) and how the circumstances meet the criteria described in such subsection;

(2) the full name of the nominee;

(3) the home mailing address of the nominee;

(4) the agency in which the nominee served on the date when such nominee performed the act of bravery described in subsection (a);

(5) the occupational title and grade or rank of the nominee;

(6) the field office address of the nominee on the date when such nominee performed the act of bravery described in subsection (a); and

(7) the number of years of Government service by the nominee as of the date when such

nominee performed the act of bravery described in subsection (a).

(c) Submission deadline

A Federal agency head shall submit each nomination under subsection (a) to the Office not later than February 15 of the year following the date on which the nominee performed the act of bravery described in subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 110–298, title I, §102, July 31, 2008, 122 Stat. 2986.)

§15243. Federal Law Enforcement Congressional Badge of Bravery Board

(a) Establishment

There is established within the Department of Justice a Federal Law Enforcement Congressional Badge of Bravery Board.

(b) Duties

The Federal Board shall do the following:

(1) Design the Federal Law Enforcement Badge with appropriate ribbons and appurtenances.

(2) Select an engraver to produce each Federal Law Enforcement Badge.

(3) Recommend recipients of the Federal Law Enforcement Badge from among those nominations timely submitted to the Office.

(4) Annually present to the Attorney General the names of Federal law enforcement officers who the Federal Board recommends as Federal Law Enforcement Badge recipients in accordance with the criteria described in section 15242(a) of this title.

(5) After approval by the Attorney General—

(A) procure the Federal Law Enforcement Badges from the engraver selected under paragraph (2);

(B) send a letter announcing the award of each Federal Law Enforcement Badge to the Federal agency head who nominated the recipient of such Federal Law Enforcement Badge;

(C) send a letter to each Member of Congress representing the congressional district where the recipient of each Federal Law Enforcement Badge resides to offer such Member an opportunity to present such Federal Law Enforcement Badge; and

(D) make or facilitate arrangements for presenting each Federal Law Enforcement Badge in accordance with section 15244 of this title.

(6) Set an annual timetable for fulfilling the duties described in this subsection.

(c) Membership

(1) Number and appointment

The Federal Board shall be composed of 7 members appointed as follows:

(A) One member jointly appointed by the majority leader and minority leader of the Senate.

(B) One member jointly appointed by the Speaker and minority leader of the House of Representatives.

(C) One member from the Department of Justice appointed by the Attorney General.

(D) Two members of the Federal Law Enforcement Officers Association appointed by the Executive Board of the Federal Law Enforcement Officers Association.

(E) Two members of the Fraternal Order of Police appointed by the Executive Board of the Fraternal Order of Police.

(2) Limitation

Not more than—

(A) 2 Federal Board members may be members of the Federal Law Enforcement Officers Association; and

(B) 2 Federal Board members may be members of the Fraternal Order of Police.

(3) Qualifications

Federal Board members shall be individuals with knowledge or expertise, whether by experience or training, in the field of Federal law enforcement.

(4) Terms and vacancies

Each Federal Board member shall be appointed for 2 years and may be reappointed. A vacancy in the Federal Board shall not affect the powers of the Federal Board and shall be filled in the same manner as the original appointment.

(d) Operations

(1) Chairperson

The Chairperson of the Federal Board shall be a Federal Board member elected by a majority of the Federal Board.

(2) Meetings

The Federal Board shall conduct its first meeting not later than 90 days after the appointment of a majority of Federal Board members. Thereafter, the Federal Board shall meet at the call of the Chairperson, or in the case of a vacancy of the position of Chairperson, at the call of the Attorney General.

(3) Voting and rules

A majority of Federal Board members shall constitute a quorum to conduct business, but the Federal Board may establish a lesser quorum for conducting hearings scheduled by the Federal Board. The Federal Board may establish by majority vote any other rules for the conduct of the business of the Federal Board, if such rules are not inconsistent with this subchapter or other applicable law.

(e) Powers

(1) Hearings

(A) In general

The Federal Board may hold hearings, sit and act at times and places, take testimony, and receive evidence as the Federal Board considers appropriate to carry out the duties of the Federal Board under this subchapter. The Federal Board may administer oaths or affirmations to witnesses appearing before it.

(B) Witness expenses

Witnesses requested to appear before the Federal Board may be paid the same fees as are paid to witnesses under section 1821 of title 28. The per diem and mileage allowances for witnesses shall be paid from funds appropriated to the Federal Board.

(2) Information from Federal agencies

Subject to sections 552, 552a, and 552b of title 5—

(A) the Federal Board may secure directly from any Federal department or agency information necessary to enable it to carry out this subchapter; and

(B) upon request of the Federal Board, the head of that department or agency shall furnish the information to the Federal Board.

(3) Information to be kept confidential

The Federal Board shall not disclose any information which may compromise an ongoing law enforcement investigation or is otherwise required by law to be kept confidential.

(f) Compensation

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (2), each Federal Board member shall be compensated at a rate equal to the daily equivalent of the annual rate of basic pay prescribed for level IV of the

Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5 for each day (including travel time) during which such Federal Board member is engaged in the performance of the duties of the Federal Board.

(2) Prohibition of compensation for government employees

Federal Board members who serve as officers or employees of the Federal Government or a State or a local government may not receive additional pay, allowances, or benefits by reason of their service on the Federal Board.

(3) Travel expenses

Each Federal Board member shall receive travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in accordance with applicable provisions under subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 110–298, title I, §103, July 31, 2008, 122 Stat. 2987.)

§15244. Presentation of Federal Law Enforcement Badges

(a) Presentation by Member of Congress

A Member of Congress may present a Federal Law Enforcement Badge to any Federal Law Enforcement Badge recipient who resides in such Member's congressional district. If both a Senator and Representative choose to present a Federal Law Enforcement Badge, such Senator and Representative shall make a joint presentation.

(b) Presentation by Attorney General

If no Member of Congress chooses to present the Federal Law Enforcement Badge as described in subsection (a), the Attorney General, or a designee of the Attorney General, shall present such Federal Law Enforcement Badge.

(c) Presentation arrangements

The office of the Member of Congress presenting each Federal Law Enforcement Badge may make arrangements for the presentation of such Federal Law Enforcement Badge, and if a Senator and Representative choose to participate jointly as described in subsection (a), the Members shall make joint arrangements. The Federal Board shall facilitate any such presentation arrangements as requested by the congressional office presenting the Federal Law Enforcement Badge and shall make arrangements in cases not undertaken by Members of Congress.

(Pub. L. 110–298, title I, §104, July 31, 2008, 122 Stat. 2989.)

SUBCHAPTER II—STATE AND LOCAL LAW ENFORCEMENT CONGRESSIONAL BADGE OF BRAVERY

§15251. Authorization of a Badge

The Attorney General may award, and a Member of Congress or the Attorney General may present, in the name of Congress a State and Local Law Enforcement Congressional Badge of Bravery to a State or local law enforcement officer who is cited by the Attorney General, upon the recommendation of the State and Local Board, for performing an act of bravery while in the line of duty.

(Pub. L. 110–298, title II, §201, July 31, 2008, 122 Stat. 2990.)

§15252. Nominations

(a) In general

A State or local agency head may nominate for a State and Local Law Enforcement Badge an individual—

(1) who is a State or local law enforcement officer working within the agency of the State or local agency head making the nomination; and

(2) who—

(A)(i) sustained a physical injury while—

(I) engaged in the lawful duties of the individual; and

(II) performing an act characterized as bravery by the State or local agency head making the nomination; and

(ii) put the individual at personal risk when the injury described in clause (i) occurred; or

(B) while not injured, performed an act characterized as bravery by the State or local agency head making the nomination that placed the individual at risk of serious physical injury or death.

(b) Contents

A nomination under subsection (a) shall include—

(1) a written narrative, of not more than 2 pages, describing the circumstances under which the nominee performed the act of bravery described in subsection (a) and how the circumstances meet the criteria described in such subsection;

(2) the full name of the nominee;

(3) the home mailing address of the nominee;

(4) the agency in which the nominee served on the date when such nominee performed the act of bravery described in subsection (a);

(5) the occupational title and grade or rank of the nominee;

(6) the field office address of the nominee on the date when such nominee performed the act of bravery described in subsection (a); and

(7) the number of years of government service by the nominee as of the date when such nominee performed the act of bravery described in subsection (a).

(c) Submission deadline

A State or local agency head shall submit each nomination under subsection (a) to the Office not later than February 15 of the year following the date on which the nominee performed the act of bravery described in subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 110–298, title II, §202, July 31, 2008, 122 Stat. 2990.)

§15253. State and Local Law Enforcement Congressional Badge of Bravery Board

(a) Establishment

There is established within the Department of Justice a State and Local Law Enforcement Congressional Badge of Bravery Board.

(b) Duties

The State and Local Board shall do the following:

(1) Design the State and Local Law Enforcement Badge with appropriate ribbons and appurtenances.

(2) Select an engraver to produce each State and Local Law Enforcement Badge.

(3) Recommend recipients of the State and Local Law Enforcement Badge from among those nominations timely submitted to the Office.

(4) Annually present to the Attorney General the names of State or local law enforcement officers who the State and Local Board recommends as State and Local Law Enforcement Badge recipients in accordance with the criteria described in section 15252(a) of this title.

(5) After approval by the Attorney General—

(A) procure the State and Local Law Enforcement Badges from the engraver selected under paragraph (2);

(B) send a letter announcing the award of each State and Local Law Enforcement Badge to the State or local agency head who nominated the recipient of such State and Local Law Enforcement Badge;

(C) send a letter to each Member of Congress representing the congressional district where the recipient of each State and Local Law Enforcement Badge resides to offer such Member an opportunity to present such State and Local Law Enforcement Badge; and

(D) make or facilitate arrangements for presenting each State and Local Law Enforcement Badge in accordance with section 15254 of this title.

(6) Set an annual timetable for fulfilling the duties described in this subsection.

(c) Membership

(1) Number and appointment

The State and Local Board shall be composed of 9 members appointed as follows:

(A) One member jointly appointed by the majority leader and minority leader of the Senate.

(B) One member jointly appointed by the Speaker and minority leader of the House of Representatives.

(C) One member from the Department of Justice appointed by the Attorney General.

(D) Two members of the Fraternal Order of Police appointed by the Executive Board of the Fraternal Order of Police.

(E) One member of the National Association of Police Organizations appointed by the Executive Board of the National Association of Police Organizations.

(F) One member of the National Organization of Black Law Enforcement Executives appointed by the Executive Board of the National Organization of Black Law Enforcement Executives.

(G) One member of the International Association of Chiefs of Police appointed by the Board of Officers of the International Association of Chiefs of Police.

(H) One member of the National Sheriffs' Association appointed by the Executive Committee of the National Sheriffs' Association.

(2) Limitation

Not more than 5 State and Local Board members may be members of the Fraternal Order of Police.

(3) Qualifications

State and Local Board members shall be individuals with knowledge or expertise, whether by experience or training, in the field of State and local law enforcement.

(4) Terms and vacancies

Each State and Local Board member shall be appointed for 2 years and may be reappointed. A vacancy in the State and Local Board shall not affect the powers of the State and Local Board and shall be filled in the same manner as the original appointment.

(d) Operations

(1) Chairperson

The Chairperson of the State and Local Board shall be a State and Local Board member elected by a majority of the State and Local Board.

(2) Meetings

The State and Local Board shall conduct its first meeting not later than 90 days after the appointment of a majority of State and Local Board members. Thereafter, the State and Local Board shall meet at the call of the Chairperson, or in the case of a vacancy of the position of

Chairperson, at the call of the Attorney General.

(3) Voting and rules

A majority of State and Local Board members shall constitute a quorum to conduct business, but the State and Local Board may establish a lesser quorum for conducting hearings scheduled by the State and Local Board. The State and Local Board may establish by majority vote any other rules for the conduct of the business of the State and Local Board, if such rules are not inconsistent with this subchapter or other applicable law.

(e) Powers

(1) Hearings

(A) In general

The State and Local Board may hold hearings, sit and act at times and places, take testimony, and receive evidence as the State and Local Board considers appropriate to carry out the duties of the State and Local Board under this subchapter. The State and Local Board may administer oaths or affirmations to witnesses appearing before it.

(B) Witness expenses

Witnesses requested to appear before the State and Local Board may be paid the same fees as are paid to witnesses under section 1821 of title 28. The per diem and mileage allowances for witnesses shall be paid from funds appropriated to the State and Local Board.

(2) Information from Federal agencies

Subject to sections 552, 552a, and 552b of title 5—

(A) the State and Local Board may secure directly from any Federal department or agency information necessary to enable it to carry out this subchapter; and

(B) upon request of the State and Local Board, the head of that department or agency shall furnish the information to the State and Local Board.

(3) Information to be kept confidential

The State and Local Board shall not disclose any information which may compromise an ongoing law enforcement investigation or is otherwise required by law to be kept confidential.

(f) Compensation

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (2), each State and Local Board member shall be compensated at a rate equal to the daily equivalent of the annual rate of basic pay prescribed for level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5 for each day (including travel time) during which such State and Local Board member is engaged in the performance of the duties of the State and Local Board.

(2) Prohibition of compensation for government employees

State and Local Board members who serve as officers or employees of the Federal Government or a State or a local government may not receive additional pay, allowances, or benefits by reason of their service on the State and Local Board.

(3) Travel expenses

Each State and Local Board member shall receive travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in accordance with applicable provisions under subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 110–298, title II, §203, July 31, 2008, 122 Stat. 2991.)

§15254. Presentation of State and Local Law Enforcement Badges

(a) Presentation by Member of Congress

A Member of Congress may present a State and Local Law Enforcement Badge to any State and Local Law Enforcement Badge recipient who resides in such Member's congressional district. If both a Senator and Representative choose to present a State and Local Law Enforcement Badge, such Senator and Representative shall make a joint presentation.

(b) Presentation by Attorney General

If no Member of Congress chooses to present the State and Local Law Enforcement Badge as described in subsection (a), the Attorney General, or a designee of the Attorney General, shall present such State and Local Law Enforcement Badge.

(c) Presentation arrangements

The office of the Member of Congress presenting each State and Local Law Enforcement Badge may make arrangements for the presentation of such State and Local Law Enforcement Badge, and if a Senator and Representative choose to participate jointly as described in subsection (a), the Members shall make joint arrangements. The State and Local Board shall facilitate any such presentation arrangements as requested by the congressional office presenting the State and Local Law Enforcement Badge and shall make arrangements in cases not undertaken by Members of Congress.

(Pub. L. 110–298, title II, §204, July 31, 2008, 122 Stat. 2993.)

SUBCHAPTER III—CONGRESSIONAL BADGE OF BRAVERY OFFICE

§15261. Congressional Badge of Bravery Office

(a) Establishment

There is established within the Department of Justice a Congressional Badge of Bravery Office.

(b) Duties

The Office shall—

(1) receive nominations from Federal agency heads on behalf of the Federal Board and deliver such nominations to the Federal Board at Federal Board meetings described in section 15243(d)(2) of this title;

(2) receive nominations from State or local agency heads on behalf of the State and Local Board and deliver such nominations to the State and Local Board at State and Local Board meetings described in section 15253(d)(2) of this title; and

(3) provide staff support to the Federal Board and the State and Local Board to carry out the duties described in section 15243(b) and section 15253(b) of this title, respectively.

(Pub. L. 110–298, title III, §301, July 31, 2008, 122 Stat. 2994.)

CHAPTER 146—ELECTION ADMINISTRATION IMPROVEMENT

SUBCHAPTER I—PAYMENTS TO STATES FOR ELECTION ADMINISTRATION IMPROVEMENTS AND REPLACEMENT OF PUNCH CARD AND LEVER VOTING MACHINES

§15301. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15301 was editorially reclassified as section 20901 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15302. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15302 was editorially reclassified as section 20902 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15303. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15303 was editorially reclassified as section 20903 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15304. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15304 was editorially reclassified as section 20904 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15305. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15305 was editorially reclassified as section 20905 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15306. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15306 was editorially reclassified as section 20906 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

SUBCHAPTER II—COMMISSION

PART A—ESTABLISHMENT AND GENERAL ORGANIZATION

SUBPART 1—ELECTION ASSISTANCE COMMISSION

§15321. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15321 was editorially reclassified as section 20921 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15322. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15322 was editorially reclassified as section 20922 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15323. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15323 was editorially reclassified as section 20923 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15324. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15324 was editorially reclassified as section 20924 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15325. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15325 was editorially reclassified as section 20925 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15326. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15326 was editorially reclassified as section 20926 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15327. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15327 was editorially reclassified as section 20927 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15328. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15328 was editorially reclassified as section 20928 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15329. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15329 was editorially reclassified as section 20929 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15330. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15330 was editorially reclassified as section 20930 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

SUBPART 2—ELECTION ASSISTANCE COMMISSION STANDARDS BOARD AND BOARD OF ADVISORS

§15341. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15341 was editorially reclassified as section 20941 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15342. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15342 was editorially reclassified as section 20942 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15343. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15343 was editorially reclassified as section 20943 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15344. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15344 was editorially reclassified as section 20944 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15345. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15345 was editorially reclassified as section 20945 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15346. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15346 was editorially reclassified as section 20946 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

SUBPART 3—TECHNICAL GUIDELINES DEVELOPMENT COMMITTEE

§15361. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15361 was editorially reclassified as section 20961 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15362. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15362 was editorially reclassified as section 20962 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

PART B—TESTING, CERTIFICATION, DECERTIFICATION, AND RECERTIFICATION OF VOTING SYSTEM HARDWARE AND SOFTWARE

§15371. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15371 was editorially reclassified as section 20971 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

PART C—STUDIES AND OTHER ACTIVITIES TO PROMOTE EFFECTIVE ADMINISTRATION OF FEDERAL ELECTIONS

§15381. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15381 was editorially reclassified as section 20981 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15382. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15382 was editorially reclassified as section 20982 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15383. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15383 was editorially reclassified as section 20983 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15384. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15384 was editorially reclassified as section 20984 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15385. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15385 was editorially reclassified as section 20985 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15386. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15386 was editorially reclassified as section 20986 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15387. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15387 was editorially reclassified as section 20987 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

PART D—ELECTION ASSISTANCE

SUBPART 1—REQUIREMENTS PAYMENTS

§15401. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15401 was editorially reclassified as section 21001 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15402. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15402 was editorially reclassified as section 21002 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15403. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15403 was editorially reclassified as section 21003 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15404. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15404 was editorially reclassified as section 21004 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15405. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15405 was editorially reclassified as section 21005 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15406. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15406 was editorially reclassified as section 21006 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15407. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15407 was editorially reclassified as section 21007 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15408. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15408 was editorially reclassified as section 21008 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

SUBPART 2—PAYMENTS TO STATES AND UNITS OF LOCAL GOVERNMENT TO ASSURE ACCESS FOR INDIVIDUALS WITH DISABILITIES

§15421. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15421 was editorially reclassified as section 21021 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15422. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15422 was editorially reclassified as section 21022 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15423. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15423 was editorially reclassified as section 21023 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15424. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15424 was editorially reclassified as section 21024 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15425. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15425 was editorially reclassified as section 21025 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

SUBPART 3—GRANTS FOR RESEARCH ON VOTING TECHNOLOGY IMPROVEMENTS

§15441. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15441 was editorially reclassified as section 21041 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15442. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15442 was editorially reclassified as section 21042 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15443. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15443 was editorially reclassified as section 21043 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

SUBPART 4—PILOT PROGRAM FOR TESTING OF EQUIPMENT AND TECHNOLOGY

§15451. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15451 was editorially reclassified as section 21051 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15452. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15452 was editorially reclassified as section 21052 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15453. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15453 was editorially reclassified as section 21053 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

SUBPART 5—PROTECTION AND ADVOCACY SYSTEMS

§15461. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15461 was editorially reclassified as section 21061 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15462. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15462 was editorially reclassified as section 21062 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

SUBPART 6—NATIONAL STUDENT AND PARENT MOCK ELECTION

§15471. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15471 was editorially reclassified as section 21071 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15472. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15472 was editorially reclassified as section 21072 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

SUBCHAPTER III—UNIFORM AND NONDISCRIMINATORY ELECTION TECHNOLOGY AND ADMINISTRATION REQUIREMENTS

PART A—REQUIREMENTS

§15481. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15481 was editorially reclassified as section 21081 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15482. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15482 was editorially reclassified as section 21082 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15483. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15483 was editorially reclassified as section 21083 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15484. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15484 was editorially reclassified as section 21084 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15485. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15485 was editorially reclassified as section 21085 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

PART B—VOLUNTARY GUIDANCE

§15501. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15501 was editorially reclassified as section 21101 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15502. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15502 was editorially reclassified as section 21102 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

SUBCHAPTER IV—ENFORCEMENT

§15511. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15511 was editorially reclassified as section 21111 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15512. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15512 was editorially reclassified as section 21112 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

SUBCHAPTER V—HELP AMERICA VOTE COLLEGE PROGRAM

§15521. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15521 was editorially reclassified as section 21121 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15522. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15522 was editorially reclassified as section 21122 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15523. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15523 was editorially reclassified as section 21123 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

SUBCHAPTER VI—TRANSFER TO COMMISSION OF FUNCTIONS UNDER CERTAIN LAWS

§15531. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15531 was editorially reclassified as section 21131 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15532. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15532 was editorially reclassified as section 21132 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15533. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15533 was editorially reclassified as section 21133 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15534. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15534 was editorially reclassified as section 21134 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

SUBCHAPTER VII—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§15541. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15541 was editorially reclassified as section 21141 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15542. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15542 was editorially reclassified as section 21142 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15543. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15543 was editorially reclassified as section 21143 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15544. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15544 was editorially reclassified as section 21144 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

§15545. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 15545 was editorially reclassified as section 21145 of Title 52, Voting and Elections.

CHAPTER 147—PRISON RAPE ELIMINATION

Sec.

§15601. Findings

Congress makes the following findings:

(1) 2,100,146 persons were incarcerated in the United States at the end of 2001: 1,324,465 in Federal and State prisons and 631,240 in county and local jails. In 1999, there were more than 10,000,000 separate admissions to and discharges from prisons and jails.

(2) Insufficient research has been conducted and insufficient data reported on the extent of prison rape. However, experts have conservatively estimated that at least 13 percent of the inmates in the United States have been sexually assaulted in prison. Many inmates have suffered repeated assaults. Under this estimate, nearly 200,000 inmates now incarcerated have been or will be the victims of prison rape. The total number of inmates who have been sexually assaulted in the past 20 years likely exceeds 1,000,000.

(3) Inmates with mental illness are at increased risk of sexual victimization. America's jails and prisons house more mentally ill individuals than all of the Nation's psychiatric hospitals combined. As many as 16 percent of inmates in State prisons and jails, and 7 percent of Federal inmates, suffer from mental illness.

(4) Young first-time offenders are at increased risk of sexual victimization. Juveniles are 5 times more likely to be sexually assaulted in adult rather than juvenile facilities—often within the first 48 hours of incarceration.

(5) Most prison staff are not adequately trained or prepared to prevent, report, or treat inmate sexual assaults.

(6) Prison rape often goes unreported, and inmate victims often receive inadequate treatment for the severe physical and psychological effects of sexual assault—if they receive treatment at all.

(7) HIV and AIDS are major public health problems within America's correctional facilities. In 2000, 25,088 inmates in Federal and State prisons were known to be infected with HIV/AIDS. In 2000, HIV/AIDS accounted for more than 6 percent of all deaths in Federal and State prisons. Infection rates for other sexually transmitted diseases, tuberculosis, and hepatitis B and C are also

far greater for prisoners than for the American population as a whole. Prison rape undermines the public health by contributing to the spread of these diseases, and often giving a potential death sentence to its victims.

(8) Prison rape endangers the public safety by making brutalized inmates more likely to commit crimes when they are released—as 600,000 inmates are each year.

(9) The frequently interracial character of prison sexual assaults significantly exacerbates interracial tensions, both within prison and, upon release of perpetrators and victims from prison, in the community at large.

(10) Prison rape increases the level of homicides and other violence against inmates and staff, and the risk of insurrections and riots.

(11) Victims of prison rape suffer severe physical and psychological effects that hinder their ability to integrate into the community and maintain stable employment upon their release from prison. They are thus more likely to become homeless and/or require government assistance.

(12) Members of the public and government officials are largely unaware of the epidemic character of prison rape and the day-to-day horror experienced by victimized inmates.

(13) The high incidence of sexual assault within prisons involves actual and potential violations of the United States Constitution. In Farmer v. Brennan, 511 U.S. 825 (1994), the Supreme Court ruled that deliberate indifference to the substantial risk of sexual assault violates prisoners' rights under the Cruel and Unusual Punishments Clause of the Eighth Amendment. The Eighth Amendment rights of State and local prisoners are protected through the Due Process Clause of the Fourteenth Amendment. Pursuant to the power of Congress under Section Five of the Fourteenth Amendment, Congress may take action to enforce those rights in States where officials have demonstrated such indifference. States that do not take basic steps to abate prison rape by adopting standards that do not generate significant additional expenditures demonstrate such indifference. Therefore, such States are not entitled to the same level of Federal benefits as other States.

(14) The high incidence of prison rape undermines the effectiveness and efficiency of United States Government expenditures through grant programs such as those dealing with health care; mental health care; disease prevention; crime prevention, investigation, and prosecution; prison construction, maintenance, and operation; race relations; poverty; unemployment and homelessness. The effectiveness and efficiency of these federally funded grant programs are compromised by the failure of State officials to adopt policies and procedures that reduce the incidence of prison rape in that the high incidence of prison rape—

(A) increases the costs incurred by Federal, State, and local jurisdictions to administer their prison systems;

(B) increases the levels of violence, directed at inmates and at staff, within prisons;

(C) increases health care expenditures, both inside and outside of prison systems, and reduces the effectiveness of disease prevention programs by substantially increasing the incidence and spread of HIV, AIDS, tuberculosis, hepatitis B and C, and other diseases;

(D) increases mental health care expenditures, both inside and outside of prison systems, by substantially increasing the rate of post-traumatic stress disorder, depression, suicide, and the exacerbation of existing mental illnesses among current and former inmates;

(E) increases the risks of recidivism, civil strife, and violent crime by individuals who have been brutalized by prison rape; and

(F) increases the level of interracial tensions and strife within prisons and, upon release of perpetrators and victims, in the community at large.

(15) The high incidence of prison rape has a significant effect on interstate commerce because it increases substantially—

(A) the costs incurred by Federal, State, and local jurisdictions to administer their prison systems;

(B) the incidence and spread of HIV, AIDS, tuberculosis, hepatitis B and C, and other diseases, contributing to increased health and medical expenditures throughout the Nation;

(C) the rate of post-traumatic stress disorder, depression, suicide, and the exacerbation of existing mental illnesses among current and former inmates, contributing to increased health and medical expenditures throughout the Nation; and

(D) the risk of recidivism, civil strife, and violent crime by individuals who have been brutalized by prison rape.

(Pub. L. 108–79, §2, Sept. 4, 2003, 117 Stat. 972.)

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 108–79, §1(a), Sept. 4, 2003, 117 Stat. 972, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'Prison Rape Elimination Act of 2003'."

IMPLEMENTING THE PRISON RAPE ELIMINATION ACT

Memorandum of President of the United States, May 17, 2012, 77 F.R. 30873, provided:

Memorandum for the Heads of Executive Departments and Agencies

Sexual violence, against any victim, is an assault on human dignity and an affront to American values. The Prison Rape Elimination Act of 2003 (PREA) was enacted with bipartisan support and established a "zero-tolerance standard" for rape in prisons in the United States. 42 U.S.C. 15602(1).

My Administration, with leadership from the Department of Justice, has worked diligently to implement the principles set out in PREA. Today, the Attorney General finalized a rule adopting national standards to prevent, detect, and respond to prison rape. This rule expresses my Administration's conclusion that PREA applies to all Federal confinement facilities, including those operated by executive departments and agencies (agencies) other than the Department of Justice, whether administered by the Federal Government or by a private organization on behalf of the Federal Government.

Each agency is responsible for, and must be accountable for, the operations of its own confinement facilities, and each agency has extensive expertise regarding its own facilities, particularly those housing unique populations. Thus, each agency is best positioned to determine how to implement the Federal laws and rules that govern its own operations, the conduct of its own employees, and the safety of persons in its custody. To advance the goals of PREA, we must ensure that all agencies that operate confinement facilities adopt high standards to prevent, detect, and respond to sexual abuse. In addition to adopting such standards, the success of PREA in combating sexual abuse in confinement facilities will depend on effective agency and facility leadership and the development of an agency culture that prioritizes efforts to combat sexual abuse.

In order to implement PREA comprehensively across the Federal Government, I hereby direct all agencies with Federal confinement facilities that are not already subject to the Department of Justice's final rule to work with the Attorney General to propose, within 120 days of the date of this memorandum, any rules or procedures necessary to satisfy the requirements of PREA and to finalize any such rules or procedures within 240 days of their proposal.

This memorandum shall be implemented consistent with the requirements of Executive Order 13175 of November 6, 2000 (Consultation and Coordination With Indian Tribal Governments).

This memorandum is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity by any party against the United States, its departments, agencies, or entities, its officers, employees, or agents, or any other person.

The Director of the Office of Management and Budget is hereby authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

BARACK OBAMA.

§15602. Purposes

The purposes of this chapter are to—

(1) establish a zero-tolerance standard for the incidence of prison rape in prisons in the United States;

(2) make the prevention of prison rape a top priority in each prison system;

(3) develop and implement national standards for the detection, prevention, reduction, and punishment of prison rape;

(4) increase the available data and information on the incidence of prison rape, consequently improving the management and administration of correctional facilities;

(5) standardize the definitions used for collecting data on the incidence of prison rape;

(6) increase the accountability of prison officials who fail to detect, prevent, reduce, and punish prison rape;

(7) protect the Eighth Amendment rights of Federal, State, and local prisoners;

(8) increase the efficiency and effectiveness of Federal expenditures through grant programs such as those dealing with health care; mental health care; disease prevention; crime prevention, investigation, and prosecution; prison construction, maintenance, and operation; race relations; poverty; unemployment; and homelessness; and

(9) reduce the costs that prison rape imposes on interstate commerce.

(Pub. L. 108–79, §3, Sept. 4, 2003, 117 Stat. 974.)

§15603. National prison rape statistics, data, and research

(a) Annual comprehensive statistical review

(1) In general

The Bureau of Justice Statistics of the Department of Justice (in this section referred to as the "Bureau") shall carry out, for each calendar year, a comprehensive statistical review and analysis of the incidence and effects of prison rape. The statistical review and analysis shall include, but not be limited to the identification of the common characteristics of—

(A) both victims and perpetrators of prison rape; and

(B) prisons and prison systems with a high incidence of prison rape.

(2) Considerations

In carrying out paragraph (1), the Bureau shall consider—

(A) how rape should be defined for the purposes of the statistical review and analysis;

(B) how the Bureau should collect information about staff-on-inmate sexual assault;

(C) how the Bureau should collect information beyond inmate self-reports of prison rape;

(D) how the Bureau should adjust the data in order to account for differences among prisons as required by subsection (c)(3);

(E) the categorization of prisons as required by subsection (c)(4); and

(F) whether a preliminary study of prison rape should be conducted to inform the methodology of the comprehensive statistical review.

(3) Solicitation of views

The Bureau of Justice Statistics shall solicit views from representatives of the following: State departments of correction; county and municipal jails; juvenile correctional facilities; former inmates; victim advocates; researchers; and other experts in the area of sexual assault.

(4) Sampling techniques

The review and analysis under paragraph (1) shall be based on a random sample, or other scientifically appropriate sample, of not less than 10 percent of all Federal, State, and county prisons, and a representative sample of municipal prisons. The selection shall include at least one prison from each State. The selection of facilities for sampling shall be made at the latest practicable date prior to conducting the surveys and shall not be disclosed to any facility or prison system official prior to the time period studied in the survey. Selection of a facility for sampling during any year shall not preclude its selection for sampling in any subsequent year.

(5) Surveys

In carrying out the review and analysis under paragraph (1), the Bureau shall, in addition to such other methods as the Bureau considers appropriate, use surveys and other statistical studies of current and former inmates from a sample of Federal, State, county, and municipal prisons. The Bureau shall ensure the confidentiality of each survey participant, except as authorized in paragraph (7).

(6) Participation in survey

Federal, State, or local officials or facility administrators that receive a request from the Bureau under subsection (a)(4) or (5) will be required to participate in the national survey and provide access to any inmates under their legal custody.

(7) Reporting on child abuse and neglect

Nothing in section 3735 or 3789g of this title or any other provision of law, including paragraph (5), shall prevent the Bureau (including its agents), in carrying out the review and analysis under paragraph (1), from reporting to the designated public officials such information (and only such information) regarding child abuse or child neglect with respect to which the statutes or regulations of a State (or a political subdivision thereof) require prompt reporting.

(b) Review Panel on Prison Rape

(1) Establishment

To assist the Bureau in carrying out the review and analysis under subsection (a), there is established, within the Department of Justice, the Review Panel on Prison Rape (in this section referred to as the "Panel").

(2) Membership

(A) Composition

The Panel shall be composed of 3 members, each of whom shall be appointed by the Attorney General, in consultation with the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

(B) Qualifications

Members of the Panel shall be selected from among individuals with knowledge or expertise in matters to be studied by the Panel.

(3) Public hearings

(A) In general

The duty of the Panel shall be to carry out, for each calendar year, public hearings concerning the operation of the three prisons with the highest incidence of prison rape and the two prisons with the lowest incidence of prison rape in each category of facilities identified under subsection (c)(4). The Panel shall hold a separate hearing regarding the three Federal or State prisons with the highest incidence of prison rape. The purpose of these hearings shall be to collect evidence to aid in the identification of common characteristics of both victims and perpetrators of prison rape, and the identification of common characteristics of prisons and prison systems with a high incidence of prison rape, and the identification of common characteristics of prisons and prison systems that appear to have been successful in deterring prison rape.

(B) Testimony at hearings

(i) Public officials

In carrying out the hearings required under subparagraph (A), the Panel shall request the public testimony of Federal, State, and local officials (and organizations that represent such officials), including the warden or director of each prison, who bears responsibility for the prevention, detection, and punishment of prison rape at each entity, and the head of the prison system encompassing such prison.

(ii) Victims

The Panel may request the testimony of prison rape victims, organizations representing such victims, and other appropriate individuals and organizations.

(C) Subpoenas

(i) Issuance

The Panel may issue subpoenas for the attendance of witnesses and the production of

written or other matter.

(ii) Enforcement

In the case of contumacy or refusal to obey a subpoena, the Attorney General may in a Federal court of appropriate jurisdiction obtain an appropriate order to enforce the subpoena.

(c) Reports

(1) In general

Not later than June 30 of each year, the Attorney General shall submit a report on the activities of the Bureau and the Review Panel, with respect to prison rape, for the preceding calendar year to—

(A) Congress; and

(B) the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

(2) Contents

The report required under paragraph (1) shall include—

(A) with respect to the effects of prison rape, statistical, sociological, and psychological data;

(B) with respect to the incidence of prison rape—

(i) statistical data aggregated at the Federal, State, prison system, and prison levels;

(ii) a listing of those institutions in the representative sample, separated into each category identified under subsection (c)(4) and ranked according to the incidence of prison rape in each institution; and

(iii) an identification of those institutions in the representative sample that appear to have been successful in deterring prison rape; and

(C) a listing of any prisons in the representative sample that did not cooperate with the survey conducted pursuant to this section.

(3) Data adjustments

In preparing the information specified in paragraph (2), the Attorney General shall use established statistical methods to adjust the data as necessary to account for differences among institutions in the representative sample, which are not related to the detection, prevention, reduction and punishment of prison rape, or which are outside the control of the State, prison, or prison system, in order to provide an accurate comparison among prisons. Such differences may include the mission, security level, size, and jurisdiction under which the prison operates. For each such adjustment made, the Attorney General shall identify and explain such adjustment in the report.

(4) Categorization of prisons

The report shall divide the prisons surveyed into three categories. One category shall be composed of all Federal and State prisons. The other two categories shall be defined by the Attorney General in order to compare similar institutions.

(d) Contracts and grants

In carrying out its duties under this section, the Attorney General may—

(1) provide grants for research through the National Institute of Justice; and

(2) contract with or provide grants to any other entity the Attorney General deems appropriate.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $15,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2004 through 2010 to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 108–79, §4, Sept. 4, 2003, 117 Stat. 975; Pub. L. 109–108, title I, §113(a), Nov. 22, 2005, 119 Stat. 2305.)

AMENDMENTS

2005—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 109–108, §113(a)(1), inserted ", except as authorized in paragraph (7)"

before period at end.

Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 109–108, §113(a)(2), added par. (7).

§15604. Prison rape prevention and prosecution

(a) Information and assistance

(1) National clearinghouse

There is established within the National Institute of Corrections a national clearinghouse for the provision of information and assistance to Federal, State, and local authorities responsible for the prevention, investigation, and punishment of instances of prison rape.

(2) Training and education

The National Institute of Corrections shall conduct periodic training and education programs for Federal, State, and local authorities responsible for the prevention, investigation, and punishment of instances of prison rape.

(b) Reports

(1) In general

Not later than September 30 of each year, the National Institute of Corrections shall submit a report to Congress and the Secretary of Health and Human Services. This report shall be available to the Director of the Bureau of Justice Statistics.

(2) Contents

The report required under paragraph (1) shall summarize the activities of the Department of Justice regarding prison rape abatement for the preceding calendar year.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2004 through 2010 to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 108–79, §5, Sept. 4, 2003, 117 Stat. 978.)

§15605. Grants to protect inmates and safeguard communities

(a) Grants authorized

From amounts made available for grants under this section, the Attorney General shall make grants to States to assist those States in ensuring that budgetary circumstances (such as reduced State and local spending on prisons) do not compromise efforts to protect inmates (particularly from prison rape) and to safeguard the communities to which inmates return. The purpose of grants under this section shall be to provide funds for personnel, training, technical assistance, data collection, and equipment to prevent and prosecute prisoner rape.

(b) Use of grant amounts

Amounts received by a grantee under this section may be used by the grantee, directly or through subgrants, only for one or more of the following activities:

(1) Protecting inmates

Protecting inmates by—

(A) undertaking efforts to more effectively prevent prison rape;

(B) investigating incidents of prison rape; or

(C) prosecuting incidents of prison rape.

(2) Safeguarding communities

Safeguarding communities by—

(A) making available, to officials of State and local governments who are considering reductions to prison budgets, training and technical assistance in successful methods for moderating the growth of prison populations without compromising public safety, including successful methods used by other jurisdictions;

(B) developing and utilizing analyses of prison populations and risk assessment instruments that will improve State and local governments' understanding of risks to the community regarding release of inmates in the prison population;

(C) preparing maps demonstrating the concentration, on a community-by-community basis, of inmates who have been released, to facilitate the efficient and effective—

(i) deployment of law enforcement resources (including probation and parole resources); and

(ii) delivery of services (such as job training and substance abuse treatment) to those released inmates;

(D) promoting collaborative efforts, among officials of State and local governments and leaders of appropriate communities, to understand and address the effects on a community of the presence of a disproportionate number of released inmates in that community; or

(E) developing policies and programs that reduce spending on prisons by effectively reducing rates of parole and probation revocation without compromising public safety.

(c) Grant requirements

(1) Period

A grant under this section shall be made for a period of not more than 2 years.

(2) Maximum

The amount of a grant under this section may not exceed $1,000,000.

(3) Matching

The Federal share of a grant under this section may not exceed 50 percent of the total costs of the project described in the application submitted under subsection (d) for the fiscal year for which the grant was made under this section.

(d) Applications

(1) In general

To request a grant under this section, the chief executive of a State shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such information as the Attorney General may require.

(2) Contents

Each application required by paragraph (1) shall—

(A)(i) include the certification of the chief executive that the State receiving such grant has adopted all national prison rape standards that, as of the date on which the application was submitted, have been promulgated under this chapter; or

(ii) demonstrate to the Attorney General, in such manner as the Attorney General shall require, that the State receiving such grant is actively working to adopt and achieve full compliance with the national prison rape standards described in clause (i);

(B) specify with particularity the preventative, prosecutorial, or administrative activities to be undertaken by the State with the amounts received under the grant; and

(C) in the case of an application for a grant for one or more activities specified in paragraph (2) of subsection (b)—

(i) review the extent of the budgetary circumstances affecting the State generally and describe how those circumstances relate to the State's prisons;

(ii) describe the rate of growth of the State's prison population over the preceding 10 years and explain why the State may have difficulty sustaining that rate of growth; and

(iii) explain the extent to which officials (including law enforcement officials) of State and local governments and victims of crime will be consulted regarding decisions whether, or how, to moderate the growth of the State's prison population.

(e) Reports by grantee

(1) In general

The Attorney General shall require each grantee to submit, not later than 90 days after the end of the period for which the grant was made under this section, a report on the activities carried out under the grant. The report shall identify and describe those activities and shall contain an evaluation of the effect of those activities on—

(A) the number of incidents of prison rape, and the grantee's response to such incidents; and

(B) the safety of the prisons, and the safety of the communities in which released inmates are present.

(2) Dissemination

The Attorney General shall ensure that each report submitted under paragraph (1) is made available under the national clearinghouse established under section 15604 of this title.

(f) State defined

In this section, the term "State" includes the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, and any other territory or possession of the United States.

(g) Authorization of appropriations

(1) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated for grants under this section $40,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2004 through 2010.

(2) Limitation

Of amounts made available for grants under this section, not less than 50 percent shall be available only for activities specified in paragraph (1) of subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 108–79, §6, Sept. 4, 2003, 117 Stat. 978; Pub. L. 114–324, §7(1), Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1951.)

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 114–324 added subpar. (A) and struck out former subpar. (A) which read as follows: "include the certification of the chief executive that the State receiving such grant—

"(i) has adopted all national prison rape standards that, as of the date on which the application was submitted, have been promulgated under this chapter; and

"(ii) will consider adopting all national prison rape standards that are promulgated under this chapter after such date;".

§15606. National Prison Rape Elimination Commission

(a) Establishment

There is established a commission to be known as the National Prison Rape Elimination Commission (in this section referred to as the "Commission").

(b) Members

(1) In general

The Commission shall be composed of 9 members, of whom—

(A) 3 shall be appointed by the President;

(B) 2 shall be appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives, unless the Speaker is of the same party as the President, in which case 1 shall be appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives and 1 shall be appointed by the minority leader of the House of

Representatives;

(C) 1 shall be appointed by the minority leader of the House of Representatives (in addition to any appointment made under subparagraph (B));

(D) 2 shall be appointed by the majority leader of the Senate, unless the majority leader is of the same party as the President, in which case 1 shall be appointed by the majority leader of the Senate and 1 shall be appointed by the minority leader of the Senate; and

(E) 1 member appointed by the minority leader of the Senate (in addition to any appointment made under subparagraph (D)).

(2) Persons eligible

Each member of the Commission shall be an individual who has knowledge or expertise in matters to be studied by the Commission.

(3) Consultation required

The President, the Speaker and minority leader of the House of Representatives, and the majority leader and minority leader of the Senate shall consult with one another prior to the appointment of the members of the Commission to achieve, to the maximum extent possible, fair and equitable representation of various points of view with respect to the matters to be studied by the Commission.

(4) Term

Each member shall be appointed for the life of the Commission.

(5) Time for initial appointments

The appointment of the members shall be made not later than 60 days after September 4, 2003.

(6) Vacancies

A vacancy in the Commission shall be filled in the manner in which the original appointment was made, and shall be made not later than 60 days after the date on which the vacancy occurred.

(c) Operation

(1) Chairperson

Not later than 15 days after appointments of all the members are made, the President shall appoint a chairperson for the Commission from among its members.

(2) Meetings

The Commission shall meet at the call of the chairperson. The initial meeting of the Commission shall take place not later than 30 days after the initial appointment of the members is completed.

(3) Quorum

A majority of the members of the Commission shall constitute a quorum to conduct business, but the Commission may establish a lesser quorum for conducting hearings scheduled by the Commission.

(4) Rules

The Commission may establish by majority vote any other rules for the conduct of Commission business, if such rules are not inconsistent with this chapter or other applicable law.

(d) Comprehensive study of the impacts of prison rape

(1) In general

The Commission shall carry out a comprehensive legal and factual study of the penalogical, physical, mental, medical, social, and economic impacts of prison rape in the United States on—

(A) Federal, State, and local governments; and

(B) communities and social institutions generally, including individuals, families, and businesses within such communities and social institutions.

(2) Matters included

The study under paragraph (1) shall include—

(A) a review of existing Federal, State, and local government policies and practices with respect to the prevention, detection, and punishment of prison rape;

(B) an assessment of the relationship between prison rape and prison conditions, and of existing monitoring, regulatory, and enforcement practices that are intended to address any such relationship;

(C) an assessment of pathological or social causes of prison rape;

(D) an assessment of the extent to which the incidence of prison rape contributes to the spread of sexually transmitted diseases and to the transmission of HIV;

(E) an assessment of the characteristics of inmates most likely to commit prison rape and the effectiveness of various types of treatment or programs to reduce such likelihood;

(F) an assessment of the characteristics of inmates most likely to be victims of prison rape and the effectiveness of various types of treatment or programs to reduce such likelihood;

(G) an assessment of the impacts of prison rape on individuals, families, social institutions and the economy generally, including an assessment of the extent to which the incidence of prison rape contributes to recidivism and to increased incidence of sexual assault;

(H) an examination of the feasibility and cost of conducting surveillance, undercover activities, or both, to reduce the incidence of prison rape;

(I) an assessment of the safety and security of prison facilities and the relationship of prison facility construction and design to the incidence of prison rape;

(J) an assessment of the feasibility and cost of any particular proposals for prison reform;

(K) an identification of the need for additional scientific and social science research on the prevalence of prison rape in Federal, State, and local prisons;

(L) an assessment of the general relationship between prison rape and prison violence;

(M) an assessment of the relationship between prison rape and levels of training, supervision, and discipline of prison staff; and

(N) an assessment of existing Federal and State systems for reporting incidents of prison rape, including an assessment of whether existing systems provide an adequate assurance of confidentiality, impartiality and the absence of reprisal.

(3) Report

(A) Distribution

Not later than 5 years after the date of the initial meeting of the Commission, the Commission shall submit a report on the study carried out under this subsection to—

(i) the President;

(ii) the Congress;

(iii) the Attorney General;

(iv) the Secretary of Health and Human Services;

(v) the Director of the Federal Bureau of Prisons;

(vi) the chief executive of each State; and

(vii) the head of the department of corrections of each State.

(B) Contents

The report under subparagraph (A) shall include—

(i) the findings and conclusions of the Commission;

(ii) recommended national standards for reducing prison rape;

(iii) recommended protocols for preserving evidence and treating victims of prison rape; and

(iv) a summary of the materials relied on by the Commission in the preparation of the report.

(e) Recommendations

(1) In general

In conjunction with the report submitted under subsection (d)(3), the Commission shall provide the Attorney General and the Secretary of Health and Human Services with recommended national standards for enhancing the detection, prevention, reduction, and punishment of prison rape.

(2) Matters included

The information provided under paragraph (1) shall include recommended national standards relating to—

(A) the classification and assignment of prisoners, using proven standardized instruments and protocols, in a manner that limits the occurrence of prison rape;

(B) the investigation and resolution of rape complaints by responsible prison authorities, local and State police, and Federal and State prosecution authorities;

(C) the preservation of physical and testimonial evidence for use in an investigation of the circumstances relating to the rape;

(D) acute-term trauma care for rape victims, including standards relating to—

(i) the manner and extent of physical examination and treatment to be provided to any rape victim; and

(ii) the manner and extent of any psychological examination, psychiatric care, medication, and mental health counseling to be provided to any rape victim;

(E) referrals for long-term continuity of care for rape victims;

(F) educational and medical testing measures for reducing the incidence of HIV transmission due to prison rape;

(G) post-rape prophylactic medical measures for reducing the incidence of transmission of sexual diseases;

(H) the training of correctional staff sufficient to ensure that they understand and appreciate the significance of prison rape and the necessity of its eradication;

(I) the timely and comprehensive investigation of staff sexual misconduct involving rape or other sexual assault on inmates;

(J) ensuring the confidentiality of prison rape complaints and protecting inmates who make complaints of prison rape;

(K) creating a system for reporting incidents of prison rape that will ensure the confidentiality of prison rape complaints, protect inmates who make prison rape complaints from retaliation, and assure the impartial resolution of prison rape complaints;

(L) data collection and reporting of—

(i) prison rape;

(ii) prison staff sexual misconduct; and

(iii) the resolution of prison rape complaints by prison officials and Federal, State, and local investigation and prosecution authorities; and

(M) such other matters as may reasonably be related to the detection, prevention, reduction, and punishment of prison rape.

(3) Limitation

The Commission shall not propose a recommended standard that would impose substantial additional costs compared to the costs presently expended by Federal, State, and local prison authorities.

(f) Consultation with accreditation organizations

In developing recommended national standards for enhancing the detection, prevention, reduction, and punishment of prison rape, the Commission shall consider any standards that have already been developed, or are being developed simultaneously to the deliberations of the Commission. The Commission shall consult with accreditation organizations responsible for the accreditation of Federal, State, local or private prisons, that have developed or are currently developing standards related to prison rape. The Commission will also consult with national associations representing the

corrections profession that have developed or are currently developing standards related to prison rape.

(g) Hearings

(1) In general

The Commission shall hold public hearings. The Commission may hold such hearings, sit and act at such times and places, take such testimony, and receive such evidence as the Commission considers advisable to carry out its duties under this section.

(2) Witness expenses

Witnesses requested to appear before the Commission shall be paid the same fees as are paid to witnesses under section 1821 of title 28. The per diem and mileage allowances for witnesses shall be paid from funds appropriated to the Commission.

(h) Information from Federal or State agencies

The Commission may secure directly from any Federal department or agency such information as the Commission considers necessary to carry out its duties under this section. The Commission may request the head of any State or local department or agency to furnish such information to the Commission.

(i) Personnel matters

(1) Travel expenses

The members of the Commission shall be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, at rates authorized for employees of agencies under subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5 while away from their homes or regular places of business in the performance of service for the Commission.

(2) Detail of Federal employees

With the affirmative vote of 2/3 of the Commission, any Federal Government employee, with the approval of the head of the appropriate Federal agency, may be detailed to the Commission without reimbursement, and such detail shall be without interruption or loss of civil service status, benefits, or privileges.

(3) Procurement of temporary and intermittent services

Upon the request of the Commission, the Attorney General shall provide reasonable and appropriate office space, supplies, and administrative assistance.

(j) Contracts for research

(1) National Institute of Justice

With a 2/3 affirmative vote, the Commission may select nongovernmental researchers and experts to assist the Commission in carrying out its duties under this chapter. The National Institute of Justice shall contract with the researchers and experts selected by the Commission to provide funding in exchange for their services.

(2) Other organizations

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to limit the ability of the Commission to enter into contracts with other entities or organizations for research necessary to carry out the duties of the Commission under this section.

(k) Subpoenas

(1) Issuance

The Commission may issue subpoenas for the attendance of witnesses and the production of written or other matter.

(2) Enforcement

In the case of contumacy or refusal to obey a subpoena, the Attorney General may in a Federal

court of appropriate jurisdiction obtain an appropriate order to enforce the subpoena.

(3) Confidentiality of documentary evidence

Documents provided to the Commission pursuant to a subpoena issued under this subsection shall not be released publicly without the affirmative vote of 2/3 of the Commission.

(l) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary to carry out this section.

(m) Termination

The Commission shall terminate on the date that is 60 days after the date on which the Commission submits the reports required by this section.

(n) Exemption

The Commission shall be exempt from the Federal Advisory Committee Act.

(Pub. L. 108–79, §7, Sept. 4, 2003, 117 Stat. 980; Pub. L. 108–447, div. B, title I, §123(1), Dec. 8, 2004, 118 Stat. 2871; Pub. L. 109–108, title I, §113(b), Nov. 22, 2005, 119 Stat. 2305; Pub. L. 109–162, title XI, §1181, Jan. 5, 2006, 119 Stat. 3126; Pub. L. 110–199, title II, §261, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 694.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (n), is Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsec. (d)(3)(A). Pub. L. 110–199 substituted "5 years" for "3 years" in introductory provisions.

2006—Subsec. (d)(3)(A). Pub. L. 109–162 made amendment identical to that made by Pub. L. 109–108. See 2005 Amendment note below.

2005—Subsec. (d)(3)(A). Pub. L. 109–108 substituted "3 years" for "2 years".

2004—Pub. L. 108–447 substituted "Elimination" for "Reduction" in section catchline and in text of subsec. (a).

CONSTRUCTION OF 2008 AMENDMENT

For construction of amendments by Pub. L. 110–199 and requirements for grants made under such amendments, see section 17504 of this title.

§15607. Adoption and effect of national standards

(a) Publication of proposed standards

(1) Final rule

Not later than 1 year after receiving the report specified in section 15606(d)(3) of this title, the Attorney General shall publish a final rule adopting national standards for the detection, prevention, reduction, and punishment of prison rape.

(2) Independent judgment

The standards referred to in paragraph (1) shall be based upon the independent judgment of the Attorney General, after giving due consideration to the recommended national standards provided by the Commission under section 15606(e) of this title, and being informed by such data, opinions, and proposals that the Attorney General determines to be appropriate to consider.

(3) Limitation

The Attorney General shall not establish a national standard under this section that would impose substantial additional costs compared to the costs presently expended by Federal, State, and local prison authorities. The Attorney General may, however, provide a list of improvements for consideration by correctional facilities.

(4) Transmission to States

Within 90 days of publishing the final rule under paragraph (1), the Attorney General shall transmit the national standards adopted under such paragraph to the chief executive of each State, the head of the department of corrections of each State, and to the appropriate authorities in those units of local government who oversee operations in one or more prisons.

(b) Applicability to Federal Bureau of Prisons

The national standards referred to in subsection (a) shall apply to the Federal Bureau of Prisons immediately upon adoption of the final rule under subsection (a)(4).

(c) Applicability to detention facilities operated by the Department of Homeland Security

(1) In general

Not later than 180 days after March 7, 2013, the Secretary of Homeland Security shall publish a final rule adopting national standards for the detection, prevention, reduction, and punishment of rape and sexual assault in facilities that maintain custody of aliens detained for a violation of the immigrations laws of the United States.

(2) Applicability

The standards adopted under paragraph (1) shall apply to detention facilities operated by the Department of Homeland Security and to detention facilities operated under contract with the Department.

(3) Compliance

The Secretary of Homeland Security shall—

(A) assess compliance with the standards adopted under paragraph (1) on a regular basis; and

(B) include the results of the assessments in performance evaluations of facilities completed by the Department of Homeland Security.

(4) Considerations

In adopting standards under paragraph (1), the Secretary of Homeland Security shall give due consideration to the recommended national standards provided by the Commission under section 15606(e) of this title.

(5) Definition

As used in this section, the term "detention facilities operated under contract with the Department" includes, but is not limited to contract detention facilities and detention facilities operated through an intergovernmental service agreement with the Department of Homeland Security.

(d) Applicability to custodial facilities operated by the Department of Health and Human Services

(1) In general

Not later than 180 days after March 7, 2013, the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall publish a final rule adopting national standards for the detection, prevention, reduction, and punishment of rape and sexual assault in facilities that maintain custody of unaccompanied alien children (as defined in section 279(g) of title 6).

(2) Applicability

The standards adopted under paragraph (1) shall apply to facilities operated by the Department of Health and Human Services and to facilities operated under contract with the Department.

(3) Compliance

The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall—

(A) assess compliance with the standards adopted under paragraph (1) on a regular basis; and

(B) include the results of the assessments in performance evaluations of facilities completed by the Department of Health and Human Services.

(4) Considerations

In adopting standards under paragraph (1), the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall give due consideration to the recommended national standards provided by the Commission under section 15606(e) of this title.

(e) Eligibility for Federal funds

(1) Covered programs

(A) In general

For purposes of this subsection, a grant program is covered by this subsection if, and only if—

(i) the program is carried out by or under the authority of the Attorney General;

(ii) the program may provide amounts to States for prison purposes; and

(iii) the program is not administered by the Office on Violence Against Women of the Department of Justice.

(B) List

For each fiscal year, the Attorney General shall prepare a list identifying each program that meets the criteria of subparagraph (A) and provide that list to each State.

(2) Adoption of national standards

(A) In general

For each fiscal year, any amount that a State would otherwise receive for prison purposes for that fiscal year under a grant program covered by this subsection shall be reduced by 5 percent, unless the chief executive officer of the State submits to the Attorney General proof of compliance with this chapter through—

(i) a certification that the State has adopted, and is in full compliance with, the national standards described in subsection (a); or

(ii) an assurance that the State intends to adopt and achieve full compliance with those national standards so as to ensure that a certification under clause (i) may be submitted in future years, which includes—

(I) a commitment that not less than 5 percent of such amount shall be used for this purpose; or

(II) a request that the Attorney General hold 5 percent of such amount in abeyance pursuant to the requirements of subparagraph (E).

(B) Rules for certification

(i) In general

A chief executive officer of a State who submits a certification under this paragraph shall also provide the Attorney General with—

(I) a list of the prisons under the operational control of the executive branch of the State;

(II) a list of the prisons listed under subclause (I) that were audited during the most recently concluded audit year;

(III) all final audit reports for prisons listed under subclause (I) that were completed during the most recently concluded audit year; and

(IV) a proposed schedule for completing an audit of all the prisons listed under subclause (I) during the following 3 audit years.

(ii) Audit appeal exception

Beginning on the date that is 3 years after December 16, 2016, a chief executive officer of a State may submit a certification that the State is in full compliance pursuant to subparagraph (A)(i) even if a prison under the operational control of the executive branch of the State has an audit appeal pending.

(C) Rules for assurances

(i) In general

A chief executive officer of a State who submits an assurance under subparagraph (A)(ii) shall also provide the Attorney General with—

(I) a list of the prisons under the operational control of the executive branch of the State;

(II) a list of the prisons listed under subclause (I) that were audited during the most recently concluded audit year;

(III) an explanation of any barriers the State faces to completing required audits;

(IV) all final audit reports for prisons listed under subclause (I) that were completed during the most recently concluded audit year;

(V) a proposed schedule for completing an audit of all prisons under the operational control of the executive branch of the State during the following 3 audit years; and

(VI) an explanation of the State's current degree of implementation of the national standards.

(ii) Additional requirement

A chief executive officer of a State who submits an assurance under subparagraph (A)(ii)(I) shall, before receiving the applicable funds described in subparagraph (A)(ii)(I), also provide the Attorney General with a proposed plan for the expenditure of the funds during the applicable grant period.

(iii) Accounting of funds

A chief executive officer of a State who submits an assurance under subparagraph (A)(ii)(I) shall, in a manner consistent with the applicable grant reporting requirements, submit to the Attorney General a detailed accounting of how the funds described in subparagraph (A) were used.

(D) Sunset of assurance option

(i) In general

On the date that is 3 years after December 16, 2016, subclause (II) of subparagraph (A)(ii) shall cease to have effect.

(ii) Additional sunset

On the date that is 6 years after December 16, 2016, clause (ii) of subparagraph (A) shall cease to have effect.

(iii) Emergency assurances

(I) Request

Notwithstanding clause (ii), during the 2-year period beginning 6 years after December 16, 2016, a chief executive officer of a State who certifies that the State has audited not less than 90 percent of prisons under the operational control of the executive branch of the State may request that the Attorney General allow the chief executive officer to submit an emergency assurance in accordance with subparagraph (A)(ii) as in effect on the day before the date on which that subparagraph ceased to have effect under clause (ii) of this subparagraph.

(II) Grant of request

The Attorney General shall grant a request submitted under subclause (I) within 60 days upon a showing of good cause.

(E) Disposition of funds held in abeyance

(i) In general

If the chief executive officer of a State who has submitted an assurance under subparagraph (A)(ii)(II) subsequently submits a certification under subparagraph (A)(i)

during the 3-year period beginning on December 16, 2016, the Attorney General will release all funds held in abeyance under subparagraph (A)(ii)(II) to be used by the State in accordance with the conditions of the grant program for which the funds were provided.

(ii) Release of funds

If the chief executive officer of a State who has submitted an assurance under subparagraph (A)(ii)(II) is unable to submit a certification during the 3-year period beginning on December 16, 2016, but does assure the Attorney General that 2/3 of prisons under the operational control of the executive branch of the State have been audited at least once, the Attorney General shall release all of the funds of the State held in abeyance to be used in adopting and achieving full compliance with the national standards, if the State agrees to comply with the applicable requirements in clauses (ii) and (iii) of subparagraph (C).

(iii) Redistribution of funds

If the chief executive officer of a State who has submitted an assurance under subparagraph (A)(ii)(II) is unable to submit a certification during the 3-year period beginning on December 16, 2016, and does not assure the Attorney General that 2/3 of prisons under the operational control of the executive branch of the State have been audited at least once, the Attorney General shall redistribute the funds of the State held in abeyance to other States to be used in accordance with the conditions of the grant program for which the funds were provided.

(F) Publication of audit results

Not later than 1 year after December 16, 2016, the Attorney General shall request from each State, and make available on an appropriate Internet website, all final audit reports completed to date for prisons under the operational control of the executive branch of each State. The Attorney General shall update such website annually with reports received from States under subparagraphs (B)(i) and (C)(i).

(G) Report on implementation of national standards

Not later than 2 years after December 16, 2016, the Attorney General shall issue a report to the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives on the status of implementation of the national standards and the steps the Department, in conjunction with the States and other key stakeholders, is taking to address any unresolved implementation issues.

(3) Report on noncompliance

Not later than September 30 of each year, the Attorney General shall publish a report listing each grantee that is not in compliance with the national standards adopted pursuant to subsection (a).

(4) Cooperation with survey

For each fiscal year, any amount that a State receives for that fiscal year under a grant program covered by this subsection shall not be used for prison purposes (and shall be returned to the grant program if no other authorized use is available), unless the chief executive of the State submits to the Attorney General a certification that neither the State, nor any political subdivision or unit of local government within the State, is listed in a report issued by the Attorney General pursuant to section 15603(c)(2)(C) of this title.

(5) Redistribution of amounts

Amounts under a grant program not granted by reason of a reduction under paragraph (2), or returned by reason of the prohibition in paragraph (4), shall be granted to one or more entities not subject to such reduction or such prohibition, subject to the other laws governing that program.

(6) Implementation

The Attorney General shall establish procedures to implement this subsection, including procedures for effectively applying this subsection to discretionary grant programs.

(7) Effective date

(A) Requirement of adoption of standards

The first grants to which paragraph (2) applies are grants for the second fiscal year beginning after the date on which the national standards under subsection (a) are finalized.

(B) Requirement for cooperation

The first grants to which paragraph (4) applies are grants for the fiscal year beginning after September 4, 2003.

(8) Background checks for auditors

An individual seeking certification by the Department of Justice to serve as an auditor of prison compliance with the national standards described in subsection (a) shall, upon request, submit fingerprints in the manner determined by the Attorney General for criminal history record checks of the applicable State and Federal Bureau of Investigation repositories.

(Pub. L. 108–79, §8, Sept. 4, 2003, 117 Stat. 985; Pub. L. 113–4, title XI, §1101(c), Mar. 7, 2013, 127 Stat. 134; Pub. L. 114–324, §§5, 7(2), Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1950, 1951.)

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (e)(1)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 114–324, §5, added cl. (iii).

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 114–324, §7(2)(A), added par. (2) and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "For each fiscal year, any amount that a State would otherwise receive for prison purposes for that fiscal year under a grant program covered by this subsection shall be reduced by 5 percent, unless the chief executive of the State submits to the Attorney General—

"(A) a certification that the State has adopted, and is in full compliance with, the national standards described in subsection (a); or

"(B) an assurance that not less than 5 percent of such amount shall be used only for the purpose of enabling the State to adopt, and achieve full compliance with, those national standards, so as to ensure that a certification under subparagraph (A) may be submitted in future years."

Subsec. (e)(8). Pub. L. 114–324, §7(2)(B), added par. (8).

2013—Subsecs. (c) to (e). Pub. L. 113–4 added subsecs. (c) and (d) and redesignated former subsec. (c) as (e).

§15608. Requirement that accreditation organizations adopt accreditation standards

(a) Eligibility for Federal grants

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, an organization responsible for the accreditation of Federal, State, local, or private prisons, jails, or other penal facilities may not receive any new Federal grants during any period in which such organization fails to meet any of the requirements of subsection (b).

(b) Requirements

To be eligible to receive Federal grants, an accreditation organization referred to in subsection (a) must meet the following requirements:

(1) At all times after 90 days after September 4, 2003, the organization shall have in effect, for each facility that it is responsible for accrediting, accreditation standards for the detection, prevention, reduction, and punishment of prison rape.

(2) At all times after 1 year after the date of the adoption of the final rule under section 15607(a)(4) of this title, the organization shall, in addition to any other such standards that it may promulgate relevant to the detection, prevention, reduction, and punishment of prison rape, adopt accreditation standards consistent with the national standards adopted pursuant to such final rule.

(Pub. L. 108–79, §9, Sept. 4, 2003, 117 Stat. 987.)

§15609. Definitions

In this chapter, the following definitions shall apply:

(1) Carnal knowledge

The term "carnal knowledge" means contact between the penis and the vulva or the penis and the anus, including penetration of any sort, however slight.

(2) Inmate

The term "inmate" means any person incarcerated or detained in any facility who is accused of, convicted of, sentenced for, or adjudicated delinquent for, violations of criminal law or the terms and conditions of parole, probation, pretrial release, or diversionary program.

(3) Jail

The term "jail" means a confinement facility of a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency to hold—

(A) persons pending adjudication of criminal charges; or

(B) persons committed to confinement after adjudication of criminal charges for sentences of 1 year or less.

(4) HIV

The term "HIV" means the human immunodeficiency virus.

(5) Oral sodomy

The term "oral sodomy" means contact between the mouth and the penis, the mouth and the vulva, or the mouth and the anus.

(6) Police lockup

The term "police lockup" means a temporary holding facility of a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency to hold—

(A) inmates pending bail or transport to jail;

(B) inebriates until ready for release; or

(C) juveniles pending parental custody or shelter placement.

(7) Prison

The term "prison" means any confinement facility of a Federal, State, or local government, whether administered by such government or by a private organization on behalf of such government, and includes—

(A) any local jail or police lockup; and

(B) any juvenile facility used for the custody or care of juvenile inmates.

(8) Prison rape

The term "prison rape" includes the rape of an inmate in the actual or constructive control of prison officials.

(9) Rape

The term "rape" means—

(A) the carnal knowledge, oral sodomy, sexual assault with an object, or sexual fondling of a person, forcibly or against that person's will;

(B) the carnal knowledge, oral sodomy, sexual assault with an object, or sexual fondling of a person not forcibly or against the person's will, where the victim is incapable of giving consent because of his or her youth or his or her temporary or permanent mental or physical incapacity; or

(C) the carnal knowledge, oral sodomy, sexual assault with an object, or sexual fondling of a person achieved through the exploitation of the fear or threat of physical violence or bodily injury.

(10) Sexual assault with an object

The term "sexual assault with an object" means the use of any hand, finger, object, or other instrument to penetrate, however slightly, the genital or anal opening of the body of another person.

(11) Sexual fondling

The term "sexual fondling" means the touching of the private body parts of another person (including the genitalia, anus, groin, breast, inner thigh, or buttocks) for the purpose of sexual gratification.

(12) Exclusions

The terms and conditions described in paragraphs (9) and (10) shall not apply to—

(A) custodial or medical personnel gathering physical evidence, or engaged in other legitimate medical treatment, in the course of investigating prison rape;

(B) the use of a health care provider's hands or fingers or the use of medical devices in the course of appropriate medical treatment unrelated to prison rape; or

(C) the use of a health care provider's hands or fingers and the use of instruments to perform body cavity searches in order to maintain security and safety within the prison or detention facility, provided that the search is conducted in a manner consistent with constitutional requirements.

(Pub. L. 108–79, §10, Sept. 4, 2003, 117 Stat. 987.)

CHAPTER 148—WINDSTORM IMPACT REDUCTION

Sec.

§15701. Findings

The Congress finds the following:

(1) Hurricanes, tropical storms, tornadoes, and thunderstorms can cause significant loss of life, injury, destruction of property, and economic and social disruption. All States and regions are vulnerable to these hazards.

(2) The United States currently sustains several billion dollars in economic damages each year due to these windstorms. In recent decades, rapid development and population growth in high-risk areas has greatly increased overall vulnerability to windstorms.

(3) Improved windstorm impact reduction measures have the potential to reduce these losses through—

(A) cost-effective and affordable design and construction methods and practices;

(B) effective mitigation programs at the local, State, and national level;

(C) improved data collection and analysis and impact prediction methodologies;

(D) engineering research on improving new structures and retrofitting existing ones to better withstand windstorms, atmospheric-related research to better understand the behavior and impact of windstorms on the built environment, and subsequent application of those research results; and

(E) public education and outreach.

(4) There is an appropriate role for the Federal Government in supporting windstorm impact

reduction. An effective Federal program in windstorm impact reduction will require interagency coordination, and input from individuals, academia, the private sector, and other interested non-Federal entities.

(Pub. L. 108–360, title II, §202, Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1675.)

SHORT TITLE OF 2015 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 114–52, §1, Sept. 30, 2015, 129 Stat. 496, provided that: "This Act [amending sections 15702 to 15704 and 15706 of this title] may be cited as the 'National Windstorm Impact Reduction Act Reauthorization of 2015'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 108–360, title II, §201, Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1675, provided that: "This Act [probably should be 'this title', enacting this chapter and amending section 1885d of this title] may be cited as the 'National Windstorm Impact Reduction Act of 2004'."

§15702. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) Director

The term "Director" means the Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology.

(2) Lifelines

The term "lifelines" means public works and utilities, including transportation facilities and infrastructure, oil and gas pipelines, electrical power and communication facilities and infrastructure, and water supply and sewage treatment facilities.

(3) Program

The term "Program" means the National Windstorm Impact Reduction Program established by section 15703(a) of this title.

(4) State

The term "State" means each of the States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and any other territory or possession of the United States.

(5) Windstorm

The term "windstorm" means any storm with a damaging or destructive wind component, such as a hurricane, tropical storm, northeaster, tornado, or thunderstorm.

(Pub. L. 108–360, title II, §203, Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1676; Pub. L. 114–52, §2, Sept. 30, 2015, 129 Stat. 496.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title II of Pub. L. 108–360, Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1675, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15701 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Par. (1). Pub. L. 114–52, §2(a), substituted "Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology" for "Director of the Office of Science and Technology Policy".

Par. (2). Pub. L. 114–52, §2(b)(2), added par. (2). Former par. (2) redesignated (3).

Pars. (3), (4). Pub. L. 114–52, §2(b)(1), redesignated pars. (2) and (3) as (3) and (4), respectively. Former par. (4) redesignated (5).

Par. (5). Pub. L. 114–52, §2(b)(1), (c), redesignated par. (4) as (5) and inserted "northeaster," after "tropical storm,".

§15703. National Windstorm Impact Reduction Program

(a) Establishment

There is established the National Windstorm Impact Reduction Program, the purpose of which is to achieve major measurable reductions in the losses of life and property from windstorms through a coordinated Federal effort, in cooperation with other levels of government, academia, and the private sector, aimed at improving the understanding of windstorms and their impacts and developing and encouraging the implementation of cost-effective mitigation measures to reduce those impacts.

(b) Responsibilities of Program agencies

(1) Lead agency

The National Institute of Standards and Technology shall have the primary responsibility for planning and coordinating the Program. In carrying out this paragraph, the Director shall—

(A) ensure that the Program includes the necessary components to promote the implementation of windstorm risk reduction measures by Federal, State, and local governments, national standards and model building code organizations, architects and engineers, and others with a role in planning and constructing buildings and lifelines;

(B) support the development of performance-based engineering tools, and work with appropriate groups to promote the commercial application of such tools, including through wind-related model building codes, voluntary standards, and construction best practices;

(C) request the assistance of Federal agencies other than the Program agencies, as necessary to assist in carrying out this chapter;

(D) coordinate all Federal post-windstorm investigations to the extent practicable; and

(E) when warranted by research or investigative findings, issue recommendations to assist in informing the development of model codes, and provide information to Congress on the use of such recommendations.

(2) National Institute of Standards and Technology

In addition to the lead agency responsibilities described under paragraph (1), the National Institute of Standards and Technology shall be responsible for carrying out research and development to improve model building codes, voluntary standards, and best practices for the design, construction, and retrofit of buildings, structures, and lifelines.

(3) National Science Foundation

The National Science Foundation shall support research in—

(A) engineering and the atmospheric sciences to improve the understanding of the behavior of windstorms and their impact on buildings, structures, and lifelines; and

(B) economic and social factors influencing windstorm risk reduction measures.

(4) National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

The National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration shall support atmospheric sciences research to improve the understanding of the behavior of windstorms and their impact on buildings, structures, and lifelines.

(5) Federal Emergency Management Agency

The Federal Emergency Management Agency shall—

(A) support—

(i) the development of risk assessment tools and effective mitigation techniques;

(ii) windstorm-related data collection and analysis;

(iii) public outreach and information dissemination; and

(iv) promotion of the adoption of windstorm preparedness and mitigation measures, including for households, businesses, and communities, consistent with the Agency's all-hazards approach; and

(B) work closely with national standards and model building code organizations, in conjunction with the National Institute of Standards and Technology, to promote the implementation of research results and promote better building practices within the building design and construction industry, including architects, engineers, contractors, builders, and inspectors.

(c) Program components

(1) In general

The Program shall consist of three primary mitigation components: improved understanding of windstorms, windstorm impact assessment, and windstorm impact reduction. The components shall be implemented through activities such as data collection and analysis, risk assessment, outreach, technology transfer, and research and development. To the extent practicable, research activities authorized under this chapter shall be peer-reviewed, and the components shall be designed to be complementary to, and avoid duplication of, other public and private hazard reduction efforts.

(2) Understanding of windstorms

Activities to enhance the understanding of windstorms shall include research to improve knowledge of and data collection on the impact of severe wind on buildings, structures, and infrastructure.

(3) Windstorm impact assessment

Activities to improve windstorm impact assessment shall include—

(A) development of mechanisms for collecting and inventorying information on the performance of buildings, structures, and infrastructure in windstorms and improved collection of pertinent information from sources, including the design and construction industry, insurance companies, and building officials;

(B) research, development, and technology transfer to improve loss estimation and risk assessment systems; and

(C) research, development, and technology transfer to improve simulation and computational modeling of windstorm impacts.

(4) Windstorm impact reduction

Activities to reduce windstorm impacts shall include—

(A) development of improved outreach and implementation mechanisms to translate existing information and research findings into cost-effective and affordable practices for design and construction professionals, and State and local officials;

(B) development of cost-effective and affordable windstorm-resistant systems, structures, and materials for use in new construction and retrofit of existing construction; and

(C) outreach and information dissemination related to cost-effective and affordable construction techniques, loss estimation and risk assessment methodologies, and other pertinent information regarding windstorm phenomena to Federal, State, and local officials, the construction industry, and the general public.

(d) Budget activities

The Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, the Director of the National Science Foundation, the Director of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, and the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency shall each include in their agency's annual budget request to Congress a description of their agency's projected activities under the Program for the fiscal year covered by the budget request, along with an assessment of what they plan to spend on those activities for that fiscal year.

(e) Interagency Coordinating Committee on Windstorm Impact Reduction

(1) Establishment

There is established an Interagency Coordinating Committee on Windstorm Impact Reduction,

chaired by the Director or the Director's designee.

(2) Membership

In addition to the chair, the Committee shall be composed of—

(A) the heads or such designees of—

(i) the Federal Emergency Management Agency;

(ii) the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration;

(iii) the National Science Foundation;

(iv) the Office of Science and Technology Policy; and

(v) the Office of Management and Budget; and

(B) the head of any other Federal agency, or such designee, the chair considers appropriate.

(3) Meetings

The Committee shall meet not less than once a year at the call of the Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology.

(4) General purpose and duties

The Committee shall oversee the planning and coordination of the Program.

(5) Strategic plan

The Committee shall develop and submit to Congress, not later than 1 year after September 30, 2015, a Strategic Plan for the Program that includes—

(A) prioritized goals for the Program that will mitigate against the loss of life and property from future windstorms;

(B) short-term, mid-term, and long-term research objectives to achieve those goals;

(C) a description of the role of each Program agency in achieving the prioritized goals;

(D) the methods by which progress towards the goals will be assessed; and

(E) an explanation of how the Program will foster the transfer of research results into outcomes, such as improved model building codes.

(6) Progress report

Not later than 18 months after September 30, 2015, the Committee shall submit to the Congress a report on the progress of the Program that includes—

(A) a description of the activities funded under the Program, a description of how these activities align with the prioritized goals and research objectives established in the Strategic Plan, and the budgets, per agency, for these activities;

(B) the outcomes achieved by the Program for each of the goals identified in the Strategic Plan;

(C) a description of any recommendations made to change existing building codes that were the result of Program activities; and

(D) a description of the extent to which the Program has incorporated recommendations from the Advisory Committee on Windstorm Impact Reduction.

(7) Coordinated budget

The Committee shall develop a coordinated budget for the Program, which shall be submitted to the Congress not later than 60 days after the date of the President's budget submission for each fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 108–360, title II, §204, Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1676; Pub. L. 114–52, §3, Sept. 30, 2015, 129 Stat. 496.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(C), was in the original "this Act" and was translated as reading "this title", to reflect the probable intent of Congress. See below.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), was in the original "this title", meaning title II of Pub. L. 108–360, Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1675, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete

classification of title II to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15701 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 114–52, §3(1), added subsecs. (a) and (b) and struck out former subsecs. (a) and (b) which related to the establishment and objective of the National Windstorm Impact Reduction Program, respectively.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 114–52, §3(1), (2), redesignated subsec. (d) as (c) and struck out former subsec. (c) which established an Interagency Working Group.

Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 114–52, §3(2), (3), added subsecs. (d) and (e), redesignated former subsec. (d) as (c), and struck out former subsec. (e) which required an implementation plan from the Interagency Working Group.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 114–52, §3(2), struck out subsec. (f) which required biennial reports on the status of the windstorm impact reduction program.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of all functions, personnel, assets, components, authorities, grant programs, and liabilities of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, including the functions of the Under Secretary for Federal Emergency Management relating thereto, to the Federal Emergency Management Agency, see section 315(a)(1) of Title 6, Domestic Security.

§15704. National Advisory Committee on Windstorm Impact Reduction

(a) In general

The Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology shall establish an Advisory Committee on Windstorm Impact Reduction, which shall be composed of at least 7 and not more than 15 members who are qualified to provide advice on windstorm impact reduction and represent related scientific, architectural, and engineering disciplines, none of whom may be employees of the Federal Government, including—

(1) representatives of research and academic institutions;
(2) industry standards development organizations;
(3) emergency management agencies;
(4) State and local government; and
(5) business communities, including the insurance industry.

(b) Assessments

The Advisory Committee on Windstorm Impact Reduction shall offer assessments and recommendations on—

(1) trends and developments in the natural, engineering, and social sciences and practices of windstorm impact mitigation;
(2) the priorities of the Program's Strategic Plan;
(3) the coordination of the Program;
(4) the effectiveness of the Program in meeting its purposes; and
(5) any revisions to the Program which may be necessary.

(c) Compensation

The members of the Advisory Committee established under this section shall serve without compensation.

(d) Reports

At least every 2 years, the Advisory Committee shall report to the Director on the assessments carried out under subsection (b) and its recommendations for ways to improve the Program.

(e) Charter

Notwithstanding section 14(b)(2) of the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.), the Advisory Committee shall not be required to file a charter subsequent to its initial charter, filed under section 9(c) of such Act, before the termination date specified in subsection (f) of this section.

(f) Termination

The Advisory Committee shall terminate on September 30, 2017.

(g) Conflict of interest

An Advisory Committee member shall recuse himself from any Advisory Committee activity in which he has an actual pecuniary interest.

(Pub. L. 108–360, title II, §205, Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1678; Pub. L. 114–52, §4, Sept. 30, 2015, 129 Stat. 499.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 9 and 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (e), are sections 9 and 14, respectively, of Pub. L. 92–463, which are set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Pub. L. 114–52 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section established a National Advisory Committee on Windstorm Impact Reduction.

§15705. Savings clause

Nothing in this chapter supersedes any provision of the National Manufactured Housing Construction and Safety Standards Act of 1974 [42 U.S.C. 5401 et seq.]. No design, construction method, practice, technology, material, mitigation methodology, or hazard reduction measure of any kind developed under this chapter shall be required for a home certified under section 616 of the National Manufactured Housing Construction and Safety Standards Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5415), pursuant to standards issued under such Act, without being subject to the consensus development process and rulemaking procedures of that Act.

(Pub. L. 108–360, title II, §206, Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1679.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title II of Pub. L. 108–360, Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1675, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15701 of this title and Tables.

The National Manufactured Housing Construction and Safety Standards Act of 1974, referred to in text, is title VI of Pub. L. 93–383, Aug. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 700, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 70 (§5401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5401 of this title and Tables.

§15706. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Federal Emergency Management Agency

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Federal Emergency Management Agency for carrying out this chapter—

(1) $5,332,000 for fiscal year 2015;
(2) $5,332,000 for fiscal year 2016; and
(3) $5,332,000 for fiscal year 2017.

(b) National Science Foundation

There are authorized to be appropriated to the National Science Foundation for carrying out this chapter—

(1) $9,682,000 for fiscal year 2015;
(2) $9,682,000 for fiscal year 2016; and
(3) $9,682,000 for fiscal year 2017.

(c) National Institute of Standards and Technology

There are authorized to be appropriated to the National Institute of Standards and Technology for carrying out this chapter—

(1) $4,120,000 for fiscal year 2015;
(2) $4,120,000 for fiscal year 2016; and
(3) $4,120,000 for fiscal year 2017.

(d) National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

There are authorized to be appropriated to the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration for carrying out this chapter—

(1) $2,266,000 for fiscal year 2015;
(2) $2,266,000 for fiscal year 2016; and
(3) $2,266,000 for fiscal year 2017.

(Pub. L. 108–360, title II, §207, Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1679; Pub. L. 114–52, §5, Sept. 30, 2015, 129 Stat. 500.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title II of Pub. L. 108–360, Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1675, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15701 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Pub. L. 114–52 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section authorized appropriations for fiscal years 2006 to 2008.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of all functions, personnel, assets, components, authorities, grant programs, and liabilities of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, including the functions of the Under Secretary for Federal Emergency Management relating thereto, to the Federal Emergency Management Agency, see section 315(a)(1) of Title 6, Domestic Security.

§15707. Coordination

The Secretary of Commerce, the Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, the Director of the Office of Science and Technology Policy and the heads of other Federal departments and agencies carrying out activities under this chapter and the statutes amended by this chapter shall work together to ensure that research, technologies, and response techniques are shared among the programs authorized in this chapter in order to coordinate the Nation's efforts to reduce vulnerability to the hazards described in this chapter.

(Pub. L. 108–360, title II, §209, Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1680.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title II of Pub. L. 108–360, Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1675, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15701 of this title and Tables.

CHAPTER 149—NATIONAL ENERGY POLICY AND PROGRAMS

Sec.

SUBCHAPTER VII—VEHICLES AND FUELS

PART A—EXISTING PROGRAMS

PART B—HYBRID VEHICLES, ADVANCED VEHICLES, AND FUEL CELL BUSES

SUBPART 1—HYBRID VEHICLES

SUBPART 2—ADVANCED VEHICLES

SUBPART 3—FUEL CELL BUSES

PART C—CLEAN SCHOOL BUSES

PART D—MISCELLANEOUS

PART E—FEDERAL AND STATE PROCUREMENT

PART F—DIESEL EMISSIONS REDUCTION

SUBCHAPTER VIII—HYDROGEN

§15801. Definitions

Except as otherwise provided, in this Act:

(1) Department

The term "Department" means the Department of Energy.

(2) Institution of higher education

(A) In general

The term "institution of higher education" has the meaning given the term in section 1001(a) of title 20.

(B) Inclusion

The term "institution of higher education" includes an organization that—

(i) is organized, and at all times thereafter operated, exclusively for the benefit of, to perform the functions of, or to carry out the functions of one or more organizations referred to in subparagraph (A); and

(ii) is operated, supervised, or controlled by or in connection with one or more of those organizations.

(3) National Laboratory

The term "National Laboratory" means any of the following laboratories owned by the Department:

(A) Ames Laboratory.
(B) Argonne National Laboratory.
(C) Brookhaven National Laboratory.
(D) Fermi National Accelerator Laboratory.
(E) Idaho National Laboratory.
(F) Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory.
(G) Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory.
(H) Los Alamos National Laboratory.
(I) National Energy Technology Laboratory.
(J) National Renewable Energy Laboratory.
(K) Oak Ridge National Laboratory.
(L) Pacific Northwest National Laboratory.
(M) Princeton Plasma Physics Laboratory.
(N) Sandia National Laboratories.
(O) Savannah River National Laboratory.
(P) Stanford Linear Accelerator Center.
(Q) Thomas Jefferson National Accelerator Facility.

(4) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Energy.

(5) Small business concern

The term "small business concern" has the meaning given the term in section 632 of title 15.

(Pub. L. 109–58, §2, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 604.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 594, as amended, known as the Energy Policy Act of 2005, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and repealed numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note below and Tables.

SHORT TITLE OF 2011 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–364, §1, Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4056, provided that: "This Act [amending sections 16131 to 16134 and 16137 of this title and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 16131 of this title] may be cited as the 'Diesel Emissions Reduction Act of 2010'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 110–69, title V, §5001, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 600, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter XVII of this chapter and sections 7381g to 7381r of this title, amending sections 7381a, 7381d, 7381e, and 16311 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 7381g of this title] may be cited as the 'Protecting America's Competitive Edge Through Energy Act' or the 'PACE–Energy Act'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 109–375, §1, Dec. 1, 2006, 120 Stat. 2656, provided that: "This Act [amending section 15855 of this title] may be cited as the 'Sierra National Forest Land Exchange Act of 2006'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 109–58, §1(a), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 594, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Energy Policy Act of 2005'."

Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §431, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 760, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle D (§§431–438) of title IV of Pub. L. 109–58, enacting part C (§15991) of subchapter IV of this chapter, amending sections 201, 202a, 203, and 207 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 201 of Title 30] may be cited as the 'Coal Leasing Amendments Act of 2005'."

Pub. L. 109–58, title V, §501, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 763, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter V of this chapter, section 7144e of this title, and chapter 37 (§3501 et seq.) of Title 25, Indians, amending section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and section 4132 of Title 25, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 3501 of Title 25] may be cited as the 'Indian Tribal Energy Development and Self-Determination Act of 2005'."

Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §801, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 844, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter VIII of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Spark M. Matsunaga Hydrogen Act of 2005'."

Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §901, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 856, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter IX of this chapter, amending sections 8101 and 8102 of Title 7, Agriculture, and section 5523 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, enacting provisions set out as notes under section 8102 of Title 7 and section 2001 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining, amending provisions set out as notes under section 8101 of Title 7, and section 1902 of Title 30] may be cited as the 'Energy Research, Development, Demonstration, and Commercial Application Act of 2005'."

Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1201, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 941, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter XII of this chapter and sections 824j–1 and 824o to 824w of Title 16, Conservation, amending sections 796, 824, 824a–3, 824b, 824e, 824j, 824m, 825e, 825f, 825l to 825o, 825o–1, 2621, 2622, 2625, 2634, and 2642 of Title 16, repealing chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and sections 824n and 825q of Title 16, and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 16451 of this title and sections 824b, 824o, 824q, and 2642 of Title 16] may be cited as the 'Electricity Modernization Act of 2005'."

Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1261, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 972, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle F (§§1261–1277) of title XII of Pub.L. 109–58, enacting part D (§16451 et seq.) of subchapter XII of this chapter, amending sections 824 and 824m of Title 16, Conservation, repealing chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 825q of Title 16, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 16451 of this title] may be cited as the 'Public Utility Holding Company Act of 2005'."

SUBCHAPTER I—ENERGY EFFICIENCY

PART A—FEDERAL PROGRAMS

§15811. Voluntary commitments to reduce industrial energy intensity

(a) Definition of energy intensity

In this section, the term "energy intensity" means the primary energy consumed for each unit of physical output in an industrial process.

(b) Voluntary agreements

The Secretary may enter into voluntary agreements with one or more persons in industrial sectors that consume significant quantities of primary energy for each unit of physical output to reduce the energy intensity of the production activities of the persons.

(c) Goal

Voluntary agreements under this section shall have as a goal the reduction of energy intensity by not less than 2.5 percent each year during the period of calendar years 2007 through 2016.

(d) Recognition

The Secretary, in cooperation with other appropriate Federal agencies, shall develop mechanisms to recognize and publicize the achievements of participants in voluntary agreements under this section.

(e) Technical assistance

A person that enters into an agreement under this section and continues to make a good faith effort to achieve the energy efficiency goals specified in the agreement shall be eligible to receive from the Secretary a grant or technical assistance, as appropriate, to assist in the achievement of those goals.

(f) Report

Not later than each of June 30, 2012, and June 30, 2017, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report that—

(1) evaluates the success of the voluntary agreements under this section; and

(2) provides independent verification of a sample of the energy savings estimates provided by participating firms.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §106, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 611.)

§15812. Advanced Building Efficiency Testbed

(a) Establishment

The Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator of General Services, shall establish an Advanced Building Efficiency Testbed program for the development, testing, and demonstration of advanced engineering systems, components, and materials to enable innovations in building technologies. The program shall evaluate efficiency concepts for government and industry buildings, and demonstrate the ability of next generation buildings to support individual and organizational productivity and health (including by improving indoor air quality) as well as flexibility and technological change to improve environmental sustainability. Such program shall complement and not duplicate existing national programs.

(b) Participants

The program established under subsection (a) shall be led by a university with the ability to

combine the expertise from numerous academic fields including, at a minimum, intelligent workplaces and advanced building systems and engineering, electrical and computer engineering, computer science, architecture, urban design, and environmental and mechanical engineering. Such university shall partner with other universities and entities who have established programs and the capability of advancing innovative building efficiency technologies.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this section $6,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2006 through 2008, to remain available until expended. For any fiscal year in which funds are expended under this section, the Secretary shall provide one-third of the total amount to the lead university described in subsection (b), and provide the remaining two-thirds to the other participants referred to in subsection (b) on an equal basis.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §107, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 612.)

§15813. Enhancing energy efficiency in management of Federal lands

(a) Sense of the Congress

It is the sense of the Congress that Federal agencies should enhance the use of energy efficient technologies in the management of natural resources.

(b) Energy efficient buildings

To the extent practicable, the Secretary of the Interior, the Secretary of Commerce, and the Secretary of Agriculture shall seek to incorporate energy efficient technologies in public and administrative buildings associated with management of the National Park System, National Wildlife Refuge System, National Forest System, National Marine Sanctuaries System, and other public lands and resources managed by the Secretaries.

(c) Energy efficient vehicles

To the extent practicable, the Secretary of the Interior, the Secretary of Commerce, and the Secretary of Agriculture shall seek to use energy efficient motor vehicles, including vehicles equipped with biodiesel or hybrid engine technologies, in the management of the National Park System, National Wildlife Refuge System, National Forest System, National Marine Sanctuaries System, and other public lands and resources managed by the Secretaries.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §111, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 615.)

PART B—ENERGY ASSISTANCE AND STATE PROGRAMS

§15821. Energy efficient appliance rebate programs

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Eligible State

The term "eligible State" means a State that meets the requirements of subsection (b).

(2) Energy Star program

The term "Energy Star program" means the program established by section 6294a of this title.

(3) Residential Energy Star product

The term "residential Energy Star product" means a product for a residence that is rated for energy efficiency under the Energy Star program.

(4) State energy office

The term "State energy office" means the State agency responsible for developing State energy conservation plans under section 6322 of this title.

(5) State program

The term "State program" means a State energy efficient appliance rebate program described in subsection (b)(1).

(b) Eligible States

A State shall be eligible to receive an allocation under subsection (c) if the State—

(1) establishes (or has established) a State energy efficient appliance rebate program to provide rebates to residential consumers for the purchase of residential Energy Star products, or products with improved energy efficiency in cold climates, to replace used appliances of the same type;

(2) submits an application for the allocation at such time, in such form, and containing such information as the Secretary may require; and

(3) provides assurances satisfactory to the Secretary that the State will use the allocation to supplement, but not supplant, funds made available to carry out the State program.

(c) Amount of allocations

(1) In general

Subject to paragraph (2), for each fiscal year, the Secretary shall allocate to the State energy office of each eligible State to carry out subsection (d) an amount equal to the product obtained by multiplying the amount made available under subsection (f) for the fiscal year by the ratio that the population of the State in the most recent calendar year for which data are available bears to the total population of all eligible States in that calendar year.

(2) Minimum allocations

For each fiscal year, the amounts allocated under this subsection shall be adjusted proportionately so that no eligible State is allocated a sum that is less than an amount determined by the Secretary.

(d) Use of allocated funds

The allocation to a State energy office under subsection (c) may be used to pay up to 50 percent of the cost of establishing and carrying out a State program.

(e) Issuance of rebates

Rebates may be provided to residential consumers that meet the requirements of the State program. The amount of a rebate shall be determined by the State energy office, taking into consideration—

(1) the amount of the allocation to the State energy office under subsection (c);

(2) the amount of any Federal or State tax incentive available for the purchase of the residential Energy Star product or product with improved energy efficiency in a cold climate; and

(3) the difference between the cost of the residential Energy Star product or product with improved energy efficiency in a cold climate and the cost of an appliance that is not a residential Energy Star product or product with improved energy efficiency in a cold climate, but is of the same type as, and is the nearest capacity, performance, and other relevant characteristics (as determined by the State energy office) to, the residential Energy Star product or product with improved energy efficiency in a cold climate.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this section $50,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2006 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §124, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 617; Pub. L. 110–140, title III, §315(b), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1572.)

AMENDMENTS

2007—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 110–140, §315(b)(1), inserted ", or products with improved energy efficiency in cold climates," after "residential Energy Star products".

Subsec. (e)(2), (3). Pub. L. 110–140, §315(b)(2), inserted "or product with improved energy efficiency in a cold climate" after "residential Energy Star product" wherever appearing.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§15822. Energy efficient public buildings

(a) Grants

The Secretary may make grants to the State agency responsible for developing State energy conservation plans under section 6322 of this title, or, if no such agency exists, a State agency designated by the Governor of the State, to assist units of local government in the State in improving the energy efficiency of public buildings and facilities—

(1) through construction of new energy efficient public buildings that use at least 30 percent less energy than a comparable public building constructed in compliance with standards prescribed in the most recent version of the International Energy Conservation Code, or a similar State code intended to achieve substantially equivalent efficiency levels; or

(2) through renovation of existing public buildings to achieve reductions in energy use of at least 30 percent as compared to the baseline energy use in such buildings prior to renovation, assuming a 3-year, weather-normalized average for calculating such baseline.

(b) Administration

State energy offices receiving grants under this section shall—

(1) maintain such records and evidence of compliance as the Secretary may require; and

(2) develop and distribute information and materials and conduct programs to provide technical services and assistance to encourage planning, financing, and design of energy efficient public buildings by units of local government.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

For the purposes of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary $30,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010. Not more than 10 percent of appropriated funds shall be used for administration.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §125, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 618.)

§15823. Low income community energy efficiency pilot program

(a) Grants

The Secretary is authorized to make grants to units of local government, private, non-profit community development organizations, and Indian tribe economic development entities to improve energy efficiency; identify and develop alternative, renewable, and distributed energy supplies; and increase energy conservation in low income rural and urban communities.

(b) Purpose of grants

The Secretary may make grants on a competitive basis for—

(1) investments that develop alternative, renewable, and distributed energy supplies;

(2) energy efficiency projects and energy conservation programs;

(3) studies and other activities that improve energy efficiency in low income rural and urban communities;

(4) planning and development assistance for increasing the energy efficiency of buildings and facilities; and

(5) technical and financial assistance to local government and private entities on developing new renewable and distributed sources of power or combined heat and power generation.

(c) Definition

For purposes of this section, the term "Indian tribe" means any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community, including any Alaskan Native village or regional or village corporation as defined in or established pursuant to the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.), that is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

For the purposes of this section there are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary $20,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2008.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §126, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 618.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 92–203, Dec. 18, 1971, 85 Stat. 688, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 33 (§1601 et seq.) of Title 43, Public Lands. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of Title 43 and Tables.

§15824. State Technologies Advancement Collaborative

(a) In general

The Secretary, in cooperation with the States, shall establish a cooperative program for research, development, demonstration, and deployment of technologies in which there is a common Federal and State energy efficiency, renewable energy, and fossil energy interest, to be known as the "State Technologies Advancement Collaborative" (referred to in this section as the "Collaborative").

(b) Duties

The Collaborative shall—

(1) leverage Federal and State funding through cost-shared activity;

(2) reduce redundancies in Federal and State funding; and

(3) create multistate projects to be awarded through a competitive process.

(c) Administration

The Collaborative shall be administered through an agreement between the Department and appropriate State-based organizations.

(d) Funding sources

Funding for the Collaborative may be provided from—

(1) amounts specifically appropriated for the Collaborative; or

(2) amounts that may be allocated from other appropriations without changing the purpose for which the amounts are appropriated.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to carry out this section such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §127, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 619.)

PART C—ENERGY EFFICIENT PRODUCTS

§15831. Public energy education program

(a) In general

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall convene an organizational conference for the purpose of establishing an ongoing, self-sustaining national public energy education program.

(b) Participants

The Secretary shall invite to participate in the conference individuals and entities representing all aspects of energy production and distribution, including—

(1) industrial firms;
(2) professional societies;
(3) educational organizations;
(4) trade associations; and
(5) governmental agencies.

(c) Purpose, scope, and structure

(1) Purpose

The purpose of the conference shall be to establish an ongoing, self-sustaining national public energy education program to examine and recognize interrelationships between energy sources in all forms, including—

(A) conservation and energy efficiency;
(B) the role of energy use in the economy; and
(C) the impact of energy use on the environment.

(2) Scope and structure

Taking into consideration the purpose described in paragraph (1), the participants in the conference invited under subsection (b) shall design the scope and structure of the program described in subsection (a).

(d) Technical assistance

The Secretary shall provide technical assistance and other guidance necessary to carry out the program described in subsection (a).

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §133, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 622.)

§15832. Energy efficiency public information initiative

(a) In general

The Secretary shall carry out a comprehensive national program, including advertising and media awareness, to inform consumers about—

(1) the need to reduce energy consumption during the 4-year period beginning on August 8, 2005;

(2) the benefits to consumers of reducing consumption of electricity, natural gas, and petroleum, particularly during peak use periods;

(3) the importance of low energy costs to economic growth and preserving manufacturing jobs in the United States; and

(4) practical, cost-effective measures that consumers can take to reduce consumption of electricity, natural gas, and gasoline, including—

(A) maintaining and repairing heating and cooling ducts and equipment;
(B) weatherizing homes and buildings;
(C) purchasing energy efficient products; and

(D) proper tire maintenance.

(b) Cooperation

The program carried out under subsection (a) shall—

(1) include collaborative efforts with State and local government officials and the private sector; and

(2) incorporate, to the maximum extent practicable, successful State and local public education programs.

(c) Report

Not later than July 1, 2009, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report describing the effectiveness of the program under this section.

(d) Termination of authority

The program carried out under this section shall terminate on December 31, 2010.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $90,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §134, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 623.)

§15833. Energy efficiency pilot program

(a) In general

The Secretary shall establish a pilot program under which the Secretary provides financial assistance to at least 3, but not more than 7, States to carry out pilot projects in the States for—

(1) planning and adopting statewide programs that encourage, for each year in which the pilot project is carried out—

(A) energy efficiency; and

(B) reduction of consumption of electricity or natural gas in the State by at least 0.75 percent, as compared to a baseline determined by the Secretary for the period preceding the implementation of the program; or

(2) for any State that has adopted a statewide program as of August 8, 2005, activities that reduce energy consumption in the State by expanding and improving the program.

(b) Verification

A State that receives financial assistance under subsection (a)(1) shall submit to the Secretary independent verification of any energy savings achieved through the statewide program.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010, to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §140, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 647.)

§15834. Report on failure to comply with deadlines for new or revised energy conservation standards

(a) Initial report

The Secretary shall submit a report to Congress regarding each new or revised energy conservation or water use standard which the Secretary has failed to issue in conformance with the deadlines established in the Energy Policy and Conservation Act [42 U.S.C. 6201 et seq.]. Such report shall state the reasons why the Secretary has failed to comply with the deadline for issuances

of the new or revised standard and set forth the Secretary's plan for expeditiously prescribing such new or revised standard. The Secretary's initial report shall be submitted not later than 6 months following August 8, 2005, and subsequent reports shall be submitted whenever the Secretary determines that additional deadlines for issuance of new or revised standards have been missed.

(b) Implementation report

Every 6 months following the submission of a report under subsection (a) until the adoption of a new or revised standard described in such report, the Secretary shall submit to the Congress an implementation report describing the Secretary's progress in implementing the Secretary's plan or the issuance of the new or revised standard.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §141, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 648.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Energy Policy and Conservation Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 94–163, Dec. 22, 1975, 89 Stat. 871, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 77 (§6201 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6201 of this title and Tables.

PART D—PUBLIC HOUSING

§15841. Energy-efficient appliances

In purchasing appliances, a public housing agency shall purchase energy-efficient appliances that are Energy Star products or FEMP-designated products, as such terms are defined in section 8259b of this title, unless the purchase of energy-efficient appliances is not cost-effective to the agency.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §152, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 649.)

§15842. Energy strategy for HUD

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall develop and implement an integrated strategy to reduce utility expenses through cost-effective energy conservation and efficiency measures and energy efficient design and construction of public and assisted housing. The energy strategy shall include the development of energy reduction goals and incentives for public housing agencies. The Secretary shall submit a report to Congress, not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, on the energy strategy and the actions taken by the Department of Housing and Urban Development to monitor the energy usage of public housing agencies and shall submit an update every 2 years thereafter on progress in implementing the strategy.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title I, §154, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 650.)

SUBCHAPTER II—RENEWABLE ENERGY

PART A—GENERAL PROVISIONS

§15851. Assessment of renewable energy resources

(a) Resource assessment

Not later than 6 months after August 8, 2005, and each year thereafter, the Secretary shall review the available assessments of renewable energy resources within the United States, including solar, wind, biomass, ocean (including tidal, wave, current, and thermal), geothermal, and hydroelectric energy resources, and undertake new assessments as necessary, taking into account changes in market conditions, available technologies, and other relevant factors.

(b) Contents of reports

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, and each year thereafter, the Secretary shall publish a report based on the assessment under subsection (a). The report shall contain—

(1) a detailed inventory describing the available amount and characteristics of the renewable energy resources; and

(2) such other information as the Secretary believes would be useful in developing such renewable energy resources, including descriptions of surrounding terrain, population and load centers, nearby energy infrastructure, location of energy and water resources, and available estimates of the costs needed to develop each resource, together with an identification of any barriers to providing adequate transmission for remote sources of renewable energy resources to current and emerging markets, recommendations for removing or addressing such barriers, and ways to provide access to the grid that do not unfairly disadvantage renewable or other energy producers.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

For the purposes of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary $10,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §201, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 650.)

§15852. Federal purchase requirement

(a) Requirement

The President, acting through the Secretary, shall seek to ensure that, to the extent economically feasible and technically practicable, of the total amount of electric energy the Federal Government consumes during any fiscal year, the following amounts shall be renewable energy:

(1) Not less than 3 percent in fiscal years 2007 through 2009.

(2) Not less than 5 percent in fiscal years 2010 through 2012.

(3) Not less than 7.5 percent in fiscal year 2013 and each fiscal year thereafter.

(b) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Biomass

The term "biomass" means any lignin waste material that is segregated from other waste materials and is determined to be nonhazardous by the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency and any solid, nonhazardous, cellulosic material that is derived from—

(A) any of the following forest-related resources: mill residues, precommercial thinnings, slash, and brush, or nonmerchantable material;

(B) solid wood waste materials, including waste pallets, crates, dunnage, manufacturing and construction wood wastes (other than pressure-treated, chemically-treated, or painted wood wastes), and landscape or right-of-way tree trimmings, but not including municipal solid waste (garbage), gas derived from the biodegradation of solid waste, or paper that is commonly recycled;

(C) agriculture wastes, including orchard tree crops, vineyard, grain, legumes, sugar, and other crop by-products or residues, and livestock waste nutrients; or

(D) a plant that is grown exclusively as a fuel for the production of electricity.

(2) Renewable energy

The term "renewable energy" means electric energy generated from solar, wind, biomass, landfill gas, ocean (including tidal, wave, current, and thermal), geothermal, municipal solid waste, or new hydroelectric generation capacity achieved from increased efficiency or additions of new capacity at an existing hydroelectric project.

(c) Calculation

For purposes of determining compliance with the requirement of this section, the amount of renewable energy shall be doubled if—

(1) the renewable energy is produced and used on-site at a Federal facility;

(2) the renewable energy is produced on Federal lands and used at a Federal facility; or

(3) the renewable energy is produced on Indian land as defined in title XXVI of the Energy Policy Act of 1992 (25 U.S.C. 3501 et seq.) and used at a Federal facility.

(d) Report

Not later than April 15, 2007, and every 2 years thereafter, the Secretary shall provide a report to Congress on the progress of the Federal Government in meeting the goals established by this section.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §203, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 652.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Energy Policy Act of 1992, referred to in subsec. (c)(3), is Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2776, as amended. Title XXVI of the Act is classified generally to chapter 37 (§3501 et seq.) of Title 25, Indians. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13201 of this title and Tables.

FEDERAL LEADERSHIP ON ENERGY MANAGEMENT

Memorandum of President of the United States, Dec. 5, 2013, 78 F.R. 75209, which set a renewable energy target and building performance and energy management requirements for Federal agencies, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 13693, §16(b), Mar. 19, 2015, 80 F.R. 15880, set out in a note under section 4321 of this title.

§15853. Rebate program

(1) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a program providing rebates for consumers for expenditures made for the installation of a renewable energy system in connection with a dwelling unit or small business.

(2) Amount of rebate

Rebates provided under the program established under paragraph (1) shall be in an amount not to exceed the lesser of—

(A) 25 percent of the expenditures described in paragraph (1) made by the consumer; or

(B) $3,000.

(3) Definition

For purposes of this section, the term "renewable energy system" has the meaning given that term in section 6865(c)(6)(A) of this title.

(4) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section, to remain available until expended—

(A) $150,000,000 for fiscal year 2006;

(B) $150,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(C) $200,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;

(D) $250,000,000 for fiscal year 2009; and

(E) $250,000,000 for fiscal year 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §206(c), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 655.)

§15854. Sugar Cane Ethanol Program

(a) Definition of program

In this section, the term "program" means the Sugar Cane Ethanol Program established by subsection (b).

(b) Establishment

There is established within the Environmental Protection Agency a program to be known as the "Sugar Cane Ethanol Program".

(c) Project

(1) In general

Subject to the availability of appropriations under subsection (d), in carrying out the program, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency shall establish a project that is—

(A) carried out in multiple States—

(i) in each of which is produced cane sugar that is eligible for loans under section 7272 of title 7, or a similar subsequent authority; and

(ii) at the option of each such State, that have an incentive program that requires the use of ethanol in the State; and

(B) designed to study the production of ethanol from cane sugar, sugarcane, and sugarcane byproducts.

(2) Requirements

A project described in paragraph (1) shall—

(A) be limited to sugar producers and the production of ethanol in the States of Florida, Louisiana, Texas, and Hawaii, divided equally among the States, to demonstrate that the process may be applicable to cane sugar, sugarcane, and sugarcane byproducts;

(B) include information on the ways in which the scale of production may be replicated once the sugar cane industry has located sites for, and constructed, ethanol production facilities; and

(C) not last more than 3 years.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $36,000,000, to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §208, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 656.)

§15855. Grants to improve the commercial value of forest biomass for electric energy, useful heat, transportation fuels, and other commercial purposes

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Biomass

The term "biomass" means nonmerchantable materials or precommercial thinnings that are byproducts of preventive treatments, such as trees, wood, brush, thinnings, chips, and slash, that are removed—

(A) to reduce hazardous fuels;

(B) to reduce or contain disease or insect infestation; or

(C) to restore forest health.

(2) Indian tribe

The term "Indian tribe" has the meaning given the term in section 5304(e) of title 25.

(3) Nonmerchantable

For purposes of subsection (b), the term "nonmerchantable" means that portion of the byproducts of preventive treatments that would not otherwise be used for higher value products.

(4) Person

The term "person" includes—

(A) an individual;

(B) a community (as determined by the Secretary concerned);

(C) an Indian tribe;

(D) a small business or a corporation that is incorporated in the United States; and

(E) a nonprofit organization.

(5) Preferred community

The term "preferred community" means—

(A) any Indian tribe;

(B) any town, township, municipality, or other similar unit of local government (as determined by the Secretary concerned) that—

(i) has a population of not more than 50,000 individuals; and

(ii) the Secretary concerned, in the sole discretion of the Secretary concerned, determines contains or is located near Federal or Indian land, the condition of which is at significant risk of catastrophic wildfire, disease, or insect infestation or which suffers from disease or insect infestation; or

(C) any county that—

(i) is not contained within a metropolitan statistical area; and

(ii) the Secretary concerned, in the sole discretion of the Secretary concerned, determines contains or is located near Federal or Indian land, the condition of which is at significant risk of catastrophic wildfire, disease, or insect infestation or which suffers from disease or insect infestation.

(6) Secretary concerned

The term "Secretary concerned" means the Secretary of Agriculture or the Secretary of the Interior.

(b) Biomass commercial use grant program

(1) In general

The Secretary concerned may make grants to any person in a preferred community that owns or operates a facility that uses biomass as a raw material to produce electric energy, sensible heat, or transportation fuels to offset the costs incurred to purchase biomass for use by such facility.

(2) Grant amounts

A grant under this subsection may not exceed $20 per green ton of biomass delivered.

(3) Monitoring of grant recipient activities

As a condition of a grant under this subsection, the grant recipient shall keep such records as the Secretary concerned may require to fully and correctly disclose the use of the grant funds and all transactions involved in the purchase of biomass. Upon notice by a representative of the Secretary concerned, the grant recipient shall afford the representative reasonable access to the facility that purchases or uses biomass and an opportunity to examine the inventory and records of the facility.

(c) Improved biomass use grant program

(1) In general

The Secretary concerned may make grants to persons to offset the cost of projects to develop or research opportunities to improve the use of, or add value to, biomass. In making such grants, the Secretary concerned shall give preference to persons in preferred communities.

(2) Selection

The Secretary concerned shall select a grant recipient under paragraph (1) after giving consideration to—

(A) the anticipated public benefits of the project, including the potential to develop thermal or electric energy resources or affordable energy;

(B) opportunities for the creation or expansion of small businesses and micro-businesses;

(C) the potential for new job creation;

(D) the potential for the project to improve efficiency or develop cleaner technologies for biomass utilization; and

(E) the potential for the project to reduce the hazardous fuels from the areas in greatest need of treatment.

(3) Grant amount

A grant under this subsection may not exceed $500,000.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $50,000,000 for fiscal year 2006 and $35,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2016 to carry out this section.

(e) Report

Not later than October 1, 2010, the Secretary of Agriculture, in consultation with the Secretary of the Interior, shall submit to the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources and the Committee on Agriculture, Nutrition, and Forestry of the Senate, and the Committee on Resources, the Committee on Energy and Commerce, and the Committee on Agriculture of the House of Representatives, a report describing the results of the grant programs authorized by this section. The report shall include the following:

(1) An identification of the size, type, and use of biomass by persons that receive grants under this section.

(2) The distance between the land from which the biomass was removed and the facility that used the biomass.

(3) The economic impacts, particularly new job creation, resulting from the grants to and operation of the eligible operations.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §210, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 658; Pub. L. 109–375, §6, Dec. 1, 2006, 120 Stat. 2658.)

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 109–375 substituted "$50,000,000 for fiscal year 2006 and $35,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2016" for "$50,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2006 through 2016".

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Resources of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Natural Resources of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 6, One Hundred Tenth Congress, Jan. 5, 2007.

PART B—GEOTHERMAL ENERGY

§15871. Coordination of geothermal leasing and permitting on Federal lands

(a) In general

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary of the Interior and the Secretary of Agriculture shall enter into and submit to Congress a memorandum of understanding in accordance

with this section, the Geothermal Steam Act of 1970 (as amended by this Act) [30 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.], and other applicable laws, regarding coordination of leasing and permitting for geothermal development of public lands and National Forest System lands under their respective jurisdictions.

(b) Lease and permit applications

The memorandum of understanding shall—

(1) establish an administrative procedure for processing geothermal lease applications, including lines of authority, steps in application processing, and time limits for application procession;

(2) establish a 5-year program for geothermal leasing of lands in the National Forest System, and a process for updating that program every 5 years; and

(3) establish a program for reducing the backlog of geothermal lease application pending on January 1, 2005, by 90 percent within the 5-year period beginning on August 8, 2005, including, as necessary, by issuing leases, rejecting lease applications for failure to comply with the provisions of the regulations under which they were filed, or determining that an original applicant (or the applicant's assigns, heirs, or estate) is no longer interested in pursuing the lease application.

(c) Data retrieval system

The memorandum of understanding shall establish a joint data retrieval system that is capable of tracking lease and permit applications and providing to the applicant information as to their status within the Departments of the Interior and Agriculture, including an estimate of the time required for administrative action.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §225, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 665.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Geothermal Steam Act of 1970, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 91–581, Dec. 24, 1970, 84 Stat. 1566, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 23 (§1001 et seq.) of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 30 and Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 594, as amended, known as the Energy Policy Act of 2005, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and repealed numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

§15872. Assessment of geothermal energy potential

Not later than 3 years after August 8, 2005, and thereafter as the availability of data and developments in technology warrants, the Secretary of the Interior, acting through the Director of the United States Geological Survey and in cooperation with the States, shall—

(1) update the Assessment of Geothermal Resources made during 1978; and

(2) submit to Congress the updated assessment.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §226, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 665.)

§15873. Deposit and use of geothermal lease revenues for 5 fiscal years

(a) Deposit of geothermal resources leases

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, amounts received by the United States in the first 5 fiscal years beginning after August 8, 2005, as rentals, royalties, and other payments required under leases under the Geothermal Steam Act of 1970 [30 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.], excluding funds required to be paid to State and county governments, shall be deposited into a separate account in the Treasury.

(b) Use of deposits

Amounts deposited under subsection (a) shall be available to the Secretary of the Interior for

expenditure, without further appropriation and without fiscal year limitation, to implement the Geothermal Steam Act of 1970 [30 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.] and this Act.

(c) Transfer of funds

For the purposes of coordination and processing of geothermal leases and geothermal use authorizations on Federal land the Secretary of the Interior may authorize the expenditure or transfer of such funds as are necessary to the Forest Service.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §234, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 671.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Geothermal Steam Act of 1970, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), is Pub. L. 91–581, Dec. 24, 1970, 84 Stat. 1566, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 23 (§1001 et seq.) of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 30 and Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 594, as amended, known as the Energy Policy Act of 2005, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and repealed numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

§15874. Intermountain West Geothermal Consortium

(a) Participation authorized

The Secretary, acting through the Idaho National Laboratory, may participate in a consortium described in subsection (b) to address science and science policy issues surrounding the expanded discovery and use of geothermal energy, including from geothermal resources on public lands.

(b) Members

The consortium referred to in subsection (a) shall—

(1) be known as the "Intermountain West Geothermal Consortium";

(2) be a regional consortium of institutions and government agencies that focuses on building collaborative efforts among the universities in the State of Idaho, other regional universities, State agencies, and the Idaho National Laboratory;

(3) include Boise State University, the University of Idaho (including the Idaho Water Resources Research Institute), the Oregon Institute of Technology, the Desert Research Institute with the University and Community College System of Nevada, and the Energy and Geoscience Institute at the University of Utah;

(4) be hosted and managed by Boise State University; and

(5) have a director appointed by Boise State University, and associate directors appointed by each participating institution.

(c) Financial assistance

The Secretary, acting through the Idaho National Laboratory and subject to the availability of appropriations, will provide financial assistance to Boise State University for expenditure under contracts with members of the consortium to carry out the activities of the consortium.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §237, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 673.)

PART C—HYDROELECTRIC

§15881. Hydroelectric production incentives

(a) Incentive payments

For electric energy generated and sold by a qualified hydroelectric facility during the incentive period, the Secretary shall make, subject to the availability of appropriations, incentive payments to the owner or operator of such facility. The amount of such payment made to any such owner or operator shall be as determined under subsection (e) of this section. Payments under this section may only be made upon receipt by the Secretary of an incentive payment application which establishes that the applicant is eligible to receive such payment and which satisfies such other requirements as the Secretary deems necessary. Such application shall be in such form, and shall be submitted at such time, as the Secretary shall establish.

(b) Definitions

For purposes of this section:

(1) Qualified hydroelectric facility

The term "qualified hydroelectric facility" means a turbine or other generating device owned or solely operated by a non-Federal entity which generates hydroelectric energy for sale and which is added to an existing dam or conduit.

(2) Existing dam or conduit

The term "existing dam or conduit" means any dam or conduit the construction of which was completed before August 8, 2005, and which does not require any construction or enlargement of impoundment or diversion structures (other than repair or reconstruction) in connection with the installation of a turbine or other generating device.

(3) Conduit

The term "conduit" has the same meaning as when used in section 823a(a)(2) of title 16.

The terms defined in this subsection shall apply without regard to the hydroelectric kilowatt capacity of the facility concerned, without regard to whether the facility uses a dam owned by a governmental or nongovernmental entity, and without regard to whether the facility begins operation on or after August 8, 2005.

(c) Eligibility window

Payments may be made under this section only for electric energy generated from a qualified hydroelectric facility which begins operation during the period of 10 fiscal years beginning with the first full fiscal year occurring after August 8, 2005.

(d) Incentive period

A qualified hydroelectric facility may receive payments under this section for a period of 10 fiscal years (referred to in this section as the "incentive period"). Such period shall begin with the fiscal year in which electric energy generated from the facility is first eligible for such payments.

(e) Amount of payment

(1) In general

Payments made by the Secretary under this section to the owner or operator of a qualified hydroelectric facility shall be based on the number of kilowatt hours of hydroelectric energy generated by the facility during the incentive period. For any such facility, the amount of such payment shall be 1.8 cents per kilowatt hour (adjusted as provided in paragraph (2)), subject to the availability of appropriations under subsection (g), except that no facility may receive more than $750,000 in 1 calendar year.

(2) Adjustments

The amount of the payment made to any person under this section as provided in paragraph (1) shall be adjusted for inflation for each fiscal year beginning after calendar year 2005 in the same manner as provided in the provisions of section 29(d)(2)(B) [1] of title 26, except that in applying such provisions the calendar year 2005 shall be substituted for calendar year 1979.

(f) Sunset

No payment may be made under this section to any qualified hydroelectric facility after the expiration of the period of 20 fiscal years beginning with the first full fiscal year occurring after August 8, 2005, and no payment may be made under this section to any such facility after a payment has been made with respect to such facility for a period of 10 fiscal years.

(g) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out the purposes of this section $10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2006 through 2015.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §242, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 677.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 29 of title 26, referred to in subsec. (e)(2), was renumbered section 45K of title 26 by Pub. L. 109–58, title XIII, §1322(a)(1), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1011.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§15882. Hydroelectric efficiency improvement

(a) Incentive payments

The Secretary shall make incentive payments to the owners or operators of hydroelectric facilities at existing dams to be used to make capital improvements in the facilities that are directly related to improving the efficiency of such facilities by at least 3 percent.

(b) Limitations

Incentive payments under this section shall not exceed 10 percent of the costs of the capital improvement concerned and not more than 1 payment may be made with respect to improvements at a single facility. No payment in excess of $750,000 may be made with respect to improvements at a single facility.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section not more than $10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2006 through 2015.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §243, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 678.)

PART D—INSULAR ENERGY

§15891. Projects enhancing insular energy independence

(a) Project feasibility studies

(1) In general

On a request described in paragraph (2), the Secretary shall conduct a feasibility study of a project to implement a strategy or project identified in the plans submitted to Congress pursuant to section 1492 of title 48 as having the potential to—

(A) significantly reduce the dependence of an insular area on imported fossil fuels; or

(B) provide needed distributed generation to an insular area.

(2) Request

The Secretary shall conduct a feasibility study under paragraph (1) on—

(A) the request of an electric utility located in an insular area that commits to fund at least 10

percent of the cost of the study; and

(B) if the electric utility is located in the Federated States of Micronesia, the Republic of the Marshall Islands, or the Republic of Palau, written support for that request by the President or the Ambassador of the affected freely associated state.

(3) Consultation

The Secretary shall consult with regional utility organizations in—

(A) conducting feasibility studies under paragraph (1); and

(B) determining the feasibility of potential projects.

(4) Feasibility

For the purpose of a feasibility study under paragraph (1), a project shall be determined to be feasible if the project would significantly reduce the dependence of an insular area on imported fossil fuels, or provide needed distributed generation to an insular area, at a reasonable cost.

(b) Implementation

(1) In general

On a determination by the Secretary (in consultation with the Secretary of the Interior) that a project is feasible under subsection (a) and a commitment by an electric utility to operate and maintain the project, the Secretary may provide such technical and financial assistance as the Secretary determines is appropriate for the implementation of the project.

(2) Regional utility organizations

In providing assistance under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall consider providing the assistance through regional utility organizations.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

(1) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary—

(A) $500,000 for each fiscal year for project feasibility studies under subsection (a); and

(B) $4,000,000 for each fiscal year for project implementation under subsection (b).

(2) Limitation of funds received by insular areas

No insular area may receive, during any 3-year period, more than 20 percent of the total funds made available during that 3-year period under subparagraphs (A) and (B) of paragraph (1) unless the Secretary determines that providing funding in excess of that percentage best advances existing opportunities to meet the objectives of this section.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title II, §252, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 682.)

SUBCHAPTER III—OIL AND GAS

PART A—PRODUCTION INCENTIVES

§15901. Definition of Secretary

In this part, the term "Secretary" means the Secretary of the Interior.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §341, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 697.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle E (§§341–357) of title III of

Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 697, which enacted this part, amended sections 6504, 6506a, 6507, and 6508 of this title, sections 184 and 226 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining, and section 1337 of Title 43, Public Lands, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 226 of Title 30. For complete classification of subtitle E to the Code, see Tables.

§15902. Program on oil and gas royalties in-kind

(a) Applicability of section

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, this section applies to all royalty in-kind accepted by the Secretary on or after August 8, 2005, under any Federal oil or gas lease or permit under—

(1) section 192 of title 30;

(2) section 1353 of title 43; or

(3) any other Federal law governing leasing of Federal land for oil and gas development.

(b) Terms and conditions

All royalty accruing to the United States shall, on the demand of the Secretary, be paid in-kind. If the Secretary makes such a demand, the following provisions apply to the payment:

(1) Satisfaction of royalty obligation

Delivery by, or on behalf of, the lessee of the royalty amount and quality due under the lease satisfies royalty obligation of the lessee for the amount delivered, except that transportation and processing reimbursements paid to, or deductions claimed by, the lessee shall be subject to review and audit.

(2) Marketable condition

(A) Definition of marketable condition

In this paragraph, the term "in marketable condition" means sufficiently free from impurities and otherwise in a condition that the royalty production will be accepted by a purchaser under a sales contract typical of the field or area in which the royalty production was produced.

(B) Requirement

Royalty production shall be placed in marketable condition by the lessee at no cost to the United States.

(3) Disposition by the Secretary

The Secretary may—

(A) sell or otherwise dispose of any royalty production taken in-kind (other than oil or gas transferred under section 1353(a)(3) of title 43 [1] for not less than the market price; and

(B) transport or process (or both) any royalty production taken in-kind.

(4) Retention by the Secretary

The Secretary may, notwithstanding section 3302 of title 31, retain and use a portion of the revenues from the sale of oil and gas taken in-kind that otherwise would be deposited to miscellaneous receipts, without regard to fiscal year limitation, or may use oil or gas received as royalty taken in-kind (referred to in this paragraph as "royalty production") to pay the cost of—

(A) transporting the royalty production;

(B) processing the royalty production;

(C) disposing of the royalty production; or

(D) any combination of transporting, processing, and disposing of the royalty production.

(5) Limitation

(A) In general

Except as provided in subparagraph (B), the Secretary may not use revenues from the sale of oil and gas taken in-kind to pay for personnel, travel, or other administrative costs of the

Federal Government.

(B) Exception

Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), the Secretary may use a portion of the revenues from royalty in-kind sales, without fiscal year limitation, to pay salaries and other administrative costs directly related to the royalty in-kind program.

(c) Reimbursement of cost

If the lessee, pursuant to an agreement with the United States or as provided in the lease, processes the royalty gas or delivers the royalty oil or gas at a point not on or adjacent to the lease area, the Secretary shall—

(1) reimburse the lessee for the reasonable costs of transportation (not including gathering) from the lease to the point of delivery or for processing costs; or

(2) allow the lessee to deduct the transportation or processing costs in reporting and paying royalties in-value for other Federal oil and gas leases.

(d) Benefit to the United States required

The Secretary may receive oil or gas royalties in-kind only if the Secretary determines that receiving royalties in-kind provides benefits to the United States that are greater than or equal to the benefits that are likely to have been received had royalties been taken in-value.

(e) Deduction of expenses

(1) In general

Before making payments under section 191 of title 30 or section 1337(g) of title 43 of revenues derived from the sale of royalty production taken in-kind from a lease, the Secretary shall deduct amounts paid or deducted under subsections (b)(4) and (c) and deposit the amount of the deductions in the miscellaneous receipts of the Treasury.

(2) Accounting for deductions

When the Secretary allows the lessee to deduct transportation or processing costs under subsection (c), the Secretary may not reduce any payments to recipients of revenues derived from any other Federal oil and gas lease as a consequence of that deduction.

(f) Consultation with States

The Secretary—

(1) shall consult with a State before conducting a royalty in-kind program under this part within the State;

(2) may delegate management of any portion of the Federal royalty in-kind program to the State except as otherwise prohibited by Federal law; and

(3) shall consult annually with any State from which Federal oil or gas royalty is being taken in-kind to ensure, to the maximum extent practicable, that the royalty in-kind program provides revenues to the State greater than or equal to the revenues likely to have been received had royalties been taken in-value.

(g) Small refineries

(1) Preference

If the Secretary finds that sufficient supplies of crude oil are not available in the open market to refineries that do not have their own source of supply for crude oil, the Secretary may grant preference to those refineries in the sale of any royalty oil accruing or reserved to the United States under Federal oil and gas leases issued under any mineral leasing law, for processing or use in those refineries at private sale at not less than the market price.

(2) Proration among refineries in production area

In disposing of oil under this subsection, the Secretary may, at the discretion of the Secretary, prorate the oil among refineries described in paragraph (1) in the area in which the oil is produced.

(h) Disposition to Federal agencies

(1) Onshore royalty

Any royalty oil or gas taken by the Secretary in-kind from onshore oil and gas leases may be sold at not less than the market price to any Federal agency.

(2) Offshore royalty

Any royalty oil or gas taken in-kind from a Federal oil or gas lease on the outer Continental Shelf may be disposed of only under section 1353 of title 43.

(i) Federal low-income energy assistance programs

(1) Preference

In disposing of royalty oil or gas taken in-kind under this section, the Secretary may grant a preference to any person, including any Federal or State agency, for the purpose of providing additional resources to any Federal low-income energy assistance program.

(2) Report

Not later than 3 years after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall submit a report to Congress—

(A) assessing the effectiveness of granting preferences specified in paragraph (1); and

(B) providing a specific recommendation on the continuation of authority to grant preferences.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §342, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 697; Pub. L. 113–188, title XI, §1101, Nov. 26, 2014, 128 Stat. 2023.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsec. (f)(1), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle E (§§341–357) of title III of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 697, which enacted this part, amended sections 6504, 6506a, 6507, and 6508 of this title, sections 184 and 226 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining, and section 1337 of Title 43, Public Lands, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 226 of Title 30. For complete classification of subtitle E to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsecs. (e) to (j). Pub. L. 113–188 redesignated subsecs. (f) to (j) as (e) to (i), respectively, and struck out former subsec. (e) which required various reports on oil and gas royalties in-kind.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be followed by a closing parenthesis.*

§15903. Marginal property production incentives

(a) Definition of marginal property

Until such time as the Secretary issues regulations under subsection (e) that prescribe a different definition, in this section, the term "marginal property" means an onshore unit, communitization agreement, or lease not within a unit or communitization agreement, that produces on average the combined equivalent of less than 15 barrels of oil per well per day or 90,000,000 British thermal units of gas per well per day calculated based on the average over the 3 most recent production months, including only wells that produce on more than half of the days during those 3 production months.

(b) Conditions for reduction of royalty rate

Until such time as the Secretary issues regulations under subsection (e) that prescribe different standards or requirements, the Secretary shall reduce the royalty rate on—

(1) oil production from marginal properties as prescribed in subsection (c) if the spot price of West Texas Intermediate crude oil at Cushing, Oklahoma, is, on average, less than $15 per barrel (adjusted in accordance with the Consumer Price Index for all-urban consumers, United States city

average, as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics) for 90 consecutive trading days; and

(2) gas production from marginal properties as prescribed in subsection (c) if the spot price of natural gas delivered at Henry Hub, Louisiana, is, on average, less than $2.00 per million British thermal units (adjusted in accordance with the Consumer Price Index for all-urban consumers, United States city average, as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics) for 90 consecutive trading days.

(c) Reduced royalty rate

(1) In general

When a marginal property meets the conditions specified in subsection (b), the royalty rate shall be the lesser of—

(A) 5 percent; or

(B) the applicable rate under any other statutory or regulatory royalty relief provision that applies to the affected production.

(2) Period of effectiveness

The reduced royalty rate under this subsection shall be effective beginning on the first day of the production month following the date on which the applicable condition specified in subsection (b) is met.

(d) Termination of reduced royalty rate

A royalty rate prescribed in subsection (c)(1) shall terminate—

(1) with respect to oil production from a marginal property, on the first day of the production month following the date on which—

(A) the spot price of West Texas Intermediate crude oil at Cushing, Oklahoma, on average, exceeds $15 per barrel (adjusted in accordance with the Consumer Price Index for all-urban consumers, United States city average, as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics) for 90 consecutive trading days; or

(B) the property no longer qualifies as a marginal property; and

(2) with respect to gas production from a marginal property, on the first day of the production month following the date on which—

(A) the spot price of natural gas delivered at Henry Hub, Louisiana, on average, exceeds $2.00 per million British thermal units (adjusted in accordance with the Consumer Price Index for all-urban consumers, United States city average, as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics) for 90 consecutive trading days; or

(B) the property no longer qualifies as a marginal property.

(e) Regulations prescribing different relief

(1) Discretionary regulations

The Secretary may by regulation prescribe different parameters, standards, and requirements for, and a different degree or extent of, royalty relief for marginal properties in lieu of those prescribed in subsections (a) through (d).

(2) Mandatory regulations

Unless a determination is made under paragraph (3), not later than 18 months after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall by regulation—

(A) prescribe standards and requirements for, and the extent of royalty relief for, marginal properties for oil and gas leases on the outer Continental Shelf; and

(B) define what constitutes a marginal property on the outer Continental Shelf for purposes of this section.

(3) Report

To the extent the Secretary determines that it is not practicable to issue the regulations referred to in paragraph (2), the Secretary shall provide a report to Congress explaining such determination

by not later than 18 months after August 8, 2005.

(4) Considerations

In issuing regulations under this subsection, the Secretary may consider—

(A) oil and gas prices and market trends;

(B) production costs;

(C) abandonment costs;

(D) Federal and State tax provisions and the effects of those provisions on production economics;

(E) other royalty relief programs;

(F) regional differences in average wellhead prices;

(G) national energy security issues; and

(H) other relevant matters, as determined by the Secretary.

(f) Savings provision

Nothing in this section prevents a lessee from receiving royalty relief or a royalty reduction pursuant to any other law (including a regulation) that provides more relief than the amounts provided by this section.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §343, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 700.)

§15904. Incentives for natural gas production from deep wells in the shallow waters of the Gulf of Mexico

(a) Royalty incentive regulations for ultra deep gas wells

(1) In general

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, in addition to any other regulations that may provide royalty incentives for natural gas produced from deep wells on oil and gas leases issued pursuant to the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (43 U.S.C. 1331 et seq.), the Secretary shall issue regulations granting royalty relief suspension volumes of not less than 35 billion cubic feet with respect to the production of natural gas from ultra deep wells on leases issued in shallow waters less than 400 meters deep located in the Gulf of Mexico wholly west of 87 degrees, 30 minutes west longitude. Regulations issued under this subsection shall be retroactive to the date that the notice of proposed rulemaking is published in the Federal Register.

(2) Suspension volumes

The Secretary may grant suspension volumes of not less than 35 billion cubic feet in any case in which—

(A) the ultra deep well is a sidetrack; or

(B) the lease has previously produced from wells with a perforated interval the top of which is at least 15,000 feet true vertical depth below the datum at mean sea level.

(3) Definitions

In this subsection:

(A) Ultra deep well

The term "ultra deep well" means a well drilled with a perforated interval, the top of which is at least 20,000 true vertical depth below the datum at mean sea level.

(B) Sidetrack

(i) In general

The term "sidetrack" means a well resulting from drilling an additional hole to a new objective bottom-hole location by leaving a previously drilled hole.

(ii) Inclusion

The term "sidetrack" includes—

(I) drilling a well from a platform slot reclaimed from a previously drilled well;

(II) re-entering and deepening a previously drilled well; and

(III) a bypass from a sidetrack, including drilling around material blocking a hole or drilling to straighten a crooked hole.

(b) Royalty incentive regulations for deep gas wells

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, in addition to any other regulations that may provide royalty incentives for natural gas produced from deep wells on oil and gas leases issued pursuant to the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (43 U.S.C. 1331 et seq.), the Secretary shall issue regulations granting royalty relief suspension volumes with respect to production of natural gas from deep wells on leases issued in waters more than 200 meters but less than 400 meters deep located in the Gulf of Mexico wholly west of 87 degrees, 30 minutes west longitude. The suspension volumes for deep wells within 200 to 400 meters of water depth shall be calculated using the same methodology used to calculate the suspension volumes for deep wells in the shallower waters of the Gulf of Mexico, and in no case shall the suspension volumes for deep wells within 200 to 400 meters of water depth be lower than those for deep wells in shallower waters. Regulations issued under this subsection shall be retroactive to the date that the notice of proposed rulemaking is published in the Federal Register.

(c) Limitations

The Secretary may place limitations on the royalty relief granted under this section based on market price. The royalty relief granted under this section shall not apply to a lease for which deep water royalty relief is available.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §344, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 702.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1) and (b), is act Aug. 7, 1953, ch. 345, 67 Stat. 462, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§1331 et seq.) of chapter 29 of Title 43, Public Lands. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1301 of Title 43 and Tables.

§15905. Royalty relief for deep water production

(a) In general

Subject to subsections (b) and (c), for each tract located in water depths of greater than 400 meters in the Western and Central Planning Area of the Gulf of Mexico (including the portion of the Eastern Planning Area of the Gulf of Mexico encompassing whole lease blocks lying west of 87 degrees, 30 minutes West longitude), any oil or gas lease sale under the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (43 U.S.C. 1331 et seq.) occurring during the 5-year period beginning on August 8, 2005, shall use the bidding system authorized under section 8(a)(1)(H) of the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (43 U.S.C. 1337(a)(1)(H)).

(b) Suspension of royalties

The suspension of royalties under subsection (a) shall be established at a volume of not less than—

(1) 5,000,000 barrels of oil equivalent for each lease in water depths of 400 to 800 meters;

(2) 9,000,000 barrels of oil equivalent for each lease in water depths of 800 to 1,600 meters;

(3) 12,000,000 barrels of oil equivalent for each lease in water depths of 1,600 to 2,000 meters; and

(4) 16,000,000 barrels of oil equivalent for each lease in water depths greater than 2,000 meters.

(c) Limitation

The Secretary may place limitations on royalty relief granted under this section based on market

price.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §345, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 703.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act Aug. 7, 1953, ch. 345, 67 Stat. 462, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§1331 et seq.) of chapter 29 of Title 43, Public Lands. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1301 of Title 43 and Tables.

§15906. North Slope Science Initiative

(a) Establishment

(1) In general

The Secretary of the Interior shall establish a long-term initiative to be known as the "North Slope Science Initiative" (referred to in this section as the "Initiative").

(2) Purpose

The purpose of the Initiative shall be to implement efforts to coordinate collection of scientific data that will provide a better understanding of the terrestrial, aquatic, and marine ecosystems of the North Slope of Alaska.

(b) Objectives

To ensure that the Initiative is conducted through a comprehensive science strategy and implementation plan, the Initiative shall, at a minimum—

(1) identify and prioritize information needs for inventory, monitoring, and research activities to address the individual and cumulative effects of past, ongoing, and anticipated development activities and environmental change on the North Slope;

(2) develop an understanding of information needs for regulatory and land management agencies, local governments, and the public;

(3) focus on prioritization of pressing natural resource management and ecosystem information needs, coordination, and cooperation among agencies and organizations;

(4) coordinate ongoing and future inventory, monitoring, and research activities to minimize duplication of effort, share financial resources and expertise, and assure the collection of quality information;

(5) identify priority needs not addressed by agency science programs in effect on August 8, 2005, and develop a funding strategy to meet those needs;

(6) provide a consistent approach to high caliber science, including inventory, monitoring, and research;

(7) maintain and improve public and agency access to—

(A) accumulated and ongoing research; and

(B) contemporary and traditional local knowledge; and

(8) ensure through appropriate peer review that the science conducted by participating agencies and organizations is of the highest technical quality.

(c) Membership

(1) In general

To ensure comprehensive collection of scientific data, in carrying out the Initiative, the Secretary shall consult and coordinate with Federal, State, and local agencies that have responsibilities for land and resource management across the North Slope.

(2) Cooperative agreements

The Secretary shall enter into cooperative agreements with the State of Alaska, the North Slope

Borough, the Arctic Slope Regional Corporation, and other Federal agencies as appropriate to coordinate efforts, share resources, and fund projects under this section.

(d) Science technical advisory panel

(1) In general

The Initiative shall include a panel to provide advice on proposed inventory, monitoring, and research functions.

(2) Membership

The panel described in paragraph (1) shall consist of a representative group of not more than 15 scientists and technical experts from diverse professions and interests, including the oil and gas industry, subsistence users, Native Alaskan entities, conservation organizations, wildlife management organizations, and academia, as determined by the Secretary.

(e) Reports

Not later than 3 years after August 8, 2005, and each year thereafter, the Secretary shall publish a report that describes the studies and findings of the Initiative.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §348, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 708.)

§15907. Orphaned, abandoned, or idled wells on Federal land

(a) In general

The Secretary, in cooperation with the Secretary of Agriculture, shall establish a program not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, to remediate, reclaim, and close orphaned, abandoned, or idled oil and gas wells located on land administered by the land management agencies within the Department of the Interior and the Department of Agriculture.

(b) Activities

The program under subsection (a) shall—

(1) include a means of ranking orphaned, abandoned, or idled wells sites for priority in remediation, reclamation, and closure, based on public health and safety, potential environmental harm, and other land use priorities;

(2) provide for identification and recovery of the costs of remediation, reclamation, and closure from persons or other entities currently providing a bond or other financial assurance required under State or Federal law for an oil or gas well that is orphaned, abandoned, or idled; and

(3) provide for recovery from the persons or entities identified under paragraph (2), or their sureties or guarantors, of the costs of remediation, reclamation, and closure of such wells.

(c) Cooperation and consultations

In carrying out the program under subsection (a), the Secretary shall—

(1) work cooperatively with the Secretary of Agriculture and the States within which Federal land is located; and

(2) consult with the Secretary of Energy and the Interstate Oil and Gas Compact Commission.

(d) Plan

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, the Secretary, in cooperation with the Secretary of Agriculture, shall submit to Congress a plan for carrying out the program under subsection (a).

(e) Idled well

For the purposes of this section, a well is idled if—

(1) the well has been nonoperational for at least 7 years; and

(2) there is no anticipated beneficial use for the well.

(f) Federal reimbursement for orphaned well reclamation pilot program

(1) Reimbursement for remediating, reclaiming, and closing wells on land subject to a new lease

The Secretary shall carry out a pilot program under which, in issuing a new oil and gas lease on federally owned land on which 1 or more orphaned wells are located, the Secretary—

(A) may require, other than as a condition of the lease, that the lessee remediate, reclaim, and close in accordance with standards established by the Secretary, all orphaned wells on the land leased; and

(B) shall develop a program to reimburse a lessee, through a royalty credit against the Federal share of royalties owed or other means, for the reasonable actual costs of remediating, reclaiming, and closing the orphaned wells pursuant to that requirement.

(2) Reimbursement for reclaiming orphaned wells on other land

In carrying out this subsection, the Secretary—

(A) may authorize any lessee under an oil and gas lease on federally owned land to reclaim in accordance with the Secretary's standards—

(i) an orphaned well on unleased federally owned land; or

(ii) an orphaned well located on an existing lease on federally owned land for the reclamation of which the lessee is not legally responsible; and

(B) shall develop a program to provide reimbursement of 100 percent of the reasonable actual costs of remediating, reclaiming, and closing the orphaned well, through credits against the Federal share of royalties or other means.

(3) Regulations

The Secretary may issue such regulations as are appropriate to carry out this subsection.

(g) Technical assistance program for non-Federal land

(1) In general

The Secretary of Energy shall establish a program to provide technical and financial assistance to oil and gas producing States to facilitate State efforts over a 10-year period to ensure a practical and economical remedy for environmental problems caused by orphaned or abandoned oil and gas exploration or production well sites on State or private land.

(2) Assistance

The Secretary of Energy shall work with the States, through the Interstate Oil and Gas Compact Commission, to assist the States in quantifying and mitigating environmental risks of onshore orphaned or abandoned oil or gas wells on State and private land.

(3) Activities

The program under paragraph (1) shall include—

(A) mechanisms to facilitate identification, if feasible, of the persons currently providing a bond or other form of financial assurance required under State or Federal law for an oil or gas well that is orphaned or abandoned;

(B) criteria for ranking orphaned or abandoned well sites based on factors such as public health and safety, potential environmental harm, and other land use priorities;

(C) information and training programs on best practices for remediation of different types of sites; and

(D) funding of State mitigation efforts on a cost-shared basis.

(h) Authorization of appropriations

(1) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $25,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010.

(2) Use

Of the amounts authorized under paragraph (1), $5,000,000 are authorized for each fiscal year for activities under subsection (f).

(i) Federally drilled wells

Out of any amounts in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, $10,000,000 for fiscal year 2014, $36,000,000 for fiscal year 2015, and $4,000,000 for fiscal year 2019 shall be made available to the Secretary, without further appropriation and to remain available until expended, to remediate, reclaim, and close abandoned oil and gas wells on current or former National Petroleum Reserve land.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §349, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 709; Pub. L. 113–40, §10(b), Oct. 2, 2013, 127 Stat. 545.)

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 113–40 added subsec. (i).

§15908. Preservation of geological and geophysical data

(a) Short title

This section may be cited as the "National Geological and Geophysical Data Preservation Program Act of 2005".

(b) Program

The Secretary shall carry out a National Geological and Geophysical Data Preservation Program in accordance with this section—

(1) to archive geologic, geophysical, and engineering data, maps, well logs, and samples;

(2) to provide a national catalog of such archival material; and

(3) to provide technical and financial assistance related to the archival material.

(c) Plan

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a plan for the implementation of the Program.

(d) Data archive system

(1) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish, as a component of the Program, a data archive system to provide for the storage, preservation, and archiving of subsurface, surface, geological, geophysical, and engineering data and samples. The Secretary, in consultation with the Advisory Committee, shall develop guidelines relating to the data archive system, including the types of data and samples to be preserved.

(2) System components

The system shall be comprised of State agencies that elect to be part of the system and agencies within the Department of the Interior that maintain geological and geophysical data and samples that are designated by the Secretary in accordance with this subsection. The Program shall provide for the storage of data and samples through data repositories operated by such agencies.

(3) Limitation of designation

The Secretary may not designate a State agency as a component of the data archive system unless that agency is the agency that acts as the geological survey in the State.

(4) Data from Federal land

The data archive system shall provide for the archiving of relevant subsurface data and samples obtained from Federal land—

(A) in the most appropriate repository designated under paragraph (2), with preference being

given to archiving data in the State in which the data were collected; and

(B) consistent with all applicable law and requirements relating to confidentiality and proprietary data.

(e) National catalog

(1) In general

As soon as practicable after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall develop and maintain, as a component of the Program, a national catalog that identifies—

(A) data and samples available in the data archive system established under subsection (d);

(B) the repository for particular material in the system; and

(C) the means of accessing the material.

(2) Availability

The Secretary shall make the national catalog accessible to the public on the site of the Survey on the Internet, consistent with all applicable requirements related to confidentiality and proprietary data.

(f) Advisory Committee

(1) In general

The Advisory Committee shall advise the Secretary on planning and implementation of the Program.

(2) New duties

In addition to its duties under the National Geologic Mapping Act of 1992 (43 U.S.C. 31a et seq.), the Advisory Committee shall perform the following duties:

(A) Advise the Secretary on developing guidelines and procedures for providing assistance for facilities under subsection (g)(1).

(B) Review and critique the draft implementation plan prepared by the Secretary under subsection (c).

(C) Identify useful studies of data archived under the Program that will advance understanding of the Nation's energy and mineral resources, geologic hazards, and engineering geology.

(D) Review the progress of the Program in archiving significant data and preventing the loss of such data, and the scientific progress of the studies funded under the Program.

(E) Include in the annual report to the Secretary required under section 5(b)(3) [1] of the National Geologic Mapping Act of 1992 (43 U.S.C. 31d(b)(3)) an evaluation of the progress of the Program toward fulfilling the purposes of the Program under subsection (b).

(g) Financial assistance

(1) Archive facilities

Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Secretary shall provide financial assistance to a State agency that is designated under subsection (d)(2) for providing facilities to archive energy material.

(2) Studies

Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Secretary shall provide financial assistance to any State agency designated under subsection (d)(2) for studies and technical assistance activities that enhance understanding, interpretation, and use of materials archived in the data archive system established under subsection (d).

(3) Federal share

The Federal share of the cost of an activity carried out with assistance under this subsection shall be not more than 50 percent of the total cost of the activity.

(4) Private contributions

The Secretary shall apply to the non-Federal share of the cost of an activity carried out with assistance under this subsection the value of private contributions of property and services used for that activity.

(h) Report

The Secretary shall include in each report under section 8 of the National Geologic Mapping Act of 1992 (43 U.S.C. 31g)—

(1) a description of the status of the Program;

(2) an evaluation of the progress achieved in developing the Program during the period covered by the report; and

(3) any recommendations for legislative or other action the Secretary considers necessary and appropriate to fulfill the purposes of the Program under subsection (b).

(i) Maintenance of State effort

It is the intent of Congress that the States not use this section as an opportunity to reduce State resources applied to the activities that are the subject of the Program.

(j) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Advisory Committee

The term "Advisory Committee" means the advisory committee established under section 5 of the National Geologic Mapping Act of 1992 (43 U.S.C. 31d).

(2) Program

The term "Program" means the National Geological and Geophysical Data Preservation Program carried out under this section.

(3) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of the Interior, acting through the Director of the United States Geological Survey.

(4) Survey

The term "Survey" means the United States Geological Survey.

(k) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $30,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §351, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 711.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Geologic Mapping Act of 1992, referred to in subsec. (f)(2), is Pub. L. 102–285, May 18, 1992, 106 Stat. 166, which is classified principally to sections 31a to 31h of Title 43, Public Lands. Par. (3) of section 5(b) of the Act was redesignated par. (4) by Pub. L. 111–11, title XI, §11001(f)(2)(B), Mar. 30, 2009, 123 Stat. 1415, and is now classified to section 31d(b)(4) of Title 43. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 31a of Title 43 and Tables.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§15909. Gas hydrate production incentive

(a) Purpose

The purpose of this section is to promote natural gas production from the natural gas hydrate resources on the outer Continental Shelf and Federal lands in Alaska by providing royalty incentives.

(b) Suspension of royalties

(1) In general

The Secretary may grant royalty relief in accordance with this section for natural gas produced from gas hydrate resources under an eligible lease.

(2) Eligible leases

A lease shall be an eligible lease for purposes of this section if—

(A) it is issued under the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (43 U.S.C. 1331 et seq.), or is an oil and gas lease issued for onshore Federal lands in Alaska;

(B) it is issued prior to January 1, 2016; and

(C) production under the lease of natural gas from gas hydrate resources commences prior to January 1, 2018.

(3) Amount of relief

The Secretary shall conduct a rulemaking and grant royalty relief under this section as a suspension volume if the Secretary determines that such royalty relief would encourage production of natural gas from gas hydrate resources from an eligible lease. The maximum suspension volume shall be 30 billion cubic feet of natural gas per lease. Such relief shall be in addition to any other royalty relief under any other provision applicable to the lease that does not specifically grant a gas hydrate production incentive. Such royalty suspension volume shall be applied to any eligible production occurring on or after the date of publication of the advanced notice of proposed rulemaking.

(4) Limitation

The Secretary may place limitations on royalty relief granted under this section based on market price.

(c) Application

This section shall apply to any eligible lease issued before, on, or after August 8, 2005.

(d) Rulemakings

(1) Requirement

The Secretary shall publish the advanced notice of proposed rulemaking within 180 days after August 8, 2005, and complete the rulemaking implementing this section within 365 days after August 8, 2005.

(2) Gas hydrate resources defined

Such regulations shall define the term "gas hydrate resources" to include both the natural gas content of gas hydrates within the hydrate stability zone and free natural gas trapped by and beneath the hydrate stability zone.

(e) Review

Not later than 365 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Energy, shall carry out a review of, and submit to Congress a report on, further opportunities to enhance production of natural gas from gas hydrate resources on the outer Continental Shelf and on Federal lands in Alaska through the provision of other production incentives or through technical or financial assistance.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §353, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 714.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(A), is act Aug. 7, 1953, ch. 345, 67 Stat. 462, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§1331 et seq.) of chapter 29 of Title 43, Public Lands. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1301 of Title 43 and Tables.

§15910. Enhanced oil and natural gas production through carbon dioxide

injection

(a) Production incentive

(1) Findings

Congress finds the following:

(A) Approximately two-thirds of the original oil in place in the United States remains unproduced.

(B) Enhanced oil and natural gas production from the sequestering of carbon dioxide and other appropriate gases has the potential to increase oil and natural gas production.

(C) Capturing and productively using carbon dioxide would help reduce the carbon intensity of the economy.

(2) Purpose

The purpose of this section is—

(A) to promote the capturing, transportation, and injection of produced carbon dioxide, natural carbon dioxide, and other appropriate gases or other matter for sequestration into oil and gas fields; and

(B) to promote oil and natural gas production from the outer Continental Shelf and onshore Federal lands under lease by providing royalty incentives to use enhanced recovery techniques using injection of the substances referred to in subparagraph (A).

(b) Suspension of royalties

(1) In general

If the Secretary determines that reduction of the royalty under a Federal oil and gas lease that is an eligible lease is in the public interest and promotes the purposes of this section, the Secretary shall undertake a rulemaking to provide for such reduction for an eligible lease.

(2) Rulemakings

The Secretary shall publish the advanced notice of proposed rulemaking within 180 days after August 8, 2005, and complete the rulemaking implementing this section within 365 days after August 8, 2005.

(3) Eligible leases

A lease shall be an eligible lease for purposes of this section if—

(A) it is a lease for production of oil and gas from the outer Continental Shelf or Federal onshore lands;

(B) the injection of the substances referred to in subsection (a)(2)(A) will be used as an enhanced recovery technique on such lease; and

(C) the Secretary determines that the lease contains oil or gas that would not likely be produced without the royalty reduction provided under this section.

(4) Amount of relief

The rulemaking shall provide for a suspension volume, which shall not exceed 5,000,000 barrels of oil equivalent for each eligible lease. Such suspension volume shall be applied to any production from an eligible lease occurring on or after the date of publication of any advanced notice of proposed rulemaking under this subsection.

(5) Limitation

The Secretary may place limitations on the royalty reduction granted under this section based on market price.

(6) Application

This section shall apply to any eligible lease issued before, on, or after August 8, 2005.

(c) Demonstration program

(1) Establishment

(A) In general

The Secretary of Energy shall establish a competitive grant program to provide grants to producers of oil and gas to carry out projects to inject carbon dioxide for the purpose of enhancing recovery of oil or natural gas while increasing the sequestration of carbon dioxide.

(B) Projects

The demonstration program shall provide for—

(i) not more than 10 projects in the Willistin Basin in North Dakota and Montana; and

(ii) 1 project in the Cook Inlet Basin in Alaska.

(2) Requirements

(A) In general

The Secretary of Energy shall issue requirements relating to applications for grants under paragraph (1).

(B) Rulemaking

The issuance of requirements under subparagraph (A) shall not require a rulemaking.

(C) Minimum requirements

At a minimum, the Secretary shall require under subparagraph (A) that an application for a grant include—

(i) a description of the project proposed in the application;

(ii) an estimate of the production increase and the duration of the production increase from the project, as compared to conventional recovery techniques, including water flooding;

(iii) an estimate of the carbon dioxide sequestered by project, over the life of the project;

(iv) a plan to collect and disseminate data relating to each project to be funded by the grant;

(v) a description of the means by which the project will be sustainable without Federal assistance after the completion of the term of the grant;

(vi) a complete description of the costs of the project, including acquisition, construction, operation, and maintenance costs over the expected life of the project;

(vii) a description of which costs of the project will be supported by Federal assistance under this section; and

(viii) a description of any secondary or tertiary recovery efforts in the field and the efficacy of water flood recovery techniques used.

(3) Partners

An applicant for a grant under paragraph (1) may carry out a project under a pilot program in partnership with 1 or more other public or private entities.

(4) Selection criteria

In evaluating applications under this subsection, the Secretary of Energy shall—

(A) consider the previous experience with similar projects of each applicant; and

(B) give priority consideration to applications that—

(i) are most likely to maximize production of oil and gas in a cost-effective manner;

(ii) sequester significant quantities of carbon dioxide from anthropogenic sources;

(iii) demonstrate the greatest commitment on the part of the applicant to ensure funding for the proposed project and the greatest likelihood that the project will be maintained or expanded after Federal assistance under this section is completed; and

(iv) minimize any adverse environmental effects from the project.

(5) Demonstration program requirements

(A) Maximum amount

The Secretary of Energy shall not provide more than $3,000,000 in Federal assistance under this subsection to any applicant.

(B) Cost sharing

The Secretary of Energy shall require cost-sharing under this subsection in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(C) Period of grants

(i) In general

A project funded by a grant under this subsection shall begin construction not later than 2 years after the date of provision of the grant, but in any case not later than December 31, 2010.

(ii) Term

The Secretary shall not provide grant funds to any applicant under this subsection for a period of more than 5 years.

(6) Transfer of information and knowledge

The Secretary of Energy shall establish mechanisms to ensure that the information and knowledge gained by participants in the program under this subsection are transferred among other participants and interested persons, including other applicants that submitted applications for a grant under this subsection.

(7) Schedule

(A) Publication

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary of Energy shall publish in the Federal Register, and elsewhere, as appropriate, a request for applications to carry out projects under this subsection.

(B) Date for applications

An application for a grant under this subsection shall be submitted not later than 180 days after the date of publication of the request under subparagraph (A).

(C) Selection

After the date by which applications for grants are required to be submitted under subparagraph (B), the Secretary of Energy, in a timely manner, shall select, after peer review and based on the criteria under paragraph (4), those projects to be awarded a grant under this subsection.

(d) Records and inventory

The Secretary of the Interior, acting through the Bureau of Land Management, shall maintain records on, and an inventory of, the quantity of carbon dioxide stored within Federal mineral leaseholds.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §354, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 715; Pub. L. 110–140, title VII, §713, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1715.)

AMENDMENTS

2007—Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 110–140 added subsec. (d) and redesignated former subsec. (d) as (e).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§15911. Denali Commission

(a) Definition of Commission

In this section, the term "Commission" means the Denali Commission established by the Denali Commission Act of 1998 (42 U.S.C. 3121 note; Public Law 105–277).

(b) Energy programs

The Commission shall use amounts made available under subsection (d) to carry out energy programs, including—

(1) energy generation and development, including—

(A) fuel cells, hydroelectric, solar, wind, wave, and tidal energy; and

(B) alternative energy sources;

(2) the construction of energy transmission, including interties;

(3) the replacement and cleanup of fuel tanks;

(4) the construction of fuel transportation networks and related facilities;

(5) power cost equalization programs; and

(6) projects using coal as a fuel, including coal gasification projects.

(c) Open meetings

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (2), a meeting of the Commission shall be open to the public if—

(A) the Commission members take action on behalf of the Commission; or

(B) the deliberations of the Commission determine, or result in the joint conduct or disposition of, official Commission business.

(2) Exceptions

Paragraph (1) shall not apply to any portion of a Commission meeting for which the Commission, in public session, votes to close the meeting for the reasons described in paragraph (2), (4), (5), or (6) of subsection (c) of section 552b of title 5.

(3) Public notice

(A) In general

At least 1 week before a meeting of the Commission, the Commission shall make a public announcement of the meeting that describes—

(i) the time, place, and subject matter of the meeting;

(ii) whether the meeting is to be open or closed to the public; and

(iii) the name and telephone number of an appropriate person to respond to requests for information about the meeting.

(B) Additional notice

The Commission shall make a public announcement of any change to the information made available under subparagraph (A) at the earliest practicable time.

(4) Minutes

The Commission shall keep, and make available to the public, a transcript, electronic recording, or minutes from each Commission meeting, except for portions of the meeting closed under paragraph (2).

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Commission not more than $55,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2015 to carry out subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §356, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 719.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Denali Commission Act of 1998, referred to in subsec. (a), is title III of Pub. L. 105–277, div. C, Oct.

21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–637, which is set out as a note under section 3121 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

§15912. Comprehensive inventory of OCS oil and natural gas resources

(a) In general

The Secretary shall conduct an inventory and analysis of oil and natural gas resources beneath all of the waters of the United States Outer Continental Shelf ("OCS"). The inventory and analysis shall—

(1) use available data on oil and gas resources in areas offshore of Mexico and Canada that will provide information on trends of oil and gas accumulation in areas of the OCS;

(2) use any available technology, except drilling, but including 3–D seismic technology to obtain accurate resource estimates;

(3) analyze how resource estimates in OCS areas have changed over time in regards to gathering geological and geophysical data, initial exploration, or full field development, including areas such as the deepwater and subsalt areas in the Gulf of Mexico;

(4) estimate the effect that understated oil and gas resource inventories have on domestic energy investments; and

(5) identify and explain how legislative, regulatory, and administrative programs or processes restrict or impede the development of identified resources and the extent that they affect domestic supply, such as moratoria, lease terms and conditions, operational stipulations and requirements, approval delays by the Federal Government and coastal States, and local zoning restrictions for onshore processing facilities and pipeline landings.

(b) Reports

The Secretary shall submit a report to Congress on the inventory of estimates and the analysis of restrictions or impediments, together with any recommendations, within 6 months of August 8, 2005. The report shall be publicly available and updated at least every 5 years.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §357, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 720.)

PART B—ACCESS TO FEDERAL LANDS

§15921. Management of Federal oil and gas leasing programs

(a) Timely action on leases and permits

(1) Secretary of the Interior

To ensure timely action on oil and gas leases and applications for permits to drill on land otherwise available for leasing, the Secretary of the Interior (referred to in this section as the "Secretary") shall—

(A) ensure expeditious compliance with section 4332(2)(C) of this title and any other applicable environmental and cultural resources laws;

(B) improve consultation and coordination with the States and the public; and

(C) improve the collection, storage, and retrieval of information relating to the oil and gas leasing activities.

(2) Secretary of Agriculture

To ensure timely action on oil and gas lease applications for permits to drill on land otherwise available for leasing, the Secretary of Agriculture shall—

(A) ensure expeditious compliance with all applicable environmental and cultural resources laws; and

(B) improve the collection, storage, and retrieval of information relating to the oil and gas leasing activities.

(b) Best management practices

(1) In general

Not later than 18 months after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall develop and implement best management practices to—

(A) improve the administration of the onshore oil and gas leasing program under the Mineral Leasing Act (30 U.S.C. 181 et seq.); and

(B) ensure timely action on oil and gas leases and applications for permits to drill on land otherwise available for leasing.

(2) Considerations

In developing the best management practices under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall consider any recommendations from the review under section 361.[1]

(3) Regulations

Not later than 180 days after the development of the best management practices under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall publish, for public comment, proposed regulations that set forth specific timeframes for processing leases and applications in accordance with the best management practices, including deadlines for—

(A) approving or disapproving—

(i) resource management plans and related documents;

(ii) lease applications;

(iii) applications for permits to drill; and

(iv) surface use plans; and

(B) related administrative appeals.

(c) Improved enforcement

The Secretary and the Secretary of Agriculture shall improve inspection and enforcement of oil and gas activities, including enforcement of terms and conditions in permits to drill on land under the jurisdiction of the Secretary and the Secretary of Agriculture, respectively.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

In addition to amounts made available to carry out activities relating to oil and gas leasing on public land administered by the Secretary and National Forest System land administered by the Secretary of Agriculture, there are authorized to be appropriated for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010—

(1) to the Secretary, acting through the Director of the Bureau of Land Management—

(A) $40,000,000 to carry out subsections (a)(1) and (b); and

(B) $20,000,000 to carry out subsection (c);

(2) to the Secretary, acting through the Director of the United States Fish and Wildlife Service, $5,000,000 to carry out subsection (a)(1); and

(3) to the Secretary of Agriculture, acting through the Chief of the Forest Service, $5,000,000 to carry out subsections (a)(2) and (c).

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §362, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 721.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Mineral Leasing Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(A), is act Feb. 25, 1920, ch. 85, 41 Stat. 437, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 3A (§181 et seq.) of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 181 of Title 30 and Tables.

Section 361, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is section 361 of Pub. L. 109–58, title III, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat.

720, which is not classified to the Code.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§15922. Consultation regarding oil and gas leasing on public land

(a) In general

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary of the Interior and the Secretary of Agriculture shall enter into a memorandum of understanding regarding oil and gas leasing on—

(1) public land under the jurisdiction of the Secretary of the Interior; and

(2) National Forest System land under the jurisdiction of the Secretary of Agriculture.

(b) Contents

The memorandum of understanding shall include provisions that—

(1) establish administrative procedures and lines of authority that ensure timely processing of—

(A) oil and gas lease applications;

(B) surface use plans of operation, including steps for processing surface use plans; and

(C) applications for permits to drill consistent with applicable timelines;

(2) eliminate duplication of effort by providing for coordination of planning and environmental compliance efforts;

(3) ensure that lease stipulations are—

(A) applied consistently;

(B) coordinated between agencies; and

(C) only as restrictive as necessary to protect the resource for which the stipulations are applied;

(4) establish a joint data retrieval system that is capable of—

(A) tracking applications and formal requests made in accordance with procedures of the Federal onshore oil and gas leasing program; and

(B) providing information regarding the status of the applications and requests within the Department of the Interior and the Department of Agriculture; and

(5) establish a joint geographic information system mapping system for use in—

(A) tracking surface resource values to aid in resource management; and

(B) processing surface use plans of operation and applications for permits to drill.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §363, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 722.)

§15923. Methodology

The Secretary of the Interior shall use the same assessment methodology across all geological provinces, areas, and regions in preparing and issuing national geological assessments to ensure accurate comparisons of geological resources.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §364(b), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 723.)

§15924. Project to improve Federal permit coordination

(a) Establishment

The Secretary of the Interior (referred to in this section as the "Secretary") shall establish a Federal Permit Streamlining Project (referred to in this section as the "Project").

(b) Memorandum of understanding

(1) In general

Not later than 90 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall enter into a memorandum of understanding for purposes of this section with—

(A) the Secretary of Agriculture;

(B) the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency; and

(C) the Chief of Engineers.

(2) State participation

The Secretary may request that the Governors of the States in which Project offices are located be signatories to the memorandum of understanding.

(c) Designation of qualified staff

(1) In general

Not later than 30 days after the date of the signing of the memorandum of understanding under subsection (b), all Federal signatory parties shall, if appropriate, assign to each of the field offices identified in subsection (d) an employee who has expertise in the regulatory issues relating to the office in which the employee is employed, including, as applicable, particular expertise in—

(A) the consultations and the preparation of biological opinions under section 1536 of title 16;

(B) permits under section 1344 of title 33;

(C) regulatory matters under the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.);

(D) planning under the National Forest Management Act of 1976 (16 U.S.C. 472a et seq.); and

(E) the preparation of analyses under the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq.).

(2) Duties

Each employee assigned under paragraph (1) shall—

(A) not later than 90 days after the date of assignment, report to the Bureau of Land Management Field Managers in the office to which the employee is assigned;

(B) be responsible for all issues relating to the jurisdiction of the home office or agency of the employee; and

(C) participate as part of the team of personnel working on proposed energy projects, planning, and environmental analyses.

(d) Project offices

The following Bureau of Land Management Offices shall serve as the Project offices:

(1) Rawlins Field Office, Wyoming.

(2) High Plains District Office, Wyoming.

(3) Montana/Dakotas State Office, Montana.

(4) Farmington Field Office, New Mexico.

(5) Carlsbad Field Office, New Mexico.

(6) Grand Junction/Glenwood Springs Field Office, Colorado.

(7) Vernal Field Office, Utah.

(8) Any other State, district, or field office of the Bureau of Land Management determined by the Secretary.

(e) Report to Congress

Not later than February 1 of the first fiscal year beginning after the date of enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2015 and each February 1 thereafter, the Secretary shall report to the Chairman and ranking minority Member of the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate and the Committee on Natural Resources of the House of Representatives, which shall include—

(1) the allocation of funds to each Project office for the previous fiscal year; and

(2) the accomplishments of each Project office relating to the coordination and processing of oil and gas use authorizations during that fiscal year.

(f) Additional personnel

The Secretary shall assign to each field office identified in subsection (d) any additional personnel that are necessary to ensure the effective implementation of—

(1) the Project; and

(2) other programs administered by the field offices, including inspection and enforcement relating to energy development on Federal land, in accordance with the multiple use mandate of the Federal Land Policy and Management Act of 1976 (43 U.S.C. 1701 et seq.).

(g) Omitted

(h) Transfer of funds

For the purposes of coordination and processing of oil and gas use authorizations on Federal land under the administration of the Project offices identified in subsection (d), the Secretary may authorize the expenditure or transfer of such funds as are necessary to—

(1) the United States Fish and Wildlife Service;

(2) the Bureau of Indian Affairs;

(3) the Forest Service;

(4) the Environmental Protection Agency;

(5) the Corps of Engineers; and

(6) the States in which Project offices are located.

(i) Savings provision

Nothing in this section affects—

(1) the operation of any Federal or State law; or

(2) any delegation of authority made by the head of a Federal agency whose employees are participating in the Project.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §365, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 723; Pub. L. 113–69, §1, Dec. 26, 2013, 127 Stat. 1207; Pub. L. 113–291, div. B, title XXX, §3021(a), Dec. 19, 2014, 128 Stat. 3759.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Clean Air Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(1)(C), is act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, 69 Stat. 322, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 85 (§7401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

The National Forest Management Act of 1976, referred to in subsec. (c)(1)(D), is Pub. L. 94–588, Oct. 22, 1976, 90 Stat. 2949, as amended, which enacted sections 472a, 521b, 1600, and 1611 to 1614 of Title 16, Conservation, amended sections 500, 515, 516, 518, 576b, and 1601 to 1610 of Title 16, repealed sections 476, 513, and 514 of Title 16, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 476, 513, 528, 594–2, and 1600 of Title 16. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1976 Amendment note set out under section 1600 of Title 16 and Tables.

The National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, referred to in subsec. (c)(1)(E), is Pub. L. 91–190, Jan. 1, 1970, 83 Stat. 852, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 55 (§4321 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4321 of this title and Tables.

The date of enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2015, referred to in subsec. (e), probably means the date of enactment of the Carl Levin and Howard P. "Buck" McKeon National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2015, Pub. L. 113–291, which was approved Dec. 19, 2014.

The Federal Land Policy and Management Act of 1976, referred to in subsec. (f)(2), is Pub. L. 94–579, Oct. 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 2743, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 35 (§1701 et seq.) of Title 43, Public Lands. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1701 of Title 43 and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 365 of Pub. L. 109–58. Subsec. (g) of section 365 of Pub. L. 109–58

amended section 191 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Pub. L. 113–291, §3021(a)(1), struck out "Pilot" before "Project" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 113–291, §3021(a)(2), substituted "Project" for "Pilot Project" in two places.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 113–291, §3021(a)(3), substituted "the States in which Project offices are located" for "Wyoming, Montana, Colorado, Utah, and New Mexico".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 113–291, §3021(a)(4)(A), struck out "Pilot" before "Project" in heading.

Pub. L. 113–291, §3021(a)(2), substituted "Project" for "Pilot Project" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d)(8). Pub. L. 113–291, §3021(a)(4)(B), added par. (8).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 113–291, §3021(a)(5), added subsec. (e) and struck out former subsec. (e) which required the Secretary to submit to Congress a report about the Pilot Project not later than 3 years after Aug. 8, 2005.

Subsecs. (e)(1), (2), (f)(1), (h). Pub. L. 113–291, §3021(a)(2), substituted "Project" for "Pilot Project".

Subsec. (h)(6). Pub. L. 113–291, §3021(a)(6), added par. (6) and struck out former par. (6) which read as follows: "the States of Wyoming, Montana, Colorado, Utah, and New Mexico."

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 113–291, §3021(a)(7), (8), redesignated subsec. (j) as (i) and struck out former subsec. (i). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "During the period in which the Project is authorized, the Secretary shall not implement a rulemaking that would enable an increase in fees to recover additional costs related to processing drilling-related permit applications and use authorizations."

Pub. L. 113–291, §3021(a)(2), substituted "Project" for "Pilot Project".

Subsec. (j)(2). Pub. L. 113–291, §3021(a)(2), substituted "Project" for "Pilot Project".

2013—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 113–69 added subsec. (d) and struck out former subsec. (d). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The following Bureau of Land Management Field Offices shall serve as the Pilot Project offices:

"(1) Rawlins, Wyoming.

"(2) Buffalo, Wyoming.

"(3) Miles City, Montana.

"(4) Farmington, New Mexico.

"(5) Carlsbad, New Mexico.

"(6) Grand Junction/Glenwood Springs, Colorado.

"(7) Vernal, Utah."

§15925. Fair market value determinations for linear rights-of-way across public lands and national forests

(a) Update of fee schedule

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005—

(1) the Secretary of the Interior shall update section 2806.20 of title 43, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on August 8, 2005, to revise the per acre rental fee zone value schedule by State, county, and type of linear right-of-way use to reflect current values of land in each zone; and

(2) the Secretary of Agriculture shall make the same revision for linear rights-of-way granted, issued, or renewed under title V of the Federal Lands Policy and Management Act of 1976 (43 U.S.C. 1761 et seq.) on National Forest System land.

(b) Fair market value rental determination for linear rights-of-way

The fair market value rent of a linear right-of-way across public lands or National Forest System lands issued under section 504 of the Federal Land Policy and Management Act of 1976 (43 U.S.C. 1764) or section 185 of title 30 shall be determined in accordance with subpart 2806 of title 43, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on August 8, 2005 (including the annual or periodic updates specified in the regulations), and as updated in accordance with subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §367, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 726.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Land Policy and Management Act of 1976, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), is Pub. L. 94–579, Oct. 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 2743, as amended. Title V of the Act is classified generally to subchapter V (§1761 et seq.) of chapter 35 of Title 43, Public Lands. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1701 of Title 43 and Tables.

§15926. Energy right-of-way corridors on Federal land

(a) Western States

Not later than 2 years after August 8, 2005, the Secretary of Agriculture, the Secretary of Commerce, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Energy, and the Secretary of the Interior (in this section referred to collectively as "the Secretaries"), in consultation with the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, States, tribal or local units of governments as appropriate, affected utility industries, and other interested persons, shall consult with each other and shall—

(1) designate, under their respective authorities, corridors for oil, gas, and hydrogen pipelines and electricity transmission and distribution facilities on Federal land in the eleven contiguous Western States (as defined in section 1702(o) of title 43; [1]

(2) perform any environmental reviews that may be required to complete the designation of such corridors; and

(3) incorporate the designated corridors into the relevant agency land use and resource management plans or equivalent plans.

(b) Other States

Not later than 4 years after August 8, 2005, the Secretaries, in consultation with the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, affected utility industries, and other interested persons, shall jointly—

(1) identify corridors for oil, gas, and hydrogen pipelines and electricity transmission and distribution facilities on Federal land in States other than those described in subsection (a); and

(2) schedule prompt action to identify, designate, and incorporate the corridors into the applicable land use plans.

(c) Ongoing responsibilities

The Secretaries, in consultation with the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, affected utility industries, and other interested parties, shall establish procedures under their respective authorities that—

(1) ensure that additional corridors for oil, gas, and hydrogen pipelines and electricity transmission and distribution facilities on Federal land are promptly identified and designated as necessary; and

(2) expedite applications to construct or modify oil, gas, and hydrogen pipelines and electricity transmission and distribution facilities within such corridors, taking into account prior analyses and environmental reviews undertaken during the designation of such corridors.

(d) Considerations

In carrying out this section, the Secretaries shall take into account the need for upgraded and new electricity transmission and distribution facilities to—

(1) improve reliability;

(2) relieve congestion; and

(3) enhance the capability of the national grid to deliver electricity.

(e) Specifications of corridor

A corridor designated under this section shall, at a minimum, specify the centerline, width, and compatible uses of the corridor.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §368, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 727.)

PERMITTING, AND REVIEW

Memorandum of President of the United States, June 7, 2013, 78 F.R. 35539, provided:

Memorandum for the Heads of Executive Departments and Agencies

Our Nation's electric transmission grid is the backbone of our economy, a key factor in future economic growth, and a critical component of our energy security. Countries that harness the power of clean, renewable energy will be best positioned to thrive in the global economy while protecting the environment and increasing prosperity. In order to ensure the growth of America's clean energy economy and improve energy security, we must modernize and expand our electric transmission grid. Modernizing our grid will improve energy reliability and resiliency, allowing us to minimize power outages and manage cyber-security threats. By diversifying power sources and reducing congestion, a modernized grid will also create cost savings for consumers and spur economic growth.

Modernizing our Nation's electric transmission grid requires improvements in how transmission lines are sited, permitted, and reviewed. As part of our efforts to improve the performance of Federal siting, permitting, and review processes for infrastructure development, my Administration created a Rapid Response Team for Transmission (RRTT), a collaborative effort involving nine different executive departments and agencies (agencies), which is working to improve the efficiency and effectiveness of transmission siting, permitting, and review, increase interagency coordination and transparency, and increase the predictability of the siting, permitting, and review processes. In furtherance of Executive Order 13604 of March 22, 2012 (Improving Performance of Federal Permitting and Review of Infrastructure Projects), this memorandum builds upon the work of the RRTT to improve the Federal siting, permitting, and review processes for transmission projects. Because a single project may cross multiple governmental jurisdictions over hundreds of miles, robust collaboration among Federal, State, local, and tribal governments must be a critical component of this effort.

An important avenue to improve these processes is the designation of energy right-of-way corridors (energy corridors) on Federal lands. Section 368 of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 (the "Act") (42 U.S.C. 15926), requires the Secretaries of Agriculture, Commerce, Defense, Energy, and the Interior (Secretaries) to undertake a continued effort to identify and designate such energy corridors. Energy corridors include areas on Federal lands that are most suitable for siting transmission projects because the chosen areas minimize regulatory conflicts and impacts on environmental and cultural resources, and also address concerns of local communities. Designated energy corridors provide an opportunity to co-locate projects and share environmental and cultural resource impact data to reduce overall impacts on environmental and cultural resources and reduce the need for land use plan amendments in support of the authorization of transmission rights-of-way. The designation of energy corridors can help expedite the siting, permitting, and review processes for projects within such corridors, as well as improve the predictability and transparency of these processes. Pursuant to the Act, in 2009, the Secretaries of the Interior and Agriculture each designated energy corridors for the 11 contiguous Western States, as defined in section 368 of the Act. Energy corridors have not yet been designated in States other than those identified as Western States. It is important that agencies build on their existing efforts in a coordinated manner.

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, I hereby direct the following:

SECTION 1. *Principles for Establishing Energy Corridors*. (a) In carrying out the requirements of this memorandum regarding energy corridors, the Secretaries shall:

(i) collaborate with Member Agencies of the Steering Committee on Federal Infrastructure Permitting and Review Process Improvement (Steering Committee), established by Executive Order 13604, which shall provide prompt and adequate information to ensure that additional corridor designations and revisions are consistent with the statutory responsibilities and activities of the Member Agencies and enable timely actions by the Secretaries;

(ii) focus on facilitating renewable energy resources and improving grid resiliency and comply with the requirements in section 368 of the Act, by ensuring that energy corridors address the need for upgraded and new electric transmission and distribution facilities to improve reliability, relieve congestion, and enhance the capability of the national grid to deliver electricity;

(iii) use integrated project planning and consult with other Federal agencies, State, local, and tribal governments, non-governmental organizations, and the public early in the process of designating the energy corridors, so as to avoid resource conflicts to the extent practicable and make strategic decisions to balance policy priorities;

(iv) collaborate with State, local, and tribal governments to ensure, to the extent practicable, that energy corridors can connect effectively between Federal lands;

(v) minimize the proliferation of dispersed and duplicative rights-of-way crossing Federal lands while acting consistent with subsection (a)(ii) of this section;

(vi) design energy corridors to minimize impacts on environmental and cultural resources to the extent practicable, including impacts that may occur outside the boundaries of Federal lands, and minimize impacts on the Nation's aviation system and the mission of the Armed Forces; and

(vii) develop interagency mitigation plans, where appropriate, for environmental and cultural resources potentially impacted by projects sited in the energy corridors to provide project developers predictability on how to seek first to avoid, then attempt to minimize any negative effects from, and lastly to mitigate such impacts, where otherwise unavoidable. Mitigation plans shall:

(A) be developed at the landscape or watershed scale with interagency collaboration, be based on conservation and resource management plans and regional environmental and cultural resource analyses, and identify priority areas for compensatory mitigation where appropriate;

(B) be developed in consultation with other Federal agencies, State, local, and tribal governments, non-governmental organizations, and the public;

(C) include clear and measurable mitigation goals, apply adaptive management methods, and use performance measures to evaluate outcomes and ensure accountability and the long-term effectiveness of mitigation activities;

(D) include useful mechanisms, such as mitigation banks and in lieu fee programs, where appropriate for achieving statutory and regulatory goals; and

(E) be considered in the energy corridor designation process.

(b) The Secretary of Energy shall assess and synthesize current research related to the requirements set forth in subsection (a)(ii) of this section, such as transmission planning authority studies, congestion studies, and renewable energy assessments. Based on that analysis, the Secretary of Energy shall provide to the Steering Committee a Transmission Corridor Assessment Report (Report) that provides recommendations on how to best achieve the requirements set forth in subsection (a)(ii) of this section. Where research is available, the Report shall include an assessment of whether investment in co-locating with or upgrading existing transmission facilities, distributed generation, improved energy efficiency, or demand response may play a role in meeting these requirements. In preparing the Report, the Secretary of Energy shall consult with Federal, State, local, and tribal governments, affected industries, environmental and community representatives, transmission planning authorities, and other interested parties. The Report shall be provided in two parts. The first part, which shall provide recommendations with respect to the Western States, shall be provided by December 1, 2013, and the second part, which shall provide recommendations with respect to States other than the Western States, shall be provided by April 1, 2014.

SEC. 2. *Energy Corridors for the Western States*. (a) The Secretaries shall strongly encourage the use of designated energy corridors on Federal land in the Western States where the energy corridors are consistent with the requirements in this memorandum and other applicable requirements, unless it can be demonstrated that a project cannot be constructed within a designated corridor due to resource constraints on Federal lands. Additionally, the Secretaries, pursuant to section 368 of the Act, shall continue to evaluate designated energy corridors to determine the necessity for revisions, deletions, or additions to those energy corridors. Also, the Secretaries, coordinated by the Secretaries of the Interior and Agriculture, shall:

(i) by July 12, 2013, provide to the Steering Committee a plan for producing the Western corridor study and regional corridor assessments (as specified in subsection (a)(ii) and (a)(iii) of this section), which shall include descriptions of timelines and milestones, existing resources to be utilized, plans for collaborating with Member Agencies, and plans for consulting with other Federal agencies, State, local, and tribal governments, affected industries, environmental and community representatives, and other interested parties;

(ii) within 12 months of completion of the plan pursuant to subsection (a)(i) of this section, provide to the Steering Committee a Western corridor study, which shall assess the utility of the existing designated energy corridors;

(iii) provide to the Steering Committee regional corridor assessments, which shall examine the need for additions, deletions, and revisions to the existing energy corridors for the Western States by region. The regional corridor assessments shall evaluate energy corridors based on the requirements set forth in subsection (a) of section 1, the Report issued pursuant to subsection (b) of section 1, and the Western corridor study. The regional corridor assessments shall be completed promptly, depending on resource availability, with at least the first assessment completed within 12 months of completion of the plan pursuant to subsection (a)(i) of this section;

(iv) by November 12, 2014, provide to the Steering Committee and the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) an implementation plan for achieving the requirements set forth in subsections (a)(v) and (a)(vi) of this section based on the regional corridor assessments. The implementation plan shall include timelines and milestones that prioritize coordinated agency actions and a detailed budget;

(v) promptly after the completion of the regional corridor assessments and prioritized based on the

availability of resources, undertake coordinated land use planning and environmental and cultural resource review processes to consider additions, deletions, or revisions to the current Western energy corridors, consistent with the requirements set forth in subsection (a) of section 1, the Report required issued pursuant to subsection (b) of section 1, and the Western corridor study; and

(vi) as appropriate, after completing the required environmental and cultural resource analyses, promptly incorporate the designated Western corridor additions, deletions, or revisions and any mitigation plans developed pursuant to subsection (a)(vii) of section 1 into relevant agency land use and resource management plans or equivalent plans prioritized based on the availability of resources.

(b) The Member Agencies, where authorized, shall complete any required land use planning, internal policy, and interagency agreements to formalize the designation of energy corridors implemented pursuant to subsection (a)(vi) of this section. The Secretaries and Member Agencies shall also develop and implement a process for expediting applications for applicants whose projects are sited primarily within the designated energy corridors in the Western States, and who have committed to implement the necessary mitigation activities, including those required by the interagency mitigation plans required by subsection (a)(vii) of section 1.

SEC. 3. *Energy Corridors for the Non-Western States*. The Secretaries, in collaboration with the Member Agencies, shall continue to analyze where energy corridors on Federal land in States other than those identified as Western States may be necessary to address the recommendations in the Report issued pursuant to subsection (b) of section 1 and the requirements set forth in subsection (a) of section 1, and to expedite the siting, permitting, and review of electric transmission projects on Federal lands in those States. By September 1, 2014, the Secretaries shall provide the Steering Committee with updated recommendations regarding designating energy corridors in those States.

SEC. 4. *Improved Transmission Siting, Permitting, and Review Processes*. (a) Member Agencies shall develop an integrated, interagency pre-application process for significant onshore electric transmission projects requiring Federal approval. The process shall be designed to: promote predictability in the Federal siting, permitting, and review processes; encourage early engagement, coordination, and collaboration of Federal, State, local, and tribal governments, non-governmental organizations, and the public; increase the use of integrated project planning early in the siting, permitting, and review processes; facilitate early identification of issues that could diminish the likelihood that projects will ultimately be permitted; promote early planning for integrated and strategic mitigation plans; expedite siting, permitting, and review processes through a mutual understanding of the needs of all affected Federal agencies and State, local, and tribal governments; and improve environmental and cultural outcomes.

By September 30, 2013, Member Agencies shall provide to the Chief Performance Officer (CPO) and the Chair of the Council on Environmental Quality a plan, including timelines and milestones, for implementing this process.

(b) In implementing Executive Order 13604, Member Agencies shall:

(i) improve siting, permitting, and review processes for all electric transmission projects, both onshore and offshore, requiring Federal approval. Such improvements shall include: increasing efficiency and interagency coordination; increasing accountability; ensuring an efficient decision-making process within each agency; to the extent possible, unifying and harmonizing processes among agencies; improving consistency and transparency within each agency and among all agencies; improving environmental and cultural outcomes; providing mechanisms for early and frequent public and local community outreach; and enabling innovative mechanisms for mitigation and mitigation at the landscape or watershed scale; and

(ii) facilitate coordination, integration, and harmonization of the siting, permitting, and review processes of Federal, State, local, and tribal governments for transmission projects to reduce the overall regulatory burden while improving environmental and cultural outcomes.

SEC. 5. *General Provisions*. (a) The Secretaries and the Member Agencies shall coordinate the activities required by this memorandum with the Steering Committee and shall report to the Steering Committee their progress on meeting the milestones identified pursuant to this memorandum, consistent with the plans developed pursuant to sections 2 and 4 of this memorandum. The CPO shall report on the implementation of this memorandum in the report to the President submitted pursuant to section 2(e) of Executive Order 13604.

(b) In carrying out their responsibilities under this memorandum, Member Agencies shall consult relevant independent agencies, including the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission.

(c) This memorandum shall be implemented consistent with applicable law and subject to the availability of appropriations.

(d) This memorandum shall be implemented consistent with Executive Order 13175 of November 6, 2000 (Consultation and Coordination with Indian Tribal Governments) and my memorandum of November 5, 2009 (Tribal Consultation).

(e) Nothing in this memorandum shall be construed to impair or otherwise affect:
(i) the authority granted by law to an executive department or agency, or the head thereof; or
(ii) the functions of the Director of OMB relating to budgetary, administrative, or legislative proposals.
(f) This memorandum is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity by any party against the United States, its departments, agencies, or entities, its officers, employees, or agents, or any other person.
(g) The Director of OMB is hereby authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

BARACK OBAMA.

[1] *So in original. A closing parenthesis probably should follow "title 43".*

§15927. Oil shale, tar sands, and other strategic unconventional fuels

(a) Short title

This section may be cited as the "Oil Shale, Tar Sands, and Other Strategic Unconventional Fuels Act of 2005".

(b) Declaration of policy

Congress declares that it is the policy of the United States that—

(1) United States oil shale, tar sands, and other unconventional fuels are strategically important domestic resources that should be developed to reduce the growing dependence of the United States on politically and economically unstable sources of foreign oil imports;

(2) the development of oil shale, tar sands, and other strategic unconventional fuels, for research and commercial development, should be conducted in an environmentally sound manner, using practices that minimize impacts; and

(3) development of those strategic unconventional fuels should occur, with an emphasis on sustainability, to benefit the United States while taking into account affected States and communities.

(c) Leasing program for research and development of oil shale and tar sands

In accordance with section 241 of title 30 and any other applicable law, except as provided in this section, not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, from land otherwise available for leasing, the Secretary of the Interior (referred to in this section as the "Secretary") shall make available for leasing such land as the Secretary considers to be necessary to conduct research and development activities with respect to technologies for the recovery of liquid fuels from oil shale and tar sands resources on public lands. Prospective public lands within each of the States of Colorado, Utah, and Wyoming shall be made available for such research and development leasing.

(d) Programmatic environmental impact statement and commercial leasing program for oil shale and tar sands

(1) Programmatic environmental impact statement

Not later than 18 months after August 8, 2005, in accordance with section 4332(2)(C) of this title, the Secretary shall complete a programmatic environmental impact statement for a commercial leasing program for oil shale and tar sands resources on public lands, with an emphasis on the most geologically prospective lands within each of the States of Colorado, Utah, and Wyoming.

(2) Final regulation

Not later than 6 months after the completion of the programmatic environmental impact statement under this subsection, the Secretary shall publish a final regulation establishing such program.

(e) Commencement of commercial leasing of oil shale and tar sands

Not later than 180 days after publication of the final regulation required by subsection (d), the Secretary shall consult with the Governors of States with significant oil shale and tar sands resources on public lands, representatives of local governments in such States, interested Indian tribes, and other interested persons, to determine the level of support and interest in the States in the development of tar sands and oil shale resources. If the Secretary finds sufficient support and interest exists in a State, the Secretary may conduct a lease sale in that State under the commercial leasing program regulations. Evidence of interest in a lease sale under this subsection shall include, but not be limited to, appropriate areas nominated for leasing by potential lessees and other interested parties.

(f) Diligent development requirements

The Secretary shall, by regulation, designate work requirements and milestones to ensure the diligent development of the lease.

(g) Initial report by the Secretary of the Interior

Within 90 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary of the Interior shall report to the Committee on Resources of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate on—

(1) the interim actions necessary to—

(A) develop the program, complete the programmatic environmental impact statement, and promulgate the final regulation as required by subsection (d); and

(B) conduct the first lease sales under the program as required by subsection (e); and

(2) a schedule to complete such actions within the time limits mandated by this section.

(h) Task Force

(1) Establishment

The Secretary of Energy, in cooperation with the Secretary of the Interior and the Secretary of Defense, shall establish a task force to develop a program to coordinate and accelerate the commercial development of strategic unconventional fuels, including but not limited to oil shale and tar sands resources within the United States, in an integrated manner.

(2) Composition

The Task Force shall be composed of—

(A) the Secretary of Energy (or the designee of the Secretary);

(B) the Secretary of the Interior (or the designee of the Secretary of the Interior);

(C) the Secretary of Defense (or the designee of the Secretary of Defense);

(D) the Governors of affected States; and

(E) representatives of local governments in affected areas.

(3) Recommendations

The Task Force shall make such recommendations regarding promoting the development of the strategic unconventional fuels resources within the United States as it may deem appropriate.

(4) Partnerships

The Task Force shall make recommendations with respect to initiating a partnership with the Province of Alberta, Canada, for purposes of sharing information relating to the development and production of oil from tar sands, and similar partnerships with other nations that contain significant oil shale resources.

(5) Reports

(A) Initial report

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, the Task Force shall submit to the President and Congress a report that describes the analysis and recommendations of the Task Force.

(B) Subsequent reports

The Secretary shall provide an annual report describing the progress in developing the strategic unconventional fuels resources within the United States for each of the 5 years following submission of the report provided for in subparagraph (A).

(i) Office of Petroleum Reserves

(1) In general

The Office of Petroleum Reserves of the Department of Energy shall—

(A) coordinate the creation and implementation of a commercial strategic fuel development program for the United States;

(B) evaluate the strategic importance of unconventional sources of strategic fuels to the security of the United States;

(C) promote and coordinate Federal Government actions that facilitate the development of strategic fuels in order to effectively address the energy supply needs of the United States;

(D) identify, assess, and recommend appropriate actions of the Federal Government required to assist in the development and manufacturing of strategic fuels; and

(E) coordinate and facilitate appropriate relationships between private industry and the Federal Government to promote sufficient and timely private investment to commercialize strategic fuels for domestic and military use.

(2) Consultation and coordination

The Office of Petroleum Reserves shall work closely with the Task Force and coordinate its staff support.

(j) Omitted

(k) Interagency coordination and expeditious review of permitting process

(1) Department of the Interior as lead agency

Upon written request of a prospective applicant for Federal authorization to develop a proposed oil shale or tar sands project, the Department of the Interior shall act as the lead Federal agency for the purposes of coordinating all applicable Federal authorizations and environmental reviews. To the maximum extent practicable under applicable Federal law, the Secretary shall coordinate this Federal authorization and review process with any Indian tribes and State and local agencies responsible for conducting any separate permitting and environmental reviews.

(2) Implementing regulations

Not later than 6 months after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall issue any regulations necessary to implement this subsection.

(l) Cost-shared demonstration technologies

(1) Identification

The Secretary of Energy shall identify technologies for the development of oil shale and tar sands that—

(A) are ready for demonstration at a commercially-representative scale; and

(B) have a high probability of leading to commercial production.

(2) Assistance

For each technology identified under paragraph (1), the Secretary of Energy may provide—

(A) technical assistance;

(B) assistance in meeting environmental and regulatory requirements; and

(C) cost-sharing assistance.

(m) National oil shale and tar sands assessment

(1) Assessment

(A) In general

The Secretary shall carry out a national assessment of oil shale and tar sands resources for the

purposes of evaluating and mapping oil shale and tar sands deposits, in the geographic areas described in subparagraph (B). In conducting such an assessment, the Secretary shall make use of the extensive geological assessment work for oil shale and tar sands already conducted by the United States Geological Survey.

(B) Geographic areas

The geographic areas referred to in subparagraph (A), listed in the order in which the Secretary shall assign priority, are—

(i) the Green River Region of the States of Colorado, Utah, and Wyoming;

(ii) the Devonian oil shales and other hydrocarbon-bearing rocks having the nomenclature of "shale" located east of the Mississippi River; and

(iii) any remaining area in the central and western United States (including the State of Alaska) that contains oil shale and tar sands, as determined by the Secretary.

(2) Use of State surveys and universities

In carrying out the assessment under paragraph (1), the Secretary may request assistance from any State-administered geological survey or university.

(n) Land exchanges

(1) In general

To facilitate the recovery of oil shale and tar sands, especially in areas where Federal, State, and private lands are intermingled, the Secretary shall consider the use of land exchanges where appropriate and feasible to consolidate land ownership and mineral interests into manageable areas.

(2) Identification and priority of public lands

The Secretary shall identify public lands containing deposits of oil shale or tar sands within the Green River, Piceance Creek, Uintah, and Washakie geologic basins, and shall give priority to implementing land exchanges within those basins. The Secretary shall consider the geology of the respective basin in determining the optimum size of the lands to be consolidated.

(3) Compliance with section 1716 of title 43

A land exchange undertaken in furtherance of this subsection shall be implemented in accordance with section 1716 of title 43.

(o) Royalty rates for leases

The Secretary shall establish royalties, fees, rentals, bonus, or other payments for leases under this section that shall—

(1) encourage development of the oil shale and tar sands resource; and

(2) ensure a fair return to the United States.

(p) Heavy oil technical and economic assessment

The Secretary of Energy shall update the 1987 technical and economic assessment of domestic heavy oil resources that was prepared by the Interstate Oil and Gas Compact Commission. Such an update should include all of North America and cover all unconventional oil, including heavy oil, tar sands (oil sands), and oil shale.

(q) Omitted

(r) State water rights

Nothing in this section preempts or affects any State water law or interstate compact relating to water.

(s) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §369, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 728; Pub. L. 113–188, title VI, §601(b), Nov. 26, 2014, 128 Stat. 2019.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 369 of Pub. L. 109–58. Subsecs. (j) and (q) of section 369 of Pub. L. 109–58 enacted section 2398a of Title 10, Armed Forces, and amended the table of sections for chapter 141 of Title 10 and sections 226 and 241 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (i)(3). Pub. L. 113–188 struck out par. (3). Text read as follows: "Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, and annually thereafter, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report that describes the activities of the Office of Petroleum Reserves carried out under this subsection."

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Resources of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Natural Resources of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 6, One Hundred Tenth Congress, Jan. 5, 2007.

§15928. Consultation regarding energy rights-of-way on public land

(a) Memorandum of understanding

(1) In general

Not later than 6 months after August 8, 2005, the Secretary of Energy, in consultation with the Secretary of the Interior, the Secretary of Agriculture, and the Secretary of Defense with respect to lands under their respective jurisdictions, shall enter into a memorandum of understanding to coordinate all applicable Federal authorizations and environmental reviews relating to a proposed or existing utility facility. To the maximum extent practicable under applicable law, the Secretary of Energy shall, to ensure timely review and permit decisions, coordinate such authorizations and reviews with any Indian tribes, multi-State entities, and State agencies that are responsible for conducting any separate permitting and environmental reviews of the affected utility facility.

(2) Contents

The memorandum of understanding shall include provisions that—

(A) establish—

(i) a unified right-of-way application form; and

(ii) an administrative procedure for processing right-of-way applications, including lines of authority, steps in application processing, and timeframes for application processing;

(B) provide for coordination of planning relating to the granting of the rights-of-way;

(C) provide for an agreement among the affected Federal agencies to prepare a single environmental review document to be used as the basis for all Federal authorization decisions; and

(D) provide for coordination of use of right-of-way stipulations to achieve consistency.

(b) Natural gas pipelines

(1) In general

With respect to permitting activities for interstate natural gas pipelines, the May 2002 document entitled "Interagency Agreement On Early Coordination Of Required Environmental And Historic Preservation Reviews Conducted In Conjunction With The Issuance Of Authorizations To Construct And Operate Interstate Natural Gas Pipelines Certificated By The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission" shall constitute compliance with subsection (a).

(2) Report

(A) In general

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, and every 2 years thereafter, agencies that are signatories to the document referred to in paragraph (1) shall transmit to Congress a report on how the agencies under the jurisdiction of the Secretaries are incorporating and implementing

the provisions of the document referred to in paragraph (1).

(B) Contents

The report shall address—

(i) efforts to implement the provisions of the document referred to in paragraph (1);

(ii) whether the efforts have had a streamlining effect;

(iii) further improvements to the permitting process of the agency; and

(iv) recommendations for inclusion of State and tribal governments in a coordinated permitting process.

(c) Definition of utility facility

In this section, the term "utility facility" means any privately, publicly, or cooperatively owned line, facility, or system—

(1) for the transportation of—

(A) oil, natural gas, synthetic liquid fuel, or gaseous fuel;

(B) any refined product produced from oil, natural gas, synthetic liquid fuel, or gaseous fuel; or

(C) products in support of the production of material referred to in subparagraph (A) or (B);

(2) for storage and terminal facilities in connection with the production of material referred to in paragraph (1); or

(3) for the generation, transmission, and distribution of electric energy.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §372, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 734.)

PART C—MISCELLANEOUS

§15941. Great Lakes oil and gas drilling ban

No Federal or State permit or lease shall be issued for new oil and gas slant, directional, or offshore drilling in or under one or more of the Great Lakes.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §386, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 744.)

§15942. NEPA review

(a) NEPA review

Action by the Secretary of the Interior in managing the public lands, or the Secretary of Agriculture in managing National Forest System Lands, with respect to any of the activities described in subsection (b) shall be subject to a rebuttable presumption that the use of a categorical exclusion under the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 [42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq.] (NEPA) would apply if the activity is conducted pursuant to the Mineral Leasing Act [30 U.S.C. 181 et seq.] for the purpose of exploration or development of oil or gas.

(b) Activities described

The activities referred to in subsection (a) are the following:

(1) Individual surface disturbances of less than 5 acres so long as the total surface disturbance on the lease is not greater than 150 acres and site-specific analysis in a document prepared pursuant to NEPA has been previously completed.

(2) Drilling an oil or gas well at a location or well pad site at which drilling has occurred previously within 5 years prior to the date of spudding the well.

(3) Drilling an oil or gas well within a developed field for which an approved land use plan or

any environmental document prepared pursuant to NEPA analyzed such drilling as a reasonably foreseeable activity, so long as such plan or document was approved within 5 years prior to the date of spudding the well.

(4) Placement of a pipeline in an approved right-of-way corridor, so long as the corridor was approved within 5 years prior to the date of placement of the pipeline.

(5) Maintenance of a minor activity, other than any construction or major renovation or a building or facility.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §390, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 747.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 91–190, Jan. 1, 1970, 83 Stat. 852, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 55 (§4321 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4321 of this title and Tables.

The Mineral Leasing Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act Feb. 25, 1920, ch. 85, 41 Stat. 437, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 3A (§181 et seq.) of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 181 of Title 30 and Tables.

PART D—REFINERY REVITALIZATION

§15951. Findings and definitions

(a) Findings

Congress finds that—

(1) it serves the national interest to increase petroleum refining capacity for gasoline, heating oil, diesel fuel, jet fuel, kerosene, and petrochemical feedstocks wherever located within the United States, to bring more supply to the markets for the use of the American people;

(2) United States demand for refined petroleum products currently exceeds the country's petroleum refining capacity to produce such products;

(3) this excess demand has been met with increased imports;

(4) due to lack of capacity, refined petroleum product imports are expected to grow from 7.9 percent to 10.7 percent of total refined product by 2025;

(5) refiners are still subject to significant environmental and other regulations and face several new requirements under the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.) over the next decade; and

(6) better coordination of Federal and State regulatory reviews may help facilitate siting and construction of new refineries to meet the demand in the United States for refined products.

(b) Definitions

In this part:

(1) Administrator

The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency.

(2) State

The term "State" means—

(A) a State;

(B) the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico; and

(C) any other territory or possession of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §391, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 748.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Clean Air Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(5), is act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, 69 Stat. 322, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 85 (§7401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act

to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

§15952. Federal-State regulatory coordination and assistance

(a) In general

At the request of the Governor of a State, the Administrator may enter into a refinery permitting cooperative agreement with the State, under which each party to the agreement identifies steps, including timelines, that it will take to streamline the consideration of Federal and State environmental permits for a new refinery.

(b) Authority under agreement

The Administrator shall be authorized to—

(1) accept from a refiner a consolidated application for all permits required from the Environmental Protection Agency, to the extent consistent with other applicable law;

(2) enter into memoranda of agreement with other Federal agencies to coordinate consideration of refinery applications and permits among Federal agencies; and

(3) enter into memoranda of agreement with a State, under which Federal and State review of refinery permit applications will be coordinated and concurrently considered, to the extent practicable.

(c) State assistance

The Administrator is authorized to provide financial assistance to State governments to facilitate the hiring of additional personnel with expertise in fields relevant to consideration of refinery permits.

(d) Other assistance

The Administrator is authorized to provide technical, legal, or other assistance to State governments to facilitate their review of applications to build new refineries.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title III, §392, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 749.)

SUBCHAPTER IV—COAL

PART A—CLEAN COAL POWER INITIATIVE

§15961. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Clean coal power initiative

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out the activities authorized by this part $200,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2014, to remain available until expended.

(b) Report

The Secretary shall submit to Congress the report required by this subsection not later than March 31, 2007. The report shall include, with respect to subsection (a), a plan containing—

(1) a detailed assessment of whether the aggregate funding levels provided under subsection (a) are the appropriate funding levels for that program;

(2) a detailed description of how proposals will be solicited and evaluated, including a list of all activities expected to be undertaken;

(3) a detailed list of technical milestones for each coal and related technology that will be

pursued; and

(4) a detailed description of how the program will avoid problems enumerated in Government Accountability Office reports on the Clean Coal Technology Program, including problems that have resulted in unspent funds and projects that failed either financially or scientifically.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §401, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 749.)

§15962. Project criteria

(a) In general

To be eligible to receive assistance under this part, a project shall advance efficiency, environmental performance, and cost competitiveness well beyond the level of technologies that are in commercial service or have been demonstrated on a scale that the Secretary determines is sufficient to demonstrate that commercial service is viable as of August 8, 2005.

(b) Technical criteria for clean coal power initiative

(1) Gasification projects

(A) In general

In allocating the funds made available under section 15961(a) of this title, the Secretary shall ensure that at least 70 percent of the funds are used only to fund projects on coal-based gasification technologies, including—

(i) gasification combined cycle;

(ii) gasification fuel cells and turbine combined cycle;

(iii) gasification coproduction;

(iv) hybrid gasification and combustion; and

(v) other advanced coal based technologies capable of producing a concentrated stream of carbon dioxide.

(B) Technical milestones

(i) Periodic determination

(I) In general

The Secretary shall periodically set technical milestones specifying the emission and thermal efficiency levels that coal gasification projects under this part shall be designed, and reasonably expected, to achieve.

(II) Prescriptive milestones

The technical milestones shall become more prescriptive during the period of the clean coal power initiative.

(ii) 2020 goals

The Secretary shall establish the periodic milestones so as to achieve by the year 2020 coal gasification projects able—

(I)(aa) to remove at least 99 percent of sulfur dioxide; or

(bb) to emit not more than 0.04 pound SO_2 per million Btu, based on a 30-day average;

(II) to emit not more than .05 lbs of NO_x per million Btu;

(III) to achieve at least 95 percent reductions in mercury emissions; and

(IV) to achieve a thermal efficiency of at least—

(aa) 50 percent for coal of more than 9,000 Btu;

(bb) 48 percent for coal of 7,000 to 9,000 Btu; and

(cc) 46 percent for coal of less than 7,000 Btu.

(2) Other projects

(A) Allocation of funds

The Secretary shall ensure that up to 30 percent of the funds made available under section 15961(a) of this title are used to fund projects other than those described in paragraph (1).

(B) Technical milestones

(i) Periodic determination

(I) In general

The Secretary shall periodically establish technical milestones specifying the emission and thermal efficiency levels that projects funded under this paragraph shall be designed, and reasonably expected, to achieve.

(II) Prescriptive milestones

The technical milestones shall become more prescriptive during the period of the clean coal power initiative.

(ii) 2020 goals

The Secretary shall set the periodic milestones so as to achieve by the year 2020 projects able—

(I) to remove at least 97 percent of sulfur dioxide;

(II) to emit no more than .08 lbs of NO_x per million Btu;

(III) to achieve at least 90 percent reductions in mercury emissions; and

(IV) to achieve a thermal efficiency of at least—

(aa) 43 percent for coal of more than 9,000 Btu;

(bb) 41 percent for coal of 7,000 to 9,000 Btu; and

(cc) 39 percent for coal of less than 7,000 Btu.

(3) Consultation

Before setting the technical milestones under paragraphs (1)(B) and (2)(B), the Secretary shall consult with—

(A) the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency; and

(B) interested entities, including—

(i) coal producers;

(ii) industries using coal;

(iii) organizations that promote coal or advanced coal technologies;

(iv) environmental organizations;

(v) organizations representing workers; and

(vi) organizations representing consumers.

(4) Existing units

In the case of projects at units in existence on August 8, 2005, in lieu of the thermal efficiency requirements described in paragraphs (1)(B)(ii)(IV) and (2)(B)(ii)(IV), the milestones shall be designed to achieve an overall thermal design efficiency improvement, compared to the efficiency of the unit as operated, of not less than—

(A) 7 percent for coal of more than 9,000 Btu;

(B) 6 percent for coal of 7,000 to 9,000 Btu; or

(C) 4 percent for coal of less than 7,000 Btu.

(5) Administration

(A) Elevation of site

In evaluating project proposals to achieve thermal efficiency levels established under paragraphs (1)(B)(i) and (2)(B)(i) and in determining progress towards thermal efficiency milestones under paragraphs (1)(B)(ii)(IV), (2)(B)(ii)(IV), and (4), the Secretary shall take into account and make adjustments for the elevation of the site at which a project is proposed to be constructed.

(B) Applicability of milestones

In applying the thermal efficiency milestones under paragraphs (1)(B)(ii)(IV), (2)(B)(ii)(IV), and (4) to projects that separate and capture at least 50 percent of the potential emissions of carbon dioxide by a facility, the energy used for separation and capture of carbon dioxide shall not be counted in calculating the thermal efficiency.

(C) Permitted uses

In carrying out this section, the Secretary may give priority to projects that include, as part of the project—

(i) the separation or capture of carbon dioxide; or

(ii) the reduction of the demand for natural gas if deployed.

(c) Financial criteria

The Secretary shall not provide financial assistance under this part for a project unless the recipient documents to the satisfaction of the Secretary that—

(1) the recipient is financially responsible;

(2) the recipient will provide sufficient information to the Secretary to enable the Secretary to ensure that the funds are spent efficiently and effectively; and

(3) a market exists for the technology being demonstrated or applied, as evidenced by statements of interest in writing from potential purchasers of the technology.

(d) Financial assistance

The Secretary shall provide financial assistance to projects that, as determined by the Secretary—

(1) meet the requirements of subsections (a), (b), and (c); and

(2) are likely—

(A) to achieve overall cost reductions in the use of coal to generate useful forms of energy or chemical feedstocks;

(B) to improve the competitiveness of coal among various forms of energy in order to maintain a diversity of fuel choices in the United States to meet electricity generation requirements; and

(C) to demonstrate methods and equipment that are applicable to 25 percent of the electricity generating facilities, using various types of coal, that use coal as the primary feedstock as of August 8, 2005.

(e) Cost-sharing

In carrying out this part, the Secretary shall require cost sharing in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(f) Scheduled completion of selected projects

(1) In general

In selecting a project for financial assistance under this section, the Secretary shall establish a reasonable period of time during which the owner or operator of the project shall complete the construction or demonstration phase of the project, as the Secretary determines to be appropriate.

(2) Condition of financial assistance

The Secretary shall require as a condition of receipt of any financial assistance under this part that the recipient of the assistance enter into an agreement with the Secretary not to request an extension of the time period established for the project by the Secretary under paragraph (1).

(3) Extension of time period

(A) In general

Subject to subparagraph (B), the Secretary may extend the time period established under paragraph (1) if the Secretary determines, in the sole discretion of the Secretary, that the owner or operator of the project cannot complete the construction or demonstration phase of the project within the time period due to circumstances beyond the control of the owner or operator.

(B) Limitation

The Secretary shall not extend a time period under subparagraph (A) by more than 4 years.

(g) Fee title

The Secretary may vest fee title or other property interests acquired under cost-share clean coal power initiative agreements under this part in any entity, including the United States.

(h) Data protection

For a period not exceeding 5 years after completion of the operations phase of a cooperative agreement, the Secretary may provide appropriate protections (including exemptions from subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5) against the dissemination of information that—

(1) results from demonstration activities carried out under the clean coal power initiative program; and

(2) would be a trade secret or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential if the information had been obtained from and first produced by a non-Federal party participating in a clean coal power initiative project.

(i) Applicability

No technology, or level of emission reduction, solely by reason of the use of the technology, or the achievement of the emission reduction, by 1 or more facilities receiving assistance under this Act, shall be considered to be—

(1) adequately demonstrated for purposes of section 7411 of this title;

(2) achievable for purposes of section 7479 of this title; or

(3) achievable in practice for purposes of section 7501 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §402, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 750; Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §653, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1695.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (i), is Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 594, as amended, known as the Energy Policy Act of 2005, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and repealed numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2007—Subsec. (b)(1)(B)(ii)(I). Pub. L. 110–140 added subcl. (I) and struck out former subcl. (I) which read as follows: "to remove at least 99 percent of sulfur dioxide;".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§15963. Report

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, and once every 2 years thereafter through 2014, the Secretary, in consultation with other appropriate Federal agencies, shall submit to Congress a report describing—

(1) the technical milestones set forth in section 15962 of this title and how those milestones ensure progress toward meeting the requirements of subsections (b)(1)(B) and (b)(2) of section 15962 of this title; and

(2) the status of projects funded under this part.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §403, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 753.)

§15964. Clean coal centers of excellence

(a) In general

As part of the clean coal power initiative, the Secretary shall award competitive, merit-based grants to institutions of higher education for the establishment of centers of excellence for energy systems of the future.

(b) Basis for grants

The Secretary shall award grants under this section to institutions of higher education that show the greatest potential for advancing new clean coal technologies.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §404, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 753.)

§15965. Time limit for award; extension

If a Clean Coal Power Initiative project selected after March 11, 2009, for negotiation under this or any other Act in any fiscal year, is not awarded within 2 years from the date the application was selected, negotiations shall cease and the Federal funds committed to the application shall be retained by the Department for future coal-related research, development and demonstration projects, except that the time limit may be extended at the Secretary's discretion for matters outside the control of the applicant, or if the Secretary determines that extension of the time limit is in the public interest.

(Pub. L. 111–8, div. C, title III, Mar. 11, 2009, 123 Stat. 616.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Energy and Water Development and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 2009, and also as part of the Omnibus Appropriations Act, 2009, and not as part of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 which comprises this chapter.

PART B—CLEAN POWER PROJECTS

§15971. Integrated coal/renewable energy system

(a) In general

Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Secretary may provide loan guarantees for a project to produce energy from coal of less than 7,000 Btu/lb. using appropriate advanced integrated gasification combined cycle technology, including repowering of existing facilities, that—

(1) is combined with wind and other renewable sources;

(2) minimizes and offers the potential to sequester carbon dioxide emissions; and

(3) provides a ready source of hydrogen for near-site fuel cell demonstrations.

(b) Requirements

The facility—

(1) may be built in stages;

(2) shall have a combined output of at least 200 megawatts at successively more competitive rates; and

(3) shall be located in the Upper Great Plains.

(c) Technical criteria

Technical criteria described in section 15962(b) of this title shall apply to the facility.

(d) Investment tax credits

(1) In general

The loan guarantees provided under this section do not preclude the facility from receiving an allocation for investment tax credits under section 48A of title 26.

(2) Other funding

Use of the investment tax credit described in paragraph (1) does not prohibit the use of other clean coal program funding.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §411, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 754.)

§15972. Loan to place Alaska clean coal technology facility in service

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Borrower

The term "borrower" means the owner of the clean coal technology plant.

(2) Clean coal technology plant

The term "clean coal technology plant" means the plant located near Healy, Alaska, constructed under Department cooperative agreement number DE–FC–22–91PC90544.

(3) Cost of a direct loan

The term "cost of a direct loan" has the meaning given the term in section 661a(5)(B) of title 2.

(b) Authorization

Subject to subsection (c), the Secretary shall use amounts made available under subsection (e) to provide the cost of a direct loan to the borrower for purposes of placing the clean coal technology plant into reliable operation for the generation of electricity.

(c) Requirements

(1) Maximum loan amount

The amount of the direct loan provided under subsection (b) shall not exceed $80,000,000.

(2) Determinations by Secretary

Before providing the direct loan to the borrower under subsection (b), the Secretary shall determine that—

(A) the plan of the borrower for placing the clean coal technology plant in reliable operation has a reasonable prospect of success;

(B) the amount of the loan (when combined with amounts available to the borrower from other sources) will be sufficient to carry out the project; and

(C) there is a reasonable prospect that the borrower will repay the principal and interest on the loan.

(3) Interest; term

The direct loan provided under subsection (b) shall bear interest at a rate and for a term that the Secretary determines appropriate, after consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into account the needs and capacities of the borrower and the prevailing rate of interest for similar loans made by public and private lenders.

(4) Additional terms and conditions

The Secretary may require any other terms and conditions that the Secretary determines to be appropriate.

(d) Use of payments

The Secretary shall retain any payments of principal and interest on the direct loan provided under subsection (b) to support energy research and development activities, to remain available until expended, subject to any other conditions in an applicable appropriations Act.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to provide the cost of a direct loan under subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §412, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 754.)

§15973. Western integrated coal gasification demonstration project

(a) In general

Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Secretary shall carry out a project to demonstrate production of energy from coal mined in the western United States using integrated gasification combined cycle technology (referred to in this section as the "demonstration project").

(b) Components

The demonstration project—

(1) may include repowering of existing facilities;

(2) shall be designed to demonstrate the ability to use coal with an energy content of not more than 9,000 Btu/lb.; and

(3) shall be capable of removing and sequestering carbon dioxide emissions.

(c) All types of western coals

Notwithstanding the foregoing, and to the extent economically feasible, the demonstration project shall also be designed to demonstrate the ability to use a variety of types of coal (including subbituminous and bituminous coal with an energy content of up to 13,000 Btu/lb.) mined in the western United States.

(d) Location

The demonstration project shall be located in a western State at an altitude of greater than 4,000 feet above sea level.

(e) Cost sharing

The Federal share of the cost of the demonstration project shall be determined in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(f) Loan guarantees

Notwithstanding subchapter XIII, the demonstration project shall not be eligible for Federal loan guarantees.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §413, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 755.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subchapter XIII, referred to in subsec. (f), was in the original "title XIV", meaning title XIV of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1061, which enacted subchapter XIII of this chapter and section 13557 of this title. For complete classification of title XIV to the Code, see Tables.

§15974. Coal gasification

The Secretary is authorized to provide loan guarantees for a project to produce energy from a plant using integrated gasification combined cycle technology of at least 400 megawatts in capacity that produces power at competitive rates in deregulated energy generation markets and that does not receive any subsidy (direct or indirect) from ratepayers.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §414, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 755.)

§15975. Petroleum coke gasification

The Secretary is authorized to provide loan guarantees for at least 5 petroleum coke gasification projects.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §415, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 756.)

§15976. Electron scrubbing demonstration

The Secretary shall use $5,000,000 from amounts appropriated to initiate, through the Chicago Operations Office, a project to demonstrate the viability of high-energy electron scrubbing technology on commercial-scale electrical generation using high-sulfur coal.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §416, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 756.)

§15977. Department of Energy transportation fuels from Illinois basin coal

(a) In general

The Secretary shall carry out a program to evaluate the commercial and technical viability of advanced technologies for the production of Fischer-Tropsch transportation fuels, and other transportation fuels, manufactured from Illinois basin coal, including the capital modification of existing facilities and the construction of testing facilities under subsection (b).

(b) Facilities

For the purpose of evaluating the commercial and technical viability of different processes for producing Fischer-Tropsch transportation fuels, and other transportation fuels, from Illinois basin coal, the Secretary shall support the use and capital modification of existing facilities and the construction of new facilities at—

(1) Southern Illinois University Coal Research Center;
(2) University of Kentucky Center for Applied Energy Research; and
(3) Energy Center at Purdue University.

(c) Gasification products test center

In conjunction with the activities described in subsections (a) and (b), the Secretary shall construct a test center to evaluate and confirm liquid and gas products from syngas catalysis in order that the system has an output of at least 500 gallons of Fischer-Tropsch transportation fuel per day in a 24-hour operation.

(d) Milestones

(1) Selection of processes

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall select processes for evaluating the commercial and technical viability of different processes of producing Fischer-Tropsch transportation fuels, and other transportation fuels, from Illinois basin coal.

(2) Agreements

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall offer to enter into agreements—

(A) to carry out the activities described in this section, at the facilities described in subsection (b); and

(B) for the capital modifications or construction of the facilities at the locations described in subsection (b).

(3) Evaluations

Not later than 3 years after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall begin, at the facilities described in subsection (b), evaluation of the technical and commercial viability of different processes of producing Fischer-Tropsch transportation fuels, and other transportation fuels, from Illinois basin coal.

(4) Construction of facilities

(A) In general

The Secretary shall construct the facilities described in subsection (b) at the lowest cost practicable.

(B) Grants or agreements

The Secretary may make grants or enter into agreements or contracts with the institutions of higher education described in subsection (b).

(e) Cost sharing

The cost of making grants under this section shall be shared in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $85,000,000 for the period of fiscal years 2006 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §417, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 756.)

PART C—FEDERAL COAL LEASES

§15991. Inventory requirement

(a) Review of assessments

(1) In general

The Secretary of the Interior, in consultation with the Secretary of Agriculture and the Secretary, shall review coal assessments and other available data to identify—

(A) Federal lands with coal resources that are available for development;

(B) the extent and nature of any restrictions on the development of coal resources on Federal lands identified under paragraph (1); and

(C) with respect to areas of such lands for which sufficient data exists, resources of compliant coal and supercompliant coal.

(2) Definitions

For purposes of this subsection—

(A) the term "compliant coal" means coal that contains not less than 1.0 and not more than 1.2 pounds of sulfur dioxide per million Btu; and

(B) the term "supercompliant coal" means coal that contains less than 1.0 pounds of sulfur dioxide per million Btu.

(b) Completion and updating of the inventory

The Secretary—

(1) shall complete the inventory under subsection (a) by not later than 2 years after August 8, 2005; and

(2) shall update the inventory as the availability of data and developments in technology warrant.

(c) Report

The Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Resources of the House of Representatives and to the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate and make publicly available—

(1) a report containing the inventory under this section, by not later than 2 years after the effective date of this section; and

(2) each update of such inventory.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IV, §437, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 762.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The effective date of this section, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), probably means the date of enactment of Pub.

L. 109–58, which enacted this section.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Resources of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Natural Resources of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 6, One Hundred Tenth Congress, Jan. 5, 2007.

SHORT TITLE

For short title of subtitle D of title IV of Pub. L. 109–58, which enacted this part, as the "Coal Leasing Amendments Act of 2005", see section 431 of Pub. L. 109–58, set out as a note under section 15801 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER V—INDIAN ENERGY

§16001. Energy efficiency in federally assisted housing

The Secretary of Housing and Urban Development shall promote energy conservation in housing that is located on Indian land and assisted with Federal resources through—

(1) the use of energy-efficient technologies and innovations (including the procurement of energy-efficient refrigerators and other appliances);

(2) the promotion of shared savings contracts; and

(3) the use and implementation of such other similar technologies and innovations as the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development considers to be appropriate.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title V, §506(a), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 779.)

SHORT TITLE

For short title of title V of Pub. L. 109–58, which enacted this subchapter, as the "Indian Tribal Energy Development and Self-Determination Act of 2005", see section 501 of Pub. L. 109–58, set out as a note under section 15801 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER VI—NUCLEAR MATTERS

PART A—GENERAL NUCLEAR MATTERS

§16011. Demonstration hydrogen production at existing nuclear power plants

(a) Demonstration projects

The Secretary shall provide for the establishment of 2 projects in geographic areas that are regionally and climatically diverse to demonstrate the commercial production of hydrogen at existing nuclear power plants.

(b) Economic analysis

Prior to making an award under subsection (a), the Secretary shall determine whether the use of existing nuclear power plants is a cost-effective means of producing hydrogen.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for the purposes of carrying out this section not more than $100,000,000.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VI, §634, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 790.)

§16012. Prohibition on assumption by United States Government of liability for certain foreign incidents

(a) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no officer of the United States or of any department, agency, or instrumentality of the United States Government may enter into any contract or other arrangement, or into any amendment or modification of a contract or other arrangement, the purpose or effect of which would be to directly or indirectly impose liability on the United States Government, or any department, agency, or instrumentality of the United States Government, or to otherwise directly or indirectly require an indemnity by the United States Government, for nuclear incidents occurring in connection with the design, construction, or operation of a production facility or utilization facility in any country whose government has been identified by the Secretary of State as engaged in state sponsorship of terrorist activities (specifically including any country the government of which, as of September 11, 2001, had been determined by the Secretary of State under section 2371(a) of title 22, section 4605(j)(1) of title 50, or section 2780(d) of title 22 to have repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism). This section shall not apply to nuclear incidents occurring as a result of missions, carried out under the direction of the Secretary, the Secretary of Defense, or the Secretary of State, that are necessary to safely secure, store, transport, or remove nuclear materials for nuclear safety or nonproliferation purposes.

(b) Definitions

The terms used in this section shall have the same meaning as those terms have under section 2014 of this title, unless otherwise expressly provided in this section.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VI, §635, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 790.)

§16013. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this subtitle and the amendments made by this subtitle.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VI, §636, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 791.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subtitle, referred to in text, is subtitle B (§§621–639) of title VI of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 782, which enacted this part and sections 2015b, 2210c, and 5853 of this title, amended sections 2133, 2135, 2158, 2160d, 2201, 2210a, 2214, 2297h–8, and 5851 of this title, repealed section 2213 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 2158 and 2214 of this title. For complete classification of this subtitle to the Code, see Tables.

§16014. Standby support for certain nuclear plant delays

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Advanced nuclear facility

The term "advanced nuclear facility" means any nuclear facility the reactor design for which is approved after December 31, 1993, by the Commission (and such design or a substantially similar design of comparable capacity was not approved on or before that date).

(2) Combined license

The term "combined license" means a combined construction and operating license for an advanced nuclear facility issued by the Commission.

(3) Commission

The term "Commission" means the Nuclear Regulatory Commission.

(4) Sponsor

The term "sponsor" means a person who has applied for or been granted a combined license.

(b) Contract authority

(1) In general

The Secretary may enter into contracts under this section with sponsors of an advanced nuclear facility that cover a total of 6 reactors, with the 6 reactors consisting of not more than 3 different reactor designs, in accordance with paragraph (2).

(2) Requirement for contracts

(A) Definition of loan cost

In this paragraph, the term "loan cost" has the meaning given the term "cost of a loan guarantee" under section 661a(5)(C) of title 2.

(B) Establishment of accounts

There is established in the Department 2 separate accounts, which shall be known as the—

(i) "Standby Support Program Account"; and

(ii) "Standby Support Grant Account".

(C) Requirement

The Secretary shall not enter into a contract under this section unless the Secretary deposits—

(i) in the Standby Support Program Account established under subparagraph (B), funds appropriated to the Secretary in advance of the contract or a combination of appropriated funds and loan guarantee fees that are in an amount sufficient to cover the loan costs described in subsection (d)(5)(A); and

(ii) in the Standby Support Grant Account established under subparagraph (B), funds appropriated to the Secretary in advance of the contract, paid to the Secretary by the sponsor of the advanced nuclear facility, or a combination of appropriations and payments that are in an amount sufficient [1] cover the costs described in subparagraphs (B), (C), and (D) of subsection (d)(5).

(c) Covered delays

(1) Inclusions

Under each contract authorized by this section, the Secretary shall pay the costs specified in subsection (d), using funds appropriated or collected for the covered costs, if full power operation of the advanced nuclear facility is delayed by—

(A) the failure of the Commission to comply with schedules for review and approval of inspections, tests, analyses, and acceptance criteria established under the combined license or the conduct of preoperational hearings by the Commission for the advanced nuclear facility; or

(B) litigation that delays the commencement of full-power operations of the advanced nuclear facility.

(2) Exclusions

The Secretary may not enter into any contract under this section that would obligate the Secretary to pay any costs resulting from—

(A) the failure of the sponsor to take any action required by law or regulation;

(B) events within the control of the sponsor; or

(C) normal business risks.

(d) Covered costs

(1) In general

Subject to paragraphs (2), (3), and (4), the costs that shall be paid by the Secretary pursuant to a contract entered into under this section are the costs that result from a delay covered by the contract.

(2) Initial 2 reactors

In the case of the first 2 reactors that receive combined licenses and on which construction is commenced, the Secretary shall pay—

(A) 100 percent of the covered costs of delay; but

(B) not more than $500,000,000 per contract.

(3) Subsequent 4 reactors

In the case of the next 4 reactors that receive a combined license and on which construction is commenced, the Secretary shall pay—

(A) 50 percent of the covered costs of delay that occur after the initial 180-day period of covered delay; but

(B) not more than $250,000,000 per contract.

(4) Conditions on payment of certain covered costs

(A) In general

The obligation of the Secretary to pay the covered costs described in subparagraph (B) of paragraph (5) is subject to the Secretary receiving from appropriations or payments from other non-Federal sources amounts sufficient to pay the covered costs.

(B) Non-Federal sources

The Secretary may receive and accept payments from any non-Federal source, which shall be made available without further appropriation for the payment of the covered costs.

(5) Types of covered costs

Subject to paragraphs (2), (3), and (4), the contract entered into under this section for an advanced nuclear facility shall include as covered costs those costs that result from a delay during construction and in gaining approval for fuel loading and full-power operation, including—

(A) principal or interest on any debt obligation of an advanced nuclear facility owned by a non-Federal entity; and

(B) the incremental difference between—

(i) the fair market price of power purchased to meet the contractual supply agreements that would have been met by the advanced nuclear facility but for the delay; and

(ii) the contractual price of power from the advanced nuclear facility subject to the delay.

(e) Requirements

Any contract between a sponsor and the Secretary covering an advanced nuclear facility under this section shall require the sponsor to use due diligence to shorten, and to end, the delay covered by the contract.

(f) Reports

For each advanced nuclear facility that is covered by a contract under this section, the Commission shall submit to Congress and the Secretary quarterly reports summarizing the status of licensing actions associated with the advanced nuclear facility.

(g) Regulations

(1) In general

Subject to paragraphs (2) and (3), the Secretary shall issue such regulations as are necessary to carry out this section.

(2) Interim final rulemaking

Not later than 270 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall issue for public comment an interim final rule regulating contracts authorized by this section.

(3) Notice of final rulemaking

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall issue a notice of final rulemaking regulating the contracts.

(h) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VI, §638, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 791.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be followed by "to".*

PART B—NEXT GENERATION NUCLEAR PLANT PROJECT

§16021. Project establishment

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a project to be known as the "Next Generation Nuclear Plant Project" (referred to in this part as the "Project").

(b) Content

The Project shall consist of the research, development, design, construction, and operation of a prototype plant, including a nuclear reactor that—

(1) is based on research and development activities supported by the Generation IV Nuclear Energy Systems Initiative under section 16272(d) [1] of this title; and

(2) shall be used—

(A) to generate electricity;

(B) to produce hydrogen; or

(C) both to generate electricity and to produce hydrogen.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VI, §641, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 794.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 16272(d) of this title, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), was in the original a reference to section 942(d) of Pub. L. 109–58, which is classified to section 16251(d) of this title but was translated as meaning section 952(d) of Pub. L. 109–58 to reflect the probable intent of Congress, because section 952(d) relates to Generation IV Nuclear Energy Systems Initiative and section 942(d) relates to limitations on production incentives for cellulosic biofuels.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§16022. Project management

(a) Departmental management

(1) In general

The Project shall be managed in the Department by the Office of Nuclear Energy, Science, and Technology.

(2) Generation IV Nuclear Energy Systems program

The Secretary may combine the Project with the Generation IV Nuclear Energy Systems Initiative.

(3) Existing DOE project management expertise

The Secretary may utilize capabilities for review of construction projects for advanced scientific facilities within the Office of Science to track the progress of the Project.

(b) Laboratory management

(1) Lead Laboratory

The Idaho National Laboratory shall be the lead National Laboratory for the Project and shall collaborate with other National Laboratories, institutions of higher education, other research institutes, industrial researchers, and international researchers to carry out the Project.

(2) Industrial partnerships

(A) In general

The Idaho National Laboratory shall organize a consortium of appropriate industrial partners that will carry out cost-shared research, development, design, and construction activities, and operate research facilities, on behalf of the Project.

(B) Cost-sharing

Activities of industrial partners funded by the Project shall be cost-shared in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(C) Preference

Preference in determining the final structure of the consortium or any partnerships under this part shall be given to a structure (including designating as a lead industrial partner an entity incorporated in the United States) that retains United States technological leadership in the Project while maximizing cost sharing opportunities and minimizing Federal funding responsibilities.

(3) Prototype plant siting

The prototype nuclear reactor and associated plant shall be sited at the Idaho National Laboratory in Idaho.

(4) Reactor test capabilities

The Project shall use, if appropriate, reactor test capabilities at the Idaho National Laboratory.

(5) Other Laboratory capabilities

The Project may use, if appropriate, facilities at other National Laboratories.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VI, §642, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 795.)

§16023. Project organization

(a) Major project elements

The Project shall consist of the following major program elements:

(1) High-temperature hydrogen production technology development and validation.
(2) Energy conversion technology development and validation.
(3) Nuclear fuel development, characterization, and qualification.
(4) Materials selection, development, testing, and qualification.
(5) Reactor and balance-of-plant design, engineering, safety analysis, and qualification.

(b) Project phases

The Project shall be conducted in the following phases:

(1) First project phase

A first project phase shall be conducted to—

(A) select and validate the appropriate technology under subsection (a)(1);

(B) carry out enabling research, development, and demonstration activities on technologies and components under paragraphs (2) through (4) of subsection (a);

(C) determine whether it is appropriate to combine electricity generation and hydrogen production in a single prototype nuclear reactor and plant; and

(D) carry out initial design activities for a prototype nuclear reactor and plant, including development of design methods and safety analytical methods and studies under subsection (a)(5).

(2) Second project phase

A second project phase shall be conducted to—

(A) continue appropriate activities under paragraphs (1) through (5) of subsection (a);

(B) develop, through a competitive process, a final design for the prototype nuclear reactor and plant;

(C) apply for licenses to construct and operate the prototype nuclear reactor from the Nuclear Regulatory Commission; and

(D) construct and start up operations of the prototype nuclear reactor and its associated hydrogen or electricity production facilities.

(c) Project requirements

(1) In general

The Secretary shall ensure that the Project is structured so as to maximize the technical interchange and transfer of technologies and ideas into the Project from other sources of relevant expertise, including—

(A) the nuclear power industry, including nuclear powerplant construction firms, particularly with respect to issues associated with plant design, construction, and operational and safety issues;

(B) the chemical processing industry, particularly with respect to issues relating to—

(i) the use of process energy for production of hydrogen; and

(ii) the integration of technologies developed by the Project into chemical processing environments; and

(C) international efforts in areas related to the Project, particularly with respect to hydrogen production technologies.

(2) International collaboration

(A) In general

The Secretary shall seek international cooperation, participation, and financial contributions for the Project.

(B) Assistance from international partners

The Secretary, through the Idaho National Laboratory, may contract for assistance from specialists or facilities from member countries of the Generation IV International Forum, the Russian Federation, or other international partners if the specialists or facilities provide access to cost-effective and relevant skills or test capabilities.

(C) Partner nations

The Project may involve demonstration of selected project objectives in a partner country.

(D) Generation IV International Forum

The Secretary shall ensure that international activities of the Project are coordinated with the Generation IV International Forum.

(3) Review by Nuclear Energy Research Advisory Committee

(A) In general

The Nuclear Energy Research Advisory Committee of the Department (referred to in this paragraph as the "NERAC") shall—

(i) review all program plans for the Project and all progress under the Project on an

ongoing basis; and

(ii) ensure that important scientific, technical, safety, and program management issues receive attention in the Project and by the Secretary.

(B) Additional expertise

The NERAC shall supplement the expertise of the NERAC or appoint subpanels to incorporate into the review by the NERAC the relevant sources of expertise described under paragraph (1).

(C) Initial review

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, the NERAC shall—

(i) review existing program plans for the Project in light of the recommendations of the document entitled "Design Features and Technology Uncertainties for the Next Generation Nuclear Plant," dated June 30, 2004; and

(ii) address any recommendations of the document not incorporated in program plans for the Project.

(D) First project phase review

On a determination by the Secretary that the appropriate activities under the first project phase under subsection (b)(1) are nearly complete, the Secretary shall request the NERAC to conduct a comprehensive review of the Project and to report to the Secretary the recommendation of the NERAC concerning whether the Project is ready to proceed to the second project phase under subsection (b)(2).

(E) Transmittal of reports to Congress

Not later than 60 days after receiving any report from the NERAC related to the Project, the Secretary shall submit to the appropriate committees of the Senate and the House of Representatives a copy of the report, along with any additional views of the Secretary that the Secretary may consider appropriate.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VI, §643, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 795.)

§16024. Nuclear Regulatory Commission

(a) In general

In accordance with section 5842 of this title, the Nuclear Regulatory Commission shall have licensing and regulatory authority for any reactor authorized under this part.

(b) Licensing strategy

Not later than 3 years after August 8, 2005, the Secretary and the Chairman of the Nuclear Regulatory Commission shall jointly submit to the appropriate committees of the Senate and the House of Representatives a licensing strategy for the prototype nuclear reactor, including—

(1) a description of ways in which current licensing requirements relating to light-water reactors need to be adapted for the types of prototype nuclear reactor being considered by the Project;

(2) a description of analytical tools that the Nuclear Regulatory Commission will have to develop to independently verify designs and performance characteristics of components, equipment, systems, or structures associated with the prototype nuclear reactor;

(3) other research or development activities that may be required on the part of the Nuclear Regulatory Commission in order to review a license application for the prototype nuclear reactor; and

(4) an estimate of the budgetary requirements associated with the licensing strategy.

(c) Ongoing interaction

The Secretary shall seek the active participation of the Nuclear Regulatory Commission throughout the duration of the Project to—

(1) avoid design decisions that will compromise adequate safety margins in the design of the

reactor or impair the accessibility of nuclear safety-related components of the prototype reactor for inspection and maintenance;

(2) develop tools to facilitate inspection and maintenance needed for safety purposes; and

(3) develop risk-based criteria for any future commercial development of a similar reactor architectures.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VI, §644, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 797.)

§16025. Project timelines and authorization of appropriations

(a) Target date to complete the first project phase

Not later than September 30, 2011, the Secretary shall—

(1) select the technology to be used by the Project for high-temperature hydrogen production and the initial design parameters for the prototype nuclear plant; or

(2) submit to Congress a report establishing an alternative date for making the selection.

(b) Design competition for second project phase

(1) In general

The Secretary, acting through the Idaho National Laboratory, shall fund not more than 4 teams for not more than 2 years to develop detailed proposals for competitive evaluation and selection of a single proposal for a final design of the prototype nuclear reactor.

(2) Systems integration

The Secretary may structure Project activities in the second project phase to use the lead industrial partner of the competitively selected design under paragraph (1) in a systems integration role for final design and construction of the Project.

(c) Target date to complete project construction

Not later than September 30, 2021, the Secretary shall—

(1) complete construction and begin operations of the prototype nuclear reactor and associated energy or hydrogen facilities; or

(2) submit to Congress a report establishing an alternative date for completion.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for research and construction activities under this part (including for transfer to the Nuclear Regulatory Commission for activities under section 16024 of this title as appropriate)—

(1) $1,250,000,000 for the period of fiscal years 2006 through 2015; and

(2) such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2016 through 2021.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VI, §645, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 798.)

PART C—NUCLEAR SECURITY

§16041. Nuclear facility and materials security

(a) In general

(1), (2) Omitted

(3) Federal security coordinators

(A) Regional offices

Not later than 18 months after August 8, 2005, the Nuclear Regulatory Commission (referred

to in this section as the "Commission") shall assign a Federal security coordinator, under the employment of the Commission, to each region of the Commission.

(B) Responsibilities

The Federal security coordinator shall be responsible for—

(i) communicating with the Commission and other Federal, State, and local authorities concerning threats, including threats against such classes of facilities as the Commission determines to be appropriate;

(ii) monitoring such classes of facilities as the Commission determines to be appropriate to ensure that they maintain security consistent with the security plan in accordance with the appropriate threat level; and

(iii) assisting in the coordination of security measures among the private security forces at such classes of facilities as the Commission determines to be appropriate and Federal, State, and local authorities, as appropriate.

(b) Backup power for certain emergency notification systems

For any licensed nuclear power plants located where there is a permanent population, as determined by the 2000 decennial census, in excess of 15,000,000 within a 50-mile radius of the power plant, not later than 18 months after August 8, 2005, the Commission shall require that backup power to be available for the emergency notification system of the power plant, including the emergency siren warning system, if the alternating current supply within the 10-mile emergency planning zone of the power plant is lost.

(c), (d) Omitted

(e) Final regulations; waivers

(1) to (3) Omitted

(4) Final regulations

(A) Regulations

(i) In general

Not later than 18 months after August 8, 2005, the Commission, after consultation with States and other stakeholders, shall issue final regulations establishing such requirements as the Commission determines to be necessary to carry out this section and the amendments made by this section.

(ii) Inclusions

The regulations shall include a definition of the term "discrete source" for purposes of paragraphs (3) and (4) of section 2014(e) of this title.

(B) Cooperation

In promulgating regulations under paragraph (1),[1] the Commission shall, to the maximum extent practicable—

(i) cooperate with States; and

(ii) use model State standards in existence on August 8, 2005.

(C) Transition plan

(i) Definition of byproduct material

In this paragraph, the term "byproduct material" has the meaning given the term in paragraphs (3) and (4) of section 2014(e) of this title.

(ii) Preparation and publication

To facilitate an orderly transition of regulatory authority with respect to byproduct material, the Commission, in issuing regulations under subparagraph (A), shall prepare and publish a transition plan for—

(I) States that have not, before the date on which the plan is published, entered into an agreement with the Commission under section 2021(b) of this title; and

(II) States that have entered into an agreement with the Commission under that section before the date on which the plan is published.

(iii) Inclusions

The transition plan under clause (ii) shall include—

(I) a description of the conditions under which a State may exercise authority over byproduct material; and

(II) a statement of the Commission that any agreement covering byproduct material, as defined in paragraph (1) or (2) of section 2014(e) of this title, entered into between the Commission and a State under section 2021(b) of this title before the date of publication of the transition plan shall be considered to include byproduct material, as defined in paragraph (3) or (4) of section 2014(e) of this title, if the Governor of the State certifies to the Commission on the date of publication of the transition plan that—

(aa) the State has a program for licensing byproduct material, as defined in paragraph (3) or (4) of section 2014(e) of this title, that is adequate to protect the public health and safety, as determined by the Commission; and

(bb) the State intends to continue to implement the regulatory responsibility of the State with respect to the byproduct material.

(D) Availability of radiopharmaceuticals

In promulgating regulations under subparagraph (A), the Commission shall consider the impact on the availability of radiopharmaceuticals to—

(i) physicians; and

(ii) patients the medical treatment of which relies on radiopharmaceuticals.

(5) Waivers

(A) In general

Except as provided in subparagraph (B), the Commission may grant a waiver to any entity of any requirement under this section or an amendment made by this section with respect to a matter relating to byproduct material (as defined in paragraphs (3) and (4) of section 2014(e) of this title) if the Commission determines that the waiver is in accordance with the protection of the public health and safety and the promotion of the common defense and security.

(B) Exceptions

(i) In general

The Commission may not grant a waiver under subparagraph (A) with respect to—

(I) any requirement under the amendments made by subsection (c)(1);

(II) a matter relating to an importation into, or exportation from, the United States for a period ending after the date that is 1 year after August 8, 2005; or

(III) any other matter for a period ending after the date that is 4 years after August 8, 2005.

(ii) Waivers to States

The Commission shall terminate any waiver granted to a State under subparagraph (A) if the Commission determines that—

(I) the State has entered into an agreement with the Commission under section 2021(b) of this title;

(II) the agreement described in subclause (I) covers byproduct material (as described in paragraph (3) or (4) of section 2014(e) of this title); and

(III) the program of the State for licensing such byproduct material is adequate to protect the public health and safety.

(C) Publication

The Commission shall publish in the Federal Register a notice of any waiver granted under this subsection.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VI, §651, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 799.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For references to "the amendments made by this section", "an amendment made by this section", and "the amendments made by subsection (c)(1)", appearing in subsecs. (e)(4)(A)(i), (e)(5)(A), and (e)(5)(B)(i)(I), respectively, see Codification note below.

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 651 of Pub. L. 109–58. Subsec. (a)(1), (2) of section 651 of Pub. L. 109–58 enacted sections 2210d and 2210e of this title, subsec. (c)(1) of section 651 of Pub. L. 109–58 amended section 2051 of this title, subsecs. (c)(2) to (5) and (d) of section 651 of Pub. L. 109–58 enacted sections 2210f to 2210h and 2015c of this title, and subsec. (e)(1) to (3) of section 651 of Pub. L. 109–58 amended sections 2014, 2021, 2021b, and 2111 of this title.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "subparagraph (A),".

§16042. Department of Homeland Security consultation

Before issuing a license for a utilization facility, the Nuclear Regulatory Commission shall consult with the Department of Homeland Security concerning the potential vulnerabilities of the location of the proposed facility to terrorist attack.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VI, §657, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 814.)

SUBCHAPTER VII—VEHICLES AND FUELS

PART A—EXISTING PROGRAMS

§16051. Joint flexible fuel/hybrid vehicle commercialization initiative

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Eligible entity

The term "eligible entity" means—

(A) a for-profit corporation;

(B) a nonprofit corporation; or

(C) an institution of higher education.

(2) Program

The term "program" means a program established under subsection (b).

(b) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a program to improve technologies for the commercialization of—

(1) a combination hybrid/flexible fuel vehicle; or

(2) a plug-in hybrid/flexible fuel vehicle.

(c) Grants

In carrying out the program, the Secretary shall provide grants that give preference to proposals

that—

(1) achieve the greatest reduction in miles per gallon of petroleum fuel consumption;

(2) achieve not less than 250 miles per gallon of petroleum fuel consumption; and

(3) have the greatest potential of commercialization to the general public within 5 years.

(d) Verification

Not later than 90 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register procedures to verify—

(1) the hybrid/flexible fuel vehicle technologies to be demonstrated; and

(2) that grants are administered in accordance with this section.

(e) Report

Not later than 260 days after August 8, 2005, and annually thereafter, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report that—

(1) identifies the grant recipients;

(2) describes the technologies to be funded under the program;

(3) assesses the feasibility of the technologies described in paragraph (2) in meeting the goals described in subsection (c);

(4) identifies applications submitted for the program that were not funded; and

(5) makes recommendations for Federal legislation to achieve commercialization of the technology demonstrated.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section, to remain available until expended—

(1) $3,000,000 for fiscal year 2006;

(2) $7,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(3) $10,000,000 for fiscal year 2008; and

(4) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §706, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 817.)

PART B—HYBRID VEHICLES, ADVANCED VEHICLES, AND FUEL CELL BUSES

SUBPART 1—HYBRID VEHICLES

§16061. Hybrid vehicles

The Secretary shall accelerate efforts directed toward the improvement of batteries and other rechargeable energy storage systems, power electronics, hybrid systems integration, and other technologies for use in hybrid vehicles.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §711, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 818.)

§16062. Domestic manufacturing conversion grant program

(a) Program

(1) In general

The Secretary shall establish a program to encourage domestic production and sales of efficient

hybrid and advanced diesel vehicles and components of those vehicles.

(2) Inclusions

The program shall include grants and loan guarantees under section 16513 of this title to automobile manufacturers and suppliers and hybrid component manufacturers to encourage domestic production of efficient hybrid, plug-in electric hybrid, plug-in electric drive, and advanced diesel vehicles.

(3) Priority

Priority shall be given to the refurbishment or retooling of manufacturing facilities that have recently ceased operation or will cease operation in the near future.

(b) Coordination with State and local programs

The Secretary may coordinate implementation of this section with State and local programs designed to accomplish similar goals, including the retention and retraining of skilled workers from the manufacturing facilities, including by establishing matching grant arrangements.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary such sums as may be necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §712, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 818; Pub. L. 110–140, title I, §§132, 134(a), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1511, 1513.)

AMENDMENTS

2007—Pub. L. 110–140, §132, amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section related to program to encourage domestic production and sales of efficient hybrid and advanced diesel vehicles and authorization of appropriations.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 110–140, §134(a), inserted "and loan guarantees under section 16513 of this title" after "grants".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

SUBPART 2—ADVANCED VEHICLES

§16071. Pilot program

(a) Establishment

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation, shall establish a competitive grant pilot program (referred to in this subpart as the "pilot program"), to be administered through the Clean Cities Program of the Department, to provide not more than 30 geographically dispersed project grants to State governments, local governments, or metropolitan transportation authorities to carry out a project or projects for the purposes described in subsection (b).

(b) Grant purposes

A grant under this section may be used for the following purposes:

(1) The acquisition of alternative fueled vehicles or fuel cell vehicles, including—

(A) passenger vehicles (including neighborhood electric vehicles); and

(B) motorized 2-wheel bicycles or other vehicles for use by law enforcement personnel or other State or local government or metropolitan transportation authority employees.

(2) The acquisition of alternative fueled vehicles, hybrid vehicles, or fuel cell vehicles,

including—

(A) buses used for public transportation or transportation to and from schools;

(B) delivery vehicles for goods or services; and

(C) ground support vehicles at public airports (including vehicles to carry baggage or push or pull airplanes toward or away from terminal gates).

(3) The acquisition of ultra-low sulfur diesel vehicles.

(4) Installation or acquisition of infrastructure necessary to directly support an alternative fueled vehicle, fuel cell vehicle, or hybrid vehicle project funded by the grant, including fueling and other support equipment.

(5) Operation and maintenance of vehicles, infrastructure, and equipment acquired as part of a project funded by the grant.

(c) Applications

(1) Requirements

(A) In general

The Secretary shall issue requirements for applying for grants under the pilot program.

(B) Minimum requirements

At a minimum, the Secretary shall require that an application for a grant—

(i) be submitted by the head of a State or local government or a metropolitan transportation authority, or any combination thereof, and a registered participant in the Clean Cities Program of the Department; and

(ii) include—

(I) a description of the project proposed in the application, including how the project meets the requirements of this subpart;

(II) an estimate of the ridership or degree of use of the project;

(III) an estimate of the air pollution emissions reduced and fossil fuel displaced as a result of the project, and a plan to collect and disseminate environmental data, related to the project to be funded under the grant, over the life of the project;

(IV) a description of how the project will be sustainable without Federal assistance after the completion of the term of the grant;

(V) a complete description of the costs of the project, including acquisition, construction, operation, and maintenance costs over the expected life of the project;

(VI) a description of which costs of the project will be supported by Federal assistance under this subpart; and

(VII) documentation to the satisfaction of the Secretary that diesel fuel containing sulfur at not more than 15 parts per million is available for carrying out the project, and a commitment by the applicant to use such fuel in carrying out the project.

(2) Partners

An applicant under paragraph (1) may carry out a project under the pilot program in partnership with public and private entities.

(d) Selection criteria

In evaluating applications under the pilot program, the Secretary shall—

(1) consider each applicant's previous experience with similar projects; and

(2) give priority consideration to applications that—

(A) are most likely to maximize protection of the environment;

(B) demonstrate the greatest commitment on the part of the applicant to ensure funding for the proposed project and the greatest likelihood that the project will be maintained or expanded after Federal assistance under this subpart is completed; and

(C) exceed the minimum requirements of subsection (c)(1)(B)(ii).

(e) Pilot project requirements

(1) Maximum amount

The Secretary shall not provide more than $15,000,000 in Federal assistance under the pilot program to any applicant.

(2) Cost sharing

The Secretary shall not provide more than 50 percent of the cost, incurred during the period of the grant, of any project under the pilot program.

(3) Maximum period of grants

The Secretary shall not fund any applicant under the pilot program for more than 5 years.

(4) Deployment and distribution

The Secretary shall seek to the maximum extent practicable to ensure a broad geographic distribution of project sites.

(5) Transfer of information and knowledge

The Secretary shall establish mechanisms to ensure that the information and knowledge gained by participants in the pilot program are transferred among the pilot program participants and to other interested parties, including other applicants that submitted applications.

(f) Schedule

(1) Publication

Not later than 90 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register, Commerce Business Daily, and elsewhere as appropriate, a request for applications to undertake projects under the pilot program. Applications shall be due not later than 180 days after the date of publication of the notice.

(2) Selection

Not later than 180 days after the date by which applications for grants are due, the Secretary shall select by competitive, peer reviewed proposal, all applications for projects to be awarded a grant under the pilot program.

(g) Definitions

For purposes of carrying out the pilot program, the Secretary shall issue regulations defining any term, as the Secretary determines to be necessary.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §721, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 818.)

§16072. Reports to Congress

(a) Initial report

Not later than 60 days after the date on which grants are awarded under this subpart, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report containing—

(1) an identification of the grant recipients and a description of the projects to be funded;

(2) an identification of other applicants that submitted applications for the pilot program; and

(3) a description of the mechanisms used by the Secretary to ensure that the information and knowledge gained by participants in the pilot program are transferred among the pilot program participants and to other interested parties, including other applicants that submitted applications.

(b) Evaluation

Not later than 3 years after August 8, 2005, and annually thereafter until the pilot program ends, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report containing an evaluation of the effectiveness of the pilot program, including—

(1) an assessment of the benefits to the environment derived from the projects included in the pilot program; and

(2) an estimate of the potential benefits to the environment to be derived from widespread application of alternative fueled vehicles and ultra-low sulfur diesel vehicles.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §722, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 820.)

§16073. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this subpart $200,000,000, to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §723, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 821.)

SUBPART 3—FUEL CELL BUSES

§16081. Fuel cell transit bus demonstration

(a) In general

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation, shall establish a transit bus demonstration program to make competitive, merit-based awards for 5-year projects to demonstrate not more than 25 fuel cell transit buses (and necessary infrastructure) in 5 geographically dispersed localities.

(b) Preference

In selecting projects under this section, the Secretary shall give preference to projects that are most likely to mitigate congestion and improve air quality.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this section $10,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §731, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 821.)

PART C—CLEAN SCHOOL BUSES

§16091. Clean school bus program [1]

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Administrator

The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency.

(2) Alternative fuel

The term "alternative fuel" means—

(A) liquefied natural gas, compressed natural gas, liquefied petroleum gas, hydrogen, or propane;

(B) methanol or ethanol at no less than 85 percent by volume; or

(C) biodiesel conforming with standards published by the American Society for Testing and Materials as of August 8, 2005.

(3) Clean school bus

The term "clean school bus" means a school bus with a gross vehicle weight of greater than 14,000 pounds that—

(A) is powered by a heavy duty engine; and

(B) is operated solely on an alternative fuel or ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel.

(4) Eligible recipient

(A) In general

Subject to subparagraph (B), the term "eligible recipient" means—

(i) 1 or more local or State governmental entities responsible for—

(I) providing school bus service to 1 or more public school systems; or

(II) the purchase of school buses;

(ii) 1 or more contracting entities that provide school bus service to 1 or more public school systems; or

(iii) a nonprofit school transportation association.

(B) Special requirements

In the case of eligible recipients identified under clauses (ii) and (iii),[2] the Administrator shall establish timely and appropriate requirements for notice and may establish timely and appropriate requirements for approval by the public school systems that would be served by buses purchased or retrofit using grant funds made available under this section.

(5) Retrofit technology

The term "retrofit technology" means a particulate filter or other emissions control equipment that is verified or certified by the Administrator or the California Air Resources Board as an effective emission reduction technology when installed on an existing school bus.

(6) Ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel

The term "ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel" means diesel fuel that contains sulfur at not more than 15 parts per million.

(b) Program for retrofit or replacement of certain existing school buses with clean school buses

(1) Establishment

(A) In general

The Administrator, in consultation with the Secretary and other appropriate Federal departments and agencies, shall establish a program for awarding grants on a competitive basis to eligible recipients for the replacement, or retrofit (including repowering, aftertreatment, and remanufactured engines) of, certain existing school buses.

(B) Balancing

In awarding grants under this section, the Administrator shall, to the maximum extent practicable, achieve an appropriate balance between awarding grants—

(i) to replace school buses; and

(ii) to install retrofit technologies.

(2) Priority of grant applications

(A) Replacement

In the case of grant applications to replace school buses, the Administrator shall give priority to applicants that propose to replace school buses manufactured before model year 1977.

(B) Retrofitting

In the case of grant applications to retrofit school buses, the Administrator shall give priority to applicants that propose to retrofit school buses manufactured in or after model year 1991.

(3) Use of school bus fleet

(A) In general

All school buses acquired or retrofitted with funds provided under this section shall be operated as part of the school bus fleet for which the grant was made for not less than 5 years.

(B) Maintenance, operation, and fueling

New school buses and retrofit technology shall be maintained, operated, and fueled according to manufacturer recommendations or State requirements.

(4) Retrofit grants

The Administrator may award grants for up to 100 percent of the retrofit technologies and installation costs.

(5) Replacement grants

(A) Eligibility for 50 percent grants

The Administrator may award grants for replacement of school buses in the amount of up to one-half of the acquisition costs (including fueling infrastructure) for—

(i) clean school buses with engines manufactured in model year 2005 or 2006 that emit not more than—

(I) 1.8 grams per brake horsepower-hour of non-methane hydrocarbons and oxides of nitrogen; and

(II) .01 grams per brake horsepower-hour of particulate matter; or

(ii) clean school buses with engines manufactured in model year 2007, 2008, or 2009 that satisfy regulatory requirements established by the Administrator for emissions of oxides of nitrogen and particulate matter to be applicable for school buses manufactured in model year 2010.

(B) Eligibility for 25 percent grants

The Administrator may award grants for replacement of school buses in the amount of up to one-fourth of the acquisition costs (including fueling infrastructure) for—

(i) clean school buses with engines manufactured in model year 2005 or 2006 that emit not more than—

(I) 2.5 grams per brake horsepower-hour of non-methane hydrocarbons and oxides of nitrogen; and

(II) .01 grams per brake horsepower-hour of particulate matter; or

(ii) clean school buses with engines manufactured in model year 2007 or thereafter that satisfy regulatory requirements established by the Administrator for emissions of oxides of nitrogen and particulate matter from school buses manufactured in that model year.

(6) Ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel

(A) [3] In general

In the case of a grant recipient receiving a grant for the acquisition of ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel school buses with engines manufactured in model year 2005 or 2006, the grant recipient shall provide, to the satisfaction of the Administrator—

(i) documentation that diesel fuel containing sulfur at not more than 15 parts per million is available for carrying out the purposes of the grant; and

(ii) a commitment by the applicant to use that fuel in carrying out the purposes of the grant.

(7) Deployment and distribution

The Administrator shall, to the maximum extent practicable—

(A) achieve nationwide deployment of clean school buses through the program under this section; and

(B) ensure a broad geographic distribution of grant awards, with no State receiving more than

10 percent of the grant funding made available under this section during a fiscal year.

(8) Annual report

(A) [3] In general

Not later than January 31 of each year, the Administrator shall submit to Congress a report that—

(i) evaluates the implementation of this section; and

(ii) describes—

(I) the total number of grant applications received;

(II) the number and types of alternative fuel school buses, ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel school buses, and retrofitted buses requested in grant applications;

(III) grants awarded and the criteria used to select the grant recipients;

(IV) certified engine emission levels of all buses purchased or retrofitted under this section;

(V) an evaluation of the in-use emission level of buses purchased or retrofitted under this section; and

(VI) any other information the Administrator considers appropriate.

(c) Education

(1) In general

Not later than 90 days after August 8, 2005, the Administrator shall develop an education outreach program to promote and explain the grant program.

(2) Coordination with stakeholders

The outreach program shall be designed and conducted in conjunction with national school bus transportation associations and other stakeholders.

(3) Components

The outreach program shall—

(A) inform potential grant recipients on the process of applying for grants;

(B) describe the available technologies and the benefits of the technologies;

(C) explain the benefits of participating in the grant program; and

(D) include, as appropriate, information from the annual report required under subsection (b)(8).

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Administrator to carry out this section, to remain available until expended—

(1) $55,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 and 2007; and

(2) such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2008, 2009, and 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §741, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 821.)

[1] This section is substantially identical to section 16091a of this title.

[2] So in original. Probably means clauses (ii) and (iii) of subparagraph (A).

[3] So in original. No subpar. (B) was enacted.

§16091a. Clean school bus program [1]

(a) Definitions

In this section, the following definitions apply:

(1) Administrator

The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency.

(2) Alternative fuel

The term "alternative fuel" means—

(A) liquefied natural gas, compressed natural gas, liquefied petroleum gas, hydrogen, or propane;

(B) methanol or ethanol at no less than 85 percent by volume; or

(C) biodiesel conforming with standards published by the American Society for Testing and Materials as of August 10, 2005.

(3) Clean school bus

The term "clean school bus" means a school bus with a gross vehicle weight of greater than 14,000 pounds that—

(A) is powered by a heavy duty engine; and

(B) is operated solely on an alternative fuel or ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel.

(4) Eligible recipient

(A) In general

Subject to subparagraph (B), the term "eligible recipient" means—

(i) one or more local or State governmental entities responsible for providing school bus service to one or more public school systems or the purchase of school buses;

(ii) one or more contracting entities that provide school bus service to one or more public school systems; or

(iii) a nonprofit school transportation association.

(B) Special requirements

In the case of eligible recipients identified under clauses (ii) and (iii) of subparagraph (A), the Administrator shall establish timely and appropriate requirements for notice and may establish timely and appropriate requirements for approval by the public school systems that would be served by buses purchased or retrofit using grant funds made available under this section.

(5) Retrofit technology

The term "retrofit technology" means a particulate filter or other emissions control equipment that is verified or certified by the Administrator or the California Air Resources Board as an effective emission reduction technology when installed on an existing school bus.

(6) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Energy.

(7) Ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel

The term "ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel" means diesel fuel that contains sulfur at not more than 15 parts per million.

(b) Program for retrofit or replacement of certain existing school buses with clean school buses

(1) Establishment

(A) In general

The Administrator, in consultation with the Secretary and other appropriate Federal departments and agencies, shall establish a program for awarding grants on a competitive basis to eligible recipients for the replacement of, retrofit (including repowering, aftertreatment, and remanufactured engines) of, or purchase of alternative fuels for, certain existing school buses. The awarding of grants for the purchase of alternative fuels should be consistent with the historic funding levels of the program for such purchase.

(B) Balancing

In awarding grants under this section, the Administrator shall achieve, to the maximum extent practicable, achieve [2] an appropriate balance between awarding grants—

(i) to replace school buses;

(ii) to install retrofit technologies; and

(iii) to purchase and use alternative fuel.

(2) Priority of grant applications

(A) Replacement

In the case of grant applications to replace school buses, the Administrator shall give priority to applicants that propose to replace school buses manufactured before model year 1977.

(B) Retrofitting

In the case of grant applications to retrofit school buses, the Administrator shall give priority to applicants that propose to retrofit school buses manufactured in or after model year 1991.

(3) Use of school bus fleet

(A) In general

All school buses acquired or retrofitted with funds provided under this section shall be operated as part of the school bus fleet for which the grant was made for not less than 5 years.

(B) Maintenance, operation, and fueling

New school buses and retrofit technology shall be maintained, operated, and fueled according to manufacturer recommendations or State requirements.

(4) Retrofit grants

The Administrator may award grants under this section for up to 100 percent of the retrofit technologies and installation costs.

(5) Replacement grants

(A) Eligibility for 50 percent grants

The Administrator may award grants under this section for replacement of school buses in the amount of up to one-half of the acquisition costs (including fueling infrastructure) for—

(i) clean school buses with engines manufactured in model year 2005 or 2006 that emit not more than—

(I) 1.8 grams per brake horsepower-hour of non-methane hydrocarbons and oxides of nitrogen; and

(II) .01 grams per brake horsepower-hour of particulate matter; or

(ii) clean school buses with engines manufactured in model year 2007, 2008, or 2009 that satisfy regulatory requirements established by the Administrator for emissions of oxides of nitrogen and particulate matter to be applicable for school buses manufactured in model year 2010.

(B) Eligibility for 25 percent grants

The Administrator may award grants under this section for replacement of school buses in the amount of up to one-fourth of the acquisition costs (including fueling infrastructure) for—

(i) clean school buses with engines manufactured in model year 2005 or 2006 that emit not more than—

(I) 2.5 grams per brake horsepower-hour of non-methane hydrocarbons and oxides of nitrogen; and

(II) .01 grams per brake horsepower-hour of particulate matter; or

(ii) clean school buses with engines manufactured in model year 2007 or thereafter that satisfy regulatory requirements established by the Administrator for emissions of oxides of nitrogen and particulate matter from school buses manufactured in that model year.

(6) Ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel

(A) [3] In general

In the case of a grant recipient receiving a grant for the acquisition of ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel school buses with engines manufactured in model year 2005 or 2006, the grant recipient shall provide, to the satisfaction of the Administrator—

(i) documentation that diesel fuel containing sulfur at not more than 15 parts per million is available for carrying out the purposes of the grant; and

(ii) a commitment by the applicant to use that fuel in carrying out the purposes of the grant.

(7) Deployment and distribution

The Administrator, to the maximum extent practicable, shall—

(A) achieve nationwide deployment of clean school buses through the program under this section; and

(B) ensure a broad geographic distribution of grant awards, with no State receiving more than 10 percent of the grant funding made available under this section during a fiscal year.

(8) Annual report

(A) [3] In general

Not later than January 31 of each year, the Administrator shall submit to Congress a report that—

(i) evaluates the implementation of this section; and

(ii) describes—

(I) the total number of grant applications received;

(II) the number and types of alternative fuel school buses, ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel school buses, and retrofitted buses requested in grant applications;

(III) grants awarded and the criteria used to select the grant recipients;

(IV) certified engine emission levels of all buses purchased or retrofitted under this section;

(V) an evaluation of the in-use emission level of buses purchased or retrofitted under this section; and

(VI) any other information the Administrator considers appropriate.

(c) Education

(1) In general

Not later than 90 days after August 10, 2005, the Administrator shall develop an education outreach program to promote and explain the grant program.

(2) Coordination with stakeholders

The outreach program shall be designed and conducted in conjunction with national school bus transportation associations and other stakeholders.

(3) Components

The outreach program shall—

(A) inform potential grant recipients on the process of applying for grants;

(B) describe the available technologies and the benefits of the technologies;

(C) explain the benefits of participating in the grant program; and

(D) include, as appropriate, information from the annual report required under subsection (b)(8).

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Administrator to carry out this section, to remain available until expended—

(1) $55,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 and 2007; and

(2) such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2008, 2009, and 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–59, title VI, §6015, Aug. 10, 2005, 119 Stat. 1884.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient Transportation Equity Act: A Legacy for Users or the SAFETEA–LU, and not as part of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 which comprises this chapter.

[1] This section is substantially identical to section 16091 of this title.

[2] So in original. The word "achieve" probably should not appear.

[3] So in original. No subpar. (B) was enacted.

§16092. Diesel truck retrofit and fleet modernization program

(a) Establishment

The Administrator, in consultation with the Secretary, shall establish a program for awarding grants on a competitive basis to public agencies and entities for fleet modernization programs including installation of retrofit technologies for diesel trucks.

(b) Eligible recipients

A grant shall be awarded under this section only to a State or local government or an agency or instrumentality of a State or local government or of two or more State or local governments who will allocate funds, with preference to ports and other major hauling operations.

(c) Awards

(1) In general

The Administrator shall seek, to the maximum extent practicable, to ensure a broad geographic distribution of grants under this section.

(2) Preferences

In making awards of grants under this section, the Administrator shall give preference to proposals that—

(A) will achieve the greatest reductions in emissions of nonmethane hydrocarbons, oxides of nitrogen, and/or particulate matter per proposal or per truck; or

(B) involve the use of Environmental Protection Agency or California Air Resources Board verified emissions control retrofit technology on diesel trucks that operate solely on ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel after September 2006.

(d) Conditions of grant

A grant shall be provided under this section on the conditions that—

(1) trucks which are replacing scrapped trucks and on which retrofit emissions-control technology are to be demonstrated—

(A) will operate on ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel where such fuel is reasonably available or required for sale by State or local law or regulation;

(B) were manufactured in model year 1998 and before; and

(C) will be used for the transportation of cargo goods especially in port areas or used in goods movement and major hauling operations;

(2) grant funds will be used for the purchase of emission control retrofit technology, including State taxes and contract fees; and

(3) grant recipients will provide at least 50 percent of the total cost of the retrofit, including the purchase of emission control retrofit technology and all necessary labor for installation of the

retrofit, from any source other than this section.

(e) Verification

Not later than 90 days after August 8, 2005, the Administrator shall publish in the Federal Register procedures to—

(1) make grants pursuant to this section;

(2) verify that trucks powered by ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel on which retrofit emissions-control technology are to be demonstrated will operate on diesel fuel containing not more than 15 parts per million of sulfur after September 2006; and

(3) verify that grants are administered in accordance with this section.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Administrator to carry out this section, to remain available until expended the following sums:

(1) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2006.

(2) $35,000,000 for fiscal year 2007.

(3) $45,000,000 for fiscal year 2008.

(4) Such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2009 and 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §742, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 824.)

§16093. Fuel cell school buses

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a program for entering into cooperative agreements—

(1) with private sector fuel cell bus developers for the development of fuel cell-powered school buses; and

(2) subsequently, with not less than 2 units of local government using natural gas-powered school buses and such private sector fuel cell bus developers to demonstrate the use of fuel cell-powered school buses.

(b) Cost sharing

The non-Federal contribution for activities funded under this section shall be not less than—

(1) 20 percent for fuel infrastructure development activities; and

(2) 50 percent for demonstration activities and for development activities not described in paragraph (1).

(c) Reports to Congress

Not later than 3 years after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall transmit to Congress a report that—

(1) evaluates the process of converting natural gas infrastructure to accommodate fuel cell-powered school buses; and

(2) assesses the results of the development and demonstration program under this section.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this section $25,000,000 for the period of fiscal years 2006 through 2009.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §743, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 826.)

PART D—MISCELLANEOUS

§16101. Railroad efficiency

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall (in cooperation with the Secretary of Transportation and the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency) establish a cost-shared, public-private research partnership involving the Federal Government, railroad carriers, locomotive manufacturers and equipment suppliers, and the Association of American Railroads, to develop and demonstrate railroad locomotive technologies that increase fuel economy, reduce emissions, and lower costs of operation.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this section—

(1) $15,000,000 for fiscal year 2006;

(2) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2007; and

(3) $30,000,000 for fiscal year 2008.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §751, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 826.)

ADVANCED TECHNOLOGY LOCOMOTIVE GRANT PILOT PROGRAM

Pub. L. 110–140, title XI, §1111, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1757, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, shall establish and carry out a pilot program for making grants to railroad carriers (as defined in section 20102 of title 49, United States Code) and State and local governments—

"(1) for assistance in purchasing hybrid or other energy-efficient locomotives, including hybrid switch and generator-set locomotives; and

"(2) to demonstrate the extent to which such locomotives increase fuel economy, reduce emissions, and lower costs of operation.

"(b) LIMITATION.—Notwithstanding subsection (a), no grant under this section may be used to fund the costs of emissions reductions that are mandated under Federal law.

"(c) GRANT CRITERIA.—In selecting applicants for grants under this section, the Secretary of Transportation shall consider—

"(1) the level of energy efficiency that would be achieved by the proposed project;

"(2) the extent to which the proposed project would assist in commercial deployment of hybrid or other energy-efficient locomotive technologies;

"(3) the extent to which the proposed project complements other private or governmental partnership efforts to improve air quality or fuel efficiency in a particular area; and

"(4) the extent to which the applicant demonstrates innovative strategies and a financial commitment to increasing energy efficiency and reducing greenhouse gas emissions of its railroad operations.

"(d) COMPETITIVE GRANT SELECTION PROCESS.—

"(1) APPLICATIONS.—A railroad carrier or State or local government seeking a grant under this section shall submit for approval by the Secretary of Transportation an application for the grant containing such information as the Secretary of Transportation may require.

"(2) COMPETITIVE SELECTION.—The Secretary of Transportation shall conduct a national solicitation for applications for grants under this section and shall select grantees on a competitive basis.

"(e) FEDERAL SHARE.—The Federal share of the cost of a project under this section shall not exceed 80 percent of the project cost.

"(f) REPORT.—Not later than 3 years after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 19, 2007], the Secretary of Transportation shall submit to Congress a report on the results of the pilot program carried out under this section.

"(g) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of Transportation $10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2011 to carry out this section. Such funds shall remain available until expended."

§16102. Diesel fueled vehicles

(a) Definition of tier 2 emission standards

In this section, the term "tier 2 emission standards" means the motor vehicle emission standards that apply to passenger cars, light trucks, and larger passenger vehicles manufactured after the 2003 model year, as issued on February 10, 2000, by the Administrator of the Environmental Protection

Agency under sections 7521 and 7545 of this title.

(b) Diesel combustion and after-treatment technologies

The Secretary shall accelerate efforts to improve diesel combustion and after-treatment technologies for use in diesel fueled motor vehicles.

(c) Goals

The Secretary shall carry out subsection (b) with a view toward achieving the following goals:

(1) Developing and demonstrating diesel technologies that, not later than 2010, meet the following standards:

(A) Tier 2 emission standards.

(B) The heavy-duty emissions standards of 2007 that are applicable to heavy-duty vehicles under regulations issued by the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency as of August 8, 2005.

(2) Developing the next generation of low-emission, high efficiency diesel engine technologies, including homogeneous charge compression ignition technology.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §754, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 828.)

§16103. Conserve by Bicycling Program

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Program

The term "program" means the Conserve by Bicycling Program established by subsection (b).

(2) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Transportation.

(b) Establishment

There is established within the Department of Transportation a program to be known as the "Conserve by Bicycling Program".

(c) Projects

(1) In general

In carrying out the program, the Secretary shall establish not more than 10 pilot projects that are—

(A) dispersed geographically throughout the United States; and

(B) designed to conserve energy resources by encouraging the use of bicycles in place of motor vehicles.

(2) Requirements

A pilot project described in paragraph (1) shall—

(A) use education and marketing to convert motor vehicle trips to bicycle trips;

(B) document project results and energy savings (in estimated units of energy conserved);

(C) facilitate partnerships among interested parties in at least 2 of the fields of—

(i) transportation;

(ii) law enforcement;

(iii) education;

(iv) public health;

(v) environment; and

(vi) energy;

(D) maximize bicycle facility investments;
(E) demonstrate methods that may be used in other regions of the United States; and
(F) facilitate the continuation of ongoing programs that are sustained by local resources.

(3) Cost sharing

At least 20 percent of the cost of each pilot project described in paragraph (1) shall be provided from non-Federal sources.

(d) Energy and bicycling research study

(1) In general

Not later than 2 years after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall enter into a contract with the National Academy of Sciences for, and the National Academy of Sciences shall conduct and submit to Congress a report on, a study on the feasibility of converting motor vehicle trips to bicycle trips.

(2) Components

The study shall—
(A) document the results or progress of the pilot projects under subsection (c);
(B) determine the type and duration of motor vehicle trips that people in the United States may feasibly make by bicycle, taking into consideration factors such as—
(i) weather;
(ii) land use and traffic patterns;
(iii) the carrying capacity of bicycles; and
(iv) bicycle infrastructure;

(C) determine any energy savings that would result from the conversion of motor vehicle trips to bicycle trips;
(D) include a cost-benefit analysis of bicycle infrastructure investments; and
(E) include a description of any factors that would encourage more motor vehicle trips to be replaced with bicycle trips.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this section $6,200,000, to remain available until expended, of which—
(1) $5,150,000 shall be used to carry out pilot projects described in subsection (c);
(2) $300,000 shall be used by the Secretary to coordinate, publicize, and disseminate the results of the program; and
(3) $750,000 shall be used to carry out subsection (d).

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §755, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 828.)

§16104. Reduction of engine idling

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Administrator

The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency.

(2) Advanced truck stop electrification system

The term "advanced truck stop electrification system" means a stationary system that delivers heat, air conditioning, electricity, or communications, and is capable of providing verifiable and auditable evidence of use of those services, to a heavy-duty vehicle and any occupants of the heavy-duty vehicle with or without relying on components mounted onboard the heavy-duty vehicle for delivery of those services.

(3) Auxiliary power unit

The term "auxiliary power unit" means an integrated system that—

(A) provides heat, air conditioning, engine warming, or electricity to components on a heavy-duty vehicle; and

(B) is certified by the Administrator under part 89 of title 40, Code of Federal Regulations (or any successor regulation), as meeting applicable emission standards.

(4) Heavy-duty vehicle

The term "heavy-duty vehicle" means a vehicle that—

(A) has a gross vehicle weight rating greater than 8,500 pounds; and

(B) is powered by a diesel engine.

(5) Idle reduction technology

The term "idle reduction technology" means an advanced truck stop electrification system, auxiliary power unit, or other technology that—

(A) is used to reduce long-duration idling; and

(B) allows for the main drive engine or auxiliary refrigeration engine to be shut down.

(6) Energy conservation technology

the [1] term "energy conservation technology" means any device, system of devices, or equipment that improves the fuel economy.

(7) Long-duration idling

(A) In general

The term "long-duration idling" means the operation of a main drive engine or auxiliary refrigeration engine, for a period greater than 15 consecutive minutes, at a time at which the main drive engine is not engaged in gear.

(B) Exclusions

The term "long-duration idling" does not include the operation of a main drive engine or auxiliary refrigeration engine during a routine stoppage associated with traffic movement or congestion.

(b) Idle reduction technology benefits, programs, and studies

(1) In general

Not later than 90 days after August 8, 2005, the Administrator shall—

(A)(i) commence a review of the mobile source air emission models of the Environmental Protection Agency used under the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.) to determine whether the models accurately reflect the emissions resulting from long-duration idling of heavy-duty vehicles and other vehicles and engines; and

(ii) update those models as the Administrator determines to be appropriate; and

(B)(i) commence a review of the emission reductions achieved by the use of idle reduction technology; and

(ii) complete such revisions of the regulations and guidance of the Environmental Protection Agency as the Administrator determines to be appropriate.

(2) Deadline for completion

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, the Administrator shall—

(A) complete the reviews under subparagraphs (A)(i) and (B)(i) of paragraph (1); and

(B) prepare and make publicly available one or more reports on the results of the reviews.

(3) Discretionary inclusions

The reviews under subparagraphs (A)(i) and (B)(i) of paragraph (1) and the reports under paragraph (2)(B) may address the potential fuel savings resulting from use of idle reduction technology.

(4) Idle reduction and energy conservation deployment program

(A) Establishment

(i) In general

Not later than 90 days after August 8, 2005, the Administrator, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation shall, through the Environmental Protection Agency's SmartWay Transport Partnership, establish a program to support deployment of idle reduction and energy conservation technologies.

(ii) Priority

The Administrator shall give priority to the deployment of idle reduction and energy conservation technologies based on the costs and beneficial effects on air quality and ability to lessen the emission of criteria air pollutants.

(B) Funding

(i) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Administrator to carry out subparagraph (A) for the purpose of reducing extended idling from heavy-duty vehicles $19,500,000 for fiscal year 2006, $30,000,000 for fiscal year 2007, and $45,000,000 for fiscal year 2008.

(ii) Locomotives

There are authorized to be appropriated to the administrator to carry out subparagraph (A) for the purpose of reducing extended idling from locomotives $10,000,000 for fiscal year 2006, $15,000,000 for fiscal year 2007, and $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2008.

(iii) Cost sharing

Subject to clause (iv), the Administrator shall require at least 50 percent of the costs directly and specifically related to any project under this section to be provided from non-Federal sources.

(iv) Necessary and appropriate reductions

The Administrator may reduce the non-Federal requirement under clause (iii) if the Administrator determines that the reduction is necessary and appropriate to meet the objectives of this section.

(5) Idling location study

(A) In general

Not later than 90 days after August 8, 2005, the Administrator, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation, shall commence a study to analyze all locations at which heavy-duty vehicles stop for long-duration idling, including—

(i) truck stops;
(ii) rest areas;
(iii) border crossings;
(iv) ports;
(v) transfer facilities; and
(vi) private terminals.

(B) Deadline for completion

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, the Administrator shall—

(i) complete the study under subparagraph (A); and
(ii) prepare and make publicly available one or more reports of the results of the study.

(c) Omitted

(d) Report

Not later than 60 days after the date on which funds are initially awarded under this section, and

on an annual basis thereafter, the Administrator shall submit to Congress a report containing—

(1) an identification of the grant recipients, a description of the projects to be funded and the amount of funding provided; and

(2) an identification of all other applicants that submitted applications under the program.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §756, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 829.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Clean Air Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(A)(i), is act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, 69 Stat. 322, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 85 (§7401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 756 of Pub. L. 109–58. Subsec. (c) of section 756 of Pub. L. 109–58 amended section 127 of Title 23, Highways.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be capitalized.*

§16105. Biodiesel engine testing program

(a) In general

Not later that [1] 180 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall initiate a partnership with diesel engine, diesel fuel injection system, and diesel vehicle manufacturers and diesel and biodiesel fuel providers, to include biodiesel testing in advanced diesel engine and fuel system technology.

(b) Scope

The program shall provide for testing to determine the impact of biodiesel from different sources on current and future emission control technologies, with emphasis on—

(1) the impact of biodiesel on emissions warranty, in-use liability, and antitampering provisions;

(2) the impact of long-term use of biodiesel on engine operations;

(3) the options for optimizing these technologies for both emissions and performance when switching between biodiesel and diesel fuel; and

(4) the impact of using biodiesel in these fueling systems and engines when used as a blend with 2006 Environmental Protection Agency-mandated diesel fuel containing a maximum of 15-parts-per-million sulfur content.

(c) Report

Not later than 2 years after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall provide an interim report to Congress on the findings of the program, including a comprehensive analysis of impacts from biodiesel on engine operation for both existing and expected future diesel technologies, and recommendations for ensuring optimal emissions reductions and engine performance with biodiesel.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010 to carry out this section.

(e) Definition

For purposes of this section, the term "biodiesel" means a diesel fuel substitute produced from nonpetroleum renewable resources that meets the registration requirements for fuels and fuel additives established by the Environmental Protection Agency under section 7545 of this title and that meets the American Society for Testing and Materials D6751–02a Standard Specification for Biodiesel Fuel (B100) Blend Stock for Distillate Fuels.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §757, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 832.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "than".*

§16106. Ultra-efficient engine technology for aircraft

(a) Ultra-efficient engine technology partnership

The Secretary shall enter into a cooperative agreement with the National Aeronautics and Space Administration for the development of ultra-efficient engine technology for aircraft.

(b) Performance objective

The Secretary shall establish the following performance objectives for the program set forth in subsection (a):

(1) A fuel efficiency increase of at least 10 percent.

(2) A reduction in the impact of landing and takeoff nitrogen oxides emissions on local air quality of 70 percent.

(3) Exploring advanced concepts, alternate propulsion, and power configurations, including hybrid fuel cell powered systems.

(4) Exploring the use of alternate fuel in conventional or nonconventional turbine-based systems.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section $50,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, and 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §758, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 833.)

PART E—FEDERAL AND STATE PROCUREMENT

§16121. Definitions

In this part:

(1) Fuel cell

The term "fuel cell" means a device that directly converts the chemical energy of a fuel and an oxidant into electricity by electrochemical processes occurring at separate electrodes in the device.

(2) Light-duty or heavy-duty vehicle fleet

The term "light-duty or heavy-duty vehicle fleet" does not include any vehicle designed or procured for combat or combat-related missions.

(3) Stationary; portable

The terms "stationary" and "portable", when used in reference to a fuel cell, include—

(A) continuous electric power; and

(B) backup electric power.

(4) Task Force

The term "Task Force" means the Hydrogen and Fuel Cell Technical Task Force established under section 16155 of this title.

(5) Technical Advisory Committee

The term "Technical Advisory Committee" means the independent Technical Advisory Committee selected under section 16156 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §781, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 835.)

§16122. Federal and State procurement of fuel cell vehicles and hydrogen energy systems

(a) Purposes

The purposes of this section are—

(1) to stimulate acceptance by the market of fuel cell vehicles and hydrogen energy systems;

(2) to support development of technologies relating to fuel cell vehicles, public refueling stations, and hydrogen energy systems; and

(3) to require the Federal government, [1] which is the largest single user of energy in the United States, to adopt those technologies as soon as practicable after the technologies are developed, in conjunction with private industry partners.

(b) Federal leases and purchases

(1) Requirement

(A) In general

Not later than January 1, 2010, the head of any Federal agency that uses a light-duty or heavy-duty vehicle fleet shall lease or purchase fuel cell vehicles and hydrogen energy systems to meet any applicable energy savings goal described in subsection (c).

(B) Learning demonstration vehicles

The Secretary may lease or purchase appropriate vehicles developed under subsections (a)(10) and (b)(1)(A) of section 16157 of this title to meet the requirement in subparagraph (A).

(2) Costs of leases and purchases

(A) In general

The Secretary, in cooperation with the Task Force and the Technical Advisory Committee, shall pay to Federal agencies (or share the cost under interagency agreements) the difference in cost between—

(i) the cost to the agencies of leasing or purchasing fuel cell vehicles and hydrogen energy systems under paragraph (1); and

(ii) the cost to the agencies of a feasible alternative to leasing or purchasing fuel cell vehicles and hydrogen energy systems, as determined by the Secretary.

(B) Competitive costs and management structures

In carrying out subparagraph (A), the Secretary, in consultation with the agency, may use the General Services Administration or any commercial vendor to ensure—

(i) a cost-effective purchase of a fuel cell vehicle or hydrogen energy system; or

(ii) a cost-effective management structure of the lease of a fuel cell vehicle or hydrogen energy system.

(3) Exception

(A) In general

If the Secretary determines that the head of an agency described in paragraph (1) cannot find an appropriately efficient and reliable fuel cell vehicle or hydrogen energy system in accordance with paragraph (1), that agency shall be excepted from compliance with paragraph (1).

(B) Consideration

In making a determination under subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall consider—

(i) the needs of the agency; and

(ii) an evaluation performed by—

(I) the Task Force; or

(II) the Technical Advisory Committee.

(c) Energy savings goals

(1) In general

(A) Regulations

Not later than December 31, 2006, the Secretary shall—

(i) in cooperation with the Task Force, promulgate regulations for the period of 2008 through 2010 that extend and augment energy savings goals for each Federal agency, in accordance with any Executive order issued after March 2000; and

(ii) promulgate regulations to expand the minimum Federal fleet requirement and credit allowances for fuel cell vehicle systems under section 13212 of this title.

(B) Review, evaluation, and new regulations

Not later than December 31, 2010, the Secretary shall—

(i) review the regulations promulgated under subparagraph (A);

(ii) evaluate any progress made toward achieving energy savings by Federal agencies; and

(iii) promulgate new regulations for the period of 2011 through 2015 to achieve additional energy savings by Federal agencies relating to technical and cost-performance standards.

(2) Offsetting energy savings goals

An agency that leases or purchases a fuel cell vehicle or hydrogen energy system in accordance with subsection (b)(1) may use that lease or purchase to count toward an energy savings goal of the agency.

(d) Cooperative program with State agencies

(1) In general

The Secretary may establish a cooperative program with State agencies managing motor vehicle fleets to encourage purchase of fuel cell vehicles by the agencies.

(2) Incentives

In carrying out the cooperative program, the Secretary may offer incentive payments to a State agency to assist with the cost of planning, differential purchases, and administration.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

(1) $15,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;

(2) $25,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;

(3) $65,000,000 for fiscal year 2010; and

(4) such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2011 through 2015.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §782, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 835.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be capitalized.*

§16123. Federal procurement of stationary, portable, and micro fuel cells

(a) Purposes

The purposes of this section are—

(1) to stimulate acceptance by the market of stationary, portable, and micro fuel cells; and

(2) to support development of technologies relating to stationary, portable, and micro fuel cells.

(b) Federal leases and purchases

(1) In general

Not later than January 1, 2006, the head of any Federal agency that uses electrical power from stationary, portable, or microportable devices shall lease or purchase a stationary, portable, or micro fuel cell to meet any applicable energy savings goal described in subsection (c).

(2) Costs of leases and purchases

(A) In general

The Secretary, in cooperation with the Task Force and the Technical Advisory Committee, shall pay the cost to Federal agencies (or share the cost under interagency agreements) of leasing or purchasing stationary, portable, and micro fuel cells under paragraph (1).

(B) Competitive costs and management structures

In carrying out subparagraph (A), the Secretary, in consultation with the agency, may use the General Services Administration or any commercial vendor to ensure—

(i) a cost-effective purchase of a stationary, portable, or micro fuel cell; or

(ii) a cost-effective management structure of the lease of a stationary, portable, or micro fuel cell.

(3) Exception

(A) In general

If the Secretary determines that the head of an agency described in paragraph (1) cannot find an appropriately efficient and reliable stationary, portable, or micro fuel cell in accordance with paragraph (1), that agency shall be excepted from compliance with paragraph (1).

(B) Consideration

In making a determination under subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall consider—

(i) the needs of the agency; and

(ii) an evaluation performed by—

(I) the Task Force; or

(II) the Technical Advisory Committee of the Task Force.

(c) Energy savings goals

An agency that leases or purchases a stationary, portable, or micro fuel cell in accordance with subsection (b)(1) may use that lease or purchase to count toward an energy savings goal described in section 16157 of this title that is applicable to the agency.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

(1) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2006;
(2) $50,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;
(3) $75,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;
(4) $100,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;
(5) $100,000,000 for fiscal year 2010; and
(6) such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2011 through 2015.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §783, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 837.)

PART F—DIESEL EMISSIONS REDUCTION

§16131. Definitions

In this part:

(1) Administrator

The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency.

(2) Certified engine configuration

The term "certified engine configuration" means a new, rebuilt, or remanufactured engine

configuration—

(A) that has been certified or verified by—

(i) the Administrator; or

(ii) the California Air Resources Board;

(B) that meets or is rebuilt or remanufactured to a more stringent set of engine emission standards, as determined by the Administrator; and

(C) in the case of a certified engine configuration involving the replacement of an existing engine or vehicle, an engine configuration that replaced an engine that was—

(i) removed from the vehicle; and

(ii) returned to the supplier for remanufacturing to a more stringent set of engine emissions standards or for scrappage.

(3) Eligible entity

The term "eligible entity" means—

(A) a regional, State, local, or tribal agency or port authority with jurisdiction over transportation or air quality;

(B) a nonprofit organization or institution that—

(i) represents or provides pollution reduction or educational services to persons or organizations that own or operate diesel fleets; or

(ii) has, as its principal purpose, the promotion of transportation or air quality; and

(C) any private individual or entity that—

(i) is the owner of record of a diesel vehicle or fleet operated pursuant to a contract, license, or lease with a Federal department or agency or an entity described in subparagraph (A); and

(ii) meets such timely and appropriate requirements as the Administrator may establish for vehicle use and for notice to and approval by the Federal department or agency or entity described in subparagraph (A) with respect to which the owner has entered into a contract, license, or lease as described in clause (i).

(4) Emerging technology

The term "emerging technology" means a technology that is not currently, or has not been previously, certified or verified by the Administrator or the California Air Resources Board but for which an approvable application and test plan has been submitted for verification to the Administrator or the California Air Resources Board.

(5) Fleet

The term "fleet" means one or more diesel vehicles or mobile or stationary diesel engines.

(6) Heavy-duty truck

The term "heavy-duty truck" has the meaning given the term "heavy duty vehicle" in section 7521 of this title.

(7) Medium-duty truck

The term "medium-duty truck" has such meaning as shall be determined by the Administrator, by regulation.

(8) State

The term "State" means the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, the United States Virgin Islands, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(9) Verified technology

The term "verified technology" means a pollution control technology, including a retrofit technology or auxiliary power unit, that has been verified by—

(A) the Administrator; or
(B) the California Air Resources Board.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §791, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 838; Pub. L. 110–255, §3(a), June 30, 2008, 122 Stat. 2423; Pub. L. 111–364, §2(a), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4056.)

AMENDMENTS

2011—Par. (3)(C). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(a)(1), added subpar. (C).
Par. (4). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(a)(2), inserted "currently, or has not been previously," after "that is not".
Par. (8). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(a)(6), added par. (8). Former par. (8) redesignated (9).
Par. (9). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(a)(5), struck out ", advanced truckstop electrification system," after "retrofit technology" in introductory provisions.
Pub. L. 111–364, §2(a)(4), redesignated par. (8) as (9). Former par. (9) struck out.
Pub. L. 111–364, §2(a)(3), struck out par. (9) which defined "State" to include the District of Columbia.
2008—Par. (9). Pub. L. 110–255 added par. (9).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2011 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–364, §4, Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4061, provided that:
"(a) GENERAL RULE.—Except as provided in subsection (b), the amendments made by section 2 [amending this section and sections 16132 to 16134 and 16137 of this title] shall take effect on October 1, 2011.
"(b) EXCEPTION.—The amendments made by subsections (a)(4) and (6) and (c)(4) of section 2 [amending this section and section 16133 of this title] shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Jan. 4, 2011]."

§16132. National grant, rebate, and loan programs

(a) In general

The Administrator shall use 70 percent of the funds made available to carry out this part for each fiscal year to provide grants, rebates, or low-cost revolving loans, as determined by the Administrator, on a competitive basis, to eligible entities, including through contracts entered into under subsection (e) of this section, to achieve significant reductions in diesel emissions in terms of—

(1) pollution produced; and

(2) diesel emissions exposure, particularly from fleets operating in areas designated by the Administrator as poor air quality areas.

(b) Distribution

(1) In general

The Administrator shall distribute funds made available for a fiscal year under this part in accordance with this section.

(2) Engine configurations and technologies

(A) Certified engine configurations and verified technologies

The Administrator shall provide not less than 95 percent of funds available for a fiscal year under this section to eligible entities for projects using—

(i) a certified engine configuration; or

(ii) a verified technology.

(B) Emerging technologies

(i) In general

The Administrator shall provide not more than 5 percent of funds available for a fiscal year under this section to eligible entities for the development and commercialization of emerging technologies.

(ii) Application and test plan

To receive funds under clause (i), a manufacturer, in consultation with an eligible entity, shall submit for verification to the Administrator or the California Air Resources Board a test plan for the emerging technology, together with a verification application.

(c) Applications

(1) Expedited process

(A) In general

The Administrator shall develop a simplified application process for all applicants under this section to expedite the provision of funds.

(B) Requirements

In developing the expedited process under subparagraph (A), the Administrator—

(i) shall take into consideration the special circumstances affecting small fleet owners; and

(ii) to avoid duplicative procedures, may require applicants to include in an application under this section the results of a competitive bidding process for equipment and installation.

(2) Eligibility

(A) Grants

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, an eligible entity shall submit to the Administrator an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Administrator may require.

(B) Rebates and low-cost loans

To be eligible to receive a rebate or a low-cost loan under this section, an eligible entity shall submit an application in accordance with such guidance as the Administrator may establish—

(i) to the Administrator; or

(ii) to an entity that has entered into a contract under subsection (e).

(3) Inclusions

An application under this subsection shall include—

(A) a description of the air quality of the area served by the eligible entity;

(B) the quantity of air pollution produced by the diesel fleets in the area served by the eligible entity;

(C) a description of the project proposed by the eligible entity, including—

(i) any certified engine configuration, verified technology, or emerging technology to be used or funded by the eligible entity; and

(ii) the means by which the project will achieve a significant reduction in diesel emissions;

(D) an evaluation (using methodology approved by the Administrator or the National Academy of Sciences) of the quantifiable and unquantifiable benefits of the emissions reductions of the proposed project;

(E) an estimate of the cost of the proposed project;

(F) a description of the age and expected lifetime control of the equipment used or funded by the eligible entity;

(G) in the case of an application relating to nonroad engines or vehicles, a description of the diesel fuel available in the areas to be served by the eligible entity, including the sulfur content of the fuel; and

(H) provisions for the monitoring and verification of the project.

(4) Priority

In providing a grant, rebate, or loan under this section, the Administrator shall give highest priority to proposed projects that, as determined by the Administrator—

(A) maximize public health benefits;

(B) are the most cost-effective;
(C) serve areas—
(i) with the highest population density;
(ii) that are poor air quality areas, including areas identified by the Administrator as—
(I) in nonattainment or maintenance of national ambient air quality standards for a criteria pollutant;
(II) Federal Class I areas; or
(III) areas with toxic air pollutant concerns;

(iii) that receive a disproportionate quantity of air pollution from diesel fleets, including truckstops, ports, rail yards, terminals, construction sites, schools, and distribution centers; or
(iv) that use a community-based multistakeholder collaborative process to reduce toxic emissions;

(D) include a certified engine configuration, verified technology, or emerging technology that has a long expected useful life;
(E) will maximize the useful life of any certified engine configuration, verified technology, or emerging technology used or funded by the eligible entity; and
(F) conserve diesel fuel.

(d) Use of funds

(1) In general

An eligible entity may use a grant, rebate, or loan provided under this section to fund the costs of—
(A) a retrofit technology (including any incremental costs of a repowered or new diesel engine) that significantly reduces emissions through development and implementation of a certified engine configuration, verified technology, or emerging technology for—
(i) a bus;
(ii) a medium-duty truck or a heavy-duty truck;
(iii) a marine engine;
(iv) a locomotive; or
(v) a nonroad engine or vehicle used in—
(I) construction;
(II) handling of cargo (including at a port or airport);
(III) agriculture;
(IV) mining; or
(V) energy production; or

(B) programs or projects to reduce long-duration idling using verified technology involving a vehicle or equipment described in subparagraph (A).

(2) Regulatory programs

(A) In general

Notwithstanding paragraph (1), no grant, rebate, or loan provided, or contract entered into, under this section shall be used to fund the costs of emissions reductions that are mandated under any Federal law, except that this subparagraph shall not apply to a mandate in a State implementation plan approved by the Administrator under the Clean Air Act [42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.].

(B) Mandated

For purposes of subparagraph (A), voluntary or elective emission reduction measures shall not be considered "mandated", regardless of whether the reductions are included in the State implementation plan of a State.

(e) Contract programs

(1) Authority

In addition to the use of contracting authority otherwise available to the Administrator, the Administrator may enter into contracts with eligible contractors described in paragraph (2) for the administration of programs for providing rebates or loans, subject to the requirements of this part.

(2) Eligible contractors

The Administrator may enter into a contract under this subsection with a for-profit or nonprofit entity that has the capacity—

(A) to sell diesel vehicles or equipment to, or to arrange financing for, individuals or entities that own a diesel vehicle or fleet; or

(B) to upgrade diesel vehicles or equipment with verified or Environmental Protection Agency-certified engines or technologies, or to arrange financing for such upgrades.

(f) Public notification

Not later than 60 days after the date of the award of a grant, rebate, or loan, the Administrator shall publish on the website of the Environmental Protection Agency—

(1) for rebates and loans provided to the owner of a diesel vehicle or fleet, the total number and dollar amount of rebates or loans provided, as well as a breakdown of the technologies funded through the rebates or loans; and

(2) for other rebates and loans, and for grants, a description of each application for which the grant, rebate, or loan is provided.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §792, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 839; Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4056.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Clean Air Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(A), is act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, 69 Stat. 322, which is classified generally to chapter 85 (§7401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2011—Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(1), inserted ", rebate," after "grant" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(2)(A), substituted "to provide grants, rebates, or low-cost revolving loans, as determined by the Administrator, on a competitive basis, to eligible entities, including through contracts entered into under subsection (e) of this section," for "to provide grants and low-cost revolving loans, as determined by the Administrator, on a competitive basis, to eligible entities" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(2)(B), struck out "tons of" before "pollution produced".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(3)(A), (B), redesignated par. (3) as (2) and struck out former par. (2). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Administrator shall provide not less than 50 percent of funds available for a fiscal year under this section to eligible entities for the benefit of public fleets."

Subsec. (b)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(3)(C)(i), substituted "95" for "90" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(2)(B)(i). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(3)(C)(ii), substituted "5 percent" for "10 percent".

Subsec. (b)(2)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(3)(C)(iii), substituted "a verification application" for "the application under subsection (c)".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(3)(B), redesignated par. (3) as (2).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(4)(A), (B), added pars. (1) and (2), redesignated former pars. (2) and (3) as (3) and (4), respectively, and struck out former par. (1). Prior to amendment, text of par. (1) read as follows: "To receive a grant or loan under this section, an eligible entity shall submit to the Administrator an application at a time, in a manner, and including such information as the Administrator may require."

Subsec. (c)(3)(G). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(4)(C), inserted "in the case of an application relating to nonroad engines or vehicles," before "a description of the diesel".

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(4)(D)(i), inserted ", rebate," after "grant" and "highest" before "priority" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(4)(C)(iii). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(4)(D)(ii), substituted "diesel fleets" for "a diesel fleets" and inserted "construction sites, schools," after "terminals,".

Subsec. (c)(4)(E) to (G). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(4)(D)(iii)–(v), inserted "and" at end of subpar. (E), substituted a period for "; and" in subpar. (F), and struck out subpar. (G) which read as follows: "use diesel fuel with a sulfur content of less than or equal to 15 parts per million, as the Administrator determines to be appropriate."

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(5)(A), inserted ", rebate," after "grant" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(5)(B), substituted "grant, rebate, or loan provided, or contract entered into," for "grant or loan provided" and "any Federal law, except that this subparagraph shall not apply to a mandate in a State implementation plan approved by the Administrator under the Clean Air Act" for "Federal, State or local law".

Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(b)(6), added subsecs. (e) and (f).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2011 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–364 effective Oct. 1, 2011, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–364, set out as a note under section 16131 of this title.

§16133. State grant, rebate, and loan programs

(a) In general

Subject to the availability of adequate appropriations, the Administrator shall use 30 percent of the funds made available for a fiscal year under this part to support grant, rebate, and loan programs administered by States that are designed to achieve significant reductions in diesel emissions.

(b) Applications

The Administrator shall—

(1) provide to States guidance for use in applying for grant, rebate, or loan funds under this section, including information regarding—

(A) the process and forms for applications;

(B) permissible uses of funds received; and

(C) the cost-effectiveness of various emission reduction technologies eligible to be carried out using funds provided under this section; and

(2) establish, for applications described in paragraph (1)—

(A) an annual deadline for submission of the applications;

(B) a process by which the Administrator shall approve or disapprove each application; and

(C) a streamlined process by which a State may renew an application described in paragraph (1) for subsequent fiscal years.

(c) Allocation of funds

(1) In general

For each fiscal year, the Administrator shall allocate among States for which applications are approved by the Administrator under subsection (b)(2)(B) funds made available to carry out this section for the fiscal year.

(2) Allocation

(A) In general

Except as provided in subparagraphs (B) and (C), using not more than 20 percent of the funds made available to carry out this part for a fiscal year, the Administrator shall provide to each State qualified for an allocation for the fiscal year an allocation equal to 1/53 of the funds made available for that fiscal year for distribution to States under this paragraph.

(B) Certain territories

(i) In general

Except as provided in clause (ii), Guam, the United States Virgin Islands, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands shall collectively receive an

allocation equal to 1/53 of the funds made available for that fiscal year for distribution to States under this subsection, divided equally among those 4 States.

(ii) Exception

If any State described in clause (i) does not qualify for an allocation under this paragraph, the share of funds otherwise allocated for that State under clause (i) shall be reallocated pursuant to subparagraph (C).

(C) Reallocation

If any State does not qualify for an allocation under this paragraph, the share of funds otherwise allocated for that State under this paragraph shall be reallocated to each remaining qualified State in an amount equal to the product obtained by multiplying—

(i) the proportion that the population of the State bears to the population of all States described in paragraph (1); by

(ii) the amount otherwise allocatable to the nonqualifying State under this paragraph.

(3) State matching incentive

(A) In general

If a State agrees to match the allocation provided to the State under paragraph (2) for a fiscal year, the Administrator shall provide to the State for the fiscal year an additional amount equal to 50 percent of the allocation of the State under paragraph (2).

(B) Requirements

A State—

(i) may not use funds received under this part to pay a matching share required under this subsection; and

(ii) shall not be required to provide a matching share for any additional amount received under subparagraph (A).

(4) Unclaimed funds

Any funds that are not claimed by a State for a fiscal year under this subsection shall be used to carry out section 16132 of this title.

(d) Administration

(1) In general

Subject to paragraphs (2) and (3) and, to the extent practicable, the priority areas listed in section 16132(c)(3) of this title, a State shall use any funds provided under this section to develop and implement such grant, rebate, and low-cost revolving loan programs in the State as are appropriate to meet State needs and goals relating to the reduction of diesel emissions.

(2) Apportionment of funds

The chief executive of a State that receives funding under this section may determine the portion of funds to be provided as grants, rebates, or loans.

(3) Use of funds

A grant, rebate, or loan provided under this section shall be used for a project relating to—

(A) a certified engine configuration; or

(B) a verified technology.

(4) Priority

In providing grants, rebates, and loans under this section, a State shall use the priorities in section 16132(c)(4) of this title.

(5) Public notification

Not later than 60 days after the date of the award of a grant, rebate, or loan by a State, the State shall publish on the Web site of the State—

(A) for rebates, grants, and loans provided to the owner of a diesel vehicle or fleet, the total number and dollar amount of rebates, grants, or loans provided, as well as a breakdown of the technologies funded through the rebates, grants, or loans; and

(B) for other rebates, grants, and loans, a description of each application for which the grant, rebate, or loan is provided.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §793, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 841; Pub. L. 110–255, §3(b), June 30, 2008, 122 Stat. 2424; Pub. L. 111–364, §2(c), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4059.)

AMENDMENTS

2011—Pub. L. 111–364, §2(c)(1), inserted ", rebate," after "grant" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(c)(2), inserted ", rebate," after "grant".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(c)(3), inserted ", rebate," after "grant" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(c)(4), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) related to allocation of funds.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(c)(5)(A), inserted ", rebate," after "grant".

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(c)(5)(B), inserted ", rebates," after "grants".

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(c)(5)(C), substituted "grant, rebate, or loan provided under this section shall be used" for "grant or loan provided under this section may be used" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d)(4), (5). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(c)(5)(D), added pars. (4) and (5).

2008—Subsec. (c)(2)(A). Pub. L. 110–255, §3(b)(2), substituted "51" for "50" and "1.96 percent" for "2 percent".

Subsec. (c)(2)(B). Pub. L. 110–255, §3(b)(2), substituted "51" for "50" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(2)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 110–255, §3(b)(2), which directed substitution of "1.96 percent" for "2 percent", was executed by making the substitution for "2-percent", to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 110–255, §3(b)(1), substituted "chief executive" for "Governor".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2011 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–364 effective Oct. 1, 2011, except that amendment by section 2(c)(4) of Pub. L. 111–364 effective Jan. 4, 2011, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–364, set out as a note under section 16131 of this title.

§16134. Evaluation and report

(a) In general

Not later than 1 year after the date on which funds are made available under this part, and biennially thereafter, the Administrator shall submit to Congress a report evaluating the implementation of the programs under this part.

(b) Inclusions

The report shall include a description of—

(1) the total number of grant applications received;

(2) each grant, rebate, or loan made under this part, including the amount of the grant, rebate, or loan;

(3) each project for which a grant, rebate, or loan is provided under this part, including the criteria used to select the grant, rebate, or loan recipients;

(4) the actual and estimated air quality and diesel fuel conservation benefits, cost-effectiveness, and cost-benefits of the grant, rebate, and loan programs under this part;

(5) the problems encountered by projects for which a grant, rebate, or loan is provided under this part;

(6) any other information the Administrator considers to be appropriate; and

(7) in the last report sent to Congress before January 1, 2016, an analysis of the need to continue the program, including an assessment of the size of the vehicle and engine fleet that could provide benefits from being retrofit under this program and a description of the number and types of applications that were not granted in the preceding year.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §794, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 843; Pub. L. 111–364, §2(d), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4060.)

AMENDMENTS

2011—Subsec. (b)(2) to (5). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(d)(1), inserted ", rebate," after "grant" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 111–364, §2(d)(2)–(4), added par. (7).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2011 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–364 effective Oct. 1, 2011, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–364, set out as a note under section 16131 of this title.

§16135. Outreach and incentives

(a) Definition of eligible technology

In this section, the term "eligible technology" means—

(1) a verified technology; or

(2) an emerging technology.

(b) Technology transfer program

(1) In general

The Administrator shall establish a program under which the Administrator—

(A) informs stakeholders of the benefits of eligible technologies; and

(B) develops nonfinancial incentives to promote the use of eligible technologies.

(2) Eligible stakeholders

Eligible stakeholders under this section include—

(A) equipment owners and operators;

(B) emission and pollution control technology manufacturers;

(C) engine and equipment manufacturers;

(D) State and local officials responsible for air quality management;

(E) community organizations; and

(F) public health, educational, and environmental organizations.

(c) State implementation plans

The Administrator shall develop appropriate guidance to provide credit to a State for emission reductions in the State created by the use of eligible technologies through a State implementation plan under section 7410 of this title.

(d) International markets

The Administrator, in coordination with the Department of Commerce and industry stakeholders, shall inform foreign countries with air quality problems of the potential of technology developed or used in the United States to provide emission reductions in those countries.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §795, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 843.)

§16136. Effect of part

Nothing in this part affects any authority under the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.) in existence on the day before August 8, 2005.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §796, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 844.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Clean Air Act, referred to in text, is act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, 69 Stat. 322, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 85 (§7401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the

Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

§16137. Authorization of appropriations

(a) In general

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part $100,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2012 through 2016, to remain available until expended.

(b) Management and oversight

The Administrator may use not more than 1 percent of the amounts made available under subsection (a) for each fiscal year for management and oversight purposes.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VII, §797, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 844; Pub. L. 111–364, §2(e), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4060.)

AMENDMENTS

2011—Pub. L. 111–364 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part $200,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2011, to remain available until expended."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2011 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–364 effective Oct. 1, 2011, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–364, set out as a note under section 16131 of this title.

§16138. EPA authority to accept diesel emissions reduction Supplemental Environmental Projects

The Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency (hereinafter, the "Agency") may accept (notwithstanding sections 3302 and 1301 of title 31) diesel emissions reduction Supplemental Environmental Projects if the projects, as part of a settlement of any alleged violations of environmental law—

(1) protect human health or the environment;

(2) are related to the underlying alleged violations;

(3) do not constitute activities that the defendant would otherwise be legally required to perform; and

(4) do not provide funds for the staff of the Agency or for contractors to carry out the Agency's internal operations.

(Pub. L. 110–255, §1, June 30, 2008, 122 Stat. 2423.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 which comprises this chapter.

§16139. Settlement agreement provisions

In any settlement agreement regarding alleged violations of environmental law in which a defendant agrees to perform a diesel emissions reduction Supplemental Environmental Project, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency shall require the defendant to include in the settlement documents a certification under penalty of law that the defendant would have agreed to perform a comparably valued, alternative project other than a diesel emissions reduction Supplemental Environmental Project if the Administrator were precluded by law from accepting a diesel emission reduction Supplemental Environmental Project. A failure by the Administrator to

include this language in such a settlement agreement shall not create a cause of action against the United States under the Clean Air Act [42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.] or any other law or create a basis for overturning a settlement agreement entered into by the United States.

(Pub. L. 110–255, §2, June 30, 2008, 122 Stat. 2423.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Clean Air Act, referred to in text, is act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, 69 Stat. 322, which is classified generally to chapter 85 (§7401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 which comprises this chapter.

SUBCHAPTER VIII—HYDROGEN

§16151. Purposes

The purposes of this subchapter are—

(1) to enable and promote comprehensive development, demonstration, and commercialization of hydrogen and fuel cell technology in partnership with industry;

(2) to make critical public investments in building strong links to private industry, institutions of higher education, National Laboratories, and research institutions to expand innovation and industrial growth;

(3) to build a mature hydrogen economy that creates fuel diversity in the massive transportation sector of the United States;

(4) to sharply decrease the dependency of the United States on imported oil, eliminate most emissions from the transportation sector, and greatly enhance our energy security; and

(5) to create, strengthen, and protect a sustainable national energy economy.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §802, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 844.)

SHORT TITLE

For short title of title VIII of Pub. L. 109–58, which enacted this subchapter, as the "Spark M. Matsunaga Hydrogen Act of 2005", see section 801 of Pub. L. 109–58, set out as a note under section 15801 of this title.

§16152. Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) Fuel cell

The term "fuel cell" means a device that directly converts the chemical energy of a fuel, which is supplied from an external source, and an oxidant into electricity by electrochemical processes occurring at separate electrodes in the device.

(2) Heavy-duty vehicle

The term "heavy-duty vehicle" means a motor vehicle that—

(A) is rated at more than 8,500 pounds gross vehicle weight;

(B) has a curb weight of more than 6,000 pounds; or

(C) has a basic vehicle frontal area in excess of 45 square feet.

(3) Infrastructure

The term "infrastructure" means the equipment, systems, or facilities used to produce, distribute, deliver, or store hydrogen (except for onboard storage).

(4) Light-duty vehicle

The term "light-duty vehicle" means a motor vehicle that is rated at 8,500 or less pounds gross vehicle weight.

(5) Stationary; portable

The terms "stationary" and "portable", when used in reference to a fuel cell, include—

(A) continuous electric power; and

(B) backup electric power.

(6) Task Force

The term "Task Force" means the Hydrogen and Fuel Cell Technical Task Force established under section 16155 of this title.

(7) Technical Advisory Committee

The term "Technical Advisory Committee" means the independent Technical Advisory Committee established under section 16156 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §803, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 844.)

§16153. Plan

Not later than 6 months after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall transmit to Congress a coordinated plan for the programs described in this subchapter and any other programs of the Department that are directly related to fuel cells or hydrogen. The plan shall describe, at a minimum—

(1) the agenda for the next 5 years for the programs authorized under this subchapter, including the agenda for each activity enumerated in section 16154(e) of this title;

(2) the types of entities that will carry out the activities under this subchapter and what role each entity is expected to play;

(3) the milestones that will be used to evaluate the programs for the next 5 years;

(4) the most significant technical and nontechnical hurdles that stand in the way of achieving the goals described in section 16154 of this title, and how the programs will address those hurdles; and

(5) the policy assumptions that are implicit in the plan, including any assumptions that would affect the sources of hydrogen or the marketability of hydrogen-related products.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §804, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 845.)

§16154. Programs

(a) In general

The Secretary, in consultation with other Federal agencies and the private sector, shall conduct a research and development program on technologies relating to the production, purification, distribution, storage, and use of hydrogen energy, fuel cells, and related infrastructure.

(b) Goal

The goal of the program shall be to demonstrate and commercialize the use of hydrogen for transportation (in light-duty vehicles and heavy-duty vehicles), utility, industrial, commercial, and residential applications.

(c) Focus

In carrying out activities under this section, the Secretary shall focus on factors that are common to the development of hydrogen infrastructure and the supply of vehicle and electric power for

critical consumer and commercial applications, and that achieve continuous technical evolution and cost reduction, particularly for hydrogen production, the supply of hydrogen, storage of hydrogen, and end uses of hydrogen that—

(1) steadily increase production, distribution, and end use efficiency and reduce life-cycle emissions;

(2) resolve critical problems relating to catalysts, membranes, storage, lightweight materials, electronic controls, manufacturability, and other problems that emerge from the program;

(3) enhance sources of renewable fuels and biofuels for hydrogen production; and

(4) enable widespread use of distributed electricity generation and storage.

(d) Public education and research

In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall support enhanced public education and research conducted at institutions of higher education in fundamental sciences, application design, and systems concepts (including education and research relating to materials, subsystems, manufacturability, maintenance, and safety) relating to hydrogen and fuel cells.

(e) Activities

The Secretary, in partnership with the private sector, shall conduct programs to address—

(1) production of hydrogen from diverse energy sources, including—

(A) fossil fuels, which may include carbon capture and sequestration;

(B) hydrogen-carrier fuels (including ethanol and methanol);

(C) renewable energy resources, including biomass; and

(D) nuclear energy;

(2) use of hydrogen for commercial, industrial, and residential electric power generation;

(3) safe delivery of hydrogen or hydrogen-carrier fuels, including—

(A) transmission by pipeline and other distribution methods; and

(B) convenient and economic refueling of vehicles either at central refueling stations or through distributed onsite generation;

(4) advanced vehicle technologies, including—

(A) engine and emission control systems;

(B) energy storage, electric propulsion, and hybrid systems;

(C) automotive materials; and

(D) other advanced vehicle technologies;

(5) storage of hydrogen or hydrogen-carrier fuels, including development of materials for safe and economic storage in gaseous, liquid, or solid form at refueling facilities and onboard vehicles;

(6) development of safe, durable, affordable, and efficient fuel cells, including fuel-flexible fuel cell power systems, improved manufacturing processes, high-temperature membranes, cost-effective fuel processing for natural gas, fuel cell stack and system reliability, low temperature operation, and cold start capability; and

(7) the ability of domestic automobile manufacturers to manufacture commercially available competitive hybrid vehicle technologies in the United States.

(f) Program goals

(1) Vehicles

For vehicles, the goals of the program are—

(A) to enable a commitment by automakers no later than year 2015 to offer safe, affordable, and technically viable hydrogen fuel cell vehicles in the mass consumer market; and

(B) to enable production, delivery, and acceptance by consumers of model year 2020 hydrogen fuel cell and other hydrogen-powered vehicles that will have, when compared to light duty vehicles in model year 2005—

(i) fuel economy that is substantially higher;

(ii) substantially lower emissions of air pollutants; and
(iii) equivalent or improved vehicle fuel system crash integrity and occupant protection.

(2) Hydrogen energy and energy infrastructure

For hydrogen energy and energy infrastructure, the goals of the program are to enable a commitment not later than 2015 that will lead to infrastructure by 2020 that will provide—

(A) safe and convenient refueling;
(B) improved overall efficiency;
(C) widespread availability of hydrogen from domestic energy sources through—
(i) production, with consideration of emissions levels;
(ii) delivery, including transmission by pipeline and other distribution methods for hydrogen; and
(iii) storage, including storage in surface transportation vehicles;

(D) hydrogen for fuel cells, internal combustion engines, and other energy conversion devices for portable, stationary, micro, critical needs facilities, and transportation applications; and
(E) other technologies consistent with the Department's plan.

(3) Fuel cells

The goals for fuel cells and their portable, stationary, and transportation applications are to enable—

(A) safe, economical, and environmentally sound hydrogen fuel cells;
(B) fuel cells for light duty and other vehicles; and
(C) other technologies consistent with the Department's plan.

(g) Funding

(1) In general

The Secretary shall carry out the programs under this section using a competitive, merit-based review process and consistent with the generally applicable Federal laws and regulations governing awards of financial assistance, contracts, or other agreements.

(2) Research centers

Activities under this section may be carried out by funding nationally recognized university-based or Federal laboratory research centers.

(h) Hydrogen supply

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out projects and activities relating to hydrogen production, storage, distribution and dispensing, transport, education and coordination, and technology transfer under this section—

(1) $160,000,000 for fiscal year 2006;
(2) $200,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;
(3) $220,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;
(4) $230,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;
(5) $250,000,000 for fiscal year 2010; and
(6) such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2011 through 2020.

(i) Fuel cell technologies

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out projects and activities relating to fuel cell technologies under this section—

(1) $150,000,000 for fiscal year 2006;
(2) $160,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;
(3) $170,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;
(4) $180,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;
(5) $200,000,000 for fiscal year 2010; and
(6) such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2011 through 2020.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §805, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 845.)

§16155. Hydrogen and Fuel Cell Technical Task Force

(a) Establishment

Not later than 120 days after August 8, 2005, the President shall establish an interagency task force chaired by the Secretary with representatives from each of the following:

(1) The Office of Science and Technology Policy within the Executive Office of the President.

(2) The Department of Transportation.

(3) The Department of Defense.

(4) The Department of Commerce (including the National Institute of Standards and Technology).

(5) The Department of State.

(6) The Environmental Protection Agency.

(7) The National Aeronautics and Space Administration.

(8) Other Federal agencies as the Secretary determines appropriate.

(b) Duties

(1) Planning

The Task Force shall work toward—

(A) a safe, economical, and environmentally sound fuel infrastructure for hydrogen and hydrogen-carrier fuels, including an infrastructure that supports buses and other fleet transportation;

(B) fuel cells in government and other applications, including portable, stationary, and transportation applications;

(C) distributed power generation, including the generation of combined heat, power, and clean fuels including hydrogen;

(D) uniform hydrogen codes, standards, and safety protocols; and

(E) vehicle hydrogen fuel system integrity safety performance.

(2) Activities

The Task Force may organize workshops and conferences, may issue publications, and may create databases to carry out its duties. The Task Force shall—

(A) foster the exchange of generic, nonproprietary information and technology among industry, academia, and government;

(B) develop and maintain an inventory and assessment of hydrogen, fuel cells, and other advanced technologies, including the commercial capability of each technology for the economic and environmentally safe production, distribution, delivery, storage, and use of hydrogen;

(C) integrate technical and other information made available as a result of the programs and activities under this subchapter;

(D) promote the marketplace introduction of infrastructure for hydrogen fuel vehicles; and

(E) conduct an education program to provide hydrogen and fuel cell information to potential end-users.

(c) Agency cooperation

The heads of all agencies, including those whose agencies are not represented on the Task Force, shall cooperate with and furnish information to the Task Force, the Technical Advisory Committee, and the Department.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §806, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 848.)

§16156. Technical Advisory Committee

(a) Establishment

The Hydrogen Technical and Fuel Cell Advisory Committee is established to advise the Secretary on the programs and activities under this subchapter.

(b) Membership

(1) Members

The Technical Advisory Committee shall be comprised of not fewer than 12 nor more than 25 members. The members shall be appointed by the Secretary to represent domestic industry, academia, professional societies, government agencies, Federal laboratories, previous advisory panels, and financial, environmental, and other appropriate organizations based on the Department's assessment of the technical and other qualifications of Technical Advisory Committee members and the needs of the Technical Advisory Committee.

(2) Terms

The term of a member of the Technical Advisory Committee shall not be more than 3 years. The Secretary may appoint members of the Technical Advisory Committee in a manner that allows the terms of the members serving at any time to expire at spaced intervals so as to ensure continuity in the functioning of the Technical Advisory Committee. A member of the Technical Advisory Committee whose term is expiring may be reappointed.

(3) Chairperson

The Technical Advisory Committee shall have a chairperson, who shall be elected by the members from among their number.

(c) Review

The Technical Advisory Committee shall review and make recommendations to the Secretary on—

(1) the implementation of programs and activities under this subchapter;

(2) the safety, economical, and environmental consequences of technologies for the production, distribution, delivery, storage, or use of hydrogen energy and fuel cells; and

(3) the plan under section 16153 of this title.

(d) Response

(1) Consideration of recommendations

The Secretary shall consider, but need not adopt, any recommendations of the Technical Advisory Committee under subsection (c).

(2) Biennial report

The Secretary shall transmit a biennial report to Congress describing any recommendations made by the Technical Advisory Committee since the previous report. The report shall include a description of how the Secretary has implemented or plans to implement the recommendations, or an explanation of the reasons that a recommendation will not be implemented. The report shall be transmitted along with the President's budget proposal.

(e) Support

The Secretary shall provide resources necessary in the judgment of the Secretary for the Technical Advisory Committee to carry out its responsibilities under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §807, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 849.)

§16157. Demonstration

(a) In general

In carrying out the programs under this section, the Secretary shall fund a limited number of

demonstration projects, consistent with this subchapter and a determination of the maturity, cost-effectiveness, and environmental impacts of technologies supporting each project. In selecting projects under this subsection, the Secretary shall, to the extent practicable and in the public interest, select projects that—

(1) involve using hydrogen and related products at existing facilities or installations, such as existing office buildings, military bases, vehicle fleet centers, transit bus authorities, or units of the National Park System;

(2) depend on reliable power from hydrogen to carry out essential activities;

(3) lead to the replication of hydrogen technologies and draw such technologies into the marketplace;

(4) include vehicle, portable, and stationary demonstrations of fuel cell and hydrogen-based energy technologies;

(5) address the interdependency of demand for hydrogen fuel cell applications and hydrogen fuel infrastructure;

(6) raise awareness of hydrogen technology among the public;

(7) facilitate identification of an optimum technology among competing alternatives;

(8) address distributed generation using renewable sources;

(9) carry out demonstrations of evolving hydrogen and fuel cell technologies in national parks, remote island areas, and on Indian tribal land, as selected by the Secretary;

(10) carry out a program to demonstrate developmental hydrogen and fuel cell systems for mobile, portable, and stationary uses, using improved versions of the learning demonstrations program concept of the Department including demonstrations involving—

(A) light-duty vehicles;

(B) heavy-duty vehicles;

(C) fleet vehicles;

(D) specialty industrial and farm vehicles; and

(E) commercial and residential portable, continuous, and backup electric power generation;

(11) in accordance with any code or standards developed in a region, fund prototype, pilot fleet, and infrastructure regional hydrogen supply corridors along the interstate highway system in varied climates across the United States; and

(12) fund demonstration programs that explore the use of hydrogen blends, hybrid hydrogen, and hydrogen reformed from renewable agricultural fuels, including the use of hydrogen in hybrid electric, heavier duty, and advanced internal combustion-powered vehicles.

The Secretary shall give preference to projects which address multiple elements contained in paragraphs (1) through (12).

(b) System demonstrations

(1) [1] In general

As a component of the demonstration program under this section, the Secretary shall provide grants, on a cost share basis as appropriate, to eligible entities (as determined by the Secretary) for use in—

(A) devising system design concepts that provide for the use of advanced composite vehicles in programs under section 16122 of this title that—

(i) have as a primary goal the reduction of drive energy requirements;

(ii) after 2010, add another research and development phase, as defined in subsection (c), including the vehicle and infrastructure partnerships developed under the learning demonstrations program concept of the Department; and

(iii) are managed through an enhanced FreedomCAR program within the Department that encourages involvement in cost-shared projects by manufacturers and governments; and

(B) designing a local distributed energy system that—

(i) incorporates renewable hydrogen production, off-grid electricity production, and fleet applications in industrial or commercial service;

(ii) integrates energy or applications described in clause (i), such as stationary, portable, micro, and mobile fuel cells, into a high-density commercial or residential building complex or agricultural community; and

(iii) is managed in cooperation with industry, State, tribal, and local governments, agricultural organizations, and nonprofit generators and distributors of electricity.

(c) Identification of new program requirements

In carrying out the demonstrations under subsection (a), the Secretary, in consultation with the Task Force and the Technical Advisory Committee, shall—

(1) after 2008 for stationary and portable applications, and after 2010 for vehicles, identify new requirements that refine technological concepts, planning, and applications; and

(2) during the second phase of the learning demonstrations under subsection (b)(1)(A)(ii), redesign subsequent program work to incorporate those requirements.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

(1) $185,000,000 for fiscal year 2006;
(2) $200,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;
(3) $250,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;
(4) $300,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;
(5) $375,000,000 for fiscal year 2010; and
(6) such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2011 through 2020.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §808, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 850.)

[1] *So in original. No par. (2) has been enacted.*

§16158. Codes and standards

(a) In general

The Secretary, in cooperation with the Task Force, shall provide grants to, or offer to enter into contracts with, such professional organizations, public service organizations, and government agencies as the Secretary determines appropriate to support timely and extensive development of safety codes and standards relating to fuel cell vehicles, hydrogen energy systems, and stationary, portable, and micro fuel cells.

(b) Educational efforts

The Secretary shall support educational efforts by organizations and agencies described in subsection (a) to share information, including information relating to best practices, among those organizations and agencies.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

(1) $4,000,000 for fiscal year 2006;
(2) $7,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;
(3) $8,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;
(4) $10,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;
(5) $9,000,000 for fiscal year 2010; and
(6) such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2011 through 2020.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §809, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 851.)

§16159. Disclosure

Section 13293 of this title shall apply to any project carried out through a grant, cooperative agreement, or contract under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §810, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 852.)

§16160. Reports

(a) Secretary

Subject to subsection (c), not later than 2 years after August 8, 2005, and triennially thereafter, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report describing—

(1) activities carried out by the Department under this subchapter,[1] for hydrogen and fuel cell technology;

(2) measures the Secretary has taken during the preceding 3 years to support the transition of primary industry (or a related industry) to a fully commercialized hydrogen economy;

(3) any change made to the strategy relating to hydrogen and fuel cell technology to reflect the results of a learning demonstrations;

(4) progress, including progress in infrastructure, made toward achieving the goal of producing and deploying not less than—

(A) 100,000 hydrogen-fueled vehicles in the United States by 2010; and

(B) 2,500,000 hydrogen-fueled vehicles in the United States by 2020;

(5) progress made toward achieving the goal of supplying hydrogen at a sufficient number of fueling stations in the United States by 2010 including by integrating—

(A) hydrogen activities; and

(B) associated targets and timetables for the development of hydrogen technologies;

(6) any problem relating to the design, execution, or funding of a program under this subchapter;

(7) progress made toward and goals achieved in carrying out this subchapter and updates to the developmental roadmap, including the results of the reviews conducted by the National Academy of Sciences under subsection (b) for the fiscal years covered by the report; and

(8) any updates to strategic plans that are necessary to meet the goals described in paragraph (4).

(b) External review

The Secretary shall enter into an arrangement with the National Academy of Sciences under which the Academy will review the programs under sections 16154 and 16157 of this title every fourth year following August 8, 2005. The Academy's review shall include the program priorities and technical milestones, and evaluate the progress toward achieving them. The first review shall be completed not later than 5 years after August 8, 2005. Not later than 45 days after receiving the review, the Secretary shall transmit the review to Congress along with a plan to implement the review's recommendations or an explanation for the reasons that a recommendation will not be implemented.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $1,500,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2020.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §811, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 852.)

[1] *So in original. The comma probably should not appear.*

§16161. Solar and wind technologies

(a) Solar energy technologies

The Secretary shall—

(1) prepare a detailed roadmap for carrying out the provisions in this subchapter related to solar energy technologies and for implementing the recommendations related to solar energy technologies that are included in the report transmitted under subsection (e);

(2) provide for the establishment of 5 projects in geographic areas that are regionally and climatically diverse to demonstrate the production of hydrogen at solar energy facilities, including one demonstration project at a National Laboratory or institution of higher education;

(3) establish a program—

(A) to develop optimized concentrating solar power devices that may be used for the production of both electricity and hydrogen; and

(B) to evaluate the use of thermochemical cycles for hydrogen production at the temperatures attainable with concentrating solar power devices;

(4) coordinate with activities sponsored by the Department's Office of Nuclear Energy, Science, and Technology on high-temperature materials, thermochemical cycles, and economic issues related to solar energy;

(5) provide for the construction and operation of new concentrating solar power devices or solar power cogeneration facilities that produce hydrogen either concurrently with, or independently of, the production of electricity;

(6) support existing facilities and programs of study related to concentrating solar power devices; and

(7) establish a program—

(A) to develop methods that use electricity from photovoltaic devices for the onsite production of hydrogen, such that no intermediate transmission or distribution infrastructure is required or used and future demand growth may be accommodated;

(B) to evaluate the economics of small-scale electrolysis for hydrogen production; and

(C) to study the potential of modular photovoltaic devices for the development of a hydrogen infrastructure, the security implications of a hydrogen infrastructure, and the benefits potentially derived from a hydrogen infrastructure.

(b) Wind energy technologies

The Secretary shall—

(1) prepare a detailed roadmap for carrying out the provisions in this subchapter related to wind energy technologies and for implementing the recommendations related to wind energy technologies that are included in the report transmitted under subsection (e); and

(2) provide for the establishment of 5 projects in geographic areas that are regionally and climatically diverse to demonstrate the production of hydrogen at existing wind energy facilities, including one demonstration project at a National Laboratory or institution of higher education.

(c) Program support

The Secretary shall support programs at institutions of higher education for the development of solar energy technologies and wind energy technologies for the production of hydrogen. The programs supported under this subsection shall—

(1) enhance fellowship and faculty assistance programs;

(2) provide support for fundamental research;

(3) encourage collaborative research among industry, National Laboratories, and institutions of higher education;

(4) support communication and outreach; and

(5) to the greatest extent possible—

(A) be located in geographic areas that are regionally and climatically diverse; and

(B) be located at part B institutions, minority institutions, and institutions of higher education

located in States participating in the Experimental Program to Stimulate Competitive Research of the Department.

(d) Institutions of higher education and National Laboratory interactions

In conjunction with the programs supported under this section, the Secretary shall develop sabbatical, fellowship, and visiting scientist programs to encourage National Laboratories and institutions of higher education to share and exchange personnel.

(e) Report

The Secretary shall transmit to the Congress not later than 120 days after August 8, 2005, a report containing detailed summaries of the roadmaps prepared under subsections (a)(1) and (b)(1), descriptions of the Secretary's progress in establishing the projects and other programs required under this section, and recommendations for promoting the availability of advanced solar and wind energy technologies for the production of hydrogen.

(f) Definitions

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term "concentrating solar power devices" means devices that concentrate the power of the sun by reflection or refraction to improve the efficiency of a photovoltaic or thermal generation process;

(2) the term "minority institution" has the meaning given to that term in section 1067k of title 20;

(3) the term "part B institution" has the meaning given to that term in section 1061 of title 20; and

(4) the term "photovoltaic devices" means devices that convert light directly into electricity through a solid-state, semiconductor process.

(g) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary for carrying out the activities under this section for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2020.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §812, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 853.)

§16162. Technology transfer

In carrying out this subchapter, the Secretary shall carry out programs that—

(1) provide for the transfer of critical hydrogen and fuel cell technologies to the private sector;

(2) accelerate wider application of those technologies in the global market;

(3) foster the exchange of generic, nonproprietary information; and

(4) assess technical and commercial viability of technologies relating to the production, distribution, storage, and use of hydrogen energy and fuel cells.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §813, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 855.)

§16163. Miscellaneous provisions

(a) Representation

The Secretary may represent the United States interests with respect to activities and programs under this subchapter, in coordination with the Department of Transportation, the National Institute of Standards and Technology, and other relevant Federal agencies, before governments and nongovernmental organizations including—

(1) other Federal, State, regional, and local governments and their representatives;

(2) industry and its representatives, including members of the energy and transportation industries; and

(3) in consultation with the Department of State, foreign governments and their representatives

including international organizations.

(b) Regulatory authority

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to alter the regulatory authority of the Department.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §814, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 855.)

§16164. Cost sharing

The costs of carrying out projects and activities under this subchapter shall be shared in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §815, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 855.)

§16165. Savings clause

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to affect the authority of the Secretary of Transportation that may exist prior to August 8, 2005, with respect to—

(1) research into, and regulation of, hydrogen-powered vehicles fuel systems integrity, standards, and safety under subtitle VI of title 49;

(2) regulation of hazardous materials transportation under chapter 51 of title 49;

(3) regulation of pipeline safety under chapter 601 of title 49;

(4) encouragement and promotion of research, development, and deployment activities relating to advanced vehicle technologies under section 5506 [1] of title 49;

(5) regulation of motor vehicle safety under chapter 301 of title 49;

(6) automobile fuel economy under chapter 329 of title 49; or

(7) representation of the interests of the United States with respect to the activities and programs under the authority of title 49.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title VIII, §816, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 855.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 5506 of title 49, referred to in par. (4), was repealed by Pub. L. 112–141, div. E, title II, §52010(a), July 6, 2012, 126 Stat. 887.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

SUBCHAPTER IX—RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT

§16181. Goals

(a) In general

In order to achieve the purposes of this subchapter, the Secretary shall conduct a balanced set of programs of energy research, development, demonstration, and commercial application with the general goals of—

(1) increasing the efficiency of all energy intensive sectors through conservation and improved technologies;

(2) promoting diversity of energy supply;

(3) decreasing the dependence of the United States on foreign energy supplies;

(4) improving the energy security of the United States; and

(5) decreasing the environmental impact of energy-related activities.

(b) Goals

The Secretary shall publish measurable cost and performance-based goals, comparable over time, with each annual budget submission in at least the following areas:

(1) Energy efficiency for buildings, energy-consuming industries, and vehicles.

(2) Electric energy generation (including distributed generation), transmission, and storage.

(3) Renewable energy technologies, including wind power, photovoltaics, solar thermal systems, geothermal energy, hydrogen-fueled systems, biomass-based systems, biofuels, and hydropower.

(4) Fossil energy, including power generation, onshore and offshore oil and gas resource recovery, and transportation fuels.

(5) Nuclear energy, including programs for existing and advanced reactors, and education of future specialists.

(c) Public comment

The Secretary shall provide mechanisms for input on the annually published goals from industry, institutions of higher education, and other public sources.

(d) Effect of goals

Nothing in subsection (a) or the annually published goals creates any new authority for any Federal agency, or may be used by any Federal agency, to support the establishment of regulatory standards or regulatory requirements.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §902, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 856.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this title", meaning title IX of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 856, which enacted this subchapter, amended sections 8101 and 8102 of Title 7, Agriculture, and section 5523 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, enacted provisions set out as notes under section 15801 of this title, section 8102 of Title 7, and section 2001 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining, and amended provisions set out as notes under section 8101 of Title 7 and section 1902 of Title 30. For complete classification of title IX to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

For short title of title IX of Pub. L. 109–58, which enacted this subchapter, as the "Energy Research, Development, Demonstration, and Commercial Application Act of 2005", see section 431 of Pub. L. 109–58, set out as a note under section 15801 of this title.

§16182. Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) Departmental mission

The term "departmental mission" means any of the functions vested in the Secretary by the Department of Energy Organization Act (42 U.S.C. 7101 et seq.) or other law.

(2) Hispanic-serving institution

The term "Hispanic-serving institution" has the meaning given the term in section 1101a(a) of title 20.

(3) Nonmilitary energy laboratory

The term "nonmilitary energy laboratory" means a National Laboratory other than a National Laboratory listed in subparagraph (G), (H), or (N) of section 15801(3) of this title.

(4) Part B institution

The term "part B institution" has the meaning given the term in section 1061 of title 20.

(5) Single-purpose research facility

The term "single-purpose research facility" means—

(A) any of the primarily single-purpose entities owned by the Department; or
(B) any other organization of the Department designated by the Secretary.

(6) University

The term "university" has the meaning given the term "institution of higher education" in section 1001 of title 20.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §903, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 856.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title IX of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 856, which enacted this subchapter, amended sections 8101 and 8102 of Title 7, Agriculture, and section 5523 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, enacted provisions set out as notes under section 15801 of this title, section 8102 of Title 7, and section 2001 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining, and amended provisions set out as notes under section 8101 of Title 7 and section 1902 of Title 30. For complete classification of title IX to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

The Department of Energy Organization Act, referred to in par. (1), is Pub. L. 95–91, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 565, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 84 (§7101 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7101 of this title and Tables.

PART A—ENERGY EFFICIENCY

§16191. Energy efficiency

(a) In general

(1) Objectives

The Secretary shall conduct programs of energy efficiency research, development, demonstration, and commercial application, including activities described in this part. Such programs shall take into consideration the following objectives:

(A) Increasing the energy efficiency of vehicles, buildings, and industrial processes.

(B) Reducing the demand of the United States for energy, especially energy from foreign sources.

(C) Reducing the cost of energy and making the economy more efficient and competitive.

(D) Improving the energy security of the United States.

(E) Reducing the environmental impact of energy-related activities.

(2) Programs

Programs under this part shall include research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of—

(A) advanced, cost-effective technologies to improve the energy efficiency and environmental performance of vehicles, including—

(i) hybrid and electric propulsion systems;
(ii) plug-in hybrid systems;
(iii) advanced combustion engines;
(iv) weight and drag reduction technologies;
(v) whole-vehicle design optimization; and
(vi) advanced drive trains;

(B) cost-effective technologies, for new construction and retrofit, to improve the energy efficiency and environmental performance of buildings, using a whole-buildings approach, including onsite renewable energy generation;

(C) advanced technologies to improve the energy efficiency, environmental performance, and

process efficiency of energy-intensive and waste-intensive industries;

(D) advanced control devices to improve the energy efficiency of electric motors, including those used in industrial processes, heating, ventilation, and cooling; and

(E) technologies to improve the energy efficiency of appliances and mechanical systems for buildings in cold climates, including combined heat and power units and increased use of renewable resources, including fuel.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out energy efficiency and conservation research, development, demonstration, and commercial application activities, including activities authorized under this part—

(1) $783,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(2) $865,000,000 for fiscal year 2008; and

(3) $952,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(c) Allocations

From amounts authorized under subsection (b), the following sums are authorized:

(1) For activities under section 16192 of this title, $50,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2009.

(2) For activities under section 16195 of this title, $7,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2009.

(3) For activities under subsection (a)(2)(A)—

(A) $200,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(B) $270,000,000 for fiscal year 2008; and

(C) $310,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(4) For activities under subsection (a)(2)(D), $2,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 and 2008.

(d) Extended authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out section 16192 of this title $50,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2010 through 2013.

(e) Limitations

None of the funds authorized to be appropriated under this section may be used for—

(1) the issuance or implementation of energy efficiency regulations;

(2) the weatherization program established under part A of title IV of the Energy Conservation and Production Act (42 U.S.C. 6861 et seq.);

(3) a State energy conservation plan established under part D of title III of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.); or

(4) a Federal energy management measure carried out under part 3 of title V of the National Energy Conservation Policy Act (42 U.S.C. 8251 et seq.).

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §911, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 857; Pub. L. 110–140, title III, §315(a), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1571.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Energy Conservation and Production Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(2), is Pub. L. 94–385, Aug. 14, 1976, 90 Stat. 1125, as amended. Part A of title IV of the Act is classified generally to part A (§6861 et seq.) of subchapter III of chapter 81 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6801 of this title and Tables.

The Energy Policy and Conservation Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(3), is Pub. L. 94–163, Dec. 22, 1975, 89 Stat. 871, as amended. Part D of title III of the Act is classified generally to part B (§6321 et seq.) of subchapter III of chapter 77 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6201 of this title and Tables.

The National Energy Conservation Policy Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(4), is Pub. L. 95–619, Nov. 9, 1978, 92 Stat. 3206, as amended. Part 3 of title V of the Act is classified generally to part B (§8251 et seq.) of subchapter III of chapter 91 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title

note set out under section 8201 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2007—Subsec. (a)(2)(E). Pub. L. 110–140 added subpar. (E).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§16192. Next Generation Lighting Initiative

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Advanced solid-state lighting

The term "advanced solid-state lighting" means a semiconducting device package and delivery system that produces white light using externally applied voltage.

(2) Industry Alliance

The term "Industry Alliance" means an entity selected by the Secretary under subsection (d).

(3) Initiative

The term "Initiative" means the Next Generation Lighting Initiative carried out under this section.

(4) Research

The term "research" includes research on the technologies, materials, and manufacturing processes required for white light emitting diodes.

(5) White light emitting diode

The term "white light emitting diode" means a semiconducting package, using either organic or inorganic materials, that produces white light using externally applied voltage.

(b) Initiative

The Secretary shall carry out a Next Generation Lighting Initiative in accordance with this section to support research, development, demonstration, and commercial application activities related to advanced solid-state lighting technologies based on white light emitting diodes.

(c) Objectives

The objectives of the Initiative shall be to develop advanced solid-state organic and inorganic lighting technologies based on white light emitting diodes that, compared to incandescent and fluorescent lighting technologies, are longer lasting, are more energy-efficient and cost-competitive, and have less environmental impact.

(d) Industry Alliance

Not later than 90 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall competitively select an Industry Alliance to represent participants who are private, for-profit firms, open to large and small businesses, that, as a group, are broadly representative of United States solid-state lighting research, development, infrastructure, and manufacturing expertise as a whole.

(e) Research

(1) Grants

The Secretary shall carry out the research activities of the Initiative through competitively awarded grants to—

(A) researchers, including Industry Alliance participants;

(B) small businesses;

(C) National Laboratories; and

(D) institutions of higher education.

(2) Industry alliance

The Secretary shall annually solicit from the Industry Alliance—

(A) comments to identify solid-state lighting technology needs;

(B) an assessment of the progress of the research activities of the Initiative; and

(C) assistance in annually updating solid-state lighting technology roadmaps.

(3) Availability to public

The information and roadmaps under paragraph (2) shall be available to the public.

(f) Development, demonstration, and commercial application

(1) In general

The Secretary shall carry out a development, demonstration, and commercial application program for the Initiative through competitively selected awards.

(2) Preference

In making the awards, the Secretary may give preference to participants in the Industry Alliance.

(g) Cost sharing

In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall require cost sharing in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(h) Intellectual property

The Secretary may require (in accordance with section 202(a)(ii) of title 35, section 2182 of this title, and section 5908 of this title) that for any new invention developed under subsection (e)—

(1) that the Industry Alliance participants who are active participants in research, development, and demonstration activities related to the advanced solid-state lighting technologies that are covered by this section shall be granted the first option to negotiate with the invention owner, at least in the field of solid-state lighting, nonexclusive licenses and royalties on terms that are reasonable under the circumstances;

(2)(A) that, for 1 year after a United States patent is issued for the invention, the patent holder shall not negotiate any license or royalty with any entity that is not a participant in the Industry Alliance described in paragraph (1); and

(B) that, during the year described in subparagraph (A), the patent holder shall negotiate nonexclusive licenses and royalties in good faith with any interested participant in the Industry Alliance described in paragraph (1); and

(3) such other terms as the Secretary determines are required to promote accelerated commercialization of inventions made under the Initiative.

(i) National Academy review

The Secretary shall enter into an arrangement with the National Academy of Sciences to conduct periodic reviews of the Initiative.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §912, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 858.)

§16193. National Building Performance Initiative

(a) Interagency group

(1) In general

Not later than 90 days after August 8, 2005, the Director of the Office of Science and Technology Policy shall establish an interagency group to develop, in coordination with the advisory committee established under subsection (e), a National Building Performance Initiative (referred to in this section as the "Initiative").

(2) Cochairs

The interagency group shall be co-chaired by appropriate officials of the Department and the Department of Commerce, who shall jointly arrange for the provision of necessary administrative support to the group.

(b) Integration of efforts

The Initiative shall integrate Federal, State, and voluntary private sector efforts to reduce the costs of construction, operation, maintenance, and renovation of commercial, industrial, institutional, and residential buildings.

(c) Plan

(1) In general

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, the interagency group shall submit to Congress a plan for carrying out the appropriate Federal role in the Initiative.

(2) Inclusions

The plan shall include—

(A) research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of energy technology systems and materials for new construction and retrofit relating to the building envelope and building system components;

(B) research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of energy technology and infrastructure enabling the energy efficient, automated operation of buildings and building equipment; and

(C) the collection, analysis, and dissemination of research results and other pertinent information on enhancing building performance to industry, government entities, and the public.

(d) Department of Energy role

Within the Federal portion of the Initiative, the Department shall be the lead agency for all aspects of building performance related to use and conservation of energy.

(e) Advisory committee

The Director of the Office of Science and Technology Policy shall establish an advisory committee to—

(1) analyze and provide recommendations on potential private sector roles and participation in the Initiative; and

(2) review and provide recommendations on the plan described in subsection (c).

(f) Administration

Nothing in this section provides any Federal agency with new authority to regulate building performance.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §913, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 860.)

§16194. Building standards

(a) Definition of high performance building

In this section, the term "high performance building" means a building that integrates and optimizes all major high-performance building attributes, including energy efficiency, durability, life-cycle performance, and occupant productivity.

(b) Assessment

Not later than 120 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall enter into an agreement with the National Institute of Building Sciences to—

(1) conduct an assessment (in cooperation with industry, standards development organizations, and other entities, as appropriate) of whether the current voluntary consensus standards and rating

systems for high performance buildings are consistent with the current technological state of the art, including relevant results from the research, development and demonstration activities of the Department;

(2) determine if additional research is required, based on the findings of the assessment; and

(3) recommend steps for the Secretary to accelerate the development of voluntary consensus-based standards for high performance buildings that are based on the findings of the assessment.

(c) Grant and technical assistance program

Consistent with subsection (b) and section 12(d) of the National Technology Transfer and Advancement Act of 1995 (15 U.S.C. 272 note), the Secretary shall establish a grant and technical assistance program to support the development of voluntary consensus-based standards for high performance buildings.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §914, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 861.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 12(d) of the National Technology Transfer and Advancement Act of 1995, referred to in subsec. (c), is section 12(d) of Pub. L. 104–113, as amended, which is set out as a note under section 272 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade.

§16195. Secondary electric vehicle battery use program

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Battery

The term "battery" means an energy storage device that previously has been used to provide motive power in a vehicle powered in whole or in part by electricity.

(2) Associated equipment

The term "associated equipment" means equipment located where the batteries will be used that is necessary to enable the use of the energy stored in the batteries.

(b) Program

(1) In general

The Secretary shall establish and conduct a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of energy technology for the secondary use of batteries, if the Secretary finds that there are sufficient numbers of batteries to support the program.

(2) Administration

The program shall be—

(A) designed to demonstrate the use of batteries in secondary applications, including utility and commercial power storage and power quality;

(B) structured to evaluate the performance, including useful service life and costs, of such batteries in field operations, and the necessary supporting infrastructure, including reuse and disposal of batteries; and

(C) coordinated with ongoing secondary battery use programs at the National Laboratories and in industry.

(c) Solicitation

(1) In general

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall solicit proposals to demonstrate the secondary use of batteries and associated equipment and supporting infrastructure in geographic locations throughout the United States.

(2) Additional solicitations

The Secretary may make additional solicitations for proposals if the Secretary determines that the solicitations are necessary to carry out this section.

(d) Selection of proposals

(1) In general

Not later than 90 days after the closing date established by the Secretary for receipt of proposals under subsection (c), the Secretary shall select up to five proposals that may receive financial assistance under this section once the Department receives appropriated funds to carry out this section.

(2) Factors

In selecting proposals, the Secretary shall consider—

(A) the diversity of battery type;

(B) geographic and climatic diversity; and

(C) life-cycle environmental effects of the approaches.

(3) Limitation

No one project selected under this section shall receive more than 25 percent of the funds made available to carry out the program under this section.

(4) Non-Federal involvement

In selecting proposals, the Secretary shall consider the extent of involvement of State or local government and other persons in each demonstration project to optimize use of Federal resources.

(5) Other criteria

In selecting proposals, the Secretary may consider such other criteria as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(e) Conditions

In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall require that—

(1) relevant information be provided to—

(A) the Department;

(B) the users of the batteries;

(C) the proposers of a project under this section; and

(D) the battery manufacturers; and

(2) the costs of carrying out projects and activities under this section are shared in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §915, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 861.)

§16196. Energy Efficiency Science Initiative

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish an Energy Efficiency Science Initiative to be managed by the Assistant Secretary in the Department with responsibility for energy conservation under section 7133(a)(9) of this title, in consultation with the Director of the Office of Science, for grants to be competitively awarded and subject to peer review for research relating to energy efficiency.

(b) Report

The Secretary shall submit to Congress, along with the annual budget request of the President submitted to Congress, a report on the activities of the Energy Efficiency Science Initiative, including a description of the process used to award the funds and an explanation of how the research relates to energy efficiency.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §916, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 862.)

§16197. Advanced Energy Technology Transfer Centers

(a) Grants

Not later than 18 months after May 8, 2008, the Secretary shall make grants to nonprofit institutions, State and local governments, cooperative extension services, or institutions of higher education (or consortia thereof), to establish a geographically dispersed network of Advanced Energy Technology Transfer Centers, to be located in areas the Secretary determines have the greatest need of the services of such Centers. In making awards under this section, the Secretary shall—

(1) give priority to applicants already operating or partnered with an outreach program capable of transferring knowledge and information about advanced energy efficiency methods and technologies;

(2) ensure that, to the extent practicable, the program enables the transfer of knowledge and information—

(A) about a variety of technologies; and

(B) in a variety of geographic areas;

(3) give preference to applicants that would significantly expand on or fill a gap in existing programs in a geographical region; and

(4) consider the special needs and opportunities for increased energy efficiency for manufactured and site-built housing, including construction, renovation, and retrofit.

(b) Activities

Each Center shall operate a program to encourage demonstration and commercial application of advanced energy methods and technologies through education and outreach to building and industrial professionals, and to other individuals and organizations with an interest in efficient energy use. Funds awarded under this section may be used for the following activities:

(1) Developing and distributing informational materials on technologies that could use energy more efficiently.

(2) Carrying out demonstrations of advanced energy methods and technologies.

(3) Developing and conducting seminars, workshops, long-distance learning sessions, and other activities to aid in the dissemination of knowledge and information on technologies that could use energy more efficiently.

(4) Providing or coordinating onsite energy evaluations, including instruction on the commissioning of building heating and cooling systems, for a wide range of energy end-users.

(5) Examining the energy efficiency needs of energy end-users to develop recommended research projects for the Department.

(6) Hiring experts in energy efficient technologies to carry out activities described in paragraphs (1) through (5).

(c) Application

A person seeking a grant under this section shall submit to the Secretary an application in such form and containing such information as the Secretary may require. The Secretary may award a grant under this section to an entity already in existence if the entity is otherwise eligible under this section. The application shall include, at a minimum—

(1) a description of the applicant's outreach program, and the geographic region it would serve, and of why the program would be capable of transferring knowledge and information about advanced energy technologies that increase efficiency of energy use;

(2) a description of the activities the applicant would carry out, of the technologies that would be transferred, and of any other organizations that will help facilitate a regional approach to carrying out those activities;

(3) a description of how the proposed activities would be appropriate to the specific energy needs of the geographic region to be served;

(4) an estimate of the number and types of energy end-users expected to be reached through such activities; and

(5) a description of how the applicant will assess the success of the program.

(d) Selection criteria

The Secretary shall award grants under this section on the basis of the following criteria, at a minimum:

(1) The ability of the applicant to carry out the proposed activities.

(2) The extent to which the applicant will coordinate the activities of the Center with other entities as appropriate, such as State and local governments, utilities, institutions of higher education, and National Laboratories.

(3) The appropriateness of the applicant's outreach program for carrying out the program described in this section.

(4) The likelihood that proposed activities could be expanded or used as a model for other areas.

(e) Cost-sharing

In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall require cost-sharing in accordance with the requirements of section 16352 of this title for commercial application activities.

(f) Duration

(1) Initial grant period

A grant awarded under this section shall be for a period of 5 years.

(2) Initial evaluation

Each grantee under this section shall be evaluated during its third year of operation under procedures established by the Secretary to determine if the grantee is accomplishing the purposes of this section described in subsection (a). The Secretary shall terminate any grant that does not receive a positive evaluation. If an evaluation is positive, the Secretary may extend the grant for 3 additional years beyond the original term of the grant.

(3) Additional extension

If a grantee receives an extension under paragraph (2), the grantee shall be evaluated again during the second year of the extension. The Secretary shall terminate any grant that does not receive a positive evaluation. If an evaluation is positive, the Secretary may extend the grant for a final additional period of 3 additional years beyond the original extension.

(4) Limitation

No grantee may receive more than 11 years of support under this section without reapplying for support and competing against all other applicants seeking a grant at that time.

(g) Prohibition

None of the funds awarded under this section may be used for the construction of facilities.

(h) Definitions

For purposes of this section:

(1) Advanced energy methods and technologies

The term "advanced energy methods and technologies" means all methods and technologies that promote energy efficiency and conservation, including distributed generation technologies, and life-cycle analysis of energy use.

(2) Center

The term "Center" means an Advanced Energy Technology Transfer Center established pursuant to this section.

(3) Distributed generation

The term "distributed generation" means an electric power generation technology, including photovoltaic, small wind, and micro-combined heat and power, that serves electric consumers at or near the site of production.

(4) Cooperative Extension

The term "Cooperative Extension" means the extension services established at the land-grant colleges and universities under the Smith-Lever Act of May 8, 1914 [7 U.S.C. 341 et seq.].

(5) Land-grant colleges and universities

The term "land-grant colleges and universities" means—

(A) 1862 Institutions (as defined in section 7601 of title 7);

(B) 1890 Institutions (as defined in section 7601 of title 7); and

(C) 1994 Institutions (as defined in section 7601 of title 7).

(i) Authorization of appropriations

In addition to amounts otherwise authorized to be appropriated in section 16191 of this title, there are authorized to be appropriated for the program under this section such sums as may be appropriated.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §917, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 863; Pub. L. 110–229, title VI, §601, May 8, 2008, 122 Stat. 850.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Smith-Lever Act of May 8, 1914, referred to in subsec. (h)(4), is act May 8, 1914, ch. 79, 38 Stat. 372, which is classified generally to subchapter IV (§341 et seq.) of chapter 13 of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 341 of Title 7 and Tables.

CODIFICATION

May 8, 2008, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "the date of enactment of the National Forests, Parks, Public Land, and Reclamation Projects Authorization Act of 2008" and was translated as meaning the date of enactment of the Consolidated Natural Resources Act of 2008, Pub. L. 110–229, which amended this section generally, to reflect the probable intent of Congress. The National Forests, Parks, Public Land, and Reclamation Projects Authorization Act of 2008, was S. 2616, 110th Congress, introduced in the Senate on Feb. 8, 2008, with action thereon indefinitely postponed. The provisions of section 601 of that bill generally amended section 917 of Pub. L. 109–58 (this section) and was a predecessor version of section 601 of Pub. L. 109–229.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–229 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section related to grants for the establishment of a network of Advanced Energy Efficiency Technology Transfer Centers.

PART B—DISTRIBUTED ENERGY AND ELECTRIC ENERGY SYSTEMS

§16211. Distributed energy and electric energy systems

(a) In general

The Secretary shall carry out programs of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application on distributed energy resources and systems reliability and efficiency, to improve the reliability and efficiency of distributed energy resources and systems, integrating advanced energy technologies with grid connectivity, including activities described in this part. The programs shall address advanced energy technologies and systems and advanced grid reliability technologies.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

(1) Distributed energy and electric energy systems activities

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out distributed energy and electric energy systems activities, including activities authorized under this part—

(A) $240,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;
(B) $255,000,000 for fiscal year 2008; and
(C) $273,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(2) Power delivery research initiative

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out the Power Delivery Research Initiative under subsection [1] 16215(e) of this title such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2009.

(c) Micro-cogeneration energy technology

From amounts authorized under subsection (b), $20,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 and 2008 shall be available to carry out activities under section 16213 of this title.

(d) High-voltage transmission lines

From amounts authorized under subsection (b), $2,000,000 for fiscal year 2007 shall be available to carry out activities under section 16215(g) of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §921, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 864.)

[1] So in original. Probably should be "section".

§16212. High power density industry program

(a) In general

The Secretary shall establish a comprehensive research, development, demonstration, and commercial application to improve the energy efficiency of high power density facilities, including data centers, server farms, and telecommunications facilities.

(b) Technologies

The program shall consider technologies that provide significant improvement in thermal controls, metering, load management, peak load reduction, or the efficient cooling of electronics.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §922, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 864.)

§16213. Micro-cogeneration energy technology

(a) In general

The Secretary shall make competitive, merit-based grants to consortia for the development of micro-cogeneration energy technology.

(b) Uses

The consortia shall explore—

(1) the use of small-scale combined heat and power in residential heating appliances;
(2) the use of excess power to operate other appliances within the residence; and
(3) the supply of excess generated power to the power grid.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §923, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 865.)

§16214. Distributed energy technology demonstration programs

(a) Coordinating consortia program

The Secretary may provide financial assistance to coordinating consortia of interdisciplinary participants for demonstrations designed to accelerate the use of distributed energy technologies (such as fuel cells, microturbines, reciprocating engines, thermally activated technologies, and combined heat and power systems) in high-energy intensive commercial applications.

(b) Small-scale portable power program

(1) In general

The Secretary shall—

(A) establish a research, development, and demonstration program to develop working models of small scale portable power devices; and

(B) to the fullest extent practicable, identify and utilize the resources of universities that have shown expertise with respect to advanced portable power devices for either civilian or military use.

(2) Organization

The universities identified and utilized under paragraph (1)(B) are authorized to establish an organization to promote small scale portable power devices.

(3) Definition

For purposes of this subsection, the term "small scale portable power device" means a field-deployable portable mechanical or electromechanical device that can be used for applications such as communications, computation, mobility enhancement, weapons systems, optical devices, cooling, sensors, medical devices, and active biological agent detection systems.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §924, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 865.)

§16215. Electric transmission and distribution programs

(a) Program

The Secretary shall establish a comprehensive research, development, and demonstration program to ensure the reliability, efficiency, and environmental integrity of electrical transmission and distribution systems, which shall include—

(1) advanced energy delivery technologies, energy storage technologies, materials, and systems, giving priority to new transmission technologies, including composite conductor materials and other technologies that enhance reliability, operational flexibility, or power-carrying capability;

(2) advanced grid reliability and efficiency technology development;

(3) technologies contributing to significant load reductions;

(4) advanced metering, load management, and control technologies;

(5) technologies to enhance existing grid components;

(6) the development and use of high-temperature superconductors to—

(A) enhance the reliability, operational flexibility, or power-carrying capability of electric transmission or distribution systems; or

(B) increase the efficiency of electric energy generation, transmission, distribution, or storage systems;

(7) integration of power systems, including systems to deliver high-quality electric power, electric power reliability, and combined heat and power;

(8) supply of electricity to the power grid by small scale, distributed and residential-based power generators;

(9) the development and use of advanced grid design, operation, and planning tools;

(10) any other infrastructure technologies, as appropriate; and

(11) technology transfer and education.

(b) Program plan

(1) In general

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, the Secretary, in consultation with other appropriate Federal agencies, shall prepare and submit to Congress a 5-year program plan to guide activities under this section.

(2) Consultation

In preparing the program plan, the Secretary shall consult with—

(A) utilities;

(B) energy service providers;

(C) manufacturers;

(D) institutions of higher education;

(E) other appropriate State and local agencies;

(F) environmental organizations;

(G) professional and technical societies; and

(H) any other persons the Secretary considers appropriate.

(c) Implementation

The Secretary shall consider implementing the program under this section using a consortium of participants from industry, institutions of higher education, and National Laboratories.

(d) Report

Not later than 2 years after the submission of the plan under subsection (b), the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report—

(1) describing the progress made under this section; and

(2) identifying any additional resources needed to continue the development and commercial application of transmission and distribution of infrastructure technologies.

(e) Power delivery research initiative

(1) In general

The Secretary shall establish a research, development, and demonstration initiative specifically focused on power delivery using components incorporating high temperature superconductivity.

(2) Goals

The goals of the Initiative shall be—

(A) to establish world-class facilities to develop high temperature superconductivity power applications in partnership with manufacturers and utilities;

(B) to provide technical leadership for establishing reliability for high temperature superconductivity power applications, including suitable modeling and analysis;

(C) to facilitate the commercial transition toward direct current power transmission, storage, and use for high power systems using high temperature superconductivity; and

(D) to facilitate the integration of very low impedance high temperature superconducting wires and cables in existing electric networks to improve system performance, power flow control, and reliability.

(3) Inclusions

The Initiative shall include—

(A) feasibility analysis, planning, research, and design to construct demonstrations of superconducting links in high power, direct current, and controllable alternating current transmission systems;

(B) public-private partnerships to demonstrate deployment of high temperature superconducting cable into testbeds simulating a realistic transmission grid and under varying transmission conditions, including actual grid insertions; and

(C) testbeds developed in cooperation with National Laboratories, industries, and institutions of higher education to—

(i) demonstrate those technologies;

(ii) prepare the technologies for commercial introduction; and
(iii) address cost or performance roadblocks to successful commercial use.

(f) Transmission and distribution grid planning and operations initiative

(1) In general

The Secretary shall establish a research, development, and demonstration initiative specifically focused on tools needed to plan, operate, and expand the transmission and distribution grids in the presence of competitive market mechanisms for energy, load demand, customer response, and ancillary services.

(2) Goals

The goals of the Initiative shall be—

(A)(i) to develop and use a geographically distributed center, consisting of institutions of higher education, and National Laboratories, with expertise and facilities to develop the underlying theory and software for power system application; and

(ii) to ensure commercial development in partnership with software vendors and utilities;

(B) to provide technical leadership in engineering and economic analysis for the reliability and efficiency of power systems planning and operations in the presence of competitive markets for electricity;

(C) to model, simulate, and experiment with new market mechanisms and operating practices to understand and optimize those new methods before actual use; and

(D) to provide technical support and technology transfer to electric utilities and other participants in the domestic electric industry and marketplace.

(g) High-voltage transmission lines

As part of the program described in subsection (a), the Secretary shall award a grant to a university research program to design and test, in consultation with the Tennessee Valley Authority, state-of-the-art optimization techniques for power flow through existing high voltage transmission lines.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §925, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 865.)

PART C—RENEWABLE ENERGY

§16231. Renewable energy

(a) In general

(1) Objectives

The Secretary shall conduct programs of renewable energy research, development, demonstration, and commercial application, including activities described in this part. Such programs shall take into consideration the following objectives:

(A) Increasing the conversion efficiency of all forms of renewable energy through improved technologies.

(B) Decreasing the cost of renewable energy generation and delivery.

(C) Promoting the diversity of the energy supply.

(D) Decreasing the dependence of the United States on foreign energy supplies.

(E) Improving United States energy security.

(F) Decreasing the environmental impact of energy-related activities.

(G) Increasing the export of renewable generation equipment from the United States.

(2) Programs

(A) Solar energy

The Secretary shall conduct a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application for solar energy, including—

(i) photovoltaics;

(ii) solar hot water and solar space heating;

(iii) concentrating solar power;

(iv) lighting systems that integrate sunlight and electrical lighting in complement to each other in common lighting fixtures for the purpose of improving energy efficiency;

(v) manufacturability of low cost, high quality solar systems; and

(vi) development of products that can be easily integrated into new and existing buildings.

(B) Wind energy

The Secretary shall conduct a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application for wind energy, including—

(i) low speed wind energy;

(ii) offshore wind energy;

(iii) testing and verification (including construction and operation of a research and testing facility capable of testing wind turbines); and

(iv) distributed wind energy generation.

(C) Geothermal

The Secretary shall conduct a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application for geothermal energy. The program shall focus on developing improved technologies for reducing the costs of geothermal energy installations, including technologies for—

(i) improving detection of geothermal resources;

(ii) decreasing drilling costs;

(iii) decreasing maintenance costs through improved materials;

(iv) increasing the potential for other revenue sources, such as mineral production; and

(v) increasing the understanding of reservoir life cycle and management.

(D) Hydropower

The Secretary shall conduct a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application for cost competitive technologies that enable the development of new and incremental hydropower capacity, adding to the diversity of the energy supply of the United States, including:

(i) Fish-friendly large turbines.

(ii) Advanced technologies to enhance environmental performance and yield greater energy efficiencies.

(E) Miscellaneous projects

The Secretary shall conduct research, development, demonstration, and commercial application programs for—

(i) ocean energy, including wave energy;

(ii) the combined use of renewable energy technologies with one another and with other energy technologies, including the combined use of wind power and coal gasification technologies;

(iii) renewable energy technologies for cogeneration of hydrogen and electricity; and

(iv) kinetic hydro turbines.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out renewable energy research, development, demonstration, and commercial application activities, including activities authorized under this part—

(1) $632,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(2) $743,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;

(3) $852,000,000 for fiscal year 2009; and
(4) $963,000,000 for fiscal year 2010.

(c) Bioenergy

From the amounts authorized under subsection (b), there are authorized to be appropriated to carry out section 16232 of this title—

(1) $213,000,000 for fiscal year 2007, of which $100,000,000 shall be for section 16232(d) of this title;

(2) $377,000,000 for fiscal year 2008, of which $125,000,000 shall be for section 16232(d) of this title;

(3) $398,000,000 for fiscal year 2009, of which $150,000,000 shall be for section 16232(d) of this title; and

(4) $419,000,000 for fiscal year 2010, of which $150,000,000 shall be for section 16232(d) of this title.

(d) Solar power

From amounts authorized under subsection (b), there is authorized to be appropriated to carry out activities under subsection (a)(2)(A)—

(1) $140,000,000 for fiscal year 2007, of which $40,000,000 shall be for activities under section 16235 of this title;

(2) $200,000,000 for fiscal year 2008, of which $50,000,000 shall be for activities under section 16235 of this title; and

(3) $250,000,000 for fiscal year 2009, of which $50,000,000 shall be for activities under section 16235 of this title.

(e) Administration

Of the funds authorized under subsection (c), not less than $5,000,000 for each fiscal year shall be made available for grants to—

(1) part B institutions;
(2) Tribal Colleges or Universities (as defined in section 1059c(b) of title 20); and
(3) Hispanic-serving institutions.

(f) Rural demonstration projects

In carrying out this section, the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Agriculture, shall demonstrate the use of renewable energy technologies to assist in delivering electricity to rural and remote locations including —

(1) advanced wind power technology, including combined use with coal gasification;
(2) biomass; and
(3) geothermal energy systems.

(g) Analysis and evaluation

(1) In general

The Secretary shall conduct analysis and evaluation in support of the renewable energy programs under this part. These activities shall be used to guide budget and program decisions, and shall include—

(A) economic and technical analysis of renewable energy potential, including resource assessment;

(B) analysis of past program performance, both in terms of technical advances and in market introduction of renewable energy; and

(C) any other analysis or evaluation that the Secretary considers appropriate.

(2) Funding

The Secretary may designate up to 1 percent of the funds appropriated for carrying out this part for analysis and evaluation activities under this subsection.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §931, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 868; Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §231, Dec. 19,

2007, 121 Stat. 1536.)

AMENDMENTS

2007—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 110–140, §231(1), added par. (4).

Subsec. (c)(2) to (4). Pub. L. 110–140, §231(2), in par. (2), substituted "$377,000,000" for "$251,000,000", in par. (3), substituted "$398,000,000" for "$274,000,000", and added par. (4).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§16232. Bioenergy program

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Biomass

The term "biomass" means—

(A) any organic material grown for the purpose of being converted to energy;

(B) any organic byproduct of agriculture (including wastes from food production and processing) that can be converted into energy; or

(C) any waste material that can be converted to energy, is segregated from other waste materials, and is derived from—

(i) any of the following forest-related resources: mill residues, precommercial thinnings, slash, brush, or otherwise nonmerchantable material; or

(ii) wood waste materials, including waste pallets, crates, dunnage, manufacturing and construction wood wastes (other than pressure-treated, chemically-treated, or painted wood wastes), and landscape or right-of-way tree trimmings, but not including municipal solid waste, gas derived from the biodegradation of municipal solid waste, or paper that is commonly recycled.

(2) Lignocellulosic feedstock

The term "lignocellulosic feedstock" means any portion of a plant or coproduct from conversion, including crops, trees, forest residues, and agricultural residues not specifically grown for food, including from barley grain, grapeseed, rice bran, rice hulls, rice straw, soybean matter, and sugarcane bagasse.

(b) Program

The Secretary shall conduct a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application for bioenergy, including—

(1) biopower energy systems;

(2) biofuels;

(3) bioproducts;

(4) integrated biorefineries that may produce biopower, biofuels, and bioproducts;

(5) cross-cutting research and development in feedstocks; and

(6) economic analysis.

(c) Biofuels and bioproducts

The goals of the biofuels and bioproducts programs shall be to develop, in partnership with industry and institutions of higher education—

(1) advanced biochemical and thermochemical conversion technologies capable of making fuels from lignocellulosic feedstocks that are price-competitive with gasoline or diesel in either internal combustion engines or fuel cell-powered vehicles;

(2) advanced biotechnology processes capable of making biofuels and bioproducts with emphasis on development of biorefinery technologies using enzyme-based processing systems;

(3) advanced biotechnology processes capable of increasing energy production from lignocellulosic feedstocks, with emphasis on reducing the dependence of industry on fossil fuels in manufacturing facilities; and

(4) other advanced processes that will enable the development of cost-effective bioproducts, including biofuels.

(d) Integrated biorefinery demonstration projects

(1) In general

The Secretary shall carry out a program to demonstrate the commercial application of integrated biorefineries. The Secretary shall ensure geographical distribution of biorefinery demonstrations under this subsection. The Secretary shall not provide more than $100,000,000 under this subsection for any single biorefinery demonstration. In making awards under this subsection, the Secretary shall encourage—

(A) the demonstration of a wide variety of lignocellulosic feedstocks;

(B) the commercial application of biomass technologies for a variety of uses, including—

(i) liquid transportation fuels;

(ii) high-value biobased chemicals;

(iii) substitutes for petroleum-based feedstocks and products; and

(iv) energy in the form of electricity or useful heat; and

(C) the demonstration of the collection and treatment of a variety of biomass feedstocks.

(2) Proposals

Not later than 6 months after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall solicit proposals for demonstration of advanced biorefineries. The Secretary shall select only proposals that—

(A) demonstrate that the project will be able to operate profitably without direct Federal subsidy after initial construction costs are paid; and

(B) enable the biorefinery to be easily replicated.

(e) University biodiesel program

The Secretary shall establish a demonstration program to determine the feasibility of the operation of diesel electric power generators, using biodiesel fuels with ratings as high as B100, at electric generation facilities owned by institutions of higher education. The program shall examine—

(1) heat rates of diesel fuels with large quantities of cellulosic content;

(2) the reliability of operation of various fuel blends;

(3) performance in cold or freezing weather;

(4) stability of fuel after extended storage; and

(5) other criteria, as determined by the Secretary.

(g) [1] Biorefinery energy efficiency

The Secretary shall establish a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application for increasing energy efficiency and reducing energy consumption in the operation of biorefinery facilities.

(h) Retrofit technologies for the development of ethanol from cellulosic materials

The Secretary shall establish a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application on technologies and processes to enable biorefineries that exclusively use corn grain or corn starch as a feedstock to produce ethanol to be retrofitted to accept a range of biomass, including lignocellulosic feedstocks.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §932, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 870; Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §224, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1533.)

AMENDMENTS

2007—Subsecs. (g), (h). Pub. L. 110–140 added subsecs. (g) and (h).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

[1] *So in original. No subsec. (f) has been enacted.*

§16233. Low-cost renewable hydrogen and infrastructure for vehicle propulsion

The Secretary shall—

(1) establish a research, development, and demonstration program to determine the feasibility of using hydrogen propulsion in light-weight vehicles and the integration of the associated hydrogen production infrastructure using off-the-shelf components; and

(2) identify universities and institutions that—

(A) have expertise in researching and testing vehicles fueled by hydrogen, methane, and other fuels;

(B) have expertise in integrating off-the-shelf components to minimize cost; and

(C) within 2 years can test a vehicle based on an existing commercially available platform with a curb weight of not less than 2,000 pounds before modifications, that—

(i) operates solely on hydrogen;

(ii) qualifies as a light-duty passenger vehicle; and

(iii) uses hydrogen produced from water using only solar energy.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §933, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 872.)

§16234. Concentrating solar power research program

(a) In general

The Secretary shall conduct a program of research and development to evaluate the potential for concentrating solar power for hydrogen production, including cogeneration approaches for both hydrogen and electricity.

(b) Administration

The program shall take advantage of existing facilities to the extent practicable and shall include—

(1) development of optimized technologies that are common to both electricity and hydrogen production;

(2) evaluation of thermochemical cycles for hydrogen production at the temperatures attainable with concentrating solar power;

(3) evaluation of materials issues for the thermochemical cycles described in paragraph (2);

(4) cogeneration of solar thermal electric power and photo-synthetic-based hydrogen production;

(5) system architectures and economics studies; and

(6) coordination with activities under the Next Generation Nuclear Plant Project established under part B of subchapter VI on high temperature materials, thermochemical cycles, and economic issues.

(c) Assessment

In carrying out the program under this section, the Secretary shall—

(1) assess conflicting guidance on the economic potential of concentrating solar power for electricity production received from the National Research Council in the report entitled "Renewable Power Pathways: A Review of the U.S. Department of Energy's Renewable Energy Programs" and dated 2000 and subsequent reviews of that report funded by the Department; and

(2) provide an assessment of the potential impact of technology used to concentrate solar power

for electricity before, or concurrent with, submission of the budget for fiscal year 2008.

(d) Report

Not later than 5 years after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall provide to Congress a report on the economic and technical potential for electricity or hydrogen production, with or without cogeneration, with concentrating solar power, including the economic and technical feasibility of potential construction of a pilot demonstration facility suitable for commercial production of electricity or hydrogen from concentrating solar power.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §934, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 872.)

§16235. Renewable energy in public buildings

(a) Demonstration and technology transfer program

The Secretary shall establish a program for the demonstration of innovative technologies for solar and other renewable energy sources in buildings owned or operated by a State or local government, and for the dissemination of information resulting from such demonstration to interested parties.

(b) Limit on Federal funding

Notwithstanding section 16352 of this title, the Secretary shall provide under this section no more than 40 percent of the incremental costs of the solar or other renewable energy source project funded.

(c) Requirements

As part of the application for awards under this section, the Secretary shall require all applicants—

(1) to demonstrate a continuing commitment to the use of solar and other renewable energy sources in buildings they own or operate; and

(2) to state how they expect any award to further their transition to the significant use of renewable energy.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §935, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 873.)

PART D—AGRICULTURAL BIOMASS RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMS

§16251. Production incentives for cellulosic biofuels

(a) Purpose

The purpose of this section is to—

(1) accelerate deployment and commercialization of biofuels;

(2) deliver the first 1,000,000,000 gallons in annual cellulosic biofuels production by 2015;

(3) ensure biofuels produced after 2015 are cost competitive with gasoline and diesel; and

(4) ensure that small feedstock producers and rural small businesses are full participants in the development of the cellulosic biofuels industry.

(b) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Cellulosic biofuels

The term "cellulosic biofuels" means any fuel that is produced from cellulosic feedstocks.

(2) Eligible entity

The term "eligible entity" means a producer of fuel from cellulosic biofuels the production facility of which—

(A) is located in the United States;
(B) meets all applicable Federal and State permitting requirements; and
(C) meets any financial criteria established by the Secretary.

(c) Program

(1) Establishment

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Agriculture, the Secretary of Defense, and the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, shall establish an incentive program for the production of cellulosic biofuels.

(2) Basis of incentives

Under the program, the Secretary shall award production incentives on a per gallon basis of cellulosic biofuels from eligible entities, through—

(A) set payments per gallon of cellulosic biofuels produced in an amount determined by the Secretary, until initiation of the first reverse auction; and

(B) reverse auction thereafter.

(3) First reverse auction

The first reverse auction shall be held on the earlier of—

(A) not later than 1 year after the first year of annual production in the United States of 100,000,000 gallons of cellulosic biofuels, as determined by the Secretary; or

(B) not later than 3 years after August 8, 2005.

(4) Reverse auction procedure

(A) In general

On initiation of the first reverse auction, and each year thereafter until the earlier of the first year of annual production in the United States of 1,000,000,000 gallons of cellulosic biofuels, as determined by the Secretary, or 10 years after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall conduct a reverse auction at which—

(i) the Secretary shall solicit bids from eligible entities;

(ii) eligible entities shall submit—

(I) a desired level of production incentive on a per gallon basis; and

(II) an estimated annual production amount in gallons; and

(iii) the Secretary shall issue awards for the production amount submitted, beginning with the eligible entity submitting the bid for the lowest level of production incentive on a per gallon basis and meeting such other criteria as are established by the Secretary, until the amount of funds available for the reverse auction is committed.

(B) Amount of incentive received

An eligible entity selected by the Secretary through a reverse auction shall receive the amount of performance incentive requested in the auction for each gallon produced and sold by the entity during the first 6 years of operation.

(C) Commencement of production of cellulosic biofuels

As a condition of the receipt of an award under this section, an eligible entity shall enter into an agreement with the Secretary under which the eligible entity agrees to begin production of cellulosic biofuels not later than 3 years after the date of the reverse auction in which the eligible entity participates.

(d) Limitations

Awards under this section shall be limited to—

(1) a per gallon amount determined by the Secretary during the first 4 years of the program;

(2) a declining per gallon cap over the remaining lifetime of the program, to be established by the Secretary so that cellulosic biofuels produced after the first year of annual cellulosic biofuels

production in the United States in excess of 1,000,000,000 gallons are cost competitive with gasoline and diesel;

(3) not more than 25 percent of the funds committed within each reverse auction to any 1 project;

(4) not more than $100,000,000 in any 1 year; and

(5) not more than $1,000,000,000 over the lifetime of the program.

(e) Priority

In selecting a project under the program, the Secretary shall give priority to projects that—

(1) demonstrate outstanding potential for local and regional economic development;

(2) include agricultural producers or cooperatives of agricultural producers as equity partners in the ventures; and

(3) have a strategic agreement in place to fairly reward feedstock suppliers.

(f) Authorizations of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $250,000,000.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §942, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 878.)

§16252. Education

(1) In general

The Architect of the Capitol shall establish in the Capitol Complex a program of public education regarding use by the Architect of the Capitol of biobased products.

(2) Purposes

The purposes of the program shall be—

(A) to establish the Capitol Complex as a showcase for the existence and benefits of biobased products; and

(B) to provide access to further information on biobased products to occupants and visitors.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §943(c), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 881.)

§16253. Small business bioproduct marketing and certification grants

(a) In general

Using amounts made available under subsection (g), the Secretary of Agriculture (referred to in this section as the "Secretary") shall make available on a competitive basis grants to eligible entities described in subsection (b) for the biobased product marketing and certification purposes described in subsection (c).

(b) Eligible entities

(1) In general

An entity eligible for a grant under this section is any manufacturer of biobased products that—

(A) proposes to use the grant for the biobased product marketing and certification purposes described in subsection (c); and

(B) has not previously received a grant under this section.

(2) Preference

In making grants under this section, the Secretary shall provide a preference to an eligible entity that has fewer than 50 employees.

(c) Biobased product marketing and certification grant purposes

A grant made under this section shall be used—

(1) to provide working capital for marketing of biobased products; and

(2) to provide for the certification of biobased products to—
(A) qualify for the label described in section 8102(b) of title 7; or
(B) meet other biobased standards determined appropriate by the Secretary.

(d) Matching funds

(1) In general

Grant recipients shall provide matching non-Federal funds equal to the amount of the grant received.

(2) Expenditure

Matching funds shall be expended in advance of grant funding, so that for every dollar of grant that is advanced, an equal amount of matching funds shall have been funded prior to submitting the request for reimbursement.

(e) Amount

A grant made under this section shall not exceed $100,000.

(f) Administration

The Secretary shall establish such administrative requirements for grants under this section, including requirements for applications for the grants, as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(g) Authorizations of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to make grants under this section—
(1) $1,000,000 for fiscal year 2006; and
(2) such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2015.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §944, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 881; Pub. L. 113–79, title IX, §9002(b), Feb. 7, 2014, 128 Stat. 928.)

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (c)(2)(A). Pub. L. 113–79 substituted "section 8102(b)" for "section 8102(h)(1)".

§16254. Regional bioeconomy development grants

(a) In general

Using amounts made available under subsection (g), the Secretary of Agriculture (referred to in this section as the "Secretary") shall make available on a competitive basis grants to eligible entities described in subsection (b) for the purposes described in subsection (c).

(b) Eligible entities

An entity eligible for a grant under this section is any regional bioeconomy development association, agricultural or energy trade association, or Land Grant institution that—
(1) proposes to use the grant for the purposes described in subsection (c); and
(2) has not previously received a grant under this section.

(c) Regional bioeconomy development association grant purposes

A grant made under this section shall be used to support and promote the growth and development of the bioeconomy within the region served by the eligible entity, through coordination, education, outreach, and other endeavors by the eligible entity.

(d) Matching funds

(1) In general

Grant recipients shall provide matching non-Federal funds equal to the amount of the grant received.

(2) Expenditure

Matching funds shall be expended in advance of grant funding, so that for every dollar of grant that is advanced, an equal amount of matching funds shall have been funded prior to submitting the request for reimbursement.

(e) Administration

The Secretary shall establish such administrative requirements for grants under this section, including requirements for applications for the grants, as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(f) Amount

A grant made under this section shall not exceed $500,000.

(g) Authorizations of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to make grants under this section—

(1) $1,000,000 for fiscal year 2006; and

(2) such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2015.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §945, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 882.)

§16255. Preprocessing and harvesting demonstration grants

(a) In general

The Secretary of Agriculture (referred to in this section as the "Secretary") shall make grants available on a competitive basis to enterprises owned by agricultural producers, for the purposes of demonstrating cost-effective, cellulosic biomass innovations in—

(1) preprocessing of feedstocks, including cleaning, separating and sorting, mixing or blending, and chemical or biochemical treatments, to add value and lower the cost of feedstock processing at a biorefinery; or

(2) 1-pass or other efficient, multiple crop harvesting techniques.

(b) Limitations on grants

(1) Number of grants

Not more than 5 demonstration projects per fiscal year shall be funded under this section.

(2) Non-Federal cost share

The non-Federal cost share of a project under this section shall be not less than 20 percent, as determined by the Secretary.

(c) Condition of grant

To be eligible for a grant for a project under this section, a recipient of a grant or a participating entity shall agree to use the material harvested under the project—

(1) to produce ethanol; or

(2) for another energy purpose, such as the generation of heat or electricity.

(d) Authorization for appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §946, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 883.)

§16256. Education and outreach

(a) In general

The Secretary of Agriculture shall establish, within the Department of Agriculture or through an independent contracting entity, a program of education and outreach on biobased fuels and biobased products consisting of—

(1) training and technical assistance programs for feedstock producers to promote producer ownership, investment, and participation in the operation of processing facilities; and

(2) public education and outreach to familiarize consumers with the biobased fuels and biobased products.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $1,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §947, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 883.)

PART E—NUCLEAR ENERGY

§16271. Nuclear energy

(a) In general

The Secretary shall conduct programs of civilian nuclear energy research, development, demonstration, and commercial application, including activities described in this part. Programs under this part shall take into consideration the following objectives:

(1) Enhancing nuclear power's viability as part of the United States energy portfolio.

(2) Providing the technical means to reduce the likelihood of nuclear proliferation.

(3) Maintaining a cadre of nuclear scientists and engineers.

(4) Maintaining National Laboratory and university nuclear programs, including their infrastructure.

(5) Supporting both individual researchers and multidisciplinary teams of researchers to pioneer new approaches in nuclear energy, science, and technology.

(6) Developing, planning, constructing, acquiring, and operating special equipment and facilities for the use of researchers.

(7) Supporting technology transfer and other appropriate activities to assist the nuclear energy industry, and other users of nuclear science and engineering, including activities addressing reliability, availability, productivity, component aging, safety, and security of nuclear power plants.

(8) Reducing the environmental impact of nuclear energy-related activities.

(b) Authorization of appropriations for core programs

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out nuclear energy research, development, demonstration, and commercial application activities, including activities authorized under this part, other than those described in subsection (c)—

(1) $330,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(2) $355,000,000 for fiscal year 2008; and

(3) $495,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(c) Nuclear infrastructure and facilities

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out activities under section 16275 of this title—

(1) $135,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(2) $140,000,000 for fiscal year 2008; and

(3) $145,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(d) Allocations

From amounts authorized under subsection (a), the following sums are authorized:

(1) For activities under section 16273 of this title—

(A) $150,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(B) $155,000,000 for fiscal year 2008; and
(C) $275,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(2) For activities under section 16274 of this title—
(A) $43,600,000 for fiscal year 2007;
(B) $50,100,000 for fiscal year 2008; and
(C) $56,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(3) For activities under section 16277 of this title, $6,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2009.

(e) Limitation

None of the funds authorized under this section may be used to decommission the Fast Flux Test Facility.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §951, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 884.)

§16272. Nuclear energy research programs

(a) Nuclear Energy Research Initiative

The Secretary shall carry out a Nuclear Energy Research Initiative for research and development related to nuclear energy.

(b) Nuclear Energy Systems Support Program

The Secretary shall carry out a Nuclear Energy Systems Support Program to support research and development activities addressing reliability, availability, productivity, component aging, safety, and security of existing nuclear power plants.

(c) Nuclear Power 2010 Program

(1) In general

The Secretary shall carry out a Nuclear Power 2010 Program, consistent with recommendations of the Nuclear Energy Research Advisory Committee of the Department in the report entitled "A Roadmap to Deploy New Nuclear Power Plants in the United States by 2010" and dated October 2001.

(2) Administration

The Program shall include—
(A) use of the expertise and capabilities of industry, institutions of higher education, and National Laboratories in evaluation of advanced nuclear fuel cycles and fuels testing;
(B) consideration of a variety of reactor designs suitable for both developed and developing nations;
(C) participation of international collaborators in research, development, and design efforts, as appropriate; and
(D) encouragement for participation by institutions of higher education and industry.

(d) Generation IV Nuclear Energy Systems Initiative

(1) In general

The Secretary shall carry out a Generation IV Nuclear Energy Systems Initiative to develop an overall technology plan for and to support research and development necessary to make an informed technical decision about the most promising candidates for eventual commercial application.

(2) Administration

In conducting the Initiative, the Secretary shall examine advanced proliferation-resistant and passively safe reactor designs, including designs that—

(A) are economically competitive with other electric power generation plants;

(B) have higher efficiency, lower cost, and improved safety compared to reactors in operation on August 8, 2005;

(C) use fuels that are proliferation resistant and have substantially reduced production of high-level waste per unit of output; and

(D) use improved instrumentation.

(e) Reactor production of hydrogen

The Secretary shall carry out research to examine designs for high-temperature reactors capable of producing large-scale quantities of hydrogen.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §952, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 885.)

§16273. Advanced fuel cycle initiative

(a) In general

The Secretary, acting through the Director of the Office of Nuclear Energy, Science and Technology, shall conduct an advanced fuel recycling technology research, development, and demonstration program (referred to in this section as the "program") to evaluate proliferation-resistant fuel recycling and transmutation technologies that minimize environmental and public health and safety impacts as an alternative to aqueous reprocessing technologies deployed as of August 8, 2005, in support of evaluation of alternative national strategies for spent nuclear fuel and the Generation IV advanced reactor concepts.

(b) Annual review

The program shall be subject to annual review by the Nuclear Energy Research Advisory Committee of the Department or other independent entity, as appropriate.

(c) International cooperation

In carrying out the program, the Secretary is encouraged to seek opportunities to enhance the progress of the program through international cooperation.

(d) Reports

The Secretary shall submit, as part of the annual budget submission of the Department, a report on the activities of the program.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §953, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 886.)

§16274. University nuclear science and engineering support

(a) In general

The Secretary shall conduct a program to invest in human resources and infrastructure in the nuclear sciences and related fields, including health physics, nuclear engineering, and radiochemistry, consistent with missions of the Department related to civilian nuclear research, development, demonstration, and commercial application.

(b) Requirements

In carrying out the program under this section, the Secretary shall—

(1) conduct a graduate and undergraduate fellowship program to attract new and talented students, which may include fellowships for students to spend time at National Laboratories in the areas of nuclear science, engineering, and health physics with a member of the National Laboratory staff acting as a mentor;

(2) conduct a junior faculty research initiation grant program to assist universities in recruiting and retaining new faculty in the nuclear sciences and engineering by awarding grants to junior faculty for research on issues related to nuclear energy engineering and science;

(3) support fundamental nuclear sciences, engineering, and health physics research through a nuclear engineering education and research program;

(4) encourage collaborative nuclear research among industry, National Laboratories, and universities; and

(5) support communication and outreach related to nuclear science, engineering, and health physics.

(c) University-National Laboratory interactions

The Secretary shall conduct—

(1) a fellowship program for professors at universities to spend sabbaticals at National Laboratories in the areas of nuclear science and technology; and

(2) a visiting scientist program in which National Laboratory staff can spend time in academic nuclear science and engineering departments.

(d) Strengthening university research and training reactors and associated infrastructure

In carrying out the program under this section, the Secretary may support—

(1) converting research reactors from high-enrichment fuels to low-enrichment fuels and upgrading operational instrumentation;

(2) consortia of universities to broaden access to university research reactors;

(3) student training programs, in collaboration with the United States nuclear industry, in relicensing and upgrading reactors, including through the provision of technical assistance; and

(4) reactor improvements as part of a taking into consideration effort that emphasizes research, training, and education, including through the Innovations in Nuclear Infrastructure and Education Program or any similar program.

(e) Operations and maintenance

Funding for a project provided under this section may be used for a portion of the operating and maintenance costs of a research reactor at a university used in the project.

(f) Definition

In this section, the term "junior faculty" means a faculty member who was awarded a doctorate less than 10 years before receipt of an award from the grant program described in subsection (b)(2).

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §954, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 886.)

§16274a. Integrated University Program

(a) The Secretary of Energy, along with the Administrator of the National Nuclear Security Administration and the Chairman of the Nuclear Regulatory Commission, shall establish an Integrated University Program.

(b) For the purposes of carrying out this section, $45,000,000 is authorized to be appropriated in each of fiscal years 2009 to 2019 as follows:

(1) $15,000,000 for the Department of Energy;

(2) $15,000,000 for the Nuclear Regulatory Commission; and

(3) $15,000,000 for the National Nuclear Security Administration.

(c) Of the amounts authorized to carry out this section, $10,000,000 shall be used by each organization to support university research and development in areas relevant to their respective organization's mission, and $5,000,000 shall be used by each organization to support a jointly implemented Nuclear Science and Engineering Grant Program that will support multiyear research projects that do not align with programmatic missions but are critical to maintaining the discipline of nuclear science and engineering.

(Pub. L. 111–8, div. C, title III, §313, Mar. 11, 2009, 123 Stat. 627.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Energy and Water Development and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 2009, and also as part of the Omnibus Appropriations Act, 2009, and not as part of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 which comprises this chapter.

§16275. Department of Energy civilian nuclear infrastructure and facilities

(a) In general

The Secretary shall operate and maintain infrastructure and facilities to support the nuclear energy research, development, demonstration, and commercial application programs, including radiological facilities management, isotope production, and facilities management.

(b) Duties

In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall—

(1) develop an inventory of nuclear science and engineering facilities, equipment, expertise, and other assets at all of the National Laboratories;

(2) develop a prioritized list of nuclear science and engineering plant and equipment improvements needed at each of the National Laboratories;

(3) consider the available facilities and expertise at all National Laboratories and emphasize investments which complement rather than duplicate capabilities; and

(4) develop a timeline and a proposed budget for the completion of deferred maintenance on plant and equipment, with the goal of ensuring that Department programs under this part will be generally recognized to be among the best in the world.

(c) Plan

The Secretary shall develop a comprehensive plan for the facilities at the Idaho National Laboratory, especially taking into account the resources available at other National Laboratories. In developing the plan, the Secretary shall—

(1) evaluate the facilities planning processes utilized by other physical science and engineering research and development institutions, both in the United States and abroad, that are generally recognized as being among the best in the world, and consider how those processes might be adapted toward developing such facilities plan;

(2) avoid duplicating, moving, or transferring nuclear science and engineering facilities, equipment, expertise, and other assets that currently exist at other National Laboratories;

(3) consider the establishment of a national transuranic analytic chemistry laboratory as a user facility at the Idaho National Laboratory;

(4) include a plan to develop, if feasible, the Advanced Test Reactor and Test Reactor Area into a user facility that is more readily accessible to academic and industrial researchers;

(5) consider the establishment of a fast neutron source as a user facility;

(6) consider the establishment of new hot cells and the configuration of hot cells most likely to advance research, development, demonstration, and commercial application in nuclear science and engineering, especially in the context of the condition and availability of these facilities elsewhere in the National Laboratories; and

(7) include a timeline and a proposed budget for the completion of deferred maintenance on plant and equipment.

(d) Transmittal to Congress

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall transmit the plan under subsection (c) to Congress.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §955, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 887.)

§16276. Security of nuclear facilities

The Secretary, acting through the Director of the Office of Nuclear Energy, Science and

Technology, shall conduct a research and development program on cost-effective technologies for increasing—

(1) the safety of nuclear facilities from natural phenomena; and

(2) the security of nuclear facilities from deliberate attacks.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §956, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 888.)

§16277. Alternatives to industrial radioactive sources

(a) Survey

(1) In general

Not later than August 1, 2006, the Secretary shall submit to Congress the results of a survey of industrial applications of large radioactive sources.

(2) Administration

The survey shall—

(A) consider well-logging sources as one class of industrial sources;

(B) include information on current domestic and international Department, Department of Defense, State Department, and commercial programs to manage and dispose of radioactive sources; and

(C) analyze available disposal options for currently deployed or future sources and, if deficiencies are noted for either deployed or future sources, recommend legislative options that Congress may consider to remedy identified deficiencies.

(b) Plan

(1) In general

In conjunction with the survey conducted under subsection (a), the Secretary shall establish a research and development program to develop alternatives to sources described in subsection (a) that reduce safety, environmental, or proliferation risks to either workers using the sources or the public.

(2) Accelerators

Miniaturized particle accelerators for well-logging or other industrial applications and portable accelerators for production of short-lived radioactive materials at an industrial site shall be considered as part of the research and development efforts.

(3) Report

Not later than August 1, 2006, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report describing the details of the program plan.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §957, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 888.)

PART F—FOSSIL ENERGY

§16291. Fossil energy

(a) In general

The Secretary shall carry out research, development, demonstration, and commercial application programs in fossil energy, including activities under this part, with the goal of improving the efficiency, effectiveness, and environmental performance of fossil energy production, upgrading, conversion, and consumption. Such programs take into consideration the following objectives:

(1) Increasing the energy conversion efficiency of all forms of fossil energy through improved

technologies.

(2) Decreasing the cost of all fossil energy production, generation, and delivery.

(3) Promoting diversity of energy supply.

(4) Decreasing the dependence of the United States on foreign energy supplies.

(5) Improving United States energy security.

(6) Decreasing the environmental impact of energy-related activities.

(7) Increasing the export of fossil energy-related equipment, technology, and services from the United States.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out fossil energy research, development, demonstration, and commercial application activities, including activities authorized under this part—

(1) $611,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(2) $626,000,000 for fiscal year 2008; and

(3) $641,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(c) Allocations

From amounts authorized under subsection (a), the following sums are authorized:

(1) For activities under section 16292 of this title—

(A) $367,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(B) $376,000,000 for fiscal year 2008; and

(C) $394,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(2) For activities under section 16294 of this title—

(A) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(B) $25,000,000 for fiscal year 2008; and

(C) $30,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(3) For activities under section 16296 of this title—

(A) $1,500,000 for fiscal year 2007; and

(B) $450,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 and 2009.

(4) For the Office of Arctic Energy under section 7144d of this title $25,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2009.

(d) Extended authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for the Office of Arctic Energy established under section 7144d of this title $25,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2010 through 2012.

(e) Limitations

(1) Uses

None of the funds authorized under this section may be used for Fossil Energy Environmental Restoration or Import/Export Authorization.

(2) Institutions of higher education

Of the funds authorized under subsection (c)(2), not less than 20 percent of the funds appropriated for each fiscal year shall be dedicated to research and development carried out at institutions of higher education.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §961, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 889.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle F (§§961–968) of title IX of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 889, which enacted this part and provisions set out as notes under section 2001 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining, and amended provisions set out as

a note under section 1902 of Title 30. For complete classification of subtitle F to the Code, see Tables.

§16291a. Property interests

That for all programs funded under Fossil Energy appropriations in this and subsequent Acts, the Secretary may vest fee title or other property interests acquired under projects in any entity, including the United States.

(Pub. L. 113–76, div. D, title III, Jan. 17, 2014, 128 Stat. 165.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Energy and Water Development and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 2014, and also as part of the Consolidated Appropriations Act, 2014, and not as part of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 which comprises this chapter.

DEFINITIONS

For definition of "this [Act]", referred to in text, see section 3 of Pub. L. 113–76, set out as a note under section 1 of Title 1, General Provisions.

§16292. Coal and related technologies program

(a) In general

In addition to the programs authorized under subchapter IV, the Secretary shall conduct a program of technology research, development, demonstration, and commercial application for coal and power systems, including programs to facilitate production and generation of coal-based power through—

(1) innovations for existing plants (including mercury removal);
(2) gasification systems;
(3) advanced combustion systems;
(4) turbines for synthesis gas derived from coal;
(5) carbon capture and sequestration research and development;
(6) coal-derived chemicals and transportation fuels;
(7) liquid fuels derived from low rank coal water slurry;
(8) solid fuels and feedstocks;
(9) advanced coal-related research;
(10) advanced separation technologies; and
(11) fuel cells for the operation of synthesis gas derived from coal.

(b) Cost and performance goals

(1) In general

In carrying out programs authorized by this section, during each of calendar years 2008, 2010, 2012, and 2016, and during each fiscal year beginning after September 30, 2021, the Secretary shall identify cost and performance goals for coal-based technologies that would permit the continued cost-competitive use of coal for the production of electricity, chemical feedstocks, and transportation fuels.

(2) Administration

In establishing the cost and performance goals, the Secretary shall—

(A) consider activities and studies undertaken as of August 8, 2005, by industry in cooperation with the Department in support of the identification of the goals;

(B) consult with interested entities, including—

(i) coal producers;
(ii) industries using coal;
(iii) organizations that promote coal and advanced coal technologies;
(iv) environmental organizations;

(v) organizations representing workers; and
(vi) organizations representing consumers;

(C) not later than 120 days after August 8, 2005, publish in the Federal Register proposed draft cost and performance goals for public comments; and

(D) not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, and every 4 years thereafter, submit to Congress a report describing the final cost and performance goals for the technologies that includes—

(i) a list of technical milestones; and

(ii) an explanation of how programs authorized in this section will not duplicate the activities authorized under the Clean Coal Power Initiative authorized under subchapter IV.

(c) Powder River Basin and Fort Union lignite coal mercury removal

(1) In general

In addition to the programs authorized by subsection (a), the Secretary shall establish a program to test and develop technologies to control and remove mercury emissions from subbituminous coal mined in the Powder River Basin, and Fort Union lignite coals, that are used for the generation of electricity.

(2) Efficacy of mercury removal technology

In carrying out the program under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall examine the efficacy of mercury removal technologies on coals described in that paragraph that are blended with other types of coal.

(d) Fuel cells

(1) In general

The Secretary shall conduct a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application on fuel cells for low-cost, high-efficiency, fuel-flexible, modular power systems.

(2) Demonstrations

The demonstrations referred to in paragraph (1) shall include solid oxide fuel cell technology for commercial, residential, and transportation applications, and distributed generation systems, using improved manufacturing production and processes.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §962, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 890.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subchapter IV, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b)(2)(D)(ii), was in the original "title IV", meaning title IV of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 749, which enacted subchapter IV of this chapter and subchapter XIII (§13571 et seq.) of chapter 134 of this title, amended sections 201, 202a, 203, and 207 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining, and enacted provisions set out as notes under section 15801 of this title and section 201 of Title 30. For complete classification of title IV to the Code, see Tables.

§16293. Carbon capture and sequestration research, development, and demonstration program

(a) In general

The Secretary shall carry out a 10-year carbon capture and sequestration research, development, and demonstration program to develop carbon dioxide capture and sequestration technologies related to industrial sources of carbon dioxide for use—

(1) in new coal utilization facilities; and

(2) on the fleet of coal-based units in existence on August 8, 2005.

(b) Objectives

The objectives of the program under subsection (a) shall be—

(1) to develop carbon dioxide capture technologies, including adsorption and absorption techniques and chemical processes, to remove the carbon dioxide from gas streams containing carbon dioxide potentially amenable to sequestration;

(2) to develop technologies that would directly produce concentrated streams of carbon dioxide potentially amenable to sequestration;

(3) to increase the efficiency of the overall system to reduce the quantity of carbon dioxide emissions released from the system per megawatt generated;

(4) in accordance with the carbon dioxide capture program, to promote a robust carbon sequestration program and continue the work of the Department, in conjunction with the private sector, through regional carbon sequestration partnerships; and

(5) to expedite and carry out large-scale testing of carbon sequestration systems in a range of geologic formations that will provide information on the cost and feasibility of deployment of sequestration technologies.

(c) Programmatic activities

(1) Fundamental science and engineering research and development and demonstration supporting carbon capture and sequestration technologies and carbon use activities

(A) In general

The Secretary shall carry out fundamental science and engineering research (including laboratory-scale experiments, numeric modeling, and simulations) to develop and document the performance of new approaches to capture and sequester, or use carbon dioxide to lead to an overall reduction of carbon dioxide emissions.

(B) Program integration

The Secretary shall ensure that fundamental research carried out under this paragraph is appropriately applied to energy technology development activities, the field testing of carbon sequestration, and carbon use activities, including—

(i) development of new or advanced technologies for the capture and sequestration of carbon dioxide;

(ii) development of new or advanced technologies that reduce the cost and increase the efficacy of advanced compression of carbon dioxide required for the sequestration of carbon dioxide;

(iii) modeling and simulation of geologic sequestration field demonstrations;

(iv) quantitative assessment of risks relating to specific field sites for testing of sequestration technologies;

(v) research and development of new and advanced technologies for carbon use, including recycling and reuse of carbon dioxide; and

(vi) research and development of new and advanced technologies for the separation of oxygen from air.

(2) Field validation testing activities

(A) In general

The Secretary shall promote, to the maximum extent practicable, regional carbon sequestration partnerships to conduct geologic sequestration tests involving carbon dioxide injection and monitoring, mitigation, and verification operations in a variety of candidate geologic settings, including—

(i) operating oil and gas fields;

(ii) depleted oil and gas fields;

(iii) unmineable coal seams;

(iv) deep saline formations;

(v) deep geologic systems that may be used as engineered reservoirs to extract economical quantities of heat from geothermal resources of low permeability or porosity; and

(vi) deep geologic systems containing basalt formations.

(B) Objectives

The objectives of tests conducted under this paragraph shall be—

(i) to develop and validate geophysical tools, analysis, and modeling to monitor, predict, and verify carbon dioxide containment;

(ii) to validate modeling of geologic formations;

(iii) to refine sequestration capacity estimated for particular geologic formations;

(iv) to determine the fate of carbon dioxide concurrent with and following injection into geologic formations;

(v) to develop and implement best practices for operations relating to, and monitoring of, carbon dioxide injection and sequestration in geologic formations;

(vi) to assess and ensure the safety of operations related to geologic sequestration of carbon dioxide;

(vii) to allow the Secretary to promulgate policies, procedures, requirements, and guidance to ensure that the objectives of this subparagraph are met in large-scale testing and deployment activities for carbon capture and sequestration that are funded by the Department of Energy; and

(viii) to provide information to States, the Environmental Protection Agency, and other appropriate entities to support development of a regulatory framework for commercial-scale sequestration operations that ensure the protection of human health and the environment.

(3) Large-scale carbon dioxide sequestration testing

(A) In general

The Secretary shall conduct not less than 7 initial large-scale sequestration tests, not including the FutureGen project, for geologic containment of carbon dioxide to collect and validate information on the cost and feasibility of commercial deployment of technologies for geologic containment of carbon dioxide. These 7 tests may include any Regional Partnership projects awarded as of December 19, 2007.

(B) Diversity of formations to be studied

In selecting formations for study under this paragraph, the Secretary shall consider a variety of geologic formations across the United States, and require characterization and modeling of candidate formations, as determined by the Secretary.

(C) Source of carbon dioxide for large-scale sequestration tests

In the process of any acquisition of carbon dioxide for sequestration tests under subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall give preference to sources of carbon dioxide from industrial sources. To the extent feasible, the Secretary shall prefer tests that would facilitate the creation of an integrated system of capture, transportation and sequestration of carbon dioxide. The preference provided for under this subparagraph shall not delay the implementation of the large-scale sequestration tests under this paragraph.

(D) Definition

For purposes of this paragraph, the term "large-scale" means the injection of more than 1,000,000 tons of carbon dioxide from industrial sources annually or a scale that demonstrates the ability to inject and sequester several million metric tons of industrial source carbon dioxide for a large number of years.

(4) Preference in project selection from meritorious proposals

In making competitive awards under this subsection, subject to the requirements of section 16353 of this title, the Secretary shall—

(A) give preference to proposals from partnerships among industrial, academic, and government entities; and

(B) require recipients to provide assurances that all laborers and mechanics employed by

contractors and subcontractors in the construction, repair, or alteration of new or existing facilities performed in order to carry out a demonstration or commercial application activity authorized under this subsection shall be paid wages at rates not less than those prevailing on similar construction in the locality, as determined by the Secretary of Labor in accordance with subchapter IV of chapter 31 of title 40, and the Secretary of Labor shall, with respect to the labor standards in this paragraph, have the authority and functions set forth in Reorganization Plan Numbered 14 of 1950 (15 Fed. Reg. 3176; 5 U.S.C. Appendix) and section 3145 of title 40.

(5) Cost sharing

Activities under this subsection shall be considered research and development activities that are subject to the cost sharing requirements of section 16352(b) of this title.

(6) Program review and report

During fiscal year 2011, the Secretary shall—

(A) conduct a review of programmatic activities carried out under this subsection; and

(B) make recommendations with respect to continuation of the activities.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

(1) $240,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;

(2) $240,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;

(3) $240,000,000 for fiscal year 2010;

(4) $240,000,000 for fiscal year 2011; and

(5) $240,000,000 for fiscal year 2012.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §963, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 891; Pub. L. 110–140, title VII, §702(a), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1704.)

AMENDMENTS

2007—Pub. L. 110–140, §702(a)(1), substituted "and sequestration research, development, and demonstration" for "research and development" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–140, §702(a)(2), in introductory provisions, substituted "and sequestration research, development, and demonstration" for "research and development" and "capture and sequestration technologies related to industrial sources of carbon dioxide" for "capture technologies on combustion-based systems".

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 110–140, §702(a)(3), added par. (5).

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 110–140, §702(a)(4), added subsecs. (c) and (d) and struck out former subsec. (c). Text of former subsec. (c) read as follows: "From amounts authorized under section 16291(b) of this title, the following sums are authorized for activities described in subsection (a)(2):

"(1) $25,000,000 for fiscal year 2006;

"(2) $30,000,000 for fiscal year 2007; and

"(3) $35,000,000 for fiscal year 2008."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§16294. Research and development for coal mining technologies

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall carry out a program for research and development on coal mining technologies.

(b) Cooperation

In carrying out the program, the Secretary shall cooperate with appropriate Federal agencies, coal producers, trade associations, equipment manufacturers, institutions of higher education with mining

engineering departments, and other relevant entities.

(c) Program

The research and development activities carried out under this section shall—

(1) be guided by the mining research and development priorities identified by the Mining Industry of the Future Program and in the recommendations from relevant reports of the National Academy of Sciences on mining technologies;

(2) include activities exploring minimization of contaminants in mined coal that contribute to environmental concerns including development and demonstration of electromagnetic wave imaging ahead of mining operations;

(3) develop and demonstrate coal bed electromagnetic wave imaging, spectroscopic reservoir analysis technology, and techniques for horizontal drilling in order to—

(A) identify areas of high coal gas content;

(B) increase methane recovery efficiency;

(C) prevent spoilage of domestic coal reserves; and

(D) minimize water disposal associated with methane extraction; and

(4) expand mining research capabilities at institutions of higher education.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §964, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 892.)

§16295. Oil and gas research programs

(a) In general

The Secretary shall conduct a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of oil and gas, including—

(1) exploration and production;

(2) gas hydrates;

(3) reservoir life and extension;

(4) transportation and distribution infrastructure;

(5) ultraclean fuels;

(6) heavy oil, oil shale, and tar sands; and

(7) related environmental research.

(b) Objectives

The objectives of this program shall include advancing the science and technology available to domestic petroleum producers, particularly independent operators, to minimize the economic dislocation caused by the decline of domestic supplies of oil and natural gas resources.

(c) Natural gas and oil deposits report

Not later than 2 years after August 8, 2005, and every 2 years thereafter, the Secretary of the Interior, in consultation with other appropriate Federal agencies, shall submit to Congress a report on the latest estimates of natural gas and oil reserves, reserves growth, and undiscovered resources in Federal and State waters off the coast of Louisiana, Texas, Alabama, and Mississippi.

(d) Integrated clean power and energy research

(1) Establishment of center

The Secretary shall establish a national center or consortium of excellence in clean energy and power generation, using the resources of the Clean Power and Energy Research Consortium in existence on August 8, 2005, to address the critical dependence of the United States on energy and the need to reduce emissions.

(2) Focus areas

The center or consortium shall conduct a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application on integrating the following 6 focus areas:

(A) Efficiency and reliability of gas turbines for power generation.
(B) Reduction in emissions from power generation.
(C) Promotion of energy conservation issues.
(D) Effectively using alternative fuels and renewable energy.
(E) Development of advanced materials technology for oil and gas exploration and use in harsh environments.
(F) Education on energy and power generation issues.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §965, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 892.)

§16296. Low-volume oil and gas reservoir research program

(a) Definition of GIS

In this section, the term "GIS" means geographic information systems technology that facilitates the organization and management of data with a geographic component.

(b) Program

The Secretary shall establish a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application to maximize the productive capacity of marginal wells and reservoirs.

(c) Data collection

Under the program, the Secretary shall collect data on—
(1) the status and location of marginal wells and oil and gas reservoirs;
(2) the production capacity of marginal wells and oil and gas reservoirs;
(3) the location of low-pressure gathering facilities and pipelines; and
(4) the quantity of natural gas vented or flared in association with crude oil production.

(d) Analysis

Under the program, the Secretary shall—
(1) estimate the remaining producible reserves based on variable pipeline pressures; and
(2) recommend measures that will enable the continued production of those resources.

(e) Study

(1) In general

The Secretary may award a grant to an organization of States that contain significant numbers of marginal oil and natural gas wells to conduct an annual study of low-volume natural gas reservoirs.

(2) Organization with no GIS capabilities

If an organization receiving a grant under paragraph (1) does not have GIS capabilities, the organization shall contract with an institution of higher education with GIS capabilities.

(3) State geologists

The organization receiving a grant under paragraph (1) shall collaborate with the State geologist of each State being studied.

(f) Public information

The Secretary may use the data collected and analyzed under this section to produce maps and literature to disseminate to States to promote conservation of natural gas reserves.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §966, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 893.)

§16297. Complex Well Technology Testing Facility

The Secretary, in coordination with industry leaders in extended research drilling technology, shall establish a Complex Well Technology Testing Facility at the Rocky Mountain Oilfield Testing

Center to increase the range of extended drilling technologies.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §967, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 894.)

PART G—SCIENCE

§16311. Science

(a) In general

The Secretary shall conduct, through the Office of Science, programs of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application in high energy physics, nuclear physics, biological and environmental research, basic energy sciences, advanced scientific computing research, and fusion energy sciences, including activities described in this part. The programs shall include support for facilities and infrastructure, education, outreach, information, analysis, and coordination activities.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out research, development, demonstration, and commercial application activities of the Office of Science, including activities authorized under this part (including the amounts authorized under the amendment made by section 976(b) [1] and including basic energy sciences, advanced scientific and computing research, biological and environmental research, fusion energy sciences, high energy physics, nuclear physics, research analysis, and infrastructure support)—

(1) $4,153,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;
(2) $4,586,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;
(3) $5,200,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;
(4) $5,814,000,000 for fiscal year 2010;
(5) $5,247,000,000 for fiscal year 2011;
(6) $5,614,000,000 for fiscal year 2012; and
(7) $6,007,000,000 for fiscal year 2013.

(c) Allocations

From amounts authorized under subsection (b), the following sums are authorized:

(1) For activities under the Fusion Energy Sciences program (including activities under section 16312 of this title)—

(A) $355,500,000 for fiscal year 2007;
(B) $369,500,000 for fiscal year 2008;
(C) $384,800,000 for fiscal year 2009; and
(D) in addition to the amounts authorized under subparagraphs (A), (B), and (C), such sums as may be necessary for ITER construction, consistent with the limitations of section 16312(c)(5) of this title.

(2) For activities under the catalysis research program under section 16313 of this title—

(A) $36,500,000 for fiscal year 2007;
(B) $38,200,000 for fiscal year 2008; and
(C) such sums as may be necessary for fiscal year 2009.

(3) For activities under the Systems Biology Program under section 16317 of this title such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2009.

(4) For activities under the Energy and Water Supplies program under section 16319 of this title, $30,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2009.

(5) For the energy research fellowships programs under section 16324 of this title, $40,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2009.

(6) For the advanced scientific computing activities under section 976— [1]
(A) $270,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;
(B) $350,000,000 for fiscal year 2008; and
(C) $375,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(7) For the science and engineering education pilot program under section 16323 of this title—
(A) $4,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 and 2008; and
(B) $8,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(d) Integrated bioenergy research and development

In addition to amounts otherwise authorized by this section, there are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for integrated bioenergy research and development programs, projects, and activities, $49,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2005 through 2009. Activities funded under this subsection shall be coordinated with ongoing related programs of other Federal agencies, including the Plant Genome Program of the National Science Foundation. Of the funds authorized under this subsection, at least $5,000,000 for each fiscal year shall be for training and education targeted to minority and socially disadvantaged farmers and ranchers.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §971, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 898; Pub. L. 110–69, title V, §5007, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 617; Pub. L. 111–358, title IX, §903, Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4045.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle G (§§971–984A) of title IX of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 898, which enacted this part and amended section 5523 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of subtitle G to the Code, see Tables.

Section 976, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (c)(6), is section 976 of Pub. L. 109–58. Subsection (a) of section 976 is classified to section 16316 of this title and subsection (b) of section 976 amended section 5523 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade.

AMENDMENTS

2011—Subsec. (b)(5) to (7). Pub. L. 111–358 added pars. (5) to (7).
2007—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 110–69 added par. (4).

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§16312. Fusion energy sciences program

(a) Declaration of policy

It shall be the policy of the United States to conduct research, development, demonstration, and commercial applications to provide for the scientific, engineering, and commercial infrastructure necessary to ensure that the United States is competitive with other countries in providing fusion energy for its own needs and the needs of other countries, including by demonstrating electric power or hydrogen production for the United States energy grid using fusion energy at the earliest date.

(b) Planning

(1) In general

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a plan (with proposed cost estimates, budgets, and lists of potential international partners) for the implementation of the policy described in subsection (a) in a manner that ensures that—

(A) existing fusion research facilities are more fully used;

(B) fusion science, technology, theory, advanced computation, modeling, and simulation are strengthened;

(C) new magnetic and inertial fusion research and development facilities are selected based

on scientific innovation and cost effectiveness, and the potential of the facilities to advance the goal of practical fusion energy at the earliest date practicable;

(D) facilities that are selected are funded at a cost-effective rate;

(E) communication of scientific results and methods between the fusion energy science community and the broader scientific and technology communities is improved;

(F) inertial confinement fusion facilities are used to the extent practicable for the purpose of inertial fusion energy research and development;

(G) attractive alternative inertial and magnetic fusion energy approaches are more fully explored; and

(H) to the extent practicable, the recommendations of the Fusion Energy Sciences Advisory Committee in the report on workforce planning, dated March 2004, are carried out, including periodic reassessment of program needs.

(2) Costs and schedules

The plan shall also address the status of and, to the extent practicable, costs and schedules for—

(A) the design and implementation of international or national facilities for the testing of fusion materials; and

(B) the design and implementation of international or national facilities for the testing and development of key fusion technologies.

(c) United States participation in ITER

(1) Definitions

In this subsection:

(A) Construction

(i) In general

The term "construction" means—

(I) the physical construction of the ITER facility; and

(II) the physical construction, purchase, or manufacture of equipment or components that are specifically designed for the ITER facility.

(ii) Exclusions

The term "construction" does not include the design of the facility, equipment, or components.

(B) ITER

The term "ITER" means the international burning plasma fusion research project in which the President announced United States participation on January 30, 2003, or any similar international project.

(2) Participation

The United States may participate in the ITER only in accordance with this subsection.

(3) Agreement

(A) In general

The Secretary may negotiate an agreement for United States participation in the ITER.

(B) Contents

Any agreement for United States participation in the ITER shall, at a minimum—

(i) clearly define the United States financial contribution to construction and operating costs, as well as any other costs associated with a project;

(ii) ensure that the share of high-technology components of the ITER manufactured in the United States is at least proportionate to the United States financial contribution to the ITER;

(iii) ensure that the United States will not be financially responsible for cost overruns in components manufactured in other ITER participating countries;

(iv) guarantee the United States full access to all data generated by the ITER;

(v) enable United States researchers to propose and carry out an equitable share of the experiments at the ITER;

(vi) provide the United States with a role in all collective decisionmaking related to the ITER; and

(vii) describe the process for discontinuing or decommissioning the ITER and any United States role in that process.

(4) Plan

(A) Development

The Secretary, in consultation with the Fusion Energy Sciences Advisory Committee, shall develop a plan for the participation of United States scientists in the ITER that shall include—

(i) the United States research agenda for the ITER;

(ii) methods to evaluate whether the ITER is promoting progress toward making fusion a reliable and affordable source of power; and

(iii) a description of how work at the ITER will relate to other elements of the United States fusion program.

(B) Review

The Secretary shall request a review of the plan by the National Academy of Sciences.

(5) Limitation

No Federal funds shall be expended for the construction of the ITER until the Secretary has submitted to Congress—

(A) the agreement negotiated in accordance with paragraph (3) and 120 days have elapsed since that submission;

(B) a report describing the management structure of the ITER and providing a fixed dollar estimate of the cost of United States participation in the construction of the ITER, and 120 days have elapsed since that submission;

(C) a report describing how United States participation in the ITER will be funded without reducing funding for other programs in the Office of Science (including other fusion programs), and 60 days have elapsed since that submission; and

(D) the plan required by paragraph (4) (but not the National Academy of Sciences review of that plan), and 60 days have elapsed since that submission.

(6) Alternative to ITER

(A) In general

If at any time during the negotiations on the ITER, the Secretary determines that construction and operation of the ITER is unlikely or infeasible, the Secretary shall submit to Congress, along with the budget request of the President submitted to Congress for the following fiscal year, a plan for implementing a domestic burning plasma experiment such as the Fusion Ignition Research Experiment, including costs and schedules for the plan.

(B) Administration

The Secretary shall—

(i) refine the plan in full consultation with the Fusion Energy Sciences Advisory Committee; and

(ii) transmit the plan to the National Academy of Sciences for review.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §972, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 899.)

§16313. Catalysis research program

(a) Establishment

The Secretary, acting through the Office of Science, shall support a program of research and development in catalysis science consistent with the statutory authorities of the Department related to research and development.

(b) Components

The program shall include efforts to—

(1) enable catalyst design using combinations of experimental and mechanistic methodologies coupled with computational modeling of catalytic reactions at the molecular level;

(2) develop techniques for high throughput synthesis, assay, and characterization at nanometer and subnanometer scales in-situ under actual operating conditions;

(3) synthesize catalysts with specific site architectures;

(4) conduct research on the use of precious metals for catalysis; and

(5) translate molecular understanding to the design of catalytic compounds.

(c) Duties of the Office of Science

In carrying out the program, the Director of the Office of Science shall—

(1) support both individual investigators and multidisciplinary teams of investigators to pioneer new approaches in catalytic design;

(2) develop, plan, construct, acquire, share, or operate special equipment or facilities for the use of investigators in collaboration with national user facilities, such as nanoscience and engineering centers;

(3) support technology transfer activities to benefit industry and other users of catalysis science and engineering; and

(4) coordinate research and development activities with industry and other Federal agencies.

(d) Assessment

Not later than 3 years after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall enter into an arrangement with the National Academy of Sciences to—

(1) review the catalysis program to measure—

(A) gains made in the fundamental science of catalysis; and

(B) progress towards developing new fuels for energy production and material fabrication processes; and

(2) submit to Congress a report describing the results of the review.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §973, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 902.)

§16314. Hydrogen

(a) In general

The Secretary shall conduct a program of fundamental research and development in support of programs authorized under subchapter VIII.

(b) Methods

The program shall include support for methods of generating hydrogen without the use of natural gas.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §974, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 903.)

§16315. Solid state lighting

The Secretary shall conduct a program of fundamental research on solid state lighting in support of the Next Generation Lighting Initiative carried out under section 16192 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §975, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 903.)

§16316. Advanced scientific computing research and development program

(1) In general

The Secretary shall conduct an advanced scientific computing research and development program that includes activities related to applied mathematics and activities authorized by the Department of Energy High-End Computing Revitalization Act of 2004 (15 U.S.C. 5541 et seq.).

(2) Goal

The Secretary shall carry out the program with the goal of supporting departmental missions, and providing the high-performance computational, networking, advanced visualization technologies, and workforce resources, that are required for world leadership in science.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §976(a), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 903.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Department of Energy High-End Computing Revitalization Act of 2004, referred to in par. (1), is Pub. L. 108–423, Nov. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2400, which is classified principally to subchapter III (§5541 et seq.) of chapter 81 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5501 of Title 15 and Tables.

§16317. Systems biology program

(a) Program

(1) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a research, development, and demonstration program in microbial and plant systems biology, protein science, computational biology, and environmental science to support the energy, national security, and environmental missions of the Department.

(2) Grants

The program shall support individual researchers and multidisciplinary teams of researchers through competitive, merit-reviewed grants.

(3) Consultation

In carrying out the program, the Secretary shall consult with other Federal agencies that conduct genetic and protein research.

(b) Goals

The program shall have the goal of developing technologies and methods based on the biological functions of genomes, microbes, and plants that—

(1) can facilitate the production of fuels, including hydrogen in sustainable production systems that reduce greenhouse gas emissions;

(2) convert carbon dioxide to organic carbon;

(3) detoxify soils and water, including at facilities of the Department, contaminated with heavy metals and radiological materials;

(4) develop cellulosic and other feedstocks that are less resource and land intensive and that promote sustainable use of resources, including soil, water, energy, forests, and land, and ensure protection of air, water, and soil quality; and

(5) address other Department missions as identified by the Secretary.

(c) Plan

(1) Development of plan

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall prepare and transmit to Congress a research plan describing how the program authorized pursuant to this section will be undertaken to accomplish the program goals established in subsection (b).

(2) Review of plan

The Secretary shall contract with the National Academy of Sciences to review the research plan developed under this subsection. The Secretary shall transmit the review to Congress not later than 18 months after transmittal of the research plan under paragraph (1), along with the Secretary's response to the recommendations contained in the review.

(d) User facilities and ancillary equipment

Within the funds authorized to be appropriated pursuant to this part, amounts shall be available for projects to develop, plan, construct, acquire, or operate special equipment, instrumentation, or facilities, including user facilities at National Laboratories, for researchers conducting research, development, demonstration, and commercial application in systems biology and proteomics and associated biological disciplines.

(e) Prohibition on biomedical and human cell and human subject research

(1) No biomedical research

In carrying out the program under this section, the Secretary shall not conduct biomedical research.

(2) Limitations

Nothing in this section shall authorize the Secretary to conduct any research or demonstrations—

(A) on human cells or human subjects; or

(B) designed to have direct application with respect to human cells or human subjects.

(f) Bioenergy research centers

(1) Establishment of centers

In carrying out the program under subsection (a), the Secretary shall establish at least 7 bioenergy research centers, which may be of varying size.

(2) Geographic distribution

The Secretary shall establish at least 1 bioenergy research center in each Petroleum Administration for Defense District or Subdistrict of a Petroleum Administration for Defense District.

(3) Goals

The goals of the centers established under this subsection shall be to accelerate basic transformational research and development of biofuels, including biological processes.

(4) Selection and duration

(A) In general

A center under this subsection shall be selected on a competitive basis for a period of 5 years.

(B) Reapplication

After the end of the period described in subparagraph (A), a grantee may reapply for selection on a competitive basis.

(5) Inclusion

A center that is in existence on December 19, 2007—

(A) shall be counted towards the requirement for establishment of at least 7 bioenergy research centers; and

(B) may continue to receive support for a period of 5 years beginning on the date of establishment of the center.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §977, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 903; Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §§232(a), 233, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1537.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsec. (d), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle G (§§971–984A) of title IX of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 898, which enacted this part and amended section 5523 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of subtitle G to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2007—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 110–140, §232(a)(1), substituted "computational biology, and environmental science" for "and computational biology".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 110–140, §232(a)(2)(A), inserted "in sustainable production systems that reduce greenhouse gas emissions" after "hydrogen".

Subsec. (b)(4), (5). Pub. L. 110–140, §232(a)(2)(B)–(D), added par. (4) and redesignated former par. (4) as (5).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 110–140, §233, added subsec. (f).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§16318. Fission and fusion energy materials research program

(a) In general

Along with the budget request of the President submitted to Congress for fiscal year 2007, the Secretary shall establish a research and development program on material science issues presented by advanced fission reactors and the fusion energy program of the Department.

(b) Administration

In carrying out the program, the Secretary shall develop—

(1) a catalog of material properties required for applications described in subsection (a);

(2) theoretical models for materials possessing the required properties;

(3) benchmark models against existing data; and

(4) a roadmap to guide further research and development in the area covered by the program.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §978, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 904.)

§16319. Energy and water supplies

(a) In general

The Secretary shall carry out a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application to—

(1) address energy-related issues associated with provision of adequate water supplies, optimal management, and efficient use of water;

(2) address water-related issues associated with the provision of adequate supplies, optimal management, and efficient use of energy; and

(3) assess the effectiveness of existing programs within the Department and other Federal agencies to address these energy and water related issues.

(b) Program elements

The program under this section shall include—

(1) arsenic treatment;

(2) desalination; and

(3) planning, analysis, and modeling of energy and water supply and demand.

(c) Collaboration

In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall consult with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, the Secretary of the Interior, the Chief Engineer of the Army Corps of Engineers, the Secretary of Commerce, the Secretary of Defense, and other Federal

agencies as appropriate.

(d) Facilities

The Secretary may utilize all existing facilities within the Department and may design and construct additional facilities as needed to carry out the purposes of this program.

(e) Advisory committee

The Secretary shall establish or utilize an advisory committee to provide independent advice and review of the program.

(f) Reports

Not later than 2 years after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report on the assessment described in subsection (b) and recommendations for future actions.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §979, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 905.)

§16320. Spallation Neutron Source

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) SING

The term "SING" means the Spallation Neutron Source Instruments Next Generation major item of equipment.

(2) SNS power upgrade

The term "SNS power upgrade" means the Spallation Neutron Source power upgrade described in the 20-year facilities plan of the Office of Science of the Department.

(3) SNS second target station

The term "SNS second target station" means the Spallation Neutron Source second target station described in the 20-year facilities plan of the Office of Science of the Department.

(4) Spallation Neutron Source Facility

The terms "Spallation Neutron Source Facility" and "Facility" mean the completed Spallation Neutron Source scientific user facility located at Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, Tennessee.

(5) Spallation Neutron Source Project

The terms "Spallation Neutron Source Project" and "Project" means Department Project 99–E–334, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, Tennessee.

(b) Spallation Neutron Source Project

(1) In general

The Secretary shall submit to Congress, as part of the annual budget request of the President submitted to Congress, a report on progress on the Spallation Neutron Source Project.

(2) Contents

The report shall include for the Project—

(A) a description of the achievement of milestones;

(B) a comparison of actual costs to estimated costs; and

(C) any changes in estimated Project costs or schedule.

(c) Spallation Neutron Source Facility plan

(1) In general

The Secretary shall develop an operational plan for the Spallation Neutron Source Facility that ensures that the Facility is employed to the full capability of the Facility in support of the study of

advanced materials, nanoscience, and other missions of the Office of Science of the Department.

(2) Plan

The operational plan shall—

(A) include a plan for the operation of an effective scientific user program that—

(i) is based on peer review of proposals submitted for use of the Facility;

(ii) includes scientific and technical support to ensure that external users, including researchers based at institutions of higher education, are able to make full use of a variety of high quality scientific instruments; and

(iii) phases in systems upgrades to ensure that the Facility remains at the forefront of international scientific endeavors in the field of the Facility throughout the operating life of the Facility;

(B) include an ongoing program to develop new instruments that builds on the high performance neutron source and that allows neutron scattering techniques to be applied to a growing range of scientific problems and disciplines; and

(C) address the status of and, to the maximum extent practicable, costs and schedules for—

(i) full user mode operations of the Facility;

(ii) instrumentation built at the Facility during the operating phase through full use of the experimental hall, including the SING;

(iii) the SNS power upgrade; and

(iv) the SNS second target station.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

(1) Spallation Neutron Source Project

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out the Spallation Neutron Source Project for the lifetime of the Project $1,411,700,000 for total project costs, of which—

(A) $1,192,700,000 shall be used for the costs of construction; and

(B) $219,000,000 shall be used for other Project costs.

(2) Spallation Neutron Source Facility

(A) In general

Except as provided in subparagraph (B), there is authorized to be appropriated for the Spallation Neutron Source Facility for—

(i) the SING, $75,000,000 for each of fiscal year 2007 through 2009; and

(ii) the SNS power upgrade, $160,000,000, to remain available until expended.

(B) Insufficient stockpiles of heavy water

If stockpiles of heavy water of the Department are insufficient to meet the needs of the Facility, there is authorized to be appropriated for the Facility $12,000,000 for fiscal year 2007.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §980, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 905.)

§16321. Rare Isotope Accelerator

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall construct and operate a Rare Isotope Accelerator. The Secretary shall commence construction no later than September 30, 2008.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary such sums as may be necessary to carry out this section. The Secretary shall not spend more than $1,100,000,000 in Federal funds for all activities associated with the Rare Isotope Accelerator, prior to operation of the Accelerator.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §981, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 907.)

§16322. Office of Scientific and Technical Information

The Secretary, through the Office of Scientific and Technical Information, shall maintain within the Department publicly available collections of scientific and technical information resulting from research, development, demonstration, and commercial applications activities supported by the Department.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §982, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 907.)

§16323. Science and engineering education pilot program

(a) Establishment of pilot program

The Secretary shall award a grant to a Southeastern United States consortium of major research universities that currently advances science and education by partnering with National Laboratories, to establish a regional pilot program of its SEEK–16 program for enhancing scientific, technological, engineering, and mathematical literacy, creativity, and decision-making. The consortium shall include leading research universities, one or more universities that train substantial numbers of elementary and secondary school teachers, and (where appropriate) National Laboratories.

(b) Program elements

The regional pilot program shall include—

(1) expanding strategic, formal partnerships among universities with strength in research, universities that train substantial numbers of elementary and secondary school teachers, and the private sector;

(2) combining Department expertise with one or more National Aeronautics and Space Administration Educator Resource Centers;

(3) developing programs to permit current and future teachers to participate in ongoing research projects at National Laboratories and research universities and to adapt lessons learned to the classroom;

(4) designing and implementing course work;

(5) designing and implementing a strategy for measuring and assessing progress under the program; and

(6) developing models for transferring knowledge gained under the pilot program to other institutions and areas of the United States.

(c) Categorization

A grant under this section shall be considered an authorized activity under section 7381b of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §983, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 907; Pub. L. 113–188, title VI, §601(a), Nov. 26, 2014, 128 Stat. 2019.)

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 113–188 struck out subsec. (d). Text read as follows: "No later than 2 years after the award of the grant, the Secretary shall transmit to Congress a report outlining lessons learned and, if determined appropriate by the Secretary, containing a plan for expanding the program throughout the United States."

§16324. Energy research fellowships

(a) Postdoctoral fellowship program

The Secretary shall establish a program under which the Secretary provides fellowships to encourage outstanding young scientists and engineers to pursue postdoctoral research appointments

in energy research and development at institutions of higher education of their choice.

(b) Senior research fellowships

(1) In general

The Secretary shall establish a program under which the Secretary provides fellowships to allow outstanding senior researchers and their research groups in energy research and development to explore research and development topics of their choosing for a period of not less than 3 years, to be determined by the Secretary.

(2) Consideration

In providing a fellowship under the program described in paragraph (1), the Secretary shall consider—

(A) the past scientific or technical accomplishment of a senior researcher; and

(B) the potential for continued accomplishment by the researcher during the period of the fellowship.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §984, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 908.)

§16325. Science and Technology Scholarship Program

(a) In general

The Secretary is authorized to establish a Science and Technology Scholarship Program to award scholarships to individuals that is designed to recruit and prepare students for careers in the Department and National Laboratories.

(b) Service requirement

The Secretary may require that an individual receiving a scholarship under this section serve as a full-time employee of the Department or a National Laboratory for a fixed period in return for receiving the scholarship.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §984A, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 908.)

PART H—INTERNATIONAL COOPERATION

§16341. Western Hemisphere energy cooperation

(a) Program

The Secretary shall carry out a program to promote cooperation on energy issues with countries of the Western Hemisphere.

(b) Activities

Under the program, the Secretary shall fund activities to work with countries of the Western Hemisphere to—

(1) increase the production of energy supplies;

(2) improve energy efficiency; and

(3) assist in the development and transfer of energy supply and efficiency technologies that would have a beneficial impact on world energy markets.

(c) Participation by institutions of higher education

To the extent practicable, the Secretary shall carry out the program under this section with the participation of institutions of higher education so as to take advantage of the acceptance of institutions of higher education by countries of the Western Hemisphere as sources of unbiased

technical and policy expertise when assisting the Secretary in—

(1) evaluating new technologies;

(2) resolving technical issues;

(3) working with those countries in the development of new policies; and

(4) training policymakers, particularly in the case of institutions of higher education that involve the participation of minority students, such as—

(A) Hispanic-serving institutions; and

(B) part B institutions.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

(1) $10,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(2) $13,000,000 for fiscal year 2008; and

(3) $16,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §985, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 908.)

§16342. International energy training

(a) In general

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Commerce, the Secretary of the Interior, and Secretary of State, and the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, shall coordinate training and outreach efforts for international commercial energy markets in countries with developing and restructuring economies.

(b) Components

The training and outreach efforts referred to in subsection (a) may include—

(1) production-related fiscal regimes;

(2) grid and network issues;

(3) energy user and demand side response;

(4) international trade of energy; and

(5) international transportation of energy.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $1,500,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §986A, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 910.)

PART I—RESEARCH ADMINISTRATION AND OPERATIONS

§16351. Availability of funds

Funds authorized to be appropriated to the Department under this Act or an amendment made by this Act shall remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §987, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 910.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 594, as amended, known as the Energy Policy Act of 2005, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and repealed numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

§16352. Cost sharing

(a) Applicability

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, in carrying out a research, development, demonstration, or commercial application program or activity that is initiated after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall require cost-sharing in accordance with this section.

(b) Research and development

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraphs (2) and (3) and subsection (f), the Secretary shall require not less than 20 percent of the cost of a research or development activity described in subsection (a) to be provided by a non-Federal source.

(2) Exclusion

Paragraph (1) shall not apply to a research or development activity described in subsection (a) that is of a basic or fundamental nature, as determined by the appropriate officer of the Department.

(3) Reduction

The Secretary may reduce or eliminate the requirement of paragraph (1) for a research and development activity of an applied nature if the Secretary determines that the reduction is necessary and appropriate.

(c) Demonstration and commercial application

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (2) and subsection (f), the Secretary shall require that not less than 50 percent of the cost of a demonstration or commercial application activity described in subsection (a) to [1] be provided by a non-Federal source.

(2) Reduction of non-Federal share

The Secretary may reduce the non-Federal share required under paragraph (1) if the Secretary determines the reduction to be necessary and appropriate, taking into consideration any technological risk relating to the activity.

(d) Calculation of amount

In calculating the amount of a non-Federal contribution under this section, the Secretary—

(1) may include allowable costs in accordance with the applicable cost principles, including—

(A) cash;

(B) personnel costs;

(C) the value of a service, other resource, or third party in-kind contribution determined in accordance with the applicable circular of the Office of Management and Budget;

(D) indirect costs or facilities and administrative costs; or

(E) any funds received under the power program of the Tennessee Valley Authority (except to the extent that such funds are made available under an annual appropriation Act); and

(2) shall not include—

(A) revenues or royalties from the prospective operation of an activity beyond the time considered in the award;

(B) proceeds from the prospective sale of an asset of an activity; or

(C) other appropriated Federal funds.

(e) Repayment of Federal share

The Secretary shall not require repayment of the Federal share of a cost-shared activity under this section as a condition of making an award.

(f) Exclusions

This section shall not apply to—

(1) a cooperative research and development agreement under the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980 (15 U.S.C. 3701 et seq.);

(2) a fee charged for the use of a Department facility; or

(3) an award under—

(A) the small business innovation research program under section 638 of title 15; or

(B) the small business technology transfer program under that section.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §988, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 910.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (f)(1), is Pub. L. 96–480, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2311, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 63 (§3701 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3701 of Title 15 and Tables.

[1] So in original. The word "to" probably should not appear.

§16353. Merit review of proposals

(a) Awards

Awards of funds authorized under this Act or an amendment made by this Act shall be made only after an impartial review of the scientific and technical merit of the proposals for the awards has been carried out by or for the Department.

(b) Competition

Competitive awards under this Act shall involve competitions open to all qualified entities within one or more of the following categories:

(1) Institutions of higher education.

(2) National Laboratories.

(3) Nonprofit and for-profit private entities.

(4) State and local governments.

(5) Consortia of entities described in paragraphs (1) through (4).

(c) Sense of Congress

It is the sense of Congress that research, development, demonstration, and commercial application activities carried out by the Department should be awarded using competitive procedures, to the maximum extent practicable.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §989, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 911.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), is Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 594, as amended, known as the Energy Policy Act of 2005, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and repealed numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

§16354. External technical review of departmental programs

(a) National energy research and development advisory boards

(1) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish one or more advisory boards to review research, development, demonstration, and commercial application programs of the Department in energy efficiency,

renewable energy, nuclear energy, and fossil energy.

(2) Alternatives

The Secretary may—

(A) designate an existing advisory board within the Department to fulfill the responsibilities of an advisory board under this section; and

(B) enter into appropriate arrangements with the National Academy of Sciences to establish such an advisory board.

(b) Use of existing committees

The Secretary shall continue to use the scientific program advisory committees chartered under the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.) by the Office of Science to oversee research and development programs under that Office.

(c) Membership

Each advisory board under this section shall consist of persons with appropriate expertise representing a diverse range of interests.

(d) Meetings and goals

(1) Meetings

Each advisory board under this section shall meet at least semiannually to review and advise on the progress made by the respective one or more research, development, demonstration, and commercial application programs.

(2) Goals

The advisory board shall review the measurable cost and performance-based goals for the programs as established under section 16181 of this title, and the progress on meeting the goals.

(e) Periodic reviews and assessments

(1) In general

The Secretary shall enter into appropriate arrangements with the National Academy of Sciences to conduct periodic reviews and assessments of—

(A) the research, development, demonstration, and commercial application programs authorized by this Act and amendments made by this Act;

(B) the measurable cost and performance-based goals for the programs as established under section 16181 of this title, if any; and

(C) the progress on meeting the goals.

(2) Timing

The reviews and assessments shall be conducted every 5 years or more often as the Secretary considers necessary.

(3) Reports

The Secretary shall submit to Congress reports describing the results of all the reviews and assessments.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §990, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 912.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(1)(A), is Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 594, as amended, known as the Energy Policy Act of 2005, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and repealed numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

§16355. National Laboratory designation

After August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall not designate a facility that is not listed in section 15801(3) of this title as a National Laboratory.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §991, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 913.)

§16356. Report on equal employment opportunity practices

Not later than 12 months after August 8, 2005, and biennially thereafter, the Secretary shall transmit to Congress a report on the equal employment opportunity practices at National Laboratories. Such report shall include—

(1) a thorough review of each National Laboratory contractor's equal employment opportunity policies, including promotion to management and professional positions and pay raises;

(2) a statistical report on complaints and their disposition in the National Laboratories;

(3) a description of how equal employment opportunity practices at the National Laboratories are treated in the contract and in calculating award fees for each contractor;

(4) a summary of disciplinary actions and their disposition by either the Department or the relevant contractors for each National Laboratory;

(5) a summary of outreach efforts to attract women and minorities to the National Laboratories;

(6) a summary of efforts to retain women and minorities in the National Laboratories; and

(7) a summary of collaboration efforts with the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs to improve equal employment opportunity practices at the National Laboratories.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §992, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 913.)

§16357. Strategy and plan for science and energy facilities and infrastructure

(a) Facility and infrastructure policy

(1) In general

The Secretary shall develop and implement a strategy for facilities and infrastructure supported primarily from the Office of Science, the Office of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy, the Office of Fossil Energy, or the Office of Nuclear Energy, Science and Technology Programs at all National Laboratories and single-purpose research facilities.

(2) Strategy

The strategy shall provide cost-effective means for—

(A) maintaining existing facilities and infrastructure;

(B) closing unneeded facilities;

(C) making facility modifications; and

(D) building new facilities.

(b) Report

(1) In general

The Secretary shall prepare and submit, along with the budget request of the President submitted to Congress for fiscal year 2008, a report describing the strategy developed under subsection (a).

(2) Contents

For each National Laboratory and single-purpose research facility that is primarily used for science and energy research, the report shall contain—

(A) the current priority list of proposed facilities and infrastructure projects, including cost and schedule requirements;

(B) a current 10-year plan that demonstrates the reconfiguration of its facilities and

infrastructure to meet its missions and to address its long-term operational costs and return on investment;

(C) the total current budget for all facilities and infrastructure funding; and

(D) the current status of each facility and infrastructure project compared to the original baseline cost, schedule, and scope.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §993, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 913.)

§16358. Strategic research portfolio analysis and coordination plan

(a) In general

The Secretary shall periodically review all of the science and technology activities of the Department in a strategic framework that takes into account both the frontiers of science to which the Department can contribute and the national needs relevant to the Department's statutory missions.

(b) Coordination analysis and plan

As part of the review under subsection (a), the Secretary shall develop a coordination plan to improve coordination and collaboration in research, development, demonstration, and commercial application activities across Department organizational boundaries.

(c) Plan contents

The plan shall describe—

(1) cross-cutting scientific and technical issues and research questions that span more than one program or major office of the Department;

(2) how the applied technology programs of the Department are coordinating their activities, and addressing those questions;

(3) ways in which the technical interchange within the Department, particularly between the Office of Science and the applied technology programs, can be enhanced, including ways in which the research agendas of the Office of Science and the applied programs can interact and assist each other;

(4) a description of how the Secretary will ensure that the Department's overall research agenda include, in addition to fundamental, curiosity-driven research, fundamental research related to topics of concern to the applied programs, and applications in Departmental technology programs of research results generated by fundamental, curiosity-driven research.

(d) Plan transmittal

Not later than 12 months after August 8, 2005, and every 4 years thereafter, the Secretary shall transmit to Congress the results of the review under subsection (a) and the coordination plan under subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §994, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 914.)

§16359. Competitive award of management contracts

None of the funds authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary by this subchapter may be used to award a management and operating contract for a National Laboratory (excluding those named in subparagraphs (G), (H), (N), and (O) of section 15801(3) of this title), unless such contract is competitively awarded, or the Secretary grants, on a case-by-case basis, a waiver. The Secretary may not delegate the authority to grant such a waiver and shall submit to Congress a report notifying it of the waiver, and setting forth the reasons for the waiver, at least 60 days prior to the date of the award of such contract.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §995, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 914.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title IX of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug.

8, 2005, 119 Stat. 856, which enacted this subchapter, amended sections 8101 and 8102 of Title 7, Agriculture, and section 5523 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, enacted provisions set out as notes under section 15801 of this title, section 8102 of Title 7, and section 2001 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining, and amended provisions set out as notes under section 8101 of Title 7 and section 1902 of Title 30. For complete classification of title IX to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

§16360. Western Michigan demonstration project

The Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, in consultation with the State of Michigan and affected local officials, shall conduct a demonstration project to address the effect of transported ozone and ozone precursors in Southwestern Michigan. The demonstration program shall address projected nonattainment areas in Southwestern Michigan that include counties with design values for ozone of less than .095 based on years 2000 to 2002 or the most current 3-year period of air quality data. The Administrator shall assess any difficulties such areas may experience in meeting the 8-hour national ambient air quality standard for ozone due to the effect of transported ozone or ozone precursors into the areas. The Administrator shall work with State and local officials to determine the extent of ozone and ozone precursor transport, to assess alternatives to achieve compliance with the 8-hour standard apart from local controls, and to determine the timeframe in which such compliance could take place. The Administrator shall complete this demonstration project no later than 2 years after August 8, 2005, and shall not impose any requirement or sanction under the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.) that might otherwise apply during the pendency of the demonstration project.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §996, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 915.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Clean Air Act, referred to in text, is act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, 69 Stat. 322, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 85 (§7401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

§16361. Arctic Engineering Research Center

(a) In general

The Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Secretary and the United States Arctic Research Commission, shall provide annual grants to a university located adjacent to the Arctic Energy Office of the Department of Energy, to establish and operate a university research center to be headquartered in Fairbanks and to be known as the "Arctic Engineering Research Center" (referred to in this section as the "Center").

(b) Purpose

The purpose of the Center shall be to conduct research on, and develop improved methods of, construction and use of materials to improve the overall performance of roads, bridges, residential, commercial, and industrial structures, and other infrastructure in the Arctic region, with an emphasis on developing—

(1) new construction techniques for roads, bridges, rail, and related transportation infrastructure and residential, commercial, and industrial infrastructure that are capable of withstanding the Arctic environment and using limited energy resources as efficiently as practicable;

(2) technologies and procedures for increasing road, bridge, rail, and related transportation infrastructure and residential, commercial, and industrial infrastructure safety, reliability, and integrity in the Arctic region;

(3) new materials and improving the performance and energy efficiency of existing materials for the construction of roads, bridges, rail, and related transportation infrastructure and residential, commercial, and industrial infrastructure in the Arctic region; and

(4) recommendations for new local, regional, and State permitting and building codes to ensure transportation and building safety and efficient energy use when constructing, using, and occupying such infrastructure in the Arctic region.

(c) Objectives

The Center shall carry out—

(1) basic and applied research in the subjects described in subsection (b), the products of which shall be judged by peers or other experts in the field to advance the body of knowledge in road, bridge, rail, and infrastructure engineering in the Arctic region; and

(2) an ongoing program of technology transfer that makes research results available to potential users in a form that can be implemented.

(d) Amount of grant

For each of fiscal years 2006 through 2011, the Secretary shall provide a grant in the amount of $3,000,000 to the institution specified in subsection (a) to carry out this section.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $3,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2011.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §997, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 915.)

§16362. Barrow Geophysical Research Facility

(a) Establishment

The Secretary of Commerce, in consultation with the Secretaries of Energy and the Interior, the Director of the National Science Foundation, and the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, shall establish a joint research facility in Barrow, Alaska, to be known as the "Barrow Geophysical Research Facility", to support scientific research activities in the Arctic.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretaries of Commerce, Energy, and the Interior, the Director of the National Science Foundation, and the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency for the planning, design, construction, and support of the Barrow Geophysical Research Facility, $61,000,000.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §998, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 916.)

PART J—ULTRA-DEEPWATER AND UNCONVENTIONAL NATURAL GAS AND OTHER PETROLEUM RESOURCES

§§16371 to 16378. Repealed. Pub. L. 113–67, div. A, title III, §301(a), Dec. 26, 2013, 127 Stat. 1181

Section 16371, Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §999A, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 916, authorized the Secretary of Energy to carry out a program under this part of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of technologies for ultra-deepwater and unconventional natural gas and other petroleum resources.

Section 16372, Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §999B, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 917, related to administration of the program under this part.

Section 16373, Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §999C, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 921, related to additional requirements for awards under this part.

Section 16374, Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §999D, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 922, related to the Ultra-Deepwater Advisory Committee and Unconventional Resources Technology Advisory Committee.

Section 16375, Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §999E, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 923, related to limitations on eligibility for awards under this part.

Section 16376, Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §999F, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 923, terminated the authority provided by this part on Sept. 30, 2014.

Section 16377, Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §999G, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 923, defined terms for this part.

Section 16378, Pub. L. 109–58, title IX, §999H, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 924; Pub. L. 113–287, §5(k)(6), Dec. 19, 2014, 128 Stat. 3270, related to the Ultra-Deepwater and Unconventional Natural Gas and Other Petroleum Research Fund.

EX. ORD. NO. 13605. SUPPORTING SAFE AND RESPONSIBLE DEVELOPMENT OF UNCONVENTIONAL DOMESTIC NATURAL GAS RESOURCES

Ex. Ord. No. 13605, Apr. 13, 2012, 77 F.R. 23107, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, and in order to coordinate the efforts of Federal agencies responsible for overseeing the safe and responsible development of unconventional domestic natural gas resources and associated infrastructure and to help reduce our dependence on oil, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Policy*. In 2011, natural gas provided 25 percent of the energy consumed in the United States. Its production creates jobs and provides economic benefits to the entire domestic production supply chain, as well as to chemical and other manufacturers, who benefit from lower feedstock and energy costs. By helping to power our transportation system, greater use of natural gas can also reduce our dependence on oil. And with appropriate safeguards, natural gas can provide a cleaner source of energy than other fossil fuels.

For these reasons, it is vital that we take full advantage of our natural gas resources, while giving American families and communities confidence that natural and cultural resources, air and water quality, and public health and safety will not be compromised.

While natural gas production is carried out by private firms, and States are the primary regulators of onshore oil and gas activities, the Federal Government has an important role to play by regulating oil and gas activities on public and Indian trust lands, encouraging greater use of natural gas in transportation, supporting research and development aimed at improving the safety of natural gas development and transportation activities, and setting sensible, cost-effective public health and environmental standards to implement Federal law and augment State safeguards.

Because efforts to promote safe, responsible, and efficient development of unconventional domestic natural gas resources are underway at a number of executive departments and agencies (agencies), close interagency coordination is important for effective implementation of these programs and activities. To formalize and promote ongoing interagency coordination, this order establishes a high-level, interagency working group that will facilitate coordinated Administration policy efforts to support safe and responsible unconventional domestic natural gas development.

SEC. 2. *Interagency Working Group to Support Safe and Responsible Development of Unconventional Domestic Natural Gas Resources*. There is established an Interagency Working Group to Support Safe and Responsible Development of Unconventional Domestic Natural Gas Resources (Working Group), to be chaired by the Director of the Domestic Policy Council, or a designated representative.

(a) *Membership*. In addition to the Chair, the Working Group shall include deputy-level representatives or equivalent officials, designated by the head of the respective agency or office, from:

(i) the Department of Defense;

(ii) the Department of the Interior;

(iii) the Department of Agriculture;

(iv) the Department of Commerce;

(v) the Department of Health and Human Services;

(vi) the Department of Transportation;

(vii) the Department of Energy;

(viii) the Department of Homeland Security;

(ix) the Environmental Protection Agency;

(x) the Council on Environmental Quality;

(xi) the Office of Science and Technology Policy;

(xii) the Office of Management and Budget;

(xiii) the National Economic Council; and

(xiv) such other agencies or offices as the Chair may invite to participate.

(b) *Functions*. Consistent with the authorities and responsibilities of participating agencies and offices, the Working Group shall support the safe and responsible production of domestic unconventional natural gas by

performing the following functions:

(i) coordinate agency policy activities, ensuring their efficient and effective operation and facilitating cooperation among agencies, as appropriate;

(ii) coordinate among agencies the sharing of scientific, environmental, and related technical and economic information;

(iii) engage in long-term planning and ensure coordination among the appropriate Federal entities with respect to such issues as research, natural resource assessment, and the development of infrastructure;

(iv) promote interagency communication with stakeholders; and

(v) consult with other agencies and offices as appropriate.

SEC. 3. *General Provisions*. (a) This order shall be implemented consistent with applicable law and subject to the availability of appropriations.

(b) Nothing in this order shall be construed to impair or otherwise affect:

(i) the authority granted by law to an executive department, agency, or the head thereof; or

(ii) the functions of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget relating to budgetary, administrative, or legislative proposals.

(c) This order is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity by any party against the United States, its departments, agencies, or entities, its officers, employees, or agents, or any other person.

BARACK OBAMA.

SUBCHAPTER X—DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY MANAGEMENT

§16391. Improved technology transfer of energy technologies

(a) Technology Transfer Coordinator

The Secretary shall appoint a Technology Transfer Coordinator to be the principal advisor to the Secretary on all matters relating to technology transfer and commercialization.

(b) Qualifications

The Coordinator shall be an individual who, by reason of professional background and experience, is specially qualified to advise the Secretary on matters pertaining to technology transfer at the Department.

(c) Duties of the Coordinator

The Coordinator shall oversee—

(1) the activities of the Technology Transfer Working Group established under subsection (d);

(2) the expenditure of funds allocated for technology transfer within the Department;

(3) the activities of each technology partnership ombudsman appointed under section 7261c of this title; and

(4) efforts to engage private sector entities, including venture capital companies.

(d) Technology Transfer Working Group

The Secretary shall establish a Technology Transfer Working Group, which shall consist of representatives of the National Laboratories and single-purpose research facilities, to—

(1) coordinate technology transfer activities occurring at National Laboratories and single-purpose research facilities;

(2) exchange information about technology transfer practices, including alternative approaches to resolution of disputes involving intellectual property rights and other technology transfer matters; and

(3) develop and disseminate to the public and prospective technology partners information about opportunities and procedures for technology transfer with the Department, including opportunities and procedures related to alternative approaches to resolution of disputes involving intellectual property rights and other technology transfer matters.

(e) Technology Commercialization Fund

The Secretary shall establish an Energy Technology Commercialization Fund, using 0.9 percent of the amount made available to the Department for applied energy research, development, demonstration, and commercial application for each fiscal year based on future planned activities and the amount of the appropriations for the fiscal year, to be used to provide matching funds with private partners to promote promising energy technologies for commercial purposes.

(f) Technology transfer responsibility

Nothing in this section affects the technology transfer responsibilities of Federal employees under the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980 (15 U.S.C. 3701 et seq.).

(g) Planning and reporting

(1) In general

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a technology transfer execution plan.

(2) Updates

Each year after the submission of the plan under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall submit to Congress an updated execution plan and reports that describe progress toward meeting goals set forth in the execution plan and the funds expended under subsection (e).

(Pub. L. 109–58, title X, §1001, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 926; Pub. L. 113–291, div. C, title XXXI, §3144, Dec. 19, 2014, 128 Stat. 3902.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (f), is Pub. L. 96–480, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2311, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 63 (§3701 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3701 of Title 15 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 113–291 inserted "based on future planned activities and the amount of the appropriations for the fiscal year" after "each fiscal year".

§16392. Technology Infrastructure Program

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Program

The term "Program" means the Technology Infrastructure Program established under subsection (b).

(2) Technology cluster

The term "technology cluster" means a concentration of technology-related business concerns, institutions of higher education, or nonprofit institutions, that reinforce each other's performance in the areas of technology development through formal or informal relationships.

(3) Technology-related business concern

The term "technology-related business concern" means a for-profit corporation, company, association, firm, partnership, or small business concern that—

(A) conducts scientific or engineering research;
(B) develops new technologies;
(C) manufactures products based on new technologies; or
(D) performs technological services.

(b) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a Technology Infrastructure Program in accordance with this section.

(c) Purpose

The purpose of the Program shall be to improve the ability of National Laboratories and single-purpose research facilities to support departmental missions by—

(1) stimulating the development of technology clusters that can support departmental missions at the National Laboratories or single-purpose research facilities;

(2) improving the ability of National Laboratories and single-purpose research facilities to leverage and benefit from commercial research, technology, products, processes, and services; and

(3) encouraging the exchange of scientific and technological expertise between—

(A) National Laboratories or single-purpose research facilities; and

(B) entities that can support departmental missions at the National Laboratories or single-purpose research facilities, such as—

(i) institutions of higher education;

(ii) technology-related business concerns;

(iii) nonprofit institutions; and

(iv) agencies of State, tribal, or local governments.

(d) Projects

The Secretary shall authorize the director of each National Laboratory or single-purpose research facility to implement the Program at the National Laboratory or facility through one or more projects that meet the requirements of subsections (e) and (f).

(e) Program requirements

(1) In general

Each project funded under this section shall meet the requirements of this subsection.

(2) Entities

Each project shall include at least one of each of the following entities:

(A) A business.

(B) An institution of higher education.

(C) A nonprofit institution.

(D) An agency of a State, local, or tribal government.

(3) Cost-sharing

(A) In general

The costs of carrying out projects under this section shall be shared in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(B) Sources

The calculation of costs paid by the non-Federal sources for a project shall include cash, personnel, services, equipment, and other resources expended on the project after the commencement of the project.

(C) Research and development expenses

Independent research and development expenses of Government contractors that qualify for reimbursement under section 31.205–18(e) of title 48, Code of Federal Regulations, issued pursuant to section 1303(a)(1) of title 41, may be credited towards costs paid by non-Federal sources to a project, if the expenses meet the other requirements of this section.

(4) Competitive selection

A project under this section shall be competitively selected using procedures determined by the Secretary.

(5) Accounting

Any participant that receives funds under this section may use generally accepted accounting

principles for maintaining accounts, books, and records relating to the project.

(6) Duration

No Federal funds shall be made available under this section for a construction project or for any project with a duration of more than 5 years.

(f) Selection criteria

(1) Departmental missions

The Secretary shall allocate funds under this section only if the Director of the National Laboratory or single-purpose research facility managing the project determines that the project is likely to improve the ability of the National Laboratory or single-purpose research facility to achieve technical success in meeting departmental missions.

(2) Other criteria

In selecting a project to receive Federal funds, the Secretary shall consider—

(A) the potential of the project to promote the development of a commercially sustainable technology cluster following the period of investment by the Department, which will derive most of the demand for its products or services from the private sector, and which will support departmental missions at the participating National Laboratory or single-purpose research facility;

(B) the potential of the project to promote the use of commercial research, technology, products, processes, and services by the participating National Laboratory or single-purpose research facility to achieve its mission or the commercial development of technological innovations made at the participating National Laboratory or single-purpose research facility;

(C) the extent to which the project involves a wide variety and number of institutions of higher education, nonprofit institutions, and technology-related business concerns that can support the missions of the participating National Laboratory or single-purpose research facility and that will make substantive contributions to achieving the goals of the project;

(D) the extent to which the project focuses on promoting the development of technology-related business concerns that are small businesses or involves such small businesses substantively in the project; and

(E) such other criteria as the Secretary determines to be appropriate.

(g) Allocation

In allocating funds for projects approved under this section, the Secretary shall provide—

(1) the Federal share of the project costs; and

(2) additional funds to the National Laboratory or single-purpose research facility managing the project to permit the National Laboratory or single-purpose research facility to carry out activities relating to the project, and to coordinate the activities with the project.

(h) Report to Congress

Not later than July 1, 2008, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report on whether the Program should be continued and, if so, how the program should be managed.

(i) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for activities under this section $10,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2008.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title X, §1002, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 927.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (e)(3)(C), "section 1303(a)(1) of title 41" substituted for "section 25(c)(1) of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy Act (41 U.S.C. 421(c)(1))" on authority of Pub. L. 111–350, §6(c), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 3854, which Act enacted Title 41, Public Contracts.

§16393. Small business advocacy and assistance

(a) Small business advocate

The Secretary shall require the Director of each National Laboratory, and may require the Director of a single-purpose research facility, to designate a small business advocate to—

(1) increase the participation of small business concerns, including socially and economically disadvantaged small business concerns (as defined in section 637(a)(4) of title 15), in procurement, collaborative research, technology licensing, and technology transfer activities conducted by the National Laboratory or single-purpose research facility;

(2) report to the Director of the National Laboratory or single-purpose research facility on the actual participation of small business concerns in procurement and collaborative research along with recommendations, if appropriate, on how to improve participation;

(3) make available to small business concerns training, mentoring, and information on how to participate in procurement and collaborative research activities;

(4) increase the awareness inside the National Laboratory or single-purpose research facility of the capabilities and opportunities presented by small business concerns; and

(5) establish guidelines for the program under subsection (b) and report on the effectiveness of the program to the Director of the National Laboratory or single-purpose research facility.

(b) Establishment of small business assistance program

The Secretary shall require the Director of each National Laboratory, and may require the Director of a single-purpose research facility, to establish a program to provide small business concerns with—

(1) assistance directed at making the small business concerns more effective and efficient subcontractors or suppliers to the National Laboratory or single-purpose research facilities; or

(2) general technical assistance, the cost of which shall not exceed $10,000 per instance of assistance, to improve the products or services of the small business concern.

(c) Use of funds

None of the funds expended under subsection (b) may be used for direct grants to small business concerns.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for activities under this section $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2008.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title X, §1003, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 929.)

§16394. Outreach

The Secretary shall ensure that each program authorized by this Act or an amendment made by this Act includes an outreach component to provide information, as appropriate, to manufacturers, consumers, engineers, architects, builders, energy service companies, institutions of higher education, facility planners and managers, State and local governments, and other entities.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title X, §1004, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 930.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 594, as amended, known as the Energy Policy Act of 2005, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and repealed numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

§16395. Relationship to other laws

Except as otherwise provided in this Act or an amendment made by this Act, the Secretary shall

carry out the research, development, demonstration, and commercial application programs, projects, and activities authorized by this Act or an amendment made by this Act in accordance with the applicable provisions of—

(1) the Atomic Energy Act of 1954 (42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.);

(2) the Federal Nonnuclear Energy Research and Development Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5901 et seq.);

(3) the Energy Policy Act of 1992 (42 U.S.C. 13201 et seq.);

(4) the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980 (15 U.S.C. 3701 et seq.);

(5) chapter 18 of title 35 (commonly known as the "Bayh-Dole Act"); and

(6) any other Act under which the Secretary is authorized to carry out the programs, projects, and activities.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title X, §1005, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 930.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 594, as amended, known as the Energy Policy Act of 2005, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and repealed numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

The Atomic Energy Act of 1954, referred to in par. (1), is act Aug. 1, 1946, ch. 724, as added by act Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1073, §1, 68 Stat. 919, which is classified principally to chapter 23 (§2011 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2011 of this title and Tables.

The Federal Nonnuclear Energy Research and Development Act of 1974, referred to in par. (2), is Pub. L. 93–577, Dec. 31, 1974, 88 Stat. 1878, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 74 (§5901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5901 of this title and Tables.

The Energy Policy Act of 1992, referred to in par. (3), is Pub. L. 102–486, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 2776, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13201 of this title and Tables.

The Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980, referred to in par. (4), is Pub. L. 96–480, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2311, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 63 (§3701 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3701 of Title 15 and Tables.

§16396. Prizes for achievement in grand challenges of science and technology

(a) Authority

The Secretary may carry out a program to award cash prizes in recognition of breakthrough achievements in research, development, demonstration, and commercial application that have the potential for application to the performance of the mission of the Department.

(b) Competition requirements

The program under subsection (a) may include prizes for the achievement of goals articulated by the Secretary in a specific area through a widely advertised solicitation of submission of results for research, development, demonstration, or commercial application projects.

(c) Prizes for processes and technologies to reduce dependence on imported oil

The Secretary, in cooperation with the Freedom Prize Foundation, shall support a program of awarding prizes, to be known as Freedom Prizes, to encourage and recognize the development and deployment of processes and technologies that serve to reduce the dependence of the United States on imported oil.

(d) Relationship to other authority

The program under subsection (a) may be carried out in conjunction with or in addition to the exercise of any other authority of the Secretary to acquire, support, or stimulate research,

development, demonstration, or commercial application projects.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated—

(1) $10,000,000 to carry out the program under subsection (a); and

(2) $5,000,000 to carry out the program under subsection (c).

(f) H-prize

(1) Prize authority

(A) In general

As part of the program under this section, the Secretary shall carry out a program to competitively award cash prizes in conformity with this subsection to advance the research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of hydrogen energy technologies.

(B) Advertising and solicitation of competitors

(i) Advertising

The Secretary shall widely advertise prize competitions under this subsection to encourage broad participation, including by individuals, universities (including historically Black colleges and universities and other minority serving institutions), and large and small businesses (including businesses owned or controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged persons).

(ii) Announcement through Federal Register notice

The Secretary shall announce each prize competition under this subsection by publishing a notice in the Federal Register. This notice shall include essential elements of the competition such as the subject of the competition, the duration of the competition, the eligibility requirements for participation in the competition, the process for participants to register for the competition, the amount of the prize, and the criteria for awarding the prize.

(C) Administering the competitions

The Secretary shall enter into an agreement with a private, nonprofit entity to administer the prize competitions under this subsection, subject to the provisions of this subsection (in this subsection referred to as the "administering entity"). The duties of the administering entity under the agreement shall include—

(i) advertising prize competitions under this subsection and their results;

(ii) raising funds from private entities and individuals to pay for administrative costs and to contribute to cash prizes, including funds provided in exchange for the right to name a prize awarded under this subsection;

(iii) developing, in consultation with and subject to the final approval of the Secretary, the criteria for selecting winners in prize competitions under this subsection, based on goals provided by the Secretary;

(iv) determining, in consultation with the Secretary, the appropriate amount and funding sources for each prize to be awarded under this subsection, subject to the final approval of the Secretary with respect to Federal funding;

(v) providing advice and consultation to the Secretary on the selection of judges in accordance with paragraph (2)(D), using criteria developed in consultation with and subject to the final approval of the Secretary; and

(vi) protecting against the administering entity's unauthorized use or disclosure of a registered participant's trade secrets and confidential business information. Any information properly identified as trade secrets or confidential business information that is submitted by a participant as part of a competitive program under this subsection may be withheld from public disclosure.

(D) Funding sources

Prizes under this subsection shall consist of Federal appropriated funds and any funds provided by the administering entity (including funds raised pursuant to subparagraph (C)(ii)) for such cash prize programs. The Secretary may accept funds from other Federal agencies for such cash prizes and, notwithstanding section 3302(b) of title 31, may use such funds for the cash prize program under this subsection. Other than publication of the names of prize sponsors, the Secretary may not give any special consideration to any private sector entity or individual in return for a donation to the Secretary or administering entity.

(E) Announcement of prizes

The Secretary may not issue a notice required by subparagraph (B)(ii) until all the funds needed to pay out the announced amount of the prize have been appropriated or committed in writing by the administering entity. The Secretary may increase the amount of a prize after an initial announcement is made under subparagraph (B)(ii) if—

(i) notice of the increase is provided in the same manner as the initial notice of the prize; and

(ii) the funds needed to pay out the announced amount of the increase have been appropriated or committed in writing by the administering entity.

(F) Sunset

The authority to announce prize competitions under this subsection shall terminate on September 30, 2018.

(2) Prize categories

(A) Categories

The Secretary shall establish prizes under this subsection for—

(i) advancements in technologies, components, or systems related to—

(I) hydrogen production;

(II) hydrogen storage;

(III) hydrogen distribution; and

(IV) hydrogen utilization;

(ii) prototypes of hydrogen-powered vehicles or other hydrogen-based products that best meet or exceed objective performance criteria, such as completion of a race over a certain distance or terrain or generation of energy at certain levels of efficiency; and

(iii) transformational changes in technologies for the distribution or production of hydrogen that meet or exceed far-reaching objective criteria, which shall include minimal carbon emissions and which may include cost criteria designed to facilitate the eventual market success of a winning technology.

(B) Awards

(i) Advancements

To the extent permitted under paragraph (1)(E), the prizes authorized under subparagraph (A)(i) shall be awarded biennially to the most significant advance made in each of the four subcategories described in subclauses (I) through (IV) of subparagraph (A)(i) since the submission deadline of the previous prize competition in the same category under subparagraph (A)(i) or December 19, 2007, whichever is later, unless no such advance is significant enough to merit an award. No one such prize may exceed $1,000,000. If less than $4,000,000 is available for a prize competition under subparagraph (A)(i), the Secretary may omit one or more subcategories, reduce the amount of the prizes, or not hold a prize competition.

(ii) Prototypes

To the extent permitted under paragraph (1)(E), prizes authorized under subparagraph (A)(ii) shall be awarded biennially in alternate years from the prizes authorized under

subparagraph (A)(i). The Secretary is authorized to award up to one prize in this category in each 2-year period. No such prize may exceed $4,000,000. If no registered participants meet the objective performance criteria established pursuant to subparagraph (C) for a competition under this clause, the Secretary shall not award a prize.

(iii) Transformational technologies

To the extent permitted under paragraph (1)(E), the Secretary shall announce one prize competition authorized under subparagraph (A)(iii) as soon after December 19, 2007, as is practicable. A prize offered under this clause shall be not less than $10,000,000, paid to the winner in a lump sum, and an additional amount paid to the winner as a match for each dollar of private funding raised by the winner for the hydrogen technology beginning on the date the winner was named. The match shall be provided for 3 years after the date the prize winner is named or until the full amount of the prize has been paid out, whichever occurs first. A prize winner may elect to have the match amount paid to another entity that is continuing the development of the winning technology. The Secretary shall announce the rules for receiving the match in the notice required by paragraph (1)(B)(ii). The Secretary shall award a prize under this clause only when a registered participant has met the objective criteria established for the prize pursuant to subparagraph (C) and announced pursuant to paragraph (1)(B)(ii). Not more than $10,000,000 in Federal funds may be used for the prize award under this clause. The administering entity shall seek to raise $40,000,000 toward the matching award under this clause.

(C) Criteria

In establishing the criteria required by this subsection, the Secretary—

(i) shall consult with the Department's Hydrogen Technical and Fuel Cell Advisory Committee;

(ii) shall consult with other Federal agencies, including the National Science Foundation; and

(iii) may consult with other experts such as private organizations, including professional societies, industry associations, and the National Academy of Sciences and the National Academy of Engineering.

(D) Judges

For each prize competition under this subsection, the Secretary in consultation with the administering entity shall assemble a panel of qualified judges to select the winner or winners on the basis of the criteria established under subparagraph (C). Judges for each prize competition shall include individuals from outside the Department, including from the private sector. A judge, spouse, minor children, and members of the judge's household may not—

(i) have personal or financial interests in, or be an employee, officer, director, or agent of, any entity that is a registered participant in the prize competition for which he or she will serve as a judge; or

(ii) have a familial or financial relationship with an individual who is a registered participant in the prize competition for which he or she will serve as a judge.

(3) Eligibility

To be eligible to win a prize under this subsection, an individual or entity—

(A) shall have complied with all the requirements in accordance with the Federal Register notice required under paragraph (1)(B)(ii);

(B) in the case of a private entity, shall be incorporated in and maintain a primary place of business in the United States, and in the case of an individual, whether participating singly or in a group, shall be a citizen of, or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence in, the United States; and

(C) shall not be a Federal entity, a Federal employee acting within the scope of his employment, or an employee of a national laboratory acting within the scope of his employment.

(4) Intellectual property

The Federal Government shall not, by virtue of offering or awarding a prize under this subsection, be entitled to any intellectual property rights derived as a consequence of, or direct relation to, the participation by a registered participant in a competition authorized by this subsection. This paragraph shall not be construed to prevent the Federal Government from negotiating a license for the use of intellectual property developed for a prize competition under this subsection.

(5) Liability

(A) Waiver of liability

The Secretary may require registered participants to waive claims against the Federal Government and the administering entity (except claims for willful misconduct) for any injury, death, damage, or loss of property, revenue, or profits arising from the registered participants' participation in a competition under this subsection. The Secretary shall give notice of any waiver required under this subparagraph in the notice required by paragraph (1)(B)(ii). The Secretary may not require a registered participant to waive claims against the administering entity arising out of the unauthorized use or disclosure by the administering entity of the registered participant's trade secrets or confidential business information.

(B) Liability insurance

(i) Requirements

Registered participants in a prize competition under this subsection shall be required to obtain liability insurance or demonstrate financial responsibility, in amounts determined by the Secretary, for claims by—

(I) a third party for death, bodily injury, or property damage or loss resulting from an activity carried out in connection with participation in a competition under this subsection; and

(II) the Federal Government for damage or loss to Government property resulting from such an activity.

(ii) Federal Government insured

The Federal Government shall be named as an additional insured under a registered participant's insurance policy required under clause (i)(I), and registered participants shall be required to agree to indemnify the Federal Government against third party claims for damages arising from or related to competition activities under this subsection.

(6) Report to Congress

Not later than 60 days after the awarding of the first prize under this subsection, and annually thereafter, the Secretary shall transmit to the Congress a report that—

(A) identifies each award recipient;

(B) describes the technologies developed by each award recipient; and

(C) specifies actions being taken toward commercial application of all technologies with respect to which a prize has been awarded under this subsection.

(7) Authorization of appropriations

(A) In general

(i) Awards

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for the period encompassing fiscal years 2008 through 2017 for carrying out this subsection—

(I) $20,000,000 for awards described in paragraph (2)(A)(i);

(II) $20,000,000 for awards described in paragraph (2)(A)(ii); and

(III) $10,000,000 for the award described in paragraph (2)(A)(iii).

(ii) Administration

In addition to the amounts authorized in clause (i), there are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for each of fiscal years 2008 and 2009 $2,000,000 for the administrative costs of carrying out this subsection.

(B) Carryover of funds

Funds appropriated for prize awards under this subsection shall remain available until expended, and may be transferred, reprogrammed, or expended for other purposes only after the expiration of 10 fiscal years after the fiscal year for which the funds were originally appropriated. No provision in this subsection permits obligation or payment of funds in violation of section 1341 of title 31 (commonly referred to as the Anti-Deficiency Act).

(8) Nonsubstitution

The programs created under this subsection shall not be considered a substitute for Federal research and development programs.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title X, §1008, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 933; Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §654, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1695.)

AMENDMENTS

2007—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 110–140 added subsec. (f).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

SUBCHAPTER XI—PERSONNEL AND TRAINING

§16411. Workforce trends and traineeship grants

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Energy technology industry

The term "energy technology industry" includes—

(A) a renewable energy industry;

(B) a company that develops or commercializes a device to increase energy efficiency;

(C) the oil and gas industry;

(D) the nuclear power industry;

(E) the coal industry;

(F) the electric utility industry; and

(G) any other industrial sector, as the Secretary determines to be appropriate.

(2) Skilled technical personnel

The term "skilled technical personnel" means—

(A) journey- and apprentice-level workers who are enrolled in, or have completed, a federally-recognized or State-recognized apprenticeship program; and

(B) other skilled workers in energy technology industries, as determined by the Secretary.

(b) Workforce trends

(1) Monitoring

The Secretary, in consultation with, and using data collected by, the Secretary of Labor, shall monitor trends in the workforce of—

(A) skilled technical personnel that support energy technology industries; and

(B) electric power and transmission engineers.

(2) Report on trends

Not later than 1 year after August 8, 2005, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report on current trends under paragraph (1), with recommendations (as appropriate) to meet the future labor requirements for the energy technology industries.

(3) Report on shortage

As soon as practicable after the date on which the Secretary identifies or predicts a significant national shortage of skilled technical personnel in one or more energy technology industries, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report describing the shortage.

(c) Traineeship grants for skilled technical personnel

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Labor, may establish programs in the appropriate offices of the Department under which the Secretary provides grants to enhance training (including distance learning) for any workforce category for which a shortage is identified or predicted under subsection (b)(2).

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $20,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2008.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XI, §1101, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 937.)

§16412. Training guidelines for nonnuclear electric energy industry personnel

(a) In general

The Secretary of Labor, in consultation with the Secretary and in conjunction with the electric industry and recognized employee representatives, shall develop model personnel training guidelines to support the reliability and safety of the nonnuclear electric system.

(b) Requirements

The training guidelines under subsection (a) shall, at a minimum—

(1) include training requirements for workers engaged in the construction, operation, inspection, or maintenance of nonnuclear electric generation, transmission, or distribution systems, including requirements relating to—

(A) competency;

(B) certification; and

(C) assessment, including—

(i) initial and continuous evaluation of workers;

(ii) recertification procedures; and

(iii) methods for examining or testing the qualification of an individual who performs a covered task; and

(2) consolidate training guidelines in existence on the date on which the guidelines under subsection (a) are developed relating to the construction, operation, maintenance, and inspection of nonnuclear electric generation, transmission, and distribution facilities, such as guidelines established by the National Electric Safety Code and other industry consensus standards.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XI, §1103, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 939.)

§16413. National Center for Energy Management and Building Technologies

The Secretary shall support the ongoing activities of and explore opportunities for expansion of the National Center for Energy Management and Building Technologies to carry out research, education, and training activities to facilitate the improvement of energy efficiency, indoor

environmental quality, and security of industrial, commercial, residential, and public buildings.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XI, §1104, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 939.)

§16414. National Power Plant Operations Technology and Educational Center

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall support the establishment of a National Power Plant Operations Technology and Education Center (referred to in this section as the "Center"), to address the need for training and educating certified operators and technicians for the electric power industry.

(b) Location of Center

The Secretary shall support the establishment of the Center at an institution of higher education that has—

(1) expertise in providing degree programs in electric power generation, transmission, and distribution technologies;

(2) expertise in providing onsite and Internet-based training; and

(3) demonstrated responsiveness to workforce and training requirements in the electric power industry.

(c) Training and continuing education

(1) In general

The Center shall provide training and continuing education in electric power generation, transmission, and distribution technologies and operations.

(2) Location

The Center shall carry out training and education activities under paragraph (1)—

(A) at the Center; and

(B) through Internet-based information technologies that allow for learning at remote sites.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XI, §1106, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 940.)

SUBCHAPTER XII—ELECTRICITY

PART A—TRANSMISSION INFRASTRUCTURE MODERNIZATION

§16421. Third-party finance

(a) Existing facilities

The Secretary, acting through the Administrator of the Western Area Power Administration (hereinafter in this section referred to as "WAPA"), or through the Administrator of the Southwestern Power Administration (hereinafter in this section referred to as "SWPA"), or both, may design, develop, construct, operate, maintain, or own, or participate with other entities in designing, developing, constructing, operating, maintaining, or owning, an electric power transmission facility and related facilities ("Project") needed to upgrade existing transmission facilities owned by SWPA or WAPA if the Secretary, in consultation with the applicable Administrator, determines that the proposed Project—

(1)(A) is located in a national interest electric transmission corridor designated under section 216(a) of the Federal Power Act [16 U.S.C. 824p(a)] and will reduce congestion of electric transmission in interstate commerce; or

(B) is necessary to accommodate an actual or projected increase in demand for electric transmission capacity;

(2) is consistent with—

(A) transmission needs identified, in a transmission expansion plan or otherwise, by the appropriate Transmission Organization (as defined in the Federal Power Act [16 U.S.C. 791a et seq.]), if any, or approved regional reliability organization; and

(B) efficient and reliable operation of the transmission grid; and

(3) would be operated in conformance with prudent utility practice.

(b) New facilities

The Secretary, acting through WAPA or SWPA, or both, may design, develop, construct, operate, maintain, or own, or participate with other entities in designing, developing, constructing, operating, maintaining, or owning, a new electric power transmission facility and related facilities ("Project") located within any State in which WAPA or SWPA operates if the Secretary, in consultation with the applicable Administrator, determines that the proposed Project—

(1)(A) is located in an area designated under section 216(a) of the Federal Power Act [16 U.S.C. 824p(a)] and will reduce congestion of electric transmission in interstate commerce; or

(B) is necessary to accommodate an actual or projected increase in demand for electric transmission capacity;

(2) is consistent with—

(A) transmission needs identified, in a transmission expansion plan or otherwise, by the appropriate Transmission Organization (as defined in the Federal Power Act [16 U.S.C. 791a et seq.]) if any, or approved regional reliability organization; and

(B) efficient and reliable operation of the transmission grid;

(3) will be operated in conformance with prudent utility practice;

(4) will be operated by, or in conformance with the rules of, the appropriate (A) Transmission Organization, if any, or (B) if such an organization does not exist, regional reliability organization; and

(5) will not duplicate the functions of existing transmission facilities or proposed facilities which are the subject of ongoing or approved siting and related permitting proceedings.

(c) Other funds

(1) In general

In carrying out a Project under subsection (a) or (b), the Secretary may accept and use funds contributed by another entity for the purpose of carrying out the Project.

(2) Availability

The contributed funds shall be available for expenditure for the purpose of carrying out the Project—

(A) without fiscal year limitation; and

(B) as if the funds had been appropriated specifically for that Project.

(3) Allocation of costs

In carrying out a Project under subsection (a) or (b), any costs of the Project not paid for by contributions from another entity shall be collected through rates charged to customers using the new transmission capability provided by the Project and allocated equitably among these project beneficiaries using the new transmission capability.

(d) Relationship to other laws

Nothing in this section affects any requirement of—

(1) any Federal environmental law, including the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq.);

(2) any Federal or State law relating to the siting of energy facilities; or

(3) any existing authorizing statutes.

(e) Savings clause

Nothing in this section shall constrain or restrict an Administrator in the utilization of other authority delegated to the Administrator of WAPA or SWPA.

(f) Secretarial determinations

Any determination made pursuant to subsections [1] (a) or (b) shall be based on findings by the Secretary using the best available data.

(g) Maximum funding amount

The Secretary shall not accept and use more than $100,000,000 under subsection (c)(1) for the period encompassing fiscal years 2006 through 2015.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1222, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 952.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Power Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2)(A) and (b)(2)(A), is act June 10, 1920, ch. 285, 41 Stat. 1063, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 12 (§791a et seq.) of Title 16, Conservation. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 791a of Title 16 and Tables.

The National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), is Pub. L. 91–190, Jan. 1, 1970, 83 Stat. 852, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 55 (§4321 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4321 of this title and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

For short title of title XII of Pub. L. 109–58, which enacted this subchapter, as the "Electricity Modernization Act of 2005", see section 1201 of Pub. L. 109–58, set out as a note under section 15801 of this title.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "subsection".

§16421a. Western Area Power Administration borrowing authority

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Administrator

The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the Western Area Power Administration.

(2) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of the Treasury.

(b) Authority

(1) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, subject to paragraphs (2) through (5)—

(A) the Western Area Power Administration may borrow funds from the Treasury; and

(B) the Secretary shall, without further appropriation and without fiscal year limitation, loan to the Western Area Power Administration, on such terms as may be fixed by the Administrator and the Secretary, such sums (not to exceed, in the aggregate (including deferred interest), $3,250,000,000 in outstanding repayable balances at any one time) as, in the judgment of the Administrator, are from time to time required for the purpose of—

(i) constructing, financing, facilitating, planning, operating, maintaining, or studying construction of new or upgraded electric power transmission lines and related facilities with at least one terminus within the area served by the Western Area Power Administration; and

(ii) delivering or facilitating the delivery of power generated by renewable energy

resources constructed or reasonably expected to be constructed after February 17, 2009.

(2) Interest

The rate of interest to be charged in connection with any loan made pursuant to this subsection shall be fixed by the Secretary, taking into consideration market yields on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States of comparable maturities as of the date of the loan.

(3) Refinancing

The Western Area Power Administration may refinance loans taken pursuant to this section within the Treasury.

(4) Participation

The Administrator may permit other entities to participate in the financing, construction and ownership projects financed under this section.

(5) Congressional review of disbursement

Effective upon February 17, 2009, the Administrator shall have the authority to have utilized $1,750,000,000 at any one time. If the Administrator seeks to borrow funds above $1,750,000,000, the funds will be disbursed unless there is enacted, within 90 calendar days of the first such request, a joint resolution that rescinds the remainder of the balance of the borrowing authority provided in this section.

(c) Transmission line and related facility projects

(1) In general

For repayment purposes, each transmission line and related facility project in which the Western Area Power Administration participates pursuant to this section shall be treated as separate and distinct from—

(A) each other such project; and

(B) all other Western Area Power Administration power and transmission facilities.

(2) Proceeds

The Western Area Power Administration shall apply the proceeds from the use of the transmission capacity from an individual project under this section to the repayment of the principal and interest of the loan from the Treasury attributable to that project, after reserving such funds as the Western Area Power Administration determines are necessary—

(A) to pay for any ancillary services that are provided; and

(B) to meet the costs of operating and maintaining the new project from which the revenues are derived.

(3) Source of revenue

Revenue from the use of projects under this section shall be the only source of revenue for—

(A) repayment of the associated loan for the project; and

(B) payment of expenses for ancillary services and operation and maintenance.

(4) Limitation on authority

Nothing in this section confers on the Administrator any additional authority or obligation to provide ancillary services to users of transmission facilities developed under this section.

(5) Treatment of certain revenues

Revenue from ancillary services provided by existing Federal power systems to users of transmission projects funded pursuant to this section shall be treated as revenue to the existing power system that provided the ancillary services.

(d) Certification

(1) In general

For each project in which the Western Area Power Administration participates pursuant to this

section, the Administrator shall certify, prior to committing funds for any such project, that—

(A) the project is in the public interest;

(B) the project will not adversely impact system reliability or operations, or other statutory obligations; and

(C) it is reasonable to expect that the proceeds from the project shall be adequate to make repayment of the loan.

(2) Forgiveness of balances

(A) In general

If, at the end of the useful life of a project, there is a remaining balance owed to the Treasury under this section, the balance shall be forgiven.

(B) Unconstructed projects

Funds expended to study projects that are considered pursuant to this section but that are not constructed shall be forgiven.

(C) Notification

The Administrator shall notify the Secretary of such amounts as are to be forgiven under this paragraph.

(e) Public processes

(1) Policies and practices

Prior to requesting any loans under this section, the Administrator shall use a public process to develop practices and policies that implement the authority granted by this section.

(2) Requests for interest

In the course of selecting potential projects to be funded under this section, the Administrator shall seek Requests For Interest from entities interested in identifying potential projects through one or more notices published in the Federal Register.

(Pub. L. 98–381, title III, §301, as added Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title IV, §402, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 141.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Hoover Power Plant Act of 1984, and not as part of the Electricity Modernization Act of 2005, which comprises this subchapter, or the Energy Policy Act of 2005, which comprises this chapter.

§16422. Advanced transmission technologies

(a) Definition of advanced transmission technology

In this section, the term "advanced transmission technology" means a technology that increases the capacity, efficiency, or reliability of an existing or new transmission facility, including—

(1) high-temperature lines (including superconducting cables);

(2) underground cables;

(3) advanced conductor technology (including advanced composite conductors, high-temperature low-sag conductors, and fiber optic temperature sensing conductors);

(4) high-capacity ceramic electric wire, connectors, and insulators;

(5) optimized transmission line configurations (including multiple phased transmission lines);

(6) modular equipment;

(7) wireless power transmission;

(8) ultra-high voltage lines;

(9) high-voltage DC technology;

(10) flexible AC transmission systems;

(11) energy storage devices (including pumped hydro, compressed air, superconducting

magnetic energy storage, flywheels, and batteries);

(12) controllable load;

(13) distributed generation (including PV, fuel cells, and microturbines);

(14) enhanced power device monitoring;

(15) direct system state sensors;

(16) fiber optic technologies;

(17) power electronics and related software (including real time monitoring and analytical software);

(18) mobile transformers and mobile substations; and

(19) any other technologies the Commission considers appropriate.

(b) Authority

In carrying out the Federal Power Act (16 U.S.C. 791a et seq.) and the Public Utility Regulatory Policies Act of 1978 (16 U.S.C. 2601 et seq.), the Commission shall encourage, as appropriate, the deployment of advanced transmission technologies.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1223, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 953.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Power Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is act June 10, 1920, ch. 285, 41 Stat. 1063, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 12 (§791a et seq.) of Title 16, Conservation. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 791a of Title 16 and Tables.

The Public Utility Regulatory Policies Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 95–617, Nov. 9, 1978, 92 Stat. 3117, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2601 of Title 16, Conservation, and Tables.

§16423. Advanced Power System Technology Incentive Program

(a) Program

The Secretary is authorized to establish an Advanced Power System Technology Incentive Program to support the deployment of certain advanced power system technologies and to improve and protect certain critical governmental, industrial, and commercial processes. Funds provided under this section shall be used by the Secretary to make incentive payments to eligible owners or operators of advanced power system technologies to increase power generation through enhanced operational, economic, and environmental performance. Payments under this section may only be made upon receipt by the Secretary of an incentive payment application establishing an applicant as either—

(1) a qualifying advanced power system technology facility; or

(2) a qualifying security and assured power facility.

(b) Incentives

Subject to availability of funds, a payment of 1.8 cents per kilowatt-hour shall be paid to the owner or operator of a qualifying advanced power system technology facility under this section for electricity generated at such facility. An additional 0.7 cents per kilowatt-hour shall be paid to the owner or operator of a qualifying security and assured power facility for electricity generated at such facility. Any facility qualifying under this section shall be eligible for an incentive payment for up to, but not more than, the first 10,000,000 kilowatt-hours produced in any fiscal year.

(c) Eligibility

For purposes of this section:

(1) Qualifying advanced power system technology facility

The term "qualifying advanced power system technology facility" means a facility using an advanced fuel cell, turbine, or hybrid power system or power storage system to generate or store electric energy.

(2) Qualifying security and assured power facility

The term "qualifying security and assured power facility" means a qualifying advanced power system technology facility determined by the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Homeland Security, to be in critical need of secure, reliable, rapidly available, high-quality power for critical governmental, industrial, or commercial applications.

(d) Authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for the purposes of this section, $10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2006 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1224, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 954.)

PART B—TRANSMISSION OPERATION IMPROVEMENTS

§16431. Federal utility participation in transmission organizations

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Appropriate Federal regulatory authority

The term "appropriate Federal regulatory authority" means—

(A) in the case of a Federal power marketing agency, the Secretary, except that the Secretary may designate the Administrator of a Federal power marketing agency to act as the appropriate Federal regulatory authority with respect to the transmission system of the Federal power marketing agency; and

(B) in the case of the Tennessee Valley Authority, the Board of Directors of the Tennessee Valley Authority.

(2) Federal power marketing agency

The term "Federal power marketing agency" has the meaning given the term in section 796 of title 16.

(3) Federal utility

The term "Federal utility" means—

(A) a Federal power marketing agency; or

(B) the Tennessee Valley Authority.

(4) Transmission Organization

The term "Transmission Organization" has the meaning given the term in section 796 of title 16.

(5) Transmission system

The term "transmission system" means an electric transmission facility owned, leased, or contracted for by the United States and operated by a Federal utility.

(b) Transfer

The appropriate Federal regulatory authority may enter into a contract, agreement, or other arrangement transferring control and use of all or part of the transmission system of a Federal utility to a Transmission Organization.

(c) Contents

The contract, agreement, or arrangement shall include—

(1) performance standards for operation and use of the transmission system that the head of the Federal utility determines are necessary or appropriate, including standards that ensure—

(A) recovery of all of the costs and expenses of the Federal utility related to the transmission

facilities that are the subject of the contract, agreement, or other arrangement;

(B) consistency with existing contracts and third-party financing arrangements; and

(C) consistency with the statutory authorities, obligations, and limitations of the Federal utility;

(2) provisions for monitoring and oversight by the Federal utility of the Transmission Organization's terms and conditions of the contract, agreement, or other arrangement, including a provision for the resolution of disputes through arbitration or other means with the Transmission Organization or with other participants, notwithstanding the obligations and limitations of any other law regarding arbitration; and

(3) a provision that allows the Federal utility to withdraw from the Transmission Organization and terminate the contract, agreement, or other arrangement in accordance with its terms.

(d) Commission

Neither this section, actions taken pursuant to this section, nor any other transaction of a Federal utility participating in a Transmission Organization shall confer on the Commission jurisdiction or authority over—

(1) the electric generation assets, electric capacity, or energy of the Federal utility that the Federal utility is authorized by law to market; or

(2) the power sales activities of the Federal utility.

(e) Existing statutory and other obligations

(1) System operation requirements

No statutory provision requiring or authorizing a Federal utility to transmit electric power or to construct, operate, or maintain the transmission system of the Federal utility prohibits a transfer of control and use of the transmission system pursuant to, and subject to, the requirements of this section.

(2) Other obligations

This subsection does not—

(A) suspend, or exempt any Federal utility from, any provision of Federal law in effect on August 8, 2005, including any requirement or direction relating to the use of the transmission system of the Federal utility, environmental protection, fish and wildlife protection, flood control, navigation, water delivery, or recreation; or

(B) authorize abrogation of any contract or treaty obligation.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1232, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 956.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 1232 of Pub. L. 109–58. Subsec. (e)(3) of section 1232 of Pub. L. 109–58 repealed section 824n of Title 16, Conservation.

§16432. Study on the benefits of economic dispatch

(a) Study

The Secretary, in coordination and consultation with the States, shall conduct a study on—

(1) the procedures currently used by electric utilities to perform economic dispatch;

(2) identifying possible revisions to those procedures to improve the ability of nonutility generation resources to offer their output for sale for the purpose of inclusion in economic dispatch; and

(3) the potential benefits to residential, commercial, and industrial electricity consumers nationally and in each State if economic dispatch procedures were revised to improve the ability of nonutility generation resources to offer their output for inclusion in economic dispatch.

(b) Definition

The term "economic dispatch" when used in this section means the operation of generation facilities to produce energy at the lowest cost to reliably serve consumers, recognizing any operational limits of generation and transmission facilities.

(c) Report to Congress and the States

Not later than 90 days after August 8, 2005, and on a yearly basis following, the Secretary shall submit a report to Congress and the States on the results of the study conducted under subsection (a), including recommendations to Congress and the States for any suggested legislative or regulatory changes.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1234, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 960.)

PART C—TRANSMISSION RATE REFORM

§16441. Funding new interconnection and transmission upgrades

The Commission may approve a participant funding plan that allocates costs related to transmission upgrades or new generator interconnection, without regard to whether an applicant is a member of a Commission-approved Transmission Organization, if the plan results in rates that—

(1) are just and reasonable;

(2) are not unduly discriminatory or preferential; and

(3) are otherwise consistent with sections 824d and 824e of title 16.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1242, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 962.)

PART D—REPEAL OF PUBLIC UTILITY HOLDING COMPANY ACT OF 1935

§16451. Definitions

For purposes of this part:

(1) Affiliate

The term "affiliate" of a company means any company, 5 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of which are owned, controlled, or held with power to vote, directly or indirectly, by such company.

(2) Associate company

The term "associate company" of a company means any company in the same holding company system with such company.

(3) Commission

The term "Commission" means the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission.

(4) Company

The term "company" means a corporation, partnership, association, joint stock company, business trust, or any organized group of persons, whether incorporated or not, or a receiver, trustee, or other liquidating agent of any of the foregoing.

(5) Electric utility company

The term "electric utility company" means any company that owns or operates facilities used for the generation, transmission, or distribution of electric energy for sale.

(6) Exempt wholesale generator and foreign utility company

The terms "exempt wholesale generator" and "foreign utility company" have the same meanings as in sections 79z–5a and 79z–5b of title 15, as those sections existed on the day before the effective date of this part.

(7) Gas utility company

The term "gas utility company" means any company that owns or operates facilities used for distribution at retail (other than the distribution only in enclosed portable containers or distribution to tenants or employees of the company operating such facilities for their own use and not for resale) of natural or manufactured gas for heat, light, or power.

(8) Holding company

(A) In general

The term "holding company" means—

(i) any company that directly or indirectly owns, controls, or holds, with power to vote, 10 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of a public-utility company or of a holding company of any public-utility company; and

(ii) any person, determined by the Commission, after notice and opportunity for hearing, to exercise directly or indirectly (either alone or pursuant to an arrangement or understanding with one or more persons) such a controlling influence over the management or policies of any public-utility company or holding company as to make it necessary or appropriate for the rate protection of utility customers with respect to rates that such person be subject to the obligations, duties, and liabilities imposed by this part upon holding companies.

(B) Exclusions

The term "holding company" shall not include—

(i) a bank, savings association, or trust company, or their operating subsidiaries that own, control, or hold, with the power to vote, public utility or public utility holding company securities so long as the securities are—

(I) held as collateral for a loan;

(II) held in the ordinary course of business as a fiduciary; or

(III) acquired solely for purposes of liquidation and in connection with a loan previously contracted for and owned beneficially for a period of not more than two years; or

(ii) a broker or dealer that owns, controls, or holds with the power to vote public utility or public utility holding company securities so long as the securities are—

(I) not beneficially owned by the broker or dealer and are subject to any voting instructions which may be given by customers or their assigns; or

(II) acquired within 12 months in the ordinary course of business as a broker, dealer, or underwriter with the bona fide intention of effecting distribution of the specific securities so acquired.

(9) Holding company system

The term "holding company system" means a holding company, together with its subsidiary companies.

(10) Jurisdictional rates

The term "jurisdictional rates" means rates accepted or established by the Commission for the transmission of electric energy in interstate commerce, the sale of electric energy at wholesale in interstate commerce, the transportation of natural gas in interstate commerce, and the sale in interstate commerce of natural gas for resale for ultimate public consumption for domestic, commercial, industrial, or any other use.

(11) Natural gas company

The term "natural gas company" means a person engaged in the transportation of natural gas in

interstate commerce or the sale of such gas in interstate commerce for resale.

(12) Person

The term "person" means an individual or company.

(13) Public utility

The term "public utility" means any person who owns or operates facilities used for transmission of electric energy in interstate commerce or sales of electric energy at wholesale in interstate commerce.

(14) Public-utility company

The term "public-utility company" means an electric utility company or a gas utility company.

(15) State commission

The term "State commission" means any commission, board, agency, or officer, by whatever name designated, of a State, municipality, or other political subdivision of a State that, under the laws of such State, has jurisdiction to regulate public utility companies.

(16) Subsidiary company

The term "subsidiary company" of a holding company means—

(A) any company, 10 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of which are directly or indirectly owned, controlled, or held with power to vote, by such holding company; and

(B) any person, the management or policies of which the Commission, after notice and opportunity for hearing, determines to be subject to a controlling influence, directly or indirectly, by such holding company (either alone or pursuant to an arrangement or understanding with one or more other persons) so as to make it necessary for the rate protection of utility customers with respect to rates that such person be subject to the obligations, duties, and liabilities imposed by this part upon subsidiary companies of holding companies.

(17) Voting security

The term "voting security" means any security presently entitling the owner or holder thereof to vote in the direction or management of the affairs of a company.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1262, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 972.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle F (§§1261–1277) of title XII of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 972, which enacted this part, amended sections 824 and 824m of Title 16, Conservation, repealed chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 825q of Title 16, and enacted provisions set out as notes under this section and section 15801 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle F to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

For the effective date of this part, referred to in par. (6), see Effective Date note set out below.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1274, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 977, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Except for section 1272 [42 U.S.C. 16460] (relating to implementation), this subtitle [subtitle F (§§1261 to 1277) of title XII of Pub. L. 109–58, enacting this part, amending sections 824 and 824m of Title 16, Conservation, repealing chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 825q of Title 16, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 15801 of this title] shall take effect 6 months after the date of enactment of this subtitle [Aug. 8, 2005].

"(b) COMPLIANCE WITH CERTAIN RULES.—If the [Federal Energy Regulatory] Commission approves and makes effective any final rulemaking modifying the standards of conduct governing entities that own, operate, or control facilities for transmission of electricity in interstate commerce or transportation of natural gas in interstate commerce prior to the effective date of this subtitle, any action taken by a public-utility company or utility holding company to comply with the requirements of such rulemaking shall not subject such public-utility company or utility holding company to any regulatory requirement applicable to a holding company under the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935 (15 U.S.C. 79 et seq.)."

SHORT TITLE

For short title of subtitle F of title XII of Pub. L. 109–58, which enacted this part, as the "Public Utility Holding Company Act of 2005", see section 1261 of Pub. L. 109–58, set out as a note under section 15801 of this title.

§16452. Federal access to books and records

(a) In general

Each holding company and each associate company thereof shall maintain, and shall make available to the Commission, such books, accounts, memoranda, and other records as the Commission determines are relevant to costs incurred by a public utility or natural gas company that is an associate company of such holding company and necessary or appropriate for the protection of utility customers with respect to jurisdictional rates.

(b) Affiliate companies

Each affiliate of a holding company or of any subsidiary company of a holding company shall maintain, and shall make available to the Commission, such books, accounts, memoranda, and other records with respect to any transaction with another affiliate, as the Commission determines are relevant to costs incurred by a public utility or natural gas company that is an associate company of such holding company and necessary or appropriate for the protection of utility customers with respect to jurisdictional rates.

(c) Holding company systems

The Commission may examine the books, accounts, memoranda, and other records of any company in a holding company system, or any affiliate thereof, as the Commission determines are relevant to costs incurred by a public utility or natural gas company within such holding company system and necessary or appropriate for the protection of utility customers with respect to jurisdictional rates.

(d) Confidentiality

No member, officer, or employee of the Commission shall divulge any fact or information that may come to his or her knowledge during the course of examination of books, accounts, memoranda, or other records as provided in this section, except as may be directed by the Commission or by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1264, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 974.)

§16453. State access to books and records

(a) In general

Upon the written request of a State commission having jurisdiction to regulate a public-utility company in a holding company system, the holding company or any associate company or affiliate thereof, other than such public-utility company, wherever located, shall produce for inspection books, accounts, memoranda, and other records that—

(1) have been identified in reasonable detail in a proceeding before the State commission;

(2) the State commission determines are relevant to costs incurred by such public-utility company; and

(3) are necessary for the effective discharge of the responsibilities of the State commission with respect to such proceeding.

(b) Limitation

Subsection (a) does not apply to any person that is a holding company solely by reason of ownership of one or more qualifying facilities under the Public Utility Regulatory Policies Act of 1978 (16 U.S.C. 2601 et seq.).

(c) Confidentiality of information

The production of books, accounts, memoranda, and other records under subsection (a) shall be subject to such terms and conditions as may be necessary and appropriate to safeguard against unwarranted disclosure to the public of any trade secrets or sensitive commercial information.

(d) Effect on State law

Nothing in this section shall preempt applicable State law concerning the provision of books, accounts, memoranda, and other records, or in any way limit the rights of any State to obtain books, accounts, memoranda, and other records under any other Federal law, contract, or otherwise.

(e) Court jurisdiction

Any United States district court located in the State in which the State commission referred to in subsection (a) is located shall have jurisdiction to enforce compliance with this section.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1265, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 975.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Public Utility Regulatory Policies Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 95–617, Nov. 9, 1978, 92 Stat. 3117, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2601 of Title 16, Conservation, and Tables.

§16454. Exemption authority

(a) Rulemaking

Not later than 90 days after the effective date of this part, the Commission shall issue a final rule to exempt from the requirements of section 16452 of this title (relating to Federal access to books and records) any person that is a holding company, solely with respect to one or more—

(1) qualifying facilities under the Public Utility Regulatory Policies Act of 1978 (16 U.S.C. 2601 et seq.);

(2) exempt wholesale generators; or

(3) foreign utility companies.

(b) Other authority

The Commission shall exempt a person or transaction from the requirements of section 16452 of this title (relating to Federal access to books and records) if, upon application or upon the motion of the Commission—

(1) the Commission finds that the books, accounts, memoranda, and other records of any person are not relevant to the jurisdictional rates of a public utility or natural gas company; or

(2) the Commission finds that any class of transactions is not relevant to the jurisdictional rates of a public utility or natural gas company.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1266, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 975.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the effective date of this part, referred to in subsec. (a), see Effective Date note set out under section 16451 of this title.

The Public Utility Regulatory Policies Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is Pub. L. 95–617, Nov. 9, 1978, 92 Stat. 3117, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2601 of Title 16, Conservation, and Tables.

§16455. Affiliate transactions

(a) Commission authority unaffected

Nothing in this part shall limit the authority of the Commission under the Federal Power Act (16 U.S.C. 791a et seq.) to require that jurisdictional rates are just and reasonable, including the ability to

deny or approve the pass through of costs, the prevention of cross-subsidization, and the issuance of such rules and regulations as are necessary or appropriate for the protection of utility consumers.

(b) Recovery of costs

Nothing in this part shall preclude the Commission or a State commission from exercising its jurisdiction under otherwise applicable law to determine whether a public-utility company, public utility, or natural gas company may recover in rates any costs of an activity performed by an associate company, or any costs of goods or services acquired by such public-utility company from an associate company.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1267, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 976.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle F (§§1261–1277) of title XII of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 972, which enacted this part, amended sections 824 and 824m of Title 16, Conservation, repealed chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 825q of Title 16, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 15801 and 16451 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle F to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

The Federal Power Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act June 10, 1920, ch. 285, 41 Stat. 1063, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 12 (§791a et seq.) of Title 16, Conservation. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 791a of Title 16 and Tables.

§16456. Applicability

Except as otherwise specifically provided in this part, no provision of this part shall apply to, or be deemed to include—

(1) the United States;

(2) a State or any political subdivision of a State;

(3) any foreign governmental authority not operating in the United States;

(4) any agency, authority, or instrumentality of any entity referred to in paragraph (1), (2), or (3); or

(5) any officer, agent, or employee of any entity referred to in paragraph (1), (2), (3), or (4) acting as such in the course of his or her official duty.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1268, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 976.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle F (§§1261–1277) of title XII of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 972, which enacted this part, amended sections 824 and 824m of Title 16, Conservation, repealed chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 825q of Title 16, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 15801 and 16451 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle F to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

§16457. Effect on other regulations

Nothing in this part precludes the Commission or a State commission from exercising its jurisdiction under otherwise applicable law to protect utility customers.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1269, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 976.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle F (§§1261–1277) of title XII of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 972, which enacted this part, amended sections 824 and 824m of Title 16, Conservation, repealed chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 825q of Title 16, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 15801 and 16451 of this title. For

complete classification of subtitle F to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

§16458. Enforcement

The Commission shall have the same powers as set forth in sections 825e through 825p of title 16 to enforce the provisions of this part.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1270, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 976.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle F (§§1261–1277) of title XII of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 972, which enacted this part, amended sections 824 and 824m of Title 16, Conservation, repealed chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 825q of Title 16, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 15801 and 16451 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle F to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

§16459. Savings provisions

(a) In general

Nothing in this part, or otherwise in the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935, or rules, regulations, or orders thereunder, prohibits a person from engaging in or continuing to engage in activities or transactions in which it is legally engaged or authorized to engage on August 8, 2005, if that person continues to comply with the terms (other than an expiration date or termination date) of any such authorization, whether by rule or by order.

(b) Effect on other Commission authority

Nothing in this part limits the authority of the Commission under the Federal Power Act (16 U.S.C. 791a et seq.) or the Natural Gas Act (15 U.S.C. 717 et seq.).

(c) Tax treatment

Tax treatment under section 1081 [1] of title 26 as a result of transactions ordered in compliance with the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935 (15 U.S.C. 79 et seq.) shall not be affected in any manner due to the repeal of that Act and the enactment of the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 2005 [42 U.S.C. 16451 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1271, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 976.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle F (§§1261–1277) of title XII of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 972, known as the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 2005, which enacted this part, amended sections 824 and 824m of Title 16, Conservation, repealed chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 825q of Title 16, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 15801 and 16451 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle F to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

The Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (c), is title I of act Aug. 26, 1935, ch. 687, 49 Stat. 803, as amended, which was classified generally to chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1263, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 974. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

The Federal Power Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is act June 10, 1920, ch. 285, 41 Stat. 1063, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 12 (§791a et seq.) of Title 16, Conservation. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 791a of Title 16 and Tables.

The Natural Gas Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is act June 21, 1938, ch. 556, 52 Stat. 821, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 15B (§717 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 717w of Title 15 and Tables.

Section 1081 of title 26, referred to in subsec. (c), was repealed by Pub. L. 109–135, title IV, §402(a)(1),

Dec. 21, 2005, 119 Stat. 2610.

The Public Utility Holding Company Act of 2005, referred to in subsec. (c), is subtitle F (§§1261–1277) of title XII of Pub. L. 109–58. See note for this part above.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§16460. Implementation

Not later than 4 months after August 8, 2005, the Commission shall—

(1) issue such regulations as may be necessary or appropriate to implement this part (other than section 16453 of this title, relating to State access to books and records); and

(2) submit to Congress detailed recommendations on technical and conforming amendments to Federal law necessary to carry out this part and the amendments made by this part.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1272, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 977.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle F (§§1261–1277) of title XII of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 972, which enacted this part, amended sections 824 and 824m of Title 16, Conservation, repealed chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 825q of Title 16, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 15801 and 16451 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle F to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

§16461. Transfer of resources

All books and records that relate primarily to the functions transferred to the Commission under this part shall be transferred from the Securities and Exchange Commission to the Commission.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1273, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 977.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle F (§§1261–1277) of title XII of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 972, which enacted this part, amended sections 824 and 824m of Title 16, Conservation, repealed chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 825q of Title 16, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 15801 and 16451 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle F to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

§16462. Service allocation

(a) Definition of public utility

In this section, the term "public utility" has the meaning given the term in section 824(e) of title 16.

(b) FERC review

In the case of non-power goods or administrative or management services provided by an associate company organized specifically for the purpose of providing such goods or services to any public utility in the same holding company system, at the election of the system or a State commission having jurisdiction over the public utility, the Commission, after the effective date of this part, shall review and authorize the allocation of the costs for such goods or services to the extent relevant to that associate company.

(c) Effect on Federal and State law

Nothing in this section shall affect the authority of the Commission or a State commission under

other applicable law.

(d) Rules

Not later than 4 months after August 8, 2005, the Commission shall issue rules (which rules shall be effective no earlier than the effective date of this part) to exempt from the requirements of this section any company in a holding company system whose public utility operations are confined substantially to a single State and any other class of transactions that the Commission finds is not relevant to the jurisdictional rates of a public utility.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1275, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 977.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the effective date of this part, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (d), see Effective Date note set out under section 16451 of this title.

§16463. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such funds as may be necessary to carry out this part.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1276, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 978.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle F (§§1261–1277) of title XII of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 972, which enacted this part, amended sections 824 and 824m of Title 16, Conservation, repealed chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 825q of Title 16, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 15801 and 16451 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle F to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

PART E—MARKET TRANSPARENCY, ENFORCEMENT, AND CONSUMER PROTECTION

§16471. Consumer privacy and unfair trade practices

(a) Privacy

The Federal Trade Commission may issue rules protecting the privacy of electric consumers from the disclosure of consumer information obtained in connection with the sale or delivery of electric energy to electric consumers.

(b) Slamming

The Federal Trade Commission may issue rules prohibiting the change of selection of an electric utility except with the informed consent of the electric consumer or if approved by the appropriate State regulatory authority.

(c) Cramming

The Federal Trade Commission may issue rules prohibiting the sale of goods and services to an electric consumer unless expressly authorized by law or the electric consumer.

(d) Rulemaking

The Federal Trade Commission shall proceed in accordance with section 553 of title 5 when prescribing a rule under this section.

(e) State authority

If the Federal Trade Commission determines that a State's regulations provide equivalent or

greater protection than the provisions of this section, such State regulations shall apply in that State in lieu of the regulations issued by the Commission under this section.

(f) Definitions

For purposes of this section:

(1) State regulatory authority

The term "State regulatory authority" has the meaning given that term in section 796(21) of title 16.

(2) Electric consumer and electric utility

The terms "electric consumer" and "electric utility" have the meanings given those terms in section 2602 of title 16.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1287, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 981.)

PART F—DEFINITIONS

§16481. Commission defined

In this subchapter, the term "Commission" means the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1291(a), Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 984.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title XII of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 941, which enacted this subchapter and sections 824j–1 and 824o to 824w of Title 16, Conservation, amended sections 796, 824, 824a–3, 824b, 824e, 824j, 824m, 825e, 825f, 825l to 825o, 825o–1, 2621, 2622, 2625, 2634, and 2642 of Title 16, repealed chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and sections 824n and 825q of Title 16, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 15801 and 16451 of this title and sections 824b, 824o, 824q, and 2642 of Title 16. For complete classification of title XII to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

SUBCHAPTER XIII—MISCELLANEOUS

§16491. Energy production incentives

(a) In general

A State may provide to any entity—

(1) a credit against any tax or fee owed to the State under a State law, or

(2) any other tax incentive,

determined by the State to be appropriate, in the amount calculated under and in accordance with a formula determined by the State, for production described in subsection (b) in the State by the entity that receives such credit or such incentive.

(b) Eligible entities

Subsection (a) shall apply with respect to the production in the State of electricity from coal mined in the State and used in a facility, if such production meets all applicable Federal and State laws and if such facility uses scrubbers or other forms of clean coal technology.

(c) Effect on interstate commerce

Any action taken by a State in accordance with this section with respect to a tax or fee payable, or incentive applicable, for any period beginning after August 8, 2005, shall—

(1) be considered to be a reasonable regulation of commerce; and

(2) not be considered to impose an undue burden on interstate commerce or to otherwise impair, restrain, or discriminate, against interstate commerce.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XIV, §1402, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1061.)

§16492. Regulation of certain oil used in transformers

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, or rule promulgated by the Environmental Protection Agency, vegetable oil made from soybeans and used in electric transformers as thermal insulation shall not be regulated as an oil identified under section 2720(a)(1)(B) of title 33.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XIV, §1403, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1061.)

§16493. National Priority Project Designation

(a) Designation of National Priority Projects

(1) In general

There is established the National Priority Project Designation (referred to in this section as the "Designation"), which shall be evidenced by a medal bearing the inscription "National Priority Project".

(2) Design and materials

The medal shall be of such design and materials and bear such additional inscriptions as the President may prescribe.

(b) Making and presentation of Designation

(1) In general

The President, on the basis of recommendations made by the Secretary, shall annually designate organizations that have—

(A) advanced the field of renewable energy technology and contributed to North American energy independence; and

(B) been certified by the Secretary under subsection (e).

(2) Presentation

The President shall designate projects with such ceremonies as the President may prescribe.

(3) Use of Designation

An organization that receives a Designation under this section may publicize the Designation of the organization as a National Priority Project in advertising.

(4) Categories in which the Designation may be given

Separate Designations shall be made to qualifying projects in each of the following categories:

(A) Wind and biomass energy generation projects.

(B) Photovoltaic and fuel cell energy generation projects.

(C) Energy efficient building and renewable energy projects.

(D) First-in-Class projects.

(c) Selection criteria

(1) In general

Certification and selection of the projects to receive the Designation shall be based on criteria established under this subsection.

(2) Wind, biomass, and building projects

In the case of a wind, biomass, or building project, the project shall demonstrate that the project will install not less than 30 megawatts of renewable energy generation capacity.

(3) Solar photovoltaic and fuel cell projects

In the case of a solar photovoltaic or fuel cell project, the project shall demonstrate that the project will install not less than 3 megawatts of renewable energy generation capacity.

(4) Energy efficient building and renewable energy projects

In the case of an energy efficient building or renewable energy project, in addition to meeting the criteria established under paragraph (2), each building project shall demonstrate that the project will—

(A) comply with third-party certification standards for high-performance, sustainable buildings;

(B) use whole-building integration of energy efficiency and environmental performance design and technology, including advanced building controls;

(C) use renewable energy for at least 50 percent of the energy consumption of the project;

(D) comply with applicable Energy Star standards; and

(E) include at least 5,000,000 square feet of enclosed space.

(5) First-in-Class use

Notwithstanding paragraphs (2) through (4), a new building project may qualify under this section if the Secretary determines that the project—

(A) represents a First-In-Class use of renewable energy; or

(B) otherwise establishes a new paradigm of building integrated renewable energy use or energy efficiency.

(d) Application

(1) Initial applications

No later than 120 days after August 8, 2005, and annually thereafter, the Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register an invitation and guidelines for submitting applications, consistent with this section.

(2) Contents

The application shall describe the project, or planned project, and the plans to meet the criteria established under subsection (c).

(e) Certification

(1) In general

Not later than 60 days after the application period described in subsection (d), and annually thereafter, the Secretary shall certify projects that are reasonably expected to meet the criteria established under subsection (c).

(2) Certified projects

The Secretary shall designate personnel of the Department to work with persons carrying out each certified project and ensure that the personnel—

(A) provide each certified project with guidance in meeting the criteria established under subsection (c);

(B) identify programs of the Department, including National Laboratories and Technology Centers, that will assist each project in meeting the criteria established under subsection (c); and

(C) ensure that knowledge and transfer of the most current technology between the applicable resources of the Federal Government (including the National Laboratories and Technology Centers, the Department, and the Environmental Protection Agency) and the certified projects is being facilitated to accelerate commercialization of work developed through those resources.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XIV, §1405, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1062.)

§16494. Oxygen-fuel

(a) Program

The Secretary shall establish a program on oxygen-fuel systems. If feasible, the program shall include renovation of at least one existing large unit and one existing small unit, and construction of one new large unit and one new small unit.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section—

(1) $100,000,000 for fiscal year 2006;

(2) $100,000,000 for fiscal year 2007; and

(3) $100,000,000 for fiscal year 2008.

(c) Definitions

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term "large unit" means a unit with a generating capacity of 100 megawatts or more;

(2) the term "oxygen-fuel systems" means systems that utilize fuel efficiency benefits of oil, gas, coal, and biomass combustion using substantially pure oxygen, with high flame temperatures and the exclusion of air from the boiler, in industrial or electric utility steam generating units; and

(3) the term "small unit" means a unit with a generating capacity in the 10–50 megawatt range.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XIV, §1407, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1064.)

SUBCHAPTER XIV—ETHANOL AND MOTOR FUELS

§16501. Commercial byproducts from municipal solid waste and cellulosic biomass loan guarantee program

(a) Definition of municipal solid waste

In this section, the term "municipal solid waste" has the meaning given the term "solid waste" in section 6903 of this title.

(b) Establishment of program

The Secretary shall establish a program to provide guarantees of loans by private institutions for the construction of facilities for the processing and conversion of municipal solid waste and cellulosic biomass into fuel ethanol and other commercial byproducts.

(c) Requirements

The Secretary may provide a loan guarantee under subsection (b) to an applicant if—

(1) without a loan guarantee, credit is not available to the applicant under reasonable terms or conditions sufficient to finance the construction of a facility described in subsection (b);

(2) the prospective earning power of the applicant and the character and value of the security pledged provide a reasonable assurance of repayment of the loan to be guaranteed in accordance with the terms of the loan; and

(3) the loan bears interest at a rate determined by the Secretary to be reasonable, taking into account the current average yield on outstanding obligations of the United States with remaining periods of maturity comparable to the maturity of the loan.

(d) Criteria

In selecting recipients of loan guarantees from among applicants, the Secretary shall give preference to proposals that—

(1) meet all applicable Federal and State permitting requirements;

(2) are most likely to be successful; and

(3) are located in local markets that have the greatest need for the facility because of—

(A) the limited availability of land for waste disposal;

(B) the availability of sufficient quantities of cellulosic biomass; or

(C) a high level of demand for fuel ethanol or other commercial byproducts of the facility.

(e) Maturity

A loan guaranteed under subsection (b) shall have a maturity of not more than 20 years.

(f) Terms and conditions

The loan agreement for a loan guaranteed under subsection (b) shall provide that no provision of the loan agreement may be amended or waived without the consent of the Secretary.

(g) Assurance of repayment

The Secretary shall require that an applicant for a loan guarantee under subsection (b) provide an assurance of repayment in the form of a performance bond, insurance, collateral, or other means acceptable to the Secretary in an amount equal to not less than 20 percent of the amount of the loan.

(h) Guarantee fee

The recipient of a loan guarantee under subsection (b) shall pay the Secretary an amount determined by the Secretary to be sufficient to cover the administrative costs of the Secretary relating to the loan guarantee.

(i) Full faith and credit

The full faith and credit of the United States is pledged to the payment of all guarantees made under this section. Any such guarantee made by the Secretary shall be conclusive evidence of the eligibility of the loan for the guarantee with respect to principal and interest. The validity of the guarantee shall be incontestable in the hands of a holder of the guaranteed loan.

(j) Reports

Until each guaranteed loan under this section has been repaid in full, the Secretary shall annually submit to Congress a report on the activities of the Secretary under this section.

(k) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section.

(l) Termination of authority

The authority of the Secretary to issue a loan guarantee under subsection (b) terminates on the date that is 10 years after August 8, 2005.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XV, §1510, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1085.)

§16502. Advanced Biofuel Technologies Program

(a) In general

Subject to the availability of appropriations under subsection (d), the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency shall, in consultation with the Secretary of Agriculture and the Biomass Research and Development Technical Advisory Committee established under section 8605 [1] of title 7, establish a program, to be known as the "Advanced Biofuel Technologies Program", to demonstrate advanced technologies for the production of alternative transportation fuels.

(b) Priority

In carrying out the program under subsection (a), the Administrator shall give priority to projects that enhance the geographical diversity of alternative fuels production and utilize feedstocks that represent 10 percent or less of ethanol or biodiesel fuel production in the United States during the previous fiscal year.

(c) Demonstration projects

(1) In general

As part of the program under subsection (a), the Administrator shall fund demonstration projects—

(A) to develop not less than 4 different conversion technologies for producing cellulosic biomass ethanol; and

(B) to develop not less than 5 technologies for coproducing value-added bioproducts (such as fertilizers, herbicides, and pesticides) resulting from the production of biodiesel fuel.

(2) Administration

Demonstration projects under this subsection shall be—

(A) conducted based on a merit-reviewed, competitive process; and

(B) subject to the cost-sharing requirements of section 16352 of this title.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $110,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2005 through 2009.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XV, §1514, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1090.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 8605 of title 7, referred to in subsec. (a), was repealed by Pub. L. 110–246, title IX, §9001(b), June 18, 2008, 122 Stat. 2095. Provisions relating to a Biomass Research and Development Technical Advisory Committee are now contained in section 8108(d) of title 7, Agriculture.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§16503. Sugar ethanol loan guarantee program

(a) In general

Funds may be provided for the cost (as defined in section 661a of title 2) of loan guarantees issued under title XIV [1] to carry out commercial demonstration projects for ethanol derived from sugarcane, bagasse, and other sugarcane byproducts.

(b) Demonstration projects

The Secretary may issue loan guarantees under this section to projects to demonstrate commercially the feasibility and viability of producing ethanol using sugarcane, sugarcane bagasse, and other sugarcane byproducts as a feedstock.

(c) Requirements

An applicant for a loan guarantee under this section may provide assurances, satisfactory to the Secretary, that—

(1) the project design has been validated through the operation of a continuous process facility;

(2) the project has been subject to a full technical review;

(3) the project, with the loan guarantee, is economically viable; and

(4) there is a reasonable assurance of repayment of the guaranteed loan.

(d) Limitations

(1) Maximum guarantee

Except as provided in paragraph (2), a loan guarantee under this section—

(A) may be issued for up to 80 percent of the estimated cost of a project; but
(B) shall not exceed $50,000,000 for any 1 project.

(2) Additional guarantees

(A) In general

The Secretary may issue additional loan guarantees for a project to cover—
(i) up to 80 percent of the excess of actual project costs; but
(ii) not to exceed 15 percent of the amount of the original loan guarantee.

(B) Principal and interest

Subject to subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall guarantee 100 percent of the principal and interest of a loan guarantee made under subparagraph (A).

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XV, §1516, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1091.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Title XIV, referred to in subsec. (a), is title XIV of Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1061, which enacted subchapter XIII of this chapter and section 13557 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

SUBCHAPTER XV—INCENTIVES FOR INNOVATIVE TECHNOLOGIES

§16511. Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) Commercial technology

(A) In general

The term "commercial technology" means a technology in general use in the commercial marketplace.

(B) Inclusions

The term "commercial technology" does not include a technology solely by use of the technology in a demonstration project funded by the Department.

(2) Cost

The term "cost" has the meaning given the term "cost of a loan guarantee" within the meaning of section 661a(5)(C) of title 2.

(3) Eligible project

The term "eligible project" means a project described in section 16513 of this title.

(4) Guarantee

(A) In general

The term "guarantee" has the meaning given the term "loan guarantee" in section 661a of title 2.

(B) Inclusion

The term "guarantee" includes a loan guarantee commitment (as defined in section 661a of title 2).

(5) Obligation

The term "obligation" means the loan or other debt obligation that is guaranteed under this

section.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XVII, §1701, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1117.)

§16512. Terms and conditions

(a) In general

Except for division C of Public Law 108–324 [15 U.S.C. 720 et seq.], the Secretary shall make guarantees under this or any other Act for projects on such terms and conditions as the Secretary determines, after consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, only in accordance with this section.

(b) Specific appropriation or contribution

(1) [1] In general

No guarantee shall be made unless—

(A) an appropriation for the cost of the guarantee has been made;

(B) the Secretary has received from the borrower a payment in full for the cost of the guarantee and deposited the payment into the Treasury; or

(C) a combination of one or more appropriations under subparagraph (A) and one or more payments from the borrower under subparagraph (B) has been made that is sufficient to cover the cost of the guarantee.

(c) Amount

Unless otherwise provided by law, a guarantee by the Secretary shall not exceed an amount equal to 80 percent of the project cost of the facility that is the subject of the guarantee, as estimated at the time at which the guarantee is issued.

(d) Repayment

(1) In general

No guarantee shall be made unless the Secretary determines that there is reasonable prospect of repayment of the principal and interest on the obligation by the borrower.

(2) Amount

No guarantee shall be made unless the Secretary determines that the amount of the obligation (when combined with amounts available to the borrower from other sources) will be sufficient to carry out the project.

(3) Subordination

The obligation shall be subject to the condition that the obligation is not subordinate to other financing.

(e) Interest rate

An obligation shall bear interest at a rate that does not exceed a level that the Secretary determines appropriate, taking into account the prevailing rate of interest in the private sector for similar loans and risks.

(f) Term

The term of an obligation shall require full repayment over a period not to exceed the lesser of—

(1) 30 years; or

(2) 90 percent of the projected useful life of the physical asset to be financed by the obligation (as determined by the Secretary).

(g) Defaults

(1) Payment by Secretary

(A) In general

If a borrower defaults on the obligation (as defined in regulations promulgated by the Secretary and specified in the guarantee contract), the holder of the guarantee shall have the right to demand payment of the unpaid amount from the Secretary.

(B) Payment required

Within such period as may be specified in the guarantee or related agreements, the Secretary shall pay to the holder of the guarantee the unpaid interest on, and unpaid principal of the obligation as to which the borrower has defaulted, unless the Secretary finds that there was no default by the borrower in the payment of interest or principal or that the default has been remedied.

(C) Forbearance

Nothing in this subsection precludes any forbearance by the holder of the obligation for the benefit of the borrower which may be agreed upon by the parties to the obligation and approved by the Secretary.

(2) Subrogation

(A) In general

If the Secretary makes a payment under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall be subrogated to the rights of the recipient of the payment as specified in the guarantee or related agreements including, where appropriate, the authority (notwithstanding any other provision of law) to—

(i) complete, maintain, operate, lease, or otherwise dispose of any property acquired pursuant to such guarantee or related agreements; or

(ii) permit the borrower, pursuant to an agreement with the Secretary, to continue to pursue the purposes of the project if the Secretary determines this to be in the public interest.

(B) Superiority of rights

The rights of the Secretary, with respect to any property acquired pursuant to a guarantee or related agreements, shall be superior to the rights of any other person with respect to the property.

(C) Terms and conditions

A guarantee agreement shall include such detailed terms and conditions as the Secretary determines appropriate to—

(i) protect the interests of the United States in the case of default; and

(ii) have available all the patents and technology necessary for any person selected, including the Secretary, to complete and operate the project.

(3) Payment of principal and interest by Secretary

With respect to any obligation guaranteed under this section, the Secretary may enter into a contract to pay, and pay, holders of the obligation, for and on behalf of the borrower, from funds appropriated for that purpose, the principal and interest payments which become due and payable on the unpaid balance of the obligation if the Secretary finds that—

(A)(i) the borrower is unable to meet the payments and is not in default;

(ii) it is in the public interest to permit the borrower to continue to pursue the purposes of the project; and

(iii) the probable net benefit to the Federal Government in paying the principal and interest will be greater than that which would result in the event of a default;

(B) the amount of the payment that the Secretary is authorized to pay shall be no greater than the amount of principal and interest that the borrower is obligated to pay under the agreement being guaranteed; and

(C) the borrower agrees to reimburse the Secretary for the payment (including interest) on terms and conditions that are satisfactory to the Secretary.

(4) Action by Attorney General

(A) Notification

If the borrower defaults on an obligation, the Secretary shall notify the Attorney General of the default.

(B) Recovery

On notification, the Attorney General shall take such action as is appropriate to recover the unpaid principal and interest due from—

(i) such assets of the defaulting borrower as are associated with the obligation; or

(ii) any other security pledged to secure the obligation.

(h) Fees

(1) In general

The Secretary shall charge and collect fees for guarantees in amounts the Secretary determines are sufficient to cover applicable administrative expenses.

(2) Availability

Fees collected under this subsection shall—

(A) be deposited by the Secretary into the Treasury; and

(B) remain available until expended, subject to such other conditions as are contained in annual appropriations Acts.

(i) Records; audits

(1) In general

A recipient of a guarantee shall keep such records and other pertinent documents as the Secretary shall prescribe by regulation, including such records as the Secretary may require to facilitate an effective audit.

(2) Access

The Secretary and the Comptroller General of the United States, or their duly authorized representatives, shall have access, for the purpose of audit, to the records and other pertinent documents.

(j) Full faith and credit

The full faith and credit of the United States is pledged to the payment of all guarantees issued under this section with respect to principal and interest.

(k) Wage rate requirements

All laborers and mechanics employed by contractors and subcontractors in the performance of construction work financed in whole or in part by a loan guaranteed under this subchapter shall be paid wages at rates not less than those prevailing on projects of a character similar in the locality as determined by the Secretary of Labor in accordance with subchapter IV of chapter 31 of title 40. With respect to the labor standards in this subsection, the Secretary of Labor shall have the authority and functions set forth in Reorganization Plan Numbered 14 of 1950 (64 Stat. 1267; 5 U.S.C. App.) and section 3145 of title 40.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XVII, §1702, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1117; Pub. L. 111–85, title III, §310, Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2873; Pub. L. 112–74, div. B, title III, §305(1), Dec. 23, 2011, 125 Stat. 877.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Division C of Public Law 108–324, referred to in subsec. (a), is division C of Pub. L. 108–324, Oct. 13, 2004, 118 Stat. 1255, known as the Alaska Natural Gas Pipeline Act, which is classified principally to chapter 15D (§720 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of division C to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 720 of Title 15 and Tables.

Reorganization Plan Numbered 14 of 1950, referred to in subsec. (k), is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

2011—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 112–74 added subsec. (b) and struck out former subsec. (b). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "No guarantee shall be made unless—

"(1) an appropriation for the cost has been made; or

"(2) the Secretary has received from the borrower a payment in full for the cost of the obligation and deposited the payment into the Treasury."

2009—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 111–85 added subsec. (k).

[1] *So in original. No par. (2) has been enacted.*

§16513. Eligible projects

(a) In general

The Secretary may make guarantees under this section only for projects that—

(1) avoid, reduce, or sequester air pollutants or anthropogenic emissions of greenhouse gases; and

(2) employ new or significantly improved technologies as compared to commercial technologies in service in the United States at the time the guarantee is issued.

(b) Categories

Projects from the following categories shall be eligible for a guarantee under this section:

(1) Renewable energy systems.

(2) Advanced fossil energy technology (including coal gasification meeting the criteria in subsection (d)).

(3) Hydrogen fuel cell technology for residential, industrial, or transportation applications.

(4) Advanced nuclear energy facilities.

(5) Carbon capture and sequestration practices and technologies, including agricultural and forestry practices that store and sequester carbon.

(6) Efficient electrical generation, transmission, and distribution technologies.

(7) Efficient end-use energy technologies.

(8) Production facilities for the manufacture of fuel efficient vehicles or parts of those vehicles, including electric drive vehicles and advanced diesel vehicles.

(9) Pollution control equipment.

(10) Refineries, meaning facilities at which crude oil is refined into gasoline.

(c) Gasification projects

The Secretary may make guarantees for the following gasification projects:

(1) Integrated gasification combined cycle projects

Integrated gasification combined cycle plants meeting the emission levels under subsection (d), including—

(A) projects for the generation of electricity—

(i) for which, during the term of the guarantee—

(I) coal, biomass, petroleum coke, or a combination of coal, biomass, and petroleum coke will account for at least 65 percent of annual heat input; and

(II) electricity will account for at least 65 percent of net useful annual energy output;

(ii) that have a design that is determined by the Secretary to be capable of accommodating the equipment likely to be necessary to capture the carbon dioxide that would otherwise be emitted in flue gas from the plant;

(iii) that have an assured revenue stream that covers project capital and operating costs (including servicing all debt obligations covered by the guarantee) that is approved by the Secretary and the relevant State public utility commission; and

(iv) on which construction commences not later than the date that is 3 years after the date of the issuance of the guarantee;

(B) a project to produce energy from coal (of not more than 13,000 Btu/lb and mined in the western United States) using appropriate advanced integrated gasification combined cycle technology that minimizes and offers the potential to sequester carbon dioxide emissions and that—

(i) may include repowering of existing facilities;

(ii) may be built in stages;

(iii) shall have a combined output of at least 100 megawatts;

(iv) shall be located in a western State at an altitude greater than 4,000 feet; and

(v) shall demonstrate the ability to use coal with an energy content of not more than 9,000 Btu/lb;

(C) a project located in a taconite-producing region of the United States that is entitled under the law of the State in which the plant is located to enter into a long-term contract approved by a State public utility commission to sell at least 450 megawatts of output to a utility;

(D) facilities that—

(i) generate one or more hydrogen-rich and carbon monoxide-rich product streams from the gasification of coal or coal waste; and

(ii) use those streams to facilitate the production of ultra clean premium fuels through the Fischer-Tropsch process; and

(E) a project to produce energy and clean fuels, using appropriate coal liquefaction technology, from Western bituminous or subbituminous coal, that—

(i) is owned by a State government; and

(ii) may include tribal and private coal resources.

(2) Industrial gasification projects

Facilities that gasify coal, biomass, or petroleum coke in any combination to produce synthesis gas for use as a fuel or feedstock and for which electricity accounts for less than 65 percent of the useful energy output of the facility.

(3) Petroleum coke gasification projects

The Secretary is encouraged to make loan guarantees under this subchapter available for petroleum coke gasification projects.

(4) Liquefaction project

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, funds awarded under the Department of Energy's Clean Coal Power Initiative for Fischer-Tropsch coal-to-oil liquefaction projects may be used to finance the cost of loan guarantees for projects awarded such funds.

(d) Emission levels

In addition to any other applicable Federal or State emission limitation requirements, a project shall attain at least—

(1) total sulfur dioxide emissions in flue gas from the project that do not exceed 0.05 lb/MMBtu;

(2) a 90-percent removal rate (including any fuel pretreatment) of mercury from the coal-derived gas, and any other fuel, combusted by the project;

(3) total nitrogen oxide emissions in the flue gas from the project that do not exceed 0.08 lb/MMBtu; and

(4) total particulate emissions in the flue gas from the project that do not exceed 0.01 lb/MMBtu.

(e) Qualification of facilities receiving tax credits

A project that receives tax credits for clean coal technology shall not be disqualified from receiving a guarantee under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XVII, §1703, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1120; Pub. L. 109–168, §1(b)(1), Jan. 10, 2006, 119 Stat. 3580; Pub. L. 110–140, title I, §134(b), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1513.)

AMENDMENTS

2007—Subsec. (b)(8). Pub. L. 110–140 added par. (8) and struck out former par. (8) which read as follows: "Production facilities for fuel efficient vehicles, including hybrid and advanced diesel vehicles."

2006—Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 109–168 substituted "Department of Energy's Clean Coal Power Initiative for Fischer-Tropsch" for "clean coal power initiative under part A of subchapter IV for".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§16514. Authorization of appropriations

(a) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to provide the cost of guarantees under this subchapter.

(b) Use of other appropriated funds

The Department may use amounts awarded under the Clean Coal Power Initiative to carry out the project described in section 16513(c)(1)(C) of this title, on the request of the recipient of such award, for a loan guarantee, to the extent that the amounts have not yet been disbursed to, or have been repaid by, the recipient.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XVII, §1704, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1122; Pub. L. 109–168, §1(b)(2), Jan. 10, 2006, 119 Stat. 3580.)

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 109–168 substituted "Clean Coal Power Initiative" for "clean coal power initiative under part A of subchapter IV".

§16515. Limitation on commitments to guarantee loans

(a) Notwithstanding section 101,[1] subject to the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990, as amended [2 U.S.C. 661 et seq.], commitments to guarantee loans under title XVII of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 [42 U.S.C. 16501 et seq.] shall not exceed a total principal amount, any part of which is to be guaranteed, of $4,000,000,000: *Provided*, That there are appropriated for the cost of the guaranteed loans such sums as are hereafter derived from amounts received from borrowers pursuant to section 16512(b)(2) of this title, to remain available until expended: *Provided further*, That the source of payments received from borrowers for the subsidy cost shall not be a loan or other debt obligation that is made or guaranteed by the Federal government.[2] In addition, fees collected pursuant to section 16512(h) of this title in fiscal year 2007 shall be credited as offsetting collections to the Departmental Administration account for administrative expenses of the Loan Guarantee Program: *Provided further*, That the sum appropriated for administrative expenses for the Loan Guarantee Program shall be reduced by the amount of fees received during fiscal year 2007: *Provided further*, That any fees collected under section 16512(h) of this title in excess of the amount appropriated for administrative expenses shall not be available until appropriated.

(b) No loan guarantees may be awarded under title XVII of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 [42 U.S.C. 16501 et seq.] until final regulations are issued that include—

(1) programmatic, technical, and financial factors the Secretary will use to select projects for loan guarantees;

(2) policies and procedures for selecting and monitoring lenders and loan performance; and

(3) any other policies, procedures, or information necessary to implement title XVII of the Energy Policy Act of 2005.

(c) The Secretary of Energy shall enter into an arrangement with an independent auditor for annual evaluations of the program under title XVII of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 [42 U.S.C. 16501 et seq.]. In addition to the independent audit, the Comptroller General shall conduct a review every three years of the Department's execution of the program under title XVII of the Energy Policy Act of 2005. The results of the independent audit and the Comptroller General's review shall be provided directly to the Committees on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Senate.

(d) The Secretary of Energy shall promulgate final regulations for loan guarantees under title XVII of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 [42 U.S.C. 16501 et seq.] within 6 months of February 15, 2007.

(e) Not later than 120 days after February 15, 2007, and annually thereafter, the Secretary of Energy shall transmit to the Committees on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Senate a report containing a summary of all activities under title XVII of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 [42 U.S.C. 16501 et seq.], beginning in fiscal year 2007, with a listing of responses to loan guarantee solicitations under this subchapter, describing the technologies, amount of loan guarantee sought, and the applicants' assessment of risk.

(Pub. L. 109–289, div. B, title II, §20320, as added Pub. L. 110–5, §2, Feb. 15, 2007, 121 Stat. 21; amended Pub. L. 113–76, div. D, title III, §307, Jan. 17, 2014, 128 Stat. 175.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 101, referred to in subsec. (a), is section 101 of title I of div. B of Pub. L. 109–289, as added by Pub. L. 110–5, §2, Feb. 15, 2007, 121 Stat. 8. Subsec. (b) of section 101 is classified as a note under section 12651i of this title. Subsecs. (a) and (c) of section 101 are not classified to the Code.

The Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990, referred to in subsec. (a), is title V of Pub. L. 93–344, as added by Pub. L. 101–508, title XIII, §13201(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–609, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§661 et seq.) of chapter 17A of Title 2, The Congress. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 621 of Title 2 and Tables.

The Energy Policy Act of 2005, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 109–58, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 594. Title XVII of the Act is classified generally to this subchapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Continuing Appropriations Resolution, 2007, and not as part of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 which comprises this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 113–76 substituted "a review every three years" for "an annual review".

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be capitalized.*

§16516. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 109–58, title XVII, §1705, as added Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title IV, §406(a), Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 145, which related to temporary program for rapid deployment of renewable energy and electric power transmission projects, was omitted from the Code due to expiration of authority to enter into guarantees under this section on Sept. 30, 2011.

SUBCHAPTER XVI—STUDIES

§16521. Report on energy integration with Latin America

The Secretary shall submit an annual report to the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the United States House of Representatives and to the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate concerning the status of energy export development in Latin America and efforts by the Secretary and other departments and agencies of the United States to promote energy integration with Latin America. The report shall contain a detailed analysis of the status of energy export development in Mexico and a description of all significant efforts by the Secretary and other departments and agencies to promote a constructive relationship with Mexico regarding the development of that nation's energy capacity. In particular this report shall outline efforts the Secretary and other departments and agencies have made to ensure that regulatory approval and oversight of United States/Mexico border projects that result in the expansion of Mexican energy capacity are effectively coordinated across departments and with the Mexican government.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XVIII, §1807, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1124.)

§16522. Low-volume gas reservoir study

(a) Study

The Secretary shall make a grant to an organization of oil and gas producing States, specifically those containing significant numbers of marginal oil and natural gas wells, for conducting an annual study of low-volume natural gas reservoirs. Such organization shall work with the State geologist of each State being studied.

(b) Contents

The studies under this section shall—

(1) determine the status and location of marginal wells and gas reservoirs;

(2) gather the production information of these marginal wells and reservoirs;

(3) estimate the remaining producible reserves based on variable pipeline pressures;

(4) locate low-pressure gathering facilities and pipelines;

(5) recommend incentives which will enable the continued production of these resources;

(6) produce maps and literature to disseminate to States to promote conservation of natural gas reserves; and

(7) evaluate the amount of natural gas that is being wasted through the practice of venting or flaring of natural gas produced in association with crude oil well production.

(c) Data analysis

Data development and analysis under this section shall be performed by an institution of higher education with GIS capabilities. If the organization receiving the grant under subsection (a) does not have GIS capabilities, such organization shall contract with one or more entities with—

(1) technological capabilities and resources to perform advanced image processing, GIS programming, and data analysis; and

(2) the ability to—

(A) process remotely sensed imagery with high spatial resolution;

(B) deploy global positioning systems;

(C) process and synthesize existing, variable-format gas well, pipeline, gathering facility, and reservoir data;

(D) create and query GIS databases with infrastructure location and attribute information;

(E) write computer programs to customize relevant GIS software;

(F) generate maps, charts, and graphs which summarize findings from data research for presentation to different audiences; and

(G) deliver data in a variety of formats, including Internet Map Server for query and display, desktop computer display, and access through handheld personal digital assistants.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section—

(1) $1,500,000 for fiscal year 2006; and

(2) $450,000 for each of the fiscal years 2007 through 2010.

(e) Definitions

For purposes of this section, the term "GIS" means geographic information systems technology that facilitates the organization and management of data with a geographic component.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XVIII, §1808, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1124.)

§16523. Alaska natural gas pipeline

Not later than 180 days after August 8, 2005, and every 180 days thereafter until the Alaska natural gas pipeline commences operation, the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission shall submit to Congress a report describing—

(1) the progress made in licensing and constructing the pipeline; and

(2) any issue impeding that progress.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XVIII, §1810, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1126.)

§16524. Study on the benefits of economic dispatch

(a) Study

The Secretary, in coordination and consultation with the States, shall conduct a study on—

(1) the procedures currently used by electric utilities to perform economic dispatch;

(2) identifying possible revisions to those procedures to improve the ability of nonutility generation resources to offer their output for sale for the purpose of inclusion in economic dispatch; and

(3) the potential benefits to residential, commercial, and industrial electricity consumers nationally and in each state [1] if economic dispatch procedures were revised to improve the ability of nonutility generation resources to offer their output for inclusion in economic dispatch.

(b) Definition

The term "economic dispatch" when used in this section means the operation of generation facilities to produce energy at the lowest cost to reliably serve consumers, recognizing any operational limits of generation and transmission facilities.

(c) Report to Congress and the States

Not later than 90 days after August 8, 2005, and on a yearly basis following, the Secretary shall submit a report to Congress and the States on the results of the study conducted under subsection (a), including recommendations to Congress and the States for any suggested legislative or regulatory changes.

(Pub. L. 109–58, title XVIII, §1832, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 1138.)

[1] So in original. Probably should be capitalized.

SUBCHAPTER XVII—PROTECTING AMERICA'S COMPETITIVE EDGE THROUGH ENERGY

CODIFICATION

This subchapter was enacted as part of the America COMPETES Act, also known as the America Creating Opportunities to Meaningfully Promote Excellence in Technology, Education, and Science Act, and also as part of the Protecting America's Competitive Edge Through Energy Act, also known as the PACE–Energy Act, and not as part of the Energy Policy Act of 2005, which enacted subchapters I to XVI of this chapter.

§16531. Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) Department

The term "Department" means the Department of Energy.

(2) Institution of higher education

The term "institution of higher education" has the meaning given the term in section 1001(a) of title 20.

(3) National Laboratory

The term "National Laboratory" has the meaning given the term in section 15801 of this title.

(4) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Energy.

(Pub. L. 110–69, title V, §5002, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 600.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in introductory provisions, was in the original "this title", meaning title V of Pub. L. 110–69, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 600, known as the Protecting America's Competitive Edge Through Energy Act and also as the PACE–Energy Act, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of this title to the Code, see Short Title of 2007 Amendment note set out under section 15801 of this title and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

For short title of title V of Pub. L. 110–69, which enacted this subchapter, as the "Protecting America's Competitive Edge Through Energy Act" or the "PACE–Energy Act", see section 5001 of Pub. L. 110–69, set out as a note under section 15801 of this title .

§16532. Nuclear science talent expansion program for institutions of higher education

(a) Purposes

The purposes of this section are—

(1) to address the decline in the number of and resources available to nuclear science programs at institutions of higher education; and

(2) to increase the number of graduates with degrees in nuclear science, an area of strategic importance to the economic competitiveness and energy security of the United States.

(b) Definition of nuclear science

In this section, the term "nuclear science" includes—

(1) nuclear science;

(2) nuclear engineering;

(3) nuclear chemistry;

(4) radio chemistry; and

(5) health physics.

(c) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish, in accordance with this section, a program to expand and enhance institution of higher education nuclear science educational capabilities.

(d) Nuclear science program expansion grants for institutions of higher education

(1) In general

The Secretary shall award up to 3 competitive grants for each fiscal year to institutions of higher education that establish new academic degree programs in nuclear science.

(2) Priority

In evaluating grants under this subsection, the Secretary shall give priority to proposals that involve partnerships with a National Laboratory or other eligible nuclear-related entity, as determined by the Secretary.

(3) Criteria

Criteria for a grant awarded under this subsection shall be based on—

(A) the potential to attract new students to the program;

(B) academic rigor; and

(C) the ability to offer hands-on learning opportunities.

(4) Duration and amount

(A) Duration

A grant under this subsection may be up to 5 years in duration.

(B) Amount

An institution of higher education that receives a grant under this subsection shall be eligible for up to $1,000,000 for each year of the grant period.

(5) Use of funds

An institution of higher education that receives a grant under this subsection may use the grant to—

(A) recruit and retain new faculty;

(B) develop core and specialized course content;

(C) encourage collaboration between faculty and researchers in the nuclear science field; and

(D) support outreach efforts to recruit students.

(e) Nuclear science competitiveness grants for institutions of higher education

(1) In general

The Secretary shall award up to 5 competitive grants for each fiscal year to institutions of higher education with existing academic degree programs that produce graduates in nuclear science.

(2) Criteria

Criteria for a grant awarded under this subsection shall be based on the potential for increasing the number and academic quality of graduates in the nuclear sciences who enter into careers in nuclear-related fields.

(3) Duration and amount

(A) Duration

A grant under this subsection may be up to 5 years in duration.

(B) Amount

An institution of higher education that receives a grant under this subsection shall be eligible for up to $500,000 for each year of the grant period.

(4) Use of funds

An institution of higher education that receives a grant under this subsection may use the grant

to—

(A) increase the number of graduates in nuclear science that enter into careers in the nuclear science field;

(B) enhance the teaching of advanced nuclear technologies;

(C) aggressively pursue collaboration opportunities with industry and National Laboratories;

(D) bolster or sustain nuclear infrastructure and research facilities of the institution of higher education, such as research and training reactors or laboratories; and

(E) provide tuition assistance and stipends to undergraduate and graduate students.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

(1) Nuclear science program expansion grants for institutions of higher education

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out subsection (d)—

(A) $3,500,000 for fiscal year 2008;

(B) $6,500,000 for fiscal year 2009;

(C) $9,500,000 for fiscal year 2010;

(D) $9,800,000 for fiscal year 2011;

(E) $10,100,000 for fiscal year 2012; and

(F) $10,400,000 for fiscal year 2013.

(2) Nuclear science competitiveness grants for institutions of higher education

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out subsection (e)—

(A) $3,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;

(B) $5,500,000 for fiscal year 2009;

(C) $8,000,000 for fiscal year 2010;

(D) $8,240,000 for fiscal year 2011;

(E) $8,500,000 for fiscal year 2012; and

(F) $8,750,000 for fiscal year 2013.

(Pub. L. 110–69, title V, §5004, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 612; Pub. L. 111–358, title IX, §902(a), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4044.)

AMENDMENTS

2011—Subsec. (f)(1)(D) to (F). Pub. L. 111–358, §902(a)(1), added subpars. (D) to (F).
Subsec. (f)(2)(D) to (F). Pub. L. 111–358, §902(a)(2), added subpars. (D) to (F).

§16533. Hydrocarbon systems science talent expansion program for institutions of higher education

(a) Purposes

The purposes of this section are—

(1) to address the decline in the number of and resources available to hydrocarbon systems science programs at institutions of higher education; and

(2) to increase the number of graduates with degrees in hydrocarbon systems science, an area of strategic importance to the economic competitiveness and energy security of the United States.

(b) Definition of hydrocarbon systems science

In this section:

(1) In general

The term "hydrocarbon systems science" means a science involving natural gas or other petroleum exploration, development, or production.

(2) Inclusions

The term "hydrocarbon systems science" includes—

(A) petroleum or reservoir engineering;

(B) environmental geoscience;
(C) petrophysics;
(D) geophysics;
(E) geochemistry;
(F) petroleum geology;
(G) ocean engineering;
(H) environmental engineering;
(I) computer science, as computer science relates to a science described in this subsection; and
(J) hydrocarbon spill response and remediation.

(c) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish, in accordance with this section, a program to expand and enhance institution of higher education hydrocarbon systems science educational capabilities.

(d) Hydrocarbon systems science program expansion grants for institutions of higher education

(1) In general

The Secretary shall award up to 3 competitive grants for each fiscal year to institutions of higher education that establish new academic degree programs in hydrocarbon systems science.

(2) Eligibility

In evaluating grants under this subsection, the Secretary shall give priority to proposals that involve partnerships with the National Laboratories, including the National Energy Technology Laboratory, or other hydrocarbon systems scientific entities, as determined by the Secretary.

(3) Criteria

Criteria for a grant awarded under this subsection shall be based on—
(A) the potential to attract new students to the program;
(B) academic rigor; and
(C) the ability to offer hands-on learning opportunities.

(4) Duration and amount

(A) Duration

A grant under this subsection may be up to 5 years in duration.

(B) Amount

An institution of higher education that receives a grant under this subsection shall be eligible for up to $1,000,000 for each year of the grant period.

(5) Use of funds

An institution of higher education that receives a grant under this subsection may use the grant to—
(A) recruit and retain new faculty;
(B) develop core and specialized course content;
(C) encourage collaboration between faculty and researchers in the hydrocarbon systems science field; and
(D) support outreach efforts to recruit students.

(e) Hydrocarbon systems science competitiveness grants for institutions of higher education

(1) In general

The Secretary shall award up to 5 competitive grants for each fiscal year to institutions of higher education with existing academic degree programs that produce graduates in hydrocarbon systems science.

(2) Criteria

Criteria for a grant awarded under this subsection shall be based on the potential for increasing the number and academic quality of graduates in hydrocarbon systems sciences who enter into careers in natural gas and other petroleum exploration, development, and production related fields.

(3) Duration and amount

(A) Duration

A grant under this subsection may be up to 5 years in duration.

(B) Amount

An institution of higher education that receives a grant under this subsection shall be eligible for up to $500,000 for each year of the grant period.

(4) Use of funds

An institution of higher education that receives a grant under this subsection may use the grant to—

(A) increase the number of graduates in the hydrocarbon systems sciences that enter into careers in the natural gas and other petroleum exploration, development, and production science fields;

(B) enhance the teaching of advanced natural gas and other petroleum exploration, development, and production technologies;

(C) aggressively pursue collaboration opportunities with industry and the National Laboratories, including the National Energy Technology Laboratory;

(D) bolster or sustain natural gas and other petroleum exploration, development, and production infrastructure and research facilities of the institution of higher education, such as research and training or laboratories; and

(E) provide tuition assistance and stipends to undergraduate and graduate students.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

(1) Hydrocarbon systems science program expansion grants for institutions of higher education

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out subsection (d)—

(A) $3,500,000 for fiscal year 2008;
(B) $6,500,000 for fiscal year 2009;
(C) $9,500,000 for fiscal year 2010;
(D) $9,800,000 for fiscal year 2011;
(E) $10,000,000 for fiscal year 2012; and
(F) $10,400,000 for fiscal year 2013.

(2) Hydrocarbon systems science competitiveness grants for institutions of higher education

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out subsection (e)—

(A) $3,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;
(B) $5,500,000 for fiscal year 2009; and
(C) $8,000,000 for fiscal year 2010.

(Pub. L. 110–69, title V, §5005, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 613; Pub. L. 111–358, title IX, §902(b), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4044.)

AMENDMENTS

2011—Subsec. (b)(2)(J). Pub. L. 111–358, §902(b)(1), added subpar. (J).
Subsec. (f)(1)(D) to (F). Pub. L. 111–358, §902(b)(2), added subpars. (D) to (F).

§16534. Department of Energy early career awards for science, engineering, and mathematics researchers

(a) Grant awards

The Director of the Office of Science of the Department (referred to in this section as the "Director") shall carry out a program to award grants to scientists and engineers at an early career stage at institutions of higher education and organizations described in subsection (c) to conduct research in fields relevant to the mission of the Department.

(b) Amount and duration

(1) Amount

The amount of a grant awarded under this section shall be—

(A) not less than $80,000; and

(B) not more than $125,000.

(2) Duration

The term of a grant awarded under this section shall be not more than 5 years.

(c) Eligibility

(1) In general

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, an individual shall, as determined by the Director—

(A) subject to paragraph (2), have completed a doctorate or other terminal degree not more than 10 years before the date on which the proposal for a grant is submitted under subsection (e)(1);

(B) have demonstrated promise in a science, engineering, or mathematics field relevant to the missions of the Department; and

(C) be employed—

(i) in a tenure track-position as an assistant professor or equivalent title at an institution of higher education in the United States;

(ii) at an organization in the United States that is a nonprofit, nondegree-granting research organization such as a museum, observatory, or research laboratory; or

(iii) as a scientist at a National Laboratory.

(2) Waiver

Notwithstanding paragraph (1)(A), the Director may determine that an individual who has completed a doctorate more than 10 years before the date of submission of a proposal under subsection (e)(1) is eligible to receive a grant under this section if the individual was unable to conduct research for a period of time because of extenuating circumstances, including military service or family responsibilities, as determined by the Director.

(d) Selection

Grant recipients shall be selected on a competitive, merit-reviewed basis.

(e) Selection process and criteria

(1) Proposal

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, an individual shall submit to the Director a proposal at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Director may require.

(2) Evaluation

In evaluating the proposals submitted under paragraph (1), the Director shall take into consideration, at a minimum—

(A) the intellectual merit of the proposed project;

(B) the innovative or transformative nature of the proposed research;

(C) the extent to which the proposal integrates research and education, including undergraduate education in science and engineering disciplines; and

(D) the potential of the applicant for leadership at the frontiers of knowledge.

(f) Diversity requirement

(1) In general

In awarding grants under this section, the Director shall endeavor to ensure that the grant recipients represent a variety of types of institutions of higher education and nonprofit, nondegree-granting research organizations.

(2) Requirement

In support of the goal described in paragraph (1), the Director shall broadly disseminate information regarding the deadlines applicable to, and manner in which to submit, proposals for grants under this section, including by conducting outreach activities for—

(A) part B institutions, as defined in section 1061 of title 20; and

(B) minority institutions, as defined in section 1067k of title 20.

(g) Report on recruiting and retaining early career science and engineering researchers at National Laboratories

(1) In general

Not later than 90 days after August 9, 2007, the Director shall submit to the Committee on Science and Technology of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate a report describing efforts of the Director to recruit and retain young scientists and engineers at early career stages at the National Laboratories.

(2) Inclusions

The report under paragraph (1) shall include—

(A) a description of applicable Department and National Laboratory policies and procedures, including policies and procedures relating to financial incentives, awards, promotions, time reserved for independent research, access to equipment or facilities, and other forms of recognition, designed to attract and retain young scientists and engineers;

(B) an evaluation of the impact of the incentives described in subparagraph (A) on—

(i) the careers of young scientists and engineers at the National Laboratories; and

(ii) the quality of the research at the National Laboratories and in Department programs;

(C) a description of barriers, if any, that exist with respect to efforts to recruit and retain young scientists and engineers, including the limited availability of full-time equivalent positions, legal and procedural requirements, and pay grading systems; and

(D) the amount of funding devoted to efforts to recruit and retain young researchers, and the source of the funds.

(h) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary, acting through the Director, to carry out this section $25,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2013.

(Pub. L. 110–69, title V, §5006, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 615; Pub. L. 111–358, title IX, §902(c), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4045.)

AMENDMENTS

2011—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 111–358 substituted "2013" for "2010".

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Science and Technology of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 5, One Hundred Twelfth Congress, Jan. 5, 2011.

§16535. Discovery science and engineering innovation institutes

(a) In general

The Secretary shall establish distributed, multidisciplinary institutes (referred to in this section as "Institutes") centered at National Laboratories to apply fundamental science and engineering discoveries to technological innovations relating to—

(1) the missions of the Department; and

(2) the global competitiveness of the United States.

(b) Topical areas

The Institutes shall support scientific and engineering research and education activities on critical emerging technologies determined by the Secretary to be essential to global competitiveness, including activities relating to—

(1) sustainable energy technologies;

(2) multiscale materials and processes;

(3) micro- and nano-engineering;

(4) computational and information engineering; and

(5) genomics and proteomics.

(c) Partnerships

In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall establish partnerships between the Institutes and—

(1) institutions of higher education—

(A) to train undergraduate and graduate science and engineering students;

(B) to develop innovative undergraduate and graduate educational curricula; and

(C) to conduct research within the topical areas described in subsection (b); and

(2) private industry to develop innovative technologies within the topical areas described in subsection (b).

(d) Grants

(1) In general

For each fiscal year, the Secretary may select not more than 3 Institutes to receive a grant under this section.

(2) Merit-based selection

The selection of Institutes under paragraph (1) shall be—

(A) merit-based; and

(B) made through an open, competitive selection process.

(3) Term

An Institute shall receive a grant under this section for not more than 3 fiscal years.

(e) Review

The Secretary shall offer to enter into an agreement with the National Academy of Sciences under which the Academy shall, by not later than 3 years after August 9, 2007—

(1) review the performance of the Institutes under this section; and

(2) submit to Congress and the Secretary a report describing the results of the review.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to provide grants to each Institute selected under this section $10,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 110–69, title V, §5008, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 618.)

§16536. Protecting America's Competitive Edge (PACE) graduate fellowship program

(a) Definition of eligible student

In this section, the term "eligible student" means a student who attends an institution of higher education that offers a doctoral degree in a field relevant to a mission area of the Department.

(b) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a graduate fellowship program for eligible students pursuing a doctoral degree in a mission area of the Department.

(c) Selection

(1) In general

The Secretary shall award fellowships to eligible students under this section through a competitive merit review process, involving written and oral interviews, that will result in a wide distribution of awards throughout the United States, as determined by the Secretary.

(2) Criteria

The Secretary shall establish selection criteria for awarding fellowships under this section that require an eligible student—

(A) to pursue a field of science or engineering of importance to a mission area of the Department;

(B) to demonstrate to the Secretary—

(i) the capacity of the eligible student to understand technical topics relating to the fellowship that can be derived from the first principles of the technical topics;

(ii) imagination and creativity;

(iii) leadership skills in organizations or intellectual endeavors, demonstrated through awards and past experience; and

(iv) excellent verbal and communication skills to explain, defend, and demonstrate an understanding of technical subjects relating to the fellowship; and

(C) to be a citizen or legal permanent resident of the United States.

(d) Awards

(1) Amount

A fellowship awarded under this section shall—

(A) provide an annual living stipend; and

(B) cover—

(i) graduate tuition at an institution of higher education described in subsection (a); and

(ii) incidental expenses associated with curricula and research at the institution of higher education (including books, computers, and software).

(2) Duration

A fellowship awarded under this section shall be up to 3 years duration within a 5-year period.

(3) Portability

A fellowship awarded under this section shall be portable with the eligible student.

(e) Administration

The Secretary, acting through the Director of Science, Engineering, and Mathematics Education—

(1) shall administer the program established under this section; and

(2) may enter into a contract with a nonprofit entity to administer the program, including the selection and award of fellowships.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

(1) $7,500,000 for fiscal year 2008;

(2) $12,000,000 for fiscal year 2009, including nonexpiring fellowships for the preceding fiscal year;

(3) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2010, including nonexpiring fellowships for preceding fiscal

years;
(4) $20,600,000 for fiscal year 2011;
(5) $21,200,000 for fiscal year 2012; and
(6) $21,900,000 for fiscal year 2013.

(Pub. L. 110–69, title V, §5009, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 618; Pub. L. 111–358, title IX, §902(d), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4045.)

AMENDMENTS

2011—Subsec. (f)(4) to (6). Pub. L. 111–358 added pars. (4) to (6).

§16537. Distinguished scientist program

(a) Purpose

The purpose of this section is to promote scientific and academic excellence through collaborations between institutions of higher education and National Laboratories.

(b) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a program to support the joint appointment of distinguished scientists by institutions of higher education and National Laboratories.

(c) Qualifications

To be eligible for appointment as a distinguished scientist under this section, an individual, by reason of professional background and experience, shall be able to bring international recognition to the appointing institution of higher education or National Laboratory in the field of scientific endeavor of the individual.

(d) Selection

A distinguished scientist appointed under this section shall be selected through an open, competitive process.

(e) Appointment

(1) Institution of higher education

An appointment by an institution of higher education under this section shall be filled within the tenure allotment of the institution of higher education, at a minimum rank of professor.

(2) National Laboratory

An appointment by a National Laboratory under this section shall be at the rank of the highest grade of distinguished scientist or technical staff of the National Laboratory.

(f) Duration

An appointment under this section shall—
(1) be for a term of 6 years; and
(2) consist of 2 3-year funding allotments.

(g) Use of funds

Funds made available under this section may be used for—
(1) the salary of the distinguished scientist and support staff;
(2) undergraduate, graduate, and post-doctoral appointments;
(3) research-related equipment;
(4) professional travel; and
(5) such other requirements as the Secretary determines to be necessary to carry out the purpose of the program.

(h) Review

(1) In general

The appointment of a distinguished scientist under this section shall be reviewed at the end of the first 3-year allotment for the distinguished scientist through an open peer-review process to determine whether the appointment is meeting the purpose of this section under subsection (a).

(2) Funding

Funding of the appointment of the distinguished scientist for the second 3-year allotment shall be determined based on the review conducted under paragraph (1).

(i) Cost sharing

To be eligible for assistance under this section, an appointing institution of higher education shall pay at least 50 percent of the total costs of the appointment.

(j) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

(1) $15,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;
(2) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;
(3) $30,000,000 for fiscal year 2010;
(4) $31,000,000 for fiscal year 2011;
(5) $32,000,000 for fiscal year 2012; and
(6) $33,000,000 for fiscal year 2013.

(Pub. L. 110–69, title V, §5011, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 620; Pub. L. 111–358, title IX, §902(e), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4045.)

AMENDMENTS

2011—Subsec. (j)(4) to (6). Pub. L. 111–358 added pars. (4) to (6).

§16538. Advanced Research Projects Agency—Energy

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) ARPA-E

The term "ARPA–E" means the Advanced Research Projects Agency—Energy established by subsection (b).

(2) Director

The term "Director" means the Director of ARPA-E appointed under subsection (d).

(3) Fund

The term "Fund" means the Energy Transformation Acceleration Fund established under subsection (n)(1).

(b) Establishment

There is established the Advanced Research Projects Agency—Energy within the Department to overcome the long-term and high-risk technological barriers in the development of energy technologies.

(c) Goals

(1) In general

The goals of ARPA-E shall be—

(A) to enhance the economic and energy security of the United States through the development of energy technologies that result in—

(i) reductions of imports of energy from foreign sources;
(ii) reductions of energy-related emissions, including greenhouse gases; and
(iii) improvement in the energy efficiency of all economic sectors; and

(B) to ensure that the United States maintains a technological lead in developing and deploying advanced energy technologies.

(2) Means

ARPA-E shall achieve the goals established under paragraph (1) through energy technology projects by—

(A) identifying and promoting revolutionary advances in fundamental and applied sciences;

(B) translating scientific discoveries and cutting-edge inventions into technological innovations; and

(C) accelerating transformational technological advances in areas that industry by itself is not likely to undertake because of technical and financial uncertainty.

(d) Director

(1) Appointment

There shall be in the Department of Energy a Director of ARPA-E, who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

(2) Qualifications

The Director shall be an individual who, by reason of professional background and experience, is especially qualified to advise the Secretary on, and manage research programs addressing, matters pertaining to long-term and high-risk technological barriers to the development of energy technologies.

(3) Relationship to Secretary

The Director shall report to the Secretary.

(4) Relationship to other programs

No other programs within the Department shall report to the Director.

(e) Responsibilities

The responsibilities of the Director shall include—

(1) approving all new programs within ARPA-E;

(2) developing funding criteria and assessing the success of programs through the establishment of technical milestones;

(3) administering the Fund through awards to institutions of higher education, companies, research foundations, trade and industry research collaborations, or consortia of such entities, which may include federally-funded research and development centers, to achieve the goals described in subsection (c) through targeted acceleration of—

(A) novel early-stage energy research with possible technology applications;

(B) development of techniques, processes, and technologies, and related testing and evaluation;

(C) research and development of advanced manufacturing process and technologies for the domestic manufacturing of novel energy technologies; and

(D) coordination with nongovernmental entities for demonstration of technologies and research applications to facilitate technology transfer;

(4) terminating programs carried out under this section that are not achieving the goals of the programs; and

(5) pursuant to subsection (c)(2)(C)—

(A) ensuring that applications for funding disclose the extent of current and prior efforts, including monetary investments as appropriate, in pursuit of the technology area for which funding is being requested;

(B) adopting measures to ensure that, in making awards, program managers adhere to the purposes of subsection (c)(2)(C); and

(C) providing as part of the annual report required by subsection (h)(1) a summary of the instances of and reasons for ARPA–E funding projects in technology areas already being undertaken by industry.

(f) Awards

In carrying out this section, the Director may provide awards in the form of grants, contracts, cooperative agreements, cash prizes, and other transactions.

(g) Personnel

(1) In general

The Director shall establish and maintain within ARPA–E a staff with sufficient qualifications and expertise to enable ARPA–E to carry out the responsibilities of ARPA–E under this section in conjunction with other operations of the Department.

(2) Program directors

(A) In general

The Director shall designate employees to serve as program directors for the programs established pursuant to the responsibilities established for ARPA-E under subsection (e).

(B) Responsibilities

A program director of a program shall be responsible for—

(i) establishing research and development goals for the program, including through the convening of workshops and conferring with outside experts, and publicizing the goals of the program to the public and private sectors;

(ii) soliciting applications for specific areas of particular promise, especially areas that the private sector or the Federal Government are not likely to undertake alone;

(iii) building research collaborations for carrying out the program;

(iv) selecting on the basis of merit each of the projects to be supported under the program after considering—

(I) the novelty and scientific and technical merit of the proposed projects;

(II) the demonstrated capabilities of the applicants to successfully carry out the proposed project;

(III) the consideration by the applicant of future commercial applications of the project, including the feasibility of partnering with 1 or more commercial entities; and

(IV) such other criteria as are established by the Director;

(v) identifying innovative cost-sharing arrangements for ARPA–E projects, including through use of the authority provided under section 16352(b)(3) of this title;

(vi) monitoring the progress of projects supported under the program;

(vii) identifying mechanisms for commercial application of successful energy technology development projects, including through establishment of partnerships between awardees and commercial entities; and

(viii) recommending program restructure or termination of research partnerships or whole projects.

(C) Term

The term of a program manager shall be not more than 3 years and may be renewed.

(3) Hiring and management

(A) In general

The Director shall have the authority to—

(i) make appointments of scientific, engineering, and professional personnel without regard to the civil service laws;

(ii) fix the basic pay of such personnel at a rate to be determined by the Director at rates

not in excess of Level II of the Executive Schedule (EX–II) without regard to the civil service laws; and

(iii) pay any employee appointed under this subpart [1] payments in addition to basic pay, except that the total amount of additional payments paid to an employee under this subpart [1] for any 12-month period shall not exceed the least of the following amounts:

(I) $25,000.

(II) The amount equal to 25 percent of the annual rate of basic pay of the employee.

(III) The amount of the limitation that is applicable for a calendar year under section 5307(a)(1) of title 5.

(B) Number

The Director shall appoint not more than 120 personnel under this section.

(C) Private recruiting firms

The Secretary, or the Director serving as an agent of the Secretary, may contract with private recruiting firms for the hiring of qualified technical staff to carry out this section.

(D) Additional staff

The Director may use all authorities in existence on August 9, 2007, that are provided to the Secretary to hire administrative, financial, and clerical staff as necessary to carry out this section.

(h) Reports and roadmaps

(1) Annual report

As part of the annual budget request submitted for each fiscal year, the Director shall provide to the relevant authorizing and appropriations committees of Congress a report describing projects supported by ARPA-E during the previous fiscal year.

(2) Strategic vision roadmap

Not later than October 1, 2010, and October 1, 2013, the Director shall provide to the relevant authorizing and appropriations committees of Congress a roadmap describing the strategic vision that ARPA-E will use to guide the choices of ARPA-E for future technology investments over the following 3 fiscal years.

(i) Coordination and nonduplication

(1) In general

To the maximum extent practicable, the Director shall ensure that the activities of ARPA-E are coordinated with, and do not duplicate the efforts of, programs and laboratories within the Department and other relevant research agencies.

(2) Technology Transfer Coordinator

To the extent appropriate, the Director may coordinate technology transfer efforts with the Technology Transfer Coordinator appointed under section 16391 of this title.

(j) Federal demonstration of technologies

The Director shall seek opportunities to partner with purchasing and procurement programs of Federal agencies to demonstrate energy technologies resulting from activities funded through ARPA–E.

(k) Advice

(1) Advisory committees

The Director may seek advice on any aspect of ARPA-E from—

(A) an existing Department of Energy advisory committee; and

(B) a new advisory committee organized to support the programs of ARPA-E and to provide advice and assistance on—

(i) specific program tasks; or
(ii) overall direction of ARPA-E.

(2) Additional sources of advice

In carrying out this section, the Director may seek advice and review from—

(A) the President's Committee of Advisors on Science and Technology; and

(B) any professional or scientific organization with expertise in specific processes or technologies under development by ARPA-E.

(l) ARPA-E evaluation

(1) In general

After ARPA-E has been in operation for 6 years, the Secretary shall offer to enter into a contract with the National Academy of Sciences under which the National Academy shall conduct an evaluation of how well ARPA-E is achieving the goals and mission of ARPA-E.

(2) Inclusions

The evaluation shall include—

(A) the recommendation of the National Academy of Sciences on whether ARPA-E should be continued or terminated; and

(B) a description of lessons learned from operation of ARPA-E, and the manner in which those lessons may apply to the operation of other programs of the Department.

(3) Availability

On completion of the evaluation, the evaluation shall be made available to Congress and the public.

(m) Existing authorities

The authorities granted by this section are—

(1) in addition to existing authorities granted to the Secretary; and

(2) are not intended to supersede or modify any existing authorities.

(n) Funding

(1) Fund

There is established in the Treasury of the United States a fund, to be known as the "Energy Transformation Acceleration Fund", which shall be administered by the Director for the purposes of carrying out this section.

(2) Authorization of appropriations

Subject to paragraphs (4) and (5),[2] there are authorized to be appropriated to the Director for deposit in the Fund, without fiscal year limitation—

(A) $300,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;

(B) such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2009 and 2010;

(C) $300,000,000 for fiscal year 2011;

(D) $306,000,000 for fiscal year 2012; and

(E) $312,000,000 for fiscal year 2013.

(3) Separate budget and appropriation

(A) Budget request

The budget request for ARPA-E shall be separate from the rest of the budget of the Department.

(B) Appropriations

Appropriations to the Fund shall be separate and distinct from the rest of the budget for the Department.

(4) Allocation

Of the amounts appropriated for a fiscal year under paragraph (2)—

(A) not more than 50 percent of the amount shall be used to carry out subsection (e)(3)(D);

(B) at least 5 percent of the amount shall be used for technology transfer and outreach activities, consistent with the goal described in subsection (c)(2)(D) and within the responsibilities of program directors described in subsection (g)(2)(B)(vii); and

(C) no funds may be used for construction of new buildings or facilities during the 5-year period beginning on August 9, 2007.

(Pub. L. 110–69, title V, §5012, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 621; Pub. L. 111–358, title IX, §904, Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4045.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Level II of the Executive Schedule, referred to in subsec. (g)(3)(A)(ii), is set out in section 5313 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Par. (5), referred to in subsec. (n)(2), was redesignated par. (4) of this section and former par. (4) was struck out by Pub. L. 111–358, title IX, §904(10)(B), (C), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 4048.

AMENDMENTS

2011—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(1), substituted "subsection (n)(1)" for "subsection (m)(1)".

Subsec. (c)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(2), inserted "and applied" after "advances in fundamental".

Subsec. (e)(3)(C). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(3)(A)(i), added subpar. (C) and struck out former subpar. (C) which read as follows: "research and development of manufacturing processes for novel energy technologies; and".

Subsec. (e)(5). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(3)(A)(ii)–(C), added par. (5).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(5), added subsec. (f). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (g).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(4), redesignated subsec. (f) as (g). Former subsec. (g) redesignated (h).

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(6)(B), added par. (1). Former par. (1) redesignated (2).

Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(6)(A),(C)(i), redesignated par. (1) as (2) and substituted "Program directors" for "Program managers" in heading.

Subsec. (g)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(6)(C)(ii), substituted "program directors for" for "program managers for each of".

Subsec. (g)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(6)(C)(iii)(I), substituted "program director" for "program manager" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (g)(2)(B)(iv). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(6)(C)(iii)(II), struck out ", with advice under subsection (j) as appropriate," after "basis of merit" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (g)(2)(B)(v) to (viii). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(6)(C)(iii)(III)–(VI), added cls. (v) and (vii) and redesignated former cls. (v) and (vi) as (vi) and (viii), respectively.

Subsec. (g)(2)(C). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(6)(C)(iv), inserted "not more than" after "shall be".

Subsec. (g)(3). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(6)(A), redesignated par. (2) as (3).

Subsec. (g)(3)(A)(ii), (iii). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(6)(D)(i), added cls. (ii) and (iii) and struck out former cl. (ii) which read as follows: "fix the compensation of such personnel at a rate to be determined by the Director."

Subsec. (g)(3)(B). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(6)(D)(ii), substituted "not more than 120" for "not less than 70, and not more than 120,".

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(4), redesignated subsec. (g) as (h). Former subsec. (h) redesignated (i).

Subsec. (h)(2). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(7), substituted "2010" for "2008" and "2013" for "2011".

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(4), redesignated subsec. (h) as (i). Former subsec. (i) redesignated (j).

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(8), added subsec. (j) and struck out former subsec. (j). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Secretary shall make information available to purchasing and procurement programs of Federal agencies regarding the potential to demonstrate technologies resulting from activities funded through ARPA-E."

Pub. L. 111–358, §904(4), redesignated subsec. (i) as (j). Former subsec. (j) redesignated (k).

Subsecs. (k), (l). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(4), redesignated subsecs. (j) and (k) as (k) and (l), respectively. Former subsec. (l) redesignated (m).

Subsec. (l)(1). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(9)(A), substituted "6 years" for "4 years".

Subsec. (l)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(9)(B), inserted ", and the manner in which those lessons may apply to the operation of other programs of the Department" after "ARPA-E".

Subsecs. (m), (n). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(4), redesignated subsecs. (l) and (m) as (m) and (n), respectively.

Subsec. (n)(2)(C) to (E). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(10)(A), added subpars. (C) to (E).

Subsec. (n)(4). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(10)(B), (C), redesignated par. (5) as (4) and struck out former par. (4). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "No amounts may be appropriated for ARPA-E for fiscal year 2008 unless the amount appropriated for the activities of the Office of Science of the Department for fiscal year 2008 exceeds the amount appropriated for the Office for fiscal year 2007, as adjusted for inflation in accordance with the Consumer Price Index published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics of the Department of Labor."

Subsec. (n)(4)(B). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(10)(D), substituted "5 percent" for "2.5 percent" and inserted ", consistent with the goal described in subsection (c)(2)(D) and within the responsibilities of program directors described in subsection (g)(2)(B)(vii)" after "outreach activities".

Subsec. (n)(5). Pub. L. 111–358, §904(10)(C), redesignated par. (5) as (4).

[1] *So in original.*

[2] *See References in Text note below.*

CHAPTER 150—NATIONAL AERONAUTICS AND SPACE PROGRAMS, 2005

§16601. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, §2, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2897, which related to definitions, was transferred and is set out as a note under section 10101 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PRINCIPLES AND REPORTS

§§16611, 16611a. Repealed or Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section 16611, Pub. L. 109–155, title I, §101, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2897, which related to responsibilities, policies, and plans, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsecs. (a) and (b) were repealed and reenacted as sections 20301 and 20302, respectively, of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsecs. (c) to (g), requiring certain reports and studies by past dates, were omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51. Subsec. (h)(1) was repealed and reenacted as subsec. (a) of section 30103 of Title 51. Subsec. (h)(2), providing sense of Congress regarding budget evaluation, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51. Subsec. (i) was repealed and reenacted as subsec. (b) of section 30103 of Title 51. Subsec. (j), providing for independent review of strategic need for aeronautics test facilities, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

Section 16611a, Pub. L. 110–69, title II, §2001, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 582, which related to NASA's contribution to innovation, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsecs. (a), (b), (c), and (e) were repealed and reenacted as subsecs. (a), (b), (c), and (d), respectively, of section 20303 of Title 51 by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (d), which provided sense of Congress regarding NASA funding, and subsec. (f), requiring report by Administrator regarding assessments of educational program effectiveness not later than one year after Aug. 9, 2007, were omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

§16611b. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 110–161, div. B, title III, Dec. 26, 2007, 121 Stat. 1919, related to NASA annual budget justification. See subsec. (c) of section 30103 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

ESTIMATES OF RECEIPTS AND COLLECTIONS AND PROPOSED USE OF FUNDS FROM LEASES OF NON-EXCESS PROPERTY

Pub. L. 111–8, div. B, title III, Mar. 11, 2009, 123 Stat. 589, which provided in part that each annual budget request shall include an annual estimate of gross receipts and collections and proposed use of all funds collected pursuant to section 315 of the National Aeronautics and Space Act of 1958 ([former] 42 U.S.C. 2459j), was repealed and reenacted as subsec. (d) of section 30103 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51.

§16612. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title I, §102, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2905, which related to national awareness campaign to encourage young Americans to enter the fields of science, mathematics, and engineering, budget information, space communications plan, Joint Dark Energy Mission, and Office of Science and Technology Policy, and related reports, was transferred and is set out as a note preceding section 40901 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§§16613 to 16615. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 16613, Pub. L. 109–155, title I, §103, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2907, related to baselines and cost controls. See section 30104 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 16614, Pub. L. 109–155, title I, §105, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2912, related to foreign launch vehicles. See section 30703 of Title 51.

Section 16615, Pub. L. 109–155, title I, §107, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2912, related to implementation plan describing lessons learned and best practices for major programs and projects. See section 30501 of Title 51.

§§16616, 16617. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section 16616, Pub. L. 109–155, title I, §108, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2913, which related to commercialization plan for missions to the Moon and Mars, and required plan submission to Congress not later than 180 days after Dec. 30, 2005, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314.

Section 16617, Pub. L. 109–155, title I, §109, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2913, which related to study on the feasibility of use of ground source heat pumps and required study transmission to Congress not later than one year after Dec. 30, 2005, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

§16618. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title I, §110, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2914, related to whistleblower protection. See section 30502 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

SUBCHAPTER II—AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS

§§16631 to 16634. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 16631, Pub. L. 109–155, title II, §202, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2915, related to appropriations for

fiscal year 2007.

Section 16632, Pub. L. 109–155, title II, §203, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2915, related to appropriations for fiscal year 2008.

Section 16633, Pub. L. 109–155, title II, §204, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2916, related to ISS research. See section 70902 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 16634, Pub. L. 109–155, title II, §205, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2916, related to charges and funding account for test facilities. See section 50505 of Title 51.

§§16635, 16636. Omitted

Section 16635, Pub. L. 109–155, title II, §206, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2916, which related to limitation on use of appropriated funds for official representation, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314.

Section 16636, Pub. L. 109–155, title II, §207, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2916, which required Administrator to report ISS development costs and related matters to Congress and provided for repeal of section 202 of Pub. L. 106–391 thirty days after transmission of report, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

SUBCHAPTER III—SCIENCE

PART A—GENERAL PROVISIONS

§16651. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §301, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2916, related to performance assessments. See section 30503 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§§16652, 16653. Omitted

Section 16652, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §302, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2917, which related to status of Hubble Space Telescope servicing mission and required Administrator's report to Congress not later than 60 days after second Space Shuttle mission, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314.

Section 16653, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §303, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2917, which required independent assessment of Landsat-NPOESS integrated mission to be transmitted to Congress not later than 180 days after Dec. 30, 2005, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

§§16654, 16655. Repealed or Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section 16654, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §304, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2918; Pub. L. 111–314, §4(e), Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3443, which related to assessment of science mission extensions, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Introductory provisions of subsec. (a) were repealed and reenacted as subsec. (a) of section 30504 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (a)(1), requiring Administrator to carry out assessment for certain missions not later than 60 days after Dec. 30, 2005, was amended and redesignated subsec. (a) by Pub. L. 111–314, §4(e)(1), Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3443, and was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51. Subsec. (a)(2) was repealed and reeenacted as subsec. (b) of section 30504 of Title 51. Subsec. (b), requiring Administrator to submit report on assessment to congressional committees not later than

30 days after completion of assessment, was amended by Pub. L. 111–314, §4(e)(2), Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3443, and was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

Section 16655, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §305, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2918, which related to microgravity research, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Par. (1), which required Administrator to submit report to congressional committees not later than 90 days after Dec. 30, 2005, as required by former section 16766 of this title, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51. Pars. (2) and (3) were repealed and reenacted as section 40904 of Title 51 by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51.

§16656. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §306, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2919, related to coordination with National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. See section 60505 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§16657. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §307, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2919; Pub. L. 110–234, title VII, §7511(c)(40), May 22, 2008, 122 Stat. 1271; Pub. L. 110–246, §4(a), title VII, §7511(c)(40), June 18, 2008, 122 Stat. 1664, 2032, which related to Administrator's review of Headquarters Earth-Sun System Applied Sciences Program research and development implemented in calendar years 2001 to 2005, and required report to be submitted to congressional committees not later than one year after Dec. 30, 2005, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314.

§16658. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 110–69, title II, §2003, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 583, related to basic research enhancement. See section 20304 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

PART B—REMOTE SENSING

§§16671 to 16676. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 16671, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §311, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2920, related to definitions. See section 60301 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 16672, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §312, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2920, related to Administrator's general responsibilities. See section 60302 of Title 51.

Section 16673, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §313, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2921, related to pilot projects to encourage public sector applications. See section 60303 of Title 51.

Section 16674, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §314, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2921, related to program evaluation. See section 60304 of Title 51.

Section 16675, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §315, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2922, related to pilot projects data availability. See section 60305 of Title 51.

Section 16676, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §316, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2922, related to educational outreach program. See section 60306 of Title 51.

PART C—GEORGE E. BROWN, JR. NEAR-EARTH OBJECT SURVEY

§16691. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title III, §321, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2922, which related to the George E. Brown, Jr. Near-Earth Object Survey, was transferred and is set out as a note preceding section 71101 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

SUBCHAPTER IV—AERONAUTICS

§16701. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title IV, §401, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2923, defined "institution of higher education". See section 40101 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

PART A—GOVERNMENTAL INTEREST IN AERONAUTICS RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT

§16711. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title IV, §411, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2923, related to governmental interest in aeronautics research. See section 40102 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§16712. Repealed or Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 110–69, title II, §2002, Aug. 9, 2007, 121 Stat. 583, which related to aeronautics research and development program, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsec. (b) was repealed and reenacted as section 40103 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (a), which provided a sense of Congress, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

PART B—HIGH PRIORITY AERONAUTICS RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMS

§§16721 to 16727. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 16721, Pub. L. 109–155, title IV, §421, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2924, related to long-term fundamental research program in aeronautics. Subsecs. (a) and (b) were reenacted as section 40111 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 16722, Pub. L. 109–155, title IV, §422, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2924, related to research and technology programs for environmental aircraft, supersonic transport, rotorcraft and other runway-independent air vehicles, hypersonics, revolutionary aeronautical concepts, fuel cell-powered aircraft, and Mars aircraft. See sections 40112 and 40701 of Title 51.

Section 16723, Pub. L. 109–155, title IV, §423, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2925, related to Airspace Systems Research program. See section 40113 of Title 51.

Section 16724, Pub. L. 109–155, title IV, §424, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2926, related to Aviation Safety

and Security Research program. See section 40114 of Title 51.

Section 16725, Pub. L. 109–155, title IV, §425, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2926, related to aviation weather research. See section 40115 of Title 51.

Section 16726, Pub. L. 109–155, title IV, §426, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2926, related to assessment of wake turbulence research and development program and required report to Congress no later than two years after Dec. 30, 2005.

Section 16727, Pub. L. 109–155, title IV, §427, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2926; Pub. L. 110–422, title III, §308, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4788, related to university-based Centers for Research on Aviation Training. See section 40116 of Title 51.

PART C—SCHOLARSHIPS

§16741. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title IV, §431, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2927, related to NASA aeronautics scholarships. See section 40131 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

PART D—DATA REQUESTS

§16751. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title IV, §441, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2927, related to aviation data requests. See section 40141 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

SUBCHAPTER V—HUMAN SPACE FLIGHT

§16761. Repealed or Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title V, §501, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2927; Pub. L. 110–422, title VI, §611(a), Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4796, which related to Space Shuttle follow-on, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsecs. (a) and (b) were repealed and reenacted as section 70501 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (c), requiring Administrator's report to congressional committees on lack of human space flight system to replace the Space Shuttle not later than 90 days after Oct. 15, 2008, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

§16762. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title V, §502, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2928, which related to transition from Space Shuttle program to Crew Exploration Vehicle, Crew Launch Vehicle, and heavy-lift launch vehicle, was transferred and is set out as a note under section 70501 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§§16763 to 16765. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 16763, Pub. L. 109–155, title V, §503, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2929, related to requirements for exploration programs. See section 70502 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 16764, Pub. L. 109–155, title V, §504, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2929, related to ground-based analog capabilities. See section 70503 of Title 51.

Section 16765, Pub. L. 109–155, title V, §505, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2929, related to International Space Station completion. See section 70904 of Title 51.

§§16766, 16767. Repealed or Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section 16766, Pub. L. 109–155, title V, §506, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2930, which related to International Space Station research, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Pars. (1) and (2) were repealed and reenacted as section 70903 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Par. (3), which required Administrator's report to congressional committees, not later than 90 days after Dec. 30, 2005, regarding research plan for utilization and proposed final configuration of the International Space Station, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

Section 16767, Pub. L. 109–155, title V, §507, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2930, which related to national laboratory designation, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsecs. (a), (b), and (d) were repealed and reenacted as subsecs. (b), (c), and (a), respectively, of section 70905 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (c), which required Administrator's report to congressional committees regarding operation plan for national laboratory (United States segment of the International Space Station) not later than one year after Dec. 30, 2005, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

SUBCHAPTER VI—OTHER PROGRAM AREAS

PART A—SPACE AND FLIGHT SUPPORT

§16781. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title VI, §601, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2931, related to decreasing the risks associated with orbital debris. See section 31501 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§16782. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title VI, §602, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2931, which related to secondary payload capability, was transferred and is set out as a note under section 70102 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

PART B—EDUCATION

§§16791, 16792. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 16791, Pub. L. 109–155, title VI, §612, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2932, related to program to expand

distance learning in rural underserved areas. See section 40905 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 16792, Pub. L. 109–155, title VI, §613, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2932, related to Charles "Pete" Conrad Astronomy Awards. See section 30902 of Title 51.

§16793. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title VI, §614, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2933, which related to review of precollege education programs and required results be transmitted to congressional committees not later than 18 months after Dec. 30, 2005, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314.

§§16794, 16795. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 16794, Pub. L. 109–155, title VI, §615, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2934, related to equal access to NASA's education programs. See section 40906 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 16795, Pub. L. 109–155, title VI, §616, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2934, related to grants and cooperative agreements to enhance museum and planetarium programs. See section 40907 of Title 51.

§16796. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title VI, §617, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2934, which required review of legal status of Motivating Undergraduates in Science and Technology (MUST) program, was transferred and is set out as a note preceding section 40901 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§16797. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title VI, §618, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2934, related to continuation of the Space Grant Program, the Experimental Program to Stimulate Competitive Research, and the NASA Explorer School program. See section 40908 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§16798. Repealed or Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title VI, §619, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2935, which related to implementation of previous recommendations, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsec. (b) was repealed and reenacted as section 40909 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (a), requiring Administrator's report to Congressional committees regarding implementation of Government Accountability Office Report No. 04–639 not later than 180 days after Dec. 30, 2005, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

PART C—TECHNOLOGY TRANSFER

§16811. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title VI, §621, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2935, related to commercial technology

transfer program. See section 50116 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

SUBCHAPTER VII—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

PART A—NATIONAL AERONAUTICS AND SPACE ADMINISTRATION

§§16821 to 16823. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 16821, Pub. L. 109–155, title VII, §707, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2937, related to small business contracting. See section 30306 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 16822, Pub. L. 109–155, title VII, §708, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2938, related to NASA healthcare program. See section 31301 of Title 51.

Section 16823, Pub. L. 109–155, title VII, §709, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2938, related to offshore performance of contracts for the procurement of goods and services. See section 30704 of Title 51.

§16824. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title VII, §710, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2938, which required review of NASA's enhanced use leasing pilot program to be transmitted to congressional committees not later than one year after Dec. 30, 2005, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314.

PART B—NATIONAL SCIENCE FOUNDATION

§16831. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title VII, §721, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2938, which related to collection of data on specific fields of study, was transferred to section 1886a of this title following the enactment of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314.

§16832. Omitted

Section, Pub. L. 109–155, title VII, §722, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2939, which related to National Science Foundation major research equipment and facilities and required review of facilities and development plan to be transmitted to congressional committees not later than June 30, 2006, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314.

SUBCHAPTER VIII—HUMAN SPACE FLIGHT INDEPENDENT INVESTIGATION COMMISSION

§§16841 to 16850. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 16841, Pub. L. 109–155, title VIII, §821, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2941, related to definitions. See section 70701 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 16842, Pub. L. 109–155, title VIII, §822, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2941, related to establishment of Commission. See section 70702 of Title 51.

Section 16843, Pub. L. 109–155, title VIII, §823, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2941, related to tasks of the Commission. See section 70703 of Title 51.

Section 16844, Pub. L. 109–155, title VIII, §824, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2942, related to composition of Commission. See section 70704 of Title 51.

Section 16845, Pub. L. 109–155, title VIII, §825, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2942, related to powers of Commission. See section 70705 of Title 51.

Section 16846, Pub. L. 109–155, title VIII, §826, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2943, related to public meetings, information, and hearings. See section 70706 of Title 51.

Section 16847, Pub. L. 109–155, title VIII, §827, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2943, related to staff of Commission. See section 70707 of Title 51.

Section 16848, Pub. L. 109–155, title VIII, §828, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2944, related to compensation and travel expenses. See section 70708 of Title 51.

Section 16849, Pub. L. 109–155, title VIII, §829, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2944, related to security clearances for Commission members and staff. See section 70709 of Title 51.

Section 16850, Pub. L. 109–155, title VIII, §830, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2944, related to reporting requirements and termination. See section 70710 of Title 51.

CHAPTER 151—CHILD PROTECTION AND SAFETY

SUBCHAPTER I—SEX OFFENDER REGISTRATION AND NOTIFICATION

SUBCHAPTER I—SEX OFFENDER REGISTRATION AND NOTIFICATION

§16901. Declaration of purpose

In order to protect the public from sex offenders and offenders against children, and in response to the vicious attacks by violent predators against the victims listed below, Congress in this chapter establishes a comprehensive national system for the registration of those offenders:

(1) Jacob Wetterling, who was 11 years old, was abducted in 1989 in Minnesota, and remains missing.

(2) Megan Nicole Kanka, who was 7 years old, was abducted, sexually assaulted, and murdered in 1994, in New Jersey.

(3) Pam Lychner, who was 31 years old, was attacked by a career offender in Houston, Texas.

(4) Jetseta Gage, who was 10 years old, was kidnapped, sexually assaulted, and murdered in 2005, in Cedar Rapids, Iowa.

(5) Dru Sjodin, who was 22 years old, was sexually assaulted and murdered in 2003, in North Dakota.

(6) Jessica Lunsford, who was 9 years old, was abducted, sexually assaulted, buried alive, and murdered in 2005, in Homosassa, Florida.

(7) Sarah Lunde, who was 13 years old, was strangled and murdered in 2005, in Ruskin, Florida.

(8) Amie Zyla, who was 8 years old, was sexually assaulted in 1996 by a juvenile offender in Waukesha, Wisconsin, and has become an advocate for child victims and protection of children from juvenile sex offenders.

(9) Christy Ann Fornoff, who was 13 years old, was abducted, sexually assaulted, and murdered in 1984, in Tempe, Arizona.

(10) Alexandra Nicole Zapp, who was 30 years old, was brutally attacked and murdered in a public restroom by a repeat sex offender in 2002, in Bridgewater, Massachusetts.

(11) Polly Klaas, who was 12 years old, was abducted, sexually assaulted, and murdered in 1993 by a career offender in California.

(12) Jimmy Ryce, who was 9 years old, was kidnapped and murdered in Florida on September 11, 1995.

(13) Carlie Brucia, who was 11 years old, was abducted and murdered in Florida in February, 2004.

(14) Amanda Brown, who was 7 years old, was abducted and murdered in Florida in 1998.

(15) Elizabeth Smart, who was 14 years old, was abducted in Salt Lake City, Utah in June 2002.

(16) Molly Bish, who was 16 years old, was abducted in 2000 while working as a lifeguard in Warren, Massachusetts, where her remains were found 3 years later.

(17) Samantha Runnion, who was 5 years old, was abducted, sexually assaulted, and murdered in California on July 15, 2002.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §102, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 587, known as the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

SHORT TITLE OF 2016 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 114–119, §1(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 15, provided that: "This Act [enacting part A–1 of this subchapter and section 212b of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse, and amending section 16914 of this title and section 2250 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure] may be cited as the 'International Megan's Law to Prevent Child Exploitation and Other Sexual Crimes Through Advanced Notification of Traveling Sex Offenders'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2015 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 114–22, title V, §501, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 258, provided that: "This title [enacting section 16928a of this title] may be cited as the 'Military Sex Offender Reporting Act of 2015'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 110–400, §1, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4224, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 16915a and 16915b of this title, amending section 16981 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 16981 of this title] may be cited as the 'Keeping the Internet Devoid of Sexual Predators Act of 2008' or the 'KIDS Act of 2008'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 109–248, §1(a), July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 587, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter, sections 3765, 3797ee, and 3797ee–1 of this title, chapter 109B and sections 2252C, 2257A, 2260A, 3299, and 4248 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, amending sections 671, 5772, 5780, 13032, and 14135a

of this title, section 1101 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, sections 1001, 1153, 1154, 1201, 1227, 1466, 1467, 1591, 2241, 2242, 2243, 2244, 2245, 2251, 2252, 2252A, 2252B, 2253, 2254, 2255, 2257, 2258, 2260, 2422, 2423, 3142, 3509, 3559, 3563, 3583, 3592, 3621, 3771, 4042, 4209, 4241, and 4247 of Title 18, section 841 of Title 21, Food and Drugs, section 534 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure, repealing sections 14071 to 14073 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 671, 5611, 13701, and 14071 of this title, sections 2251 and 2257 of Title 18, and provisions listed in a table relating to sentencing guidelines set out as a note under section 994 of Title 28, and amending provisions set out as notes under section 13751 of this title and section 951 of Title 10, Armed Forces] may be cited as the 'Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006'."

Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §101, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, provided that: "This title [enacting this subchapter and chapter 109B of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, amending sections 671, 5772, 5780, 13032, and 14135a of this title, sections 1001, 3563, 3583, 4042, and 4209 of Title 18, and section 534 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure, repealing sections 14071 to 14073 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 671 and 14071 of this title and provisions listed in a table relating to sentencing guidelines set out as a note under section 994 of Title 28, and amending provisions set out as a note under section 951 of Title 10, Armed Forces] may be cited as the 'Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act'."

§16902. Establishment of program

This chapter establishes the Jacob Wetterling, Megan Nicole Kanka, and Pam Lychner Sex Offender Registration and Notification Program.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §103, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 591.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 587, known as the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

PART A—SEX OFFENDER REGISTRATION AND NOTIFICATION

§16911. Relevant definitions, including Amie Zyla expansion of sex offender definition and expanded inclusion of child predators

In this subchapter the following definitions apply:

(1) Sex offender

The term "sex offender" means an individual who was convicted of a sex offense.

(2) Tier I sex offender

The term "tier I sex offender" means a sex offender other than a tier II or tier III sex offender.

(3) Tier II sex offender

The term "tier II sex offender" means a sex offender other than a tier III sex offender whose offense is punishable by imprisonment for more than 1 year and—

(A) is comparable to or more severe than the following offenses, when committed against a minor, or an attempt or conspiracy to commit such an offense against a minor:

(i) sex trafficking (as described in section 1591 of title 18);

(ii) coercion and enticement (as described in section 2422(b) of title 18);

(iii) transportation with intent to engage in criminal sexual activity (as described in section 2423(a)) [1] of title 18;

(iv) abusive sexual contact (as described in section 2244 of title 18);

(B) involves—

(i) use of a minor in a sexual performance;
(ii) solicitation of a minor to practice prostitution; or
(iii) production or distribution of child pornography; or

(C) occurs after the offender becomes a tier I sex offender.

(4) Tier III sex offender

The term "tier III sex offender" means a sex offender whose offense is punishable by imprisonment for more than 1 year and—

(A) is comparable to or more severe than the following offenses, or an attempt or conspiracy to commit such an offense:

(i) aggravated sexual abuse or sexual abuse (as described in sections 2241 and 2242 of title 18); or

(ii) abusive sexual contact (as described in section 2244 of title 18) against a minor who has not attained the age of 13 years;

(B) involves kidnapping of a minor (unless committed by a parent or guardian); or

(C) occurs after the offender becomes a tier II sex offender.

(5) Amie Zyla expansion of sex offense definition

(A) Generally

Except as limited by subparagraph (B) or (C), the term "sex offense" means—

(i) a criminal offense that has an element involving a sexual act or sexual contact with another;

(ii) a criminal offense that is a specified offense against a minor;

(iii) a Federal offense (including an offense prosecuted under section 1152 or 1153 of title 18) under section 1591, or chapter 109A, 110 (other than section 2257, 2257A, or 2258), or 117, of title 18;

(iv) a military offense specified by the Secretary of Defense under section 115(a)(8)(C)(i) of Public Law 105–119 (10 U.S.C. 951 note); or

(v) an attempt or conspiracy to commit an offense described in clauses (i) through (iv).

(B) Foreign convictions

A foreign conviction is not a sex offense for the purposes of this subchapter if it was not obtained with sufficient safeguards for fundamental fairness and due process for the accused under guidelines or regulations established under section 16912 of this title.

(C) Offenses involving consensual sexual conduct

An offense involving consensual sexual conduct is not a sex offense for the purposes of this subchapter if the victim was an adult, unless the adult was under the custodial authority of the offender at the time of the offense, or if the victim was at least 13 years old and the offender was not more than 4 years older than the victim.

(6) Criminal offense

The term "criminal offense" means a State, local, tribal, foreign, or military offense (to the extent specified by the Secretary of Defense under section 115(a)(8)(C)(i) of Public Law 105–119 (10 U.S.C. 951 note)) or other criminal offense.

(7) Expansion of definition of "specified offense against a minor" to include all offenses by child predators

The term "specified offense against a minor" means an offense against a minor that involves any of the following:

(A) An offense (unless committed by a parent or guardian) involving kidnapping.

(B) An offense (unless committed by a parent or guardian) involving false imprisonment.

(C) Solicitation to engage in sexual conduct.

(D) Use in a sexual performance.
(E) Solicitation to practice prostitution.
(F) Video voyeurism as described in section 1801 of title 18.
(G) Possession, production, or distribution of child pornography.
(H) Criminal sexual conduct involving a minor, or the use of the Internet to facilitate or attempt such conduct.
(I) Any conduct that by its nature is a sex offense against a minor.

(8) Convicted as including certain juvenile adjudications

The term "convicted" or a variant thereof, used with respect to a sex offense, includes adjudicated delinquent as a juvenile for that offense, but only if the offender is 14 years of age or older at the time of the offense and the offense adjudicated was comparable to or more severe than aggravated sexual abuse (as described in section 2241 of title 18), or was an attempt or conspiracy to commit such an offense.

(9) Sex offender registry

The term "sex offender registry" means a registry of sex offenders, and a notification program, maintained by a jurisdiction.

(10) Jurisdiction

The term "jurisdiction" means any of the following:
(A) A State.
(B) The District of Columbia.
(C) The Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.
(D) Guam.
(E) American Samoa.
(F) The Northern Mariana Islands.
(G) The United States Virgin Islands.
(H) To the extent provided and subject to the requirements of section 16927 of this title, a federally recognized Indian tribe.

(11) Student

The term "student" means an individual who enrolls in or attends an educational institution, including (whether public or private) a secondary school, trade or professional school, and institution of higher education.

(12) Employee

The term "employee" includes an individual who is self-employed or works for any other entity, whether compensated or not.

(13) Resides

The term "resides" means, with respect to an individual, the location of the individual's home or other place where the individual habitually lives.

(14) Minor

The term "minor" means an individual who has not attained the age of 18 years.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §111, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 591.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

[1] So in original. The second closing parenthesis probably should follow "18".

§16912. Registry requirements for jurisdictions

(a) Jurisdiction to maintain a registry

Each jurisdiction shall maintain a jurisdiction-wide sex offender registry conforming to the requirements of this subchapter.

(b) Guidelines and regulations

The Attorney General shall issue guidelines and regulations to interpret and implement this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §112, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 593.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

§16913. Registry requirements for sex offenders

(a) In general

A sex offender shall register, and keep the registration current, in each jurisdiction where the offender resides, where the offender is an employee, and where the offender is a student. For initial registration purposes only, a sex offender shall also register in the jurisdiction in which convicted if such jurisdiction is different from the jurisdiction of residence.

(b) Initial registration

The sex offender shall initially register—

(1) before completing a sentence of imprisonment with respect to the offense giving rise to the registration requirement; or

(2) not later than 3 business days after being sentenced for that offense, if the sex offender is not sentenced to a term of imprisonment.

(c) Keeping the registration current

A sex offender shall, not later than 3 business days after each change of name, residence, employment, or student status, appear in person in at least 1 jurisdiction involved pursuant to subsection (a) and inform that jurisdiction of all changes in the information required for that offender in the sex offender registry. That jurisdiction shall immediately provide that information to all other jurisdictions in which the offender is required to register.

(d) Initial registration of sex offenders unable to comply with subsection (b)

The Attorney General shall have the authority to specify the applicability of the requirements of this subchapter to sex offenders convicted before the enactment of this chapter or its implementation in a particular jurisdiction, and to prescribe rules for the registration of any such sex offenders and for other categories of sex offenders who are unable to comply with subsection (b).

(e) State penalty for failure to comply

Each jurisdiction, other than a Federally recognized Indian tribe, shall provide a criminal penalty that includes a maximum term of imprisonment that is greater than 1 year for the failure of a sex offender to comply with the requirements of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §113, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 593.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsecs. (d) and (e), was in the original "this title", meaning title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (d), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 587, known as the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006, which was approved July 27, 2006. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

§16914. Information required in registration

(a) Provided by the offender

The sex offender shall provide the following information to the appropriate official for inclusion in the sex offender registry:

(1) The name of the sex offender (including any alias used by the individual).

(2) The Social Security number of the sex offender.

(3) The address of each residence at which the sex offender resides or will reside.

(4) The name and address of any place where the sex offender is an employee or will be an employee.

(5) The name and address of any place where the sex offender is a student or will be a student.

(6) The license plate number and a description of any vehicle owned or operated by the sex offender.

(7) Information relating to intended travel of the sex offender outside the United States, including any anticipated dates and places of departure, arrival, or return, carrier and flight numbers for air travel, destination country and address or other contact information therein, means and purpose of travel, and any other itinerary or other travel-related information required by the Attorney General.

(8) Any other information required by the Attorney General.

(b) Provided by the jurisdiction

The jurisdiction in which the sex offender registers shall ensure that the following information is included in the registry for that sex offender:

(1) A physical description of the sex offender.

(2) The text of the provision of law defining the criminal offense for which the sex offender is registered.

(3) The criminal history of the sex offender, including the date of all arrests and convictions; the status of parole, probation, or supervised release; registration status; and the existence of any outstanding arrest warrants for the sex offender.

(4) A current photograph of the sex offender.

(5) A set of fingerprints and palm prints of the sex offender.

(6) A DNA sample of the sex offender.

(7) A photocopy of a valid driver's license or identification card issued to the sex offender by a jurisdiction.

(8) Any other information required by the Attorney General.

(c) Time and manner

A sex offender shall provide and update information required under subsection (a), including information relating to intended travel outside the United States required under paragraph (7) of that subsection, in conformity with any time and manner requirements prescribed by the Attorney General.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §114, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 594; Pub. L. 114–119, §6(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 22.)

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (a)(7), (8). Pub. L. 114–119, §6(a)(1), added par. (7) and redesignated former par. (7) as (8). Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 114–119, §6(a)(2), added subsec. (c).

§16915. Duration of registration requirement

(a) Full registration period

A sex offender shall keep the registration current for the full registration period (excluding any time the sex offender is in custody or civilly committed) unless the offender is allowed a reduction under subsection (b). The full registration period is—

(1) 15 years, if the offender is a tier I sex offender;

(2) 25 years, if the offender is a tier II sex offender; and

(3) the life of the offender, if the offender is a tier III sex offender.

(b) Reduced period for clean record

(1) Clean record

The full registration period shall be reduced as described in paragraph (3) for a sex offender who maintains a clean record for the period described in paragraph (2) by—

(A) not being convicted of any offense for which imprisonment for more than 1 year may be imposed;

(B) not being convicted of any sex offense;

(C) successfully completing any periods of supervised release, probation, and parole; and

(D) successfully completing of [1] an appropriate sex offender treatment program certified by a jurisdiction or by the Attorney General.

(2) Period

In the case of—

(A) a tier I sex offender, the period during which the clean record shall be maintained is 10 years; and

(B) a tier III sex offender adjudicated delinquent for the offense which required registration in a sex registry under this subchapter, the period during which the clean record shall be maintained is 25 years.

(3) Reduction

In the case of—

(A) a tier I sex offender, the reduction is 5 years;

(B) a tier III sex offender adjudicated delinquent, the reduction is from life to that period for which the clean record under paragraph (2) is maintained.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §115, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 595.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(B), was in the original "this title", meaning title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

[1] So in original. The word "of" probably should not appear.

§16915a. Direction to the Attorney General

(a) Requirement that sex offenders provide certain Internet related information to sex offender registries

The Attorney General, using the authority provided in section 114(a)(7) [1] of the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act [42 U.S.C. 16914(a)(7)], shall require that each sex offender provide to the sex offender registry those Internet identifiers the sex offender uses or will use of any

type that the Attorney General determines to be appropriate under that Act [42 U.S.C. 16901 et seq.]. These records of Internet identifiers shall be subject to the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a) to the same extent as the other records in the National Sex Offender Registry.

(b) Timeliness of reporting of information

The Attorney General, using the authority provided in section 112(b) of the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act [42 U.S.C. 16912(b)], shall specify the time and manner for keeping current information required to be provided under this section.

(c) Nondisclosure to general public

The Attorney General, using the authority provided in section 118(b)(4) of the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act [42 U.S.C. 16918(b)(4)], shall exempt from disclosure all information provided by a sex offender under subsection (a).

(d) Notice to sex offenders of new requirements

The Attorney General shall ensure that procedures are in place to notify each sex offender of changes in requirements that apply to that sex offender as a result of the implementation of this section.

(e) Definitions

(1) Of "social networking website"

As used in this Act, the term "social networking website"—

(A) means an Internet website—

(i) that allows users, through the creation of web pages or profiles or by other means, to provide information about themselves that is available to the public or to other users; and

(ii) that offers a mechanism for communication with other users where such users are likely to include a substantial number of minors; and

(iii) whose primary purpose is to facilitate online social interactions; and

(B) includes any contractors or agents used by the website to act on behalf of the website in carrying out the purposes of this Act.

(2) Of "Internet identifiers"

As used in this Act, the term "Internet identifiers" means electronic mail addresses and other designations used for self-identification or routing in Internet communication or posting.

(3) Other terms

A term defined for the purposes of the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act [42 U.S.C. 16901 et seq.] has the same meaning in this Act.

(Pub. L. 110–400, §2, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4224.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (e)(3), is title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, which is classified principally to this subchapter. Section 114(a)(7) of the Act was redesignated section 114(a)(8) of the Act by Pub. L. 114–119, §6(a)(1)(A), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 22. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (e), is Pub. L. 110–400, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4224, known as the Keeping the Internet Devoid of Sexual Predators Act of 2008, and also known as the KIDS Act of 2008, which enacted this section and section 16915b of this title, amended section 16981 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 16901 and 16981 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2008 Amendment note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Keeping the Internet Devoid of Sexual Predators Act of 2008, also known as the KIDS Act of 2008, and not as part of the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act which comprises this subchapter, or as part of the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 which

comprises this chapter.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§16915b. Checking system for social networking websites

(a) In general

(1) Secure system for comparisons

The Attorney General shall establish and maintain a secure system that permits social networking websites to compare the information contained in the National Sex Offender Registry with the Internet identifiers of users of the social networking websites, and view only those Internet identifiers that match. The system—

(A) shall not require or permit any social networking website to transmit Internet identifiers of its users to the operator of the system, and

(B) shall use secure procedures that preserve the secrecy of the information made available by the Attorney General, including protection measures that render the Internet identifiers and other data elements indecipherable.

(2) Provision of information relating to identity

Upon receiving a matched Internet identifier, the social networking website may make a request of the Attorney General for, and the Attorney General shall provide promptly, information related to the identity of the individual that has registered the matched Internet identifier. This information is limited to the name, sex, resident address, photograph, and physical description.

(b) Qualification for use of system

A social networking website seeking to use the system shall submit an application to the Attorney General which provides—

(1) the name and legal status of the website;

(2) the contact information for the website;

(3) a description of the nature and operations of the website;

(4) a statement explaining why the website seeks to use the system;

(5) a description of policies and procedures to ensure that—

(A) any individual who is denied access to that website on the basis of information obtained through the system is promptly notified of the basis for the denial and has the ability to challenge the denial of access; and

(B) if the social networking website finds that information is inaccurate, incomplete, or cannot be verified, the site immediately notifies the appropriate State registry and the Department of Justice, so that they may delete or correct that information in the respective State and national databases;

(6) the identity and address of, and contact information for, any contractor that will be used by the social networking website to use the system; and

(7) such other information or attestations as the Attorney General may require to ensure that the website will use the system—

(A) to protect the safety of the users of such website; and

(B) for the limited purpose of making the automated comparison described in subsection (a).

(c) Searches against the system

(1) Frequency of use of the system

A social networking website approved by the Attorney General to use the system may conduct searches under the system as frequently as the Attorney General may allow.

(2) Authority of Attorney General to suspend use

The Attorney General may deny, suspend, or terminate use of the system by a social networking website that—

(A) provides false information in its application for use of the system;

(B) may be using or seeks to use the system for any unlawful or improper purpose;

(C) fails to comply with the procedures required under subsection (b)(5); or

(D) uses information obtained from the system in any way that is inconsistent with the purposes of this Act.

(3) Limitation on release of Internet identifiers

(A) No public release

Neither the Attorney General nor a social networking website approved to use the system may release to the public any list of the Internet identifiers of sex offenders contained in the system.

(B) Additional limitations

The Attorney General shall limit the release of information obtained through the use of the system established under subsection (a) by social networking websites approved to use such system.

(C) Strict adherence to limitation

The use of the system established under subsection (a) by a social networking website shall be conditioned on the website's agreement to observe the limitations required under this paragraph.

(D) Rule of construction

This subsection shall not be construed to limit the authority of the Attorney General under any other provision of law to conduct or to allow searches or checks against sex offender registration information.

(4) Payment of fee

A social networking website approved to use the system shall pay any fee established by the Attorney General for use of the system.

(5) Limitation on liability

(A) In general

A civil claim against a social networking website, including any director, officer, employee, parent, contractor, or agent of that social networking website, arising from the use by such website of the National Sex Offender Registry, may not be brought in any Federal or State court.

(B) Intentional, reckless, or other misconduct

Subparagraph (A) does not apply to a claim if the social networking website, or a director, officer, employee, parent, contractor, or agent of that social networking website—

(i) engaged in intentional misconduct; or

(ii) acted, or failed to act—

(I) with actual malice;

(II) with reckless disregard to a substantial risk of causing injury without legal justification; or

(III) for a purpose unrelated to the performance of any responsibility or function described in paragraph (3).

(C) Minimizing access

A social networking website shall minimize the number of employees that are provided access to the Internet identifiers for which a match has been found through the system.

(6) Rule of construction

Nothing in this section shall be construed to require any Internet website, including a social networking website, to use the system, and no Federal or State liability, or any other actionable adverse consequence, shall be imposed on such website based on its decision not to do so.

(Pub. L. 110–400, §3, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4225.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(D), is Pub. L. 110–400, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4224, known as the Keeping the Internet Devoid of Sexual Predators Act of 2008, and also known as the KIDS Act of 2008, which enacted this section and section 16915b of this title, amended section 16981 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 16901 and 16981 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2008 Amendment note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Keeping the Internet Devoid of Sexual Predators Act of 2008, also known as the KIDS Act of 2008, and not as part of the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act which comprises this subchapter, or as part of the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 which comprises this chapter.

§16916. Periodic in person verification

A sex offender shall appear in person, allow the jurisdiction to take a current photograph, and verify the information in each registry in which that offender is required to be registered not less frequently than—

(1) each year, if the offender is a tier I sex offender;

(2) every 6 months, if the offender is a tier II sex offender; and

(3) every 3 months, if the offender is a tier III sex offender.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §116, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 595.)

§16917. Duty to notify sex offenders of registration requirements and to register

(a) In general

An appropriate official shall, shortly before release of the sex offender from custody, or, if the sex offender is not in custody, immediately after the sentencing of the sex offender, for the offense giving rise to the duty to register—

(1) inform the sex offender of the duties of a sex offender under this subchapter and explain those duties;

(2) require the sex offender to read and sign a form stating that the duty to register has been explained and that the sex offender understands the registration requirement; and

(3) ensure that the sex offender is registered.

(b) Notification of sex offenders who cannot comply with subsection (a)

The Attorney General shall prescribe rules for the notification of sex offenders who cannot be registered in accordance with subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §117, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 595.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), was in the original "this title", meaning title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

§16918. Public access to sex offender information through the Internet

(a) In general

Except as provided in this section, each jurisdiction shall make available on the Internet, in a manner that is readily accessible to all jurisdictions and to the public, all information about each sex offender in the registry. The jurisdiction shall maintain the Internet site in a manner that will permit the public to obtain relevant information for each sex offender by a single query for any given zip code or geographic radius set by the user. The jurisdiction shall also include in the design of its Internet site all field search capabilities needed for full participation in the Dru Sjodin National Sex Offender Public Website and shall participate in that website as provided by the Attorney General.

(b) Mandatory exemptions

A jurisdiction shall exempt from disclosure—

(1) the identity of any victim of a sex offense;

(2) the Social Security number of the sex offender;

(3) any reference to arrests of the sex offender that did not result in conviction; and

(4) any other information exempted from disclosure by the Attorney General.

(c) Optional exemptions

A jurisdiction may exempt from disclosure—

(1) any information about a tier I sex offender convicted of an offense other than a specified offense against a minor;

(2) the name of an employer of the sex offender;

(3) the name of an educational institution where the sex offender is a student; and

(4) any other information exempted from disclosure by the Attorney General.

(d) Links

The site shall include, to the extent practicable, links to sex offender safety and education resources.

(e) Correction of errors

The site shall include instructions on how to seek correction of information that an individual contends is erroneous.

(f) Warning

The site shall include a warning that information on the site should not be used to unlawfully injure, harass, or commit a crime against any individual named in the registry or residing or working at any reported address. The warning shall note that any such action could result in civil or criminal penalties.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §118, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 596.)

§16919. National Sex Offender Registry

(a) Internet

The Attorney General shall maintain a national database at the Federal Bureau of Investigation for each sex offender and any other person required to register in a jurisdiction's sex offender registry. The database shall be known as the National Sex Offender Registry.

(b) Electronic forwarding

The Attorney General shall ensure (through the National Sex Offender Registry or otherwise) that updated information about a sex offender is immediately transmitted by electronic forwarding to all relevant jurisdictions.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §119, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 596.)

§16920. Dru Sjodin National Sex Offender Public Website

(a) Establishment

There is established the Dru Sjodin National Sex Offender Public Website (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Website"), which the Attorney General shall maintain.

(b) Information to be provided

The Website shall include relevant information for each sex offender and other person listed on a jurisdiction's Internet site. The Website shall allow the public to obtain relevant information for each sex offender by a single query for any given zip code or geographical radius set by the user in a form and with such limitations as may be established by the Attorney General and shall have such other field search capabilities as the Attorney General may provide.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §120, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 597.)

§16921. Megan Nicole Kanka and Alexandra Nicole Zapp Community Notification Program

(a) Establishment of Program

There is established the Megan Nicole Kanka and Alexandra Nicole Zapp Community Notification Program (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Program").

(b) Program notification

Except as provided in subsection (c), immediately after a sex offender registers or updates a registration, an appropriate official in the jurisdiction shall provide the information in the registry (other than information exempted from disclosure by the Attorney General) about that offender to the following:

(1) The Attorney General, who shall include that information in the National Sex Offender Registry or other appropriate databases.

(2) Appropriate law enforcement agencies (including probation agencies, if appropriate), and each school and public housing agency, in each area in which the individual resides, is an employee or is a student.

(3) Each jurisdiction where the sex offender resides, is an employee, or is a student, and each jurisdiction from or to which a change of residence, employment, or student status occurs.

(4) Any agency responsible for conducting employment-related background checks under section 5119a of this title.

(5) Social service entities responsible for protecting minors in the child welfare system.

(6) Volunteer organizations in which contact with minors or other vulnerable individuals might occur.

(7) Any organization, company, or individual who requests such notification pursuant to procedures established by the jurisdiction.

(c) Frequency

Notwithstanding subsection (b), an organization or individual described in subsection (b)(6) or (b)(7) may opt to receive the notification described in that subsection no less frequently than once every five business days.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §121, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 597.)

§16922. Actions to be taken when sex offender fails to comply

An appropriate official shall notify the Attorney General and appropriate law enforcement agencies of any failure by a sex offender to comply with the requirements of a registry and revise the jurisdiction's registry to reflect the nature of that failure. The appropriate official, the Attorney General, and each such law enforcement agency shall take any appropriate action to ensure compliance.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §122, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 597.)

§16923. Development and availability of registry management and website software

(a) Duty to develop and support

The Attorney General shall, in consultation with the jurisdictions, develop and support software to enable jurisdictions to establish and operate uniform sex offender registries and Internet sites.

(b) Criteria

The software should facilitate—

(1) immediate exchange of information among jurisdictions;

(2) public access over the Internet to appropriate information, including the number of registered sex offenders in each jurisdiction on a current basis;

(3) full compliance with the requirements of this subchapter; and

(4) communication of information to community notification program participants as required under section 16921 of this title.

(c) Deadline

The Attorney General shall make the first complete edition of this software available to jurisdictions within 2 years of July 27, 2006.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §123, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 598.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(3), was in the original "this title", meaning title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

§16924. Period for implementation by jurisdictions

(a) Deadline

Each jurisdiction shall implement this subchapter before the later of—

(1) 3 years after July 27, 2006; and

(2) 1 year after the date on which the software described in section 16923 of this title is available.

(b) Extensions

The Attorney General may authorize up to two 1-year extensions of the deadline.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §124, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 598.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this title", meaning title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

The software described in section 16923 of this title, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), became available on July 25, 2008. See Office of Justice Progs., U.S. Dep't of Justice, Annual Report to Congress 26 (Fiscal Year 2008).

§16925. Failure of jurisdiction to comply

(a) In general

For any fiscal year after the end of the period for implementation, a jurisdiction that fails, as determined by the Attorney General, to substantially implement this subchapter shall not receive 10 percent of the funds that would otherwise be allocated for that fiscal year to the jurisdiction under subpart 1 of part E of title I of the Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968 (42 U.S.C. 3750 et seq.).

(b) State constitutionality

(1) In general

When evaluating whether a jurisdiction has substantially implemented this subchapter, the Attorney General shall consider whether the jurisdiction is unable to substantially implement this subchapter because of a demonstrated inability to implement certain provisions that would place the jurisdiction in violation of its constitution, as determined by a ruling of the jurisdiction's highest court.

(2) Efforts

If the circumstances arise under paragraph (1), then the Attorney General and the jurisdiction shall make good faith efforts to accomplish substantial implementation of this subchapter and to reconcile any conflicts between this subchapter and the jurisdiction's constitution. In considering whether compliance with the requirements of this subchapter would likely violate the jurisdiction's constitution or an interpretation thereof by the jurisdiction's highest court, the Attorney General shall consult with the chief executive and chief legal officer of the jurisdiction concerning the jurisdiction's interpretation of the jurisdiction's constitution and rulings thereon by the jurisdiction's highest court.

(3) Alternative procedures

If the jurisdiction is unable to substantially implement this subchapter because of a limitation imposed by the jurisdiction's constitution, the Attorney General may determine that the jurisdiction is in compliance with this chapter if the jurisdiction has made, or is in the process of implementing [1] reasonable alternative procedures or accommodations, which are consistent with the purposes of this chapter.

(4) Funding reduction

If a jurisdiction does not comply with paragraph (3), then the jurisdiction shall be subject to a funding reduction as specified in subsection (a).

(c) Reallocation

Amounts not allocated under a program referred to in this section to a jurisdiction for failure to substantially implement this subchapter shall be reallocated under that program to jurisdictions that have not failed to substantially implement this subchapter or may be reallocated to a jurisdiction from which they were withheld to be used solely for the purpose of implementing this subchapter.

(d) Rule of construction

The provisions of this subchapter that are cast as directions to jurisdictions or their officials constitute, in relation to States, only conditions required to avoid the reduction of Federal funding under this section.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §125, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 598.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

The Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 90–351, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 197. Subpart 1 of part E of title I of the Act is classified generally to part A (§3750 et seq.) of subchapter V of chapter 46 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3711 of this title and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(3), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 109–248, July 27,

2006, 120 Stat. 587, known as the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.*

§16926. Sex Offender Management Assistance (SOMA) program

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall establish and implement a Sex Offender Management Assistance program (in this subchapter referred to as the "SOMA program"), under which the Attorney General may award a grant to a jurisdiction to offset the costs of implementing this subchapter.

(b) Application

The chief executive of a jurisdiction desiring a grant under this section shall, on an annual basis, submit to the Attorney General an application in such form and containing such information as the Attorney General may require.

(c) Bonus payments for prompt compliance

A jurisdiction that, as determined by the Attorney General, has substantially implemented this subchapter not later than 2 years after July 27, 2006, is eligible for a bonus payment. The Attorney General may make such a payment under the SOMA program for the first fiscal year beginning after that determination. The amount of the payment shall be—

(1) 10 percent of the total received by the jurisdiction under the SOMA program for the preceding fiscal year, if that implementation is not later than 1 year after July 27, 2006; and

(2) 5 percent of such total, if not later than 2 years after July 27, 2006.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

In addition to any amounts otherwise authorized to be appropriated, there are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary to the Attorney General, to be available only for the SOMA program, for fiscal years 2007 through 2009.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §126, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 599.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (c), was in the original "this title", meaning title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

§16927. Election by Indian tribes

(a) Election

(1) In general

A federally recognized Indian tribe may, by resolution or other enactment of the tribal council or comparable governmental body—

(A) elect to carry out this part as a jurisdiction subject to its provisions; or

(B) elect to delegate its functions under this part to another jurisdiction or jurisdictions within which the territory of the tribe is located and to provide access to its territory and such other cooperation and assistance as may be needed to enable such other jurisdiction or jurisdictions to carry out and enforce the requirements of this part.

(2) Imputed election in certain cases

A tribe shall be treated as if it had made the election described in paragraph (1)(B) if—

(A) it is a tribe subject to the law enforcement jurisdiction of a State under section 1162 of

title 18;

(B) the tribe does not make an election under paragraph (1) within 1 year of July 27, 2006 or rescinds an election under paragraph (1)(A); or

(C) the Attorney General determines that the tribe has not substantially implemented the requirements of this part and is not likely to become capable of doing so within a reasonable amount of time.

(b) Cooperation between tribal authorities and other jurisdictions

(1) Nonduplication

A tribe subject to this part is not required to duplicate functions under this part which are fully carried out by another jurisdiction or jurisdictions within which the territory of the tribe is located.

(2) Cooperative agreements

A tribe may, through cooperative agreements with such a jurisdiction or jurisdictions—

(A) arrange for the tribe to carry out any function of such a jurisdiction under this part with respect to sex offenders subject to the tribe's jurisdiction; and

(B) arrange for such a jurisdiction to carry out any function of the tribe under this part with respect to sex offenders subject to the tribe's jurisdiction.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §127, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 599.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle A (§§111–131) of title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 591, which is classified principally to this part. For complete classification of subtitle A to the Code, see Tables.

§16928. Registration of sex offenders entering the United States

The Attorney General, in consultation with the Secretary of State and the Secretary of Homeland Security, shall establish and maintain a system for informing the relevant jurisdictions about persons entering the United States who are required to register under this subchapter. The Secretary of State and the Secretary of Homeland Security shall provide such information and carry out such functions as the Attorney General may direct in the operation of the system.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §128, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 600.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

§16928a. Registration of sex offenders released from military corrections facilities or upon conviction

The Secretary of Defense shall provide to the Attorney General the information described in section 16914 of this title to be included in the National Sex Offender Registry and the Dru Sjodin National Sex Offender Public Website regarding persons—

(1)(A) released from military corrections facilities; or

(B) convicted if the sentences adjudged by courts-martial under chapter 47 of title 10 (the Uniform Code of Military Justice) do not include confinement; and

(2) required to register under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §128A, as added Pub. L. 114–22, title V, §502, May 29, 2015, 129 Stat. 258.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in par. (2), was in the original "this title", meaning title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

For short title of this section as the "Military Sex Offender Reporting Act of 2015", see section 501 of Pub. L. 114–22, set out as a Short Title of 2015 Amendment note under section 16901 of this title.

§16929. Immunity for good faith conduct

The Federal Government, jurisdictions, political subdivisions of jurisdictions, and their agencies, officers, employees, and agents shall be immune from liability for good faith conduct under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §131, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 601.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

PART A–1—ADVANCED NOTIFICATION OF TRAVELING SEX OFFENDERS

CODIFICATION

Part was enacted as part of the International Megan's Law to Prevent Child Exploitation and Other Sexual Crimes Through Advanced Notification of Traveling Sex Offenders, and not as part of the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act which comprises this subchapter or the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 which comprises this chapter.

§16935. Findings

Congress finds the following:

(1) Megan Nicole Kanka, who was 7 years old, was abducted, sexually assaulted, and murdered in 1994, in the State of New Jersey by a violent predator living across the street from her home. Unbeknownst to Megan Kanka and her family, he had been convicted previously of a sex offense against a child.

(2) In 1996, Congress adopted Megan's Law (Public Law 104–145) as a means to encourage States to protect children by identifying the whereabouts of sex offenders and providing the means to monitor their activities.

(3) In 2006, Congress passed the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 (Public Law 109–248) to protect children and the public at large by establishing a comprehensive national system for the registration and notification to the public and law enforcement officers of convicted sex offenders.

(4) Law enforcement reports indicate that known child-sex offenders are traveling internationally.

(5) The commercial sexual exploitation of minors in child sex trafficking and pornography is a global phenomenon. The International Labour Organization has estimated that 1,8000,000 [1] children worldwide are victims of child sex trafficking and pornography each year.

(6) Child sex tourism, where an individual travels to a foreign country and engages in sexual activity with a child in that country, is a form of child exploitation and, where commercial, child sex trafficking.

(Pub. L. 114–119, §2, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 15.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Megan's Law, referred to in par. (2), is Pub. L. 104–145, §1, May 17, 1996, 110 Stat. 1345, which amended section 14071 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1996 Amendment note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

The Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006, referred to in par. (3), is Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 587, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and repealed numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "18,000,000".

§16935a. Definitions

In this part:

(1) Center

The term "Center" means the Angel Watch Center established pursuant to section 16935b(a) of this title.

(2) Convicted

The term "convicted" has the meaning given the term in section 111 of the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 (42 U.S.C. 16911).

(3) Covered sex offender

Except as otherwise provided, the term "covered sex offender" means an individual who is a sex offender by reason of having been convicted of a sex offense against a minor.

(4) Destination country

The term "destination country" means a destination or transit country.

(5) Interpol

The term "INTERPOL" means the International Criminal Police Organization.

(6) Jurisdiction

The term "jurisdiction" means—

(A) a State;
(B) the District of Columbia;
(C) the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico;
(D) Guam;
(E) American Samoa;
(F) the Northern Mariana Islands;
(G) the United States Virgin Islands; and
(H) to the extent provided in, and subject to the requirements of, section 127 of the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 (42 U.S.C. 16927), a Federally recognized Indian tribe.

(7) Minor

The term "minor" means an individual who has not attained the age of 18 years.

(8) National sex offender registry

The term "National Sex Offender Registry" means the National Sex Offender Registry established by section 119 of the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 (42 U.S.C. 16919).

(9) Sex offender under sorna

The term "sex offender under SORNA" has the meaning given the term "sex offender" in section 111 of the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 (42 U.S.C. 16911).

(10) Sex offense against a minor

(A) In general

The term "sex offense against a minor" means a specified offense against a minor, as defined in section 111 of the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 (42 U.S.C. 16911).

(B) Other offenses

The term "sex offense against a minor" includes a sex offense described in section 111(5)(A) of the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 (42 U.S.C. 16911(5)(A)) that is a specified offense against a minor, as defined in paragraph (7) of such section, or an attempt or conspiracy to commit such an offense.

(C) Foreign convictions; offenses involving consensual sexual conduct

The limitations contained in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of section 111(5) of the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 (42 U.S.C. 16911(5)) shall apply with respect to a sex offense against a minor for purposes of this Act to the same extent and in the same manner as such limitations apply with respect to a sex offense for purposes of the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 [42 U.S.C. 16901 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 114–119, §3, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 16.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 114–119, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 15, known as the International Megan's Law to Prevent Child Exploitation and Other Sexual Crimes Through Advanced Notification of Traveling Sex Offenders, which is classified principally to this part. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2016 Amendment note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

The Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006, referred to in par. (10)(C), is Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 587, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and repealed numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

§16935b. Angel Watch Center

(a) Establishment

Not later than 90 days after February 8, 2016, the Secretary of Homeland Security shall establish within the Child Exploitation Investigations Unit of U.S. Immigrations and Customs Enforcement a Center, to be known as the "Angel Watch Center", to carry out the activities specified in subsection (e).

(b) Incoming notification

(1) In general

The Center may receive incoming notifications concerning individuals seeking to enter the United States who have committed offenses of a sexual nature.

(2) Notification

Upon receiving an incoming notification under paragraph (1), the Center shall—

(A) immediately share all information received relating to the individual with the Department of Justice; and

(B) share all relevant information relating to the individual with other Federal, State, and local agencies and entities, as appropriate.

(3) Collaboration

The Secretary of Homeland Security shall collaborate with the Attorney General to establish a

process for the receipt, dissemination, and categorization of information relating to individuals and specific offenses provided herein.

(c) Leadership

The Center shall be headed by the Assistant Secretary of U.S. Immigration and Customs Enforcement, in collaboration with the Commissioner of U.S. Customs and Border Protection and in consultation with the Attorney General and the Secretary of State.

(d) Members

The Center shall consist of the following:

(1) The Assistant Secretary of U.S. Immigration and Customs Enforcement.

(2) The Commissioner of U.S. Customs and Border Protection.

(3) Individuals who are designated as analysts in U.S. Immigration and Customs Enforcement or U.S. Customs and Border Protection.

(4) Individuals who are designated as program managers in U.S. Immigration and Customs Enforcement or U.S. Customs and Border Protection.

(e) Activities

(1) In general

In carrying out this section, the Center shall, using all relevant databases, systems and sources of information, not later than 48 hours before scheduled departure, or as soon as practicable before scheduled departure—

(A) determine if individuals traveling abroad are listed on the National Sex Offender Registry;

(B) review the United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center case management system or other system that provides access to a list of individuals who have provided advanced notice of international travel to identify any individual who meets the criteria described in subparagraph (A) and is not in a system reviewed pursuant to this subparagraph; and

(C) provide a list of individuals identified under subparagraph (B) to the United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center to determine compliance with title I of the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 (42 U.S.C. 16901 et seq.).

(2) Provision of information to Center

Twenty-four hours before the intended travel, or thereafter, not later than 72 hours after the intended travel, the United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center shall provide, to the Angel Watch Center, information pertaining to any sex offender described in subparagraph (C) of paragraph (1).

(3) Advance notice to destination country

(A) In general

The Center may transmit relevant information to the destination country about a sex offender if—

(i) the individual is identified by a review conducted under paragraph (1)(B) as having provided advanced notice of international travel; or

(ii) after completing the activities described in paragraph (1), the Center receives information pertaining to a sex offender under paragraph (2).

(B) Exceptions

The Center may immediately transmit relevant information on a sex offender to the destination country if—

(i) the Center becomes aware that a sex offender is traveling outside of the United States within 24 hours of intended travel, and simultaneously completes the activities described in paragraph (1); or

(ii) the Center has not received a transmission pursuant to paragraph (2), provided it is not

more than 24 hours before the intended travel.

(C) Corrections

Upon receiving information that a notification sent by the Center regarding an individual was inaccurate, the Center shall immediately—

(i) send a notification of correction to the destination country notified;

(ii) correct all data collected pursuant to paragraph (6); and

(iii) if applicable, notify the Secretary of State for purposes of the passport review and marking processes described in section 212b of title 22.

(D) Form

The notification under this paragraph may be transmitted through such means as are determined appropriate by the Center, including through U.S. Immigration and Customs Enforcement attaches.

(4) Memorandum of agreement

Not later than 6 months after February 8, 2016, the Secretary of Homeland Security shall enter into a Memorandum of Agreement with the Attorney General to facilitate the activities of the Angel Watch Center in collaboration with the United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center, including the exchange of information, the sharing of personnel, access to information and databases in accordance with paragraph (1)(B), and the establishment of a process to share notifications from the international community in accordance with subsection (b)(1).

(5) Passport application review

(A) In general

The Center shall provide a written determination to the Department of State regarding the status of an individual as a covered sex offender (as defined in section 212b of title 22) when appropriate.

(B) Effective date

Subparagraph (A) shall take effect upon certification by the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Homeland Security, and the Attorney General that the process developed and reported to the appropriate congressional committees under section 16935f of this title has been successfully implemented.

(6) Collection of data

The Center shall collect all relevant data, including—

(A) a record of each notification sent under paragraph (3);

(B) the response of the destination country to notifications under paragraph (3), where available;

(C) any decision not to transmit a notification abroad, to the extent practicable;

(D) the number of transmissions made under subparagraphs (A),(B), and (C) of paragraph (3) and the countries to which they are transmitted, respectively;

(E) whether the information was transmitted to the destination country before scheduled commencement of sex offender travel; and

(F) any other information deemed necessary and appropriate by the Secretary of Homeland Security.

(7) Complaint review

(A) In general

The Center shall—

(i) establish a mechanism to receive complaints from individuals affected by erroneous notifications under this section;

(ii) ensure that any complaint is promptly reviewed; and

(iii) in the case of a complaint that involves a notification sent by another Federal Government entity, notify the individual of the contact information for the appropriate entity and forward the complaint to the appropriate entity for prompt review and response pursuant to this section.

(B) Response to complaints

The Center shall, as applicable—

(i) provide the individual with notification in writing that the individual was erroneously subjected to international notification;

(ii) take action to ensure that a notification or information regarding the individual is not erroneously transmitted to a destination country in the future; and

(iii) submit an additional written notification to the individual explaining why a notification or information regarding the individual was erroneously transmitted to the destination country and describing the actions that the Center has taken or is taking under clause (ii).

(C) Public awareness

The Center shall make publicly available information on how an individual may submit a complaint under this section.

(D) Reporting requirement

The Secretary of Homeland Security shall submit an annual report to the appropriate congressional committees (as defined in section 16935f of this title) that includes—

(i) the number of instances in which a notification or information was erroneously transmitted to the destination country of an individual under paragraph (3); and

(ii) the actions taken to prevent similar errors from occurring in the future.

(8) Annual review process

The Center shall establish, in coordination with the Attorney General, the Secretary of State, and INTERPOL, an annual review process to ensure that there is appropriate coordination and collaboration, including consistent procedures governing the activities authorized under this part, in carrying out this part.

(9) Information required

The Center shall make available to the United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center information on travel by sex offenders in a timely manner.

(f) Definition

In this section, the term "sex offender" means—

(1) a covered sex offender; or

(2) an individual required to register under the sex offender registration program of any jurisdiction or included in the National Sex Offender Registry, on the basis of an offense against a minor.

(Pub. L. 114–119, §4, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 17.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006, referred to in subsec. (e)(1)(C), is Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 587. Title I of the Act, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act, is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

This part, referred to in subsec. (e)(8), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 114–119, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 15, known as the International Megan's Law to Prevent Child Exploitation and Other Sexual Crimes Through Advanced Notification of Traveling Sex Offenders, which is classified principally to this part. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2016 Amendment note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

§16935c. Notification by the United States Marshals Service

(a) In general

The United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center may—

(1) transmit notification of international travel of a sex offender to the destination country of the sex offender, including to the visa-issuing agent or agents in the United States of the country;

(2) share information relating to traveling sex offenders with other Federal, State, local, and foreign agencies and entities, as appropriate;

(3) receive incoming notifications concerning individuals seeking to enter the United States who have committed offenses of a sexual nature and shall share the information received immediately with the Department of Homeland Security; and

(4) perform such other functions at the Attorney General or the Director of the United States Marshals Service may direct.

(b) Consistent notification

In making notifications under subsection (a)(1), the United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center shall, to the extent feasible and appropriate, ensure that the destination country is consistently notified in advance about sex offenders under SORNA identified through their inclusion in sex offender registries of jurisdictions or the National Sex Offender Registry.

(c) Information required

For purposes of carrying out this part, the United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center shall—

(1) make the case management system or other system that provides access to a list of individuals who have provided advanced notice of international travel available to the Angel Watch Center;

(2) provide the Angel Watch Center a determination of compliance with title I of the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006 (42 U.S.C. 16901 et seq.) for the list of individuals transmitted under section 16935b(e)(1)(C) of this title;

(3) make available to the Angel Watch Center information on travel by sex offenders in a timely manner; and

(4) consult with the Department of State regarding operation of the international notification program authorized under this part.

(d) Corrections

Upon receiving information that a notification sent by the United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center regarding an individual was inaccurate, the United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center shall immediately—

(1) send a notification of correction to the destination country notified;

(2) correct all data collected in accordance with subsection (f); and

(3) if applicable, send a notification of correction to the Angel Watch Center.

(e) Form

The notification under this section may be transmitted through such means as are determined appropriate by the United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center, including through the INTERPOL notification system and through Federal Bureau of Investigation Legal attaches.

(f) Collection of data

The Attorney General shall collect all relevant data, including—

(1) a record of each notification sent under subsection (a);

(2) the response of the destination country to notifications under paragraphs (1) and (2) of subsection (a), where available;

(3) any decision not to transmit a notification abroad, to the extent practicable;

(4) the number of transmissions made under paragraphs (1) and (2) of subsection (a) and the

countries to which they are transmitted;

(5) whether the information was transmitted to the destination country before scheduled commencement of sex offender travel; and

(6) any other information deemed necessary and appropriate by the Attorney General.

(g) Complaint review

(1) In general

The United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center shall—

(A) establish a mechanism to receive complaints from individuals affected by erroneous notifications under this section;

(B) ensure that any complaint is promptly reviewed; and

(C) in the case of a complaint that involves a notification sent by another Federal Government entity, notify the individual of the contact information for the appropriate entity and forward the complaint to the appropriate entity for prompt review and response pursuant to this section.

(2) Response to complaints

The United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center shall, as applicable—

(A) provide the individual with notification in writing that the individual was erroneously subjected to international notification;

(B) take action to ensure that a notification or information regarding the individual is not erroneously transmitted to a destination country in the future; and

(C) submit an additional written notification to the individual explaining why a notification or information regarding the individual was erroneously transmitted to the destination country and describing the actions that the United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center has taken or is taking under subparagraph (B).

(3) Public awareness

The United States Marshals Service's National Sex Offender Targeting Center shall make publicly available information on how an individual may submit a complaint under this section.

(4) Reporting requirement

The Attorney General shall submit an annual report to the appropriate congressional committees (as defined in section 16935f of this title) that includes—

(A) the number of instances in which a notification or information was erroneously transmitted to the destination country of an individual under subsection (a); and

(B) the actions taken to prevent similar errors from occurring in the future.

(h) Definition

In this section, the term "sex offender" means—

(1) a sex offender under SORNA; or

(2) a person required to register under the sex offender registration program of any jurisdiction or included in the National Sex Offender Registry.

(Pub. L. 114–119, §5, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 20.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsec. (c), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 114–119, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 15, known as the International Megan's Law to Prevent Child Exploitation and Other Sexual Crimes Through Advanced Notification of Traveling Sex Offenders, which is classified principally to this part. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2016 Amendment note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

The Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), is Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 587. Title I of the Act, known as the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act, is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

§16935d. Implementation

In carrying out this part, and the amendments made by this part, the Attorney General may use the resources and capacities of any appropriate agencies of the Department of Justice, including the Office of Sex Offender Sentencing, Monitoring, Apprehending, Registering, and Tracking, the United States Marshals Service, INTERPOL Washington-U.S. National Central Bureau, the Federal Bureau of Investigation, the Criminal Division, and the United States Attorneys' Offices.

(Pub. L. 114–119, §6(c), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 23.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 114–119, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 15, known as the International Megan's Law to Prevent Child Exploitation and Other Sexual Crimes Through Advanced Notification of Traveling Sex Offenders, which is classified principally to this part. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2016 Amendment note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

§16935e. Reciprocal notifications

It is the sense of Congress that the Secretary of State, in consultation with the Attorney General and the Secretary of Homeland Security, should seek reciprocal international agreements or arrangements to further the purposes of this part and the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act (42 U.S.C. 16901 et seq.). Such agreements or arrangements may establish mechanisms and undertakings to receive and transmit notices concerning international travel by sex offenders, through the Angel Watch Center, the INTERPOL notification system, and such other means as may be appropriate, including notification by the United States to other countries relating to the travel of sex offenders from the United States, reciprocal notification by other countries to the United States relating to the travel of sex offenders to the United States, and mechanisms to correct and, as applicable, remove from any other records, any inaccurate information transmitted through such notifications.

(Pub. L. 114–119, §7, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 23.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 114–119, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 15, known as the International Megan's Law to Prevent Child Exploitation and Other Sexual Crimes Through Advanced Notification of Traveling Sex Offenders, which is classified principally to this part. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2016 Amendment note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

The Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act, referred to in text, is title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

§16935f. Implementation plan

(a) In general

Not later than 90 days after February 8, 2016, the Secretary of Homeland Security, the Secretary of State, and the Attorney General shall develop a process by which to implement section 16935b(e)(5) of this title and the provisions of section 212b of title 22.

(b) Reporting requirement

Not later than 90 days after February 8, 2016, the Secretary of Homeland Security, the Secretary of State, and the Attorney General shall jointly submit a report to, and shall consult with, the appropriate congressional committees on the process developed under subsection (a), which shall

include a description of the proposed process and a timeline and plan for implementation of that process, and shall identify the resources required to effectively implement that process.

(c) "Appropriate congressional committees" defined

In this section, the term "appropriate congressional committees" means—

(1) the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate;
(2) the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives;
(3) the Committee on Homeland Security and Governmental Affairs of the Senate;
(4) the Committee on Homeland Security of the House of Representatives;
(5) the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate;
(6) the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives;
(7) the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate; and
(8) the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives.

(Pub. L. 114–119, §9, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 25.)

§16935g. Technical assistance

The Secretary of State, in consultation with the Attorney General and the Secretary of Homeland Security, may provide technical assistance to foreign authorities in order to enable such authorities to participate more effectively in the notification program system established under this part.

(Pub. L. 114–119, §10, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 25.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 114–119, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 15, known as the International Megan's Law to Prevent Child Exploitation and Other Sexual Crimes Through Advanced Notification of Traveling Sex Offenders, which is classified principally to this part. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2016 Amendment note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

§16935h. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part $6,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2017 and 2018.

(Pub. L. 114–119, §11, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 25.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 114–119, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 15, known as the International Megan's Law to Prevent Child Exploitation and Other Sexual Crimes Through Advanced Notification of Traveling Sex Offenders, which is classified principally to this part. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2016 Amendment note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

§16935i. Rule of construction

Nothing in this part shall be construed to limit international information sharing or law enforcement cooperation relating to any person pursuant to any authority of the Department of Justice, the Department of Homeland Security, or any other department or agency.

(Pub. L. 114–119, §12, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 25.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 114–119, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 15, known as the International Megan's Law to Prevent Child Exploitation and Other Sexual Crimes Through Advanced Notification of Traveling Sex Offenders, which is classified principally to this part. For

complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2016 Amendment note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

PART B—IMPROVING FEDERAL CRIMINAL LAW ENFORCEMENT TO ENSURE SEX OFFENDER COMPLIANCE WITH REGISTRATION AND NOTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS AND PROTECTION OF CHILDREN FROM VIOLENT PREDATORS

§16941. Federal assistance with respect to violations of registration requirements

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall use the resources of Federal law enforcement, including the United States Marshals Service, to assist jurisdictions in locating and apprehending sex offenders who violate sex offender registration requirements. For the purposes of section 566(e)(1)(B) of title 28, a sex offender who violates a sex offender registration requirement shall be deemed a fugitive.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary for fiscal years 2007 through 2009 to implement this section.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §142, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 604.)

§16942. Project Safe Childhood

(a) Establishment of program

Not later than 6 months after July 27, 2006, the Attorney General shall create and maintain a Project Safe Childhood program in accordance with this section.

(b) Initial implementation

Except as authorized under subsection (c), funds authorized under this section may only be used for the following 5 purposes:

(1) Integrated Federal, State, and local efforts to investigate and prosecute child exploitation cases, including—

(A) the partnership by each United States Attorney with each Internet Crimes Against Children Task Force that is a part of the Internet Crimes Against Children Task Force Program authorized and funded under title IV of the Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5771 et seq.) (referred to in this section as the "ICAC Task Force Program") that exists within the district of such attorney;

(B) the partnership by each United States Attorney with other Federal, State, and local law enforcement partners working in the district of such attorney to implement the program described in subsection (a);

(C) the development by each United States Attorney of a district-specific strategic plan to coordinate the investigation and prosecution of child exploitation crimes;

(D) efforts to identify and rescue victims of child exploitation crimes; and

(E) local training, educational, and awareness programs of such crimes.

(2) Major case coordination by the Department of Justice (or other Federal agencies as appropriate), including specific integration or cooperation, as appropriate, of—

(A) the Child Exploitation and Obscenity Section within the Department of Justice;

(B) the Innocent Images Unit of the Federal Bureau of Investigation;

(C) any task forces established in connection with the Project Safe Childhood program set forth under subsection (a); and

(D) the High Tech Investigative Unit within the Criminal Division of the Department of Justice.

(3) Increased Federal involvement in child pornography and enticement cases by providing additional investigative tools and increased penalties under Federal law.

(4) Training of Federal, State, and local law enforcement through programs facilitated by—

(A) the National Center for Missing and Exploited Children;

(B) the ICAC Task Force Program; and

(C) any other ongoing program regarding the investigation and prosecution of computer-facilitated crimes against children, including training and coordination regarding leads from—

(i) Federal law enforcement operations; and

(ii) the CyberTipline and Child Victim-Identification programs managed and maintained by the National Center for Missing and Exploited Children.

(5) Community awareness and educational programs through partnerships to provide national public awareness and educational programs through—

(A) the National Center for Missing and Exploited Children;

(B) the ICAC Task Force Program; and

(C) any other ongoing programs that—

(i) raises [1] national awareness about the threat of online sexual predators; or

(ii) provides [1] information to parents and children seeking to report possible violations of computer-facilitated crimes against children.

(c) Expansion of project safe childhood

Notwithstanding subsection (b), funds authorized under this section may be also be [1] used for the following purposes:

(1) The addition of not less than 8 Assistant United States Attorneys at the Department of Justice dedicated to the prosecution of cases in connection with the Project Safe Childhood program set forth under subsection (a).

(2) The creation, development, training, and deployment of not less than 10 new Internet Crimes Against Children task forces within the ICAC Task Force Program consisting of Federal, State, and local law enforcement personnel dedicated to the Project Safe Childhood program set forth under subsection (a), and the enhancement of the forensic capacities of existing Internet Crimes Against Children task forces.

(3) The development and enhancement by the Federal Bureau of Investigation of the Innocent Images task forces.

(4) Such other additional and related purposes as the Attorney General determines appropriate.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

For the purpose of carrying out this section, there are authorized to be appropriated—

(1) for the activities described under subsection (b)—

(A) $18,000,000 for fiscal year 2007; and

(B) such sums as may be necessary for each of the 5 succeeding fiscal years; and

(2) for the activities described under subsection (c)—

(A) for fiscal year 2007—

(i) $15,000,000 for the activities under paragraph (1);

(ii) $10,000,000 for activities under paragraph (2); and

(iii) $4,000,000 for activities under paragraph (3); and

(B) such sums as may be necessary for each of the 5 succeeding fiscal years.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §143, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 604.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(A), is Pub. L. 93–415, Sept. 7, 1974, 88 Stat. 1109. Title IV of the Act is classified generally to subchapter IV (§5771 et seq.) of chapter 72 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5601 of this title and Tables.

[1] *So in original.*

§16943. Federal assistance in identification and location of sex offenders relocated as a result of a major disaster

The Attorney General shall provide assistance to jurisdictions in the identification and location of a sex offender relocated as a result of a major disaster.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §144, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 606.)

§16944. Expansion of training and technology efforts

(a) Training

The Attorney General shall—

(1) expand training efforts with Federal, State, and local law enforcement officers and prosecutors to effectively respond to the threat to children and the public posed by sex offenders who use the Internet and technology to solicit or otherwise exploit children;

(2) facilitate meetings involving corporations that sell computer hardware and software or provide services to the general public related to use of the Internet, to identify problems associated with the use of technology for the purpose of exploiting children;

(3) host national conferences to train Federal, State, and local law enforcement officers, probation and parole officers, and prosecutors regarding pro-active approaches to monitoring sex offender activity on the Internet;

(4) develop and distribute, for personnel listed in paragraph (3), information regarding multidisciplinary approaches to holding offenders accountable to the terms of their probation, parole, and sex offender registration laws; and

(5) partner with other agencies to improve the coordination of joint investigations among agencies to effectively combat online solicitation of children by sex offenders.

(b) Technology

The Attorney General shall—

(1) deploy, to all Internet Crimes Against Children Task Forces and their partner agencies, technology modeled after the Canadian Child Exploitation Tracking System; and

(2) conduct training in the use of that technology.

(c) Report

Not later than July 1, 2007, the Attorney General,[1] shall submit to Congress a report on the activities carried out under this section. The report shall include any recommendations that the Attorney General considers appropriate.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Attorney General, for fiscal year 2007—

(1) $1,000,000 to carry out subsection (a); and

(2) $2,000,000 to carry out subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §145, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 606.)

[1] *So in original. The comma probably should not appear.*

§16945. Office of Sex Offender Sentencing, Monitoring, Apprehending, Registering, and Tracking

(a) Establishment

There is established within the Department of Justice, under the general authority of the Attorney General, an Office of Sex Offender Sentencing, Monitoring, Apprehending, Registering, and Tracking (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "SMART Office").

(b) Director

The SMART Office shall be headed by a Director who shall be appointed by the President. The Director shall report to the Attorney General through the Assistant Attorney General for the Office of Justice Programs and shall have final authority for all grants, cooperative agreements, and contracts awarded by the SMART Office. The Director shall not engage in any employment other than that of serving as the Director, nor shall the Director hold any office in, or act in any capacity for, any organization, agency, or institution with which the Office makes any contract or other arrangement.

(c) Duties and functions

The SMART Office is authorized to—

(1) administer the standards for the sex offender registration and notification program set forth in this chapter;

(2) administer grant programs relating to sex offender registration and notification authorized by this chapter and other grant programs authorized by this chapter as directed by the Attorney General;

(3) cooperate with and provide technical assistance to States, units of local government, tribal governments, and other public and private entities involved in activities related to sex offender registration or notification or to other measures for the protection of children or other members of the public from sexual abuse or exploitation; and

(4) perform such other functions as the Attorney General may delegate.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §146, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 607.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), (2), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 587, known as the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

PART C—ACCESS TO INFORMATION AND RESOURCES NEEDED TO ENSURE THAT CHILDREN ARE NOT ATTACKED OR ABUSED

§16961. Access to national crime information databases

(a) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Attorney General shall ensure access to the national crime information databases (as defined in section 534 of title 28) by—

(1) the National Center for Missing and Exploited Children, to be used only within the scope of the Center's duties and responsibilities under Federal law to assist or support law enforcement agencies in administration of criminal justice functions; and

(2) governmental social service agencies with child protection responsibilities, to be used by such agencies only in investigating or responding to reports of child abuse, neglect, or exploitation.

(b) Conditions of access

The access provided under this section, and associated rules of dissemination, shall be—

(1) defined by the Attorney General; and

(2) limited to personnel of the Center or such agencies that have met all requirements set by the Attorney General, including training, certification, and background screening.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §151, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 608.)

§16962. Schools SAFE Act

(a) Short title

This section may be cited as the "Schools Safely Acquiring Faculty Excellence Act of 2006".

(b) In general

The Attorney General of the United States shall, upon request of the chief executive officer of a State, conduct fingerprint-based checks of the national crime information databases (as defined in section 534(f)(3)(A) of title 28) pursuant to a request submitted by—

(1) a child welfare agency for the purpose of—

(A) conducting a background check required under section 471(a)(20) of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 671(a)(20)] on individuals under consideration as prospective foster or adoptive parents; or

(B) an investigation relating to an incident of abuse or neglect of a minor; or

(2) a private or public elementary school, a private or public secondary school, a local educational agency, or State educational agency in that State, on individuals employed by, under consideration for employment by, or otherwise in a position in which the individual would work with or around children in the school or agency.

(c) Fingerprint-based check

Where possible, the check shall include a fingerprint-based check of State criminal history databases.

(d) Fees

The Attorney General and the States may charge any applicable fees for the checks.

(e) Protection of information

An individual having information derived as a result of a check under subsection (b) may release that information only to appropriate officers of child welfare agencies, public or private elementary or secondary schools, or educational agencies or other persons authorized by law to receive that information.

(f) Criminal penalties

An individual who knowingly exceeds the authority in subsection (b), or knowingly releases information in violation of subsection (e), shall be imprisoned not more than 10 years or fined under title 18, or both.

(g) Child welfare agency defined

In this section, the term "child welfare agency" means—

(1) the State or local agency responsible for administering the plan under part B or part E of title IV of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 620 et seq., 670 et seq.]; and

(2) any other public agency, or any other private agency under contract with the State or local agency responsible for administering the plan under part B or part E of title IV of the Social

Security Act, that is responsible for the licensing or approval of foster or adoptive parents.

(h) Definition of education terms

In this section, the terms "elementary school", "local educational agency", "secondary school", and "State educational agency" have the meanings given to those terms in section 7801 of title 20.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title I, §153, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 610; Pub. L. 114–95, title IX, §9215(b), Dec. 10, 2015, 129 Stat. 2166.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (g), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Parts B and E of title IV of the Act are classified generally to part B (§620 et seq.) and part E (§670 et seq.), respectively, of subchapter IV of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 153 of Pub. L. 109–248. Subsec. (i) of section 153 of Pub. L. 109–248 amended section 534 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 114–95 made technical amendment to reference in original act which appears in text as reference to section 7801 of title 20.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2015 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 114–95 effective Dec. 10, 2015, except with respect to certain noncompetitive programs and competitive programs, see section 5 of Pub. L. 114–95, set out as a note under section 6301 of Title 20, Education.

SUBCHAPTER II—CIVIL COMMITMENT OF DANGEROUS SEX OFFENDERS

§16971. Jimmy Ryce State civil commitment programs for sexually dangerous persons

(a) Grants authorized

Except as provided in subsection (b), the Attorney General shall make grants to jurisdictions for the purpose of establishing, enhancing, or operating effective civil commitment programs for sexually dangerous persons.

(b) Limitation

The Attorney General shall not make any grant under this section for the purpose of establishing, enhancing, or operating any transitional housing for a sexually dangerous person in or near a location where minors or other vulnerable persons are likely to come into contact with that person.

(c) Eligibility

(1) In general

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, a jurisdiction shall, before the expiration of the compliance period—

(A) have established a civil commitment program for sexually dangerous persons that is consistent with guidelines issued by the Attorney General; or

(B) submit a plan for the establishment of such a program.

(2) Compliance period

The compliance period referred to in paragraph (1) expires on the date that is 2 years after July

27, 2006. However, the Attorney General may, on a case-by-case basis, extend the compliance period that applies to a jurisdiction if the Attorney General considers such an extension to be appropriate.

(3) Release notice

(A) Each civil commitment program for which funding is required under this section shall require the issuance of timely notice to a State official responsible for considering whether to pursue civil commitment proceedings upon the impending release of any person incarcerated by the State who—

(i) has been convicted of a sexually violent offense; or

(ii) has been deemed by the State to be at high risk for recommitting any sexual offense against a minor.

(B) The program shall further require that upon receiving notice under subparagraph (A), the State official shall consider whether or not to pursue a civil commitment proceeding, or any equivalent proceeding required under State law.

(d) Attorney General reports

Not later than January 31 of each year, beginning with 2008, the Attorney General shall submit to the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives a report on the progress of jurisdictions in implementing this section and the rate of sexually violent offenses for each jurisdiction.

(e) Definitions

As used in this section:

(1) The term "civil commitment program" means a program that involves—

(A) secure civil confinement, including appropriate control, care, and treatment during such confinement; and

(B) appropriate supervision, care, and treatment for individuals released following such confinement.

(2) The term "sexually dangerous person" means a person suffering from a serious mental illness, abnormality, or disorder, as a result of which the individual would have serious difficulty in refraining from sexually violent conduct or child molestation.

(3) The term "jurisdiction" has the meaning given such term in section 16911 of this title.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $10,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title III, §301, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 617.)

SUBCHAPTER III—GRANTS AND OTHER PROVISIONS

§16981. Pilot program for monitoring sexual offenders

(a) Sex offender monitoring program

(1) Grants authorized

(A) In general

The Attorney General is authorized to award grants (referred to as "Jessica Lunsford and Sarah Lunde Grants") to States, local governments, and Indian tribal governments to assist in—

(i) carrying out programs to outfit sex offenders with electronic monitoring units; and

(ii) the employment of law enforcement officials necessary to carry out such programs.

(B) Duration

The Attorney General shall award grants under this section for a period not to exceed 3 years.

(C) Minimum standards

The electronic monitoring units used in the pilot program shall at a minimum—

(i) provide a tracking device for each offender that contains a central processing unit with global positioning system; and

(ii) permit continuous monitoring of offenders 24 hours a day.

(2) Application

(A) In general

Each State, local government, or Indian tribal government desiring a grant under this section shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such information as the Attorney General may reasonably require.

(B) Contents

Each application submitted pursuant to subparagraph (A) shall—

(i) describe the activities for which assistance under this section is sought; and

(ii) provide such additional assurances as the Attorney General determines to be essential to ensure compliance with the requirements of this section.

(b) Innovation

In making grants under this section, the Attorney General shall ensure that different approaches to monitoring are funded to allow an assessment of effectiveness.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

(1) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated $5,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2007 through 2009 to carry out this section.

(2) Report

Not later than September 1, 2010, the Attorney General shall report to Congress—

(A) assessing the effectiveness and value of this section;

(B) comparing the cost effectiveness of the electronic monitoring to reduce sex offenses compared to other alternatives; and

(C) making recommendations for continuing funding and the appropriate levels for such funding.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §621, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 633; Pub. L. 110–400, §4(a), Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4227.)

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsec. (a)(1)(C). Pub. L. 110–400, §4(a), amended subpar. (C) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (C) set minimum standards for electronic monitoring units used in the pilot program.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 110–400, §4(b), Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4228, provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall apply to grants provided on or after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 13, 2008]."

§16982. Assistance for prosecution of cases cleared through use of DNA backlog clearance funds

(a) In general

The Attorney General may make grants to train and employ personnel to help prosecute cases cleared through use of funds provided for DNA backlog elimination.

(b) Authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2011 to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §624, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 636.)

§16983. Grants to combat sexual abuse of children

(a) In general

The Bureau of Justice Assistance is authorized to make grants under this section—

(1) to any law enforcement agency that serves a jurisdiction with 50,000 or more residents; and

(2) to any law enforcement agency that serves a jurisdiction with fewer than 50,000 residents, upon a showing of need.

(b) Use of grant amounts

Grants under this section may be used by the law enforcement agency to—

(1) hire additional law enforcement personnel or train existing staff to combat the sexual abuse of children through community education and outreach, investigation of complaints, enforcement of laws relating to sex offender registries, and management of released sex offenders;

(2) investigate the use of the Internet to facilitate the sexual abuse of children; and

(3) purchase computer hardware and software necessary to investigate sexual abuse of children over the Internet, access local, State, and Federal databases needed to apprehend sex offenders, and facilitate the creation and enforcement of sex offender registries.

(c) Criteria

The Attorney General shall give priority to law enforcement agencies making a showing of need.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary for fiscal years 2007 through 2009 to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §625, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 636.)

§16984. Grants for fingerprinting programs for children

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall establish and implement a program under which the Attorney General may make grants to States, units of local government, and Indian tribal governments in accordance with this section.

(b) Use of grant amounts

A grant made to a State, unit of local government, or Indian tribal government under subsection (a) shall be distributed to law enforcement agencies within the jurisdiction of such State, unit, or tribal government to be used for any of the following activities:

(1) To establish a voluntary fingerprinting program for children, which may include the taking of palm prints of children.

(2) To hire additional law enforcement personnel, or train existing law enforcement personnel, to take fingerprints of children.

(3) To provide information within the community involved about the existence of such a fingerprinting program.

(4) To provide for computer hardware, computer software, or other materials necessary to carry out such a fingerprinting program.

(c) Limitation

Fingerprints of a child derived from a program funded under this section—

(1) may be released only to a parent or guardian of the child; and

(2) may not be copied or retained by any Federal, State, local, or tribal law enforcement officer unless written permission is given by the parent or guardian.

(d) Criminal penalty

Any person who uses the fingerprints of a child derived from a program funded under this section for any purpose other than the purpose described in subsection (c)(1) shall be subject to imprisonment for not more than 1 year, a fine under title 18, or both.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated $20,000,000 to carry out this section for the 5-year period beginning on the first day of fiscal year 2007.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §627, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 637.)

§16985. Grants for Rape, Abuse & Incest National Network

(a) Findings

Congress finds as follows:

(1) More than 200,000 Americans each year are victims of sexual assault, according to the Department of Justice.

(2) In 2004, 1 American was sexually assaulted every 2.5 minutes.

(3) One of every 6 women, and 1 of every 133 men, in America has been the victim of a completed or attempted rape, according to the Department of Justice.

(4) The Federal Bureau of Investigation ranks rape second in the hierarchy of violent crimes for its Uniform Crime Reports, trailing only murder.

(5) The Federal Government, through the Victims of Crime Act [42 U.S.C. 10601 et seq.], Violence Against Women Act, and other laws, has long played a role in providing services to sexual assault victims and in seeking policies to increase the number of rapists brought to justice.

(6) Research suggests that sexual assault victims who receive counseling support are more likely to report their attack to the police and to participate in the prosecution of the offender.

(7) Due in part to the combined efforts of law enforcement officials at the local, State, and Federal level, as well as the efforts of the Rape, Abuse & Incest National Network (RAINN) and its affiliated rape crisis centers across the United States, sexual violence in America has fallen by more than half since 1994.

(8) RAINN, a 501(c)(3) nonprofit corporation headquartered in the District of Columbia, has since 1994 provided help to victims of sexual assault and educated the public about sexual assault prevention, prosecution, and recovery.

(9) RAINN established and continues to operate the National Sexual Assault Hotline, a free, confidential telephone hotline that provides help, 24 hours a day, to victims nationally.

(10) More than 1,100 local rape crisis centers in the 50 States and the District of Columbia partner with RAINN and are members of the National Sexual Assault Hotline network (which has helped more than 970,000 people since its inception in 1994).

(11) To better serve victims of sexual assault, 80 percent of whom are under age 30 and 44 percent of whom are under age 18, RAINN will soon launch the National Sexual Assault Online Hotline, the web's first secure hotline service offering live help 24 hours a day.

(12) Congress and the Department of Justice have given RAINN funding to conduct its crucial work.

(13) RAINN is a national model of public/private partnership, raising private sector funds to match congressional appropriations and receiving extensive private in-kind support, including advanced technology provided by the communications and technology industries to launch the National Sexual Assault Hotline and the National Sexual Assault Online Hotline.

(14) Worth magazine selected RAINN as one of "America's 100 Best Charities", in recognition of the organization's "efficiency and effectiveness.".[1]

(15) In fiscal year 2005, RAINN spent more than 91 cents of every dollar received directly on program services.

(16) The demand for RAINN's services is growing dramatically, as evidenced by the fact that, in 2005, the National Sexual Assault Hotline helped 137,039 people, an all-time record.

(17) The programs sponsored by RAINN and its local affiliates have contributed to the increase in the percentage of victims who report their rape to law enforcement.

(18) According to a recent poll, 92 percent of American women said that fighting sexual and domestic violence should be a top public policy priority (a higher percentage than chose health care, child care, or any other issue).

(19) Authorizing Federal funds for RAINN's national programs would promote continued progress with this interstate problem and would make a significant difference in the prosecution of rapists and the overall incidence of sexual violence.

(b) Duties and functions of the Administrator

(1) Description of activities

The Administrator shall—

(A) issue such rules as the Administrator considers necessary or appropriate to carry out this section;

(B) make such arrangements as may be necessary and appropriate to facilitate effective coordination among all Federally funded programs relating to victims of sexual assault; and

(C) provide adequate staff and agency resources which are necessary to properly carry out the responsibilities pursuant to this section.

(2) Annual grant to Rape, Abuse & Incest National Network

The Administrator shall annually make a grant to RAINN, which shall be used for the performance of the organization's national programs, which may include—

(A) operation of the National Sexual Assault Hotline, a 24-hour toll-free telephone line by which individuals may receive help and information from trained volunteers;

(B) operation of the National Sexual Assault Online Hotline, a 24-hour free online service by which individuals may receive help and information from trained volunteers;

(C) education of the media, the general public, and populations at risk of sexual assault about the incidence of sexual violence and sexual violence prevention, prosecution, and recovery;

(D) dissemination, on a national basis, of information relating to innovative and model programs, services, laws, legislation, and policies that benefit victims of sexual assault; and

(E) provision of technical assistance to law enforcement agencies, State and local governments, the criminal justice system, public and private nonprofit agencies, and individuals in the investigation and prosecution of cases involving victims of sexual assault.

(c) Definitions

For the purposes of this section:

(1) Administrator

The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the Office of Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention.

(2) RAINN

The term "RAINN" means the Rape, Abuse & Incest National Network, a 501(c)(3) nonprofit corporation headquartered in the District of Columbia.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Administrator to carry out this section, $3,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2007 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §628, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 638.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Victims of Crime Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(5), probably means the Victims of Crime Act of 1984, which is chapter XIV of title II of Pub. L. 98–473, Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 2170, and which is classified principally to chapter 112 (§10601 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 10601 of this title and Tables.

The Violence Against Women Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(5), probably means the Violence Against Women Act of 1994, which is title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 1902. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13701 of this title and Tables.

[1] *So in original. The second period probably should not appear.*

§16986. Children's safety online awareness campaigns

(a) Awareness campaign for children's safety online

(1) In general

The Attorney General, in consultation with the National Center for Missing and Exploited Children, is authorized to develop and carry out a public awareness campaign to demonstrate, explain, and encourage children, parents, and community leaders to better protect children when such children are on the Internet.

(2) Required components

The public awareness campaign described under paragraph (1) shall include components that compliment [1] and reinforce the campaign message in a variety of media, including the Internet, television, radio, and billboards.

(b) Awareness campaign regarding the accessibility and utilization of sex offender registries

The Attorney General, in consultation with the National Center for Missing and Exploited Children, is authorized to develop and carry out a public awareness campaign to demonstrate, explain, and encourage parents and community leaders to better access and utilize the Federal and State sex offender registries.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section such sums as are necessary for fiscal years 2007 through 2011.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §629, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 640.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "complement".*

§16987. Grants for online child safety programs

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall, subject to the availability of appropriations, make grants to States, units of local government, and nonprofit organizations for the purposes of establishing and maintaining programs with respect to improving and educating children and parents in the best ways for children to be safe when on the Internet.

(b) Definition of State

For purposes of this section, the term "State" means any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, and the Northern Mariana Islands.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section such sums as are necessary for fiscal years 2007 through 2011.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §630, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 640.)

§16988. Jessica Lunsford Address Verification Grant Program

(a) Establishment

There is established the Jessica Lunsford Address Verification Grant Program (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Program").

(b) Grants authorized

Under the Program, the Attorney General is authorized to award grants to State,[1] local governments, and Indian tribal governments to assist in carrying out programs requiring an appropriate official to verify, at appropriate intervals, the residence of all or some registered sex offenders.

(c) Application

(1) In general

Each State or local government seeking a grant under this section shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such information as the Attorney General may reasonably require.

(2) Contents

Each application submitted pursuant to paragraph (1) shall—

(A) describe the activities for which assistance under this section is sought; and

(B) provide such additional assurances as the Attorney General determines to be essential to ensure compliance with the requirements of this section.

(d) Innovation

In making grants under this section, the Attorney General shall ensure that different approaches to address verification are funded to allow an assessment of effectiveness.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

(1) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated for each of the fiscal years 2007 through 2009 such sums as may be necessary to carry out this section.

(2) Report

Not later than April 1, 2009, the Attorney General shall report to Congress—

(A) assessing the effectiveness and value of this section;

(B) comparing the cost effectiveness of address verification to reduce sex offenses compared to other alternatives; and

(C) making recommendations for continuing funding and the appropriate levels for such funding.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §631, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 641.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "States,".*

§16989. Fugitive Safe Surrender

(a) Findings

Congress finds the following:

(1) Fugitive Safe Surrender is a program of the United States Marshals Service, in partnership with public, private, and faith-based organizations, which temporarily transforms a church into a courthouse, so fugitives can turn themselves in, in an atmosphere where they feel more comfortable to do so, and have nonviolent cases adjudicated immediately.

(2) In the 4-day pilot program in Cleveland, Ohio, over 800 fugitives turned themselves in. By contrast, a successful Fugitive Task Force sweep, conducted for 3 days after Fugitive Safe Surrender, resulted in the arrest of 65 individuals.

(3) Fugitive Safe Surrender is safer for defendants, law enforcement, and innocent bystanders than needing to conduct a sweep.

(4) Based upon the success of the pilot program, Fugitive Safe Surrender should be expanded to other cities throughout the United States.

(b) Establishment

The United States Marshals Service shall establish, direct, and coordinate a program (to be known as the "Fugitive Safe Surrender Program"), under which the United States Marshals Service shall apprehend Federal, State, and local fugitives in a safe, secure, and peaceful manner to be coordinated with law enforcement and community leaders in designated cities throughout the United States.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the United States Marshals Service to carry out this section—

(1) $3,000,000 for fiscal year 2007;

(2) $5,000,000 for fiscal year 2008; and

(3) $8,000,000 for fiscal year 2009.

(d) Other existing applicable law

Nothing in this section shall be construed to limit any existing authority under any other provision of Federal or State law for law enforcement agencies to locate or apprehend fugitives through task forces or any other means.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §632, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 641.)

§16990. National registry of substantiated cases of child abuse

(a) In general

The Secretary of Health and Human Services, in consultation with the Attorney General, shall create a national registry of substantiated cases of child abuse or neglect.

(b) Information

(1) Collection

The information in the registry described in subsection (a) shall be supplied by States and Indian tribes, or, at the option of a State, by political subdivisions of such State, to the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

(2) Type of information

The registry described in subsection (a) shall collect in a central electronic registry information on persons reported to a State, Indian tribe, or political subdivision of a State as perpetrators of a substantiated case of child abuse or neglect.

(c) Scope of information

(1) In general

(A) Treatment of reports

The information to be provided to the Secretary of Health and Human Services under this section shall relate to substantiated reports of child abuse or neglect.

(B) Exception

If a State, Indian tribe, or political subdivision of a State has an electronic register of cases of child abuse or neglect equivalent to the registry established under this section that it maintains pursuant to a requirement or authorization under any other provision of law, the information provided to the Secretary of Health and Human Services under this section shall be coextensive with that in such register.

(2) Form

Information provided to the Secretary of Health and Human Services under this section—

(A) shall be in a standardized electronic form determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services; and

(B) shall contain case-specific identifying information that is limited to the name of the perpetrator and the nature of the substantiated case of child abuse or neglect, and that complies with clauses (viii) and (ix) of section 5106a(b)(2)(A) [1] of this title.

(d) Construction

This section shall not be construed to require a State, Indian tribe, or political subdivision of a State to modify—

(1) an equivalent register of cases of child abuse or neglect that it maintains pursuant to a requirement or authorization under any other provision of law; or

(2) any other record relating to child abuse or neglect, regardless of whether the report of abuse or neglect was substantiated, unsubstantiated, or determined to be unfounded.

(e) Accessibility

Information contained in the national registry shall only be accessible to any Federal, State, Indian tribe, or local government entity, or any agent of such entities, that has a need for such information in order to carry out its responsibilities under law to protect children from child abuse and neglect.

(f) Dissemination

The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall establish standards for the dissemination of information in the national registry of substantiated cases of child abuse or neglect. Such standards shall comply with clauses (viii) and (ix) of section 5106a(b)(2)(A) [1] of this title.

(g) Study

(1) In general

The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall conduct a study on the feasibility of establishing data collection standards for a national child abuse and neglect registry with recommendations and findings concerning—

(A) costs and benefits of such data collection standards;

(B) data collection standards currently employed by each State, Indian tribe, or political subdivision of a State;

(C) data collection standards that should be considered to establish a model of promising practices; and

(D) a due process procedure for a national registry.

(2) Report

Not later than 1 year after July 27, 2006, the Secretary of Homeland Security shall submit to the Committees on the Judiciary in the House of Representatives and the United States Senate and the Senate Committee on Health, Education, Labor and Pensions and the House Committee on Education and the Workforce a report containing the recommendations and findings of the study on data collection standards for a national child abuse registry authorized under this subsection.

(3) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated $500,000 for the period of fiscal years 2006 and 2007 to carry out the study required by this subsection.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §633, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 642.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 5106a(b)(2)(A) of this title, referred to in subsecs. (c)(2)(B) and (f), was redesignated section 5106a(b)(2)(B) of this title by Pub. L. 111–320, title I, §115(c)(2)(A), Dec. 20, 2010, 124 Stat. 3469.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§16991. Annual report on enforcement of registration requirements

Not later than July 1 of each year, the Attorney General shall submit a report to Congress describing—

(1) the use by the Department of Justice of the United States Marshals Service to assist jurisdictions in locating and apprehending sex offenders who fail to comply with sex offender registration requirements, as authorized by this chapter;

(2) the use of section 2250 of title 18 to punish offenders for failure to register;

(3) a detailed explanation of each jurisdiction's compliance with subchapter I of this chapter;

(4) a detailed description of Justice Department efforts to ensure compliance and any funding reductions, the basis for any decision to reduce funding or not to reduce funding under section 16925 of this title; and

(5) the denial or grant of any extensions to comply with subchapter I of this chapter, and the reasons for such denial or grant.

(Pub. L. 109–248, title VI, §635, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 644.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in par. (1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 587, known as the Adam Walsh Child Protection and Safety Act of 2006. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

Subchapter I of this chapter, referred to in pars. (3) and (5), was in the original "the Sex Offender Registration and Notification Act", meaning title I of Pub. L. 109–248, July 27, 2006, 120 Stat. 590. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 16901 of this title and Tables.

CHAPTER 152—ENERGY INDEPENDENCE AND SECURITY

Sec.

§17001. Definitions

In this Act:

(1) Department

The term "Department" means the Department of Energy.

(2) Institution of higher education

The term "institution of higher education" has the meaning given the term in section 1001(a) of title 20.

(3) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Energy.

(Pub. L. 110–140, §2, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1498.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1492, known as the Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007, which enacted this chapter and enacted and amended numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note below and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Chapter effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as a note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

SHORT TITLE OF 2015 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 114–11, §1(a), Apr. 30, 2015, 129 Stat. 182, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 17062, 17063, 17084, and 17085 of this title, amending sections 6295, 6302 to 6304, and 17091 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under this section] may be cited as the 'Energy Efficiency Improvement Act of 2015'."

Pub. L. 114–11, title I, §101, Apr. 30, 2015, 129 Stat. 182, provided that: "This title [enacting sections 17062, 17084, and 17085 of this title] may be cited as the 'Better Buildings Act of 2015'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 110–140, §1(a), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1492, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007'."

Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §601, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1674, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle A (§§601–607) of title VI of Pub. L. 110–140, enacting part A (§17171 et seq.) of subchapter V of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Solar Energy Research and Advancement Act of 2007'."

Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §611, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1678, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle B (§§611–625) of title VI of Pub. L. 110–140, enacting part B (§17191 et seq.) of subchapter V of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Advanced Geothermal Energy Research and Development Act of 2007'."

Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §631, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1686, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle C (§§631–636) of title VI of Pub. L. 110–140, enacting part C (§17211 et seq.) of subchapter V of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Marine and Hydrokinetic Renewable Energy Research and Development Act'."

Pub. L. 110–140, title VII, §701, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1704, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle A (§§701–708) of title VII of Pub. L. 110–140, enacting part A (§17251 et seq.) of subchapter VI of this chapter and amending section 16293 of this title] may be cited as the 'Department of Energy Carbon Capture and Sequestration Research, Development, and Demonstration Act of 2007'."

§17002. Relationship to other law

Except to the extent expressly provided in this Act or an amendment made by this Act, nothing in this Act or an amendment made by this Act supersedes, limits the authority provided or responsibility conferred by, or authorizes any violation of any provision of law (including a regulation), including any energy or environmental law or regulation.

(Pub. L. 110–140, §3, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1498.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1492, known as the Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007, which enacted this chapter and enacted and amended numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out

under section 17001 of this title and Tables.

SUBCHAPTER I—IMPROVED VEHICLE TECHNOLOGY

§17011. Transportation electrification

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Administrator

The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency.

(2) Battery

The term "battery" means an electrochemical energy storage system powered directly by electrical current.

(3) Electric transportation technology

The term "electric transportation technology" means—

(A) technology used in vehicles that use an electric motor for all or part of the motive power of the vehicles, including battery electric, hybrid electric, plug-in hybrid electric, fuel cell, and plug-in fuel cell vehicles, or rail transportation; or

(B) equipment relating to transportation or mobile sources of air pollution that use an electric motor to replace an internal combustion engine for all or part of the work of the equipment, including—

(i) corded electric equipment linked to transportation or mobile sources of air pollution; and

(ii) electrification technologies at airports, ports, truck stops, and material-handling facilities.

(4) Nonroad vehicle

The term "nonroad vehicle" means a vehicle—

(A) powered—

(i) by a nonroad engine, as that term is defined in section 7550 of this title; or

(ii) fully or partially by an electric motor powered by a fuel cell, a battery, or an off-board source of electricity; and

(B) that is not a motor vehicle or a vehicle used solely for competition.

(5) Plug-in electric drive vehicle

The term "plug-in electric drive vehicle" means a vehicle that—

(A) draws motive power from a battery with a capacity of at least 4 kilowatt-hours;

(B) can be recharged from an external source of electricity for motive power; and

(C) is a light-, medium-, or heavy-duty motor vehicle or nonroad vehicle (as those terms are defined in section 7550 of this title).

(6) Qualified electric transportation project

The term "qualified electric transportation project" means an electric transportation technology project that would significantly reduce emissions of criteria pollutants, greenhouse gas emissions, and petroleum, including—

(A) shipside or shoreside electrification for vessels;

(B) truck-stop electrification;

(C) electric truck refrigeration units;

(D) battery-powered auxiliary power units for trucks;

(E) electric airport ground support equipment;
(F) electric material and cargo handling equipment;
(G) electric or dual-mode electric rail;
(H) any distribution upgrades needed to supply electricity to the project; and
(I) any ancillary infrastructure, including panel upgrades, battery chargers, in-situ transformers, and trenching.

(b) Plug-in electric drive vehicle program

(1) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a competitive program to provide grants on a cost-shared basis to State governments, local governments, metropolitan transportation authorities, air pollution control districts, private or nonprofit entities, or combinations of those governments, authorities, districts, and entities, to carry out one or more projects to encourage the use of plug-in electric drive vehicles or other emerging electric vehicle technologies, as determined by the Secretary.

(2) Administration

The Secretary shall, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation and the Administrator, establish requirements for applications for grants under this section, including reporting of data to be summarized for dissemination to grantees and the public, including safety, vehicle, and component performance, and vehicle and component life cycle costs.

(3) Priority

In making awards under this subsection, the Secretary shall—
(A) give priority consideration to applications that—
(i) encourage early widespread use of vehicles described in paragraph (1); and
(ii) are likely to make a significant contribution to the advancement of the production of the vehicles in the United States; and

(B) ensure, to the maximum extent practicable, that the program established under this subsection includes a variety of applications, manufacturers, and end-uses.

(4) Reporting

The Secretary shall require a grant recipient under this subsection to submit to the Secretary, on an annual basis, data relating to safety, vehicle performance, life cycle costs, and emissions of vehicles demonstrated under the grant, including emissions of greenhouse gases.

(5) Cost sharing

Section 16352 of this title shall apply to a grant made under this subsection.

(6) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subsection $90,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2012, of which not less than 1/3 of the total amount appropriated shall be available each fiscal year to make grants to local and municipal governments.

(c) Near-term transportation sector electrification program

(1) In general

Not later than 1 year after December 19, 2007, the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation and the Administrator, shall establish a program to provide grants for the conduct of qualified electric transportation projects.

(2) Priority

In providing grants under this subsection, the Secretary shall give priority to large-scale projects and large-scale aggregators of projects.

(3) Cost sharing

Section 16352 of this title shall apply to a grant made under this subsection.

(4) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subsection $95,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2013.

(d) Education program

(1) In general

The Secretary shall develop a nationwide electric drive transportation technology education program under which the Secretary shall provide—

(A) teaching materials to secondary schools and high schools; and

(B) assistance for programs relating to electric drive system and component engineering to institutions of higher education.

(2) Electric vehicle competition

The program established under paragraph (1) shall include a plug-in hybrid electric vehicle competition for institutions of higher education, which shall be known as the "Dr. Andrew Frank Plug-In Electric Vehicle Competition".

(3) Engineers

In carrying out the program established under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall provide financial assistance to institutions of higher education to create new, or support existing, degree programs to ensure the availability of trained electrical and mechanical engineers with the skills necessary for the advancement of—

(A) plug-in electric drive vehicles; and

(B) other forms of electric drive transportation technology vehicles.

(4) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary to carry out this subsection.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title I, §131, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1508.)

§17012. Advanced battery loan guarantee program

(a) Establishment of program

The Secretary shall establish a program to provide guarantees of loans by private institutions for the construction of facilities for the manufacture of advanced vehicle batteries and battery systems that are developed and produced in the United States, including advanced lithium ion batteries and hybrid electrical system and component manufacturers and software designers.

(b) Requirements

The Secretary may provide a loan guarantee under subsection (a) to an applicant if—

(1) without a loan guarantee, credit is not available to the applicant under reasonable terms or conditions sufficient to finance the construction of a facility described in subsection (a);

(2) the prospective earning power of the applicant and the character and value of the security pledged provide a reasonable assurance of repayment of the loan to be guaranteed in accordance with the terms of the loan; and

(3) the loan bears interest at a rate determined by the Secretary to be reasonable, taking into account the current average yield on outstanding obligations of the United States with remaining periods of maturity comparable to the maturity of the loan.

(c) Criteria

In selecting recipients of loan guarantees from among applicants, the Secretary shall give preference to proposals that—

(1) meet all applicable Federal and State permitting requirements;

(2) are most likely to be successful; and

(3) are located in local markets that have the greatest need for the facility.

(d) Maturity

A loan guaranteed under subsection (a) shall have a maturity of not more than 20 years.

(e) Terms and conditions

The loan agreement for a loan guaranteed under subsection (a) shall provide that no provision of the loan agreement may be amended or waived without the consent of the Secretary.

(f) Assurance of repayment

The Secretary shall require that an applicant for a loan guarantee under subsection (a) provide an assurance of repayment in the form of a performance bond, insurance, collateral, or other means acceptable to the Secretary in an amount equal to not less than 20 percent of the amount of the loan.

(g) Guarantee fee

The recipient of a loan guarantee under subsection (a) shall pay the Secretary an amount determined by the Secretary to be sufficient to cover the administrative costs of the Secretary relating to the loan guarantee.

(h) Full faith and credit

The full faith and credit of the United States is pledged to the payment of all guarantees made under this section. Any such guarantee made by the Secretary shall be conclusive evidence of the eligibility of the loan for the guarantee with respect to principal and interest. The validity of the guarantee shall be incontestable in the hands of a holder of the guaranteed loan.

(i) Reports

Until each guaranteed loan under this section has been repaid in full, the Secretary shall annually submit to Congress a report on the activities of the Secretary under this section.

(j) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section.

(k) Termination of authority

The authority of the Secretary to issue a loan guarantee under subsection (a) terminates on the date that is 10 years after December 19, 2007.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title I, §135, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1513.)

§17013. Advanced technology vehicles manufacturing incentive program

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Advanced technology vehicle

The term "advanced technology vehicle" means an ultra efficient vehicle or a light duty vehicle that meets—

(A) the Bin 5 Tier II emission standard established in regulations issued by the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency under section 202(i) of the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7521(i)), or a lower-numbered Bin emission standard;

(B) any new emission standard in effect for fine particulate matter prescribed by the Administrator under that Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.); and

(C) at least 125 percent of the average base year combined fuel economy for vehicles with substantially similar attributes.

(2) Combined fuel economy

The term "combined fuel economy" means—

(A) the combined city/highway miles per gallon values, as reported in accordance with

section 32904 of title 49; and

(B) in the case of an electric drive vehicle with the ability to recharge from an off-board source, the reported mileage, as determined in a manner consistent with the Society of Automotive Engineers recommended practice for that configuration or a similar practice recommended by the Secretary.

(3) Engineering integration costs

The term "engineering integration costs" includes the cost of engineering tasks relating to—

(A) incorporating qualifying components into the design of advanced technology vehicles; and

(B) designing tooling and equipment and developing manufacturing processes and material suppliers for production facilities that produce qualifying components or advanced technology vehicles.

(4) Qualifying components

The term "qualifying components" means components that the Secretary determines to be—

(A) designed for advanced technology vehicles; and

(B) installed for the purpose of meeting the performance requirements of advanced technology vehicles.

(5) Ultra efficient vehicle

The term "ultra efficient vehicle" means a fully closed compartment vehicle designed to carry at least 2 adult passengers that achieves—

(A) at least 75 miles per gallon while operating on gasoline or diesel fuel;

(B) at least 75 miles per gallon equivalent while operating as a hybrid electric-gasoline or electric-diesel vehicle; or

(C) at least 75 miles per gallon equivalent while operating as a fully electric vehicle.

(b) Advanced vehicles manufacturing facility

The Secretary shall provide facility funding awards under this section to automobile manufacturers, ultra efficient vehicle manufacturers, and component suppliers to pay not more than 30 percent of the cost of—

(1) reequipping, expanding, or establishing a manufacturing facility in the United States to produce—

(A) qualifying advanced technology vehicles;

(B) qualifying components; or

(C) ultra efficient vehicles; and

(2) engineering integration performed in the United States of qualifying vehicles, ultra efficient vehicles, and qualifying components.

(c) Period of availability

An award under subsection (b) shall apply to—

(1) facilities and equipment placed in service before December 30, 2020; and

(2) engineering integration costs incurred during the period beginning on December 19, 2007, and ending on December 30, 2020.

(d) Direct loan program

(1) In general

Not later than 1 year after December 19, 2007, and subject to the availability of appropriated funds, the Secretary shall carry out a program to provide a total of not more than $25,000,000,000 in loans to eligible individuals and entities (as determined by the Secretary) for the costs of activities described in subsection (b). The loans shall be made through the Federal Financing Bank, with the full faith and credit of the United States Government on the principal and interest. The full credit subsidy shall be paid by the Secretary using appropriated funds.

(2) Application

An applicant for a loan under this subsection shall submit to the Secretary an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary may require, including a written assurance that—

(A) all laborers and mechanics employed by contractors or subcontractors during construction, alteration, or repair that is financed, in whole or in part, by a loan under this section shall be paid wages at rates not less than those prevailing on similar construction in the locality, as determined by the Secretary of Labor in accordance with sections 3141–3144, 3146, and 3147 of title 40; and

(B) the Secretary of Labor shall, with respect to the labor standards described in this paragraph, have the authority and functions set forth in Reorganization Plan Numbered 14 of 1950 (5 U.S.C. App.) and section 3145 of title 40.

(3) Selection of eligible projects

The Secretary shall select eligible projects to receive loans under this subsection in cases in which, as determined by the Secretary, the award recipient—

(A) is financially viable without the receipt of additional Federal funding associated with the proposed project;

(B) will provide sufficient information to the Secretary for the Secretary to ensure that the qualified investment is expended efficiently and effectively; and

(C) has met such other criteria as may be established and published by the Secretary.

(4) Rates, terms, and repayment of loans

A loan provided under this subsection—

(A) shall have an interest rate that, as of the date on which the loan is made, is equal to the cost of funds to the Department of the Treasury for obligations of comparable maturity;

(B) shall have a term equal to the lesser of—

(i) the projected life, in years, of the eligible project to be carried out using funds from the loan, as determined by the Secretary; and [1]

(ii) 25 years;

(C) may be subject to a deferral in repayment for not more than 5 years after the date on which the eligible project carried out using funds from the loan first begins operations, as determined by the Secretary; and

(D) shall be made by the Federal Financing Bank.

(e) Improvement

Not later than 60 days after September 30, 2008, the Secretary shall promulgate an interim final rule establishing regulations that the Secretary deems necessary to administer this section and any loans made by the Secretary pursuant to this section. Such interim final rule shall require that, in order for an automobile manufacturer to be eligible for an award or loan under this section during a particular year, the adjusted average fuel economy of the manufacturer for light duty vehicles produced by the manufacturer during the most recent year for which data are available shall be not less than the average fuel economy for all light duty vehicles of the manufacturer for model year 2005. In order to determine fuel economy baselines for eligibility of a new manufacturer or a manufacturer that has not produced previously produced equivalent vehicles, the Secretary may substitute industry averages.

(f) Fees

Administrative costs shall be no more than $100,000 or 10 basis point [2] of the loan.

(g) Priority

The Secretary shall, in making awards or loans to those manufacturers that have existing facilities, give priority to those facilities that are oldest or have been in existence for at least 20 years or are utilized primarily for the manufacture of ultra efficient vehicles. Such facilities can currently be

sitting idle.

(h) Set aside for small automobile manufacturers and component suppliers

(1) Definition of covered firm

In this subsection, the term "covered firm" means a firm that—

(A) employs less than 500 individuals; and

(B) manufactures ultra efficient vehicles, automobiles, or components of automobiles.

(2) Set aside

Of the amount of funds that are used to provide awards for each fiscal year under subsection (b), the Secretary shall use not less than 10 percent to provide awards to covered firms or consortia led by a covered firm.

(i) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(j) Appointment and pay of personnel

(1) The Secretary may use direct hiring authority pursuant to section 3304(a)(3) of title 5 to appoint such professional and administrative personnel as the Secretary deems necessary to the discharge of the Secretary's functions under this section.

(2) The rate of pay for a person appointed pursuant to paragraph (1) shall not exceed the maximum rate payable for GS-15 of the General Schedule under chapter 53 such [3] title 5.

(3) The Secretary may retain such consultants as the Secretary deems necessary to the discharge of the functions required by this section, pursuant to section 1901 of title 41.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title I, §136, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1514; Pub. L. 110–329, div. A, §129(c), Sept. 30, 2008, 122 Stat. 3578; Pub. L. 111–85, title III, §312(a), Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2874.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Clean Air Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(B), is act July 14, 1955, ch. 360, 69 Stat. 322, which is classified generally to chapter 85 (§7401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7401 of this title and Tables.

Reorganization Plan Numbered 14 of 1950, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(B), is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (j)(3), "section 1901 of title 41" substituted for "section 31 of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy Act (41 U.S.C. 427)" on authority of Pub. L. 111–350, §6(c), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 3854, which Act enacted Title 41, Public Contracts.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–85, §312(a)(1)(A), inserted "an ultra efficient vehicle or" after "means" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 111–85, §312(a)(1)(B), added par. (5).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–85, §312(a)(2)(A), inserted ", ultra efficient vehicle manufacturers," after "automobile manufacturers" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(1)(C). Pub. L. 111–85, §312(a)(2)(B), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–85, §312(a)(2)(C), inserted ", ultra efficient vehicles," after "qualifying vehicles".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–85, §312(a)(3), inserted "or are utilized primarily for the manufacture of ultra efficient vehicles" after "20 years".

Subsec. (h)(1)(B). Pub. L. 111–85, §312(a)(4), substituted "ultra efficient vehicles, automobiles," for "automobiles".

2008—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 110–329, §129(c)(1), inserted at end "The loans shall be made through the Federal Financing Bank, with the full faith and credit of the United States Government on the principal and interest. The full credit subsidy shall be paid by the Secretary using appropriated funds."

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 110–329, §129(c)(2), substituted "Not later than 60 days after September 30, 2008, the

Secretary shall promulgate an interim final rule establishing regulations that the Secretary deems necessary to administer this section and any loans made by the Secretary pursuant to this section. Such interim final rule shall require that," for "The Secretary shall issue regulations that require that,".

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 110–329, §129(c)(3), added subsec. (j).

RECONSIDERATION OF PRIOR APPLICATIONS

Pub. L. 111–85, title III, §312(b), Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2875, provided that: "The Secretary of Energy shall reconsider applications for assistance under section 136 of the Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007 (42 U.S.C. 17013) that were—

"(1) timely filed under that section before January 1, 2009;

"(2) rejected on the basis that the vehicles to which the proposal related were not advanced technology vehicles; and

"(3) related to ultra efficient vehicles."

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "or".*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be "points".*

[3] *So in original. Probably should be "of such".*

SUBCHAPTER II—ENERGY SECURITY THROUGH INCREASED PRODUCTION OF BIOFUELS

PART A—RENEWABLE FUEL STANDARD

§17021. Biomass-based diesel and biodiesel labeling

(a) In general

Each retail diesel fuel pump shall be labeled in a manner that informs consumers of the percent of biomass-based diesel or biodiesel that is contained in the biomass-based diesel blend or biodiesel blend that is offered for sale, as determined by the Federal Trade Commission.

(b) Labeling requirements

Not later than 180 days after December 19, 2007, the Federal Trade Commission shall promulgate biodiesel labeling requirements as follows:

(1) Biomass-based diesel blends or biodiesel blends that contain less than or equal to 5 percent biomass-based diesel or biodiesel by volume and that meet ASTM D975 diesel specifications shall not require any additional labels.

(2) Biomass-based diesel blends or biodiesel blends that contain more than 5 percent biomass-based diesel or biodiesel by volume but not more than 20 percent by volume shall be labeled "contains biomass-based diesel or biodiesel in quantities between 5 percent and 20 percent".

(3) Biomass-based diesel or biodiesel blends that contain more than 20 percent biomass based or biodiesel by volume shall be labeled "contains more than 20 percent biomass-based diesel or biodiesel".

(c) Definitions

In this section:

(1) ASTM

The term "ASTM" means the American Society of Testing and Materials.

(2) Biomass-based diesel

The term "biomass-based diesel" means biodiesel as defined in section 13220(f) of this title.

(3) Biodiesel

The term "biodiesel" means the monoalkyl esters of long chain fatty acids derived from plant or animal matter that meet—

(A) the registration requirements for fuels and fuel additives under this section; and

(B) the requirements of ASTM standard D6751.

(4) Biomass-based diesel and biodiesel blends

The terms "biomass-based diesel blend" and "biodiesel blend" means a blend of "biomass-based diesel" or "biodiesel" fuel that is blended with petroleum-based diesel fuel.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §205, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1529.)

§17022. Grants for production of advanced biofuels

(a) In general

The Secretary of Energy shall establish a grant program to encourage the production of advanced biofuels.

(b) Requirements and priority

In making grants under this section, the Secretary—

(1) shall make awards to the proposals for advanced biofuels with the greatest reduction in lifecycle greenhouse gas emissions compared to the comparable motor vehicle fuel lifecycle emissions during calendar year 2005; and

(2) shall not make an award to a project that does not achieve at least an 80 percent reduction in such lifecycle greenhouse gas emissions.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $500,000,000 for the period of fiscal years 2008 through 2015, except that the amount authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section not appropriated as of October 2, 2013, shall be reduced by $6,000,000.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §207, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1531; Pub. L. 113–40, §10(f), Oct. 2, 2013, 127 Stat. 546.)

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 113–40 inserted ", except that the amount authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section not appropriated as of October 2, 2013, shall be reduced by $6,000,000" before period at end.

PART B—BIOFUELS RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT

§17031. Biodiesel

(a) Biodiesel study

Not later than 180 days after December 19, 2007, the Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, shall submit to Congress a report on any research and development challenges inherent in increasing the proportion of diesel fuel sold in the United States that is biodiesel.

(b) Material for the establishment of standards

The Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, in consultation with the Secretary, shall make publicly available the physical property data and characterization of biodiesel and other biofuels as appropriate.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §221, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1533.)

§17032. Grants for biofuel production research and development in certain States

(a) In general

The Secretary shall provide grants to eligible entities for research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of biofuel production technologies in States with low rates of ethanol production, including low rates of production of cellulosic biomass ethanol, as determined by the Secretary.

(b) Eligibility

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, an entity shall—

(1)(A) be an institution of higher education (as defined in section 15801 of this title), including tribally controlled colleges or universities, located in a State described in subsection (a); or

(B) be a consortium including at least 1 such institution of higher education and industry, State agencies, Indian tribal agencies, National Laboratories, or local government agencies located in the State; and

(2) have proven experience and capabilities with relevant technologies.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this section $25,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2010.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §223, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1533.)

§17033. Biofuels and biorefinery information center

(a) In general

The Secretary, in cooperation with the Secretary of Agriculture, shall establish a biofuels and biorefinery information center to make available to interested parties information on—

(1) renewable fuel feedstocks, including the varieties of fuel capable of being produced from various feedstocks;

(2) biorefinery processing techniques related to various renewable fuel feedstocks;

(3) the distribution, blending, storage, and retail dispensing infrastructure necessary for the transport and use of renewable fuels;

(4) Federal and State laws and incentives related to renewable fuel production and use;

(5) renewable fuel research and development advancements;

(6) renewable fuel development and biorefinery processes and technologies;

(7) renewable fuel resources, including information on programs and incentives for renewable fuels;

(8) renewable fuel producers;

(9) renewable fuel users; and

(10) potential renewable fuel users.

(b) Administration

In administering the biofuels and biorefinery information center, the Secretary shall—

(1) continually update information provided by the center;

(2) make information available relating to processes and technologies for renewable fuel production;

(3) make information available to interested parties on the process for establishing a biorefinery; and

(4) make information and assistance provided by the center available through a toll-free telephone number and website.

(c) Coordination and nonduplication

To the maximum extent practicable, the Secretary shall ensure that the activities under this section are coordinated with, and do not duplicate the efforts of, centers at other government agencies.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §229, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1535.)

§17034. Cellulosic ethanol and biofuels research

(a) Definition of eligible entity

In this section, the term "eligible entity" means—

(1) an 1890 Institution (as defined in section 7601 of title 7);

(2) a part B institution (as defined in section 1061 of title 20) (commonly referred to as "Historically Black Colleges and Universities");

(3) a tribal college or university (as defined in section 1059c(b) of title 20); or

(4) a Hispanic-serving institution (as defined in section 1101a(a) of title 20).

(b) Grants

The Secretary shall make cellulosic ethanol and biofuels research and development grants to 10 eligible entities selected by the Secretary to receive a grant under this section through a peer-reviewed competitive process.

(c) Collaboration

An eligible entity that is selected to receive a grant under subsection (b) shall collaborate with 1 of the Bioenergy Research Centers of the Office of Science of the Department.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to make grants described in subsection (b) $50,000,000 for fiscal year 2008, to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §230, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1536.)

§17035. University based research and development grant program

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a competitive grant program, in a geographically diverse manner, for projects submitted for consideration by institutions of higher education to conduct research and development of renewable energy technologies. Each grant made shall not exceed $2,000,000.

(b) Eligibility

Priority shall be given to institutions of higher education with—

(1) established programs of research in renewable energy;

(2) locations that are low income or outside of an urbanized area;

(3) a joint venture with an Indian tribe; and

(4) proximity to trees dying of disease or insect infestation as a source of woody biomass.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary $25,000,000 for carrying out this section.

(d) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Indian tribe

The term "Indian tribe" has the meaning as defined in section 15823(c) of this title.

(2) Renewable energy

The term "renewable energy" has the meaning as defined in section 16181 of this title.

(3) Urbanized area

The term "urbanized area" has the meaning as defined by the U.S. Bureau of the Census.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §234, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1538.)

PART C—BIOFUELS INFRASTRUCTURE

§17051. Renewable fuel dispenser requirements

(a) Market penetration reports

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation, shall determine and report to Congress annually on the market penetration for flexible-fuel vehicles in use within geographic regions to be established by the Secretary.

(b) Dispenser feasibility study

Not later than 24 months after December 19, 2007, the Secretary, in consultation with the Department of Transportation, shall report to the Congress on the feasibility of requiring motor fuel retailers to install E–85 compatible dispensers and related systems at retail fuel facilities in regions where flexible-fuel vehicle market penetration has reached 15 percent of motor vehicles. In conducting such study, the Secretary shall consider and report on the following factors:

(1) The commercial availability of E–85 fuel and the number of competing E–85 wholesale suppliers in a given region.

(2) The level of financial assistance provided on an annual basis by the Federal Government, State governments, and nonprofit entities for the installation of E–85 compatible infrastructure.

(3) The number of retailers whose retail locations are unable to support more than 2 underground storage tank dispensers.

(4) The expense incurred by retailers in the installation and sale of E–85 compatible dispensers and related systems and any potential effects on the price of motor vehicle fuel.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §242, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1540.)

§17052. Renewable fuel infrastructure grants

(a) Definition of renewable fuel blend

For purposes of this section, the term "renewable fuel blend" means a gasoline blend that contains not less than 11 percent, and not more than 85 percent, renewable fuel or diesel fuel that contains at least 10 percent renewable fuel.

(b) Infrastructure development grants

(1) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a program for making grants for providing assistance to retail and wholesale motor fuel dealers or other entities for the installation, replacement, or conversion of motor fuel storage and dispensing infrastructure to be used exclusively to store and dispense

renewable fuel blends.

(2) Selection criteria

Not later than 12 months after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall establish criteria for evaluating applications for grants under this subsection that will maximize the availability and use of renewable fuel blends, and that will ensure that renewable fuel blends are available across the country. Such criteria shall provide for—

(A) consideration of the public demand for each renewable fuel blend in a particular geographic area based on State registration records showing the number of flexible-fuel vehicles;

(B) consideration of the opportunity to create or expand corridors of renewable fuel blend stations along interstate or State highways;

(C) consideration of the experience of each applicant with previous, similar projects;

(D) consideration of population, number of flexible-fuel vehicles, number of retail fuel outlets, and saturation of flexible-fuel vehicles; and

(E) priority consideration to applications that—

(i) are most likely to maximize displacement of petroleum consumption, measured as a total quantity and a percentage;

(ii) are best able to incorporate existing infrastructure while maximizing, to the extent practicable, the use of renewable fuel blends; and

(iii) demonstrate the greatest commitment on the part of the applicant to ensure funding for the proposed project and the greatest likelihood that the project will be maintained or expanded after Federal assistance under this subsection is completed.

(3) Limitations

Assistance provided under this subsection shall not exceed—

(A) 33 percent of the estimated cost of the installation, replacement, or conversion of motor fuel storage and dispensing infrastructure; or

(B) $180,000 for a combination of equipment at any one retail outlet location.

(4) Operation of renewable fuel blend stations

The Secretary shall establish rules that set forth requirements for grant recipients under this section that include providing to the public the renewable fuel blends, establishing a marketing plan that informs consumers of the price and availability of the renewable fuel blends, clearly labeling the dispensers and related equipment, and providing periodic reports on the status of the renewable fuel blend sales, the type and amount of the renewable fuel blends dispensed at each location, and the average price of such fuel.

(5) Notification requirements

Not later than the date on which each renewable fuel blend station begins to offer renewable fuel blends to the public, the grant recipient that used grant funds to construct or upgrade such station shall notify the Secretary of such opening. The Secretary shall add each new renewable fuel blend station to the renewable fuel blend station locator on its Website when it receives notification under this subsection.

(6) Double counting

No person that receives a credit under section 30C of title 26 may receive assistance under this section.

(7) Reservation of funds

The Secretary shall reserve funds appropriated for the renewable fuel blends infrastructure development grant program for technical and marketing assistance described in subsection (c).

(c) Retail technical and marketing assistance

The Secretary shall enter into contracts with entities with demonstrated experience in assisting retail fueling stations in installing refueling systems and marketing renewable fuel blends nationally,

for the provision of technical and marketing assistance to recipients of grants under this section. Such assistance shall include—

(1) technical advice for compliance with applicable Federal and State environmental requirements;

(2) help in identifying supply sources and securing long-term contracts; and

(3) provision of public outreach, education, and labeling materials.

(d) Refueling infrastructure corridors

(1) In general

The Secretary shall establish a competitive grant pilot program (referred to in this subsection as the "pilot program"), to be administered through the Vehicle Technology Deployment Program of the Department, to provide not more than 10 geographically-dispersed project grants to State governments, Indian tribal governments, local governments, metropolitan transportation authorities, or partnerships of those entities to carry out 1 or more projects for the purposes described in paragraph (2).

(2) Grant purposes

A grant under this subsection shall be used for the establishment of refueling infrastructure corridors, as designated by the Secretary, for renewable fuel blends, including—

(A) installation of infrastructure and equipment necessary to ensure adequate distribution of renewable fuel blends within the corridor;

(B) installation of infrastructure and equipment necessary to directly support vehicles powered by renewable fuel blends; and

(C) operation and maintenance of infrastructure and equipment installed as part of a project funded by the grant.

(3) Applications

(A) Requirements

(i) In general

Subject to clause (ii), not later than 90 days after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall issue requirements for use in applying for grants under the pilot program.

(ii) Minimum requirements

At a minimum, the Secretary shall require that an application for a grant under this subsection—

(I) be submitted by—

(aa) the head of a State, tribal, or local government or a metropolitan transportation authority, or any combination of those entities; and

(bb) a registered participant in the Vehicle Technology Deployment Program of the Department; and

(II) include—

(aa) a description of the project proposed in the application, including the ways in which the project meets the requirements of this subsection;

(bb) an estimate of the degree of use of the project, including the estimated size of fleet of vehicles operated with renewable fuels blend available within the geographic region of the corridor, measured as a total quantity and a percentage;

(cc) an estimate of the potential petroleum displaced as a result of the project (measured as a total quantity and a percentage), and a plan to collect and disseminate petroleum displacement and other relevant data relating to the project to be funded under the grant, over the expected life of the project;

(dd) a description of the means by which the project will be sustainable without Federal assistance after the completion of the term of the grant;

(ee) a complete description of the costs of the project, including acquisition,

construction, operation, and maintenance costs over the expected life of the project; and

(ff) a description of which costs of the project will be supported by Federal assistance under this subsection.

(B) Partners

An applicant under subparagraph (A) may carry out a project under the pilot program in partnership with public and private entities.

(4) Selection criteria

In evaluating applications under the pilot program, the Secretary shall—

(A) consider the experience of each applicant with previous, similar projects; and

(B) give priority consideration to applications that—

(i) are most likely to maximize displacement of petroleum consumption, measured as a total quantity and a percentage;

(ii) are best able to incorporate existing infrastructure while maximizing, to the extent practicable, the use of advanced biofuels;

(iii) demonstrate the greatest commitment on the part of the applicant to ensure funding for the proposed project and the greatest likelihood that the project will be maintained or expanded after Federal assistance under this subsection is completed;

(iv) represent a partnership of public and private entities; and

(v) exceed the minimum requirements of paragraph (3)(A)(ii).

(5) Pilot project requirements

(A) Maximum amount

The Secretary shall provide not more than $20,000,000 in Federal assistance under the pilot program to any applicant.

(B) Cost sharing

The non-Federal share of the cost of any activity relating to renewable fuel blend infrastructure development carried out using funds from a grant under this subsection shall be not less than 20 percent.

(C) Maximum period of grants

The Secretary shall not provide funds to any applicant under the pilot program for more than 2 years.

(D) Deployment and distribution

The Secretary shall seek, to the maximum extent practicable, to ensure a broad geographic distribution of project sites funded by grants under this subsection.

(E) Transfer of information and knowledge

The Secretary shall establish mechanisms to ensure that the information and knowledge gained by participants in the pilot program are transferred among the pilot program participants and to other interested parties, including other applicants that submitted applications.

(6) Schedule

(A) Initial grants

(i) In general

Not later than 90 days after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register, Commerce Business Daily, and such other publications as the Secretary considers to be appropriate, a notice and request for applications to carry out projects under the pilot program.

(ii) Deadline

An application described in clause (i) shall be submitted to the Secretary by not later than 180 days after the date of publication of the notice under that clause.

(iii) Initial selection

Not later than 90 days after the date by which applications for grants are due under clause (ii), the Secretary shall select by competitive, peer-reviewed proposal up to 5 applications for projects to be awarded a grant under the pilot program.

(B) Additional grants

(i) In general

Not later than 2 years after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register, Commerce Business Daily, and such other publications as the Secretary considers to be appropriate, a notice and request for additional applications to carry out projects under the pilot program that incorporate the information and knowledge obtained through the implementation of the first round of projects authorized under the pilot program.

(ii) Deadline

An application described in clause (i) shall be submitted to the Secretary by not later than 180 days after the date of publication of the notice under that clause.

(iii) Initial selection

Not later than 90 days after the date by which applications for grants are due under clause (ii), the Secretary shall select by competitive, peer-reviewed proposal such additional applications for projects to be awarded a grant under the pilot program as the Secretary determines to be appropriate.

(7) Reports to Congress

(A) Initial report

Not later than 60 days after the date on which grants are awarded under this subsection, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report containing—

(i) an identification of the grant recipients and a description of the projects to be funded under the pilot program;

(ii) an identification of other applicants that submitted applications for the pilot program but to which funding was not provided; and

(iii) a description of the mechanisms used by the Secretary to ensure that the information and knowledge gained by participants in the pilot program are transferred among the pilot program participants and to other interested parties, including other applicants that submitted applications.

(B) Evaluation

Not later than 2 years after December 19, 2007, and annually thereafter until the termination of the pilot program, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report containing an evaluation of the effectiveness of the pilot program, including an assessment of the petroleum displacement and benefits to the environment derived from the projects included in the pilot program.

(e) Restriction

No grant shall be provided under subsection (b) or (c) to a large, vertically integrated oil company.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section $200,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2014.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §244, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1541.)

§17053. Federal fleet fueling centers

(a) In general

Not later than January 1, 2010, the head of each Federal agency shall install at least 1 renewable

fuel pump at each Federal fleet fueling center in the United States under the jurisdiction of the head of the Federal agency.

(b) Report

Not later than October 31 of the first calendar year beginning after December 19, 2007, and each October 31 thereafter, the President shall submit to Congress a report that describes the progress toward complying with subsection (a), including identifying—

(1) the number of Federal fleet fueling centers that contain at least 1 renewable fuel pump; and

(2) the number of Federal fleet fueling centers that do not contain any renewable fuel pumps.

(c) Department of Defense facility

This section shall not apply to a Department of Defense fueling center with a fuel turnover rate of less than 100,000 gallons of fuel per year.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §246, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1547.)

§17054. Biofuels distribution and advanced biofuels infrastructure

(a) In general

The Secretary, in coordination with the Secretary of Transportation and in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, shall carry out a program of research, development, and demonstration relating to existing transportation fuel distribution infrastructure and new alternative distribution infrastructure.

(b) Focus

The program described in subsection (a) shall focus on the physical and chemical properties of biofuels and efforts to prevent or mitigate against adverse impacts of those properties in the areas of—

(1) corrosion of metal, plastic, rubber, cork, fiberglass, glues, or any other material used in pipes and storage tanks;

(2) dissolving of storage tank sediments;

(3) clogging of filters;

(4) contamination from water or other adulterants or pollutants;

(5) poor flow properties related to low temperatures;

(6) oxidative and thermal instability in long-term storage and uses;

(7) microbial contamination;

(8) problems associated with electrical conductivity; and

(9) such other areas as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title II, §248, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1548.)

SUBCHAPTER III—ENERGY SAVINGS IN BUILDINGS AND INDUSTRY

§17061. Definitions

In this title: [1]

(1) Administrator

The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of General Services.

(2) Advisory Committee

The term "Advisory Committee" means the Green Building Advisory Committee established under section 484.[1]

(3) Commercial Director

The term "Commercial Director" means the individual appointed to the position established under section 17081 of this title.

(4) Consortium

The term "Consortium" means the High-Performance Green Building Partnership Consortium created in response to section 17092(c)(1) of this title to represent the private sector in a public-private partnership to promote high-performance green buildings and zero-net-energy commercial buildings.

(5) Cost-effective lighting technology

(A) In general

The term "cost-effective lighting technology" means a lighting technology that—

(i) will result in substantial operational cost savings by ensuring an installed consumption of not more than 1 watt per square foot; or

(ii) is contained in a list under—

(I) section 8259b of this title;

(II) Federal acquisition regulation 23–203; and

(III) is at least as energy-conserving as required by other provisions of this Act, including the requirements of this title [1] and title III [1] which shall be applicable to the extent that they would achieve greater energy savings than provided under clause (i) or this clause.[2]

(B) Inclusions

The term "cost-effective lighting technology" includes—

(i) lamps;

(ii) ballasts;

(iii) luminaires;

(iv) lighting controls;

(v) daylighting; and

(vi) early use of other highly cost-effective lighting technologies.

(6) Cost-effective technologies and practices

The term "cost-effective technologies and practices" means a technology or practice that—

(A) will result in substantial operational cost savings by reducing electricity or fossil fuel consumption, water, or other utility costs, including use of geothermal heat pumps;

(B) complies with the provisions of section 8259b of this title and Federal acquisition regulation 23–203; and

(C) is at least as energy and water conserving as required under this title,[1] including sections 431 through 435, and title V,[1] including sections 511 through 525, which shall be applicable to the extent that they are more stringent or require greater energy or water savings than required by this section.

(7) Federal Director

The term "Federal Director" means the individual appointed to the position established under section 17092(a) of this title.

(8) Federal facility

The term "Federal facility" means any building that is constructed, renovated, leased, or purchased in part or in whole for use by the Federal Government.

(9) Operational cost savings

(A) In general

The term "operational cost savings" means a reduction in end-use operational costs through the application of cost-effective technologies and practices or geothermal heat pumps, including a reduction in electricity consumption relative to consumption by the same customer or at the same facility in a given year, as defined in guidelines promulgated by the Administrator pursuant to section 7628(b) of this title, that achieves cost savings sufficient to pay the incremental additional costs of using cost-effective technologies and practices including geothermal heat pumps by not later than the later of the date established under sections 431 through 434,[1] or—

(i) for cost-effective technologies and practices, the date that is 5 years after the date of installation; and

(ii) for geothermal heat pumps, as soon as practical after the date of installation of the applicable geothermal heat pump.

(B) Inclusions

The term "operational cost savings" includes savings achieved at a facility as a result of—

(i) the installation or use of cost-effective technologies and practices; or

(ii) the planting of vegetation that shades the facility and reduces the heating, cooling, or lighting needs of the facility.

(C) Exclusion

The term "operational cost savings" does not include savings from measures that would likely be adopted in the absence of cost-effective technology and practices programs, as determined by the Administrator.

(10) Geothermal heat pump

The term "geothermal heat pump" means any heating or air conditioning technology that—

(A) uses the ground or ground water as a thermal energy source to heat, or as a thermal energy sink to cool, a building; and

(B) meets the requirements of the Energy Star program of the Environmental Protection Agency applicable to geothermal heat pumps on the date of purchase of the technology.

(11) GSA facility

(A) In general

The term "GSA facility" means any building, structure, or facility, in whole or in part (including the associated support systems of the building, structure, or facility) that—

(i) is constructed (including facilities constructed for lease), renovated, or purchased, in whole or in part, by the Administrator for use by the Federal Government; or

(ii) is leased, in whole or in part, by the Administrator for use by the Federal Government—

(I) except as provided in subclause (II), for a term of not less than 5 years; or

(II) for a term of less than 5 years, if the Administrator determines that use of cost-effective technologies and practices would result in the payback of expenses.

(B) Inclusion

The term "GSA facility" includes any group of buildings, structures, or facilities described in subparagraph (A) (including the associated energy-consuming support systems of the buildings, structures, and facilities).

(C) Exemption

The Administrator may exempt from the definition of "GSA facility" under this paragraph a building, structure, or facility that meets the requirements of section 8253(c) of this title.

(12) High-performance building

The term "high-performance building" means a building that integrates and optimizes on a life

cycle basis all major high performance attributes, including energy conservation, environment, safety, security, durability, accessibility, cost-benefit, productivity, sustainability, functionality, and operational considerations.

(13) High-performance green building

The term "high-performance green building" means a high-performance building that, during its life-cycle, as compared with similar buildings (as measured by Commercial Buildings Energy Consumption Survey or Residential Energy Consumption Survey data from the Energy Information Agency)—

(A) reduces energy, water, and material resource use;

(B) improves indoor environmental quality, including reducing indoor pollution, improving thermal comfort, and improving lighting and acoustic environments that affect occupant health and productivity;

(C) reduces negative impacts on the environment throughout the life-cycle of the building, including air and water pollution and waste generation;

(D) increases the use of environmentally preferable products, including biobased, recycled content, and nontoxic products with lower life-cycle impacts;

(E) increases reuse and recycling opportunities;

(F) integrates systems in the building;

(G) reduces the environmental and energy impacts of transportation through building location and site design that support a full range of transportation choices for users of the building; and

(H) considers indoor and outdoor effects of the building on human health and the environment, including—

(i) improvements in worker productivity;

(ii) the life-cycle impacts of building materials and operations; and

(iii) other factors that the Federal Director or the Commercial Director consider to be appropriate.

(14) Life-cycle

The term "life-cycle", with respect to a high-performance green building, means all stages of the useful life of the building (including components, equipment, systems, and controls of the building) beginning at conception of a high-performance green building project and continuing through site selection, design, construction, landscaping, commissioning, operation, maintenance, renovation, deconstruction or demolition, removal, and recycling of the high-performance green building.

(15) Life-cycle assessment

The term "life-cycle assessment" means a comprehensive system approach for measuring the environmental performance of a product or service over the life of the product or service, beginning at raw materials acquisition and continuing through manufacturing, transportation, installation, use, reuse, and end-of-life waste management.

(16) Life-cycle costing

The term "life-cycle costing", with respect to a high-performance green building, means a technique of economic evaluation that—

(A) sums, over a given study period, the costs of initial investment (less resale value), replacements, operations (including energy use), and maintenance and repair of an investment decision; and

(B) is expressed—

(i) in present value terms, in the case of a study period equivalent to the longest useful life of the building, determined by taking into consideration the typical life of such a building in the area in which the building is to be located; or

(ii) in annual value terms, in the case of any other study period.

(17) Office of Commercial High-Performance Green Buildings

The term "Office of Commercial High-Performance Green Buildings" means the Office of Commercial High-Performance Green Buildings established under section 17081(a) of this title.

(18) Office of Federal High-Performance Green Buildings

The term "Office of Federal High-Performance Green Buildings" means the Office of Federal High-Performance Green Buildings established under section 17092(a) of this title.

(19) Practices

The term "practices" means design, financing, permitting, construction, commissioning, operation and maintenance, and other practices that contribute to achieving zero-net-energy buildings or facilities.

(20) Zero-net-energy commercial building

The term "zero-net-energy commercial building" means a commercial building that is designed, constructed, and operated to—

(A) require a greatly reduced quantity of energy to operate;

(B) meet the balance of energy needs from sources of energy that do not produce greenhouse gases;

(C) therefore result in no net emissions of greenhouse gases; and

(D) be economically viable.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §401, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1596.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in text, is title IV of Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1596, which enacted this subchapter, part C (§6341 et seq.) of subchapter III of chapter 77 of this title, sections 6371h–1 and 7628 of this title, and subchapter V (§2695 et seq.) of chapter 53 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, amended sections 6832, 6834, 6862, 6872, 8253, 8254, and 12709 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 6834 and 6872 of this title. For complete classification of title IV to the Code, see Tables.

Section 484, referred to in par. (2), probably should be a reference to section 494 of Pub. L. 110–140, which is classified to section 17123 of this title.

This Act, referred to in par. (5)(A)(ii)(III), is Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1492, known as the Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007, which enacted this chapter and enacted and amended numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 17001 of this title and Tables.

Title III, referred to in par. (5)(A)(ii)(III), is title III of Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1549, which enacted section 3313 of Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works, amended sections 6291 to 6295, 6297, 6302, 6304, 6311, 6313 to 6316, 15821, and 16191 of this title and sections 3307, 3310, and 3314 to 3316 of Title 40, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 6291, 6294, 6295, and 6313 of this title. For complete classification of title III to the Code, see Tables.

Sections 431 through 435, referred to in pars. (6)(C) and 9(A), are sections 431 to 435 of Pub. L. 110–140. Sections 431 to 434 amended sections 6832, 6834, and 8253 of this title and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 6834 of this title. Section 435 enacted section 17091 of this title.

Title V, referred to in par. (6)(C), is title V of Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1655, which enacted subchapter IV (§17131 et seq.) of this chapter, part D (§8279) of subchapter III of chapter 91 of this title, and sections 1824, 2162a, and 2169 of Title 2, The Congress, amended sections 6325, 6834, 8256, 8258, 8259b, 8287, and 8287c of this title, section 2162 of Title 2, section 2913 of Title 10, Armed Forces, section 3203 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 2621 of Title 16, Conservation, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 8259b of this title. For complete classification of title V to the Code, see Tables.

Sections 511 through 525, referred to in par. (6)(C), are sections 511 to 525 of Pub. L. 110–140, which enacted part A (§17131) of subchapter IV of this chapter and section 17141 of this title, amended sections 6834, 8256, 8258, 8259b, 8287, and 8287c of this title and section 2913 of Title 10, Armed Forces, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 8259b of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

[2] *So in original. Does not fit with cl. (ii) introductory provision.*

§17062. Energy efficiency in Federal and other buildings

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Administrator

The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of General Services.

(2) Cost-effective energy efficiency measure

The term "cost-effective energy efficiency measure" means any building product, material, equipment, or service, and the installing, implementing, or operating thereof, that provides energy savings in an amount that is not less than the cost of such installing, implementing, or operating.

(3) Cost-effective water efficiency measure

The term "cost-effective water efficiency measure" means any building product, material, equipment, or service, and the installing, implementing, or operating thereof, that provides water savings in an amount that is not less than the cost of such installing, implementing, or operating.

(b) Model provisions, policies, and best practices

(1) In general

Not later than 180 days after April 30, 2015, the Administrator, in consultation with the Secretary of Energy and after providing the public with an opportunity for notice and comment, shall develop model commercial leasing provisions and best practices in accordance with this subsection.

(2) Commercial leasing

(A) In general

The model commercial leasing provisions developed under this subsection shall, at a minimum, align the interests of building owners and tenants with regard to investments in cost-effective energy efficiency measures and cost-effective water efficiency measures to encourage building owners and tenants to collaborate to invest in such measures.

(B) Use of model provisions

The Administrator may use the model commercial leasing provisions developed under this subsection in any standard leasing document that designates a Federal agency (or other client of the Administrator) as a landlord or tenant.

(C) Publication

The Administrator shall periodically publish the model commercial leasing provisions developed under this subsection, along with explanatory materials, to encourage building owners and tenants in the private sector to use such provisions and materials.

(3) Realty services

The Administrator shall develop policies and practices to implement cost-effective energy efficiency measures and cost-effective water efficiency measures for the realty services provided by the Administrator to Federal agencies (or other clients of the Administrator), including periodic training of appropriate Federal employees and contractors on how to identify and evaluate those measures.

(4) State and local assistance

The Administrator, in consultation with the Secretary of Energy, shall make available model commercial leasing provisions and best practices developed under this subsection to State, county, and municipal governments for use in managing owned and leased building space in accordance with the goal of encouraging investment in all cost-effective energy efficiency measures and cost-effective water efficiency measures.

(Pub. L. 114–11, title I, §102, Apr. 30, 2015, 129 Stat. 182.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Better Buildings Act of 2015, and also as part of the Energy Efficiency Improvement Act of 2015, and not as part of the Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007 which comprises this chapter.

§17063. Energy information for commercial buildings

(a) Omitted

(b) Study

(1) In general

Not later than 2 years after April 30, 2015, the Secretary of Energy, in collaboration with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, shall complete a study—

(A) on the impact of—

(i) State and local performance benchmarking and disclosure policies, and any associated building efficiency policies, for commercial and multifamily buildings; and

(ii) programs and systems in which utilities provide aggregated information regarding whole building energy consumption and usage information to owners of multitenant commercial, residential, and mixed-use buildings;

(B) that identifies best practice policy approaches studied under subparagraph (A) that have resulted in the greatest improvements in building energy efficiency; and

(C) that considers—

(i) compliance rates and the benefits and costs of the policies and programs on building owners, utilities, tenants, and other parties;

(ii) utility practices, programs, and systems that provide aggregated energy consumption information to multitenant building owners, and the impact of public utility commissions and State privacy laws on those practices, programs, and systems;

(iii) exceptions to compliance in existing laws where building owners are not able to gather or access whole building energy information from tenants or utilities;

(iv) the treatment of buildings with—

(I) multiple uses;

(II) uses for which baseline information is not available; and

(III) uses that require high levels of energy intensities, such as data centers, trading floors, and televisions [1] studios;

(v) implementation practices, including disclosure methods and phase-in of compliance;

(vi) the safety and security of benchmarking tools offered by government agencies, and the resiliency of those tools against cyber attacks; and

(vii) international experiences with regard to building benchmarking and disclosure laws and data aggregation for multitenant buildings.

(2) Submission to Congress

At the conclusion of the study, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate a report on the results of the study.

(c) Creation and maintenance of database

(1) In general

Not later than 18 months after April 30, 2015, and following opportunity for public notice and comment, the Secretary of Energy, in coordination with other relevant agencies, shall maintain,

and if necessary create, a database for the purpose of storing and making available public energy-related information on commercial and multifamily buildings, including—

(A) data provided under Federal, State, local, and other laws or programs regarding building benchmarking and energy information disclosure;

(B) information on buildings that have disclosed energy ratings and certifications; and

(C) energy-related information on buildings provided voluntarily by the owners of the buildings, only in an anonymous form unless the owner provides otherwise.

(2) Complementary programs

The database maintained pursuant to paragraph (1) shall complement and not duplicate the functions of the Environmental Protection Agency's Energy Star Portfolio Manager tool.

(d) Input from stakeholders

The Secretary of Energy shall seek input from stakeholders to maximize the effectiveness of the actions taken under this section.

(e) Report

Not later than 2 years after April 30, 2015, and every 2 years thereafter, the Secretary of Energy shall submit to the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate a report on the progress made in complying with this section.

(Pub. L. 114–11, title III, §301, Apr. 30, 2015, 129 Stat. 189.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 301 of Pub. L. 114–11. Subsec. (a) of section 301 of Pub. L. 114–11 amended section 17091 of this title.

Section was enacted as part of the Energy Efficiency Improvement Act of 2015, and not as part of the Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007 which comprises this chapter.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "television".*

PART A—RESIDENTIAL BUILDING EFFICIENCY

§17071. Energy Code improvements applicable to manufactured housing

(a) Establishment of standards

(1) In general

Not later than 4 years after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall by regulation establish standards for energy efficiency in manufactured housing.

(2) Notice, comment, and consultation

Standards described in paragraph (1) shall be established after—

(A) notice and an opportunity for comment by manufacturers of manufactured housing and other interested parties; and

(B) consultation with the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, who may seek further counsel from the Manufactured Housing Consensus Committee.

(b) Requirements

(1) International Energy Conservation Code

The energy conservation standards established under this section shall be based on the most recent version of the International Energy Conservation Code (including supplements), except in cases in which the Secretary finds that the code [1] is not cost-effective, or a more stringent standard

would be more cost-effective, based on the impact of the code [1] on the purchase price of manufactured housing and on total life-cycle construction and operating costs.

(2) Considerations

The energy conservation standards established under this section may—

(A) take into consideration the design and factory construction techniques of manufactured homes;

(B) be based on the climate zones established by the Department of Housing and Urban Development rather than the climate zones under the International Energy Conservation Code; and

(C) provide for alternative practices that result in net estimated energy consumption equal to or less than the specified standards.

(3) Updating

The energy conservation standards established under this section shall be updated not later than—

(A) 1 year after December 19, 2007; and

(B) 1 year after any revision to the International Energy Conservation Code.

(c) Enforcement

Any manufacturer of manufactured housing that violates a provision of the regulations under subsection (a) is liable to the United States for a civil penalty in an amount not exceeding 1 percent of the manufacturer's retail list price of the manufactured housing.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §413, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1601.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "Code".*

PART B—HIGH-PERFORMANCE COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS

§17081. Commercial high-performance green buildings

(a) Director of Commercial High-Performance Green Buildings

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary, acting through the Assistant Secretary of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy, shall appoint a Director of Commercial High-Performance Green Buildings to a position in the career-reserved Senior Executive service, with the principal responsibility to—

(1) establish and manage the Office of Commercial High-Performance Green Buildings; and

(2) carry out other duties as required under this part.

(b) Qualifications

The Commercial Director shall be an individual, who by reason of professional background and experience, is specifically qualified to carry out the duties required under this part.

(c) Duties

The Commercial Director shall, with respect to development of high-performance green buildings and zero-energy commercial buildings nationwide—

(1) coordinate the activities of the Office of Commercial High-Performance Green Buildings with the activities of the Office of Federal High-Performance Green Buildings;

(2) develop the legal predicates and agreements for, negotiate, and establish one or more public-private partnerships with the Consortium, members of the Consortium, and other capable parties meeting the qualifications of the Consortium, to further such development;

(3) represent the public and the Department in negotiating and performing in accord with such

public-private partnerships;

(4) use appropriated funds in an effective manner to encourage the maximum investment of private funds to achieve such development;

(5) promote research and development of high-performance green buildings, consistent with section 17083 of this title; and

(6) jointly establish with the Federal Director a national high-performance green building clearinghouse in accordance with section 17083(1) of this title, which shall provide high-performance green building information and disseminate research results through—

(A) outreach;

(B) education; and

(C) the provision of technical assistance.

(d) Reporting

The Commercial Director shall report directly to the Assistant Secretary for Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy, or to other senior officials in a way that facilitates the integrated program of this part for both energy efficiency and renewable energy and both technology development and technology deployment.

(e) Coordination

The Commercial Director shall ensure full coordination of high-performance green building information and activities, including activities under this part, within the Federal Government by working with the General Services Administration and all relevant agencies, including, at a minimum—

(1) the Environmental Protection Agency;

(2) the Office of the Federal Environmental Executive;

(3) the Office of Federal Procurement Policy;

(4) the Department of Energy, particularly the Federal Energy Management Program;

(5) the Department of Health and Human Services;

(6) the Department of Housing and Urban Development;

(7) the Department of Defense;

(8) the National Institute of Standards and Technology;

(9) the Department of Transportation;

(10) the Office of Science Technology and Policy; and

(11) such nonprofit high-performance green building rating and analysis entities as the Commercial Director determines can offer support, expertise, and review services.

(f) High-Performance Green Building Partnership Consortium

(1) Recognition

Not later than 90 days after December 19, 2007, the Commercial Director shall formally recognize one or more groups that qualify as a high-performance green building partnership consortium.

(2) Representation to qualify

To qualify under this section, any consortium shall include representation from—

(A) the design professions, including national associations of architects and of professional engineers;

(B) the development, construction, financial, and real estate industries;

(C) building owners and operators from the public and private sectors;

(D) academic and research organizations, including at least one national laboratory with extensive commercial building energy expertise;

(E) building code agencies and organizations, including a model energy code-setting organization;

(F) independent high-performance green building associations or councils;

(G) experts in indoor air quality and environmental factors;

(H) experts in intelligent buildings and integrated building information systems;
(I) utility energy efficiency programs;
(J) manufacturers and providers of equipment and techniques used in high-performance green buildings;
(K) public transportation industry experts; and
(L) nongovernmental energy efficiency organizations.

(3) Funding

The Secretary may make payments to the Consortium pursuant to the terms of a public-private partnership for such activities of the Consortium undertaken under such a partnership as described in this part directly to the Consortium or through one or more of its members.

(g) Report

Not later than 2 years after December 19, 2007, and biennially thereafter, the Commercial Director, in consultation with the Consortium, shall submit to Congress a report that—

(1) describes the status of the high-performance green building initiatives under this part and other Federal programs affecting commercial high-performance green buildings in effect as of the date of the report, including—
(A) the extent to which the programs are being carried out in accordance with this part; and
(B) the status of funding requests and appropriations for those programs; and

(2) summarizes and highlights development, at the State and local level, of high-performance green building initiatives, including executive orders, policies, or laws adopted promoting high-performance green building (including the status of implementation of those initiatives).

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §421, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1602.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Office of the Federal Environmental Executive reestablished as the Office of the Chief Sustainability Officer by Ex. Ord. No. 13693, §6, Mar. 19, 2015, 80 F.R. 15877, set out in a note under section 4321 of this title.

§17082. Zero Net Energy Commercial Buildings Initiative

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Consortium

The term "consortium" means a High-Performance Green Building Consortium selected by the Commercial Director.

(2) Initiative

The term "initiative" means the Zero-Net-Energy Commercial Buildings Initiative established under subsection (b)(1).

(3) Zero-net-energy commercial building

The term "zero-net-energy commercial building" means a high-performance commercial building that is designed, constructed, and operated—
(A) to require a greatly reduced quantity of energy to operate;
(B) to meet the balance of energy needs from sources of energy that do not produce greenhouse gases;
(C) in a manner that will result in no net emissions of greenhouse gases; and
(D) to be economically viable.

(b) Establishment

(1) In general

The Commercial Director shall establish an initiative, to be known as the "Zero-Net-Energy Commercial Buildings Initiative"—

(A) to reduce the quantity of energy consumed by commercial buildings located in the United States; and

(B) to achieve the development of zero net energy commercial buildings in the United States.

(2) Consortium

(A) In general

Not later than 180 days after December 19, 2007, the Commercial Director shall competitively select, and enter into an agreement with, a consortium to develop and carry out the initiative.

(B) Agreements

In entering into an agreement with a consortium under subparagraph (A), the Commercial Director shall use the authority described in section 7256(g) of this title, to the maximum extent practicable.

(c) Goal of initiative

The goal of the initiative shall be to develop and disseminate technologies, practices, and policies for the development and establishment of zero net energy commercial buildings for—

(1) any commercial building newly constructed in the United States by 2030;

(2) 50 percent of the commercial building stock of the United States by 2040; and

(3) all commercial buildings in the United States by 2050.

(d) Components

In carrying out the initiative, the Commercial Director, in consultation with the consortium, may—

(1) conduct research and development on building science, design, materials, components, equipment and controls, operation and other practices, integration, energy use measurement, and benchmarking;

(2) conduct pilot programs and demonstration projects to evaluate replicable approaches to achieving energy efficient commercial buildings for a variety of building types in a variety of climate zones;

(3) conduct deployment, dissemination, and technical assistance activities to encourage widespread adoption of technologies, practices, and policies to achieve energy efficient commercial buildings;

(4) conduct other research, development, demonstration, and deployment activities necessary to achieve each goal of the initiative, as determined by the Commercial Director, in consultation with the consortium;

(5) develop training materials and courses for building professionals and trades on achieving cost-effective high-performance energy efficient buildings;

(6) develop and disseminate public education materials to share information on the benefits and cost-effectiveness of high-performance energy efficient buildings;

(7) support code-setting organizations and State and local governments in developing minimum performance standards in building codes that recognize the ready availability of many technologies utilized in high-performance energy efficient buildings;

(8) develop strategies for overcoming the split incentives between builders and purchasers, and landlords and tenants, to ensure that energy efficiency and high-performance investments are made that are cost-effective on a lifecycle basis; and

(9) develop improved means of measurement and verification of energy savings and performance for public dissemination.

(e) Cost sharing

In carrying out this section, the Commercial Director shall require cost sharing in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

(1) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;

(2) $50,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2009 and 2010;

(3) $100,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2011 and 2012; and

(4) $200,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2013 through 2018.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §422, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1604.)

§17083. Public outreach

The Commercial Director and Federal Director, in coordination with the Consortium, shall carry out public outreach to inform individuals and entities of the information and services available governmentwide by—

(1) establishing and maintaining a national high-performance green building clearinghouse, including on the Internet, that—

(A) identifies existing similar efforts and coordinates activities of common interest; and

(B) provides information relating to high-performance green buildings, including hyperlinks to Internet sites that describe the activities, information, and resources of—

(i) the Federal Government;

(ii) State and local governments;

(iii) the private sector (including nongovernmental and nonprofit entities and organizations); and

(iv) international organizations;

(2) identifying and recommending educational resources for implementing high-performance green building practices, including security and emergency benefits and practices;

(3) providing access to technical assistance, tools, and resources for constructing high-performance green buildings, particularly tools to conduct life-cycle costing and life-cycle assessment;

(4) providing information on application processes for certifying a high-performance green building, including certification and commissioning;

(5) providing to the public, through the Commercial Director, technical and research information or other forms of assistance or advice that would be useful in planning and constructing high-performance green buildings;

(6) using such additional methods as are determined by the Commercial Director to be appropriate to conduct public outreach;

(7) surveying existing research and studies relating to high-performance green buildings; and

(8) coordinating activities of common interest.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §423, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1606.)

§17084. Separate spaces with high-performance energy efficiency measures

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) High-performance energy efficiency measure

The term "high-performance energy efficiency measure" means a technology, product, or practice that will result in substantial operational cost savings by reducing energy consumption and utility costs.

(2) Separate spaces

The term "separate spaces" means areas within a commercial building that are leased or

otherwise occupied by a tenant or other occupant for a period of time pursuant to the terms of a written agreement.

(b) Study

(1) In general

Not later than 1 year after April 30, 2015, the Secretary, acting through the Assistant Secretary of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy, shall complete a study on the feasibility of—

(A) significantly improving energy efficiency in commercial buildings through the design and construction, by owners and tenants, of separate spaces with high-performance energy efficiency measures; and

(B) encouraging owners and tenants to implement high-performance energy efficiency measures in separate spaces.

(2) Scope

The study shall, at a minimum, include—

(A) descriptions of—

(i) high-performance energy efficiency measures that should be considered as part of the initial design and construction of separate spaces;

(ii) processes that owners, tenants, architects, and engineers may replicate when designing and constructing separate spaces with high-performance energy efficiency measures;

(iii) policies and best practices to achieve reductions in energy intensities for lighting, plug loads, heating, cooling, cooking, laundry, and other systems to satisfy the needs of the commercial building tenant;

(iv) return on investment and payback analyses of the incremental cost and projected energy savings of the proposed set of high-performance energy efficiency measures, including consideration of available incentives;

(v) models and simulation methods that predict the quantity of energy used by separate spaces with high-performance energy efficiency measures and that compare that predicted quantity to the quantity of energy used by separate spaces without high-performance energy efficiency measures but that otherwise comply with applicable building code requirements;

(vi) measurement and verification platforms demonstrating actual energy use of high-performance energy efficiency measures installed in separate spaces, and whether such measures generate the savings intended in the initial design and construction of the separate spaces;

(vii) best practices that encourage an integrated approach to designing and constructing separate spaces to perform at optimum energy efficiency in conjunction with the central systems of a commercial building; and

(viii) any impact on employment resulting from the design and construction of separate spaces with high-performance energy efficiency measures; and

(B) case studies reporting economic and energy savings returns in the design and construction of separate spaces with high-performance energy efficiency measures.

(3) Public participation

Not later than 90 days after April 30, 2015, the Secretary shall publish a notice in the Federal Register requesting public comments regarding effective methods, measures, and practices for the design and construction of separate spaces with high-performance energy efficiency measures.

(4) Publication

The Secretary shall publish the study on the website of the Department of Energy.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §424, as added Pub. L. 114–11, title I, §103(a), Apr. 30, 2015, 129 Stat. 183.)

§17085. Tenant Star program

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) High-performance energy efficiency measure

The term "high-performance energy efficiency measure" has the meaning given the term in section 17084 of this title.

(2) Separate spaces

The term "separate spaces" has the meaning given the term in section 17084 of this title.

(b) Tenant Star

The Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, in consultation with the Secretary of Energy, shall develop a voluntary program within the Energy Star program established by section 6294a of this title, which may be known as "Tenant Star", to promote energy efficiency in separate spaces leased by tenants or otherwise occupied within commercial buildings.

(c) Expanding survey data

The Secretary of Energy, acting through the Administrator of the Energy Information Administration, shall—

(1) collect, through each Commercial Buildings Energy Consumption Survey of the Energy Information Administration that is conducted after April 30, 2015, data on—

(A) categories of building occupancy that are known to consume significant quantities of energy, such as occupancy by data centers, trading floors, and restaurants; and

(B) other aspects of the property, building operation, or building occupancy determined by the Administrator of the Energy Information Administration, in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, to be relevant in lowering energy consumption;

(2) with respect to the first Commercial Buildings Energy Consumption Survey conducted after April 30, 2015, to the extent full compliance with the requirements of paragraph (1) is not feasible, conduct activities to develop the capability to collect such data and begin to collect such data; and

(3) make data collected under paragraphs (1) and (2) available to the public in aggregated form and provide such data, and any associated results, to the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency for use in accordance with subsection (d).

(d) Recognition of owners and tenants

(1) Occupancy-based recognition

Not later than 1 year after the date on which sufficient data is received pursuant to subsection (c), the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency shall, following an opportunity for public notice and comment—

(A) in a manner similar to the Energy Star rating system for commercial buildings, develop policies and procedures to recognize tenants in commercial buildings that voluntarily achieve high levels of energy efficiency in separate spaces;

(B) establish building occupancy categories eligible for Tenant Star recognition based on the data collected under subsection (c) and any other appropriate data sources; and

(C) consider other forms of recognition for commercial building tenants or other occupants that lower energy consumption in separate spaces.

(2) Design- and construction-based recognition

After the study required by section 17084(b) of this title is completed, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, in consultation with the Secretary and following an opportunity

for public notice and comment, may develop a voluntary program to recognize commercial building owners and tenants that use high-performance energy efficiency measures in the design and construction of separate spaces.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §425, as added Pub. L. 114–11, title I, §104(a), Apr. 30, 2015, 129 Stat. 185.)

PART C—HIGH-PERFORMANCE FEDERAL BUILDINGS

§17091. Leasing

(a) In general

Except as provided in subsection (b), effective beginning on the date that is 3 years after December 19, 2007, no Federal agency shall enter into a contract to lease space in a building that has not earned the Energy Star label in the most recent year.

(b) Exception

(1) Application

This subsection applies if—

(A) no space is available in a building described in subsection (a) that meets the functional requirements of an agency, including locational needs;

(B) the agency proposes to remain in a building that the agency has occupied previously;

(C) the agency proposes to lease a building of historical, architectural, or cultural significance (as defined in section 3306(a)(4) of title 40) or space in such a building; or

(D) the lease is for not more than 10,000 gross square feet of space.

(2) Buildings without Energy Star label

If one of the conditions described in paragraph (1) is met, the agency may enter into a contract to lease space in a building that has not earned the Energy Star label in the most recent year if the lease contract includes provisions requiring that, prior to occupancy or, in the case of a contract described in paragraph (1)(B), not later than 1 year after signing the contract, the following requirements are met:

(A) The space is renovated for all energy efficiency and conservation improvements that would be cost effective over the life of the lease, including improvements in lighting, windows, and heating, ventilation, and air conditioning systems.

(B)(i) Subject to clause (ii), the space is benchmarked under a nationally recognized, online, free benchmarking program, with public disclosure, unless the space is a space for which owners cannot access whole building utility consumption data, including spaces—

(I) that are located in States with privacy laws that provide that utilities shall not provide such aggregated information to multitenant building owners; and

(II) for which tenants do not provide energy consumption information to the commercial building owner in response to a request from the building owner.

(ii) A Federal agency that is a tenant of the space shall provide to the building owner, or authorize the owner to obtain from the utility, the energy consumption information of the space for the benchmarking and disclosure required by this subparagraph.

(c) Revision of Federal Acquisition Regulation

(1) In general

Not later than 3 years after December 19, 2007, the Federal Acquisition Regulation described in section 1121(b) and (c)(1) of title 41 shall be revised to require Federal officers and employees to

comply with this section in leasing buildings.

(2) Consultation

The members of the Federal Acquisition Regulatory Council established under section 1302(a) of title 41 shall consult with the Federal Director and the Commercial Director before promulgating regulations to carry out this subsection.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §435, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1615; Pub. L. 114–11, title III, §301(a), Apr. 30, 2015, 129 Stat. 189.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (c)(1), "section 1121(b) and (c)(1) of title 41" substituted for "section 6(a) of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy Act (41 U.S.C. 405(a))" on authority of Pub. L. 111–350, §6(c), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 3854, which Act enacted Title 41, Public Contracts.

In subsec. (c)(2), "section 1302(a) of title 41" substituted for "section 25 of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy Act (41 U.S.C. 421)" on authority of Pub. L. 111–350, §6(c), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 3854, which Act enacted Title 41, Public Contracts.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 114–11 substituted "paragraph (1) is met" for "paragraph (2) is met" and "signing the contract, the following requirements are met:" for "signing the contract, the space will be renovated for all energy efficiency and conservation improvements that would be cost effective over the life of the lease, including improvements in lighting, windows, and heating, ventilation, and air conditioning systems." and added subpars. (A) and (B).

§17092. High-performance green Federal buildings

(a) Establishment of Office

Not later than 60 days after December 19, 2007, the Administrator shall establish within the General Services Administration an Office of Federal High-Performance Green Buildings, and appoint an individual to serve as Federal Director in, a position in the career-reserved Senior Executive service, to—

(1) establish and manage the Office of Federal High-Performance Green Buildings; and

(2) carry out other duties as required under this part.

(b) Compensation

The compensation of the Federal Director shall not exceed the maximum rate of basic pay for the Senior Executive Service under section 5382 of title 5, including any applicable locality-based comparability payment that may be authorized under section 5304(h)(2)(C) of that title.

(c) Duties

The Federal Director shall—

(1) coordinate the activities of the Office of Federal High-Performance Green Buildings with the activities of the Office of Commercial High-Performance Green Buildings, and the Secretary, in accordance with section 6834(a)(3)(D) of this title;

(2) ensure full coordination of high-performance green building information and activities within the General Services Administration and all relevant agencies, including, at a minimum—

(A) the Environmental Protection Agency;

(B) the Office of the Federal Environmental Executive;

(C) the Office of Federal Procurement Policy;

(D) the Department of Energy;

(E) the Department of Health and Human Services;

(F) the Department of Defense;

(G) the Department of Transportation;

(H) the National Institute of Standards and Technology; and

(I) the Office of Science and Technology Policy;

(3) establish a senior-level Federal Green Building Advisory Committee under section 474,[1] which shall provide advice and recommendations in accordance with that section and subsection (d);

(4) identify and every 5 years reassess improved or higher rating standards recommended by the Advisory Committee;

(5) ensure full coordination, dissemination of information regarding, and promotion of the results of research and development information relating to Federal high-performance green building initiatives;

(6) identify and develop Federal high-performance green building standards for all types of Federal facilities, consistent with the requirements of this part and section 6834(a)(3)(D) of this title;

(7) establish green practices that can be used throughout the life of a Federal facility;

(8) review and analyze current Federal budget practices and life-cycle costing issues, and make recommendations to Congress, in accordance with subsection (d); and

(9) identify opportunities to demonstrate innovative and emerging green building technologies and concepts.

(d) Additional duties

The Federal Director, in consultation with the Commercial Director and the Advisory Committee, and consistent with the requirements of section 6834(a)(3)(D) of this title shall—

(1) identify, review, and analyze current budget and contracting practices that affect achievement of high-performance green buildings, including the identification of barriers to high-performance green building life-cycle costing and budgetary issues;

(2) develop guidance and conduct training sessions with budget specialists and contracting personnel from Federal agencies and budget examiners to apply life-cycle cost criteria to actual projects;

(3) identify tools to aid life-cycle cost decisionmaking; and

(4) explore the feasibility of incorporating the benefits of high-performance green buildings, such as security benefits, into a cost-budget analysis to aid in life-cycle costing for budget and decisionmaking processes.

(e) Incentives

Within 90 days after December 19, 2007, the Federal Director shall identify incentives to encourage the expedited use of high-performance green buildings and related technology in the operations of the Federal Government, in accordance with the requirements of section 6834(a)(3)(D) of this title, including through—

(1) the provision of recognition awards; and

(2) the maximum feasible retention of financial savings in the annual budgets of Federal agencies for use in reinvesting in future high-performance green building initiatives.

(f) Report

Not later than 2 years after December 19, 2007, and biennially thereafter, the Federal Director, in consultation with the Secretary, shall submit to Congress a report that—

(1) describes the status of compliance with this part, the requirements of section 6834(a)(3)(D) of this title, and other Federal high-performance green building initiatives in effect as of the date of the report, including—

(A) the extent to which the programs are being carried out in accordance with this part and the requirements of section 6834(a)(3)(D) of this title; and

(B) the status of funding requests and appropriations for those programs;

(2) identifies within the planning, budgeting, and construction process all types of Federal facility procedures that may affect the certification of new and existing Federal facilities as high-performance green buildings under the provisions of section 6834(a)(3)(D) of this title and

the criteria established in subsection (h);

(3) identifies inconsistencies, as reported to the Advisory Committee, in Federal law with respect to product acquisition guidelines and high-performance product guidelines;

(4) recommends language for uniform standards for use by Federal agencies in environmentally responsible acquisition;

(5) in coordination with the Office of Management and Budget, reviews the budget process for capital programs with respect to alternatives for—

(A) restructuring of budgets to require the use of complete energy and environmental cost accounting;

(B) using operations expenditures in budget-related decisions while simultaneously incorporating productivity and health measures (as those measures can be quantified by the Office of Federal High-Performance Green Buildings, with the assistance of universities and national laboratories);

(C) streamlining measures for permitting Federal agencies to retain all identified savings accrued as a result of the use of life-cycle costing for future high-performance green building initiatives; and

(D) identifying short-term and long-term cost savings that accrue from high-performance green buildings, including those relating to health and productivity;

(6) identifies green, self-sustaining technologies to address the operational needs of Federal facilities in times of national security emergencies, natural disasters, or other dire emergencies;

(7) summarizes and highlights development, at the State and local level, of high-performance green building initiatives, including executive orders, policies, or laws adopted promoting high-performance green building (including the status of implementation of those initiatives); and

(8) includes, for the 2-year period covered by the report, recommendations to address each of the matters, and a plan for implementation of each recommendation, described in paragraphs (1) through (7).

(g) Implementation

The Office of Federal High-Performance Green Buildings shall carry out each plan for implementation of recommendations under subsection (f)(8).

(h) Identification of certification system

(1) In general

For the purpose of this section, not later than 60 days after December 19, 2007, the Federal Director shall identify and shall provide to the Secretary pursuant to section 6834(a)(3)(D) of this title, a certification system that the Director determines to be the most likely to encourage a comprehensive and environmentally-sound approach to certification of green buildings.

(2) Basis

The system identified under paragraph (1) shall be based on—

(A) a study completed every 5 years and provided to the Secretary pursuant to section 6834(a)(3)(D) of this title, which shall be carried out by the Federal Director to compare and evaluate standards;

(B) the ability and availability of assessors and auditors to independently verify the criteria and measurement of metrics at the scale necessary to implement this part;

(C) the ability of the applicable standard-setting organization to collect and reflect public comment;

(D) the ability of the standard to be developed and revised through a consensus-based process;

(E) an evaluation of the robustness of the criteria for a high-performance green building, which shall give credit for promoting—

(i) efficient and sustainable use of water, energy, and other natural resources;

(ii) use of renewable energy sources;

(iii) improved indoor environmental quality through enhanced indoor air quality, thermal comfort, acoustics, day lighting, pollutant source control, and use of low-emission materials and building system controls;

(iv) reduced impacts from transportation through building location and site design that promote access by public transportation; and

(v) such other criteria as the Federal Director determines to be appropriate; and

(F) national recognition within the building industry.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §436, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1616.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2), (c)(6), (f)(1) and (h)(2)(B), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle C (§§431–441) of title IV of Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1607, which enacted this part, amended sections 6832, 6834, 8253, and 8254 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 6834 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle C to the Code, see Tables.

Section 474, referred to in subsec. (c)(3), probably means section 494 of Pub. L. 110–140, which is classified to section 17123 of this title.

CHANGE OF NAME

Office of the Federal Environmental Executive reestablished as the Office of the Chief Sustainability Officer by Ex. Ord. No. 13693, §6, Mar. 19, 2015, 80 F.R. 15877, set out in a note under section 4321 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§17093. Federal green building performance

(a) In general

Not later than October 31 of each of the 2 fiscal years following the fiscal year in which this Act is enacted, and at such times thereafter as the Comptroller General of the United States determines to be appropriate, the Comptroller General of the United States shall, with respect to the fiscal years that have passed since the preceding report—

(1) conduct an audit of the implementation of this part, section 6834(a)(3)(D) of this title, and section 17091 of this title; and

(2) submit to the Federal Director, the Advisory Committee, the Administrator, and Congress a report describing the results of the audit.

(b) Contents

An audit under subsection (a) shall include a review, with respect to the period covered by the report under subsection (a)(2), of—

(1) budget, life-cycle costing, and contracting issues, using best practices identified by the Comptroller General of the United States and heads of other agencies in accordance with section 17092(d) of this title;

(2) the level of coordination among the Federal Director, the Office of Management and Budget, the Department of Energy, and relevant agencies;

(3) the performance of the Federal Director and other agencies in carrying out the implementation plan;

(4) the design stage of high-performance green building measures;

(5) high-performance building data that were collected and reported to the Office; and

(6) such other matters as the Comptroller General of the United States determines to be appropriate.

(c) Environmental Stewardship Scorecard

The Federal Director shall consult with the Advisory Committee to enhance, and assist in the

implementation of, the Office of Management and Budget government efficiency reports and scorecards under section 17144 of this title and the Environmental Stewardship Scorecard announced at the White House summit on Federal sustainable buildings in January 2006, to measure the implementation by each Federal agency of sustainable design and green building initiatives.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §437, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1619.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 110–140, which was approved Dec. 19, 2007.

This part, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle C (§§431–441) of title IV of Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1607, which enacted this part, amended sections 6832, 6834, 8253, and 8254 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 6834 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle C to the Code, see Tables.

§17094. Storm water runoff requirements for Federal development projects

The sponsor of any development or redevelopment project involving a Federal facility with a footprint that exceeds 5,000 square feet shall use site planning, design, construction, and maintenance strategies for the property to maintain or restore, to the maximum extent technically feasible, the predevelopment hydrology of the property with regard to the temperature, rate, volume, and duration of flow.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §438, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1620.)

§17095. Cost-effective technology acceleration program

(a) Definition of Administrator

In this section, the term "Administrator" means the Administrator of General Services.

(b) Establishment

(1) In general

The Administrator shall establish a program to accelerate the use of more cost-effective technologies and practices at GSA facilities.

(2) Requirements

The program established under this subsection shall—

(A) ensure centralized responsibility for the coordination of cost reduction-related recommendations, practices, and activities of all relevant Federal agencies;

(B) provide technical assistance and operational guidance to applicable tenants to achieve the goal identified in subsection (c)(2)(B)(ii);

(C) establish methods to track the success of Federal departments and agencies with respect to that goal; and

(D) be fully coordinated with and no less stringent nor less energy-conserving or water-conserving than required by other provisions of this Act and other applicable law, including sections 321 through 324, 431 through 438, 461, 511 through 518, and 523 through 525 and amendments made by those sections.

(c) Accelerated use of technologies

(1) Review

(A) In general

As part of the program under this section, not later than 90 days after December 19, 2007, the Administrator shall conduct a review of—

(i) current use of cost-effective lighting technologies and geothermal heat pumps in GSA facilities; and

(ii) the availability to managers of GSA facilities of cost-effective lighting technologies and geothermal heat pumps.

(B) Requirements

The review under subparagraph (A) shall—

(i) examine the use of cost-effective lighting technologies, geothermal heat pumps, and other cost-effective technologies and practices by Federal agencies in GSA facilities; and

(ii) as prepared in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, identify cost-effective lighting technology and geothermal heat pump technology standards that could be used for all types of GSA facilities.

(2) Replacement

(A) In general

As part of the program under this section, not later than 180 days after December 19, 2007, the Administrator shall establish, using available appropriations and programs implementing sections 432 and 525 [1] (and amendments made by those sections), a cost-effective lighting technology and geothermal heat pump technology acceleration program to achieve maximum feasible replacement of existing lighting, heating, cooling [2] technologies with cost-effective lighting technologies and geothermal heat pump technologies in each GSA facility. Such program shall fully comply with the requirements of sections 321 through 324, 431 through 438, 461, 511 through 518, and 523 through 525 [1] and amendments made by those sections and any other provisions of law, which shall be applicable to the extent that they are more stringent or would achieve greater energy savings than required by this section.

(B) Acceleration plan timetable

(i) In general

To implement the program established under subparagraph (A), not later than 1 year after December 19, 2007, the Administrator shall establish a timetable of actions to comply with the requirements of this section and sections 431 through 435, whichever achieves greater energy savings most expeditiously, including milestones for specific activities needed to replace existing lighting, heating, cooling [2] technologies with cost-effective lighting technologies and geothermal heat pump technologies, to the maximum extent feasible (including at the maximum rate feasible), at each GSA facility.

(ii) Goal

The goal of the timetable under clause (i) shall be to complete, using available appropriations and programs implementing sections 431 through 435 [1] (and amendments made by those sections), maximum feasible replacement of existing lighting, heating, and cooling technologies with cost-effective lighting technologies and geothermal heat pump technologies consistent with the requirements of this section and sections 431 through 435,[1] whichever achieves greater energy savings most expeditiously. Notwithstanding any provision of this section, such program shall fully comply with the requirements of the Act [3] including sections 321 through 324, 431 through 438, 461, 511 through 518, and 523 through 525 and amendments made by those sections and other provisions of law, which shall be applicable to the extent that they are more stringent or would achieve greater energy or water savings than required by this section.

(d) GSA facility technologies and practices

(1) In general

Not later than 180 days after December 19, 2007, and annually thereafter, the Administrator shall—

(A) ensure that a manager responsible for implementing section 432 [1] and for accelerating the

use of cost-effective technologies and practices is designated for each GSA facility; and

(B) submit to Congress a plan to comply with section 432,[1] this section, and other applicable provisions of this Act and applicable law with respect to energy and water conservation at GSA facilities.

(2) Measures

The plan shall implement measures required by such other provisions of law in accordance with those provisions, and shall implement the measures required by this section to the maximum extent feasible (including at the maximum rate feasible) using available appropriations and programs implementing sections 431 through 435 and 525 [1] (and amendments made by those sections), by not later than the date that is 5 years after December 19, 2007.

(3) Contents of plan

The plan shall—

(A) with respect to cost-effective technologies and practices—

(i) identify the specific activities needed to comply with sections 431 through 435; [1]

(ii) identify the specific activities needed to achieve at least a 20-percent reduction in operational costs through the application of cost-effective technologies and practices from 2003 levels at GSA facilities by not later than 5 years after December 19, 2007;

(iii) describe activities required and carried out to estimate the funds necessary to achieve the reduction described in clauses (i) and (ii);

(B) include an estimate of the funds necessary to carry out this section;

(C) describe the status of the implementation of cost-effective technologies and practices at GSA facilities, including—

(i) the extent to which programs, including the program established under subsection (b), are being carried out in accordance with this part; and

(ii) the status of funding requests and appropriations for those programs;

(D) identify within the planning, budgeting, and construction processes, all types of GSA facility-related procedures that inhibit new and existing GSA facilities from implementing cost-effective technologies;

(E) recommend language for uniform standards for use by Federal agencies in implementing cost-effective technologies and practices;

(F) in coordination with the Office of Management and Budget, review the budget process for capital programs with respect to alternatives for—

(i) implementing measures that will assure that Federal agencies retain all identified savings accrued as a result of the use of cost-effective technologies, consistent with section 8253(a)(1) of this title, and other applicable law; and

(ii) identifying short- and long-term cost savings that accrue from the use of cost-effective technologies and practices;

(G) with respect to cost-effective technologies and practices, achieve substantial operational cost savings through the application of the technologies; and

(H) include recommendations to address each of the matters, and a plan for implementation of each recommendation, described in subparagraphs (A) through (G).

(4) Administration

Notwithstanding any provision of this section, the program required under this section shall fully comply with the requirements of sections 321 through 324, 431 through 438, 461, 511 through 518, and 523 through 525 [1] and amendments made by those sections, which shall be applicable to the extent that they are more stringent or would achieve greater energy or water savings than required by this section.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section, to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §439, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1620.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsecs. (b)(2)(D), (c)(2)(B)(ii), and (d)(1)(B), is Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1492, known as the Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007, which enacted this chapter and enacted and amended numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 17001 of this title and Tables.

Sections 321 through 324, 431 through 438, 461, 511 through 518, and 523 through 525, referred to in subsecs. (b)(2)(D), (c)(2)(A), (B)(ii), and (d)(4), are sections 321 to 324, 431 to 438, 461, 511 to 518, and 523 to 525, respectively, of Pub. L. 110–140, which enacted sections 17091 to 17094 of this title, part A (§17131) of subchapter IV of this chapter, subchapter V (§2695 et seq.) of chapter 53 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 3313 of Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works, amended sections 6291 to 6294, 6295, 6297, 6302, 6304, 6832, 6834, 8253, 8256, 8258, 8259b, 8287, and 8287c of this title, section 2913 of Title 10, Armed Forces, and sections 3307, 3310, and 3314 to 3316 of Title 40, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 6294, 6295, 6834, and 8259b of this title.

Sections 432 and 525, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(A), are sections 432 and 525 of Pub. L. 110–140, which amended sections 8253 and 8259b of this title and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 8259b of this title.

Sections 431 through 435, referred to in subsecs. (c)(2)(B) and (d)(2), (3)(A)(i), are sections 431 to 435 of Pub. L. 110–140, which enacted section 17091 of this title, amended sections 6832, 6834, and 8253 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 6834 of this title.

Section 432, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), is section 432 of Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1607, which amended section 8253 of this title.

Section 525, referred to in subsec. (d)(2), is section 525 of Pub. L. 110–140, December 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1663, which amended section 8259b of this title and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 8259b of this title.

This part, referred to in subsec. (d)(3)(C)(i), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle C (§§431–441) of title IV of Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1607, which enacted this part, amended sections 6832, 6834, 8253, and 8254 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 6834 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle C to the Code, see Tables.

[1] See References in Text note below.

[2] So in original. Probably should be "and cooling".

[3] So in original. Probably should be "this Act".

§17096. Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out sections 434 through 439 and 482 [1] $4,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2012, to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §440, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1623.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 434 through 439, referred to in text, are sections 434 to 439 of Pub. L. 110–140, which enacted sections 17091 to 17095 of this title and amended section 8253 of this title. Section 482 is unidentifiable because Pub. L. 110–140 does not contain a section 482.

[1] See References in Text note below.

PART D—INDUSTRIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

§17111. Energy-intensive industries program

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Eligible entity

The term "eligible entity" means—

(A) an energy-intensive industry;

(B) a national trade association representing an energy-intensive industry; or

(C) a person acting on behalf of 1 or more energy-intensive industries or sectors, as determined by the Secretary.

(2) Energy-intensive industry

The term "energy-intensive industry" means an industry that uses significant quantities of energy as part of its primary economic activities, including—

(A) information technology, including data centers containing electrical equipment used in processing, storing, and transmitting digital information;

(B) consumer product manufacturing;

(C) food processing;

(D) materials manufacturers, including—

(i) aluminum;

(ii) chemicals;

(iii) forest and paper products;

(iv) metal casting;

(v) glass;

(vi) petroleum refining;

(vii) mining; and

(viii) steel;

(E) other energy-intensive industries, as determined by the Secretary.

(3) Feedstock

The term "feedstock" means the raw material supplied for use in manufacturing, chemical, and biological processes.

(4) Partnership

The term "partnership" means an energy efficiency partnership established under subsection (c)(1)(A).

(5) Program

The term "program" means the energy-intensive industries program established under subsection (b).

(b) Establishment of program

The Secretary shall establish a program under which the Secretary, in cooperation with energy-intensive industries and national industry trade associations representing the energy-intensive industries, shall support, research, develop, and promote the use of new materials processes, technologies, and techniques to optimize energy efficiency and the economic competitiveness of the United States' industrial and commercial sectors.

(c) Partnerships

(1) In general

As part of the program, the Secretary shall establish energy efficiency partnerships between the

Secretary and eligible entities to conduct research on, develop, and demonstrate new processes, technologies, and operating practices and techniques to significantly improve the energy efficiency of equipment and processes used by energy-intensive industries, including the conduct of activities to—

(A) increase the energy efficiency of industrial processes and facilities;

(B) research, develop, and demonstrate advanced technologies capable of energy intensity reductions and increased environmental performance; and

(C) promote the use of the processes, technologies, and techniques described in subparagraphs (A) and (B).

(2) Eligible activities

Partnership activities eligible for funding under this subsection include—

(A) feedstock and recycling research, development, and demonstration activities to identify and promote—

(i) opportunities for meeting industry feedstock requirements with more energy efficient and flexible sources of feedstock or energy supply;

(ii) strategies to develop and deploy technologies that improve the quality and quantity of feedstocks recovered from process and waste streams; and

(iii) other methods using recycling, reuse, and improved industrial materials;

(B) research to develop and demonstrate technologies and processes that utilize alternative energy sources to supply heat, power, and new feedstocks for energy-intensive industries;

(C) research to achieve energy efficiency in steam, power, control system, and process heat technologies, and in other manufacturing processes; and

(D) industrial and commercial energy efficiency and sustainability assessments to—

(i) assist individual industrial and commercial sectors in developing tools, techniques, and methodologies to assess—

(I) the unique processes and facilities of the sectors;

(II) the energy utilization requirements of the sectors; and

(III) the application of new, more energy efficient technologies; and

(ii) conduct energy savings assessments;

(E) the incorporation of technologies and innovations that would significantly improve the energy efficiency and utilization of energy-intensive commercial applications; and

(F) any other activities that the Secretary determines to be appropriate.

(3) Proposals

(A) In general

To be eligible for funding under this subsection, a partnership shall submit to the Secretary a proposal that describes the proposed research, development, or demonstration activity to be conducted by the partnership.

(B) Review

After reviewing the scientific, technical, and commercial merit of a proposals [1] submitted under subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall approve or disapprove the proposal.

(C) Competitive awards

The provision of funding under this subsection shall be on a competitive basis.

(4) Cost-sharing requirement

In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall require cost sharing in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(d) Grants

The Secretary may award competitive grants for innovative technology research, development and demonstrations to universities, individual inventors, and small companies, based on energy savings potential, commercial viability, and technical merit.

(e) Institution of higher education-based industrial research and assessment centers

The Secretary shall provide funding to institution of higher education-based industrial research and assessment centers, whose purpose shall be—

(1) to identify opportunities for optimizing energy efficiency and environmental performance;

(2) to promote applications of emerging concepts and technologies in small- and medium-sized manufacturers;

(3) to promote research and development for the use of alternative energy sources to supply heat, power, and new feedstocks for energy-intensive industries;

(4) to coordinate with appropriate Federal and State research offices, and provide a clearinghouse for industrial process and energy efficiency technical assistance resources; and

(5) to coordinate with State-accredited technical training centers and community colleges, while ensuring appropriate services to all regions of the United States.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

(1) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this section—

(A) $184,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;

(B) $190,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;

(C) $196,000,000 for fiscal year 2010;

(D) $202,000,000 for fiscal year 2011;

(E) $208,000,000 for fiscal year 2012; and

(F) such sums as are necessary for fiscal year 2013 and each fiscal year thereafter.

(2) Partnership activities

Of the amounts made available under paragraph (1), not less than 50 percent shall be used to pay the Federal share of partnership activities under subsection (c).

(3) Coordination and nonduplication

The Secretary shall coordinate efforts under this section with other programs of the Department and other Federal agencies to avoid duplication of effort.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §452, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1634.)

[1] *So in original.*

§17112. Energy efficiency for data center buildings

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Data center

The term "data center" means any facility that primarily contains electronic equipment used to process, store, and transmit digital information, which may be—

(A) a free-standing structure; or

(B) a facility within a larger structure, that uses environmental control equipment to maintain the proper conditions for the operation of electronic equipment.

(2) Data center operator

The term "data center operator" means any person or government entity that builds or operates a data center or purchases data center services, equipment, and facilities.

(b) Voluntary national information program

(1) In general

Not later than 90 days after December 19, 2007, the Secretary and the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency shall, after consulting with information technology industry and other interested parties, initiate a voluntary national information program for those types of data centers and data center equipment and facilities that are widely used and for which there is a potential for significant data center energy savings as a result of the program.

(2) Requirements

The program described in paragraph (1) shall—

(A) address data center efficiency holistically, reflecting the total energy consumption of data centers as whole systems, including both equipment and facilities;

(B) consider prior work and studies undertaken in this area, including by the Environmental Protection Agency and the Department of Energy;

(C) consistent with the objectives described in paragraph (1), determine the type of data center and data center equipment and facilities to be covered under the program;

(D) produce specifications, measurements, best practices, and benchmarks that will enable data center operators to make more informed decisions about the energy efficiency and costs of data centers, and that take into account—

(i) the performance and use of servers, data storage devices, and other information technology equipment;

(ii) the efficiency of heating, ventilation, and air conditioning, cooling, and power conditioning systems, provided that no modification shall be required of a standard then in effect under the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (42 U.S.C. 6201 et seq.) for any covered heating, ventilation, air-conditioning, cooling or power-conditioning product;

(iii) energy savings from the adoption of software and data management techniques; and

(iv) other factors determined by the organization described in subsection (c);

(E) allow for creation of separate specifications, measurements, and benchmarks based on data center size and function, as well as other appropriate characteristics;

(F) advance the design and implementation of efficiency technologies to the maximum extent economically practical;

(G) provide to data center operators in the private sector and the Federal Government information about best practices and purchasing decisions that reduce the energy consumption of data centers; and

(H) publish the information described in subparagraph (G), which may be disseminated through catalogs, trade publications, the Internet, or other mechanisms, that will allow data center operators to assess the energy consumption and potential cost savings of alternative data centers and data center equipment and facilities.

(3) Procedures

The program described in paragraph (1) shall be developed in consultation with and coordinated by the organization described in subsection (c) according to commonly accepted procedures for the development of specifications, measurements, and benchmarks.

(c) Data center efficiency organization

(1) In general

After the establishment of the program described in subsection (b), the Secretary and the Administrator shall jointly designate an information technology industry organization to consult with and to coordinate the program.

(2) Requirements

The organization designated under paragraph (1), whether preexisting or formed specifically for the purposes of subsection (b), shall—

(A) consist of interested parties that have expertise in energy efficiency and in the development, operation, and functionality of computer data centers, information technology equipment, and software, as well as representatives of hardware manufacturers, data center operators, and facility managers;

(B) obtain and address input from Department of Energy National Laboratories or any college, university, research institution, industry association, company, or public interest group with applicable expertise in any of the areas listed in paragraph (1);

(C) follow commonly accepted procedures for the development of specifications and accredited standards development processes;

(D) have a mission to develop and promote energy efficiency for data centers and information technology; and

(E) have the primary responsibility to consult in the development and publishing of the information, measurements, and benchmarks described in subsection (b) and transmission of the information to the Secretary and the Administrator for consideration under subsection (d).

(d) Measurements and specifications

(1) In general

The Secretary and the Administrator shall consider the specifications, measurements, and benchmarks described in subsection (b) for use by the Federal Energy Management Program, the Energy Star Program, and other efficiency programs of the Department of Energy and Environmental Protection Agency, respectively.

(2) Rejections

If the Secretary or the Administrator rejects 1 or more specifications, measurements, or benchmarks described in subsection (b), the rejection shall be made consistent with section 12(d) of the National Technology Transfer and Advancement Act of 1995 (15 U.S.C. 272 note; Public Law 104–113).

(3) Determination of impracticability

A determination that a specification, measurement, or benchmark described in subsection (b) is impractical may include consideration of the maximum efficiency that is technologically feasible and economically justified.

(e) Monitoring

The Secretary and the Administrator shall—

(1) monitor and evaluate the efforts to develop the program described in subsection (b); and

(2) not later than 3 years after December 19, 2007, make a determination as to whether the program is consistent with the objectives of subsection (b).

(f) Alternative system

If the Secretary and the Administrator make a determination under subsection (e) that a voluntary national information program for data centers consistent with the objectives of subsection (b) has not been developed, the Secretary and the Administrator shall, after consultation with the National Institute of Standards and Technology and not later than 2 years after the determination, develop and implement the program under subsection (b).

(g) Protection of proprietary information

The Secretary, the Administrator, or the data center efficiency organization shall not disclose any proprietary information or trade secrets provided by any individual or company for the purposes of carrying out this section or the program established under this section.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §453, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1637.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Energy Policy and Conservation Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(D)(ii), is Pub. L. 94–163, Dec. 22, 1975, 89 Stat. 871, which is classified principally to chapter 77 (§6201 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6201 of this title and Tables.

PART E—GENERAL PROVISIONS

§17121. Demonstration project

(a) In general

The Federal Director and the Commercial Director shall establish guidelines to implement a demonstration project to contribute to the research goals of the Office of Commercial High-Performance Green Buildings and the Office of Federal High-Performance Green Buildings.

(b) Projects

In accordance with guidelines established by the Federal Director and the Commercial Director under subsection (a) and the duties of the Federal Director and the Commercial Director described in this title,[1] the Federal Director or the Commercial Director shall carry out—

(1) for each of fiscal years 2009 through 2014, 1 demonstration project per year of green features in a Federal building selected by the Federal Director in accordance with relevant agencies and described in subsection (c)(1), that—

(A) provides for instrumentation, monitoring, and data collection related to the green features, for study of the impact of the features on overall energy use and operational costs, and for the evaluation of the information obtained through the conduct of projects and activities under this title; [1] and

(B) achieves the highest rating offered by the high performance green building system identified pursuant to section 17092(h) of this title;

(2) no fewer than 4 demonstration projects at 4 universities, that, as competitively selected by the Commercial Director in accordance with subsection (c)(2), have—

(A) appropriate research resources and relevant projects to meet the goals of the demonstration project established by the Office of Commercial High-Performance Green Buildings; and

(B) the ability—

(i) to serve as a model for high-performance green building initiatives, including research and education [2] by achieving the highest rating offered by the high performance green building system identified pursuant to section 17092(h) of this title;

(ii) to identify the most effective ways to use high-performance green building and landscape technologies to engage and educate undergraduate and graduate students;

(iii) to effectively implement a high-performance green building education program for students and occupants;

(iv) to demonstrate the effectiveness of various high-performance technologies, including their impacts on energy use and operational costs, in each of the 4 climatic regions of the United States described in subsection (c)(2)(B); and

(v) to explore quantifiable and nonquantifiable beneficial impacts on public health and employee and student performance;

(3) demonstration projects to evaluate replicable approaches of achieving high performance in actual building operation in various types of commercial buildings in various climates; and

(4) deployment activities to disseminate information on and encourage widespread adoption of technologies, practices, and policies to achieve zero-net-energy commercial buildings or low energy use and effective monitoring of energy use in commercial buildings.

(c) Criteria

(1) Federal facilities

With respect to the existing or proposed Federal facility at which a demonstration project under this section is conducted, the Federal facility shall—

(A) be an appropriate model for a project relating to—

(i) the effectiveness of high-performance technologies;

(ii) analysis of materials, components, systems, and emergency operations in the building, and the impact of those materials, components, and systems, including the impact on the health of building occupants;

(iii) life-cycle costing and life-cycle assessment of building materials and systems; and

(iv) location and design that promote access to the Federal facility through walking, biking, and mass transit; and

(B) possess sufficient technological and organizational adaptability.

(2) Universities

With respect to the 4 universities at which a demonstration project under this section is conducted—

(A) the universities should be selected, after careful review of all applications received containing the required information, as determined by the Commercial Director, based on—

(i) successful and established public-private research and development partnerships;

(ii) demonstrated capabilities to construct or renovate buildings that meet high indoor environmental quality standards;

(iii) organizational flexibility;

(iv) technological adaptability;

(v) the demonstrated capacity of at least 1 university to replicate lessons learned among nearby or sister universities, preferably by participation in groups or consortia that promote sustainability;

(vi) the demonstrated capacity of at least 1 university to have officially-adopted, institution-wide "high-performance green building" guidelines for all campus building projects; and

(vii) the demonstrated capacity of at least 1 university to have been recognized by similar institutions as a national leader in sustainability education and curriculum for students of the university; and

(B) each university shall be located in a different climatic region of the United States, each of which regions shall have, as determined by the Office of Commercial High-Performance Green Buildings—

(i) a hot, dry climate;

(ii) a hot, humid climate;

(iii) a cold climate; or

(iv) a temperate climate (including a climate with cold winters and humid summers).

(d) Applications

To receive a grant under subsection (b), an eligible applicant shall submit to the Federal Director or the Commercial Director an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Director may require, including a written assurance that all laborers and mechanics employed by contractors or subcontractors during construction, alteration, or repair that is financed, in whole or in part, by a grant under this section shall be paid wages at rates not less than those prevailing on similar construction in the locality, as determined by the Secretary of Labor in accordance with sections 3141 through 3144, 3146, and 3147 of title 40. The Secretary of Labor shall, with respect to the labor standards described in this subsection, have the authority and functions set forth in Reorganization Plan Numbered 14 of 1950 (5 U.S.C. App.) and section 3145 of title 40.

(e) Report

Not later than 1 year after December 19, 2007, and annually thereafter through September 30, 2014—

(1) the Federal Director and the Commercial Director shall submit to the Secretary a report that describes the status of the demonstration projects; and

(2) each University at which a demonstration project under this section is conducted shall submit to the Secretary a report that describes the status of the demonstration projects under this section.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out the demonstration project described in section [3] (b)(1), $10,000,000 for the period of fiscal years 2008 through 2012, and to carry out the demonstration project described in section [3] (b)(2), $10,000,000 for the period of fiscal years 2008 through 2012, to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §491, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1649.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in subsec. (b), is title IV of Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1596, which enacted this subchapter, part C (§6341 et seq.) of subchapter III of chapter 77 of this title, sections 6371h–1 and 7628 of this title, and subchapter V (§2695 et seq.) of chapter 53 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, amended sections 6832, 6834, 6862, 6872, 8253, 8254, and 12709 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 6834 and 6872 of this title. For complete classification of title IV to the Code, see Tables.

Reorganization Plan Numbered 14 of 1950, referred to in subsec. (d), is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

[1] See References in Text note below.

[2] So in original. A comma probably should appear.

[3] So in original. Probably should be "subsection".

§17122. Research and development

(a) Establishment

The Federal Director and the Commercial Director, jointly and in coordination with the Advisory Committee, shall—

(1)(A) survey existing research and studies relating to high-performance green buildings; and

(B) coordinate activities of common interest;

(2) develop and recommend a high-performance green building research plan that—

(A) identifies information and research needs, including the relationships between human health, occupant productivity, safety, security, and accessibility and each of—

(i) emissions from materials and products in the building;

(ii) natural day lighting;

(iii) ventilation choices and technologies;

(iv) heating, cooling, and system control choices and technologies;

(v) moisture control and mold;

(vi) maintenance, cleaning, and pest control activities;

(vii) acoustics;

(viii) access to public transportation; and

(ix) other issues relating to the health, comfort, productivity, and performance of occupants of the building;

(B) promotes the development and dissemination of high-performance green building measurement tools that, at a minimum, may be used—

(i) to monitor and assess the life-cycle performance of facilities (including demonstration projects) built as high-performance green buildings; and

(ii) to perform life-cycle assessments; and

(C) identifies and tests new and emerging technologies for high-performance green buildings;

(3) assist the budget and life-cycle costing functions of the Directors' Offices under section 17092(d) of this title;

(4) study and identify potential benefits of green buildings relating to security, natural disaster, and emergency needs of the Federal Government; and

(5) support other research initiatives determined by the Directors' Offices.

(b) Indoor air quality

The Federal Director, in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency and the Advisory Committee, shall develop and carry out a comprehensive indoor air quality program for all Federal facilities to ensure the safety of Federal workers and facility occupants—

(1) during new construction and renovation of facilities; and

(2) in existing facilities.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §492, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1651.)

§17123. Green Building Advisory Committee

(a) Establishment

Not later than 180 days after December 19, 2007, the Federal Director, in coordination with the Commercial Director, shall establish an advisory committee, to be known as the "Green Building Advisory Committee".

(b) Membership

(1) In general

The Committee shall be composed of representatives of, at a minimum—

(A) each agency referred to in section 17081(e) of this title; and

(B) other relevant agencies and entities, as determined by the Federal Director, including at least 1 representative of each of—

(i) State and local governmental green building programs;

(ii) independent green building associations or councils;

(iii) building experts, including architects, material suppliers, and construction contractors;

(iv) security advisors focusing on national security needs, natural disasters, and other dire emergency situations;

(v) public transportation industry experts; and

(vi) environmental health experts, including those with experience in children's health.

(2) Non-Federal members

The total number of non-Federal members on the Committee at any time shall not exceed 15.

(c) Meetings

The Federal Director shall establish a regular schedule of meetings for the Committee.

(d) Duties

The Committee shall provide advice and expertise for use by the Federal Director in carrying out the duties under this part, including such recommendations relating to Federal activities carried out

under sections 434 through 436 [1] as are agreed to by a majority of the members of the Committee.

(e) FACA exemption

The Committee shall not be subject to section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.).

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §494, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1654.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This part, referred to in subsec. (d), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle H (§§491–495) of title IV of Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1649, which enacted this part and section 7628 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle H to the Code, see Tables.

Sections 434 through 436, referred to in subsec. (d), are sections 434 to 436 of Pub. L. 110–140, which enacted sections 17091 and 17092 of this title and amended section 8253 of this title.

Section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (e), is section 14 of Pub. L. 92–463, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§17124. Advisory Committee on Energy Efficiency Finance

(a) Establishment

The Secretary, acting through the Assistant Secretary of Energy for Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy, shall establish an Advisory Committee on Energy Efficiency Finance to provide advice and recommendations to the Department on energy efficiency finance and investment issues, options, ideas, and trends, and to assist the energy community in identifying practical ways of lowering costs and increasing investments in energy efficiency technologies.

(b) Membership

The advisory committee established under this section shall have a balanced membership that shall include members with expertise in—

(1) availability of seed capital;
(2) availability of venture capital;
(3) availability of other sources of private equity;
(4) investment banking with respect to corporate finance;
(5) investment banking with respect to mergers and acquisitions;
(6) equity capital markets;
(7) debt capital markets;
(8) research analysis;
(9) sales and trading;
(10) commercial lending; and
(11) residential lending.

(c) Termination

The Advisory Committee on Energy Efficiency Finance shall terminate on the date that is 10 years after December 19, 2007.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to the Secretary for carrying out this section.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IV, §495, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1654.)

SUBCHAPTER IV—ENERGY SAVINGS IN GOVERNMENT AND PUBLIC

INSTITUTIONS

PART A—ENERGY SAVINGS PERFORMANCE CONTRACTING

§17131. Training Federal contracting officers to negotiate energy efficiency contracts

(a) Program

The Secretary shall create and administer in the Federal Energy Management Program a training program to educate Federal contract negotiation and contract management personnel so that the contract officers are prepared to—

(1) negotiate energy savings performance contracts;

(2) conclude effective and timely contracts for energy efficiency services with all companies offering energy efficiency services; and

(3) review Federal contracts for all products and services for the potential energy efficiency opportunities and implications of the contracts.

(b) Schedule

Not later than 1 year after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall plan, staff, announce, and begin training under the Federal Energy Management Program.

(c) Personnel to be trained

Personnel appropriate to receive training under the Federal Energy Management Program shall be selected by and sent for the training from—

(1) the Department of Defense;

(2) the Department of Veterans Affairs;

(3) the Department;

(4) the General Services Administration;

(5) the Department of Housing and Urban Development;

(6) the United States Postal Service; and

(7) all other Federal agencies and departments that enter contracts for buildings, building services, electricity and electricity services, natural gas and natural gas services, heating and air conditioning services, building fuel purchases, and other types of procurement or service contracts determined by the Secretary, in carrying out the Federal Energy Management Program, to offer the potential for energy savings and greenhouse gas emission reductions if negotiated with taking into account those goals.

(d) Trainers

Training under the Federal Energy Management Program may be conducted by—

(1) attorneys or contract officers with experience in negotiating and managing contracts described in subsection (c)(7) from any agency, except that the Secretary shall reimburse the related salaries and expenses of the attorneys or contract officers from amounts made available for carrying out this section to the extent the attorneys or contract officers are not employees of the Department; and

(2) private experts hired by the Secretary for the purposes of this section, except that the Secretary may not hire experts who are simultaneously employed by any company under contract to provide energy efficiency services to the Federal Government.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this section $750,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title V, §517, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1659.)

PART B—ENERGY EFFICIENCY IN FEDERAL AGENCIES

§17141. Prohibition on incandescent lamps by Coast Guard

(a) Prohibition

Except as provided by subsection (b), on and after January 1, 2009, a general service incandescent lamp shall not be purchased or installed in a Coast Guard facility by or on behalf of the Coast Guard.

(b) Exception

A general service incandescent lamp may be purchased, installed, and used in a Coast Guard facility whenever the application of a general service incandescent lamp is—

(1) necessary due to purpose or design, including medical, security, and industrial applications;

(2) reasonable due to the architectural or historical value of a light fixture installed before January 1, 2009; or

(3) the Commandant of the Coast Guard determines that operational requirements necessitate the use of a general service incandescent lamp.

(c) Limitation

In this section, the term "facility" does not include a vessel or aircraft of the Coast Guard.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title V, §522, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1662.)

§17142. Procurement and acquisition of alternative fuels

No Federal agency shall enter into a contract for procurement of an alternative or synthetic fuel, including a fuel produced from nonconventional petroleum sources, for any mobility-related use, other than for research or testing, unless the contract specifies that the lifecycle greenhouse gas emissions associated with the production and combustion of the fuel supplied under the contract must, on an ongoing basis, be less than or equal to such emissions from the equivalent conventional fuel produced from conventional petroleum sources.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title V, §526, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1663.)

WAIVER AUTHORITY FOR ALTERNATIVE FUEL PROCUREMENT REQUIREMENT

Pub. L. 114–328, div. A, title III, §312, Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2073, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Defense may waive the requirement under section 526 of the Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007 (Public Law 110–140; 42 U.S.C. 17142) if the Secretary determines it is in the national security interest of the United States.

"(b) NOTIFICATION REQUIREMENT.—The Secretary of Defense shall notify the congressional defense committees [Committees on Armed Services and Appropriations of the Senate and the House of Representatives] not later than 15 days after exercising the waiver authority under subsection (a)."

§17143. Government efficiency status reports

(a) In general

Each Federal agency subject to any of the requirements of this title [1] or the amendments made by this title [1] shall compile and submit to the Director of the Office of Management and Budget an annual Government efficiency status report on—

(1) compliance by the agency with each of the requirements of this title [1] and the amendments

made by this title; [1]

(2) the status of the implementation by the agency of initiatives to improve energy efficiency, reduce energy costs, and reduce emissions of greenhouse gases; and

(3) savings to the taxpayers of the United States resulting from mandated improvements under this title [1] and the amendments made by this title.[1]

(b) Submission

The report shall be submitted—

(1) to the Director at such time as the Director requires;

(2) in electronic, not paper, format; and

(3) consistent with related reporting requirements.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title V, §527, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1663.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in subsec. (a), is title V of Pub. L. 110–140, which enacted this subchapter, part D (§8279) of subchapter III of chapter 91 of this title, and sections 1824, 2162a, and 2169 of Title 2, The Congress, amended sections 6325, 6834, 8256, 8258, 8259b, 8287, and 8287c of this title, section 2162 of Title 2, section 2913 of Title 10, Armed Forces, section 3203 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 2621 of Title 16, Conservation, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 8259b of this title. For complete classification of title V to the Code, see Tables.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§17144. OMB Government efficiency reports and scorecards

(a) Reports

Not later than April 1 of each year, the Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall submit an annual Government efficiency report to the Committee on Oversight and Government Reform of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Governmental Affairs of the Senate, which shall contain—

(1) a summary of the information reported by agencies under section 17143 of this title;

(2) an evaluation of the overall progress of the Federal Government toward achieving the goals of this title [1] and the amendments made by this title; [1] and

(3) recommendations for additional actions necessary to meet the goals of this title [1] and the amendments made by this title.[1]

(b) Scorecards

The Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall include in any annual energy scorecard the Director is otherwise required to submit a description of the compliance of each agency with the requirements of this title [1] and the amendments made by this title.[1]

(Pub. L. 110–140, title V, §528, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1664.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in text, is title V of Pub. L. 110–140, which enacted this subchapter, part D (§8279) of subchapter III of chapter 91 of this title, and sections 1824, 2162a, and 2169 of Title 2, The Congress, amended sections 6325, 6834, 8256, 8258, 8259b, 8287, and 8287c of this title, section 2162 of Title 2, section 2913 of Title 10, Armed Forces, section 3203 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 2621 of Title 16, Conservation, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 8259b of this title. For complete classification of title V to the Code, see Tables.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

PART C—ENERGY EFFICIENCY AND CONSERVATION BLOCK GRANTS

§17151. Definitions

In this part:

(1) Eligible entity

The term "eligible entity" means—

(A) a State;

(B) an eligible unit of local government; and

(C) an Indian tribe.

(2) Eligible unit of local government

The term "eligible unit of local government" means—

(A) an eligible unit of local government-alternative 1; and

(B) an eligible unit of local government-alternative 2.

(3)(A) Eligible unit of local government-alternative 1

The term "eligible unit of local government-alternative 1" means—

(i) a city with a population—

(I) of at least 35,000; or

(II) that causes the city to be 1 of the 10 highest-populated cities of the State in which the city is located; and

(ii) a county with a population—

(I) of at least 200,000; or

(II) that causes the county to be 1 of the 10 highest-populated counties of the State in which the county is located.

(B) Eligible unit of local government-alternative 2

The term "eligible unit of local government-alternative 2" means—

(i) a city with a population of at least 50,000; or

(ii) a county with a population of at least 200,000.

(4) Indian tribe

The term "Indian tribe" has the meaning given the term in section 5304 of title 25.

(5) Program

The term "program" means the Energy Efficiency and Conservation Block Grant Program established under section 17152(a) of this title.

(6) State

The term "State" means—

(A) a State;

(B) the District of Columbia;

(C) the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico; and

(D) any other territory or possession of the United States.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title V, §541, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1667.)

§17152. Energy Efficiency and Conservation Block Grant Program

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a program, to be known as the "Energy Efficiency and Conservation

Block Grant Program", under which the Secretary shall provide grants to eligible entities in accordance with this part.

(b) Purpose

The purpose of the program shall be to assist eligible entities in implementing strategies—

(1) to reduce fossil fuel emissions created as a result of activities within the jurisdictions of eligible entities in a manner that—

(A) is environmentally sustainable; and

(B) to the maximum extent practicable, maximizes benefits for local and regional communities;

(2) to reduce the total energy use of the eligible entities; and

(3) to improve energy efficiency in—

(A) the transportation sector;

(B) the building sector; and

(C) other appropriate sectors.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title V, §542, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1668.)

§17153. Allocation of funds

(a) In general

Of amounts made available to provide grants under this part for each fiscal year, the Secretary shall allocate—

(1) 34 percent to eligible units of local government—alternative 1, in accordance with subsection (b);

(2) 34 percent to eligible units of local government—alternative 2, in accordance with subsection (b);

(3) 28 percent to States in accordance with subsection (c);

(4) 2 percent to Indian tribes in accordance with subsection (d); and

(5) 2 percent for competitive grants under section 17156 of this title.

(b) Eligible units of local government

Of amounts available for distribution to eligible units of local government under subsection (a)(1) or (2), the Secretary shall provide grants to eligible units of local government under this section based on a formula established by the Secretary according to—

(1) the populations served by the eligible units of local government, according to the latest available decennial census; and

(2) the daytime populations of the eligible units of local government and other similar factors (such as square footage of commercial, office, and industrial space), as determined by the Secretary.

(c) States

Of amounts available for distribution to States under subsection (a)(2), the Secretary shall provide—

(1) not less than 1.25 percent to each State; and

(2) the remainder among the States, based on a formula to be established by the Secretary that takes into account—

(A) the population of each State; and

(B) any other criteria that the Secretary determines to be appropriate.

(d) Indian tribes

Of amounts available for distribution to Indian tribes under subsection (a)(3), the Secretary shall establish a formula for allocation of the amounts to Indian tribes, taking into account any factors that the Secretary determines to be appropriate.

(e) Publication of allocation formulas

Not later than 90 days before the beginning of each fiscal year for which grants are provided under this part, the Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register the formulas for allocation established under this section.

(f) State and local advisory committee

The Secretary shall establish a State and local advisory committee to advise the Secretary regarding administration, implementation, and evaluation of the program.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title V, §543, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1668; Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title IV, §404(a), (b), Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 143.)

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–5, §404(a)(2), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "68 percent to eligible units of local government in accordance with subsection (b);".

Subsec. (a)(2) to (5). Pub. L. 111–5, §404(a), added par. (2) and redesignated former pars. (2) to (4) as (3) to (5), respectively.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–5, §404(b), substituted "subsection (a)(1) or (2)" for "subsection (a)(1)" in introductory provisions.

§17154. Use of funds

An eligible entity may use a grant received under this part to carry out activities to achieve the purposes of the program, including—

(1) development and implementation of an energy efficiency and conservation strategy under section 17155(b) of this title;

(2) retaining technical consultant services to assist the eligible entity in the development of such a strategy, including—

(A) formulation of energy efficiency, energy conservation, and energy usage goals;

(B) identification of strategies to achieve those goals—

(i) through efforts to increase energy efficiency and reduce energy consumption; and

(ii) by encouraging behavioral changes among the population served by the eligible entity;

(C) development of methods to measure progress in achieving the goals;

(D) development and publication of annual reports to the population served by the eligible entity describing—

(i) the strategies and goals; and

(ii) the progress made in achieving the strategies and goals during the preceding calendar year; and

(E) other services to assist in the implementation of the energy efficiency and conservation strategy;

(3) conducting residential and commercial building energy audits;

(4) establishment of financial incentive programs for energy efficiency improvements;

(5) the provision of grants to nonprofit organizations and governmental agencies for the purpose of performing energy efficiency retrofits;

(6) development and implementation of energy efficiency and conservation programs for buildings and facilities within the jurisdiction of the eligible entity, including—

(A) design and operation of the programs;

(B) identifying the most effective methods for achieving maximum participation and efficiency rates;

(C) public education;

(D) measurement and verification protocols; and

(E) identification of energy efficient technologies;

(7) development and implementation of programs to conserve energy used in transportation, including—
(A) use of flex time by employers;
(B) satellite work centers;
(C) development and promotion of zoning guidelines or requirements that promote energy efficient development;
(D) development of infrastructure, such as bike lanes and pathways and pedestrian walkways;
(E) synchronization of traffic signals; and
(F) other measures that increase energy efficiency and decrease energy consumption;

(8) development and implementation of building codes and inspection services to promote building energy efficiency;
(9) application and implementation of energy distribution technologies that significantly increase energy efficiency, including—
(A) distributed resources; and
(B) district heating and cooling systems;

(10) activities to increase participation and efficiency rates for material conservation programs, including source reduction, recycling, and recycled content procurement programs that lead to increases in energy efficiency;
(11) the purchase and implementation of technologies to reduce, capture, and, to the maximum extent practicable, use methane and other greenhouse gases generated by landfills or similar sources;
(12) replacement of traffic signals and street lighting with energy efficient lighting technologies, including—
(A) light emitting diodes; and
(B) any other technology of equal or greater energy efficiency;

(13) development, implementation, and installation on or in any government building of the eligible entity of onsite renewable energy technology that generates electricity from renewable resources, including—
(A) solar energy;
(B) wind energy;
(C) fuel cells; and
(D) biomass; and

(14) any other appropriate activity, as determined by the Secretary, in consultation with—
(A) the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency;
(B) the Secretary of Transportation; and
(C) the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title V, §544, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1669.)

§17155. Requirements for eligible entities

(a) Construction requirement

(1) In general

To be eligible to receive a grant under the program, each eligible applicant shall submit to the Secretary a written assurance that all laborers and mechanics employed by any contractor or subcontractor of the eligible entity during any construction, alteration, or repair activity funded, in whole or in part, by the grant shall be paid wages at rates not less than the prevailing wages for

similar construction activities in the locality, as determined by the Secretary of Labor, in accordance with sections 3141 through 3144, 3146, and 3147 of title 40.

(2) Secretary of Labor

With respect to the labor standards referred to in paragraph (1), the Secretary of Labor shall have the authority and functions described in—

(A) Reorganization Plan Numbered 14 of 1950 (5 U.S.C. 903 note); [1] and
(B) section 3145 of title 40.

(b) Eligible units of local government and Indian tribes

(1) Proposed strategy

(A) In general

Not later than 1 year after the date on which an eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe receives a grant under this part, the eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe shall submit to the Secretary a proposed energy efficiency and conservation strategy in accordance with this paragraph.

(B) Inclusions

The proposed strategy under subparagraph (A) shall include—

(i) a description of the goals of the eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe, in accordance with the purposes of this part, for increased energy efficiency and conservation in the jurisdiction of the eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe; and

(ii) a plan for the use of the grant to assist the eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe in achieving those goals, in accordance with section 17154 of this title.

(C) Requirements for eligible units of local government

In developing the strategy under subparagraph (A), an eligible unit of local government shall—

(i) take into account any plans for the use of funds by adjacent eligible units of local governments that receive grants under the program; and

(ii) coordinate and share information with the State in which the eligible unit of local government is located regarding activities carried out using the grant to maximize the energy efficiency and conservation benefits under this part.

(2) Approval by Secretary

(A) In general

The Secretary shall approve or disapprove a proposed strategy under paragraph (1) by not later than 120 days after the date of submission of the proposed strategy.

(B) Disapproval

If the Secretary disapproves a proposed strategy under subparagraph (A)—

(i) the Secretary shall provide to the eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe the reasons for the disapproval; and

(ii) the eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe may revise and resubmit the proposed strategy as many times as necessary until the Secretary approves a proposed strategy.

(C) Requirement

The Secretary shall not provide to an eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe any grant under the program until a proposed strategy of the eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe is approved by the Secretary under this paragraph.

(3) Limitations on use of funds

Of amounts provided to an eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe under the program, an eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe may use—

(A) for administrative expenses, excluding the cost of meeting the reporting requirements of this part, an amount equal to the greater of—

(i) 10 percent; and [2]

(ii) $75,000;

(B) for the establishment of revolving loan funds, an amount equal to the greater of—

(i) 20 percent; and [2]

(ii) $250,000; and

(C) for the provision of subgrants to nongovernmental organizations for the purpose of assisting in the implementation of the energy efficiency and conservation strategy of the eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe, an amount equal to the greater of—

(i) 20 percent; and [2]

(ii) $250,000.

(4) Annual report

Not later than 2 years after the date on which funds are initially provided to an eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe under the program, and annually thereafter, the eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe shall submit to the Secretary a report describing—

(A) the status of development and implementation of the energy efficiency and conservation strategy of the eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe; and

(B) as practicable, an assessment of energy efficiency gains within the jurisdiction of the eligible unit of local government or Indian tribe.

(c) States

(1) Distribution of funds

(A) In general

A State that receives a grant under the program shall use not less than 60 percent of the amount received to provide subgrants to units of local government in the State that are not eligible units of local government.

(B) Deadline

The State shall provide the subgrants required under subparagraph (A) by not later than 180 days after the date on which the Secretary approves a proposed energy efficiency and conservation strategy of the State under paragraph (3).

(2) Revision of conservation plan; proposed strategy

Not later than 120 days after December 19, 2007, each State shall—

(A) modify the State energy conservation plan of the State under section 6322 of this title to establish additional goals for increased energy efficiency and conservation in the State; and

(B) submit to the Secretary a proposed energy efficiency and conservation strategy that—

(i) establishes a process for providing subgrants as required under paragraph (1); and

(ii) includes a plan of the State for the use of funds received under the program to assist the State in achieving the goals established under subparagraph (A), in accordance with sections 17152(b) and 17154 of this title.

(3) Approval by Secretary

(A) In general

The Secretary shall approve or disapprove a proposed strategy under paragraph (2)(B) by not later than 120 days after the date of submission of the proposed strategy.

(B) Disapproval

If the Secretary disapproves a proposed strategy under subparagraph (A)—

(i) the Secretary shall provide to the State the reasons for the disapproval; and

(ii) the State may revise and resubmit the proposed strategy as many times as necessary until the Secretary approves a proposed strategy.

(C) Requirement

The Secretary shall not provide to a State any grant under the program until a proposed strategy of the State is approved by the Secretary under this paragraph.

(4) Limitations on use of funds

A State may use not more than 10 percent of amounts provided under the program for administrative expenses.

(5) Annual reports

Each State that receives a grant under the program shall submit to the Secretary an annual report that describes—

(A) the status of development and implementation of the energy efficiency and conservation strategy of the State during the preceding calendar year;

(B) the status of the subgrant program of the State under paragraph (1);

(C) the energy efficiency gains achieved through the energy efficiency and conservation strategy of the State during the preceding calendar year; and

(D) specific energy efficiency and conservation goals of the State for subsequent calendar years.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title V, §545, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1670.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan Numbered 14 of 1950, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(A), is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. Section 903 of Title 5 relates to Presidential authority regarding reorganization plans.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be "or".*

§17156. Competitive grants

(a) In general

Of the total amount made available for each fiscal year to carry out this part, the Secretary shall use not less than 2 percent to provide grants under this section, on a competitive basis, to—

(1) units of local government (including Indian tribes) that are not eligible entities; and

(2) consortia of units of local government described in paragraph (1).

(b) Applications

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, a unit of local government or consortia shall submit to the Secretary an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary may require, including a plan of the unit of local government to carry out an activity described in section 17154 of this title.

(c) Priority

In providing grants under this section, the Secretary shall give priority to units of local government—

(1) located in States with populations of less than 2,000,000; or

(2) that plan to carry out projects that would result in significant energy efficiency improvements or reductions in fossil fuel use.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title V, §546, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1673.)

§17157. Review and evaluation

(a) In general

The Secretary may review and evaluate the performance of any eligible entity that receives a grant under the program, including by conducting an audit, as the Secretary determines to be appropriate.

(b) Withholding of funds

The Secretary may withhold from an eligible entity any portion of a grant to be provided to the eligible entity under the program if the Secretary determines that the eligible entity has failed to achieve compliance with—

(1) any applicable guideline or regulation of the Secretary relating to the program, including the misuse or misappropriation of funds provided under the program; or

(2) the energy efficiency and conservation strategy of the eligible entity.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title V, §547, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1674.)

§17158. Funding

(a) Authorization of appropriations

(1) Grants

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for the provision of grants under the program $2,000,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(2) Administrative costs

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for administrative expenses of the program—

(A) $20,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 and 2009;

(B) $25,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2010 and 2011; and

(C) $30,000,000 for fiscal year 2012.

(b) Maintenance of funding

The funding provided under this section shall supplement (and not supplant) other Federal funding provided under—

(1) a State energy conservation plan established under part D of title III of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.); or

(2) the Weatherization Assistance Program for Low-Income Persons established under part A of title IV of the Energy Conservation and Production Act (42 U.S.C. 6861 et seq.).

(Pub. L. 110–140, title V, §548, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1674; Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title IV, §404(c), Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 143.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Energy Policy and Conservation Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is Pub. L. 94–163, Dec. 22, 1975, 89 Stat. 871. Part D of title III of the Act is classified generally to part B (§6321 et seq.) of subchapter III of chapter 77 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6201 of this title and Tables.

The Energy Conservation and Production Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is Pub. L. 94–385, Aug. 14, 1976, 90 Stat. 1125. Part A of title IV of the Act is classified generally to part A (§6861 et seq.) of subchapter III of chapter 81 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6801 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–5 struck out "; provided that 49 percent of the appropriated funds shall be distributed using the definition of eligible unit of local government-alternative 1 in section 17151(3)(A) of this title and 49 percent of the appropriated funds shall be distributed using the definition of eligible unit of local government-alternative 2 in section 17151(3)(B) of this title" after "2012".

SUBCHAPTER V—ACCELERATED RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT

PART A—SOLAR ENERGY

§17171. Thermal energy storage research and development program

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a program of research and development to provide lower cost and more viable thermal energy storage technologies to enable the shifting of electric power loads on demand and extend the operating time of concentrating solar power electric generating plants.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section $5,000,000 for fiscal year 2008, $7,000,000 for fiscal year 2009, $9,000,000 for fiscal year 2010, $10,000,000 for fiscal year 2011, and $12,000,000 for fiscal year 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §602, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1674.)

SHORT TITLE

This part known as the "Solar Energy Research and Advancement Act of 2007", see Short Title note set out under section 17001 of this title.

§17172. Solar energy curriculum development and certification grants

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish in the Office of Solar Energy Technologies a competitive grant program to create and strengthen solar industry workforce training and internship programs in installation, operation, and maintenance of solar energy products. The goal of this program is to ensure a supply of well-trained individuals to support the expansion of the solar energy industry.

(b) Authorized activities

Grant funds may be used to support the following activities:

(1) Creation and development of a solar energy curriculum appropriate for the local educational, entrepreneurial, and environmental conditions, including curriculum for community colleges.

(2) Support of certification programs for individual solar energy system installers, instructors, and training programs.

(3) Internship programs that provide hands-on participation by students in commercial applications.

(4) Activities required to obtain certification of training programs and facilities by an industry-accepted quality-control certification program.

(5) Incorporation of solar-specific learning modules into traditional occupational training and internship programs for construction-related trades.

(6) The purchase of equipment necessary to carry out activities under this section.

(7) Support of programs that provide guidance and updates to solar energy curriculum instructors.

(c) Administration of grants

Grants may be awarded under this section for up to 3 years. The Secretary shall award grants to ensure sufficient geographic distribution of training programs nationally. Grants shall only be

awarded for programs certified by an industry-accepted quality-control certification institution, or for new and growing programs with a credible path to certification. Due consideration shall be given to women, underrepresented minorities, and persons with disabilities.

(d) Report

The Secretary shall make public, on the website of the Department or upon request, information on the name and institution for all grants awarded under this section, including a brief description of the project as well as the grant award amount.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section $10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §604, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1675.)

§17173. Daylighting systems and direct solar light pipe technology

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a program of research and development to provide assistance in the demonstration and commercial application of direct solar renewable energy sources to provide alternatives to traditional power generation for lighting and illumination, including light pipe technology, and to promote greater energy conservation and improved efficiency. All direct solar renewable energy devices supported under this program shall have the capability to provide measurable data on the amount of kilowatt-hours saved over the traditionally powered light sources they have replaced.

(b) Reporting

The Secretary shall transmit to Congress an annual report assessing the measurable data derived from each project in the direct solar renewable energy sources program and the energy savings resulting from its use.

(c) Definitions

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term "direct solar renewable energy" means energy from a device that converts sunlight into useable light within a building, tunnel, or other enclosed structure, replacing artificial light generated by a light fixture and doing so without the conversion of the sunlight into another form of energy; and

(2) the term "light pipe" means a device designed to transport visible solar radiation from its collection point to the interior of a building while excluding interior heat gain in the nonheating season.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section $3,500,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §605, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1676.)

§17174. Solar air conditioning research and development program

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a research, development, and demonstration program to promote less costly and more reliable decentralized distributed solar-powered air conditioning for individuals and businesses.

(b) Authorized activities

Grants made available under this section may be used to support the following activities:

(1) Advancing solar thermal collectors, including concentrating solar thermal and electric systems, flat plate and evacuated tube collector performance.

(2) Achieving technical and economic integration of solar-powered distributed air-conditioning systems with existing hot water and storage systems for residential applications.

(3) Designing and demonstrating mass manufacturing capability to reduce costs of modular standardized solar-powered distributed air conditioning systems and components.

(4) Improving the efficiency of solar-powered distributed air-conditioning to increase the effectiveness of solar-powered absorption chillers, solar-driven compressors and condensors,[1] and cost-effective precooling approaches.

(5) Researching and comparing performance of solar-powered distributed air conditioning systems in different regions of the country, including potential integration with other onsite systems, such as solar, biogas, geothermal heat pumps, and propane assist or combined propane fuel cells, with a goal to develop site-specific energy production and management systems that ease fuel and peak utility loading.

(c) Cost sharing

Section 16352 of this title shall apply to a project carried out under this section.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this section $2,500,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §606, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1676.)

[1] *So in original.*

§17175. Photovoltaic demonstration program

(a) In general

The Secretary shall establish a program of grants to States to demonstrate advanced photovoltaic technology.

(b) Requirements

(1) Ability to meet requirements

To receive funding under the program under this section, a State must submit a proposal that demonstrates, to the satisfaction of the Secretary, that the State will meet the requirements of subsection (f).

(2) Compliance with requirements

If a State has received funding under this section for the preceding year, the State must demonstrate, to the satisfaction of the Secretary, that it complied with the requirements of subsection (f) in carrying out the program during that preceding year, and that it will do so in the future, before it can receive further funding under this section.

(c) Competition

The Secretary shall award grants on a competitive basis to the States with the proposals the Secretary considers most likely to encourage the widespread adoption of photovoltaic technologies. The Secretary shall take into consideration the geographic distribution of awards.

(d) Proposals

Not later than 6 months after December 19, 2007, and in each subsequent fiscal year for the life of the program, the Secretary shall solicit proposals from the States to participate in the program under this section.

(e) Competitive criteria

In awarding funds in a competitive allocation under subsection (c), the Secretary shall consider—

(1) the likelihood of a proposal to encourage the demonstration of, or lower the costs of, advanced photovoltaic technologies; and

(2) the extent to which a proposal is likely to—

(A) maximize the amount of photovoltaics demonstrated;

(B) maximize the proportion of non-Federal cost share; and

(C) limit State administrative costs.

(f) State program

A program operated by a State with funding under this section shall provide competitive awards for the demonstration of advanced photovoltaic technologies. Each State program shall—

(1) require a contribution of at least 60 percent per award from non-Federal sources, which may include any combination of State, local, and private funds, except that at least 10 percent of the funding must be supplied by the State;

(2) endeavor to fund recipients in the commercial, industrial, institutional, governmental, and residential sectors;

(3) limit State administrative costs to no more than 10 percent of the grant;

(4) report annually to the Secretary on—

(A) the amount of funds disbursed;

(B) the amount of photovoltaics purchased; and

(C) the results of the monitoring under paragraph (5);

(5) provide for measurement and verification of the output of a representative sample of the photovoltaics systems demonstrated throughout the average working life of the systems, or at least 20 years; and

(6) require that applicant buildings must have received an independent energy efficiency audit during the 6-month period preceding the filing of the application.

(g) Unexpended funds

If a State fails to expend any funds received under this section within 3 years of receipt, such remaining funds shall be returned to the Treasury.

(h) Reports

The Secretary shall report to Congress 5 years after funds are first distributed to the States under this section—

(1) the amount of photovoltaics demonstrated;

(2) the number of projects undertaken;

(3) the administrative costs of the program;

(4) the results of the monitoring under subsection (f)(5); and

(5) the total amount of funds distributed, including a breakdown by State.

(i) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for the purposes of carrying out this section—

(1) $15,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;

(2) $30,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;

(3) $45,000,000 for fiscal year 2010;

(4) $60,000,000 for fiscal year 2011; and

(5) $70,000,000 for fiscal year 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §607, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1677.)

PART B—GEOTHERMAL ENERGY

§17191. Definitions

For purposes of this part:

(1) Engineered

When referring to enhanced geothermal systems, the term "engineered" means subjected to intervention, including intervention to address one or more of the following issues:

(A) Lack of effective permeability or porosity or open fracture connectivity within the reservoir.

(B) Insufficient contained geofluid in the reservoir.

(C) A low average geothermal gradient, which necessitates deeper drilling.

(2) Enhanced geothermal systems

The term "enhanced geothermal systems" means geothermal reservoir systems that are engineered, as opposed to occurring naturally.

(3) Geofluid

The term "geofluid" means any fluid used to extract thermal energy from the Earth which is transported to the surface for direct use or electric power generation, except that such term shall not include oil or natural gas.

(4) Geopressured resources

The term "geopressured resources" mean geothermal deposits found in sedimentary rocks under higher than normal pressure and saturated with gas or methane.

(5) Geothermal

The term "geothermal" refers to heat energy stored in the Earth's crust that can be accessed for direct use or electric power generation.

(6) Hydrothermal

The term "hydrothermal" refers to naturally occurring subsurface reservoirs of hot water or steam.

(7) Systems approach

The term "systems approach" means an approach to solving problems or designing systems that attempts to optimize the performance of the overall system, rather than a particular component of the system.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §612, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1679.)

SHORT TITLE

This part known as the "Advanced Geothermal Energy Research and Development Act of 2007", see Short Title note set out under section 17001 of this title.

§17192. Hydrothermal research and development

(a) In general

The Secretary shall support programs of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application to expand the use of geothermal energy production from hydrothermal systems, including the programs described in subsection (b).

(b) Programs

(1) Advanced hydrothermal resource tools

The Secretary, in consultation with other appropriate agencies, shall support a program to

develop advanced geophysical, geochemical, and geologic tools to assist in locating hidden hydrothermal resources, and to increase the reliability of site characterization before, during, and after initial drilling. The program shall develop new prospecting techniques to assist in prioritization of targets for characterization. The program shall include a field component.

(2) Industry coupled exploratory drilling

The Secretary shall support a program of cost-shared field demonstration programs, to be pursued, simultaneously and independently, in collaboration with industry partners, for the demonstration of advanced technologies and techniques of siting and exploratory drilling for undiscovered resources in a variety of geologic settings. The program shall include incentives to encourage the use of advanced technologies and techniques.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §613, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1679.)

§17193. General geothermal systems research and development

(a) Subsurface components and systems

The Secretary shall support a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of components and systems capable of withstanding extreme geothermal environments and necessary to cost-effectively develop, produce, and monitor geothermal reservoirs and produce geothermal energy. These components and systems shall include advanced casing systems (expandable tubular casing, low-clearance casing designs, and others), high-temperature cements, high-temperature submersible pumps, and high-temperature packers, as well as technologies for under-reaming, multilateral completions, high-temperature and high-pressure logging, logging while drilling, deep fracture stimulation, and reservoir system diagnostics.

(b) Reservoir performance modeling

The Secretary shall support a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of models of geothermal reservoir performance, with an emphasis on accurately modeling performance over time. Models shall be developed to assist both in the development of geothermal reservoirs and to more accurately account for stress-related effects in stimulated hydrothermal and enhanced geothermal systems production environments.

(c) Environmental impacts

The Secretary shall—

(1) support a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of technologies and practices designed to mitigate or preclude potential adverse environmental impacts of geothermal energy development, production or use, and seek to ensure that geothermal energy development is consistent with the highest practicable standards of environmental stewardship;

(2) in conjunction with the Assistant Administrator for Research and Development at the Environmental Protection Agency, support a research program to identify potential environmental impacts of geothermal energy development, production, and use, and ensure that the program described in paragraph (1) addresses such impacts, including effects on groundwater and local hydrology; and

(3) support a program of research to compare the potential environmental impacts identified as part of the development, production, and use of geothermal energy with the potential emission reductions of greenhouse gases gained by geothermal energy development, production, and use.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §614, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1680.)

§17194. Enhanced geothermal systems research and development

(a) In general

The Secretary shall support a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application for enhanced geothermal systems, including the programs described in subsection (b).

(b) Programs

(1) Enhanced geothermal systems technologies

The Secretary shall support a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of the technologies and knowledge necessary for enhanced geothermal systems to advance to a state of commercial readiness, including advances in—

(A) reservoir stimulation;
(B) reservoir characterization, monitoring, and modeling;
(C) stress mapping;
(D) tracer development;
(E) three-dimensional tomography; and
(F) understanding seismic effects of reservoir engineering and stimulation.

(2) Enhanced geothermal systems reservoir stimulation

(A) Program

In collaboration with industry partners, the Secretary shall support a program of research, development, and demonstration of enhanced geothermal systems reservoir stimulation technologies and techniques. A minimum of 4 sites shall be selected in locations that show particular promise for enhanced geothermal systems development. Each site shall—

(i) represent a different class of subsurface geologic environments; and
(ii) take advantage of an existing site where subsurface characterization has been conducted or existing drill holes can be utilized, if possible.

(B) Consideration of existing site

The Desert Peak, Nevada, site, where a Department of Energy and industry cooperative enhanced geothermal systems project is already underway, may be considered for inclusion among the sites selected under subparagraph (A).

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §615, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1680.)

§17195. Geothermal energy production from oil and gas fields and recovery and production of geopressured gas resources

(a) In general

The Secretary shall establish a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application to support development of geothermal energy production from oil and gas fields and production and recovery of energy, including electricity, from geopressured resources. In addition, the Secretary shall conduct such supporting activities including research, resource characterization, and technology development as necessary.

(b) Geothermal energy production from oil and gas fields

The Secretary shall implement a grant program in support of geothermal energy production from oil and gas fields. The program shall include grants for a total of not less than three demonstration projects of the use of geothermal techniques such as advanced organic rankine cycle systems at marginal, unproductive, and productive oil and gas wells. The Secretary shall, to the extent practicable and in the public interest, make awards that—

(1) include not less than five oil or gas well sites per project award;
(2) use a range of oil or gas well hot water source temperatures from 150 degrees Fahrenheit to 300 degrees Fahrenheit;
(3) cover a range of sizes up to one megawatt;
(4) are located at a range of sites;
(5) can be replicated at a wide range of sites;

(6) facilitate identification of optimum techniques among competing alternatives;

(7) include business commercialization plans that have the potential for production of equipment at high volumes and operation and support at a large number of sites; and

(8) satisfy other criteria that the Secretary determines are necessary to carry out the program and collect necessary data and information.

The Secretary shall give preference to assessments that address multiple elements contained in paragraphs (1) through (8).

(c) Grant awards

Each grant award for demonstration of geothermal technology such as advanced organic rankine cycle systems at oil and gas wells made by the Secretary under subsection (b) shall include—

(1) necessary and appropriate site engineering study;

(2) detailed economic assessment of site specific conditions;

(3) appropriate feasibility studies to determine whether the demonstration can be replicated;

(4) design or adaptation of existing technology for site specific circumstances or conditions;

(5) installation of equipment, service, and support;

(6) operation for a minimum of 1 year and monitoring for the duration of the demonstration; and

(7) validation of technical and economic assumptions and documentation of lessons learned.

(d) Geopressured gas resource recovery and production

(1) The Secretary shall implement a program to support the research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of cost-effective techniques to produce energy from geopressured resources.

(2) The Secretary shall solicit preliminary engineering designs for geopressured resources production and recovery facilities.

(3) Based upon a review of the preliminary designs, the Secretary shall award grants, which may be cost-shared, to support the detailed development and completion of engineering, architectural and technical plans needed to support construction of new designs.

(4) Based upon a review of the final design plans above, the Secretary shall award cost-shared development and construction grants for demonstration geopressured production facilities that show potential for economic recovery of the heat, kinetic energy and gas resources from geopressured resources.

(e) Competitive grant selection

Not less than 90 days after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall conduct a national solicitation for applications for grants under the programs outlined in subsections (b) and (d). Grant recipients shall be selected on a competitive basis based on criteria in the respective subsection.

(f) Well drilling

No funds may be used under this section for the purpose of drilling new wells.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §616, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1681.)

§17196. Cost sharing and proposal evaluation

(a) Federal share

The Federal share of costs of projects funded under this part shall be in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(b) Organization and administration of programs

Programs under this part shall incorporate the following elements:

(1) The Secretary shall coordinate with, and where appropriate may provide funds in furtherance of the purposes of this part to, other Department of Energy research and development

programs focused on drilling, subsurface characterization, and other related technologies.

(2) In evaluating proposals, the Secretary shall give priority to proposals that demonstrate clear evidence of employing a systems approach.

(3) The Secretary shall coordinate and consult with the appropriate Federal land management agencies in selecting proposals for funding under this part.

(4) Nothing in this part shall be construed to alter or affect any law relating to the management or protection of Federal lands.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §617, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1682.)

§17197. Center for Geothermal Technology Transfer

(a) In general

The Secretary shall award to an institution of higher education (or consortium thereof) a grant to establish a Center for Geothermal Technology Transfer (referred to in this section as the "Center").

(b) Duties

The Center shall—

(1) serve as an information clearinghouse for the geothermal industry by collecting and disseminating information on best practices in all areas relating to developing and utilizing geothermal resources;

(2) make data collected by the Center available to the public; and

(3) seek opportunities to coordinate efforts and share information with domestic and international partners engaged in research and development of geothermal systems and related technology.

(c) Selection criteria

In awarding the grant under subsection (a) the Secretary shall select an institution of higher education (or consortium thereof) best suited to provide national leadership on geothermal related issues and perform the duties enumerated under subsection (b).

(d) Duration of grant

A grant made under subsection (a)—

(1) shall be for an initial period of 5 years; and

(2) may be renewed for additional 5-year periods on the basis of—

(A) satisfactory performance in meeting the duties outlined in subsection (b); and

(B) any other requirements specified by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §618, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1683.)

§17198. GeoPowering America

The Secretary shall expand the Department of Energy's GeoPowering the West program to extend its geothermal technology transfer activities throughout the entire United States. The program shall be renamed "GeoPowering America". The program shall continue to be based in the Department of Energy office in Golden, Colorado.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §619, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1683.)

§17199. Educational pilot program

The Secretary shall seek to award grant funding, on a competitive basis, to an institution of higher education for a geothermal-powered energy generation facility on the institution's campus. The purpose of the facility shall be to provide electricity and space heating. The facility shall also serve as an educational resource to students in relevant fields of study, and the data generated by the

facility shall be available to students and the general public. The total funding award shall not exceed $2,000,000.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §620, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1683.)

§17200. Reports

(a) Reports on advanced uses of geothermal energy

Not later than 3 years and 5 years after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall report to the Committee on Science and Technology of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate on advanced concepts and technologies to maximize the geothermal resource potential of the United States. The reports shall include—

(1) the use of carbon dioxide as an alternative geofluid with potential carbon sequestration benefits;

(2) mineral recovery from geofluids;

(3) use of geothermal energy to produce hydrogen;

(4) use of geothermal energy to produce biofuels;

(5) use of geothermal heat for oil recovery from oil shales and tar sands; and

(6) other advanced geothermal technologies, including advanced drilling technologies and advanced power conversion technologies.

(b) Progress reports

(1) Not later than 36 months after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Science and Technology of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate an interim report describing the progress made under this part. At the end of 60 months, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report on the results of projects undertaken under this part and other such information the Secretary considers appropriate.

(2) As necessary, the Secretary shall report to the Congress on any legal, regulatory, or other barriers encountered that hinder economic development of these resources, and provide recommendations on legislative or other actions needed to address such impediments.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §621, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1684.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Science and Technology of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 5, One Hundred Twelfth Congress, Jan. 5, 2011.

§17201. Applicability of other laws

Nothing in this part shall be construed as waiving, modifying, or superseding the applicability of any requirement under any environmental or other Federal or State law. To the extent that activities authorized in this part take place in coastal and ocean areas, the Secretary shall consult with the Secretary of Commerce, acting through the Under Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere, regarding the potential marine environmental impacts and measures to address such impacts.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §622, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1684.)

§17202. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this part $90,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2012, of which $10,000,000 for each fiscal year shall be for carrying out section 17195 of this title. There are also authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for the

Intermountain West Geothermal Consortium $5,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §623, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1684.)

§17203. International geothermal energy development

(a) In general

The Secretary of Energy, in coordination with other appropriate Federal and multilateral agencies (including the United States Agency for International Development) shall support international collaborative efforts to promote the research, development, and deployment of geothermal technologies used to develop hydrothermal and enhanced geothermal system resources, including as partners (as appropriate) the African Rift Geothermal Development Facility, Australia, China, France, the Republic of Iceland, India, Japan, and the United Kingdom.

(b) United States Trade and Development Agency

The Director of the United States Trade and Development Agency may—

(1) encourage participation by United States firms in actions taken to carry out subsection (a); and

(2) provide grants and other financial support for feasibility and resource assessment studies conducted in, or intended to benefit, less developed countries.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §624, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1684.)

§17204. High cost region geothermal energy grant program

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Eligible entity

The term "eligible entity" means—

(A) a utility;

(B) an electric cooperative;

(C) a State;

(D) a political subdivision of a State;

(E) an Indian tribe; or

(F) a Native corporation.

(2) High-cost region

The term "high-cost region" means a region in which the average cost of electrical power exceeds 150 percent of the national average retail cost, as determined by the Secretary.

(b) Program

The Secretary shall use amounts made available to carry out this section to make grants to eligible entities for activities described in subsection (c).

(c) Eligible activities

An eligible entity may use grant funds under this section, with respect to a geothermal energy project in a high-cost region, only—

(1) to conduct a feasibility study, including a study of exploration, geochemical testing, geomagnetic surveys, geologic information gathering, baseline environmental studies, well

drilling, resource characterization, permitting, and economic analysis;

(2) for design and engineering costs, relating to the project; and

(3) to demonstrate and promote commercial application of technologies related to geothermal energy as part of the project.

(d) Cost sharing

The cost-sharing requirements of section 16352 of this title shall apply to any project carried out under this section.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §625, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1685.)

PART C—MARINE AND HYDROKINETIC RENEWABLE ENERGY TECHNOLOGIES

§17211. Definition

For purposes of this part, the term "marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy" means electrical energy from—

(1) waves, tides, and currents in oceans, estuaries, and tidal areas;

(2) free flowing water in rivers, lakes, and streams;

(3) free flowing water in man-made channels; and

(4) differentials in ocean temperature (ocean thermal energy conversion).

The term "marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy" does not include energy from any source that uses a dam, diversionary structure, or impoundment for electric power purposes.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §632, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1686.)

SHORT TITLE

This part known as the "Marine and Hydrokinetic Renewable Energy Research and Development Act", see Short Title note set out under section 17001 of this title.

§17212. Marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy research and development

(a) In general

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of the Interior and the Secretary of Commerce, acting through the Under Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere, shall establish a program of research, development, demonstration, and commercial application to expand marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy production, including programs to—

(1) study and compare existing marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy technologies;

(2) research, develop, and demonstrate marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy systems and technologies;

(3) reduce the manufacturing and operation costs of marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy technologies;

(4) investigate efficient and reliable integration with the utility grid and intermittency issues;

(5) advance wave forecasting technologies;

(6) conduct experimental and numerical modeling for optimization of marine energy conversion devices and arrays;

(7) increase the reliability and survivability of marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy

technologies, including development of corrosive-resistant materials;

(8) identify, in conjunction with the Secretary of Commerce, acting through the Under Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere, and other Federal agencies as appropriate, the potential environmental impacts, including potential impacts on fisheries and other marine resources, of marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy technologies, measures to prevent adverse impacts, and technologies and other means available for monitoring and determining environmental impacts;

(9) identify, in conjunction with the Secretary of the Department in which the United States Coast Guard is operating, acting through the Commandant of the United States Coast Guard, the potential navigational impacts of marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy technologies and measures to prevent adverse impacts on navigation;

(10) develop power measurement standards for marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy;

(11) develop identification standards for marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy devices;

(12) address standards development, demonstration, and technology transfer for advanced systems engineering and system integration methods to identify critical interfaces;

(13) identifying [1] opportunities for cross fertilization and development of economies of scale between other renewable sources and marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy sources; and

(14) providing [2] public information and opportunity for public comment concerning all technologies.

(b) Report

Not later than 18 months after December 19, 2007, the Secretary, in conjunction with the Secretary of Commerce, acting through the Undersecretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere, and the Secretary of the Interior, shall provide to the Congress a report that addresses—

(1) the potential environmental impacts, including impacts to fisheries and marine resources, of marine and hydrokinetic renewable energy technologies;

(2) options to prevent adverse environmental impacts;

(3) the potential role of monitoring and adaptive management in identifying and addressing any adverse environmental impacts; and

(4) the necessary components of such an adaptive management program.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §633, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1686.)

[1] So in original. Probably should be "identify".

[2] So in original. Probably should be "provide".

§17213. National Marine Renewable Energy Research, Development, and Demonstration Centers

(a) Centers

The Secretary shall award grants to institutions of higher education (or consortia thereof) for the establishment of 1 or more National Marine Renewable Energy Research, Development, and Demonstration Centers. In selecting locations for Centers, the Secretary shall consider sites that meet one of the following criteria:

(1) Hosts an existing marine renewable energy research and development program in coordination with an engineering program at an institution of higher education.

(2) Has proven expertise to support environmental and policy-related issues associated with harnessing of energy in the marine environment.

(3) Has access to and utilizes the marine resources in the Gulf of Mexico, the Atlantic Ocean, or the Pacific Ocean.

The Secretary may give special consideration to historically black colleges and universities and

land grant universities that also meet one of these criteria. In establishing criteria for the selection of the Centers, the Secretary shall consult with the Secretary of Commerce, acting through the Under Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere, on the criteria related to ocean waves, tides, and currents including those for advancing wave forecasting technologies, ocean temperature differences, and studying the compatibility of marine renewable energy technologies and systems with the environment, fisheries, and other marine resources.

(b) Purposes

The Centers shall advance research, development, demonstration, and commercial application of marine renewable energy, and shall serve as an information clearinghouse for the marine renewable energy industry, collecting and disseminating information on best practices in all areas related to developing and managing enhanced marine renewable energy systems resources.

(c) Demonstration of need

When applying for a grant under this section, an applicant shall include a description of why Federal support is necessary for the Center, including evidence that the research of the Center will not be conducted in the absence of Federal support.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §634, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1687.)

§17214. Applicability of other laws

Nothing in this part shall be construed as waiving, modifying, or superseding the applicability of any requirement under any environmental or other Federal or State law.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §635, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1688.)

§17215. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this part $50,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2012, except that no funds shall be appropriated under this section for activities that are receiving funds under section 16231(a)(2)(E)(i) of this title.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §636, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1688.)

PART D—ENERGY STORAGE FOR TRANSPORTATION AND ELECTRIC POWER

§17231. Energy storage competitiveness

(a) Short title

This section may be cited as the "United States Energy Storage Competitiveness Act of 2007".

(b) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Council

The term "Council" means the Energy Storage Advisory Council established under subsection (e).

(2) Compressed air energy storage

The term "compressed air energy storage" means, in the case of an electricity grid application, the storage of energy through the compression of air.

(3) Electric drive vehicle

The term "electric drive vehicle" means—

(A) a vehicle that uses an electric motor for all or part of the motive power of the vehicle, including battery electric, hybrid electric, plug-in hybrid electric, fuel cell, and plug-in fuel cell vehicles and rail transportation vehicles; or

(B) mobile equipment that uses an electric motor to replace an internal combustion engine for all or part of the work of the equipment.

(4) Islanding

The term "islanding" means a distributed generator or energy storage device continuing to power a location in the absence of electric power from the primary source.

(5) Flywheel

The term "flywheel" means, in the case of an electricity grid application, a device used to store rotational kinetic energy.

(6) Microgrid

The term "microgrid" means an integrated energy system consisting of interconnected loads and distributed energy resources (including generators and energy storage devices), which as an integrated system can operate in parallel with the utility grid or in an intentional islanding mode.

(7) Self-healing grid

The term "self-healing grid" means a grid that is capable of automatically anticipating and responding to power system disturbances (including the isolation of failed sections and components), while optimizing the performance and service of the grid to customers.

(8) Spinning reserve services

The term "spinning reserve services" means a quantity of electric generating capacity in excess of the quantity needed to meet peak electric demand.

(9) Ultracapacitor

The term "ultracapacitor" means an energy storage device that has a power density comparable to a conventional capacitor but is capable of exceeding the energy density of a conventional capacitor by several orders of magnitude.

(c) Program

The Secretary shall carry out a research, development, and demonstration program to support the ability of the United States to remain globally competitive in energy storage systems for electric drive vehicles, stationary applications, and electricity transmission and distribution.

(d) Coordination

In carrying out the activities of this section, the Secretary shall coordinate relevant efforts with appropriate Federal agencies, including the Department of Transportation.

(e) Energy Storage Advisory Council

(1) Establishment

Not later than 90 days after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall establish an Energy Storage Advisory Council.

(2) Composition

(A) In general

Subject to subparagraph (B), the Council shall consist of not less than 15 individuals appointed by the Secretary, based on recommendations of the National Academy of Sciences.

(B) Energy storage industry

The Council shall consist primarily of representatives of the energy storage industry of the United States.

(C) Chairperson

The Secretary shall select a Chairperson for the Council from among the members appointed under subparagraph (A).

(3) Meetings

(A) In general

The Council shall meet not less than once a year.

(B) Federal Advisory Committee Act

The Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.) shall apply to a meeting of the Council.

(4) Plans

No later than 1 year after December 19, 2007, and every 5 years thereafter, the Council, in conjunction with the Secretary, shall develop a 5-year plan for integrating basic and applied research so that the United States retains a globally competitive domestic energy storage industry for electric drive vehicles, stationary applications, and electricity transmission and distribution.

(5) Review

The Council shall—

(A) assess, every 2 years, the performance of the Department in meeting the goals of the plans developed under paragraph (4); and

(B) make specific recommendations to the Secretary on programs or activities that should be established or terminated to meet those goals.

(f) Basic research program

(1) Basic research

The Secretary shall conduct a basic research program on energy storage systems to support electric drive vehicles, stationary applications, and electricity transmission and distribution, including—

(A) materials design;

(B) materials synthesis and characterization;

(C) electrode-active materials, including electrolytes and bioelectrolytes;

(D) surface and interface dynamics;

(E) modeling and simulation; and

(F) thermal behavior and life degradation mechanisms.

(2) Nanoscience centers

The Secretary, in cooperation with the Council, shall coordinate the activities of the nanoscience centers of the Department to help the energy storage research centers of the Department maintain a globally competitive posture in energy storage systems for electric drive vehicles, stationary applications, and electricity transmission and distribution.

(3) Funding

For activities carried out under this subsection, in addition to funding activities at National Laboratories, the Secretary shall award funds to, and coordinate activities with, a range of stakeholders including the public, private, and academic sectors.

(g) Applied research program

(1) In general

The Secretary shall conduct an applied research program on energy storage systems to support electric drive vehicles, stationary applications, and electricity transmission and distribution technologies, including—

(A) ultracapacitors;

(B) flywheels;

(C) batteries and battery systems (including flow batteries);
(D) compressed air energy systems;
(E) power conditioning electronics;
(F) manufacturing technologies for energy storage systems;
(G) thermal management systems; and
(H) hydrogen as an energy storage medium.

(2) Funding

For activities carried out under this subsection, in addition to funding activities at National Laboratories, the Secretary shall provide funds to, and coordinate activities with, a range of stakeholders, including the public, private, and academic sectors.

(h) Energy storage research centers

(1) In general

The Secretary shall establish, through competitive bids, not more than 4 energy storage research centers to translate basic research into applied technologies to advance the capability of the United States to maintain a globally competitive posture in energy storage systems for electric drive vehicles, stationary applications, and electricity transmission and distribution.

(2) Program management

The centers shall be managed by the Under Secretary for Science of the Department.

(3) Participation agreements

As a condition of participating in a center, a participant shall enter into a participation agreement with the center that requires that activities conducted by the participant for the center promote the goal of enabling the United States to compete successfully in global energy storage markets.

(4) Plans

A center shall conduct activities that promote the achievement of the goals of the plans of the Council under subsection (e)(4).

(5) National laboratories

A national laboratory (as defined in section 15801 of this title) may participate in a center established under this subsection, including a cooperative research and development agreement (as defined in section 3710a(d) of title 15).

(6) Disclosure

Section 13293 of this title may apply to any project carried out through a grant, contract, or cooperative agreement under this subsection.

(7) Intellectual property

In accordance with section 202(a)(ii) of title 35, section 2182 of this title, and section 5908 of this title, the Secretary may require, for any new invention developed under this subsection, that—

(A) if an industrial participant is active in a [1] energy storage research center established under this subsection relating to the advancement of energy storage technologies carried out, in whole or in part, with Federal funding, the industrial participant be granted the first option to negotiate with the invention owner, at least in the field of energy storage technologies, nonexclusive licenses, and royalties on terms that are reasonable, as determined by the Secretary;

(B) if 1 or more industry participants are active in a center, during a 2-year period beginning on the date on which an invention is made—

(i) the patent holder shall not negotiate any license or royalty agreement with any entity that is not an industrial participant under this subsection; and

(ii) the patent holder shall negotiate nonexclusive licenses and royalties in good faith with any interested industrial participant under this subsection; and

(C) the new invention be developed under such other terms as the Secretary determines to be necessary to promote the accelerated commercialization of inventions made under this subsection to advance the capability of the United States to successfully compete in global energy storage markets.

(i) Energy storage systems demonstrations

(1) In general

The Secretary shall carry out a program of new demonstrations of advanced energy storage systems.

(2) Scope

The demonstrations shall—

(A) be regionally diversified; and

(B) expand on the existing technology demonstration program of the Department.

(3) Stakeholders

In carrying out the demonstrations, the Secretary shall, to the maximum extent practicable, include the participation of a range of stakeholders, including—

(A) rural electric cooperatives;

(B) investor owned utilities;

(C) municipally owned electric utilities;

(D) energy storage systems manufacturers;

(E) electric drive vehicle manufacturers;

(F) the renewable energy production industry;

(G) State or local energy offices;

(H) the fuel cell industry; and

(I) institutions of higher education.

(4) Objectives

Each of the demonstrations shall include 1 or more of the following:

(A) Energy storage to improve the feasibility of microgrids or islanding, or transmission and distribution capability, to improve reliability in rural areas.

(B) Integration of an energy storage system with a self-healing grid.

(C) Use of energy storage to improve security to emergency response infrastructure and ensure availability of emergency backup power for consumers.

(D) Integration with a renewable energy production source, at the source or away from the source.

(E) Use of energy storage to provide ancillary services, such as spinning reserve services, for grid management.

(F) Advancement of power conversion systems to make the systems smarter, more efficient, able to communicate with other inverters, and able to control voltage.

(G) Use of energy storage to optimize transmission and distribution operation and power quality, which could address overloaded lines and maintenance of transformers and substations.

(H) Use of advanced energy storage for peak load management of homes, businesses, and the grid.

(I) Use of energy storage devices to store energy during nonpeak generation periods to make better use of existing grid assets.

(j) Vehicle energy storage demonstration

(1) In general

The Secretary shall carry out a program of electric drive vehicle energy storage technology demonstrations.

(2) Consortia

The technology demonstrations shall be conducted through consortia, which may include—

(A) energy storage systems manufacturers and suppliers of the manufacturers;
(B) electric drive vehicle manufacturers;
(C) rural electric cooperatives;
(D) investor owned utilities;
(E) municipal and rural electric utilities;
(F) State and local governments;
(G) metropolitan transportation authorities; and
(H) institutions of higher education.

(3) Objectives

The program shall demonstrate 1 or more of the following:

(A) Novel, high capacity, high efficiency energy storage, charging, and control systems, along with the collection of data on performance characteristics, such as battery life, energy storage capacity, and power delivery capacity.

(B) Advanced onboard energy management systems and highly efficient battery cooling systems.

(C) Integration of those systems on a prototype vehicular platform, including with drivetrain systems for passenger, commercial, and nonroad electric drive vehicles.

(D) New technologies and processes that reduce manufacturing costs.

(E) Integration of advanced vehicle technologies with electricity distribution system and smart metering technology.

(F) Control systems that minimize emissions profiles in cases in which clean diesel engines are part of a plug-in hybrid drive system.

(k) Secondary applications and disposal of electric drive vehicle batteries

The Secretary shall carry out a program of research, development, and demonstration of—

(1) secondary applications of energy storage devices following service in electric drive vehicles; and

(2) technologies and processes for final recycling and disposal of the devices.

(l) Cost sharing

The Secretary shall carry out the programs established under this section in accordance with section 16352 of this title.

(m) Merit review of proposals

The Secretary shall carry out the programs established under subsections (i), (j), and (k) in accordance with section 16353 of this title.

(n) Coordination and nonduplication

To the maximum extent practicable, the Secretary shall coordinate activities under this section with other programs and laboratories of the Department and other Federal research programs.

(o) Review by National Academy of Sciences

On the business day that is 5 years after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall offer to enter into an arrangement with the National Academy of Sciences to assess the performance of the Department in carrying out this section.

(p) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out—

(1) the basic research program under subsection (f) $50,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2009 through 2018;

(2) the applied research program under subsection (g) $80,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2009 through 2018; and; [2]

(3) the energy storage research center program under subsection (h) $100,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2009 through 2018;

(4) the energy storage systems demonstration program under subsection (i) $30,000,000 for

each of fiscal years 2009 through 2018;

(5) the vehicle energy storage demonstration program under subsection (j) $30,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2009 through 2018; and

(6) the secondary applications and disposal of electric drive vehicle batteries program under subsection (k) $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2009 through 2018.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §641, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1688.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(3)(B), is Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "an".*

[2] *So in original.*

PART E—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§17241. Lightweight materials research and development

(a) In general

As soon as practicable after December 19, 2007, the Secretary of Energy shall establish a program to determine ways in which the weight of motor vehicles could be reduced to improve fuel efficiency without compromising passenger safety by conducting research, development, and demonstration relating to—

(1) the development of new materials (including cast metal composite materials formed by autocombustion synthesis) and material processes that yield a higher strength-to-weight ratio or other properties that reduce vehicle weight; and

(2) reducing the cost of—

(A) lightweight materials (including high-strength steel alloys, aluminum, magnesium, metal composites, and carbon fiber reinforced polymer composites) with the properties required for construction of lighter-weight vehicles; and

(B) materials processing, automated manufacturing, joining, and recycling lightweight materials for high-volume applications.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $80,000,000 for the period of fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §651, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1694.)

§17242. Commercial insulation demonstration program

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Advanced insulation

The term "advanced insulation" means insulation that has an R value of not less than R35 per inch.

(2) Covered refrigeration unit

The term "covered refrigeration unit" means any—

(A) commercial refrigerated truck;
(B) commercial refrigerated trailer; or
(C) commercial refrigerator, freezer, or refrigerator-freezer described in section 6313(c) of this title.

(b) Report

Not later than 90 days after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report that includes an evaluation of—

(1) the state of technological advancement of advanced insulation; and
(2) the projected amount of cost savings that would be generated by implementing advanced insulation into covered refrigeration units.

(c) Demonstration program

(1) Establishment

If the Secretary determines in the report described in subsection (b) that the implementation of advanced insulation into covered refrigeration units would generate an economically justifiable amount of cost savings, the Secretary, in cooperation with manufacturers of covered refrigeration units, shall establish a demonstration program under which the Secretary shall demonstrate the cost-effectiveness of advanced insulation.

(2) Disclosure

The Secretary may, for a period of up to 5 years after an award is granted under the demonstration program, exempt from mandatory disclosure under section 552 of title 5 (popularly known as the Freedom of Information Act) information that the Secretary determines would be a privileged or confidential trade secret or commercial or financial information under subsection (b)(4) of such section if the information had been obtained from a non-Government party.

(3) Cost-sharing

Section 16352 of this title shall apply to any project carried out under this subsection.

(d) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $8,000,000 for the period of fiscal years 2009 through 2014.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §652, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1694.)

§17243. Bright Tomorrow Lighting Prizes

(a) Establishment

Not later than 1 year after December 19, 2007, as part of the program carried out under section 16396 of this title, the Secretary shall establish and award Bright Tomorrow Lighting Prizes for solid state lighting in accordance with this section.

(b) Prize specifications

(1) 60-Watt Incandescent Replacement Lamp Prize

The Secretary shall award a 60-Watt Incandescent Replacement Lamp Prize to an entrant that produces a solid-state-light package simultaneously capable of—

(A) producing a luminous flux greater than 900 lumens;
(B) consuming less than or equal to 10 watts;
(C) having an efficiency greater than 90 lumens per watt;
(D) having a color rendering index greater than 90;
(E) having a correlated color temperature of not less than 2,750, and not more than 3,000, degrees Kelvin;
(F) having 70 percent of the lumen value under subparagraph (A) exceeding 25,000 hours under typical conditions expected in residential use;

(G) having a light distribution pattern similar to a soft 60-watt incandescent A19 bulb;

(H) having a size and shape that fits within the maximum dimensions of an A19 bulb in accordance with American National Standards Institute standard C78.20–2003, figure C78.20–211;

(I) using a single contact medium screw socket; and

(J) mass production for a competitive sales commercial market satisfied by producing commercially accepted quality control lots of such units equal to or exceeding the criteria described in subparagraphs (A) through (I).

(2) PAR Type 38 Halogen Replacement Lamp Prize

The Secretary shall award a Parabolic Aluminized Reflector Type 38 Halogen Replacement Lamp Prize (referred to in this section as the "PAR Type 38 Halogen Replacement Lamp Prize") to an entrant that produces a solid-state-light package simultaneously capable of—

(A) producing a luminous flux greater than or equal to 1,350 lumens;

(B) consuming less than or equal to 11 watts;

(C) having an efficiency greater than 123 lumens per watt;

(D) having a color rendering index greater than or equal to 90;

(E) having a correlated color coordinate temperature of not less than 2,750, and not more than 3,000, degrees Kelvin;

(F) having 70 percent of the lumen value under subparagraph (A) exceeding 25,000 hours under typical conditions expected in residential use;

(G) having a light distribution pattern similar to a PAR 38 halogen lamp;

(H) having a size and shape that fits within the maximum dimensions of a PAR 38 halogen lamp in accordance with American National Standards Institute standard C78–21–2003, figure C78.21–238;

(I) using a single contact medium screw socket; and

(J) mass production for a competitive sales commercial market satisfied by producing commercially accepted quality control lots of such units equal to or exceeding the criteria described in subparagraphs (A) through (I).

(3) Twenty-First Century Lamp Prize

The Secretary shall award a Twenty-First Century Lamp Prize to an entrant that produces a solid-state-light-light [1] capable of—

(A) producing a light output greater than 1,200 lumens;

(B) having an efficiency greater than 150 lumens per watt;

(C) having a color rendering index greater than 90;

(D) having a color coordinate temperature between 2,800 and 3,000 degrees Kelvin; and

(E) having a lifetime exceeding 25,000 hours.

(c) Private funds

(1) In general

Subject to paragraph (2), and notwithstanding section 3302 of title 31, the Secretary may accept, retain, and use funds contributed by any person, government entity, or organization for purposes of carrying out this subsection—

(A) without further appropriation; and

(B) without fiscal year limitation.

(2) Prize competition

A private source of funding may not participate in the competition for prizes awarded under this section.

(d) Technical review

The Secretary shall establish a technical review committee composed of non-Federal officers to review entrant data submitted under this section to determine whether the data meets the prize specifications described in subsection (b).

(e) Third party administration

The Secretary may competitively select a third party to administer awards under this section.

(f) Eligibility for prizes

To be eligible to be awarded a prize under this section—

(1) in the case of a private entity, the entity shall be incorporated in and maintain a primary place of business in the United States; and

(2) in the case of an individual (whether participating as a single individual or in a group), the individual shall be a citizen or lawful permanent resident of the United States.

(g) Award amounts

Subject to the availability of funds to carry out this section, the amount of—

(1) the 60-Watt Incandescent Replacement Lamp Prize described in subsection (b)(1) shall be $10,000,000;

(2) the PAR Type 38 Halogen Replacement Lamp Prize described in subsection (b)(2) shall be $5,000,000; and

(3) the Twenty-First Century Lamp Prize described in subsection (b)(3) shall be $5,000,000.

(h) Federal procurement of solid-state-lights

(1) 60-watt incandescent replacement

Subject to paragraph (3), as soon as practicable after the successful award of the 60-Watt Incandescent Replacement Lamp Prize under subsection (b)(1), the Secretary (in consultation with the Administrator of General Services) shall develop governmentwide Federal purchase guidelines with a goal of replacing the use of 60-watt incandescent lamps in Federal Government buildings with a solid-state-light package described in subsection (b)(1) by not later than the date that is 5 years after the date the award is made.

(2) PAR 38 halogen replacement lamp replacement [1]

Subject to paragraph (3), as soon as practicable after the successful award of the PAR Type 38 Halogen Replacement Lamp Prize under subsection (b)(2), the Secretary (in consultation with the Administrator of General Services) shall develop governmentwide Federal purchase guidelines with the goal of replacing the use of PAR 38 halogen lamps in Federal Government buildings with a solid-state-light package described in subsection (b)(2) by not later than the date that is 5 years after the date the award is made.

(3) Waivers

(A) In general

The Secretary or the Administrator of General Services may waive the application of paragraph (1) or (2) if the Secretary or Administrator determines that the return on investment from the purchase of a solid-state-light package described in paragraph (1) or (2) of subsection (b), respectively, is cost prohibitive.

(B) Report of waiver

If the Secretary or Administrator waives the application of paragraph (1) or (2), the Secretary or Administrator, respectively, shall submit to Congress an annual report that describes the waiver and provides a detailed justification for the waiver.

(i) Report

Not later than 2 years after December 19, 2007, and annually thereafter, the Administrator of General Services shall submit to the Energy Information Agency a report describing the quantity, type, and cost of each lighting product purchased by the Federal Government.

(j) Bright Tomorrow Lighting Award Fund

(1) Establishment

There is established in the United States Treasury a Bright Tomorrow Lighting permanent fund

without fiscal year limitation to award prizes under paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of subsection (b).

(2) Sources of funding

The fund established under paragraph (1) shall accept—

(A) fiscal year appropriations; and

(B) private contributions authorized under subsection (c).

(k) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as are necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §655, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1700.)

[1] *So in original.*

§17244. Renewable Energy Innovation Manufacturing Partnership

(a) Establishment

The Secretary shall carry out a program, to be known as the Renewable Energy Innovation Manufacturing Partnership Program (referred to in this section as the "Program"), to make assistance awards to eligible entities for use in carrying out research, development, and demonstration relating to the manufacturing of renewable energy technologies.

(b) Solicitation

To carry out the Program, the Secretary shall annually conduct a competitive solicitation for assistance awards for an eligible project described in subsection (e).

(c) Program purposes

The purposes of the Program are—

(1) to develop, or aid in the development of, advanced manufacturing processes, materials, and infrastructure;

(2) to increase the domestic production of renewable energy technology and components; and

(3) to better coordinate Federal, State, and private resources to meet regional and national renewable energy goals through advanced manufacturing partnerships.

(d) Eligible entities

An entity shall be eligible to receive an assistance award under the Program to carry out an eligible project described in subsection (e) if the entity is composed of—

(1) 1 or more public or private nonprofit institutions or national laboratories engaged in research, development, demonstration, or technology transfer, that would participate substantially in the project; and

(2) 1 or more private entities engaged in the manufacturing or development of renewable energy system components (including solar energy, wind energy, biomass, geothermal energy, energy storage, or fuel cells).

(e) Eligible projects

An eligible entity may use an assistance award provided under this section to carry out a project relating to—

(1) the conduct of studies of market opportunities for component manufacturing of renewable energy systems;

(2) the conduct of multiyear applied research, development, demonstration, and deployment projects for advanced manufacturing processes, materials, and infrastructure for renewable energy systems; and

(3) other similar ventures, as approved by the Secretary, that promote advanced manufacturing of renewable technologies.

(f) Criteria and guidelines

The Secretary shall establish criteria and guidelines for the submission, evaluation, and funding of proposed projects under the Program.

(g) Cost sharing

Section 16352 of this title shall apply to a project carried out under this section.

(h) Disclosure

The Secretary may, for a period of up to 5 years after an award is granted under this section, exempt from mandatory disclosure under section 552 of title 5 (popularly known as the Freedom of Information Act) information that the Secretary determines would be a privileged or confidential trade secret or commercial or financial information under subsection (b)(4) of such section if the information had been obtained from a non-Government party.

(i) Sense of the Congress

It is the sense of the Congress that the Secretary should ensure that small businesses engaged in renewable manufacturing be given priority consideration for the assistance awards provided under this section.

(j) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated out of funds already authorized to carry out this section $25,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2013, to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VI, §656, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1703.)

SUBCHAPTER VI—CARBON CAPTURE AND SEQUESTRATION

PART A—CARBON CAPTURE AND SEQUESTRATION RESEARCH, DEVELOPMENT, AND DEMONSTRATION

§17251. Carbon capture

(a) Program establishment

(1) In general

The Secretary shall carry out a program to demonstrate technologies for the large-scale capture of carbon dioxide from industrial sources. In making awards under this program, the Secretary shall select, as appropriate, a diversity of capture technologies to address the need to capture carbon dioxide from a range of industrial sources.

(2) Scope of award

Awards under this section shall be only for the portion of the project that—

(A) carries out the large-scale capture (including purification and compression) of carbon dioxide from industrial sources;

(B) provides for the transportation and injection of carbon dioxide; and

(C) incorporates a comprehensive measurement, monitoring, and validation program.

(3) Preferences for award

To ensure reduced carbon dioxide emissions, the Secretary shall take necessary actions to provide for the integration of the program under this paragraph with the large-scale carbon dioxide sequestration tests described in section 16293(c)(3) of this title. These actions should not delay implementation of these tests. The Secretary shall give priority consideration to projects with the following characteristics:

(A) Capacity

Projects that will capture a high percentage of the carbon dioxide in the treated stream and large volumes of carbon dioxide as determined by the Secretary.

(B) Sequestration

Projects that capture carbon dioxide from industrial sources that are near suitable geological reservoirs and could continue sequestration including—

(i) a field testing validation activity under section 16293 of this title; or

(ii) other geologic sequestration projects approved by the Secretary.

(4) Requirement

For projects that generate carbon dioxide that is to be sequestered, the carbon dioxide stream shall be of a sufficient purity level to allow for safe transport and sequestration.

(5) Cost-sharing

The cost-sharing requirements of section 16352 of this title for research and development projects shall apply to this section.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this section $200,000,000 per year for fiscal years 2009 through 2013.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VII, §703, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1708.)

SHORT TITLE

Subtitle A (§§701–708) of title VII of Pub. L. 110–140, which is classified principally to this part, is known as the "Department of Energy Carbon Capture and Sequestration Research, Development, and Demonstration Act of 2007". See Short Title note set out under section 17001 of this title.

§17252. Review of large-scale programs

The Secretary shall enter into an arrangement with the National Academy of Sciences for an independent review and oversight, beginning in 2011, of the programs under section 16293(c)(3) of this title and under section 17251 of this title, to ensure that the benefits of such programs are maximized. Not later than January 1, 2012, the Secretary shall transmit to the Congress a report on the results of such review and oversight.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VII, §704, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1709.)

§17253. Geologic sequestration training and research

(a) Study

(1) In general

The Secretary shall enter into an arrangement with the National Academy of Sciences to undertake a study that—

(A) defines an interdisciplinary program in geology, engineering, hydrology, environmental science, and related disciplines that will support the Nation's capability to capture and sequester carbon dioxide from anthropogenic sources;

(B) addresses undergraduate and graduate education, especially to help develop graduate level programs of research and instruction that lead to advanced degrees with emphasis on geologic sequestration science;

(C) develops guidelines for proposals from colleges and universities with substantial capabilities in the required disciplines that seek to implement geologic sequestration science programs that advance the Nation's capacity to address carbon management through geologic sequestration science; and

(D) outlines a budget and recommendations for how much funding will be necessary to establish and carry out the grant program under subsection (b).

(2) Report

Not later than 1 year after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall transmit to the Congress a copy of the results of the study provided by the National Academy of Sciences under paragraph (1).

(3) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this subsection $1,000,000 for fiscal year 2008.

(b) Grant program

(1) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish a competitive grant program through which colleges and universities may apply for and receive 4-year grants for—

(A) salary and startup costs for newly designated faculty positions in an integrated geologic carbon sequestration science program; and

(B) internships for graduate students in geologic sequestration science.

(2) Renewal

Grants under this subsection shall be renewable for up to 2 additional 3-year terms, based on performance criteria, established by the National Academy of Sciences study conducted under subsection (a), that include the number of graduates of such programs.

(3) Interface with regional geologic carbon sequestration partnerships

To the greatest extent possible, geologic carbon sequestration science programs supported under this subsection shall interface with the research of the Regional Carbon Sequestration Partnerships operated by the Department to provide internships and practical training in carbon capture and geologic sequestration.

(4) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for carrying out this subsection such sums as may be necessary.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VII, §705, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1709.)

§17254. Relation to Safe Drinking Water Act

The injection and geologic sequestration of carbon dioxide pursuant to this subtitle and the amendments made by this subtitle shall be subject to the requirements of the Safe Drinking Water Act (42 U.S.C. 300f et seq.), including the provisions of part C of such Act (42 U.S.C. 300h et seq.; relating to protection of underground sources of drinking water). Nothing in this subtitle and the amendments made by this subtitle imposes or authorizes the promulgation of any requirement that is inconsistent or in conflict with the requirements of the Safe Drinking Water Act (42 U.S.C. 300f et seq.) or regulations thereunder.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VII, §706, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1710.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subtitle, referred to in text, is subtitle A (§§701–708) of title VII of Pub. L. 110–140, which enacted this part, amended section 16293 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 17001 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle A to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 17001 of this title and Tables.

The Safe Drinking Water Act, referred to in text, is title XIV of act July 1, 1944, as added Dec. 16, 1974, Pub. L. 93–523, §2(a), 88 Stat. 1660, which is classified generally to subchapter XII (§300f et seq.) of chapter 6A of this title. Part C of the Act is classified generally to part C (§300h et seq.) of subchapter XII of chapter

6A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

§17255. Safety research

(a) Program

The Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency shall conduct a research program to address public health, safety, and environmental impacts that may be associated with capture, injection, and sequestration of greenhouse gases in geologic reservoirs.

(b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for carrying out this section $5,000,000 for each fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VII, §707, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1710.)

§17256. University based research and development grant program

(a) Establishment

The Secretary, in consultation with other appropriate agencies, shall establish a university based research and development program to study carbon capture and sequestration using the various types of coal.

(b) Rural and agricultural institutions

The Secretary shall give special consideration to rural or agricultural based institutions in areas that have regional sources of coal and that offer interdisciplinary programs in the area of environmental science to study carbon capture and sequestration.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are to be authorized to be appropriated $10,000,000 to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VII, §708, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1710.)

PART B—CARBON CAPTURE AND SEQUESTRATION ASSESSMENT AND FRAMEWORK

§17271. Carbon dioxide sequestration capacity assessment

(a) Definitions

In this section—

(1) Assessment

The term "assessment" means the national assessment of onshore capacity for carbon dioxide completed under subsection (f).

(2) Capacity

The term "capacity" means the portion of a sequestration formation that can retain carbon dioxide in accordance with the requirements (including physical, geological, and economic requirements) established under the methodology developed under subsection (b).

(3) Engineered hazard

The term "engineered hazard" includes the location and completion history of any well that

could affect potential sequestration.

(4) Risk

The term "risk" includes any risk posed by geomechanical, geochemical, hydrogeological, structural, and engineered hazards.

(5) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of the Interior, acting through the Director of the United States Geological Survey.

(6) Sequestration formation

The term "sequestration formation" means a deep saline formation, unmineable coal seam, or oil or gas reservoir that is capable of accommodating a volume of industrial carbon dioxide.

(b) Methodology

Not later than 1 year after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall develop a methodology for conducting an assessment under subsection (f), taking into consideration—

(1) the geographical extent of all potential sequestration formations in all States;

(2) the capacity of the potential sequestration formations;

(3) the injectivity of the potential sequestration formations;

(4) an estimate of potential volumes of oil and gas recoverable by injection and sequestration of industrial carbon dioxide in potential sequestration formations;

(5) the risk associated with the potential sequestration formations; and

(6) the work done to develop the Carbon Sequestration Atlas of the United States and Canada that was completed by the Department.

(c) Coordination

(1) Federal coordination

(A) Consultation

The Secretary shall consult with the Secretary of Energy and the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency on issues of data sharing, format, development of the methodology, and content of the assessment required under this section to ensure the maximum usefulness and success of the assessment.

(B) Cooperation

The Secretary of Energy and the Administrator shall cooperate with the Secretary to ensure, to the maximum extent practicable, the usefulness and success of the assessment.

(2) State coordination

The Secretary shall consult with State geological surveys and other relevant entities to ensure, to the maximum extent practicable, the usefulness and success of the assessment.

(d) External review and publication

On completion of the methodology under subsection (b), the Secretary shall—

(1) publish the methodology and solicit comments from the public and the heads of affected Federal and State agencies;

(2) establish a panel of individuals with expertise in the matters described in paragraphs (1) through (5) of subsection (b) composed, as appropriate, of representatives of Federal agencies, institutions of higher education, nongovernmental organizations, State organizations, industry, and international geoscience organizations to review the methodology and comments received under paragraph (1); and

(3) on completion of the review under paragraph (2), publish in the Federal Register the revised final methodology.

(e) Periodic updates

The methodology developed under this section shall be updated periodically (including at least

once every 5 years) to incorporate new data as the data becomes available.

(f) National assessment

(1) In general

Not later than 2 years after the date of publication of the methodology under subsection (d)(1), the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Energy and State geological surveys, shall complete a national assessment of capacity for carbon dioxide in accordance with the methodology.

(2) Geological verification

As part of the assessment under this subsection, the Secretary shall carry out a drilling program to supplement the geological data relevant to determining sequestration capacity of carbon dioxide in geological sequestration formations, including—

(A) well log data;
(B) core data; and
(C) fluid sample data.

(3) Partnership with other drilling programs

As part of the drilling program under paragraph (2), the Secretary shall enter, as appropriate, into partnerships with other entities to collect and integrate data from other drilling programs relevant to the sequestration of carbon dioxide in geological formations.

(4) Incorporation into NatCarb

(A) In general

On completion of the assessment, the Secretary of Energy and the Secretary of the Interior shall incorporate the results of the assessment using—

(i) the NatCarb database, to the maximum extent practicable; or
(ii) a new database developed by the Secretary of Energy, as the Secretary of Energy determines to be necessary.

(B) Ranking

The database shall include the data necessary to rank potential sequestration sites for capacity and risk, across the United States, within each State, by formation, and within each basin.

(5) Report

Not later than 180 days after the date on which the assessment is completed, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate and the Committee on Natural Resources of the House of Representatives a report describing the findings under the assessment.

(6) Periodic updates

The national assessment developed under this section shall be updated periodically (including at least once every 5 years) to support public and private sector decisionmaking.

(g) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $30,000,000 for the period of fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VII, §711, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1710.)

§17272. Assessment of carbon sequestration and methane and nitrous oxide emissions from ecosystems

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Adaptation strategy

The term "adaptation strategy" means a land use and management strategy that can be used—

(A) to increase the sequestration capabilities of covered greenhouse gases of any ecosystem; or

(B) to reduce the emissions of covered greenhouse gases from any ecosystem.

(2) Assessment

The term "assessment" means the national assessment authorized under subsection (b).

(3) Covered greenhouse gas

The term "covered greenhouse gas" means carbon dioxide, nitrous oxide, and methane gas.

(4) Ecosystem

The term "ecosystem" means any terrestrial, freshwater aquatic, or coastal ecosystem, including an estuary.

(5) Native plant species

The term "native plant species" means any noninvasive, naturally occurring plant species within an ecosystem.

(6) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of the Interior.

(b) Authorization of assessment

Not later than 2 years after the date on which the final methodology is published under subsection (f)(3)(D), the Secretary shall complete a national assessment of—

(1) the quantity of carbon stored in and released from ecosystems, including from man-caused and natural fires; and

(2) the annual flux of covered greenhouse gases in and out of ecosystems.

(c) Components

In conducting the assessment under subsection (b), the Secretary shall—

(1) determine the processes that control the flux of covered greenhouse gases in and out of each ecosystem;

(2) estimate the potential for increasing carbon sequestration in natural and managed ecosystems through management activities or restoration activities in each ecosystem;

(3) develop near-term and long-term adaptation strategies or mitigation strategies that can be employed—

(A) to enhance the sequestration of carbon in each ecosystem;

(B) to reduce emissions of covered greenhouse gases from ecosystems; and

(C) to adapt to climate change; and

(4) estimate the annual carbon sequestration capacity of ecosystems under a range of policies in support of management activities to optimize sequestration.

(d) Use of native plant species

In developing restoration activities under subsection (c)(2) and management strategies and adaptation strategies under subsection (c)(3), the Secretary shall emphasize the use of native plant species (including mixtures of many native plant species) for sequestering covered greenhouse gas in each ecosystem.

(e) Consultation

(1) In general

In conducting the assessment under subsection (b) and developing the methodology under subsection (f), the Secretary shall consult with—

(A) the Secretary of Energy;

(B) the Secretary of Agriculture;
(C) the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency;
(D) the Secretary of Commerce, acting through the Under Secretary for Oceans and Atmosphere; and
(E) the heads of other relevant agencies.

(2) Ocean and coastal ecosystems

In carrying out this section with respect to ocean and coastal ecosystems (including estuaries), the Secretary shall work jointly with the Secretary of Commerce, acting through the Under Secretary for Oceans and Atmosphere.

(f) Methodology

(1) In general

Not later than 1 year after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall develop a methodology for conducting the assessment.

(2) Requirements

The methodology developed under paragraph (1)—
(A) shall—
(i) determine the method for measuring, monitoring, and quantifying covered greenhouse gas emissions and reductions;
(ii) estimate the total capacity of each ecosystem to sequester carbon; and
(iii) estimate the ability of each ecosystem to reduce emissions of covered greenhouse gases through management practices; and

(B) may employ economic and other systems models, analyses, and estimates, to be developed in consultation with each of the individuals described in subsection (e).

(3) External review and publication

On completion of a proposed methodology, the Secretary shall—
(A) publish the proposed methodology;
(B) at least 60 days before the date on which the final methodology is published, solicit comments from—
(i) the public; and
(ii) heads of affected Federal and State agencies;

(C) establish a panel to review the proposed methodology published under subparagraph (A) and any comments received under subparagraph (B), to be composed of members—
(i) with expertise in the matters described in subsections (c) and (d); and
(ii) that are, as appropriate, representatives of Federal agencies, institutions of higher education, nongovernmental organizations, State organizations, industry, and international organizations; and

(D) on completion of the review under subparagraph (C), publish in the Federal Register the revised final methodology.

(g) Estimate; review

The Secretary shall—
(1) based on the assessment, prescribe the data, information, and analysis needed to establish a scientifically sound estimate of the carbon sequestration capacity of relevant ecosystems; and
(2) not later than 180 days after the date on which the assessment is completed, submit to the heads of applicable Federal agencies and the appropriate committees of Congress a report that describes the results of the assessment.

(h) Data and report availability

On completion of the assessment, the Secretary shall incorporate the results of the assessment into a web-accessible database for public use.

(i) Authorization

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $20,000,000 for the period of fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VII, §712, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1713.)

SUBCHAPTER VII—IMPROVED MANAGEMENT OF ENERGY POLICY

PART A—MANAGEMENT IMPROVEMENTS

§17281. National media campaign

(a) In general

The Secretary, acting through the Assistant Secretary for Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy (referred to in this section as the "Secretary"), shall develop and conduct a national media campaign—

(1) to increase energy efficiency throughout the economy of the United States during the 10-year period beginning on December 19, 2007;

(2) to promote the national security benefits associated with increased energy efficiency; and

(3) to decrease oil consumption in the United States during the 10-year period beginning on December 19, 2007.

(b) Contract with entity

The Secretary shall carry out subsection (a) directly or through—

(1) competitively bid contracts with 1 or more nationally recognized media firms for the development and distribution of monthly television, radio, and newspaper public service announcements; or

(2) collective agreements with 1 or more nationally recognized institutes, businesses, or nonprofit organizations for the funding, development, and distribution of monthly television, radio, and newspaper public service announcements.

(c) Use of funds

(1) In general

Amounts made available to carry out this section shall be used for—

(A) advertising costs, including—

(i) the purchase of media time and space;

(ii) creative and talent costs;

(iii) testing and evaluation of advertising; and

(iv) evaluation of the effectiveness of the media campaign; and

(B) administrative costs, including operational and management expenses.

(2) Limitations

In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall allocate not less than 85 percent of funds made available under subsection (e) for each fiscal year for the advertising functions specified under paragraph (1)(A).

(d) Reports

The Secretary shall annually submit to Congress a report that describes—

(1) the strategy of the national media campaign and whether specific objectives of the campaign were accomplished, including—

(A) determinations concerning the rate of change of energy consumption, in both absolute and per capita terms; and

(B) an evaluation that enables consideration of whether the media campaign contributed to reduction of energy consumption;

(2) steps taken to ensure that the national media campaign operates in an effective and efficient manner consistent with the overall strategy and focus of the campaign;

(3) plans to purchase advertising time and space;

(4) policies and practices implemented to ensure that Federal funds are used responsibly to purchase advertising time and space and eliminate the potential for waste, fraud, and abuse; and

(5) all contracts or cooperative agreements entered into with a corporation, partnership, or individual working on behalf of the national media campaign.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

(1) In general

There is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(2) Decreased oil consumption

The Secretary shall use not less than 50 percent of the amount that is made available under this section for each fiscal year to develop and conduct a national media campaign to decrease oil consumption in the United States over the next decade.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VIII, §801, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1716.)

§17282. Renewable energy deployment

(a) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Alaska small hydroelectric power

The term "Alaska small hydroelectric power" means power that—

(A) is generated—

(i) in the State of Alaska;

(ii) without the use of a dam or impoundment of water; and

(iii) through the use of—

(I) a lake tap (but not a perched alpine lake); or

(II) a run-of-river screened at the point of diversion; and

(B) has a nameplate capacity rating of a wattage that is not more than 15 megawatts.

(2) Eligible applicant

The term "eligible applicant" means any—

(A) governmental entity;

(B) private utility;

(C) public utility;

(D) municipal utility;

(E) cooperative utility;

(F) Indian tribes; and

(G) Regional Corporation (as defined in section 1602 of title 43).

(3) Ocean energy

(A) Inclusions

The term "ocean energy" includes current, wave, and tidal energy.

(B) Exclusion

The term "ocean energy" excludes thermal energy.

(4) Renewable energy project

The term "renewable energy project" means a project—

(A) for the commercial generation of electricity; and

(B) that generates electricity from—

(i) solar, wind, or geothermal energy or ocean energy;

(ii) biomass (as defined in section 15852(b) of this title);

(iii) landfill gas; or

(iv) Alaska small hydroelectric power.

(b) Renewable energy construction grants

(1) In general

The Secretary shall use amounts appropriated under this section to make grants for use in carrying out renewable energy projects.

(2) Criteria

Not later than 180 days after December 19, 2007, the Secretary shall set forth criteria for use in awarding grants under this section.

(3) Application

To receive a grant from the Secretary under paragraph (1), an eligible applicant shall submit to the Secretary an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary may require, including a written assurance that—

(A) all laborers and mechanics employed by contractors or subcontractors during construction, alteration, or repair that is financed, in whole or in part, by a grant under this section shall be paid wages at rates not less than those prevailing on similar construction in the locality, as determined by the Secretary of Labor in accordance with sections 3141–3144, 3146, and 3147 of title 40; and

(B) the Secretary of Labor shall, with respect to the labor standards described in this paragraph, have the authority and functions set forth in Reorganization Plan Numbered 14 of 1950 (5 U.S.C. App.) and section 3145 of title 40.

(4) Non-Federal share

Each eligible applicant that receives a grant under this subsection shall contribute to the total cost of the renewable energy project constructed by the eligible applicant an amount not less than 50 percent of the total cost of the project.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Fund such sums as are necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VIII, §803, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1718.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan Numbered 14 of 1950, referred to in subsec. (b)(3)(B), is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§17283. Repealed. Pub. L. 113–76, div. D, title III, §314, Jan. 17, 2014, 128 Stat. 177

Section, Pub. L. 110–140, title VIII, §804, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1720, related to coordination of planned

refinery outages.

§17284. Assessment of resources

(a) 5-year plan

(1) Establishment

The Administrator of the Energy Information Administration (referred to in this section as the "Administrator") shall establish a 5-year plan to enhance the quality and scope of the data collection necessary to ensure the scope, accuracy, and timeliness of the information needed for efficient functioning of energy markets and related financial operations.

(2) Requirement

In establishing the plan under paragraph (1), the Administrator shall pay particular attention to—

(A) data series terminated because of budget constraints;

(B) data on demand response;

(C) timely data series of State-level information;

(D) improvements in the area of oil and gas data;

(E) improvements in data on solid byproducts from coal-based energy-producing facilities; and

(F) the ability to meet applicable deadlines under Federal law (including regulations) to provide data required by Congress.

(b) Submission to Congress

The Administrator shall submit to Congress the plan established under subsection (a), including a description of any improvements needed to enhance the ability of the Administrator to collect and process energy information in a manner consistent with the needs of energy markets.

(c) Guidelines

(1) In general

The Administrator shall—

(A) establish guidelines to ensure the quality, comparability, and scope of State energy data, including data on energy production and consumption by product and sector and renewable and alternative sources, required to provide a comprehensive, accurate energy profile at the State level;

(B) share company-level data collected at the State level with each State involved, in a manner consistent with the legal authorities, confidentiality protections, and stated uses in effect at the time the data were collected, subject to the condition that the State shall agree to reasonable requirements for use of the data, as the Administrator may require;

(C) assess any existing gaps in data obtained and compiled by the Energy Information Administration; and

(D) evaluate the most cost-effective ways to address any data quality and quantity issues in conjunction with State officials.

(2) Consultation

The Administrator shall consult with State officials and the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission on a regular basis in—

(A) establishing guidelines and determining the scope of State-level data under paragraph (1); and

(B) exploring ways to address data needs and serve data uses.

(d) Assessment of State data needs

Not later than 1 year after December 19, 2007, the Administrator shall submit to Congress an assessment of State-level data needs, including a plan to address the needs.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

In addition to any other amounts made available to the Administrator, there are authorized to be appropriated to the Administrator to carry out this section—

(1) $10,000,000 for fiscal year 2008;
(2) $10,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;
(3) $10,000,000 for fiscal year 2010;
(4) $15,000,000 for fiscal year 2011;
(5) $20,000,000 for fiscal year 2012; and
(6) such sums as are necessary for subsequent fiscal years.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VIII, §805, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1721.)

§17285. Sense of Congress relating to the use of renewable resources to generate energy

(a) Findings

Congress finds that—

(1) the United States has a quantity of renewable energy resources that is sufficient to supply a significant portion of the energy needs of the United States;

(2) the agricultural, forestry, and working land of the United States can help ensure a sustainable domestic energy system;

(3) accelerated development and use of renewable energy technologies provide numerous benefits to the United States, including improved national security, improved balance of payments, healthier rural economies, improved environmental quality, and abundant, reliable, and affordable energy for all citizens of the United States;

(4) the production of transportation fuels from renewable energy would help the United States meet rapidly growing domestic and global energy demands, reduce the dependence of the United States on energy imported from volatile regions of the world that are politically unstable, stabilize the cost and availability of energy, and safeguard the economy and security of the United States;

(5) increased energy production from domestic renewable resources would attract substantial new investments in energy infrastructure, create economic growth, develop new jobs for the citizens of the United States, and increase the income for farm, ranch, and forestry jobs in the rural regions of the United States;

(6) increased use of renewable energy is practical and can be cost effective with the implementation of supportive policies and proper incentives to stimulate markets and infrastructure; and

(7) public policies aimed at enhancing renewable energy production and accelerating technological improvements will further reduce energy costs over time and increase market demand.

(b) Sense of Congress

It is the sense of Congress that it is the goal of the United States that, not later than January 1, 2025, the agricultural, forestry, and working land of the United States should—

(1) provide from renewable resources not less than 25 percent of the total energy consumed in the United States; and

(2) continue to produce safe, abundant, and affordable food, feed, and fiber.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VIII, §806, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1722.)

§17286. Geothermal assessment, exploration information, and priority activities

(a) In general

Not later than January 1, 2012, the Secretary of the Interior, acting through the Director of the

United States Geological Survey, shall—

(1) complete a comprehensive nationwide geothermal resource assessment that examines the full range of geothermal resources in the United States; and

(2) submit to the the [1] Committee on Natural Resources of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate a report describing the results of the assessment.

(b) Periodic updates

At least once every 10 years, the Secretary shall update the national assessment required under this section to support public and private sector decisionmaking.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of the Interior to carry out this section—

(1) $15,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2012; and

(2) such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2013 through 2022.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VIII, §807, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1723.)

[1] So in original.

PART B—PROHIBITIONS ON MARKET MANIPULATION AND FALSE INFORMATION

§17301. Prohibition on market manipulation

It is unlawful for any person, directly or indirectly, to use or employ, in connection with the purchase or sale of crude oil [1] gasoline or petroleum distillates at wholesale, any manipulative or deceptive device or contrivance, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Federal Trade Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of United States citizens.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VIII, §811, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1723.)

[1] So in original. A comma probably should appear.

§17302. Prohibition on false information

It is unlawful for any person to report information related to the wholesale price of crude oil [1] gasoline or petroleum distillates to a Federal department or agency if—

(1) the person knew, or reasonably should have known, the information to be false or misleading;

(2) the information was required by law to be reported; and

(3) the person intended the false or misleading data to affect data compiled by the department or agency for statistical or analytical purposes with respect to the market for crude oil, gasoline, or petroleum distillates.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VIII, §812, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1723.)

[1] So in original. A comma probably should appear.

§17303. Enforcement by the Federal Trade Commission

(a) Enforcement

This part shall be enforced by the Federal Trade Commission in the same manner, by the same means, and with the same jurisdiction as though all applicable terms of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 41 et seq.) were incorporated into and made a part of this part.

(b) Violation is treated as unfair or deceptive act or practice

The violation of any provision of this part shall be treated as an unfair or deceptive act or practice proscribed under a rule issued under section 18(a)(1)(B) of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 57a(a)(1)(B)).

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VIII, §813, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1724.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Trade Commission Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act Sept. 26, 1914, ch. 311, 38 Stat. 717, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§41 et seq.) of chapter 2 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 58 of Title 15 and Tables.

§17304. Penalties

(a) Civil penalty

In addition to any penalty applicable under the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 41 et seq.), any supplier that violates section 17301 or 17302 of this title shall be punishable by a civil penalty of not more than $1,000,000.

(b) Method

The penalties provided by subsection (a) shall be obtained in the same manner as civil penalties imposed under section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 45).

(c) Multiple offenses; mitigating factors

In assessing the penalty provided by subsection (a)—

(1) each day of a continuing violation shall be considered a separate violation; and

(2) the court shall take into consideration, among other factors—

(A) the seriousness of the violation; and

(B) the efforts of the person committing the violation to remedy the harm caused by the violation in a timely manner.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VIII, §814, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1724.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Trade Commission Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act Sept. 26, 1914, ch. 311, 38 Stat. 717, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§41 et seq.) of chapter 2 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 58 of Title 15 and Tables.

§17305. Effect on other laws

(a) Other authority of the Commission

Nothing in this part limits or affects the authority of the Federal Trade Commission to bring an enforcement action or take any other measure under the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 41 et seq.) or any other provision of law.

(b) Antitrust law

Nothing in this part shall be construed to modify, impair, or supersede the operation of any of the antitrust laws. For purposes of this subsection, the term "antitrust laws" shall have the meaning given it in subsection (a) of the first section of the Clayton Act (15 U.S.C. 12), except that it includes

section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 45) to the extent that such section 5 applies to unfair methods of competition.

(c) State law

Nothing in this part preempts any State law.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title VIII, §815, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1724.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Trade Commission Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act Sept. 26, 1914, ch. 311, 38 Stat. 717, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§41 et seq.) of chapter 2 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 58 of Title 15 and Tables.

SUBCHAPTER VIII—INTERNATIONAL ENERGY PROGRAMS

§17321. Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) Appropriate congressional committees

The term "appropriate congressional committees" means—

(A) the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives; and

(B) the Committee on Foreign Relations, the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources, the Committee on Environment and Public Works, and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate.

(2) Clean and efficient energy technology

The term "clean and efficient energy technology" means an energy supply or end-use technology that, compared to a similar technology already in widespread commercial use in a recipient country, will—

(A) reduce emissions of greenhouse gases; or

(B)(i) increase efficiency of energy production; or

(ii) decrease intensity of energy usage.

(3) Greenhouse gas

The term "greenhouse gas" means—

(A) carbon dioxide;

(B) methane;

(C) nitrous oxide;

(D) hydrofluorocarbons;

(E) perfluorocarbons; or

(F) sulfur hexafluoride.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §901, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1725.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title IX of Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1725, which enacted this subchapter and amended section 5314 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, section 9101 of Title 31, Money and Finance, and section 3021 of Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of title IX to the Code, see Tables.

PART A—ASSISTANCE TO PROMOTE CLEAN AND EFFICIENT ENERGY

§17331. United States assistance for developing countries

(a) Assistance authorized

The Administrator of the United States Agency for International Development shall support policies and programs in developing countries that promote clean and efficient energy technologies—

(1) to produce the necessary market conditions for the private sector delivery of energy and environmental management services;

(2) to create an environment that is conducive to accepting clean and efficient energy technologies that support the overall purpose of reducing greenhouse gas emissions, including—

(A) improving policy, legal, and regulatory frameworks;

(B) increasing institutional abilities to provide energy and environmental management services; and

(C) increasing public awareness and participation in the decision-making of delivering energy and environmental management services; and

(3) to promote the use of American-made clean and efficient energy technologies, products, and energy and environmental management services.

(b) Report

The Administrator of the United States Agency for International Development shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees an annual report on the implementation of this section for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

To carry out this section, there are authorized to be appropriated to the Administrator of the United States Agency for International Development $200,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §911, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1725.)

§17332. United States exports and outreach programs for India, China, and other countries

(a) Assistance authorized

The Secretary of Commerce shall direct the United States and Foreign Commercial Service to expand or create a corps of the Foreign Commercial Service officers to promote United States exports in clean and efficient energy technologies and build the capacity of government officials in India, China, and any other country the Secretary of Commerce determines appropriate, to become more familiar with the available technologies—

(1) by assigning or training Foreign Commercial Service attachés, who have expertise in clean and efficient energy technologies from the United States, to embark on business development and outreach efforts to such countries; and

(2) by deploying the attachés described in paragraph (1) to educate provincial, state, and local government officials in such countries on the variety of United States-based technologies in clean and efficient energy technologies for the purposes of promoting United States exports and reducing global greenhouse gas emissions.

(b) Report

The Secretary of Commerce shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees an annual report on the implementation of this section for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

To carry out this section, there are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of Commerce such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §912, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1726.)

§17333. United States trade missions to encourage private sector trade and investment

(a) Assistance authorized

The Secretary of Commerce shall direct the International Trade Administration to expand or create trade missions to and from the United States to encourage private sector trade and investment in clean and efficient energy technologies—

(1) by organizing and facilitating trade missions to foreign countries and by matching United States private sector companies with opportunities in foreign markets so that clean and efficient energy technologies can help to combat increases in global greenhouse gas emissions; and

(2) by creating reverse trade missions in which the Department of Commerce facilitates the meeting of foreign private and public sector organizations with private sector companies in the United States for the purpose of showcasing clean and efficient energy technologies in use or in development that could be exported to other countries.

(b) Report

The Secretary of Commerce shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees an annual report on the implementation of this section for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

To carry out this section, there are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of Commerce such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §913, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1726.)

§17334. Actions by Overseas Private Investment Corporation

(a) Sense of Congress

It is the sense of Congress that the Overseas Private Investment Corporation should promote greater investment in clean and efficient energy technologies by—

(1) proactively reaching out to United States companies that are interested in investing in clean and efficient energy technologies in countries that are significant contributors to global greenhouse gas emissions;

(2) giving preferential treatment to the evaluation and awarding of projects that involve the investment or utilization of clean and efficient energy technologies; and

(3) providing greater flexibility in supporting projects that involve the investment or utilization of clean and efficient energy technologies, including financing, insurance, and other assistance.

(b) Report

The Overseas Private Investment Corporation shall include in its annual report required under section 2200a of title 22—

(1) a description of the activities carried out to implement this section; or

(2) if the Corporation did not carry out any activities to implement this section, an explanation of the reasons therefor.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §914, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1727.)

§17335. Actions by United States Trade and Development Agency

(a) Assistance authorized

The Director of the Trade and Development Agency shall establish or support policies that—

(1) proactively seek opportunities to fund projects that involve the utilization of clean and efficient energy technologies, including in trade capacity building and capital investment projects;

(2) where appropriate, advance the utilization of clean and efficient energy technologies, particularly to countries that have the potential for significant reduction in greenhouse gas emissions; and

(3) recruit and retain individuals with appropriate expertise or experience in clean, renewable, and efficient energy technologies to identify and evaluate opportunities for projects that involve clean and efficient energy technologies and services.

(b) Report

The President shall include in the annual report on the activities of the Trade and Development Agency required under section 2421(d) of title 22 a description of the activities carried out to implement this section.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §915, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1727.)

§17336. Deployment of international clean and efficient energy technologies and investment in global energy markets

(a) Task Force

(1) Establishment

Not later than 90 days after December 19, 2007, the President shall establish a Task Force on International Cooperation for Clean and Efficient Energy Technologies (in this section referred to as the "Task Force").

(2) Composition

The Task Force shall be composed of representatives, appointed by the head of the respective Federal department or agency, of—

(A) the Council on Environmental Quality;
(B) the Department of Energy;
(C) the Department of Commerce;
(D) the Department of the Treasury;
(E) the Department of State;
(F) the Environmental Protection Agency;
(G) the United States Agency for International Development;
(H) the Export-Import Bank of the United States;
(I) the Overseas Private Investment Corporation: [1]
(J) the Trade and Development Agency;
(K) the Small Business Administration;
(L) the Office of the United States Trade Representative; and
(M) other Federal departments and agencies, as determined by the President.

(3) Chairperson

The President shall designate a Chairperson or Co-Chairpersons of the Task Force.

(4) Duties

The Task Force—

(A) shall develop and assist in the implementation of the strategy required under subsection (c); and

(B)(i) shall analyze technology, policy, and market opportunities for the development,

demonstration, and deployment of clean and efficient energy technologies on an international basis; and

(ii) shall examine relevant trade, tax, finance, international, and other policy issues to assess which policies, in the United States and in developing countries, would help open markets and improve the export of clean and efficient energy technologies from the United States.

(5) Termination

The Task Force, including any working group established by the Task Force pursuant to subsection (b), shall terminate 12 years after December 19, 2007.

(b) Working groups

(1) Establishment

The Task Force—

(A) shall establish an Interagency Working Group on the Export of Clean and Efficient Energy Technologies (in this section referred to as the "Interagency Working Group"); and

(B) may establish other working groups as may be necessary to carry out this section.

(2) Composition

The Interagency Working Group shall be composed of—

(A) the Secretary of Energy, the Secretary of Commerce, and the Secretary of State, who shall serve as Co-Chairpersons of the Interagency Working Group; and

(B) other members, as determined by the Chairperson or Co-Chairpersons of the Task Force.

(3) Duties

The Interagency Working Group shall coordinate the resources and relevant programs of the Department of Energy, the Department of Commerce, the Department of State, and other relevant Federal departments and agencies to support the export of clean and efficient energy technologies developed or demonstrated in the United States to other countries and the deployment of such clean and efficient energy technologies in such other countries.

(4) Interagency Center

The Interagency Working Group—

(A) shall establish an Interagency Center on the Export of Clean and Efficient Energy Technologies (in this section referred to as the "Interagency Center") to assist the Interagency Working Group in carrying out its duties required under paragraph (3); and

(B) shall locate the Interagency Center at a site agreed upon by the Co-Chairpersons of the Interagency Working Group, with the approval of the Chairperson or Co-Chairpersons of the Task Force.

(c) Strategy

(1) In general

Not later than 1 year after December 19, 2007, the Task Force shall develop and submit to the President and the appropriate congressional committees a strategy to—

(A) support the development and implementation of programs, policies, and initiatives in developing countries to promote the adoption and deployment of clean and efficient energy technologies, with an emphasis on those developing countries that are expected to experience the most significant growth in energy production and use over the next 20 years;

(B) open and expand clean and efficient energy technology markets and facilitate the export of clean and efficient energy technologies to developing countries, in a manner consistent with United States obligations as a member of the World Trade Organization;

(C) integrate into the foreign policy objectives of the United States the promotion of—

(i) the deployment of clean and efficient energy technologies and the reduction of greenhouse gas emissions in developing countries; and

(ii) the export of clean and efficient energy technologies; and

(D) develop financial mechanisms and instruments, including securities that mitigate the political and foreign exchange risks of uses that are consistent with the foreign policy objectives of the United States by combining the private sector market and government enhancements, that—

(i) are cost-effective; and

(ii) facilitate private capital investment in clean and efficient energy technology projects in developing countries.

(2) Updates

Not later than 3 years after the date of submission of the strategy under paragraph (1), and every 3 years thereafter, the Task Force shall update the strategy in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (1).

(d) Report

(1) In general

Not later than 3 years after the date of submission of the strategy under subsection (c)(1), and every 3 years thereafter, the President shall transmit to the appropriate congressional committees a report on the implementation of this section for the prior 3-year period.

(2) Matters to be included

The report required under paragraph (1) shall include the following:

(A) The update of the strategy required under subsection (c)(2) and a description of the actions taken by the Task Force to assist in the implementation of the strategy.

(B) A description of actions taken by the Task Force to carry out the duties required under subsection (a)(4)(B).

(C) A description of assistance provided under this section.

(D) The results of programs, projects, and activities carried out under this section.

(E) A description of priorities for promoting the diffusion and adoption of clean and efficient energy technologies and strategies in developing countries, taking into account economic and security interests of the United States and opportunities for the export of technology of the United States.

(F) Recommendations to the heads of appropriate Federal departments and agencies on methods to streamline Federal programs and policies to improve the role of such Federal departments and agencies in the development, demonstration, and deployment of clean and efficient energy technologies on an international basis.

(G) Strategies to integrate representatives of the private sector and other interested groups on the export and deployment of clean and efficient energy technologies.

(H) A description of programs to disseminate information to the private sector and the public on clean and efficient energy technologies and opportunities to transfer such clean and efficient energy technologies.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2020.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §916, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1728.)

[1] *So in original. The colon probably should be a semicolon.*

§17337. United States-Israel energy cooperation

(a) Findings

Congress finds that—

(1) it is in the highest national security interests of the United States to develop covered energy

sources;

(2) the State of Israel is a steadfast ally of the United States;

(3) the special relationship between the United States and Israel is manifested in a variety of cooperative scientific research and development programs, such as—

(A) the United States-Israel Binational Science Foundation; and

(B) the United States-Israel Binational Industrial Research and Development Foundation;

(4) those programs have made possible—

(A) many scientific, technological, and commercial breakthroughs in the fields of life sciences, medicine, bioengineering, agriculture, biotechnology, communications, and others; and

(B) significant contributions to the development of renewable energy and energy efficiency through the established programs of the United States-Israel Binational Industrial Research and Development Foundation and the United States-Israel Binational Science Foundation;

(5) on February 1, 1996, the Secretary of Energy (referred to in this section as the "Secretary") and the Israeli Minister of Energy and Infrastructure signed an agreement to establish a framework for collaboration between the United States and Israel in energy research and development activities;

(6) Israeli scientists and engineers are at the forefront of research and development in the field of covered energy sources;

(7) enhanced cooperation between the United States and Israel for the purpose of research and development of covered energy sources would be in the national interests of both countries;

(8) United States-Israel energy cooperation and the development of natural resources by Israel are in the strategic interest of the United States;

(9) Israel is a strategic partner of the United States in water technology;

(10) the United States can play a role in assisting Israel with regional safety and security issues;

(11) the National Science Foundation of the United States, to the extent consistent with the National Science Foundation's mission, should collaborate with the Israel Science Foundation and the United States-Israel Binational Science Foundation;

(12) the United States and Israel should strive to develop more robust academic cooperation in—

(A) energy innovation technology and engineering;

(B) water science;

(C) technology transfer; and

(D) analysis of emerging geopolitical implications, crises and threats from foreign natural resource and energy acquisitions, and the development of domestic resources as a response;

(13) the United States supports the goals of the Alternative Fuels Administration of Israel with respect to expanding the use of alternative fuels;

(14) the United States strongly urges open dialogue and continued mechanisms for regular engagement and encourages further cooperation between applicable departments, agencies, ministries, institutions of higher education, and the private sector of the United States and Israel on energy security issues, including—

(A) identifying policy priorities associated with the development of natural resources of Israel;

(B) discussing and sharing best practices to secure cyber energy infrastructure and other energy security matters;

(C) leveraging natural gas to positively impact regional stability;

(D) issues relating to the energy-water nexus, including improving energy efficiency and the overall performance of water technologies through research and development in water desalination, wastewater treatment and reclamation, water treatment in gas and oil production processes, and other water treatment refiners;

(E) technical and environmental management of deep-water exploration and production;
(F) emergency response and coastal protection and restoration;
(G) academic outreach and engagement;
(H) private sector and business development engagement;
(I) regulatory consultations;
(J) leveraging alternative transportation fuels and technologies; and
(K) any other areas determined appropriate by the United States and Israel;

(15) the United States—
(A) acknowledges the achievements and importance of the Binational Industrial Research and Development Foundation and the United States-Israel Binational Science Foundation; and
(B) supports continued multiyear funding to ensure the continuity of the programs of the foundations specified in subparagraph (A); and

(16) the United States and Israel have a shared interest in addressing immediate, near-term, and long-term energy, energy poverty, energy independence, and environmental challenges facing the United States and Israel, respectively.

(b) Grant program

(1) Establishment

In implementing the agreement entitled the "Agreement between the Department of Energy of the United States of America and the Ministry of Energy and Infrastructure of Israel Concerning Energy Cooperation", dated February 1, 1996, the Secretary shall establish a grant program in accordance with the requirements of sections 16352 and 16353 of this title to support research, development, and commercialization of covered energy.

(2) Types of energy

In carrying out paragraph (1), the Secretary may make grants to promote—
(A) solar energy;
(B) biomass energy;
(C) energy efficiency;
(D) wind energy;
(E) geothermal energy;
(F) wave and tidal energy;
(G) advanced battery technology;
(H) natural gas energy, including conventional and unconventional natural gas technologies and other associated technologies, and natural gas projects conducted by or in conjunction with the United States-Israel Binational Science Foundation and the United States-Israel Binational Industrial Research and Development Foundation; and
(I) improvement of energy efficiency and the overall performance of water technologies through research and development in water desalination, wastewater treatment and reclamation, and other water treatment refiners.

(3) Eligible applicants

An applicant shall be eligible to receive a grant under this subsection if the project of the applicant—
(A) addresses a requirement in the area of improved covered energy sources, as determined by the Secretary; and
(B) is a joint venture between—
(i)(I) a for-profit business entity, academic institution, National Laboratory (as defined in section 15801 of this title), or nonprofit entity in the United States; and
(II) a for-profit business entity, academic institution, or nonprofit entity in Israel; or
(ii)(I) the Federal Government; and
(II) the Government of Israel.

(4) Applications

To be eligible to receive a grant under this subsection, an applicant shall submit to the Secretary an application for the grant in accordance with procedures established by the Secretary, in consultation with the advisory board established under paragraph (5).

(5) Advisory board

(A) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish an advisory board—

(i) to monitor the method by which grants are awarded under this subsection; and

(ii) to provide to the Secretary periodic performance reviews of actions taken to carry out this subsection.

(B) Composition

The advisory board established under subparagraph (A) shall be composed of 3 members, to be appointed by the Secretary, of whom—

(i) 1 shall be a representative of the Federal Government;

(ii) 1 shall be selected from a list of nominees provided by the United States-Israel Binational Science Foundation; and

(iii) 1 shall be selected from a list of nominees provided by the United States-Israel Binational Industrial Research and Development Foundation.

(6) Contributed funds

Notwithstanding section 3302 of title 31, the Secretary may accept, retain, and use funds contributed by any person, government entity, or organization for purposes of carrying out this subsection—

(A) without further appropriation; and

(B) without fiscal year limitation.

(7) Report

Not later than 180 days after the date of completion of a project for which a grant is provided under this subsection, the grant recipient shall submit to the Secretary a report that contains—

(A) a description of the method by which the recipient used the grant funds; and

(B) an evaluation of the level of success of each project funded by the grant.

(8) Classification

Grants shall be awarded under this subsection only for projects that are considered to be unclassified by both the United States and Israel.

(c) International partnerships

(1) In general

The Secretary, subject to the availability of appropriations, may enter into cooperative agreements supporting and enhancing dialogue and planning involving international partnerships between the Department, including National Laboratories of the Department, and the Government of Israel and its ministries, offices, and institutions.

(2) Federal share

The Secretary may not pay more than 50 percent of Federal share of the costs of implementing cooperative agreements entered into pursuant to paragraph (1).

(3) Annual reports

If the Secretary enters into agreements authorized by paragraph (1), the Secretary shall submit an annual report to the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate, the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate, the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives, the Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of the House of Representatives, the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the

House of Representatives, and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives that describes—

(A) actions taken to implement such agreements; and

(B) any projects undertaken pursuant to such agreements.

(d) United States-Israel Energy Center

The Secretary may establish a joint United States-Israel Energy Center in the United States leveraging the experience, knowledge, and expertise of institutions of higher education and entities in the private sector, among others, in offshore energy development to further dialogue and collaboration to develop more robust academic cooperation in energy innovation technology and engineering, water science, technology transfer, and analysis of emerging geopolitical implications, crises and threats from foreign natural resource and energy acquisitions, and the development of domestic resources as a response.

(e) Termination

The grant program and the advisory committee established under this section terminate on September 30, 2024.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §917, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1730; Pub. L. 113–296, §12(a)–(c)(1), Dec. 19, 2014, 128 Stat. 4078–4080.)

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 113–296, §12(a)(1), substituted "covered" for "renewable".

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 113–296, §12(a)(2), substituted "possible—" for "possible", designated remaining existing provisions as subpar. (A), and added subpar. (B).

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 113–296, §12(a)(3)(A), substituted "covered" for "renewable".

Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 113–296, §12(a)(4)(A), substituted "covered" for "renewable".

Subsec. (a)(8) to (16). Pub. L. 113–296, §12(a)(3)(B), (4)(B), (5), added pars. (8) to (16).

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 113–296, §12(b)(1), substituted "covered energy" for "renewable energy or energy efficiency".

Subsec. (b)(2)(H), (I). Pub. L. 113–296, §12(b)(2), added subpars. (H) and (I).

Subsec. (b)(3)(A). Pub. L. 113–296, §12(b)(3), substituted "covered" for "energy efficiency or renewable".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 113–296, §12(c)(1)(C), added subsec. (c). Former subsec. (c) redesignated (e).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 113–296, §12(c)(1)(A), (C), added subsec. (d) and struck out former subsec. (d) which related to authorization of appropriations.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 113–296, §12(c)(1)(B), (D), redesignated subsec. (c) as (e) and substituted "September 30, 2024" for "the date that is 7 years after December 19, 2007".

PART B—INTERNATIONAL CLEAN ENERGY FOUNDATION

§17351. Definitions

In this part:

(1) Board

The term "Board" means the Board of Directors of the Foundation established pursuant to section 17352(c) of this title.

(2) Chief Executive Officer

The term "Chief Executive Officer" means the chief executive officer of the Foundation appointed pursuant to section 17352(b) of this title.

(3) Foundation

The term "Foundation" means the International Clean Energy Foundation established by section 17352(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §921, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1732.)

§17352. Establishment and management of Foundation

(a) Establishment

(1) In general

There is established in the executive branch a foundation to be known as the "International Clean Energy Foundation" that shall be responsible for carrying out the provisions of this part. The Foundation shall be a government corporation, as defined in section 103 of title 5.

(2) Board of Directors

The Foundation shall be governed by a Board of Directors in accordance with subsection (c).

(3) Intent of Congress

It is the intent of Congress, in establishing the structure of the Foundation set forth in this subsection, to create an entity that serves the long-term foreign policy and energy security goals of reducing global greenhouse gas emissions.

(b) Chief Executive Officer

(1) In general

There shall be in the Foundation a Chief Executive Officer who shall be responsible for the management of the Foundation.

(2) Appointment

The Chief Executive Officer shall be appointed by the Board, with the advice and consent of the Senate, and shall be a recognized leader in clean and efficient energy technologies and climate change and shall have experience in energy security, business, or foreign policy, chosen on the basis of a rigorous search.

(3) Relationship to Board

The Chief Executive Officer shall report to, and be under the direct authority of, the Board.

(4) Compensation and rank

(A) In general

The Chief Executive Officer shall be compensated at the rate provided for level III of the Executive Schedule under section 5314 of title 5.

(B) Omitted

(C) Authorities and duties

The Chief Executive Officer shall be responsible for the management of the Foundation and shall exercise the powers and discharge the duties of the Foundation.

(D) Authority to appoint officers

In consultation and with approval of the Board, the Chief Executive Officer shall appoint all officers of the Foundation.

(c) Board of Directors

(1) Establishment

There shall be in the Foundation a Board of Directors.

(2) Duties

The Board shall perform the functions specified to be carried out by the Board in this part and may prescribe, amend, and repeal bylaws, rules, regulations, and procedures governing the manner in which the business of the Foundation may be conducted and in which the powers granted to it

by law may be exercised.

(3) Membership

The Board shall consist of—

(A) the Secretary of State (or the Secretary's designee), the Secretary of Energy (or the Secretary's designee), and the Administrator of the United States Agency for International Development (or the Administrator's designee); and

(B) four other individuals with relevant experience in matters relating to energy security (such as individuals who represent institutions of energy policy, business organizations, foreign policy organizations, or other relevant organizations) who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, of whom—

(i) one individual shall be appointed from among a list of individuals submitted by the Majority Leader of the House of Representatives;

(ii) one individual shall be appointed from among a list of individuals submitted by the Minority Leader of the House of Representatives;

(iii) one individual shall be appointed from among a list of individuals submitted by the Majority Leader of the Senate; and

(iv) one individual shall be appointed from among a list of individuals submitted by the Minority Leader of the Senate.

(4) Chief Executive Officer

The Chief Executive Officer of the Foundation shall serve as a nonvoting, ex officio member of the Board.

(5) Terms

(A) Officers of the Federal Government

Each member of the Board described in paragraph (3)(A) shall serve for a term that is concurrent with the term of service of the individual's position as an officer within the other Federal department or agency.

(B) Other members

Each member of the Board described in paragraph (3)(B) shall be appointed for a term of 3 years and may be reappointed for a term of an additional 3 years.

(C) Vacancies

A vacancy in the Board shall be filled in the manner in which the original appointment was made.

(D) Acting members

A vacancy in the Board may be filled with an appointment of an acting member by the Chairperson of the Board for up to 1 year while a nominee is named and awaits confirmation in accordance with paragraph (3)(B).

(6) Chairperson

There shall be a Chairperson of the Board. The Secretary of State (or the Secretary's designee) shall serve as the Chairperson.

(7) Quorum

A majority of the members of the Board described in paragraph (3) shall constitute a quorum, which, except with respect to a meeting of the Board during the 135-day period beginning on December 19, 2007, shall include at least 1 member of the Board described in paragraph (3)(B).

(8) Meetings

The Board shall meet at the call of the Chairperson, who shall call a meeting no less than once a year.

(9) Compensation

(A) Officers of the Federal Government

(i) In general

A member of the Board described in paragraph (3)(A) may not receive additional pay, allowances, or benefits by reason of the member's service on the Board.

(ii) Travel expenses

Each such member of the Board shall receive travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in accordance with applicable provisions under subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5.

(B) Other members

(i) In general

Except as provided in clause (ii), a member of the Board described in paragraph (3)(B)—

(I) shall be paid compensation out of funds made available for the purposes of this part at the daily equivalent of the highest rate payable under section 5332 of title 5 for each day (including travel time) during which the member is engaged in the actual performance of duties as a member of the Board; and

(II) while away from the member's home or regular place of business on necessary travel in the actual performance of duties as a member of the Board, shall be paid per diem, travel, and transportation expenses in the same manner as is provided under subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5.

(ii) Limitation

A member of the Board may not be paid compensation under clause (i)(II) for more than 90 days in any calendar year.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §922, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1733.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 922 of Pub. L. 110–140. Subsec. (b)(4)(B) of section 922 of Pub. L. 110–140 amended section 5314 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§17353. Duties of Foundation

The Foundation shall—

(1) use the funds authorized by this part to make grants to promote projects outside of the United States that serve as models of how to significantly reduce the emissions of global greenhouse gases through clean and efficient energy technologies, processes, and services;

(2) seek contributions from foreign governments, especially those rich in energy resources such as member countries of the Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries, and private organizations to supplement funds made available under this part;

(3) harness global expertise through collaborative partnerships with foreign governments and domestic and foreign private actors, including nongovernmental organizations and private sector companies, by leveraging public and private capital, technology, expertise, and services towards innovative models that can be instituted to reduce global greenhouse gas emissions;

(4) create a repository of information on best practices and lessons learned on the utilization and implementation of clean and efficient energy technologies and processes to be used for future initiatives to tackle the climate change crisis;

(5) be committed to minimizing administrative costs and to maximizing the availability of funds for grants under this part; and

(6) promote the use of American-made clean and efficient energy technologies, processes, and services by giving preference to entities incorporated in the United States and whose technology will be substantially manufactured in the United States.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §923, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1735.)

§17354. Annual report

(a) Report required

Not later than March 31, 2008, and each March 31 thereafter, the Foundation shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees a report on the implementation of this part during the prior fiscal year.

(b) Contents

The report required by subsection (a) shall include—

(1) the total financial resources available to the Foundation during the year, including appropriated funds, the value and source of any gifts or donations accepted pursuant to section 17355(a)(6) of this title, and any other resources;

(2) a description of the Board's policy priorities for the year and the basis upon which competitive grant proposals were solicited and awarded to nongovernmental institutions and other organizations;

(3) a list of grants made to nongovernmental institutions and other organizations that includes the identity of the institutional recipient, the dollar amount, and the results of the program; and

(4) the total administrative and operating expenses of the Foundation for the year, as well as specific information on—

(A) the number of Foundation employees and the cost of compensation for Board members, Foundation employees, and personal service contractors;

(B) costs associated with securing the use of real property for carrying out the functions of the Foundation;

(C) total travel expenses incurred by Board members and Foundation employees in connection with Foundation activities; and

(D) total representational expenses.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §924, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1736.)

§17355. Powers of the Foundation; related provisions

(a) Powers

The Foundation—

(1) shall have perpetual succession unless dissolved by a law enacted after December 19, 2007;

(2) may adopt, alter, and use a seal, which shall be judicially noticed;

(3) may make and perform such contracts, grants, and other agreements with any person or government however designated and wherever situated, as may be necessary for carrying out the functions of the Foundation;

(4) may determine and prescribe the manner in which its obligations shall be incurred and its expenses allowed and paid, including expenses for representation;

(5) may lease, purchase, or otherwise acquire, improve, and use such real property wherever situated, as may be necessary for carrying out the functions of the Foundation;

(6) may accept money, funds, services, or property (real, personal, or mixed), tangible or intangible, made available by gift, bequest [1] grant, or otherwise for the purpose of carrying out the provisions of this subchapter from domestic or foreign private individuals, charities, nongovernmental organizations, corporations, or governments;

(7) may use the United States mails in the same manner and on the same conditions as the executive departments;

(8) may contract with individuals for personal services, who shall not be considered Federal employees for any provision of law administered by the Office of Personnel Management;

(9) may hire or obtain passenger motor vehicles; and

(10) shall have such other powers as may be necessary and incident to carrying out this part.

(b) Principal office

The Foundation shall maintain its principal office in the metropolitan area of Washington, District of Columbia.

(c) Applicability of Government Corporation Control Act

(1) In general

The Foundation shall be subject to chapter 91 of subtitle VI of title 31, except that the Foundation shall not be authorized to issue obligations or offer obligations to the public.

(2) Omitted

(d) Inspector General

(1) In general

The Inspector General of the Department of State shall serve as Inspector General of the Foundation, and, in acting in such capacity, may conduct reviews, investigations, and inspections of all aspects of the operations and activities of the Foundation.

(2) Authority of the Board

In carrying out the responsibilities under this subsection, the Inspector General shall report to and be under the general supervision of the Board.

(3) Reimbursement and authorization of services

(A) Reimbursement

The Foundation shall reimburse the Department of State for all expenses incurred by the Inspector General in connection with the Inspector General's responsibilities under this subsection.

(B) Authorization for services

Of the amount authorized to be appropriated under section 17357(a) of this title for a fiscal year, up to $500,000 is authorized to be made available to the Inspector General of the Department of State to conduct reviews, investigations, and inspections of operations and activities of the Foundation.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §925, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1736.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(6), was in the original "this title", meaning title IX of Pub. L. 110–140, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1725, which enacted this subchapter and amended section 5314 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, section 9101 of Title 31, Money and Finance, and section 3021 of Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of title IX to the Code, see Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 925 of Pub. L. 110–140. Subsec. (c)(2) of section 925 of Pub. L. 110–140 amended section 9101 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

[1] So in original. A comma probably should appear.

§17356. General personnel authorities

(a) Detail of personnel

Upon request of the Chief Executive Officer, the head of an agency may detail any employee of such agency to the Foundation on a reimbursable basis. Any employee so detailed remains, for the purpose of preserving such employee's allowances, privileges, rights, seniority, and other benefits, an employee of the agency from which detailed.

(b) Reemployment rights

(1) In general

An employee of an agency who is serving under a career or career conditional appointment (or the equivalent), and who, with the consent of the head of such agency, transfers to the Foundation, is entitled to be reemployed in such employee's former position or a position of like seniority, status, and pay in such agency, if such employee—

(A) is separated from the Foundation for any reason, other than misconduct, neglect of duty, or malfeasance; and

(B) applies for reemployment not later than 90 days after the date of separation from the Foundation.

(2) Specific rights

An employee who satisfies paragraph (1) is entitled to be reemployed (in accordance with such paragraph) within 30 days after applying for reemployment and, on reemployment, is entitled to at least the rate of basic pay to which such employee would have been entitled had such employee never transferred.

(c) Hiring authority

Of persons employed by the Foundation, no more than 30 persons may be appointed, compensated, or removed without regard to the civil service laws and regulations.

(d) Basic pay

The Chief Executive Officer may fix the rate of basic pay of employees of the Foundation without regard to the provisions of chapter 51 of title 5 (relating to the classification of positions), subchapter III of chapter 53 of such title (relating to General Schedule pay rates), except that no employee of the Foundation may receive a rate of basic pay that exceeds the rate for level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of such title.

(e) Definitions

In this section—

(1) the term "agency" means an executive agency, as defined by section 105 of title 5; and

(2) the term "detail" means the assignment or loan of an employee, without a change of position, from the agency by which such employee is employed to the Foundation.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §926, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1737.)

§17357. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Authorization of appropriations

To carry out this part, there are authorized to be appropriated $20,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2009 through 2013.

(b) Allocation of funds

(1) In general

The Foundation may allocate or transfer to any agency of the United States Government any of the funds available for carrying out this part. Such funds shall be available for obligation and expenditure for the purposes for which the funds were authorized, in accordance with authority granted in this part or under authority governing the activities of the United States Government agency to which such funds are allocated or transferred.

(2) Notification

The Foundation shall notify the appropriate congressional committees not less than 15 days prior to an allocation or transfer of funds pursuant to paragraph (1).

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §927, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1738.)

PART C—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§17371. Energy diplomacy and security within the Department of State

(a) State Department Coordinator for International Energy Affairs

(1) In general

The Secretary of State should ensure that energy security is integrated into the core mission of the Department of State.

(2) Coordinator for International Energy Affairs

There is established within the Office of the Secretary of State a Coordinator for International Energy Affairs, who shall be responsible for—

(A) representing the Secretary of State in interagency efforts to develop the international energy policy of the United States;

(B) ensuring that analyses of the national security implications of global energy and environmental developments are reflected in the decision making process within the Department of State;

(C) incorporating energy security priorities into the activities of the Department of State;

(D) coordinating energy activities of the Department of State with relevant Federal agencies; and

(E) coordinating energy security and other relevant functions within the Department of State currently undertaken by offices within—

(i) the Bureau of Economic, Energy and Business Affairs;

(ii) the Bureau of Oceans and International Environmental and Scientific Affairs; and

(iii) other offices within the Department of State.

(3) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary to carry out this subsection.

(b) Energy experts in key embassies

Not later than 180 days after December 19, 2007, the Secretary of State shall submit a report to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives that includes—

(1) a description of the Department of State personnel who are dedicated to energy matters and are stationed at embassies and consulates in countries that are major energy producers or consumers;

(2) an analysis of the need for Federal energy specialist personnel in United States embassies and other United States diplomatic missions; and

(3) recommendations for increasing energy expertise within United States embassies among foreign service officers and options for assigning to such embassies energy attachés from the National Laboratories or other agencies within the Department of Energy.

(c) Energy advisors

The Secretary of Energy may make appropriate arrangements with the Secretary of State to assign personnel from the Department of Energy or the National Laboratories of the Department of Energy to serve as dedicated advisors on energy matters in embassies of the United States or other United States diplomatic missions.

(d) Report

Not later than 180 days after December 19, 2007, and every 2 years thereafter for the following 20 years, the Secretary of State shall submit a report to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the

Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives that describes—

(1) the energy-related activities being conducted by the Department of State, including activities within—

(A) the Bureau of Economic, Energy and Business Affairs;

(B) the Bureau of Oceans and Environmental and Scientific Affairs; and

(C) other offices within the Department of State;

(2) the amount of funds spent on each activity within each office described in paragraph (1); and

(3) the number and qualification of personnel in each embassy (or relevant foreign posting) of the United States whose work is dedicated exclusively to energy matters.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §931, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1739.)

§17372. Annual national energy security strategy report

(a) Reports

(1) In general

Subject to paragraph (2), on the date on which the President submits to Congress the budget for the following fiscal year under section 1105 of title 31, the President shall submit to Congress a comprehensive report on the national energy security of the United States.

(2) New Presidents

In addition to the reports required under paragraph (1), the President shall submit a comprehensive report on the national energy security of the United States by not later than 150 days after the date on which the President assumes the office of President after a presidential election.

(b) Contents

Each report under this section shall describe the national energy security strategy of the United States, including a comprehensive description of—

(1) the worldwide interests, goals, and objectives of the United States that are vital to the national energy security of the United States;

(2) the foreign policy, worldwide commitments, and national defense capabilities of the United States necessary—

(A) to deter political manipulation of world energy resources; and

(B) to implement the national energy security strategy of the United States;

(3) the proposed short-term and long-term uses of the political, economic, military, and other authorities of the United States—

(A) to protect or promote energy security; and

(B) to achieve the goals and objectives described in paragraph (1);

(4) the adequacy of the capabilities of the United States to protect the national energy security of the United States, including an evaluation of the balance among the capabilities of all elements of the national authority of the United States to support the implementation of the national energy security strategy; and

(5) such other information as the President determines to be necessary to inform Congress on matters relating to the national energy security of the United States.

(c) Classified and unclassified form

Each national energy security strategy report shall be submitted to Congress in—

(1) a classified form; and

(2) an unclassified form.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §933, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1740.)

§17373. Convention on Supplementary Compensation for Nuclear Damage contingent cost allocation

(a) Findings and purpose

(1) Findings

Congress finds that—

(A) section 2210 of this title (commonly known as the "Price-Anderson Act")—

(i) provides a predictable legal framework necessary for nuclear projects; and

(ii) ensures prompt and equitable compensation in the event of a nuclear incident in the United States;

(B) the Price-Anderson Act, in effect, provides operators of nuclear powerplants with insurance for damage arising out of a nuclear incident and funds the insurance primarily through the assessment of a retrospective premium from each operator after the occurrence of a nuclear incident;

(C) the Convention on Supplementary Compensation for Nuclear Damage, done at Vienna on September 12, 1997, will establish a global system—

(i) to provide a predictable legal framework necessary for nuclear energy projects; and

(ii) to ensure prompt and equitable compensation in the event of a nuclear incident;

(D) the Convention benefits United States nuclear suppliers that face potentially unlimited liability for nuclear incidents that are not covered by the Price-Anderson Act by replacing a potentially open-ended liability with a predictable liability regime that, in effect, provides nuclear suppliers with insurance for damage arising out of such an incident;

(E) the Convention also benefits United States nuclear facility operators that may be publicly liable for a Price-Anderson incident by providing an additional early source of funds to compensate damage arising out of the Price-Anderson incident;

(F) the combined operation of the Convention, the Price-Anderson Act, and this section will augment the quantity of assured funds available for victims in a wider variety of nuclear incidents while reducing the potential liability of United States suppliers without increasing potential costs to United States operators;

(G) the cost of those benefits is the obligation of the United States to contribute to the supplementary compensation fund established by the Convention;

(H) any such contribution should be funded in a manner that does not—

(i) upset settled expectations based on the liability regime established under the Price-Anderson Act; or

(ii) shift to Federal taxpayers liability risks for nuclear incidents at foreign installations;

(I) with respect to a Price-Anderson incident, funds already available under the Price-Anderson Act should be used; and

(J) with respect to a nuclear incident outside the United States not covered by the Price-Anderson Act, a retrospective premium should be prorated among nuclear suppliers relieved from potential liability for which insurance is not available.

(2) Purpose

The purpose of this section is to allocate the contingent costs associated with participation by the United States in the international nuclear liability compensation system established by the Convention on Supplementary Compensation for Nuclear Damage, done at Vienna on September 12, 1997—

(A) with respect to a Price-Anderson incident, by using funds made available under section

2210 of this title to cover the contingent costs in a manner that neither increases the burdens nor decreases the benefits under section 2210 of this title; and

(B) with respect to a covered incident outside the United States that is not a Price-Anderson incident, by allocating the contingent costs equitably, on the basis of risk, among the class of nuclear suppliers relieved by the Convention from the risk of potential liability resulting from any covered incident outside the United States.

(b) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Commission

The term "Commission" means the Nuclear Regulatory Commission.

(2) Contingent cost

The term "contingent cost" means the cost to the United States in the event of a covered incident the amount of which is equal to the amount of funds the United States is obligated to make available under paragraph 1(b) of Article III of the Convention.

(3) Convention

The term "Convention" means the Convention on Supplementary Compensation for Nuclear Damage, done at Vienna on September 12, 1997.

(4) Covered incident

The term "covered incident" means a nuclear incident the occurrence of which results in a request for funds pursuant to Article VII of the Convention.

(5) Covered installation

The term "covered installation" means a nuclear installation at which the occurrence of a nuclear incident could result in a request for funds under Article VII of the Convention.

(6) Covered person

(A) In general

The term "covered person" means—

(i) a United States person; and

(ii) an individual or entity (including an agency or instrumentality of a foreign country) that—

(I) is located in the United States; or

(II) carries out an activity in the United States.

(B) Exclusions

The term "covered person" does not include—

(i) the United States; or

(ii) any agency or instrumentality of the United States.

(7) Nuclear supplier

The term "nuclear supplier" means a covered person (or a successor in interest of a covered person) that—

(A) supplies facilities, equipment, fuel, services, or technology pertaining to the design, construction, operation, or decommissioning of a covered installation; or

(B) transports nuclear materials that could result in a covered incident.

(8) Price-Anderson incident

The term "Price-Anderson incident" means a covered incident for which section 2210 of this title would make funds available to compensate for public liability (as defined in section 2014 of this title).

(9) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Energy.

(10) United States

(A) In general

The term "United States" has the meaning given the term in section 2014 of this title.

(B) Inclusions

The term "United States" includes—

(i) the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico;

(ii) any other territory or possession of the United States;

(iii) the Canal Zone; and

(iv) the waters of the United States territorial sea under Presidential Proclamation Number 5928, dated December 27, 1988 (43 U.S.C. 1331 note).

(11) United States person

The term "United States person" means—

(A) any individual who is a resident, national, or citizen of the United States (other than an individual residing outside of the United States and employed by a person who is not a United States person); and

(B) any corporation, partnership, association, joint stock company, business trust, unincorporated organization, or sole proprietorship that is organized under the laws of the United States.

(c) Use of Price-Anderson funds

(1) In general

Funds made available under section 2210 of this title shall be used to cover the contingent cost resulting from any Price-Anderson incident.

(2) Effect

The use of funds pursuant to paragraph (1) shall not reduce the limitation on public liability established under section 2210(e) of this title.

(d) Effect on amount of public liability

(1) In general

Funds made available to the United States under Article VII of the Convention with respect to a Price-Anderson incident shall be used to satisfy public liability resulting from the Price-Anderson incident.

(2) Amount

The amount of public liability allowable under section 2210 of this title relating to a Price-Anderson incident under paragraph (1) shall be increased by an amount equal to the difference between—

(A) the amount of funds made available for the Price-Anderson incident under Article VII of the Convention; and

(B) the amount of funds used under subsection (c) to cover the contingent cost resulting from the Price-Anderson incident.

(e) Retrospective risk pooling program

(1) In general

Except as provided under paragraph (2), each nuclear supplier shall participate in a retrospective risk pooling program in accordance with this section to cover the contingent cost resulting from a covered incident outside the United States that is not a Price-Anderson incident.

(2) Deferred payment

(A) In general

The obligation of a nuclear supplier to participate in the retrospective risk pooling program shall be deferred until the United States is called on to provide funds pursuant to Article VII of the Convention with respect to a covered incident that is not a Price-Anderson incident.

(B) Amount of deferred payment

The amount of a deferred payment of a nuclear supplier under subparagraph (A) shall be based on the risk-informed assessment formula determined under subparagraph (C).

(C) Risk-informed assessment formula

(i) In general

Not later than 3 years after December 19, 2007, and every 5 years thereafter, the Secretary shall, by regulation, determine the risk-informed assessment formula for the allocation among nuclear suppliers of the contingent cost resulting from a covered incident that is not a Price-Anderson incident, taking into account risk factors such as—

(I) the nature and intended purpose of the goods and services supplied by each nuclear supplier to each covered installation outside the United States;

(II) the quantity of the goods and services supplied by each nuclear supplier to each covered installation outside the United States;

(III) the hazards associated with the supplied goods and services if the goods and services fail to achieve the intended purposes;

(IV) the hazards associated with the covered installation outside the United States to which the goods and services are supplied;

(V) the legal, regulatory, and financial infrastructure associated with the covered installation outside the United States to which the goods and services are supplied; and

(VI) the hazards associated with particular forms of transportation.

(ii) Factors for consideration

In determining the formula, the Secretary may—

(I) exclude—

(aa) goods and services with negligible risk;

(bb) classes of goods and services not intended specifically for use in a nuclear installation;

(cc) a nuclear supplier with a de minimis share of the contingent cost; and

(dd) a nuclear supplier no longer in existence for which there is no identifiable successor; and

(II) establish the period on which the risk assessment is based.

(iii) Application

In applying the formula, the Secretary shall not consider any covered installation or transportation for which funds would be available under section 2210 of this title.

(iv) Report

Not later than 5 years after December 19, 2007, and every 5 years thereafter, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Environment and Public Works of the Senate and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives, a report on whether there is a need for continuation or amendment of this section, taking into account the effects of the implementation of the Convention on the United States nuclear industry and suppliers.

(f) Reporting

(1) Collection of information

(A) In general

The Secretary may collect information necessary for developing and implementing the formula for calculating the deferred payment of a nuclear supplier under subsection (e)(2).

(B) Provision of information

Each nuclear supplier and other appropriate persons shall make available to the Secretary such information, reports, records, documents, and other data as the Secretary determines, by regulation, to be necessary or appropriate to develop and implement the formula under subsection (e)(2)(C).

(2) Private insurance

The Secretary shall make available to nuclear suppliers, and insurers of nuclear suppliers, information to support the voluntary establishment and maintenance of private insurance against any risk for which nuclear suppliers may be required to pay deferred payments under this section.

(g) Effect on liability

Nothing in any other law (including regulations) limits liability for a covered incident to an amount equal to less than the amount prescribed in paragraph 1(a) of Article IV of the Convention, unless the law—

(1) specifically refers to this section; and

(2) explicitly repeals, alters, amends, modifies, impairs, displaces, or supersedes the effect of this subsection.

(h) Payments to and by the United States

(1) Action by nuclear suppliers

(A) Notification

In the case of a request for funds under Article VII of the Convention resulting from a covered incident that is not a Price-Anderson incident, the Secretary shall notify each nuclear supplier of the amount of the deferred payment required to be made by the nuclear supplier.

(B) Payments

(i) In general

Except as provided under clause (ii), not later than 60 days after receipt of a notification under subparagraph (A), a nuclear supplier shall pay to the general fund of the Treasury the deferred payment of the nuclear supplier required under subparagraph (A).

(ii) Annual payments

A nuclear supplier may elect to prorate payment of the deferred payment required under subparagraph (A) in 5 equal annual payments (including interest on the unpaid balance at the prime rate prevailing at the time the first payment is due).

(C) Vouchers

A nuclear supplier shall submit payment certification vouchers to the Secretary of the Treasury in accordance with section 3325 of title 31.

(2) Use of funds

(A) In general

Amounts paid into the Treasury under paragraph (1) shall be available to the Secretary of the Treasury, without further appropriation and without fiscal year limitation, for the purpose of making the contributions of public funds required to be made by the United States under the Convention.

(B) Action by Secretary of Treasury

The Secretary of the Treasury shall pay the contribution required under the Convention to the court of competent jurisdiction under Article XIII of the Convention with respect to the applicable covered incident.

(3) Failure to pay

If a nuclear supplier fails to make a payment required under this subsection, the Secretary may

take appropriate action to recover from the nuclear supplier—

(A) the amount of the payment due from the nuclear supplier;

(B) any applicable interest on the payment; and

(C) a penalty of not more than twice the amount of the deferred payment due from the nuclear supplier.

(i) Limitation on judicial review; cause of action

(1) Limitation on judicial review

(A) In general

In any civil action arising under the Convention over which Article XIII of the Convention grants jurisdiction to the courts of the United States, any appeal or review by writ of mandamus or otherwise with respect to a nuclear incident that is not a Price-Anderson incident shall be in accordance with chapter 83 of title 28, except that the appeal or review shall occur in the United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia Circuit.

(B) Supreme Court jurisdiction

Nothing in this paragraph affects the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court of the United States under chapter 81 of title 28.

(2) Cause of action

(A) In general

Subject to subparagraph (B), in any civil action arising under the Convention over which Article XIII of the Convention grants jurisdiction to the courts of the United States, in addition to any other cause of action that may exist, an individual or entity shall have a cause of action against the operator to recover for nuclear damage suffered by the individual or entity.

(B) Requirement

Subparagraph (A) shall apply only if the individual or entity seeks a remedy for nuclear damage (as defined in Article I of the Convention) that was caused by a nuclear incident (as defined in Article I of the Convention) that is not a Price-Anderson incident.

(C) Savings provision

Nothing in this paragraph may be construed to limit, modify, extinguish, or otherwise affect any cause of action that would have existed in the absence of enactment of this paragraph.

(j) Right of recourse

This section does not provide to an operator of a covered installation any right of recourse under the Convention.

(k) Protection of sensitive United States information

Nothing in the Convention or this section requires the disclosure of—

(1) any data that, at any time, was Restricted Data (as defined in section 2014 of this title);

(2) information relating to intelligence sources or methods protected by section 3024(i) of title 50; or

(3) national security information classified under Executive Order 12958 ([former] 50 U.S.C. 435 note; relating to classified national security information) (or a successor Executive Order or regulation).

(l) Regulations

(1) In general

The Secretary or the Commission, as appropriate, may prescribe regulations to carry out section 2210 of this title and this section.

(2) Requirement

Rules prescribed under this subsection shall ensure, to the maximum extent practicable, that—

(A) the implementation of section 2210 of this title and this section is consistent and equitable; and

(B) the financial and operational burden on a Commission licensee in complying with section 2210 of this title is not greater as a result of the enactment of this section.

(3) Applicability of provision

Section 553 of title 5 shall apply with respect to the promulgation of regulations under this subsection.

(4) Effect of subsection

The authority provided under this subsection is in addition to, and does not impair or otherwise affect, any other authority of the Secretary or the Commission to prescribe regulations.

(m) Effective date

This section shall take effect on December 19, 2007.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §934, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1741.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Presidential Proclamation Number 5928, referred to in subsec. (b)(10)(B)(iv), is set out as a note under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

Executive Order 12958, referred to in subsec. (k)(3), which was formerly set out as a note under section 435 (now section 3161) of Title 50, War and National Defense, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 13526, §6.2(g), Dec. 29, 2009, 75 F.R. 731.

§17374. Transparency in extractive industries resource payments

(a) Purpose

The purpose of this section is to—

(1) ensure greater United States energy security by combating corruption in the governments of foreign countries that receive revenues from the sale of their natural resources; and

(2) enhance the development of democracy and increase political and economic stability in such resource rich foreign countries.

(b) Statement of policy

It is the policy of the United States—

(1) to increase energy security by promoting anti-corruption initiatives in oil and natural gas rich countries; and

(2) to promote global energy security through promotion of programs such as the Extractive Industries Transparency Initiative (EITI) that seek to instill transparency and accountability into extractive industries resource payments.

(c) Sense of Congress

It is the sense of Congress that the United States should further global energy security and promote democratic development in resource-rich foreign countries by—

(1) encouraging further participation in the EITI by eligible countries and companies; and

(2) promoting the efficacy of the EITI program by ensuring a robust and candid review mechanism.

(d) Report

(1) Report required

Not later than 180 days after December 19, 2007, and annually thereafter, the Secretary of State, in consultation with the Secretary of Energy, shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees a report on progress made in promoting transparency in extractive industries resource payments.

(2) Matters to be included

The report required by paragraph (1) shall include a detailed description of United States participation in the EITI, bilateral and multilateral diplomatic efforts to further participation in the EITI, and other United States initiatives to strengthen energy security, deter energy kleptocracy, and promote transparency in the extractive industries.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated $3,000,000 for the purposes of United States contributions to the Multi-Donor Trust Fund of the EITI.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title IX, §935, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1748.)

SUBCHAPTER IX—SMART GRID

§17381. Statement of policy on modernization of electricity grid

It is the policy of the United States to support the modernization of the Nation's electricity transmission and distribution system to maintain a reliable and secure electricity infrastructure that can meet future demand growth and to achieve each of the following, which together characterize a Smart Grid:

(1) Increased use of digital information and controls technology to improve reliability, security, and efficiency of the electric grid.

(2) Dynamic optimization of grid operations and resources, with full cyber-security.

(3) Deployment and integration of distributed resources and generation, including renewable resources.

(4) Development and incorporation of demand response, demand-side resources, and energy-efficiency resources.

(5) Deployment of "smart" technologies (real-time, automated, interactive technologies that optimize the physical operation of appliances and consumer devices) for metering, communications concerning grid operations and status, and distribution automation.

(6) Integration of "smart" appliances and consumer devices.

(7) Deployment and integration of advanced electricity storage and peak-shaving technologies, including plug-in electric and hybrid electric vehicles, and thermal-storage air conditioning.

(8) Provision to consumers of timely information and control options.

(9) Development of standards for communication and interoperability of appliances and equipment connected to the electric grid, including the infrastructure serving the grid.

(10) Identification and lowering of unreasonable or unnecessary barriers to adoption of smart grid technologies, practices, and services.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title XIII, §1301, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1783.)

§17382. Smart grid system report

The Secretary, acting through the Assistant Secretary of the Office of Electricity Delivery and Energy Reliability (referred to in this section as the "OEDER") and through the Smart Grid Task Force established in section 17383 of this title, shall, after consulting with any interested individual or entity as appropriate, no later than 1 year after December 19, 2007, and every 2 years thereafter, report to Congress concerning the status of smart grid deployments nationwide and any regulatory or government barriers to continued deployment. The report shall provide the current status and prospects of smart grid development, including information on technology penetration, communications network capabilities, costs, and obstacles. It may include recommendations for State and Federal policies or actions helpful to facilitate the transition to a smart grid. To the extent

appropriate, it should take a regional perspective. In preparing this report, the Secretary shall solicit advice and contributions from the Smart Grid Advisory Committee created in section 17383 of this title; from other involved Federal agencies including but not limited to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("Commission"), the National Institute of Standards and Technology ("Institute"), and the Department of Homeland Security; and from other stakeholder groups not already represented on the Smart Grid Advisory Committee.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title XIII, §1302, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1784.)

CODIFICATION

December 19, 2007, referred to in text, was in the original "enactment" and was translated as meaning the date of enactment of Pub. L. 110–140 to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

§17383. Smart Grid Advisory Committee and Smart Grid Task Force

(a) Smart Grid Advisory Committee

(1) Establishment

The Secretary shall establish, within 90 days of December 19, 2007, a Smart Grid Advisory Committee (either as an independent entity or as a designated sub-part of a larger advisory committee on electricity matters). The Smart Grid Advisory Committee shall include eight or more members appointed by the Secretary who have sufficient experience and expertise to represent the full range of smart grid technologies and services, to represent both private and non-Federal public sector stakeholders. One member shall be appointed by the Secretary to Chair the Smart Grid Advisory Committee.

(2) Mission

The mission of the Smart Grid Advisory Committee shall be to advise the Secretary, the Assistant Secretary, and other relevant Federal officials concerning the development of smart grid technologies, the progress of a national transition to the use of smart-grid technologies and services, the evolution of widely-accepted technical and practical standards and protocols to allow interoperability and inter-communication among smart-grid capable devices, and the optimum means of using Federal incentive authority to encourage such progress.

(3) Applicability of Federal Advisory Committee Act

The Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.) shall apply to the Smart Grid Advisory Committee.

(b) Smart Grid Task Force

(1) Establishment

The Assistant Secretary of the Office of Electricity Delivery and Energy Reliability shall establish, within 90 days of December 19, 2007, a Smart Grid Task Force composed of designated employees from the various divisions of that office who have responsibilities related to the transition to smart-grid technologies and practices. The Assistant Secretary or his designee shall be identified as the Director of the Smart Grid Task Force. The Chairman of the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission and the Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology shall each designate at least one employee to participate on the Smart Grid Task Force. Other members may come from other agencies at the invitation of the Assistant Secretary or the nomination of the head of such other agency. The Smart Grid Task Force shall, without disrupting the work of the Divisions or Offices from which its members are drawn, provide an identifiable Federal entity to embody the Federal role in the national transition toward development and use of smart grid technologies.

(2) Mission

The mission of the Smart Grid Task Force shall be to insure awareness, coordination and

integration of the diverse activities of the Office and elsewhere in the Federal Government related to smart-grid technologies and practices, including but not limited to: smart grid research and development; development of widely accepted smart-grid standards and protocols; the relationship of smart-grid technologies and practices to electric utility regulation; the relationship of smart-grid technologies and practices to infrastructure development, system reliability and security; and the relationship of smart-grid technologies and practices to other facets of electricity supply, demand, transmission, distribution, and policy. The Smart Grid Task Force shall collaborate with the Smart Grid Advisory Committee and other Federal agencies and offices. The Smart Grid Task Force shall meet at the call of its Director as necessary to accomplish its mission.

(c) Authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated for the purposes of this section such sums as are necessary to the Secretary to support the operations of the Smart Grid Advisory Committee and Smart Grid Task Force for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2020.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title XIII, §1303, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1784.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§17384. Smart grid technology research, development, and demonstration

(a) Power grid digital information technology

The Secretary, in consultation with the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission and other appropriate agencies, electric utilities, the States, and other stakeholders, shall carry out a program—

(1) to develop advanced techniques for measuring peak load reductions and energy-efficiency savings from smart metering, demand response, distributed generation, and electricity storage systems;

(2) to investigate means for demand response, distributed generation, and storage to provide ancillary services;

(3) to conduct research to advance the use of wide-area measurement and control networks, including data mining, visualization, advanced computing, and secure and dependable communications in a highly-distributed environment;

(4) to test new reliability technologies, including those concerning communications network capabilities, in a grid control room environment against a representative set of local outage and wide area blackout scenarios;

(5) to identify communications network capacity needed to implement advanced technologies.[1]

(6) to investigate the feasibility of a transition to time-of-use and real-time electricity pricing;

(7) to develop algorithms for use in electric transmission system software applications;

(8) to promote the use of underutilized electricity generation capacity in any substitution of electricity for liquid fuels in the transportation system of the United States; and

(9) in consultation with the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, to propose interconnection protocols to enable electric utilities to access electricity stored in vehicles to help meet peak demand loads.

(b) Smart grid regional demonstration initiative

(1) In general

The Secretary shall establish a smart grid regional demonstration initiative (referred to in this subsection as the "Initiative") composed of demonstration projects specifically focused on advanced technologies for use in power grid sensing, communications, analysis, and power flow control. The Secretary shall seek to leverage existing smart grid deployments.

(2) Goals

The goals of the Initiative shall be—

(A) to demonstrate the potential benefits of concentrated investments in advanced grid technologies on a regional grid;

(B) to facilitate the commercial transition from the current power transmission and distribution system technologies to advanced technologies;

(C) to facilitate the integration of advanced technologies in existing electric networks to improve system performance, power flow control, and reliability;

(D) to demonstrate protocols and standards that allow for the measurement and validation of the energy savings and fossil fuel emission reductions associated with the installation and use of energy efficiency and demand response technologies and practices; and

(E) to investigate differences in each region and regulatory environment regarding best practices in implementing smart grid technologies.

(3) Demonstration projects

(A) In general

In carrying out the initiative,[2] the Secretary shall provide financial support to smart grid demonstration projects in urban, suburban, tribal, and rural areas, including areas where electric system assets are controlled by nonprofit entities and areas where electric system assets are controlled by investor-owned utilities.

(B) Cooperation

A demonstration project under subparagraph (A) shall be carried out in cooperation with the electric utility that owns the grid facilities in the electricity control area in which the demonstration project is carried out.

(C) Federal share of cost of technology investments

The Secretary shall provide to an electric utility described in subparagraph (B) or to other parties financial assistance for use in paying an amount equal to not more than 50 percent of the cost of qualifying advanced grid technology investments made by the electric utility or other party to carry out a demonstration project.

(D) Ineligibility for grants

No person or entity participating in any demonstration project conducted under this subsection shall be eligible for grants under section 17386 of this title for otherwise qualifying investments made as part of that demonstration project.

(E) Availability of data

The Secretary shall establish and maintain a smart grid information clearinghouse in a timely manner which will make data from smart grid demonstration projects and other sources available to the public. As a condition of receiving financial assistance under this subsection, a utility or other participant in a smart grid demonstration project shall provide such information as the Secretary may require to become available through the smart grid information clearinghouse in the form and within the timeframes as directed by the Secretary. The Secretary shall assure that business proprietary information and individual customer information is not included in the information made available through the clearinghouse.

(F) Open protocols and standards

The Secretary shall require as a condition of receiving funding under this subsection that demonstration projects utilize open protocols and standards (including Internet-based protocols and standards) if available and appropriate.

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated—

(1) to carry out subsection (a), such sums as are necessary for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2012; and

(2) to carry out subsection (b), such sums as may be necessary.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title XIII, §1304, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1786; Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title IV, §405(1)–(4), Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 143, 144.)

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (b)(3)(A). Pub. L. 111–5, §405(1), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "In carrying out the initiative, the Secretary shall carry out smart grid demonstration projects in up to 5 electricity control areas, including rural areas and at least 1 area in which the majority of generation and transmission assets are controlled by a tax-exempt entity."

Subsec. (b)(3)(C). Pub. L. 111–5, §405(2), amended subpar. (C) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Secretary shall provide to an electric utility described in subparagraph (B) financial assistance for use in paying an amount equal to not more than 50 percent of the cost of qualifying advanced grid technology investments made by the electric utility to carry out a demonstration project."

Subsec. (b)(3)(E), (F). Pub. L. 111–5, §405(3), added subpars. (E) and (F).

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 111–5, §405(4), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "to carry out subsection (b), $100,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2012."

[1] *So in original. The period probably should be a semicolon.*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be "Initiative,".*

§17385. Smart grid interoperability framework

(a) Interoperability framework

The Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology shall have primary responsibility to coordinate the development of a framework that includes protocols and model standards for information management to achieve interoperability of smart grid devices and systems. Such protocols and standards shall further align policy, business, and technology approaches in a manner that would enable all electric resources, including demand-side resources, to contribute to an efficient, reliable electricity network. In developing such protocols and standards—

(1) the Director shall seek input and cooperation from the Commission, OEDER and its Smart Grid Task Force, the Smart Grid Advisory Committee, other relevant Federal and State agencies; and

(2) the Director shall also solicit input and cooperation from private entities interested in such protocols and standards, including but not limited to the Gridwise Architecture Council, the International Electrical and Electronics Engineers, the National Electric Reliability Organization recognized by the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, and National Electrical Manufacturer's Association.

(b) Scope of framework

The framework developed under subsection (a) shall be flexible, uniform and technology neutral, including but not limited to technologies for managing smart grid information, and designed—

(1) to accommodate traditional, centralized generation and transmission resources and consumer distributed resources, including distributed generation, renewable generation, energy storage, energy efficiency, and demand response and enabling devices and systems;

(2) to be flexible to incorporate—

(A) regional and organizational differences; and

(B) technological innovations;

(3) to consider the use of voluntary uniform standards for certain classes of mass-produced electric appliances and equipment for homes and businesses that enable customers, at their election and consistent with applicable State and Federal laws, and are manufactured with the ability to respond to electric grid emergencies and demand response signals by curtailing all, or a

portion of, the electrical power consumed by the appliances or equipment in response to an emergency or demand response signal, including through—

(A) load reduction to reduce total electrical demand;

(B) adjustment of load to provide grid ancillary services; and

(C) in the event of a reliability crisis that threatens an outage, short-term load shedding to help preserve the stability of the grid; and

(4) such voluntary standards should incorporate appropriate manufacturer lead time.[1]

(c) Timing of framework development

The Institute shall begin work pursuant to this section within 60 days of December 19, 2007. The Institute shall provide and publish an initial report on progress toward recommended or consensus standards and protocols within 1 year after December 19, 2007, further reports at such times as developments warrant in the judgment of the Institute, and a final report when the Institute determines that the work is completed or that a Federal role is no longer necessary.

(d) Standards for interoperability in Federal jurisdiction

At any time after the Institute's work has led to sufficient consensus in the Commission's judgment, the Commission shall institute a rulemaking proceeding to adopt such standards and protocols as may be necessary to insure smart-grid functionality and interoperability in interstate transmission of electric power, and regional and wholesale electricity markets.

(e) Authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated for the purposes of this section $5,000,000 to the Institute to support the activities required by this subsection [2] for each of fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title XIII, §1305, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1787.)

CODIFICATION

December 19, 2007, referred to in subsec. (c), was in the original "enactment" and was translated as meaning the date of enactment of Pub. L. 110–140, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

[1] So in original. Does not fit with subsec. (b) introductory provisions.

[2] So in original. Probably should be "section".

§17386. Federal matching fund for smart grid investment costs

(a) Matching fund

The Secretary shall establish a Smart Grid Investment Matching Grant Program to provide grants of up to one-half (50 percent) of qualifying Smart Grid investments.

(b) Qualifying investments

Qualifying Smart Grid investments may include any of the following made on or after December 19, 2007:

(1) In the case of appliances covered for purposes of establishing energy conservation standards under part B of title III of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act of 1975 (42 U.S.C. 6291 et seq.), the documented expenditures incurred by a manufacturer of such appliances associated with purchasing or designing, creating the ability to manufacture, and manufacturing and installing for one calendar year, internal devices that allow the appliance to engage in Smart Grid functions.

(2) In the case of specialized electricity-using equipment, including motors and drivers, installed in industrial or commercial applications, the documented expenditures incurred by its owner or its manufacturer of installing devices or modifying that equipment to engage in Smart Grid functions.

(3) In the case of transmission and distribution equipment fitted with monitoring and

communications devices to enable smart grid functions, the documented expenditures incurred by the electric utility to purchase and install such monitoring and communications devices.

(4) In the case of metering devices, sensors, control devices, and other devices integrated with and attached to an electric utility system or retail distributor or marketer of electricity that are capable of engaging in Smart Grid functions, the documented expenditures incurred by the electric utility, distributor, or marketer and its customers to purchase and install such devices.

(5) In the case of software that enables devices or computers to engage in Smart Grid functions, the documented purchase costs of the software.

(6) In the case of entities that operate or coordinate operations of regional electric grids, the documented expenditures for purchasing and installing such equipment that allows Smart Grid functions to operate and be combined or coordinated among multiple electric utilities and between that region and other regions.

(7) In the case of persons or entities other than electric utilities owning and operating a distributed electricity generator, the documented expenditures of enabling that generator to be monitored, controlled, or otherwise integrated into grid operations and electricity flows on the grid utilizing Smart Grid functions.

(8) In the case of electric or hybrid-electric vehicles, the documented expenses for devices that allow the vehicle to engage in Smart Grid functions (but not the costs of electricity storage for the vehicle).

(9) The documented expenditures related to purchasing and implementing Smart Grid functions in such other cases as the Secretary shall identify.

(c) Investments not included

Qualifying Smart Grid investments do not include any of the following:

(1) Investments or expenditures for Smart Grid technologies, devices, or equipment that utilize specific tax credits or deductions under the Internal Revenue Code, as amended.

(2) Expenditures for electricity generation, transmission, or distribution infrastructure or equipment not directly related to enabling Smart Grid functions.

(3) After the final date for State consideration of the Smart Grid Information Standard under section 2621(d)(17) [1] of title 16, an investment that is not in compliance with such standard.

(4) After the development and publication by the Institute of protocols and model standards for interoperability of smart grid devices and technologies, an investment that fails to incorporate any of such protocols or model standards.

(5) Expenditures for physical interconnection of generators or other devices to the grid except those that are directly related to enabling Smart Grid functions.

(6) Expenditures for ongoing salaries, benefits, or personnel costs not incurred in the initial installation, training, or start up of smart grid functions.

(7) Expenditures for travel, lodging, meals or other personal costs.

(8) Ongoing or routine operation, billing, customer relations, security, and maintenance expenditures.

(9) Such other expenditures that the Secretary determines not to be Qualifying Smart Grid Investments by reason of the lack of the ability to perform Smart Grid functions or lack of direct relationship to Smart Grid functions.

(d) Smart grid functions

The term "smart grid functions" means any of the following:

(1) The ability to develop, store, send and receive digital information concerning electricity use, costs, prices, time of use, nature of use, storage, or other information relevant to device, grid, or utility operations, to or from or by means of the electric utility system, through one or a combination of devices and technologies.

(2) The ability to develop, store, send and receive digital information concerning electricity use, costs, prices, time of use, nature of use, storage, or other information relevant to device, grid, or utility operations to or from a computer or other control device.

(3) The ability to measure or monitor electricity use as a function of time of day, power quality

characteristics such as voltage level, current, cycles per second, or source or type of generation and to store, synthesize or report that information by digital means.

(4) The ability to sense and localize disruptions or changes in power flows on the grid and communicate such information instantaneously and automatically for purposes of enabling automatic protective responses to sustain reliability and security of grid operations.

(5) The ability to detect, prevent, communicate with regard to, respond to, or recover from system security threats, including cyber-security threats and terrorism, using digital information, media, and devices.

(6) The ability of any appliance or machine to respond to such signals, measurements, or communications automatically or in a manner programmed by its owner or operator without independent human intervention.

(7) The ability to use digital information to operate functionalities on the electric utility grid that were previously electro-mechanical or manual.

(8) The ability to use digital controls to manage and modify electricity demand, enable congestion management, assist in voltage control, provide operating reserves, and provide frequency regulation.

(9) Such other functions as the Secretary may identify as being necessary or useful to the operation of a Smart Grid.

(e) Procedures and rules

(1) The Secretary shall, within 60 days after February 17, 2009, by means of a notice of intent and subsequent solicitation of grant proposals—

(A) establish procedures by which applicants can obtain grants of not more than one-half of their documented costs;

(B) require as a condition of receiving funding under this subsection that demonstration projects utilize open protocols and standards (including Internet-based protocols and standards) if available and appropriate;

(C) establish procedures to ensure that there is no duplication or multiple payment for the same investment or costs, that the grant goes to the party making the actual expenditures for the qualifying Smart Grid investments, and that the grants made have a significant effect in encouraging and facilitating the development of a smart grid;

(D) establish procedures to ensure there will be public records of grants made, recipients, and qualifying Smart Grid investments which have received grants; and

(E) establish procedures to provide advance payment of moneys up to the full amount of the grant award.

(2) The Secretary shall have discretion and exercise reasonable judgment to deny grants for investments that do not qualify.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary such sums as are necessary for the administration of this section and the grants to be made pursuant to this section for fiscal years 2008 through 2012.

(Pub. L. 110–140, title XIII, §1306, Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1789; Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title IV, §405(5)–(8), Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 144.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Energy Policy and Conservation Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is Pub. L. 94–163, Dec. 22, 1975, 89 Stat. 871. Part B of title III of the Act is classified generally to part A (§6291 et seq.) of subchapter III of chapter 77 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6201 of this title and Tables.

Section 2621(d)(17) of title 16, referred to in subsec. (c)(3), was redesignated section 2621(d)(19) by Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title IV, §408(a), Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 146.

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–5, §405(5), substituted "grants of up to one-half (50 percent)" for "reimbursement of one-fifth (20 percent)".

Subsec. (b)(9). Pub. L. 111–5, §405(6), struck out last sentence which read as follows: "In making such grants, the Secretary shall seek to reward innovation and early adaptation, even if success is not complete, rather than deployment of proven and commercially viable technologies."

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 111–5, §405(7), substituted "utilize" for "are eligible for".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–5, §405(8), amended subsec. (e) generally. Prior to amendment, text related to establishment of procedures by which applicants who have made qualifying Smart Grid investments can seek and obtain reimbursement of one-fifth of documented expenditures.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

CHAPTER 153—COMMUNITY SAFETY THROUGH RECIDIVISM PREVENTION

Sec.

§17501. Purposes; findings

(a) Purposes

The purposes of the Act are—

(1) to break the cycle of criminal recidivism, increase public safety, and help States, local units of government, and Indian Tribes, better address the growing population of criminal offenders who return to their communities and commit new crimes;

(2) to rebuild ties between offenders and their families, while the offenders are incarcerated and after reentry into the community, to promote stable families and communities;

(3) to encourage the development and support of, and to expand the availability of, evidence-based programs that enhance public safety and reduce recidivism, such as substance abuse treatment, alternatives to incarceration, and comprehensive reentry services;

(4) to protect the public and promote law-abiding conduct by providing necessary services to offenders, while the offenders are incarcerated and after reentry into the community, in a manner that does not confer luxuries or privileges upon such offenders;

(5) to assist offenders reentering the community from incarceration to establish a self-sustaining and law-abiding life by providing sufficient transitional services for as short of a period as practicable, not to exceed one year, unless a longer period is specifically determined to be necessary by a medical or other appropriate treatment professional; and

(6) to provide offenders in prisons, jails or juvenile facilities with educational, literacy, vocational, and job placement services to facilitate re-entry into the community.

(b) Findings

Congress finds the following:

(1) In 2002, over 7,000,000 people were incarcerated in Federal or State prisons or in local jails. Nearly 650,000 people are released from Federal and State incarceration into communities nationwide each year.

(2) There are over 3,200 jails throughout the United States, the vast majority of which are operated by county governments. Each year, these jails will release more than 10,000,000 people back into the community.

(3) Recent studies indicate that over 2/3 of released State prisoners are expected to be rearrested for a felony or serious misdemeanor within 3 years after release.

(4) According to the Bureau of Justice Statistics, expenditures on corrections alone increased from $9,000,000,000 in 1982, to $59,600,000,000 in 2002. These figures do not include the cost of arrest and prosecution, nor do they take into account the cost to victims.

(5) The Serious and Violent Offender Reentry Initiative (SVORI) provided $139,000,000 in funding for State governments to develop and implement education, job training, mental health treatment, and substance abuse treatment for serious and violent offenders. This Act seeks to build upon the innovative and successful State reentry programs developed under the SVORI, which terminated after fiscal year 2005.

(6) Between 1991 and 1999, the number of children with a parent in a Federal or State correctional facility increased by more than 100 percent, from approximately 900,000 to approximately 2,000,000. According to the Bureau of Prisons, there is evidence to suggest that inmates who are connected to their children and families are more likely to avoid negative incidents and have reduced sentences.

(7) Released prisoners cite family support as the most important factor in helping them stay out of prison. Research suggests that families are an often underutilized resource in the reentry process.

(8) Approximately 100,000 juveniles (ages 17 years and under) leave juvenile correctional facilities, State prison, or Federal prison each year. Juveniles released from secure confinement still have their likely prime crime years ahead of them. Juveniles released from secure confinement have a recidivism rate ranging from 55 to 75 percent. The chances that young people will successfully transition into society improve with effective reentry and aftercare programs.

(9) Studies have shown that between 15 percent and 27 percent of prisoners expect to go to homeless shelters upon release from prison.

(10) Fifty-seven percent of Federal and 70 percent of State inmates used drugs regularly before going to prison, and the Bureau of Justice statistics report titled "Trends in State Parole, 1990–2000" estimates the use of drugs or alcohol around the time of the offense that resulted in the incarceration of the inmate at as high as 84 percent.

(11) Family-based treatment programs have proven results for serving the special populations of female offenders and substance abusers with children. An evaluation by the Substance Abuse and

Mental Health Services Administration of family-based treatment for substance-abusing mothers and children found that 6 months after such treatment, 60 percent of the mothers remained alcohol and drug free, and drug-related offenses declined from 28 percent to 7 percent. Additionally, a 2003 evaluation of residential family-based treatment programs revealed that 60 percent of mothers remained clean and sober 6 months after treatment, criminal arrests declined by 43 percent, and 88 percent of the children treated in the program with their mothers remained stabilized.

(12) A Bureau of Justice Statistics analysis indicated that only 33 percent of Federal inmates and 36 percent of State inmates had participated in residential in-patient treatment programs for alcohol and drug abuse 12 months before their release. Further, over one-third of all jail inmates have some physical or mental disability and 25 percent of jail inmates have been treated at some time for a mental or emotional problem.

(13) State Substance Abuse Agency Directors, also known as Single State Authorities, manage the publicly funded substance abuse prevention and treatment system of the Nation. Single State Authorities are responsible for planning and implementing statewide systems of care that provide clinically appropriate substance abuse services. Given the high rate of substance use disorders among offenders reentering our communities, successful reentry programs require close interaction and collaboration with each Single State Authority as the program is planned, implemented, and evaluated.

(14) According to the National Institute of Literacy, 70 percent of all prisoners function at the lowest literacy levels.

(15) Less than 32 percent of State prison inmates have a high school diploma or a higher level of education, compared to 82 percent of the general population.

(16) Approximately 38 percent of inmates who completed 11 years or less of school were not working before entry into prison.

(17) The percentage of State prisoners participating in educational programs decreased by more than 8 percent between 1991 and 1997, despite growing evidence of how educational programming while incarcerated reduces recidivism.

(18) The National Institute of Justice has found that 1 year after release, up to 60 percent of former inmates are not employed.

(19) Transitional jobs programs have proven to help people with criminal records to successfully return to the workplace and to the community, and therefore can reduce recidivism.

(Pub. L. 110–199, §3, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 658.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Act and this Act, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b)(5), are Pub. L. 110–199, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 657, known as the Second Chance Act of 2007: Community Safety Through Recidivism Prevention and also as the Second Chance Act of 2007. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 110–199, §1, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 657, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter and sections 3797q to 3797q–6, 3797s to 3797s–6, 3797w–2, 3797dd, and 3797dd–1 of this title, amending sections 3793, 3796ff–1, 3796ff–3, 3797u–2, 3797w, 13702, 13708, and 15606 of this title and sections 3621, 3624, 3672, and 4042 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 3797u–1 and 3797u–2 of this title] may be cited as the 'Second Chance Act of 2007: Community Safety Through Recidivism Prevention' or the 'Second Chance Act of 2007'."

PROMOTING REHABILITATION AND REINTEGRATION OF FORMERLY INCARCERATED INDIVIDUALS

Memorandum of President of the United States, Apr. 29, 2016, 81 F.R. 26993, provided:

Memorandum for the Heads of Executive Departments and Agencies

America is a Nation of second chances. Promoting the rehabilitation and reintegration of individuals who have paid their debt to society makes communities safer by reducing recidivism and victimization; assists those who return from prison, jail, or juvenile justice facilities to become productive citizens; and saves

taxpayer dollars by lowering the direct and collateral costs of incarceration. Policies that limit opportunities for people with criminal records create barriers to employment, education, housing, health care, and civic participation. This lack of opportunity decreases public safety, increases costs to society, and tears at the fabric of our Nation's communities.

Reducing the cycle of incarceration and recidivism requires coordinated action by government at all levels. Estimates are that as many as 70 million or more Americans have a record of arrest, criminal adjudication, or conviction. Each year, more than 600,000 individuals are released from Federal and State correctional facilities. Millions more are released each year from local jails. In many cases, a criminal record is an obstacle to obtaining employment or a license related to or necessary for employment. However, many individuals have criminal histories that should not automatically disqualify them from employment or licensing, but should instead be examined as part of a review of the person as a whole. Providing incarcerated individuals with job and life skills, education programming, and mental health and addiction treatment increases the likelihood that such individuals will be successful when released. And removing barriers to successful reentry helps formerly incarcerated individuals compete for jobs, attain stable housing, and support their families. All of these are critical to reducing recidivism and strengthening communities.

In 2011, the Attorney General formed the Federal Interagency Reentry Council, a Cabinet-level working group dedicated to the rehabilitation and reintegration of individuals returning to their communities from prisons and jails. I am issuing this memorandum to ensure that the Federal Government continues the important work of this council and builds on its successes.

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, I hereby direct the following:

SECTION 1. *Establishing the Federal Interagency Reentry Council*. (a) There is hereby established the Federal Interagency Reentry Council (Reentry Council), to be co-chaired by the Attorney General and the Director of the White House Domestic Policy Council. In addition to the Co-Chairs, the Reentry Council shall include the heads of:

(i) the Department of the Treasury;
(ii) the Department of the Interior;
(iii) the Department of Agriculture;
(iv) the Department of Commerce;
(v) the Department of Labor;
(vi) the Department of Health and Human Services;
(vii) the Department of Housing and Urban Development;
(viii) the Department of Transportation;
(ix) the Department of Energy;
(x) the Department of Education;
(xi) the Department of Veterans Affairs;
(xii) the Department of Homeland Security;
(xiii) the Small Business Administration;
(xiv) the Office of Management and Budget;
(xv) the Council of Economic Advisers;
(xvi) the Office of National Drug Control Policy;
(xvii) the Office of Personnel Management;
(xviii) the Corporation for National and Community Service; and
(xix) such other executive departments, agencies, and offices as the Co-Chairs may designate.

(b) The Co-Chairs may also invite representatives of the Consumer Financial Protection Bureau, the Court Services and Offender Supervision Agency, the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, the Federal Communications Commission, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Federal Trade Commission, the Internal Revenue Service, and the Social Security Administration to participate in the activities of the Reentry Council to the extent that such activities are relevant to their respective statutory authorities and legal obligations.

(c) As appropriate, the Co-Chairs may invite relevant representatives of the judicial branch, including representatives of the United States Probation and Pretrial Services System and Federal Public Defender Organizations, to attend and participate in meetings of the Reentry Council.

(d) The Reentry Council shall work across executive departments, agencies, and offices (agencies) to:

(i) within 100 days of the date of this memorandum, develop and present a Federal strategic plan to make communities safer by reducing recidivism and victimization; assist individuals who return from prison or jail to become productive citizens; and save taxpayer dollars by lowering the direct and collateral costs of incarceration;

(ii) identify, implement, and promote evidence-based research, policies, strategies, and programming to support successful reentry and reintegration, including improved access to criminal justice data for research and evaluation purposes;

(iii) promote regional partnerships among Federal agencies and with State, tribal, and local governments and organizations to advance local reentry and reintegration efforts;

(iv) identify ways to improve the accuracy of records of arrest, criminal adjudication, or conviction (criminal records); and

(v) identify and address unwarranted barriers to successful reentry.

(e) The Reentry Council shall engage with Federal, State, local, and tribal officials, including corrections officials, as necessary to carry out its objectives. The Reentry Council shall engage with nongovernmental organizations, including those representing or composed of formerly incarcerated individuals, exonerees, victims, and criminal justice agencies, to ensure that these stakeholders have the opportunity to offer recommendations and information to the Reentry Council.

(f) The Attorney General shall designate an Executive Director, who is a full-time officer or employee of the Federal Government, to coordinate the day-to-day functions of the Reentry Council.

(g) The Co-Chairs shall convene a meeting of the Reentry Council at least once per year.

SEC. 2. *Reducing Barriers to Employment*. (a) Agencies making suitability determinations for Federal employment shall review their procedures for evaluating an applicant's criminal records to ensure compliance with 5 CFR part 731 and any related, binding guidance issued by the Office of Personnel Management, with the aim of evaluating each individual's character and conduct.

(b) Consistent with applicable law and the need to protect public safety, agencies with statutory authority to grant or deny occupational licenses and the discretion to define the criteria by which such licensing decisions are made shall undertake to revise their procedures to provide that such licenses are not denied presumptively by reason of an applicant's criminal record in the absence of a specific determination that denial of the license is warranted in light of all relevant facts and circumstances known to the agency, including:

(i) the nature and seriousness of the conduct resulting in the criminal record, including the circumstances surrounding the conduct and contributing societal conditions and the age of the individual at the time of the conduct;

(ii) the time that has passed since the individual's arrest, adjudication, or conviction, or the completion of the individual's sentence, and the absence or presence of rehabilitation efforts; and

(iii) the nature of the occupation requiring a license, including whether the criminal record is directly related to the occupation, whether the occupation offers the opportunity for the same or a similar offense to occur, and whether circumstances leading to the conviction will recur in the occupation.

(c) Independent agencies are encouraged to comply with the requirements of this section.

SEC. 3. *General Provisions*. (a) Nothing in this memorandum shall be construed to impair or otherwise affect:

(i) the authority granted by law to an executive department, agency, entity, office, or the head thereof; or

(ii) the functions of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget relating to budgetary, administrative, or legislative proposals.

(b) This memorandum shall be implemented consistent with applicable law and subject to the availability of appropriations.

(c) This memorandum is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity by any party against the United States, its departments, agencies, or entities, its officers, employees, or agents, or any other person.

SEC. 4. *Publication*. The Attorney General is hereby authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

BARACK OBAMA.

§17502. Definition of Indian Tribe

In this Act, the term "Indian Tribe" has the meaning given that term in section 3791 of this title.

(Pub. L. 110–199, §4, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 660.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 110–199, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 657, known as the Second Chance Act of 2007: Community Safety Through Recidivism Prevention and also as the Second Chance Act of 2007, which enacted this chapter and sections 3797q to 3797q–6, 3797s to 3797s–6, 3797w–2, 3797dd, and

3797dd–1 of this title, amended sections 3793, 3796ff–1, 3796ff–3, 3797u–2, 3797w, 13702, 13708, and 15606 of this title and sections 3621, 3624, 3672, and 4042 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 3797u–1, 3797u–2, and 17501 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 17501 of this title and Tables.

§17503. Submission of reports to Congress

Not later than January 31 of each year, the Attorney General shall submit to the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives each report required by the Attorney General under this Act or an amendment made by this Act during the preceding year.

(Pub. L. 110–199, §5, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 660.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 110–199, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 657, known as the Second Chance Act of 2007: Community Safety Through Recidivism Prevention and also as the Second Chance Act of 2007, which enacted this chapter and sections 3797q to 3797q–6, 3797s to 3797s–6, 3797w–2, 3797dd, and 3797dd–1 of this title, amended sections 3793, 3796ff–1, 3796ff–3, 3797u–2, 3797w, 13702, 13708, and 15606 of this title and sections 3621, 3624, 3672, and 4042 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 3797u–1, 3797u–2, and 17501 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 17501 of this title and Tables.

§17504. Rule of construction

Nothing in this Act or an amendment made by this Act shall be construed as creating a right or entitlement to assistance or services for any individual, program, or grant recipient. Each grant made under this Act or an amendment made by this Act shall—

(1) be made as competitive grants [1] to eligible entities for a 12-month period, except that grants awarded under section 113 [2], section 17521 of this title, section 17531 of this title, and section 17532 of this title may be made for a 24-month period; and

(2) require that services for participants, when necessary and appropriate, be transferred from programs funded under this Act or the amendment made by this Act, respectively, to State and community-based programs not funded under this Act or the amendment made by this Act, respectively, before the expiration of the grant.

(Pub. L. 110–199, §6, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 660.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 110–199, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 657, known as the Second Chance Act of 2007: Community Safety Through Recidivism Prevention and also as the Second Chance Act of 2007, which enacted this chapter and sections 3797q to 3797q–6, 3797s to 3797s–6, 3797w–2, 3797dd, and 3797dd–1 of this title, amended sections 3793, 3796ff–1, 3796ff–3, 3797u–2, 3797w, 13702, 13708, and 15606 of this title and sections 3621, 3624, 3672, and 4042 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 3797u–1, 3797u–2, and 17501 of this title.

Section 113, referred to in par. (1), means section 113 of Pub. L. 110–199, which enacted sections 3797u–1, 3797u–2, and 17501 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 17501 of this title and Tables.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "a competitive grant".

[2] See References in Text note below.

SUBCHAPTER I—NEW AND INNOVATIVE PROGRAMS TO IMPROVE OFFENDER REENTRY SERVICES

§17511. Technology careers training demonstration grants

(a) Authority to make grants

From amounts made available to carry out this section, the Attorney General shall make grants to States, units of local government, territories, and Indian Tribes to provide technology career training to prisoners.

(b) Use of funds

Grants awarded under subsection (a) may be used for establishing a technology careers training program to train prisoners for technology-based jobs and careers during the 3-year period before release from prison, jail, or a juvenile facility.

(c) Control of Internet access

An entity that receives a grant under subsection (a) shall restrict access to the Internet by prisoners, as appropriate, to ensure public safety.

(d) Reports

Not later than the last day of each fiscal year, an entity that receives a grant under subsection (a) during the preceding fiscal year shall submit to the Attorney General a report that describes and assesses the uses of such grant during the preceding fiscal year.

(e) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $10,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2009 and 2010.

(Pub. L. 110–199, title I, §115, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 677.)

SUBCHAPTER II—ENHANCED DRUG TREATMENT AND MENTORING GRANT PROGRAMS

PART A—DRUG TREATMENT

§17521. Offender reentry substance abuse and criminal justice collaboration program

(a) Grant program authorized

The Attorney General may make competitive grants to States, units of local government, territories, and Indian Tribes, in accordance with this section, for the purposes of—

(1) improving the provision of drug treatment to offenders in prisons, jails, and juvenile facilities; and

(2) reducing the use of alcohol and other drugs by long-term substance abusers during the period in which each such long-term substance abuser is in prison, jail, or a juvenile facility, and through the completion of parole or court supervision of such long-term substance abuser.

(b) Use of grant funds

A grant made under subsection (a) may be used—

(1) for continuing and improving drug treatment programs provided at a prison, jail, or juvenile facility;

(2) to develop and implement programs for supervised long-term substance abusers that include alcohol and drug abuse assessments, coordinated and continuous delivery of drug treatment, and case management services;

(3) to strengthen rehabilitation efforts for offenders by providing addiction recovery support services; and

(4) to establish pharmacological drug treatment services as part of any drug treatment program offered by a grantee to offenders who are in a prison or jail.

(c) Application

(1) In general

An entity described in subsection (a) desiring a grant under that subsection shall submit to the Attorney General an application in such form and manner and at such time as the Attorney General requires.

(2) Contents

An application for a grant under subsection (a) shall—

(A) identify any agency, organization, or researcher that will be involved in administering a drug treatment program carried out with a grant under subsection (a);

(B) certify that such drug treatment program has been developed in consultation with the Single State Authority for Substance Abuse;

(C) certify that such drug treatment program shall—

(i) be clinically-appropriate; and

(ii) provide comprehensive treatment;

(D) describe how evidence-based strategies have been incorporated into such drug treatment program; and

(E) describe how data will be collected and analyzed to determine the effectiveness of such drug treatment program and describe how randomized trials will be used where practicable.

(d) Reports to Congress

(1) Interim report

Not later than September 30, 2009, the Attorney General shall submit to Congress a report that identifies the best practices relating to—

(A) substance abuse treatment in prisons, jails, and juvenile facilities; and

(B) the comprehensive and coordinated treatment of long-term substance abusers, including the best practices identified through the activities funded under subsection (b)(3).

(2) Final report

Not later than September 30, 2010, the Attorney General shall submit to Congress a report on the drug treatment programs funded under this section, including on the matters specified in paragraph (1).

(e) Definition of Single State Authority for Substance Abuse

The term "Single State Authority for Substance Abuse" means an entity designated by the Governor or chief executive officer of a State as the single State administrative authority responsible for the planning, development, implementation, monitoring, regulation, and evaluation of substance abuse services.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

(1) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section $15,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2009 and 2010.

(2) Equitable distribution of grant amounts

Of the amount made available to carry out this section in any fiscal year, the Attorney General shall ensure that grants awarded under this section are equitably distributed among geographical regions and between urban and rural populations, including Indian Tribes, consistent with the objective of reducing recidivism among criminal offenders.

(Pub. L. 110–199, title II, §201, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 678.)

PART B—MENTORING

§17531. Mentoring grants to nonprofit organizations

(a) Authority to make grants

From amounts made available to carry out this section, the Attorney General shall make grants to nonprofit organizations and Indian Tribes for the purpose of providing mentoring and other transitional services essential to reintegrating offenders into the community.

(b) Use of funds

A grant awarded under subsection (a) may be used for—

(1) mentoring adult and juvenile offenders during incarceration, through transition back to the community, and post-release;

(2) transitional services to assist in the reintegration of offenders into the community, including mental health care; and

(3) training regarding offender and victims issues.

(c) Application; priority consideration

(1) In general

To be eligible to receive a grant under this section, a nonprofit organization or Indian Tribe shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such information as the Attorney General may require.

(2) Priority consideration

Priority consideration shall be given to any application under this section that—

(A) includes a plan to implement activities that have been demonstrated effective in facilitating the successful reentry of offenders; and

(B) provides for an independent evaluation that includes, to the maximum extent feasible, random assignment of offenders to program delivery and control groups.

(d) Strategic performance outcomes

The Attorney General shall require each applicant under this section to identify specific performance outcomes related to the long-term goal of stabilizing communities by reducing recidivism (using a measure that is consistent with the research undertaken by the Bureau of Justice Statistics under section 17551(b)(6) of this title), and reintegrating offenders into the community.

(e) Reports

An entity that receives a grant under subsection (a) during a fiscal year shall, not later than the last day of the following fiscal year, submit to the Attorney General a report that describes and assesses the uses of that grant during that fiscal year and that identifies the progress of the grantee toward achieving its strategic performance outcomes.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Attorney General to carry out this section $15,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2009 and 2010.

(Pub. L. 110–199, title II, §211, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 679; Pub. L. 114–255, div. B, title XIV, §14009(b), Dec. 13, 2016, 130 Stat. 1297.)

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 114–255 inserted ", including mental health care" after "community".

§17532. Responsible reintegration of offenders

(a) Eligible offenders

(1) In general

In this section, the term "eligible offender" means an individual who—

(A) is 18 years of age or older;

(B) has been convicted as an adult and imprisoned under Federal or State law;

(C) has never been convicted of a violent or sex-related offense; and

(D) except as provided in paragraph (2), has been released from a prison or jail for not more than 180 days before the date on which the individual begins participating in a grant program carried out under this section.

(2) Exception

Each grantee under this section may permit not more than 10 percent of the individuals served with a grant under this section to be individuals who—

(A) meet the conditions of subparagraphs (A) through (C) of paragraph (1); and

(B) have been released from a prison or jail for more than 180 days before the date on which the individuals begin participating in the grant program carried out under this section.

(3) Priority of service

Grantees shall provide a priority of service in projects funded under this section to individuals meeting the requirements of paragraph (1) who have been released from State correctional facilities.

(b) Authority to make grants

The Secretary of Labor may make grants to nonprofit organizations for the purpose of providing mentoring, job training and job placement services, and other comprehensive transitional services to assist eligible offenders in obtaining and retaining employment.

(c) Use of funds

(1) In general

A grant awarded under this section may be used for—

(A) mentoring eligible offenders, including the provision of support, guidance, and assistance in the community and the workplace to address the challenges faced by such offenders;

(B) providing job training and job placement services to eligible offenders, including work readiness activities, job referrals, basic skills remediation, educational services, occupational skills training, on-the-job training, work experience, and post-placement support, in coordination with the one-stop partners and one-stop operators (as such terms are defined in section 3102 of title 29) that provide services at any center operated under a one-stop delivery system established under section 3151(e) of title 29, businesses, and educational institutions; and

(C) providing outreach, orientation, intake, assessments, counseling, case management, and other transitional services to eligible offenders, including prerelease outreach and orientation.

(2) Limitations

(A) Certain services excluded

A grant under this section may not be used to provide substance abuse treatment services,

mental health treatment services, or housing services, except that such a grant may be used to coordinate with other programs and entities to arrange for such programs and entities to provide substance abuse treatment services, mental health treatment services, or housing services to eligible offenders.

(B) Administrative cost limit

Not more than 15 percent of the amounts awarded to a grantee under this section may be used for the costs of administration, as determined by the Secretary of Labor.

(d) Application

(1) In general

(A) Application required

A nonprofit organization desiring a grant under this section shall submit an application to the Secretary of Labor at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such information as the Secretary of Labor may require.

(B) Contents

At a minimum, an application for a grant under this section shall include—

(i) the identification of the eligible area that is to be served and a description of the need for support in such area;

(ii) a description of the mentoring, job training and job placement, and other services to be provided;

(iii) a description of partnerships that have been established with the criminal justice system (including coordination with demonstration projects carried out under section 3797w of this title, as amended by this Act, where applicable), the local workforce development boards established under section 3122 of title 29, and housing authorities that will be used to assist in carrying out grant activities under this section; and

(iv) a description of how other Federal, State, local, or private funding will be leveraged to provide support services that are not directly funded under this section, such as mental health and substance abuse treatment and housing.

(2) Eligible area

In this subsection, the term "eligible area" means an area that—

(A) is located within an urbanized area or urban cluster, as determined by the Bureau of the Census in the most recently available census;

(B) has a large number of prisoners returning to the area each year; and

(C) has a high rate of recidivism among prisoners returning to the area.

(e) Performance outcomes

(1) Core indicators

Each nonprofit organization receiving a grant under this section shall report to the Secretary of Labor on the results of services provided to eligible offenders with that grant with respect to the following indicators of performance:

(A) Rates of recidivism.

(B) Entry into employment.

(C) Retention in employment.

(D) Average earnings.

(2) Additional indicators

In addition to the indicators described in paragraph (1), the Secretary of Labor may require a nonprofit organization receiving a grant under this section to report on additional indicators of performance.

(f) Reports

Each nonprofit organization receiving a grant under this section shall maintain such records and

submit such reports, in such form and containing such information, as the Secretary of Labor may require regarding the activities carried out under this section.

(g) Technical assistance

The Secretary of Labor may reserve not more than 4 percent of the amounts appropriated to carry out this section to provide technical assistance and for management information systems to assist grantees under this section.

(h) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of Labor to carry out this section $20,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2009 and 2010.

(Pub. L. 110–199, title II, §212, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 680; Pub. L. 113–128, title V, §512(bb)(1), July 22, 2014, 128 Stat. 1717.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 3797w of this title, as amended by this Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(1)(B)(iii), is section 3797w of this title, as amended by Pub. L. 110–199.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (c)(1)(B). Pub. L. 113–128, §512(bb)(1)(A), substituted "in coordination with the one-stop partners and one-stop operators (as such terms are defined in section 3102 of title 29) that provide services at any center operated under a one-stop delivery system established under section 3151(e) of title 29," for "in coordination with the one-stop partners and one-stop operators (as such terms are defined in section 2801 of title 29) that provide services at any center operated under a one-stop delivery system established under section 2864(c) of title 29,".

Subsec. (d)(1)(B)(iii). Pub. L. 113–128, §512(bb)(1)(B), substituted "the local workforce development boards established under section 3122 of title 29," for "the local workforce investment boards established under section 2832 of title 29),".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2014 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–128 effective on the first day of the first full program year after July 22, 2014 (July 1, 2015), see section 506 of Pub. L. 113–128, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3101 of Title 29, Labor.

§17533. Bureau of Prisons policy on mentoring contacts

(a) In general

Not later than 90 days after April 9, 2008, the Director of the Bureau of Prisons shall, in order to promote stability and continued assistance to offenders after release from prison, adopt and implement a policy to ensure that any person who provides mentoring services to an incarcerated offender is permitted to continue such services after that offender is released from prison. That policy shall permit the continuation of mentoring services unless the Director demonstrates that such services would be a significant security risk to the released offender, incarcerated offenders, persons who provide such services, or any other person.

(b) Report

Not later than September 30, 2009, the Director of the Bureau of Prisons shall submit to Congress a report on the extent to which the policy described in subsection (a) has been implemented and followed.

(Pub. L. 110–199, title II, §213, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 683.)

§17534. Bureau of Prisons policy on chapel library materials

(a) In general

Not later than 30 days after April 9, 2008, the Director of the Bureau of Prisons shall discontinue the Standardized Chapel Library project, or any other project by whatever designation that seeks to compile, list, or otherwise restrict prisoners' access to reading materials, audiotapes, videotapes, or any other materials made available in a chapel library, except that the Bureau of Prisons may restrict access to—

(1) any materials in a chapel library that seek to incite, promote, or otherwise suggest the commission of violence or criminal activity; and

(2) any other materials prohibited by any other law or regulation.

(b) Rule of construction

Nothing in this section shall be construed to impact policies of the Bureau of Prisons related to access by specific prisoners to materials for security, safety, sanitation, or disciplinary reasons.

(Pub. L. 110–199, title II, §214, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 683.)

PART C—ADMINISTRATION OF JUSTICE REFORMS

SUBPART 1—IMPROVING FEDERAL OFFENDER REENTRY

§17541. Federal prisoner reentry initiative

(a) In general

The Attorney General, in coordination with the Director of the Bureau of Prisons, shall, subject to the availability of appropriations, conduct the following activities to establish a Federal prisoner reentry initiative:

(1) The establishment of a Federal prisoner reentry strategy to help prepare prisoners for release and successful reintegration into the community, including, at a minimum, that the Bureau of Prisons—

(A) assess each prisoner's skill level (including academic, vocational, health, cognitive, interpersonal, daily living, and related reentry skills) at the beginning of the term of imprisonment of that prisoner to identify any areas in need of improvement prior to reentry;

(B) generate a skills development plan for each prisoner to monitor skills enhancement and reentry readiness throughout incarceration;

(C) determine program assignments for prisoners based on the areas of need identified through the assessment described in subparagraph (A);

(D) ensure that priority is given to the reentry needs of high-risk populations, such as sex offenders, career criminals, and prisoners with mental health problems;

(E) coordinate and collaborate with other Federal agencies and with State, Tribal, and local criminal justice agencies, community-based organizations, and faith-based organizations to help effectuate a seamless reintegration of prisoners into communities;

(F) collect information about a prisoner's family relationships, parental responsibilities, and contacts with children to help prisoners maintain important familial relationships and support systems during incarceration and after release from custody; and

(G) provide incentives for prisoner participation in skills development programs.

(2) Incentives for a prisoner who participates in reentry and skills development programs which may, at the discretion of the Director, include—

(A) the maximum allowable period in a community confinement facility; and

(B) such other incentives as the Director considers appropriate (not including a reduction of

the term of imprisonment).

(b) Identification and release assistance for Federal prisoners

(1) Obtaining identification

The Director shall assist prisoners in obtaining identification (including a social security card, driver's license or other official photo identification, or birth certificate) prior to release.

(2) Assistance developing release plan

At the request of a direct-release prisoner, a representative of the United States Probation System shall, prior to the release of that prisoner, help that prisoner develop a release plan.

(3) Direct-release prisoner defined

In this section, the term "direct-release prisoner" means a prisoner who is scheduled for release and will not be placed in prerelease custody.

(c) Improved reentry procedures for Federal prisoners

The Attorney General shall take such steps as are necessary to modify the procedures and policies of the Department of Justice with respect to the transition of offenders from the custody of the Bureau of Prisons to the community—

(1) to enhance case planning and implementation of reentry programs, policies, and guidelines;

(2) to improve such transition to the community, including placement of such individuals in community corrections facilities; and

(3) to foster the development of collaborative partnerships with stakeholders at the national, State, and local levels to facilitate the exchange of information and the development of resources to enhance opportunities for successful offender reentry.

(d) Duties of the Bureau of Prisons

(1) Omitted

(2) Measuring the removal of obstacles to reentry

(A) Coding required

The Director shall ensure that each institution within the Bureau of Prisons codes the reentry needs and deficits of prisoners, as identified by an assessment tool that is used to produce an individualized skills development plan for each inmate.

(B) Tracking

In carrying out this paragraph, the Director shall quantitatively track the progress in responding to the reentry needs and deficits of individual inmates.

(C) Annual report

On an annual basis, the Director shall prepare and submit to the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives a report that documents the progress of the Bureau of Prisons in responding to the reentry needs and deficits of inmates.

(D) Evaluation

The Director shall ensure that—

(i) the performance of each institution within the Bureau of Prisons in enhancing skills and resources to assist in reentry is measured and evaluated using recognized measurements; and

(ii) plans for corrective action are developed and implemented as necessary.

(3) Measuring and improving recidivism outcomes

(A) Annual report required

(i) In general

At the end of each fiscal year, the Director shall submit to the Committee on the Judiciary

of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives a report containing statistics demonstrating the relative reduction in recidivism for inmates released by the Bureau of Prisons within that fiscal year and the 2 prior fiscal years, comparing inmates who participated in major inmate programs (including residential drug treatment, vocational training, and prison industries) with inmates who did not participate in such programs. Such statistics shall be compiled separately for each such fiscal year.

(ii) Scope

A report under this paragraph is not required to include statistics for a fiscal year that begins before April 9, 2008.

(B) Measure used

In preparing the reports required by subparagraph (A), the Director shall, in consultation with the Director of the Bureau of Justice Statistics, select a measure for recidivism (such as rearrest, reincarceration, or any other valid, evidence-based measure) that the Director considers appropriate and that is consistent with the research undertaken by the Bureau of Justice Statistics under section 17551(b)(6) of this title.

(C) Goals

(i) In general

After the Director submits the first report required by subparagraph (A), the Director shall establish goals for reductions in recidivism rates and shall work to attain those goals.

(ii) Contents

The goals established under clause (i) shall use the relative reductions in recidivism measured for the fiscal year covered by the first report required by subparagraph (A) as a baseline rate, and shall include—

(I) a 5-year goal to increase, at a minimum, the baseline relative reduction rate of recidivism by 2 percent; and

(II) a 10-year goal to increase, at a minimum, the baseline relative reduction rate of recidivism by 5 percent within 10 fiscal years.

(4) Format

Any written information that the Bureau of Prisons provides to inmates for reentry planning purposes shall use common terminology and language.

(5) Medical care

The Bureau of Prisons shall provide the United States Probation and Pretrial Services System with relevant information on the medical care needs and the mental health treatment needs of inmates scheduled for release from custody. The United States Probation and Pretrial Services System shall take this information into account when developing supervision plans in an effort to address the medical care and mental health care needs of such individuals. The Bureau of Prisons shall provide inmates with a sufficient amount of all necessary medications (which will normally consist of, at a minimum, a 2-week supply of such medications) upon release from custody.

(e) Encouragement of employment of former prisoners

The Attorney General, in consultation with the Secretary of Labor, shall take such steps as are necessary to educate employers and the one-stop partners and one-stop operators (as such terms are defined in section 3102 of title 29) that provide services at any center operated under a one-stop delivery system established under section 3151(e) of title 29 regarding incentives (including the Federal bonding program of the Department of Labor and tax credits) for hiring former Federal, State, or local prisoners.

(f) Omitted

(g) Elderly and family reunification for certain nonviolent offenders pilot program

(1) Program authorized

(A) In general

The Attorney General shall conduct a pilot program to determine the effectiveness of removing eligible elderly offenders from a Bureau of Prisons facility and placing such offenders on home detention until the expiration of the prison term to which the offender was sentenced.

(B) Placement in home detention

In carrying out a pilot program as described in subparagraph (A), the Attorney General may release some or all eligible elderly offenders from the Bureau of Prisons facility to home detention.

(C) Waiver

The Attorney General is authorized to waive the requirements of section 3624 of title 18 as necessary to provide for the release of some or all eligible elderly offenders from the Bureau of Prisons facility to home detention for the purposes of the pilot program under this subsection.

(2) Violation of terms of home detention

A violation by an eligible elderly offender of the terms of home detention (including the commission of another Federal, State, or local crime) shall result in the removal of that offender from home detention and the return of that offender to the designated Bureau of Prisons institution in which that offender was imprisoned immediately before placement on home detention under paragraph (1), or to another appropriate Bureau of Prisons institution, as determined by the Bureau of Prisons.

(3) Scope of pilot program

A pilot program under paragraph (1) shall be conducted through at least one Bureau of Prisons facility designated by the Attorney General as appropriate for the pilot program and shall be carried out during fiscal years 2009 and 2010.

(4) Implementation and evaluation

The Attorney General shall monitor and evaluate each eligible elderly offender placed on home detention under this section, and shall report to Congress concerning the experience with the program at the end of the period described in paragraph (3). The Administrative Office of the United States Courts and the United States probation offices shall provide such assistance and carry out such functions as the Attorney General may request in monitoring, supervising, providing services to, and evaluating eligible elderly offenders released to home detention under this section.

(5) Definitions

In this section:

(A) Eligible elderly offender

The term "eligible elderly offender" means an offender in the custody of the Bureau of Prisons—

(i) who is not less than 65 years of age;

(ii) who is serving a term of imprisonment that is not life imprisonment based on conviction for an offense or offenses that do not include any crime of violence (as defined in section 16 of title 18), sex offense (as defined in section 16911(5) of this title), offense described in section 2332b(g)(5)(B) of title 18, or offense under chapter 37 of title 18, and has served the greater of 10 years or 75 percent of the term of imprisonment to which the offender was sentenced;

(iii) who has not been convicted in the past of any Federal or State crime of violence, sex offense, or other offense described in clause (ii);

(iv) who has not been determined by the Bureau of Prisons, on the basis of information the Bureau uses to make custody classifications, and in the sole discretion of the Bureau, to have

a history of violence, or of engaging in conduct constituting a sex offense or other offense described in clause (ii);

(v) who has not escaped, or attempted to escape, from a Bureau of Prisons institution;

(vi) with respect to whom the Bureau of Prisons has determined that release to home detention under this section will result in a substantial net reduction of costs to the Federal Government; and

(vii) who has been determined by the Bureau of Prisons to be at no substantial risk of engaging in criminal conduct or of endangering any person or the public if released to home detention.

(B) Home detention

The term "home detention" has the same meaning given the term in the Federal Sentencing Guidelines as of April 9, 2008, and includes detention in a nursing home or other residential long-term care facility.

(C) Term of imprisonment

The term "term of imprisonment" includes multiple terms of imprisonment ordered to run consecutively or concurrently, which shall be treated as a single, aggregate term of imprisonment for purposes of this section.

(h) Federal Remote Satellite Tracking and Reentry Training program

(1) Establishment of program

The Director of the Administrative Office of the United States Courts, in consultation with the Attorney General, may establish the Federal Remote Satellite Tracking and Reentry Training (ReStart) program to promote the effective reentry into the community of high risk individuals.

(2) High risk individuals

For purposes of this section, the term "high risk individual" means—

(A) an individual who is under supervised release, with respect to a Federal offense, and who has previously violated the terms of a release granted such individual following a term of imprisonment; or

(B) an individual convicted of a Federal offense who is at a high risk for recidivism, as determined by the Director of the Bureau of Prisons, and who is eligible for early release pursuant to voluntary participation in a program of residential substance abuse treatment under section 3621(e) of title 18 or a program described in this section.

(3) Program elements

The program authorized under paragraph (1) shall include, with respect to high risk individuals participating in such program, the following core elements:

(A) A system of graduated levels of supervision, that uses, as appropriate and indicated—

(i) satellite tracking, global positioning, remote satellite, and other tracking or monitoring technologies to monitor and supervise such individuals in the community; and

(ii) community corrections facilities and home confinement.

(B) Substance abuse treatment and aftercare related to such treatment, mental and medical health treatment and aftercare related to such treatment, vocational and educational training, life skills instruction, conflict resolution skills training, batterer intervention programs, and other programs to promote effective reentry into the community as appropriate.

(C) Involvement of the family of such an individual, a victim advocate, and the victim of the offense committed by such an individual, if such involvement is safe for such victim (especially in a domestic violence case).

(D) A methodology, including outcome measures, to evaluate the program.

(E) Notification to the victim of the offense committed by such an individual of the status and nature of such an individual's reentry plan.

(i) Authorization for appropriations for Bureau of Prisons

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Attorney General to carry out this section, $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2009 and 2010.

(Pub. L. 110–199, title II, §231, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 683; Pub. L. 113–128, title V, §512(bb)(2), July 22, 2014, 128 Stat. 1717.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 231 of Pub. L. 110–199. Subsec. (d)(1) of section 231 of Pub. L. 110–199 amended section 4042(a) of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure. Subsec. (f) of section 231 of Pub. L. 110–199 amended section 3621 of Title 18.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 113–128 substituted "the one-stop partners and one-stop operators (as such terms are defined in section 3102 of title 29) that provide services at any center operated under a one-stop delivery system established under section 3151(e) of title 29" for "the one-stop partners and one-stop operators (as such terms are defined in section 2801 of title 29) that provide services at any center operated under a one-stop delivery system established under section 2864(c) of title 29".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2014 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–128 effective on the first day of the first full program year after July 22, 2014 (July 1, 2015), see section 506 of Pub. L. 113–128, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3101 of Title 29, Labor.

SUBPART 2—REENTRY RESEARCH

§17551. Offender reentry research

(a) National Institute of Justice

The National Institute of Justice may conduct research on juvenile and adult offender reentry, including—

(1) a study identifying the number and characteristics of minor children who have had a parent incarcerated, and the likelihood of such minor children becoming adversely involved in the criminal justice system some time in their lifetime;

(2) a study identifying a mechanism to compare rates of recidivism (including rearrest, violations of parole, probation, post-incarceration supervision, and reincarceration) among States; and

(3) a study on the population of offenders released from custody who do not engage in recidivism and the characteristics (housing, employment, treatment, family connection) of that population.

(b) Bureau of Justice Statistics

The Bureau of Justice Statistics may conduct research on offender reentry, including—

(1) an analysis of special populations (including prisoners with mental illness or substance abuse disorders, female offenders, juvenile offenders, offenders with limited English proficiency, and the elderly) that present unique reentry challenges;

(2) studies to determine which offenders are returning to prison, jail, or a juvenile facility and which of those returning offenders represent the greatest risk to victims and community safety;

(3) annual reports on the demographic characteristics of the population reentering society from prisons, jails, and juvenile facilities;

(4) a national recidivism study every 3 years;

(5) a study of parole, probation, or post-incarceration supervision violations and revocations; and

(6) a study concerning the most appropriate measure to be used when reporting recidivism rates (whether rearrest, reincarceration, or any other valid, evidence-based measure).

(Pub. L. 110–199, title II, §241, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 690.)

§17552. Grants to study parole or post-incarceration supervision violations and revocations

(a) Grants authorized

From amounts made available to carry out this section, the Attorney General may make grants to States to study and to improve the collection of data with respect to individuals whose parole or post-incarceration supervision is revoked, and which such individuals represent the greatest risk to victims and community safety.

(b) Application

As a condition of receiving a grant under this section, a State shall—

(1) certify that the State has, or intends to establish, a program that collects comprehensive and reliable data with respect to individuals described in subsection (a), including data on—

(A) the number and type of parole or post-incarceration supervision violations that occur with the State;

(B) the reasons for parole or post-incarceration supervision revocation;

(C) the underlying behavior that led to the revocation; and

(D) the term of imprisonment or other penalty that is imposed for the violation; and

(2) provide the data described in paragraph (1) to the Bureau of Justice Statistics, in a form prescribed by the Bureau.

(c) Analysis

Any statistical analysis of population data under this section shall be conducted in accordance with the Federal Register Notice dated October 30, 1997, relating to classification standards.

(Pub. L. 110–199, title II, §242, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 690.)

§17553. Addressing the needs of children of incarcerated parents

(a) Best practices

(1) In general

From amounts made available to carry out this section, the Attorney General may collect data and develop best practices of State corrections departments and child protection agencies relating to the communication and coordination between such State departments and agencies to ensure the safety and support of children of incarcerated parents (including those in foster care and kinship care), and the support of parent-child relationships between incarcerated (and formerly incarcerated) parents and their children, as appropriate to the health and well-being of the children.

(2) Contents

The best practices developed under paragraph (1) shall include information related to policies, procedures, and programs that may be used by States to address—

(A) maintenance of the parent-child bond during incarceration;

(B) parental self-improvement; and

(C) parental involvement in planning for the future and well-being of their children.

(b) Dissemination to States

Not later than 1 year after the development of best practices described in subsection (a), the Attorney General shall disseminate to States and other relevant entities such best practices.

(c) Sense of Congress

It is the sense of Congress that States and other relevant entities should use the best practices developed and disseminated in accordance with this section to evaluate and improve the communication and coordination between State corrections departments and child protection agencies to ensure the safety and support of children of incarcerated parents (including those in foster care and kinship care), and the support of parent-child relationships between incarcerated (and formerly incarcerated) parents and their children, as appropriate to the health and well-being of the children.

(Pub. L. 110–199, title II, §243, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 691.)

§17554. Study of effectiveness of depot naltrexone for heroin addiction

(a) Grant program authorized

From amounts made available to carry out this section, the Attorney General, through the National Institute of Justice, and in consultation with the National Institute on Drug Abuse, may make grants to public and private research entities (including consortia, single private research entities, and individual institutions of higher education) to evaluate the effectiveness of depot naltrexone for the treatment of heroin addiction.

(b) Evaluation program

An entity described in subsection (a) desiring a grant under this section shall submit to the Attorney General an application that—

(1) contains such information as the Attorney General specifies, including information that demonstrates that—

(A) the applicant conducts research at a private or public institution of higher education, as that term is defined in section 1001 of title 20;

(B) the applicant has a plan to work with parole officers or probation officers for offenders who are under court supervision; and

(C) the evaluation described in subsection (a) will measure the effectiveness of such treatments using randomized trials; and

(2) is in such form and manner and at such time as the Attorney General specifies.

(c) Reports

An entity that receives a grant under subsection (a) during a fiscal year shall, not later than the last day of the following fiscal year, submit to the Attorney General a report that describes and assesses the uses of that grant.

(Pub. L. 110–199, title II, §244, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 692.)

§17555. Authorization of appropriations for research

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Attorney General to carry out sections 17551, 17552, 17553, and 17554 of this title, $10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2009 and 2010.

(Pub. L. 110–199, title II, §245, Apr. 9, 2008, 122 Stat. 692.)

CHAPTER 154—COMBATING CHILD EXPLOITATION

Sec.

§17601. Definitions

In this chapter, the following definitions shall apply:

(1) Child exploitation

The term "child exploitation" means any conduct, attempted conduct, or conspiracy to engage in conduct involving a minor that violates section 1591, chapter 109A, chapter 110, and chapter 117 of title 18 or any sexual activity involving a minor for which any person can be charged with a criminal offense.

(2) Child obscenity

The term "child obscenity" means any visual depiction proscribed by section 1466A of title 18.

(3) Minor

The term "minor" means any person under the age of 18 years.

(4) Sexually explicit conduct

The term "sexually explicit conduct" has the meaning given such term in section 2256 of title 18.

(Pub. L. 110–401, §2, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4229.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 110–401, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4229, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 110–401, §1(a), Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4229, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter and sections 2258A to 2258E of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, amending sections 2251, 2252A, 2256, 2260, and 2702 of Title 18, repealing section 13032 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 2251 of Title 18] may be cited as the 'Providing Resources, Officers, and Technology To Eradicate Cyber Threats to Our Children Act of 2008' or the 'PROTECT Our Children Act of 2008'."

SUBCHAPTER I—NATIONAL STRATEGY FOR CHILD EXPLOITATION PREVENTION AND INTERDICTION

§17611. Establishment of National Strategy for Child Exploitation Prevention and Interdiction

(a) In general

The Attorney General of the United States shall create and implement a National Strategy for Child Exploitation Prevention and Interdiction.

(b) Timing

Not later than 1 year after October 13, 2008, and on February 1 of every second year thereafter, the Attorney General shall submit to Congress the National Strategy established under subsection (a).

(c) Required contents of National Strategy

The National Strategy established under subsection (a) shall include the following:

(1) Comprehensive long-range,[1] goals for reducing child exploitation.

(2) Annual measurable objectives and specific targets to accomplish long-term, quantifiable goals that the Attorney General determines may be achieved during each year beginning on the date when the National Strategy is submitted.

(3) Annual budget priorities and Federal efforts dedicated to combating child exploitation, including resources dedicated to Internet Crimes Against Children task forces, Project Safe Childhood, FBI Innocent Images Initiative, the National Center for Missing and Exploited Children, regional forensic computer labs, Internet Safety [2] programs, and all other entities whose goal or mission is to combat the exploitation of children that receive Federal support.

(4) A 5-year projection for program and budget goals and priorities.

(5) A review of the policies and work of the Department of Justice related to the prevention and investigation of child exploitation crimes, including efforts at the Office of Justice Programs, the Criminal Division of the Department of Justice, the Executive Office of United States Attorneys, the Federal Bureau of Investigation, the Office of the Attorney General, the Office of the Deputy Attorney General, the Office of Legal Policy, and any other agency or bureau of the Department of Justice whose activities relate to child exploitation.

(6) A description of the Department's efforts to coordinate with international, State, local, tribal law enforcement, and private sector entities on child exploitation prevention and interdiction efforts.

(7) Plans for interagency coordination regarding the prevention, investigation, and apprehension of individuals exploiting children, including cooperation and collaboration with—

(A) Immigration and Customs Enforcement;
(B) the United States Postal Inspection Service;
(C) the Department of State;
(D) the Department of Commerce;
(E) the Department of Education;
(F) the Department of Health and Human Services; and
(G) other appropriate Federal agencies.

(8) A review of the Internet Crimes Against Children Task Force Program, including—

(A) the number of ICAC task forces and location of each ICAC task force;
(B) the number of trained personnel at each ICAC task force;
(C) the amount of Federal grants awarded to each ICAC task force;
(D) an assessment of the Federal, State, and local cooperation in each task force, including—
(i) the number of arrests made by each task force;
(ii) the number of criminal referrals to United States attorneys for prosecution;
(iii) the number of prosecutions and convictions from the referrals made under clause (ii);
(iv) the number, if available, of local prosecutions and convictions based on ICAC task force investigations; and
(v) any other information demonstrating the level of Federal, State, and local coordination and cooperation, as such information is to be determined by the Attorney General;

(E) an assessment of the training opportunities and technical assistance available to support ICAC task force grantees; and

(F) an assessment of the success of the Internet Crimes Against Children Task Force Program at leveraging State and local resources and matching funds.

(9) An assessment of the technical assistance and support available for Federal, State, local, and tribal law enforcement agencies, in the prevention, investigation, and prosecution of child exploitation crimes.

(10) A review of the backlog of forensic analysis for child exploitation cases at each FBI Regional Forensic lab and an estimate of the backlog at State and local labs.

(11) Plans for reducing the forensic backlog described in paragraph (10), if any, at Federal, State and local forensic labs.

(12) A review of the Federal programs related to child exploitation prevention and education, including those related to Internet safety, including efforts by the private sector and nonprofit entities, or any other initiatives, that have proven successful in promoting child safety and Internet safety.

(13) An assessment of the future trends, challenges, and opportunities, including new technologies, that will impact Federal, State, local, and tribal efforts to combat child exploitation.

(14) Plans for liaisons with the judicial branches of the Federal and State governments on matters relating to child exploitation.

(15) An assessment of Federal investigative and prosecution activity relating to reported incidents of child exploitation crimes, which shall include a number of factors, including—

(A) the number of high-priority suspects (identified because of the volume of suspected criminal activity or because of the danger to the community or a potential victim) who were investigated and prosecuted;

(B) the number of investigations, arrests, prosecutions and convictions for a crime of child exploitation; and

(C) the average sentence imposed and statutory maximum for each crime of child exploitation.

(16) A review of all available statistical data indicating the overall magnitude of child pornography trafficking in the United States and internationally, including—

(A) the number of computers or computer users, foreign and domestic, observed engaging in, or suspected by law enforcement agencies and other sources of engaging in, peer-to-peer file sharing of child pornography;

(B) the number of computers or computer users, foreign and domestic, observed engaging in, or suspected by law enforcement agencies and other reporting sources of engaging in, buying and selling, or other commercial activity related to child pornography;

(C) the number of computers or computer users, foreign and domestic, observed engaging in, or suspected by law enforcement agencies and other sources of engaging in, all other forms of activity related to child pornography;

(D) the number of tips or other statistical data from the National Center for Missing and Exploited Children's CyberTipline and other data indicating the magnitude of child pornography trafficking; and

(E) any other statistical data indicating the type, nature, and extent of child exploitation crime in the United States and abroad.

(17) Copies of recent relevant research and studies related to child exploitation, including—

(A) studies related to the link between possession or trafficking of child pornography and actual abuse of a child;

(B) studies related to establishing a link between the types of files being viewed or shared and the type of illegal activity; and

(C) any other research, studies, and available information related to child exploitation.

(18) A review of the extent of cooperation, coordination, and mutual support between private sector and other entities and organizations and Federal agencies, including the involvement of States, local and tribal government agencies to the extent Federal programs are involved.

(19) The results of the Project Safe Childhood Conference or other conferences or meetings convened by the Department of Justice related to combating child exploitation.

(d) Appointment of high-level official

(1) In general

The Attorney General shall designate a senior official at the Department of Justice with experience in investigating or prosecuting child exploitation cases as the National Coordinator for Child Exploitation Prevention and Interdiction who shall be responsible for coordinating the development of the National Strategy established under subsection (a). The National Coordinator for Child Exploitation Prevention and Interdiction shall be a position in the Senior Executive Service.

(2) Duties

The duties of the official designated under paragraph (1) shall include—

(A) acting as a liaison with all Federal agencies regarding the development of the National Strategy;

(B) working to ensure that there is proper coordination among agencies in developing the National Strategy;

(C) being knowledgeable about budget priorities and familiar with all efforts within the Department of Justice and the FBI related to child exploitation prevention and interdiction; and

(D) communicating the National Strategy to Congress and being available to answer questions related to the strategy at congressional hearings, if requested by committees of appropriate jurisdictions, on the contents of the National Strategy and progress of the Department of Justice in implementing the National Strategy.

(Pub. L. 110–401, title I, §101, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4230; Pub. L. 112–206, §6, Dec. 7, 2012, 126 Stat. 1493.)

AMENDMENTS

2012—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 112–206 substituted "with experience in investigating or prosecuting child exploitation cases as the National Coordinator for Child Exploitation Prevention and Interdiction who shall be responsible" for "to be responsible" and inserted at end "The National Coordinator for Child Exploitation Prevention and Interdiction shall be a position in the Senior Executive Service."

[1] So in original. The comma probably should not appear.

[2] So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.

§17612. Establishment of National ICAC Task Force Program

(a) Establishment

(1) In general

There is established within the Department of Justice, under the general authority of the Attorney General, a National Internet Crimes Against Children Task Force Program (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the "ICAC Task Force Program"), which shall consist of a national program of State and local law enforcement task forces dedicated to developing effective responses to online enticement of children by sexual predators, child exploitation, and child obscenity and pornography cases.

(2) Intent of Congress

It is the purpose and intent of Congress that the ICAC Task Force Program established under paragraph (1) is intended to continue the ICAC Task Force Program authorized under title I of the

Departments of Commerce, Justice, and State, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1998, and funded under title IV of the Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention Act of 1974 [42 U.S.C. 5771 et seq.].

(b) National program

(1) State representation

The ICAC Task Force Program established under subsection (a) shall include at least 1 ICAC task force in each State.

(2) Capacity and continuity of investigations

In order to maintain established capacity and continuity of investigations and prosecutions of child exploitation cases, the Attorney General, shall, in establishing the ICAC Task Force Program under subsection (a) consult with and consider all 59 task forces in existence on October 13, 2008. The Attorney General shall include all existing ICAC task forces in the ICAC Task Force Program, unless the Attorney General makes a determination that an existing ICAC [1] does not have a proven track record of success.

(3) Ongoing review

The Attorney General shall—

(A) conduct periodic reviews of the effectiveness of each ICAC task force established under this section; and

(B) have the discretion to establish a new task force if the Attorney General determines that such decision will enhance the effectiveness of combating child exploitation provided that the Attorney General notifies Congress in advance of any such decision and that each state [2] maintains at least 1 ICAC task force at all times.

(4) Training

(A) In general

The Attorney General may establish national training programs to support the mission of the ICAC task forces, including the effective use of the National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System.

(B) Limitation

In establishing training courses under this paragraph, the Attorney General may not award any one entity other than a law enforcement agency more than $4,000,000 annually to establish and conduct training courses for ICAC task force members and other law enforcement officials.

(C) Review

The Attorney General shall—

(i) conduct periodic reviews of the effectiveness of each training session authorized by this paragraph; and

(ii) consider outside reports related to the effective use of Federal funding in making future grant awards for training.

(Pub. L. 110–401, title I, §102, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4233; Pub. L. 112–206, §5, Dec. 7, 2012, 126 Stat. 1493.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Title I of the Departments of Commerce, Justice, and State, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1998, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), is title I of Pub. L. 105–119, Nov. 26, 1997, 111 Stat. 2440. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

The Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), is Pub. L. 93–415, Sept. 7, 1974, 88 Stat. 1109. Title IV of the Act is classified generally to subchapter IV (§5771 et seq.) of chapter 72 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5601 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2012—Subsec. (b)(4)(B). Pub. L. 112–206 substituted "$4,000,000" for "$2,000,000".

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "ICAC task force".*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be capitalized.*

§17613. Purpose of ICAC task forces

The ICAC Task Force Program, and each State or local ICAC task force that is part of the national program of task forces, shall be dedicated toward—

(1) increasing the investigative capabilities of State and local law enforcement officers in the detection, investigation, and apprehension of Internet crimes against children offenses or offenders, including technology-facilitated child exploitation offenses;

(2) conducting proactive and reactive Internet crimes against children investigations;

(3) providing training and technical assistance to ICAC task forces and other Federal, State, and local law enforcement agencies in the areas of investigations, forensics, prosecution, community outreach, and capacity-building, using recognized experts to assist in the development and delivery of training programs;

(4) increasing the number of Internet crimes against children offenses being investigated and prosecuted in both Federal and State courts;

(5) creating a multiagency task force response to Internet crimes against children offenses within each State;

(6) participating in the Department of Justice's Project Safe Childhood initiative, the purpose of which is to combat technology-facilitated sexual exploitation crimes against children;

(7) enhancing nationwide responses to Internet crimes against children offenses, including assisting other ICAC task forces, as well as other Federal, State, and local agencies with Internet crimes against children investigations and prosecutions;

(8) developing and delivering Internet crimes against children public awareness and prevention programs; and

(9) participating in such other activities, both proactive and reactive, that will enhance investigations and prosecutions of Internet crimes against children.

(Pub. L. 110–401, title I, §103, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4234.)

§17614. Duties and functions of task forces

Each State or local ICAC task force that is part of the national program of task forces shall—

(1) consist of State and local investigators, prosecutors, forensic specialists, and education specialists who are dedicated to addressing the goals of such task force;

(2) work consistently toward achieving the purposes described in section 17613 of this title;

(3) engage in proactive investigations, forensic examinations, and effective prosecutions of Internet crimes against children;

(4) provide forensic, preventive, and investigative assistance to parents, educators, prosecutors, law enforcement, and others concerned with Internet crimes against children;

(5) develop multijurisdictional, multiagency responses and partnerships to Internet crimes against children offenses through ongoing informational, administrative, and technological support to other State and local law enforcement agencies, as a means for such agencies to acquire the necessary knowledge, personnel, and specialized equipment to investigate and prosecute such offenses;

(6) participate in nationally coordinated investigations in any case in which the Attorney General determines such participation to be necessary, as permitted by the available resources of such task force;

(7) establish or adopt investigative and prosecution standards, consistent with established norms, to which such task force shall comply;

(8) investigate, and seek prosecution on, tips related to Internet crimes against children, including tips from Operation Fairplay, the National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System established in section 17615 of this title, the National Center for Missing and Exploited Children's CyberTipline, ICAC task forces, and other Federal, State, and local agencies, with priority being given to investigative leads that indicate the possibility of identifying or rescuing child victims, including investigative leads that indicate a likelihood of seriousness of offense or dangerousness to the community;

(9) develop procedures for handling seized evidence;

(10) maintain—

(A) such reports and records as are required under this subchapter; and

(B) such other reports and records as determined by the Attorney General; and

(11) seek to comply with national standards regarding the investigation and prosecution of Internet crimes against children, as set forth by the Attorney General, to the extent such standards are consistent with the law of the State where the task force is located.

(Pub. L. 110–401, title I, §104, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4235.)

§17615. National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System

(a) In general

The Attorney General shall establish, consistent with all existing Federal laws relating to the protection of privacy, a National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System. The system shall not be used to search for or obtain any information that does not involve the use of the Internet to facilitate child exploitation.

(b) Intent of Congress

It is the purpose and intent of Congress that the National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System established in subsection (a) is intended to continue and build upon Operation Fairplay developed by the Wyoming Attorney General's office, which has established a secure, dynamic undercover infrastructure that has facilitated online law enforcement investigations of child exploitation, information sharing, and the capacity to collect and aggregate data on the extent of the problems of child exploitation.

(c) Purpose of system

The National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System established under subsection (a) shall be dedicated to assisting and supporting credentialed law enforcement agencies authorized to investigate child exploitation in accordance with Federal, State, local, and tribal laws, including by providing assistance and support to—

(1) Federal agencies investigating and prosecuting child exploitation;

(2) the ICAC Task Force Program established under section 17612 of this title;

(3) State, local, and tribal agencies investigating and prosecuting child exploitation; and

(4) foreign or international law enforcement agencies, subject to approval by the Attorney General.

(d) Cyber safe deconfliction and information sharing

The National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System established under subsection (a)—

(1) shall be housed and maintained within the Department of Justice or a credentialed law enforcement agency;

(2) shall be made available for a nominal charge to support credentialed law enforcement agencies in accordance with subsection (c); and

(3) shall—

(A) allow Federal, State, local, and tribal agencies and ICAC task forces investigating and prosecuting child exploitation to contribute and access data for use in resolving case conflicts;

(B) provide, directly or in partnership with a credentialed law enforcement agency, a dynamic undercover infrastructure to facilitate online law enforcement investigations of child exploitation;

(C) facilitate the development of essential software and network capability for law enforcement participants; and

(D) provide software or direct hosting and support for online investigations of child exploitation activities, or, in the alternative, provide users with a secure connection to an alternative system that provides such capabilities, provided that the system is hosted within a governmental agency or a credentialed law enforcement agency.

(e) Collection and reporting of data

(1) In general

The National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System established under subsection (a) shall ensure the following:

(A) Real-time reporting

All child exploitation cases involving local child victims that are reasonably detectable using available software and data are, immediately upon their detection, made available to participating law enforcement agencies.

(B) High-priority suspects

Every 30 days, at minimum, the National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System shall—

(i) identify high-priority suspects, as such suspects are determined by indicators of seriousness of offense or dangerousness to the community or a potential local victim; and

(ii) report all such identified high-priority suspects to participating law enforcement agencies.

(C) Annual reports

Any statistical data indicating the overall magnitude of child pornography trafficking and child exploitation in the United States and internationally is made available and included in the National Strategy, as is required under section 17611(c)(16) of this title.

(2) Rule of construction

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to limit the ability of participating law enforcement agencies to disseminate investigative leads or statistical information in accordance with State and local laws.

(f) Mandatory requirements of network

The National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System established under subsection (a) shall develop, deploy, and maintain an integrated technology and training program that provides—

(1) a secure, online system for Federal law enforcement agencies, ICAC task forces, and other State, local, and tribal law enforcement agencies for use in resolving case conflicts, as provided in subsection (d);

(2) a secure system enabling online communication and collaboration by Federal law enforcement agencies, ICAC task forces, and other State, local, and tribal law enforcement agencies regarding ongoing investigations, investigatory techniques, best practices, and any other relevant news and professional information;

(3) a secure online data storage and analysis system for use by Federal law enforcement agencies, ICAC task forces, and other State, local, and tribal law enforcement agencies;

(4) secure connections or interaction with State and local law enforcement computer networks, consistent with reasonable and established security protocols and guidelines;

(5) guidelines for use of the National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System by Federal,

State, local, and tribal law enforcement agencies and ICAC task forces; and

(6) training and technical assistance on the use of the National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System by Federal, State, local, and tribal law enforcement agencies and ICAC task forces.

(g) National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System Steering Committee

The Attorney General shall establish a National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System Steering Committee to provide guidance to the Network relating to the program under subsection (f), and to assist in the development of strategic plans for the System. The Steering Committee shall consist of 10 members with expertise in child exploitation prevention and interdiction prosecution, investigation, or prevention, including—

(1) 3 representatives elected by the local directors of the ICAC task forces, such representatives shall represent different geographic regions of the country;

(2) 1 representative of the Department of Justice Office of Information Services;

(3) 1 representative from Operation Fairplay, currently hosted at the Wyoming Office of the Attorney General;

(4) 1 representative from the law enforcement agency having primary responsibility for hosting and maintaining the National Internet Crimes Against Children Data System;

(5) 1 representative of the Federal Bureau of Investigation's Innocent Images National Initiative or Regional Computer Forensic Lab program;

(6) 1 representative of the Immigration and Customs Enforcement's Cyber Crimes Center;

(7) 1 representative of the United States Postal Inspection Service; and

(8) 1 representative of the Department of Justice.

(h) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for each of the fiscal years 2009 through 2016, $2,000,000 to carry out the provisions of this section.

(Pub. L. 110–401, title I, §105, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4236; Pub. L. 112–206, §8, Dec. 7, 2012, 126 Stat. 1493.)

AMENDMENTS

2012—Subsec. (e)(1)(B)(i). Pub. L. 112–206 struck out "the volume of suspected criminal activity or other" before "indicators of seriousness".

§17616. ICAC grant program

(a) Establishment

(1) In general

The Attorney General is authorized to award grants to State and local ICAC task forces to assist in carrying out the duties and functions described under section 17614 of this title.

(2) Formula grants

(A) Development of formula

At least 75 percent of the total funds appropriated to carry out this section shall be available to award or otherwise distribute grants pursuant to a funding formula established by the Attorney General in accordance with the requirements in subparagraph (B).

(B) Formula requirements

Any formula established by the Attorney General under subparagraph (A) shall—

(i) ensure that each State or local ICAC task force shall, at a minimum, receive an amount equal to 0.5 percent of the funds available to award or otherwise distribute grants under subparagraph (A); and

(ii) take into consideration the following factors:

(I) The population of each State, as determined by the most recent decennial census

performed by the Bureau of the Census.

(II) The number of investigative leads within the applicant's jurisdiction generated by Operation Fairplay, the ICAC Data Network, the CyberTipline, and other sources.

(III) The number of criminal cases related to Internet crimes against children referred to a task force for Federal, State, or local prosecution.

(IV) The number of successful prosecutions of child exploitation cases by a task force.

(V) The amount of training, technical assistance, and public education or outreach by a task force related to the prevention, investigation, or prosecution of child exploitation offenses.

(VI) Such other criteria as the Attorney General determines demonstrate the level of need for additional resources by a task force.

(3) Distribution of remaining funds based on need

(A) In general

Any funds remaining from the total funds appropriated to carry out this section after funds have been made available to award or otherwise distribute formula grants under paragraph (2)(A) shall be distributed to State and local ICAC task forces based upon need, as set forth by criteria established by the Attorney General. Such criteria shall include the factors under paragraph (2)(B)(ii).

(B) Matching requirement

A State or local ICAC task force shall contribute matching non-Federal funds in an amount equal to not less than 25 percent of the amount of funds received by the State or local ICAC task force under subparagraph (A). A State or local ICAC task force that is not able or willing to contribute matching funds in accordance with this subparagraph shall not be eligible for funds under subparagraph (A).

(C) Waiver

The Attorney General may waive, in whole or in part, the matching requirement under subparagraph (B) if the State or local ICAC task force demonstrates good cause or financial hardship.

(b) Application

(1) In general

Each State or local ICAC task force seeking a grant under this section shall submit an application to the Attorney General at such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such information as the Attorney General may reasonably require.

(2) Contents

Each application submitted pursuant to paragraph (1) shall—

(A) describe the activities for which assistance under this section is sought; and

(B) provide such additional assurances as the Attorney General determines to be essential to ensure compliance with the requirements of this subchapter.

(c) Allowable uses

Grants awarded under this section may be used to—

(1) hire personnel, investigators, prosecutors, education specialists, and forensic specialists;

(2) establish and support forensic laboratories utilized in Internet crimes against children investigations;

(3) support investigations and prosecutions of Internet crimes against children;

(4) conduct and assist with education programs to help children and parents protect themselves from Internet predators;

(5) conduct and attend training sessions related to successful investigations and prosecutions of Internet crimes against children; and

(6) fund any other activities directly related to preventing, investigating, or prosecuting Internet

crimes against children.

(d) Reporting requirements

(1) ICAC reports

To measure the results of the activities funded by grants under this section, and to assist the Attorney General in complying with the Government Performance and Results Act (Public Law 103–62; 107 Stat. 285), each State or local ICAC task force receiving a grant under this section shall, on an annual basis, submit a report to the Attorney General that sets forth the following:

(A) Staffing levels of the task force, including the number of investigators, prosecutors, education specialists, and forensic specialists dedicated to investigating and prosecuting Internet crimes against children.

(B) Investigation and prosecution performance measures of the task force, including—

(i) the number of investigations initiated related to Internet crimes against children;

(ii) the number of arrests related to Internet crimes against children; and

(iii) the number of prosecutions for Internet crimes against children, including—

(I) whether the prosecution resulted in a conviction for such crime; and

(II) the sentence and the statutory maximum for such crime under State law.

(C) The number of referrals made by the task force to the United States Attorneys office, including whether the referral was accepted by the United States Attorney.

(D) Statistics that account for the disposition of investigations that do not result in arrests or prosecutions, such as referrals to other law enforcement.

(E) The number of investigative technical assistance sessions that the task force provided to nonmember law enforcement agencies.

(F) The number of computer forensic examinations that the task force completed.

(G) The number of law enforcement agencies participating in Internet crimes against children program standards established by the task force.

(2) Report to Congress

Not later than 1 year after October 13, 2008, the Attorney General shall submit a report to Congress on—

(A) the progress of the development of the ICAC Task Force Program established under section 17612 of this title; and

(B) the number of Federal and State investigations, prosecutions, and convictions in the prior 12-month period related to child exploitation.

(Pub. L. 110–401, title I, §106, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4238.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Government Performance and Results Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), probably means the Government Performance and Results Act of 1993, Pub. L. 103–62, Aug. 3, 1993, 107 Stat. 285, which enacted section 306 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, sections 1115 to 1119, 9703, and 9704 of Title 31, Money and Finance, and sections 2801 to 2805 of Title 39, Postal Service, amended section 1105 of Title 31, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 1101 and 1115 of Title 31. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1993 Amendment note set out under section 1101 of Title 31 and Tables.

§17617. Authorization of appropriations

(a) In general

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subchapter—

(1) $60,000,000 for fiscal year 2009;

(2) $60,000,000 for fiscal year 2010;

(3) $60,000,000 for fiscal year 2011;

(4) $60,000,000 for fiscal year 2012;
(5) $60,000,000 for fiscal year 2013 [1]
(6) $60,000,000 for fiscal year 2014;
(7) $60,000,000 for fiscal year 2015;
(8) $60,000,000 for fiscal year 2016;
(9) $60,000,000 for fiscal year 2017; and
(10) $60,000,000 for fiscal year 2018.

(b) Availability

Funds appropriated under subsection (a) shall remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 110–401, title I, §107, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4241; Pub. L. 112–206, §7, Dec. 7, 2012, 126 Stat. 1493.)

AMENDMENTS

2012—Subsec. (a)(6) to (10). Pub. L. 112–206 added pars. (6) to (10).

[1] *So in original. Probably should be followed by a semicolon.*

SUBCHAPTER II—ADDITIONAL MEASURES TO COMBAT CHILD EXPLOITATION

§17631. Additional regional computer forensic labs

(a) Additional resources

The Attorney General shall establish additional computer forensic capacity to address the current backlog for computer forensics, including for child exploitation investigations. The Attorney General may utilize funds under this subchapter to increase capacity at existing regional forensic laboratories or to add laboratories under the Regional Computer Forensic Laboratories Program operated by the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

(b) Purpose of new resources

The additional forensic capacity established by resources provided under this section shall be dedicated to assist Federal agencies, State and local Internet Crimes Against Children task forces, and other Federal, State, and local law enforcement agencies in preventing, investigating, and prosecuting Internet crimes against children.

(c) New computer forensic labs

If the Attorney General determines that new regional computer forensic laboratories are required under subsection (a) to best address existing backlogs, such new laboratories shall be established pursuant to subsection (d).

(d) Location of new labs

The location of any new regional computer forensic laboratories under this section shall be determined by the Attorney General, in consultation with the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, the Regional Computer Forensic Laboratory National Steering Committee, and other relevant stakeholders.

(e) Report

Not later than 1 year after October 13, 2008, and every year thereafter, the Attorney General shall submit a report to the Congress on how the funds appropriated under this section were utilized.

(f) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for fiscal years 2009 through 2013, $2,000,000 to carry out the provisions of this section.

(Pub. L. 110–401, title II, §201, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4241.)

CHAPTER 155—AERONAUTICS AND SPACE ACTIVITIES

§§17701, 17702. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section 17701, Pub. L. 110–422, §2, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4781, which related to congressional findings on the 50th anniversary of the establishment of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, was transferred and is set out as a note under section 20102 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 17702, Pub. L. 110–422, §3, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4782, which related to definitions, was transferred and is set out as a note under section 10101 of Title 51.

SUBCHAPTER I—EARTH SCIENCE

§17711. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title II, §201, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4784, related to goal for NASA's Earth Science program. See section 60501 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§§17712, 17713. Repealed or Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section 17712, Pub. L. 110–422, title II, §204, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4785, which related to transitioning experimental research into operational services, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsecs. (b), (c), and (d) were repealed and reenacted as subsecs. (a), (b), and (c), respectively, of section 60502 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (a), which provided sense of Congress regarding such transitioning, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

Section 17713, Pub. L. 110–422, title II, §206, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4785, which related to reauthorization of Glory Mission examining effect of aerosols and solar energy on climate, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsec. (a) was repealed and reenacted as section 60503 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (b), which required baseline report no later than 90 days after Oct. 15, 2008, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

§17714. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title II, §208, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4786, related to cooperative activities with NOAA to study tornadoes and other severe storms. See section 60504 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

SUBCHAPTER II—AERONAUTICS

§§17721, 17722. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 17721, Pub. L. 110–422, title III, §302, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4786, related to environmentally friendly aircraft research and development initiative. See section 40702 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 17722, Pub. L. 110–422, title III, §303, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4787, related to research alignment in fundamental aeronautics research program. See section 40703 of Title 51.

§17723. Repealed or Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title III, §304, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4787, which related to research program to determine perceived impact of sonic booms, was repealed in part and transferred in part. Subsecs. (b) and (c) were repealed and reenacted as section 40704 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (a) was transferred and is set out as a note under section 40704 of Title 51.

§17724. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title III, §307, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4788, related to funding for research and development activities in support of other mission directorates. See section 40104 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

SUBCHAPTER III—EXPLORATION INITIATIVE

§17731. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title IV, §403, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4789, related to stepping stone approach to exploration. See section 70504 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§17732. Repealed or Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section 17732, Pub. L. 110–422, title IV, §404, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4789, which related to establishment of a lunar outpost, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsecs. (a) and (b) were repealed and reenacted as section 70505 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (c), providing sense of Congress relating to use of commercial services in support of lunar outpost activities, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

§17733. Repealed or Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title IV, §405, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4789, which related to exploration technology development, was repealed in part and transferred in part. Subsec. (b) was repealed and reenacted as section 70506 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (a) was transferred and is set out as a note under section 70506 of Title 51.

§17734. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title IV, §407, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4790, related to discussions of common docking system standard among spacefaring nations to facilitate exploration crew rescue. See section 71301 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

SUBCHAPTER IV—SPACE SCIENCE

§§17741, 17742. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 17741, Pub. L. 110–422, title V, §501, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4791, related to long-term technology development program for space and Earth science. See section 70507 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 17742, Pub. L. 110–422, title V, §502, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4791, provided for future servicing of observatory-class scientific spacecraft. See section 70508 of Title 51.

SUBCHAPTER V—SPACE OPERATIONS

PART A—INTERNATIONAL SPACE STATION

§17751. Repealed or Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title VI, §601, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4793, which related to plan to support operation and utilization of the International Space Station beyond fiscal year 2015, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsec. (a) was repealed and reenacted as section 70907 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (b), which required Administrator to submit a plan to congressional committees not later than nine months after Oct. 15, 2008, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

§17752. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title VI, §602, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4795, related to International Space Station National Laboratory Advisory Committee. See section 70906 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§17753. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title VI, §603, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4796, which related to contingency plan for cargo resupply of the International Space Station, and required contingency plan to be delivered to congressional committees no later than one year after Oct. 15, 2008, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314.

PART B—SPACE SHUTTLE

§17761. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title VI, §613, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4799, which related to Space Shuttle transition and disposition of program-related assets, and provided for Space Shuttle Transition Liaison Office, was transferred and is set out as a note under section 70501 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

PART C—LAUNCH SERVICES

§17771. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title VI, §621, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4801, which related to Launch Services strategy, was transferred and is set out as a note under section 50903 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

SUBCHAPTER VI—EDUCATION

§17781. Repealed or Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title VII, §704, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4802, which related to enhancement of NASA's educational role, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsec. (b) was repealed and reenacted as subsec. (d) of section 40903, and subsec. (c) was repealed and reenacted as section 40311, of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (a), which provided sense of Congress regarding educational and agency use of the International Space Station National Laboratory, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

SUBCHAPTER VII—NEAR-EARTH OBJECTS

§17791. Repealed or Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title VIII, §801, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4803, which reaffirmed policy on surveying near-Earth asteroids and comets, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsec. (a) was repealed and reenacted as section 71101 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (b), which provided sense of Congress regarding the policy and its benefits, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

§17792. Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title VIII, §802, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4803, which related to Congressional findings regarding threat of collision of potentially hazardous near-Earth object with Earth, was transferred and is set out as a note under section 71101 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§§17793 to 17795. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 17793, Pub. L. 110–422, title VIII, §803, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4803, related to requests for specific mission information. See section 71102 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 17794, Pub. L. 110–422, title VIII, §804, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4804, established policy with respect to threats posed by near-Earth objects. See section 71103 of Title 51.

Section 17795, Pub. L. 110–422, title VIII, §805, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4804, related to required planetary radar capability. See section 71104 of Title 51.

SUBCHAPTER VIII—COMMERCIAL INITIATIVES

§17801. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title IX, §902, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4805, related to commercial crew transfer and crew rescue services for the International Space Station. See section 50111(b) of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

SUBCHAPTER IX—REVITALIZATION OF NASA INSTITUTIONAL CAPABILITIES

§§17811, 17812. Repealed or Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section 17811, Pub. L. 110–422, title X, §1002, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4806, which related to maintenance and upgrade of NASA Center facilities, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsec. (a) was repealed and reenacted as section 31502 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (b), which required determination of maintenance and upgrade backlog at NASA Centers and facilities, and subsec. (c), which required report to Congress to be delivered concurrently with fiscal 2011 budget request, were omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

Section 17812, Pub. L. 110–422, title X, §1003, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4807, which related to assessment of NASA laboratory capabilities, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsec. (a) was repealed and reenacted as section 31503 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (b), which required independent external review of NASA laboratories and report to congressional committees no later than 18 months after Oct. 15, 2008, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

SUBCHAPTER X—OTHER PROVISIONS

§17821. Repealed or Transferred

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title XI, §1102, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4808, which related to initiation of discussions on development of framework for space traffic management, was repealed in part and transferred in part. Subsec. (b) was repealed and reenacted as section 71302 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (a), which provided congressional finding of need for space traffic management, was transferred and is set out as a note under section 71302 of Title 51.

§§17822 to 17824. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 17822, Pub. L. 110–422, title XI, §1103, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4808, related to astronaut health care. See section 31302 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 17823, Pub. L. 110–422, title XI, §1104, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4809, related to National Academies decadal surveys. See section 20305 of Title 51.

Section 17824, Pub. L. 110–422, title XI, §1107, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4810, related to NASA outreach program to promote business competitiveness through space and aeronautics technologies. See section 30305 of Title 51.

§17825. Repealed or Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title XI, §1109, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4811, which related to protection of scientific credibility, integrity, and communication within NASA, was repealed in part and omitted in part. Subsec. (c) was repealed and reenacted as section 60506 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444, which Act enacted Title 51. Subsec. (a), which provided sense of Congress regarding NASA's posture toward scientific research, and subsec. (b), which directed Comptroller General to initiate study within 60 days after Oct. 15, 2008, complete it within 270 days, and report to Congress, were omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51.

§17826. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 110–422, title XI, §1111, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4811, which required a plan and inventory of natural methane stocks and fluxes in the polar region of the United States within 12 months after Oct. 15, 2008, was omitted from the Code following the enactment of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314.

§§17827 to 17829. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–314, §6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3444

Section 17827, Pub. L. 110–422, title XI, §1112, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4811, provided an exception to alternative fuel procurement requirement. See section 30310 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Section 17828, Pub. L. 110–422, title XI, §1116, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4813, related to cooperative unmanned aerial vehicle activities. See section 31504 of Title 51.

Section 17829, Pub. L. 110–422, title XI, §1117, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4813, related to development of enhanced-use lease policy. See section 31505 of Title 51.

CHAPTER 156—HEALTH INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

SUBCHAPTER I—APPLICATION AND USE OF ADOPTED HEALTH INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY STANDARDS; REPORTS

SUBCHAPTER I—APPLICATION AND USE OF ADOPTED HEALTH INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY STANDARDS; REPORTS

§17901. Coordination of Federal activities with adopted standards and implementation specifications

(a) Spending on health information technology systems

As each agency (as defined by the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, in consultation with the Secretary of Health and Human Services) implements, acquires, or upgrades health information technology systems used for the direct exchange of individually identifiable health information between agencies and with non-Federal entities, it shall utilize, where available, health information technology systems and products that meet standards and implementation specifications adopted under section 300jj–14 of this title, as added by section 13101.[1]

(b) Federal information collection activities

With respect to a standard or implementation specification adopted under section 300jj–14 of this title, as added by section 13101, the President shall take measures to ensure that Federal activities

involving the broad collection and submission of health information are consistent with such standard or implementation specification, respectively, within three years after the date of such adoption.

(c) Application of definitions

The definitions contained in section 300jj of this title, as added by section 13101,[1] shall apply for purposes of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13111, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 242.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 13101, referred to in text, means section 13101 of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§17902. Application to private entities

Each agency (as defined in such Executive Order issued on August 22, 2006, relating to promoting quality and efficient health care in Federal government administered or sponsored health care programs) shall require in contracts or agreements with health care providers, health plans, or health insurance issuers that as each provider, plan, or issuer implements, acquires, or upgrades health information technology systems, it shall utilize, where available, health information technology systems and products that meet standards and implementation specifications adopted under section 300jj–14 of this title, as added by section 13101.[1]

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13112, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 243.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Executive Order issued on August 22, 2006, referred to in text, is Ex. Ord. No. 13410, Aug. 22, 2006, 71 F.R. 51089, which is set out as a note under section 300u of this title.

Section 13101, referred to in text, means section 13101 of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§17903. Study and reports

(a) Report on adoption of nationwide system

Not later than 2 years after February 17, 2009, and annually thereafter, the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall submit to the appropriate committees of jurisdiction of the House of Representatives and the Senate a report that—

(1) describes the specific actions that have been taken by the Federal Government and private entities to facilitate the adoption of a nationwide system for the electronic use and exchange of health information;

(2) describes barriers to the adoption of such a nationwide system; and

(3) contains recommendations to achieve full implementation of such a nationwide system.

(b) Reimbursement incentive study and report

(1) Study

The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall carry out, or contract with a private entity to carry out, a study that examines methods to create efficient reimbursement incentives for improving health care quality in Federally qualified health centers, rural health clinics, and free clinics.

(2) Report

Not later than 2 years after February 17, 2009, the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall submit to the appropriate committees of jurisdiction of the House of Representatives and the Senate a report on the study carried out under paragraph (1).

(c) Aging services technology study and report

(1) In general

The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall carry out, or contract with a private entity to carry out, a study of matters relating to the potential use of new aging services technology to assist seniors, individuals with disabilities, and their caregivers throughout the aging process.

(2) Matters to be studied

The study under paragraph (1) shall include—

(A) an evaluation of—

(i) methods for identifying current, emerging, and future health technology that can be used to meet the needs of seniors and individuals with disabilities and their caregivers across all aging services settings, as specified by the Secretary;

(ii) methods for fostering scientific innovation with respect to aging services technology within the business and academic communities; and

(iii) developments in aging services technology in other countries that may be applied in the United States; and

(B) identification of—

(i) barriers to innovation in aging services technology and devising strategies for removing such barriers; and

(ii) barriers to the adoption of aging services technology by health care providers and consumers and devising strategies to removing such barriers.

(3) Report

Not later than 24 months after February 17, 2009, the Secretary shall submit to the appropriate committees of jurisdiction of the House of Representatives and of the Senate a report on the study carried out under paragraph (1).

(4) Definitions

For purposes of this subsection:

(A) Aging services technology

The term "aging services technology" means health technology that meets the health care needs of seniors, individuals with disabilities, and the caregivers of such seniors and individuals.

(B) Senior

The term "senior" has such meaning as specified by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13113, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 243.)

SUBCHAPTER II—TESTING OF HEALTH INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

§17911. National Institute for Standards and Technology testing

(a) Pilot testing of standards and implementation specifications

In coordination with the HIT Standards Committee established under section 300jj–13 [1] of this title, as added by section 13101,[1] with respect to the development of standards and implementation specifications under such section, the Director of the National Institute for Standards and

Technology shall test such standards and implementation specifications, as appropriate, in order to assure the efficient implementation and use of such standards and implementation specifications.

(b) Voluntary testing program

In coordination with the HIT Standards Committee established under section 300jj–13 [1] of this title, as added by section 13101,[1] with respect to the development of standards and implementation specifications under such section, the Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology shall support the establishment of a conformance testing infrastructure, including the development of technical test beds. The development of this conformance testing infrastructure may include a program to accredit independent, non-Federal laboratories to perform testing.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13201, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 244.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 300jj–13 of this title, referred to in text, which related to the establishment of the HIT Standards Committee, was repealed by Pub. L. 114–255, div. A, title IV, §4003(e)(1), Dec. 13, 2016, 130 Stat. 1168.

Section 13101, referred to in text, means section 13101 of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5.

[1] See References in Text note below.

§17912. Research and development programs

(a) Health Care Information Enterprise Integration Research Centers

(1) In general

The Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, in consultation with the Director of the National Science Foundation and other appropriate Federal agencies, shall establish a program of assistance to institutions of higher education (or consortia thereof which may include nonprofit entities and Federal Government laboratories) to establish multidisciplinary Centers for Health Care Information Enterprise Integration.

(2) Review; competition

Grants shall be awarded under this subsection on a merit-reviewed, competitive basis.

(3) Purpose

The purposes of the Centers described in paragraph (1) shall be—

(A) to generate innovative approaches to health care information enterprise integration by conducting cutting-edge, multidisciplinary research on the systems challenges to health care delivery; and

(B) the development and use of health information technologies and other complementary fields.

(4) Research areas

Research areas may include—

(A) interfaces between human information and communications technology systems;

(B) voice-recognition systems;

(C) software that improves interoperability and connectivity among health information systems;

(D) software dependability in systems critical to health care delivery;

(E) measurement of the impact of information technologies on the quality and productivity of health care;

(F) health information enterprise management;

(G) health information technology security and integrity; and

(H) relevant health information technology to reduce medical errors.

(5) Applications

An institution of higher education (or a consortium thereof) seeking funding under this subsection shall submit an application to the Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Director may require. The application shall include, at a minimum, a description of—

(A) the research projects that will be undertaken by the Center established pursuant to assistance under paragraph (1) and the respective contributions of the participating entities;

(B) how the Center will promote active collaboration among scientists and engineers from different disciplines, such as information technology, biologic sciences, management, social sciences, and other appropriate disciplines;

(C) technology transfer activities to demonstrate and diffuse the research results, technologies, and knowledge; and

(D) how the Center will contribute to the education and training of researchers and other professionals in fields relevant to health information enterprise integration.

(b) National information technology research and development program

The Networking and Information Technology Research and Development Program established by section 5511 of title 15 shall include Federal research and development programs related to health information technology.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13202, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 245; Pub. L. 114–329, title I, §105(s), Jan. 6, 2017, 130 Stat. 2985.)

AMENDMENTS

2017—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 114–329 substituted "Networking and Information Technology Research and Development Program" for "National High-Performance Computing Program".

SUBCHAPTER III—PRIVACY

§17921. Definitions

In this subchapter, except as specified otherwise:

(1) Breach

(A) In general

The term "breach" means the unauthorized acquisition, access, use, or disclosure of protected health information which compromises the security or privacy of such information, except where an unauthorized person to whom such information is disclosed would not reasonably have been able to retain such information.

(B) Exceptions

The term "breach" does not include—

(i) any unintentional acquisition, access, or use of protected health information by an employee or individual acting under the authority of a covered entity or business associate if—

(I) such acquisition, access, or use was made in good faith and within the course and scope of the employment or other professional relationship of such employee or individual, respectively, with the covered entity or business associate; and

(II) such information is not further acquired, accessed, used, or disclosed by any person; or

(ii) any inadvertent disclosure from an individual who is otherwise authorized to access protected health information at a facility operated by a covered entity or business associate to

another similarly situated individual at [1] same facility; and

(iii) any such information received as a result of such disclosure is not further acquired, accessed, used, or disclosed without authorization by any person.

(2) Business associate

The term "business associate" has the meaning given such term in section 160.103 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(3) Covered entity

The term "covered entity" has the meaning given such term in section 160.103 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(4) Disclose

The terms "disclose" and "disclosure" have the meaning given the term "disclosure" in section 160.103 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(5) Electronic health record

The term "electronic health record" means an electronic record of health-related information on an individual that is created, gathered, managed, and consulted by authorized health care clinicians and staff.

(6) Health care operations

The term "health care operation" has the meaning given such term in section 164.501 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(7) Health care provider

The term "health care provider" has the meaning given such term in section 160.103 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(8) Health plan

The term "health plan" has the meaning given such term in section 160.103 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(9) National Coordinator

The term "National Coordinator" means the head of the Office of the National Coordinator for Health Information Technology established under section 300jj–11(a) of this title, as added by section 13101.[2]

(10) Payment

The term "payment" has the meaning given such term in section 164.501 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(11) Personal health record

The term "personal health record" means an electronic record of PHR identifiable health information (as defined in section 17937(f)(2) of this title) on an individual that can be drawn from multiple sources and that is managed, shared, and controlled by or primarily for the individual.

(12) Protected health information

The term "protected health information" has the meaning given such term in section 160.103 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(13) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

(14) Security

The term "security" has the meaning given such term in section 164.304 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(15) State

The term "State" means each of the several States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Northern Mariana Islands.

(16) Treatment

The term "treatment" has the meaning given such term in section 164.501 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(17) Use

The term "use" has the meaning given such term in section 160.103 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(18) Vendor of personal health records

The term "vendor of personal health records" means an entity, other than a covered entity (as defined in paragraph (3)), that offers or maintains a personal health record.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13400, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 258.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle D (§13400 et seq.) of title XIII of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 258, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of subtitle D to the Code, see Tables.

Section 13101, referred to in par. (9), means section 13101 of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5.

[1] So in original. Probably should be followed by "the".

[2] See References in Text note below.

PART A—IMPROVED PRIVACY PROVISIONS AND SECURITY PROVISIONS

§17931. Application of security provisions and penalties to business associates of covered entities; annual guidance on security provisions

(a) Application of security provisions

Sections 164.308, 164.310, 164.312, and 164.316 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, shall apply to a business associate of a covered entity in the same manner that such sections apply to the covered entity. The additional requirements of this title [1] that relate to security and that are made applicable with respect to covered entities shall also be applicable to such a business associate and shall be incorporated into the business associate agreement between the business associate and the covered entity.

(b) Application of civil and criminal penalties

In the case of a business associate that violates any security provision specified in subsection (a), sections 1320d–5 and 1320d–6 of this title shall apply to the business associate with respect to such violation in the same manner such sections apply to a covered entity that violates such security provision.

(c) Annual guidance

For the first year beginning after February 17, 2009, and annually thereafter, the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall, after consultation with stakeholders, annually issue guidance on the most effective and appropriate technical safeguards for use in carrying out the sections referred to in subsection (a) and the security standards in subpart C of part 164 of title 45, Code of Federal

Regulations, including the use of standards developed under section 300jj–12(b)(2)(B)(vi) [1] of this title, as added by section 13101 of this Act, as such provisions are in effect as of the date before February 17, 2009.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13401, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 260.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in subsec. (a), is title XIII of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, which enacted this chapter and subchapter XXVIII (§300jj et seq.) of chapter 6A this title, amended sections 1320d, 1320d–5, and 1320d–6 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under this section and section 201 of this title. For complete classification of title XIII to the Code, see Short Title of 2009 Amendment note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

Section 300jj–12(b)(2)(B)(vi) of this title, referred to in subsec. (c), was repealed by Pub. L. 114–255, div. A, title IV, §4003(e)(1), Dec. 13, 2016, 130 Stat. 1168. Similar provisions as pertaining to the HIT Advisory Committee are contained in section 300jj–12(b)(2)(C)(vii) of this title as enacted by Pub. L. 114–255.

Section 13101 of this Act, referred to in subsec. (c), means section 13101 of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13423, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 276, provided that: "Except as otherwise specifically provided, the provisions of part I [probably means part 1 (§§13401–13411) of subtitle D of title XIII of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, enacting this part and amending sections 1320d–5 and 1320d–6 of this title] shall take effect on the date that is 12 months after the date of the enactment of this title [Feb. 17, 2009]."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§17932. Notification in the case of breach

(a) In general

A covered entity that accesses, maintains, retains, modifies, records, stores, destroys, or otherwise holds, uses, or discloses unsecured protected health information (as defined in subsection (h)(1)) shall, in the case of a breach of such information that is discovered by the covered entity, notify each individual whose unsecured protected health information has been, or is reasonably believed by the covered entity to have been, accessed, acquired, or disclosed as a result of such breach.

(b) Notification of covered entity by business associate

A business associate of a covered entity that accesses, maintains, retains, modifies, records, stores, destroys, or otherwise holds, uses, or discloses unsecured protected health information shall, following the discovery of a breach of such information, notify the covered entity of such breach. Such notice shall include the identification of each individual whose unsecured protected health information has been, or is reasonably believed by the business associate to have been, accessed, acquired, or disclosed during such breach.

(c) Breaches treated as discovered

For purposes of this section, a breach shall be treated as discovered by a covered entity or by a business associate as of the first day on which such breach is known to such entity or associate, respectively, (including any person, other than the individual committing the breach, that is an employee, officer, or other agent of such entity or associate, respectively) or should reasonably have been known to such entity or associate (or person) to have occurred.

(d) Timeliness of notification

(1) In general

Subject to subsection (g), all notifications required under this section shall be made without unreasonable delay and in no case later than 60 calendar days after the discovery of a breach by the covered entity involved (or business associate involved in the case of a notification required under subsection (b)).

(2) Burden of proof

The covered entity involved (or business associate involved in the case of a notification required under subsection (b)), shall have the burden of demonstrating that all notifications were made as required under this part, including evidence demonstrating the necessity of any delay.

(e) Methods of notice

(1) Individual notice

Notice required under this section to be provided to an individual, with respect to a breach, shall be provided promptly and in the following form:

(A) Written notification by first-class mail to the individual (or the next of kin of the individual if the individual is deceased) at the last known address of the individual or the next of kin, respectively, or, if specified as a preference by the individual, by electronic mail. The notification may be provided in one or more mailings as information is available.

(B) In the case in which there is insufficient, or out-of-date contact information (including a phone number, email address, or any other form of appropriate communication) that precludes direct written (or, if specified by the individual under subparagraph (A), electronic) notification to the individual, a substitute form of notice shall be provided, including, in the case that there are 10 or more individuals for which there is insufficient or out-of-date contact information, a conspicuous posting for a period determined by the Secretary on the home page of the Web site of the covered entity involved or notice in major print or broadcast media, including major media in geographic areas where the individuals affected by the breach likely reside. Such a notice in media or web posting will include a toll-free phone number where an individual can learn whether or not the individual's unsecured protected health information is possibly included in the breach.

(C) In any case deemed by the covered entity involved to require urgency because of possible imminent misuse of unsecured protected health information, the covered entity, in addition to notice provided under subparagraph (A), may provide information to individuals by telephone or other means, as appropriate.

(2) Media notice

Notice shall be provided to prominent media outlets serving a State or jurisdiction, following the discovery of a breach described in subsection (a), if the unsecured protected health information of more than 500 residents of such State or jurisdiction is, or is reasonably believed to have been, accessed, acquired, or disclosed during such breach.

(3) Notice to Secretary

Notice shall be provided to the Secretary by covered entities of unsecured protected health information that has been acquired or disclosed in a breach. If the breach was with respect to 500 or more individuals than [1] such notice must be provided immediately. If the breach was with respect to less than 500 individuals, the covered entity may maintain a log of any such breach occurring and annually submit such a log to the Secretary documenting such breaches occurring during the year involved.

(4) Posting on HHS public website

The Secretary shall make available to the public on the Internet website of the Department of Health and Human Services a list that identifies each covered entity involved in a breach described in subsection (a) in which the unsecured protected health information of more than 500 individuals is acquired or disclosed.

(f) Content of notification

Regardless of the method by which notice is provided to individuals under this section, notice of a breach shall include, to the extent possible, the following:

(1) A brief description of what happened, including the date of the breach and the date of the discovery of the breach, if known.

(2) A description of the types of unsecured protected health information that were involved in the breach (such as full name, Social Security number, date of birth, home address, account number, or disability code).

(3) The steps individuals should take to protect themselves from potential harm resulting from the breach.

(4) A brief description of what the covered entity involved is doing to investigate the breach, to mitigate losses, and to protect against any further breaches.

(5) Contact procedures for individuals to ask questions or learn additional information, which shall include a toll-free telephone number, an e-mail address, Web site, or postal address.

(g) Delay of notification authorized for law enforcement purposes

If a law enforcement official determines that a notification, notice, or posting required under this section would impede a criminal investigation or cause damage to national security, such notification, notice, or posting shall be delayed in the same manner as provided under section 164.528(a)(2) of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, in the case of a disclosure covered under such section.

(h) Unsecured protected health information

(1) Definition

(A) In general

Subject to subparagraph (B), for purposes of this section, the term "unsecured protected health information" means protected health information that is not secured through the use of a technology or methodology specified by the Secretary in the guidance issued under paragraph (2).

(B) Exception in case timely guidance not issued

In the case that the Secretary does not issue guidance under paragraph (2) by the date specified in such paragraph, for purposes of this section, the term "unsecured protected health information" shall mean protected health information that is not secured by a technology standard that renders protected health information unusable, unreadable, or indecipherable to unauthorized individuals and is developed or endorsed by a standards developing organization that is accredited by the American National Standards Institute.

(2) Guidance

For purposes of paragraph (1) and section 17937(f)(3) of this title, not later than the date that is 60 days after February 17, 2009, the Secretary shall, after consultation with stakeholders, issue (and annually update) guidance specifying the technologies and methodologies that render protected health information unusable, unreadable, or indecipherable to unauthorized individuals, including the use of standards developed under section 300jj–12(b)(2)(B)(vi) [2] of this title, as added by section 13101 of this Act.

(i) Report to Congress on breaches

(1) In general

Not later than 12 months after February 17, 2009, and annually thereafter, the Secretary shall prepare and submit to the Committee on Finance and the Committee on Health, Education, Labor, and Pensions of the Senate and the Committee on Ways and Means and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives a report containing the information described in paragraph (2) regarding breaches for which notice was provided to the Secretary under subsection (e)(3).

(2) Information

The information described in this paragraph regarding breaches specified in paragraph (1) shall include—

(A) the number and nature of such breaches; and

(B) actions taken in response to such breaches.

(j) Regulations; effective date

To carry out this section, the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall promulgate interim final regulations by not later than the date that is 180 days after February 17, 2009. The provisions of this section shall apply to breaches that are discovered on or after the date that is 30 days after the date of publication of such interim final regulations.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13402, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 260.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 300jj–12(b)(2)(B)(vi) of this title, referred to in subsec. (h)(2), was repealed by Pub. L. 114–255, div. A, title IV, §4003(e)(1), Dec. 13, 2016, 130 Stat. 1168. Similar provisions as pertaining to the HIT Advisory Committee are contained in section 300jj–12(b)(2)(C)(vii) of this title as enacted by Pub. L. 114–255.

Section 13101 of this Act, referred to in subsec. (h)(2), means section 13101 of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5.

[1] So in orginal. Probably should be "then".

[2] See References in Text note below.

§17933. Education on health information privacy

(a) Regional office privacy advisors

Not later than 6 months after February 17, 2009, the Secretary shall designate an individual in each regional office of the Department of Health and Human Services to offer guidance and education to covered entities, business associates, and individuals on their rights and responsibilities related to Federal privacy and security requirements for protected health information.

(b) Education initiative on uses of health information

Not later than 12 months after February 17, 2009, the Office for Civil Rights within the Department of Health and Human Services shall develop and maintain a multi-faceted national education initiative to enhance public transparency regarding the uses of protected health information, including programs to educate individuals about the potential uses of their protected health information, the effects of such uses, and the rights of individuals with respect to such uses. Such programs shall be conducted in a variety of languages and present information in a clear and understandable manner.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13403, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 263.)

§17934. Application of privacy provisions and penalties to business associates of covered entities

(a) Application of contract requirements

In the case of a business associate of a covered entity that obtains or creates protected health information pursuant to a written contract (or other written arrangement) described in section 164.502(e)(2) of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, with such covered entity, the business associate may use and disclose such protected health information only if such use or disclosure, respectively, is in compliance with each applicable requirement of section 164.504(e) of such title. The additional requirements of this subchapter that relate to privacy and that are made applicable with respect to covered entities shall also be applicable to such a business associate and shall be incorporated into the business associate agreement between the business associate and the covered entity.

(b) Application of knowledge elements associated with contracts

Section 164.504(e)(1)(ii) of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, shall apply to a business associate described in subsection (a), with respect to compliance with such subsection, in the same manner that such section applies to a covered entity, with respect to compliance with the standards in sections 164.502(e) and 164.504(e) of such title, except that in applying such section 164.504(e)(1)(ii) each reference to the business associate, with respect to a contract, shall be treated as a reference to the covered entity involved in such contract.

(c) Application of civil and criminal penalties

In the case of a business associate that violates any provision of subsection (a) or (b), the provisions of sections 1176 and 1177 of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1320d–5, 1320d–6) shall apply to the business associate with respect to such violation in the same manner as such provisions apply to a person who violates a provision of part C of title XI of such Act [42 U.S.C. 1320d et seq.].

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13404, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 264.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle D (§13400 et seq.) of title XIII of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 258, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of subtitle D to the Code, see Tables.

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (c), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Part C of title XI of the Act is classified generally to part C (§1320d et seq.) of subchapter XI of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

§17935. Restrictions on certain disclosures and sales of health information; accounting of certain protected health information disclosures; access to certain information in electronic format

(a) Requested restrictions on certain disclosures of health information

In the case that an individual requests under paragraph (a)(1)(i)(A) of section 164.522 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, that a covered entity restrict the disclosure of the protected health information of the individual, notwithstanding paragraph (a)(1)(ii) of such section, the covered entity must comply with the requested restriction if—

(1) except as otherwise required by law, the disclosure is to a health plan for purposes of carrying out payment or health care operations (and is not for purposes of carrying out treatment); and

(2) the protected health information pertains solely to a health care item or service for which the health care provider involved has been paid out of pocket in full.

(b) Disclosures required to be limited to the limited data set or the minimum necessary

(1) In general

(A) In general

Subject to subparagraph (B), a covered entity shall be treated as being in compliance with section 164.502(b)(1) of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, with respect to the use, disclosure, or request of protected health information described in such section, only if the covered entity limits such protected health information, to the extent practicable, to the limited data set (as defined in section 164.514(e)(2) of such title) or, if needed by such entity, to the minimum necessary to accomplish the intended purpose of such use, disclosure, or request, respectively.

(B) Guidance

Not later than 18 months after February 17, 2009, the Secretary shall issue guidance on what constitutes "minimum necessary" for purposes of subpart E of part 164 of title 45, Code of

Federal Regulation.[1] In issuing such guidance the Secretary shall take into consideration the guidance under section 17953(c) of this title and the information necessary to improve patient outcomes and to detect, prevent, and manage chronic disease.

(C) Sunset

Subparagraph (A) shall not apply on and after the effective date on which the Secretary issues the guidance under subparagraph (B).

(2) Determination of minimum necessary

For purposes of paragraph (1), in the case of the disclosure of protected health information, the covered entity or business associate disclosing such information shall determine what constitutes the minimum necessary to accomplish the intended purpose of such disclosure.

(3) Application of exceptions

The exceptions described in section 164.502(b)(2) of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, shall apply to the requirement under paragraph (1) as of the effective date described in section 13423 [2] in the same manner that such exceptions apply to section 164.502(b)(1) of such title before such date.

(4) Rule of construction

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed as affecting the use, disclosure, or request of protected health information that has been de-identified.

(c) Accounting of certain protected health information disclosures required if covered entity uses electronic health record

(1) In general

In applying section 164.528 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, in the case that a covered entity uses or maintains an electronic health record with respect to protected health information—

(A) the exception under paragraph (a)(1)(i) of such section shall not apply to disclosures through an electronic health record made by such entity of such information; and

(B) an individual shall have a right to receive an accounting of disclosures described in such paragraph of such information made by such covered entity during only the three years prior to the date on which the accounting is requested.

(2) Regulations

The Secretary shall promulgate regulations on what information shall be collected about each disclosure referred to in paragraph (1), not later than 6 months after the date on which the Secretary adopts standards on accounting for disclosure described in the [3] section 300jj–12(b)(2)(B)(iv) of this title, as added by section 13101.[2] Such regulations shall only require such information to be collected through an electronic health record in a manner that takes into account the interests of the individuals in learning the circumstances under which their protected health information is being disclosed and takes into account the administrative burden of accounting for such disclosures.

(3) Process

In response to an [4] request from an individual for an accounting, a covered entity shall elect to provide either an—

(A) accounting, as specified under paragraph (1), for disclosures of protected health information that are made by such covered entity and by a business associate acting on behalf of the covered entity; or

(B) accounting, as specified under paragraph (1), for disclosures that are made by such covered entity and provide a list of all business associates acting on behalf of the covered entity, including contact information for such associates (such as mailing address, phone, and email address).

A business associate included on a list under subparagraph (B) shall provide an accounting of disclosures (as required under paragraph (1) for a covered entity) made by the business associate upon a request made by an individual directly to the business associate for such an accounting.

(4) Effective date

(A) Current users of electronic records

In the case of a covered entity insofar as it acquired an electronic health record as of January 1, 2009, paragraph (1) shall apply to disclosures, with respect to protected health information, made by the covered entity from such a record on and after January 1, 2014.

(B) Others

In the case of a covered entity insofar as it acquires an electronic health record after January 1, 2009, paragraph (1) shall apply to disclosures, with respect to protected health information, made by the covered entity from such record on and after the later of the following:

(i) January 1, 2011; or

(ii) the date that it acquires an electronic health record.

(C) Later date

The Secretary may set an effective date that is later that [5] the date specified under subparagraph (A) or (B) if the Secretary determines that such later date is necessary, but in no case may the date specified under—

(i) subparagraph (A) be later than 2016; or

(ii) subparagraph (B) be later than 2013.

(d) Prohibition on sale of electronic health records or protected health information

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (2), a covered entity or business associate shall not directly or indirectly receive remuneration in exchange for any protected health information of an individual unless the covered entity obtained from the individual, in accordance with section 164.508 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, a valid authorization that includes, in accordance with such section, a specification of whether the protected health information can be further exchanged for remuneration by the entity receiving protected health information of that individual.

(2) Exceptions

Paragraph (1) shall not apply in the following cases:

(A) The purpose of the exchange is for public health activities (as described in section 164.512(b) of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations).

(B) The purpose of the exchange is for research (as described in sections 164.501 and 164.512(i) of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations) and the price charged reflects the costs of preparation and transmittal of the data for such purpose.

(C) The purpose of the exchange is for the treatment of the individual, subject to any regulation that the Secretary may promulgate to prevent protected health information from inappropriate access, use, or disclosure.

(D) The purpose of the exchange is the health care operation specifically described in subparagraph (iv) of paragraph (6) of the definition of healthcare operations in section 164.501 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(E) The purpose of the exchange is for remuneration that is provided by a covered entity to a business associate for activities involving the exchange of protected health information that the business associate undertakes on behalf of and at the specific request of the covered entity pursuant to a business associate agreement.

(F) The purpose of the exchange is to provide an individual with a copy of the individual's protected health information pursuant to section 164.524 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(G) The purpose of the exchange is otherwise determined by the Secretary in regulations to

be similarly necessary and appropriate as the exceptions provided in subparagraphs (A) through (F).

(3) Regulations

Not later than 18 months after February 17, 2009, the Secretary shall promulgate regulations to carry out this subsection. In promulgating such regulations, the Secretary—

(A) shall evaluate the impact of restricting the exception described in paragraph (2)(A) to require that the price charged for the purposes described in such paragraph reflects the costs of the preparation and transmittal of the data for such purpose, on research or public health activities, including those conducted by or for the use of the Food and Drug Administration; and

(B) may further restrict the exception described in paragraph (2)(A) to require that the price charged for the purposes described in such paragraph reflects the costs of the preparation and transmittal of the data for such purpose, if the Secretary finds that such further restriction will not impede such research or public health activities.

(4) Effective date

Paragraph (1) shall apply to exchanges occurring on or after the date that is 6 months after the date of the promulgation of final regulations implementing this subsection.

(e) Access to certain information in electronic format

In applying section 164.524 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, in the case that a covered entity uses or maintains an electronic health record with respect to protected health information of an individual—

(1) the individual shall have a right to obtain from such covered entity a copy of such information in an electronic format and, if the individual chooses, to direct the covered entity to transmit such copy directly to an entity or person designated by the individual, provided that any such choice is clear, conspicuous, and specific;

(2) if the individual makes a request to a business associate for access to, or a copy of, protected health information about the individual, or if an individual makes a request to a business associate to grant such access to, or transmit such copy directly to, a person or entity designated by the individual, a business associate may provide the individual with such access or copy, which may be in an electronic form, or grant or transmit such access or copy to such person or entity designated by the individual; and

(3) notwithstanding paragraph (c)(4) of such section, any fee that the covered entity may impose for providing such individual with a copy of such information (or a summary or explanation of such information) if such copy (or summary or explanation) is in an electronic form shall not be greater than the entity's labor costs in responding to the request for the copy (or summary or explanation).

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13405, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 264; Pub. L. 114–255, div. A, title IV, §4006(b), Dec. 13, 2016, 130 Stat. 1183.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 13423, referred to in subsec. (b)(3), means section 13423 of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, which is set out as an Effective Date note under section 17931 of this title.

Section 300jj–12(b)(2)(B)(iv) of this title, as added by section 13101, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), means section 300jj–12(b)(2)(B)(iv) of this title as added by section 13101 of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, which was repealed by Pub. L. 114–255, div. A, title IV, §4003(e)(1), Dec. 13, 2016, 130 Stat. 1168. Similar provisions as pertaining to the HIT Advisory Committee are contained in section 300jj–12(b)(2)(B)(ii) of this title as enacted by Pub. L. 114–255.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (e)(2), (3). Pub. L. 114–255 added par. (2) and redesignated former par. (2) as (3).

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "Regulations."*

[2] *See References in Text note below.*

[3] *So in original.*

[4] *So in original. Probably should be "a".*

[5] *So in original. Probably should be "than".*

§17936. Conditions on certain contacts as part of health care operations

(a) Marketing

(1) In general

A communication by a covered entity or business associate that is about a product or service and that encourages recipients of the communication to purchase or use the product or service shall not be considered a health care operation for purposes of subpart E of part 164 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, unless the communication is made as described in subparagraph (i), (ii), or (iii) of paragraph (1) of the definition of marketing in section 164.501 of such title.

(2) Payment for certain communications

A communication by a covered entity or business associate that is described in subparagraph (i), (ii), or (iii) of paragraph (1) of the definition of marketing in section 164.501 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, shall not be considered a health care operation for purposes of subpart E of part 164 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations if the covered entity receives or has received direct or indirect payment in exchange for making such communication, except where—

(A)(i) such communication describes only a drug or biologic that is currently being prescribed for the recipient of the communication; and

(ii) any payment received by such covered entity in exchange for making a communication described in clause (i) is reasonable in amount;

(B) each of the following conditions apply—

(i) the communication is made by the covered entity; and

(ii) the covered entity making such communication obtains from the recipient of the communication, in accordance with section 164.508 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, a valid authorization (as described in paragraph (b) of such section) with respect to such communication; or

(C) each of the following conditions apply—

(i) the communication is made by a business associate on behalf of the covered entity; and

(ii) the communication is consistent with the written contract (or other written arrangement described in section 164.502(e)(2) of such title) between such business associate and covered entity.

(3) Reasonable in amount defined

For purposes of paragraph (2), the term "reasonable in amount" shall have the meaning given such term by the Secretary by regulation.

(4) Direct or indirect payment

For purposes of paragraph (2), the term "direct or indirect payment" shall not include any payment for treatment (as defined in section 164.501 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations) of an individual.

(b) Opportunity to opt out of fundraising

The Secretary shall by rule provide that any written fundraising communication that is a healthcare operation as defined under section 164.501 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, shall, in a clear

and conspicuous manner, provide an opportunity for the recipient of the communications to elect not to receive any further such communication. When an individual elects not to receive any further such communication, such election shall be treated as a revocation of authorization under section 164.508 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(c) Effective date

This section shall apply to written communications occurring on or after the effective date specified under section 13423.[1]

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13406, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 268.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 13423, referred to in subsec. (c), means section 13423 of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, which is set out as an Effective Date note under section 17931 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§17937. Temporary breach notification requirement for vendors of personal health records and other non-HIPAA covered entities

(a) In general

In accordance with subsection (c), each vendor of personal health records, following the discovery of a breach of security of unsecured PHR identifiable health information that is in a personal health record maintained or offered by such vendor, and each entity described in clause (ii), (iii), or (iv) of section 17953(b)(1)(A) of this title, following the discovery of a breach of security of such information that is obtained through a product or service provided by such entity, shall—

(1) notify each individual who is a citizen or resident of the United States whose unsecured PHR identifiable health information was acquired by an unauthorized person as a result of such a breach of security; and

(2) notify the Federal Trade Commission.

(b) Notification by third party service providers

A third party service provider that provides services to a vendor of personal health records or to an entity described in clause (ii), (iii).[1] or (iv) of section 17953(b)(1)(A) of this title in connection with the offering or maintenance of a personal health record or a related product or service and that accesses, maintains, retains, modifies, records, stores, destroys, or otherwise holds, uses, or discloses unsecured PHR identifiable health information in such a record as a result of such services shall, following the discovery of a breach of security of such information, notify such vendor or entity, respectively, of such breach. Such notice shall include the identification of each individual whose unsecured PHR identifiable health information has been, or is reasonably believed to have been, accessed, acquired, or disclosed during such breach.

(c) Application of requirements for timeliness, method, and content of notifications

Subsections (c), (d), (e), and (f) of section 17932 of this title shall apply to a notification required under subsection (a) and a vendor of personal health records, an entity described in subsection (a) and a third party service provider described in subsection (b), with respect to a breach of security under subsection (a) of unsecured PHR identifiable health information in such records maintained or offered by such vendor, in a manner specified by the Federal Trade Commission.

(d) Notification of the Secretary

Upon receipt of a notification of a breach of security under subsection (a)(2), the Federal Trade Commission shall notify the Secretary of such breach.

(e) Enforcement

A violation of subsection (a) or (b) shall be treated as an unfair and deceptive act or practice in

violation of a regulation under section 57a(a)(1)(B) of title 15 regarding unfair or deceptive acts or practices.

(f) Definitions

For purposes of this section:

(1) Breach of security

The term "breach of security" means, with respect to unsecured PHR identifiable health information of an individual in a personal health record, acquisition of such information without the authorization of the individual.

(2) PHR identifiable health information

The term "PHR identifiable health information" means individually identifiable health information, as defined in section 1320d(6) of this title, and includes, with respect to an individual, information—

(A) that is provided by or on behalf of the individual; and

(B) that identifies the individual or with respect to which there is a reasonable basis to believe that the information can be used to identify the individual.

(3) Unsecured PHR identifiable health information

(A) In general

Subject to subparagraph (B), the term "unsecured PHR identifiable health information" means PHR identifiable health information that is not protected through the use of a technology or methodology specified by the Secretary in the guidance issued under section 17932(h)(2) of this title.

(B) Exception in case timely guidance not issued

In the case that the Secretary does not issue guidance under section 17932(h)(2) of this title by the date specified in such section, for purposes of this section, the term "unsecured PHR identifiable health information" shall mean PHR identifiable health information that is not secured by a technology standard that renders protected health information unusable, unreadable, or indecipherable to unauthorized individuals and that is developed or endorsed by a standards developing organization that is accredited by the American National Standards Institute.

(g) Regulations; effective date; sunset

(1) Regulations; effective date

To carry out this section, the Federal Trade Commission shall promulgate interim final regulations by not later than the date that is 180 days after February 17, 2009. The provisions of this section shall apply to breaches of security that are discovered on or after the date that is 30 days after the date of publication of such interim final regulations.

(2) Sunset

If Congress enacts new legislation establishing requirements for notification in the case of a breach of security, that apply to entities that are not covered entities or business associates, the provisions of this section shall not apply to breaches of security discovered on or after the effective date of regulations implementing such legislation.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13407, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 269.)

[1] So in original. The period probably should be a comma.

§17938. Business associate contracts required for certain entities

Each organization, with respect to a covered entity, that provides data transmission of protected

health information to such entity (or its business associate) and that requires access on a routine basis to such protected health information, such as a Health Information Exchange Organization, Regional Health Information Organization, E-prescribing Gateway, or each vendor that contracts with a covered entity to allow that covered entity to offer a personal health record to patients as part of its electronic health record, is required to enter into a written contract (or other written arrangement) described in section 164.502(e)(2) of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations and a written contract (or other arrangement) described in section 164.308(b) of such title, with such entity and shall be treated as a business associate of the covered entity for purposes of the provisions of this subchapter and subparts C and E of part 164 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, as such provisions are in effect as of February 17, 2009.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13408, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 271.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle D (§13400 et seq.) of title XIII of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 258, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of subtitle D to the Code, see Tables.

§17939. Improved enforcement

(a) In general

(1) Omitted

(2) Enforcement under Social Security Act

Any violation by a covered entity under thus [1] subchapter is subject to enforcement and penalties under section [2] 1176 and 1177 of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1320d–5, 1320d–6].

(b) Effective date; regulations

(1) The amendments made by subsection (a) shall apply to penalties imposed on or after the date that is 24 months after February 17, 2009.

(2) Not later than 18 months after February 17, 2009, the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall promulgate regulations to implement such amendments.

(c) Distribution of certain civil monetary penalties collected

(1) In general

Subject to the regulation promulgated pursuant to paragraph (3), any civil monetary penalty or monetary settlement collected with respect to an offense punishable under this subchapter or section 1176 of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1320d–5) insofar as such section relates to privacy or security shall be transferred to the Office for Civil Rights of the Department of Health and Human Services to be used for purposes of enforcing the provisions of this subchapter and subparts C and E of part 164 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, as such provisions are in effect as of February 17, 2009.

(2) GAO report

Not later than 18 months after February 17, 2009, the Comptroller General shall submit to the Secretary a report including recommendations for a methodology under which an individual who is harmed by an act that constitutes an offense referred to in paragraph (1) may receive a percentage of any civil monetary penalty or monetary settlement collected with respect to such offense.

(3) Establishment of methodology to distribute percentage of CMPS collected to harmed individuals

Not later than 3 years after February 17, 2009, the Secretary shall establish by regulation and based on the recommendations submitted under paragraph (2), a methodology under which an individual who is harmed by an act that constitutes an offense referred to in paragraph (1) may

receive a percentage of any civil monetary penalty or monetary settlement collected with respect to such offense.

(4) Application of methodology

The methodology under paragraph (3) shall be applied with respect to civil monetary penalties or monetary settlements imposed on or after the effective date of the regulation.

(d) Tiered increase in amount of civil monetary penalties

(1) to (3) Omitted

(4) Effective date

The amendments made by this subsection shall apply to violations occurring after February 17, 2009.

(e) Enforcement through State attorneys general

(1), (2) Omitted

(3) Effective date

The amendments made by this subsection shall apply to violations occurring after February 17, 2009.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13410, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 271.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2) and (c)(1), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle D (§13400 et seq.) of title XIII of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 258, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of subtitle D to the Code, see Tables.

For reference to "the amendments made by subsection (a)" in subsec. (b)(1) and "the amendments made by this subsection" in subsecs. (d)(4) and (e)(3), see Codification note below.

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 13410 of Pub. L. 111–5. Subsecs. (a)(1), (d)(1)–(3), (e)(1), (2), and (f) of section 13410 of Pub. L. 111–5 amended section 1320d–5 of this title.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "this".

[2] So in original. Probably should be "sections".

§17940. Audits

The Secretary shall provide for periodic audits to ensure that covered entities and business associates that are subject to the requirements of this subchapter and subparts C and E of part 164 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, as such provisions are in effect as of February 17, 2009, comply with such requirements.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13411, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 276.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle D (§13400 et seq.) of title XIII of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 258, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of subtitle D to the Code, see Tables.

PART B—RELATIONSHIP TO OTHER LAWS; REGULATORY REFERENCES; EFFECTIVE DATE; REPORTS

§17951. Relationship to other laws

(a) Application of HIPAA State preemption

Section 1178 of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1320d–7) shall apply to a provision or requirement under this subchapter in the same manner that such section applies to a provision or requirement under part C of title XI of such Act [42 U.S.C. 1320d et seq.] or a standard or implementation specification adopted or established under sections 1172 through 1174 of such Act [42 U.S.C. 1320d–1 to 1320d–3].

(b) Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996

The standards governing the privacy and security of individually identifiable health information promulgated by the Secretary under sections 262(a) and 264 of the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 shall remain in effect to the extent that they are consistent with this subchapter. The Secretary shall by rule amend such Federal regulations as required to make such regulations consistent with this subchapter.

(c) Construction

Nothing in this subchapter shall constitute a waiver of any privilege otherwise applicable to an individual with respect to the protected health information of such individual.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13421, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 276.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle D (§13400 et seq.) of title XIII of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 258, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of subtitle D to the Code, see Tables.

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Part C of title XI of the Act is classified generally to part C (§1320d et seq.) of subchapter XI of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 104–191, Aug. 21, 1996, 110 Stat. 1936. Section 262(a) of the Act enacted sections 1320d to 1320d–8 of this title. Section 264 of the Act is set out as a note under section 1320d–2 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1996 Amendments note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

§17952. Regulatory references

Each reference in this subchapter to a provision of the Code of Federal Regulations refers to such provision as in effect on February 17, 2009 (or to the most recent update of such provision).

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13422, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 276.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle D (§13400 et seq.) of title XIII of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 258, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of subtitle D to the Code, see Tables.

§17953. Studies, reports, guidance

(a) Report on compliance

(1) In general

For the first year beginning after February 17, 2009, and annually thereafter, the Secretary shall prepare and submit to the Committee on Health, Education, Labor, and Pensions of the Senate and the Committee on Ways and Means and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives a report concerning complaints of alleged violations of law, including the

provisions of this subchapter as well as the provisions of subparts C and E of part 164 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, (as such provisions are in effect as of February 17, 2009) relating to privacy and security of health information that are received by the Secretary during the year for which the report is being prepared. Each such report shall include, with respect to such complaints received during the year—

(A) the number of such complaints;

(B) the number of such complaints resolved informally, a summary of the types of such complaints so resolved, and the number of covered entities that received technical assistance from the Secretary during such year in order to achieve compliance with such provisions and the types of such technical assistance provided;

(C) the number of such complaints that have resulted in the imposition of civil monetary penalties or have been resolved through monetary settlements, including the nature of the complaints involved and the amount paid in each penalty or settlement;

(D) the number of compliance reviews conducted and the outcome of each such review;

(E) the number of subpoenas or inquiries issued;

(F) the Secretary's plan for improving compliance with and enforcement of such provisions for the following year; and

(G) the number of audits performed and a summary of audit findings pursuant to section 17940 of this title.

(2) Availability to public

Each report under paragraph (1) shall be made available to the public on the Internet website of the Department of Health and Human Services.

(b) Study and report on application of privacy and security requirements to non-HIPAA covered entities

(1) Study

Not later than one year after February 17, 2009, the Secretary, in consultation with the Federal Trade Commission, shall conduct a study, and submit a report under paragraph (2), on privacy and security requirements for entities that are not covered entities or business associates as of February 17, 2009, including—

(A) requirements relating to security, privacy, and notification in the case of a breach of security or privacy (including the applicability of an exemption to notification in the case of individually identifiable health information that has been rendered unusable, unreadable, or indecipherable through technologies or methodologies recognized by appropriate professional organization or standard setting bodies to provide effective security for the information) that should be applied to—

(i) vendors of personal health records;

(ii) entities that offer products or services through the website of a vendor of personal health records;

(iii) entities that are not covered entities and that offer products or services through the websites of covered entities that offer individuals personal health records;

(iv) entities that are not covered entities and that access information in a personal health record or send information to a personal health record; and

(v) third party service providers used by a vendor or entity described in clause (i), (ii), (iii), or (iv) to assist in providing personal health record products or services;

(B) a determination of which Federal government agency is best equipped to enforce such requirements recommended to be applied to such vendors, entities, and service providers under subparagraph (A); and

(C) a timeframe for implementing regulations based on such findings.

(2) Report

The Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Finance, the Committee on Health, Education,

Labor, and Pensions, and the Committee on Commerce of the Senate and the Committee on Ways and Means and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives a report on the findings of the study under paragraph (1) and shall include in such report recommendations on the privacy and security requirements described in such paragraph.

(c) Guidance on implementation specification to de-identify protected health information

Not later than 12 months after February 17, 2009, the Secretary shall, in consultation with stakeholders, issue guidance on how best to implement the requirements for the de-identification of protected health information under section 164.514(b) of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations.

(d) GAO report on treatment disclosures

Not later than one year after February 17, 2009, the Comptroller General of the United States shall submit to the Committee on Health, Education, Labor, and Pensions of the Senate and the Committee on Ways and Means and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives a report on the best practices related to the disclosure among health care providers of protected health information of an individual for purposes of treatment of such individual. Such report shall include an examination of the best practices implemented by States and by other entities, such as health information exchanges and regional health information organizations, an examination of the extent to which such best practices are successful with respect to the quality of the resulting health care provided to the individual and with respect to the ability of the health care provider to manage such best practices, and an examination of the use of electronic informed consent for disclosing protected health information for treatment, payment, and health care operations.

(e) Report required

Not later than 5 years after February 17, 2009, the Government Accountability Office shall submit to Congress and the Secretary of Health and Human Services a report on the impact of any of the provisions of this Act on health insurance premiums, overall health care costs, adoption of electronic health records by providers, and reduction in medical errors and other quality improvements.

(f) Study

The Secretary shall study the definition of "psychotherapy notes" in section 164.501 of title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, with regard to including test data that is related to direct responses, scores, items, forms, protocols, manuals, or other materials that are part of a mental health evaluation, as determined by the mental health professional providing treatment or evaluation in such definitions and may, based on such study, issue regulations to revise such definition.

(Pub. L. 111–5, div. A, title XIII, §13424, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 276.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle D (§13400 et seq.) of title XIII of div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 258, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of subtitle D to the Code, see Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (e), means div. A of Pub. L. 111–5, Feb. 17, 2009, 123 Stat. 116, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–5, set out as a note under section 1 of Title 1, General Provisions. For complete classification of div. A to the Code, see Tables.

CHAPTER 157—QUALITY, AFFORDABLE HEALTH CARE FOR ALL AMERICANS

SUBCHAPTER I—IMMEDIATE ACTIONS TO PRESERVE AND EXPAND COVERAGE

Sec.

SUBCHAPTER II—OTHER PROVISIONS

SUBCHAPTER VI—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

SUBCHAPTER I—IMMEDIATE ACTIONS TO PRESERVE AND EXPAND COVERAGE

§18001. Immediate access to insurance for uninsured individuals with a preexisting condition

(a) In general

Not later than 90 days after March 23, 2010, the Secretary shall establish a temporary high risk health insurance pool program to provide health insurance coverage for eligible individuals during the period beginning on the date on which such program is established and ending on January 1, 2014.

(b) Administration

(1) In general

The Secretary may carry out the program under this section directly or through contracts to eligible entities.

(2) Eligible entities

To be eligible for a contract under paragraph (1), an entity shall—

(A) be a State or nonprofit private entity;

(B) submit to the Secretary an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary may require; and

(C) agree to utilize contract funding to establish and administer a qualified high risk pool for eligible individuals.

(3) Maintenance of effort

To be eligible to enter into a contract with the Secretary under this subsection, a State shall agree not to reduce the annual amount the State expended for the operation of one or more State high risk pools during the year preceding the year in which such contract is entered into.

(c) Qualified high risk pool

(1) In general

Amounts made available under this section shall be used to establish a qualified high risk pool that meets the requirements of paragraph (2).

(2) Requirements

A qualified high risk pool meets the requirements of this paragraph if such pool—

(A) provides to all eligible individuals health insurance coverage that does not impose any preexisting condition exclusion with respect to such coverage;

(B) provides health insurance coverage—

(i) in which the issuer's share of the total allowed costs of benefits provided under such coverage is not less than 65 percent of such costs; and

(ii) that has an out of pocket limit not greater than the applicable amount described in section 223(c)(2) of title 26 for the year involved, except that the Secretary may modify such limit if necessary to ensure the pool meets the actuarial value limit under clause (i);

(C) ensures that with respect to the premium rate charged for health insurance coverage offered to eligible individuals through the high risk pool, such rate shall—

(i) except as provided in clause (ii), vary only as provided for under section 300gg of this title (as amended by this Act and notwithstanding the date on which such amendments take effect);

(ii) vary on the basis of age by a factor of not greater than 4 to 1; and

(iii) be established at a standard rate for a standard population; and

(D) meets any other requirements determined appropriate by the Secretary.

(d) Eligible individual

An individual shall be deemed to be an eligible individual for purposes of this section if such individual—

(1) is a citizen or national of the United States or is lawfully present in the United States (as determined in accordance with section 18081 of this title);

(2) has not been covered under creditable coverage (as defined in section 300gg(c)(1) of this title as in effect on March 23, 2010) during the 6-month period prior to the date on which such individual is applying for coverage through the high risk pool; and

(3) has a pre-existing condition, as determined in a manner consistent with guidance issued by the Secretary.

(e) Protection against dumping risk by insurers

(1) In general

The Secretary shall establish criteria for determining whether health insurance issuers and employment-based health plans have discouraged an individual from remaining enrolled in prior coverage based on that individual's health status.

(2) Sanctions

An issuer or employment-based health plan shall be responsible for reimbursing the program under this section for the medical expenses incurred by the program for an individual who, based on criteria established by the Secretary, the Secretary finds was encouraged by the issuer to disenroll from health benefits coverage prior to enrolling in coverage through the program. The criteria shall include at least the following circumstances:

(A) In the case of prior coverage obtained through an employer, the provision by the employer, group health plan, or the issuer of money or other financial consideration for disenrolling from the coverage.

(B) In the case of prior coverage obtained directly from an issuer or under an employment-based health plan—

(i) the provision by the issuer or plan of money or other financial consideration for disenrolling from the coverage; or

(ii) in the case of an individual whose premium for the prior coverage exceeded the premium required by the program (adjusted based on the age factors applied to the prior coverage)—

(I) the prior coverage is a policy that is no longer being actively marketed (as defined by the Secretary) by the issuer; or

(II) the prior coverage is a policy for which duration of coverage form [1] issue or health status are factors that can be considered in determining premiums at renewal.

(3) Construction

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed as constituting exclusive remedies for violations of criteria established under paragraph (1) or as preventing States from applying or enforcing such paragraph or other provisions under law with respect to health insurance issuers.

(f) Oversight

The Secretary shall establish—

(1) an appeals process to enable individuals to appeal a determination under this section; and

(2) procedures to protect against waste, fraud, and abuse.

(g) Funding; termination of authority

(1) In general

There is appropriated to the Secretary, out of any moneys in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, $5,000,000,000 to pay claims against (and the administrative costs of) the high risk pool under this section that are in excess of the amount of premiums collected from eligible individuals enrolled in the high risk pool. Such funds shall be available without fiscal year limitation.

(2) Insufficient funds

If the Secretary estimates for any fiscal year that the aggregate amounts available for the payment of the expenses of the high risk pool will be less than the actual amount of such expenses, the Secretary shall make such adjustments as are necessary to eliminate such deficit.

(3) Termination of authority

(A) In general

Except as provided in subparagraph (B), coverage of eligible individuals under a high risk pool in a State shall terminate on January 1, 2014.

(B) Transition to Exchange

The Secretary shall develop procedures to provide for the transition of eligible individuals enrolled in health insurance coverage offered through a high risk pool established under this section into qualified health plans offered through an Exchange. Such procedures shall ensure that there is no lapse in coverage with respect to the individual and may extend coverage after the termination of the risk pool involved, if the Secretary determines necessary to avoid such a lapse.

(4) Limitations

The Secretary has the authority to stop taking applications for participation in the program under this section to comply with the funding limitation provided for in paragraph (1).

(5) Relation to State laws

The standards established under this section shall supersede any State law or regulation (other than State licensing laws or State laws relating to plan solvency) with respect to qualified high risk pools which are established in accordance with this section.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1101, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 141.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(C)(i), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

The date on which such amendments take effect, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(C)(i), is the date on which the amendments by Pub. L. 111–148 to section 300gg of this title take effect, which is Jan. 1, 2014. See section 1255 of Pub. L. 111–148, set out as an Effective Date note under section 300gg of this title.

SHORT TITLE OF 2014 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 113–235, div. M, §1, Dec. 16, 2014, 128 Stat. 2767, provided that: "This division [enacting section

18014 of this title] may be cited as the 'Expatriate Health Coverage Clarification Act of 2014'."

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 111–148, §1(a), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act'."

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "from".*

§18002. Reinsurance for early retirees

(a) Administration

(1) In general

Not later than 90 days after March 23, 2010, the Secretary shall establish a temporary reinsurance program to provide reimbursement to participating employment-based plans for a portion of the cost of providing health insurance coverage to early retirees (and to the eligible spouses, surviving spouses, and dependents of such retirees) during the period beginning on the date on which such program is established and ending on January 1, 2014.

(2) Reference

In this section:

(A) Health benefits

The term "health benefits" means medical, surgical, hospital, prescription drug, and such other benefits as shall be determined by the Secretary, whether self-funded, or delivered through the purchase of insurance or otherwise.

(B) Employment-based plan

The term "employment-based plan" means a group benefits plan providing health benefits that—

(i) is—

(I) maintained by one or more current or former employers (including without limitation any State or local government or political subdivision thereof or any agency or instrumentality of any of the foregoing), employee organization, a voluntary employees' beneficiary association, or a committee or board of individuals appointed to administer such plan; or

(II) a multiemployer plan (as defined in section 1002(37) of title 29); and

(ii) provides health benefits to early retirees.

(C) Early retirees

The term "early retirees" means individuals who are age 55 and older but are not eligible for coverage under title XVIII of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1395 et seq.], and who are not active employees of an employer maintaining, or currently contributing to, the employment-based plan or of any employer that has made substantial contributions to fund such plan.

(b) Participation

(1) Employment-based plan eligibility

A participating employment-based plan is an employment-based plan that—

(A) meets the requirements of paragraph (2) with respect to health benefits provided under the plan; and

(B) submits to the Secretary an application for participation in the program, at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary shall require.

(2) Employment-based health benefits

An employment-based plan meets the requirements of this paragraph if the plan—

(A) implements programs and procedures to generate cost-savings with respect to participants with chronic and high-cost conditions;

(B) provides documentation of the actual cost of medical claims involved; and

(C) is certified by the Secretary.

(c) Payments

(1) Submission of claims

(A) In general

A participating employment-based plan shall submit claims for reimbursement to the Secretary which shall contain documentation of the actual costs of the items and services for which each claim is being submitted.

(B) Basis for claims

Claims submitted under subparagraph (A) shall be based on the actual amount expended by the participating employment-based plan involved within the plan year for the health benefits provided to an early retiree or the spouse, surviving spouse, or dependent of such retiree. In determining the amount of a claim for purposes of this subsection, the participating employment-based plan shall take into account any negotiated price concessions (such as discounts, direct or indirect subsidies, rebates, and direct or indirect remunerations) obtained by such plan with respect to such health benefit. For purposes of determining the amount of any such claim, the costs paid by the early retiree or the retiree's spouse, surviving spouse, or dependent in the form of deductibles, co-payments, or co-insurance shall be included in the amounts paid by the participating employment-based plan.

(2) Program payments

If the Secretary determines that a participating employment-based plan has submitted a valid claim under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall reimburse such plan for 80 percent of that portion of the costs attributable to such claim that exceed $15,000, subject to the limits contained in paragraph (3).

(3) Limit

To be eligible for reimbursement under the program, a claim submitted by a participating employment-based plan shall not be less than $15,000 nor greater than $90,000. Such amounts shall be adjusted each fiscal year based on the percentage increase in the Medical Care Component of the Consumer Price Index for all urban consumers (rounded to the nearest multiple of $1,000) for the year involved.

(4) Use of payments

Amounts paid to a participating employment-based plan under this subsection shall be used to lower costs for the plan. Such payments may be used to reduce premium costs for an entity described in subsection (a)(2)(B)(i) or to reduce premium contributions, co-payments, deductibles, co-insurance, or other out-of-pocket costs for plan participants. Such payments shall not be used as general revenues for an entity described in subsection (a)(2)(B)(i). The Secretary shall develop a mechanism to monitor the appropriate use of such payments by such entities.

(5) Payments not treated as income

Payments received under this subsection shall not be included in determining the gross income of an entity described in subsection (a)(2)(B)(i) that is maintaining or currently contributing to a participating employment-based plan.

(6) Appeals

The Secretary shall establish—

(A) an appeals process to permit participating employment-based plans to appeal a

determination of the Secretary with respect to claims submitted under this section; and

(B) procedures to protect against fraud, waste, and abuse under the program.

(d) Audits

The Secretary shall conduct annual audits of claims data submitted by participating employment-based plans under this section to ensure that such plans are in compliance with the requirements of this section.

(e) Funding

There is appropriated to the Secretary, out of any moneys in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, $5,000,000,000 to carry out the program under this section. Such funds shall be available without fiscal year limitation.

(f) Limitation

The Secretary has the authority to stop taking applications for participation in the program based on the availability of funding under subsection (e).

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1102, title X, §10102(a), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 143, 892.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(C), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Title XVIII of the Act is classified generally to subchapter XVIII (§1395 et seq.) of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–148, §10102(a)(1), substituted "group benefits plan providing health benefits" for "group health benefits plan" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(2)(B)(i)(I). Pub. L. 111–148, §10102(a)(2), inserted "or any agency or instrumentality of any of the foregoing" after "political subdivision thereof".

§18003. Immediate information that allows consumers to identify affordable coverage options

(a) Internet portal to affordable coverage options

(1) Immediate establishment

Not later than July 1, 2010, the Secretary, in consultation with the States, shall establish a mechanism, including an Internet website, through which a resident of, or small business in, any State may identify affordable health insurance coverage options in that State.

(2) Connecting to affordable coverage

An Internet website established under paragraph (1) shall, to the extent practicable, provide ways for residents of, and small businesses in, any State to receive information on at least the following coverage options:

(A) Health insurance coverage offered by health insurance issuers, other than coverage that provides reimbursement only for the treatment or mitigation of—

(i) a single disease or condition; or

(ii) an unreasonably limited set of diseases or conditions (as determined by the Secretary).

(B) Medicaid coverage under title XIX of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1396 et seq.].

(C) Coverage under title XXI of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1397aa et seq.].

(D) A State health benefits high risk pool, to the extent that such high risk pool is offered in such State; and

(E) Coverage under a high risk pool under section 18001 of this title.

(F) Coverage within the small group market for small businesses and their employees, including reinsurance for early retirees under section 18002 of this title, tax credits available

under section 45R of title 26 (as added by section 1421), and other information specifically for small businesses regarding affordable health care options.

(b) Enhancing comparative purchasing options

(1) In general

Not later than 60 days after March 23, 2010, the Secretary shall develop a standardized format to be used for the presentation of information relating to the coverage options described in subsection (a)(2). Such format shall, at a minimum, require the inclusion of information on the percentage of total premium revenue expended on nonclinical costs (as reported under section 300gg–18(a) of this title), eligibility, availability, premium rates, and cost sharing with respect to such coverage options and be consistent with the standards adopted for the uniform explanation of coverage as provided for in section 300gg–15 of this title.

(2) Use of format

The Secretary shall utilize the format developed under paragraph (1) in compiling information concerning coverage options on the Internet website established under subsection (a).

(c) Authority to contract

The Secretary may carry out this section through contracts entered into with qualified entities.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1103, title X, §10102(b), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 146, 892.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(B), (C), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Titles XIX and XXI of the Act are classified generally to subchapters XIX (§1396 et seq.) and XXI (§1397aa et seq.), respectively, of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

Section 1421, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(F), means section 1421 of Pub. L. 111–148.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–148, §10102(b)(1), which directed insertion of ", or small business in," after "residents of any", was executed by making the insertion after "resident of" to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 111–148, §10102(b)(2), added par. (2) and struck out former par. (2). Prior to amendment, text read as follows:

"An Internet website established under paragraph (1) shall, to the extent practicable, provide ways for residents of any State to receive information on at least the following coverage options:

"(A) Health insurance coverage offered by health insurance issuers, other than coverage that provides reimbursement only for the treatment or mitigation of—

"(i) a single disease or condition; or

"(ii) an unreasonably limited set of diseases or conditions (as determined by the Secretary);

"(B) Medicaid coverage under title XIX of the Social Security Act.

"(C) Coverage under title XXI of the Social Security Act.

"(D) A State health benefits high risk pool, to the extent that such high risk pool is offered in such State; and

"(E) Coverage under a high risk pool under section 18001 of this title."

SUBCHAPTER II—OTHER PROVISIONS

§18011. Preservation of right to maintain existing coverage

(a) No changes to existing coverage

(1) In general

Nothing in this Act (or an amendment made by this Act) shall be construed to require that an

individual terminate coverage under a group health plan or health insurance coverage in which such individual was enrolled on March 23, 2010.

(2) Continuation of coverage

Except as provided in paragraph (3), with respect to a group health plan or health insurance coverage in which an individual was enrolled on March 23, 2010, this subtitle and subtitle A (and the amendments made by such subtitles) shall not apply to such plan or coverage, regardless of whether the individual renews such coverage after March 23, 2010.

(3) Application of certain provisions

The provisions of sections 2715 [42 U.S.C. 300gg–15] and 2718 [42 U.S.C. 300gg–18] of the Public Health Service Act (as added by subtitle A) shall apply to grandfathered health plans for plan years beginning on or after March 23, 2010.

(4) Application of certain provisions

(A) In general

The following provisions of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 201 et seq.] (as added by this title) [1] shall apply to grandfathered health plans for plan years beginning with the first plan year to which such provisions would otherwise apply:

(i) Section 2708 [42 U.S.C. 300gg–7] (relating to excessive waiting periods).
(ii) Those provisions of section 2711 [42 U.S.C. 300gg–11] relating to lifetime limits.
(iii) Section 2712 [42 U.S.C. 300gg–12] (relating to rescissions).
(iv) Section 2714 [42 U.S.C. 300gg–14] (relating to extension of dependent coverage).

(B) Provisions applicable only to group health plans

(i) Provisions described

Those provisions of section 2711 [42 U.S.C. 300gg–11] relating to annual limits and the provisions of section 2704 [42 U.S.C. 300gg–3] (relating to pre-existing condition exclusions) of the Public Health Service Act (as added by this subtitle) shall apply to grandfathered health plans that are group health plans for plan years beginning with the first plan year to which such provisions otherwise apply.

(ii) Adult child coverage

For plan years beginning before January 1, 2014, the provisions of section 2714 of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 300gg–14] (as added by this subtitle) shall apply in the case of an adult child with respect to a grandfathered health plan that is a group health plan only if such adult child is not eligible to enroll in an eligible employer-sponsored health plan (as defined in section 5000A(f)(2) of title 26) other than such grandfathered health plan.

(b) Allowance for family members to join current coverage

With respect to a group health plan or health insurance coverage in which an individual was enrolled on March 23, 2010, and which is renewed after such date, family members of such individual shall be permitted to enroll in such plan or coverage if such enrollment is permitted under the terms of the plan in effect as of March 23, 2010.

(c) Allowance for new employees to join current plan

A group health plan that provides coverage on March 23, 2010, may provide for the enrolling of new employees (and their families) in such plan, and this subtitle and subtitle A (and the amendments made by such subtitles) shall not apply with respect to such plan and such new employees (and their families).

(d) Effect on collective bargaining agreements

In the case of health insurance coverage maintained pursuant to one or more collective bargaining agreements between employee representatives and one or more employers that was ratified before March 23, 2010, the provisions of this subtitle and subtitle A (and the amendments made by such

subtitles) shall not apply until the date on which the last of the collective bargaining agreements relating to the coverage terminates. Any coverage amendment made pursuant to a collective bargaining agreement relating to the coverage which amends the coverage solely to conform to any requirement added by this subtitle or subtitle A (or amendments) shall not be treated as a termination of such collective bargaining agreement.

(e) Definition

In this title,[1] the term "grandfathered health plan" means any group health plan or health insurance coverage to which this section applies.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1251, title X, §10103(d), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 161, 895; Pub. L. 111–152, title II, §2301(a), Mar. 30, 2010, 124 Stat. 1081.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

This subtitle, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2), (4)(B), (c), and (d), is subtitle C (§§1201–1255) of title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 154, which enacted this subchapter and sections 300gg to 300gg–2 and 300gg–4 to 300gg–7 of this title, transferred section 300gg of this title to section 300gg–3 of this title, amended sections 300gg–1 and 300gg–4 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 300gg of this title. For complete classification of subtitle C to the Code, see Tables.

Subtitle A, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2), (3), (c), and (d), is subtitle A (§§1001–1004) of title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted sections 300gg–11 to 300gg–19, 300gg–93, and 300gg–94 of this title, transferred sections 300gg–4 to 300gg–7 and 300gg–13 of this title to sections 300gg–25 to 300gg–28 and 300gg–9 of this title, respectively, amended sections 300gg–11, 300gg–12, and 300gg–21 to 300gg–23 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 300gg–11 of this title. For complete classification of subtitle A to the Code, see Tables.

The Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(A), is act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682, which is classified generally to chapter 6A (§201 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

This title, referred to in subsecs. (a)(4)(A) and (e), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 111–148, §10103(d)(1), substituted "Except as provided in paragraph (3), with" for "With".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 111–148, §10103(d)(2), added par. (3).

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 111–152 added par. (4).

EFFECTIVE DATE

Subchapter effective for plan years beginning on or after Jan. 1, 2014, except that section 18011 of this title effective Mar. 23, 2010, see section 1255 of Pub. L. 111–148, set out as a note under section 300gg of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§18012. Rating reforms must apply uniformly to all health insurance issuers and group health plans

Any standard or requirement adopted by a State pursuant to this title,[1] or any amendment made by this title,[1] shall be applied uniformly to all health plans in each insurance market to which the standard and requirements apply. The preceding sentence shall also apply to a State standard or

requirement relating to the standard or requirement required by this title [1] (or any such amendment) that is not the same as the standard or requirement but that is not preempted under section 18041(d) of this title.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1252, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 162.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in text, is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§18013. Annual report on self-insured plans

Not later than 1 year after March 23, 2010, and annually thereafter, the Secretary of Labor shall prepare an aggregate annual report, using data collected from the Annual Return/Report of Employee Benefit Plan (Department of Labor Form 5500), that shall include general information on self-insured group health plans (including plan type, number of participants, benefits offered, funding arrangements, and benefit arrangements) as well as data from the financial filings of self-insured employers (including information on assets, liabilities, contributions, investments, and expenses). The Secretary shall submit such reports to the appropriate committees of Congress.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1253, as added Pub. L. 111–148, title X, §10103(f)(2), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 895.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 1253 of Pub. L. 111–148 was renumbered section 1255 and is set out as a note under section 300gg of this title.

§18014. Treatment of expatriate health plans under ACA

(a) In general

Subject to subsection (b), the provisions of (including any amendment made by) the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (Public Law 111–148) and of title I and subtitle B of title II of the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010 (Public Law 111–152) shall not apply with respect to—

(1) expatriate health plans;

(2) employers with respect to such plans, solely in their capacity as plan sponsors for such plans; or

(3) expatriate health insurance issuers with respect to coverage offered by such issuers under such plans.

(b) Minimum essential coverage and reporting requirements

(1) In general

For the purpose of section 5000A(f) of title 26, and any other section of title 26 that incorporates the definition of minimum essential coverage under such section 5000A(f) by reference:

(A) An expatriate health plan offered to primary enrollees who are described in subsections (d)(3)(A) and (d)(3)(B) of this section shall be treated as an eligible employer sponsored plan under 5000A(f)(2) of such title.

(B) An expatriate health plan offered to primary enrollees who are described in subsection (d)(3)(C) of this section shall be treated as a plan in the individual market under section 5000A(f)(1)(C) of such title. This subparagraph shall apply solely for the purposes of sections

36B, 5000A, and 6055 of such title.

(2) Exception

Subsection (a) shall not apply with respect to section 6055 of title 26, or sections 4980H and 6056 of such title in the case of an applicable large employer (as defined in section 4980H of such title), except that statements furnished to individuals may be provided through electronic media and the primary insured shall be deemed to have consented to receive the statements under such sections in electronic form, unless the individual explicitly refuses such consent. Notwithstanding subsection (a), section 4980I of title 26 shall continue to apply with respect to applicable employer-sponsored coverage (as defined in such section) of a qualified expatriate described in subsection (d)(3)(A)(i) who is assigned (rather than transferred) to work in the United States.

(c) Qualified expatriates, spouses, and dependents not United States health risk

(1) In general

For purposes of section 9010 of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (26 U.S.C. 4001 note prec.), for calendar years after 2015, a qualified expatriate (and any spouse, dependent, or any other individual enrolled in the plan) enrolled in an expatriate health plan shall not be considered a United States health risk.

(2) Special rule

Notwithstanding paragraph (1), the fee under section 9010 of such Act for each of calendar years 2014 and 2015 with respect to any expatriate health insurance issuer shall be the amount which bears the same ratio to the fee amount determined by the Secretary of the Treasury with respect to such issuer under such section for each such year (determined without regard to this paragraph) as—

(A) the amount of premiums taken into account under such section with respect to such issuer for each such year, less the amount of premiums for expatriate health plans taken into account under such section with respect to such issuer for each such year, bears to

(B) the amount of premiums taken into account under such section with respect to such issuer for each such year.

(d) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Expatriate health insurance issuer

The term "expatriate health insurance issuer" means a health insurance issuer that issues expatriate health plans.

(2) Expatriate health plan

The term "expatriate health plan" means a group health plan, health insurance coverage offered in connection with a group health plan, or health insurance coverage offered to a group of individuals described in paragraph (3)(C) (which may include spouses, dependents, and other individuals enrolled in the plan) that meets each of the following standards:

(A) Substantially all of the primary enrollees in such plan or coverage are qualified expatriates with respect to such plan or coverage. In applying the previous sentence, an individual shall not be considered a primary enrollee if the individual is not a national of the United States and the individual resides in the country of which the individual is a citizen.

(B) Substantially all of the benefits provided under the plan or coverage are not excepted benefits described in section 9832(c) of title 26.

(C) The plan or coverage provides coverage for inpatient hospital services, outpatient facility services, physician services, and emergency services (comparable to such emergency services coverage described in and offered under section 8903(1) of title 5 for plan year 2009)—

(i) in the case of individuals described in paragraph (3)(A), both in the United States and in the country or countries from which the individual was transferred or assigned (accounting for flexibility needed with existing coverage), and such other country or countries as the

Secretary of Health and Human Services, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and the Secretary of Labor, may designate (after taking into account the barriers and prohibitions to providing health care services in the countries as designated);

(ii) in the case of individuals described in paragraph (3)(B), in the country or countries in which the individual is present in connection with the individual's employment, and such other country or countries as the Secretary of Health and Human Services, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and the Secretary of Labor, may designate; or

(iii) in the case of individuals described in paragraph (3)(C), in the country or countries as the Secretary of Health and Human Services, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and the Secretary of Labor, may designate.

(D) The plan sponsor reasonably believes that the benefits provided by the expatriate health plan satisfy a standard at least actuarially equivalent to the level provided for in section 36B(c)(2)(C)(ii) of title 26.

(E) If the plan or coverage provides dependent coverage of children, the plan or coverage makes such dependent coverage available for adult children until the adult child turns 26 years of age, unless such individual is the child of a child receiving dependent coverage.

(F) The plan or coverage—

(i) is issued by an expatriate health plan issuer, or administered by an administrator, that together with any other person in the expatriate health plan issuer's or administrator's controlled group (as described in section 9010 of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (and the regulations promulgated thereunder)), has licenses to sell insurance in more than two countries, and, with respect to such plan, coverage, or company in the controlled group—

(I) maintains network provider agreements that provide for direct claims payments, directly or through third party contracts, with health care providers in eight or more countries;

(II) maintains call centers, directly or through third party contracts, in three or more countries and accepts calls from customers in eight or more languages;

(III) processes (in the aggregate together with other plans or coverage it issues or administers) at least $1,000,000 in claims in foreign currency equivalents each year;

(IV) makes available (directly or through third party contracts) global evacuation/repatriation coverage; and

(V) maintains legal and compliance resources in three or more countries; and

(ii) offers reimbursements for items or services under such plan or coverage in the local currency in eight or more countries.

(G) The plan or coverage, and the plan sponsor or expatriate health insurance issuer with respect to such plan or coverage, satisfies the provisions of title XXVII of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 300gg et seq.), chapter 100 of title 26, and part 7 of subtitle B of title I of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (29 U.S.C. 1181 et seq.), which would otherwise apply to such a plan or coverage, and sponsor or issuer, if not for the enactment of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act and title I and subtitle B of title II of the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010.

(3) Qualified expatriate

The term "qualified expatriate" means a primary insured, or individual otherwise described in subparagraph (C)—

(A)(i) whose skills, qualifications, job duties, or expertise is of a type that has caused his or her employer to transfer or assign him or her to the United States for a specific and temporary purpose or assignment tied to his or her employment; and

(ii) in connection with such transfer or assignment, is reasonably determined by the plan sponsor to require access to health insurance and other related services and support in multiple countries, and is offered other multinational benefits on a periodic basis (such as tax

equalization, compensation for cross border moving expenses, or compensation to enable the expatriate to return to their home country);

(B) who is working outside of the United States for a period of at least 180 days in a consecutive 12-month period that overlaps with the plan year; or

(C) who is a member of a group of similarly situated individuals—

(i) that is formed for the purpose of traveling or relocating internationally in service of one or more of the purposes listed in section 501(c)(3) or 501(c)(4) of title 26, or similarly situated organizations or groups (such as students or religious missionaries);

(ii) that is not formed primarily for the sale of health insurance coverage; and

(iii) that the Secretary of Health and Human Services, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and the Secretary of Labor, determines requires access to health insurance and other related services and support in multiple countries.

(4) United States

The term "United States" means the 50 States, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico.

(5) Miscellaneous terms

(A) Group health plan; health insurance coverage; health insurance issuer; plan sponsor

The terms "group health plan", "health insurance coverage", "health insurance issuer", and "plan sponsor" have the meanings given those terms in section 2791 of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 300gg–91).

(B) Transfer

The term "transfer" means an employer has transferred an employee to perform services for a branch of the same employer or a parent, affiliate, franchise, or subsidiary thereof.

(e) Regulations

The Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of Health and Human Services, and the Secretary of Labor may promulgate regulations necessary to carry out this Act, including such rules as may be necessary to prevent inappropriate expansion of the application of the exclusions under this Act from applicable laws and regulations, and to amend existing annual reporting requirements or procedures to include applicable qualified expatriate health insurers' total number of expatriate plan enrollees.

(f) Effective date

Unless otherwise specified, this Act shall take effect on December 16, 2014, and shall apply only to expatriate health plans issued or renewed on or after July 1, 2015.

(Pub. L. 113–235, div. M, §3, Dec. 16, 2014, 128 Stat. 2768.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d)(2)(G), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

The Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d)(2)(G), is Pub. L. 111–152, Mar. 30, 2010, 124 Stat. 1029. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2010 Amendment note set out under section 1305 of this title and Tables.

The Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(G), is act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682, which is classified generally to chapter 6A (§201 et seq.) of this title. Title XXVII of the Act is classified generally to subchapter XXV (§300gg et seq.) of chapter 6A. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

The Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(G), is Pub. L. 93–406, Sept. 2, 1974, 88 Stat. 832. Part 7 of subtitle B of title I of the Act is classified generally to part 7 (§1181 et seq.) of subtitle B of subchapter I of chapter 18 of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 29 and Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsecs. (e) and (f), is div. M of Pub. L. 113–235, Dec. 16, 2014, 128 Stat. 2767, known as the Expatriate Health Coverage Clarification Act of 2014. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2014 Amendment note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Expatriate Health Coverage Clarification Act of 2014, and also as part of the Consolidated and Further Continuing Appropriations Act, 2015, and not as part of title I of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act which enacted this chapter.

SUBCHAPTER III—AVAILABLE COVERAGE CHOICES FOR ALL AMERICANS

PART A—ESTABLISHMENT OF QUALIFIED HEALTH PLANS

§18021. Qualified health plan defined

(a) Qualified health plan

In this title: [1]

(1) In general

The term "qualified health plan" means a health plan that—

(A) has in effect a certification (which may include a seal or other indication of approval) that such plan meets the criteria for certification described in section 18031(c) of this title issued or recognized by each Exchange through which such plan is offered;

(B) provides the essential health benefits package described in section 18022(a) of this title; and

(C) is offered by a health insurance issuer that—

(i) is licensed and in good standing to offer health insurance coverage in each State in which such issuer offers health insurance coverage under this title; [1]

(ii) agrees to offer at least one qualified health plan in the silver level and at least one plan in the gold level in each such Exchange;

(iii) agrees to charge the same premium rate for each qualified health plan of the issuer without regard to whether the plan is offered through an Exchange or whether the plan is offered directly from the issuer or through an agent; and

(iv) complies with the regulations developed by the Secretary under section 18031(d) of this title and such other requirements as an applicable Exchange may establish.

(2) Inclusion of CO–OP plans and multi-State qualified health plans

Any reference in this title [1] to a qualified health plan shall be deemed to include a qualified health plan offered through the CO–OP program under section 18042 of this title, and a multi-State plan under section 18054 of this title, unless specifically provided for otherwise.

(3) Treatment of qualified direct primary care medical home plans

The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall permit a qualified health plan to provide coverage through a qualified direct primary care medical home plan that meets criteria established by the Secretary, so long as the qualified health plan meets all requirements that are otherwise applicable and the services covered by the medical home plan are coordinated with the entity offering the qualified health plan.

(4) Variation based on rating area

A qualified health plan, including a multi-State qualified health plan, may as appropriate vary premiums by rating area (as defined in section 300gg(a)(2) of this title).

(b) Terms relating to health plans

In this title: [1]

(1) Health plan

(A) In general

The term "health plan" means health insurance coverage and a group health plan.

(B) Exception for self-insured plans and MEWAs

Except to the extent specifically provided by this title,[1] the term "health plan" shall not include a group health plan or multiple employer welfare arrangement to the extent the plan or arrangement is not subject to State insurance regulation under section 1144 of title 29.

(2) Health insurance coverage and issuer

The terms "health insurance coverage" and "health insurance issuer" have the meanings given such terms by section 300gg–91(b) of this title.

(3) Group health plan

The term "group health plan" has the meaning given such term by section 300gg–91(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1301, title X, §10104(a), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 162, 896.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, where footnoted in text, is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a)(2) to (4). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(a), added pars. (2) to (4) and struck out former par. (2). Prior to amendment, text of par. (2) read as follows: "Any reference in this title to a qualified health plan shall be deemed to include a qualified health plan offered through the CO-OP program under section 18042 of this title or a community health insurance option under section 18043 of this title, unless specifically provided for otherwise."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§18022. Essential health benefits requirements

(a) Essential health benefits package

In this title,[1] the term "essential health benefits package" means, with respect to any health plan, coverage that—

(1) provides for the essential health benefits defined by the Secretary under subsection (b);

(2) limits cost-sharing for such coverage in accordance with subsection (c); and

(3) subject to subsection (e), provides either the bronze, silver, gold, or platinum level of coverage described in subsection (d).

(b) Essential health benefits

(1) In general

Subject to paragraph (2), the Secretary shall define the essential health benefits, except that such benefits shall include at least the following general categories and the items and services covered within the categories:

(A) Ambulatory patient services.

(B) Emergency services.

(C) Hospitalization.

(D) Maternity and newborn care.

(E) Mental health and substance use disorder services, including behavioral health treatment.

(F) Prescription drugs.
(G) Rehabilitative and habilitative services and devices.
(H) Laboratory services.
(I) Preventive and wellness services and chronic disease management.
(J) Pediatric services, including oral and vision care.

(2) Limitation

(A) In general

The Secretary shall ensure that the scope of the essential health benefits under paragraph (1) is equal to the scope of benefits provided under a typical employer plan, as determined by the Secretary. To inform this determination, the Secretary of Labor shall conduct a survey of employer-sponsored coverage to determine the benefits typically covered by employers, including multiemployer plans, and provide a report on such survey to the Secretary.

(B) Certification

In defining the essential health benefits described in paragraph (1), and in revising the benefits under paragraph (4)(H), the Secretary shall submit a report to the appropriate committees of Congress containing a certification from the Chief Actuary of the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services that such essential health benefits meet the limitation described in paragraph (2).

(3) Notice and hearing

In defining the essential health benefits described in paragraph (1), and in revising the benefits under paragraph (4)(H), the Secretary shall provide notice and an opportunity for public comment.

(4) Required elements for consideration

In defining the essential health benefits under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall—

(A) ensure that such essential health benefits reflect an appropriate balance among the categories described in such subsection,[2] so that benefits are not unduly weighted toward any category;

(B) not make coverage decisions, determine reimbursement rates, establish incentive programs, or design benefits in ways that discriminate against individuals because of their age, disability, or expected length of life;

(C) take into account the health care needs of diverse segments of the population, including women, children, persons with disabilities, and other groups;

(D) ensure that health benefits established as essential not be subject to denial to individuals against their wishes on the basis of the individuals' age or expected length of life or of the individuals' present or predicted disability, degree of medical dependency, or quality of life;

(E) provide that a qualified health plan shall not be treated as providing coverage for the essential health benefits described in paragraph (1) unless the plan provides that—

(i) coverage for emergency department services will be provided without imposing any requirement under the plan for prior authorization of services or any limitation on coverage where the provider of services does not have a contractual relationship with the plan for the providing of services that is more restrictive than the requirements or limitations that apply to emergency department services received from providers who do have such a contractual relationship with the plan; and

(ii) if such services are provided out-of-network, the cost-sharing requirement (expressed as a copayment amount or coinsurance rate) is the same requirement that would apply if such services were provided in-network;

(F) provide that if a plan described in section 18031(b)(2)(B)(ii) [3] of this title (relating to stand-alone dental benefits plans) is offered through an Exchange, another health plan offered

through such Exchange shall not fail to be treated as a qualified health plan solely because the plan does not offer coverage of benefits offered through the stand-alone plan that are otherwise required under paragraph (1)(J); and [4]

(G) periodically review the essential health benefits under paragraph (1), and provide a report to Congress and the public that contains—

(i) an assessment of whether enrollees are facing any difficulty accessing needed services for reasons of coverage or cost;

(ii) an assessment of whether the essential health benefits needs to be modified or updated to account for changes in medical evidence or scientific advancement;

(iii) information on how the essential health benefits will be modified to address any such gaps in access or changes in the evidence base;

(iv) an assessment of the potential of additional or expanded benefits to increase costs and the interactions between the addition or expansion of benefits and reductions in existing benefits to meet actuarial limitations described in paragraph (2); and

(H) periodically update the essential health benefits under paragraph (1) to address any gaps in access to coverage or changes in the evidence base the Secretary identifies in the review conducted under subparagraph (G).

(5) Rule of construction

Nothing in this title [1] shall be construed to prohibit a health plan from providing benefits in excess of the essential health benefits described in this subsection.

(c) Requirements relating to cost-sharing

(1) Annual limitation on cost-sharing

(A) 2014

The cost-sharing incurred under a health plan with respect to self-only coverage or coverage other than self-only coverage for a plan year beginning in 2014 shall not exceed the dollar amounts in effect under section 223(c)(2)(A)(ii) of title 26 for self-only and family coverage, respectively, for taxable years beginning in 2014.

(B) 2015 and later

In the case of any plan year beginning in a calendar year after 2014, the limitation under this paragraph shall—

(i) in the case of self-only coverage, be equal to the dollar amount under subparagraph (A) for self-only coverage for plan years beginning in 2014, increased by an amount equal to the product of that amount and the premium adjustment percentage under paragraph (4) for the calendar year; and

(ii) in the case of other coverage, twice the amount in effect under clause (i).

If the amount of any increase under clause (i) is not a multiple of $50, such increase shall be rounded to the next lowest multiple of $50.

(2) Repealed. Pub. L. 113–93, title II, §213(a)(1), Apr. 1, 2014, 128 Stat. 1047

(3) Cost-sharing

In this title— [1]

(A) In general

The term "cost-sharing" includes—

(i) deductibles, coinsurance, copayments, or similar charges; and

(ii) any other expenditure required of an insured individual which is a qualified medical expense (within the meaning of section 223(d)(2) of title 26) with respect to essential health benefits covered under the plan.

(B) Exceptions

Such term does not include premiums, balance billing amounts for non-network providers, or spending for non-covered services.

(4) Premium adjustment percentage

For purposes of paragraph (1)(B)(i), the premium adjustment percentage for any calendar year is the percentage (if any) by which the average per capita premium for health insurance coverage in the United States for the preceding calendar year (as estimated by the Secretary no later than October 1 of such preceding calendar year) exceeds such average per capita premium for 2013 (as determined by the Secretary).

(d) Levels of coverage

(1) Levels of coverage defined

The levels of coverage described in this subsection are as follows:

(A) Bronze level

A plan in the bronze level shall provide a level of coverage that is designed to provide benefits that are actuarially equivalent to 60 percent of the full actuarial value of the benefits provided under the plan.

(B) Silver level

A plan in the silver level shall provide a level of coverage that is designed to provide benefits that are actuarially equivalent to 70 percent of the full actuarial value of the benefits provided under the plan.

(C) Gold level

A plan in the gold level shall provide a level of coverage that is designed to provide benefits that are actuarially equivalent to 80 percent of the full actuarial value of the benefits provided under the plan.

(D) Platinum level

A plan in the platinum level shall provide a level of coverage that is designed to provide benefits that are actuarially equivalent to 90 percent of the full actuarial value of the benefits provided under the plan.

(2) Actuarial value

(A) In general

Under regulations issued by the Secretary, the level of coverage of a plan shall be determined on the basis that the essential health benefits described in subsection (b) shall be provided to a standard population (and without regard to the population the plan may actually provide benefits to).

(B) Employer contributions

The Secretary shall issue regulations under which employer contributions to a health savings account (within the meaning of section 223 of title 26) may be taken into account in determining the level of coverage for a plan of the employer.

(C) Application

In determining under this title,[1] the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 201 et seq.], or title 26 the percentage of the total allowed costs of benefits provided under a group health plan or health insurance coverage that are provided by such plan or coverage, the rules contained in the regulations under this paragraph shall apply.

(3) Allowable variance

The Secretary shall develop guidelines to provide for a de minimis variation in the actuarial valuations used in determining the level of coverage of a plan to account for differences in

actuarial estimates.

(4) Plan reference

In this title,[1] any reference to a bronze, silver, gold, or platinum plan shall be treated as a reference to a qualified health plan providing a bronze, silver, gold, or platinum level of coverage, as the case may be.

(e) Catastrophic plan

(1) In general

A health plan not providing a bronze, silver, gold, or platinum level of coverage shall be treated as meeting the requirements of subsection (d) with respect to any plan year if—

(A) the only individuals who are eligible to enroll in the plan are individuals described in paragraph (2); and

(B) the plan provides—

(i) except as provided in clause (ii), the essential health benefits determined under subsection (b), except that the plan provides no benefits for any plan year until the individual has incurred cost-sharing expenses in an amount equal to the annual limitation in effect under subsection (c)(1) for the plan year (except as provided for in section 2713); [1] and

(ii) coverage for at least three primary care visits.

(2) Individuals eligible for enrollment

An individual is described in this paragraph for any plan year if the individual—

(A) has not attained the age of 30 before the beginning of the plan year; or

(B) has a certification in effect for any plan year under this title [1] that the individual is exempt from the requirement under section 5000A of title 26 by reason of—

(i) section 5000A(e)(1) of such title (relating to individuals without affordable coverage); or

(ii) section 5000A(e)(5) of such title (relating to individuals with hardships).

(3) Restriction to individual market

If a health insurance issuer offers a health plan described in this subsection, the issuer may only offer the plan in the individual market.

(f) Child-only plans

If a qualified health plan is offered through the Exchange in any level of coverage specified under subsection (d), the issuer shall also offer that plan through the Exchange in that level as a plan in which the only enrollees are individuals who, as of the beginning of a plan year, have not attained the age of 21, and such plan shall be treated as a qualified health plan.

(g) Payments to Federally-qualified health centers

If any item or service covered by a qualified health plan is provided by a Federally-qualified health center (as defined in section 1396d(l)(2)(B) of this title) to an enrollee of the plan, the offeror of the plan shall pay to the center for the item or service an amount that is not less than the amount of payment that would have been paid to the center under section 1396a(bb) of this title) for such item or service.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1302, title X, §10104(b), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 163, 896; Pub. L. 113–93, title II, §213(a), Apr. 1, 2014, 128 Stat. 1047.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b)(5), (d)(2)(C), (4), and (e)(2)(B), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

The Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(C), is act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682, which is classified generally to chapter 6A (§201 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

Section 2713, referred to in subsec. (e)(1)(B)(i), probably means section 2713 of act July 1, 1944, which is classified to section 300gg–13 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 113–93, §213(a)(1), struck out par. (2) which related to annual limitation on deductibles for employer-sponsored plans.

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 113–93, §213(a)(2), which directed amendment of par. (4)(A) by substituting "paragraph (1)(B)(i)" for "paragraphs (1)(B)(i) and (2)(B)(i)", was executed by making the substitution in par. (4) to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

2010—Subsec. (d)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(b)(1), substituted "shall issue" for "may issue".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(b)(2), added subsec. (g).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2014 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–93 effective as if included in the enactment of Pub. L. 111–148, see section 213(c) of Pub. L. 113–93, set out as a note under section 300gg–6 of this title.

[1] See References in Text note below.

[2] So in original. Probably should be "paragraph,".

[3] So in original. Probably should be "18031(d)(2)(B)(ii)".

[4] So in original. The word "and" probably should not appear.

§18023. Special rules

(a) State opt-out of abortion coverage

(1) In general

A State may elect to prohibit abortion coverage in qualified health plans offered through an Exchange in such State if such State enacts a law to provide for such prohibition.

(2) Termination of opt out

A State may repeal a law described in paragraph (1) and provide for the offering of such services through the Exchange.

(b) Special rules relating to coverage of abortion services

(1) Voluntary choice of coverage of abortion services

(A) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of this title [1] (or any amendment made by this title)— [1]

(i) nothing in this title [1] (or any amendment made by this title),[1] shall be construed to require a qualified health plan to provide coverage of services described in subparagraph (B)(i) or (B)(ii) as part of its essential health benefits for any plan year; and

(ii) subject to subsection (a), the issuer of a qualified health plan shall determine whether or not the plan provides coverage of services described in subparagraph (B)(i) or (B)(ii) as part of such benefits for the plan year.

(B) Abortion services

(i) Abortions for which public funding is prohibited

The services described in this clause are abortions for which the expenditure of Federal funds appropriated for the Department of Health and Human Services is not permitted, based on the law as in effect as of the date that is 6 months before the beginning of the plan year involved.

(ii) Abortions for which public funding is allowed

The services described in this clause are abortions for which the expenditure of Federal funds appropriated for the Department of Health and Human Services is permitted, based on the law as in effect as of the date that is 6 months before the beginning of the plan year involved.

(2) Prohibition on the use of Federal funds

(A) In general

If a qualified health plan provides coverage of services described in paragraph (1)(B)(i), the issuer of the plan shall not use any amount attributable to any of the following for purposes of paying for such services:

(i) The credit under section 36B of title 26 (and the amount (if any) of the advance payment of the credit under section 18082 of this title).

(ii) Any cost-sharing reduction under section 18071 of this title (and the amount (if any) of the advance payment of the reduction under section 18082 of this title).

(B) Establishment of allocation accounts

In the case of a plan to which subparagraph (A) applies, the issuer of the plan shall—

(i) collect from each enrollee in the plan (without regard to the enrollee's age, sex, or family status) a separate payment for each of the following:

(I) an amount equal to the portion of the premium to be paid directly by the enrollee for coverage under the plan of services other than services described in paragraph (1)(B)(i) (after reduction for credits and cost-sharing reductions described in subparagraph (A)); and

(II) an amount equal to the actuarial value of the coverage of services described in paragraph (1)(B)(i), and

(ii) shall [2] deposit all such separate payments into separate allocation accounts as provided in subparagraph (C).

In the case of an enrollee whose premium for coverage under the plan is paid through employee payroll deposit, the separate payments required under this subparagraph shall each be paid by a separate deposit.

(C) Segregation of funds

(i) In general

The issuer of a plan to which subparagraph (A) applies shall establish allocation accounts described in clause (ii) for enrollees receiving amounts described in subparagraph (A).

(ii) Allocation accounts

The issuer of a plan to which subparagraph (A) applies shall deposit—

(I) all payments described in subparagraph (B)(i)(I) into a separate account that consists solely of such payments and that is used exclusively to pay for services other than services described in paragraph (1)(B)(i); and

(II) all payments described in subparagraph (B)(i)(II) into a separate account that consists solely of such payments and that is used exclusively to pay for services described in paragraph (1)(B)(i).

(D) Actuarial value

(i) In general

The issuer of a qualified health plan shall estimate the basic per enrollee, per month cost, determined on an average actuarial basis, for including coverage under the qualified health plan of the services described in paragraph (1)(B)(i).

(ii) Considerations

In making such estimate, the issuer—

(I) may take into account the impact on overall costs of the inclusion of such coverage, but may not take into account any cost reduction estimated to result from such services, including prenatal care, delivery, or postnatal care;

(II) shall estimate such costs as if such coverage were included for the entire population covered; and

(III) may not estimate such a cost at less than $1 per enrollee, per month.

(E) Ensuring compliance with segregation requirements

(i) In general

Subject to clause (ii), State health insurance commissioners shall ensure that health plans comply with the segregation requirements in this subsection through the segregation of plan funds in accordance with applicable provisions of generally accepted accounting requirements, circulars on funds management of the Office of Management and Budget, and guidance on accounting of the Government Accountability Office.

(ii) Clarification

Nothing in clause (i) shall prohibit the right of an individual or health plan to appeal such action in courts of competent jurisdiction.

(3) Rules relating to notice

(A) Notice

A qualified health plan that provides for coverage of the services described in paragraph (1)(B)(i) shall provide a notice to enrollees, only as part of the summary of benefits and coverage explanation, at the time of enrollment, of such coverage.

(B) Rules relating to payments

The notice described in subparagraph (A), any advertising used by the issuer with respect to the plan, any information provided by the Exchange, and any other information specified by the Secretary shall provide information only with respect to the total amount of the combined payments for services described in paragraph (1)(B)(i) and other services covered by the plan.

(4) No discrimination on basis of provision of abortion

No qualified health plan offered through an Exchange may discriminate against any individual health care provider or health care facility because of its unwillingness to provide, pay for, provide coverage of, or refer for abortions [3]

(c) Application of State and Federal laws regarding abortion

(1) No preemption of State laws regarding abortion

Nothing in this Act shall be construed to preempt or otherwise have any effect on State laws regarding the prohibition of (or requirement of) coverage, funding, or procedural requirements on abortions, including parental notification or consent for the performance of an abortion on a minor.

(2) No effect on Federal laws regarding abortion

(A) [4] In general

Nothing in this Act shall be construed to have any effect on Federal laws regarding—

(i) conscience protection;

(ii) willingness or refusal to provide abortion; and

(iii) discrimination on the basis of the willingness or refusal to provide, pay for, cover, or refer for abortion or to provide or participate in training to provide abortion.

(3) No effect on Federal civil rights law

Nothing in this subsection shall alter the rights and obligations of employees and employers

under title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 [42 U.S.C. 2000e et seq.].

(d) Application of emergency services laws

Nothing in this Act shall be construed to relieve any health care provider from providing emergency services as required by State or Federal law, including section 1395dd of this title (popularly known as "EMTALA").

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1303, title X, §10104(c), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 168, 896.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(A), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsecs. (c)(1), (2)(A) and (d), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

The Civil Rights Act of 1964, referred to in subsec. (c)(3), is Pub. L. 88–352, July 2, 1964, 78 Stat. 241. Title VII of the Act is classified generally to subchapter VI (§2000e et seq.) of chapter 21 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2000a of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(c), amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section consisted of subsecs. (a) to (c) relating to special rules relating to coverage of abortion services, application of State and Federal laws regarding abortion, and application of emergency services laws.

EX. ORD. NO. 13535. ENSURING ENFORCEMENT AND IMPLEMENTATION OF ABORTION RESTRICTIONS IN THE PATIENT PROTECTION AND AFFORDABLE CARE ACT

Ex. Ord. No. 13535, Mar. 24, 2010, 75 F.R. 15599, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including the "Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act" (Public Law 111–148), I hereby order as follows:

SECTION. 1. *Policy*. Following the recent enactment of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (the "Act"), it is necessary to establish an adequate enforcement mechanism to ensure that Federal funds are not used for abortion services (except in cases of rape or incest, or when the life of the woman would be endangered), consistent with a longstanding Federal statutory restriction that is commonly known as the Hyde Amendment. The purpose of this order is to establish a comprehensive, Government-wide set of policies and procedures to achieve this goal and to make certain that all relevant actors—Federal officials, State officials (including insurance regulators) and health care providers—are aware of their responsibilities, new and old.

The Act maintains current Hyde Amendment restrictions governing abortion policy and extends those restrictions to the newly created health insurance exchanges. Under the Act, longstanding Federal laws to protect conscience (such as the Church Amendment, 42 U.S.C. 300a–7, and the Weldon Amendment, section 508(d)(1) of Public Law 111–8) remain intact and new protections prohibit discrimination against health care facilities and health care providers because of an unwillingness to provide, pay for, provide coverage of, or refer for abortions.

Numerous executive agencies have a role in ensuring that these restrictions are enforced, including the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS), the Office of Management and Budget (OMB), and the Office of Personnel Management.

SEC. 2. *Strict Compliance with Prohibitions on Abortion Funding in Health Insurance Exchanges*. The Act specifically prohibits the use of tax credits and cost-sharing reduction payments to pay for abortion services (except in cases of rape or incest, or when the life of the woman would be endangered) in the health insurance exchanges that will be operational in 2014. The Act also imposes strict payment and accounting requirements to ensure that Federal funds are not used for abortion services in exchange plans (except in cases of rape or incest, or when the life of the woman would be endangered) and requires State health insurance commissioners to ensure that exchange plan funds are segregated by insurance companies in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, OMB funds management circulars, and accounting guidance provided by the Government Accountability Office.

I hereby direct the Director of the OMB and the Secretary of HHS to develop, within 180 days of the date of this order, a model set of segregation guidelines for State health insurance commissioners to use when determining whether exchange plans are complying with the Act's segregation requirements, established in

section 1303 of the Act, for enrollees receiving Federal financial assistance. The guidelines shall also offer technical information that States should follow to conduct independent regular audits of insurance companies that participate in the health insurance exchanges. In developing these model guidelines, the Director of the OMB and the Secretary of HHS shall consult with executive agencies and offices that have relevant expertise in accounting principles, including, but not limited to, the Department of the Treasury, and with the Government Accountability Office. Upon completion of those model guidelines, the Secretary of HHS should promptly initiate a rulemaking to issue regulations, which will have the force of law, to interpret the Act's segregation requirements, and shall provide guidance to State health insurance commissioners on how to comply with the model guidelines.

SEC. 3. *Community Health Center Program*. The Act establishes a new Community Health Center (CHC) Fund within HHS, which provides additional Federal funds for the community health center program. Existing law prohibits these centers from using Federal funds to provide abortion services (except in cases of rape or incest, or when the life of the woman would be endangered), as a result of both the Hyde Amendment and longstanding regulations containing the Hyde language. Under the Act, the Hyde language shall apply to the authorization and appropriations of funds for Community Health Centers under section 10503 and all other relevant provisions. I hereby direct the Secretary of HHS to ensure that program administrators and recipients of Federal funds are aware of and comply with the limitations on abortion services imposed on CHCs by existing law. Such actions should include, but are not limited to, updating Grant Policy Statements that accompany CHC grants and issuing new interpretive rules.

SEC. 4. *General Provisions*. (a) Nothing in this order shall be construed to impair or otherwise affect: (i) authority granted by law or Presidential directive to an agency, or the head thereof; or (ii) functions of the Director of the OMB relating to budgetary, administrative, or legislative proposals.

(b) This order shall be implemented consistent with applicable law and subject to the availability of appropriations.

(c) This order is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity by any party against the United States, its departments, agencies, or entities, its officers, employees or agents, or any other person.

BARACK OBAMA.

[1] See References in Text note below.

[2] So in original. The word "shall" probably should not appear.

[3] So in original. Probably should be followed by a period.

[4] So in original. There is no subpar. (B).

§18024. Related definitions

(a) Definitions relating to markets

In this title: [1]

(1) Group market

The term "group market" means the health insurance market under which individuals obtain health insurance coverage (directly or through any arrangement) on behalf of themselves (and their dependents) through a group health plan maintained by an employer.

(2) Individual market

The term "individual market" means the market for health insurance coverage offered to individuals other than in connection with a group health plan.

(3) Large and small group markets

The terms "large group market" and "small group market" mean the health insurance market under which individuals obtain health insurance coverage (directly or through any arrangement) on behalf of themselves (and their dependents) through a group health plan maintained by a large

employer (as defined in subsection (b)(1)) or by a small employer (as defined in subsection (b)(2)), respectively.

(b) Employers

In this title: [1]

(1) Large employer

The term "large employer" means, in connection with a group health plan with respect to a calendar year and a plan year, an employer who employed an average of at least 51 employees on business days during the preceding calendar year and who employs at least 1 employee on the first day of the plan year.

(2) Small employer

The term "small employer" means, in connection with a group health plan with respect to a calendar year and a plan year, an employer who employed an average of at least 1 but not more than 50 employees on business days during the preceding calendar year and who employs at least 1 employee on the first day of the plan year.

(3) State option to extend definition of small employer

Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2), nothing in this section shall prevent a State from applying this subsection by treating as a small employer, with respect to a calendar year and a plan year, an employer who employed an average of at least 1 but not more than 100 employees on business days during the preceding calendar year and who employs at least 1 employee on the first day of the plan year.

(4) Rules for determining employer size

For purposes of this subsection—

(A) Application of aggregation rule for employers

All persons treated as a single employer under subsection (b), (c), (m), or (o) of section 414 of title 26 shall be treated as 1 employer.

(B) Employers not in existence in preceding year

In the case of an employer which was not in existence throughout the preceding calendar year, the determination of whether such employer is a small or large employer shall be based on the average number of employees that it is reasonably expected such employer will employ on business days in the current calendar year.

(C) Predecessors

Any reference in this subsection to an employer shall include a reference to any predecessor of such employer.

(D) Continuation of participation for growing small employers

If—

(i) a qualified employer that is a small employer makes enrollment in qualified health plans offered in the small group market available to its employees through an Exchange; and

(ii) the employer ceases to be a small employer by reason of an increase in the number of employees of such employer;

the employer shall continue to be treated as a small employer for purposes of this subchapter for the period beginning with the increase and ending with the first day on which the employer does not make such enrollment available to its employees.

(c) Secretary

In this title,[1] the term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

(d) State

In this title,[1] the term "State" means each of the 50 States and the District of Columbia.

(e) Educated health care consumers

The term "educated health care consumer" means an individual who is knowledgeable about the health care system, and has background or experience in making informed decisions regarding health, medical, and scientific matters.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1304, title X, §10104(d), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 171, 900; Pub. L. 114–60, §2(a), Oct. 7, 2015, 129 Stat. 543.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in subsecs. (a) to (d), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 114–60, §2(a)(1), substituted "51" for "101".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 114–60, §2(a)(2), substituted "50" for "100".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 114–60, §2(a)(3), amended par. (3) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "In the case of plan years beginning before January 1, 2016, a State may elect to apply this subsection by substituting '51 employees' for '101 employees' in paragraph (1) and by substituting '50 employees' for '100 employees' in paragraph (2)."

2010—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(d), added subsec. (e).

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

PART B—CONSUMER CHOICES AND INSURANCE COMPETITION THROUGH HEALTH BENEFIT EXCHANGES

§18031. Affordable choices of health benefit plans

(a) Assistance to States to establish American Health Benefit Exchanges

(1) Planning and establishment grants

There shall be appropriated to the Secretary, out of any moneys in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, an amount necessary to enable the Secretary to make awards, not later than 1 year after March 23, 2010, to States in the amount specified in paragraph (2) for the uses described in paragraph (3).

(2) Amount specified

For each fiscal year, the Secretary shall determine the total amount that the Secretary will make available to each State for grants under this subsection.

(3) Use of funds

A State shall use amounts awarded under this subsection for activities (including planning activities) related to establishing an American Health Benefit Exchange, as described in subsection (b).

(4) Renewability of grant

(A) In general

Subject to subsection (d)(4), the Secretary may renew a grant awarded under paragraph (1) if the State recipient of such grant—

(i) is making progress, as determined by the Secretary, toward—

(I) establishing an Exchange; and

(II) implementing the reforms described in subtitles A and C (and the amendments made by such subtitles); and

(ii) is meeting such other benchmarks as the Secretary may establish.

(B) Limitation

No grant shall be awarded under this subsection after January 1, 2015.

(5) Technical assistance to facilitate participation in SHOP Exchanges

The Secretary shall provide technical assistance to States to facilitate the participation of qualified small businesses in such States in SHOP Exchanges.

(b) American Health Benefit Exchanges

(1) In general

Each State shall, not later than January 1, 2014, establish an American Health Benefit Exchange (referred to in this title [1] as an "Exchange") for the State that—

(A) facilitates the purchase of qualified health plans;

(B) provides for the establishment of a Small Business Health Options Program (in this title [1] referred to as a "SHOP Exchange") that is designed to assist qualified employers in the State who are small employers in facilitating the enrollment of their employees in qualified health plans offered in the small group market in the State; and

(C) meets the requirements of subsection (d).

(2) Merger of individual and SHOP Exchanges

A State may elect to provide only one Exchange in the State for providing both Exchange and SHOP Exchange services to both qualified individuals and qualified small employers, but only if the Exchange has adequate resources to assist such individuals and employers.

(c) Responsibilities of the Secretary

(1) In general

The Secretary shall, by regulation, establish criteria for the certification of health plans as qualified health plans. Such criteria shall require that, to be certified, a plan shall, at a minimum—

(A) meet marketing requirements, and not employ marketing practices or benefit designs that have the effect of discouraging the enrollment in such plan by individuals with significant health needs;

(B) ensure a sufficient choice of providers (in a manner consistent with applicable network adequacy provisions under section 2702(c) of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 300gg–1(c)]), and provide information to enrollees and prospective enrollees on the availability of in-network and out-of-network providers;

(C) include within health insurance plan networks those essential community providers, where available, that serve predominately low-income, medically-underserved individuals, such as health care providers defined in section 340B(a)(4) of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 256b(a)(4)] and providers described in section 1927(c)(1)(D)(i)(IV) of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1396r–8(c)(1)(D)(i)(IV)] as set forth by section 221 of Public Law 111–8, except that nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed to require any health plan to provide coverage for any specific medical procedure;

(D)(i) be accredited with respect to local performance on clinical quality measures such as the Healthcare Effectiveness Data and Information Set, patient experience ratings on a standardized Consumer Assessment of Healthcare Providers and Systems survey, as well as consumer access, utilization management, quality assurance, provider credentialing, complaints and appeals, network adequacy and access, and patient information programs by any entity recognized by the Secretary for the accreditation of health insurance issuers or plans (so long as any such entity has transparent and rigorous methodological and scoring criteria); or

(ii) receive such accreditation within a period established by an Exchange for such

accreditation that is applicable to all qualified health plans;

(E) implement a quality improvement strategy described in subsection (g)(1);

(F) utilize a uniform enrollment form that qualified individuals and qualified employers may use (either electronically or on paper) in enrolling in qualified health plans offered through such Exchange, and that takes into account criteria that the National Association of Insurance Commissioners develops and submits to the Secretary;

(G) utilize the standard format established for presenting health benefits plan options;

(H) provide information to enrollees and prospective enrollees, and to each Exchange in which the plan is offered, on any quality measures for health plan performance endorsed under section 399JJ of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 280j–2], as applicable; and

(I) report to the Secretary at least annually and in such manner as the Secretary shall require, pediatric quality reporting measures consistent with the pediatric quality reporting measures established under section 1139A of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1320b–9a].

(2) Rule of construction

Nothing in paragraph (1)(C) shall be construed to require a qualified health plan to contract with a provider described in such paragraph if such provider refuses to accept the generally applicable payment rates of such plan.

(3) Rating system

The Secretary shall develop a rating system that would rate qualified health plans offered through an Exchange in each benefits level on the basis of the relative quality and price. The Exchange shall include the quality rating in the information provided to individuals and employers through the Internet portal established under paragraph (4).

(4) Enrollee satisfaction system

The Secretary shall develop an enrollee satisfaction survey system that would evaluate the level of enrollee satisfaction with qualified health plans offered through an Exchange, for each such qualified health plan that had more than 500 enrollees in the previous year. The Exchange shall include enrollee satisfaction information in the information provided to individuals and employers through the Internet portal established under paragraph (5) in a manner that allows individuals to easily compare enrollee satisfaction levels between comparable plans.

(5) Internet portals

The Secretary shall—

(A) continue to operate, maintain, and update the Internet portal developed under section 18003(a) of this title and to assist States in developing and maintaining their own such portal; and

(B) make available for use by Exchanges a model template for an Internet portal that may be used to direct qualified individuals and qualified employers to qualified health plans, to assist such individuals and employers in determining whether they are eligible to participate in an Exchange or eligible for a premium tax credit or cost-sharing reduction, and to present standardized information (including quality ratings) regarding qualified health plans offered through an Exchange to assist consumers in making easy health insurance choices.

Such template shall include, with respect to each qualified health plan offered through the Exchange in each rating area, access to the uniform outline of coverage the plan is required to provide under section 2716 [1] of the Public Health Service Act and to a copy of the plan's written policy.

(6) Enrollment periods

The Secretary shall require an Exchange to provide for—

(A) an initial open enrollment, as determined by the Secretary (such determination to be made not later than July 1, 2012);

(B) annual open enrollment periods, as determined by the Secretary for calendar years after

the initial enrollment period;

(C) special enrollment periods specified in section 9801 of title 26 and other special enrollment periods under circumstances similar to such periods under part D of title XVIII of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1395w–101 et seq.]; and

(D) special monthly enrollment periods for Indians (as defined in section 1603 of title 25).

(d) Requirements

(1) In general

An Exchange shall be a governmental agency or nonprofit entity that is established by a State.

(2) Offering of coverage

(A) In general

An Exchange shall make available qualified health plans to qualified individuals and qualified employers.

(B) Limitation

(i) In general

An Exchange may not make available any health plan that is not a qualified health plan.

(ii) Offering of stand-alone dental benefits

Each Exchange within a State shall allow an issuer of a plan that only provides limited scope dental benefits meeting the requirements of section 9832(c)(2)(A) of title 26 to offer the plan through the Exchange (either separately or in conjunction with a qualified health plan) if the plan provides pediatric dental benefits meeting the requirements of section 18022(b)(1)(J) of this title).

(3) Rules relating to additional required benefits

(A) In general

Except as provided in subparagraph (B), an Exchange may make available a qualified health plan notwithstanding any provision of law that may require benefits other than the essential health benefits specified under section 18022(b) of this title.

(B) States may require additional benefits

(i) In general

Subject to the requirements of clause (ii), a State may require that a qualified health plan offered in such State offer benefits in addition to the essential health benefits specified under section 18022(b) of this title.

(ii) State must assume cost

A State shall make payments—

(I) to an individual enrolled in a qualified health plan offered in such State; or

(II) on behalf of an individual described in subclause (I) directly to the qualified health plan in which such individual is enrolled;

to defray the cost of any additional benefits described in clause (i).

(4) Functions

An Exchange shall, at a minimum—

(A) implement procedures for the certification, recertification, and decertification, consistent with guidelines developed by the Secretary under subsection (c), of health plans as qualified health plans;

(B) provide for the operation of a toll-free telephone hotline to respond to requests for assistance;

(C) maintain an Internet website through which enrollees and prospective enrollees of

qualified health plans may obtain standardized comparative information on such plans;

(D) assign a rating to each qualified health plan offered through such Exchange in accordance with the criteria developed by the Secretary under subsection (c)(3);

(E) utilize a standardized format for presenting health benefits plan options in the Exchange, including the use of the uniform outline of coverage established under section 2715 of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 300gg–15];

(F) in accordance with section 18083 of this title, inform individuals of eligibility requirements for the medicaid program under title XIX of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1396 et seq.], the CHIP program under title XXI of such Act [42 U.S.C. 1397aa et seq.], or any applicable State or local public program and if through screening of the application by the Exchange, the Exchange determines that such individuals are eligible for any such program, enroll such individuals in such program;

(G) establish and make available by electronic means a calculator to determine the actual cost of coverage after the application of any premium tax credit under section 36B of title 26 and any cost-sharing reduction under section 18071 of this title;

(H) subject to section 18081 of this title, grant a certification attesting that, for purposes of the individual responsibility penalty under section 5000A of title 26, an individual is exempt from the individual requirement or from the penalty imposed by such section because—

(i) there is no affordable qualified health plan available through the Exchange, or the individual's employer, covering the individual; or

(ii) the individual meets the requirements for any other such exemption from the individual responsibility requirement or penalty;

(I) transfer to the Secretary of the Treasury—

(i) a list of the individuals who are issued a certification under subparagraph (H), including the name and taxpayer identification number of each individual;

(ii) the name and taxpayer identification number of each individual who was an employee of an employer but who was determined to be eligible for the premium tax credit under section 36B of title 26 because—

(I) the employer did not provide minimum essential coverage; or

(II) the employer provided such minimum essential coverage but it was determined under section 36B(c)(2)(C) of such title to either be unaffordable to the employee or not provide the required minimum actuarial value; and

(iii) the name and taxpayer identification number of each individual who notifies the Exchange under section 18081(b)(4) of this title that they have changed employers and of each individual who ceases coverage under a qualified health plan during a plan year (and the effective date of such cessation);

(J) provide to each employer the name of each employee of the employer described in subparagraph (I)(ii) who ceases coverage under a qualified health plan during a plan year (and the effective date of such cessation); and

(K) establish the Navigator program described in subsection (i).

(5) Funding limitations

(A) No Federal funds for continued operations

In establishing an Exchange under this section, the State shall ensure that such Exchange is self-sustaining beginning on January 1, 2015, including allowing the Exchange to charge assessments or user fees to participating health insurance issuers, or to otherwise generate funding, to support its operations.

(B) Prohibiting wasteful use of funds

In carrying out activities under this subsection, an Exchange shall not utilize any funds intended for the administrative and operational expenses of the Exchange for staff retreats,

promotional giveaways, excessive executive compensation, or promotion of Federal or State legislative and regulatory modifications.

(6) Consultation

An Exchange shall consult with stakeholders relevant to carrying out the activities under this section, including—

(A) educated health care consumers who are enrollees in qualified health plans;

(B) individuals and entities with experience in facilitating enrollment in qualified health plans;

(C) representatives of small businesses and self-employed individuals;

(D) State Medicaid offices; and

(E) advocates for enrolling hard to reach populations.

(7) Publication of costs

An Exchange shall publish the average costs of licensing, regulatory fees, and any other payments required by the Exchange, and the administrative costs of such Exchange, on an Internet website to educate consumers on such costs. Such information shall also include monies lost to waste, fraud, and abuse.

(e) Certification

(1) In general

An Exchange may certify a health plan as a qualified health plan if—

(A) such health plan meets the requirements for certification as promulgated by the Secretary under subsection (c)(1); and

(B) the Exchange determines that making available such health plan through such Exchange is in the interests of qualified individuals and qualified employers in the State or States in which such Exchange operates, except that the Exchange may not exclude a health plan—

(i) on the basis that such plan is a fee-for-service plan;

(ii) through the imposition of premium price controls; or

(iii) on the basis that the plan provides treatments necessary to prevent patients' deaths in circumstances the Exchange determines are inappropriate or too costly.

(2) Premium considerations

The Exchange shall require health plans seeking certification as qualified health plans to submit a justification for any premium increase prior to implementation of the increase. Such plans shall prominently post such information on their websites. The Exchange shall take this information, and the information and the recommendations provided to the Exchange by the State under section 2794(b)(1) [1] of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 300gg–94(b)(1)] (relating to patterns or practices of excessive or unjustified premium increases), into consideration when determining whether to make such health plan available through the Exchange. The Exchange shall take into account any excess of premium growth outside the Exchange as compared to the rate of such growth inside the Exchange, including information reported by the States.

(3) Transparency in coverage

(A) In general

The Exchange shall require health plans seeking certification as qualified health plans to submit to the Exchange, the Secretary, the State insurance commissioner, and make available to the public, accurate and timely disclosure of the following information:

(i) Claims payment policies and practices.

(ii) Periodic financial disclosures.

(iii) Data on enrollment.

(iv) Data on disenrollment.

(v) Data on the number of claims that are denied.

(vi) Data on rating practices.

(vii) Information on cost-sharing and payments with respect to any out-of-network coverage.

(viii) Information on enrollee and participant rights under this title.[1]

(ix) Other information as determined appropriate by the Secretary.

(B) Use of plain language

The information required to be submitted under subparagraph (A) shall be provided in plain language. The term "plain language" means language that the intended audience, including individuals with limited English proficiency, can readily understand and use because that language is concise, well-organized, and follows other best practices of plain language writing. The Secretary and the Secretary of Labor shall jointly develop and issue guidance on best practices of plain language writing.

(C) Cost sharing transparency

The Exchange shall require health plans seeking certification as qualified health plans to permit individuals to learn the amount of cost-sharing (including deductibles, copayments, and coinsurance) under the individual's plan or coverage that the individual would be responsible for paying with respect to the furnishing of a specific item or service by a participating provider in a timely manner upon the request of the individual. At a minimum, such information shall be made available to such individual through an Internet website and such other means for individuals without access to the Internet.

(D) Group health plans

The Secretary of Labor shall update and harmonize the Secretary's rules concerning the accurate and timely disclosure to participants by group health plans of plan disclosure, plan terms and conditions, and periodic financial disclosure with the standards established by the Secretary under subparagraph (A).

(f) Flexibility

(1) Regional or other interstate exchanges

An Exchange may operate in more than one State if—

(A) each State in which such Exchange operates permits such operation; and

(B) the Secretary approves such regional or interstate Exchange.

(2) Subsidiary Exchanges

A State may establish one or more subsidiary Exchanges if—

(A) each such Exchange serves a geographically distinct area; and

(B) the area served by each such Exchange is at least as large as a rating area described in section 2701(a) of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 300gg(a)].

(3) Authority to contract

(A) In general

A State may elect to authorize an Exchange established by the State under this section to enter into an agreement with an eligible entity to carry out 1 or more responsibilities of the Exchange.

(B) Eligible entity

In this paragraph, the term "eligible entity" means—

(i) a person—

(I) incorporated under, and subject to the laws of, 1 or more States;

(II) that has demonstrated experience on a State or regional basis in the individual and small group health insurance markets and in benefits coverage; and

(III) that is not a health insurance issuer or that is treated under subsection (a) or (b) of section 52 of title 26 as a member of the same controlled group of corporations (or under common control with) as a health insurance issuer; or

(ii) the State medicaid agency under title XIX of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1396 et seq.].

(g) Rewarding quality through market-based incentives

(1) Strategy described

A strategy described in this paragraph is a payment structure that provides increased reimbursement or other incentives for—

(A) improving health outcomes through the implementation of activities that shall include quality reporting, effective case management, care coordination, chronic disease management, medication and care compliance initiatives, including through the use of the medical home model, for treatment or services under the plan or coverage;

(B) the implementation of activities to prevent hospital readmissions through a comprehensive program for hospital discharge that includes patient-centered education and counseling, comprehensive discharge planning, and post discharge reinforcement by an appropriate health care professional;

(C) the implementation of activities to improve patient safety and reduce medical errors through the appropriate use of best clinical practices, evidence based medicine, and health information technology under the plan or coverage;

(D) the implementation of wellness and health promotion activities; and

(E) the implementation of activities to reduce health and health care disparities, including through the use of language services, community outreach, and cultural competency trainings.

(2) Guidelines

The Secretary, in consultation with experts in health care quality and stakeholders, shall develop guidelines concerning the matters described in paragraph (1).

(3) Requirements

The guidelines developed under paragraph (2) shall require the periodic reporting to the applicable Exchange of the activities that a qualified health plan has conducted to implement a strategy described in paragraph (1).

(h) Quality improvement

(1) Enhancing patient safety

Beginning on January 1, 2015, a qualified health plan may contract with—

(A) a hospital with greater than 50 beds only if such hospital—

(i) utilizes a patient safety evaluation system as described in part C of title IX of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 299b–21 et seq.]; and

(ii) implements a mechanism to ensure that each patient receives a comprehensive program for hospital discharge that includes patient-centered education and counseling, comprehensive discharge planning, and post discharge reinforcement by an appropriate health care professional; or

(B) a health care provider only if such provider implements such mechanisms to improve health care quality as the Secretary may by regulation require.

(2) Exceptions

The Secretary may establish reasonable exceptions to the requirements described in paragraph (1).

(3) Adjustment

The Secretary may by regulation adjust the number of beds described in paragraph (1)(A).

(i) Navigators

(1) In general

An Exchange shall establish a program under which it awards grants to entities described in paragraph (2) to carry out the duties described in paragraph (3).

(2) Eligibility

(A) In general

To be eligible to receive a grant under paragraph (1), an entity shall demonstrate to the Exchange involved that the entity has existing relationships, or could readily establish relationships, with employers and employees, consumers (including uninsured and underinsured consumers), or self-employed individuals likely to be qualified to enroll in a qualified health plan.

(B) Types

Entities described in subparagraph (A) may include trade, industry, and professional associations, commercial fishing industry organizations, ranching and farming organizations, community and consumer-focused nonprofit groups, chambers of commerce, unions, resource partners of the Small Business Administration, other licensed insurance agents and brokers, and other entities that—

(i) are capable of carrying out the duties described in paragraph (3);

(ii) meet the standards described in paragraph (4); and

(iii) provide information consistent with the standards developed under paragraph (5).

(3) Duties

An entity that serves as a navigator under a grant under this subsection shall—

(A) conduct public education activities to raise awareness of the availability of qualified health plans;

(B) distribute fair and impartial information concerning enrollment in qualified health plans, and the availability of premium tax credits under section 36B of title 26 and cost-sharing reductions under section 18071 of this title;

(C) facilitate enrollment in qualified health plans;

(D) provide referrals to any applicable office of health insurance consumer assistance or health insurance ombudsman established under section 2793 of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 300gg–93], or any other appropriate State agency or agencies, for any enrollee with a grievance, complaint, or question regarding their health plan, coverage, or a determination under such plan or coverage; and

(E) provide information in a manner that is culturally and linguistically appropriate to the needs of the population being served by the Exchange or Exchanges.

(4) Standards

(A) In general

The Secretary shall establish standards for navigators under this subsection, including provisions to ensure that any private or public entity that is selected as a navigator is qualified, and licensed if appropriate, to engage in the navigator activities described in this subsection and to avoid conflicts of interest. Under such standards, a navigator shall not—

(i) be a health insurance issuer; or

(ii) receive any consideration directly or indirectly from any health insurance issuer in connection with the enrollment of any qualified individuals or employees of a qualified employer in a qualified health plan.

(5) Fair and impartial information and services

The Secretary, in collaboration with States, shall develop standards to ensure that information made available by navigators is fair, accurate, and impartial.

(6) Funding

Grants under this subsection shall be made from the operational funds of the Exchange and not Federal funds received by the State to establish the Exchange.

(j) Applicability of mental health parity

Section 2726 of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 300gg–26] shall apply to qualified health plans in the same manner and to the same extent as such section applies to health insurance issuers and group health plans.

(k) Conflict

An Exchange may not establish rules that conflict with or prevent the application of regulations promulgated by the Secretary under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1311, title X, §§10104(e)–(h), 10203(a), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 173, 900, 901, 927.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subtitles A and C, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(A)(i)(II), are subtitles A (§§1001–1004) and C (§§1201–1255), respectively, of title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, 154. Subtitle A enacted sections 300gg–11 to 300gg–19, 300gg–93, and 300gg–94 of this title, transferred sections 300gg–4 to 300gg–7 and 300gg–13 of this title to sections 300gg–25 to 300gg–28 and 300gg–9 of this title, respectively, amended sections 300gg–11, 300gg–12, and 300gg–21 to 300gg–23 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 300gg–11 of this title. Subtitle C enacted subchapter II of this chapter and sections 300gg to 300gg–2 and 300gg–4 to 300gg–7 of this title, transferred section 300gg of this title to section 300gg–3 of this title, amended sections 300gg–1 and 300gg–4 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 300gg of this title. For complete classification of subtitles A and C to the Code, see Tables.

This title, referred to in subsecs. (b)(1) and (e)(3)(A)(viii), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

Section 2716 of the Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(5), probably should be section 2715 of the Public Health Service Act, act July 1, 1944, which is classified to section 300gg–15 of this title and requires the Secretary to develop a uniform explanation of coverage documents and standardized definitions. Section 2716 of act July 1, 1944, which is classified to section 300gg–16 of this title, relates to prohibition on discrimination in favor of highly compensated individuals.

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsecs. (c)(6)(C), (d)(4)(F), and (f)(3)(B)(ii), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Part D of title XVIII of the Act is classified generally to part D (§1395w–101 et seq.) of subchapter XVIII of chapter 7 of this title. Titles XIX and XXI of the Act are classified generally to subchapters XIX (§1396 et seq.) and XXI (§1397aa et seq.), respectively, of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

Section 2794 of the Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(2), probably means section 2794 of act July 1, 1944, as added by section 1003 of Pub. L. 111–148, which relates to premium increases for consumers and is classified to section 300gg–94 of this title. Another section 2794 of act July 1, 1944, relates to uniform fraud and abuse referral format and is classified to section 300gg–95 of this title.

The Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsec. (h)(1)(A)(i), is act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682. Part C of title IX of the Act is classified generally to part C (§299b–21 et seq.) of subchapter VII of chapter 6A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (k), was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 162, which enacted this subchapter and amended sections 501, 4958, and 6033 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (c)(1)(I). Pub. L. 111–148, §10203(a), added subpar. (I).

Subsec. (d)(3)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(e)(1), added cl. (ii) and struck out former cl. (ii). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A State shall make payments to or on behalf of an individual eligible for the premium tax credit under section 36B of title 26 and any cost-sharing reduction under section 18071 of this title to defray the cost to the individual of any additional benefits described in clause (i) which are not eligible for such credit or reduction under section 36B(b)(3)(D) of title 26 and section 18071(c)(4) of this title."

Subsec. (d)(6)(A). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(e)(2), inserted "educated" before "health care".

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(f)(1), which directed substitution of "shall" for "may" in second

sentence, was executed by making the substitution in third sentence before "take" to reflect the probable intent of Congress because the word "shall" already appeared in second sentence.

Subsec. (e)(3). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(f)(2), added par. (3).

Subsec. (g)(1)(E). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(g), added subpar. (E).

Subsec. (i)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(h), substituted "resource partners of the Small Business Administration" for "small business development centers".

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§18032. Consumer choice

(a) Choice

(1) Qualified individuals

A qualified individual may enroll in any qualified health plan available to such individual and for which such individual is eligible.

(2) Qualified employers

(A) Employer may specify level

A qualified employer may provide support for coverage of employees under a qualified health plan by selecting any level of coverage under section 18022(d) of this title to be made available to employees through an Exchange.

(B) Employee may choose plans within a level

Each employee of a qualified employer that elects a level of coverage under subparagraph (A) may choose to enroll in a qualified health plan that offers coverage at that level.

(b) Payment of premiums by qualified individuals

A qualified individual enrolled in any qualified health plan may pay any applicable premium owed by such individual to the health insurance issuer issuing such qualified health plan.

(c) Single risk pool

(1) Individual market

A health insurance issuer shall consider all enrollees in all health plans (other than grandfathered health plans) offered by such issuer in the individual market, including those enrollees who do not enroll in such plans through the Exchange, to be members of a single risk pool.

(2) Small group market

A health insurance issuer shall consider all enrollees in all health plans (other than grandfathered health plans) offered by such issuer in the small group market, including those enrollees who do not enroll in such plans through the Exchange, to be members of a single risk pool.

(3) Merger of markets

A State may require the individual and small group insurance markets within a State to be merged if the State determines appropriate.

(4) State law

A State law requiring grandfathered health plans to be included in a pool described in paragraph (1) or (2) shall not apply.

(d) Empowering consumer choice

(1) Continued operation of market outside Exchanges

Nothing in this title [1] shall be construed to prohibit—

(A) a health insurance issuer from offering outside of an Exchange a health plan to a qualified individual or qualified employer; and

(B) a qualified individual from enrolling in, or a qualified employer from selecting for its employees, a health plan offered outside of an Exchange.

(2) Continued operation of State benefit requirements

Nothing in this title [1] shall be construed to terminate, abridge, or limit the operation of any requirement under State law with respect to any policy or plan that is offered outside of an Exchange to offer benefits.

(3) Voluntary nature of an Exchange

(A) Choice to enroll or not to enroll

Nothing in this title [1] shall be construed to restrict the choice of a qualified individual to enroll or not to enroll in a qualified health plan or to participate in an Exchange.

(B) Prohibition against compelled enrollment

Nothing in this title [1] shall be construed to compel an individual to enroll in a qualified health plan or to participate in an Exchange.

(C) Individuals allowed to enroll in any plan

A qualified individual may enroll in any qualified health plan, except that in the case of a catastrophic plan described in section 18022(e) of this title, a qualified individual may enroll in the plan only if the individual is eligible to enroll in the plan under section 18022(e)(2) of this title.

(D) Members of Congress in the Exchange

(i) Requirement

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, after the effective date of this subtitle, the only health plans that the Federal Government may make available to Members of Congress and congressional staff with respect to their service as a Member of Congress or congressional staff shall be health plans that are—

(I) created under this Act (or an amendment made by this Act); or

(II) offered through an Exchange established under this Act (or an amendment made by this Act).

(ii) Definitions

In this section:

(I) Member of Congress

The term "Member of Congress" means any member of the House of Representatives or the Senate.

(II) Congressional staff

The term "congressional staff" means all full-time and part-time employees employed by the official office of a Member of Congress, whether in Washington, DC or outside of Washington, DC.

(4) No penalty for transferring to minimum essential coverage outside Exchange

An Exchange, or a qualified health plan offered through an Exchange, shall not impose any penalty or other fee on an individual who cancels enrollment in a plan because the individual becomes eligible for minimum essential coverage (as defined in section 5000A(f) of title 26 without regard to paragraph (1)(C) or (D) thereof) or such coverage becomes affordable (within the meaning of section 36B(c)(2)(C) of such title).

(e) Enrollment through agents or brokers

The Secretary shall establish procedures under which a State may allow agents or brokers—

(1) to enroll individuals and employers in any qualified health plans in the individual or small group market as soon as the plan is offered through an Exchange in the State; and

(2) to assist individuals in applying for premium tax credits and cost-sharing reductions for plans sold through an Exchange.

(f) Qualified individuals and employers; access limited to citizens and lawful residents

(1) Qualified individuals

In this title: [1]

(A) In general

The term "qualified individual" means, with respect to an Exchange, an individual who—

(i) is seeking to enroll in a qualified health plan in the individual market offered through the Exchange; and

(ii) resides in the State that established the Exchange.

(B) Incarcerated individuals excluded

An individual shall not be treated as a qualified individual if, at the time of enrollment, the individual is incarcerated, other than incarceration pending the disposition of charges.

(2) Qualified employer

In this title: [1]

(A) In general

The term "qualified employer" means a small employer that elects to make all full-time employees of such employer eligible for 1 or more qualified health plans offered in the small group market through an Exchange that offers qualified health plans.

(B) Extension to large groups

(i) In general

Beginning in 2017, each State may allow issuers of health insurance coverage in the large group market in the State to offer qualified health plans in such market through an Exchange. Nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed as requiring the issuer to offer such plans through an Exchange.

(ii) Large employers eligible

If a State under clause (i) allows issuers to offer qualified health plans in the large group market through an Exchange, the term "qualified employer" shall include a large employer that elects to make all full-time employees of such employer eligible for 1 or more qualified health plans offered in the large group market through the Exchange.

(3) Access limited to lawful residents

If an individual is not, or is not reasonably expected to be for the entire period for which enrollment is sought, a citizen or national of the United States or an alien lawfully present in the United States, the individual shall not be treated as a qualified individual and may not be covered under a qualified health plan in the individual market that is offered through an Exchange.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1312, title X, §10104(i), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 182, 901.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in subsecs. (d)(1), (2), (3)(A), (B) and (f)(1), (2), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

The effective date of this subtitle, referred to in subsec. (d)(3)(D)(i), is the effective date of subtitle D of title I of Pub. L. 111–148, which is Mar. 23, 2010.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(3)(D)(i), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(i)(1), inserted "and for which such individual is eligible" before period at end.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(i)(2)(B), struck out concluding provisions which read as follows: "Such procedures may include the establishment of rate schedules for broker commissions paid by health benefits plans offered through an exchange."

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(i)(2)(A), inserted "and employers" after "enroll individuals".

Subsec. (f)(1)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(i)(3), struck out "(except with respect to territorial agreements under this subsection)" before period at end.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§18033. Financial integrity

(a) Accounting for expenditures

(1) In general

An Exchange shall keep an accurate accounting of all activities, receipts, and expenditures and shall annually submit to the Secretary a report concerning such accountings.

(2) Investigations

The Secretary, in coordination with the Inspector General of the Department of Health and Human Services, may investigate the affairs of an Exchange, may examine the properties and records of an Exchange, and may require periodic reports in relation to activities undertaken by an Exchange. An Exchange shall fully cooperate in any investigation conducted under this paragraph.

(3) Audits

An Exchange shall be subject to annual audits by the Secretary.

(4) Pattern of abuse

If the Secretary determines that an Exchange or a State has engaged in serious misconduct with respect to compliance with the requirements of, or carrying out of activities required under, this title,[1] the Secretary may rescind from payments otherwise due to such State involved under this or any other Act administered by the Secretary an amount not to exceed 1 percent of such payments per year until corrective actions are taken by the State that are determined to be adequate by the Secretary.

(5) Protections against fraud and abuse

With respect to activities carried out under this title,[1] the Secretary shall provide for the efficient and non-discriminatory administration of Exchange activities and implement any measure or procedure that—

(A) the Secretary determines is appropriate to reduce fraud and abuse in the administration of this title; [1] and

(B) the Secretary has authority to implement under this title [1] or any other Act.

(6) Application of the False Claims Act

(A) In general

Payments made by, through, or in connection with an Exchange are subject to the False Claims Act (31 U.S.C. 3729 et seq.) if those payments include any Federal funds. Compliance with the requirements of this Act concerning eligibility for a health insurance issuer to participate in the Exchange shall be a material condition of an issuer's entitlement to receive payments, including payments of premium tax credits and cost-sharing reductions, through the Exchange.

(B) [2] Damages

Notwithstanding paragraph (1) of section 3729(a) of title 31, and subject to paragraph (2) of such section, the civil penalty assessed under the False Claims Act on any person found liable under such Act as described in subparagraph (A) shall be increased by not less than 3 times and not more than 6 times the amount of damages which the Government sustains because of the act of that person.

(b) GAO oversight

Not later than 5 years after the first date on which Exchanges are required to be operational under this title,[1] the Comptroller General shall conduct an ongoing study of Exchange activities and the enrollees in qualified health plans offered through Exchanges. Such study shall review—

(1) the operations and administration of Exchanges, including surveys and reports of qualified health plans offered through Exchanges and on the experience of such plans (including data on enrollees in Exchanges and individuals purchasing health insurance coverage outside of Exchanges), the expenses of Exchanges, claims statistics relating to qualified health plans, complaints data relating to such plans, and the manner in which Exchanges meet their goals;

(2) any significant observations regarding the utilization and adoption of Exchanges;

(3) where appropriate, recommendations for improvements in the operations or policies of Exchanges;

(4) a survey of the cost and affordability of health care insurance provided under the Exchanges for owners and employees of small business concerns (as defined under section 632 of title 15), including data on enrollees in Exchanges and individuals purchasing health insurance coverage outside of Exchanges; and

(5) how many physicians, by area and specialty, are not taking or accepting new patients enrolled in Federal Government health care programs, and the adequacy of provider networks of Federal Government health care programs.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1313, title X, §10104(k), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 184, 902.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in subsecs. (a)(4), (5) and (b), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(4), (6)(A), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

The False Claims Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(6), was the popular name for sections 231, 232, 233, and 235 of former Title 31, Money and Finance. Sections 231, 232, 233, and 235 were repealed by Pub. L. 97–258, §5(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1084, and reenacted by the first section thereof as sections 3729 to 3731 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (b)(4), (5). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(k), added par. (4) and redesignated former par. (4) as (5).

TERMINATION OF PROVISION

Pub. L. 111–148, title X, §10104(j)(1), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 901, provided that: "Subparagraph (B) of section 1313(a)(6) of this Act [42 U.S.C. 18033(a)(6)(B)] is hereby deemed null, void, and of no effect."

[1] See References in Text note below.

[2] See Termination of Provision note below.

PART C—STATE FLEXIBILITY RELATING TO EXCHANGES

§18041. State flexibility in operation and enforcement of Exchanges and related requirements

(a) Establishment of standards

(1) In general

The Secretary shall, as soon as practicable after March 23, 2010, issue regulations setting standards for meeting the requirements under this title,[1] and the amendments made by this title,[1] with respect to—

(A) the establishment and operation of Exchanges (including SHOP Exchanges);
(B) the offering of qualified health plans through such Exchanges;
(C) the establishment of the reinsurance and risk adjustment programs under part E; and
(D) such other requirements as the Secretary determines appropriate.

The preceding sentence shall not apply to standards for requirements under subtitles A and C (and the amendments made by such subtitles) for which the Secretary issues regulations under the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 201 et seq.].

(2) Consultation

In issuing the regulations under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall consult with the National Association of Insurance Commissioners and its members and with health insurance issuers, consumer organizations, and such other individuals as the Secretary selects in a manner designed to ensure balanced representation among interested parties.

(b) State action

Each State that elects, at such time and in such manner as the Secretary may prescribe, to apply the requirements described in subsection (a) shall, not later than January 1, 2014, adopt and have in effect—

(1) the Federal standards established under subsection (a); or
(2) a State law or regulation that the Secretary determines implements the standards within the State.

(c) Failure to establish Exchange or implement requirements

(1) In general

If—

(A) a State is not an electing State under subsection (b); or
(B) the Secretary determines, on or before January 1, 2013, that an electing State—
(i) will not have any required Exchange operational by January 1, 2014; or
(ii) has not taken the actions the Secretary determines necessary to implement—
(I) the other requirements set forth in the standards under subsection (a); or
(II) the requirements set forth in subtitles A and C and the amendments made by such subtitles;

the Secretary shall (directly or through agreement with a not-for-profit entity) establish and operate such Exchange within the State and the Secretary shall take such actions as are necessary to implement such other requirements.

(2) Enforcement authority

The provisions of section 2736(b) [1] of the Public Health Services [2] Act [42 U.S.C. 300gg–22(b)] shall apply to the enforcement under paragraph (1) of requirements of subsection (a)(1) (without regard to any limitation on the application of those provisions to group health plans).

(d) No interference with State regulatory authority

Nothing in this title [1] shall be construed to preempt any State law that does not prevent the application of the provisions of this title.[1]

(e) Presumption for certain State-operated Exchanges

(1) In general

In the case of a State operating an Exchange before January 1, 2010, and which has insured a percentage of its population not less than the percentage of the population projected to be covered nationally after the implementation of this Act, that seeks to operate an Exchange under this section, the Secretary shall presume that such Exchange meets the standards under this section unless the Secretary determines, after completion of the process established under paragraph (2), that the Exchange does not comply with such standards.

(2) Process

The Secretary shall establish a process to work with a State described in paragraph (1) to provide assistance necessary to assist the State's Exchange in coming into compliance with the standards for approval under this section.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1321, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 186.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1) and (d), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

Subtitles A and C, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1) and (c)(1)(B)(ii)(II), are subtitles A (§§1001–1004) and C (§§1201–1255), respectively, of title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, 154. Subtitle A enacted sections 300gg–11 to 300gg–19, 300gg–93, and 300gg–94 of this title, transferred sections 300gg–4 to 300gg–7 and 300gg–13 of this title to sections 300gg–25 to 300gg–28 and 300gg–9 of this title, respectively, amended sections 300gg–11, 300gg–12, and 300gg–21 to 300gg–23 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 300gg–11 of this title. Subtitle C enacted subchapter II of this chapter and sections 300gg to 300gg–2 and 300gg–4 to 300gg–7 of this title, transferred section 300gg of this title to section 300gg–3 of this title, amended sections 300gg–1 and 300gg–4 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 300gg of this title. For complete classification of subtitles A and C to the Code, see Tables.

The Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682, which is classified generally to chapter 6A (§201 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

Section 2736 of the Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), was renumbered section 2723 of that Act by Pub. L. 111–148, §1563(c)(13)(C) (formerly §1562(c)(13)(C)), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 269, and is classified to section 300gg–22 of this title.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(1), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

[1] See References in Text note below.

[2] So in original. Probably should be "Service".

§18042. Federal program to assist establishment and operation of nonprofit, member-run health insurance issuers

(a) Establishment of program

(1) In general

The Secretary shall establish a program to carry out the purposes of this section to be known as

the Consumer Operated and Oriented Plan (CO–OP) program.

(2) Purpose

It is the purpose of the CO–OP program to foster the creation of qualified nonprofit health insurance issuers to offer qualified health plans in the individual and small group markets in the States in which the issuers are licensed to offer such plans.

(b) Loans and grants under the CO–OP program

(1) In general

The Secretary shall provide through the CO–OP program for the awarding to persons applying to become qualified nonprofit health insurance issuers of—

(A) loans to provide assistance to such person in meeting its start-up costs; and

(B) grants to provide assistance to such person in meeting any solvency requirements of States in which the person seeks to be licensed to issue qualified health plans.

(2) Requirements for awarding loans and grants

(A) In general

In awarding loans and grants under the CO–OP program, the Secretary shall—

(i) take into account the recommendations of the advisory board established under paragraph (3);

(ii) give priority to applicants that will offer qualified health plans on a Statewide basis, will utilize integrated care models, and have significant private support; and

(iii) ensure that there is sufficient funding to establish at least 1 qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer in each State, except that nothing in this clause shall prohibit the Secretary from funding the establishment of multiple qualified nonprofit health insurance issuers in any State if the funding is sufficient to do so.

(B) States without issuers in program

If no health insurance issuer applies to be a qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer within a State, the Secretary may use amounts appropriated under this section for the awarding of grants to encourage the establishment of a qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer within the State or the expansion of a qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer from another State to the State.

(C) Agreement

(i) In general

The Secretary shall require any person receiving a loan or grant under the CO–OP program to enter into an agreement with the Secretary which requires such person to meet (and to continue to meet)—

(I) any requirement under this section for such person to be treated as a qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer; and

(II) any requirements contained in the agreement for such person to receive such loan or grant.

(ii) Restrictions on use of Federal funds

The agreement shall include a requirement that no portion of the funds made available by any loan or grant under this section may be used—

(I) for carrying on propaganda, or otherwise attempting, to influence legislation; or

(II) for marketing.

Nothing in this clause shall be construed to allow a person to take any action prohibited by section 501(c)(29) of title 26.

(iii) Failure to meet requirements

If the Secretary determines that a person has failed to meet any requirement described in

clause (i) or (ii) and has failed to correct such failure within a reasonable period of time of when the person first knows (or reasonably should have known) of such failure, such person shall repay to the Secretary an amount equal to the sum of—

(I) 110 percent of the aggregate amount of loans and grants received under this section; plus

(II) interest on the aggregate amount of loans and grants received under this section for the period the loans or grants were outstanding.

The Secretary shall notify the Secretary of the Treasury of any determination under this section of a failure that results in the termination of an issuer's tax-exempt status under section 501(c)(29) of such title.

(D) Time for awarding loans and grants

The Secretary shall not later than July 1, 2013, award the loans and grants under the CO–OP program and begin the distribution of amounts awarded under such loans and grants.

(3) Repayment of loans and grants

Not later than July 1, 2013, and prior to awarding loans and grants under the CO–OP program, the Secretary shall promulgate regulations with respect to the repayment of such loans and grants in a manner that is consistent with State solvency regulations and other similar State laws that may apply. In promulgating such regulations, the Secretary shall provide that such loans shall be repaid within 5 years and such grants shall be repaid within 15 years, taking into consideration any appropriate State reserve requirements, solvency regulations, and requisite surplus note arrangements that must be constructed in a State to provide for such repayment prior to awarding such loans and grants.

(4) Advisory board

(A) In general

The advisory board under this paragraph shall consist of 15 members appointed by the Comptroller General of the United States from among individuals with qualifications described in section 1395b–6(c)(2) of this title.

(B) Rules relating to appointments

(i) Standards

Any individual appointed under subparagraph (A) shall meet ethics and conflict of interest standards protecting against insurance industry involvement and interference.

(ii) Original appointments

The original appointment of board members under subparagraph (A)(ii) shall be made no later than 3 months after March 23, 2010.

(C) Vacancy

Any vacancy on the advisory board shall be filled in the same manner as the original appointment.

(D) Pay and reimbursement

(i) No compensation for members of advisory board

Except as provided in clause (ii), a member of the advisory board may not receive pay, allowances, or benefits by reason of their service on the board.

(ii) Travel expenses

Each member shall receive travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence under subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5.

(E) Application of FACA

The Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.) shall apply to the advisory board,

except that section 14 of such Act shall not apply.

(F) Termination

The advisory board shall terminate on the earlier of the date that it completes its duties under this section or December 31, 2015.

(c) Qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer

For purposes of this section—

(1) In general

The term "qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer" means a health insurance issuer that is an organization—

(A) that is organized under State law as a nonprofit, member corporation;

(B) substantially all of the activities of which consist of the issuance of qualified health plans in the individual and small group markets in each State in which it is licensed to issue such plans; and

(C) that meets the other requirements of this subsection.

(2) Certain organizations prohibited

An organization shall not be treated as a qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer if—

(A) the organization or a related entity (or any predecessor of either) was a health insurance issuer on July 16, 2009; or

(B) the organization is sponsored by a State or local government, any political subdivision thereof, or any instrumentality of such government or political subdivision.

(3) Governance requirements

An organization shall not be treated as a qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer unless—

(A) the governance of the organization is subject to a majority vote of its members;

(B) its governing documents incorporate ethics and conflict of interest standards protecting against insurance industry involvement and interference; and

(C) as provided in regulations promulgated by the Secretary, the organization is required to operate with a strong consumer focus, including timeliness, responsiveness, and accountability to members.

(4) Profits inure to benefit of members

An organization shall not be treated as a qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer unless any profits made by the organization are required to be used to lower premiums, to improve benefits, or for other programs intended to improve the quality of health care delivered to its members.

(5) Compliance with State insurance laws

An organization shall not be treated as a qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer unless the organization meets all the requirements that other issuers of qualified health plans are required to meet in any State where the issuer offers a qualified health plan, including solvency and licensure requirements, rules on payments to providers, and compliance with network adequacy rules, rate and form filing rules, any applicable State premium assessments and any other State law described in section 18044(b) of this title.

(6) Coordination with State insurance reforms

An organization shall not be treated as a qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer unless the organization does not offer a health plan in a State until that State has in effect (or the Secretary has implemented for the State) the market reforms required by part A of title XXVII of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 300gg et seq.] (as amended by subtitles A and C of this Act).

(d) Establishment of private purchasing council

(1) In general

Qualified nonprofit health insurance issuers participating in the CO–OP program under this section may establish a private purchasing council to enter into collective purchasing arrangements

for items and services that increase administrative and other cost efficiencies, including claims administration, administrative services, health information technology, and actuarial services.

(2) Council may not set payment rates

The private purchasing council established under paragraph (1) shall not set payment rates for health care facilities or providers participating in health insurance coverage provided by qualified nonprofit health insurance issuers.

(3) Continued application of antitrust laws

(A) In general

Nothing in this section shall be construed to limit the application of the antitrust laws to any private purchasing council (whether or not established under this subsection) or to any qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer participating in such a council.

(B) Antitrust laws

For purposes of this subparagraph, the term "antitrust laws" has the meaning given the term in subsection (a) of section 12 of title 15. Such term also includes section 45 of title 15 to the extent that such section 45 applies to unfair methods of competition.

(e) Limitation on participation

No representative of any Federal, State, or local government (or of any political subdivision or instrumentality thereof), and no representative of a person described in subsection (c)(2)(A), may serve on the board of directors of a qualified nonprofit health insurance issuer or with a private purchasing council established under subsection (d).

(f) Limitations on Secretary

(1) In general

The Secretary shall not—

(A) participate in any negotiations between 1 or more qualified nonprofit health insurance issuers (or a private purchasing council established under subsection (d)) and any health care facilities or providers, including any drug manufacturer, pharmacy, or hospital; and

(B) establish or maintain a price structure for reimbursement of any health benefits covered by such issuers.

(2) Competition

Nothing in this section shall be construed as authorizing the Secretary to interfere with the competitive nature of providing health benefits through qualified nonprofit health insurance issuers.

(g) Appropriations

There are hereby appropriated, out of any funds in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, $6,000,000,000 to carry out this section.

(h) Omitted

(i) GAO study and report

(1) Study

The Comptroller General of the General Accountability Office shall conduct an ongoing study on competition and market concentration in the health insurance market in the United States after the implementation of the reforms in such market under the provisions of, and the amendments made by, this Act. Such study shall include an analysis of new issuers of health insurance in such market.

(2) Report

The Comptroller General shall, not later than December 31 of each even-numbered year (beginning with 2014), report to the appropriate committees of the Congress the results of the

study conducted under paragraph (1), including any recommendations for administrative or legislative changes the Comptroller General determines necessary or appropriate to increase competition in the health insurance market.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1322, title X, §10104(l), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 187, 902.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(4)(E), is Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

The Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(6), is act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682. Part A of title XXVII of the Act is classified generally to part A (§300gg et seq.) of subchapter XXV of chapter 6A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

Subtitles A and C of this Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(6), are subtitles A (§§1001–1004) and C (§§1201–1255), respectively, of title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, 154. Subtitle A enacted sections 300gg–11 to 300gg–19, 300gg–93, and 300gg–94 of this title, transferred sections 300gg–4 to 300gg–7 and 300gg–13 of this title to sections 300gg–25 to 300gg–28 and 300gg–9 of this title, respectively, amended sections 300gg–11, 300gg–12, and 300gg–21 to 300gg–23 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 300gg–11 of this title. Subtitle C enacted subchapter II of this chapter and sections 300gg to 300gg–2 and 300gg–4 to 300gg–7 of this title, transferred section 300gg of this title to section 300gg–3 of this title, amended sections 300gg–1 and 300gg–4 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 300gg of this title. For complete classification of subtitles A and C to the Code, see Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (i)(1), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 1322 of Pub. L. 111–148. Subsec. (h) of section 1322 of Pub. L. 111–148 amended sections 501, 4958, and 6033 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (b)(3), (4). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(l), added par. (3) and redesignated former par. (3) as (4).

CONSUMER OPERATED AND ORIENTED PLAN PROGRAM CONTINGENCY FUND

Pub. L. 112–240, title VI, §644, Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2362, provided that:

"(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall establish a fund to be used to provide assistance and oversight to qualified nonprofit health insurance issuers that have been awarded loans or grants under section 1322 of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (42 U.S.C. 18042) prior to the date of enactment of this Act [Jan. 2, 2013].

"(b) TRANSFER AND RESCISSION.—

"(1) TRANSFER.—From the unobligated balance of funds appropriated under section 1322(g) of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (42 U.S.C. 18042(g)), 10 percent of such sums are hereby transferred to the fund established under subsection (a) to remain available until expended.

"(2) RESCISSION.—Except as provided for in paragraph (1), amounts appropriated under section 1322(g) of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (42 U.S.C. 18042(g)) that are unobligated as of the date of enactment of this Act [Jan. 2, 2013] are rescinded."

§18043. Funding for the territories

(a) In general

A territory that—

(1) elects consistent with subsection (b) to establish an Exchange in accordance with part B of this subchapter and establishes such an Exchange in accordance with such part shall be treated as a State for purposes of such part and shall be entitled to payment from the amount allocated to the territory under subsection (c); or

(2) does not make such election shall be entitled to an increase in the dollar limitation applicable to the territory under subsections (f) and (g) of section 1108 of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1308) for such period in such amount for such territory and such increase shall not be taken into account in computing any other amount under such subsections.

(b) Terms and conditions

An election under subsection (a)(1) shall—

(1) not be effective unless the election is consistent with section 18041 of this title and is received not later than October 1, 2013; and

(2) be contingent upon entering into an agreement between the territory and the Secretary that requires that—

(A) funds provided under the agreement shall be used only to provide premium and cost-sharing assistance to residents of the territory obtaining health insurance coverage through the Exchange; and

(B) the premium and cost-sharing assistance provided under such agreement shall be structured in such a manner so as to prevent any gap in assistance for individuals between the income level at which medical assistance is available through the territory's Medicaid plan under title XIX of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1396 et seq.] and the income level at which premium and cost-sharing assistance is available under the agreement.

(c) Appropriation and allocation

(1) Appropriation

Out of any funds in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, there is appropriated for purposes of payment pursuant to subsection (a) $1,000,000,000, to be available during the period beginning with 2014 and ending with 2019.

(2) Allocation

The Secretary shall allocate the amount appropriated under paragraph (1) among the territories for purposes of carrying out this section as follows:

(A) For Puerto Rico, $925,000,000.

(B) For another territory, the portion of $75,000,000 specified by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1323, as added Pub. L. 111–152, title I, §1204(a), Mar. 30, 2010, 124 Stat. 1055.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(B), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Title XIX of the Act is classified generally to subchapter XIX (§1396 et seq.) of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 18043, Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1323, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 192, which related to establishment of community health insurance option, was repealed by Pub. L. 111–148, title X, §10104(m), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 902.

§18044. Level playing field

(a) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, any health insurance coverage offered by a private health insurance issuer shall not be subject to any Federal or State law described in subsection (b) if a qualified health plan offered under the Consumer Operated and Oriented Plan program under section 18042 of this title, or a multi-State qualified health plan under section 18054 of this title, is not subject to such law.

(b) Laws described

The Federal and State laws described in this subsection are those Federal and State laws relating to—

(1) guaranteed renewal;
(2) rating;
(3) preexisting conditions;
(4) non-discrimination;
(5) quality improvement and reporting;
(6) fraud and abuse;
(7) solvency and financial requirements;
(8) market conduct;
(9) prompt payment;
(10) appeals and grievances;
(11) privacy and confidentiality;
(12) licensure; and
(13) benefit plan material or information.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1324, title X, §10104(n), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 199, 902.)

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(n), substituted ", or a multi-State qualified health plan under section 18054 of this title" for ", a community health insurance option under section 18043 of this title, or a nationwide qualified health plan under section 18053(b) of this title".

PART D—STATE FLEXIBILITY TO ESTABLISH ALTERNATIVE PROGRAMS

§18051. State flexibility to establish basic health programs for low-income individuals not eligible for medicaid

(a) Establishment of program

(1) In general

The Secretary shall establish a basic health program meeting the requirements of this section under which a State may enter into contracts to offer 1 or more standard health plans providing at least the essential health benefits described in section 18022(b) of this title to eligible individuals in lieu of offering such individuals coverage through an Exchange.

(2) Certifications as to benefit coverage and costs

Such program shall provide that a State may not establish a basic health program under this section unless the State establishes to the satisfaction of the Secretary, and the Secretary certifies, that—

(A) in the case of an eligible individual enrolled in a standard health plan offered through the program, the State provides—

(i) that the amount of the monthly premium an eligible individual is required to pay for coverage under the standard health plan for the individual and the individual's dependents does not exceed the amount of the monthly premium that the eligible individual would have been required to pay (in the rating area in which the individual resides) if the individual had enrolled in the applicable second lowest cost silver plan (as defined in section 36B(b)(3)(B) of title 26) offered to the individual through an Exchange; and

(ii) that the cost-sharing an eligible individual is required to pay under the standard health plan does not exceed—

(I) the cost-sharing required under a platinum plan in the case of an eligible individual

with household income not in excess of 150 percent of the poverty line for the size of the family involved; and

(II) the cost-sharing required under a gold plan in the case of an eligible individual not described in subclause (I); and

(B) the benefits provided under the standard health plans offered through the program cover at least the essential health benefits described in section 18022(b) of this title.

For purposes of subparagraph (A)(i), the amount of the monthly premium an individual is required to pay under either the standard health plan or the applicable second lowest cost silver plan shall be determined after reduction for any premium tax credits and cost-sharing reductions allowable with respect to either plan.

(b) Standard health plan

In this section, the term "standard heath [1] plan" means a health benefits plan that the State contracts with under this section—

(1) under which the only individuals eligible to enroll are eligible individuals;

(2) that provides at least the essential health benefits described in section 18022(b) of this title; and

(3) in the case of a plan that provides health insurance coverage offered by a health insurance issuer, that has a medical loss ratio of at least 85 percent.

(c) Contracting process

(1) In general

A State basic health program shall establish a competitive process for entering into contracts with standard health plans under subsection (a), including negotiation of premiums and cost-sharing and negotiation of benefits in addition to the essential health benefits described in section 18022(b) of this title.

(2) Specific items to be considered

A State shall, as part of its competitive process under paragraph (1), include at least the following:

(A) Innovation

Negotiation with offerors of a standard health plan for the inclusion of innovative features in the plan, including—

(i) care coordination and care management for enrollees, especially for those with chronic health conditions;

(ii) incentives for use of preventive services; and

(iii) the establishment of relationships between providers and patients that maximize patient involvement in health care decision-making, including providing incentives for appropriate utilization under the plan.

(B) Health and resource differences

Consideration of, and the making of suitable allowances for, differences in health care needs of enrollees and differences in local availability of, and access to, health care providers. Nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed as allowing discrimination on the basis of pre-existing conditions or other health status-related factors.

(C) Managed care

Contracting with managed care systems, or with systems that offer as many of the attributes of managed care as are feasible in the local health care market.

(D) Performance measures

Establishing specific performance measures and standards for issuers of standard health plans

that focus on quality of care and improved health outcomes, requiring such plans to report to the State with respect to the measures and standards, and making the performance and quality information available to enrollees in a useful form.

(3) Enhanced availability

(A) Multiple plans

A State shall, to the maximum extent feasible, seek to make multiple standard health plans available to eligible individuals within a State to ensure individuals have a choice of such plans.

(B) Regional compacts

A State may negotiate a regional compact with other States to include coverage of eligible individuals in all such States in agreements with issuers of standard health plans.

(4) Coordination with other State programs

A State shall seek to coordinate the administration of, and provision of benefits under, its program under this section with the State medicaid program under title XIX of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1396 et seq.], the State child health plan under title XXI of such Act [42 U.S.C. 1397aa et seq.], and other State-administered health programs to maximize the efficiency of such programs and to improve the continuity of care.

(d) Transfer of funds to States

(1) In general

If the Secretary determines that a State electing the application of this section meets the requirements of the program established under subsection (a), the Secretary shall transfer to the State for each fiscal year for which 1 or more standard health plans are operating within the State the amount determined under paragraph (3).

(2) Use of funds

A State shall establish a trust for the deposit of the amounts received under paragraph (1) and amounts in the trust fund shall only be used to reduce the premiums and cost-sharing of, or to provide additional benefits for, eligible individuals enrolled in standard health plans within the State. Amounts in the trust fund, and expenditures of such amounts, shall not be included in determining the amount of any non-Federal funds for purposes of meeting any matching or expenditure requirement of any federally-funded program.

(3) Amount of payment

(A) Secretarial determination

(i) In general

The amount determined under this paragraph for any fiscal year is the amount the Secretary determines is equal to 95 percent of the premium tax credits under section 36B of title 26, and the cost-sharing reductions under section 18071 of this title, that would have been provided for the fiscal year to eligible individuals enrolled in standard health plans in the State if such eligible individuals were allowed to enroll in qualified health plans through an Exchange established under this subchapter.

(ii) Specific requirements

The Secretary shall make the determination under clause (i) on a per enrollee basis and shall take into account all relevant factors necessary to determine the value of the premium tax credits and cost-sharing reductions that would have been provided to eligible individuals described in clause (i), including the age and income of the enrollee, whether the enrollment is for self-only or family coverage, geographic differences in average spending for health care across rating areas, the health status of the enrollee for purposes of determining risk adjustment payments and reinsurance payments that would have been made if the enrollee had enrolled in a qualified health plan through an Exchange, and whether any reconciliation

of the credit or cost-sharing reductions would have occurred if the enrollee had been so enrolled. This determination shall take into consideration the experience of other States with respect to participation in an Exchange and such credits and reductions provided to residents of the other States, with a special focus on enrollees with income below 200 percent of poverty.

(iii) Certification

The Chief Actuary of the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, in consultation with the Office of Tax Analysis of the Department of the Treasury, shall certify whether the methodology used to make determinations under this subparagraph, and such determinations, meet the requirements of clause (ii). Such certifications shall be based on sufficient data from the State and from comparable States about their experience with programs created by this Act.

(B) Corrections

The Secretary shall adjust the payment for any fiscal year to reflect any error in the determinations under subparagraph (A) for any preceding fiscal year.

(4) Application of special rules

The provisions of section 18023 of this title shall apply to a State basic health program, and to standard health plans offered through such program, in the same manner as such rules apply to qualified health plans.

(e) Eligible individual

(1) In general

In this section, the term "eligible individual" means, with respect to any State, an individual—

(A) who a [2] resident of the State who is not eligible to enroll in the State's medicaid program under title XIX of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1396 et seq.] for benefits that at a minimum consist of the essential health benefits described in section 18022(b) of this title;

(B) whose household income exceeds 133 percent but does not exceed 200 percent of the poverty line for the size of the family involved, or, in the case of an alien lawfully present in the United States, whose income is not greater than 133 percent of the poverty line for the size of the family involved but who is not eligible for the Medicaid program under title XIX of the Social Security Act by reason of such alien status;

(C) who is not eligible for minimum essential coverage (as defined in section 5000A(f) of title 26) or is eligible for an employer-sponsored plan that is not affordable coverage (as determined under section 5000A(e)(2) of such title); and

(D) who has not attained age 65 as of the beginning of the plan year.

Such term shall not include any individual who is not a qualified individual under section 18032 of this title who is eligible to be covered by a qualified health plan offered through an Exchange.

(2) Eligible individuals may not use Exchange

An eligible individual shall not be treated as a qualified individual under section 18032 of this title eligible for enrollment in a qualified health plan offered through an Exchange established under section 18031 of this title.

(f) Secretarial oversight

The Secretary shall each year conduct a review of each State program to ensure compliance with the requirements of this section, including ensuring that the State program meets—

(1) eligibility verification requirements for participation in the program;

(2) the requirements for use of Federal funds received by the program; and

(3) the quality and performance standards under this section.

(g) Standard health plan offerors

A State may provide that persons eligible to offer standard health plans under a basic health program established under this section may include a licensed health maintenance organization, a licensed health insurance insurer, or a network of health care providers established to offer services under the program.

(h) Definitions

Any term used in this section which is also used in section 36B of title 26 shall have the meaning given such term by such section.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1331, title X, §10104(o), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 199, 902.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsecs. (c)(4) and (e)(1)(A), (B), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Titles XIX and XXI of the Act are classified generally to subchapters XIX (§1396 et seq.) and XXI (§1397aa et seq.), respectively, of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(3)(A)(iii), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (d)(3)(A)(i). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(o)(1), substituted "95 percent" for "85 percent".

Subsec. (e)(1)(B). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(o)(2), inserted ", or, in the case of an alien lawfully present in the United States, whose income is not greater than 133 percent of the poverty line for the size of the family involved but who is not eligible for the Medicaid program under title XIX of the Social Security Act by reason of such alien status" before semicolon at end.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "health".*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be preceded by "is".*

§18052. Waiver for State innovation

(a) Application

(1) In general

A State may apply to the Secretary for the waiver of all or any requirements described in paragraph (2) with respect to health insurance coverage within that State for plan years beginning on or after January 1, 2017. Such application shall—

(A) be filed at such time and in such manner as the Secretary may require;

(B) contain such information as the Secretary may require, including—

(i) a comprehensive description of the State legislation and program to implement a plan meeting the requirements for a waiver under this section; and

(ii) a 10-year budget plan for such plan that is budget neutral for the Federal Government; and

(C) provide an assurance that the State has enacted the law described in subsection (b)(2).

(2) Requirements

The requirements described in this paragraph with respect to health insurance coverage within the State for plan years beginning on or after January 1, 2014, are as follows:

(A) Part A of this subchapter.

(B) Part B of this subchapter.

(C) Section 18071 of this title.

(D) Sections 36B, 4980H, and 5000A of title 26.

(3) Pass through of funding

With respect to a State waiver under paragraph (1), under which, due to the structure of the State plan, individuals and small employers in the State would not qualify for the premium tax credits, cost-sharing reductions, or small business credits under sections [1] 36B of title 26 or under part I of subtitle E for which they would otherwise be eligible, the Secretary shall provide for an alternative means by which the aggregate amount of such credits or reductions that would have been paid on behalf of participants in the Exchanges established under this title [2] had the State not received such waiver, shall be paid to the State for purposes of implementing the State plan under the waiver. Such amount shall be determined annually by the Secretary, taking into consideration the experience of other States with respect to participation in an Exchange and credits and reductions provided under such provisions to residents of the other States.

(4) Waiver consideration and transparency

(A) In general

An application for a waiver under this section shall be considered by the Secretary in accordance with the regulations described in subparagraph (B).

(B) Regulations

Not later than 180 days after March 23, 2010, the Secretary shall promulgate regulations relating to waivers under this section that provide—

(i) a process for public notice and comment at the State level, including public hearings, sufficient to ensure a meaningful level of public input;

(ii) a process for the submission of an application that ensures the disclosure of—

(I) the provisions of law that the State involved seeks to waive; and

(II) the specific plans of the State to ensure that the waiver will be in compliance with subsection (b);

(iii) a process for providing public notice and comment after the application is received by the Secretary, that is sufficient to ensure a meaningful level of public input and that does not impose requirements that are in addition to, or duplicative of, requirements imposed under the Administrative Procedures Act,[2] or requirements that are unreasonable or unnecessarily burdensome with respect to State compliance;

(iv) a process for the submission to the Secretary of periodic reports by the State concerning the implementation of the program under the waiver; and

(v) a process for the periodic evaluation by the Secretary of the program under the waiver.

(C) Report

The Secretary shall annually report to Congress concerning actions taken by the Secretary with respect to applications for waivers under this section.

(5) Coordinated waiver process

The Secretary shall develop a process for coordinating and consolidating the State waiver processes applicable under the provisions of this section, and the existing waiver processes applicable under titles XVIII, XIX, and XXI of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1395 et seq., 1396 et seq., 1397aa et seq.], and any other Federal law relating to the provision of health care items or services. Such process shall permit a State to submit a single application for a waiver under any or all of such provisions.

(6) Definition

In this section, the term "Secretary" means—

(A) the Secretary of Health and Human Services with respect to waivers relating to the provisions described in subparagraph (A) through (C) of paragraph (2); and

(B) the Secretary of the Treasury with respect to waivers relating to the provisions described in paragraph (2)(D).

(b) Granting of waivers

(1) In general

The Secretary may grant a request for a waiver under subsection (a)(1) only if the Secretary determines that the State plan—

(A) will provide coverage that is at least as comprehensive as the coverage defined in section 18022(b) of this title and offered through Exchanges established under this title [2] as certified by Office [3] of the Actuary of the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services based on sufficient data from the State and from comparable States about their experience with programs created by this Act and the provisions of this Act that would be waived;

(B) will provide coverage and cost sharing protections against excessive out-of-pocket spending that are at least as affordable as the provisions of this title [2] would provide;

(C) will provide coverage to at least a comparable number of its residents as the provisions of this title [2] would provide; and

(D) will not increase the Federal deficit.

(2) Requirement to enact a law

(A) In general

A law described in this paragraph is a State law that provides for State actions under a waiver under this section, including the implementation of the State plan under subsection (a)(1)(B).

(B) Termination of opt out

A State may repeal a law described in subparagraph (A) and terminate the authority provided under the waiver with respect to the State.

(c) Scope of waiver

(1) In general

The Secretary shall determine the scope of a waiver of a requirement described in subsection (a)(2) granted to a State under subsection (a)(1).

(2) Limitation

The Secretary may not waive under this section any Federal law or requirement that is not within the authority of the Secretary.

(d) Determinations by Secretary

(1) Time for determination

The Secretary shall make a determination under subsection (a)(1) not later than 180 days after the receipt of an application from a State under such subsection.

(2) Effect of determination

(A) Granting of waivers

If the Secretary determines to grant a waiver under subsection (a)(1), the Secretary shall notify the State involved of such determination and the terms and effectiveness of such waiver.

(B) Denial of waiver

If the Secretary determines a waiver should not be granted under subsection (a)(1), the Secretary shall notify the State involved, and the appropriate committees of Congress of such determination and the reasons therefore.[4]

(e) Term of waiver

No waiver under this section may extend over a period of longer than 5 years unless the State requests continuation of such waiver, and such request shall be deemed granted unless the Secretary,

within 90 days after the date of its submission to the Secretary, either denies such request in writing or informs the State in writing with respect to any additional information which is needed in order to make a final determination with respect to the request.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1332, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 203.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Part I of subtitle E, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is part I (§§1401–1415) of subtitle E of title I of Pub. L. 111–148, which enacted subchapter IV of this chapter and section 36B of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, amended section 405 of this title, sections 280C, 6103, and 7213 of Title 26, and section 1324 of Title 31, Money and Finance, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 36B of Title 26. For complete classification of part I to the Code, see Tables.

This title, where footnoted in subsecs. (a)(3) and (b)(1)(A) to (C), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

The Administrative Procedures Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(B)(iii), probably means the Administrative Procedure Act, act June 11, 1946, ch. 324, 60 Stat. 237, which was classified to sections 1001 to 1011 of former title 5 and which was repealed and reenacted as subchapter II (§551 et seq.) of chapter 5, and chapter 7 (§701 et seq.), of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89–554, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378. See Short Title note preceding section 551 of Title 5.

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(5), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Titles XVIII, XIX, and XXI of the Act are classified generally to subchapters XVIII (§1395 et seq.), XIX (§1396 et seq.), and XXI (§1397aa et seq.), respectively, of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(A), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "section".

[2] See References in Text note below.

[3] So in original. Probably should be preceded by "the".

[4] So in original. Probably should be "therefor."

§18053. Provisions relating to offering of plans in more than one State

(a) Health care choice compacts

(1) In general

Not later than July 1, 2013, the Secretary shall, in consultation with the National Association of Insurance Commissioners, issue regulations for the creation of health care choice compacts under which 2 or more States may enter into an agreement under which—

(A) 1 or more qualified health plans could be offered in the individual markets in all such States but, except as provided in subparagraph (B), only be subject to the laws and regulations of the State in which the plan was written or issued;

(B) the issuer of any qualified health plan to which the compact applies—

(i) would continue to be subject to market conduct, unfair trade practices, network adequacy, and consumer protection standards (including standards relating to rating), including addressing disputes as to the performance of the contract, of the State in which the purchaser resides;

(ii) would be required to be licensed in each State in which it offers the plan under the compact or to submit to the jurisdiction of each such State with regard to the standards described in clause (i) (including allowing access to records as if the insurer were licensed in

the State); and

(iii) must clearly notify consumers that the policy may not be subject to all the laws and regulations of the State in which the purchaser resides.

(2) State authority

A State may not enter into an agreement under this subsection unless the State enacts a law after March 23, 2010, that specifically authorizes the State to enter into such agreements.

(3) Approval of compacts

The Secretary may approve interstate health care choice compacts under paragraph (1) only if the Secretary determines that such health care choice compact—

(A) will provide coverage that is at least as comprehensive as the coverage defined in section 18022(b) of this title and offered through Exchanges established under this title; [1]

(B) will provide coverage and cost sharing protections against excessive out-of-pocket spending that are at least as affordable as the provisions of this title [1] would provide;

(C) will provide coverage to at least a comparable number of its residents as the provisions of this title [1] would provide;

(D) will not increase the Federal deficit; and

(E) will not weaken enforcement of laws and regulations described in paragraph (1)(B)(i) in any State that is included in such compact.

(4) Effective date

A health care choice compact described in paragraph (1) shall not take effect before January 1, 2016.

(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 111–148, title X, §10104(p), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 902

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1333, title X, §10104(p), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 206, 902.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, where footnoted in subsec. (a)(3)(A) to (C), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(p), struck out subsec. (b) which provided authority and requirements for health insurance issuers to offer nationwide qualified health plans.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§18054. Multi-State plans

(a) Oversight by the Office of Personnel Management

(1) In general

The Director of the Office of Personnel Management (referred to in this section as the "Director") shall enter into contracts with health insurance issuers (which may include a group of health insurance issuers affiliated either by common ownership and control or by the common use of a nationally licensed service mark), without regard to section 6101 of title 41 or other statutes requiring competitive bidding, to offer at least 2 multi-State qualified health plans through each Exchange in each State. Such plans shall provide individual, or in the case of small employers, group coverage.

(2) Terms

Each contract entered into under paragraph (1) shall be for a uniform term of at least 1 year, but may be made automatically renewable from term to term in the absence of notice of termination

by either party. In entering into such contracts, the Director shall ensure that health benefits coverage is provided in accordance with the types of coverage provided for under section 2701(a)(1)(A)(i) of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 300gg(a)(1)(A)(i)].

(3) Non-profit entities

In entering into contracts under paragraph (1), the Director shall ensure that at least one contract is entered into with a non-profit entity.

(4) Administration

The Director shall implement this subsection in a manner similar to the manner in which the Director implements the contracting provisions with respect to carriers under the Federal employees health benefit program [1] under chapter 89 of title 5, including (through negotiating with each multi-state [2] plan)—

(A) a medical loss ratio;

(B) a profit margin;

(C) the premiums to be charged; and

(D) such other terms and conditions of coverage as are in the interests of enrollees in such plans.

(5) Authority to protect consumers

The Director may prohibit the offering of any multi-State health plan that does not meet the terms and conditions defined by the Director with respect to the elements described in subparagraphs (A) through (D) of paragraph (4).

(6) Assured availability of varied coverage

In entering into contracts under this subsection, the Director shall ensure that with respect to multi-State qualified health plans offered in an Exchange, there is at least one such plan that does not provide coverage of services described in section 18023(b)(1)(B)(i) of this title.

(7) Withdrawal

Approval of a contract under this subsection may be withdrawn by the Director only after notice and opportunity for hearing to the issuer concerned without regard to subchapter II of chapter 5 and chapter 7 of title 5.

(b) Eligibility

A health insurance issuer shall be eligible to enter into a contract under subsection (a)(1) if such issuer—

(1) agrees to offer a multi-State qualified health plan that meets the requirements of subsection (c) in each Exchange in each State;

(2) is licensed in each State and is subject to all requirements of State law not inconsistent with this section, including the standards and requirements that a State imposes that do not prevent the application of a requirement of part A of title XXVII of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 300gg et seq.] or a requirement of this title; [3]

(3) otherwise complies with the minimum standards prescribed for carriers offering health benefits plans under section 8902(e) of title 5 to the extent that such standards do not conflict with a provision of this title; [3] and

(4) meets such other requirements as determined appropriate by the Director, in consultation with the Secretary.

(c) Requirements for multi-State qualified health plan

(1) In general

A multi-State qualified health plan meets the requirements of this subsection if, in the determination of the Director—

(A) the plan offers a benefits package that is uniform in each State and consists of the essential benefits described in section 18022 of this title;

(B) the plan meets all requirements of this title [3] with respect to a qualified health plan, including requirements relating to the offering of the bronze, silver, and gold levels of coverage and catastrophic coverage in each State Exchange;

(C) except as provided in paragraph (5), the issuer provides for determinations of premiums for coverage under the plan on the basis of the rating requirements of part A of title XXVII of the Public Health Service Act; and

(D) the issuer offers the plan in all geographic regions, and in all States that have adopted adjusted community rating before March 23, 2010.

(2) States may offer additional benefits

Nothing in paragraph (1)(A) shall preclude a State from requiring that benefits in addition to the essential health benefits required under such paragraph be provided to enrollees of a multi-State qualified health plan offered in such State.

(3) Credits

(A) In general

An individual enrolled in a multi-State qualified health plan under this section shall be eligible for credits under section 36B of title 26 and cost sharing assistance under section 18071 of this title in the same manner as an individual who is enrolled in a qualified health plan.

(B) No additional Federal cost

A requirement by a State under paragraph (2) that benefits in addition to the essential health benefits required under paragraph (1)(A) be provided to enrollees of a multi-State qualified health plan shall not affect the amount of a premium tax credit provided under section 36B of title 26 with respect to such plan.

(4) State must assume cost

A State shall make payments—

(A) to an individual enrolled in a multi-State qualified health plan offered in such State; or

(B) on behalf of an individual described in subparagraph (A) directly to the multi-State qualified health plan in which such individual is enrolled;

to defray the cost of any additional benefits described in paragraph (2).

(5) Application of certain State rating requirements

With respect to a multi-State qualified health plan that is offered in a State with age rating requirements that are lower than 3:1, the State may require that Exchanges operating in such State only permit the offering of such multi-State qualified health plans if such plans comply with the State's more protective age rating requirements.

(d) Plans deemed to be certified

A multi-State qualified health plan that is offered under a contract under subsection (a) shall be deemed to be certified by an Exchange for purposes of section 18031(d)(4)(A) of this title.

(e) Phase-in

Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2) of subsection (b), the Director shall enter into a contract with a health insurance issuer for the offering of a multi-State qualified health plan under subsection (a) if—

(1) with respect to the first year for which the issuer offers such plan, such issuer offers the plan in at least 60 percent of the States;

(2) with respect to the second such year, such issuer offers the plan in at least 70 percent of the States;

(3) with respect to the third such year, such issuer offers the plan in at least 85 percent of the States; and

(4) with respect to each subsequent year, such issuer offers the plan in all States.

(f) Applicability

The requirements under chapter 89 of title 5 applicable to health benefits plans under such chapter shall apply to multi-State qualified health plans provided for under this section to the extent that such requirements do not conflict with a provision of this title.[3]

(g) Continued support for FEHBP

(1) Maintenance of effort

Nothing in this section shall be construed to permit the Director to allocate fewer financial or personnel resources to the functions of the Office of Personnel Management related to the administration of the Federal Employees Health Benefit Program under chapter 89 of title 5.

(2) Separate risk pool

Enrollees in multi-State qualified health plans under this section shall be treated as a separate risk pool apart from enrollees in the Federal Employees Health Benefit Program under chapter 89 of title 5.

(3) Authority to establish separate entities

The Director may establish such separate units or offices within the Office of Personnel Management as the Director determines to be appropriate to ensure that the administration of multi-State qualified health plans under this section does not interfere with the effective administration of the Federal Employees Health Benefit Program under chapter 89 of title 5.

(4) Effective oversight

The Director may appoint such additional personnel as may be necessary to enable the Director to carry out activities under this section.

(5) Assurance of separate program

In carrying out this section, the Director shall ensure that the program under this section is separate from the Federal Employees Health Benefit Program under chapter 89 of title 5. Premiums paid for coverage under a multi-State qualified health plan under this section shall not be considered to be Federal funds for any purposes.

(6) FEHBP plans not required to participate

Nothing in this section shall require that a carrier offering coverage under the Federal Employees Health Benefit Program under chapter 89 of title 5 also offer a multi-State qualified health plan under this section.

(h) Advisory board

The Director shall establish an advisory board to provide recommendations on the activities described in this section. A significant percentage of the members of such board shall be comprised of enrollees in a multi-State qualified health plan, or representatives of such enrollees.

(i) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated, such sums as may be necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1334, as added Pub. L. 111–148, title X, §10104(q), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 902.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Public Health Service Act, referred to in subsecs. (b)(2) and (c)(1)(C), is act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682. Part A of title XXVII of the Act is classified generally to part A (§300gg et seq.) of subchapter XXV of chapter 6A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

This title, referred to in subsecs. (b)(2), (3), (c)(1)(B), and (f), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a)(1), "section 6101 of title 41" substituted for "section 5 of title 41, United States Code," on authority of Pub. L. 111–350, §6(c), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 3854, which Act enacted Title 41, Public Contracts.

[1] So in original. The words "employees health benefit program" probably should be capitalized.

[2] So in original. Probably should be "multi-State".

[3] See References in Text note below.

PART E—REINSURANCE AND RISK ADJUSTMENT

§18061. Transitional reinsurance program for individual market in each State

(a) In general

Each State shall, not later than January 1, 2014—

(1) include in the Federal standards or State law or regulation the State adopts and has in effect under section 18041(b) of this title the provisions described in subsection (b); and

(2) establish (or enter into a contract with) 1 or more applicable reinsurance entities to carry out the reinsurance program under this section.

(b) Model regulation

(1) In general

In establishing the Federal standards under section 18041(a) of this title, the Secretary, in consultation with the National Association of Insurance Commissioners (the "NAIC"), shall include provisions that enable States to establish and maintain a program under which—

(A) health insurance issuers, and third party administrators on behalf of group health plans, are required to make payments to an applicable reinsurance entity for any plan year beginning in the 3-year period beginning January 1, 2014 (as specified in paragraph (3); [1] and

(B) the applicable reinsurance entity collects payments under subparagraph (A) and uses amounts so collected to make reinsurance payments to health insurance issuers described in subparagraph (A) that cover high risk individuals in the individual market (excluding grandfathered health plans) for any plan year beginning in such 3-year period.

(2) High-risk individual; payment amounts

The Secretary shall include the following in the provisions under paragraph (1):

(A) Determination of high-risk individuals

The method by which individuals will be identified as high risk individuals for purposes of the reinsurance program established under this section. Such method shall provide for identification of individuals as high-risk individuals on the basis of—

(i) a list of at least 50 but not more than 100 medical conditions that are identified as high-risk conditions and that may be based on the identification of diagnostic and procedure codes that are indicative of individuals with pre-existing, high-risk conditions; or

(ii) any other comparable objective method of identification recommended by the American Academy of Actuaries.

(B) Payment amount

The formula for determining the amount of payments that will be paid to health insurance issuers described in paragraph (1)(B) that insure high-risk individuals. Such formula shall

provide for the equitable allocation of available funds through reconciliation and may be designed—

(i) to provide a schedule of payments that specifies the amount that will be paid for each of the conditions identified under subparagraph (A); or

(ii) to use any other comparable method for determining payment amounts that is recommended by the American Academy of Actuaries and that encourages the use of care coordination and care management programs for high risk conditions.

(3) Determination of required contributions

(A) In general

The Secretary shall include in the provisions under paragraph (1) the method for determining the amount each health insurance issuer and group health plan described in paragraph (1)(A) contributing to the reinsurance program under this section is required to contribute under such paragraph for each plan year beginning in the 36-month period beginning January 1, 2014. The contribution amount for any plan year may be based on the percentage of revenue of each issuer and the total costs of providing benefits to enrollees in self-insured plans or on a specified amount per enrollee and may be required to be paid in advance or periodically throughout the plan year.

(B) Specific requirements

The method under this paragraph shall be designed so that—

(i) the contribution amount for each issuer proportionally reflects each issuer's fully insured commercial book of business for all major medical products and the total value of all fees charged by the issuer and the costs of coverage administered by the issuer as a third party administrator;

(ii) the contribution amount can include an additional amount to fund the administrative expenses of the applicable reinsurance entity;

(iii) the aggregate contribution amounts for all States shall, based on the best estimates of the NAIC and without regard to amounts described in clause (ii), equal $10,000,000,000 for plan years beginning in 2014, $6,000,000,000 for plan years beginning [2] 2015, and $4,000,000,000 for plan years beginning in 2016; and

(iv) in addition to the aggregate contribution amounts under clause (iii), each issuer's contribution amount for any calendar year under clause (iii) reflects its proportionate share of an additional $2,000,000,000 for 2014, an additional $2,000,000,000 for 2015, and an additional $1,000,000,000 for 2016.

Nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed to preclude a State from collecting additional amounts from issuers on a voluntary basis.

(4) Expenditure of funds

The provisions under paragraph (1) shall provide that—

(A) the contribution amounts collected for any calendar year may be allocated and used in any of the three calendar years for which amounts are collected based on the reinsurance needs of a particular period or to reflect experience in a prior period; and

(B) amounts remaining unexpended as of December, 2016, may be used to make payments under any reinsurance program of a State in the individual market in effect in the 2-year period beginning on January 1, 2017.

Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, any contribution amounts described in paragraph (3)(B)(iv) shall be deposited into the general fund of the Treasury of the United States and may not be used for the program established under this section.

(c) Applicable reinsurance entity

For purposes of this section—

(1) In general

The term "applicable reinsurance entity" means a not-for-profit organization—

(A) the purpose of which is to help stabilize premiums for coverage in the individual market in a State during the first 3 years of operation of an Exchange for such markets within the State when the risk of adverse selection related to new rating rules and market changes is greatest; and

(B) the duties of which shall be to carry out the reinsurance program under this section by coordinating the funding and operation of the risk-spreading mechanisms designed to implement the reinsurance program.

(2) State discretion

A State may have more than 1 applicable reinsurance entity to carry out the reinsurance program under this section within the State and 2 or more States may enter into agreements to provide for an applicable reinsurance entity to carry out such program in all such States.

(3) Entities are tax-exempt

An applicable reinsurance entity established under this section shall be exempt from taxation under chapter 1 of title 26. The preceding sentence shall not apply to the tax imposed by section 511 such [3] title (relating to tax on unrelated business taxable income of an exempt organization).

(d) Coordination with State high-risk pools

The State shall eliminate or modify any State high-risk pool to the extent necessary to carry out the reinsurance program established under this section. The State may coordinate the State high-risk pool with such program to the extent not inconsistent with the provisions of this section.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1341, title X, §10104(r), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 208, 906.)

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(r)(1), substituted "market" for "and small group markets" in section catchline.

Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(r)(2), substituted "paragraph (1)(B)" for "paragraph (1)(A)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(1)(A). Pub. L. 111–148, §10104(r)(3), substituted "individual market" for "individual and small group markets".

[1] So in original. A second closing parenthesis probably should precede the semicolon.

[2] So in original. Probably should be followed by "in".

[3] So in original. Probably should be preceded by "of".

§18062. Establishment of risk corridors for plans in individual and small group markets

(a) In general

The Secretary shall establish and administer a program of risk corridors for calendar years 2014, 2015, and 2016 under which a qualified health plan offered in the individual or small group market shall participate in a payment adjustment system based on the ratio of the allowable costs of the plan to the plan's aggregate premiums. Such program shall be based on the program for regional participating provider organizations under part D of title XVIII of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1395w–101 et seq.].

(b) Payment methodology

(1) Payments out

The Secretary shall provide under the program established under subsection (a) that if—

(A) a participating plan's allowable costs for any plan year are more than 103 percent but not more than 108 percent of the target amount, the Secretary shall pay to the plan an amount equal to 50 percent of the target amount in excess of 103 percent of the target amount; and

(B) a participating plan's allowable costs for any plan year are more than 108 percent of the target amount, the Secretary shall pay to the plan an amount equal to the sum of 2.5 percent of the target amount plus 80 percent of allowable costs in excess of 108 percent of the target amount.

(2) Payments in

The Secretary shall provide under the program established under subsection (a) that if—

(A) a participating plan's allowable costs for any plan year are less than 97 percent but not less than 92 percent of the target amount, the plan shall pay to the Secretary an amount equal to 50 percent of the excess of 97 percent of the target amount over the allowable costs; and

(B) a participating plan's allowable costs for any plan year are less than 92 percent of the target amount, the plan shall pay to the Secretary an amount equal to the sum of 2.5 percent of the target amount plus 80 percent of the excess of 92 percent of the target amount over the allowable costs.

(c) Definitions

In this section:

(1) Allowable costs

(A) In general

The amount of allowable costs of a plan for any year is an amount equal to the total costs (other than administrative costs) of the plan in providing benefits covered by the plan.

(B) Reduction for risk adjustment and reinsurance payments

Allowable costs shall [1] reduced by any risk adjustment and reinsurance payments received under section [2] 18061 and 18063 of this title.

(2) Target amount

The target amount of a plan for any year is an amount equal to the total premiums (including any premium subsidies under any governmental program), reduced by the administrative costs of the plan.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1342, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 211.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Part D of title XVIII of the Act is classified generally to part D (§1395w–101 et seq.) of subchapter XVIII of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

[1] So in original. Probably should be followed by "be".

[2] So in original. Probably should be "sections".

§18063. Risk adjustment

(a) In general

(1) Low actuarial risk plans

Using the criteria and methods developed under subsection (b), each State shall assess a charge on health plans and health insurance issuers (with respect to health insurance coverage) described in subsection (c) if the actuarial risk of the enrollees of such plans or coverage for a year is less

than the average actuarial risk of all enrollees in all plans or coverage in such State for such year that are not self-insured group health plans (which are subject to the provisions of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 [29 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.]).

(2) High actuarial risk plans

Using the criteria and methods developed under subsection (b), each State shall provide a payment to health plans and health insurance issuers (with respect to health insurance coverage) described in subsection (c) if the actuarial risk of the enrollees of such plans or coverage for a year is greater than the average actuarial risk of all enrollees in all plans and coverage in such State for such year that are not self-insured group health plans (which are subject to the provisions of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974).

(b) Criteria and methods

The Secretary, in consultation with States, shall establish criteria and methods to be used in carrying out the risk adjustment activities under this section. The Secretary may utilize criteria and methods similar to the criteria and methods utilized under part C or D of title XVIII of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1395w–21 et seq., 1395w–101 et seq.]. Such criteria and methods shall be included in the standards and requirements the Secretary prescribes under section 18041 of this title.

(c) Scope

A health plan or a health insurance issuer is described in this subsection if such health plan or health insurance issuer provides coverage in the individual or small group market within the State. This subsection shall not apply to a grandfathered health plan or the issuer of a grandfathered health plan with respect to that plan.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1343, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 212.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 93–406, Sept. 2, 1974, 88 Stat. 829, which is classified principally to chapter 18 (§1001 et seq.) of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 29 and Tables.

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Parts C and D of title XVIII of the Act are classified generally to parts C (§1395w–21 et seq.) and D (§1395w–101 et seq.), respectively, of subchapter XVIII of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

SUBCHAPTER IV—AFFORDABLE COVERAGE CHOICES FOR ALL AMERICANS

PART A—PREMIUM TAX CREDITS AND COST-SHARING REDUCTIONS

§18071. Reduced cost-sharing for individuals enrolling in qualified health plans

(a) In general

In the case of an eligible insured enrolled in a qualified health plan—

(1) the Secretary shall notify the issuer of the plan of such eligibility; and

(2) the issuer shall reduce the cost-sharing under the plan at the level and in the manner specified in subsection (c).

(b) Eligible insured

In this section, the term "eligible insured" means an individual—

(1) who enrolls in a qualified health plan in the silver level of coverage in the individual market offered through an Exchange; and

(2) whose household income exceeds 100 percent but does not exceed 400 percent of the poverty line for a family of the size involved.

In the case of an individual described in section 36B(c)(1)(B) of title 26, the individual shall be treated as having household income equal to 100 percent for purposes of applying this section.

(c) Determination of reduction in cost-sharing

(1) Reduction in out-of-pocket limit

(A) In general

The reduction in cost-sharing under this subsection shall first be achieved by reducing the applicable out-of pocket [1] limit under section 18022(c)(1) of this title in the case of—

(i) an eligible insured whose household income is more than 100 percent but not more than 200 percent of the poverty line for a family of the size involved, by two-thirds;

(ii) an eligible insured whose household income is more than 200 percent but not more than 300 percent of the poverty line for a family of the size involved, by one-half; and

(iii) an eligible insured whose household income is more than 300 percent but not more than 400 percent of the poverty line for a family of the size involved, by one-third.

(B) Coordination with actuarial value limits

(i) In general

The Secretary shall ensure the reduction under this paragraph shall not result in an increase in the plan's share of the total allowed costs of benefits provided under the plan above—

(I) 94 percent in the case of an eligible insured described in paragraph (2)(A);

(II) 87 percent in the case of an eligible insured described in paragraph (2)(B);

(III) 73 percent in the case of an eligible insured whose household income is more than 200 percent but not more than 250 percent of the poverty line for a family of the size involved; and

(IV) 70 percent in the case of an eligible insured whose household income is more than 250 percent but not more than 400 percent of the poverty line for a family of the size involved.

(ii) Adjustment

The Secretary shall adjust the out-of pocket [1] limits under paragraph (1) if necessary to ensure that such limits do not cause the respective actuarial values to exceed the levels specified in clause (i).

(2) Additional reduction for lower income insureds

The Secretary shall establish procedures under which the issuer of a qualified health plan to which this section applies shall further reduce cost-sharing under the plan in a manner sufficient to—

(A) in the case of an eligible insured whose household income is not less than 100 percent but not more than 150 percent of the poverty line for a family of the size involved, increase the plan's share of the total allowed costs of benefits provided under the plan to 94 percent of such costs;

(B) in the case of an eligible insured whose household income is more than 150 percent but not more than 200 percent of the poverty line for a family of the size involved, increase the plan's share of the total allowed costs of benefits provided under the plan to 87 percent of such costs; and

(C) in the case of an eligible insured whose household income is more than 200 percent but not more than 250 percent of the poverty line for a family of the size involved, increase the

plan's share of the total allowed costs of benefits provided under the plan to 73 percent of such costs.

(3) Methods for reducing cost-sharing

(A) In general

An issuer of a qualified health plan making reductions under this subsection shall notify the Secretary of such reductions and the Secretary shall make periodic and timely payments to the issuer equal to the value of the reductions.

(B) Capitated payments

The Secretary may establish a capitated payment system to carry out the payment of cost-sharing reductions under this section. Any such system shall take into account the value of the reductions and make appropriate risk adjustments to such payments.

(4) Additional benefits

If a qualified health plan under section 18022(b)(5) of this title offers benefits in addition to the essential health benefits required to be provided by the plan, or a State requires a qualified health plan under section 18031(d)(3)(B) of this title to cover benefits in addition to the essential health benefits required to be provided by the plan, the reductions in cost-sharing under this section shall not apply to such additional benefits.

(5) Special rule for pediatric dental plans

If an individual enrolls in both a qualified health plan and a plan described in section 18031(d)(2)(B)(ii)(I) [2] of this title for any plan year, subsection (a) shall not apply to that portion of any reduction in cost-sharing under subsection (c) that (under regulations prescribed by the Secretary) is properly allocable to pediatric dental benefits which are included in the essential health benefits required to be provided by a qualified health plan under section 18022(b)(1)(J) of this title.

(d) Special rules for Indians

(1) Indians under 300 percent of poverty

If an individual enrolled in any qualified health plan in the individual market through an Exchange is an Indian (as defined in section 5304(d) of title 25) whose household income is not more than 300 percent of the poverty line for a family of the size involved, then, for purposes of this section—

(A) such individual shall be treated as an eligible insured; and

(B) the issuer of the plan shall eliminate any cost-sharing under the plan.

(2) Items or services furnished through Indian health providers

If an Indian (as so defined) enrolled in a qualified health plan is furnished an item or service directly by the Indian Health Service, an Indian Tribe, Tribal Organization, or Urban Indian Organization or through referral under contract health services—

(A) no cost-sharing under the plan shall be imposed under the plan for such item or service; and

(B) the issuer of the plan shall not reduce the payment to any such entity for such item or service by the amount of any cost-sharing that would be due from the Indian but for subparagraph (A).

(3) Payment

The Secretary shall pay to the issuer of a qualified health plan the amount necessary to reflect the increase in actuarial value of the plan required by reason of this subsection.

(e) Rules for individuals not lawfully present

(1) In general

If an individual who is an eligible insured is not lawfully present—

(A) no cost-sharing reduction under this section shall apply with respect to the individual; and

(B) for purposes of applying this section, the determination as to what percentage a taxpayer's household income bears to the poverty level for a family of the size involved shall be made under one of the following methods:

(i) A method under which—

(I) the taxpayer's family size is determined by not taking such individuals into account, and

(II) the taxpayer's household income is equal to the product of the taxpayer's household income (determined without regard to this subsection) and a fraction—

(aa) the numerator of which is the poverty line for the taxpayer's family size determined after application of subclause (I), and

(bb) the denominator of which is the poverty line for the taxpayer's family size determined without regard to subclause (I).

(ii) A comparable method reaching the same result as the method under clause (i).

(2) Lawfully present

For purposes of this section, an individual shall be treated as lawfully present only if the individual is, and is reasonably expected to be for the entire period of enrollment for which the cost-sharing reduction under this section is being claimed, a citizen or national of the United States or an alien lawfully present in the United States.

(3) Secretarial authority

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, shall prescribe rules setting forth the methods by which calculations of family size and household income are made for purposes of this subsection. Such rules shall be designed to ensure that the least burden is placed on individuals enrolling in qualified health plans through an Exchange and taxpayers eligible for the credit allowable under this section.

(f) Definitions and special rules

In this section:

(1) In general

Any term used in this section which is also used in section 36B of title 26 shall have the meaning given such term by such section.

(2) Limitations on reduction

No cost-sharing reduction shall be allowed under this section with respect to coverage for any month unless the month is a coverage month with respect to which a credit is allowed to the insured (or an applicable taxpayer on behalf of the insured) under section 36B of such title.

(3) Data used for eligibility

Any determination under this section shall be made on the basis of the taxable year for which the advance determination is made under section 18082 of this title and not the taxable year for which the credit under section 36B of title 26 is allowed.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1402, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 220; Pub. L. 111–152, title I, §1001(b), Mar. 30, 2010, 124 Stat. 1031.)

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (c)(1)(B)(i)(I). Pub. L. 111–152, §1001(b)(1)(A), substituted "94" for "90".

Subsec. (c)(1)(B)(i)(II). Pub. L. 111–152, §1001(b)(1)(B)(i), substituted "87" for "80".

Subsec. (c)(1)(B)(i)(III), (IV). Pub. L. 111–152, §1001(b)(1)(B)(ii), (C), added subcls. (III) and (IV) and struck out former subcl. (III). Prior to amendment, subcl. (III) read as follows: "70 percent in the case of an eligible insured described in clause (ii) or (iii) of subparagraph (A)."

Subsec. (c)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–152, §1001(b)(2)(A)(i), substituted "94" for "90".

Subsec. (c)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–152, §1001(b)(2)(B)(i), substituted "87" for "80".
Subsec. (c)(2)(C). Pub. L. 111–152, §1001(b)(2)(A)(ii), (B)(ii), (C), added subpar. (C).

[1] So in original. Probably should be "out-of-pocket".

[2] So in original. Probably should be "18031(d)(3)(B)(ii)(I)".

PART B—ELIGIBILITY DETERMINATIONS

§18081. Procedures for determining eligibility for Exchange participation, premium tax credits and reduced cost-sharing, and individual responsibility exemptions

(a) Establishment of program

The Secretary shall establish a program meeting the requirements of this section for determining—

(1) whether an individual who is to be covered in the individual market by a qualified health plan offered through an Exchange, or who is claiming a premium tax credit or reduced cost-sharing, meets the requirements of sections 18032(f)(3), 18071(e), and 18082(d) of this title and section 36B(e) of title 26 that the individual be a citizen or national of the United States or an alien lawfully present in the United States;

(2) in the case of an individual claiming a premium tax credit or reduced cost-sharing under section 36B of title 26 or section 18071 of this title—

(A) whether the individual meets the income and coverage requirements of such sections; and

(B) the amount of the tax credit or reduced cost-sharing;

(3) whether an individual's coverage under an employer-sponsored health benefits plan is treated as unaffordable under sections 36B(c)(2)(C) and 5000A(e)(2) of title 26; [1] and

(4) whether to grant a certification under section 18031(d)(4)(H) of this title attesting that, for purposes of the individual responsibility requirement under section 5000A of title 26, an individual is entitled to an exemption from either the individual responsibility requirement or the penalty imposed by such section.

(b) Information required to be provided by applicants

(1) In general

An applicant for enrollment in a qualified health plan offered through an Exchange in the individual market shall provide—

(A) the name, address, and date of birth of each individual who is to be covered by the plan (in this subsection referred to as an "enrollee"); and

(B) the information required by any of the following paragraphs that is applicable to an enrollee.

(2) Citizenship or immigration status

The following information shall be provided with respect to every enrollee:

(A) In the case of an enrollee whose eligibility is based on an attestation of citizenship of the enrollee, the enrollee's social security number.

(B) In the case of an individual whose eligibility is based on an attestation of the enrollee's immigration status, the enrollee's social security number (if applicable) and such identifying information with respect to the enrollee's immigration status as the Secretary, after consultation with the Secretary of Homeland Security, determines appropriate.

(3) Eligibility and amount of tax credit or reduced cost-sharing

In the case of an enrollee with respect to whom a premium tax credit or reduced cost-sharing under section 36B of title 26 or section 18071 of this title is being claimed, the following information:

(A) Information regarding income and family size

The information described in section 6103(l)(21) of title 26 [1] for the taxable year ending with or within the second calendar year preceding the calendar year in which the plan year begins.

(B) Certain individual health insurance policies obtained through small employers

The amount of the enrollee's permitted benefit (as defined in section 9831(d)(3)(C) of title 26) under a qualified small employer health reimbursement arrangement (as defined in section 9831(d)(2) of such title).

(C) Changes in circumstances

The information described in section 18082(b)(2) of this title, including information with respect to individuals who were not required to file an income tax return for the taxable year described in subparagraph (A) or individuals who experienced changes in marital status or family size or significant reductions in income.

(4) Employer-sponsored coverage

In the case of an enrollee with respect to whom eligibility for a premium tax credit under section 36B of title 26 or cost-sharing reduction under section 18071 of this title is being established on the basis that the enrollee's (or related individual's) employer is not treated under section 36B(c)(2)(C) of title 26 as providing minimum essential coverage or affordable minimum essential coverage, the following information:

(A) The name, address, and employer identification number (if available) of the employer.

(B) Whether the enrollee or individual is a full-time employee and whether the employer provides such minimum essential coverage.

(C) If the employer provides such minimum essential coverage, the lowest cost option for the enrollee's or individual's enrollment status and the enrollee's or individual's required contribution (within the meaning of section 5000A(e)(1)(B) of title 26) under the employer-sponsored plan.

(D) If an enrollee claims an employer's minimum essential coverage is unaffordable, the information described in paragraph (3).

If an enrollee changes employment or obtains additional employment while enrolled in a qualified health plan for which such credit or reduction is allowed, the enrollee shall notify the Exchange of such change or additional employment and provide the information described in this paragraph with respect to the new employer.

(5) Exemptions from individual responsibility requirements

In the case of an individual who is seeking an exemption certificate under section 18031(d)(4)(H) of this title from any requirement or penalty imposed by section 5000A of title 26, [1] the following information:

(A) In the case of an individual seeking exemption based on the individual's status as a member of an exempt religious sect or division, as a member of a health care sharing ministry, as an Indian, or as an individual eligible for a hardship exemption, such information as the Secretary shall prescribe.

(B) In the case of an individual seeking exemption based on the lack of affordable coverage or the individual's status as a taxpayer with household income less than 100 percent of the poverty line, the information described in paragraphs (3) and (4), as applicable.

(c) Verification of information contained in records of specific Federal officials

(1) Information transferred to Secretary

An Exchange shall submit the information provided by an applicant under subsection (b) to the

Secretary for verification in accordance with the requirements of this subsection and subsection (d).

(2) Citizenship or immigration status

(A) Commissioner of Social Security

The Secretary shall submit to the Commissioner of Social Security the following information for a determination as to whether the information provided is consistent with the information in the records of the Commissioner:

(i) The name, date of birth, and social security number of each individual for whom such information was provided under subsection (b)(2).

(ii) The attestation of an individual that the individual is a citizen.

(B) Secretary of Homeland Security

(i) In general

In the case of an individual—

(I) who attests that the individual is an alien lawfully present in the United States; or

(II) who attests that the individual is a citizen but with respect to whom the Commissioner of Social Security has notified the Secretary under subsection (e)(3) that the attestation is inconsistent with information in the records maintained by the Commissioner;

the Secretary shall submit to the Secretary of Homeland Security the information described in clause (ii) for a determination as to whether the information provided is consistent with the information in the records of the Secretary of Homeland Security.

(ii) Information

The information described in clause (ii) is the following:

(I) The name, date of birth, and any identifying information with respect to the individual's immigration status provided under subsection (b)(2).

(II) The attestation that the individual is an alien lawfully present in the United States or in the case of an individual described in clause (i)(II), the attestation that the individual is a citizen.

(3) Eligibility for tax credit and cost-sharing reduction

The Secretary shall submit the information described in subsection (b)(3)(A) provided under paragraph (3), (4), or (5) of subsection (b) to the Secretary of the Treasury for verification of household income and family size for purposes of eligibility.

(4) Methods

(A) In general

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of Homeland Security, and the Commissioner of Social Security, shall provide that verifications and determinations under this subsection shall be done—

(i) through use of an on-line system or otherwise for the electronic submission of, and response to, the information submitted under this subsection with respect to an applicant; or

(ii) by determining the consistency of the information submitted with the information maintained in the records of the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of Homeland Security, or the Commissioner of Social Security through such other method as is approved by the Secretary.

(B) Flexibility

The Secretary may modify the methods used under the program established by this section for the Exchange [2] and verification of information if the Secretary determines such modifications would reduce the administrative costs and burdens on the applicant, including allowing an applicant to request the Secretary of the Treasury to provide the information

described in paragraph (3) directly to the Exchange or to the Secretary. The Secretary shall not make any such modification unless the Secretary determines that any applicable requirements under this section and section 6103 of title 26 with respect to the confidentiality, disclosure, maintenance, or use of information will be met.

(d) Verification by Secretary

In the case of information provided under subsection (b) that is not required under subsection (c) to be submitted to another person for verification, the Secretary shall verify the accuracy of such information in such manner as the Secretary determines appropriate, including delegating responsibility for verification to the Exchange.

(e) Actions relating to verification

(1) In general

Each person to whom the Secretary provided information under subsection (c) shall report to the Secretary under the method established under subsection (c)(4) the results of its verification and the Secretary shall notify the Exchange of such results. Each person to whom the Secretary provided information under subsection (d) shall report to the Secretary in such manner as the Secretary determines appropriate.

(2) Verification

(A) Eligibility for enrollment and premium tax credits and cost-sharing reductions

If information provided by an applicant under paragraphs (1), (2), (3), and (4) of subsection (b) is verified under subsections (c) and (d)—

(i) the individual's eligibility to enroll through the Exchange and to apply for premium tax credits and cost-sharing reductions shall be satisfied; and

(ii) the Secretary shall, if applicable, notify the Secretary of the Treasury under section 18082(c) of this title of the amount of any advance payment to be made.

(B) Exemption from individual responsibility

If information provided by an applicant under subsection (b)(5) is verified under subsections (c) and (d), the Secretary shall issue the certification of exemption described in section 18031(d)(4)(H) of this title.

(3) Inconsistencies involving attestation of citizenship or lawful presence

If the information provided by any applicant under subsection (b)(2) is inconsistent with information in the records maintained by the Commissioner of Social Security or Secretary of Homeland Security, whichever is applicable, the applicant's eligibility will be determined in the same manner as an individual's eligibility under the medicaid program is determined under section 1396a(ee) of this title (as in effect on January 1, 2010).

(4) Inconsistencies involving other information

(A) In general

If the information provided by an applicant under subsection (b) (other than subsection (b)(2)) is inconsistent with information in the records maintained by persons under subsection (c) or is not verified under subsection (d), the Secretary shall notify the Exchange and the Exchange shall take the following actions:

(i) Reasonable effort

The Exchange shall make a reasonable effort to identify and address the causes of such inconsistency, including through typographical or other clerical errors, by contacting the applicant to confirm the accuracy of the information, and by taking such additional actions as the Secretary, through regulation or other guidance, may identify.

(ii) Notice and opportunity to correct

In the case the inconsistency or inability to verify is not resolved under subparagraph (A),

the Exchange shall—

(I) notify the applicant of such fact;

(II) provide the applicant an opportunity to either present satisfactory documentary evidence or resolve the inconsistency with the person verifying the information under subsection (c) or (d) during the 90-day period beginning the date on which the notice required under subclause (I) is sent to the applicant.

The Secretary may extend the 90-day period under subclause (II) for enrollments occurring during 2014.

(B) Specific actions not involving citizenship or lawful presence

(i) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (3), the Exchange shall, during any period before the close of the period under subparagraph (A)(ii)(II), make any determination under paragraphs (2), (3), and (4) of subsection (a) on the basis of the information contained on the application.

(ii) Eligibility or amount of credit or reduction

If an inconsistency involving the eligibility for, or amount of, any premium tax credit or cost-sharing reduction is unresolved under this subsection as of the close of the period under subparagraph (A)(ii)(II), the Exchange shall notify the applicant of the amount (if any) of the credit or reduction that is determined on the basis of the records maintained by persons under subsection (c).

(iii) Employer affordability

If the Secretary notifies an Exchange that an enrollee is eligible for a premium tax credit under section 36B of title 26 or cost-sharing reduction under section 18071 of this title because the enrollee's (or related individual's) employer does not provide minimum essential coverage through an employer-sponsored plan or that the employer does provide that coverage but it is not affordable coverage, the Exchange shall notify the employer of such fact and that the employer may be liable for the payment assessed under section 4980H of title 26.

(iv) Exemption

In any case where the inconsistency involving, or inability to verify, information provided under subsection (b)(5) is not resolved as of the close of the period under subparagraph (A)(ii)(II), the Exchange shall notify an applicant that no certification of exemption from any requirement or payment under section 5000A of such title will be issued.

(C) Appeals process

The Exchange shall also notify each person receiving notice under this paragraph of the appeals processes established under subsection (f).

(f) Appeals and redeterminations

(1) In general

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of Homeland Security, and the Commissioner of Social Security, shall establish procedures by which the Secretary or one of such other Federal officers—

(A) hears and makes decisions with respect to appeals of any determination under subsection (e); and

(B) redetermines eligibility on a periodic basis in appropriate circumstances.

(2) Employer liability

(A) In general

The Secretary shall establish a separate appeals process for employers who are notified under subsection (e)(4)(C) that the employer may be liable for a tax imposed by section 4980H of title

26 with respect to an employee because of a determination that the employer does not provide minimum essential coverage through an employer-sponsored plan or that the employer does provide that coverage but it is not affordable coverage with respect to an employee. Such process shall provide an employer the opportunity to—

(i) present information to the Exchange for review of the determination either by the Exchange or the person making the determination, including evidence of the employer-sponsored plan and employer contributions to the plan; and

(ii) have access to the data used to make the determination to the extent allowable by law.

Such process shall be in addition to any rights of appeal the employer may have under subtitle F of such title.

(B) Confidentiality

Notwithstanding any provision of this title [1] (or the amendments made by this title) [1] or section 6103 of title 26, an employer shall not be entitled to any taxpayer return information with respect to an employee for purposes of determining whether the employer is subject to the penalty under section 4980H of title 26 with respect to the employee, except that—

(i) the employer may be notified as to the name of an employee and whether or not the employee's income is above or below the threshold by which the affordability of an employer's health insurance coverage is measured; and

(ii) this subparagraph shall not apply to an employee who provides a waiver (at such time and in such manner as the Secretary may prescribe) authorizing an employer to have access to the employee's taxpayer return information.

(g) Confidentiality of applicant information

(1) In general

An applicant for insurance coverage or for a premium tax credit or cost-sharing reduction shall be required to provide only the information strictly necessary to authenticate identity, determine eligibility, and determine the amount of the credit or reduction.

(2) Receipt of information

Any person who receives information provided by an applicant under subsection (b) (whether directly or by another person at the request of the applicant), or receives information from a Federal agency under subsection (c), (d), or (e), shall—

(A) use the information only for the purposes of, and to the extent necessary in, ensuring the efficient operation of the Exchange, including verifying the eligibility of an individual to enroll through an Exchange or to claim a premium tax credit or cost-sharing reduction or the amount of the credit or reduction; and

(B) not disclose the information to any other person except as provided in this section.

(h) Penalties

(1) False or fraudulent information

(A) Civil penalty

(i) In general

If—

(I) any person fails to provides [3] correct information under subsection (b); and

(II) such failure is attributable to negligence or disregard of any rules or regulations of the Secretary,

such person shall be subject, in addition to any other penalties that may be prescribed by law, to a civil penalty of not more than $25,000 with respect to any failures involving an application for a plan year. For purposes of this subparagraph, the terms "negligence" and "disregard" shall have the same meanings as when used in section 6662 of title 26.

(ii) Reasonable cause exception

No penalty shall be imposed under clause (i) if the Secretary determines that there was a reasonable cause for the failure and that the person acted in good faith.

(B) Knowing and willful violations

Any person who knowingly and willfully provides false or fraudulent information under subsection (b) shall be subject, in addition to any other penalties that may be prescribed by law, to a civil penalty of not more than $250,000.

(2) Improper use or disclosure of information

Any person who knowingly and willfully uses or discloses information in violation of subsection (g) shall be subject, in addition to any other penalties that may be prescribed by law, to a civil penalty of not more than $25,000.

(3) Limitations on liens and levies

The Secretary (or, if applicable, the Attorney General of the United States) shall not—

(A) file notice of lien with respect to any property of a person by reason of any failure to pay the penalty imposed by this subsection; or

(B) levy on any such property with respect to such failure.

(i) Study of administration of employer responsibility

(1) In general

The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, conduct a study of the procedures that are necessary to ensure that in the administration of this title [1] and section 4980H of title 26 (as added by section 1513) [1] that the following rights are protected:

(A) The rights of employees to preserve their right to confidentiality of their taxpayer return information and their right to enroll in a qualified health plan through an Exchange if an employer does not provide affordable coverage.

(B) The rights of employers to adequate due process and access to information necessary to accurately determine any payment assessed on employers.

(2) Report

Not later than January 1, 2013, the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall report the results of the study conducted under paragraph (1), including any recommendations for legislative changes, to the Committees on Finance and Health, Education, Labor and Pensions of the Senate and the Committees of Education and Labor and Ways and Means of the House of Representatives.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1411, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 224; Pub. L. 114–255, div. C, title XVIII, §18001(a)(6)(B), Dec. 13, 2016, 130 Stat. 1342.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 36B(c)(2)(C) and 5000A(e)(2) of title 26, section 6103(l)(21) of title 26, and section 5000A of title 26, referred to in subsecs. (a)(3) and (b)(3)(A), (5), were in the original "sections 36B(c)(2)(C) and 5000A(e)(2)", "section 6103(l)(21)", and "section 5000A", respectively, and were translated as if they had been followed by "of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986", to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

This title, referred to in subsecs. (f)(2)(B) and (i)(1), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

Section 1513, referred to in subsec. (i)(1), means section 1513 of Pub. L. 111–148.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (b)(3)(B), (C). Pub. L. 114–255 added subpar. (B) and redesignated former subpar. (B) as (C).

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Education and Labor of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Education and the Workforce of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 5, One Hundred Twelfth Congress, Jan. 5, 2011.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2016 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 114–255 applicable to applications for enrollment made after Dec. 31, 2016, see section 18001(a)(7)(F) of Pub. L. 114–255, set out in a note under section 36B of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

VERIFICATION OF HOUSEHOLD INCOME AND OTHER QUALIFICATIONS FOR THE PROVISION OF ACA PREMIUM AND COST-SHARING SUBSIDIES

Pub. L. 113–46, div. B, §1001, Oct. 17, 2013, 127 Stat. 566, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary of Health and Human Services (referred to in this section as the 'Secretary') shall ensure that American Health Benefit Exchanges verify that individuals applying for premium tax credits under section 36B of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 [26 U.S.C. 36B] and reductions in cost-sharing under section 1402 of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (42 U.S.C. 18071) are eligible for such credits and cost sharing reductions consistent with the requirements of section 1411 of such Act (42 U.S.C. 18081), and, prior to making such credits and reductions available, the Secretary shall certify to the Congress that the Exchanges verify such eligibility consistent with the requirements of such Act [Pub. L. 111–148, see Tables for classification].

"(b) REPORT BY SECRETARY.—Not later than January 1, 2014, the Secretary shall submit a report to the Congress that details the procedures employed by American Health Benefit Exchanges to verify eligibility for credits and cost-sharing reductions described in subsection (a).

"(c) REPORT BY INSPECTOR GENERAL.—Not later than July 1, 2014, the Inspector General of the Department of Health and Human Services shall submit to the Congress a report regarding the effectiveness of the procedures and safeguards provided under the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act for preventing the submission of inaccurate or fraudulent information by applicants for enrollment in a qualified health plan offered through an American Health Benefit Exchange."

[1] See References in Text note below.

[2] So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.

[3] So in original. Probably should be "provide".

§18082. Advance determination and payment of premium tax credits and cost-sharing reductions

(a) In general

The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, shall establish a program under which—

(1) upon request of an Exchange, advance determinations are made under section 18081 of this title with respect to the income eligibility of individuals enrolling in a qualified health plan in the individual market through the Exchange for the premium tax credit allowable under section 36B of title 26 and the cost-sharing reductions under section 18071 of this title;

(2) the Secretary notifies—

(A) the Exchange and the Secretary of the Treasury of the advance determinations; and

(B) the Secretary of the Treasury of the name and employer identification number of each employer with respect to whom 1 or more employee [1] of the employer were determined to be eligible for the premium tax credit under section 36B of title 26 and the cost-sharing reductions under section 18071 of this title because—

(i) the employer did not provide minimum essential coverage; or

(ii) the employer provided such minimum essential coverage but it was determined under section 36B(c)(2)(C) of title 26 to either be unaffordable to the employee or not provide the

required minimum actuarial value; and

(3) the Secretary of the Treasury makes advance payments of such credit or reductions to the issuers of the qualified health plans in order to reduce the premiums payable by individuals eligible for such credit.

(b) Advance determinations

(1) In general

The Secretary shall provide under the program established under subsection (a) that advance determination of eligibility with respect to any individual shall be made—

(A) during the annual open enrollment period applicable to the individual (or such other enrollment period as may be specified by the Secretary); and

(B) on the basis of the individual's household income for the most recent taxable year for which the Secretary, after consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, determines information is available.

(2) Changes in circumstances

The Secretary shall provide procedures for making advance determinations on the basis of information other than that described in paragraph (1)(B) in cases where information included with an application form demonstrates substantial changes in income, changes in family size or other household circumstances, change in filing status, the filing of an application for unemployment benefits, or other significant changes affecting eligibility, including—

(A) allowing an individual claiming a decrease of 20 percent or more in income, or filing an application for unemployment benefits, to have eligibility for the credit determined on the basis of household income for a later period or on the basis of the individual's estimate of such income for the taxable year; and

(B) the determination of household income in cases where the taxpayer was not required to file a return of tax imposed by this chapter for the second preceding taxable year.

(c) Payment of premium tax credits and cost-sharing reductions

(1) In general

The Secretary shall notify the Secretary of the Treasury and the Exchange through which the individual is enrolling of the advance determination under section 18081 of this title.

(2) Premium tax credit

(A) In general

The Secretary of the Treasury shall make the advance payment under this section of any premium tax credit allowed under section 36B of title 26 to the issuer of a qualified health plan on a monthly basis (or such other periodic basis as the Secretary may provide).

(B) Issuer responsibilities

An issuer of a qualified health plan receiving an advance payment with respect to an individual enrolled in the plan shall—

(i) reduce the premium charged the insured for any period by the amount of the advance payment for the period;

(ii) notify the Exchange and the Secretary of such reduction;

(iii) include with each billing statement the amount by which the premium for the plan has been reduced by reason of the advance payment; and

(iv) in the case of any nonpayment of premiums by the insured—

(I) notify the Secretary of such nonpayment; and

(II) allow a 3-month grace period for nonpayment of premiums before discontinuing coverage.

(3) Cost-sharing reductions

The Secretary shall also notify the Secretary of the Treasury and the Exchange under paragraph (1) if an advance payment of the cost-sharing reductions under section 18071 of this title is to be made to the issuer of any qualified health plan with respect to any individual enrolled in the plan. The Secretary of the Treasury shall make such advance payment at such time and in such amount as the Secretary specifies in the notice.

(d) No Federal payments for individuals not lawfully present

Nothing in this subtitle or the amendments made by this subtitle allows Federal payments, credits, or cost-sharing reductions for individuals who are not lawfully present in the United States.

(e) State flexibility

Nothing in this subtitle or the amendments made by this subtitle shall be construed to prohibit a State from making payments to or on behalf of an individual for coverage under a qualified health plan offered through an Exchange that are in addition to any credits or cost-sharing reductions allowable to the individual under this subtitle and such amendments.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1412, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 231.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subtitle, referred to in subsecs. (d) and (e), is subtitle E (§§1401–1421) of title I of Pub. L. 111–148, which enacted this subchapter and sections 36B and 45R of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, amended section 405 of this title, sections 38, 196, 280C, 6103, and 7213 of Title 26, and section 1324 of Title 31, Money and Finance, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 36B and 38 of Title 26. For complete classification of subtitle E to the Code, see Tables.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "employees".*

§18083. Streamlining of procedures for enrollment through an Exchange and State medicaid, CHIP, and health subsidy programs

(a) In general

The Secretary shall establish a system meeting the requirements of this section under which residents of each State may apply for enrollment in, receive a determination of eligibility for participation in, and continue participation in, applicable State health subsidy programs. Such system shall ensure that if an individual applying to an Exchange is found through screening to be eligible for medical assistance under the State medicaid plan under title XIX [1] [42 U.S.C. 1396 et seq.], or eligible for enrollment under a State children's health insurance program (CHIP) under title XXI of such Act [42 U.S.C. 1397aa et seq.], the individual is enrolled for assistance under such plan or program.

(b) Requirements relating to forms and notice

(1) Requirements relating to forms

(A) In general

The Secretary shall develop and provide to each State a single, streamlined form that—

(i) may be used to apply for all applicable State health subsidy programs within the State;

(ii) may be filed online, in person, by mail, or by telephone;

(iii) may be filed with an Exchange or with State officials operating one of the other applicable State health subsidy programs; and

(iv) is structured to maximize an applicant's ability to complete the form satisfactorily, taking into account the characteristics of individuals who qualify for applicable State health subsidy programs.

(B) State authority to establish form

A State may develop and use its own single, streamlined form as an alternative to the form

developed under subparagraph (A) if the alternative form is consistent with standards promulgated by the Secretary under this section.

(C) Supplemental eligibility forms

The Secretary may allow a State to use a supplemental or alternative form in the case of individuals who apply for eligibility that is not determined on the basis of the household income (as defined in section 36B of title 26).

(2) Notice

The Secretary shall provide that an applicant filing a form under paragraph (1) shall receive notice of eligibility for an applicable State health subsidy program without any need to provide additional information or paperwork unless such information or paperwork is specifically required by law when information provided on the form is inconsistent with data used for the electronic verification under paragraph (3) or is otherwise insufficient to determine eligibility.

(c) Requirements relating to eligibility based on data exchanges

(1) Development of secure interfaces

Each State shall develop for all applicable State health subsidy programs a secure, electronic interface allowing an exchange of data (including information contained in the application forms described in subsection (b)) that allows a determination of eligibility for all such programs based on a single application. Such interface shall be compatible with the method established for data verification under section 18081(c)(4) of this title.

(2) Data matching program

Each applicable State health subsidy program shall participate in a data matching arrangement for determining eligibility for participation in the program under paragraph (3) that—

(A) provides access to data described in paragraph (3);

(B) applies only to individuals who—

(i) receive assistance from an applicable State health subsidy program; or

(ii) apply for such assistance—

(I) by filing a form described in subsection (b); or

(II) by requesting a determination of eligibility and authorizing disclosure of the information described in paragraph (3) to applicable State health coverage subsidy programs for purposes of determining and establishing eligibility; and

(C) consistent [2] with standards promulgated by the Secretary, including the privacy and data security safeguards described in section 1942 of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1396w–2] or that are otherwise applicable to such programs.

(3) Determination of eligibility

(A) In general

Each applicable State health subsidy program shall, to the maximum extent practicable—

(i) establish, verify, and update eligibility for participation in the program using the data matching arrangement under paragraph (2); and

(ii) determine such eligibility on the basis of reliable, third party data, including information described in sections 1137, 453(i), and 1942(a) of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1320b–7, 653(i), 1396w–2(a)], obtained through such arrangement.

(B) Exception

This paragraph shall not apply in circumstances with respect to which the Secretary determines that the administrative and other costs of use of the data matching arrangement under paragraph (2) outweigh its expected gains in accuracy, efficiency, and program participation.

(4) Secretarial standards

The Secretary shall, after consultation with persons in possession of the data to be matched and representatives of applicable State health subsidy programs, promulgate standards governing the timing, contents, and procedures for data matching described in this subsection. Such standards shall take into account administrative and other costs and the value of data matching to the establishment, verification, and updating of eligibility for applicable State health subsidy programs.

(d) Administrative authority

(1) Agreements

Subject to section 18081 of this title and section 6103(l)(21) of title 26 and any other requirement providing safeguards of privacy and data integrity, the Secretary may establish model agreements, and enter into agreements, for the sharing of data under this section.

(2) Authority of exchange to contract out

Nothing in this section shall be construed to—

(A) prohibit contractual arrangements through which a State medicaid agency determines eligibility for all applicable State health subsidy programs, but only if such agency complies with the Secretary's requirements ensuring reduced administrative costs, eligibility errors, and disruptions in coverage; or

(B) change any requirement under title XIX [1] that eligibility for participation in a State's medicaid program must be determined by a public agency.

(e) Applicable State health subsidy program

In this section, the term "applicable State health subsidy program" means—

(1) the program under this title [3] for the enrollment in qualified health plans offered through an Exchange, including the premium tax credits under section 36B of title 26 and cost-sharing reductions under section 18071 of this title;

(2) a State medicaid program under title XIX of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 1396 et seq.];

(3) a State children's health insurance program (CHIP) under title XXI of such Act [42 U.S.C. 1397aa et seq.]; and

(4) a State program under section 18051 of this title establishing qualified basic health plans.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1413, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 233.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsecs. (a), (d)(2)(B), and (e)(2), (3), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Titles XIX and XXI of the Act are classified generally to subchapters XIX (§1396 et seq.) and XXI (§1397aa et seq.), respectively, of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

This title, where footnoted in subsec. (e)(1), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

[1] So in original. Probably should be followed by "of the Social Security Act".

[2] So in original. Probably should be preceded by "is".

[3] See References in Text note below.

§18084. Premium tax credit and cost-sharing reduction payments disregarded for Federal and federally-assisted programs

For purposes of determining the eligibility of any individual for benefits or assistance, or the

amount or extent of benefits or assistance, under any Federal program or under any State or local program financed in whole or in part with Federal funds—

(1) any credit or refund allowed or made to any individual by reason of section 36B of title 26 (as added by section 1401) [1] shall not be taken into account as income and shall not be taken into account as resources for the month of receipt and the following 2 months; and

(2) any cost-sharing reduction payment or advance payment of the credit allowed under such section 36B that is made under section 18071 or 18082 of this title shall be treated as made to the qualified health plan in which an individual is enrolled and not to that individual.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1415, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 237.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1401, referred to in par. (1), means section 1401 of Pub. L. 111–148.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

SUBCHAPTER V—SHARED RESPONSIBILITY FOR HEALTH CARE

PART A—INDIVIDUAL RESPONSIBILITY

§18091. Requirement to maintain minimum essential coverage; findings

Congress makes the following findings:

(1) In general

The individual responsibility requirement provided for in this section (in this section referred to as the "requirement") is commercial and economic in nature, and substantially affects interstate commerce, as a result of the effects described in paragraph (2).

(2) Effects on the national economy and interstate commerce

The effects described in this paragraph are the following:

(A) The requirement regulates activity that is commercial and economic in nature: economic and financial decisions about how and when health care is paid for, and when health insurance is purchased. In the absence of the requirement, some individuals would make an economic and financial decision to forego health insurance coverage and attempt to self-insure, which increases financial risks to households and medical providers.

(B) Health insurance and health care services are a significant part of the national economy. National health spending is projected to increase from $2,500,000,000,000, or 17.6 percent of the economy, in 2009 to $4,700,000,000,000 in 2019. Private health insurance spending is projected to be $854,000,000,000 in 2009, and pays for medical supplies, drugs, and equipment that are shipped in interstate commerce. Since most health insurance is sold by national or regional health insurance companies, health insurance is sold in interstate commerce and claims payments flow through interstate commerce.

(C) The requirement, together with the other provisions of this Act, will add millions of new consumers to the health insurance market, increasing the supply of, and demand for, health care services, and will increase the number and share of Americans who are insured.

(D) The requirement achieves near-universal coverage by building upon and strengthening the private employer-based health insurance system, which covers 176,000,000 Americans

nationwide. In Massachusetts, a similar requirement has strengthened private employer-based coverage: despite the economic downturn, the number of workers offered employer-based coverage has actually increased.

(E) The economy loses up to $207,000,000,000 a year because of the poorer health and shorter lifespan of the uninsured. By significantly reducing the number of the uninsured, the requirement, together with the other provisions of this Act, will significantly reduce this economic cost.

(F) The cost of providing uncompensated care to the uninsured was $43,000,000,000 in 2008. To pay for this cost, health care providers pass on the cost to private insurers, which pass on the cost to families. This cost-shifting increases family premiums by on average over $1,000 a year. By significantly reducing the number of the uninsured, the requirement, together with the other provisions of this Act, will lower health insurance premiums.

(G) 62 percent of all personal bankruptcies are caused in part by medical expenses. By significantly increasing health insurance coverage, the requirement, together with the other provisions of this Act, will improve financial security for families.

(H) Under the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (29 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.), the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 201 et seq.), and this Act, the Federal Government has a significant role in regulating health insurance. The requirement is an essential part of this larger regulation of economic activity, and the absence of the requirement would undercut Federal regulation of the health insurance market.

(I) Under sections 2704 and 2705 of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 300gg–3, 300gg–4] (as added by section 1201 of this Act), if there were no requirement, many individuals would wait to purchase health insurance until they needed care. By significantly increasing health insurance coverage, the requirement, together with the other provisions of this Act, will minimize this adverse selection and broaden the health insurance risk pool to include healthy individuals, which will lower health insurance premiums. The requirement is essential to creating effective health insurance markets in which improved health insurance products that are guaranteed issue and do not exclude coverage of pre-existing conditions can be sold.

(J) Administrative costs for private health insurance, which were $90,000,000,000 in 2006, are 26 to 30 percent of premiums in the current individual and small group markets. By significantly increasing health insurance coverage and the size of purchasing pools, which will increase economies of scale, the requirement, together with the other provisions of this Act, will significantly reduce administrative costs and lower health insurance premiums. The requirement is essential to creating effective health insurance markets that do not require underwriting and eliminate its associated administrative costs.

(3) Supreme Court ruling

In United States v. South-Eastern Underwriters Association (322 U.S. 533 (1944)), the Supreme Court of the United States ruled that insurance is interstate commerce subject to Federal regulation.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1501(a), title X, §10106(a), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 242, 907.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in par. (2)(C), (E) to (J), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

The Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, referred to in par. (2)(H), is Pub. L. 93–406, Sept. 2, 1974, 88 Stat. 829, which is classified principally to chapter 18 (§1001 et seq.) of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 29 and Tables.

The Public Health Service Act, referred to in par. (2)(H), is act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682, which is classified generally to chapter 6A (§201 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 201 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Par. (2). Pub. L. 111–148, §10106(a), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) described effects of the individual responsibility requirement on the national economy and interstate commerce.

§18092. Notification of nonenrollment

Not later than June 30 of each year, the Secretary of the Treasury, acting through the Internal Revenue Service and in consultation with the Secretary of Health and Human Services, shall send a notification to each individual who files an individual income tax return and who is not enrolled in minimum essential coverage (as defined in section 5000A of title 26). Such notification shall contain information on the services available through the Exchange operating in the State in which such individual resides.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1502(c), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 251.)

PART B—EMPLOYER RESPONSIBILITIES

§18101. Repealed. Pub. L. 112–10, div. B, title VIII, §1858(a), Apr. 15, 2011, 125 Stat. 168

Section, Pub. L. 111–148, title X, §10108(a)–(e), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 912, 913, related to free choice vouchers.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal by Pub. L. 112–10 effective as if included in the provisions of, and the amendments made by, the provisions of Pub. L. 111–148 to which it relates, see section 1858(d) of Pub. L. 112–10, set out as an Effective Date of 2011 Amendment note under section 36B of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

SUBCHAPTER VI—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§18111. Definitions

Unless specifically provided for otherwise, the definitions contained in section 300gg–91 of this title shall apply with respect to this title.[1]

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1551, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 258.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, where footnoted in text, is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§18112. Transparency in Government

Not later than 30 days after March 23, 2010, the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall publish on the Internet website of the Department of Health and Human Services, a list of all of the authorities provided to the Secretary under this Act (and the amendments made by this Act).

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1552, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 258.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

§18113. Prohibition against discrimination on assisted suicide

(a) In general

The Federal Government, and any State or local government or health care provider that receives Federal financial assistance under this Act (or under an amendment made by this Act) or any health plan created under this Act (or under an amendment made by this Act), may not subject an individual or institutional health care entity to discrimination on the basis that the entity does not provide any health care item or service furnished for the purpose of causing, or for the purpose of assisting in causing, the death of any individual, such as by assisted suicide, euthanasia, or mercy killing.

(b) Definition

In this section, the term "health care entity" includes an individual physician or other health care professional, a hospital, a provider-sponsored organization, a health maintenance organization, a health insurance plan, or any other kind of health care facility, organization, or plan.

(c) Construction and treatment of certain services

Nothing in subsection (a) shall be construed to apply to, or to affect, any limitation relating to—

(1) the withholding or withdrawing of medical treatment or medical care;

(2) the withholding or withdrawing of nutrition or hydration;

(3) abortion; or

(4) the use of an item, good, benefit, or service furnished for the purpose of alleviating pain or discomfort, even if such use may increase the risk of death, so long as such item, good, benefit, or service is not also furnished for the purpose of causing, or the purpose of assisting in causing, death, for any reason.

(d) Administration

The Office for Civil Rights of the Department of Health and Human Services is designated to receive complaints of discrimination based on this section.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1553, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 259.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

§18114. Access to therapies

Notwithstanding any other provision of this Act, the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall not promulgate any regulation that—

(1) creates any unreasonable barriers to the ability of individuals to obtain appropriate medical care;

(2) impedes timely access to health care services;

(3) interferes with communications regarding a full range of treatment options between the patient and the provider;

(4) restricts the ability of health care providers to provide full disclosure of all relevant information to patients making health care decisions;

(5) violates the principles of informed consent and the ethical standards of health care

professionals; or

(6) limits the availability of health care treatment for the full duration of a patient's medical needs.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1554, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 259.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

§18115. Freedom not to participate in Federal health insurance programs

No individual, company, business, nonprofit entity, or health insurance issuer offering group or individual health insurance coverage shall be required to participate in any Federal health insurance program created under this Act (or any amendments made by this Act), or in any Federal health insurance program expanded by this Act (or any such amendments), and there shall be no penalty or fine imposed upon any such issuer for choosing not to participate in such programs.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1555, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 260.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

§18116. Nondiscrimination

(a) In general

Except as otherwise provided for in this title [1] (or an amendment made by this title),[1] an individual shall not, on the ground prohibited under title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. 2000d et seq.), title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972 (20 U.S.C. 1681 et seq.), the Age Discrimination Act of 1975 (42 U.S.C. 6101 et seq.), or section 794 of title 29, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under, any health program or activity, any part of which is receiving Federal financial assistance, including credits, subsidies, or contracts of insurance, or under any program or activity that is administered by an Executive Agency or any entity established under this title [1] (or amendments). The enforcement mechanisms provided for and available under such title VI, title IX, section 794, or such Age Discrimination Act shall apply for purposes of violations of this subsection.

(b) Continued application of laws

Nothing in this title [1] (or an amendment made by this title) [1] shall be construed to invalidate or limit the rights, remedies, procedures, or legal standards available to individuals aggrieved under title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. 2000d et seq.), title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. 2000e et seq.), title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972 (20 U.S.C. 1681 et seq.), section 794 of title 29, or the Age Discrimination Act of 1975 [42 U.S.C. 6101 et seq.], or to supersede State laws that provide additional protections against discrimination on any basis described in subsection (a).

(c) Regulations

The Secretary may promulgate regulations to implement this section.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1557, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 260.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130,

which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

The Civil Rights Act of 1964, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), is Pub. L. 88–352, July 2, 1964, 78 Stat. 241. Titles VI and VII of the Act are classified generally to subchapters V (§2000d et seq.) and VI (§2000e et seq.), respectively, of chapter 21 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2000a of this title and Tables.

The Education Amendments of 1972, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), is Pub. L. 92–318, June 23, 1972, 86 Stat. 235. Title IX of the Act, known as the Patsy Takemoto Mink Equal Opportunity in Education Act, is classified principally to chapter 38 (§1681 et seq.) of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of title IX to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1681 of Title 20 and Tables.

The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), is title III of Pub. L. 94–135, Nov. 28, 1975, 89 Stat. 728, which is classified generally to chapter 76 (§6101 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 6101 of this title and Tables.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§18117. Oversight

The Inspector General of the Department of Health and Human Services shall have oversight authority with respect to the administration and implementation of this title [1] as it relates to such Department.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1559, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 261.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in text, is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§18118. Rules of construction

(a) No effect on antitrust laws

Nothing in this title [1] (or an amendment made by this title) [1] shall be construed to modify, impair, or supersede the operation of any of the antitrust laws. For the purposes of this section, the term "antitrust laws" has the meaning given such term in subsection (a) of section 12 of title 15, except that such term includes section 45 of title 15 to the extent that such section 45 applies to unfair methods of competition.

(b) Rule of construction regarding Hawaii's Prepaid Health Care Act

Nothing in this title [1] (or an amendment made by this title) [1] shall be construed to modify or limit the application of the exemption for Hawaii's Prepaid Health Care Act (Haw. Rev. Stat. §§393–1 et seq.) as provided for under section 1144(b)(5) of title 29.

(c) Student health insurance plans

Nothing in this title [1] (or an amendment made by this title) [1] shall be construed to prohibit an institution of higher education (as such term is defined for purposes of the Higher Education Act of 1965 [20 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.]) from offering a student health insurance plan, to the extent that such requirement is otherwise permitted under applicable Federal, State or local law.

(d) No effect on existing requirements

Nothing in this title [1] (or an amendment made by this title,[1] unless specified by direct statutory reference) shall be construed to modify any existing Federal requirement concerning the State

agency responsible for determining eligibility for programs identified in section 18083 of this title.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1560, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 261.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, where footnoted in text, is title I of Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 130, which enacted this chapter and enacted, amended, and transferred numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

The Higher Education Act of 1965, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 89–329, Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1219, which is classified generally to chapter 28 (§1001 et seq.) of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 20 and Tables.

[1] See References in Text note below.

§18119. Small business procurement

Part 19 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation, section 644 of title 15, and any other applicable laws or regulations establishing procurement requirements relating to small business concerns (as defined in section 632 of title 15) may not be waived with respect to any contract awarded under any program or other authority under this Act or an amendment made by this Act.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1563, as added Pub. L. 111–148, title X, §10107(b)(2), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 912.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119, known as the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Another section 1563 of Pub. L. 111–148 enacted section 18120 of this title, section 9815 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, and section 1185d of Title 29, Labor, and amended sections 300gg–1 to 300gg–3, 300gg–9, 300gg–11, 300gg–12, 300gg–21 to 300gg–23, 300gg–25 to 300gg–28, 300gg–62, and 300gg–91 of this title.

§18120. Application

Notwithstanding any other provision of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, nothing in such Act (or an amendment made by such Act) shall be construed to—

(1) prohibit (or authorize the Secretary of Health and Human Services to promulgate regulations that prohibit) a group health plan or health insurance issuer from carrying out utilization management techniques that are commonly used as of March 23, 2010; or

(2) restrict the application of the amendments made by this subtitle.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title I, §1563(d), formerly §1562(d), title X, §10107(b)(1), Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 269, 911.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

The amendments made by this subtitle, referred to in par. (2), mean the amendments made by subtitle G (§§1551–1563) of title I of Pub. L. 111–148, which enacted section 300jj–51 of this title, sections 4980H, 5000A, 6055, 6056, and 9815 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, and sections 218a to 218c and 1185d of Title 29, Labor, amended sections 300gg–1 to 300gg–3, 300gg–9, 300gg–11, 300gg–12, 300gg–21 to 300gg–23, 300gg–25 to 300gg–28, 300gg–62, and 300gg–91 of this title, sections 125 and 6724 of Title 26, and sections 921 and 932 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining.

CODIFICATION

Another section 1563 of Pub. L. 111–148 is classified to section 18119 of this title.

§18121. Implementation funding

(a) In general

There is hereby established a Health Insurance Reform Implementation Fund (referred to in this section as the "Fund") within the Department of Health and Human Services to carry out the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act and this Act (and the amendments made by such Acts).

(b) Funding

There is appropriated to the Fund, out of any funds in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, $1,000,000,000 for Federal administrative expenses to carry out such Act [1] (and the amendments made by such Acts).

(Pub. L. 111–152, title I, §1005, Mar. 30, 2010, 124 Stat. 1036.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 111–152, Mar. 30, 2010, 124 Stat. 1029, known as the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2010 Amendment note under section 1305 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010, and not as part of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act which comprises this chapter.

[1] So in original. Probably should be "Acts".

§18122. Rule of construction regarding health care providers

(1) In general

Subject to paragraph (3), the development, recognition, or implementation of any guideline or other standard under any Federal health care provision shall not be construed to establish the standard of care or duty of care owed by a health care provider to a patient in any medical malpractice or medical product liability action or claim.

(2) Definitions

For purposes of this section:

(A) Federal health care provision

The term "Federal health care provision" means any provision of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (Public Law 111–148), title I or subtitle B of title II of the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010 (Public Law 111–152), or title XVIII or XIX of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1395 et seq., 42 U.S.C. 1396 et seq.).

(B) Health care provider

The term "health care provider" means any individual, group practice, corporation of health care professionals, or hospital—

(i) licensed, registered, or certified under Federal or State laws or regulations to provide health care services; or

(ii) required to be so licensed, registered, or certified but that is exempted by other statute or

regulation.

(C) Medical malpractice or medical product liability action or claim

The term "medical malpractice or medical product liability action or claim" means a medical malpractice action or claim (as defined in section 11151(7) of this title) and includes a liability action or claim relating to a health care provider's prescription or provision of a drug, device, or biological product (as such terms are defined in section 321 of title 21 or section 262 of this title).

(D) State

The term "State" includes the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, and any other commonwealth, possession, or territory of the United States.

(3) No preemption

Nothing in paragraph (1) or any provision of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (Public Law 111–148), title I or subtitle B of title II of the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010 (Public Law 111–152), or title XVIII or XIX of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1395 et seq., 42 U.S.C. 1396 et seq.) shall be construed to preempt any State or common law governing medical professional or medical product liability actions or claims.

(Pub. L. 114–10, title I, §106(d), Apr. 16, 2015, 129 Stat. 142.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, referred to in pars. (2)(A) and (3), is Pub. L. 111–148, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 119. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18001 of this title and Tables.

The Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010, referred to in pars. (2)(A) and (3), is Pub. L. 111–152, Mar. 30, 2010, 124 Stat. 1029. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2010 Amendment note set out under section 1305 of this title and Tables.

The Social Security Act, referred to in pars. (2)(A) and (3), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620. Titles XVIII and XIX of the Act are classified generally to subchapters XVIII (§1395 et seq.) and XIX (§1396 et seq.), respectively, of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Medicare Access and CHIP Reauthorization Act of 2015, and not as part of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act which comprises this chapter.

CHAPTER 158—SUPPORT FOR PREGNANT AND PARENTING TEENS AND WOMEN

Sec.

§18201. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) Accompaniment

The term "accompaniment" means assisting, representing, and accompanying a woman in seeking judicial relief for child support, child custody, restraining orders, and restitution for harm to persons and property, and in filing criminal charges, and may include the payment of court costs and reasonable attorney and witness fees associated therewith.

(2) Eligible institution of higher education

The term "eligible institution of higher education" means an institution of higher education (as such term is defined in section 1001 of title 20) that has established and operates, or agrees to establish and operate upon the receipt of a grant under this chapter, a pregnant and parenting student services office.

(3) Community service center

The term "community service center" means a non-profit organization that provides social services to residents of a specific geographical area via direct service or by contract with a local governmental agency.

(4) High school

The term "high school" means any public or private school that operates grades 10 through 12, inclusive, grades 9 through 12, inclusive or grades 7 through 12, inclusive.

(5) Intervention services

The term "intervention services" means, with respect to domestic violence, sexual violence, sexual assault, or stalking, 24-hour telephone hotline services for police protection and referral to shelters.

(6) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

(7) State

The term "State" includes the District of Columbia, any commonwealth, possession, or other territory of the United States, and any Indian tribe or reservation.

(8) Supportive social services

The term "supportive social services" means transitional and permanent housing, vocational counseling, and individual and group counseling aimed at preventing domestic violence, sexual violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(9) Violence

The term "violence" means actual violence and the risk or threat of violence.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title X, §10211, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 931.)

§18202. Establishment of Pregnancy Assistance Fund

(a) In general

The Secretary, in collaboration and coordination with the Secretary of Education (as appropriate), shall establish a Pregnancy Assistance Fund to be administered by the Secretary, for the purpose of awarding competitive grants to States to assist pregnant and parenting teens and women.

(b) Use of Fund

A State may apply for a grant under subsection (a) to carry out any activities provided for in section 18203 of this title.

(c) Applications

To be eligible to receive a grant under subsection (a), a State shall submit to the Secretary an application at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary may require, including a description of the purposes for which the grant is being requested and the designation of a State agency for receipt and administration of funding received under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title X, §10212, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 932.)

§18203. Permissible uses of Fund

(a) In general

A State shall use amounts received under a grant under section 18202 of this title for the purposes described in this section to assist pregnant and parenting teens and women.

(b) Institutions of higher education

(1) In general

A State may use amounts received under a grant under section 18202 of this title to make funding available to eligible institutions of higher education to enable the eligible institutions to establish, maintain, or operate pregnant and parenting student services. Such funding shall be used to supplement, not supplant, existing funding for such services.

(2) Application

An eligible institution of higher education that desires to receive funding under this subsection shall submit an application to the designated State agency at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the State agency may require.

(3) Matching requirement

An eligible institution of higher education that receives funding under this subsection shall contribute to the conduct of the pregnant and parenting student services office supported by the funding an amount from non-Federal funds equal to 25 percent of the amount of the funding provided. The non-Federal share may be in cash or in-kind, fairly evaluated, including services, facilities, supplies, or equipment.

(4) Use of funds for assisting pregnant and parenting college students

An eligible institution of higher education that receives funding under this subsection shall use such funds to establish, maintain or operate pregnant and parenting student services and may use such funding for the following programs and activities:

(A) Conduct a needs assessment on campus and within the local community—

(i) to assess pregnancy and parenting resources, located on the campus or within the local community, that are available to meet the needs described in subparagraph (B); and

(ii) to set goals for—

(I) improving such resources for pregnant, parenting, and prospective parenting students; and

(II) improving access to such resources.

(B) Annually assess the performance of the eligible institution in meeting the following needs of students enrolled in the eligible institution who are pregnant or are parents:

(i) The inclusion of maternity coverage and the availability of riders for additional family members in student health care.

(ii) Family housing.

(iii) Child care.

(iv) Flexible or alternative academic scheduling, such as telecommuting programs, to enable pregnant or parenting students to continue their education or stay in school.

(v) Education to improve parenting skills for mothers and fathers and to strengthen marriages.

(vi) Maternity and baby clothing, baby food (including formula), baby furniture, and similar items to assist parents and prospective parents in meeting the material needs of their children.

(vii) Post-partum counseling.

(C) Identify public and private service providers, located on the campus of the eligible institution or within the local community, that are qualified to meet the needs described in subparagraph (B), and establishes [1] programs with qualified providers to meet such needs.

(D) Assist pregnant and parenting students, fathers or spouses in locating and obtaining

services that meet the needs described in subparagraph (B).

(E) If appropriate, provide referrals for prenatal care and delivery, infant or foster care, or adoption, to a student who requests such information. An office shall make such referrals only to service providers that serve the following types of individuals:

(i) Parents.

(ii) Prospective parents awaiting adoption.

(iii) Women who are pregnant and plan on parenting or placing the child for adoption.

(iv) Parenting or prospective parenting couples.

(5) Reporting

(A) Annual report by institutions

(i) In general

For each fiscal year that an eligible institution of higher education receives funds under this subsection, the eligible institution shall prepare and submit to the State, by the date determined by the State, a report that—

(I) itemizes the pregnant and parenting student services office's expenditures for the fiscal year;

(II) contains a review and evaluation of the performance of the office in fulfilling the requirements of this section, using the specific performance criteria or standards established under subparagraph (B)(i); and

(III) describes the achievement of the office in meeting the needs listed in paragraph (4)(B) of the students served by the eligible institution, and the frequency of use of the office by such students.

(ii) Performance criteria

Not later than 180 days before the date the annual report described in clause (i) is submitted, the State—

(I) shall identify the specific performance criteria or standards that shall be used to prepare the report; and

(II) may establish the form or format of the report.

(B) Report by State

The State shall annually prepare and submit a report on the findings under this subsection, including the number of eligible institutions of higher education that were awarded funds and the number of students served by each pregnant and parenting student services office receiving funds under this section, to the Secretary.

(c) Support for pregnant and parenting teens

A State may use amounts received under a grant under section 18202 of this title to make funding available to eligible high schools and community service centers to establish, maintain or operate pregnant and parenting services in the same general manner and in accordance with all conditions and requirements described in subsection (b), except that paragraph (3) of such subsection shall not apply for purposes of this subsection.

(d) Improving services for pregnant women who are victims of domestic violence, sexual violence, sexual assault, and stalking

(1) In general

A State may use amounts received under a grant under section 18202 of this title to make funding available tp [2] its State Attorney General to assist Statewide offices in providing—

(A) intervention services, accompaniment, and supportive social services for eligible pregnant women who are victims of domestic violence, sexual violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(B) technical assistance and training (as described in subsection (c)) relating to violence against eligible pregnant women to be made available to the following:

(i) Federal, State, tribal, territorial, and local governments, law enforcement agencies, and courts.

(ii) Professionals working in legal, social service, and health care settings.

(iii) Nonprofit organizations.

(iv) Faith-based organizations.

(2) Eligibility

To be eligible for a grant under paragraph (1), a State Attorney General shall submit an application to the designated State agency at such time, in such manner, and containing such information, as specified by the State.

(3) Technical assistance and training described

For purposes of paragraph (1)(B), technical assistance and training is—

(A) the identification of eligible pregnant women experiencing domestic violence, sexual violence, sexual assault, or stalking;

(B) the assessment of the immediate and short-term safety of such a pregnant woman, the evaluation of the impact of the violence or stalking on the pregnant woman's health, and the assistance of the pregnant woman in developing a plan aimed at preventing further domestic violence, sexual violence, sexual assault, or stalking, as appropriate;

(C) the maintenance of complete medical or forensic records that include the documentation of any examination, treatment given, and referrals made, recording the location and nature of the pregnant woman's injuries, and the establishment of mechanisms to ensure the privacy and confidentiality of those medical records; and

(D) the identification and referral of the pregnant woman to appropriate public and private nonprofit entities that provide intervention services, accompaniment, and supportive social services.

(4) Eligible pregnant woman

In this subsection, the term "eligible pregnant woman" means any woman who is pregnant on the date on which such woman becomes a victim of domestic violence, sexual violence, sexual assault, or stalking or who was pregnant during the one-year period before such date.

(e) Public awareness and education

A State may use amounts received under a grant under section 18202 of this title to make funding available to increase public awareness and education concerning any services available to pregnant and parenting teens and women under this chapter, or any other resources available to pregnant and parenting women in keeping with the intent and purposes of this chapter. The State shall be responsible for setting guidelines or limits as to how much of funding may be utilized for public awareness and education in any funding award.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title X, §10213, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 932.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "establish".*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be "to".*

§18204. Appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated, and there are appropriated, $25,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2010 through 2019, to carry out this chapter.

(Pub. L. 111–148, title X, §10214, Mar. 23, 2010, 124 Stat. 935.)

CHAPTER 159—SPACE EXPLORATION, TECHNOLOGY, AND SCIENCE

§18301. Findings

Congress makes the following findings:

(1) The United States human space flight program has, since the first Mercury flight on May 5, 1961, been a source of pride and inspiration for the Nation.

(2) The establishment of and commitment to human exploration goals is essential for providing the necessary long term focus and programmatic consistency and robustness of the United States civilian space program.

(3) The National Aeronautics and Space Administration is and should remain a multi-mission agency with a balanced and robust set of core missions in science, aeronautics, and human space flight and exploration.

(4) In the 50 years since the establishment of NASA, the arena of space has evolved substantially. As the uses and users of space continue to expand, the issues and operations in the regions closest to Earth have become increasingly complex, with a growing number of overlaps between civil, commercial and national security activities. These developments present opportunities and challenges to the space activities of NASA and the United States.

(5) The extraordinary challenges of achieving access to space both motivated and accelerated the development of technologies and industrial capabilities that have had widespread applications which have contributed to the technological excellence of the United States. It is essential to tie space activity to human challenges ranging from enhancing the influence, relationships, security, economic development, and commerce of the United States to improving the overall human condition.

(6) It is essential to the economic well-being of the United States that the aerospace industrial capacity, highly skilled workforce, and embedded expertise remain engaged in demanding, challenging, and exciting efforts that ensure United States leadership in space exploration and related activities.

(7) Crewmembers provide the essential component to ensure the return on investment from and the growth and safe operation of the ISS. The Russian Soyuz vehicle has allowed continued human presence on the ISS for United States crewmembers with its ability to serve as both a routine and backup capability for crew delivery, rescue, and return. With the impending retirement of the Space Shuttle, the United States will find itself with no national crew delivery and return system. Without any other system, the United States and all the ISS partners will have no redundant system for human access to and from the ISS. It is therefore essential that a United States capability be developed as soon as possible.

(8) Existing and emerging United States commercial launch capabilities and emerging launch capabilities offer the potential for providing crew support assets. New capabilities for human crew

access to the ISS should be developed in a manner that ensures ISS mission assurance and safety. Commercial services offer the potential to broaden the availability and access to space at lower costs.

(9) While commercial transportation systems have the promise to contribute valuable services, it is in the United States national interest to maintain a government operated space transportation system for crew and cargo delivery to space.

(10) Congress restates its commitment, expressed in the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2005 [1] (Public Law 109–155) and the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2008 [1] (Public Law 110–422), to the development of commercially developed launch and delivery systems to the ISS for crew and cargo missions. Congress reaffirms that NASA shall make use of United States commercially provided ISS crew transfer and crew rescue services to the maximum extent practicable.

(11) It is critical to identify an appropriate combination of NASA and related United States Government programs, while providing a framework that allows partnering, leveraging and stimulation of the existing and emerging commercial and international efforts in both near Earth space and the regions beyond.

(12) The designation of the United States segment of the ISS as a National Laboratory, as provided by the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2005 [1] and the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2008,[1] provides an opportunity for multiple United States Government agencies, university-based researchers, research organizations, and others to utilize the unique environment of microgravity for fundamental scientific research and potential economic development.

(13) For some potential replacement elements necessary for ISS sustainability, the Space Shuttle may represent the only vehicle, existing or planned, capable of carrying those elements to the ISS in the near term. Additional or alternative transportation capabilities must be identified as contingency delivery options, and accompanied by an independent analysis of projected availability of such capabilities.

(14) The United States must develop, as rapidly as possible, replacement vehicles capable of providing both human and cargo launch capability to low-Earth orbit and to destinations beyond low-Earth orbit.

(15) There is a need for national space and export control policies that protect the national security of the United States while also enabling the United States and its aerospace industry to undertake cooperative programs in science and human space flight in an effective and efficient manner and to compete effectively in the global market place.

(Pub. L. 111–267, §2, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2807.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2005, referred to in pars. (10) and (12), is Pub. L. 109–155, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2895, which was classified principally to chapter 150 (§16601 et seq.) of this title, and was substantially repealed and restated in chapters 305 (§30501 et seq.), 401 (§40101 et seq.), 603 (§60301 et seq.) and 707 (§70701 et seq.) and sections 20301, 20302, 30103(a), (b), 30104, 30306, 30703, 30704, 30902, 31301, 31501, 40701, 40904 to 40909, 50505, 50116, 60505, 70501 to 70503, and 70902 to 70905 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2005 Act note set out under section 10101 of Title 51 and Tables.

The National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2008, referred to in pars. (10) and (12), is Pub. L. 110–422, Oct. 15, 2008, 122 Stat. 4779, which was classified principally to chapter 155 (§17701 et seq.) of this title, and was substantially repealed and restated as chapters 711 (§71101 et seq.) and 713 (§71301 et seq.) and sections 20305, 30305, 30310, 31302, 31502 to 31505, 40104, 40311, 40702 to 40704, 40903(d), 50111(b), 60501 to 60504, 60506, 70504 to 70508, 70906, and 70907 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2008 Act note set out under section 10101 of Title 51 and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 111–267, §1(a), Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2805, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2010'."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§18302. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) Administrator

The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration.

(2) Appropriate committees of Congress

The term "appropriate committees of Congress" means—

(A) the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate; and

(B) the Committee on Science [1] of the House of Representatives.

(3) Cis-lunar space

The term "cis-lunar space" means the region of space from the Earth out to and including the region around the surface of the Moon.

(4) Deep space

The term "deep space" means the region of space beyond cis-lunar space.

(5) ISS

The term "ISS" means the International Space Station.

(6) NASA

The term "NASA" means the National Aeronautics and Space Administration.

(7) Near-Earth space

The term "near-Earth space" means the region of space that includes low-Earth orbit and extends out to and includes geo-synchronous orbit.

(8) NOAA

The term "NOAA" means the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

(9) OSTP

The term "OSTP" means the Office of Science and Technology Policy.

(10) Space Launch System

The term "Space Launch System" means the follow-on government-owned civil launch system developed, managed, and operated by NASA to serve as a key component to expand human presence beyond low-Earth orbit.

(Pub. L. 111–267, §3, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2808.)

[1] *So in original. Probably should be followed by "and Technology".*

SUBCHAPTER I—POLICY, GOALS, AND OBJECTIVES FOR HUMAN SPACE FLIGHT AND EXPLORATION

§18311. United States human space flight policy

(a) Use of non-United States human space flight transportation services

(1) In general

The Federal Government may not acquire human space flight transportation services from a foreign entity unless—

(A) no United States Government-operated human space flight capability is available;

(B) no United States commercial provider is available; and

(C) it is a qualified foreign entity.

(2) Definitions

In this subsection:

(A) Commercial provider

The term "commercial provider" means any person providing human space flight transportation services, primary control of which is held by persons other than the Federal Government, a State or local government, or a foreign government.

(B) Qualified foreign entity

The term "qualified foreign entity" means a foreign entity that is in compliance with all applicable safety standards and is not prohibited from providing space transportation services under other law.

(C) United states commercial provider

The term "United States commercial provider" means a commercial provider, organized under the laws of the United States or of a State, that is more than 50 percent owned by United States nationals.

(3) Arrangements with foreign entities

Nothing in this subsection shall prevent the Administrator from negotiating or entering into human space flight transportation arrangements with foreign entities to ensure safety of flight and continued ISS operations.

(b) United States human space flight capabilities

Congress reaffirms the policy stated in section 70501(a) of title 51, that the United States shall maintain an uninterrupted capability for human space flight and operations in low-Earth orbit, and beyond, as an essential instrument of national security and of the capacity to ensure continued United States participation and leadership in the exploration and utilization of space.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title II, §201, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2811; Pub. L. 115–10, title III, §302(d), Mar. 21, 2017, 131 Stat. 25.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b), "section 70501(a) of title 51" substituted for "section 501(a) of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2005 (42 U.S.C. 16761(a))" on authority of Pub. L. 111–314, §5(e), Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3443, which Act enacted Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

AMENDMENTS

2017—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–10 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "It is the policy of the United States that reliance upon and use of non-United States human space flight capabilities shall be undertaken only as a contingency in circumstances where no United States-owned and operated human space flight capability is available, operational, and certified for flight by appropriate Federal agencies."

§18312. Goals and objectives

(a) Long-term goals

The long-term goals of the human space flight and exploration efforts of NASA shall be—

(1) to expand permanent human presence beyond low-Earth orbit and to do so, where practical, in a manner involving international, academic, and industry partners;

(2) crewed missions and progress toward achieving the goal in paragraph (1) to enable the potential for subsequent human exploration and the extension of human presence throughout the solar system; and

(3) to enable a capability to extend human presence, including potential human habitation on another celestial body and a thriving space economy in the 21st Century.[1]

(b) Key objectives

The key objectives of the United States for human expansion into space shall be—

(1) to sustain the capability for long-duration presence in low-Earth orbit, initially through continuation of the ISS and full utilization of the United States segment of the ISS as a National Laboratory, and through assisting and enabling an expanded commercial presence in, and access to, low-Earth orbit, as elements of a low-Earth orbit infrastructure;

(2) to determine if humans can live in an extended manner in space with decreasing reliance on Earth, starting with utilization of low-Earth orbit infrastructure, to identify potential roles that space resources such as energy and materials may play, to meet national and global needs and challenges, such as potential cataclysmic threats, and to explore the viability of and lay the foundation for sustainable economic activities in space;

(3) to maximize the role that human exploration of space can play in advancing overall knowledge of the universe, supporting United States national and economic security and the United States global competitive posture, and inspiring young people in their educational pursuits;

(4) to build upon the cooperative and mutually beneficial framework established by the ISS partnership agreements and experience in developing and undertaking programs and meeting objectives designed to realize the goal of human space flight set forth in subsection (a); and

(5) to achieve human exploration of Mars and beyond through the prioritization of those technologies and capabilities best suited for such a mission in accordance with the stepping stone approach to exploration under section 70504 of title 51.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title II, §202, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2812; Pub. L. 115–10, title IV, §§411, 412, Mar. 21, 2017, 131 Stat. 33.)

AMENDMENTS

2017—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–10, §411, amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The long term goal of the human space flight and exploration efforts of NASA shall be to expand permanent human presence beyond low-Earth orbit and to do so, where practical, in a manner involving international partners."

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 115–10, §412, added par. (5).

[1] *So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.*

§18313. Assurance of core capabilities

(a) Sense of Congress

It is the sense of Congress that—

(1) the ISS, technology developments, the current Space Shuttle program, and follow-on transportation systems authorized by this chapter form the foundation of initial capabilities for missions beyond low-Earth orbit to a variety of lunar and Lagrangian orbital locations; and

(2) these initial missions and related capabilities should be utilized to provide operational experience, technology development, and the placement and assured use of in-space infrastructure and in-space servicing of existing and future assets.

(b) Sense of Congress regarding human space flight capability assurance

It is the sense of Congress that the Administrator shall proceed with the utilization of the ISS, technology development, and follow-on transportation systems (including the Space Launch System, multi-purpose crew vehicle, and commercial crew and cargo transportation capabilities) under subchapters II and III of this chapter in a manner that ensures—

(1) that these capabilities remain inherently complementary and interrelated;

(2) a balance of the development, sustainment, and use of each of these capabilities, which are of critical importance to the viability and sustainability of the U.S. space program; and

(3) that resources required to support the timely and sustainable development of these capabilities authorized in either subchapter II or subchapter III of this chapter are not derived from a reduction in resources for the capabilities authorized in the other subchapter.

(c) Limitation

Nothing in subsection (b) shall apply to or affect any capability authorized by any other subchapter of this chapter [1]

(Pub. L. 111–267, title II, §203, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2812; Pub. L. 112–273, §2, Jan. 14, 2013, 126 Stat. 2454; Pub. L. 115–10, title IV, §416(a), Mar. 21, 2017, 131 Stat. 34.)

AMENDMENTS

2017—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–10, §416(a)(1), (3), redesignated subsec. (c) as (b) and struck out former subsec. (b). Prior to amendment, text of subsec. (b) read as follows:

"(1) DEVELOPMENT OF FOLLOW-ON SPACE TRANSPORTATION SYSTEMS.—The Administrator shall proceed with the development of follow-on space transportation systems in a manner that ensures that the national capability to restart and fly Space Shuttle missions can be initiated if required by the Congress, in an Act enacted after October 11, 2010, or by a Presidential determination transmitted to the Congress, before the last Space Shuttle mission authorized by this chapter is completed.

"(2) REQUIRED ACTIONS.—In carrying out the requirement in paragraph (1), the Administrator shall authorize refurbishment of the manufactured external tank of the Space Shuttle, designated as ET–94, and take all actions necessary to enable its readiness for use in the Space Launch System development as a critical skills and capability retention effort or for test purposes, while preserving the ability to use this tank if needed for an ISS contingency if deemed necessary under paragraph (1)."

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 115–10, §416(a)(2), (3), substituted "subsection (b)" for "subsection (c)" in subsec. (d) and redesignated subsec. (d) as (c). Former subsec. (c) redesignated (b).

2013—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 112–273 added subsecs. (c) and (d).

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Any other subchapter of this chapter, referred to in subsec. (d), was in the original "any other title of this Act", meaning any other title of Pub.L. 111–267, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2805. In addition to title II which is classified generally to this subchapter, Pub. L. 111–267 contains titles III to XII which are classified generally to subchapters II to XI, respectively, of this chapter and titles I and XIII, 126 Stat. 2809, 2846, which are not classified to the Code.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be followed by a period.*

SUBCHAPTER II—EXPANSION OF HUMAN SPACE FLIGHT BEYOND THE INTERNATIONAL SPACE STATION AND LOW-EARTH ORBIT

§18321. Human space flight beyond low-Earth orbit

(a) Findings

Congress makes the following findings:

(1) The extension of the human presence from low-Earth orbit to other regions of space beyond low-Earth orbit will enable missions to the surface of the Moon and missions to deep space

destinations such as near-Earth asteroids and Mars.

(2) The regions of cis-lunar space are accessible to other national and commercial launch capabilities, and such access raises a host of national security concerns and economic implications that international human space endeavors can help to address.

(3) The ability to support human missions in regions beyond low-Earth orbit and on the surface of the Moon can also drive developments in emerging areas of space infrastructure and technology.

(4) Developments in space infrastructure and technology can stimulate and enable increased space applications, such as in-space servicing, propellant resupply and transfer, and in situ resource utilization, and open opportunities for additional users of space, whether national, commercial, or international.

(5) A long term objective for human exploration of space should be the eventual international exploration of Mars.

(6) Future international missions beyond low-Earth orbit should be designed to incorporate capability development and availability, affordability, and international contributions.

(7) Human space flight and future exploration beyond low-Earth orbit should be based around a pay-as-you-go approach. Requirements in new launch and crew systems authorized in this chapter should be scaled to the minimum necessary to meet the core national mission capability needed to conduct cis-lunar missions. These initial missions, along with the development of new technologies and in-space capabilities can form the foundation for missions to other destinations. These initial missions also should provide operational experience prior to the further human expansion into space.

(b) Report on international collaboration

(1) Report required

Not later than 120 days after October 11, 2010, the Administrator shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress a report on the following assets and capabilities:

(A) Any effort by NASA to expand and ensure effective international collaboration on the ISS.

(B) The efforts of NASA, including its approach and progress, in defining near-term, cis-lunar space human missions.

(2) NASA contributions

In preparing the report required by paragraph (1), the Administrator shall assume that NASA will contribute to the efforts described in that paragraph the following:

(A) A Space Launch System.

(B) A multi-purpose crew vehicle.

(C) Such other technology elements the Administrator may consider appropriate, and which the Administrator shall specifically identify in the report.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title III, §301, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2813.)

§18322. Space Launch System as follow-on launch vehicle to the Space Shuttle

(a) United States policy

It is the policy of the United States that NASA develop a Space Launch System as a follow-on to the Space Shuttle that can access cis-lunar space and the regions of space beyond low-Earth orbit in order to enable the United States to participate in global efforts to access and develop this increasingly strategic region.

(b) Initiation of development

(1) In general

The Administrator shall, as soon as practicable after October 11, 2010, initiate development of a

Space Launch System meeting the minimum capabilities requirements specified in subsection (c).

(2) Modification of current contracts

In order to limit NASA's termination liability costs and support critical capabilities, the Administrator shall, to the extent practicable, extend or modify existing vehicle development and associated contracts necessary to meet the requirements in paragraph (1), including contracts for ground testing of solid rocket motors, if necessary, to ensure their availability for development of the Space Launch System.

(c) Minimum capability requirements

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Space Launch System developed pursuant to subsection (b) shall be designed to have, at a minimum, the following:

(A) The initial capability of the core elements, without an upper stage, of lifting payloads weighing between 70 tons and 100 tons into low-Earth orbit in preparation for transit for missions beyond low-Earth orbit.

(B) The capability to carry an integrated upper Earth departure stage bringing the total lift capability of the Space Launch System to 130 tons or more.

(C) The capability to lift the multipurpose crew vehicle.

(D) The capability to serve as a backup system for supplying and supporting ISS cargo requirements or crew delivery requirements not otherwise met by available commercial or partner-supplied vehicles.

(2) FLEXIBILITY.—The Space Launch System shall be designed from inception as a fully-integrated vehicle capable of carrying a total payload of 130 tons or more into low-Earth orbit in preparation for transit for missions beyond low-Earth orbit. The Space Launch System shall, to the extent practicable, incorporate capabilities for evolutionary growth to carry heavier payloads. Developmental work and testing of the core elements and the upper stage should proceed in parallel subject to appropriations. Priority should be placed on the core elements with the goal for operational capability for the core elements not later than December 31, 2016.

(3) TRANSITION NEEDS.—The Administrator shall ensure critical skills and capabilities are retained, modified, and developed, as appropriate, in areas related to solid and liquid engines, large diameter fuel tanks, rocket propulsion, and other ground test capabilities for an effective transition to the follow-on Space Launch System.

(4) The capacity for efficient and timely evolution, including the incorporation of new technologies, competition of sub-elements, and commercial operations.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title III, §302, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2814.)

§18323. Multi-purpose crew vehicle

(a) Initiation of development

(1) In general

The Administrator shall continue the development of a multi-purpose crew vehicle to be available as soon as practicable, and no later than for use with the Space Launch System. The vehicle shall continue to advance development of the human safety features, designs, and systems in the Orion project.

(2) Goal for operational capability

It shall be the goal to achieve full operational capability for the transportation vehicle developed pursuant to this subsection by not later than December 31, 2016. For purposes of meeting such goal, the Administrator may undertake a test of the transportation vehicle at the ISS before that date.

(b) Minimum capability requirements

The multi-purpose crew vehicle developed pursuant to subsection (a) shall be designed to have, at a minimum, the following:

(1) The capability to serve as the primary crew vehicle for missions beyond low-Earth orbit.

(2) The capability to conduct regular in-space operations, such as rendezvous, docking, and extra-vehicular activities, in conjunction with payloads delivered by the Space Launch System developed pursuant to section 18322 of this title, or other vehicles, in preparation for missions beyond low-Earth orbit or servicing of assets described in section 18383 of this title, or other assets in cis-lunar space.

(3) The capability to provide an alternative means of delivery of crew and cargo to the ISS, in the event other vehicles, whether commercial vehicles or partner-supplied vehicles, are unable to perform that function.

(4) The capacity for efficient and timely evolution, including the incorporation of new technologies, competition of sub-elements, and commercial operations.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title III, §303, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2815.)

§18324. Utilization of existing workforce and assets in development of Space Launch System and multi-purpose crew vehicle

(a) In general

In developing the Space Launch System pursuant to section 18322 of this title and the multi-purpose crew vehicle pursuant to section 18323 of this title, the Administrator shall, to the extent practicable utilize—

(1) existing contracts, investments, workforce, industrial base, and capabilities from the Space Shuttle and Orion and Ares 1 projects, including—

(A) space-suit development activities for application to, and coordinated development of, a multi-purpose crew vehicle suit and associated life-support requirements with potential development of standard NASA-certified suit and life support systems for use in alternative commercially-developed crew transportation systems; and

(B) Space Shuttle-derived components and Ares 1 components that use existing United States propulsion systems, including liquid fuel engines, external tank or tank-related capability, and solid rocket motor engines; and

(2) associated testing facilities, either in being or under construction as of October 11, 2010.

(b) Discharge of requirements

In meeting the requirements of subsection (a), the Administrator—

(1) shall, to the extent practicable, utilize ground-based manufacturing capability, ground testing activities, launch and operations infrastructure, and workforce expertise;

(2) shall, to the extent practicable, minimize the modification and development of ground infrastructure and maximize the utilization of existing software, vehicle, and mission operations processes;

(3) shall complete construction and activation of the A–3 test stand with a completion goal of September 30, 2013;

(4) may procure, develop, and flight test applicable components; and

(5) shall take appropriate actions to ensure timely and cost-effective development of the Space Launch System and the multi-purpose crew vehicle, including the use of a procurement approach that incorporates adequate and effective oversight, the facilitation of contractor efficiencies, and the stream-lining of contract and procurement requirements.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title III, §304, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2816.)

§18325. NASA launch support and infrastructure modernization program

(a) In general

The Administrator shall carry out a program the primary purpose of which is to prepare infrastructure at the Kennedy Space Center that is needed to enable processing and launch of the Space Launch System. Vehicle interfaces and other ground processing and payload integration areas should be simplified to minimize overall costs, enhance safety, and complement the purpose of this section.

(b) Elements

The program required by this section shall include—

(1) investments to improve civil and national security operations at the Kennedy Space Center, to enhance the overall capabilities of the Center, and to reduce the long term cost of operations and maintenance;

(2) measures to provide multi-vehicle support, improvements in payload processing, and partnering at the Kennedy Space Center; and

(3) such other measures, including investments to improve launch infrastructure at NASA flight facilities scheduled to launch cargo to the ISS under the commercial orbital transportation services program as the Administrator may consider appropriate.

(c) Report on NASA launch support and infrastructure modernization program

(1) Report required

Not later than 120 days after October 11, 2010, the Administrator shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress a report on the plan for the implementation of the NASA launch support and infrastructure modernization program.

(2) Elements

The report required by this subsection shall include—

(A) a description of the ground infrastructure plan tied to the Space Launch System and potential ground investment activities at other NASA centers related to supporting the development of the Space Launch System;

(B) a description of proposed initiatives intended to be conducted jointly or in cooperation with Cape Canaveral Air Force Station, Florida, or other installations or components of the United States Government; and

(C) a description of plans to use funds authorized to be appropriated by this chapter to improve non-NASA facilities, which plans shall include a business plan outlining the nature and scope of investments planned by other parties.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title III, §305, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2817.)

§18326. Development of technologies and in-space capabilities for beyond near-Earth space missions

(a) Development authorized

The Administrator may initiate activities to develop the following:

(1) Technologies identified as necessary elements of missions beyond low-Earth orbit.

(2) In-space capabilities such as refueling and storage technology, orbital transfer stages, innovative in-space propulsion technology, communications, and data management that facilitate a broad range of users (including military and commercial) and applications defining the architecture and design of such missions.

(3) Spacesuit development and associated life support technology.

(4) Flagship missions.

(b) Investments

In developing technologies and capabilities under subsection (a), the Administrator may make investments—

(1) in space technologies such as advanced propulsion, propellant depots, in situ resource utilization, and robotic payloads or capabilities that enable human missions beyond low-Earth orbit ultimately leading to Mars;

(2) in a space-based transfer vehicle including these technologies with an ability to conduct space-based operations that provide capabilities—

(A) to integrate with the Space Launch System and other space-based systems;

(B) to provide opportunities for in-space servicing of and delivery to multiple space-based platforms; and

(C) to facilitate international efforts to expand human presence to deep space destinations;

(3) in advanced life support technologies and capabilities;

(4) in technologies and capabilities relating to in-space power, propulsion, and energy systems;

(5) in technologies and capabilities relating to in-space propellant transfer and storage;

(6) in technologies and capabilities relating to in situ resource utilization; and

(7) in expanded research to understand the greatest biological impediments to human deep space missions, especially the radiation challenge.

(c) Utilization of ISS as testbed

The Administrator may utilize the ISS as a testbed for any technology or capability developed under subsection (a) in a manner consistent with the provisions of this chapter.

(d) Coordination

The Administrator shall coordinate development of technologies and capabilities under this section through an overall agency technology approach, as authorized by section 905 of this Act.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title III, §308, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2818.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 905 of this Act, referred to in subsec. (d), is Pub. L. 111–267, title IX, §905, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2836, which is not classified to the Code.

§18327. Report requirement

Within 90 days after October 11, 2010, or upon completion of reference designs for the Space Launch System and Multi-purpose Crew Vehicle authorized by this chapter, whichever occurs first, the Administrator shall provide a detailed report to the appropriate committees of Congress that provides an overall description of the reference vehicle design, the assumptions, description, data, and analysis of the systems trades and resolution process, justification of trade decisions, the design factors which implement the essential system and vehicle capability requirements established by this chapter, the explanation and justification of any deviations from those requirements, the plan for utilization of existing contracts, civil service and contract workforce, supporting infrastructure utilization and modifications, and procurement strategy to expedite development activities through modification of existing contract vehicles, and the schedule of design and development milestones and related schedules leading to the accomplishment of operational goals established by this chapter. The Administrator shall provide an update of this report as part of the President's annual Budget Request.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title III, §309, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2819.)

SUBCHAPTER III—DEVELOPMENT AND USE OF COMMERCIAL CREW AND CARGO TRANSPORTATION CAPABILITIES

§18341. Commercial Cargo Development program

The Administrator shall continue to support the existing Commercial Resupply Services program, aimed at enabling the commercial space industry in support of NASA to develop reliable means of launching cargo and supplies to the ISS throughout the duration of the facility's operation. The Administrator may apply funds towards the reduction of risk to the timely start of these services, specifically—

(1) efforts to conduct a flight test;

(2) accelerate development; and

(3) develop the ground infrastructure needed for commercial cargo capability.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title IV, §401, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2820; Pub. L. 115–10, title III, §302(f), Mar. 21, 2017, 131 Stat. 26.)

AMENDMENTS

2017—Pub. L. 115–10 substituted "Commercial Resupply Services" for "Commercial Orbital Transportation Services" in introductory provisions.

§18342. Requirements applicable to development of commercial crew transportation capabilities and services

(a) FY 2011 contracts and procurement agreements

(1) In general

Except as provided in paragraph (2), the Administrator may not execute a contract or procurement agreement with respect to follow-on commercial crew services during fiscal year 2011.

(2) Exception

Notwithstanding paragraph (1), the Administrator may execute a contract or procurement agreement with respect to follow-on commercial crew services during fiscal year 2011 if—

(A) the requirements of paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of subsection (b) are met; and

(B) the total amount involved for all such contracts and procurement agreements executed during fiscal year 2011 does not exceed $50,000,000 for fiscal year 2011.

(b) Support

The Administrator may, beginning in fiscal year 2012 through the duration of the program, support follow-on commercially-developed crew transportation systems dependent upon the completion of each of the following:

(1) Human rating requirements

Not later than 60 days after October 11, 2010, the Administrator shall develop and make available to the public detailed human rating processes and requirements to guide the design of commercially-developed crew transportation capabilities, which requirements shall be at least equivalent to proven requirements for crew transportation in use as of October 11, 2010.

(2) Commercial market assessment

Not later than 180 days after October 11, 2010, the Administrator shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress an assessment, conducted, in coordination with the Federal Aviation Administration's Office of Commercial Space Transportation, for purposes of this paragraph, of the potential non-Government market for commercially-developed crew and cargo transportation systems and capabilities, including an assessment of the activities associated with potential private sector utilization of the ISS research and technology development capabilities and other potential activities in low-Earth orbit.

(3) Procurement system review

The Administrator shall review current Government procurement and acquisition practices and

processes, including agreement authorities under the National Aeronautics and Space Act of 1958, [1] to determine the most cost-effective means of procuring commercial crew transportation capabilities and related services in a manner that ensures appropriate accountability, transparency, and maximum efficiency in the procurement of such capabilities and services, which review shall include an identification of proposed measures to address risk management and means of indemnification of commercial providers of such capabilities and services, and measures for quality control, safety oversight, and the application of Federal oversight processes within the jurisdiction of other Federal agencies. A description of the proposed procurement process and justification of the proposed procurement for its selection shall be included in any proposed initiation of procurement activity for commercially-developed crew transportation capabilities and services and shall be subject to review by the appropriate committees of Congress before the initiation of any competitive process to procure such capabilities or services. In support of the review by such committees, the Comptroller General shall undertake an assessment of the proposed procurement process and provide a report to the appropriate committees of Congress within 90 days after the date on which the Administrator provides the description and justification to such committees.

(4) Use of government-supplied capabilities and infrastructure

In evaluating any proposed development activity for commercially-developed crew or cargo launch capabilities, the Administrator shall identify the anticipated contribution of government personnel, expertise, technologies, and infrastructure to be utilized in support of design, development, or operations of such capabilities. This assessment shall include a clear delineation of the full requirements for the commercial crew service (including the contingency for crew rescue). The Administrator shall include details and associated costs of such support as part of any proposed development initiative for the procurement of commercially-developed crew or cargo launch capabilities or services.

(5) Flight demonstration and readiness requirements

The Administrator shall establish appropriate milestones and minimum performance objectives to be achieved before authority is granted to proceed to the procurement of commercially-developed crew transportation capabilities or systems. The guidelines shall include a procedure to provide independent assurance of flight safety and flight readiness before the authorization of United States government personnel to participate as crew onboard any commercial launch vehicle developed pursuant to this section.

(6) Commercial crew rescue capabilities

The provision of a commercial capability to provide ISS crew services shall include crew rescue requirements, and shall be undertaken through the procurement process initiated in conformance with this section. In the event such development is initiated, the Administrator shall make available any relevant government-owned intellectual property deriving from the development of a multi-purpose crew vehicle authorized by this chapter to commercial entities involved with such crew rescue capability development which shall be relevant to the design of a crew rescue capability. In addition, the Administrator shall seek to ensure that contracts for development of the multi-purpose crew vehicle contain provisions for the licensing of relevant intellectual property to participating commercial providers of any crew rescue capability development undertaken pursuant to this section. If one or more contractors involved with development of the multi-purpose crew vehicle seek to compete in development of a commercial crew service with crew rescue capability, separate legislative authority must be enacted to enable the Administrator to provide funding for any modifications of the multi-purpose crew vehicle necessary to fulfill the ISS crew rescue function.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title IV, §403, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2820.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Aeronautics and Space Act of 1958, referred to in subsec. (b)(3), is Pub. L. 85–568, July 29,

1958, 72 Stat. 426, which was classified principally to chapter 26 (§2451 et seq.) of this title and was substantially repealed and restated as chapter 201 (§20101 et seq.) of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1958 Act note set out under section 10101 of Title 51 and Tables.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

SUBCHAPTER IV—CONTINUATION, SUPPORT, AND EVOLUTION OF THE INTERNATIONAL SPACE STATION

§18351. Continuation of the International Space Station

(a) Policy of the United States

It shall be the policy of the United States, in consultation with its international partners in the ISS program, to support full and complete utilization of the ISS through at least 2024.

(b) NASA action

In furtherance of the policy set forth in subsection (a), NASA shall—

(1) pursue international, commercial, and intragovernmental means to maximize ISS logistics supply, maintenance, and operational capabilities, reduce risks to ISS systems sustainability, and offset and minimize United States operations costs relating to the ISS;

(2) utilize, to the extent practicable, the ISS for the development of capabilities and technologies needed for the future of human space exploration beyond low-Earth orbit; and

(3) utilize, if practical and cost effective, the ISS for Science Mission Directorate missions in low-Earth orbit.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title V, §501, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2822; Pub. L. 114–90, title I, §114(b)(1), Nov. 25, 2015, 129 Stat. 715; Pub. L. 115–10, title III, §301(c), Mar. 21, 2017, 131 Stat. 23.)

AMENDMENTS

2017—Pub. L. 115–10 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows:

"(a) POLICY OF THE UNITED STATES.—It shall be the policy of the United States, in consultation with its international partners in the ISS program, to support full and complete utilization of the ISS through at least 2024.

"(b) NASA ACTIONS.—In furtherance of the policy set forth in subsection (a), NASA shall pursue international, commercial, and intragovernmental means to maximize ISS logistics supply, maintenance, and operational capabilities, reduce risks to ISS systems sustainability, and offset and minimize United States operations costs relating to the ISS."

2015—Pub. L. 114–90, §114(b)(1)(A), struck out "through 2020" after "Station" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 114–90, §114(b)(1)(B), substituted "through at least 2024" for "through at least 2020".

§18352. Maximum utilization of the International Space Station

(a) In general

With assembly of the ISS complete, NASA shall take steps to maximize the productivity and use of the ISS with respect to scientific and technological research and development, advancement of space exploration, and international collaboration.

(b) NASA actions

In carrying out subsection (a), NASA shall, at a minimum, undertake the following:

(1) Innovative use of U.S. segment

The United States segment of the ISS, which has been designated as a National Laboratory, shall be developed, managed and utilized in a manner that enables the effective and innovative use of such facility, as provided in section 18354 of this title.

(2) International cooperation

The ISS shall continue to be utilized as a key component of international efforts to build missions and capabilities that further the development of a human presence beyond near-Earth space and advance United States security and economic goals. The Administrator shall actively seek ways to encourage and enable the use of ISS capabilities to support these efforts.

(3) Domestic collaboration

The operations, management, and utilization of the ISS shall be conducted in a manner that provides opportunities for collaboration with other research programs and objectives of the United States Government in cooperation with commercial suppliers, users, and developers.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title V, §502, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2823.)

§18353. Maintenance of the United States segment and assurance of continued operations of the International Space Station.

(a) In general

The Administrator shall take all actions necessary to ensure the safe and effective operation, maintenance, and maximum utilization of the United States segment of the ISS through at least September 30, 2024.

(b) Vehicle and component review

(1) In general

The Administrator shall, as soon as is practicable after October 11, 2010, carry out a comprehensive assessment of the essential modules, operational systems and components, structural elements, and permanent scientific equipment on board or planned for delivery and installation aboard the ISS, including both United States and international partner elements, for purposes of identifying the spare or replacement modules, systems and components, elements, and equipment that are required to ensure complete, effective, and safe functioning and full scientific utilization of the ISS through September 30, 2020.[1]

(2) Data

In carrying out the assessment, the Administrator shall assemble any existing data, and provide for the development of any data or analysis not currently available, that is necessary for purposes of the assessment.

(c) Reports

(1) Report on assessment

(A) Report required

Not later than 90 days after October 11, 2010, the Administrator shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress a report on the assessment required by subsection (b).

(B) Elements

The report required by this paragraph shall include, at minimum, the following:

(i) A description of the spare or replacement modules, systems and components, elements, and equipment identified pursuant to the assessment that are currently produced, in inventory, or on order, a description of the state of their readiness, and a schedule for their delivery to the ISS (including the planned transportation means for such delivery), including for each such module, system or component, element, or equipment a description of—

(I) its specifications, including size, weight, and necessary configuration for launch and

delivery to the ISS;
(II) its function;
(III) its location; and
(IV) its criticality for ISS system integrity.

(ii) A description of the spare or replacement modules, systems and components, elements, and equipment identified pursuant to the assessment that are not currently produced, in inventory, or on order, including for each such module, system or component, element, or equipment a description of—
(I) its specifications, including size, weight, and necessary configuration for launch and delivery to the ISS;
(II) its function;
(III) its location;
(IV) its criticality for ISS system integrity; and
(V) the anticipated cost and schedule for its design, procurement, manufacture, and delivery to the ISS.

(iii) A detailed summary of the delivery schedule and associated delivery vehicle requirements necessary to transport all spare and replacement elements considered essential for the ongoing and sustained functionality of all critical systems of the ISS, both in and of themselves and as an element of an integrated, mutually dependent essential capability, including an assessment of the current schedule for delivery, the availability of delivery vehicles to meet that schedule, and the likelihood of meeting that schedule through such vehicles.

(2) GAO report

(A) Report required

Not later than 90 days after the submittal to Congress under paragraph (1) of the assessment required by subsection (b), the Comptroller General of the United States shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress a report on the assessment. The report shall set forth an evaluation of the assessment by the Comptroller General, including an evaluation of the accuracy and level of confidence in the findings of the assessment.

(B) Cooperation with GAO

The Administrator shall provide for the monitoring and participation of the Comptroller General in the assessment in a manner that permits the Comptroller General to prepare and submit the report required by subparagraph (A).

(d) Utilization of research facilities and capabilities

Utilization of research facilities and capabilities aboard the ISS (other than exploration-related research and technology development facilities and capabilities, and associated ground support and logistics), shall be planned, managed, and supported as provided in section 18354 of this title. Exploration-related research and technology development facilities, capabilities, and associated ground support and logistics shall be planned, managed, and supported by the appropriate NASA organizations and officials in a manner that does not interfere with other activities under section 18354 of this title.

(e) Space Shuttle mission to ISS

(1) Space Shuttle mission

The Administrator shall fly the Launch-On-Need Shuttle mission currently designated in the Shuttle Flight Manifest dated February 28, 2010, to the ISS in fiscal year 2011, but no earlier than June 1, 2011, unless required earlier by an operations contingency, and pending the results of the assessment required by paragraph (2) and the determination under paragraph (3)(A).

(2) Assessment of safe means of return

The Administrator shall provide for an assessment by the NASA Engineering and Safety Center of the procedures and plans developed to ensure the safety of the Space Shuttle crew, and alternative means of return, in the event the Space Shuttle is damaged or otherwise unable to return safely to Earth.

(3) Schedule and payload

The determination of the schedule and payload for the mission authorized by paragraph (1) shall take into account the following:

(A) The supply and logistics delivery requirements of the ISS.

(B) The findings of the study required by paragraph (2).

(4) Funds

Amounts authorized to be appropriated by section 101(2)(B) [1] shall be available for the mission authorized by paragraph (1).

(f) Space Shuttle manifest flight assurance

(1) In general

The Administrator shall take all actions necessary to preserve Space Shuttle launch capability through fiscal year 2011 in a manner that enables the launch, at a minimum, of missions and primary payloads in the Shuttle flight manifest as of February 28, 2010.

(2) Continuation of contractor support

The Administrator may not terminate any contract that provides the system transitions necessary for shuttle-derived hardware to be used on either the multi-purpose crew vehicle described in section 18323 of this title or the Space Launch System described in section 18322 of this title.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title V, §503, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2823; Pub. L. 114–90, title I, §114(b)(2), Nov. 25, 2015, 129 Stat. 716.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reference to September 30, 2020, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), was not amended by section 114(b) of Pub. L. 114–90, which substituted references to "2024" for references to "2020" in other provisions throughout this subchapter. See also section 70907 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, as amended by section 114(b) of Pub. L. 114–90.

Section 101(2)(B), referred to in subsec. (e)(4), is Pub. L. 111–267, title I, §101(2)(B), Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2809, which is not classified to the Code.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 114–90, §114(b)(2)(A), substituted "through at least September 30, 2024" for "through at least September 30, 2020".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 114–90, §114(b)(2)(B), substituted "The Administrator" for "In carrying out subsection (a), the Administrator".

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§18354. Management of the ISS national laboratory

(a) Cooperative agreement with not-for-profit entity for management of national laboratory

(1) In general

The Administrator shall provide initial financial assistance and enter into a cooperative agreement with an appropriate organization that is exempt from taxation under section 501(c)(3) of title 26 to manage the activities of the ISS national laboratory in accordance with this section.

(2) Qualifications

The organization with which the Administrator enters into the cooperative agreement shall develop the capabilities to implement research and development projects utilizing the ISS national laboratory and to otherwise manage the activities of the ISS national laboratory.

(3) Prohibition on other activities

The cooperative agreement shall require the organization entering into the agreement to engage exclusively in activities relating to the management of the ISS national laboratory and activities that promote its long term research and development mission as required by this section, without any other organizational objectives or responsibilities on behalf of the organization or any parent organization or other entity.

(b) NASA liaison

(1) Designation

The Administrator shall designate an official or employee of the Space Operations Mission Directorate of NASA to act as liaison between NASA and the organization with which the Administrator enters into a cooperative agreement under subsection (a) with regard to the management of the ISS national laboratory.

(2) Consultation with liaison

The cooperative agreement shall require the organization entering into the agreement to carry out its responsibilities under the agreement in cooperation and consultation with the official or employee designated under paragraph (1).

(c) Planning and coordination of ISS national laboratory research activities

The Administrator shall provide initial financial assistance to the organization with which the Administrator enters into a cooperative agreement under subsection (a), in order for the organization to initiate the following:

(1) Planning and coordination of the ISS national laboratory research activities.

(2) Development and implementation of guidelines, selection criteria, and flight support requirements for non-NASA scientific utilization of ISS research capabilities and facilities available in United States-owned modules of the ISS or in partner-owned facilities of the ISS allocated to United States utilization by international agreement.

(3) Interaction with and integration of the International Space Station National Laboratory Advisory Committee established under section 70906 of title 51 with the governance of the organization, and review recommendations provided by that Committee regarding agreements with non-NASA departments and agencies of the United States Government, academic institutions and consortia, and commercial entities leading to the utilization of the ISS national laboratory facilities.

(4) Coordination of transportation requirements in support of the ISS national laboratory research and development objectives, including provision for delivery of instruments, logistics support, and related experiment materials, and provision for return to Earth of collected samples, materials, and scientific instruments in need of replacement or upgrade.

(5) Cooperation with NASA, other departments and agencies of the United States Government, the States, and commercial entities in ensuring the enhancement and sustained operations of non-exploration-related research payload ground support facilities for the ISS, including the Space Life Sciences Laboratory, the Space Station Processing Facility and Payload Operations Integration Center.

(6) Development and implementation of scientific outreach and education activities designed to ensure effective utilization of ISS research capabilities including the conduct of scientific assemblies, conferences, and other fora for the presentation of research findings, methods, and mechanisms for the dissemination of non-restricted research findings and the development of

educational programs, course supplements, interaction with educational programs at all grade levels, including student-focused research opportunities for conduct of research in the ISS national laboratory facilities.

(7) Such other matters relating to the utilization of the ISS national laboratory facilities for research and development as the Administrator may consider appropriate.

(d) Research capacity allocation and integration of research payloads

(1) Allocation of ISS research capacity

As soon as practicable after October 11, 2010, but not later than October 1, 2011, ISS national laboratory managed experiments shall be guaranteed access to, and utilization of, not less than 50 percent of the United States research capacity allocation, including power, cold stowage, and requisite crew time onboard the ISS through at least September 30, 2024. Access to the ISS research capacity includes provision for the adequate upmass and downmass capabilities to utilize the ISS research capacity, as available. The Administrator may allocate additional capacity to the ISS national laboratory should such capacity be in excess of NASA research requirements.

(2) Additional research capabilities

If any NASA research plan is determined to require research capacity onboard the ISS beyond the percentage allocated under paragraph (1), such research plan shall be prepared in the form of a requested research opportunity to be submitted to the process established under this section for the consideration of proposed research within the capacity allocated to the ISS national laboratory. A proposal for such a research plan may include the establishment of partnerships with non-NASA institutions eligible to propose research to be conducted within the ISS national laboratory capacity. Until at least September 30, 2024, the official or employee designated under subsection (b) may grant an exception to this requirement in the case of a proposed experiment considered essential for purposes of preparing for exploration beyond low-Earth orbit, as determined by joint agreement between the organization with which the Administrator enters into a cooperative agreement under subsection (a) and the official or employee designated under subsection (b).

(3) Research priorities and enhanced capacity

The organization with which the Administrator enters into the cooperative agreement shall consider recommendations of the National Academies Decadal Survey on Biological and Physical Sciences in Space in establishing research priorities and in developing proposed enhancements of research capacity and opportunities for the ISS national laboratory.

(4) Responsibility for research payload

NASA shall retain its roles and responsibilities in providing research payload physical, analytical, and operations integration during pre-flight, post-flight, transportation, and orbital phases essential to ensure safe and effective flight readiness and vehicle integration of research activities approved and prioritized by the organization with which the Administrator enters into the cooperative agreement and the official or employee designated under subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 111–267, title V, §504, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2825; Pub. L. 114–90, title I, §114(b)(3), Nov. 25, 2015, 129 Stat. 716.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (c)(3), "section 70906 of title 51" substituted for "section 602 of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2008 (42 U.S.C. 17752)" on authority of Pub. L. 111–314, §5(e), Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3443, which Act enacted Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsec. (d)(1), (2). Pub. L. 114–90 substituted "at least September 30, 2024" for "September 30, 2020".

SUBCHAPTER V—SPACE SHUTTLE RETIREMENT AND TRANSITION

§18361. Sense of Congress on the Space Shuttle program

(a) Findings

Congress makes the following findings:

(1) The Space Shuttle program represents a national asset consisting of critical skills and capabilities, including the ability to lift large payloads into space and return them to Earth.

(2) The Space Shuttle has carried more than 355 people from 16 nations into space.

(3) The Space Shuttle has projected the best of American values around the world, and Space Shuttle crews have sparked the imagination and dreams of the world's youth and young at heart.

(b) Sense of Congress

It is the sense of Congress that—

(1) it is essential that the retirement of the Space Shuttle and the transition to new human space flight capabilities be done in a manner that builds upon the legacy of this national asset; and

(2) it is imperative for the United States to retain the skills and the industrial capability to provide a follow-on Space Launch System that is primarily designed for missions beyond near-Earth space, while offering some potential for supplanting shuttle delivery capabilities to low-Earth orbit, particularly in support of ISS requirements, if necessary.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VI, §601, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2828.)

§18362. Retirement of Space Shuttle orbiters and transition of Space Shuttle program

(a) In general

The Administrator shall retire the Space Shuttle orbiters pursuant to a schedule established by the Administrator and in a manner consistent with provisions of this chapter regarding potential requirements for contingency utilization of Space Shuttle orbiters for ISS requirements.

(b) Utilization of workforce and assets in follow-on Space Launch System

(1) Utilization of vehicle assets

In carrying out subsection (a), the Administrator shall, to the maximum extent practicable, utilize workforce, assets, and infrastructure of the Space Shuttle program in efforts relating to the initiation of a follow-on Space Launch System developed pursuant to section 18322 of this title.

(2) Other assets

With respect to the workforce, assets, and infrastructure not utilized as described in paragraph (1), the Administrator shall work closely with other departments and agencies of the Federal Government, and the private sector, to divest unneeded assets and to assist displaced workers with retraining and other placement efforts. Amounts authorized to be appropriated by section 101(2)(B) [1] shall be available for activities pursuant to this paragraph.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VI, §602, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2828.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 101(2)(B), referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is Pub. L. 111–267, title I, §101(2)(B), Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2809, which is not classified to the Code.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§18363. Disposition of orbiter vehicles

(a) In general

Upon the termination of the Space Shuttle program as provided in section 18362 of this title, the Administrator shall decommission any remaining Space Shuttle orbiter vehicles according to established safety and historic preservation procedures prior to their designation as surplus government property. The orbiter vehicles shall be made available and located for display and maintenance through a competitive procedure established pursuant to the disposition plan developed under section 613(a) of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2008 (42 U.S.C. 17761(a)),[1] with priority consideration given to eligible applicants meeting all conditions of that plan which would provide for the display and maintenance of orbiters at locations with the best potential value to the public, including where the location of the orbiters can advance educational opportunities in science, technology, engineering, and mathematics disciplines, and with an historical relationship with either the launch, flight operations, or processing of the Space Shuttle orbiters or the retrieval of NASA manned space vehicles, or significant contributions to human space flight. The Smithsonian Institution, which, as of October 11, 2001, houses the Space Shuttle Enterprise, shall determine any new location for the Enterprise.

(b) Display and maintenance

The orbiter vehicles made available under subsection (a) shall be displayed and maintained through agreements and procedures established pursuant to section 613(a) of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2008 (42 U.S.C. 17761(a)).[1]

(c) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to NASA such sums as may be necessary to carry out this section. The amounts authorized to be appropriated by this subsection shall be in addition to any amounts authorized to be appropriated by title I, and may be requested by the President as supplemental requirements, if needed, in the appropriate fiscal years.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VI, §603, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2829.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 613(a) of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2008, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), is section 613(a) of Pub. L. 110–422, formerly classified to section 17761(a) of this title, which was transferred and is set out as a note under section 70501 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

Title I, referred to in subsec. (c), is title I of Pub. L. 111–267, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2809, which is not classified to the Code.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

SUBCHAPTER VI—EARTH SCIENCE

§18371. Interagency collaboration implementation approach

The Director of OSTP shall establish a mechanism to ensure greater coordination of the research, operations, and activities relating to civilian Earth observation of those Agencies, including NASA, that have active programs that either contribute directly or indirectly to these areas. This mechanism should include the development of a strategic implementation plan that is updated at least every 3 years, and includes a process for external independent advisory input. This plan should include a description of the responsibilities of the various Agency roles in Earth observations, recommended cost-sharing and procurement arrangements between Agencies and other entities, including international arrangements, and a plan for ensuring the provision of sustained, long term space-based

climate observations. The Director shall provide a report to Congress within 90 days after October 11, 2010, on the implementation plan for this mechanism.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VII, §702, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2830.)

§18372. Transitioning experimental research to operations

The Administrator shall coordinate with the Administrator of NOAA and the Director of the United States Geological Survey to establish a formal mechanism that plans, coordinates, and supports the transitioning of NASA research findings, assets, and capabilities to NOAA operations and United States Geological Survey operations. In defining this mechanism, NASA should consider the establishment of a formal or informal Interagency Transition Office. The Administrator of NASA shall provide an implementation plan for this mechanism to Congress within 90 days after October 11, 2010.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VII, §703, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2830.)

§18373. Decadal Survey missions implementation for Earth observation

The Administrator shall undertake to implement, as appropriate, missions identified in the National Research Council's Earth Science Decadal Survey within the scope of the funds authorized for the Earth Science Mission Directorate.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VII, §704, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2831.)

§18374. Instrument test-beds and venture class missions

The Administrator shall pursue innovative ways to fly instrument-level payloads for early demonstration or as co-manifested payloads. The Congress encourages the use of the ISS as an accessible platform for the conduct of such activities. Additionally, in order to address the cost and schedule challenges associated with large flight systems, NASA should pursue smaller systems where practicable and warranted.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VII, §706, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2831.)

SUBCHAPTER VII—SPACE SCIENCE

§18381. Technology development

The Administrator shall ensure that the Science Mission Directorate maintains a long term technology development program for space and Earth science. This effort should be coordinated with an overall Agency technology investment approach, as authorized in section 905 of this Act.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VIII, §801, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2832.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 905 of this Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 111–267, title IX, §905, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2836, which is not classified to the Code.

§18382. Suborbital research activities

(a) In general

The report of the National Academy of Sciences, Revitalizing NASA's Suborbital Program: Advancing Science, Driving Innovation and Developing Workforce, found that suborbital science missions were absolutely critical to building an aerospace workforce capable of meeting the needs of current and future human and robotic space exploration.

(b) Management

The Administrator shall designate an officer or employee of the Science Mission Directorate to act as the responsible official for all Suborbital Research in the Science Mission Directorate. The designee shall be responsible for the development of short- and long term strategic plans for maintaining, renewing and extending suborbital facilities and capabilities, monitoring progress towards goals in the plans, and be responsible for integration of suborbital activities and workforce development within the agency, thereby ensuring the long term recognition of their combined value to the directorate, to NASA, and to the Nation.

(c) Establishment of Suborbital Research Program

The Administrator shall establish a Suborbital Research Program within the Science Mission Directorate that shall include the use of sounding rockets, aircraft, high altitude balloons, suborbital reusable launch vehicles, and commercial launch vehicles to advance science and train the next generation of scientists and engineers in systems engineering and systems integration which are vital to maintaining critical skills in the aerospace workforce. The program shall integrate existing suborbital research programs with orbital missions at the discretion of the designated officer or employee and shall emphasize the participation of undergraduate and graduate students and post-doctoral researchers when formulating announcements of opportunity.

(d) Report

The Administrator shall report to the appropriate committees of Congress on the number and type of suborbital missions conducted in each fiscal year and the number of undergraduate and graduate students participating in the missions. The report shall be made annually for each fiscal year under this section.

(e) Authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Administrator such sums as may be necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VIII, §802, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2832.)

§18383. In-space servicing

The Administrator shall continue to take all necessary steps to ensure that provisions are made for in-space or human servicing and repair of all future observatory-class scientific spacecraft intended to be deployed in Earth-orbit or at a Lagrangian point to the extent practicable and appropriate. The Administrator should ensure that agency investments and future capabilities for space technology, robotics, and human space flight take the ability to service and repair these spacecraft into account, where appropriate, and incorporate such capabilities into design and operational plans.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VIII, §804, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2833.)

§18384. Decadal results

NASA shall take into account the current decadal surveys from the National Academies' Space Studies Board when submitting the President's budget request to the Congress.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VIII, §805, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2833.)

§18385. On-going restoration of radioisotope thermoelectric generator material

production

(a) Findings

The Congress finds the following:

(1) The United States has led the world in the scientific exploration of space for nearly 50 years.

(2) Missions such as Viking, Voyager, Cassini, and New Horizons have greatly expanded knowledge of our solar system and planetary characteristics and evolution.

(3) Radioisotope power systems are the only available power sources for deep space missions making it possible to travel to such distant destinations as Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Pluto, and beyond and maintain operational control and systems viability for extended mission durations.

(4) Current radioisotope power systems supplies and production will not fully support NASA missions planned even in the next decade and, without a new domestic production capability, the United States will no longer have the means to explore the majority of the solar system by the end of this decade.

(5) Continuing to rely on Russia or other foreign sources for radioisotope power system fuel production is not a secure option.

(6) Reestablishing domestic production will require a long lead-time. Thus, meeting future space exploration mission needs requires that a restart project begin at the earliest opportunity.

(b) In general

The Administrator shall, in coordination with the Secretary of Energy, pursue a joint approach beginning in fiscal year 2011 towards restarting and sustaining the domestic production of radioisotope thermoelectric generator material for deep space and other science and exploration missions. Funds authorized by this chapter for NASA shall be made available under a reimbursable agreement with the Department of Energy for the purpose of reestablishing facilities to produce fuel required for radioisotope thermoelectric generators to enable future missions.

(c) Report

Within 120 days after October 11, 2010, the Administrator and the Secretary of Energy shall submit a joint report to the appropriate committees of Congress on coordinated agreements, planned implementation, and anticipated schedule, production quantities, and mission applications under this section.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VIII, §806, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2833.)

§18386. Collaboration with ESMD and SOMD on robotic missions

The Administrator shall ensure that the Exploration Systems Mission Directorate and the Space Operations Mission Directorate coordinate with the Science Mission Directorate on an overall approach and plan for interagency and international collaboration on robotic missions that are NASA or internationally developed, including lunar, Lagrangian, near-Earth orbit, and Mars spacecraft, such as the International Lunar Network. Within 90 days after October 11, 2010, the Administrator shall provide a plan to the appropriate committees of Congress for implementation of the collaborative approach required by this section. The Administrator may not cancel or initiate any Exploration Systems Mission Directorate or Science Mission Directorate robotic project before the plan is submitted to the appropriate committees of Congress.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VIII, §807, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2834.)

§18387. Near-Earth object survey and policy with respect to threats posed

(a) Policy reaffirmation

Congress reaffirms the policy set forth in section 20102(g) of title 51 relating to surveying near-Earth asteroids and comets.

(b) Implementation

The Director of the OSTP shall implement, before September 30, 2012, a policy for notifying Federal agencies and relevant emergency response institutions of an impending near-Earth object threat if near-term public safety is at risk, and assign a Federal agency or agencies to be responsible for protecting the United States and working with the international community on such threats.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VIII, §808, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2834.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), "section 20102(g) of title 51" substituted for "section 102(g) of the National Aeronautics and Space Act of 1958 (42 U.S.C. 2451(g))" on authority of Pub. L. 111–314, §5(e), Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3443, which Act enacted Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§18388. Space weather

(a) Findings

The Congress finds the following:

(1) Space weather events pose a significant threat to modern technological systems.

(2) The effects of severe space weather events on the electric power grid, telecommunications and entertainment satellites, airline communications during polar routes, and space-based position, navigation and timing systems could have significant societal, economic, national security, and health impacts.

(3) Earth and Space Observing satellites, such as the Advanced Composition Explorer, Geostationary Operational Environmental Satellites, Polar Operational Environmental Satellites, and Defense Meteorological Satellites, provide crucial data necessary to predict space weather events.

(b) Action required

The Director of OSTP shall—

(1) improve the Nation's ability to prepare, avoid, mitigate, respond to, and recover from potentially devastating impacts of space weather events;

(2) coordinate the operational activities of the National Space Weather Program Council members, including the NOAA Space Weather Prediction Center and the U.S. Air Force Weather Agency; and

(3) submit a report to the appropriate committees of Congress within 180 days after October 11, 2010, that—

(A) details the current data sources, both space- and ground-based, that are necessary for space weather forecasting; and

(B) details the space- and ground-based systems that will be required to gather data necessary for space weather forecasting for the next 10 years.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title VIII, §809, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2834.)

EX. ORD. NO. 13744. COORDINATING EFFORTS TO PREPARE THE NATION FOR SPACE WEATHER EVENTS

Ex. Ord. No. 13744, Oct. 13, 2016, 81 F.R. 71573, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, and to prepare the Nation for space weather events, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Policy*. Space weather events, in the form of solar flares, solar energetic particles, and geomagnetic disturbances, occur regularly, some with measurable effects on critical infrastructure systems and technologies, such as the Global Positioning System (GPS), satellite operations and communication, aviation, and the electrical power grid. Extreme space weather events—those that could significantly degrade critical infrastructure—could disable large portions of the electrical power grid, resulting in cascading failures that would affect key services such as water supply, healthcare, and transportation. Space weather has the potential

to simultaneously affect and disrupt health and safety across entire continents. Successfully preparing for space weather events is an all-of-nation endeavor that requires partnerships across governments, emergency managers, academia, the media, the insurance industry, non-profits, and the private sector.

It is the policy of the United States to prepare for space weather events to minimize the extent of economic loss and human hardship. The Federal Government must have (1) the capability to predict and detect a space weather event, (2) the plans and programs necessary to alert the public and private sectors to enable mitigating actions for an impending space weather event, (3) the protection and mitigation plans, protocols, and standards required to reduce risks to critical infrastructure prior to and during a credible threat, and (4) the ability to respond to and recover from the effects of space weather. Executive departments and agencies (agencies) must coordinate their efforts to prepare for the effects of space weather events.

SEC. 2. *Objectives*. This order defines agency roles and responsibilities and directs agencies to take specific actions to prepare the Nation for the hazardous effects of space weather. These activities are to be implemented in conjunction with those identified in the 2015 National Space Weather Action Plan (Action Plan) and any subsequent updates. Implementing this order and the Action Plan will require the Federal Government to work across agencies and to develop, as appropriate, enhanced and innovative partnerships with State, tribal, and local governments; academia; non-profits; the private sector; and international partners. These efforts will enhance national preparedness and speed the creation of a space-weather-ready Nation.

SEC. 3. *Coordination*. (a) The Director of the Office of Science and Technology Policy (OSTP), in consultation with the Assistant to the President for Homeland Security and Counterterrorism and the Director of the Office of Management and Budget (OMB), shall coordinate the development and implementation of Federal Government activities to prepare the Nation for space weather events, including the activities established in section 5 of this order and the recommendations of the National Science and Technology Council (NSTC), established by Executive Order 12881 of November 23, 1993 (Establishment of the National Science and Technology Council).

(b) To ensure accountability for and coordination of research, development, and implementation of activities identified in this order and in the Action Plan, the NSTC shall establish a Space Weather Operations, Research, and Mitigation Subcommittee (Subcommittee). The Subcommittee member agencies shall conduct activities to advance the implementation of this order, to achieve the goals identified in the 2015 National Space Weather Strategy and any subsequent updates, and to coordinate and monitor the implementation of the activities specified in the Action Plan and provide subsequent updates.

SEC. 4. *Roles and Responsibilities*. To the extent permitted by law, the agencies below shall adopt the following roles and responsibilities, which are key to ensuring enhanced space weather forecasting, situational awareness, space weather preparedness, and continuous Federal Government operations during and after space weather events.

(a) The Secretary of Defense shall ensure the timely provision of operational space weather observations, analyses, forecasts, and other products to support the mission of the Department of Defense and coalition partners, including the provision of alerts and warnings for space weather phenomena that may affect weapons systems, military operations, or the defense of the United States.

(b) The Secretary of the Interior shall support the research, development, deployment, and operation of capabilities that enhance the understanding of variations of the Earth's magnetic field associated with solar-terrestrial interactions.

(c) The Secretary of Commerce shall:

(i) provide timely and accurate operational space weather forecasts, watches, warnings, alerts, and real-time space weather monitoring for the government, civilian, and commercial sectors, exclusive of the responsibilities of the Secretary of Defense; and

(ii) ensure the continuous improvement of operational space weather services, utilizing partnerships, as appropriate, with the research community, including academia and the private sector, and relevant agencies to develop, validate, test, and transition space weather observation platforms and models from research to operations and from operations to research.

(d) The Secretary of Energy shall facilitate the protection and restoration of the reliability of the electrical power grid during a presidentially declared grid security emergency associated with a geomagnetic disturbance pursuant to 16 U.S.C. 824o–1.

(e) The Secretary of Homeland Security shall:

(i) ensure the timely redistribution of space weather alerts and warnings that support national preparedness, continuity of government, and continuity of operations; and

(ii) coordinate response and recovery from the effects of space weather events on critical infrastructure and the broader community.

(f) The Administrator of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) shall:

(i) implement and support a national research program to understand the Sun and its interactions with Earth and the solar system to advance space weather modeling and prediction capabilities applicable to space weather forecasting;

(ii) develop and operate space-weather-related research missions, instrument capabilities, and models; and

(iii) support the transition of space weather models and technology from research to operations and from operations to research.

(g) The Director of the National Science Foundation (NSF) shall support fundamental research linked to societal needs for space weather information through investments and partnerships, as appropriate.

(h) The Secretary of State, in consultation with the heads of relevant agencies, shall carry out diplomatic and public diplomacy efforts to strengthen global capacity to respond to space weather events.

(i) The Secretaries of Defense, the Interior, Commerce, Transportation, Energy, and Homeland Security, along with the Administrator of NASA and the Director of NSF, shall work together, consistent with their ongoing activities, to develop models, observation systems, technologies, and approaches that inform and enhance national preparedness for the effects of space weather events, including how space weather events may affect critical infrastructure and change the threat landscape with respect to other hazards.

(j) The heads of all agencies that support National Essential Functions, defined by Presidential Policy Directive 40 (PPD–40) of July 15, 2016 (National Continuity Policy), shall ensure that space weather events are adequately addressed in their all-hazards preparedness planning, including mitigation, response, and recovery, as directed by PPD–8 of March 30, 2011 (National Preparedness).

(k) NSTC member agencies shall coordinate through the NSTC to establish roles and responsibilities beyond those identified in section 4 of this order to enhance space weather preparedness, consistent with each agency's legal authority.

SEC. 5. *Implementation*. (a) Within 120 days of the date of this order, the Secretary of Energy, in consultation with the Secretary of Homeland Security, shall develop a plan to test and evaluate available devices that mitigate the effects of geomagnetic disturbances on the electrical power grid through the development of a pilot program that deploys such devices, *in situ*, in the electrical power grid. After the development of the plan, the Secretary shall implement the plan in collaboration with industry. In taking action pursuant to this subsection, the Secretaries of Energy and Homeland Security shall consult with the Chairman of the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission.

(b) Within 120 days of the date of this order, the heads of the sector-specific agencies that oversee the lifeline critical infrastructure functions as defined by the National Infrastructure Protection Plan of 2013—including communications, energy, transportation, and water and wastewater systems—as well as the Nuclear Reactors, Materials, and Waste Sector, shall assess their executive and statutory authority, and limits of that authority, to direct, suspend, or control critical infrastructure operations, functions, and services before, during, and after a space weather event. The heads of each sector-specific agency shall provide a summary of these assessments to the Subcommittee.

(c) Within 90 days of receipt of the assessments ordered in section 5(b) of this order, the Subcommittee shall provide a report on the findings of these assessments with recommendations to the Director of OSTP, the Assistant to the President for Homeland Security and Counterterrorism, and the Director of OMB. The assessments may be used to inform the development and implementation of policy establishing authorities and responsibilities for agencies in response to a space weather event.

(d) Within 60 days of the date of this order, the Secretaries of Defense and Commerce, the Administrator of NASA, and the Director of NSF, in collaboration with other agencies as appropriate, shall identify mechanisms for advancing space weather observations, models, and predictions, and for sustaining and transitioning appropriate capabilities from research to operations and operations to research, collaborating with industry and academia to the extent possible.

(e) Within 120 days of the date of this order, the Secretaries of Defense and Commerce shall make historical data from the GPS constellation and other U.S. Government satellites publicly available, in accordance with Executive Order 13642 of May 9, 2013 (Making Open and Machine Readable the New Default for Government Information), to enhance model validation and improvements in space weather forecasting and situational awareness.

(f) Within 120 days of the date of this order, the Secretary of Homeland Security, through the Administrator of the Federal Emergency Management Agency and in coordination with relevant agencies, shall lead the development of a coordinated Federal operating concept and associated checklist to coordinate Federal assets and activities to respond to notification of, and protect against, impending space weather events. Within 180 days of the publication of the operating concept and checklist, agencies shall develop operational plans

documenting their procedures and responsibilities to prepare for, protect against, and mitigate the effects of impending space weather events, in support of the Federal operating concept and compatible with the National Preparedness System described in PPD–8.

SEC. 6. *Stakeholder Engagement*. The agencies identified in this order shall seek public-private and international collaborations to enhance observation networks, conduct research, develop prediction models and mitigation approaches, enhance community resilience and preparedness, and supply the services necessary to protect life and property and promote economic prosperity, as consistent with law.

SEC. 7. *Definitions*. As used in this order:

(a) "Prepare" and "preparedness" have the same meaning they have in PPD–8. They refer to the actions taken to plan, organize, equip, train, and exercise to build and sustain the capabilities necessary to prevent, protect against, mitigate the effects of, respond to, and recover from those threats that pose the greatest risk to the security of the Nation. This includes the prediction and notification of space weather events.

(b) "Space weather" means variations in the space environment between the Sun and Earth (and throughout the solar system) that can affect technologies in space and on Earth. The primary types of space weather events are solar flares, solar energetic particles, and geomagnetic disturbances.

(c) "Solar flare" means a brief eruption of intense energy on or near the Sun's surface that is typically associated with sunspots.

(d) "Solar energetic particles" means ions and electrons ejected from the Sun that are typically associated with solar eruptions.

(e) "Geomagnetic disturbance" means a temporary disturbance of Earth's magnetic field resulting from solar activity.

(f) "Critical infrastructure" has the meaning provided in section 1016(e) of the USA Patriot Act of 2001 (42 U.S.C. 5195c(e)), namely systems and assets, whether physical or virtual, so vital to the United States that the incapacity or destruction of such systems and assets would have a debilitating impact on security, national economic security, national public health or safety, or any combination of those matters.

(g) "Sector-Specific Agency" means the agencies designated under PPD–21 of February 12, 2013 (Critical Infrastructure Security and Resilience), or any successor directive, to be responsible for providing institutional knowledge and specialized expertise as well as leading, facilitating, or supporting the security and resilience programs and associated activities of its designated critical infrastructure sector in the all-hazards environment.

SEC. 8. *General Provisions*. (a) Nothing in this order shall be construed to impair or otherwise affect:

(i) the authority granted by law to an agency, or the head thereof; or

(ii) the functions of the Director of OMB relating to budgetary, administrative, or legislative proposals.

(b) This order shall be implemented consistent with applicable law and subject to the availability of appropriations.

(c) This order is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity by any party against the United States, its departments, agencies, or entities, its officers, employees, or agents, or any other person.

BARACK OBAMA.

SUBCHAPTER VIII—AERONAUTICS AND SPACE TECHNOLOGY

§18401. Aeronautics research goals

The Administrator should ensure that NASA maintains a strong aeronautics research portfolio ranging from fundamental research through systems research with specific research goals, including the following:

(1) Airspace capacity

NASA's Aeronautics Research Mission Directorate shall address research needs of the Next Generation Air Transportation System, including the ability of the National Airspace System to handle up to 3 times the current travel demand by 2025.

(2) Environmental sustainability

The Directorate shall consider and pursue concepts to reduce noise, emissions, and fuel

consumption while maintaining high safety standards and shall pursue research related to alternative fuels.

(3) Aviation safety

The Directorate shall proactively address safety challenges with new and current air vehicles and with operations in the Nation's current and future air transportation system.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title IX, §902, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2835.)

§18402. Research collaboration

(a) Department of Defense

The Administrator shall continue to coordinate with the Secretary of Defense, through the National Partnership for Aeronautics Testing, to develop and implement joint plans for those elements of the Nation's research, development, testing, and engineering infrastructure that are of common interest and use.

(b) Federal Aviation Administration

The Administrator shall continue to coordinate with, and work closely with, the Administrator of the Federal Aviation Administration, under the framework of the Senior Policy Council, in development of the Next Generation Air Transportation Program. The Administrator shall encourage the Council to explore areas for greater collaboration, including areas where NASA can help to accelerate the development and demonstration of NextGen technologies.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title IX, §903, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2835.)

§18403. Goal for Agency space technology

It is critical that NASA maintain an Agency space technology base that helps align mission directorate investments and supports long term needs to complement mission-directorate funded research and support, where appropriate, multiple users, building upon its Innovative Partnerships Program and other partnering approaches.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title IX, §904, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2836.)

§18404. National space technology policy

(a) In general

The President or the President's designee, in consultation with appropriate Federal agencies, shall develop a national policy to guide the space technology development programs of the United States through 2020. The policy shall include national goals for technology development and shall describe the role and responsibilities of each Federal agency that will carry out the policy. In developing the policy, the President or the President's designee shall utilize external studies that have been conducted on the state of United States technology development and have suggested policies to ensure continued competitiveness.

(b) Content

(1) At a minimum, the national space technology development policy shall describe for NASA—

(A) the priority areas of research for technology investment;

(B) the basis on which and the process by which priorities for ensuing fiscal years will be selected;

(C) the facilities and personnel needed to carry out the technology development program; and

(D) the budget assumptions on which the policy is based, which for fiscal years 2011, 2012,

and 2013 shall be the authorized level for NASA's technology program authorized by this chapter.

(2) The policy shall be based on the premise that the Federal Government has an established interest in conducting research and development programs that help preserve the role of the United States as a global leader in space technologies and their application.

(3) CONSIDERATIONS.—In developing the national space technology development policy, the President or the President's designee shall consider, and include a discussion in the report required by subsection (c), of the following issues:

(A) The extent to which NASA should focus on long term, high-risk research or more incremental technology development, and the expected impact of that decision on the United States economy.

(B) The extent to which NASA should address military and commercial needs.

(C) How NASA will coordinate its technology program with other Federal agencies.

(D) The extent to which NASA will conduct research in-house, fund university research, and collaborate on industry research and the expected impact of that mix of funding on the supply of United States workers for industry.

(4) CONSULTATION.—In the development of the national space technology development policy, the President or the President's designee shall consult widely with academic and industry experts and with other Federal agencies. The Administrator may enter into an arrangement with the National Academy of Sciences to help develop the policy.

(c) Report

(1) Policy

Not later than 1 year after October 11, 2010, the President shall transmit a report setting forth national space technology policy to the appropriate committees of Congress and to the Senate Committee on Appropriations and the House of Representatives Committee on Appropriations.

(2) Implementation

Not later than 60 days after the President transmits the report required by paragraph (1) to the Congress, the Administrator shall transmit a report to the same committees describing how NASA will carry out the policy.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title IX, §906, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2836.)

§18405. Commercial Reusable Suborbital Research Program

(a) In general

The report of the National Academy of Sciences, Revitalizing NASA's Suborbital Program: Advancing Science, Driving Innovation and Developing Workforce, found that suborbital science missions were absolutely critical to building an aerospace workforce capable of meeting the needs of current and future human and robotic space exploration.

(b) Management

The Administrator shall designate an officer or employee of the Space Technology Program to act as the responsible official for the Commercial Reusable Suborbital Research Program in the Space Technology Program. The designee shall be responsible for the development of short- and long term strategic plans for maintaining, renewing and extending suborbital facilities and capabilities.

(c) Establishment

The Administrator shall establish a Commercial Reusable Suborbital Research Program within the Space Technology Program that shall fund the development of payloads for scientific research, technology development, and education, and shall provide flight opportunities for those payloads to

microgravity environments and suborbital altitudes. The Commercial Reusable Suborbital Research Program may fund engineering and integration demonstrations, proofs of concept, or educational experiments for commercial reusable vehicle flights. The program shall endeavor to work with NASA's Mission Directorates to help achieve NASA's research, technology, and education goals.

(d) Report

The Administrator shall submit a report annually to the appropriate committees of Congress describing progress in carrying out the Commercial Reusable Suborbital Research program, including the number and type of suborbital missions planned in each fiscal year.

(e) Authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Administrator $15,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2011 through 2013 to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title IX, §907, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2837.)

SUBCHAPTER IX—EDUCATION

§18421. Study of potential commercial orbital platform program impact on science, technology, engineering, and mathematics

A fundamental and unique capability of NASA is in stimulating science, technology, engineering, and mathematics education in the United States. In ensuring maximum use of that capability, the Administrator shall carry out a study to—

(1) identify the benefits of and lessons learned from ongoing and previous NASA orbital student programs including, at a minimum, the Get Away Special (GAS) and Earth Knowledge Acquired by Middle School Students (EarthKAM) programs, on science, technology, engineering, and mathematics education;

(2) assess the potential impacts on science, technology, engineering, and mathematics education of a program that would facilitate the development of scientific and educational payloads involving United States students and educators and the flights of those payloads on commercially available orbital platforms, when available and operational, with the goal of providing frequent and regular payload launches;

(3) identify NASA expertise, such as NASA science, engineering, payload development, and payload operations, that could be made available to facilitate a science, technology, engineering, and mathematics program using commercial orbital platforms; and

(4) identify the issues that would need to be addressed before NASA could properly assess the merits and feasibility of the program described in paragraph (2).

(Pub. L. 111–267, title X, §1003, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2838; Pub. L. 111–358, title II, §205(a), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 3995.)

AMENDMENTS

2011—Pub. L. 111–358 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A fundamental and unique capability of NASA is in stimulating science, technology, engineering, and mathematics education in the United States. In ensuring maximum use of that capability, NASA shall—

"(1) establish a program to annually sponsor scientific and educational payloads developed with United States student and educator involvement to be flown on commercially available orbital platforms, when available and operational, with the goal of launching at least 50 such payloads (with at least one from each of the 50 States) to orbit on at least one mission per year;

"(2) contract with providers of commercial orbital platform services for their use by the STEM-Commercial Orbital Platform program, preceded by the issuance of a request for proposal, not later than 90 days after October 11, 2010, to enter into at least one funded, competitively-awarded contract for commercial orbital platform services and make awards within 180 days after such date; and

"(3) engage with United States students and educators and make available NASA's science, engineering, payload development, and payload operations expertise to student teams selected to participate in the STEM-Commercial Orbital Platform program."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2011 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–358, title II, §205(c), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 3996, provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect on October 12, 2010."

SUBCHAPTER X—RE-SCOPING AND REVITALIZING INSTITUTIONAL CAPABILITIES

§18431. Workforce stabilization and critical skills preservation

Prior to receipt by the Congress of the study, recommendations, and implementation strategy developed pursuant to section 1103,[1] none of the funds authorized for use under this Act may be used to transfer the functions, missions, or activities, and associated civil service and contractor positions, from any NASA facility without authorization by the Congress to implement the proposed strategy. The Administrator shall preserve the critical skills and competencies in place at NASA centers prior to October 11, 2010, in order to facilitate timely implementation of the requirements of this chapter and to minimize disruption to the workforce. The Administrator may not implement any reduction-in-force or other involuntary separations of permanent, non-Senior-Executive-Service, civil servant employees before September 30, 2013, except for cause on charges of misconduct, delinquency, or inefficiency.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title XI, §1105, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2840.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1103, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 111–267, title XI, §1103, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2840, which is not classified to the Code.

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 111–267, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2805, known as the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2010, which enacted this chapter (§18301 et seq.) and various other provisions, including provisions authorizing appropriations, which were not classified to the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 18301 of this title and Tables.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

SUBCHAPTER XI—OTHER MATTERS

§18441. National and international orbital debris mitigation

(a) Findings

Congress makes the following findings:

(1) A national and international effort is needed to develop a coordinated approach towards the prevention, negation, and removal of orbital debris.

(2) The guidelines issued by the Inter-Agency Space Debris Coordination Committee provide a consensus understanding of 10 national space agencies (including NASA) plus the European Space Agency on the necessity of mitigating the creation of space debris and measures for doing so. NASA's participation on the Committee should be robust, and NASA should urge other space-relevant Federal agencies (including the Departments of State, Defense, and Commerce) to

work to ensure that their counterpart agencies in foreign governments are aware of these national commitments and the importance in which the United States holds them.

(3) Key components of such an approach should include—

(A) a process for debris prevention through agreements regarding spacecraft design, operations, and end-of-life disposition plans to minimize orbiting vehicles or elements which are nonfunctional;

(B) the development of a robust Space Situational Awareness network that can identify potential collisions and provide sufficient trajectory and orbital data to enable avoidance maneuvers;

(C) the interagency development of an overall strategy for review by the President, with recommendations for proposed international collaborative efforts to address this challenge.

(b) International discussion

(1) In general

The Administrator shall, in consultation with such other departments and agencies of the Federal Government as the Administrator considers appropriate, continue and strengthen discussions with the representatives of other space-faring countries, within the Inter-Agency Space Debris Coordination Committee and elsewhere, to deal with this orbital debris mitigation.

(2) Interagency effort

For purposes of carrying out this subsection, the Director of OSTP, in coordination with the Director of the National Security Council and using the President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology coordinating mechanism, shall develop an overall strategy for review by the President, with recommendations for proposed international collaborative efforts to address this challenge.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title XII, §1202, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2841.)

§18442. Reports on program and cost assessment and control assessment

(a) Findings

Congress makes the following findings:

(1) The adherence of NASA to program cost and schedule targets and discipline across NASA programs remains a concern.

(2) The James Webb Space Telescope has exceeded its cost estimate.

(3) In 2007 the Government Accountability Office issued a report on NASA's high risk acquisition performance.

(4) In response, NASA prepared a corrective action plan two years ago.

(b) Reports

(1) Reports required

Not later than 90 days after October 11, 2010, and not later than April 30 of each year thereafter, the Administrator shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress a report on the implementation during the preceding year for the corrective action plan referred to in subsection (a)(4).

(2) Elements

Each report under this subsection shall set forth, for the year covered by such report, the following:

(A) A description of each NASA program that has exceeded its cost baseline by 15 percent or more or is more than 2 years behind its projected development schedule.

(B) For each program specified under subparagraph (A), a plan for such decrease in scope or requirements, or other measures, to be undertaken to control cost and schedule, including any cost monitoring or corrective actions undertaken pursuant to the National Aeronautics and

Space Administration Authorization Act of 2005 (Public Law 109–155),[1] and the amendments made by that Act.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title XII, §1203, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2841.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act of 2005, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(B), is Pub. L. 109–155, Dec. 30, 2005, 119 Stat. 2895, which was classified principally to chapter 150 (§16601 et seq.) of this title and was substantially repealed and restated in chapters 305 (§30501 et seq.), 401 (§40101 et seq.), 603 (§60301 et seq.) and 707 (§70701 et seq.) and sections 20301, 20302, 30103(a), (b), 30104, 30306, 30703, 30704, 30902, 31301, 31501, 40701, 40904 to 40909, 50505, 50116, 60505, 70501 to 70503, and 70902 to 70905 of Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs, by Pub. L. 111–314, §§3, 6, Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3328, 3444. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2005 Act note set out under section 10101 of Title 51 and Tables.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§18443. Eligibility for service of individual currently serving as Administrator of NASA

The individual serving in the position of Administrator of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration as of October 11, 2010, comes from civilian life and is therefore eligible to serve in such position, in conformance with section 20111 of title 51.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title XII, §1204, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2842.)

CODIFICATION

In text, "section 20111 of title 51" substituted for "section 202 of the National Aeronautics and Space Act of 1958 (42 U.S.C. 2472(a))" on authority of Pub. L. 111–314, §5(e), Dec. 18, 2010, 124 Stat. 3443, which Act enacted Title 51, National and Commercial Space Programs.

§18444. Counterfeit parts

(a) In general

The Administrator shall plan, develop, and implement a program, in coordination with other Federal agencies, to detect, track, catalog, and reduce the number of counterfeit electronic parts in the NASA supply chain.

(b) Requirements

In carrying out the program, the Administrator shall establish—

(1) counterfeit part identification training for all employees that procure, process, distribute, and install electronic parts that will—

(A) teach employees how to identify counterfeit parts;

(B) educate employees on procedures to follow if they suspect a part is counterfeit;

(C) regularly update employees on new threats, identification techniques, and reporting requirements; and

(D) integrate industry associations, manufacturers, suppliers, and other Federal agencies, as appropriate;

(2) an internal database to track all suspected and confirmed counterfeit electronic parts that will maintain, at a minimum—

(A) companies and individuals known and suspected of selling counterfeit parts;

(B) parts known and suspected of being counterfeit, including lot and date codes, part numbers, and part images;

(C) countries of origin;
(D) sources of reporting;
(E) United States Customs seizures; and
(F) Government-Industry Data Exchange Program reports and other public or private sector database notifications; and

(3) a mechanism to report all information on suspected and confirmed counterfeit electronic parts to law enforcement agencies, industry associations, and other databases, and to issue bulletins to industry on counterfeit electronic parts and related counterfeit activity.

(c) Review of procurement and acquisition policy

(1) In general

In establishing the program, the Administrator shall amend existing acquisition and procurement policy to purchase electronic parts from trusted or approved manufacturers. To determine trusted or approved manufacturers, the Administrator shall establish a list, assessed and adjusted at least annually, and create criteria for manufacturers to meet in order to be placed onto the list.

(2) Criteria

The criteria may include—
(A) authentication or encryption codes;
(B) embedded security markings in parts;
(C) unique, harder to copy labels and markings;
(D) identifying distinct lot and serial codes on external packaging;
(E) radio frequency identification embedded into high-value parts;
(F) physical destruction of all defective, damaged, and sub-standard parts that are by-products of the manufacturing process;
(G) testing certifications;
(H) maintenance of procedures for handling any counterfeit parts that slip through;
(I) maintenance of secure facilities to prevent unauthorized access to proprietary information; and
(J) maintenance of product return, buy back, and inventory control practices that limit counterfeiting.

(d) Report to Congress

Within one year after October 11, 2010, the Administrator shall report on the progress of implementing this section to the appropriate committees of Congress.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title XII, §1206, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2843.)

§18445. Information security

(a) Monitoring risk

(1) Update on system implementation

Not later than 120 days after October 11, 2010, and on a biennial basis thereafter, the chief information officer of NASA, in coordination with other national security agencies, shall provide to the appropriate committees of Congress—
(A) an update on efforts to implement a system to provide dynamic, comprehensive, real-time information regarding risk of unauthorized remote, proximity, and insider use or access, for all information infrastructure under the responsibility of the chief information officer, and mission-related networks, including contractor networks;
(B) an assessment of whether the system has demonstrably and quantifiably reduced network risk compared to alternative methods of measuring security; and

(C) an assessment of the progress that each center and facility has made toward implementing the system.

(2) Existing assessments

The assessments required of the Inspector General under section 3545 [1] of title 44 shall evaluate the effectiveness of the system described in this subsection.

(b) Information security awareness and education

(1) In general

In consultation with the Department of Education, other national security agencies, and other agency directorates, the chief information officer shall institute an information security awareness and education program for all operators and users of NASA information infrastructure, with the goal of reducing unauthorized remote, proximity, and insider use or access.

(2) Program requirements

(A) The program shall include, at a minimum, ongoing classified and unclassified threat-based briefings, and automated exercises and examinations that simulate common attack techniques.

(B) All agency employees and contractors engaged in the operation or use of agency information infrastructure shall participate in the program.

(C) Access to NASA information infrastructure shall only be granted to operators and users who regularly satisfy the requirements of the program.

(D) The chief human capital officer of NASA, in consultation with the chief information officer, shall create a system to reward operators and users of agency information infrastructure for continuous high achievement in the program.

(c) Information infrastructure defined

In this section, the term "information infrastructure" means the underlying framework that information systems and assets rely on to process, transmit, receive, or store information electronically, including programmable electronic devices and communications networks and any associated hardware, software, or data.

(Pub. L. 111–267, title XII, §1207, Oct. 11, 2010, 124 Stat. 2844.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 3545 of title 44, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), was repealed by Pub. L. 113–283, §2(a), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3073. Provisions similar to section 3545 of title 44 are now contained in section 3555 of title 44, as enacted by Pub. L. 113–283.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

CHAPTER 160—TREATMENT OF CERTAIN PAYMENTS IN EUGENICS COMPENSATION

§18501. Exclusion of payments from State eugenics compensation programs from consideration in determining eligibility for, or the amount of, Federal public benefits

(a) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, payments made under a State eugenics compensation program shall not be considered as income or resources in determining eligibility for, or the amount

of, any Federal public benefit.

(b) Definitions

For purposes of this section:

(1) Federal public benefit

The term "Federal public benefit" means—

(A) any grant, contract, loan, professional license, or commercial license provided by an agency of the United States or by appropriated funds of the United States; and

(B) any retirement, welfare, health, disability, public or assisted housing, postsecondary education, food assistance, unemployment benefit, or any other similar benefit for which payments or assistance are provided to an individual, household, or family eligibility unit by an agency of the United States or by appropriated funds of the United States.

(2) State eugenics compensation program

The term "State eugenics compensation program" means a program established by State law that is intended to compensate individuals who were sterilized under the authority of the State.

(Pub. L. 114–241, §2, Oct. 7, 2016, 130 Stat. 976.)

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 114–241, §1, Oct. 7, 2016, 130 Stat. 976, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'Treatment of Certain Payments in Eugenics Compensation Act'."